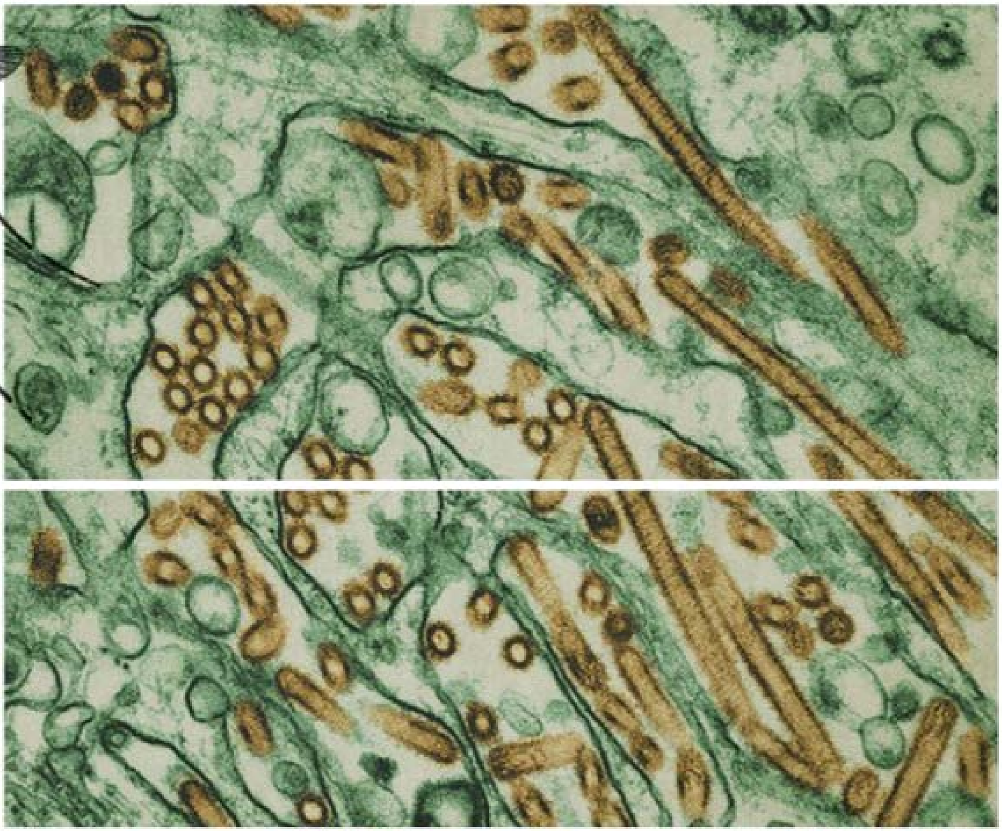
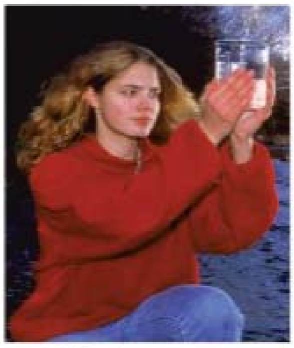
INFECTIOUS DISEASES

{ IN CONTEXT }





VOLUMES 1 & 2

A-L & M-Z

BRENDA WILMOTH LERNER AND K. LEE LERNER

VISIT…

LANZAROTE
Caliente.com

Infectious Diseases: In Context

Infectious Diseases: In Context

Brenda Wilmoth Lerner & K. Lee Lerner, Editors

VOLUME 1

AIDS TO LYME DISEASE

THOMSON
GALE

Detroit • New York • San Francisco • New Haven, Conn. • Waterville, Maine • London

THOMSON
GALE

Infectious Diseases: In Context

Brenda Wilmoth Lerner and K. Lee Lerner, Editors

Project Editor
Madeline S. Harris

Editorial
Kathleen Edgar, Debra Kirby, Kristine Krapp, Paul Lewon, Elizabeth Manar, Kimberley McGrath, Jennifer Stock

Production Technology
Paul Lewon

Indexing Services
Factiva, Inc.

Rights and Acquisitions
Lisa Kincade, Ronald Montgomery, Tracie Richardson, Robyn Young

Imaging and Multimedia
Lezlie Light

Product Design
Jennifer Wahi

Product Management
Janet Witalec

Composition
Evi Seoud, Mary Beth Trimper

Manufacturing
Wendy Blurton, Dorothy Maki

© 2008 The Gale Group.

Thomson and Star Logo are trademarks and Gale and U·X·L are registered trademarks used herein under license.

For more information, contact:
The Gale Group
27500 Drake Rd.
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3535
Or you can visit our Internet site at
http://www.gale.com

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED
No part of this work covered by the copyright hereon may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, Web distribution, or information storage retrieval systems—without the written permission of the publisher.

For permission to use material from this product, submit your request via Web at http://www.gale-edit.com/permissions, or you may download our Permissions Request form and submit your request by fax or mail to:

Permissions
The Gale Group
27500 Drake Rd.
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3535
Permissions Hotline:
248-699-8006 or 800-877-4253, ext. 8006
Fax: 248-699-8074 or 800-762-4058

Cover photographs used with permission from the following sources: Mosquito, ©Bettmann Corbis; Hazmat workers, ©Reuters/Corbis; High school student with water, Taro Yamasaki/Time Life Pictures/Getty Images; Green avian flu particles, CDC/Photo Researchers, Inc; Antigen-antibody image, ©Ted Spiegel/Corbis.

While every effort has been made to ensure the reliability of the information presented in this publication, the Gale Group does not guarantee the accuracy of the data contained herein. The Gale Group accepts no payment for listing; and inclusion in the publication of any organization, agency, institution, publication, service, or individual does not imply endorsement of the editors or publisher. Errors brought to the attention of the publisher and verified to the satisfaction of the publisher will be corrected in future editions.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOGING-IN-PUBLICATION DATA

Infectious diseases: in context / Brenda Wilmoth Lerner & K. Lee Lerner, editors.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN-13: 978-1-4144-2960-1 (set hardcover)–
ISBN-13: 978-1-4144-2961-8 (vol. 1 hardcover)–
ISBN-13: 978-1-4144-2962-5 (vol. 2 hardcover)–
ISBN-13: 978-1-4144-2963-2 (set ebook)
1. Communicable diseases–Encyclopedias.
I. Lerner, Brenda Wilmoth. II. Lerner, K. Lee.
RC111.I516 2008
616.003–dc22

2007019024

This title is also available as an e-book.
ISBN 978-1-4144-2963-2
Contact your Gale sales representative for ordering information.

Printed in Canada
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contents

Contributors xv
Introduction xvii
A Special Introduction by Stephen A. Berger, M.D. xix
About the Set xxi
About the Book xxiii
Organization of the Encyclopedia xx
Using Primary Sources xxvii
Glossary xxix
Chronology lix

VOLUME 1

African Sleeping Sickness (Trypanosomiasis) 1
AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome) 7
AIDS: Origin of the Modern Pandemic 18
Airborne Precautions 23
Alveolar Echinococcosis 26
Amebiasis 29
Angiostrongyliasis 32
Animal Importation 35
Anisakiasis 38
Anthrax 41

Antibacterial Drugs 47
Antibiotic Resistance 51
Antimicrobial Soaps 56
Antiviral Drugs 59
Arthropod-borne Disease 63
Asilomar Conference 67
Aspergillosis 70
Avian Influenza 73
B Virus (Cercopithecine herpesvirus 1) Infection 78
Babesiosis (Babesia Infection) 81
Bacterial Disease 84
Balantidiasis 87
Baylisascaris *Infection* 90
Bilharzia (Schistosomiasis) 93
Biological Weapons Convention 97
Bioterrorism 100
Blastomycosis 107
Blood Supply and Infectious Disease 110
Bloodborne Pathogens 112
Botulism 115
Bovine Spongiform Encephalopathy ("Mad Cow" Disease) 118
Brucellosis 122
Burkholderia 126
Buruli (Bairnsdale) Ulcer 129
Campylobacter *Infection* 132
Cancer and Infectious Disease 135
Candidiasis 138
Cat Scratch Disease 142
CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention) 145
Chagas Disease 149
Chickenpox (Varicella) 152

Chikungunya 157
Childhood Associated Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts 160
Chlamydia *Infection* 168
Chlamydia Pneumoniae 172
Cholera 175
Climate Change and Infectious Disease 182
Clostridium difficile *Infection* 187
CMV (Cytomegalovirus) Infection 190
Coccidioidomycosis 193
Cohorted Communities and Infectious Disease 196
Cold Sores 198
Colds (Rhinitis) 199
Contact Lenses and Fusarium *Keratitis* 203
Contact Precautions 206
Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease-nv 208
Crimean-Congo Hemorrhagic Fever 212
Cryptococcus neoformans *Infection* 215
Cryptosporidiosis 217
Culture and Sensitivity 221
Cyclosporiasis 225
Demographics and Infectious Disease 228
Dengue and Dengue Hemorrhagic Fever 232
Developing Nations and Drug Delivery 237
Diphtheria 242
Disinfection 249
Dracunculiasis 252
Droplet Precautions 255
Dysentery 257
Ear Infection (Otitis Media) 262
Eastern Equine Encephalitis 265
Ebola 269
Economic Development and Infectious Disease 276

Emerging Infectious Diseases 281
Encephalitis 285
Endemnicity 291
Epidemiology 294
Epstein-Barr Virus 301
Escherichia coli *O157:H7* 304
Exposed: Scientists Who Risked Disease for Discovery 308
Fifth Disease 312
Filariasis 315
Food-borne Disease and Food Safety 318
Gastroenteritis (Common Causes) 322
Genetic Identification of Microorganisms 325
Genital Herpes 328
Germ Theory of Disease 329
Giardiasis 333
GIDEON 336
Glanders (Melioidosis) 338
Globalization and Infectious Disease 341
Gonorrhea 345
H5N1 349
Haemophilus influenzae 352
Hand, Foot, and Mouth Disease 355
Handwashing 358
Hantavirus 362
Helicobacter pylori 366
Helminth Disease 369
Hemorrhaghic Fevers 372
Hepatitis A 376
Hepatitis B 380
Hepatitis C 384
Hepatitis D 388
Hepatitis E 390

Herpes Simplex 1 Virus 392
Herpes Simplex 2 Virus 395
Histoplasmosis 399
HIV 402
*Hookworm (*Ancylostoma*) Infection* 405
Host and Vector 408
*Hot Tub Rash (*Pseudomonas aeruginosa *Dermatitis)* 411
HPV (Human Papillomavirus) Infection 413
Immigration and Infectious Disease 417
Immune Response to Infection 421
Impetigo 428
Infection Control and Asepesis 431
Influenza 437
Influenza Pandemic of 1918 442
Influenza Pandemic of 1957 449
Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation 452
Isolation and Quarantine 456
Japanese Encephalitis 459
Kawasaki Syndrome 462
Koch's Postulates 465
Kuru 468
Lassa Fever 471
Legionnaire's Disease (Legionellosis) 475
Legislation, International Law, and Infectious Diseases 478
Leishmaniasis 483
Leprosy (Hansen's Disease) 487
Leptospirosis 494
Lice Infestation (Pediculosis) 497
Listeriosis 500
Liver Fluke Infection 503
Lung Fluke (Paragonimus) Infection 506
Lyme Disease 508

VOLUME 2

Malaria 515
Marburg Hemorrhagic Fever 523
Marine Toxins 527
Measles (Rubeola) 531
Médicins Sans Frontièrs (Doctors without Borders) 536
Meningitis, Bacterial 540
Meningitis, Viral 544
Microbial Evolution 547
Microorganisms 551
Microscope and Microscopy 553
Monkeypox 556
Mononucleosis 559
Mosquito-borne Diseases 565
MRSa 570
Mumps 573
Mycotic Disease 577
National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases 581
Necrotizing Fasciitis 584
Nipah Virus Encephalitis 588
Nocardiosis 591
Norovirus Infection 594
Nosocomial (Healthcare-Associated) Infections 597
Notifiable Diseases 600
Opportunistic Infection 603
Outbreaks: Field Level Response 606
Pandemic Preparedness 612
Parasitic Diseases 615
Personal Protective Equipment 618
Pink Eye (Conjunctivitis) 621
*Pinworm (*Enterobius vermicularis*) Infection* 624

Plague, Early History 627

Plague, Modern History 635

Pneumocystis carinii *Pneumonia* 640

Pneumonia 642

Polio (Poliomyelitis) 648

Polio Eradication Campaign 654

Prion Disease 657

ProMed 660

Psittacosis 662

Public Health and Infectious Disease 665

Puperal Fever 673

Q Fever 677

Rabies 680

Rapid Diagnostic Tests for Infectious Diseases 684

Rat-bite fever 687

Re-emerging Infectious Diseases 689

Relapsing Fever 694

Resistant Organisms 697

RSV (Respiratory Syncytial Virus Infection) Infection 701

Retroviruses 704

Rickettsial Disease 707

Rift Valley Fever 710

Ringworm 713

River Blindness (Onchocerciasis) 716

Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever 719

Rotavirus Infection 722

Roundworm (Ascariasis) Infection 725

Rubella 728

St. Louis Encephalitis 731

Salmonella *Infection (Salmonellosis)* 733

Sanitation 736

SARS (Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome) 740

Scabies 749
Scarlet Fever 752
Scrofula: The King's Evil 755
Sexually Transmitted Diseases 758
Shigellosis 764
Shingles (Herpes Zoster) Infection 767
Smallpox 770
Smallpox Eradication and Storage 776
Sporotrichosis 780
Standard Precautions 782
Staphylococcus aureus *Infection* 785
Sterilization 788
Strep throat 791
Streptococcal Infections, Group A 794
Streptococcal Infections, Group B 797
Strongyloidiasis 799
Swimmer's Ear and Swimmer's Itch (Cercarial Dermatitis) 801
Syphilis 804
*Taeniasis (*Taenia *Infection)* 810
Tapeworm Infection 813
Tetanus 816
Toxic Shock 819
*Toxoplasmosis (*Toxoplasma *Infection)* 821
Trachoma 824
Travel and Infectious Disease 827
Trichinellosis 829
Trichomonas *Infection* 832
Tropical Infectious Diseases 834
Tuberculosis 837
Tularemia 845
Typhoid Fever 849
Typhus 852

UNICEF 858

United Nations Millennium Goals and Infectious Disease 860

Urinary Tract Infection 864

USAMRIID (United States Army Medical Research Institute of Infectious Diseases) 867

Vaccines and vaccine Development 870

Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci 875

Vector-borne Disease 878

Viral Disease 881

Virus Hunters 885

War and Infectious Disease 889

Water-borne Disease 895

West Nile 899

Whipworm (Trichuriasis) 906

Whooping Cough (Pertussis) 909

Women, Minorities, and Infectious Disease 912

World Health Organization (WHO) 915

World Trade and Infectious Disease 918

Yaws 923

Yellow Fever 925

Yersiniosis 932

Zoonoses 935

Sources Consulted 939

General Index 963

Advisors and Contributors

While compiling this volume, the editors relied upon the expertise and contributions of the following scientists, scholars, and researchers, who served as advisors and/or contributors for *Infectious Diseases: In Context*:

Susan Aldridge, Ph.D.
Independent scholar and writer
London, United Kingdom

William Arthur Atkins, M.S.
Independent scholar and writer
Normal, Illinois

Stephen A. Berger, M.D.
Director, Geographic Medicine
Tel Aviv Medical Center
Tel Aviv, Israel

L.S. Clements, M.D., Ph.D.
Assistant Professor of Pediatrics
University of South Alabama College of Medicine
Mobile, Alabama

Bryan Davies, L.L.B.
Writer and journalist
Ontario, Canada

Paul Davies, Ph.D.
Director, Science Research Institute
Adjunct Professor Université Paris - La Sorbonne.
Paris, France

Antonio Farina, M.D., Ph.D.
Department of Embryology, Obstetrics, and Gynecology
University of Bologna
Bologna, Italy

Larry Gilman, Ph.D.
Independent scholar and journalist
Sharon, Vermont

Tony Hawas, M.A.
Writer and journalist
Brisbane, Australia

Brian D. Hoyle, Ph.D.
Microbiologist
Nova Scotia, Canada

Kenneth T. LaPensee, Ph.D., MPH
Epidemiologist and Medical Policy Specialist
Hampton, New Jersey

Agnieszka Lichanska, Ph.D.
Institute for Molecular Sciences
University of Queensland
Brisbane, Australia

Adrienne Wilmoth Lerner, J.D.
Independent scholar
Jacksonville, Florida

Eric v.d. Luft, Ph.D., M.L.S.
Adjunct Lecturer, Center for Bioethics and Humanities
SUNY Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Caryn Neumann, Ph.D.
Visiting Assistant Professor
Denison University
Granville, Ohio

Anna Marie Roos, Ph.D.
Research Associate, Wellcome Unit for the History of Medicine
University of Oxford
Oxford, United Kingdom

Constance K. Stein, Ph.D.
Director of Cytogenetics, Associate Professor
SUNY Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Jack Woodall, Ph.D.
Director, Nucleus for the Investigation of Emerging Infectious Diseases
Institute of Medical Biochemistry, Center for Health Sciences
Federal University of Rio de Janeiro
Rio de Janeiro, Brazil

Melanie Barton Zoltán, M.S.
Independent scholar
Amherst, Massachusetts

Acknowledgments

The editors are grateful to the truly global group of scholars, researchers, and writers who contributed to *Infectious Diseases: In Context.*

The editors also wish to thank copyeditors Christine Jeryan, Kate Kretchmann, and Alicia Cafferty Lerner, whose keen eyes and sound judgments greatly enhanced the quality and readability of the text.

The editors gratefully acknowledge and extend thanks to Janet Witalec and Debra Kirby at the Gale Group for their faith in the project and for their sound content advice and guidance. Without the able guidance and efforts of talented teams in IT, rights and acquisition management, and imaging at the Gale Group, this book would not have been possible. The editors are especially indebted to Kim McGrath, Elizabeth Manar, Kathleen Edgar, Kristine Krapp, and Jennifer Stock for their invaluable help in correcting copy. The editors also wish to acknowledge the contributions of Marcia Schiff at the Associated Press for her help in securing archival images.

Deep and sincere thanks and appreciation are due to Project Manager Madeline Harris who, despite a myriad of publishing hurdles and woes, managed miracles with skill, grace, and humor.

Introduction

Humanity shares a common ancestry with all living things on Earth. We often share especially close intimacies with the microbial world. In fact, only a small percentage of the cells in the human body are human at all. "We" are vastly outnumbered, even within our bodies, by microbial life that can only be counted on the same scale as the vast numbers of stars in the universe. This is also an essential relationship, because humanity could not survive without an array of microflora that both nourish us and that provide needed enzymes for life processes.

Yet, the common biology and biochemistry that unites us also makes us susceptible to contracting and transmitting infectious disease.

Throughout history, microorganisms have spread deadly diseases and caused widespread epidemics that have threatened and altered human civilization. In the modern era, civic sanitation, water purification, immunization, and antibiotics have dramatically reduced the overall morbidity and the mortality rates of infectious disease in more developed nations. Yet, much of the world is still ravaged by disease and epidemics; new threats constantly appear to challenge the most advanced medical and public health systems.

Although specific diseases may be statistically associated with particular regions or other demographics, disease does not recognize social class or political boundary. In our intimately connected global village, an outbreak of disease in a remote area may quickly transform into a global threat. Given the opportunity, the agents of disease may spread across the globe at the speed of modern travel, and also leap from animals to humans.

The articles presented in these volumes, written by some of the world's leading experts, are designed to be readable and to instruct, challenge, and excite a range of student and reader interests while, at the same time, providing a solid foundation and reference for more advanced students and readers. It speaks both to the seriousness of their dedication to combating infectious disease and to the authors' great credit that the interests of younger students and lay readers were put forefront in preparation of these entries.

The editors are especially pleased to have contributions and original primary source essays within the volumes by experts that are currently in the forefront of international infectious disease research and policy. Jack Woodall, Ph.D., recounts memories of belonging to a team that identified and determined the cause of Machupo hemorrhagic fever in "Virus Hunters" and of his association with the developer of the yellow fever vaccine in "Yellow Fever." He also explains "ProMED," a disease-reporting system (of which Woodall is a founder) that allows scientists around the world, whether in the hospital, laboratory, or the field, to share real-time information about outbreaks of emerging infectious diseases. Jack Woodall now serves as the director of the Nucleus for the Investigation of Emerging Infectious Diseases at the Federal University of Rio de Janeiro in Brazil.

Stephen A. Berger, M.D., Ph.D., Director of Geographic Medicine at Tel Aviv Medical Center in Tel Aviv, Israel, served as a contributing advisor for *Infectious Diseases: In Context* and was the developer of GIDEON (Global Infectious Disease and Epidemiology Network), the world's premier global infectious diseases database. Dr. Berger explains the Web-based tool that helps physicians worldwide diagnose infectious diseases. Dr. Berger also contributes "Travel and Infectious Disease" and a special introduction. Dr. Berger's contributions reflect a dedication to teaching that has five times earned him the New York Medical College Teaching Award. Dr. Berger, author of numerous articles and books, including *Introduction to Infectious Diseases*, *The Healthy Tourist*, and *Exotic Viral Diseases: A Global Guide,* was gracious with his time, writing, and advice.

The editors are indebted to both of these distinguished scientists for their generous contributions of time and compelling material.

Readers interests were are also well-served by Anthony S. Fauci, M.D., Director of the National Institutes of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, for what was, at the time *Infectious Diseases: In Context* went to press, a preview of his latest version of the map of emerging and re-emerging infectious diseases, and also by L. Scott Clements, M.D., Ph.D., for his advice and articles, including "Childhood Infectious Diseases: Immunization Impacts."

Space limitations of this volume force the editors to include only those infectious diseases that directly affect human health. It is important to note, however, that diseases affecting plants and animals can have a significant indirect impact on the lives of humans. The 2001 outbreak of foot and mouth disease in the United Kingdom, for example, resulted in the slaughter of over six million pigs, sheep, and cattle, crippling farmers, tourism, and other commerce, and ultimately costing an estimated four billion dollars to the U.K. economy. At press time, the cocoa industry in Ghana is threatened by the Cocoa Swollen Shoot Virus, where farmers are reluctant to cut down their infected mature cocoa trees and plant healthy seedlings. Ghana is among the leading exporters worldwide of cocoa for chocolate. Scientists are also concerned about a lack of forthcoming information from the Chinese government concerning an epidemic virus among pigs in China that is contributing to a pork shortage and the strongest inflation in China in a decade. Although these diseases cannot inflict illness in humans, they can ultimately affect the nutritional, social, economic, and political status of a nation and its people.

Despite the profound and fundamental advances in science and medicine during the last fifty years, there has never been a greater need for a book that explains the wide-ranging impacts of infectious disease. It is hubris to assume that science alone will conquer infectious diseases. Globally, deaths due to malaria alone may double over the next twenty years and ominous social and political implications cannot be ignored when death continues to cast a longer shadow over the poorest nations.

The fight against infectious disease depends on far more than advances in science and public health. The hope that threats and devastation of infectious diseases could be eliminated for all humankind have long since been dashed upon the hard realities that health care is disproportionately available, and cavernous gaps still exist between health care in wealthier nations as opposed to poorer nations. Victory in the "war" against infectious disease will require advances in science and advances in our understanding of our fragile environment and common humanity.

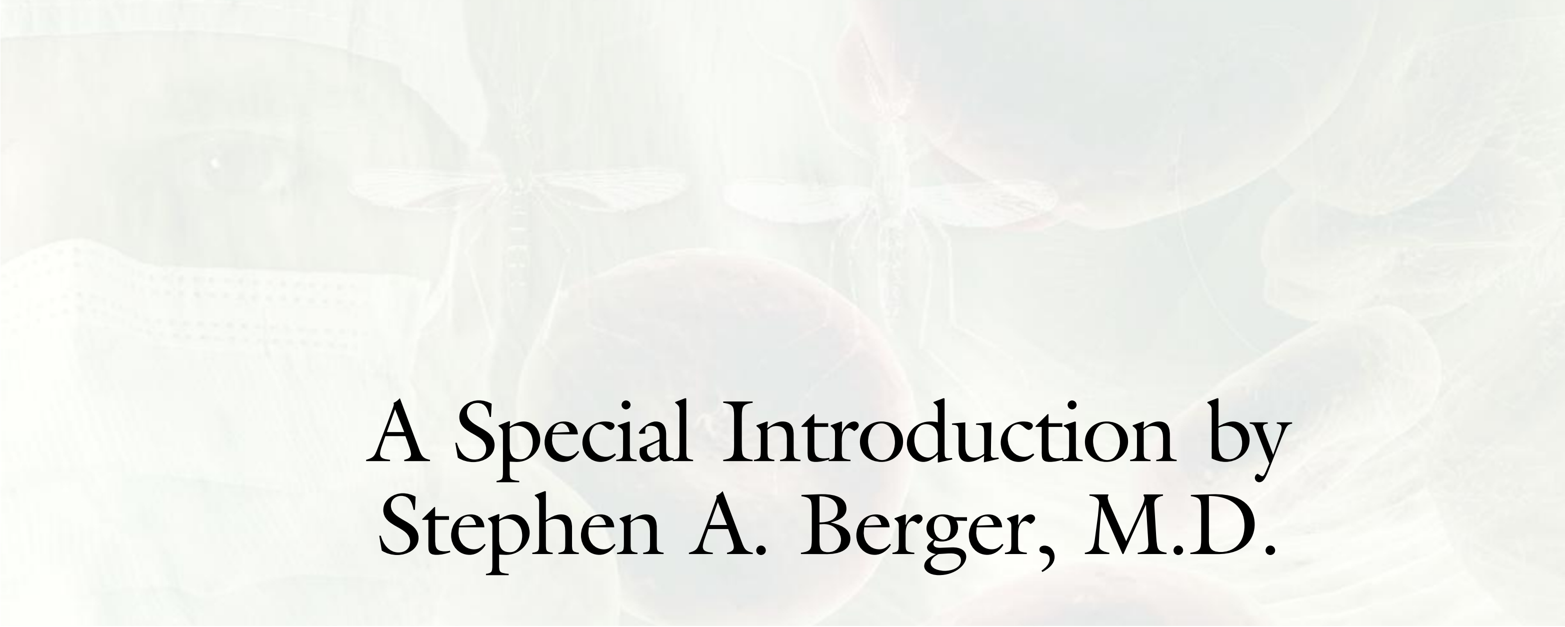
K. Lee Lerner & Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, editors

DUBLIN, IRELAND, JULY 2007

Brenda Wilmoth Lerner and K. Lee Lerner were members of the International Society for Infectious Disease and delegates to the 12th International Congress on Infectious Disease in Lisbon, Portugal, in June 2006. Primarily based in London and Paris, the Lerner & Lerner portfolio includes more than two dozen books and films that focus on science and science-related issues.

"...any man's death diminishes me, because I am involved in mankind, and therefore never send to know for whom the bells tolls; it tolls for thee." —John Donne, 1624 (published) *Devotions upon Emergent Occasions*, no. 17 (Meditation)

The book is respectfully dedicated to Dr. Carlo Urbani and those who risk—and far too often sacrifice—their lives in an attempt to lessen the toll of infectious diseases.



A Special Introduction by Stephen A. Berger, M.D.

The Burden of Infectious Disease in Our Changing, Globalizing World

As we move into the twenty-first century, we continue to exist in a sea of ancient, hostile adversaries that threaten our very existence—both as individuals, and as a race of medium-sized mammals. The good news is that modern technology allows us to understand, diagnose, and treat an expanding number of infectious diseases. The bad news is that this same modern technology increasingly places us at risk for those same diseases.

For the purpose of clarity, I will classify the infectious diseases of humans into six broad categories: traditional, new, emerging, re-emerging, disappearing, and extinct. The latter category is depressingly small, and in fact contains only a single disease. The last case of smallpox was reported in Somalia in 1977, and the viral agent hibernates (as far as we know) in secure freezers located in the United States and Russian Federation. The few disappearing diseases include measles, leprosy, guinea worm, and poliomyelitis—conditions whose numbers have decreased in recent years, but which could suddenly blossom into outbreaks when the political and social climate permits.

One must distinguish between "new diseases" and "newly discovered" diseases. The former category includes conditions that had never before affected mankind: AIDS, SARS, Ebola. In contrast, Legionnaire's disease, Chlamydial infection, and Lyme disease appear to have affected man for many centuries, but were only "discovered" when appropriate technology permitted.

Emerging diseases such as West Nile fever and Dengue are certainly not new, but expand both geographically and numerically with the advent of mass tourism and the dispersal of mosquitoes in suitable animals or other vehicles. As the term implies, "re-emerging" diseases such as malaria repopulate areas from which they had been eliminated, often as the result of man-made alteration of the environment, elimination of natural predators, global warming, deforestation, and crowding. The best-known disease in this category is influenza, which is caused by a virus that seems to evolve and mutate continually into agents that are not recognized by the human host. Even this phenomenon is largely driven by the practice of some human populations to raise swine and ducks in crowded, unsanitary conditions that promote interchange of viral material.

The vast majority of infectious diseases might be classified as "traditional," forever with us and largely unchanged: the common cold, chickenpox, urinary tract infection, pneumonia, typhoid, gonorrhea, meningitis, and hundreds of others. In some cases, vaccines have altered the incidence of some traditional diseases among select populations. In other cases, increasing life span and advances in medical and surgical intervention have actually created a favorable ecological niche for heretofore non-pathogenic microbes.

Sadly, several new and distressing disease patterns have been the direct result of advances in managing the infection itself. Tuberculosis has been a largely treatable disease since the 1940's; but as of 2007, strains of the causative agent are increasingly resistant to all known drugs. Highly resistant microbes are now commonplace in cases of AIDS, malaria, and gonorrhea, as well as many of the traditional bacteria for which antibiotics were primarily developed: staphylococci, pneumococci and *E. coli*.

Hopefully, the seemingly self-destructive aspect of mankind will be overtaken by continued advances in the treatment, prevention, and understanding of the microbes that share our world.

Stephen A. Berger, M.D.
Director of Geographic Medicine
Tel Aviv Medical Center
Tel Aviv, Israel

About the *In Context* Series

Written by a global array of experts yet aimed primarily at high school students and an interested general readership, the *In Context* series serves as an authoritative reference guide to essential concepts of science, the impacts of recent changes in scientific consensus, and the effects of science on social, political, and legal issues.

Cross-curricular in nature, *In Context* books align with, and support, national science standards and high school science curriculums across subjects in science and the humanities, and facilitate science understanding important to higher achievement in the No Child Left Behind (NCLB) science testing. Inclusion of original essays written by leading experts and primary source documents serve the requirements of an increasing number of high school and international baccalaureate programs, and are designed to provide additional insights on leading social issues, as well as spur critical thinking about the profound cultural connections of science.

In Context books also give special coverage to the impact of science on daily life, commerce, travel, and the future of industrialized and impoverished nations.

Each book in the series features entries with extensively developed words-to-know sections designed to facilitate understanding and increase both reading retention and the ability of students to understand reading in context without being overwhelmed by scientific terminology.

Entries are further designed to include standardized subheads that are specifically designed to present information related to the main focus of the book. Entries also include a listing of further resources (books, periodicals, Web sites, audio and visual media) and references to related entries.

In addition to maps, charts, tables and graphs, each *In Context* title has approximately 300 topic-related images that visually enrich the content. Each *In Context* title will also contain topic-specific timelines (a chronology of major events), a topic-specific glossary, a bibliography, and an index especially prepared to coordinate with the volume topic.

About This Book

The goal of *Infectious Diseases: In Context* is to help high-school and early college-age students understand the essential facts and deeper cultural connections of topics and issues related to the scientific study of infectious disease.

The relationship of science to complex ethical and social considerations is evident, for example, when considering the general rise of infectious diseases that sometimes occurs as an unintended side effect of the otherwise beneficial use of medications. Nearly half the world's population is infected with the bacterium causing tuberculosis (TB); although for most people the infection is inactive, yet the organism causing some new cases of TB is evolving toward a greater resistance to the antibiotics that were once effective in treating TB. Such statistics also take on added social dimension when considering that TB disproportionately impacts certain social groups (the elderly, minority groups, and people infected with HIV).

In an attempt to enrich the reader's understanding of the mutually impacting relationship between science and culture, as space allows we have included primary sources that enhance the content of *In Context* entries. In keeping with the philosophy that much of the benefit from using primary sources derives from the reader's own process of inquiry, the contextual material introducing each primary source provides an unobtrusive introduction and springboard to critical thought.

General Structure

Infectious Diseases: In Context is a collection of 250 entries that provide insight into increasingly important and urgent topics associated with the study of infectious disease.

The articles in the book are meant to be understandable by anyone with a curiosity about topics related to infectious disease, and the first edition of *Infectious Diseases: In Context* has been designed with ready reference in mind:

- Entries are arranged alphabetically, rather than by chronology or scientific subfield.
- The **chronology** (timeline) includes many of the most significant events in the history of infectious disease and advances of science. Where appropriate, related scientific advances are included to offer additional context.
- An extensive glossary section provides readers with a ready reference for content-related terminology. In addition to defining terms within entries, specific Words-to-Know sidebars are placed within each entry.
- A bibliography section (citations of books, periodicals, websites, and audio and visual material) offers additional resources to those resources cited within each entry.
- A **comprehensive general index** guides the reader to topics and persons mentioned in the book.

Entry Structure

In Context entries are designed so that readers may navigate entries with ease. Toward that goal, entries are divided into easy-to-access sections:

- **Introduction**: A opening section designed to clearly identify the topic.
- **Words-to-know** sidebar: Essential terms that enhance readability and critical understanding of entry content.
- Established but flexible **rubrics** customize content presentation and identify each section, enabling the reader to navigate entries with ease. Inside *Infectious Diseases: In Context* entries readers will find two key schemes of organization. Most entries contain internal discussions of **Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission**, followed by **Scope and Distribution**, then a summary of **Treatment and Prevention**. General social or science topics may have a simpler structure discussing, for example, **History and Scientific Foundations**. Regardless, the goal of *In Context* entries is a consistent, content-appropriate, and easy-to-follow presentation.
- **Impacts and Issues**: Key scientific, political, or social considerations related to the entry topic.
- **Bibliography:** Citations of books, periodicals, web sites, and audio and visual material used in preparation of the entry or that provide a stepping stone to further study.
- **"See also" references** clearly identify other content-related entries.

Infectious Diseases: In Context special style notes

Please note the following with regard to topics and entries included in *Infectious Diseases: In Context*:

- Primary source selection and the composition of sidebars are not attributed to authors of signed entries to which the sidebars may be associated. In all cases, the sources for sidebars containing external content (e.g., a CDC policy position or medical recommendation) are clearly indicated.
- The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) includes parasitic diseases with infectious diseases, and the editors have adopted this scheme.
- Equations are, of course, often the most accurate and preferred language of science, and are essential to epidemiologists and medical statisticians. To better serve the intended audience of *Infectious Diseases: In Context*, however, the editors attempted to minimize the inclusion of equations in favor of describing the elegance of thought or essential results such equations yield.
- A detailed understanding of biology and chemistry is neither assumed nor required for *Infectious Diseases: In Context*. Accordingly, students and other readers should not be intimidated or deterred by the sometimes complex names of chemical molecules or biological classification. Where necessary, sufficient information regarding chemical structure or species classification is provided. If desired, more information can easily be obtained from any basic chemistry or biology reference.

Bibliography citation formats (How to cite articles and sources)

In Context titles adopt the following citation format:

Books

Magill, Gerard, ed. *Genetics and Ethics: An Interdisciplinary Study*. New York: Fordham University Press, 2003.

Verlinsky, Yury, and Anver Kuliev. *Practical Preimplantation Genetic Diagnosis*. New York: Springer, 2005.

Web Sites

ADEAR. Alzheimer's Disease Education and Referral Center. National Institute on Aging. <http://www.alzheimers.org/generalinfo.htm> (accessed January 23, 2006).

Genetics and Public Policy Center. <http://dnapolicy.org/index.jhtml.html> (accessed January 23, 2006).

Human Genetics in the Public Interest. The Center for Genetics and Society. <http://www.genetics-and-society.org> (accessed January 26, 2006).

PGD: Preimplantation Genetic Diagnosis. "Discussion by the Genetics and Public Policy Center." <http://dnapolicy.org/downloads/pdfs/policy_pgd.pdf> (accessed January 23, 2006).

Alternative citation formats

There are, however, alternative citation formats that may be useful to readers and examples of how to cite articles in often used alternative formats are shown below.

APA Style

Books: Kübler-Ross, Elizabeth. (1969) *On Death and Dying*. New York: Macmillan. Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. (2006) *Medicine, Health, and Bioethics: Essential Primary Sources*, Farmington Hills, Mich.: Thomson Gale.

Periodicals: Venter, J. Craig, et al. (2001, February 16). "The Sequence of the Human Genome." *Science*, vol. 291, no. 5507, pp. 1304–51. Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. (2006) *Medicine, Health, and Bioethics: Essential Primary Sources*, Farmington Hills, Mich.: Thomson Gale.

Web Sites: Johns Hopkins Hospital and Health System. "Patient Rights and Responsibilities." Retrieved January 14, 2006 from Http://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/patients/JHH/patient_rights.html. Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. (2006) *Medicine, Health, and Bioethics: Essential Primary Sources*, Farmington Hills, Mich.: Thomson Gale.

Chicago Style

Books: Kübler-Ross, Elizabeth. *On Death and Dying*. New York: Macmillan, 1969. Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. *Medicine, Health, and Bioethics: Essential Primary Sources*, Farmington Hills, MI: Thomson Gale, 2006.

Periodicals: Venter, J. Craig, et al. "The Sequence of the Human Genome." *Science* (2001): 291, 5507, 1304–1351. Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. *Medicine, Health, and Bioethics: Essential Primary Sources*, Farmington Hills, MI: Thomson Gale, 2006.

Web Sites: *Johns Hopkins Hospital and Health System*. "Patient Rights and Responsibilities." <http://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/patients/JHH/patient_rights.html.> (accessed January 14, 2006). Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. *Medicine, Health, and Bioethics: Essential Primary Sources*, Farmington Hills, MI: Thomson Gale, 2006.

MLA Style

Books: Kübler-Ross, Elizabeth. *On Death and Dying*, New York: Macmillan, 1969. Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. *Medicine, Health, and Bioethics: Essential Primary Sources*, Farmington Hills, Mich.: Thomson Gale, 2006.

Periodicals: Venter, J. Craig, et al. "The Sequence of the Human Genome." *Science*, 291 (16 February 2001): 5507, 1304–51. Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. *Terrorism: Essential Primary Sources*, Farmington Hills, Mich.: Thomson Gale, 2006.

Web Sites: "Patient's Rights and Responsibilities." Johns Hopkins Hospital and Health System. 14 January 2006. <http://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/patients/JHH/patient_rights.html.> Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. *Terrorism: Essential Primary Sources*, Farmington Hills, Mich.: Thomson Gale, 2006.

Turabian Style (Natural and Social Sciences)

Books: Kübler-Ross, Elizabeth. *On Death and Dying*, (New York: Macmillan, 1969). Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. *Medicine, Health, and Bioethics: Essential Primary Sources*, (Farmington Hills, Mich.: Thomson Gale, 2006).

Periodicals: Venter, J. Craig, et al. "The Sequence of the Human Genome." *Science*, 291 (16 February 2001): 5507, 1304–1351. Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. *Medicine, Health, and Bioethics: Essential Primary Sources*, (Farmington Hills, Mich.: Thomson Gale, 2006).

Web Sites: Johns Hopkins Hospital and Health System."Patient's Rights and Responsibilities." available from http://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/patients/JHH/patient_rights.html; accessed14 January 2006. Excerpted in K. Lee Lerner and Brenda Wilmoth Lerner, eds. *Medicine, Health, and Bioethics: Essential Primary Sources*, (Farmington Hills, Mich.: Thomson Gale, 2006).

Using Primary Sources

The definition of what constitutes a primary source is often the subject of scholarly debate and interpretation. Although primary sources come from a wide spectrum of resources, they are united by the fact that they individually provide insight into the historical *milieu* (context and environment) during which they were produced. Primary sources include materials such as newspaper articles, press dispatches, autobiographies, essays, letters, diaries, speeches, song lyrics, posters, works of art—and in the twenty-first century, web logs—that offer direct, first-hand insight or witness to events of their day.

Categories of primary sources include:

- Documents containing firsthand accounts of historic events by witnesses and participants. This category includes diary or journal entries, letters, email, newspaper articles, interviews, memoirs, and testimony in legal proceedings.
- Documents or works representing the official views of both government leaders and leaders of other organizations. These include primary sources such as policy statements, speeches, interviews, press releases, government reports, and legislation.
- Works of art, including (but certainly not limited to) photographs, poems, and songs, including advertisements and reviews of those works that help establish an understanding of the cultural milieu (the cultural environment with regard to attitudes and perceptions of events).
- Secondary sources. In some cases, secondary sources or tertiary sources may be treated as primary sources. For example, if an entry written many years after an event, or to summarize an event, includes quotes, recollections, or retrospectives (accounts of the past) written by participants in the earlier event, the source can be considered a primary source.

Analysis of primary sources

The primary material collected in this volume is not intended to provide a comprehensive or balanced overview of a topic or event. Rather, the primary sources are intended to generate interest and lay a foundation for further inquiry and study.

In order to properly analyze a primary source, readers should remain skeptical and develop probing questions about the source. Using historical documents requires that readers analyze them carefully and extract specific information. However, readers must also read "beyond the text" to garner larger clues about the social impact of the primary source.

In addition to providing information about their topics, primary sources may also supply a wealth of insight into their creator's viewpoint. For example, when reading a news article about an outbreak of disease, consider whether the reporter's words also indicate something about his or her origin, bias (an irrational disposition in favor of someone or something), prejudices (an irrational disposition against someone or something), or intended audience.

Students should remember that primary sources often contain information later proven to be false, or contain viewpoints and terms unacceptable to future generations. It is important to view the primary source within the historical and social context existing at its creation. If for example, a newspaper article is written within hours or days of an event, later developments may reveal some assertions in the original article as false or misleading.

Test new conclusions and ideas

Whatever opinion or working hypothesis the reader forms, it is critical that they then test that hypothesis against other facts and sources related to the incident. For example, it might be wrong to conclude that factual mistakes are deliberate unless evidence can be produced of a pattern and practice of such mistakes with an intent to promote a false idea.

The difference between sound reasoning and preposterous conspiracy theories (or the birth of urban legends) lies in the willingness to test new ideas against other sources, rather than rest on one piece of evidence such as a single primary source that may contain errors. Sound reasoning requires that arguments and assertions guard against argument fallacies that utilize the following:

- false dilemmas (only two choices are given when in fact there are three or more options);
- arguments from ignorance (*argumentum ad ignorantiam*; because something is not known to be true, it is assumed to be false);
- possibilist fallacies (a favorite among conspiracy theorists who attempt to demonstrate that a factual statement is true or false by establishing the possibility of its truth or falsity. An argument where "it could be" is usually followed by an unearned "therefore, it is.");
- slippery slope arguments or fallacies (a series of increasingly dramatic consequences is drawn from an initial fact or idea);
- begging the question (the truth of the conclusion is assumed by the premises);
- straw man arguments (the arguer mischaracterizes an argument or theory and then attacks the merits of their own false representations);
- appeals to pity or force (the argument attempts to persuade people to agree by sympathy or force);
- prejudicial language (values or moral goodness, good and bad, are attached to certain arguments or facts);
- personal attacks (*ad hominem*; an attack on a person's character or circumstances);
- anecdotal or testimonial evidence (stories that are unsupported by impartial observation or data that is not reproducible);
- *post hoc* (after the fact) fallacies (because one thing follows another, it is held to cause the other);
- the fallacy of the appeal to authority (the argument rests upon the credentials of a person, not the evidence).

Despite the fact that some primary sources can contain false information or lead readers to false conclusions based on the "facts" presented, they remain an invaluable resource regarding past events. Primary sources allow readers and researchers to come as close as possible to understanding the perceptions and context of events and thus to more fully appreciate how and why misconceptions occur.

Glossary

A

ABIOGENESIS: Also known as spontaneous generation; the incorrect theory that living things can be generated from nonliving things.

ABIOTIC: A term used to describe the portion of an ecosystem that is not living, such as water or soil.

ABSCESS: An abscess is a pus-filled sore, usually caused by a bacterial infection. It results from the body's defensive reaction to foreign material. Abscesses are often found in the soft tissue under the skin in areas such as the armpit or the groin. However, they may develop in any organ, and they are commonly found in the breast and gums. If they are located in deep organs such as the lung, liver, or brain, abscesses are far more serious and call for more specific treatment.

ACARACIDES: Chemicals that kill mites and ticks are acaracides.

ACQUIRED (ADAPTIVE) IMMUNITY: Immunity is the ability to resist infection and is subdivided into innate immunity, which an individual is born with, and acquired, or adaptive, immunity, which develops according to circumstances and is targeted to a specific pathogen. There are two types of acquired immunity, known as active and passive. Active immunity is either humoral, involving production of antibody molecules against a bacterium or virus, or cell-mediated, where T-cells are mobilized against infected cells. Infection and immunization can both induce acquired immunity. Passive immunity is induced by injection of the serum of a person who is already immune to a particular infection.

ACQUIRED IMMUNODEFICIENCY SYNDROME (AIDS): A disease of the immune system caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). It is characterized by the destruction of a particular type of white blood cell and increased susceptibility to infection and other diseases.

ACTIVE INFECTION: An active infection is one that is currently producing symptoms or in which the infective agent is multiplying rapidly. In contrast, a latent infection is one in which the infective agent is present, but not causing symptoms or damage to the body nor reproducing at a significant rate.

ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY: Adaptive immunity is another term for acquired immunity, referring to the resistance to infection that develops through life and is targeted to a specific pathogen. There are two types of adaptive immunity, known as active and passive. Active immunity is either humoral, involving production of antibody molecules against a bacterium or virus, or cell-mediated, in which T-cells are mobilized against infected cells. Infection and immunization can both induce acquired immunity.

ADHESION: Physical attraction between different types of molecules.

AEROBES: Aerobic microorganisms require the presence of oxygen for growth. Molecular oxygen functions in the respiratory pathway of the microbes to produce the energy necessary for life. Bacteria, yeasts, fungi, and algae are capable of aerobic growth.

AEROSOL: Particles of liquid or solid dispersed as a suspension in gas.

AGGREGATIONS: When blood clots (becomes solid, usually in response to injury), cells called platelets form clumps called aggregations. An instrument called an aggregometer measures the degree of platelet aggregation in blood.

AIDS (ACQUIRED IMMUNODEFICIENCY SYNDROME): A disease of the immune system caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). It is characterized by the destruction of a particular type of white blood cell and increased susceptibility to infection and other diseases.

AIRBORNE PRECAUTIONS: Airborne precautions are procedures that are designed to reduce the chance that certain disease-causing (pathogenic) microorganisms will be transmitted through the air.

AIRBORNE TRANSMISSION: Airborne transmission refers to the ability of a disease-causing (pathogenic) microorganism to be spread through the air by droplets expelled during sneezing or coughing.

ALLELE: Any of two or more alternative forms of a gene that occupy the same location on a chromosome.

ALLERGIES: An allergy is an excessive or hypersensitive response of the immune system to substances (allergens) in the environment. Instead of fighting off a disease-causing foreign substance, the immune system launches a complex series of actions against the particular irritating allergen. The immune response may be accompanied by a number of stressful symptoms, ranging from mild to life threatening. In rare cases, an allergic reaction leads to anaphylactic shock—a condition characterized by a sudden drop in blood pressure, difficulty in breathing, skin irritation, collapse, and possible death.

ALVEOLI: An alveolus (alveoli is plural) is a tiny air sac located within the lungs. The exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide takes place within these sacs.

AMEBIC DYSENTERY: Amebic (or amoebic) dysentery, which is also referred to as amebiasis or amoebiasis, is an inflammation of the intestine caused by the parasite *Entamoeba histolytica*. The severe form of the malady is characterized by the formation of localized lesions (ulcers) in the intestine, especially in the region known as the colon; abscesses in the liver and the brain; vomiting; severe diarrhea with fluid loss leading to dehydration; and abdominal pain.

AMERICAN TYPE CULTURE COLLECTION: The American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) is a not-for-profit bioscience organization that maintains the world's largest and most diverse collection of microbiological life. Many laboratories and institutions maintain their own stockpile of microorganisms, usually those that are in frequent use in the facility. Some large culture collections are housed and maintained by universities or private enterprises, but none of these rivals the ATCC in terms of size.

AMPLIFICATION: A process by which something is made larger or the quantity increased.

ANADROMOUS: Fish that migrate from ocean (salt) water to fresh water, such as salmon, are termed anadromous.

ANAEROBIC BACTERIA: Bacteria that grow without oxygen, also called anaerobic bacteria or anaerobes. Anaerobic bacteria can infect deep wounds, deep tissues, and internal organs where there is little oxygen. These infections are characterized by abscess formation, foul-smelling pus, and tissue destruction.

ANTHRAX: Anthrax refers to a disease that is caused by the bacterium *Bacillus anthracis.* The bacterium can enter the body via a wound in the skin (cutaneous anthrax), via contaminated food or liquid (gastrointestinal anthrax), or can be inhaled (inhalation anthrax).

ANTIBACTERIAL: A substance that reduces or kills germs (bacteria and other microorganisms but not viruses). Also often a term used to describe a drug used to treat bacterial infections.

ANTIBIOTIC: A drug, such as penicillin, used to fight infections caused by bacteria. Antibiotics act only on bacteria and are not effective against viruses.

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

ANTIBIOTIC SENSITIVITY: Antibiotic sensitivity refers to the susceptibility of a bacterium to an antibiotic. Each type of bacteria can be killed by some types of antibiotics and not be affected by other types. Different types of bacteria exhibit different patterns of antibiotic sensitivity.

ANTIBODIES: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ANTIBODY RESPONSE: The specific immune response that utilizes B cells to kill certain kinds of antigens.

ANTIBODY-ANTIGEN BINDING: Antibodies are produced by the immune system in response to antigens (material perceived as foreign). The antibody response to a particular antigen is highly specific and often involves a physical association between the two molecules. Biochemical and molecular forces govern this association.

ANTIFUNGAL: Antifungals (also called antifungal drugs) are medicines used to fight fungal infections. They are of two kinds, systemic and topical. Systemic antifungal drugs are medicines taken by mouth or by injection to treat infections caused by a fungus. Topical antifungal drugs are medicines applied to the skin to treat skin infections caused by a fungus.

ANTIGEN: Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ANTIGENIC DRIFT: Antigenic drift describes the gradual accumulation of mutations in genes (e.g., in genes coding for surface proteins) over a period of time.

ANTIGENIC SHIFT: Antigenic shift describes an abrupt and major genetic change (e.g., in genes coding for surface proteins of a virus).

ANTIHELMINTHIC: Antihelminthic drugs are medicines that rid the body of parasitic worms.

ANTIMICROBIAL: An antimicrobial material slows the growth of bacteria or is able to kill bacteria. Antimicrobial materials include antibiotics (which can be used inside the body) and disinfectants (which can only be used outside the body).

ANTIRETROVIRAL (ARV) DRUGS: Antiretroviral (ARV) drugs prevent the reproduction of a type of virus called a retrovirus. The human immunodefiency virus (HIV), which causes acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), is a retrovirus. These ARV drugs are therefore used to treat HIV infections. These medicines cannot prevent or cure HIV infection, but they help to keep the virus in check.

ANTIRETROVIRAL (ARV) THERAPY: Treatment with antiretroviral (ARV) drugs prevents the reproduction of a type of virus called a retrovirus. The human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), which causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), is a retrovirus. ARV drugs are therefore used to treat HIV infections. These medicines cannot prevent or cure HIV infection, but they help to keep the virus in check.

ANTISENSE DRUG: An antisense drug binds to mRNA, thereby blocking gene activity. Some viruses have mRNA as their genetic material, so an antisense drug could inhibit their replication.

ANTISEPTIC: A substance that prevents or stops the growth and multiplication of microorganisms in or on living tissue.

ANTITOXIN: An antidote to a toxin that neutralizes its poisonous effects.

ANTIVIRAL DRUGS: Antiviral drugs are compounds that are used to prevent or treat viral infections, via the disruption of an infectious mechanism used by the virus, or to treat the symptoms of an infection.

ARBOVIRUS: An arbovirus is a virus that is typically spread by blood-sucking insects, most commonly mosquitoes. Over 100 types of arboviruses cause disease in humans. Yellow fever and dengue fever are two examples.

ARENAVIRUS: An arenavirus is a virus that belongs in a viral family known as Arenaviridae. The name arenavirus derives from the appearance of the spherical virus particles when cut into thin sections and viewed using a transmission electron microscope. The interior of the particles is grainy or sandy in appearance, due to the presence of ribosomes that have been acquired from the host cell. The Latin designation *arena* means "sandy."

ARTHROPOD: A member of the largest single animal phylum, consisting of organisms with segmented bodies, jointed legs or wings, and exoskeletons.

ARTHROPOD-BORNE DISEASE: A disease caused by one of a phylum of organisms characterized by exoskeletons and segmented bodies.

ARTHROPOD-BORNE VIRUS: A virus caused by one of a phylum of organisms characterized by exoskeletons and segmented bodies.

ASEPSIS: Asepsis means without germs, more specifically without microorganisms.

ASPIRATION: Aspiration is the drawing out of fluid from a part of the body; it can cause pneumonia when stomach contents are transferred to the lungs through vomiting.

ASSAY: A determination of an amount of a particular compound in a sample (e.g., to make chemical tests to determine the relative amount of a particular substance in a sample). A method used to quantify a biological compound.

ASYMPTOMATIC: A state in which an individual does not exhibit or experience symptoms of a disease.

ATAXIA: Ataxia is an unsteadiness in walking or standing that is associated with brain diseases such as kuru or Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease.

ATOPY: Atopy is an inherited tendency towards hypersensitivity towards immunoglobulin E, a key component of the immune system, which plays an important role in asthma, eczema, and hay fever.

ATROPHY: Decreasing in size or wasting away of a body part or tissue.

ATTENUATED: An attenuated bacterium or virus has been weakened and is often used as the basis of a vaccine against the specific disease caused by the bacterium or virus.

ATTENUATED STRAIN: A specific strain of bacteria that has been killed or weakened, often used as the basis of a vaccine against the specific disease caused by the bacterium.

AUTOCLAVE: An autoclave is a device that is designed to kill microorganisms on solid items and in liquids by exposure to steam at a high pressure.

AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE: A disease in which the body's defense system attacks its own tissues and organs.

AUTOINFECTION: Autoinfection is the reinfection of the body by a disease organism already in the body, such as eggs left by a parasitic worm.

B

B CELL: Also known as B lymphocyte; a kind of cell produced in bone marrow that secretes antibodies.

BABESIOSIS: An infection of the red blood cells caused by *Babesia microti*, a form of parasite (parasitic sporozoan).

BACILLUS ANTHRACIS: The bacterium that causes anthrax.

BACTEREMIA: Bacteremia occurs when bacteria enter the bloodstream. This condition may occur through a wound or infection or through a surgical procedure or injection. Bacteremia may cause no symptoms and resolve without treatment, or it may produce fever and other symptoms of infection. In some cases, bacteremia leads to septic shock, a potentially life-threatening condition.

BACTERIA: Single-celled microorganisms that live in soil, water, plants, and animals, and whose activities range from the development of disease to fermentation. They play a key role in the decay of organic matter and the cycling of nutrients. Bacteria exist in various shapes, including spherical, rod-shaped, and spiral. Some bacteria are agents of disease. Different types of bacteria cause many sexually transmitted diseases, including syphilis, gonorrhea, and chlamydia. Bacteria also cause diseases such as typhoid, dysentery, and tetanus. Bacterium is the singular form of bacteria.

BACTERIOCIDAL: Bacteriocidal is a term that refers to the treatment of a bacterium such that the organism is killed. A bacteriocidal treatment is always lethal and is also referred to as sterilization.

BACTERIOLOGICAL STRAIN: A bacterial subclass of a particular tribe and genus.

BACTERIOPHAGE: A bacteriophage is a virus that infects bacteria. When a bacteriophage that carries the diphtheria toxin gene infects diphtheria bacteria, the bacteria produce diphtheria toxin.

BACTERIOSTATIC: Bacteriostatic refers to a treatment that restricts the ability of the bacterium to grow.

BACTERIUM: Singular form of the term bacteria—single-celled microorganisms—bacterium refers to an individual microorganism.

BASIDIOSPORE: A fungal spore of Basidomycetes. Basidomycetes are classified under the Fungi kingdom as belonging to the phylum Mycota (i.e., Basidomycota or Basidiomycota), class Mycetes (i.e., Basidomycetes). Fungi are frequently parasites that decompose organic material from their hosts, such as the parasites that grow on rotten wood, although some may cause serious plant diseases such as smuts (Ustomycetes) and rusts (Teliomycetes). Some live in a symbiotic relationship with plant roots (Mycorrhizae). A cell type termed basidium is responsible for sexual spore formation in Basidomycetes, through nuclear fusion followed by meiosis, thus forming haploid basidiospores.

BED NETS: A type of netting that provides protection from diseases caused by insects such as flies and mosquitoes. It is often used when sleeping to allow air to flow through its mesh structure while preventing insects from biting.

BIFURCATED NEEDLE: A bifurcated needle is a needle that has two prongs with a wire suspended between them. The wire is designed to hold a certain amount of vaccine. Development of the bifurcated needle was a major advance in vaccination against smallpox.

BIOFILM: A biofilm is a population of microorganisms that forms following the adhesion of bacteria, algae, yeast, or fungi to a surface. These surface growths can be found in natural settings such as on rocks in streams and in infections such as can occur on catheters. Microorganisms can colonize living and inert natural and synthetic surfaces.

BIOINFORMATICS: Bioinformatics, or computational biology, refers to the development of new database methods to store genomic information (information related to genes and the genetic sequence), computational software programs, and methods to extract, process, and evaluate this information. Bioinformatics also refers to the refinement of existing techniques to acquire the genomic data. Finding genes and determining their function, predicting the structure of proteins and sequence of ribonucleic acid (RNA) from the available sequence of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), and determining the evolutionary relationship of proteins and DNA sequences are aspects of bioinformatics.

BIOLOGICAL WARFARE: Biological warfare, as defined by The United Nations, is the use of any living organism (e.g., bacterium, virus) or an infective component (e.g., toxin), to cause disease or death in humans, animals, or plants. In contrast to bioterrorism, biological warfare is defined as the "state-sanctioned" use of biological weapons on an opposing military force or civilian population.

BIOLOGICAL WEAPON: A weapon that contains or disperses a biological toxin, disease-causing microorganism, or other biological agent intended to harm or kill plants, animals, or humans.

BIOMAGNIFICATION: The increasing concentration of compounds at a higher trophic level or the tendency of organisms to accumulate certain chemicals to a concentration larger than that occurring in their inorganic, non-living environment, such as soil or water, or, in the case of animals, larger than in their food.

BIOMODULATOR: A biomodulator, short for biologic response modulator, is an agent that modifies some characteristic of the immune system, which may help in the fight against infection.

BIOSAFETY LABORATORY: A laboratory that deals with all aspects of potentially infectious agents or biohazards.

BIOSAFETY LEVEL 4 FACILITY: A specialized biosafety laboratory that deals with dangerous or exotic infectious agents or biohazards that are considered high risks for spreading life-threatening diseases, either because the disease is spread through aerosols or because there is no therapy or vaccine to counter the disease.

BIOSHIELD PROJECT: A joint effort between the U.S. Department of Homeland Security and the Department of Health and Human Services, Project BioShield is tasked to improve treatment of diseases caused by biological, chemical, and radiological weapons.

BIOSPHERE: The sum total of all life-forms on Earth and the interaction among those life-forms.

BIOTECHNOLOGY: Use of biological organisms, systems, or processes to make or modify products.

BIOWEAPON: A weapon that uses bacteria, viruses, or poisonous substances made by bacteria or viruses.

BLOODBORNE PATHOGENS: Disease-causing agents carried or transported in the blood. Bloodborne infections are those in which the infectious agent is transmitted from one person to another via contaminated blood.

BLOODBORNE ROUTE: Via the blood. For example, bloodborne pathogens are pathogens (disease-causing agents) carried or transported in the blood. Bloodborne infections are those in which the infectious agent is transmitted from one person to another via contaminated blood. Infections of the blood can occur as a result of the spread of an ongoing infection caused by bacteria such as *Yersinia pestis*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, or *Staphylococcus aureus.*

BOTULINUM TOXIN: Botulinum toxin is among the most poisonous substances known. The toxin, which can be ingested or inhaled, and which disrupts transmission of nerve impulses to muscles, is naturally produced by the bacterium *Clostridium botulinum.* Certain strains of *C. baratii* and *C. butyricum* can also be capable of producing the toxin.

BOTULISM: Botulism is an illness produced by a toxin that is released by the soil bacterium *Clostridium botulinum.* One type of toxin is also produced by *Clostridium baratii.* The toxins affect nerves and can produce paralysis. The paralysis can affect the functioning of organs and tissues that are vital to life.

BROAD-SPECTRUM: The term "broad-spectrum" refers to a series of objects or ideas with great variety between them. In medicine, the term is often applied to drugs, which act on a large number of different disease-causing agents.

BROAD-SPECTRUM ANTIBIOTICS: Broad-spectrum antibiotics are drugs that kill a wide range of bacteria rather than just those from a specific family. For example, Amoxicillin is a broad-spectrum antibiotic that is used against many common illnesses such as ear infections.

BRONCHIOLITIS: Bronciolitis is an inflammation (-itis) of the bronchioles, the small air passages in the lungs that enter the alveoli (air sacs).

BUBO: A swollen lymph gland, usually in the groin or armpit, characteristic of infection with bubonic plague.

BUSH MEAT: The meat of terrestrial wild and exotic animals, typically those that live in parts of Africa, Asia, and the Americas; also known as wild meat.

C

CADAVER: The body of a deceased human, especially one designated for scientific dissection or other research.

CAMPYLOBACTERIOSIS: Campylobacteriosis is a bacterial infection of the intestinal tract of humans. The infection, which typically results in diarrhea, is caused by members of the genus *Campylobacter*. In particular, *Campylobacter jejuni* is the most common cause of bacterial diarrhea in the United States, with more occurrences than salmonella (another prominent disease-causing bacteria associated with food poisoning). Worldwide, approximately 5 to 14% of all diarrhea may be the result of campylobacteriosis.

CAPSID: The protein shell surrounding a virus particle.

CARBOLIC ACID: An acidic compound that, when diluted with water, is used as an antiseptic and disinfectant.

CARCINOGEN: A carcinogen is any biological, chemical, or physical substance or agent that can cause cancer. There are over one hundred different types of cancer, which can be distinguished by the type of cell or organ that is affected, the treatment plan employed, and the cause of the cancer. Most of the carcinogens that are commonly discussed come from chemical sources artificially produced by humans. Some of the better-known carcinogens are the pesticide DDT (dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane), asbestos, and the carcinogens produced when tobacco is smoked.

CASE FATALITY RATE: The rate of patients suffering disease or injury that die as a result of that disease or injury during a specific period of time.

CASE FATALITY RATIO: A ratio indicating the amount of persons who die as a result of a particular disease, usually expressed as a percentage or as the number of deaths per 1,000 cases.

CATALYST: Substance that speeds up a chemical process without actually changing the products of reaction.

CD4+ T CELLS: CD4 cells are a type of T cell found in the immune system that are characterized by the presence of a CD4 antigen protein on their surface. These are the cells most often destroyed as a result of HIV infection.

CELL CYCLE AND CELL DIVISION: The series of stages that a cell undergoes while progressing to division is known as cell cycle. In order for an organism to grow and develop, the organism's cells must be able to duplicate themselves. Three basic events must take place to achieve this duplication: the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), which makes up the individual chromosomes within the cell's nucleus must be duplicated; the two sets of DNA must be packaged up into two separate nuclei; and the cell's cytoplasm must divide itself to create two separate cells, each complete with its own nucleus. The two new cells—products of the single original cell—are known as daughter cells.

CELL MEMBRANE: The cell is bound by an outer membrane that, as described by a membrane model termed the fluid mosaic model, is comprised of a phospholipid lipid bilayer with proteins—molecules that also act as receptor sites—interspersed within the phospholipid bilayer. Varieties of channels exist within the membrane. In eukaryotes (cells with a true nucleus) there are a number of internal cellular membranes that can partition regions within the cells' interior. Some of these membranes ultimately become continuous with the nuclear membrane. Bacteria and viruses do not have inner membranes.

CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION (CDC): The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) is one of the primary public health institutions in the world. CDC is headquartered in Atlanta, Georgia, with facilities at nine other sites in the United States. The centers are the focus of U.S. government efforts to develop and implement prevention and control strategies for diseases, including those of microbiological origin.

CESTODE: A class of worms characterized by flat, segmented bodies, commonly known as tapeworms.

CHAGAS DISEASE: Chagas disease is a human infection that is caused by a microorganism that establishes a parasitic relationship with a human host as part of its life cycle. The disease is named for the Brazilian physician Carlos Chagas, who in 1909 described the involvement of the flagellated protozoan known as *Trypanosoma cruzi* in a prevalent disease in South America.

CHAIN OF TRANSMISSION: Chain of transmission refers to the route by which an infection is spread from its source to a susceptible host. An example of a chain of transmission is the spread of malaria from an infected animal to humans via mosquitoes.

CHANCRE: A sore that occurs in the first stage of syphilis at the place where the infection entered the body.

CHEMILUMINESCENT SIGNAL: A chemiluminescent signal is the production of light that results from a chemical reaction. A variety of tests to detect infectious organisms or target components of the organisms rely on the binding of a chemical-containing probe to the target and the subsequent development of light following the addition of a reactive compound.

CHEMOTHERAPY: Chemotherapy is the treatment of a disease, infection, or condition with chemicals that have a specific effect on its cause, such as a microorganism or cancer cell. The first modern therapeutic chemical was derived from a synthetic dye. The sulfonamide drugs developed in the 1930s, penicillin and other antibiotics of the 1940s, hormones in the 1950s, and more recent drugs that interfere with cancer cell metabolism and reproduction have all been part of the chemotherapeutic arsenal.

CHICKENPOX: Chickenpox (also called varicella disease and sometimes spelled chicken pox) is a common and extremely infectious childhood disease that can also affect adults. It produces an itchy, blistery rash that typically lasts about a week and is sometimes accompanied by a fever.

CHILDBED FEVER: A bacterial infection occurring in women following childbirth, causing fever and, in some cases, blood poisoning and possible death.

CHLORINATION: Chlorination refers to a chemical process that is used primarily to disinfect drinking water and spills of microorganisms. The active agent in chlorination is the element chlorine, or a derivative of chlorine (e.g., chlorine dioxide). Chlorination is a swift and economical means of destroying many, but not all, microorganisms that are a health-threat in fluids such as drinking water.

CHRONIC: Chronic infections persist for prolonged periods of time—months or even years—in the host. This lengthy persistence is due to a number of factors, which can include masking of the disease-causing agent (e.g., bacteria) from the immune system, invasion of host cells, and the establishment of an infection that is resistant to antibacterial agents.

CHRONIC FATIGUE SYNDROME: Chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) is a condition that causes extreme tiredness. People with CFS have debilitating fatigue that lasts for six months or longer. They also have many other symptoms. Some of these symptoms are pain in the joints and muscles, headache, and sore throat. CFS appears to result from a combination of factors.

CILIA: Cilia are specialized arrangements of microtubules and have two general functions. They propel certain unicellular organisms, such as paramecium, through the water. In multicellular organisms, if cilia extend from stationary cells that are part of a tissue layer, they move fluid over the surface of the tissue.

CIRRHOSIS: Cirrhosis is a chronic, degenerative, irreversible liver disease in which normal liver cells are damaged and are then replaced by scar tissue. Cirrhosis changes the structure of the liver and the blood vessels that nourish it. The disease reduces the liver's ability to manufacture proteins and process hormones, nutrients, medications, and poisons.

CLINICAL TRIALS: According to the National Institutes of Health, a clinical trial is "a research study to answer specific questions about vaccines or new therapies or new ways of using known treatments." These studies allow researchers to determine whether new drugs or treatments are safe and effective. When conducted carefully, clinical trials can provide fast and safe answers to these questions.

CLOACA: The cavity into which the intestinal, genital, and urinary tracts open in vertebrates such as fish, reptiles, birds, and some primitive mammals.

CLUSTER: In epidemiology, cluster refers to a grouping of individuals contracting an infectious disease or foodborne illness very close in time or place.

COCCIDIUM: Any single-celled animal (protozoan) belonging to the sub-class Coccidia. Some coccidia species can infest the digestive tract, causing coccidiosis.

COHORT: A cohort is a group of people (or any species) sharing a common characteristic. Cohorts are identified and grouped in cohort studies to determine the frequency of diseases or the kinds of disease outcomes over time.

COHORTING: Cohorting is the practice of grouping persons with similar infections or symptoms together, in order to reduce transmission to others.

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

COLONIZE: Colonize refers to the process in which a microorganism is able to persist and grow at a given location.

COMMUNITY-ACQUIRED INFECTION: Community-acquired infection is an infection that develops outside of a hospital, in the general community. It differs from hospital-acquired infections in that those who are infected are typically in better health than hospitalized people.

CONGENITAL: Existing at the time of birth.

CONJUNCTIVITIS: Conjunctivitis (also called pink eye) is an inflammation or redness of the lining of the white part of the eye and the underside of the eyelid (conjunctiva) that can be caused by infection, allergic reaction, or physical agents like infrared or ultraviolet light. Conjunctivitis is one of the most common eye infections in children and adults in the United States. Luckily, it is also one of the most treatable infections. Because it is so common in the United States and around the world, and is often not reported to health organizations, accurate statistics are not available for conjunctivitis.

CONTACT PRECAUTIONS: Contact precautions are actions developed to minimize the transfer of microorganisms directly by physical contact and indirectly by touching a contaminated surface.

CONTAGIOUS: A disease that is easily spread among a population, usually by casual person-to-person contact.

CONTAMINATED: The unwanted presence of a microorganism or compound in a particular environment. That environment can be in the laboratory setting, for example, in a medium being used for the growth of a species of bacteria during an experiment. Another environment can be the human body, where contamination by bacteria can produce an infection. Contamination by bacteria and viruses can occur on several levels and their presence can adversely influence the results of experiments. Outside the laboratory, bacteria and viruses can contaminate drinking water supplies, foodstuffs, and products, thus causing illness.

COWPOX: Cowpox refers to a disease that is caused by the cowpox or catpox virus. The virus is a member of the orthopoxvirus family. Other viruses in this family include the smallpox and vaccinia viruses. Cowpox is a rare disease and is mostly noteworthy as the basis of the formulation, over 200 years ago, of an injection by Edward Jenner that proved successful in curing smallpox.

CREPITANT: A crackling sound that accompanies breathing, a common symptom of pneumonia or other diseases of the lungs.

CREUTZFELDT-JAKOB DISEASE (CJD): Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD) is a transmissible, rapidly progressing, fatal neurodegenerative disorder related to bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), commonly called mad cow disease.

CULL: A cull is the selection, often for destruction, of a part of an animal population. Often done just to reduce numbers, a widespread cull was carried out during the epidemic of bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE or mad cow disease) in the United Kingdom during the 1980s.

CULTURE: A culture is a single species of microorganism that is isolated and grown under controlled conditions. The German bacteriologist Robert Koch first developed culturing techniques in the late 1870s. Following Koch's initial discovery, medical scientists quickly sought to identify other pathogens. Today bacteria cultures are used as basic tools in microbiology and medicine.

CULTURE AND SENSITIVITY: Culture and sensitivity refer to laboratory tests that are used to identify the type of microorganism causing an infection and the compounds to which the identified organism is sensitive and resistant. In the case of bacteria, this approach permits the selection of antibiotics that will be most effective in dealing with the infection.

CUTANEOUS: Pertaining to the skin.

CYST: Refers to either a closed cavity or sac or the stage of life during which some parasites live inside an enclosed area. In a protozoan's life, it is a stage when it is covered by a tough outer shell and has become dormant.

CYTOKINE: Cytokines are a family of small proteins that mediate an organism's response to injury or infection. Cytokines operate by transmitting signals between cells in an organism. Minute quantities of cytokines are secreted, each by a single cell type, and regulate functions in other cells by binding with specific receptors. Their interactions with the receptors produce secondary signals that inhibit or enhance the action of certain genes within the cell. Unlike endocrine hormones, which can act throughout the body, most cytokines act locally near the cells that produced them.

CYTOTOXIC: A cytotoxic agent is one that kills cells. Cytotoxic drugs kill cancer cells but may also have application in killing bacteria.

D

DEBRIDEMENT: Debridement is the medical process of removing dead, damaged, or infected tissue from pressure ulcers, burns, and other wounds, in order to speed healing of the surrounding healthy tissue.

DEFINITIVE HOST: The organism in which a parasite reaches reproductive maturity.

DEGRADATION (CELLULAR): Degradation means breakdown and refers to the destruction of host cell components, such as DNA, by infective agents such as bacteria and viruses.

DEHYDRATION: Dehydration is the loss of water and salts essential for normal bodily function. It occurs when the body loses more fluid than it takes in. Water is very important to the human body because it makes up about 70% of the muscles, around 75% of the brain, and approximately 92% of the blood. A person who weights about 150 pounds (68 kilograms) will contain about 80 quarts (just over 75 liters) of water. About two cups of water are lost each day just from regular breathing. If the body sweats more and breathes more heavily than normal, the human body loses even more water. Dehydration occurs when that lost water is not replenished.

DEMENTIA: Dementia, which is from the Latin word *dement* meaning "away mind," is a progressive deterioration and eventual loss of mental ability that is severe enough to interfere with normal activities of daily living; lasts more than six months; has not been present since birth; and is not associated with a loss or alteration of consciousness. Dementia is a group of symptoms caused by gradual death of brain cells. Dementia is usually caused by degeneration in the cerebral cortex, the part of the brain responsible for thoughts, memories, actions, and personality. Death of brain cells in this region leads to the cognitive impairment that characterizes dementia.

DEMOGRAPHICS: The characteristics of human populations or specific parts of human populations, most often reported through statistics.

DEOXYRIBONUCLEIC ACID (DNA): Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) is a double-stranded, helical molecule that forms the molecular basis for heredity in most organisms.

DERMATOPHYTE: A dermatophyte is a parasitic fungus that feeds off keratin, a protein which is abundant in skin, nails, and hair and therefore often causes infection of these body parts.

DIAGNOSIS: Identification of a disease or disorder.

DIARRHEA: To most individuals, diarrhea means an increased frequency or decreased consistency of bowel movements; however, the medical definition is more exact than this explanation. In many developed countries, the average number of bowel movements is three per day. However, researchers have found that diarrhea, which is not a disease, best correlates with an increase in stool weight; a stool weight above 10.5 ounces (300 grams) per day generally indicates diarrhea. This is mainly due to excess water, which normally makes up 60 to 85% of fecal matter. In this way, true diarrhea is distinguished from diseases that cause only an increase in the number of bowel movements (hyperdefecation) or incontinence (involuntary loss of bowel contents). Diarrhea is also classified by physicians into acute, which lasts one to two weeks, and chronic, which continues for longer than four weeks. Viral and bacterial infections are the most common causes of acute diarrhea.

DIATOM: Algae are a diverse group of simple, nucleated, plant-like aquatic organisms that are primary producers. Primary producers are able to utilize photosynthesis to create organic molecules from sunlight, water, and carbon dioxide. Ecologically vital, algae account for roughly half of the photosynthetic production of organic material on Earth in both freshwater and marine environments. Algae exist either as single cells or as multicellular organizations. Diatoms are microscopic, single-celled algae that have intricate glass-like outer cell walls partially composed of silicon. Different species of diatom can be identified based upon the structure of these walls. Many diatom species are planktonic, suspended in the water column moving at the mercy of water currents. Others remain attached to submerged surfaces. One bucketful of water may contain millions of diatoms. Their abundance makes them important food sources in aquatic ecosystems.

DIMORPHIC: This refers to the occurrence of two different shapes or color forms within the species, usually occurring as sexual dimorphism between males and females.

DINOFLAGELLATE: Dinoflagellates are microorganisms that are regarded as algae. Their wide array of exotic shapes and, sometimes, armored appearance, is distinct from other algae. The closest microorganisms in appearance are the diatoms.

DIPHTHERIA: Diphtheria is a potentially fatal, contagious bacterial disease that usually involves the nose, throat, and air passages, but may also infect the skin. Its most striking feature is the formation of a grayish membrane covering the tonsils and upper part of the throat.

DISINFECTANT: Disinfection and the use of chemical disinfectants is one key strategy of infection control. Disinfectants reduce the number of living microorganisms, usually to a level that is considered to be safe for the particular environment. Typically, this entails the destruction of those microbes that are capable of causing disease.

DISSEMINATED: Disseminated refers to the previous distribution of a disease-causing microorganism over a larger area.

DISSEMINATION: The spreading of a disease in a population, or of disease organisms in the body, is dissemination. A disease that occurs over a large geographic area.

DISTAL: Distal comes from the same root word as "distant," and is the medical word for distant from some agreed-on point of reference. For example, the hand is at the distal end of the arm from the trunk.

DNA: Deoxyribonucleic acid, a double-stranded, helical molecule that is found in almost all living cells and that determines the characteristics of each organism.

DNA FINGERPRINTING: DNA fingerprinting is the term applied to a range of techniques that are used to show similarities and dissimilarities between the DNA present in different individuals (or organisms).

DNA PROBES: Substances (agents) that bind directly to a predefined specific sequence of nucleic acids in DNA.

DORMANT: Inactive, but still alive. A resting, nonactive state.

DROPLET: A droplet is a small airborne drop or particle—less than 5 microns (a millionth of a meter) in diameter—of fluid, such as may be expelled by sneezing or coughing.

DROPLET TRANSMISSION: Droplet transmission is the spread of microorganisms from one space to another (including from person to person) via droplets that are larger than 5 microns in diameter. Droplets are typically expelled into the air by coughing and sneezing.

DRUG RESISTANCE: Drug resistance develops when an infective agent, such as a bacterium, fungus, or virus, develops a lack of sensitivity to a drug that would normally be able to control or even kill it. This tends to occur with overuse of anti-infective agents, which selects out populations of microbes most able to resist them, while killing off those organisms that are most sensitive. The next time the anti-infective agent is used, it will be less effective, leading to the eventual development of resistance.

DYSENTERY: Dysentery is an infectious disease that has ravaged armies, refugee camps, and prisoner-of-war camps throughout history. The disease is still a major problem in developing countries with primitive sanitary facilities.

DYSPLASIA: Abnormal changes in tissue or cell development.

E

ECTOPARASITES: Parasites that cling to the outside of their host, rather than their host's intestines. Common points of attachment are the gills, fins, or skin of fish.

ELBOW BUMP: The elbow bump is a personal greeting that can be used as an alternative to the handshake: the two people greeting each other bump elbows. It is recommended by the World Health Organization for use by researchers handling highly infectious organisms, such as Ebola virus.

ELECTROLYTES: Compounds that ionize in a solution; electrolytes dissolved in the blood play an important role in maintaining the proper functioning of the body.

ELECTRON: A fundamental particle of matter carrying a single unit of negative electrical charge.

EMBRYONATED: When an embryo has been implanted in a female animal, that animal is said to be embryonated.

EMERGING DISEASE: New infectious diseases such as SARS and West Nile virus, as well as previously known diseases such as malaria, tuberculosis, and bacterial pneumonias that are appearing in forms resistant to drug treatments are termed emerging infectious diseases.

ENCEPHALITIS: A type of acute brain inflammation, most often due to infection by a virus.

ENCEPHALOMYELITIS: Simultaneous inflammation of the brain and spinal cord is encephalomyelitis.

ENCEPHALOPATHY: Any abnormality in the structure or function of the brain.

ENCYSTED LARVAE: Encysted larvae are larvae that are not actively growing and dividing and are more resistant to environmental conditions.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

ENDOCYTOSIS: Endocytosis is a process by which host cells allow the entry of outside substances, including viruses, through their cell membranes.

ENTERIC: Involving the intestinal tract or relating to the intestines.

ENTEROBACTERIAL INFECTIONS: Enterobacterial infections are caused by a group of bacteria that dwell in the intestinal tract of humans and other warm-blooded animals. The bacteria are all Gram-negative and rod-shaped. As a group they are termed Enterobacteriaceae. A prominent member of this group is *Escherichia coli.* Other members are the various species in the genera *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, *Serratia*, *Proteus*, and *Yersinia.*

ENTEROPATHOGEN: An enteropathogen is a virus or pathogen that invades the large or small intestine, causing disease.

ENTEROTOXIN: Enterotoxin and exotoxin are two classes of toxin that are produced by bacteria.

ENTEROVIRUS: Enteroviruses are a group of viruses that contain ribonucleic acid as their genetic material. They are members of the picornavirus family. The various types of enteroviruses that infect humans are referred to as serotypes, in recognition of their different antigenic patterns. The different immune response is important, as infection with one type of enterovirus does not necessarily confer protection to infection by a different type of enterovirus. There are 64 different enterovirus serotypes. The serotypes include polio viruses, coxsackie A and B viruses, echoviruses, and a large number of what are referred to as non-polio enteroviruses.

ENZYME: Enzymes are molecules that act as critical catalysts in biological systems. Catalysts are substances that increase the rate of chemical reactions without being consumed in the reaction. Without enzymes, many reactions would require higher levels of energy and higher temperatures than exist in biological systems. Enzymes are proteins that possess specific binding sites for other molecules (substrates). A series of weak binding interactions allows enzymes to accelerate reaction rates. Enzyme kinetics is the study of enzymatic reactions and mechanisms. Enzyme inhibitor studies have allowed researchers to develop therapies for the treatment of diseases, including AIDS.

EPIDEMIC: *Epidemic*, from the Greek meaning prevalent among the people, is most commonly used to describe an outbreak of an illness or disease in which the number of individual cases significantly exceeds the usual or expected number of cases in any given population.

EPIDEMIOLOGIST: Epidemiologists study the various factors that influence the occurrence, distribution, prevention, and control of disease, injury, and other health-related events in a defined human population. By the application of various analytical techniques, including mathematical analysis of the data, the probable cause of an infectious outbreak can be pinpointed.

EPIDEMIOLOGY: Epidemiology is the study of the various factors that influence the occurrence, distribution, prevention, and control of disease, injury, and other health-related events in a defined human population. By the application of various analytical techniques, including mathematical analysis of the data, the probable cause of an infectious outbreak can be pinpointed.

EPIZOOTIC: The abnormally high occurrence of a specific disease in animals in a particular area, similar to a human epidemic.

EPSTEIN-BARR VIRUS (EBV): Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) is part of the family of human herpes viruses. Infectious mononucleosis (IM) is the most common disease manifestation of this virus, which, once established in the host, can never be completely eradicated. Very little can be done to treat EBV; most methods can only alleviate resultant symptoms.

ERADICATE: To get rid of; the permanent reduction to zero of global incidence of a particular infection.

ERADICATION: The process of destroying or eliminating a microorganism or disease.

ERYTHEMA: Erythema is skin redness due to excess blood in capillaries (small blood vessels) in the skin.

ESCHAR: Any scab or crust forming on the skin as a result of a burn or disease is an eschar. Scabs from cuts or scrapes are not eschars.

ETIOLOGY: The study of the cause or origin of a disease or disorder.

EX SITU: A Latin term meaning "from the place" or removed from its original place.

EXECUTIVE ORDER: Presidential orders that implement or interpret a federal statute, administrative policy, or treaty.

EXOTOXIN: A toxic protein produced during bacterial growth and metabolism and released into the environment.

EYE DROPS: Eye drops are saline-containing fluid that is added to the eye to cleanse the eye or is a solution used to administer antibiotics or other medication.

F

FASCIA: Fascia is a type of connective tissue made up of a network of fibers. It is best thought of as being the packing material of the body. Fascia surrounds muscles, bones, and joints and lies between the layers of skin. It functions to hold these structures together, protecting these structures and defining the shape of the body. When surrounding a muscle, fascia helps prevent a contracting muscle from catching or causing excessive friction on neighboring muscles.

FECAL-ORAL TRANSMISSION: The spread of disease through the transmission of minute particles of fecal material from one organism to the mouth of another organism. This can occur by drinking contaminated water, eating food that was exposed to animal or human feces (perhaps by watering plants with unclean water), or by the poor hygiene practices of those preparing food.

FIBROBLAST: A cell type that gives rise to connective tissue.

FILOVIRUS: A filovirus is any RNA virus that belongs to the family *Filoviridae*. Filoviruses infect primates. Marburg virus and Ebola virus are filoviruses.

FLEA: A flea is any parasitic insect of the order *Siphonaptera*. Fleas can infest many mammals, including humans, and can act as carriers (vectors) of disease.

FLORA: In microbiology, flora refers to the collective microorganisms that normally inhabit an organism or system. Human intestines, for example, contain bacteria that aid in digestion and are considered normal flora.

FOCI: In medicine, a focus is a primary center of some disease process (for example, a cluster of abnormal cells). Foci is plural for focus (more than one focus).

FOMITE: A fomite is an object or a surface to which infectious microorganisms such as bacteria or viruses can adhere and be transmitted. Papers, clothing, dishes, and other objects can all act as fomites. Transmission is often by touch.

FOOD PRESERVATION: The term food preservation refers to any one of a number of techniques used to prevent food from spoiling. It includes methods such as canning, pickling, drying and freeze-drying, irradiation, pasteurization, smoking, and the addition of chemical additives. Food preservation has become an increasingly important component of the food industry as fewer people eat foods produced on their own lands, and as consumers expect to be able to purchase and consume foods that are out of season.

FULMINANT: A fulminant infection is an infection that appears suddenly and whose symptoms are immediately severe.

G

GAMETOCYTE: A germ cell with the ability to divide for the purpose of producing gametes, either male gametes called spermatocytes or female gametes called oocytes.

GAMMA GLOBULIN: Gamma globulin is a term referring to a group of soluble proteins in the blood, most of which are antibodies that can mount a direct attack upon pathogens and can be used to treat various infections.

GANGRENE: Gangrene is the destruction of body tissue by a bacteria called *Clostridium perfringens* or a combination of streptococci and staphylococci bacteria. *C. perfringens* is widespread; it is found in soil and the intestinal tracts of humans and animals. It becomes dangerous only when its spores germinate, producing toxins and destructive enzymes, and germination occurs only in an anaerobic environment (one almost totally devoid of oxygen). While gangrene can develop in any part of the body, it is most common in fingers, toes, hands, feet, arms, and legs, the parts of the body most susceptible to restricted blood flow. Even a slight injury in such an area is at high risk of causing gangrene. Early treatment with antibiotics, such as penicillin, and surgery to remove the dead tissue will often reduce the need for amputation. If left untreated, gangrene results in amputation or death.

GASTROENTERITIS: Gastroenteritis is an inflammation of the stomach and the intestines. More commonly, gastroenteritis is called the stomach flu.

GENE: A gene is the fundamental physical and functional unit of heredity. Whether in a microorganism or in a human cell, a gene is an individual element of an organism's genome and determines a trait or characteristic by regulating biochemical structure or metabolic process.

GENE THERAPY: Gene therapy is the name applied to the treatment of inherited diseases by corrective genetic engineering of the dysfunctional genes. It is part of a broader field called genetic medicine, which involves the screening, diagnosis, prevention, and treatment of hereditary conditions in humans. The results of genetic screening can pinpoint a potential problem to which gene therapy can sometimes offer a solution. Genetic defects are significant in the total field of medicine, with up to 15 out of every 100 newborn infants having a hereditary disorder of greater or lesser severity. More than 2,000 genetically distinct inherited defects have been classified so far, including diabetes, cystic fibrosis, hemophilia, sickle-call anemia, phenylketonuria, Down syndrome, and cancer.

GENETIC ENGINEERING: Genetic engineering is the altering of the genetic material of living cells in order to make them capable of producing new substances or performing new functions. When the genetic material within the living cells (i.e., genes) is working properly, the human body can develop and function smoothly. However, should a single gene—even a tiny segment of a gene go awry—the effect can be dramatic: deformities, disease, and even death are possible.

GENOME: All of the genetic information for a cell or organism. The complete sequence of genes within a cell or virus.

GENOTYPE: The genetic information that a living thing inherits from its parents that affects its makeup, appearance, and function.

GEOGRAPHIC FOCALITY: The physical location of a disease pattern, epidemic, or outbreak; the characteristics of a location created by interconnections with other places.

GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEM (GIS): A system for archiving, retrieving, and manipulating data that has been stored and indexed according to the geographic coordinates of its elements. The system generally can utilize a variety of data types, such as imagery, maps, tables, etc.

GEOGRAPHIC MEDICINE: Geographic medicine, also called geomedicine, is the study of how human health is affected by climate and environment.

GERM THEORY OF DISEASE: The germ theory is a fundamental tenet of medicine that states that microorganisms, which are too small to be seen without the aid of a microscope, can invade the body and cause disease.

GLOBAL OUTBREAK ALERT AND RESPONSE NETWORK (GOARN): A collaboration of resources for the rapid identification, confirmation, and response to outbreaks of international importance.

GLOBALIZATION: The integration of national and local systems into a global economy through increased trade, manufacturing, communications, and migration.

GLOMERULONEPHRITIS: Glomerulonephritis is inflammation of the kidneys. Mostly it affects the glomeruli, the small capsules in the kidney where blood flowing through capillaries transfers body wastes to urine.

GRAM NEGATIVE BACTERIA: Gram-negative bacteria are bacteria whose cell walls are comprised of an inner and outer membrane that are separated from one another by a region called the periplasm. The periplasm also contains a thin but rigid layer called the peptidoglycan.

GRANULOCYTE: Any cell containing granules (small, grain-like objects) is a granulocyte. The term is often used to refer to a type of white blood cell (leukocyte).

GROUP A STREPTOCOCCUS (GAS): A type (specifically a serotype) of the streptococcus bacteria, based on the antigen contained in the cell wall.

H

HARM-REDUCTION STRATEGY: In public health, a harm-reduction strategy is a public-policy scheme for reducing the amount of harm caused by a substance such as alcohol or tobacco. The phrase may refer to any medical strategy directed at reducing the harm caused by a disease, substance, or toxic medication.

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

HELMINTHIC DISEASE: Helminths are parasitic worms such as hookworms or flatworms. Helminthic disease by such worms is infectious. A synonym for helminthic is verminous.

HELSINKI DECLARATION: A set of ethical principles governing medical and scientific experimentation on human subjects; it was drafted by the World Medical Association and originally adopted in 1964.

HEMAGGLUTININ: Often abbreviated as HA, hemagglutinin is a glycoprotein, a protein that contains a short chain of sugar as part of its structure.

HEMOLYSIS: The destruction of blood cells, an abnormal rate of which may lead to lowered levels of these cells. For example, Hemolytic anemia is caused by destruction of red blood cells at a rate faster than they can be produced.

HEMORRHAGE: Very severe, massive bleeding that is difficult to control.

HEMORRHAGIC FEVER: A hemorrhagic fever is caused by viral infection and features a high fever and copious (high volume of) bleeding. The bleeding is caused by the formation of tiny blood clots throughout the bloodstream. These blood clots—also called microthrombi—deplete platelets and fibrinogen in the bloodstream. When bleeding begins, the factors needed for the clotting of the blood are scarce. Thus, uncontrolled bleeding (hemorrhage) ensues.

HEPA FILTER: A HEPA (high efficiency particulate air) filter is a filter that is designed to nearly totally remove airborne particles that are 0.3 microns (millionth of a meter) in diameter or larger. Such small particles can penetrate deeply into the lungs if inhaled.

HEPADNAVIRUSES: Hepadnaviridae is a family of hepadnaviruses comprised by two genera, *Avihepadnavirus* and *Orthohepadnavirus.* Hepadnaviruses have partially double-stranded DNA and they replicate their genome in the host cells using an enzyme called reverse transcriptase. Because of this, they are also termed retroviruses. The viruses invade liver cells (hepatocytes) of vertebrates. When hepadna retroviruses invade a cell, a complete viral double-stranded (ds) DNA is made before it randomly inserts in one of the host's chromosomes. Once part of the chromosomal DNA, the viral DNA is then transcribed into an intermediate messenger RNA (mRNA) in the hosts' nucleus. The viral mRNA then leaves the nucleus and undergoes reverse transcription, which is mediated by the viral reverse transcriptase.

HEPATITIS AND HEPATITIS VIRUSES: Hepatitis is an inflammation of the liver, a potentially life-threatening disease most frequently caused by viral infections but which may also result from liver damage caused by toxic substances such as alcohol and certain drugs. There are six major types of hepatitis viruses: hepatitis A (HAV), hepatitis B (HBV), hepatitis C (HCV), hepatitis D (HDV), hepatitis E (HEV), and hepatitis G (HGV).

HERD IMMUNITY: Herd immunity is a resistance to disease that occurs in a population when a proportion of them have been immunized against it. The theory is that it is less likely that an infectious disease will spread in a group where some individuals are unlikely to contract it.

HERPESVIRUS: Herpesvirus is a family of viruses, many of which cause disease in humans. The *herpes simplex*-1 and *herpes simplex*-2 viruses cause infection in the mouth or on the genitals. Other common types of herpesvirus include chickenpox, Epstien-Barr virus, and cytomegalovirus. Herpesvirus is notable for its ability to remain latent, or inactive, in nerve cells near the area of infection, and to reactivate long after the initial infection. *Herpes simplex*-1 and -2, along with chickenpox, cause familiar skin sores. Epstein-Barr virus causes mononucleosis. Cytomegalovirus also causes a like-like infection, but it can be dangerous to the elderly, infants, and those with weakened immune systems.

HETEROPHILE ANTIBODY: A heterophile antibody is an antibody that is found in the blood of someone with infectious mononucleosis, also known as glandular fever.

HIGH-LEVEL DISINFECTION: High-level disinfection is a process that uses a chemical solution to kill all bacteria, viruses, and other disease-causing agents except for bacterial endospores and prions. High-level disinfection should be distinguished from sterilization, which removes endospores (a bacterial structure that is resistant to radiation, drying, lack of food, and other things that would be lethal to the bacteria) and prions (misshapen proteins that can cause disease) as well.

HIGHLY ACTIVE ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY (HAART): Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) is the name given to the combination of drugs given to people with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection to slow or stop the progression of their condition to AIDS (acquired human immunodeficiency syndrome). HIV is a retrovirus and the various components of HAART block its replication by different mechanisms.

HISTAMINE: Histamine is a hormone that is chemically similar to the hormones serotonine, epinephrine, and norepinephrine. A hormone is generally defined as a chemical produced by a certain cell or tissue that causes a specific biological change or activity to occur in another cell or tissue located elsewhere in the body. Specifically, histamine plays a role in localized immune responses and in allergic reactions.

HISTOCOMPATIBILITY: The histocompatibility molecules (proteins) on the cell surfaces of one individual of a species are unique. Thus, if the cell is transplanted into another person, the cell will be recognized by the immune system as being foreign. The histocompatibility molecules act as antigens in the recipient and so can also be called histocompatibility antigens or transplantation antigens. This is the basis of the rejection of transplanted material.

HISTOPATHOLOGY: Histopathology is the study of diseased tissues. A synonym for histopathology is pathologic histology.

HIV (HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS): The virus that causes AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome).

HOMOZYGOUS: A condition in which two alleles for a given gene are the same.

HORIZONTAL GENE TRANSFER: Horizontal gene transfer is a major mechanism by which antibiotic resistance genes get passed between bacteria. It accounts for many hospital-acquired infections.

HORIZONTAL TRANSMISSION: Horizontal transmission refers to the transmission of a disease-causing microorganism from one person to another, unrelated person by direct or indirect contact.

HOST: An organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or it may simply provide a place in which to live.

HOST FOCALITY: Host focality refers to the tendency of some animal hosts, such as rodents carrying hantavirus and other viruses, to exist in groups in specific geographical locations and act as a local reservoir of infection.

HUMAN GROWTH HORMONE: Human growth hormone is a protein that is made and released from the pituitary gland, which increases growth and manufacture of new cells.

HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS (HIV): The human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) belongs to a class of viruses known as the retroviruses. These viruses are known as RNA viruses because they have RNA (ribonucleic acid) as their basic genetic material instead of DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid).

HUMAN T-CELL LEUKEMIA VIRUS: Two types of human T-cell leukemia virus (HTLV) are known. They are also known as human T-cell lymphotrophic viruses. HTLV-I often is carried by a person with no obvious symptoms. However, HTLV-I is capable of causing a number of maladies. These include abnormalities of the T cells and B cells, a chronic infection of the myelin covering of nerves that causes a degeneration of the nervous system, sores on the skin, and an inflammation of the inside of the eye. HTLV-II infection usually does not produce any symptoms. However, in some people a cancer of the blood known as hairy cell leukemia can develop.

HYBRIDIZATION: A process of combining two or more different molecules or organisms to create a new molecule or organism (oftentimes called a hybrid organism).

HYGIENE: Hygiene refers to the health practices that minimize the spread of infectious microorganisms between people or between other living things and people. Inanimate objects and surfaces such as contaminated cutlery or a cutting board may be a secondary part of this process.

HYPERENDEMIC: A disease that is endemic (commonly present) in all age groups of a population is hyperendemic. A related term is holoendemic, meaning a disease that is present more in children than in adults.

HYPERINFECTION: A hyperinfection is an infection that is caused by a very high number of disease-causing microorganisms. The infection results from an abnormality in the immune system that allows the infecting cells to grow and divide more easily than would normally be the case.

I

IATROGENIC: Any infection, injury, or other disease condition caused by medical treatment is iatrogenic (pronounced eye-at-roh-GEN-ik).

IMMUNITY HUMORAL REGULATION: One way in which the immune system responds to pathogens is by producing soluble proteins called antibodies. This is known as the humoral response and involves the activation of a special set of cells known as the B lymphocytes, because they originate in the bone marrow. The humoral immune response helps in the control and removal of pathogens such as bacteria, viruses, fungi, and parasites before they enter host cells. The antibodies produced by the B cells are the mediators of this response.

IMMIGRATION: The relocation of people to a different region or country from their native lands; also refers to the movement of organisms into an area in which they were previously absent.

IMMUNE GLOBULIN: Globulins are a type of protein found in blood. The immune globulins (also called immunoglobulins) are Y-shaped globulins that act as antibodies, attaching themselves to invasive cells or materials in the body so that they can be identified and attacked by the immune system. There are five immune globulins, designated IgM, IgG, IgA, IgD, and IgE.

IMMUNE RESPONSE: The body's production of antibodies or some types of white blood cells in response to foreign substances.

IMMUNE SYNAPSE: Before they can help other immune cells respond to a foreign protein or pathogenic organism, helper T cells must first become activated. This process occurs when an antigen-presenting cell submits a fragment of a foreign protein, bound to a Class II MHC molecule (virus-derived fragments are bound to Class I MHC molecules), to the helper T cell. Antigen-presenting cells are derived from bone marrow, and include both dendritic cells and Langerhans cells, as well as other specialized cells. Because T cell responses depend upon direct contact with their target cells, their antigen receptors, unlike antibodies made by B cells, exist bound to the membrane only. In the intercellular gap between the T cell and the antigen-presenting cell, a special pattern of various receptors and complementary ligands forms that is several microns in size.

IMMUNE SYSTEM: The body's natural defense system that guards against foreign invaders and that includes lymphocytes and antibodies.

IMMUNO-BASED TEST: An immuno-based test is a medical technology that tests for the presence of a disease by looking for a reaction between disease organisms that may be present in a tissue or fluid sample and antibodies contained in the test kit.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

IMMUNODEFICIENCY: In immunodeficiency disorders, part of the body's immune system is missing or defective, thus impairing the body's ability to fight infections. As a result, the person with an immunodeficiency disorder will have frequent infections that are generally more severe and last longer than usual.

IMMUNOGENICITY: Immunogenicity is the capacity of a host to produce an immune response to protect itself against infectious disease.

IMMUNOLOGY: Immunology is the study of how the body responds to foreign substances and fights off infection and other disease. Immunologists study the molecules, cells, and organs of the human body that participate in this response.

IMMUNOSUPPRESSION: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

IMPETIGO: Impetigo refers to a very localized bacterial infection of the skin. It tends to afflict primarily children, but can occur in people of any age. Impetigo caused by the bacteria *Staphylococcus aureus* (or staph) affects children of all ages, while impetigo caused by the bacteria called group A streptococci (Streptoccus pyogenes or strep) is most common in children ages two to five years.

IMPORTED CASE OF DISEASE: Imported cases of disease happen when an infected person who is not yet showing symptoms travels from his home country to another country and develops symptoms of his disease there.

IN SITU: A Latin term meaning "in place" or in the body or natural system.

INACTIVATED VACCINE: An inactivated vaccine is a vaccine that is made from disease-causing microorganisms that have been killed or made incapable of causing the infection. The immune system can still respond to the presence of the microorganisms.

INACTIVATED VIRUS: An inactivated virus is incapable of causing disease but still stimulates the immune system to respond by forming antibodies.

INCIDENCE: The number of new cases of a disease or injury that occur in a population during a specified period of time.

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to a disease-causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (for example, food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (for example, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

INFECTION CONTROL: Infection control refers to policies and procedures used to minimize the risk of spreading infections, especially in hospitals and health care facilities.

INFECTION CONTROL PROFESSIONAL (ICP): Infection control professionals are a group of nurses, doctors, laboratory workers, microbiologists, public health officials, and others who have specialized training in the prevention and control of infectious disease. Infection control professionals develop methods to control infection and instruct others in their use. These methods include proper handwashing; correct wearing of protective masks, eye-guards, gloves, and other specialized clothing; vaccination; monitoring for infection; and investigating ways to treat and prevent infection. Courses and certifications are available for those wishing to become infection control professionals.

INFORMED CONSENT: An ethical and informational process in which a person learns about a procedure or clinical trial, including potential risks or benefits, before deciding to voluntarily participate in a study or undergo a particular procedure.

INNATE IMMUNITY: Innate immunity is the resistance against disease that an individual is born with, as distinct from acquired immunity, which develops with exposure to infectious agents.

INOCULUM: An inoculum is a substance such as virus, bacterial toxin, or a viral or bacterial component that is added to the body to stimulate the immune system, which then provides protection from an infection by the particular microorganism.

INPATIENT: A patient who is admitted to a hospital or clinic for treatment, typically requiring the patient to stay overnight.

INSECTICIDE: A chemical substance used to kill insects.

INTERMEDIATE HOST: An organism infected by a parasite while the parasite is in a developmental form, not sexually mature.

INTERMEDIATE-LEVEL DISINFECTION: Intermediate-level disinfection is a form of disinfection that kills bacteria, most viruses, and mycobacteria.

INTERNATIONAL HEALTH REGULATIONS: International regulations introduced by the World Health Organization (WHO) that aim to control, monitor, prevent, protect against, and respond to the spread of disease across national borders while avoiding unnecessary interference with international movement and trade.

INTERTRIGO: Intertrigo, sometimes called eczema intertrigo, is a skin rash, often occurring in obese persons on parts of the body symmetrically opposite each other. It is caused by irritation of skin trapped under hanging folds of flesh such as pendulous breasts.

INTRAVENOUS: In the vein. For example, the insertion of a hypodermic needle into a vein to instill a fluid, withdraw or transfuse blood, or start an intravenous feeding.

IONIZING RADIATION: Any electromagnetic or particulate radiation capable of direct or indirect ion production in its passage through matter. In general use: Radiation that can cause tissue damage or death.

IRRADIATION: A method of preservation that treats food with low doses of radiation to deactivate enzymes and to kill microorganisms and insects.

ISOLATION: Isolation, within the health community, refers to the precautions that are taken in the hospital to prevent the spread of an infectious agent from an infected or colonized patient to susceptible persons. Isolation practices are designed to minimize the transmission of infection.

ISOLATION AND QUARANTINE: Public health authorities rely on isolation and quarantine as two important tools among the many they use to fight disease outbreaks. Isolation is the practice of keeping a disease victim away from other people, sometimes by treating them in their homes or by the use of elaborate isolation systems in hospitals. Quarantine separates people who have been exposed to a disease but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. Both isolation and quarantine can be entered voluntarily by patients when public health authorities request it, or it can be compelled by state governments or by the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

J

JAUNDICE: Jaundice is a condition in which a person's skin and the whites of the eyes are discolored a shade of yellow due to an increased level of bile pigments in the blood as a result of liver disease. Jaundice is sometimes called icterus, from a Greek word for the condition.

K

KERITITIS: Keratitis, sometimes called corneal ulcers, is an inflammation of the cornea, the transparent membrane that covers the colored part of the eye (iris) and pupil of the eye.

KOCH'S POSTULATES: Koch's postulates are a series of conditions that must be met for a microorganism to be considered the cause of a disease. German microbiologist Robert Koch (1843–1910) proposed the postulates in 1890.

KOPLIK'S SPOTS: Koplik's spots, named after American pediatrician Henry Koplik (1858-1927) and also called Koplik's sign, are red spots with a small blue-white speck in the center found on the tongue and the insides of the cheeks during the early stages of measles.

L

LARVAE: Immature forms (wormlike in insects; fishlike in amphibians) of an organism capable of surviving on its own. Larvae do not resemble the parent and must go through metamorphosis, or change, to reach the adult stage.

LATENT: A condition that is potential or dormant, not yet manifest or active, is latent.

LATENT INFECTION: An infection already established in the body but not yet causing symptoms, or having ceased to cause symptoms after an active period, is a latent infection.

LATENT VIRUS: Latent viruses are those viruses that can incorporate their genetic material into the genetic material of the infected host cell. Because the viral genetic material can then be replicated along with the host material, the virus becomes effectively "silent" with respect to detection by the host. Latent viruses usually contain the information necessary to reverse the latent state. The viral genetic material can leave the host genome to begin the manufacture of new virus particles.

LEGIONNAIRES' DISEASE: Legionnaires' disease is a type of pneumonia caused by *Legionella* bacteria. The bacterial species responsible for Legionnaires' disease is *L. pneumophila*. Major symptoms include fever, chills, muscle aches, and a cough that is initially nonproductive. Definitive diagnosis relies on specific laboratory tests for the bacteria, bacterial antigens, or antibodies produced by the body's immune system. As with other types of pneumonia, Legionnaires' disease poses the greatest threat to people who are elderly, ill, or immunocompromised.

LENS: An almost clear, biconvex structure in the eye that, along with the cornea, helps to focus light onto the retina. It can become infected, causing inflammation, for example, when contact lenses are improperly used.

LEPTOSPIRE: Also called a leptospira, a leptospire is any bacterial species of the genus *Leptospira*. Infection with leptospires causes leptospirosis.

LESION: The tissue disruption or the loss of function caused by a particular disease process.

LIPOPOLYSACCHARIDE (LPS): Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) is a molecule that is a constituent of the outer membrane of Gram-negative bacteria. The molecule can also be referred to as endotoxin. LPS can help protect the bacterium from host defenses and can contribute to illness in the host.

LIVE VACCINE: A live vaccine uses a virus or bacteria that has been weakened (attenuated) to cause an immune response in the body without causing disease. Live vaccines are preferred to killed vaccines, which use a dead virus or bacteria, because they cause a stronger and longer-lasting immune response.

LOW-LEVEL DISINFECTION: Low-level disinfection is a form of disinfection that is capable of killing some viruses and some bacteria.

LYMPHADENOPATHY: Any disease of the lymph nodes (gland-like bodies that filter the clear intercellular fluid called lymph to remove impurities) is lymphadenopathy.

LYMPHATIC SYSTEM: The lymphatic system is the body's network of organs, ducts, and tissues that filters harmful substances out of the fluid that surrounds body tissues. Lymphatic organs include the bone marrow, thymus, spleen, appendix, tonsils, adenoids, lymph nodes, and Peyer's patches (in the small intestine). The thymus and bone marrow are called primary lymphatic organs, because lymphocytes are produced in them. The other lymphatic organs are called secondary lymphatic organs. The lymphatic system is a complex network of thin vessels, capillaries, valves, ducts, nodes, and organs that runs throughout the body, helping protect and maintain the internal fluids system of the entire body by both producing and filtering lymph and by producing various blood cells. The three main purposes of the lymphatic system are to drain fluid back into the bloodstream from the tissues, to filter lymph, and to fight infections.

LYMPHOCYTE: A type of white blood cell; includes B and T lymphocytes. A type of white blood cell that functions as part of the lymphatic and immune systems by stimulating antibody formation to attack specific invading substances.

M

M PROTEIN: M protein is an antibody found in unusually large amounts in the blood or urine of patients with multiple myeloma, a form of cancer that arises in the white blood cells that produce antibodies.

MACAQUE: A macaque is any short-tailed monkey of the genus *Macaca*. Macaques, including rhesus monkeys, are often used as subjects in medical research because they are relatively affordable and resemble humans in many ways.

MACULOPAPULAR: A macule is any discolored skin spot that is flush or level with the surrounding skin surface: a papule is a small, solid bump on the skin. A maculopapular skin disturbance is one that combines macules and papules.

MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX (MHC): The proteins that protrude from the surface of a cell that identify the cell as "self." In humans, the proteins coded by the genes of the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) include human leukocyte antigens (HLA), as well as other proteins. HLA proteins are present on the surface of most of the body's cells and are important in helping the immune system distinguish "self" from "non-self" molecules, cells, and other objects.

MALAISE: Malaise is a general or nonspecific feeling of unease or discomfort, often the first sign of disease infection.

MALIGNANT: A general term for cells that can dislodge from the original tumor, then invade and destroy other tissues and organs.

MATERIEL: A French-derived word for equipment, supplies, or hardware.

MEASLES: Measles is an infectious disease caused by a virus of the paramyxovirus group. It infects only humans, and the infection results in life-long immunity to the disease. It is one of several exanthematous (rash-producing) diseases of childhood, the others being rubella (German measles), chickenpox, and the now rare scarlet fever. The disease is particularly common in both preschool and young school children.

MENINGITIS: Meningitis is an inflammation of the meninges—the three layers of protective membranes that line the spinal cord and the brain. Meningitis can occur when there is an infection near the brain or spinal cord, such as a respiratory infection in the sinuses, the mastoids, or the cavities around the ear. Disease organisms can also travel to the meninges through the bloodstream. The first signs may be a severe headache and neck stiffness followed by fever, vomiting, a rash, and, then, convulsions leading to loss of consciousness. Meningitis generally involves two types: non-bacterial meningitis, which is often called aseptic meningitis, and bacterial meningitis, which is referred to as purulent meningitis.

MENINGITIS BELT: The Meningitis Belt is an area of Africa south of the Sahara Desert, stretching from the Atlantic to the Pacific coast, where meningococcal meningitis is common.

MEROZOITE: The motile, infective stage of malaria, responsible for disease symptoms.

MESSENGER RIBONUCLEIC ACID (MRNA): A molecule of RNA that carries the genetic information for producing one or more proteins; mRNA is produced by copying one strand of DNA, but in eukaryotes it is able to move from the nucleus to the cytoplasm (where protein synthesis takes place).

MICROBICIDE: A microbicide is a compound that kills microorganisms such as bacteria, fungi, and protozoa.

MICROFILIAE: Live offspring produced by adult nematodes within the host's body.

MICROORGANISM: Microorganisms are minute organisms. With only a single currently known exception (i.e., *Epulopiscium fishelsonia*, a bacterium that is billions of times larger than the bacteria in the human intestine and is large enough to view without a microscope), microorganisms are minute organisms that require microscopic magnification to view. To be seen, they must be magnified by an optical or electron microscope. The most common types of microorganisms are viruses, bacteria, blue-green bacteria, some algae, some fungi, yeasts, and protozoans.

MIGRATION: In medicine, migration is the movement of a disease symptom from one part of the body to another, apparently without cause.

MIMICKED: In biology, mimicry is the imitation of another organism, often for evolutionary advantage. A disease that resembles another (for whatever reason) is sometimes said to have mimicked the other. Pathomimicry is the faking of symptoms by a patient, also called malingering.

MINIMAL INHIBITORY CONCENTRATION (MIC): The minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) refers to the lowest level of an antibiotic that prevents growth of the particular type of bacteria in a liquid food source after a certain amount of time. Growth is detected by clouding of the food source. The MIC is the lowest concentration of the antibiotic at which the no cloudiness occurs.

MITE: A mite is a tiny arthropod (insect-like creature) of the order *Acarina*. Mites may inhabit the surface of the body without causing harm, or may cause various skin ailments by burrowing under the skin. The droppings of mites living in house dust are a common source of allergic reactions.

MMR VACCINE: MMR (measles, mumps, rubella) vaccine is a vaccine that is given to protect someone from measles, mumps, and rubella. The vaccine is made up of viruses that cause the three diseases. The viruses are incapable of causing the diseases but can still stimulate the immune system.

MONO SPOT TEST: The mononucleosis (mono) spot test is a blood test used to check for infection with the Epstein-Barr virus, which causes mononucleosis.

MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES: Antibodies produced from a single cell line that are used in medical testing and, increasingly, in the treatment of some cancers.

MONONUCLEAR LEUKOCYTE: A mononuclear leukocyte is a type of white blood cell active in the immune system.

MONOVALENT VACCINE: A monovalent vaccine is one that is active against just one strain of a virus, such as the one that is in common use against the poliovirus.

MORBIDITY: The term "morbidity" comes from the Latin word *morbus*, which means sick. In medicine it refers not just to the state of being ill, but also to the severity of the illness. A serious disease is said to have a high morbidity.

MORPHOLOGY: The study of form and structure of animals and plants. The outward physical form possessed by an organism.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term mortality comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means death. Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., rabies has a high mortality rate.

MOSQUITO COILS: Mosquito coils are spirals of inflammable paste that, when burned, steadily release insect repellent into the air. They are often used in Asia, where many coils release octachlorodipropyl ether, which can cause lung cancer.

MOSQUITO NETTING: Fine meshes or nets hung around occupied spaces, especially beds, to keep out disease-carrying mosquitoes. Mosquito netting is a cost-effective way of preventing malaria.

MRSA: Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* are bacteria resistant to most penicillin-type antibiotics, including methicillin.

MULTIBACILLARY: The more severe form of leprosy (Hansen's disease) is called multibacillary leprosy. It is defined as the presence of more than 5 skin lesions on the patient with a positive skin-smear test. The less severe form of leprosy is called paucibacillary leprosy.

MULTI-DRUG RESISTANCE: Multi-drug resistance is a phenomenon that occurs when an infective agent loses its sensitivity against two or more of the drugs that are used against it.

MULTI-DRUG THERAPY: Multi-drug therapy is the use of a combination of drugs against infection, each of which attacks the infective agent in a different way. This strategy can help overcome resistance to anti-infective drugs.

MUTABLE VIRUS: A mutable virus is one whose DNA changes rapidly so that drugs and vaccines against it may not be effective.

MUTATION: A mutation is a change in an organism's DNA that occurs over time and may render it less sensitive to the drugs that are used against it.

MYALGIA: Muscular aches and pain.

MYCOBACTERIA: *Mycobacteria* is a genus of bacteria that contains the bacteria causing leprosy and tuberculosis. The bacteria have unusual cell walls that are harder to dissolve than the cell walls of other bacteria.

MYCOTIC: Mycotic means having to do with or caused by a fungus. Any medical condition caused by a fungus is a mycotic condition, also called a mycosis.

MYCOTIC DISEASE: Mycotic disease is a disease caused by fungal infection.

N

NATIONAL ELECTRONIC TELECOMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM FOR SURVEILLANCE (NETSS): A computerized public health surveillance information system that provides the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) with weekly data regarding cases of nationally notifiable diseases.

NECROPSY: A necropsy is a medical examination of a dead body: also called an autopsy.

NECROTIC: Necrotic tissue is dead tissue in an otherwise living body. Tissue death is called necrosis.

NEEDLESTICK INJURY: Any accidental breakage or puncture of the skin by an unsterilized medical needle (syringe) is a needlestick injury. Health-care providers are at particular risk for needlestick injuries (which may transmit disease) because of the large number of needles they handle.

NEGLECTED TROPICAL DISEASE: Many tropical diseases are considered to be neglected because, despite their prevalence in less-developed areas, new vaccines and treatments are not being developed for them.

Malaria was once considered to be a neglected tropical disease, but recently a great deal of research and money have been devoted to its treatment and cure.

NEMATODES: Also known as roundworms; a type of helminth characterized by long, cylindrical bodies.

NEURAMINIDASE: Also abbreviated (NA), neuraminidase is a glycoprotein, a protein that contains a short chain of sugar as part of its structure.

NEUROTOXIN: A poison that interferes with nerve function, usually by affecting the flow of ions through the cell membrane.

NEUTROPHIL: An immune cell that releases a bacteria-killing chemical; neutrophils are prominent in the inflammatory response. A type of white blood cell that phagocytizes foreign microorganisms. It also releases lysozyme.

NOBEL PEACE PRIZE: An annual prize bequeathed by Swedish inventor Alfred Nobel (1833–1896) and awarded by the Norwegian Nobel Committee to an individual or organization that has "done the most or the best work for fraternity between the nations, for the abolition or reduction of standing armies and for the holding and promotion of peace congresses."

NODULE: A nodule is a small, roundish lump on the surface of the skin or of an internal organ.

NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATION (NGO): A voluntary organization that is not part of any government; often organized to address a specific issue or perform a humanitarian function.

NORMAL FLORA: The bacteria that normally inhabit some part of the body, such as the mouth or intestines, are normal flora. Normal flora are essential to health.

NOROVIRUS: Norovirus is a type of virus that contains ribonucleic acid as the genetic material and causes an intestinal infection known as gastroenteritis. A well-known example is Norwalk-like virus.

NOSOCOMIAL INFECTION: A nosocomial infection is an infection that is acquired in a hospital. More precisely, the Centers for Disease Control in Atlanta, Georgia, defines a nosocomial infection as a localized infection or an infection that is widely spread throughout the body that results from an adverse reaction to an infectious microorganism or toxin that was not present at the time of admission to the hospital.

NOTIFIABLE DISEASES: Diseases that the law requires must be reported to health officials when diagnosed, including active tuberculosis and several sexually transmitted diseases; also called reportable diseases.

NUCLEOTIDE: The basic unit of a nucleic acid. It consists of a simple sugar, a phosphate group, and a nitrogen–containing base.

NUCLEOTIDE SEQUENCE: A particular ordering of the chain structure of nucleic acid that provides the necessary information for a specific amino acid.

NUCLEUS, CELL: Membrane–enclosed structure within a cell that contains the cell's genetic material and controls its growth and reproduction. (Plural: nuclei.)

NUTRITIONAL SUPPLEMENTS: Nutritional supplements are substances necessary to health, such as calcium or protein, that are taken in concentrated form to compensate for dietary insufficiency, poor absorption, unusually high demand for that nutrient, or other reasons.

NYMPH: In aquatic insects, the larval stage.

O

ONCOGENIC VIRUS: An oncogenic virus is a virus that is capable of changing the cells it infects so that the cells begin to grow and divide uncontrollably.

OOCYST: An oocyst is a spore phase of certain infectious organisms that can survive for a long time outside the organism and so continue to cause infection and resist treatment.

OOPHORITIS: Oophoritis is an inflammation of the ovary, which happens in certain sexually transmitted diseases.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

OPTIC SOLUTION: Any liquid solution of a medication that can be applied directly to the eye is an optic solution.

ORAL REHYDRATION THERAPY: Patients who have lost excessive water from their tissues are said to be dehydrated. Restoring body water levels by giving the patient fluids through the mouth (orally) is oral rehydration therapy. Often, a special mixture of water, glucose, and electrolytes called oral rehydration solution is given.

ORCHITIS: Orchitis is inflammation of one or both testicles. Swelling and pain are typical symptoms. Orchitis may be caused by various sexually transmitted diseases or escape of sperm cells into the tissues of the testicle.

OUTBREAK: The appearance of new cases of a disease in numbers greater than the established incidence rate, or the appearance of even one case of an emergent or rare disease in an area.

OUTPATIENT: A person who receives health care services without being admitted to a hospital or clinic for an overnight stay.

OVA: Mature female sex cells produced in the ovaries. (Singular: ovum.)

OVIPOSITION: Ovum is Latin for "egg." To oviposition is to position or lay eggs, especially when done by an insect.

P

PANCREATITIS: Pancreatitis is an inflammation of the pancreas, an organ that is important in digestion. Pancreatitis can be acute (beginning suddenly, usually with the patient recovering fully) or chronic (progressing slowly with continued, permanent injury to the pancreas).

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

PAPULAR: A papule is a small, solid bump on the skin; papular means pertaining to or resembling a papule.

PAPULE: A papule is a small, solid bump on the skin.

PARAMYXOVIRUS: Paramyxovirus is a type of virus that contains ribonucleic acid as the genetic material and has proteins on its surface that clump red blood cells and assist in the release of newly made viruses from the infected cells. Measles virus and mumps virus are two types of paramyxoviruses.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

PAROTITIS: Parotitis is inflammation of the parotid gland. There are two parotid glands, one on each side of the jaw, at the back. Their function is to secret saliva into the mouth.

PAROXYSM: In medicine, a paroxysm may be a fit, convulsion, or seizure. It may also be a sudden worsening or recurrence of disease symptoms.

PASTEURIZATION: Pasteurization is a process where fluids such as wine and milk are heated for a predetermined time at a temperature that is below the boiling point of the liquid. The treatment kills any microorganisms that are in the fluid but does not alter the taste, appearance, or nutritive value of the fluid.

PATHOGEN: A disease-causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

PATHOGENIC: Something causing or capable of causing disease.

PATHOGENS: Agents or microorganisms causing or capable of causing disease.

PAUCIBACILLARY: Paucibacillary refers to an infectious condition, such as a certain form of leprosy, characterized by few, rather than many, bacilli, which are a rod-shaped type of bacterium.

PCR (POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION): The polymerase chain reaction, or PCR, refers to a widely used technique in molecular biology involving the amplification of specific sequences of genomic DNA.

PERSISTENCE: Persistence is the length of time a disease remains in a patient. Disease persistence can vary from a few days to life-long.

PESTICIDE: Substances used to reduce the abundance of pests, any living thing that causes injury or disease to crops.

PHAGOCYTOSIS: The process by which certain cells engulf and digest microorganisms and consume debris and foreign bodies in the blood.

PHENOTYPE: The visible characteristics or physical shape produced by a living thing's genotype.

PLAGUE: A contagious disease that spreads rapidly through a population and results in a high rate of death.

PLASMID: A circular piece of DNA that exists outside of the bacterial chromosome and copies itself independently. Scientists often use bacterial plasmids in genetic engineering to carry genes into other organisms.

PLEURAL CAVITY: The lungs are surrounded by two membranous coverings, the pleura. One of the pleura is attached to the lung, the other to the ribcage. The space between the two pleura, the pleural cavity, is normally filled with a clear lubricating fluid called pleural fluid.

PNEUMONIA: Pneumonia is inflammation of the lung accompanied by filling of some air sacs with fluid (consolidation). It can be caused by a number of infectious agents, including bacteria, viruses, and fungi.

POSTEXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS: Postexposure prophylaxis is treatment with drugs immediately after exposure to an infectious microorganism. The aim of this approach is to prevent an infection from becoming established.

POSTHERPETIC NEURALGIA: Neuralgia is pain arising in a nerve that is not the result of any injury. Postherpetic neuralgia is neuralgia experienced after infection with a herpesvirus, namely *Herpes simplex* or *Herpes zoster*.

POTABLE: Water that is clean enough to drink safely is potable water.

PREVALENCE: The actual number of cases of disease (or injury) that exist in a population.

PRIMARY HOST: The primary host is an organism that provides food and shelter for a parasite while allowing it to become sexually mature, while a secondary host is one occupied by a parasite during the larval or asexual stages of its life cycle.

PRIONS: Prions are proteins that are infectious. Indeed, the name prion is derived from "proteinaceous infectious particles." The discovery of prions and confirmation of their infectious nature overturned a central dogma that infections were caused only by intact organisms, particularly microorganisms such as bacteria, fungi, parasites, or viruses. Since prions lack genetic material, the prevailing attitude was that a protein could not cause disease.

PRODROMAL SYMPTOMS: Prodromal symptoms are the earliest symptoms of a disease.

PRODROME: A prodrome of a disease is a symptom indicating the disease's onset; it may also be called a prodroma. For example, painful swallowing is often a prodrome of infection with a cold virus.

PROPHYLAXIS: Pre-exposure treatments (e.g., immunization) that prevents or reduces severity of disease or symptoms upon exposure to the causative agent.

PROSTRATION: A condition marked by nausea, disorientation, dizziness, and weakness caused by dehydration and prolonged exposure to high temperatures; also called heat exhaustion or hyperthermia.

PROTOZOA: Single-celled animal-like microscopic organisms that live by taking in food rather than making it by photosynthesis and must live in the presence of water. (Singular: protozoan.) Protozoa are a diverse group of single-celled organisms, with more than 50,000 different types represented. The vast majority are microscopic, many measuring less than 5 one-thousandth of an inch (0.005 millimeters), but some, such as the freshwater Spirostomun, may reach 0.17 inches (3 millimeters) in length, large enough to enable it to be seen with the naked eye.

PRURITIS: Pruritis is the medical term for itchiness.

PRURULENT: Containing, discharging, or producing pus.

PUERPERAL: An interval of time around childbirth, from the onset of labor through the immediate recovery period after delivery.

PUERPERAL FEVER: Puerperal fever is a bacterial infection present in the blood (septicemia) that follows childbirth. The Latin word *puer* meaning boy or child, is the root of this term. Puerperal fever was much more common before the advent of modern aseptic practices, but infections still occur. Louis Pasteur showed that puerperal fever is most often caused by *Streptococcus* bacteria, which is now treated with antibiotics.

PULMONARY: Having to do with the lungs or respiratory system. The pulmonary circulatory system delivers deoxygenated blood from the right ventricle of the heart to the lungs, and returns oxygenated blood from the lungs to the left atrium of the heart. At its most minute level, the alveolar capillary bed, the pulmonary circulatory system is the principle point of gas exchange between blood and air that moves in and out of the lungs during respiration.

PURULENT: Any part of the body that contains or releases pus is said to be purulent. Pus is a fluid produced by inflamed, infected tissues and is made up of white blood cells, fragments of dead cells, and a liquid containing various proteins.

PUSTULES: A pustule is a reservoir of pus visible just beneath the skin. It is usually sore to the touch and surrounded by inflamed tissue.

PYELONEPHRITIS: Inflammation caused by bacterial infection of the kidney and associated blood vessels is termed pyelonephritis.

PYROGENIC: A substance that causes fever is pyrogenic. The word "pyrogenic" comes from the Greek word *pyr* meaning fire.

Q

QUANTITATED: An act of determining the quantity of something, such as the number or concentration of bacteria in an infectious disease.

QUARANTINE: Quarantine is the practice of separating people who have been exposed to an infectious agent but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. This can be done voluntarily or involuntarily by the authority of states and the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

R

RALES: French term for a rattling sound in the throat or chest.

RASH: A rash is a change in appearance or texture of the skin. A rash is the popular term for a group of spots or red, inflamed skin that is usually a symptom of an underlying condition or disorder. Often temporary, a rash is only rarely a sign of a serious problem.

REASSORTMENT: A condition resulting when two or more different types of viruses exchange genetic material to form a new, genetically different virus.

RECEPTOR: Protein molecules on a cell's surface that acts as a "signal receiver" and allow communication between cells.

RECOMBINANT DNA: DNA that is cut using specific enzymes so that a gene or DNA sequence can be inserted.

RECOMBINATION: Recombination is a process during which genetic material is shuffled during reproduction to form new combinations. This mixing is important from an evolutionary standpoint because it allows the expression of different traits between generations. The process involves a physical exchange of nucleotides between duplicate strands of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA).

RED TIDE: Red tides are a marine phenomenon in which water is stained a red, brown, or yellowish color because of the temporary abundance of a particular species of pigmented dinoflagellate (these events are known as "blooms"). Also called phytoplankton, or planktonic algae, these single-celled organisms of the class Dinophyceae move using a tail-like structure called a flagellum. They also photosynthesize, and it is their photosynthetic pigments that can tint the water during blooms. Dinoflagellates are common and widespread. Under appropriate environmental conditions, various species can grow very rapidly, causing red tides. Red tides occur in all marine regions with a temperate or warmer climate.

RE-EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASE: Re-emerging infectious diseases are illnesses such as malaria, diphtheria, tuberculosis, and polio that were once nearly absent from the world but are starting to cause greater numbers of infections once again. These illnesses are reappearing for many reasons. Malaria and other mosquito-borne illnesses increase when mosquito-control measures decrease. Other diseases are spreading because people have stopped being vaccinated, as happened with diphtheria after the collapse of the Soviet Union. A few diseases are re-emerging because drugs to treat them have become less available or drug-resistant strains have developed.

REHYDRATION: Dehydration is excessive loss of water from the body; rehydration is the restoration of water after dehydration.

REITER'S SYNDROME: Reiter's syndrome (also called Reiter syndrome, Reiter disease, or reactive arthritis), named after German doctor Hans Reiter (1881-1969), is a form of arthritis (joint inflammation) that appears in response to bacterial infection in some other part of the body.

RELAPSE: Relapse is a return of symptoms after the patient has apparently recovered from a disease.

REPLICATE: To replicate is to duplicate something or make a copy of it. All reproduction of living things depends on the replication of DNA molecules or, in a few cases, RNA molecules. Replication may be used to refer to the reproduction of entire viruses and other microorganisms.

REPLICATION: A process of reproducing, duplicating, copying, or repeating something, such as the duplication of DNA or the recreation of characteristics of an infectious disease in a laboratory setting.

REPORTABLE DISEASE: By law, occurrences of some diseases must be reported to government authorities when observed by health-care professionals. Such diseases are called reportable diseases or notifiable diseases. Cholera and yellow fever are examples of reportable diseases.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

RESISTANCE: Immunity developed within a species (especially bacteria) via evolution to an antibiotic or other drug. For example, in bacteria, the acquisition of genetic mutations that render the bacteria invulnerable to the action of antibiotics.

RESISTANT BACTERIA: Resistant bacteria are microbes that have lost their sensitivity to one or more antibiotic drugs through mutation.

RESISTANT ORGANISM: An organism that has developed the ability to counter something trying to harm it. Within infectious diseases, the organism, such as a bacterium, has developed a resistance to drugs, such as antibiotics.

RESPIRATOR: A respirator is any device that assists a patient in breathing or takes over breathing entirely for them.

RESTRICTION ENZYME: A special type of protein that can recognize and cut DNA at certain sequences of bases to help scientists separate out a specific gene. Restriction enzymes recognize certain sequences of DNA and cleave the DNA at those sites. The enzymes are used to generate fragments of DNA that can be subsequently joined together to create new stretches of DNA.

RETROVIRUS: Retroviruses are viruses in which the genetic material consists of ribonucleic acid (RNA) instead of the usual deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). Retroviruses produce an enzyme known as reverse transcriptase that can transform RNA into DNA, which can then be permanently integrated into the DNA of the infected host cells.

REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE: An enzyme that makes it possible for a retrovirus to produce DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) from RNA (ribonucleic acid).

RHINITIS: An inflammation of the mucous lining of the nose. A nonspecific term that covers infections, allergies, and other disorders whose common feature is the location of their symptoms. These symptoms include infected or irritated mucous membranes, producing a discharge, congestion, and swelling of the tissues of the nasal passages. The most widespread form of infectious rhinitis is the common cold.

RIBONUCLEIC ACID (RNA): Any of a group of nucleic acids that carry out several important tasks in the synthesis of proteins. Unlike DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), it has only a single strand. Nucleic acids are complex molecules that contain a cell's genetic information and the instructions for carrying out cellular processes. In eukaryotic cells, the two nucleic acids, ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), work together to direct protein synthesis. Although it is DNA that contains the instructions for directing the synthesis of specific structural and enzymatic proteins, several types of RNA actually carry out the processes required to produce these proteins. These include messenger RNA (mRNA), ribosomal RNA (rRNA), and transfer RNA (tRNA). Further processing of the various RNAs is carried out by another type of RNA called small nuclear RNA (snRNA). The structure of RNA is very similar to that of DNA, however, instead of the base thymine, RNA contains the base uricil in its place.

RING VACCINATION: Ring vaccination is the vaccination of all susceptible people in an area surrounding a case of an infectious disease. Since vaccination makes people immune to the disease, the hope is that the disease will not spread from the known case to other people. Ring vaccination was used in eliminating the smallpox virus.

RNA VIRUS: An RNA virus is one whose genetic material consists of either single- or double-stranded ribonucleic acid (RNA) rather than deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA).

ROUNDWORM: Also known as nematodes; a type of helminth characterized by long, cylindrical bodies. Roundworm infections are diseases of the digestive tract and other organ systems that are caused by roundworms. Roundworm infections are widespread throughout the world, and humans acquire most types of roundworm infection from contaminated food or by touching the mouth with unwashed hands that have come into contact with the parasite larva. The severity of infection varies considerably from person to person. Children are more likely to have heavy infestations and are also more likely to suffer from malabsorption and malnutrition than adults.

ROUS SARCOMA VIRUS: Rous sarcoma virus, named after American doctor Francis Peyton Rous (1879-1970), is a virus that can cause cancer in some birds, including chickens. It was the first virus known to be able to cause cancer.

RUMINANTS: Cud-chewing animals with a four-chambered stomachs and even-toed hooves.

S

SANITATION: Sanitation is the use of hygienic recycling and disposal measures that prevent disease and promote health through sewage disposal, solid waste disposal, waste material recycling, and food processing and preparation.

SCHISTOSOMES: Blood flukes that infect an estimated 200 million people.

SEIZURE: A seizure is a sudden disruption of the brain's normal electrical activity accompanied by altered consciousness and/or other neurological and behavioral abnormalities. Epilepsy is a condition characterized by recurrent seizures that may include repetitive muscle jerking called convulsions. Seizures are traditionally divided into two major categories: generalized seizures and focal seizures. Within each major category, however, there are many different types of seizures. Generalized seizures come about due to abnormal neuronal activity on both sides of the brain, while focal seizures, also named partial seizures, occur in only one part of the brain.

SELECTION: Process which favors one feature of organisms in a population over another feature found in the population. This occurs through differential reproduction—those with the favored feature produce more offspring than those with the other feature, such that they become a greater percentage of the population in the next generation.

SELECTION PRESSURE: Selection pressure refers to factors that influence the evolution of an organism. An example is the overuse of antibiotics, which provides a selection pressure for the development of antibiotic resistance in bacteria.

SELECTIVE PRESSURE: Selective pressure refers to the tendency of an organism that has a certain characteristic to be eliminated from an environment or to increase in numbers. An example is the increased prevalence of bacteria that are resistant to multiple kinds of antibiotics.

SENTINEL: A sentinel is a guard or watcher; in medicine, a sentinel node is a lymph node near the breast in which cancer cells from a breast tumor are likely to be found at an early stage of the cancer's spreading (metastasization).

SENTINEL SURVEILLANCE: Sentinel surveillance is a method in epidemiology where a subset of the population is surveyed for the presence of communicable diseases. Also, a sentinel is an animal used to indicate the presence of disease within an area.

SEPSIS: Sepsis refers to a bacterial infection in the bloodstream or body tissues. This is a very broad term covering the presence of many types of microscopic disease-causing organisms. Sepsis is also called bacteremia. Closely related terms include septicemia and septic syndrome. According to the Society of Critical Care Medicine, severe sepsis affects about 750,000 people in the United States each year. However, it is predicted to rapidly rise to one million people by 2010 due to the aging U.S. population. Over the decade of the 1990s, the incident rate of sepsis increased over 91%.

SEPTIC: The term "septic" refers to the state of being infected with bacteria, particularly in the bloodstream.

SEPTICEMIA: Prolonged fever, chills, anorexia, and anemia in conjunction with tissue lesions.

SEQUENCING: Finding the order of chemical bases in a section of DNA.

SEROCONVERSION: The development in the blood of antibodies to an infectious organism or agent. Typically, seroconversion is associated with infections caused by bacteria, viruses, and protozoans. But seroconversion also occurs after the deliberate inoculation with an antigen in the process of vaccination. In the case of infections, the development of detectable levels of antibodies can occur quickly, in the case of an active infection, or can be prolonged, in the case of a latent infection. Seroconversion typically heralds the development of the symptoms of the particular infection.

SEROTYPES: Serotypes or serovars are classes of microorganisms based on the types of molecules (antigens) that they present on their surfaces. Even a single species may have thousands of serotypes, which may have medically quite distinct behaviors.

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASE (STD): Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) vary in their susceptibility to treatment, their signs and symptoms, and the consequences if they are left untreated. Some are caused by bacteria. These usually can be treated and cured. Others are caused by viruses and can typically be treated but not cured. More than 15 million new cases of STDs are diagnosed annually in the United States.

SHED: To shed is to cast off or release. In medicine, the release of eggs or live organisms from an individual infected with parasites is often referred to as shedding.

SHOCK: Shock is a medical emergency in which the organs and tissues of the body are not receiving an adequate flow of blood. This condition deprives the organs and tissues of oxygen (carried in the blood) and allows the buildup of waste products. Shock can result in serious damage or even death.

SOCIOECONOMIC: Concerning both social and economic factors.

SOUTHERN BLOT ANALYSIS: Southern blot refers to an electrophoresis technique in which pieces of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) that have resulted from enzyme digestion are separated from one another on the basis of size, followed by the transfer of the DNA fragments to a flexible membrane. The membrane can then be exposed to various probes to identify target regions of the genetic material.

SPECIAL PATHOGENS BRANCH: A group within the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) whose goal is to study highly infectious viruses that produce diseases within humans.

SPIROCHETE: A bacterium shaped like a spiral. Spiral-shaped bacteria, which live in contaminated water, sewage, soil, and decaying organic matter, as well as inside humans and animals.

SPONGIFORM: Spongiform is the clinical name for the appearance of brain tissue affected by prion diseases, such as Creutzfeld-Jakob disease or bovine spongiform encephalopathy (mad cow disease). The disease process leads to the formation of tiny holes in brain tissue, giving it a spongy appearance.

SPONTANEOUS GENERATION: Also known as abiogenesis; the incorrect and discarded assumption that living things can be generated from nonliving things.

SPORE: A dormant form assumed by some bacteria, such as anthrax, that enables the bacterium to survive high temperatures, dryness, and lack of nourishment for long periods of time. Under proper conditions, the spore may revert to the actively multiplying form of the bacteria.

SPOROZOAN: The fifth Phylum of the Protist Kingdom, known as Apicomplexa, comprises several species of obligate intracellular protozoan parasites classified as Sporozoa or Sporozoans, because they form reproductive cells known as spores. Many sporozoans are parasitic and pathogenic species, such as *Plasmodium falciparum, P. malariae, P. vivax, Toxoplasma gondii, Pneumocysts carinii, Cryptosporidum parvum* and *Cryptosporidum muris.* The Sporozoa reproduction cycle has both asexual and sexual phases. The asexual phase is termed schizogony (from the Greek, meaning generation through division), in which merozoites (daughter cells) are produced through multiple nuclear fissions. The sexual phase is known as sporogony (i.e., generation of spores) and is followed by gametogony or the production of sexually reproductive cells termed gamonts.

SPOROZOITE: Developmental stage of a protozoan (e.g., a malaria protozoan) during which it is transferred from vector (with malaria, a mosquito) to a human host.

STAINING: Staining refers to the use of chemicals to identify target components of microorganisms.

STANDARD PRECAUTIONS: Standard precautions are the safety measures taken to prevent the transmission of disease-causing bacteria. These include proper handwashing; wearing gloves, goggles, and other protective clothing; proper handling of needles; and sterilization of equipment.

STERILIZATION: Sterilization is a term that refers to the complete killing or elimination of living organisms in the sample being treated. Sterilization is absolute. After the treatment the sample is either devoid of life or the possibility of life (as from the subsequent germination and growth of bacterial spores) or it is not considered sterile.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

STREP THROAT: Streptococcal sore throat, or strep throat as it is more commonly called, is an infection caused by group A *Streptococcus* bacteria. The main target of the infection is the mucous membranes lining the pharynx. Sometimes the tonsils are also infected (tonsillitis). If left untreated, the infection can develop into rheumatic fever or other serious conditions.

STREPTOCOCCUS: A genus of bacteria that includes species such as *Streptococci pyogenes*, a species of bacteria that causes strep throat.

SUPERINFECTION: When a new infection occurs in a patient who already has some other infection, it is called a superinfection. For example, a bacterial infection appearing in a person who already had viral pneumonia would be a superinfection.

SURVEILLANCE: The systematic analysis, collection, evaluation, interpretation, and dissemination of data. In public health, it assists in the identification of health threats and the planning, implementation, and evaluation of responses to those threats.

SYLVATIC: Sylvatic means pertaining to the woods and refers to diseases such as plague that are spread by animals such as ground squirrels and other wild rodents.

SYSTEMIC: Any medical condition that affects the whole body (i.e., the whole system) is systemic.

T

T CELL: Immune-system white blood cells that enable antibody production, suppress antibody production, or kill other cells. When a vertebrate encounters substances that are capable of causing it harm, a protective system known as the immune system comes into play. This system is a network of many different organs that work together to recognize foreign substances and destroy them. The immune system can respond to the presence of a disease-causing agent (pathogen) in two ways. In cell-mediated immunity, immune cells known as the T cells produce special chemicals that can specifically isolate the pathogen and destroy it. The other branch of immunity is called humoral immunity, in which immune cells called B cells can produce soluble proteins (antibodies) that can accurately target and kill the pathogen.

TAPEWORM: Tapeworms are parasitic flatworms of class *Cestoidea*, phylum *Platyhelminthes*, that live inside the intestine. Tapeworms have no digestive system, but absorb predigested nutrients directly from their surroundings.

T-CELL VACCINE: A T-cell vaccine is one that relies on eliciting cellular immunity, rather than humoral antibody-based immunity, against infection. T cell vaccines are being developed against the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and hepatitis C.

TICK: A tick is any blood-sucking parasitic insect of suborder *Ixodides*, superfamily *Ixodoidea*. Ticks can transmit a number of diseases, including Lyme disease and Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

TOGAVIRUS: Togaviruses are a type of virus. Rubella is caused by a type of togavirus.

TOPICAL: Any medication that is applied directly to a particular part of the body's surface is termed topical; for example, a topical ointment.

TOXIC: Something that is poisonous and that can cause illness or death.

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

TOXOID: A toxoid is a bacterial toxin that has been altered chemically to make it incapable of causing damage, but is still capable of stimulating an immune response. Toxoids are used to stimulate antibody production, which is protective in the event of exposure to the active toxin.

TRANSFUSION-TRANSMISSIBLE INFECTIONS: Any infection that can be transmitted to a person by a blood transfusion (addition of stored whole blood or blood fractions to a person's own blood) is a transfusion-transmissible infection. Some diseases that can be transmitted in this way are AIDS, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, syphilis, malaria, and Chagas disease.

TRANSMISSION: Microorganisms that cause disease in humans and other species are known as pathogens. The transmission of pathogens to a human or other host can occur in a number of ways, depending upon the microorganism.

TREMATODES: Trematodes, also called flukes, are a type of parasitic flatworm. In humans, flukes can infest the liver, lung, and other tissues.

TRICLOSAN: A chemical that kills bacteria. Most antibacterial soaps use this chemical.

TRISMUS: Trismus is the medical term for lockjaw, a condition often associated with tetanus, infection by the *Clostridium tetani* bacillus. In trismus or lockjaw, the major muscles of the jaw contract involuntarily.

TROPHOZOITE: The amoeboid, vegetative stage of the malaria protozoa.

TYPHUS: A disease caused by various species of *Rickettsia*, characterized by fever, rash, and delirium. Insects such as lice and chiggers transmit typhus. Two forms of typhus, epidemic typhus and scrub typhus, are fatal if untreated.

U

UNIVERSAL PRECAUTION: Universal precaution refers to an infection control strategy in which all human blood and other material is assumed to be potentially infectious, specifically with organisms such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and hepatitis B virus. The precautions are aimed at preventing contact with blood or the other materials.

V

VACCINATION: Vaccination is the inoculation, or use of vaccines, to prevent specific diseases within humans and animals by producing immunity to such diseases. It is the introduction of weakened or dead viruses or microorganisms into the body to create immunity by the production of specific antibodies.

VACCINE: A substance that is introduced to stimulate antibody production and thus provide immunity to a particular disease.

VACCINIA VIRUS: The vaccinia virus is a usually harmless virus that is closely related to the virus that causes smallpox, a dangerous disease. Infection with the vaccinia virus confers immunity against smallpox, so vaccinia virus has been used as a vaccine against smallpox.

VARICELLA ZOSTER IMMUNE GLOBULIN (VZIG): Varicella zoster immune globulin is a preparation that can give people temporary protection against chickenpox after exposure to the Varicella virus. It is used for children and adults who are at risk of complications of the disease or who are susceptible to infection because they have weakened immunity.

VARICELLA ZOSTER VIRUS (VZV): Varicella zoster virus is a member of the alpha herpes virus group and is the cause of both chickenpox (also known as varicella) and shingles (herpes zoster).

VARIOLA VIRUS: Variola virus (or variola major virus) is the virus that causes smallpox. The virus is one of the members of the poxvirus group (Family Poxviridae). The virus particle is brick shaped and contains a double strand of deoxyribonucleic acid. The variola virus is among the most dangerous of all the potential biological weapons.

VARIOLATION: Variolation was the pre-modern practice of deliberately infecting a person with smallpox in order to make them immune to a more serious form of the disease. It was dangerous, but did confer immunity on survivors.

VECTOR: Any agent that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

VECTOR-BORNE DISEASE: A vector-borne disease is one in which the pathogenic microorganism is transmitted from an infected individual to another individual by an arthropod or other agent, sometimes with other animals serving as intermediary hosts. The transmission depends upon the attributes and requirements of at least three different living organisms: the pathologic agent, either a virus, protozoa, bacteria, or helminth (worm); the vector, commonly arthropods such as ticks or mosquitoes; and the human host.

VENEREAL DISEASE: Venereal diseases are diseases that are transmitted by sexual contact. They are named after Venus, the Roman goddess of female sexuality.

VESICLE: A membrane-bound sphere that contains a variety of substances in cells.

VIRAL SHEDDING: Viral shedding refers to the movement of the herpes virus from the nerves to the surface of the skin. During shedding, the virus can be passed on through skin-to-skin contact.

VIRION: A virion is a mature virus particle, consisting of a core of ribonucleic acid (RNA) or deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) surrounded by a protein coat. This is the form in which a virus exists outside of its host cell.

VIRULENCE: Virulence is the ability of a disease organism to cause disease: a more virulent organism is more infective and liable to produce more serious disease.

VIRUS: Viruses are essentially nonliving repositories of nucleic acid that require the presence of a living prokaryotic or eukaryotic cell for the replication of the nucleic acid. There are a number of different viruses that challenge the human immune system and that may produce disease in humans. A virus is a small, infectious agent that consists of a core of genetic material—either deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA)—surrounded by a shell of protein. Very simple microorganisms, viruses are much smaller than bacteria that enter and multiply within cells. Viruses often exchange or transfer their genetic material (DNA or RNA) to cells and can cause diseases such as chickenpox, hepatitis, measles, and mumps.

VISCERAL: Visceral means pertaining to the viscera. The viscera are the large organs contained in the main cavities of the body, especially the thorax and abdomen, for example, the lungs, stomach, intestines, kidneys, or liver.

W

WATER-BORNE DISEASE: Water-borne disease refers to diseases that are caused by exposure to contaminated water. The exposure can occur by drinking the water or having the water come in contact with the body. Examples of water-borne diseases are cholera and typhoid fever.

WAVELENGTH: A distance of one cycle of a wave; for instance, the distance between the peaks on adjoining waves that have the same phase.

WEAPONIZATION: The use of any bacterium, virus, or other disease-causing organism as a weapon of war. Among other terms, it is also called germ warfare, biological weaponry, and biological warfare.

WEIL'S DISEASE: Weil's disease, named after German doctor Adolf Weil (1848-1916), is a severe form of leptospirosis or seven-day fever, a disease caused by infection with the corkscrew-shaped bacillus *Leptospira interrogans.*

WILD VIRUS: Wild- or wild-type virus is a genetic description referring to the original form of a virus, first observed in nature. It may remain the most common form in existence but mutated forms develop over time and sometimes become the new wild type virus.

Z

ZOONOTIC: A zoonotic disease is a disease that can be transmitted between animals and humans. Examples of zoonotic diseases are anthrax, plague, and Q-fever.

Chronology

BC

c.2500	The characteristic symptoms of malaria are first described in Chinese medical writings.
c.1000	Hindu physicians exhibit broad clinical knowledge of tuberculosis. In India, the Laws of Manu consider it to be an unclean, incurable disease and an impediment to marriage.
c.430	Plague of Athens caused by unknown infectious agent. One third of the population (increased by those fleeing the Spartan army) die.
c.400	Hippocrates (460–370 BC), Greek physician, and his disciples found their medical practice based on reason and experiment. They attribute disease to natural causes and use diet and medication to restore the body's balance of humors.
c.400	Hippocratic texts recommend irrigation with fresh water as a treatment for septic wounds.
c.300	A medical school is set up in Alexandria where the first accurate anatomical observations using dissection are made. The principal exponents of the school are Greek physician Herophilus (c.335–c.280 BC) and Greek physician Erasistratus (c.304–c.250 BC).
c.300	Herophilus, Greek anatomist, establishes himself as the first systemic anatomist and the first to perform human dissections.
91	Greek scientific medicine takes hold in Rome when the physician Asclepiades (c.130–40 BC) of Bithynia settles in the West.

AD

c.30	Aulus Cornelius Celsus, Roman encyclopedist, writes his influential book *De Re Medicina*. This work *On Medicine* contains descriptions of many conditions and operations, and is probably drawn mostly from the collection of writings of the school of Hippocrates. It is rediscovered during the fifteenth century and becomes highly influential. (See 1426)
c.75	Dioscorides, Greek physician, writes the first systematic pharmocopoeia. His *De Materia Medica* in five volumes provides accurate botanical and pharmacological information. It is preserved by the Arabs and, when translated into Latin and printed in 1478, becomes a standard botanical reference.
150	Cladius Galen says that pus formation is required for wound healing. This proves to be incorrect and hinders the treatment of wounds for centuries.
c.160	Bubonic plague (termed ''barbarian boils'') sweeps China.
c.160	Galen (c.130-c.200), Greek physician, in his *De Usu Partium* describes the pineal gland as a secretory organ that is important to thinking. He names it the pineal because it resembles a pine cone.
c.166	Plague in Rome (possibly smallpox or bubonic plague) eventually kills millions throughout the weakening Roman empire.
167	Stabiae, a popular health resort for tuberculosis sufferers, is established near Naples,

Italy. It is believed that the fumes from nearby Mt. Vesuvius are beneficial for lung ulcers.

170 Galen, the Greek physician, first describes gonorrhea.

c.200 Galen describes internal inflammations as caused by personal factors.

c.370 Basil of Caesarea (330–379) founds and organizes a large hospital at Caesarea (near Palestine).

c.400 Fabiola, a Christian noblewoman, founds the first nosocomium or hospital in Western Europe. After establishing the first hospital in Rome, she founds a hospice for pilgrims in Porto, Italy.

430 Earliest recorded plague in Europe is an epidemic that breaks out in Athens, Greece.

c.500 During this century, the "plague of Justinian" kills about one million people.

529 Benedict of Nursia founds the monastery at Monte Cassino in central Italy. It becomes, if not an actual medical school, at least an important center of scholarship in which medicine played a great part. It also acquires great fame throughout the West and its medical teachings are spread by the Benedictines to their monasteries scattered all over Europe.

610 In China, Ch'ao Yuan-fang writes a treatise on the causes and symptoms of diseases. Medical knowledge spreads from China to Japan via the Korean peninsula.

644 Rotharus, King of Lombardy also called Rothari, issues his edict ordering the segregation of all lepers.

c.700 Benedictus Crispus, archbishop of Milan from 681 to about 730, writes his *Commentarium Medicinale*, an elementary practical manual in verse. It describes the use of medicinal plants for curing illnesses.

c.850 Christian physician Sabur ibn Sahl of Jundishapur compiles a twenty-two volume work on antidotes that dominates Islamic pharmacopeia for the next 400 years.

c.850 Islamic philosopher al-Kindi (813–873) writes his *De Medicinarum Compositarum Gradibus*, which attempts to base dosages of medicine on mathematical measurements.

c.875 Bertharius, the abbot of Montcasino from 857 to 884, writes two treatises, *De Innumeris Remediorum Utilitatibus* and *De Innumeris Morbis* that give insight into the kind of medicine practiced in the monasteries.

896 Abu Bakr al-Razi (also known as Rhazes (c.845-c.930), Persian physician and alchemist, distinguishes between the specific characteristics of measles and smallpox. He is also believed to be the first to classify all substances into the great classification of animal, vegetable, and mineral. (See 918)

c.900 First medical books written in Anglo-Saxon appear. *Lacnunga* and the *Leech Book of Bald* appear and have some botanical sections.

c.955 Jewish "prince of medicine," Isaac Israeli, dies. He writes classic works on fever and uroscopy, as well as a *Guide of the Physicians.*

c.980 Abu Al–Qasim Al–Zahravi (Abucasis) creates a system and method of human dissection along with the first formal specific surgical techniques.

c.1000 Ibn Sina, or Avicenna, publishes *Al-Quanun*, or Canon of Medicine, where he held that medicines could be discovered and tried by experiment or by reasoning.

1137 St. Bartholomew's hospital is founded in London.

1140 Bologna, Italy, begins to develop as a major European medical center. In the next century, the Italian physician Taddeo Alderotti (c.1233–1303) opens a school of medicine there.

1200 Physicians in Italy begin to write case-histories that describe symptoms and observable pathology of diseases.

c.1267 Roger Bacon (1214–1292), English philosopher and scientist, asserts that natural phenomena should be studied empirically.

1302 First formally recorded post-mortem or judicial autopsy is performed in Bologna, Italy, by Italian physician Bartolomeo da Varignana. A postmortem is ordered by the court in a case of suspected poisoning.

1333 Public botanical garden is established in Venice, Italy, to grow herbs that have medical uses.

1345 First apothecary shop or drug store opens in London, England.

1348 The beginning of a three-year epidemic caused by *Yersinia pestis* kills almost one-third of the population of urban Europe. In the aftermath of the epidemic, measures are introduced by the Italian government to improve public sanitation, marking the origin of public health.

1374 As the plague spreads, the Republic of Ragusa places the first quarantines on crews of ships thought to be infected.

1388 Richard II (1367–1400), king of England, establishes the first sanitary laws in England.

1489 Typhus is first brought to Europe by soldiers who had been fighting in Cyprus.

1491 First anatomical book to contain printed illustrations is German physician Johannes de Ketham's *Fasciculus Medicinae.*

1492 Venereal diseases, smallpox, and influenza are brought by the Columbus expedition (and subsequent European explorers) to the New World. Millions of native peoples eventually die from these diseases because of a lack of prior exposure to stimulate immunity. In some regions, whole villages succumb, and across broader regions up to 95% of the native population dies.

1525 Gonzalo Hernandez de Oviedo y Valdes (1478–1557) of Spain publishes the first systematic description of the medicinal plants of Central America.

1525 Paracelsus (1493–1541), Swiss physician and alchemist, begins the use of mineral substances as medicines.

1527 Paracelsus (1493–1541), Swiss physician and alchemist, publicly burns the writings of Galen at Basel. He rejects the traditional medical methods as irrational, and he founds iatrochemistry, asserting that the body is linked in some way to the laws of chemistry.

1528 The Italian physician Fracastorius describes an epidemic of typhus among French troops invading Naples.

1530 Girolamo Fracastoro (1478–1553), Italian physician and poet, writes his poem called "Syphilis" (*Syphilis sive Morbus Gallici*), which gives the definitive name to the sexually transmitted disease that is spreading throughout Europe.

1536 Paracelsus (1493–1541), Swiss physician and alchemist, publishes his surgical treatise, *Chirurgia Magna.*

1543 Andreas Vesalius (1514–1564), Dutch anatomist, publishes his *De Corporis Humani Corporis Fabrica*, the first accurate book on human anatomy. Its illustrations are of the highest level of both realism and art, and the result revolutionizes biology.

1546 Girolamo Fracastoro (1478–1553), Italian physician, writes his *De Contagione et Contagiosis Morbis*, which contains new ideas on the transmission of contagious diseases and is considered as the scientific beginning of that study.

1563 Epidemic cholera is described by Garcia del Huerto, working in Goa, India.

1567 A book on miner's tuberculosis by Swiss physician and alchemist Paracelsus (1493–1541) is posthumously published.

1602 Felix Platter (1536–1614), Swiss anatomist, publishes his *Praxis Medica,* which is the first modern attempt at the classification of diseases.

1621 Johannes Baptista van Helmont (1577–1635), Dutch physician and alchemist, writes his *Ortus Medicinae* in which he becomes one of the founders of modern pathology. He studies the anatomical changes that occur in disease.

1624 Adriaan van den Spigelius (1578–1625), Dutch anatomist, publishes the first account of malaria.

1640 Juan del Vigo introduces cinchona into Spain. Native to the Andes, the bark of this tree is processed to obtain quinine, used in the treatment of malaria.

1642 First treatise on the use of cinchona bark (quinine powder) for treating malaria is written by Spanish physician Pedro Barba (1608–1671).

1648 René Descartes (1596–1650), French philosopher and mathematician, writes *De Homine*, the first European textbook on physiology. He considers the body to be a material machine and offers his mechanist theory of life.

1648 Willem Piso (1611–1678), Dutch physician and botanist (also called Le Pois), points out the effectiveness of ipecac against dysentery in his book *De Medicina Brasiliensi*. He is among the first to become acquainted with tropical diseases, and he distinguishes between yaws and syphilis.

1660 The Royal Society of London is founded in England with Henry Oldenburg (c.1618–1677) Secretary and Robert Hooke (1635–1702) Curator of Experiments. Two years later (1662), King Charles II (1630–1685) grants it a royal charter, and it becomes known as the "Royal Society of London for the Promotion of Natural Knowledge."

1665 Bubonic plague epidemic in London kills 75,000 people. It is during this scourge that English scientist and mathematician Isaac Newton (1642–1727) leaves school in London and stays at his mother' farm in the country. There he formulates his laws of motion.

1665 First drawing of the cell is made by Robert Hooke (1635–1703), English physicist. While observing a sliver of cork under a microscope, Hooke notices it is composed of a pattern of tiny rectangular holes he calls "cells" because each looks like a small, empty room. Although he does not observe living cells, the name is retained.

1665 Robert Hooke (1635–1703), English physicist, publishes his landmark book on microscopy called *Micrographia*. Containing some of the most beautiful drawings of microscopic observations ever made, his book led to many discoveries in related fields.

1666 Robert Boyle (1627–1691), English physicist and chemist, publishes *The Origine of Formes and Qualities* in which he begins to explain all chemical reactions and physical properties through the existence of small, indivisible particles or atoms.

1668 Francesco Redi (1626–1697), Italian physician, conducts experiments to disprove spontaneous generation and shows that maggots are not born spontaneously, but come from eggs laid by flies. He publishes his *Esperienze Intorno all Generazione degli Insetti*.

1671 Michael Ettmüller (1644–1683), German physician, attributes the contagiousness of tuberculosis to sputum.

1672 French physician Le Gras introduces ipecac into Europe as he brings it to Paris this year. The root of the Brazilian plant ipecacuanha is used to cure dysentery. (See 1625)

1674 Antoni van Leeuwenhoek (1632–1723), Dutch biologist and microscopist, observes "animacules" in lake water viewed through a ground glass lens. This observation of what will eventually be known as bacteria represents the start of the formal study of microbiology.

1675 John Josselyn, English botanist, publishes an account of the plants and animals he encounters while living in America and indicates that tuberculosis existed among the Native Americans before the coming of the Europeans.

1677 Antoni van Leeuwenhoek (1632–1723), Dutch biologist and microscopist, discovers spermatozoa and describes them in a letter he publishes in *Philosophical Transactions* in 1679. In the same year, Johan Ham also sees them microscopically, but the semen he observes comes from a patient suffering from gonorrhea, and Ham concludes that spermatozoa are a consequence of the disease.

1700 Bernardino Ramazzini (1633–1714), Italian physician, publishes the first systematic treatment on occupational diseases. His book, *De Morbis Artificum*, opens up an entirely new department of modern medicine—diseases of trade or occupation and industrial hygiene.

1721 The word "antiseptic" first appears in print.

1730 George Martine performs the first tracheostomy on a patient with diphtheria.

1735 Botulism first described.

1748 John Fothergill describes diphtheria in "Account of the Putrid Sore Throat."

1762 Marcus Anton von Plenciz, Sr. (1705–1786), Austrian physician, expresses the idea that all infectious diseases are caused by living organisms and that there is a specific organism for each disease.

1767 William Heberden demonstrates that chickenpox is not a mild form of smallpox, but a different disease.

1780 George Adams (1750–1795), English engineer, devises the first microtome. This mechanical instrument cuts thin slices for examination under a microscope, thus replacing the imprecise procedure of cutting by hand-held razor.

1789 Polio is first described by Michael Underwood in England.

1796 Edward Jenner (1749–1823) uses cowpox virus to develop a smallpox vaccine. By modern standards, this was human experimentation as Jenner injected healthy eight-year-old James Phillips with cowpox and then after a period of months with smallpox.

1798 Government legislation is passed to establish hospitals in the United States devoted to the care of ill mariners. This initiative leads to the establishment of a Hygenic Laboratory that eventually grows to become the National Institutes of Health.

1800 Marie-François-Xavier Bichat publishes his first major work, *Treatise on Tissues,* which establishes histology as a new scientific discipline. Bichat distinguishes 21 kinds of tissue and relates particular diseases to particular tissues.

1801 A hospital is established in London, England, to treat the victims of typhus.

1802 John Dalton introduces modern atomic theory into the science of chemistry.

1814 The Royal Hospital for Diseases of the Chest is founded in London, England, in an attempt to keep consumptive patients (people with tuberculosis) segregated.

1816 The stethoscope, which is an important tool for diagnosing pneumonia, is introduced by Rene LaËnnec.

1817 Start of first cholera pandemic, which spreads from Bengal to China in the east and to Eygpt in the west.

1818 William Charles Wells suggests the theory of natural selection in an essay dealing with human color variations. He notes that dark-skinned people seem more resistant to tropical diseases than lighter-skinned people. Wells also calls attention to selection carried out by animal breeders. Jerome Lawrence, James Cowles Prichard, and others make similar suggestions, but do not develop their ideas into a coherent and convincing theory of evolution.

1818 Xavier Bichat (1771–1802), French physician, publishes his first major work, *Trait, des membranes en general*, in which he propounds the notion of tissues. This work also founds histology, distinguishing 21 kinds of tissue and relating disease to them.

1820 First United States *Pharmacopoeia* is published.

1824 Start of second cholera pandemic, which penetrates as far as Russia and also reaches England, North America, the Caribbean, and Latin America.

1826 Pierre Bretonneau (1778–1862), French physician, describes and names diptheria in his specification of diseases.

1829 Salicin, the precursor of aspirin, is purified from the bark of the willow tree.

1831 Charles Robert Darwin (1809–1882) begins his historic voyage on the H.M.S. *Beagle* (1831–1836). His observations during the voyage lead to his theory of evolution by means of natural selection.

1835 Jacob Bigelow (1787–1879), American physician, publishes his book *On Self-Limited Diseases* in which he states the commonsense idea that some diseases will simply run their course and subside without the benefit of any treatment from a physician.

1836 Theodor Schwann carries out experiments that refute the theory of the spontaneous generation. He also demonstrates that alcoholic fermentation depends on the action of living yeast cells. The same conclusion is reached independently by Charles Caignard de la Tour.

1837 Pierre-Françs-Olive Rayer (1793–1867), French physician, is the first to describe the disease glanders as found in man and to prove that it is not a form of tuberculosis.

1838 Angelo Dubini (1813–1902), Italian physician, discovers *Ankylostoma duodenale*, the cause of hookworm disease, in the intestinal tract.

1838 Matthias Jakob Schleiden notes that the nucleus first described by Robert Brown is a characteristic of all plant cells. Schleiden describes plants as a community of cells and cell products. He helps establish cell theory and stimulates Theodor Schwann's recognition that animals are also composed of cells and cell products.

1839 Third cholera pandemic begins with entry of British troops in Afghanistan and travels to Persia, Central Asia, Europe, and the Americas.

1841 Friedrich Gustav Jacob Henle (1809–1885), German pathologist and anatomist, publishes his *Allegemeine Anatomie*, which becomes the first systematic textbook of histology (the study of minute tissue structure and includes the first statement of the germ theory of communicable disease).

1842 Edwin Chadwick, a pioneer in sanitary reform, reports that deaths from typhus in 1838 and 1839 in England exceeded those from smallpox.

1842 Oliver Wendell Holmes recommends that surgeons wash their hands using calcium chloride to prevent spread of infection from corpses to patients.

1843 First outbreak of polio in the United States occurs.

1843 Gabriel Andral (1797–1876), French physician, is the first to urge that blood be examined in cases of disease.

1846 American Medical Association establishes a code of ethics for physicians which declares their obligation to treat victims of epidemic diseases even at a risk to their own lives. (See 1912)

1847 A series of yellow fever epidemics sweeps the American Southern states. The epidemics recur for more than thirty years.

1847 The first sexually transmitted disease clinic is opened at the London Docks Hospital.

1849 John Snow (1813–1858), English physician, first states the theory that cholera is a water-borne disease. During a cholera epidemic in London in 1854, Snow breaks the handle of the Broad Street Pump, thereby shutting down the main source of disease transmission during the outbreak.

1849 John Snow publishes the groundbreaking paper "On the Transmission of Cholera."

1855 Third, or Modern, pandemic of plague probably begins in Yunan province, China.

1857 Louis Pasteur demonstrates that lactic acid fermentation is caused by a living organism. Between 1857 and 1880, he performs a series of experiments that refute the doctrine of spontaneous generation. He also introduces vaccines for fowl cholera, anthrax, and rabies, based on attenuated strains of viruses and bacteria.

1858 Rudolf Ludwig Carl Virchow publishes his landmark paper "Cellular Pathology" and establishes the field of cellular pathology. Virchow asserts that all cells arise from preexisting cells (*Omnis cellula e cellula*). He argues that the cell is the ultimate locus of all disease.

1859 Charles Robert Darwin publishes his landmark book *On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection*.

1861 Carl Gegenbaur confirms Theodor Schwann's suggestion that all vertebrate eggs are single cells.

1862 First demonstration of pasteurization.

1864 Fourth cholera pandemic starts and revisits locations of previous pandemics.

1865 An epidemic of rinderpest kills 500,000 cattle in Great Britain. Government inquiries into the outbreak pave the way for the development of contemporary theories of epidemiology and the germ theory of disease.

1865 French physiologist Claude Bernard publishes *Introduction to the Study of Human Experimentation*, which advocates "Never perform an experiment which might be harmful to the patient even if advantageous to science. . . ."

1866 The Austrian botanist and monk Johann Gregor Mendel (1822–1884) discovers the laws of heredity and writes the first of a series of papers on heredity (1866–1869). The papers formulate the laws of hybridization. Mendel's work is disregarded until 1900, when Hugo de Vries rediscovers it. Unbeknownst to both Darwin and Mendel, Mendelian laws provide the scientific framework for the concepts of gradual evolution and continuous variation.

1867 Joseph Lister publishes a study that implicates microorganisms with infection. Based on this, his use of early disinfectants during surgery markedly reduces post-operative infections and death.

1867 Robert Koch establishes the role of bacteria in anthrax, providing the final piece of evidence in support of the germ theory of disease. Koch goes on to formulate postulates that, when fulfilled, confirm bacteria or viruses as the cause of an infection.

1868 Carl August Wunderlich (1815–1877), German physician, publishes his major work on the relation of animal heat or fever to disease. He is the first to recognize that fever is not itself a disease, but is rather a symptom.

1869 Johann Friedrich Miescher discovers nuclein, a new chemical isolated from the nuclei of pus cells. Two years later, he isolates nuclein from salmon sperm. This material comes to be known as nucleic acid.

1871 Ferdinand Julius Cohn coins the term bacterium.

1871 First U.S. city to use a filter on its public water supply is Poughkeepsie, New York. The evidence mounts that much disease is spread by contaminated drinking water.

1873 Franz Anton Schneider describes cell division in detail. His drawings include both the nucleus and chromosomal strands.

1875 Ferdinand Cohn publishes a classification of bacteria in which the genus name *Bacillus* is used for the first time.

1875 Koch's postulates used for the first time to demonstrate that anthrax is caused by *Bacillus anthracis*, validating the germ theory of disease.

1877 Louis Pasteur (1822–1895), French chemist, first distinguishes between aerobic and anaerobic bacteria.

1877 Paul Erlich recognizes the existence of the mast cells of the immune system.

1877 Robert Koch describes new techniques for fixing, staining, and photographing bacteria.

1877 Wilhelm Friedrich Kühne proposes the term enzyme (meaning "in yeast"). Kühne establishes the critical distinction between enzymes, or "ferments," and the microorganisms that produce them.

1878 Joseph Lister publishes a paper describing the role of a bacterium he names *Bacterium lactis* in the souring of milk.

1878 Robert Koch (1843–1910), German bacteriologist, publishes his landmark findings on the etiology or cause of infectious disease. Koch' postulates state that the causative microorganism must be located in a diseased animal, and that after it is cultured or grown, it must then be capable of causing disease in a healthy animal. Finally, the newly-infected animal must yield the same bacteria as those found in the original animal.

1878 Thomas Burrill demonstrates that a plant disease (pear blight) is caused by a bacterium (*Micrococcus amylophorous*).

1879 Albert Nisser (1855–1916) identifies the bacterium *Neiserria gonorrhoeoe* as the cause of gonorrhea.

1880 C. L. Alphonse Laveran isolates malarial parasites in erythrocytes of infected people and demonstrates that the organism can replicate in the cells.

1880 The first issue of the journal *Science* is published by the American Association for the Advancement of Science.

1881 Fifth cholera pandemic begins and is widespread in China and Japan in the Far East, as well as Germany and Russia in Europe, although the disease does not spread in North America.

1881 *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, a major cause of bacterial pneumonia, is discovered independently by Louis Pasteur and George Sternberg.

1882 Angelina Fannie and Walter Hesse in Koch's laboratory develop agar as a solid grow medium for microorganisms. Agar replaces gelatin as the solid growth medium of choice in microbiology.

1882 Friedrich August Johannes Loffler (1852–1915), German bacteriologist, and F. Schulze discover the bacterium causing glanders, a contagious and destructive disease of animals, especially horses, that can be transmitted to humans.

1883 Edwin Theodore Klebs and Frederich Loeffler independently discover *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, the bacterium that causes diphtheria.

1883 Robert Koch discovers *V. cholerae* as the causative agent of cholera in Egypt.

1883 Surgical gowns and headgear begin to be used by surgeons.

1884 Elie Metchnikoff discovers the antibacterial activity of white blood cells, which he calls ''phagocytes,'' and formulates the theory of phagocytosis. He also develops the cellular theory of vaccination.

1884 Hans Christian J. Gram develops the Gram stain, a method of categorizing bacteria into one of two groups (gram-positive and gram-negative) based upon the chemical reaction of the bacteria cell walls to a staining procedure.

1884 Louis Pasteur and coworkers publish a paper entitled *A New Communication on Rabies.* Pasteur proves that the causal agent of rabies can be attenuated and the weakened virus can be used as a vaccine to prevent the disease. This work serves as the basis of future work on virus attenuation, vaccine development, and the concept that variation is an inherent characteristic of viruses.

1885 Francis Galton devises a new statistical tool, the correlation table.

1885 French chemist Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) inoculates a boy, Joseph Meister, against rabies. Meister had been bitten by a dog infected with rabies, and the treatment saved his life. This is the first time Pasteur uses an attenuated (weakened) germ on a human being.

1885 Russian hematologist Antonin Filatov makes the first formal description of mononucleosis.

1885 Theodor Escherich identifies a bacterium inhabiting the human intestinal tract that he names *Bacterium coli* and shows that the bacterium causes infant diarrhea and gastroenteritis. The bacterium is subsequently named *Escherichia coli.*

1886 Camillo Golgi describes two forms of malaria, with fever occurring every two and every three days, respectively.

1887 Julius Richard Petri develops a culture dish that has a lid to exclude airborne contaminants. The innovation is subsequently termed the Petri dish.

1888 Francis Galton publishes *Natural Inheritance,* considered a landmark in the establishment of biometry and statistical studies of variation. Galton also proposes the Law of Ancestral Inheritance, a statistical description of the relative contributions to heredity made by previous generations.

1888 Martinus Beijerinck uses a growth medium enriched with certain nutrients to isolate the bacteria *Rhizobium*, demonstrating that nutritionally-tailored growth media are useful in bacterial isolation.

1888 The diphtheria toxin is discovered by Emile Roux and Alexandre Yersin.

1888 The Institute Pasteur is formed in France.

1890 Emil Adolf von Behring (1854–1917), German bacteriologist, uses his new discovery of antitoxins to develop an antitoxin for diphtheria—a disease that usually brought death to the children it attacked.

1891 First child is treated with the diphtheria antitoxin.

1891 Paul Ehrlich (1854–1915), German bacteriologist, discovers that methyl blue dye immobilizes malaria bacterium and begins searching for other, more potent microbial dyes. (See 1904)

1891 Paul Ehrlich proposes that antibodies are responsible for immunity.

1891 Prussian State dictates that even jailed prisoners must give consent prior to treatment (for tuberculosis).

1891 Robert Koch proposes the concept of delayed type hypersensitivity.

1892 Dmitri Ivanowski demonstrates that filterable material causes tobacco mosaic disease. The infectious agent is subsequently showed to be the tobacco mosaic virus. Ivanowski's discovery heralds the field of virology.

1892 First vaccine for diphtheria becomes available.

1892 Albert Neisser, the discoverer of gonorrhea bacteria, injects human subjects with syphilis, prompting debate and leading to regulations on human experimentation.

1892 Richard Pfeiffer discovers *Haemophilius influenzae*, a cause of both pneumonia and influenza.

1894 Alexandre Yersin isolates *Yersinia (Pasteurella) pestis*, the bacterium responsible for bubonic plague.

1894 Wilhelm Konrad Roentgen discovers x-rays.

1895 Heinrich Dreser, working for the Bayer Company in Germany, produces a drug he thought to be as effective an analgesic as morphine, but without its harmful side effects. Bayer begins mass production of diacetylmorphine, and in 1898, markets the new drug under the brand name ''heroin'' as a cough sedative.

1896 Edmund Beecher Wilson, American zoologist, publishes the first edition of his highly influential treatise *The Cell in Development and Heredity*. Wilson calls attention to the relationship between chromosomes and sex determination.

1896 William Joseph Dibdin (1850–1925), English engineer, and his colleague Schweder improve the sewage disposal systems in England with the introduction of a bacterial system of water purification. These improvements greatly reduce the number of water-borne diseases like cholera and typhoid fever.

1897 American physician William Welch describes and names *Plasmodium falciparum,* a protozoan parasite and cause of malaria.

1898 First state-run sanatorium for tuberculosis in the United States opens in Massachusetts.

1898 Friedrich Loeffler and Paul Frosch publish their *Report on Foot-and-Mouth Disease.* They prove that this animal disease is caused by a filterable virus and suggest that similar agents might cause other diseases.

1898 Martinus Wilhelm Beijerinck (1851–1931), Dutch botanist, discovers and names the causative agent of the tobacco mosaic disease. He describes it as a new type of microscopically-visible organism which eventually comes to be known as a virus.

1898 The First International Congress of Genetics is held in London.

1898 The transmission of plague by flea-infested rodents is shown by French bacteriologist Paul-Louis Simond (1858–1947).

1899 A meeting to organize the Society of American Bacteriologists is held at Yale University. The society will later become the American Society for Microbiology.

1899 George Henry Falkiner Nuttall (1862–1937), American biologist, first summarizes the role of insects, arachnids, and myriapods as transmitters of bacterial and parasitic diseases.

1899 Start of the sixth cholera pandemic, which affects the Far East, apart from sporadic outbreaks in parts of Euorpe.

1900 Karl Landsteiner discovers the blood-agglutination phenomenon and the four major blood types in humans.

1900 Pandemic plague becomes widely disseminated throughout the world, reaching Europe, North and South America, India, the Middle East, Africa, and Australia.

1900 Paul Erlich proposes the theory concerning the formation of antibodies by the immune system.

1900 Walter Reed (1851–1902), American surgeon, discovers that the yellow fever virus is transmitted to humans by a mosquito. This is the first demonstration of a viral cause of a human disease.

1901 Joseph Everett Dutton (1874-1905), English physician, and his colleague J. L. Todd discover the parasite *Trypanosoma gambiense* that is responsible for the African sleeping sickness disease.

1902 Ronald Ross (1857–1932), a British officer with the Indian Medical Service, receives the Nobel Prize for identifying mosquitoes as the transmitter of malaria.

1904 Paul Ehrlich (1854–1915), German bacteriologist, discovers a microbial dye called trypan red that helps destroy the trypanosomes that cause such diseases as sleeping sickness. This is the first such active agent against trypanosomes (parasitic protozoa).

1905 Fritz Richard Schaudinn (1871–1906), German zoologist, discovers *Treponema pallidum*, the organism or parasite causing syphilis. His discovery of this almost invisible parasite is due to his consummate technique and staining methods.

1905 Jules-Jean-Baptiste-Vincent Bordet (1870–1961), Belgian bacteriologist, and his colleague, Octave Gengou, discover the bacillus of whooping cough (*B. pertussis*). Bordet goes on to discover a method of immunization against this dreaded childhood disease.

1906 Charles Nicolle of the Pasteur Institute in Paris shows a link between typhus and lice.

1906 Pure Food and Drugs Act passed in the United States, beginning the organization that would become the FDA (Food and Drug Administration).

1906 Viennese physician Clemens von Pirquet (1874–1929) coins the term allergy to describe the immune reaction to certain compounds.

1907 Alphonse Laveran, a French army surgeon stationed in Algeria, identifies malaria parasites (protozoa) in blood.

1907 Charles Franklin Craig (1872–1950), American physician, and Percy Moreau Ashburn (1872–1940), American surgeon, work in the Phillipines and are the first to prove that dengue fever (also called "breakbone fever") is caused by a virus. (See 1925)

1907 Clemens Peter Pirquet von Cesenatico (1874–1929), Austrian physician, first introduces the cutaneous or skin reaction test for the diagnosis of tuberculosis.

1907 William Bateson urges biologists to adopt the term "genetics" to indicate the importance of the new science of heredity.

1909 Sigurd Orla-Jensen proposes that the physiological reactions of bacteria are primarily important in their classification.

1909 Thomas Hunt Morgan selects the fruit fly *Drosophila* as a model system for the study of genetics. Morgan and his coworkers confirm the chromosome theory of heredity and realize the significance of the fact that certain genes tend to be transmitted together. Morgan postulates the mechanism of "crossing over." His associate, Alfred Henry Sturtevant demonstrates the relationship between crossing over and the rearrangement of genes in 1913.

1909 Walter Reed General Hospital opens in Washington, D.C.

1909 Wilhelm Ludwig Johannsen argues the necessity of distinguishing between the appearance of an organism and its genetic constitution. He invents the terms "gene" (carrier of heredity), "genotype" (an organism's genetic constitution), and "phenotype" (the appearance of the actual organism).

1910 Howard Taylor Ricketts, discoverer of the *Rickettsia* genus of bacteria, dies of the *Rickettsia*-caused disease typhus while investigating an outbreak in Mexico City.

1910 Paul Ehrlich (1854–1915), German bacteriologist, announces his discovery of an effective treatment for syphilis. He names this new drug Salvarsan, and it is now called arsphenamine. His discovery marks the first chemotherapeutic agent for a bacterial disease.

1911 The first known retrovirus, Rous sarcoma virus, is discovered by Peyton Rous, who also showed that the virus could induce cancer.

1912 The United States Public Health Service is established.

1913 Shick designs a skin test which determines immunity to diphtheria.

1914 Frederick William Twort (1877–1950), English bacteriologist, and Felix H. D'Herelle (1873–1949), Canadian-Russian physician, independently discover bacteriophage, viruses which destroy bacteria.

1915 A typhus epidemic in Serbia causes 150,000 deaths.

1915 Stanislaus Prowazek dies of typhus when investigating an outbreak in a Russian prisoner of war camp, having identified *R. prowazekii*, the causative agent.

1915 U.S. Public Health Office allows induction of pellagra in Mississippi prisoners.

1916 Felix Hubert D'Herelle carries out further studies of the agent that destroys bacterial colonies and gives it the name "bacteriophage" (bacteria eating agent). D'Herelle and others unsuccessfully attempted to use bacteriophages as bactericidal therapeutic agents.

1917 D'Arcy Wentworth Thompson publishes *On Growth and Form,* which suggests that the evolution of one species into another occurs as a series of transformations involving the entire organism, rather than a succession of minor changes in parts of the body.

1918 Global influenza pandemic kills more people than numbers of soldiers who died fighting during World War I (1914–1918). By the end of 1918, more than 25 million people die from virulent strain of Spanish influenza.

1918 Thomas Hunt Morgan and coworkers publish *The Physical Basis of Heredity,* a survey of the remarkable development of the new science of genetics.

1919 James Brown uses blood agar to study the destruction of blood cells by the bacterium *Streptococcus*. He observes three reactions that he designates alpha, beta, and gamma.

1919 The Health Organization of the League of Nations was established for the prevention and control of disease around the world.

1920 Data on diphtheria is gathered for the first time in the United States, showing around 13,000 deaths per year.

1920 Sprunt and Evans coined the term infectious mononucleosis, as they described the abnormal mononuclear leukocytes observed in patients with the condition.

1921 Otto Loewi (1873–1961), German-American physiologist, discovers that acetylcholine functions as a neurotransmitter. It is the first such brain chemical to be so identified.

1922 John Stephens describes *P. ovale*.

1924 Albert Jan Kluyver publishes *Unity and Diversity in the Metabolism of Microorganisms*. He demonstrates that different microorganisms have common metabolic pathways of oxidation, fermentation, and synthesis of certain compounds. Kluyver also states that life on Earth depends on microbial activity.

1924 The last urban epidemic of plague in the United States begins in Los Angeles.

1926 James B. Sumner publishes a report on the isolation of the enzyme urease and his proof that the enzyme is a protein. This idea is controversial until 1930 when John Howard Northrop confirms Sumner's ideas by crystallizing pepsin. Sumner, Northrop, and Wendell Meredith Stanley ultimately share the Nobel Prize for chemistry in 1946.

1927 Thomas Rivers publishes a paper that differentiates bacteria from viruses, establishing virology as a field of study that is distinct from bacteriology.

1928 Fred Griffith discovers that certain strains of pneumococci could undergo some kind of transmutation of type. After injecting mice with living R type pneumococci and heat-killed S type, Griffith is able to isolate living virulent bacteria from the infected mice. Griffith suggests that some unknown "principle" had transformed the harmless R strain of the pneumococcus to the virulent S strain.

1928 Philip and Cecil Drinker of Harvard School of Public Health introduce the "iron lung" for treatment of paralytic polio.

1928 Scottish biochemist Alexander Fleming (1881–1955) discovers penicillin. In his published report (1929), Fleming observes that the mold *Penicillium notatum* inhibits the growth of some bacteria. This is the first anti-bacterial, and it opens a new era of "wonder drugs."

1929 Alexander Fleming publishes account of bacteriolytic power of penicillin.

1929 Francis O. Holmes introduces the technique of "local lesion" as a means of measuring the concentration of tobacco mosaic virus. The method becomes extremely important in virus purification.

1929 Willard Myron Allen, American physician, and George Washington Corner, American anatomist, discover progesterone. They demonstrate that it is necessary for the maintenance of pregnancy.

1930 Max Theiler demonstrates the advantages of using mice as experimental animals for research on animal viruses. Theiler uses mice in his studies of the yellow fever virus.

1930 Ronald A. Fisher publishes *Genetical Theory of Natural Selection*, a formal analysis of the mathematics of selection.

1930 United States Food, Drug, and Insecticide Administration is renamed Food and Drug Administration (FDA).

1932 At Tuskegee, Alabama, African-American sharecroppers become unknowing and unwilling subjects of experimentation on the untreated natural course of syphilis. Even after penicillin came into use in the 1940's, the men remained untreated.

1932 William J. Elford and Christopher H. Andrewes develop methods of estimating the sizes of viruses by using a series of membranes as filters. Later studies prove that the viral sizes obtained by this method were comparable to those obtained by electron microscopy.

1933 "Regulation on New Therapy and Experimentation" decreed in Germany.

1934 Discovery of chloroquine is announced by Hans Andersag at Bayer, in Germany

1934 J.B.S. Haldane presents the first calculations of the spontaneous mutation frequency of a human gene.

1934 John Marrack begins a series of studies that leads to the formation of the hypothesis governing the association between an antigen and the corresponding antibody.

1935 Wendall Meredith Stanley (1904–1971), American biochemist, discovers that viruses are partly protein-based. By purifying and crystallizing viruses, he enables scientists to identify the precise molecular structure and propagation modes of several viruses.

1936 George P. Berry and Helen M. Dedrick report that the Shope virus could be "transformed" into myxomatosis/Sanarelli virus. This virological curiosity was variously referred to as "transformation," "recombination," and "multiplicity of reactivation." Subsequent research suggests that it is the first example of genetic interaction between animal viruses, but some scientists warn that the phenomenon might indicate the danger of reactivation of virus particles in vaccines and in cancer research.

1937 American researcher H. R. Cox cultures *Rickettsiae* in the yolks of fertilized hens' eggs, opening the door to research into a vaccine.

1938 Emory L. Ellis and Max Delbrück perform studies on phage replication that mark the beginning of modern phage work. They introduce the "one-step growth" experiment, which demonstrates that after bacteriophages attack bacteria, replication of the virus occurs within the bacterial host during a "latent period," after which viral progeny are released in a "burst."

1939 Ernest Chain and H. W. Florey refine the purification of penicillin, allowing the mass production of the antibiotic.

1939 Paul Müller in Switzerland discovers the insecticidal properties of DDT.

1939 Richard E. Shope reports that the swine influenza virus survived between epidemics in an intermediate host. This discovery is an important step in revealing the role of intermediate hosts in perpetuating specific diseases.

1941 George W. Beadle and Edward L. Tatum publish their classic study on the biochemical genetics entitled Genetic Control of Biochemical Reactions in Neurospora. Beadle and Tatum irradiate red bread mold *Neurospora* and prove that genes produce their effects by regulating particular enzymes. This work leads to the one-gene-one enzyme theory.

1941 Norman M. Gregg of Australia discovers that rubella during pregnancy can cause congenital abnormalities. Children of mothers who had rubella (German measles) during their pregnancy are found to suffer from blindness, deafness, and heart disease.

1941 The term "antibiotic" is coined by Selman Waksman.

1942 Jules Freund and Katherine McDermott identify adjuvants (e.g., paraffin oil) that act to boost antibody production.

1942 Luria and Max Delbrück demonstrate statistically that inheritance of genetic characteristics in bacteria follows the principles of genetic inheritance proposed by Charles Darwin. For their work, the two (along with Alfred Day Hershey) are awarded the 1969 Nobel Prize in Medicine or Physiology.

1942 Neil Hamilton Fairley, the Australian physician, wins a Fellowship of the Royal Society for work on anemia caused by the rupture of red blood cells in malaria.

1943 At University of Cincinnati Hospital experiments are performed using mentally disabled patients.

1943 Penicillin starts to become available as a therapy for Allied troops.

1944 Oswald T. Avery, Colin M. MacLeod, and Maclyn McCarty publish a landmark paper on the pneumococcus transforming principle. The paper is entitled *Studies on the chemical nature of the substance inducing transformation of pneumococcal types.* Avery suggests that the transforming principle seems to be deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), but contemporary ideas about the structure of nucleic acids suggest that

DNA does not possess the biological specificity of the hypothetical genetic material.

1944 Selman Waksman introduces streptomycin.

1944 To combat battle fatigue during World War II (1939–1945), nearly 200 million amphetamine tablets are issued to American soldiers stationed in Great Britain during the war.

1944 The United States Public Health Service Act is passed.

1944 University of Chicago Medical School professor Dr. Alf Alving conducts malaria experiments on more than 400 Illinois prisoners.

1945 Joshua Lederberg and Edward L. Tatum demonstrate genetic recombination in bacteria.

1946 Felix Bloch and Edward Mills Purcell develop nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) as viable tool for observation and analysis.

1946 Hermann J. Muller is awarded the Nobel Prize in Medicine or Physiology for his contributions to radiation genetics.

1946 Max Delbrück and W. T. Bailey, Jr. publish a paper entitled *Induced Mutations in Bacterial Viruses.* Despite some confusion about the nature of the phenomenon in question, this paper establishes the fact that genetic recombinations occur during mixed infections with bacterial viruses. Alfred Hershey and R. Rotman make the discovery of genetic recombination in bacteriophage simultaneously and independently. Hershey and his colleagues prove that this phenomenon can be used for genetic analyses. They construct a genetic map of phage particles and show that phage genes can be arranged in a linear fashion.

1946 Nazi physicians and scientists tried by international court at Nuremberg.

1947 Four years after the mass-production and use of penicillin, microbial resistance is detected.

1947 Nuremberg Code issued regarding voluntary consent of human subjects.

1948 Barbara McClintock publishes her research on transposable regulatory elements ("jumping genes") in maize. Her work was not appreciated until similar phenomena were discovered in bacteria and fruit flies in the 1960s and 1970s. McClintock was awarded the Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine in 1983.

1948 Chloramphenicol and tetracycline are shown to be effective treatments for typhus.

1948 James V. Neel reports evidence that the sickle-cell disease is inherited as a simple Mendelian autosomal recessive trait.

1948 World Health Organization (WHO) is formed. The WHO subsequently becomes the principle international organization managing public health related issues on a global scale. Headquartered in Geneva, the WHO becomes, by 2002, an organization of more than 190 member countries. The organization contributes to international public health in areas including disease prevention and control, promotion of good health, addressing disease outbreaks, initiatives to eliminate diseases (e.g., vaccination programs), and development of treatment and prevention standards.

1949 John F. Endes, Thomas H. Weller, and Frederick C. Robbins publish "Cultivation of Polio Viruses in Cultures of Human Embryonic Tissues." The report by Enders and coworkers is a landmark in establishing techniques for the cultivation of poliovirus in cultures on non-neural tissue and for further virus research. The technique leads to the polio vaccine and other advances in virology.

1949 Macfarlane Burnet and his colleagues begin studies that lead to the immunological tolerance hypothesis and the clonal selection theory. Burnet receives the 1960 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for this research.

1950 Dr. Joseph Stokes of the University of Pennsylvania infects 200 women prisoners with viral hepatitis.

1950 Robert Hungate develops the roll-tube culture technique, which is the first technique that allows anaerobic bacteria to be grown in culture.

1951 Esther M. Lederberg discovers a lysogenic strain of *Escherichia coli* K12 and isolates a new bacteriophage, called lambda.

1951 Rosalind Franklin obtains sharp x-ray diffraction photographs of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA).

1951 The eradication of malaria from the United States is announced.

1951 University of Pennsylvania under contract with U.S. Army conducts psychopharmacological experiments on hundreds of Pennsylvania prisoners.

1952 Alfred Hershey and Martha Chase publish their landmark paper "Independent Functions of Viral Protein and Nucleic Acid in Growth of Bacteriophage." The famous "blender experiment" suggests that DNA is the genetic material.

1952 James T. Park and Jack L. Strominger demonstrate that penicillin blocks the synthesis of the peptidoglycan of bacteria. This represents the first demonstration of the action of a natural antibiotic.

1952 Karl Maramorosch demonstrate that some viruses could multiply in both plants and insects. This work leads to new questions about the origins of viruses.

1952 Joshua Lederberg and Esther Lederberg develop the replica plating method that allows for the rapid screening of large numbers of genetic markers. They use the technique to demonstrate that resistance to antibacterial agents such as antibiotics and viruses is not induced by the presence of the antibacterial agent.

1952 Polio peaks in the United States, with 57,268 cases recorded.

1952 Renato Dulbecco develops a practical method for studying animal viruses in cell cultures. His so-called plaque method is comparable to that used in studies of bacterial viruses, and the method proves to be important in genetic studies of viruses. These methods are described in his paper *Production of Plaques in Monolayer Tissue Cultures by Single Particles of an Animal Virus.*

1952 Rosalind Franklin completes a series of x-ray crystallography studies of two forms of DNA. Her colleague, Maurice Wilkins, gives information about her work to James Watson.

1952 Selman Abraham Waksman, Russian-American microbiologist, is awarded the Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine for his discovery of streptomycin, the first antibiotic effective against tuberculosis.

1952 William G. Gochenour of the United States demonstrates that pretibial fever (also called Fort Bragg Fever) is not caused by a virus but rather is an infection caused by a microorganism called *Leptospira.*

1952 William Hayes isolates a strain of *E. coli* that produces recombinants thousands of times more frequently than previously observed. The new strain of K12 is named Hfr (high-frequency recombination) by Hayes.

1953 James D. Watson and Francis H. C. Crick publish two landmark papers in the journal *Nature*: "Molecular structure of nucleic acids: a structure for deoxyribonucleic acid," and "Genetical implications of the structure of deoxyribonucleic acid." Watson and Crick propose a double helical model for DNA and call attention to the genetic implications of their model. Their model is based, in part, on the x-ray crystallographic work of Rosalind Franklin and the biochemical work of Erwin Chargaff. Their model explains how the genetic material is transmitted.

1953 Jonas Salk begins testing a polio vaccine comprised of a mixture of killed viruses.

1954 John Enders, Thomas Weller and Frederick Robbins of Harvard School of Public Health receive the Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine for their work on poliovirus

1954 John Franklin Enders (1897-1985), American micrologist, and Thomas Peebles, American pediatrician, develop the first vaccine for measles. A truly practical and successful vaccine requires more time. (See 1963)

1954 Jonas Edward Salk, American virologist, produces the first successful anti-poliomyelitis vaccine, which prevents paralytic polio. It is soon (1955) followed by the Polish-American virologist, Albert Bruce Sabin's (1906-1993) development of the first oral vaccine. (See 1959)

1954 Thomas Weller isolated the varicella zoster virus from chickenpox lesions.

1955 Fred L. Schaffer and Carlton E. Schwerdt report on their successful crystallization of the polio virus. Their achievement is the first successful crystallization of an animal virus.

1955 Jonas Salk's inactivated polio vaccine is approved for use.

1955 National Institutes of Health organizes a Division of Biologics Control within FDA, following death from faulty polio vaccine.

1956 Alfred Gierer and Gerhard Schramm demonstrate that naked RNA from tobacco mosaic virus is infectious. Subsequently, infectious RNA preparations are obtained for certain animal viruses.

1956 Niels Kai Jerne, Danish physician, proposes the clonal selection theory of antibody selection to explain how white blood cells are able to produce a large range of antibodies.

1956 Researchers start hepatitis experiments on mentally disabled children at The Willowbrook State School.

1957 Alick Isaacs (1921-1967), Scottish virologist, demonstrates that antibodies act only against bacteria. This means that antibodies are not one of the body's natural forms of defense against viruses. This knowledge leads eventually to the discovery of interferon this same year by Isaacs and his colleague, Jean Lindenmann of Switzerland. They find that the generation of a small amount of protein is the body's first line of defense against a virus. (See c.1968)

1957 Alick Isaacs and Jean Lindenmann publish their pioneering report on the drug interferon, a protein produced by interaction between a virus and an infected cell that can interfere with the multiplication of viruses.

1957 François Jacob and Elie L. Wollman demonstrate that the single linkage group of *Escherichia coli* is circular and suggest that the different linkage groups found in different Hfr strains result from the insertion at different points of a factor in the circular linkage group that determines the rupture of the circle.

1957 The World Health Organization advances the oral polio vaccine developed by Albert Sabin (1906-1993) as a safer alternative to the Salk vaccine.

1958 George W. Beadle, Edward L. Tatum, and Joshua Lederberg were awarded the Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine. Beadle and Tatum were honored for the work in *Neurospora* that led to the one gene-one enzyme theory. Lederberg was honored for discoveries concerning genetic recombination and the organization of the genetic material of bacteria.

1958 Matthew Meselson and Frank W. Stahl publish their landmark paper "The replication of DNA in *Escherichia coli,*" which demonstrated that the replication of DNA follow the semiconservative model.

1959 Albert Bruce Sabin (1906-1993), Polish-American virologist, announces successful results from testing live attenuated polio vaccine. His vaccine eventually is preferred over the Salk vaccine, since it can be administered orally and offers protection with a single dose.

1959 English biochemist Rodney Porter begins studies that lead to the discovery of the structure of antibodies. Porter receives the 1972 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for this research.

1959 Robert L. Sinsheimer reports that bacteriophage ØX174, which infects *Escherichia coli*, contains a single-stranded DNA molecule, rather than the expected double-stranded DNA. This provides the first example of a single-stranded DNA genome.

1959 Sydney Brenner and Robert W. Horne publish a paper entitled *A Negative Staining Method for High Resolution Electron Microscopy of Viruses.* The two researchers develop a method for studying the architecture of viruses at the molecular level using the electron microscope.

1961 Francis Crick, Sydney Brenner, and others propose that a molecule called transfer RNA uses a three base code in the manufacture of proteins.

1961 French pathologist Jacques Miller discovers the role of the thymus in cellular immunity.

1961 Marshall Warren Nirenberg synthesizes a polypeptide using an artificial messenger RNA (a synthetic RNA containing only the base uracil) in a cell-free protein-synthesizing system. The resulting polypeptide only contains the amino acid phenylalanine, indicating that UUU was the codon for phenylalanine. This important step in deciphering the genetic code is described in the landmark paper by Nirenberg and J. Heinrich Matthaei, *The Dependence of Cell-Free Synthesis in E. coli upon Naturally Occurring or Synthetic Polyribonucleotides.* This work establishes the messenger concept and a system that could be used to work out the relationship between the sequence of nucleotides in the genetic material and amino acids in the gene product.

1961 Noel Warner establishes the physiological distinction between the cellular and humoral immune responses.

1962 James D. Watson, Francis Crick, and Maurice Wilkins are awarded the Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine for their work in elucidating the structure of DNA.

1962 United States Congress passes Kefauver-Harris Drug Amendments that shift the burden of proof of clinical safety to drug manufacturers. For the first time, drug manufacturers had to prove their products were safe and effective before they could be sold.

1963 Albert Sabin's live polio vaccine is approved for use.

1964 Michael Epstein and Yvonne Barr discover the Epstein-Barr virus that is the cause of mononucleosis.

1964 Retrovir is developed as a cancer treatment. While not useful for cancer, the drug subsequently becomes the first drug approved for the treatment of AIDS.

1964 World Medical Association adopts Helsinki Declaration.

1965 Anthrax vaccine adsorbed (AVA), is approved for use in the United States.

1965 François Jacob, André Lwoff, and Jacques Monod are awarded the Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine for their discoveries concerning genetic control of enzymes and virus synthesis.

1966 Bruce Ames develops a test to screen for compounds that cause mutations, including those that are cancer causing. The so-called Ames test utilizes the bacterium *Salmonella typhimurium.*

1966 Daniel Carleton Gajdusek, American pediatrician, transfers for the first time a viral disease of the central nervous system from humans to another species. The viral disease kuru is found in New Guinea and is spread by the ritual eating of the deceased's brains.

1966 FDA and National Academy of Sciences begin investigation of effectiveness of drugs previously approved because they were thought safe.

1966 Marshall Nirenberg and Har Gobind Khorana lead teams that decipher the genetic code. All of the 64 possible triplet combinations of the four bases (the codons) and their associated amino acids are determined and described.

1966 Merck, Sharp, and Dohme Laboratories began research into a varicella-zoster vaccine.

1966 *New England Journal of Medicine* article exposes unethical Tuskegee syphilis study.

1966 NIH Office for Protection of Research Subjects ("OPRR") created.

1966 Paul D. Parman and Harry M. Myer, Jr., develop a live-virus rubella vaccine.

1967 A hemorrhagic fever outbreak in Marburg, Germany occurs. The virus responsible is subsequently named the marburg virus, and the disease called marburg hemorrhagic fever.

1967 British physician M. H. Pappworth publishes "Human Guinea Pigs," advising "No doctor has the right to choose martyrs for science or for the general good."

1968 FDA administratively moves to Public Health Service.

1968 Mark Steven Ptashne and Walter Gilbert independently identify the bacteriophage genes that are the repressors of the lac operon.

1968 Robert W. Holley, Har Gobind Khorana, and Marshall W. Nirenberg are awarded the Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine for their interpretation of the genetic code and its function in protein synthesis.

1968 Werner Arber discovers that bacteria defend themselves against viruses by producing DNA-cutting enzymes. These enzymes quickly become important tools for molecular biologists.

1969 By Executive Order, the United States renounces first-use of biological weapons and restricts future weapons research programs to issues concerning defensive responses (e.g., immunization, detection, etc.).

1969 Jonathan R. Beckwith, American molecular biologist, and colleagues isolate a single gene.

1969 Max Delbrück, Alfred D. Hershey, and Salvador E. Luria are awarded the Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine for their discoveries concerning the replication mechanism and the genetic structure of viruses.

1969 United States Surgeon General William Stewart announces: "The time has come to close the book on infectious diseases."

1970 First outbreak of drug-resistant tuberculosis recorded in the United States.

1970 Howard Martin Temin and David Baltimore independently discover reverse transcriptase in viruses. Reverse transcriptase is an enzyme that catalyzes the transcription of RNA into DNA.

1972 Biological and Toxin Weapons Convention first signed. BWC prohibits the offensive weaponization of biological agents (e.g., anthrax spores). The BWC also prohibits the transformation of biological agents with established legitimate and sanctioned purposes into agents of a nature and quality that could be used to effectively induce illness or death.

1972 Introduction of amoxcillin, a drug related to penicillin, which is a treatment of choice for bacterial pneumonia.

1972 Mishiaka Takahashi isolated the varicella virus from a 3-year-old patient and named it Oka, after the patient's name. The isolated virus was later used by Merck to develop a vaccine.

1972 Paul Berg and Herbert Boyer produce the first recombinant DNA molecules.

1972 Recombinant technology emerges as one of the most powerful techniques of molecular biology. Scientists are able to splice together pieces of DNA to form recombinant genes. As the potential uses, therapeutic and industrial, became increasingly clear, scientists and venture capitalists establish biotechnology companies.

1973 Concerns about the possible hazards posed by recombinant DNA technologies, especially work with tumor viruses, leads to the establishment of a meeting at Asilomar, California. The proceedings of this meeting are subsequently published by the Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory as a book entitled *Biohazards in Biological Research.*

1973 Herbert Wayne Boyer and Stanley H. Cohen create recombinant genes by cutting DNA molecules with restriction enzymes. These experiments mark the beginning of genetic engineering.

1974 National Research Act establishes "The Common Rule" for protection of human subjects.

1974 Peter Doherty and Rolf Zinkernagl discover the basis of immune determination of self and non-self.

1975 César Milstein and George Kohler create monoclonal antibodies.

1975 David Baltimore, Renato Dulbecco, and Howard Temin share the Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine for their discoveries concerning the interaction between tumor viruses and the genetic material of the cell and the discovery of reverse transcriptase.

1975 HHS promulgates Title 45 of Federal Regulations titled "Protection of Human Subjects," requiring appointment and utilization of Institutional Review Board (IRB).

1976 First outbreak of Ebola virus observed in Zaire, resulting in more than 300 cases with a 90% death rate.

1976 Swine flu breaks identified in soldiers stationed in New Jersey. Virus identified as H1N1 virus causes concern due to its similarities to H1N1 responsible for Spanish Flu pandemic. President Gerald Ford calls for emergency vaccination program. More than 20 deaths result from Guillain-Barre syndrome related to the vaccine.

1977 Carl R. Woese and George E. Fox publish an account of the discovery of a third major branch of living beings, the Archaea. Woese suggests that an rRNA database could be used to generate phylogenetic trees.

1977 Earliest known AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome) victims in the United States are two homosexual men in New York who are diagnosed as suffering from Kaposi's sarcoma.

1977 Frederick Sanger develops the chain termination (dideoxy) method for sequencing DNA, and uses the method to sequence the genome of a microorganism.

1977 The first known human fatality from H5N1 avian flu occurs in Hong Kong.

1977 The last reported smallpox case is recorded. Ultimately, the World Health Organization (WHO) declares the disease eradicated.

1979 National Commission issues Belmont Report.

1979 The last case of wild poliovirus infection is recorded in the United States.

1980 Congress passes the Bayh-Dole Act, the Act is amended by the Technology Transfer Act in 1986.

1980 In *Diamond v. Chakrabarty* the U.S. Supreme Court rules that a genetically modified bacterium can be patented.

1980 Researchers successfully introduce a human gene, which codes for the protein interferon, into a bacterium.

1980 The FDA promulgates 21 CFR 50.44 prohibiting use of prisoners as subjects in clinical trials.

1981 AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome) is officially recognized by the U.S. Center for Disease Control, and the first clinical description of this disease is made. It soon becomes recognized that AIDS is an infectious disease caused by a virus that spreads virtually exclusively by infected blood or body fluids.

1981 First disease-causing human retrovirus, human T-cell leukemia virus, discovered.

1981 The first cases of AIDS are reported among previously healthy young men in Los Angeles, California, and New York presenting with *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia and Kaposi's sarcoma.

1982 The U.S. Food and Drug Administration approves the first genetically engineered drug, a form of human insulin produced by bacteria.

1983 *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 is identified as a human pathogen.

1983 Luc Montainer and Robert Gallo discover the human immunodeficiency virus that causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.

1984 Niels Kai Jerne, Danish-English immunologist, Georges J. F. Kohler, German immunologist, and Cesar Milstein, Argentinian immunologist, are awarded the Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine for theories concerning the specificity in development and control of the immune system and the discovery of the principle for production of monoclonal antibodies.

1984 WHO begins a program to control trypanosomiasis.

1985 Alec Jeffreys develops "genetic fingerprinting," a method of using DNA polymorphisms (unique sequences of DNA) to identify individuals. The method, which has been used in paternity, immigration, and murder cases, is generally referred to as "DNA fingerprinting."

1985 First vaccine for *H. influenzae* type B is licensed for use.

1985 Japanese molecular biologist Susuma Tonegawa discovers the genes that code for immunoglobulins. He receives the 1986 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for this discovery.

1985 Kary Mullis, who was working at Cetus Corporation, develops the polymerase chain reaction (PCR), a new method of amplifying DNA. This technique quickly becomes one of the most powerful tools of molecular biology. Cetus patents PCR and sells the patent to Hoffman-LaRoche, Inc. in 1991.

1986 Congress passes the National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act, requiring patient information on vaccines and reporting of adverse events after vaccination.

1986 First genetically-engineered vaccine approved for human use is the hepatitis B vaccine. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration gives its approval.

1986 First license to market a living organism that was produced by genetic engineering is granted by the U.S. Department of Agriculture. It allows Biologics Corporation to sell a virus that is used as a vaccine against a herpes disease in pigs.

1986 International Committee on the Taxonomy of Viruses officially names the AIDS virus as HIV (human immunosufficiency virus).

1987 An illness outbreak in Prince Edward Island, Canada, which sickens over 100 people and kills three, leads to the first isolation and identification of domoic acid.

1987 Maynard Olson creates and names yeast artificial chromosomes (YACs), which provided a technique to clone long segments of DNA.

1987 The U.S. Congress charters a Department of Energy advisory committee, the Health and Environmental Research Advisory Committee (HERAC), which recommends a 15-year, multidisciplinary, scientific, and technological undertaking to map and sequence the human genome. DOE designates multidisciplinary human genome centers. National Institute of General Medical Sciences at the National Institutes of Health (NIH NIGMS) began funding genome projects.

1988 First report of vancomycin-resistant enterococci, a type of Streptococcus that is resistant to almost all antiobitics.

1988 The Human Genome Organization (HUGO) is established by scientists in order to coordinate international efforts to sequence the human genome. The Human Genome Project officially adopts the goal of determining the entire sequence of DNA comprising the human chromosomes.

1988 The World Health Organization (WHO) and its partners announce the Global Polio Eradication Initiative.

1989 Ebola-Reston virus is the source of an outbreak at an animal facility in Virginia. The outbreak becomes the basis for the best-selling book "The Hot Zone."

1989 Sidney Altman and Thomas R. Cech are awarded the Nobel Prize in chemistry for their discovery of ribozymes (RNA molecules with catalytic activity). Cech proves that RNA could function as a biocatalyst as well as an information carrier.

1990 Only 24 cases of diphtheria reported in the United States during preceding ten-year period.

1991 Cholera returns to the Western Hemisphere when an outbreak in Peru spreads to other Latin American countries.

1991 World Health Organization announces CIOMS Guidelines (the International Ethical Guidelines for Biomedical Research Involving Human Subjects).

1992 Craig Venter establishes The Institute for Genomic Research (TIGR) in Rockville, Maryland. TIGR later sequences the genome of *Haemophilus influenzae* and many other bacterial genomes.

1993 An international research team, led by Daniel Cohen, of the Center for the Study of Human Polymorphisms in Paris, produces a rough map of all 23 pairs of human chromosomes.

1993 Beginning in April, a five-week contamination of the drinking water supply of Milwaukee, Wisconsin, by *Cryptosporidium parvum* sickens 400,000 people and kills an estimated 104 people.

1993 Hanta virus emerged in the United States in a 1993 outbreak on a "Four Corners" (the juncture of Utah, Colorado, New Mexico, Arizona) area Native American Reservation. The resulting Hanta pulmonary syndrome (HPS) had a 43% mortality rate.

1993 Outbreaks in Moscow and St. Petersburg mark the return of epidemic diphtheria to the Western world.

1994 AZT (zidovudine) approved by the FDA for use in reducing maternal-fetal HIV transmission.

1994 DOE announces the establishment of the Microbial Genome Project as a spin-off of the Human Genome Project.

1994 Ebola-Ivory Coast virus discovered.

1994 Geneticists determine that DNA repair enzymes perform several vital functions, including preserving genetic information and protecting the cell from cancer.

1994 The WHO declares the Americas free of polio.

1994 The WHO reports the start of epidemics of plague in Malawi, Mozambique, and India after 15 years absence.

1995 Edward B. Lewis, Christiane Nüsslein-Volhard, and Eric F. Wieschaus, developmental biologists, shared the Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine to cover discrimination based on genetic information related to illness, disease, or other conditions.

1995 Peter Funch and Reinhardt Moberg Kristensen create a new phylum, Cycliophora, for a novel invertebrate called *Symbion pandora*, which is found living in the mouths of Norwegian lobsters.

1995 Public awareness of potential use of chemical or biological weapons by a terrorist group increases following an Aum Shinrikyo, a Japanese cult, attack, which releases sarin gas in a Tokyo subway, killing a dozen people and sending thousands to the hospital.

1995 The U.S. FDA approved the varicella-zoster vaccine developed by Merck for vaccinations of persons 12 months of age and older.

1995 The Programme Against African Trypanosomiasis (PAAT) is created.

1995 The sequence of *Mycoplasma genitalium* is completed. *M. genitalium*, regarded as the smallest known bacterium, is considered a model of the minimum number of genes needed for independent existence.

1996 FDA approves the antidepressant buproprion (Zyban) and a nicotine nasal spray for the treatment of nicotine dependence.

1996 H5N1 avian flu virus is identified in Guangdong, China.

1996 International participants in the genome project meet in Bermuda and agree to formalize the conditions of data access. The agreement, known as the "Bermuda Principles," calls for the release of sequence data into public databases within 24 hours.

1996 Researchers C. Cheng and L. Olson demonstrate that the spinal cord can be regenerated in adult rats. Experimenting on rats with severed spinal cords, Cheng and Olson use peripheral nerves to connect white matter and gray matter.

1996 Researchers find that abuse and violence can alter a child's brain chemistry, placing him or her at risk for various problems, including drug abuse, cognitive disabilities, and mental illness, later in life.

1996 Scientists discover a link between autoptosis (cellular suicide, a natural process whereby the body eliminates useless cells) gone awry and several neurodegenerative conditions, including Alzheimer's disease.

1996 Scientists report further evidence that individuals with two mutant copies of the CC-CLR-5 gene are generally resistant to HIV infection.

1996 The Health Care Portability and Accountability Act incorporates provisions to prohibit the use of genetic information in certain health-insurance eligibility decisions. The Department of Health and Human Services was charged with the enforcement of health-information privacy provisions.

1996 U.S. Comprehensive Methamphetamine Control Act increases penalties for the manufacture, distribution, and possession of methamphetamines, as well as the reagents and chemicals needed to make it.

1996 William R. Bishai and co-workers report that SigF, a gene in the tuberculosis bacterium, enables the bacterium to enter a dormant stage.

1997 FDA reports and investigates correlation of heart valve disease in patients using phen-fen drug combination for weight loss. Similar reports were reported for patients using only dexfenluramine or fenfluramine. The FDA noted that the combination phen-fen treatment had not received FDA approval.

1997 Institute of Medicine (IOM), a branch of the National Academy of Sciences, publishes the report, *Marijuana: Assessing the Science Base*, which concludes that cannabinoids show significant promise as analgesics, appetite stimulants, and anti-emetics, and that further research into producing these medicines is warranted.

1997 Mickey Selzer, neurologist at the University of Pennsylvania, and co-workers, find that in lampreys, which have a remarkable ability to regenerate a severed spinal cord, neurofilament messenger RNA effects the regeneration process by literally pushing the growing axons and moving them forward.

1997 The DNA sequence of *Escherichia coli* is completed.

1997 While performing a cloning experiment, Christof Niehrs, a researcher at the German Center for Cancer Research, identifies a protein responsible for the creation of the head in a frog embryo.

1997 William Jacobs and Barry Bloom create a biological entity that combines the characteristics of a bacterial virus and a plasmid (a

DNA structure that functions and replicates independently of the chromosomes). This entity is capable of triggering mutations in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.

1997 Outbreaks of highly pathogenic H5N1 influenza are reported in poultry at farms and live animal markets in Hong Kong.

1998 A live, orally-administered rotavirus vaccine is approved for use in the United States. Use was discontinued in 1999 due to complications in some vaccinated children.

1998 Craig Venter forms a company (later named Celera), and predicts that the company would decode the entire human genome within three years. Celera plans to use a "whole genome shotgun" method, which would assemble the genome without using maps. Venter says that his company would not follow the Bermuda principles concerning data release.

1998 U.S. Department of Energy (Office of Science) funds bacterial artificial chromosome and sequencing projects.

1998 Scientists find that an adult human's brain can, with certain stimuli, replace cells. This discovery heralds potential breakthroughs in neurology.

1998 Sibutramine (Meridia), introduced as a weight-loss drug. Sibutramine inhibits the reuptake of the brain chemicals norepinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin, but does not promote monoamine release like the amphetamines.

1998 The World Health Organization reports a resurgence in tuberculosis cases worldwide; TB is killing more people than at any other point in history. Recommends Directly Observed Therapy (DOT) treatment, which is 95% effective in curing patients, even in developing nations.

1999 Pharmaceutical research in Japan leads to the discovery of donepezil (Aricept), the first drug intended to help ward off memory loss in Alzheimer's disease and other age-related dementias.

1999 Scientists announce the complete sequencing of the DNA making up human chromosome 22. The first complete human chromosome sequence is published in December 1999.

1999 The National Institutes of Health and the Office for Protection from Research Risks (OPRR) require researchers conducting or overseeing human subjects to ethics training.

1999 The public genome project responds to Craig Venter's challenge with plans to produce a draft genome sequence by 2000. Most of the sequencing is done in five centers, known as the "G5": the Whitehead Institute for Biomedical Research in Cambridge, MA; the Sanger Centre near Cambridge, UK; Baylor College of Medicine in Houston, TX; Washington University in St. Louis, MO; the DOE's Joint Genome Institute (JGI) in Walnut Creek, CA.

2000 On June 26, 2000, leaders of the public genome project and Celera announce the completion of a working draft of the entire human genome sequence. Ari Patrinos of the DOE helps mediate disputes between the two groups so that a fairly amicable joint announcement could be presented at the White House in Washington, D.C.

2000 Office for Protection from Research Risks (OPRR) becomes part of the Department of Health and Human Services, Office of Human Research Protection (OHRP).

2000 The federal government approves irradiation of raw meat, the only technology known to kill *E. coli* O157 bacteria while preserving the integrity of the meat.

2000 The first volume of *Annual Review of Genomics and Human Genetics* is published. Genomics is defined as the new science dealing with the identification and characterization of genes and their arrangement in chromosomes and human genetics as the science devoted to understanding the origin and expression of human individual uniqueness.

2000 The municipal water supply of Walkerton, Ontario, Canada, is contaminated in the summertime by a strain of the bacterium *Escherichia coli* O157:H7, sickening 2,000 people and killing 7.

2000 The WHO declares the Western Pacific region, including China, free of polio.

2001 *American Journal of Psychiatry* publishes studies providing evidence that methamphetamine can cause brain damage that results in slower motor and cognitive functioning—even in users who take the drug for less than a year.

2001 In February, the complete draft sequence of the human genome is published. The public sequence data is published in the British journal *Nature* and the Celera sequence is published in the American journal *Science*. Increased knowledge of the human genome allows greater specificity in pharmacological research and drug interaction studies.

2001 Microbiologists reveal that bacteria possess an internal protein structure similar to that of human cells.

2001 President George W. Bush announces the United States will allow and support limited forms of stem cell research.

2001 Researchers at Eli Lilly in Minneapolis sequence the genome of *Streptoccocus pneumoniae*.

2001 Scientists from the Whitehead Institute announce test results that show patterns of errors in cloned animals that might explain why such animals die early and exhibit a number of developmental problems. The report stimulates new debate on ethical issues related to cloning.

2001 Study entitled *Global Illicit Drug Trends* conducted by the United Nations Office for Drug Control and Crime Prevention (ODCCP), estimates that 14 million people use cocaine worldwide. Although cocaine use leveled off, the United States still maintains the highest levels of cocaine abuse.

2001 Terrorists attack United States on September 11, 2001, and kill thousands by crashing airplanes into buildings.

2001 Letters containing a powdered form of *Bacillus anthracis*, the bacteria that causes anthrax, are mailed to government representatives, members of the news media, and others in the United States. More than 20 cases and five deaths eventually result. As of August 2007, the case remains open and unsolved.

2001 The Chemical and Biological Incident Response Force (CBIRF) sends a 100-member initial response team into the Dirksen Senate Office Building in Washington alongside Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) specialists to detect and remove anthrax. A similar mission was undertaken at the Longworth House Office Building in October, during which time samples were collected from more than 200 office spaces.

2001 The Pan African Trypanosomiasis and Tsetse Eradication campaign (PATTEC) begins operation.

2001 U.S. military endorses the situational temporary usefulness of caffeine, recommending it as a safe and effective stimulant for its soldiers in good health.

2002 A company called DrinkSafe Technology announces the invention of a coaster that can be used to test whether a drink has been drugged by changing color when a drop of the tampered drink is placed on it.

2002 Following September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on the United States, the Public Health Security and Bioterrorism Preparedness and Response Act of 2002 is passed in an effort to improve the ability to prevent and respond to public health emergencies.

2002 In June 2002, traces of biological and chemical weapon agents are found in Uzbekistan on a military base used by U.S. troops fighting in Afghanistan. Early analysis dates and attributes the source of the contamination to former Soviet Union biological and chemical weapons programs that utilized the base.

2002 In the aftermath of the September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on the United States, by the first few months of 2002 the United States government dramatically increases funding to stockpile drugs and other agents that could be used to counter a bioterrorist attack.

2002 Scientists found that stockpiled smallpox vaccine doses can be effective if diluted to one-tenth their original concentration, greatly enhancing the number of doses available to respond to an emergency.

2002 Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) virus is found in patients in China, Hong Kong, and other Asian countries. The newly discovered coronavirus is not identified until early 2003. The spread of the virus reaches epidemic proportions in Asia and expands to the rest of the world.

2002 The Best Pharmaceuticals for Children Act passed in an effort to improve safety and efficacy of patented and off-patent medicines for children.

2002 The Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) initiates the Biosensor Technologies program in 2002 to develop fast, sensitive, automatic technologies for the detection and identification of biological warfare agents.

2002 The Pathogen Genomic Sequencing program is initiated by the Defense Advanced Research Project Agency (DARPA) to focus on characterizing the genetic components of pathogens in order to develop novel diagnostics, treatments, and therapies for the diseases they cause.

2002 The planned destruction of stocks of smallpox causing Variola virus at the two remaining depositories in the U.S. and Russia is delayed over fears that large scale production of vaccine might be needed in the event of a bioterrorist action.

2002 The WHO declares the 51 countries of its European region free of polio.

2003 Almost 500,000 civic and health care workers at strategic hospitals, governmental facilities, and research centers across the United States are slated to receive smallpox immunizations as part of a strategic plan for ready response to a biological attack using the smallpox virus.

2003 An international research team funded by NINR found that filters made from old cotton saris cut the number of cholera cases in rural Bangladesh villages almost in half. Other inexpensive cloth should work just as well in other parts of the world where cholera is endemic. Cholera is a waterborne disease that causes severe diarrhea and vomiting, killing thousands of people around the world every year. This simple preventive measure has the potential to make a significant impact on a global health problem.

2003 By early May, WHO officials have confirmed reports of more than 3,000 cases of SARS from 18 different countries with 111 deaths attributed to the disease. United States health officials reported 193 cases with no deaths. Significantly, all but 20 of the U.S. cases are linked to travel to infected areas, and the other 20 cases are accounted for by secondary transmission from infected patients to family members and health care workers. Health authorities assert that the emergent virus responsible for SARS will remain endemic (part of the natural array of viruses) in many regions of China well after the current outbreak is resolved.

2003 Canadian scientists at the British Columbia Cancer Agency in Vancouver announce the sequence of the genome of the coronavirus most likely to be the cause of SARS. Within days, scientists at the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in Atlanta, Georgia, offer a genomic map that confirms more than 99% of the Canadian findings.

2003 Differences in outbreaks in Hong Kong between 1997 and 2003 cause investigators to conclude that the H5N1 virus has mutated.

2003 Following approximately five deaths by heart attack correlated to individuals receiving the new smallpox vaccine, U.S. health officials at the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) announce a suspension of administration of the new smallpox vaccine to patients with a history of heart disease until the matter can be fully investigated.

2003 Preliminary trials for a malaria vaccine are scheduled to begin in malaria-endemic African areas, where approximately 3,000 children die from the disease every day.

2003 SARS cases in Hanoi reach 22, as a simultaneous outbreak of the same disease occurs in Hong Kong. The World Health Organization issues a global alert about a new infectious disease of unknown origin in both Vietnam and Hong Kong.

2003 SARS is added to the list of quarantinable diseases in the United States.

2003 Studies indicate that women with a history of some sexually transmitted diseases, including the human papillomavirus, are at increased risk for developing cervical cancer.

2003 Studies show no correlation between immunization schedules and sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS) occurrences.

2003 The first case of an unusually severe pneumonia occurs in Hanoi, Vietnam, and is identified two days later as severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) by Italian physician and epidemiologist Carlo

Urbani, who formally identifies SARS as a unique disease and names it. Urbani later dies of SARS.

2003 The first case of bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE, mad cow disease) in the United States is found in a cow in Washington state. Investigations later reveal that the cow was imported from a Canadian herd, which included North America's first "home-grown" case of BSE six months earlier.

2003 The World Health Organization (WHO) takes the unusual step of issuing a travel warning that describes SARS as a worldwide health threat. WHO officials announced that SARS cases, and potential cases, had been tracked from China to Singapore, Thailand, Vietnam, Indonesia, Philippines, and Canada.

2003 United States invades Iraq and finds chemical, biological, and nuclear weapons programs, but no actual weapons.

2003 WHO Global Influenza Surveillance Network intensifies work on development of a H5N1 vaccine for humans.

2004 A 35-year-old television producer in the Guangdong province of China is the first person to become ill with SARS since the end of the May 2003, the initial outbreak of the newly-identified disease. Within two weeks, three other persons are suspected of having SARS in the region, and teams from the World Health Organization return to investigate possible human-to-human, animal-to-human, and environmental sources of transmission of the disease.

2004 Chinese health officials in the Guangdong province of China launch a mass slaughter of civet cats, a cousin of the mongoose considered a delicacy and thought to be a vector of SARS, in an attempt to control the spread of the disease.

2004 On December 26, the most powerful earthquake in more than 40 years occurred underwater off the Indonesian island of Sumatra. The tsunami produced a disaster of unprecedented proportion in the modern era. The International Red Cross puts the death toll at over 150,000 lives.

2004 Project BioShield Act of 2004 authorizes U.S. government agencies expedite procedures related to rapid distribution of treatments as countermeasures to chemical, biological, and nuclear attack.

2005 A massive 7.6-magnitude earthquake leaves more than 3 million homeless and without food and basic medical supplies in the Kashmir mountains between India and Pakistan; 80,000 people die.

2005 H5N1 virus, responsible for avian flu moves from Asia to Europe. The World Health Organization attempts to coordinate multinational disaster and containment plans. Some nations begin to stockpile antiviral drugs.

2005 Hurricane Katrina slams into the U.S. Gulf Coast, causing levee breaks and massive flooding to New Orleans. Damage is extensive across the coasts of Louisiana, Mississippi, and Alabama. Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) is widely criticized for a lack of coordination in relief efforts. Three other major hurricanes make landfall in the United States within a two-year period, stressing relief and medical supply efforts. Long-term health studies begin of populations in devastated areas.

2005 The WHO reports outbreaks of plague in the Democratic Republic of Congo.

2005 U.S. FDA Drug Safety Board is founded.

2005 United States president George W. Bush addresses the issue of HIV/AIDS in black women in the United States, acknowledging it as a public health crisis.

2006 European Union bans the importation of avian feathers (non-treated feathers) from countries neighboring or close to Turkey.

2006 Mad cow disease confirmed in an Alabama cow as third reported case in the United States.

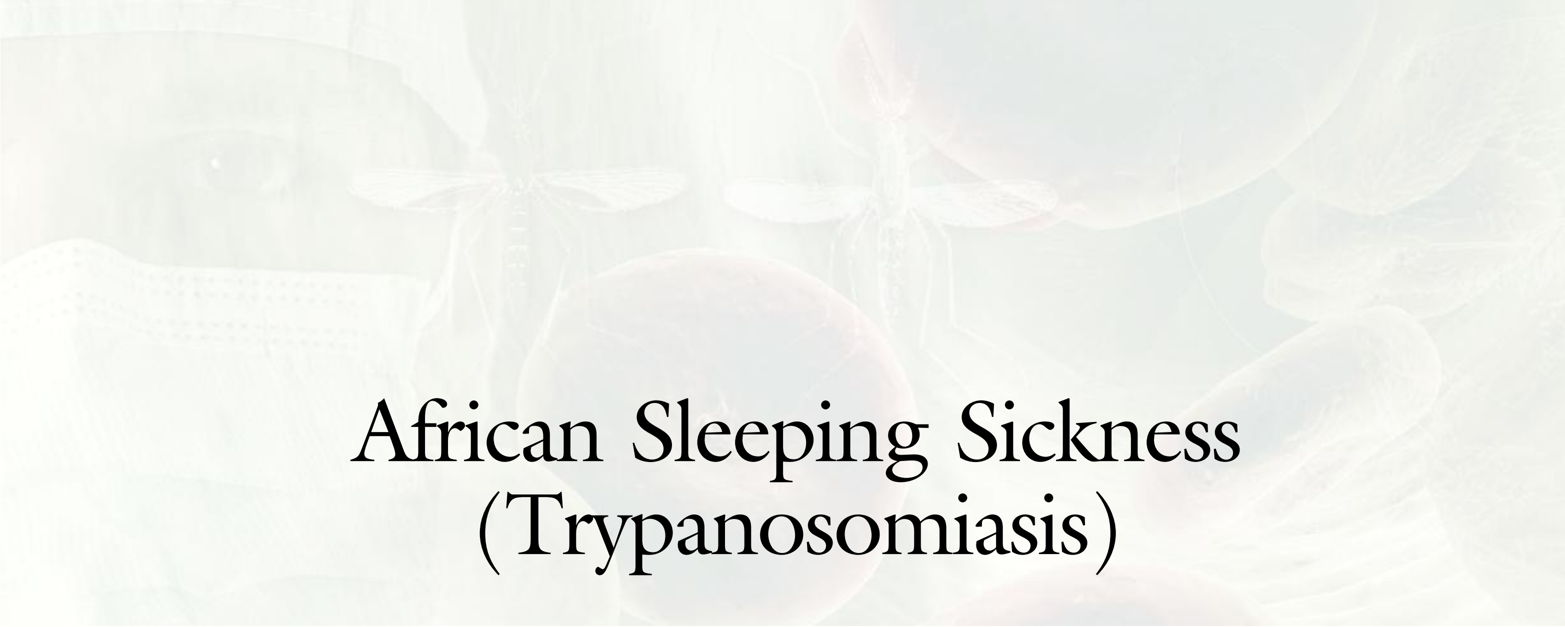
2006 More than a dozen people are diagnosed with avian flu in Turkey, but U.N. health experts assure the public that human-to-human transmission is still rare and only suspected in a few cases in Asia.

2006 Researchers begin human trials for vaginal microbicide gels.

2007 Texas governor Rick Perry adds the HPV vaccine to the list of required vaccines for school-age girls.

2007 Four people are hospitalized with botulism poisoning in the United States after more than 90 potentially contaminated meat products, including canned chili, were removed from grocery shelves across the country.

2007 The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) issues a rare order for isolation when a New Jersey man infected with a resistant strain of tuberculosis flies on multiple trans-Atlantic commercial flights.



African Sleeping Sickness (Trypanosomiasis)

Introduction

Trypanosomiasis (tri-PAN-o-SO-my-a-sis), which is also known as African sleeping sickness because of the semiconscious stupor and excessive sleep that can occur in someone who is infected, is an infection passed to humans through the bite of the tsetse fly. Thus, it is a vector-borne disease. The fly bite transfers either *Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense*, which causes a version of the disease called East African trypanosomiasis, or *T. brucei gambiense*, which causes West African trypanosomiasis. If left untreated, trypanosomiasis is ultimately fatal.

Trypanosomiasis is common in Africa. In the 1960s the disease was almost eradicated, but interruptions in the delivery of public health to affected regions due to government indifference and warfare caused a re-emergence of the disease, now resulting in tens of thousands of cases every year. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that in 2005 there were 50,000–70,000 new cases. This is a drop from higher numbers reported during the 1990s. An ongoing effort involving WHO, Médecines Sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders), and several pharmaceutical companies is again attempting to bring trypanosomiasis under control.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Trypanosomiasis has been known for centuries. It was first described in the fourteenth century in the landlocked region of northwestern Africa that today is known as Mali. The involvement of the trypanosomes and the tsetse fly were discovered by Sir David Bruce in 1902-1903. A few years later, a massive epidemic that affected millions of Africans and killed 500,000 people called attention to the seriousness of the disease. Shortly afterward, the association between trypanosomiasis and the tsetse fly was established.

T. brucei rhodesiense and *T. brucei gambiense* are protozoa. Protozoans are single-celled organisms that are more complex in structure than bacteria and viruses; the organisms are considered to be animals. The protozoa responsible for sleeping sickness are native to Africa. The few cases of trypanosomiasis that occur outside of Africa each year generally result from travelers who acquire the protozoa in Africa, then leave and subsequently develop the disease in another country.

The two protozoans have a complex life cycle. In the animal host, the organisms that are injected by a tsetse fly progressively change their shape to what is described as the stumpy form. This form is able to infect a tsetse fly when it takes a blood meal from an animal. While inside the gut of the fly, the protozoans change again into a form that is able to migrate to the salivary glands of the fly. Finally, another change in the organism occurs; the protozoan is now capable of infecting another animal when the tsetse fly seeks a blood meal. This animal-to-human cycle can continue until the chain of transmission (also called the cycle of infection) is interrupted, usually by an organized effort by agencies such as WHO.

T. brucei rhodesiense is naturally carried by antelopes. The antelopes are not harmed by the protozoan and serve as the natural reservoir of the *T. brucei rhodesiense.* Tsetse flies who obtain a blood meal from an antelope can acquire the protozoan, which they can transfer to humans or cows. The resulting infection is lethal in cattle. People who are most likely to become infected are those who come into contact with cattle or antelopes. Thus, those who raise cattle, or the game wardens and visitors to East African game reserves and other rural areas are at risk.

T. brucei gambiense does not infect antelope or cattle. It resides in creatures that live in the tropical rain forests found in Central and West Africa. The disease caused by this protozoan in humans produces more severe symptoms and more often results in death. Fortunately, because of its isolated distribution, fewer people contract this form of trypanosomiasis.

Glossina morsitans morsitans is a species of tsetse fly that can transmit the trypanosome parasite responsible for trypanosomiasis, also called African sleeping sickness. *© Robert Patrick/Corbis Sygma.*

The infection due to *T. brucei rhodesiense* progresses more swiftly than the longer-lasting infection that is caused by *T. brucei gambiense.* Both infections inevitably lead to death if they are not treated.

Sleeping sickness is a complex disease, with interactions between humans, the tsetse fly vector, and the animal host. This can complicate efforts to control the disease.

Typically, the first indication of both types of trypanosomiasis is the development of redness, pain, and swelling at the site of the fly bite several days after having been bitten. The sore is also referred to as a chancre. Some people also develop a rash. Both forms of the disease then progress in two stages. The first stage begins two to three weeks following the bite and the entry of the protozoans into the bloodstream. The symptoms of this stage develop as the trypanosome is carried throughout the body in the bloodstream. The lymphatic system, which is an important part of the immune system, can also become infected. Because at this stage the disease affects the whole body, it is termed the systemic phase. A hallmark of the illness at this point is an extreme fluctuation of body temperature. A person's temperature will cycle from normal to very high and back again, which is a consequence of the immune system's reaction to the protozoan. Additionally, a person may experience a feeling of extreme itchiness and develop a headache. Some people become mentally disoriented. If left untreated, a person can lapse into a coma and die.

West African trypanosomiasis also produces marked swelling of lymph nodes, especially those located behind the ear and at the base of the neck, and swelling of both the spleen and the liver. East African trypanosomiasis can cause the heart to become inflamed and to malfunction.

Some of the symptoms of trypanosomiasis that can occur during the first stage of the illness are a result of the immune reaction to the infection. The immune response remains strong, since invading trypanosomes can shift the composition of their outer surface. As the immune system hones in on one surface configuration, that configuration can rapidly change. This trait is known as antigenic variation. The trypanosomes are capable of expressing thousands of different surface profiles during the years that an infection can last. A consequence of the heightened immune response due to the changing surface of the protozoan is the cycling fever, as well as organ damage and weakened blood vessels; the latter aid in the spread of the organism throughout the body.

The second stage of trypanosomiasis involves the nervous system. As the brain becomes affected, a person can experience difficulties in speaking, mental disorientation, and periods of near-unconsciousness or sleep during the daytime (hence the term sleeping sickness). During the night, insomnia robs a person of sleep. Other symptoms can develop that mimic those of Parkinson's disease; these include difficulty in movement, with difficulty in walking that can require a shuffling motion to avoid falling down, involuntary movement or trembling of arms and legs, and a tightening of muscles. With more time, a person can lapse into a coma and die.

Trypanosomiasis can also be transferred from a pregnant woman to her baby prior to birth or via transfusion with infected blood or a contaminated organ that is transplanted. However, these routes of infection are rare.

Scope and Distribution

Trypanosomiasis is prevalent in regions of Africa. East African trypanosomiasis is found in Uganda, Tanzania, Kenya, Malawi, Zaire, Ethiopia, Botswana, and Zimbabwe. West African trypanosomiasis is prevalent in Western and Central Africa.

According to the WHO, in 2002 trypanosomiasis was constantly present in 11 countries and almost as prevalent in a further 12 countries. As of 2007, epidemics are occurring in the Democratic Republic of Congo, Angola, and Sudan.

Spread of the disease to humans occurs only in Africa, since the tsetse fly is only found on the African continent. On the rare occasions that trypanosomiasis occurs elsewhere in the world, it is usually the result of travel by someone who became infected while in Africa. As of February 2006, the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has records of only 36 cases of the disease in the United States, and all involved people who contracted the disease in Africa.

A version of trypanosomiasis called Chagas disease, which is caused by *Trypanosoma cruzi*, occurs in South America and sometimes in Central and North America.

The WHO estimates that there are 50,000 or more cases of East and West African trypanosomias every year. However, since the majority of cases occur in regions of Africa where organized medical care and reporting is scant, the actual number of cases is likely much higher. The CDC estimates that there are over 100,000 new cases every year.

Treatment and Prevention

The diagnosis of trypanosomiasis involves examination of the fluid from either the site of the tsetse fly bite or from a swollen lymph node or blood, to detect the presence of infecting protozoa. As well, fluid can be injected into rats, which can develop an infection. Blood recovered from the rats after several weeks will contain the protozoa.

Medications are available to treat trypanosomiasis. A drug called pentamidine is used for the early stage of *T. brucei gambiense* infections, and the drug suramin is used for the early stage of infections caused by *T. brucie rhodesiense.* More advanced stages of both forms of the disease are treated using a drug called melarsoprol. Those who do not respond to melarsoprol can be given another drug called eflornithine. Unfortunately, the drugs can have undesirable side effects. For example, suramin, eflornithine, and pentamidine can cause a fatal reaction in the kidney or liver, or inflammation in the brain. These drugs must be used with care and their effects monitored; they

WORDS TO KNOW

CHAIN OF TRANSMISSION: Chain of transmission refers to the route by which an infection is spread from its source to susceptible host. An example of a chain of transmission is the spread of malaria from an infected animal to humans via mosquitoes.

EPIDEMIC: From the Greek *epidemic*, meaning “prevalent among the people,” is most commonly used to describe an outbreak of an illness or disease in which the number of individual cases significantly exceeds the usual or expected number of cases in any given population.

PROTOZOA: Single-celled animal-like microscopic organisms that live by taking in food rather than making it by photosynthesis and must live in the presence of water. (Singular: protozoan.) Protozoa are a diverse group of single-celled organisms, with more than 50,000 different types represented. The vast majority are microscopic, many measuring less than 5 one-thousandth of an inch (or 0.005 millimeters), but some, such as the freshwater Spirostomun, may reach 0.17 inches (3 millimeters) in length, large enough to enable it to be seen with the naked eye.

RE-EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASE: Re-emerging infectious diseases are illnesses such as malaria, diphtheria, tuberculosis, and polio that were once nearly absent from the world but are starting to cause greater numbers of infections once again. These illnesses are reappearing for many reasons. Malaria and other mosquito-borne illnesses increase when mosquito-control measures decrease. Other diseases are spreading because people have stopped being vaccinated, as happened with diphtheria after the collapse of the Soviet Union. A few diseases are reemerging because drugs to treat them have become less available or drug-resistant strains have developed.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

are usually only used in a hospital setting. While these drugs can be effective, the CDC does not recommend any particular medication.

Trypanosomiasis cannot clear up on its own. Hospitalization and treatment is necessary. Those who recover from the infection should be monitored for several years afterward to ensure that the infection does not recur.

As of 2007, there is no vaccine for either form of trypanosomiasis. Prevention of the disease consists of avoiding contact with the tsetse fly. For example, contact with bushes should be minimized, as the flies often rest there. Bushes and other shrubbery that are near rivers or waterholes are prime spots for tsetse flies, and so should be avoided. This habitat tends to be rural, so people who spend time traveling or staying in rural areas of regions where trypanosomiasis is prevalent are at risk and should be appropriately cautious.

Clothing can be protective. The clothing should be fairly thick, as the tsetse fly can bite through light fabric. Also, because the fly is attracted to bright colors, clothing should be bland; khaki- or olive-colored clothing is recommended. The clothing should fit tightly at the wrists and ankles to make it harder for flies to enter. Riding in the back of open-air vehicles is unwise; tsetse flies are also attracted to dust. Another wise precaution, which has also proven useful in reducing the incidence of malaria, is the use of protective netting over a bed.

Impacts and Issues

The resurgence of trypanosomiasis during the 1970s highlights the vigilance that is necessary to control infectious diseases and prevent their re-emergence. The loss of control over trypanosomiasis was due to the interruptions in the monitoring of disease outbreaks, the displacement of people due to regional conflicts, and environmental changes. These problems are ongoing. In particular, the documented warming of the atmosphere will make Africa even more hospitable to the spread of the territory of the tsetse fly, which could increase the geographical distribution of trypanosomiasis.

Trypanosomiasis is a major health concern in approximately 20 countries in Africa. The WHO estimates that over 66 million people are at risk of developing the disease. However, fewer than 4 million people are being monitored and only about 40,000 people are treated every year. The proportion of people being monitored or treated is smaller than other tropical diseases, even though trypanosomiasis can increase to epidemic proportions and the death rate for those who are not treated is 100%.

Epidemics disrupt families as well as national economies, as large numbers of people become unable to work or care for themselves. According to WHO estimates, in 2004 the number of healthy years of life lost due to premature death and disability caused by trypanosomiasis was 1.5 million. Since many regions are still agricultural, the rural-based disease affects those who are most important to the economy. Of the 48,000 deaths that occurred in 2004, 31,000 were males, who are often the working family members. Epidemics can decimate the population of a region.

Taking care of those diagnosed with trypanosomiasis is a daunting task for the poor nations, since two-thirds of people diagnosed with the disease already have the advanced stage of the infection, in which the nervous system has been affected. The only treatment that is effective once the central nervous system has been affected—the drug melarsoprol—contains arsenic, and so the treatment itself can sometimes be fatal. Compounding the problem, some strains of the trypanosomes that are resistant to drugs used to treat the disease at an earlier stage have been detected. It seems a matter of time before these resistant strains become more common, as the resistance gives them a selective advantage over nonresistant trypanosomes.

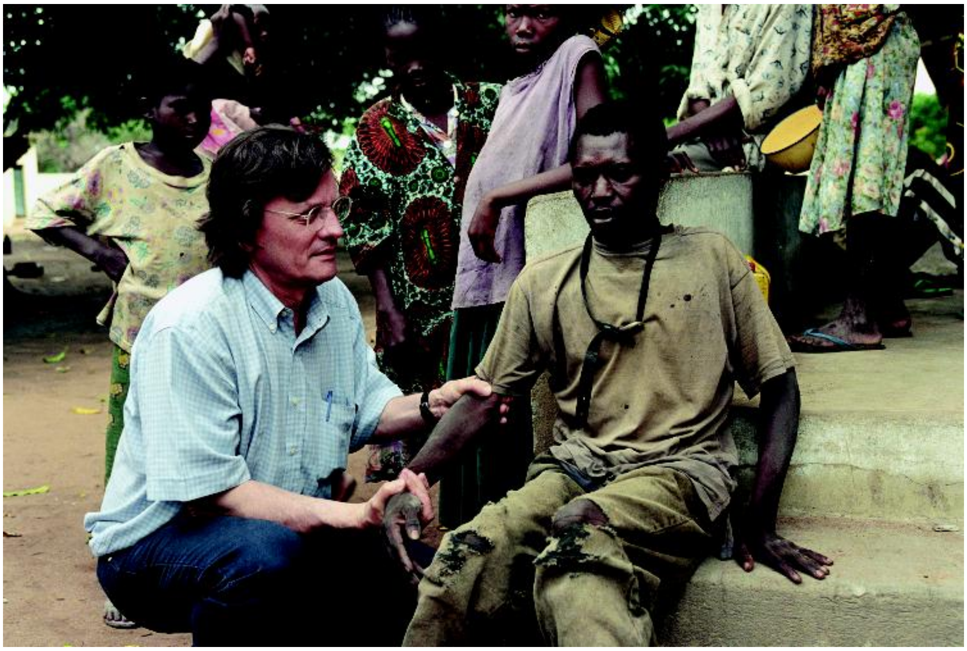
Treatment can also be hampered by the cost of the drugs. An example is eflornithine. Originally developed as an anticancer compound, the drug has been promising against *T. brucei gambiense.* However, it costs between 300 and 500 U.S. dollars per patient, which makes it unaffordable for mass use by a poor nation.

The WHO is actively involved in programs intended to monitor and treat trypanosomiasis. As one example, since 1975, WHO, the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), the World Bank, and the United Nations Development Program (UNDP) have collaborated on The Special Program for Research and Training in Tropical Diseases. The aim of the program is to develop means of combating infectious diseases, including trypanosomiasis, in a way that is effective and affordable to poorer countries that otherwise are unable to meet the economic and logistical burdens of treatment.

In addition, the WHO Communicable Disease Surveillance and Response unit works with countries experiencing epidemics to set up national programs to control the disease. This can be challenging, since governments can treat trypanosomiasis as a low priority issue until an epidemic strikes. By acting earlier and with a more coordinated national effort, however, epidemics might well be avoided.

Primary Source Connection

With international cooperation among African countries and international health authorities, intensive insecticide spraying, and efficient drug delivery to treat the disease in its early stages, trypanosomiasis was nearly eradicated from Africa in the mid-1960s. By the late 1980s, major epidemics in east and central Africa heralded a dramatic re-emergence of the disease. In the article for the magazine *Foreign Policy*, author Peter Hotez discusses re-emerging diseases, including those that could re-emerge



Jean Jannin (left), who led the World Health Organization (WHO) campaign to fight sleeping sickness, examines a man exhibiting signs of trypanosomiasis in Chad in 2002. Although sleeping sickness is estimated to be carried by about 500,000 people, it is not yet considered a top priority even though it is a fatal disease if left untreated. *© Patrick Robert/Corbis.*

deliberately through acts of bioterrorism, along with the political, social, and natural causes that allow diseases to re-emerge. Peter Hotez is professor and chair of microbiology and tropical medicine at The George Washington University and a senior fellow at the Sabin Vaccine Institute.

Dark Winters Ahead

During the 1990s, the eruption of military conflicts posed one of the strongest stimuli for the reemergence of infectious diseases in poor nations. The civil wars in Angola, Rwanda, and Sudan produced devastating outbreaks of African sleeping sickness, cholera, and polio, even though experts had assumed that these infections had been eliminated a decade or so earlier.

New links between political turmoil and public health crises are forcing the traditional foreign-policy community to consider the latest trends in global disease. Enter *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, a seven-year-old bimonthly journal published by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in Atlanta. The journal provides a valuable service by studying infectious agents like the West Nile or Ebola viruses, which have the potential to emerge because of new human or animal migrations or environmental changes. A recent article by Scott Dowell, the acting associate director for global health at the CDC's National Center for Infectious Diseases, examines the seasonal aspects of infectious disease, offering insights that could prove useful to global public health initiatives as well as antibioterrorism efforts around the world.

In an article titled "Seasonal Variation in Host Susceptibility and Cycles of Certain Infectious Diseases," Dowell explains how human viral epidemics seem to depend on the calendar, suddenly appearing and disappearing with the seasons. A good example is the regular January arrival of influenza in the United States. Similarly, rotavirus gastroenteritis appears in the southwestern United States and then slowly migrates to northeastern cities like Boston and Washington, D.C., striking young children during the winter months. Some 200 years ago, these same cities faced predictable and devastating summer epidemics of yellow fever introduced by cargo ships carrying infected mosquitoes from the West Indies.

Dowell argues that this seasonal variation of infection might not depend solely on the weather, as is commonly thought. He notes that the same viral infection—such as influenza—can appear on both sides of the equator during January, despite it being winter in the North and summer in the South. Because some aspects of human physiology (including sensitivity to light and certain immunities) also vary with the calendar, Dowell maintains, the regular arrival of certain epidemic infections might be explained by seasonal changes in human susceptibility to microbial invasion.

On this particular point, Dowell's hypothesis is less convincing since it diminishes the crucial role of the infectious agent itself in producing a clinical infection. Indeed, infectious pathogens have coevolved with humans in an intricate and remarkable dance that has taken millions of years. Recognizing the tentative nature of his hypothesis, Dowell calls for fellow researchers to review past clinical trials for further evidence.

Nevertheless, Dowell's larger emphasis on the seasonal nature of infection has important implications for the implementation of public health efforts. For instance, when national immunization days are held in polio- and measles-endemic regions of the developing world, they are best conducted well before the seasonal onset of these infections, thus allowing sufficient time for a child's immune system to respond to the vaccine. The same time-urgency applies to so-called days of tranquility, when vaccinations help to implement effective cease-fires in war-torn areas of Central Asia and sub-Saharan Africa.

Dowell's insights can also help those who seek to mitigate the potential impact of bioterrorism attacks. U.S. civil defense officials are concerned by the similarity between the early symptoms produced by biological warfare agents—such as bacterial agents of tularemia and Q fever—with the symptoms produced by influenza. In the initial stages of infection, all three will produce fever, chills, headaches, muscle pains, and appetite loss. The similarity may delay the detection of biological attacks during the winter, when public health officials might erroneously attribute an increase in complaints of such symptoms to a common flu outbreak.

Responding to such concerns, the CDC has initiated a national system of Centers for Public Health Preparedness to ensure that local health workers can respond to a bioterrorism attack. Similarly, the U.S. Defense Department's Advanced Research Projects Agency is developing new technologies aimed at differentiating infectious agents used as biological weapons from common seasonal viruses. However, such efforts are far from sufficient. A January 2001 CDC report concluded that the nation's public health infrastructure is not prepared to detect a bioterrorist event. In June 2001, the Center for Strategic and International Studies and the Johns Hopkins University Center for Civilian Biodefense Studies simulated a bioterrorist attack in a war game exercise known as "Dark Winter." Their conclusion: A smallpox attack on the United States would produce massive civilian casualties and rapid breakdown of the country's essential institutions. Unfortunately, the United States remains years away from replenishing key vaccine stockpiles and even further from having improved detection technologies in place.

Peter Hotez

HOTEZ, PETER. "DARK WINTERS AHEAD." *FOREIGN POLICY* (NOVEMBER-DECEMBER 2001): 84.

See Also *Chagas Disease; Médecins Sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders); Mosquito-borne Diseases; Re-emerging Infectious Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

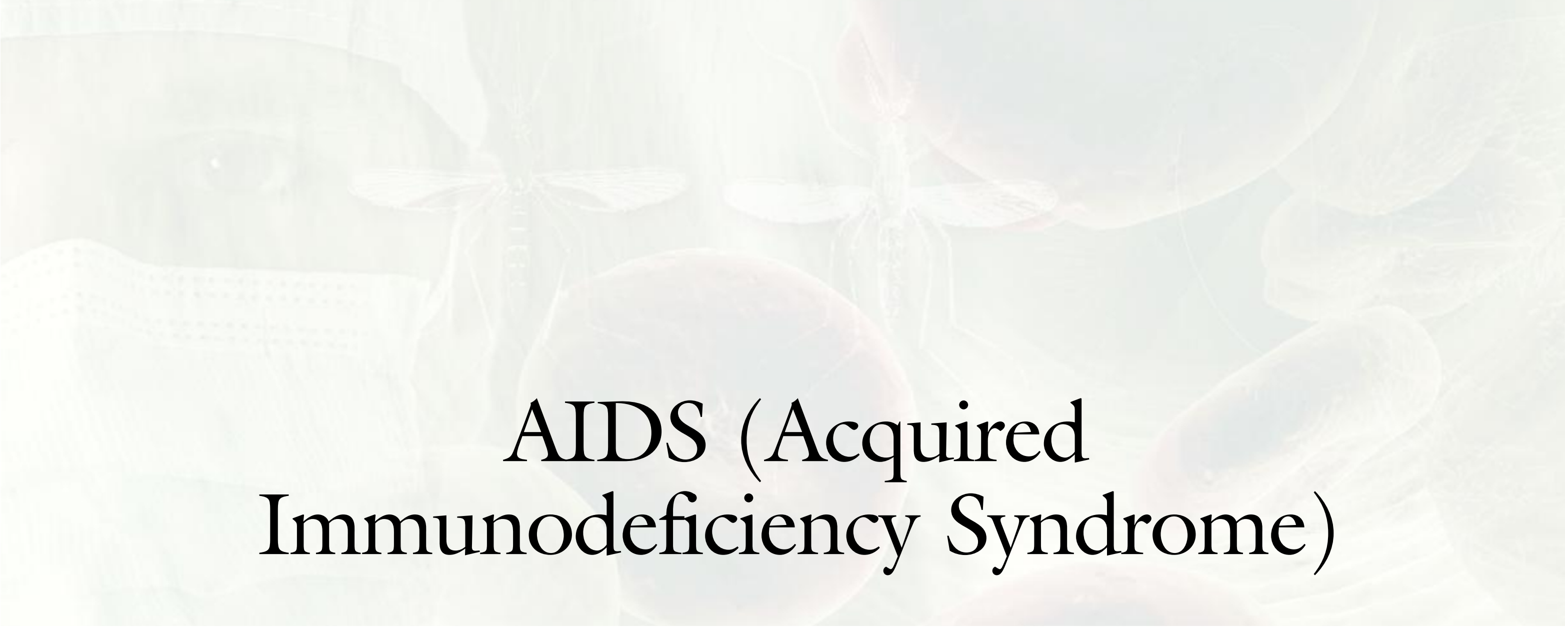
Books

Hoppe, Kirk. *Lords of the Fly: Sleeping Sickness Control in British East Africa, 1900-1960.* Westport, Conn.: Praeger, 2003.

Kruel, Donald. *Trypanosomiasis.* London: Chelsea House, 2007.

Tyler, Kevin M., and Michael A. Miles. *American Trypanosomiasis.* New York: Springer, 2006.

Brian Hoyle



AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome)

Introduction

First reported in the United States in 1981, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome) has since become a major worldwide pandemic. Medical research has demonstrated that AIDS is caused by HIV (the human immunodeficiency virus), a retrovirus, so named because its genes are coded in ribonucleic acid (RNA) instead of the more common deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). Essentially, the virus causes disease by killing or damaging cells of the human immune system. HIV gradually destroys a person's ability to battle infections and certain types of cancer. This loss of immune system functioning causes victims to be vulnerable to often-deadly opportunistic infections, which are caused by pathogens (disease-causing organisms) that are usually harmless to healthy people.

Because the spread of the AIDS epidemic in the United States has been extensively tracked and analyzed, the most reliable information regarding its transmission, treatment, and prevention comes from United States-based research. However, it should be understood that the vast majority of people infected with HIV now live outside of the United States. While modes of transmission of HIV have been determined to be the same across the world, risk patterns among different peoples have varied according to cultural influences. For example, outside of Western Europe and North America, homosexual activity has been comparatively more circumscribed and suppressed; hence the major pattern of sexual transmission of HIV occurs among heterosexuals in non-Westernized countries. Although the HIV epidemic acquired its original momentum in the United States, the future focuses of the pandemic lie outside of the United States, mainly in the developing countries of Africa and Asia.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The most common way to transmit HIV is by having unprotected sex with an infected partner. The virus can enter the body through the mucous membranes of the vagina, vulva, penis, rectum, or mouth during sexual activity.

HIV is transmitted by the exchange of bodily fluids such as blood, semen, and saliva. Therefore certain behaviors put people at risk for contracting HIV, including sharing drug syringes, anal, vaginal or oral sexual contact with an infected person without using a condom, and having sexual contact with someone with unknown HIV status.

Contact with Infected Blood

It is possible to contract HIV through contact with infected blood. This risk has given rise to extensive screening of donated blood for evidence of HIV infection, and also heat-treatment techniques to destroy HIV in blood products used in medical practice. Prior to these measures, HIV was transmitted through transfusions of contaminated blood or blood products such as serum, platelets, and clotting factors. Screening for HIV and heat treatment has practically eliminated the risk of getting HIV from such transfusions.

Contaminated Needles

One of the primary means of spreading infection with HIV is the sharing of syringes contaminated with very small quantities of blood among injection drug users from someone that has been infected with the virus.

There have also been rare cases of health care workers that have been infected by accidental punctures with needles or other medical instruments that have been contaminated by contact with patients, or, conversely, patients that have been infected by contaminated needles used by health care workers. In the health care setting,

A young woman suffers from AIDS at a hospital in South Africa. Because there is a strong stigma associated with the disease in her community, she has been ostracized by family and abandoned in the hospital. South Africa has the highest number of people living with HIV of any nation in the world, estimated at six million people. *© Gideon Mendel/Corbis.*

workers have been infected with HIV after being stuck with needles containing HIV-infected blood or, less frequently, after infected blood gets into a worker's open cut or a mucous membrane (for example, the eyes or inside of the nose). According to the CDC, there has been only one instance of patients being infected by a health care worker in the United States; this involved HIV transmission from one infected dentist to six patients. Investigations have been completed involving more than 22,000 patients of 63 HIV-infected physicians, surgeons, and dentists, and no other cases of this type of transmission have been identified in the United States.

Mother-to-child Transmission

Women can transmit HIV to their babies during pregnancy or birth. About one-quarter to one-third of HIV-positive pregnant women will pass the virus on to their babies. HIV can also be transmitted from infected mothers to babies through breast milk. Available drug treatment for the mother during pregnancy can significantly reduce the probability of such infection. Cesarean section delivery can further reduce mother-to-newborn infection rates to just one percent. Drug treatment and cesarean delivery has nearly eradicated mother-to-baby transmission of HIV in the United States. Use of these measures has increased worldwide. A study in Uganda sponsored by the U.S. National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) and confirmed by independent research has established the safety and effectiveness of an affordable drug treatment with nevirapine (NVP) for preventing mother-to-newborn transmission of HIV. A single oral dose of this antiretroviral drug given to an HIV-infected woman in labor and another to her baby within three days of birth reduces the transmission rate of HIV by 50%.

Saliva and Other Bodily Fluids

Researchers have detected HIV in the saliva of infected people. Nevertheless, no evidence has yet been produced that the virus is transmitted by contact with saliva. Laboratory studies indicate that saliva has natural properties that limit the infectivity of HIV, and the concentration of virus in saliva has been found to be very low. Studies of HIV-positive individuals have found no evidence that the virus can be spread through saliva by kissing. Because of the potential for contact with blood during open-mouth kissing, the CDC recommends against engaging in this activity with a person known to be infected with HIV. However, the risk of acquiring HIV during open-mouth kissing is considered to be very low. CDC has investigated only one case of HIV infection that may be attributed to contact with blood during open-mouth kissing. Nevertheless, the mucous membrane of the mouth can be infected by HIV, and there have been documented instances of HIV transmission through oral sex.

Ryan White, 15, won a legal battle allowing him access to a public education despite having contracted AIDS. © *UPI/Corbis-Bettmann.*

Researchers have found no evidence that HIV is spread through sweat, tears, urine, or feces that is not contaminated with blood.

Biting

In 1997, the CDC published findings from a state health department investigation of an incident that suggested blood-to-blood transmission of HIV by a human bite. There have been other reports in the medical literature in which HIV appeared to have been transmitted by a bite. Severe trauma with extensive tissue tearing and damage and presence of blood were reported in each of these instances. Biting is not a common way of transmitting HIV. In fact, there are numerous reports of bites that did not result in HIV infection.

Casual Contact and Environmental Transmission

Extensive studies of families of HIV-infected people have shown conclusively that HIV is not spread through casual contact such as the sharing of food utensils, towels and bedding, swimming pools, telephones, or toilet seats. HIV is not spread by biting insects such as mosquitoes or bedbugs.

From the beginning of the AIDS epidemic, some people feared that HIV might be transmitted in other common ways, but no scientific evidence to support these fears has been found. If HIV were being transmitted through other routes (such as through air, water, or by insects), the pattern of reported AIDS cases would be much different from what has been observed. For example, if mosquitoes could transmit HIV infection, many more young children and adolescents would have been diagnosed with AIDS. All reported cases suggesting new or potentially unknown routes of transmission are thoroughly investigated by state and local health departments with the assistance, guidance, and laboratory support from the CDC. No additional routes of transmission have been recorded, despite a national sentinel system (an early warning system using animals or population data to detect the presence of disease) designed to detect just such an occurrence.

Households

Although HIV has been transmitted between family members in a household setting, such transmission is very rare. These transmissions are argued to have resulted from contact between skin or mucous membranes and infected blood. To prevent even such rare occurrences, precautions should be taken in all settings including the home to prevent exposures to the blood of persons who are HIV infected, at risk for HIV infection, or whose infection and risk status are unknown. CDC guidelines stipulate that 1) gloves should be worn during contact with blood or other body fluids that could possibly contain visible blood, such as urine, feces, or vomit; 2) cuts, sores, or breaks on both the care giver's and the patient's exposed skin should be covered with bandages; 3) hands and other parts of the body should be washed immediately after contact with blood or other body fluids, and surfaces soiled with blood should be disinfected appropriately; 4) practices that increase the likelihood of blood contact, such as sharing of razors and toothbrushes should be avoided; needles and other sharp instruments should be used only when medically necessary and handled according to recommendations for health-care settings.

Businesses and Other Settings There is no known risk of HIV transmission to co-workers, clients, or consumers from contact in industries such as food-service establishments. Food-service workers known to be infected with HIV need not be restricted from work unless they have other infections or illnesses (such as diarrhea or hepatitis A) for which any food-service worker, regardless of HIV infection status, should be restricted. The CDC recommends that all food-service workers follow

PEOPLE WITH AIDS
ALLIANCE

Activists from the People with AIDS Alliance participate in the Gay Freedom Day Parade in San Francisco, California, in June 1983. *© Roger Ressmeyer/Corbis.*

recommended standards and practices of good personal hygiene and food sanitation.

In 1985, CDC issued routine precautions that all personal-service workers (such as hairdressers, barbers, cosmetologists, and massage therapists) should follow, even though there is no evidence of transmission from a personal-service worker to a client or vice versa. Instruments that penetrate the skin (such as tattooing and acupuncture needles, ear piercing devices) should be used once and disposed of or thoroughly cleaned and sterilized. Instruments not intended to penetrate the skin, but which may become contaminated with blood (for example, razors) should be used for only one client and disposed of or thoroughly cleaned and disinfected after each use. Personal-service workers can use the same cleaning procedures that are recommended for health care institutions.

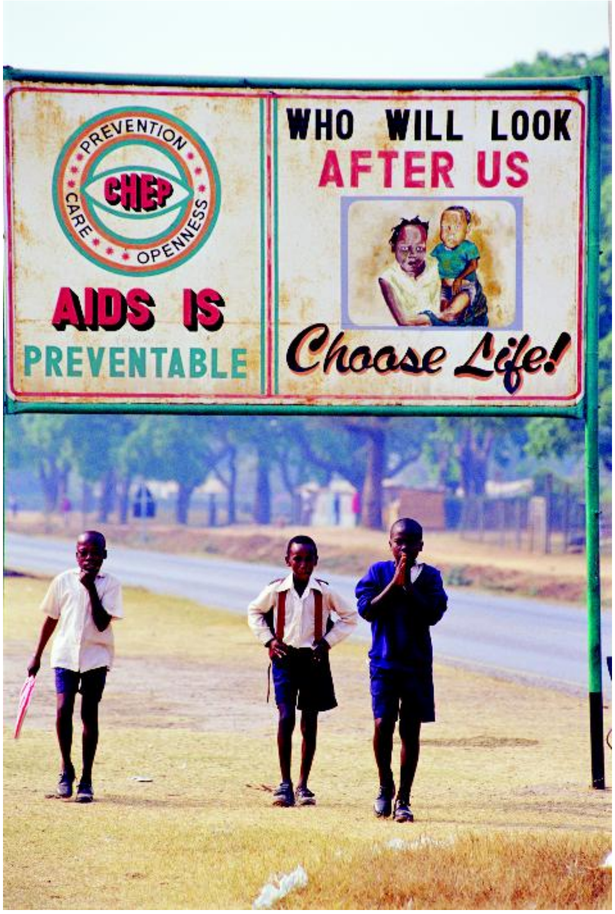
The CDC reports no instances of HIV transmission through tattooing or body piercing, although hepatitis B virus has been transmitted during some of these practices. One case of HIV transmission from acupuncture has been documented. Body piercing (other than ear piercing) is relatively new in the United States, and the medical complications for body piercing appear to be greater than for tattoos. Healing of piercings generally will take weeks, and sometimes even months, and the pierced tissue could conceivably be abraded (torn or cut) or inflamed even after healing. Therefore, a theoretical HIV transmission risk does exist if the unhealed or abraded tissues come into contact with an infected person's blood or other infectious body fluid. Additionally, HIV could be transmitted if instruments contaminated with blood are not sterilized or disinfected between clients.

Sexually Transmitted Infections

Sexually transmitted infections (STI) such as syphilis, genital herpes, chlamydia, gonorrhea, or bacterial vaginosis appear to increase susceptibility to infection with HIV during sex with infected partners.

In the United States, condoms are regulated by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and condom manufacturers are required to test each latex condom for defects such as holes prior to packaging. The proper and consistent use of latex or polyurethane condoms when engaging in vaginal, anal, or oral sexual intercourse can greatly reduce the risk of acquiring or transmitting sexually transmitted diseases, including HIV infection.

Only latex or polyurethane condoms provide a highly effective mechanical barrier to HIV. In laboratories, viruses occasionally have been shown to pass through natural membrane ("skin" or lambskin) condoms, which may contain natural pores and are therefore not recommended for disease prevention, although they are documented to be effective for contraception. For condoms to provide maximum protection, they must be used consistently and correctly. Numerous studies among sexually active people have demonstrated that a properly used latex condom provides a high degree of protection against a variety of sexually transmitted diseases, including HIV infection.



Boys in Kitwe, Zambia, play below a road sign designed to raise public awareness of AIDS prevention and the growing number of children orphaned due to the disease in Africa. *© Louise Gubb/ Corbis Saba.*

Early Signs and Symptoms of HIV Infection

Most people show no early symptoms when initially infected with HIV. In a minority of cases, people may have a flulike illness within a month or two after exposure that could include fever, headache, fatigue, and swollen lymph nodes in the neck and groin. These symptoms usually disappear within a week to a month and are often attributed to some other viral infection. During this early period, people are very contagious, and HIV is present in large quantities in genital fluids.

Long-lasting, debilitating symptoms may not appear for 10 or more years after infection with HIV in adults, or within 2 years in children born with HIV infection. This latent period without symptoms varies greatly by individual, ranging from a few months to more than a decade. However, even during the asymptomatic (without symptoms) period, the virus is actively multiplying and destroying immune system cells, or can be dormant (inactive) within infected cells. The most readily apparent laboratory sign of HIV infection is a gradual decline in the blood concentration of CD4 positive T (CD4+) cells, which are cells the immune system's most important infection fighters. HIV slowly disables or destroys these cells without causing symptoms.

As the immune system deteriorates, various complications appear. The first persistent symptoms experienced by many persons with HIV include enlarged lymph nodes for more than three months, fatigue, weight loss, frequent fevers and sweats, persistent or frequent yeast infections (oral or vaginal), persistent skin rashes or flaky skin, pelvic inflammatory disease in women that does not respond to treatment, and short-term memory loss. Some people develop frequent and severe herpes infections that cause mouth, genital, or anal sores, or a resurgence of the dormant virus that causes chickenpox known as shingles. Children may fail to thrive and grow.

Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS)

Usually after a long assault on the immune system, victims reach the most advanced stage of HIV infection, which is known as AIDS. The CDC, the agency responsible for tracking the AIDS epidemic in the United States, has developed official criteria that define AIDS. The CDC's definition of AIDS includes all HIV-infected people who have fewer than 200 CD4+ T cells per cubic millimeter of blood. (Healthy adults usually have CD4+ T-cell counts of 1,000 or more.) In addition, the definition includes 26 clinical conditions, mainly opportunistic infections that affect people with advanced HIV disease. In people with AIDS, these infections are generally severe and can be fatal because the immune system is so ravaged by HIV that the body loses its ability to fight off certain bacteria, viruses, fungi, parasites, and other microbes.

Common symptoms of opportunistic infections in both adults and children with AIDS include persistent coughing and shortness of breath, seizures, lack of coordination, difficult or painful swallowing, confusion or forgetfulness, severe and persistent diarrhea, fever, vision loss, nausea, abdominal cramps, vomiting, weight loss, extreme fatigue, and severe headaches. In addition, children may also have severe forms of the common childhood bacterial infections, such as conjunctivitis (pink eye), otitis media (ear infection), and tonsillitis.

In addition to opportunistic infections, people with AIDS are also prone to various cancers that are associated with persistent exposure to certain viruses such as Kaposi's sarcoma and cervical cancer, or cancers of the immune system known as lymphomas. These cancers are usually more aggressive and difficult to treat in people with AIDS.

As HIV infection progresses and the number of CD4+ T cells declines, people with CD4+ T cells above 200 may experience some of the early symptoms of HIV disease. Conversely, others with their CD4+ T-cell count below 200 may have no symptoms. Victims

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ASYMPTOMATIC: A state in which an individual does not exhibit or experience symptoms of a disease.

CD4+ T CELLS: CD4 cells are a type of T cell found in the immune system, which are characterized by the presence of a CD4 antigen protein on their surface. These are the cells most often destroyed as a result of HIV infection.

HIGHLY ACTIVE ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY (HAART): Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) is the name given to the combination of drugs given to people with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection to slow or stop the progression of their condition to AIDS (acquired human immunodeficiency syndrome). HIV is a retrovirus and the various components of HAART block its replication by different mechanisms.

LATENT INFECTION: An infection already established in the body but not yet causing symptoms, or having ceased to cause symptoms after an active period, is a latent infection.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

REPLICATE: To replicate is to duplicate something or make a copy of it. All reproduction of living things depends on the replication of DNA molecules or, in a few cases, RNA molecules. Replication may be used to refer to the reproduction of entire viruses and other microorganisms.

RETROVIRUS: Retroviruses are viruses in which the genetic material consists of ribonucleic acid (RNA) instead of the usual deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). Retroviruses produce an enzyme known as reverse transcriptase that can transform RNA into DNA, which can then be permanently integrated into the DNA of the infected host cells.

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASE (STD): Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) vary in their susceptibility to treatment, their signs and symptoms, and the consequences if they are left untreated. Some are caused by bacteria. These usually can be treated and cured. Others are caused by viruses and can typically be treated but not cured. More than 15 million new cases of STD are diagnosed annually in the United States.

SENTINEL: Sentinel surveillance is a method in epidemiology where a subset of the population is surveyed for the presence of communicable diseases. Also, a sentinel is an animal used to indicate the presence of a disease within an area.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

frequently become so debilitated by the symptoms of AIDS that they are unable to work or do household chores. Other persons with AIDS may experience intermittent phases of life-threatening illness followed by periods during which they appear to be reasonably healthy.

A few people known to have been infected with HIV ten or more years ago have not developed symptoms of AIDS. Scientists are trying to ascertain what factors may account for this lack of progression to AIDS, such as whether their immune systems have particular characteristics, whether they were infected with a less aggressive strain of the virus or whether their genes may protect them from the effects of HIV. Researchers hope that understanding the body's natural method of controlling infection may produce ideas for protective HIV vaccines that can prevent the disease from progressing in the general population.

Diagnosis

Because early HIV infection often causes no symptoms, health care providers can usually diagnose it by testing blood for the presence of antibodies (disease-fighting proteins) to HIV. HIV antibodies generally do not reach noticeable levels in standard blood tests in the blood for one to three months or more following infection. In order to determine whether a person has been recently infected, health care providers can screen for the presence of HIV genetic material. Such direct screening of HIV is extremely critical in order to prevent transmission of HIV from recently infected individuals. Such individuals can discuss with health care providers when they should start treatment to help combat HIV and prevent the emergence of opportunistic infections. Early testing also alerts people to avoid high-risk behaviors that could transmit the virus to others. Health care providers often provide counseling to individuals who test HIV positive. People can be tested anonymously at many sites if they are concerned about confidentiality.

The diagnosis of HIV infection is established by using two different types of antibody tests: ELISA and Western Blot. Individuals who are highly likely to be infected with HIV, but have received negative results for both tests may request additional tests or may be told to repeat antibody testing at a later date, when antibodies are more likely to have developed.

Babies born to HIV infected mothers may or may not be infected with the virus, but all carry their mothers' antibodies to HIV for several months. If these babies lack symptoms, a doctor cannot make a definitive diagnosis of HIV infection using standard antibody tests. New technologies have been developed to more accurately determine HIV infection in infants between ages 3–15 months. Researchers are evaluating a number of blood tests to determine which ones can best diagnose HIV infection in infants younger than three months.

Scope and Distribution

Since 1981, more than 900,000 cases of AIDS have been reported in the United States. At least as many Americans may be infected with HIV, 25% of whom are not yet aware of their infection. AIDS has been spreading most rapidly among non-Caucasian populations and is one of the foremost killers of adult African-American males between the ages 25–44. The CDC has produced statistics showing that AIDS affects nearly seven times more African-Americans and three times more Hispanics than whites in the United States.

Worldwide, the AIDS epidemic has killed more than 25 million people since 1981, and an estimated 40 million people are living with AIDS today. Young people, under 25 years old, now account for more than half of all new HIV infections.

IN CONTEXT: CULTURAL CONNECTIONS

Following the discovery of AIDS, scientists attempted to identify the virus that causes the disease. In 1983–84, two scientists and their teams reported isolating HIV, the virus that causes AIDS. One was French immunologist Luc Montagnier (1932–), working at the Pasteur Institute in Paris, and the other was American immunologist Robert Gallo (1937–) at the National Cancer Institute in Bethesda, Maryland. Both identified HIV as the cause of AIDS and showed the pathogen to be a retrovirus, meaning that its genetic material is RNA, instead of DNA. Following the discovery, a dispute ensued over who made the initial discovery, but today Gallo and Montagnier are credited as co-discoverers.

Treatment and Prevention

When AIDS first appeared in the United States, there were no medicines that were effective against HIV and few treatments existed for the associated opportunistic diseases. Within a relatively short time after the discovery of HIV, researchers began to develop drugs to fight both HIV infection and its associated infections and cancers.

The first group of drugs used to treat HIV infection, called nucleoside reverse transcriptase (RT) inhibitors, interrupts an early stage of the virus as it replicates (duplicates). These drugs slow the spread of HIV in the body and delay the start of opportunistic infections. This class of drugs, called nucleoside analogs, includes AZT (azidothymidine), ddC (zalcitabine), ddI (dideoxyinosine), d4T (stavudine), 3TC (lamivudine), abacavir, tenofovir, and emtricitabine.

Physicians can also prescribe non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs) to treat HIV infection, such as delavridine, nevirapine, and efravirenz, often in combination with other antiretroviral drugs.

A second class of drugs for treating HIV infection called protease inhibitors was later approved. Protease inhibitors interrupt the virus from replicating itself at a later step in its life cycle. They include ritonavir, saquinivir, indinavir, amprenivir, nelfinavir, lopinavir, atazanavir, and fosamprenavir.

A third new class of drugs known as HIV fusion inhibitors includes enfuvirtide, the first approved fusion inhibitor, which works by interfering with HIV-1's ability to enter into cells by blocking the merging of the virus with the cell membranes. This inhibition blocks HIV's ability to enter and infect the human immune cells. Enfuvirtide is designed for use in combination with other anti-HIV treatments. It reduces the level of HIV infection in the blood and may be active against HIV that has become resistant to current antiviral treatment schedules.

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

The list below reflects data on the percentage (%) of all deaths in children under 5 years of age due to HIV/AIDS as reported by World Health Organization in February 2007.

Data is shown for countries reporting approximately that 4% or more of children under 5 years of age die from AIDS/HIV

- Burkina Faso: 4.00%
- Chad: 4.06%
- Trinidad and Tobago: 4.69%
- Ukraine: 4.95%
- Nigeria: 4.96%
- Rwanda: 4.99%
- Bahamas: 5.34%
- CÔte d’Ivoire: 5.59%
- Ghana: 5.74%
- Togo: 5.78%
- Jamaica: 6.09%
- Thailand: 6.18%
- Eritrea: 6.21%
- Honduras: 6.28%
- Cameroon: 7.24%
- Equatorial Guinea: 7.39%
- Uganda: 7.67%
- Guyana: 7.68%
- Burundi: 8.00%
- Haiti: 8.28%
- United Republic of Tanzania: 9.29%
- Congo: 9.33%
- Gabon: 10.10%
- Central African Republic: 12.40%
- Mozambique: 12.94%
- Malawi: 14.04%
- Kenya: 14.57%
- Zambia: 16.12%
- Zimbabwe: 40.59%
- Swaziland: 47.00%
- Namibia: 52.96%
- Botswana: 53.85%
- Lesotho: 56.19%
- South Africa: 57.08%

SOURCE: *World Health Organization*

Because HIV can become resistant to any of these drugs, health care providers must use a combination treatment to effectively suppress the virus. When multiple drugs (three or more) are used in combination, it is referred to as highly active antiretroviral therapy, or HAART, and can be used by people who are newly infected with HIV as well as people with AIDS. Researchers have credited HAART as being a major factor in significantly reducing the number of deaths from AIDS in the U.S. While HAART is not a cure for AIDS, it has greatly improved the health of many people with AIDS and reduces the amount of virus circulating in the blood to nearly undetectable levels. Researchers, however, have shown that HIV remains present in some places in the body, such as the lymph nodes, brain, testes, and retina of the eye, even in people who have been treated.

Opportunistic Infections A number of available drugs help treat the opportunistic infections of AIDS. These drugs include foscarnet and ganciclovir to treat CMV (cytomegalovirus) eye infections, fluconazole to treat yeast and other fungal infections, and TMP/SMX (trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole) or pentamidine to treat a pneumonia known as PCP (*Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia) that is sometimes associated with AIDS.

Cancers Health care providers use radiation, chemotherapy, or injections of alpha interferon, a genetically engineered protein that occurs naturally in the human body, to treat Kaposi’s sarcoma or other cancers associated with HIV infection.

Prevention

In the absence of a vaccine for HIV, the only means to prevent infection by the virus is to avoid behaviors that put people at risk of infection, such as sharing needles and having unprotected sex. Because many people infected with HIV have no symptoms, there is no way of knowing with certainty whether a sexual partner is infected unless he or she has repeatedly tested negative for the virus and has not engaged in any risky behavior. Abstaining from having sex offers the most protection from AIDS. Using male latex condoms or female polyurethane condoms have been shown in prospective studies to offer partial protection during oral, anal, or vaginal sex. Only water-based lubricants should be used with male latex condoms.

Although some laboratory evidence shows that spermicides can kill HIV, researchers have not found that these products can prevent the transmission of HIV during sex.

Ongoing Research

Research is ongoing in all areas of HIV infection, including developing and testing preventive HIV vaccines and new treatments for HIV infection and AIDS-associated opportunistic infections. Researchers also are trying to determine exactly how HIV damages the immune system. Recently, an electron micrograph was taken of HIV binding to a cell wall and is being examined for precise information about how the virus infects healthy cells. Such research is identifying new and more effective targets for drugs and vaccines. Investigators also continue to trace how the disease progresses in different people.

Current research also includes testing chemical barriers, such as topical microbicides (germ-killing compounds) that people can use in the vagina or in the rectum during sex to help prevent HIV transmission. Scientists are also examining

IN CONTEXT: ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY COVERAGE

The list below reflects selected data on antiretroviral therapy coverage from countries selected across the spectrum of data (ranked lowest to highest in terms of percentage of those estimated to need antiretroviral therapy who have actual access to the treatment) as reported by the World Health Organization in February 2007.

Selected non-reporting countries, or countries for which data was otherwise not available, included the Republic of Korea, Singapore, Afghanistan, and Iraq.

- Sudan: 1% of persons estimated to need ARV therapy have access to the treatment (data reported: Dec 2005)
- Nepal: 1% (Dec 2005)
- Bangladesh: 1% (Dec 2005)
- Somalia: 1% (Dec 2005)
- Guinea-Bissau: 1% (Dec 2005)
- Pakistan: 2% (Dec 2005)
- Sierra Leone: 2% (Dec 2005)
- Central African Republic: 3% (Dec 2005)
- Philippines: 5% (Dec 2005)
- Russian Federation: 5% (Dec 2005)
- Belarus: 5% (Dec 2005)
- Nigeria: 6% (Dec 2005)
- Angola: 6% (Dec 2005)
- Sri Lanka: 6% (Dec 2005)
- Ukraine: 6 % (Dec 2005)
- India: 7% (Dec 2005)
- United Republic of Tanzania: 7 % (Dec 2005)
- Ghana: 7% (Dec 2005)
- Ethiopia: 7% (Dec 2005)
- Myanmar: 7% (Dec 2005)
- Zimbabwe: 8% (Dec 2005)
- Mozambique: 9% (Dec 2005)
- Gambia: 9% (Dec 2005)
- Turkey: 9% (Dec 2005)
- Iran (Islamic Republic of): 9% (Dec 2005)
- Egypt: 12% (Dec 2005)
- Viet Nam: 12% (Dec 2005)
- South Africa: 21% (Dec 2005)
- Kenya: 24% (Dec 2005)
- China: 25% (Dec 2005)
- Swaziland: 31% (Dec 2005)
- Tunisia: 34% (Dec 2005)
- Cambodia: 36% (Dec 2005)
- Rwanda: 39% (Dec 2005)
- Guatemala: 43% (Dec 2005)
- Colombia: 44% (Dec 2005)
- Senegal: 47% (Dec 2005)
- Guyana: 50% (Dec 2005)
- Uganda: 51% (Dec 2005)
- Mexico: 71% (Dec 2005)
- Canada: 75% (Dec 2005)
- Israel: 75% (Dec 2005)
- Italy: 75% (Dec 2005)
- New Zealand: 75% (Dec 2005)
- United Kingdom: 75% (Dec 2005)
- United States of America: 75% (Dec 2005)
- Costa Rica: 80% (Dec 2005)
- Argentina: 81% (Dec 2005)
- Brazil: 83% (Dec 2005)
- Venezuela (Bolivarian Republic of): 84% (Dec 2005)
- Botswana: 85% (Dec 2005)
- Cuba: 100% (Dec 2005)

SOURCE: *World Health Organization, Progress on global access to HIV antiretroviral therapy. A report on "3 by 5" and beyond. Geneva, World Health Organization and Joint United Nations Programme on HIV/AIDS, March 2006.*

the effectiveness of other ways of preventing HIV transmission, such controlling other sexually transmitted infections like chlamydia that have a role in making HIV easier to contract.

Impacts and Issues

As the AIDS pandemic nears its 30th year, the number of people infected with HIV continues to climb steadily. Approximately two thirds of infected persons live in Africa, where the epidemic grew exponentially during the decade of the 1990s, and one fifth are in Asia, where the epidemic has been growing most rapidly in recent years. By the end of 2006, more than 40 million people worldwide were living with HIV infection. Worldwide funding from public and private sources to combat the epidemic has similarly risen dramatically, in an increasingly urgent effort to reverse the growth trajectory of the epidemic. Recent estimates of worldwide HIV infections and deaths have been revised downward, but these downward revisions do not reflect the uncertainty and unreliability of global HIV statistics outside of the major industrial nations.

Analysis of the reliable data has shown that the primary modes of HIV transmission have not changed significantly over time from those outlined above: unprotected heterosexual intercourse, unprotected anal sex between men, injection-drug use, unsafe medical injections and blood transfusions, and transmission from mother to child during pregnancy, labor and delivery, or breast-feeding. Direct blood contact, such as the sharing of drug-injection equipment, is by far the most efficient means of transmitting the virus. However the specific features of the epidemic vary among regions and within countries. Globally, in the *World Health Report 2004*, the World Health Organization (WHO) states that "unprotected sexual intercourse between men and women is the

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

The World Health Organization (WHO) states that "in the developing world, 6 million people infected with HIV need access to antiretroviral (ARV) therapy. Only 300,000 have such access. To address the HIV/AIDS crisis, the World Health Organization, with the Joint United Nations Programme on AIDS (UNAIDS) and other partners, has committed itself to having 3 million people living with HIV/AIDS in developing countries on ARV treatment by the end of 2005."

SOURCE: *World Health Organization*

predominant mode of transmission of the virus." This report also states that "In sub-Saharan Africa and the Caribbean, women are at least as likely as men to become infected." In India, a large proportion of infected persons are prostitutes and long-haul truck drivers. In areas of China, India, Thailand, and Vietnam, HIV transmission is being fueled primarily by injection-drug use. In other parts of Southeast Asia, Cambodia, Myanmar, Thailand, and Vietnam, men having sex with prostitutes are a major factor.

The most recent statistics underline global disparities in AIDS deaths. Absent treatment with antiretroviral drugs, it usually takes about 10 years for HIV infection to progress to AIDS. More than two million people in sub-Saharan Africa died of AIDS in 2006 (accounting for three-quarters of the worldwide total). By comparison, in Western Europe, where drug treatment is widely available, only a few thousand people died of AIDS. In the most recent year of statistics, more than 12 million children in sub-Saharan Africa were orphaned by AIDS. Because the rapid growth of the epidemic is more recent in Asia, the number of deaths from AIDS has been comparatively lower than in Africa, given the number of infected people and a similar lack of drug treatment. Still, tens of thousands of people have died in Thailand and China each year in the past several years and death rates are increasing as asymptomatic infections acquired in the past decade progress to full-blown AIDS. Sub-Saharan Africa continues to have the most mother-to-child transmission of the virus, where more than a half-million children died of AIDS in 2005.

Increasingly the mantra of the international community is access for all to effective antiretroviral therapy. Only two approaches to containing the epidemic have been effective: preventing new HIV infections and providing antiretroviral treatment to victims of HIV. As there is no AIDS vaccine, prevention efforts focus on education about sexual and other practices, behavioral change, and outreach to marginalized groups of people, including injection-drug users and sex workers and their clients. Many infected people do not realize that they are infected; others may not seek available care because of the stigma of being HIV positive. Cambodia and Thailand are cited as examples of nations that have prevention programs promoting increased condom use by prostitutes and their clients that have been demonstrably effective.

Even if ambitious WHO goals for increasing access to antiretroviral treatment are successful, and despite substantial progress toward these goals, less than 10 percent of the people globally that need treatment for HIV infection are receiving it. A few countries such as Botswana, Senegal, and Uganda in Africa, and Brazil in South America are doing better. Brazil has a universal program for the distributing antiretroviral medications. Botswana, with one of the highest HIV infection rates in the world, has a program of routine HIV testing and is also successfully expanding access to drug treatment.

In summary, there is some evidence that the global HIV epidemic is starting to slow slightly, both in the rate of new infections and in the AIDS death rate. Behavioral change based on detailed knowledge of the means of viral transmission has been successful in saving millions of lives, and access to modern drug therapy has and can save millions more. Although the ultimate eradication of HIV infection remains a cherished goal of the worldwide medical research community, efforts to change behavior and expand access to currently available treatments will save untold millions of lives until the enigma of HIV infection is finally solved.

Primary Source Connection

In the commentary that follows, Nicholas D. Kristof describes the failures of political and health policies during the first quarter century of the AIDS pandemic in the context of family impacts in Swaziland. At the time of publication, Nicholas D. Kristof served as a columnist for the *The New York Times* since November 2001. In 1990, Kristof shared a Pulitzer Prize for coverage of China's Tiananmen Square uprising and democracy movement. In 2006, Mr. Kristof won a second Pulitzer for commentary.

See Also *AIDS: Origin of the Modern Pandemic; Bloodborne Pathogens; Epidemiology; Opportunistic Infection; Public Health and Infectious Disease; Sexually Transmitted Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Johanson, Paula. *HIV and AIDS (Coping in a Changing World)*. New York: Rosen, 2007.

World Health Organization. *Preventing HIV/AIDS in Young People*. Geneva: WHO, 2006.

Periodicals

Steinbrook R. Global Health: The AIDS Epidemic in 2004. New England Journal of Medicine 2004; 351:115–117, Jul 8, 2004.

Steinbrook R. HIV in India—The Challenges Ahead. New England Journal of Medicine 2007; 356: 1197–1201, Mar 22, 2007.

Steinbrook R. HIV in India—A Complex Epidemic. New England Journal of Medicine 2007; 356: 1089–1093, Mar 15, 2007.

Web Sites

AIDSinfo.<http://aidsinfo.nih.gov> (accessed April 9, 2007).

NIH Vaccine Research Center. "Become an HIV Vaccine Study Volunteer." <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/vrc/clintrials/clin_steps.htm%20%20%20> (accessed April 9, 2007).

Kenneth T. LaPensee

AIDS: Origin of the Modern Pandemic

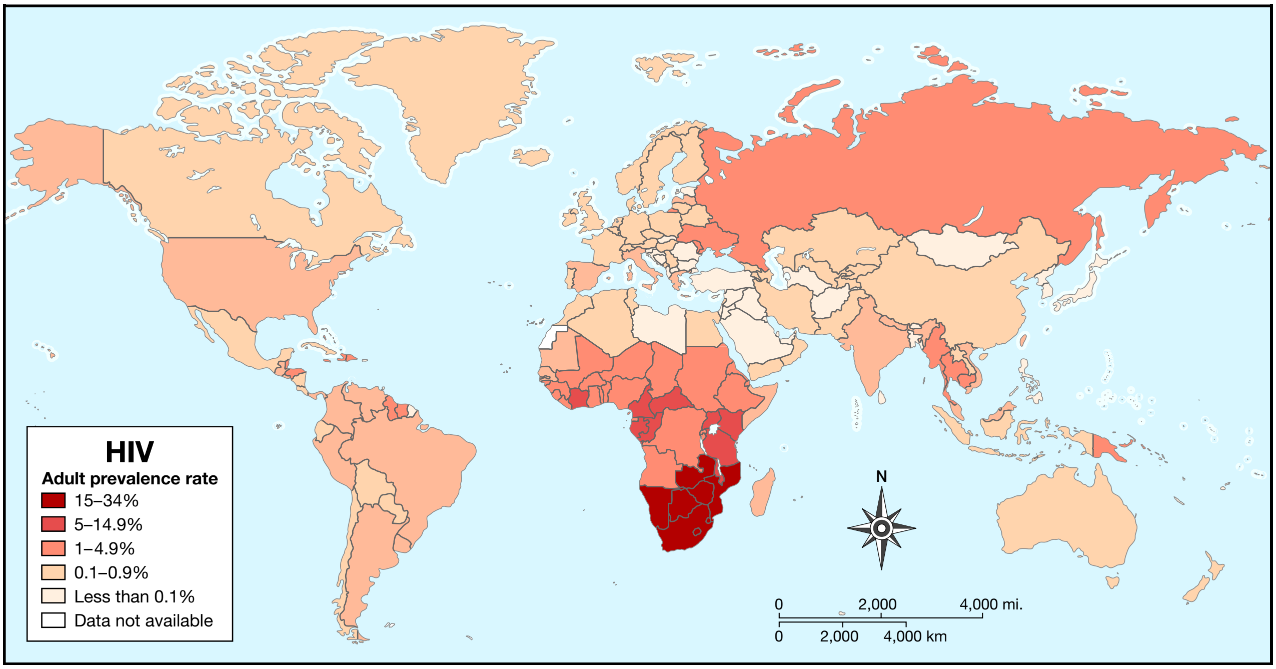
Introduction

The world has reached the twenty-fifth year of the modern AIDS pandemic, which has been acknowledged by the United Nations (UN) to be among the deadliest epidemics in human history. AIDS has killed 25 million people and infected an estimated additional 40 million people since 1981, many of whom will die of the disease without effective treatment.

History and Policy Response

Little is yet known about the incidence and prevalence of AIDS prior to the first reported cases in the United States in the early 1980s. In the 1970s, the HIV virus was unknown and, given its latency period with which clinicians are now familiar, transmission was not associated with signs or symptoms significant enough to be noticed. A small number of case reports of AIDS and medical archaeological studies have uncovered human infections with HIV prior to 1970. Scientists have pieced together evidence suggesting that AIDS originated in Africa, but the precise location of the pandemic's origin remains unknown. AIDS is thought to have begun in the primordial forests of West Africa when a virus harbored in the blood of a monkey or a chimpanzee made the genetic leap to humans, possibly after a hunter was

An African woman weakened by AIDS struggles to summon the energy to cook a meal for her family. When AIDS was first identified in homosexual males in the United States, the disease was already spreading among heterosexual Africans in Uganda and was known simply as "slim." *© Gideon Mendel/Corbis.*



Map showing HIV prevalence rates in adults (15–49) in 2005. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

infected by a bite. HIV was discovered by researchers in a blood sample collected in 1959 from a man in Kinshasa, Congo. Further genetic analysis of the man's blood indicated that the HIV infection was caused by a single virus in the late 1940s or early 1950s. Thus, it appears that the earliest human infections went unnoticed on a continent where people routinely die from tropical diseases with unusual manifestations.

Analyses of medical records in African countries have shown that there had been striking increases in opportunistic infections now known to be AIDS-related during the late 1970s and early 1980s. These included "slim" disease in Zaire (late 1970s) and in Uganda and Tanzania (early 1980s); esophageal candidiasis in Rwanda (from 1983); aggressive Kaposi's sarcoma in Zaire (early 1980s) and in Zambia and Uganda (1982 and 1983); and crypotococcal meningitis in Zaire (late 1970s to early 1980s). Research suggests that although isolated cases of AIDS may have occurred in Africa earlier, it was probably rare until the late 1970s and early 1980s. Studies further suggest that demographic groups and the routes of disease transmission have been largely similar in Africa and Western nations, implicating sexual activity among young and middle-aged people, blood transfusions, vertical transmission from mother to infant, and frequent exposure to unsterilized needles as the most likely means of transmitting AIDS.

Thus, available data suggest that the modern AIDS pandemic started in the mid- to late-1970s. By 1980, HIV had spread to North America, South America, Europe, and Australia. During this early stage of the epidemic, the transmission of the virus was unhindered by awareness of the disease or any preventive action, and approximately 100,000–300,000 persons are estimated to have contracted the infection.

In March 1981, however, a few cases of an aggressive form of Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) were documented among young gay men in New York. This development caused concern because KS was known as a rare, relatively benign cancer that tended to occur in elderly people with immune system impairment. Simultaneously, there was an increase in California and New York in the incidence of *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia (PCP), an unusual lung infection. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) noticed this increase in April in the course of monitoring prescriptions that were dispensed for rare drugs and detected a spike in requests for pentamine to treat PCP. In June 1981, the CDC published a report outlining the occurrence of five cases of PCP without identifiable cause in Los Angeles. This report marks the beginning of a more general awareness of AIDS, and, shortly thereafter, the CDC formed a task force to investigate a syndrome that they called Kaposi's sarcoma and Opportunistic Infections (KSOI).

Speculation among scientists soon centered on whether this apparently new disease was a consequence of the widespread recreational use of amyl nitrate for sexual stimulation among gay men, or the possibility of immune system overload in this population due to exposure to repeated sexually transmitted infections such as cytomegalovirus (CMV). CDC officials issued statements indicating that the disease appeared to be limited

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIRETROVIRAL DRUGS: Antiretroviral (ARV) drugs prevent the reproduction of a type of virus called a retrovirus. The human immunodefiency virus (HIV), which causes acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), is a retrovirus. These ARV drugs are therefore used to treat HIV infections. These medicines cannot prevent or cure HIV infection, but they help to keep the virus in check.

IMMUNODEFICIENCY: In immunodeficiency disorders, part of the body's immune system is missing or defective, thus impairing the body's ability to fight infections. As a result, the person with an immunodeficiency disorder will have frequent infections that are generally more severe and last longer than usual.

LATENT INFECTION: An infection already established in the body but not yet causing symptoms, or having ceased to cause symptoms after an active period, is a latent infection.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

to gay men and that there was no apparent risk of spreading the disease through contagion.

By 1982, however, AIDS was reported among injection drug users, and disease patterns among a group of gay men in California appeared to support the notion that the disease was sexually transmitted. Later in the year, cases appeared among citizens of Haiti and among persons with hemophilia, a blood disorder that is treated with infusions of blood clotting factors. After the spreading disease shed its exclusive association with gay men, the CDC characterized the disease as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome). This terminology for the ailment was chosen because the immune system impairment that was its hallmark was acquired rather than inherited as in other known immunodeficiencies. AIDS was labeled a syndrome because it was associated with a group of diseases rather than a single disease. By the end of 1982, cases of AIDS began to appear in European countries, and a wasting syndrome dubbed "slim" was reported in Uganda, which was soon linked to AIDS. By the end of the year, over 600 cases had been reported in the United States.

In 1983, physicians diagnosed the first cases of AIDS among women with no other apparent risk factors, indicating that the disease could be transmitted by heterosexual contact. In view of the evidence that AIDS was an infection that could be transmitted via blood and blood products, the CDC mounted a concerted effort to discover an infectious agent responsible for causing the disease. In May, doctors at the Institute Pasteur in France reported the isolation of a new virus, which they suggested might be the cause of AIDS. Although scant notice was taken of this announcement when it was made, a sample of the virus was sent to the CDC. Several months later, the virus was named lymphadenopathy-associated virus or LAV, and a sample of LAV was sent to the National Cancer Institute (NCI). In the meantime, public anxiety over the means of AIDS transmission, viewed by some people as potentially spread through casual contact due to its incidence among children, continued to grow, giving rise to increasingly numerous panic-driven and sometimes cruel interactions involving people either with AIDS or seen as at risk for AIDS. These incidents included evictions of persons with AIDS from housing; families and loved ones abandoning their relatives or partners with AIDS; and use of surgical masks during police work with individuals suspected of having AIDS. The CDC soon issued information that confirmed that there was no evidence for casual transmission and explained the possibility of bloodborne transmission of infection of AIDS from mothers to children.

By 1984, it became clear that the AIDS epidemic had been established in central Africa among populations that were not at risk from homosexuality, drug use, blood transfusion, or hemophilia. In Africa, cases often had an aggressive and often fatal form of Kaposi's sarcoma, which had up to this point been endemic to the region, but had been easily treatable. The main risk factor in Africa for AIDS appeared to be heterosexual contact. American and European scientists began to focus on the African epidemic, particularly because it appeared more likely to spread throughout the world due to its predominantly heterosexual mode of transmission than the epidemic in America and Europe.

The Institute Pasteur continued to claim that LAV was the cause of AIDS, but a related virus called human t-cell leukemia virus III (HTLV-III) was discovered by a research team in San Francisco. Investigators began to suspect that these viruses were identical. By the end of

1984, the CDC had reported nearly 8,000 AIDS cases and 3,500 deaths from the disease.

In 1985, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration confirmed that LAV and HTLV-III were identical, and that the virus was indeed the cause of AIDS. The FDA additionally ordered testing of the national blood supply and required that anyone testing positive for the virus would not be allowed to donate blood. Now that the cause of AIDS could be detected, public bewilderment over AIDS transmission gave way to concern over the dissemination and use of information about HTLV-III/LAV infection. The gay community voiced fears of stigmatization of persons found to carry the virus, believing the information would be misused by employers and insurance companies to exclude infected individuals. Incidents of cruelty and prejudice directed toward AIDS victims and perceived risk groups continued to mount, though Haitians were removed from the list of high-risk groups in view of new understanding of heterosexual and injection drug transmission risks. The year 1985 ended with more than 20,000 reported U.S. AIDS cases, with over 15,000 cases reported in other nations.

The International Committee on the Taxonomy of Viruses ruled in May 1986 that the LAV and HTLV-III virus names should be dropped in favor of Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV). During that year, the Director of the WHO announced that some 10 million people worldwide could already have been infected with HIV by June 1986. The true scope and devastation of the disease had begun to be apparent to the scientific community.

Impacts and Issues

As of early 2007, officials at UNAIDS, a United Nations organization tasked with uniting efforts to treat and eliminate HIV, estimated that another 50 million people could die from AIDS in India and China alone by the year 2025. In Africa, where research indicates that the epidemic likely began, AIDS will have killed 100 million people by that time if trends continue. Although antiretroviral medications have begun to lower expected death rates, AIDS could still kill 40 million additional Africans by 2025. To date, all vaccine development programs have failed. Prevention programs focused on changing sexual and drug-use behaviors have had mixed success across regions and across cultural and political divides.

Primary Source Connection

The primary source "Many Blood Banks Deny Request of Hemophiliacs" demonstrates the confusion and fears surrounding the earliest days of the AIDS epidemic in the United States, when the cause of the disease was known, but erroneously linked only to specific groups.

The author/creator, The Associated Press, is a worldwide and multiple Pulitzer Prize winning news agency based in New York.

Editor's note: As set forth in the introduction, the perspective of time and accumulation of subsequent information can often make assertions contained in primary sources—even if based upon the best information available at the time written—subsequently misleading or wrong. Readers should be mindful that primary

IN CONTEXT: THE FIRST REPORTS OF AIDS

Within an eight-month period in 1980–1981, five young men were hospitalized in the Los Angeles area with a rare, severe form of pneumonia caused by the pathogen (disease-causing microorganism) *Pneumocystis carinii*. In reporting the outbreak to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), physician Michael S. Gottlieb and his colleagues first documented in medical literature the disease that was to become known as AIDS. The report jarred physicians in New York and San Francisco, who noticed a handful of similar cases occurring at about the same time. In another unusual occurrence, eight young men in the New York area with Kaposi's sarcoma had recently died. Kaposi's sarcoma is a form of skin cancer that was usually seen mainly in elderly persons. Suspecting a new or emerging disease among young men, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) formed a task force to investigate the outbreaks. Gottlieb was an assistant professor of medicine at the University of California at Los Angeles (UCLA) in 1981 when he submitted the featured report as its lead author. In 1985, Gottlieb co-founded the American Foundation for AIDS Research.

IN CONTEXT: REAL TIME DELAYS IN RECOGNIZING GLOBAL LINKS

In initial reports to the CDC, all of the young men with both *Pneumocystis* pneumonia and Kaposi's sarcoma were actively homosexual, and early on, the task force considered the disease likely to be confined to the community of homosexual males. By the end of 1981, it became clear that that the newly recognized disease affected other population groups, as the first cases of *Pneumocystis* pneumonia were reported in drug users who injected their drugs. It also became clear that the disease was not confined to the United States when similar cases were found within a year in the United Kingdom, Haiti, and in Uganda, where the disease was already known as "slim."

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

The advent of AIDS (Acquired Immunity Deficiency Syndrome) in early 1981 stunned the scientific community, as many researchers at that time viewed the world to be on the brink of eliminating infectious disease. Victims of AIDS most often die from opportunistic infections that take hold of the body because the immune system is severely impaired. AIDS is caused by the Human Immune Deficiency Virus (HIV). HIV belongs to a class of viruses known as retroviruses. These viruses are known as RNA viruses, because they have RNA (ribonucleic acid) as their basic genetic material instead of DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid).

Following its discovery and spread in Western nations, the urgency of combating AIDS significantly altered the distribution of research funding in the biomedical sciences—including increased funding for research on retroviruses. Whether such shifts in funding were insufficient (i.e., more research money should have been spent sooner) or to the overall detriment of world health—because it sometime shifted money from research on diseases that kill more people worldwide—is often a contentious scientific, political, and ethical issue.

sources often contain information later proven to be false, or contain viewpoints and terms unacceptable to future generations. It is important to view primary sources within the historical and social context existing at the time of creation.

This text has been suppressed due to author restrictions.

See Also *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Antiviral Drugs; Bloodborne Pathogens; Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Epidemiology; Opportunistic Infection; Public Health and Infectious Disease; Sexually Transmitted Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mayer, Kenneth H., and H.F. Pizer. *The AIDS Pandemic: Impact on Science and Society*. San Diego: Academic Press, 2004.

Periodicals

Hymes, K.B., J.B. Greene, A. Marcus, et al. "Kaposi's Sarcoma in Homosexual Men: A Report of Eight Cases." *Lancet* 2 (1981): 598–600.

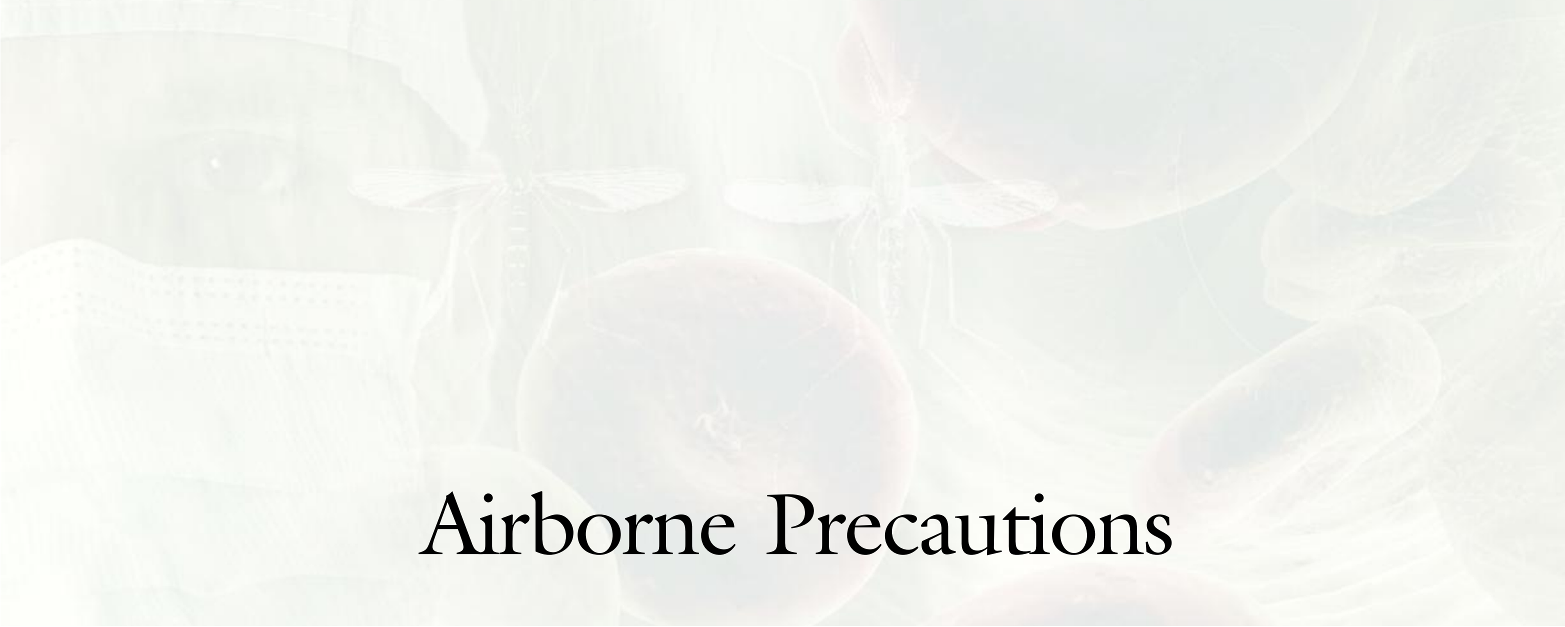
Gottlieb, M.S., et.al. "*Pneumocystis* Pneumonia—Los Angeles" Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (June 5, 1981): (30) 21, 1–3. Available online at <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/june_5.htm> (accessed April 21, 2007).

Web Sites

Kaiser Family Foundation. "The Global HIV-AIDS Timeline." <http://www.kff.org/hivaids/timeline/hivtimeline.cfm> (accessed February 19, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Milestones in the U.S. HIV Epidemic." <http://www.thebody.com/cdc/pdfs/timeline.pdf> (accessed March 25, 2007).

Kenneth T.LaPensee



Airborne Precautions

Introduction

Airborne precautions are procedures that are designed to reduce the chance that certain disease-causing (pathogenic) microorganisms will be transmitted through the air.

The precautions relate to airborne, microbe-containing droplets that are less than five microns in diameter (a micron is 10^{-6} meters). Such droplets can remain suspended in the air for a long time and so can be transported a considerable distance (such as from room to room) in even a gentle current of air. As well, particles of this size can be inhaled deeply into the lung, where the chance of establishing an infection can be increased.

Airborne precautions that involve the treatment of the air and ventilation systems are necessary for patients who have tuberculosis, and often for those with herpes zoster (shingles), varicella (chickenpox), and rubeola (measles). As of 2007, the precautions also apply to severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), as the mechanisms of spread of the virus are still being investigated. Other diseases do not require these mandated precautions.

History and Scientific Foundations

It has been known for over a century that some bacteria and viruses can be dispersed into the air, and that they can cause infection if they are inhaled or enter a wound. Indeed, the physical isolation of a operating theater from the rest of a hospital and the wearing of a face mask by health care providers is designed in part to limit the airborne spread of microbes.

In the United States, regulated airborne precautions were instituted by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). The latest guidelines were issued in 1996. The CDC also formulated separate guidelines that were specific for patients with tuberculosis.

Airborne precautions against severe diseases such as SARS include high-filtration N95 masks, suits to prevent respiratory droplets from contacting the body, and negative-pressure ventilation in isolation areas, as illustrated by this medical worker standing inside an isolated area for SARS patients at a hospital in Guangdong, China, in 2004. *© Wilson Wen/epa/Corbis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

COHORT: A cohort is a group of people (or any species) sharing a common characteristic. Cohorts are identified and grouped in cohort studies to determine the frequency of diseases or the kinds of disease outcomes over time.

CONTACT PRECAUTIONS: Contact precautions are actions developed to minimize the person-to-person transfer of microorganisms by direct physical contact and indirectly by inhalation or touching a contaminated surface.

HEPA FILTER: A HEPA (high efficiency particulate air) filter is a filter that is designed to nearly totally remove airborne particles that are 0.3 microns (millionth of a meter) in diameter or larger. Such small particles can penetrate deeply into the lungs if inhaled.

■ Applications and Research

The airborne precautions pertain to patient placement in the hospital, transport of the patient from one area of the hospital to another, and the protective breathing gear worn by health care providers when around the patient.

According to the precautions, the affected patients must be housed in a room that has what is termed a negative air pressure relative to the surrounding spaces. Negative air pressure means that the number of air molecules in the room is less than the number of air molecules in the areas adjacent to the room. The result is that air will move into but not out of the room, reducing the chance that airborne microbes in the patient's room will disperse more widely. The air pressure of the room is monitored, the air in the room must be completely changed 6 to 12 times every hour, and the exhausted air is passed through a special type of air filter called a high-efficiency particulate (HEPA) filter that traps extremely small particles. The filter ensures that the exhausted air is not contaminated with the pathogenic microbes. The filter is changed at regular intervals and disposed of in a certain way to make sure that the trapped microbes do not pose a further hazard.

The room should also be separated from adjacent rooms and hallways by a door, which is left closed when not in use.

Ideally, the room should be just for the affected patient. If this is not possible, then more than one patient can be housed in the same room (this is called cohorting). These cohorts should have the same infection that is caused by the same microorganism (there are exceptions for tuberculosis). However, the patients should not have any other infections. If these precautions cannot be met, then another strategy should not be undertaken without the advice of infection control experts.

The precaution concerning respiratory protection is specific. When entering the affected patient's room, health care providers must wear an N-95 respirator, which is a mask certified by CDC's National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH). The mask is equipped with a filter that can trap over 95% of particles that are 0.3 microns or greater in diameter in an aerosol that is free of oil (oil can affect droplet size and is not the sort of aerosol encountered in hospitals).

Anyone who is susceptible to rubeola or chickenpox should not enter the room of a patient with these diseases without an N-95 mask. A person who has a compromised immune system should not have close contact with a person whose illness requires airborne precautions. This applies to other patients as well as visitors and health care personnel.

Airborne precautions also pertain to the movement of patients within the hospital. This movement should only be done when absolutely necessary. During transport, a surgical mask is placed over the patient's nose and mouth to minimize the dispersal of droplets.

■ Impacts and Issues

Airborne precautions reduce the spread of certain infections. But this safeguard comes with a price tag. Equipping hospital rooms to be negative pressure rooms, installing and maintaining HEPA filters, and equipping staff with respirators is expensive. Furthermore, the requirements to frequently document compliance with the precautions is an added burden to hospital caretakers.

One recent example highlighting airborne precautions concerns a type of recently emergent *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* that is extremely resistant to antibiotics. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), the extreme drug-resistant tuberculosis (XDR-TB) is virtually untreatable using the present arsenal of drugs. Strains of XDR-TB have been noted in individuals mainly in South Africa, but also in Russia, North America, South America, and Asia. According to WHO, people infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) are particularly susceptible to XDR-TB. As of 2007, prevention and containment through the use of airborne precautions constitute the main line of defense against XDR-TB.

See Also *Anthrax; Bioterrorism; Contact Precautions; Droplet Precautions; Standard Precautions.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Lawrence, Jean and Dee May. *Infection Control in the Community*. New York: Churchill Livingstone, 2003.

Tierno, Philip M. *The Secret Life of Germs: What They Are, Why We Need Them, and How We Can Protect Ourselves Against Them*. New York: Atria, 2004.

Periodicals

Booth, Timothy F., et al. "Detection of Airborne Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS) Cornonavirus and Environmental Contamination in SARS Outbreak Units." *Journal of Infectious Diseases* 191 (2005): 1472–1477.

Yu, Ignatius T.S., Tze Wai Wong, Yuk Lan Chiu, Nelson Lee, Yuguo Li. "Temproal-spation Analysis of Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome among Hospital Inpatients." *Clinical Infectious Diseases* 40 (2005): 1237–1243.

Brian Hoyle

IN CONTEXT: AVAILABILITY OF HOSPITAL BEDS

Airborne precautions pertain to patient placement in the hospital, transport of the patient from one area of the hospital to another, and the protective gear worn by health care providers when around the patient.

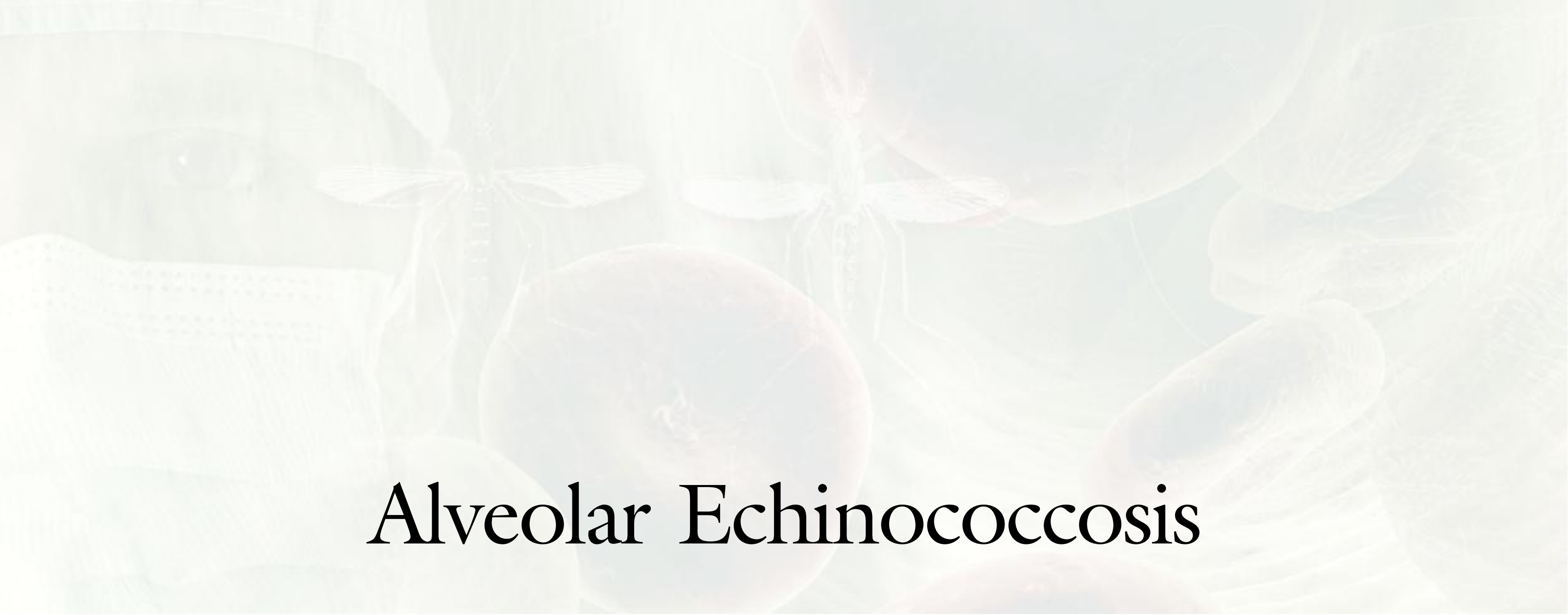
But how available are the hospital beds?

The list below reflects selected data from the World Health Organization that demonstrates the wide disparity in results reported by WHO as of February 2007. Data was not available for all countries, including a lack of data for: Angola, Botswana, Burkina Faso, Central African Republic, Chad, Ethiopia, Ghana, Kenya, Mali, Niger, Rwanda, Senegal, Togo, Uganda, and South Africa.

Country; Hospital beds (per 10,000 people); (Year data gathered).

- Nepal 1.5 beds (2001)
- Bangladesh 3.4 beds (2001)
- Afghanistan 3.9 beds (2001)
- Somalia 4.2 beds (1997)
- Guatemala 5 beds (2003)
- Cambodia 5.72 beds (2004)
- India 6.9 beds (1998)
- Sudan 7.1 beds (2003)
- Haiti 8 beds (2000)
- Mexico 10 beds (2003)
- Philippines 11.45 beds (2002)
- Iran (Islamic Republic of) 16.3 beds (2001)
- Egypt 21.7 beds (2003)
- Thailand 22.3 beds (1999)
- Maldives 22.6 beds (2003)
- Viet Nam 22.8 beds (2003)
- China 23.11 beds (2004)
- Sweden 30 beds (2004)
- United States 33 beds (2003)
- Ireland 35 beds (2004)
- Canada 36 beds (2003)
- United Kingdom 40 beds (2003)
- Italy 41 beds (2003)
- Cuba 49 beds (2004)
- Switzerland 59 beds (2003)
- France 76 beds (2003)
- Russian Federation 99 beds (2004)
- Belarus 107 beds (2004)
- Japan 129.37 beds (2001)
- Monaco 196 beds (1995)

SOURCE: *WHOSIS (WHO Statistical Information System), World Health Organization, Regional Office websites and publications.*



Alveolar Echinococcosis

Introduction

Alveolar echinococcosis (al-VEE-oh-ler ee-keye-ni-kah-KOH-sis) is an infection caused by the tapeworm *Echinococcus multilocularis.* The infection is rare in humans, although is serious when it occurs as, if not treated, the infection is nearly always lethal. Tumorlike formations—due to the growth of the larval form of the tapeworm—occur most commonly in the liver, but can also be present in the brain, lungs, and elsewhere in the body.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

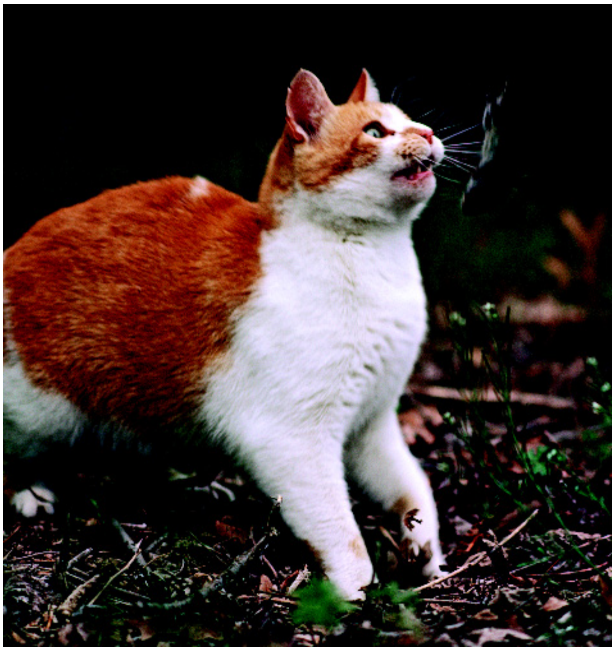
E. multilocularis has a life cycle that consists of an egg phase and a larval phase. The eggs are excreted in the feces of the infected animal. If the feces are eaten by another animal, the eggs can germinate to form the larva, which matures in the intestine. As part of the maturation process, eggs are produced, which are shed in the feces. The cycle can then repeat in another animal.

Humans acquire the infection by ingesting the eggs. This usually occurs in one of two ways. First, food that is contaminated with fox or coyote feces is eaten. This can happen when, for example, a person hiking in the woods eats herbs or berries collected along the route. Second and more commonly, eggs that have stuck to the fur of family pets as they have been shed by the animal (or picked up as the dog or cat has rubbed against vegetation) transfer to the hands of the owner when the animal is petted or groomed, and are accidentally ingested when the hands are put into the mouth.

As the larvae of the tapeworm grow, they aggregate (come together) to create tumorlike formations. These typically occur in the liver, but can spread elsewhere. The symptoms, which develop slowly over years, include abdominal pain, a feeling of weakness, and loss of weight. The symptoms can be mistaken for the slow growth of a liver tumor or the type of progressive liver damage that can result from the chronic over-consumption of alcohol.

Scope and Distribution

Alveolar echinococcosis is widespread in animal populations in northern latitudes including Europe, China, Russia, Asia, Japan, and North America (primarily in the north-central area of the United States from Montana to Ohio, Alaska, and most of Canada). In these



As the habitats of wildlife and domestic animals converge, domestic cats and dogs can become a source of alveolar echinococcosis disease in humans. Dogs and cats can become infected with *Echinococcus multilocularis* tapeworm larvae found in wild rodents, which in turn get the tapeworm larvae from wildlife such as coyotes. *James L. Amos/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

regions, the tapeworm is present in over 50% of the fox and coyote populations. Human cases have rarely been reported in North America; in the twentieth century only two cases are known to have occurred: one in the state of Minnesota and the other in the western Canadian province of Manitoba.

In addition to foxes and coyotes, *E. mulitlocularis* can be found in the intestinal tract of dogs and cats. The animals can also become infected when they eat rodents, voles, or field mice that are infected with the tapeworm larvae.

Because the infection occurs most often in wild foxes, people who are most at risk are those who spend much of their time outdoors. These include park rangers, trappers, and hunters. Urban and rural veterinarians also run a risk of contact because they handle animals that may carry the tapeworm eggs. There is no evidence of racial or gender association with the infection. The higher tendency of men to be infected could reflect the traditional dominance of men in occupations like logging and in pursuits like hunting.

The distribution of the infection may be spreading as the territory of wild foxes contracts and they come into closer contact with humans. This is partially due to the expansion of urban areas; the availability of food attracts foxes that had not previously inhabited these areas.

Treatment and Prevention

As of 2007, there is no cure for alveolar echinococcosis. The most common treatment involves surgery to remove the tumorlike larval mass, followed by drug therapy to attempt to prevent the germination of eggs that may still be present in the individual. Drug therapy, typically with the anti-fungal compound benzimidazole, can be long and expensive.

The best prevention is to lessen the chances of contacting *E. multilocularis.* Avoiding contact with living or dead wild animals unless protective gloves are worn is a sensible precaution. Keeping domestic pets close to home and away from contact with wild animals is another wise move. Washing hands after handling pets is another preventative step, but one that is difficult for most people to consistently follow.

Impacts and Issues

The main impact on human health of alveolar echinococcosis is the high death rate of the infection if it is not treated. The odds of survival for five years if the infection is untreated is only 40% versus almost 90% if treatment is provided.

Even with treatment, persons treated for alveolar echinococcosis often face a diminished quality of life. Furthermore, treatment comes with a high price tag; up to $300,000 per person.

The infection is an example of how political or economic decisions can influence a disease. The clearing of forests to provide more farmland or timber can cause rodent populations to become more concentrated in urban areas, increasing the chances for the spread of *E. multilocularis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

LARVA: Immature form (wormlike in insects; fishlike in amphibians) of an organism capable of surviving on its own. A larva does not resemble the parent and must go through metamorphosis, or change, to reach its adult stage. The initial stage of a mosquito after it hatches from its egg.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

SEE ALSO *Tapeworm Infections; Vector-borne Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Black, Jacquelyn G. *Microbiology: Principles and Explorations.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

Pelton, Robert Young. *Robert Young Pelton's The World's Most Dangerous Places.* 5th ed. New York: Collins, 2003.

Wobeser, Gary A. *Essentials of Disease in Wild Animals.* Boston: Blackwell Publishing Professional, 2005.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PREVENTION

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends that people who live in an area where *E. multilocularis* is often found in rodents and wild canines, take the following precautions to avoid infection:

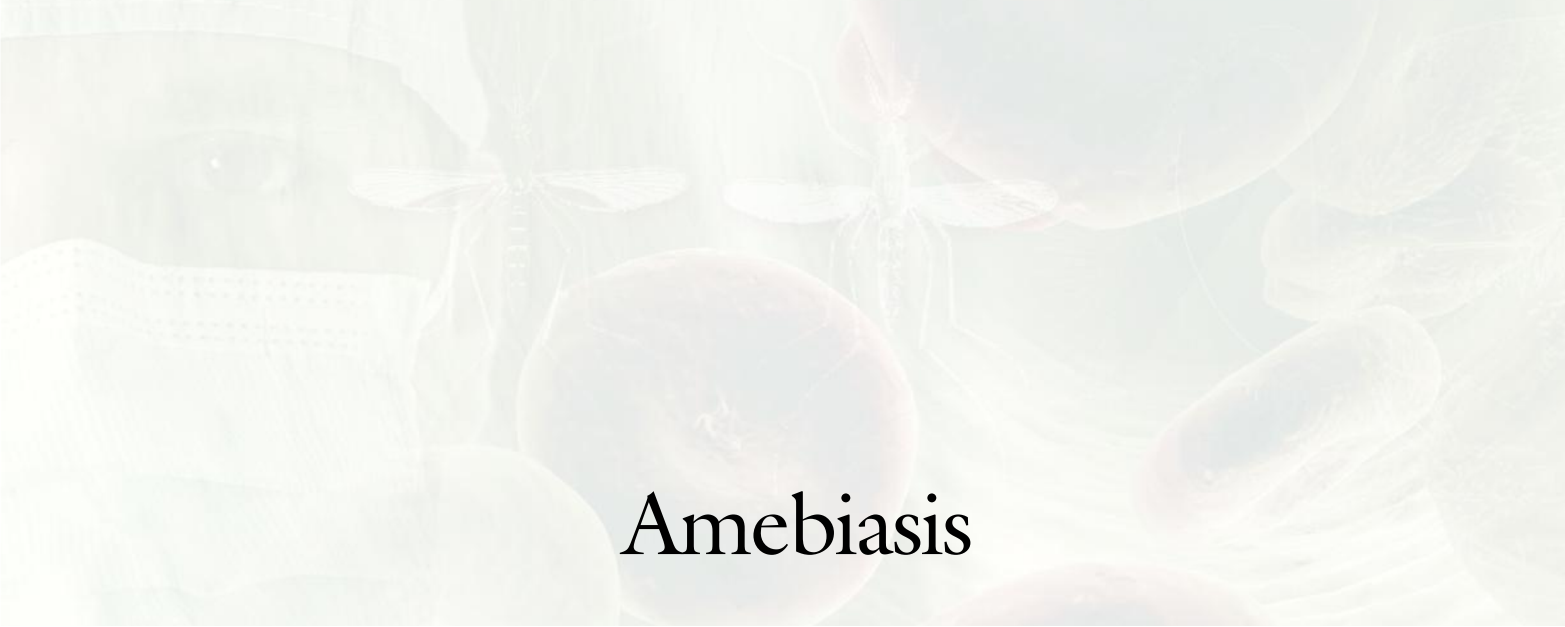
- Don't touch a fox, coyote, or other wild canine, dead or alive, unless you are wearing gloves. Hunters and trappers should use plastic gloves to avoid exposure.
- Don't keep wild animals, especially wild canines, as pets or encourage them to come close to your home.
- Don't allow your cats and dogs to wander freely or to capture and eat rodents.
- If you think that your pet may have eaten rodents, consult your veterinarian about the possible need for preventive treatments.
- After handling pets, always wash your hands with soap and warm water.
- Fence in gardens to keep out wild animals.
- Do not collect or eat wild fruits or vegetables picked directly from the ground. All wild-picked foods should be washed carefully or cooked before eating.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

Periodicals

Sréter, Tamás, Zoltáa Széll, Zsuzsa Egyed, István Varga. "Echinococcus Multilocularis: An Emerging Pathogen in Hungary and Central Eastern Europe?" *Emerging Infectious Diseases.* 9 (2003): 384–386.

Brian Hoyle



Amebiasis

Introduction

Amebiasis (am-e-BI-a-sis) is an infection that is caused by a one-celled parasite called *Entamoeba histolytica*. The infection, which produces an inflammation of the cells lining the intestinal tract, is also referred to as amebic (or amoebic) dysentery.

Amebiasis often results in relatively mild illness, producing diarrhea and abdominal pain. However, the infection can be quite severe, with inflammation being so extensive that the intestinal wall in the colon can become perforated, and damage can occur to both the liver and the brain. As well, diarrhea can be copious and often accompanied by vomiting, which can lead to dehydration if fluids are not replaced.

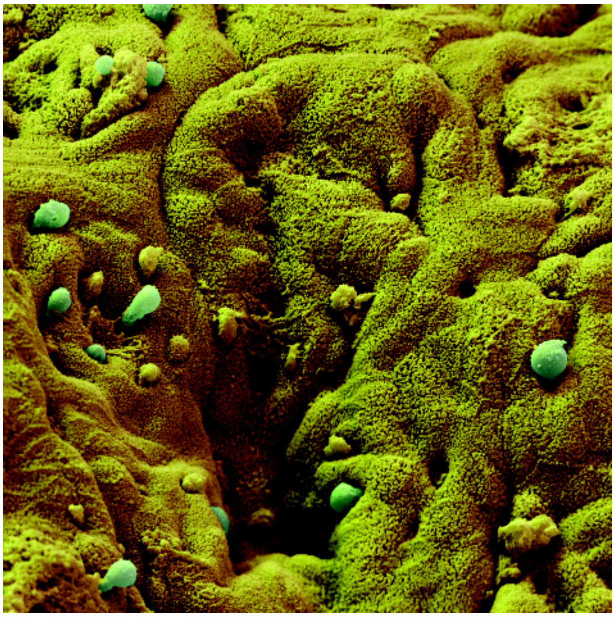
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

E. histolytica can occur in two forms. One form is known as a cyst. This form is very tough, and can survive harsh conditions of temperature and lack of moisture that would kill the other, growing form of the organism called the trophozoite. This hardiness makes a cyst similar to a bacterial spore. The parasite is excreted in feces as a cyst. It can survive for a long time until it finds itself in a more favorable environment, such as the intestinal tract of another person. There, the cyst can resume growth. The trophozoite is the form that causes amebiasis. Some trophozoites will form cysts and can be excreted, beginning another cycle of infection.

The cysts can also invade the walls of the intestine, where they can germinate into the trophozoite forms. Then, ulcers and diarrhea can be produced. Or, much more seriously, the cysts may enter the bloodstream and can be carried all over the body. Damage to tissues such as the brain and liver can result.

When symptoms develop, they tend to begin about 2 to 4 weeks after the parasite has entered the body, although some people develop symptoms in only a few days.

Amebiasis has been known since the early years of the twentieth century. Despite this, the diagnosis of amebiasis has not changed in over a century, still relying on the visual detection of the cyst in feces from the person suspected of having the infection. This can be a tedious and lengthy process, often requiring days of examination. Complicating diagnosis, the cysts of *E. histolytica* resemble that of other amoeba called *Entamoeba coli* and *Entamoeba dispar*, which are normal and harmless residents of the intestinal tract of warm-blooded animals, including humans. Indeed, *E. histolytica* and *E. dipar* are



Entamoeba histolytica, a species of parasitic protozoa, cause entamoebiasis and amebic dysentery. Humans are infected most often through food or water contaminated with human fecal material. *Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

DYSENTERY: Dysentery is an infectious disease that has ravaged armies, refugee camps, and prisoner-of-war camps throughout history. The disease still is a major problem in developing countries with primitive sanitary facilities.

TROPHOZOITE: The amoeboid, vegetative stage of the malaria protozoa.

virtually identical in appearance. This means that many cases of amebiasis are likely diagnosed incorrectly.

Scope and Distribution

Some people who are infected carry *E. histolytica* in their intestinal tract without displaying symptoms. Since the parasite can be excreted along with feces, a person can unknowingly pass the parasite to someone else by handling food with unwashed hands after going to the bathroom, by person-to-person contact (including sexual intercourse), or by contaminating drinking water with feces. This route of transmission can persist for years after a person has been exposed to the parasite. The persons who subsequently become infected might become ill.

Amebiasis affects about 50 million people worldwide each year, making it one of the two most common causes of intestinal inflammation; the other is caused by *Shigella*. Approximately 100,000 people die of the infection each year. Those most often affected are in poorer health; thus, amebiasis tends to be more common in developing countries, where sanitation is inadequate and where people live in crowded conditions, making the spread of the parasite much easier. However, anyone is susceptible; several hundred cases are reported each year in the United States, for example. In developed countries, those who become infected tend to be pregnant women, the young and the elderly, and those whose immune systems have become compromised due to malnourishment or disease (such as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS]).

Treatment and Prevention

Amebiasis is treatable using a combination of drug therapies. Some drugs generically called amebicides kill the organisms that are growing in the intestinal tract, while other drugs can lessen the chance that the infection will spread to tissues such as the liver.

Impacts and Issues

Persons who travel to high-risk countries such as parts of Africa, India, Latin America, and Southeast Asia, where the infection is commonly prevalent in some regions (such an infection is described as being endemic) should take precautions against contracting amebiasis. Precautions include drinking bottled water or boiling drinking water for at least one minute, peeling the skins off fresh fruits and vegetables before eating them, and proper handwashing using soap.

An important issue concerning amebiasis is that the parasite can be excreted in the feces of someone who has no symptoms of the infection. In fact, this is true for the majority of people; estimates are that only one in ten people who are infected actually become sick. While this is a small percent, the fact that millions of people become infected each year still means that a great many people become ill, with many more remaining capable of spreading the infection to others.

Research is ongoing to find more definitive ways of treating amebiasis, and in preventing the infection in the first place. As of 2007, there is no vaccine for the infection. A blood test is available that can detect the presence of the parasite. However, because the test detects the presence of antibodies—molecules produced by the immune system that are targeted against the particular invading organism—the test only reveals if someone has ever had an infection, not necessarily an ongoing infection.

The World Health Organization (WHO) recommends that if the presence of amoeba in the feces is confirmed microscopically but the person is not experiencing any symptoms, then it should not be assumed that the person has amebiasis.

On a larger scale, the WHO is building an international network, now totaling over 100 organizations, that together aim to reduce worldwide deaths from diseases such as amebiasis. The group, called the International Network to Promote Household Water Treatment and Safe Storage, plans to implement sustainable and affordable methods of purifying drinking water supplies in communities without access to sanitation or treated water, or with water that is improved but from unsafe sources. Although large waterborne outbreaks of amebiasis are uncommon, water treatment and sanitation measures are complimentary and are developed together when possible.

In the era of molecular biology, procedures have been developed that can detect the genetic material of *E. histolytica* in feces. However, the test is relatively expensive and requires specialized equipment and training that may not be part of a clinic, especially in an underdeveloped region.

SEE ALSO *Giardiasis; Parasitic Diseases; Sanitation.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Guerrant, Richard I., David H. Walker, and Peter F. Weller. *Tropical Infectious Diseases: Principles, Pathogens & Practice*. Oxford: Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Amebiasis." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/amebiasis/factsht_amebiasis.htm> (accessed March 15, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

AVOIDING INFECTION WITH *E. HISTOLYTICA*

To avoid infection with *E. histolytica*, The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that a person traveling to a country that has poor sanitary conditions should observe the following with regard to eating and drinking:

- Drink only bottled or boiled (for 1 minute) water or carbonated (bubbly) drinks in cans or bottles. Do not drink fountain drinks or any drinks with ice cubes. Another way to make water safe is by filtering it through an "absolute 1 micron or less" filter and dissolving iodine tablets in the filtered water. "Absolute 1 micron" filters can be found in camping/outdoor supply stores.
- Do not eat fresh fruit or vegetables that you did not peel yourself.
- Do not eat or drink milk, cheese, or dairy products that may not have been pasteurized.
- Do not eat or drink anything sold by street vendors.

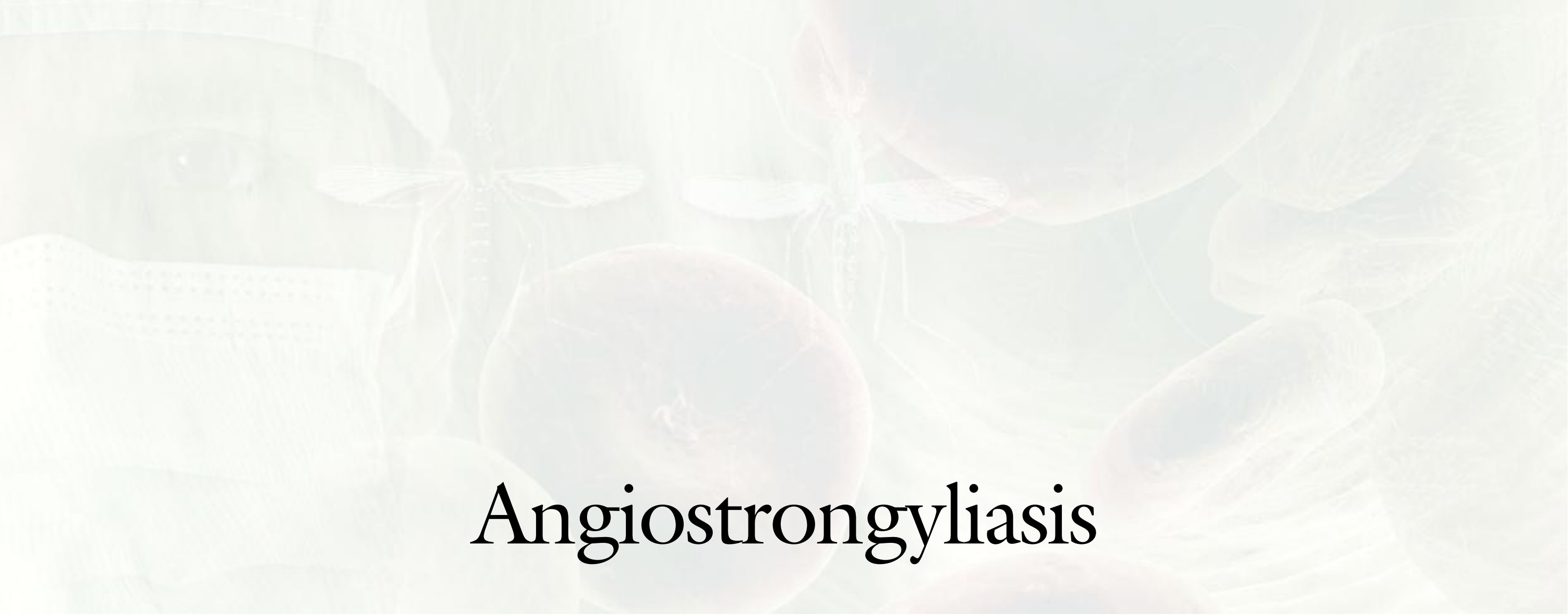
SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

IN CONTEXT: IMPROVED WATER ACCESS

The list below reflects data from the World Health Organization indicating countries recently reporting access to improved water sources for less than 50% of the population (with the year of the report indicated):

- Afghanistan 13% of the population (year reported: 2002)
- Somalia 29% (2002)
- Cambodia 34% (2002)
- Chad 34% (2002)
- Papua New Guinea 39% (2002)
- Mozambique 42% (2002)
- Lao People's Democratic Republic 43% (2002)
- Equatorial Guinea 44% (2002)
- Madagascar 45% (2002)
- Congo 46% (2002)
- Democratic Republic of the Congo 46% (2002)
- Niger 46% (2002)
- Mali 48% (2002)

SOURCE: *World Health Organization (WHO)*



Angiostrongyliasis

Introduction

Angiostrongyliasis (ann-gee-o-stronge-uh-luss) is an infection caused by the internal parasites *Angiostrongylus cantonensis* and *Angiostrongylus costaricensis.* These worms are transmitted as eggs or larvae from rats to other animals such as snails, slugs, and some crustaceans. Humans become infected when they ingest immature parasites, usually after eating undercooked or raw mollusks, crustaceans, and especially snails. Angiostrongyliasis infection often has no symptoms, or mild symptoms, although some cases result in the development of meningitis. Infection disappears as the worms die in the body.

The majority of outbreaks of angiostrongyliasis occur in Southeast Asia and the Pacific Islands, although cases have been reported in other countries. The first appearance of the parasites in humans was noted in 1944 and since then, there have been numerous reported infections.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Angiostrongyliasis is caused by the ingestion of one of two parasites, *Angiostrongylus cantonensis* or *Angiostrongylus costaricensis.* Both are parasites of rats and are

African snails, which can reach a length of 8 in (20 cm), can carry the *Angiostrongylus cantonensis* parasite that causes meningitis in humans. When administrators at an Illinois school realized that these giant snails could pose a health risk for the 28 fourth graders caring for them in 2004, they asked students to return them to school, where they were seized by the U.S. Department of Agriculture. *AP Images.*

transmitted to snails and slugs when they eat rat feces. Crustaceans such as prawns can also carry the parasite. Transmission to humans occurs when humans eat undercooked or raw intermittent hosts containing the parasite. Most humans become infected after eating in restaurants that do not cook the animals properly, or when they accidentally ingest a snail or slug attached to a salad item that has not been washed properly.

Infection by *A. cantonensis*, which travels to the brain or lungs and eventually dies there, usually results in mild symptoms, or no symptoms, although eosinophilic meningitis can develop. Meningitis is usually accompanied by headaches, a stiff neck, fever, nausea, and vomiting. Infection by *A. costaricensis*, which travels to the digestive tract and dies there, can result in abdominal pain as the dying parasites cause inflammatory pain in the abdomen.

■ Scope and Distribution

The *Angiostrongylus* parasites were first discovered in rats in China in 1933 and in humans in Taiwan in 1944. Infection of rats first spread throughout the Indo-pacific basin and through Madagascar, Cuba, Egypt, Puerto Rico, and New Orleans. Following the end of World War II in 1945, infected rats spread to Micronesia, Australia, and Polynesia. During the 1950s, infected rats were reported in the Philippines, Saipan, New Caledonia, Rarotonga, and Tahiti; during the 1960s, infected rats had spread to Thailand, Cambodia, Java, Sarawak, Guam, and Hawaii.

During 2000, students from Chicago traveling through Jamaica became infected with eosinophilic meningitis. The cause of infection was pinpointed to a salad that was eaten by all the students and that most likely contained secretions from infected slugs or snails.

In August 2006, a number of cases of angiostrongyliasis infection were reported in Beijing, China. Over the course of two months, an outbreak occurred during which the number of infected people rose to 132. The cause of this outbreak was linked to a restaurant chain that served Amazonian snails, known hosts of the parasites. These snails were most likely undercooked, causing the parasite to infect humans.

■ Treatment and Prevention

Angiostrongyliasis parasites die within weeks to months. Sometimes the body reacts to the dying parasites, which causes mild symptoms such as abdominal pain. Infected humans usually recover fully without treatment, although treatment may be administered to treat symptoms. Eosinophilic meningitis can also develop and is characterized by neck pain, headaches, and nausea. Although there is no specific treatment for angiostrongyliasis, analgesics, corticosteroids, and certain anti-helminthic drugs may be administered.

WORDS TO KNOW

HELMINTHIC DISEASE: Helminths are parasitic worms such as hookworms or flatworms. Helminthic disease is infectious by such worms. A synonym for helminthic is verminous.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

Infections can be prevented by cooking snails, crustaceans, and slugs thoroughly so that the parasite is killed. In addition, careful washing of salad items will prevent infected snails and slugs from being present in salads and potentially being ingested. Although some cases have been attributed to the ingestion of mucus and secretions, some scientists insist that it is still unknown whether transmission can occur following ingestion of mucus from infected snails and slugs. Ingestion of mucus may occur when people who collect snails touch their mouths or nasal passages. Infection can also be prevented by wearing gloves while collecting snails.

■ Impacts and Issues

The main mode of transmission of the parasites that cause angiostrongyliasis is through poor preparation of food. Therefore, infection is more likely to occur in countries with soft regulations on food preparation. People traveling through countries in which rats are infected by the parasites need to be aware of the risks

IN CONTEXT: HAVE CASES OCCURRED IN THE CONTINENTAL UNITED STATES?

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that "In 1993, a boy got infected by swallowing a raw snail 'on a dare.' The type of snail he swallowed isn't known. He became ill a few weeks later, with muscle aches, headache, stiff neck, a slight fever, and vomiting. Although he had eosinophilic meningitis, his symptoms went away in about 2 weeks, without treatment of the infection."

The CDC specifically recommends that to avoid infection: "Don't eat raw or undercooked snails or slugs. If you handle snails or slugs, wear gloves and wash your hands. Always remember to thoroughly wash fresh produce."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

associated with eating food in these countries. Reducing the rodent population in endemic countries also reduces the available population for the initial reservoir of the parasite, and thus, minimizes the opportunity for infection.

The type of snails eaten and the methods used to cook these snails also impact infection. Therefore, restaurants that sell certain snails could potentially contribute towards spreading the infection. Furthermore, as the proper cooking of snails can render the parasites harmless, thorough cooking of snails would prevent infection.

Giant African land snails are frequent hosts of the angiostrongyliasis parasite. In Taiwan, angiostrongyliasis occurs most often among children who play with (and sometimes eat) the giant African land snail during the rainy months of June to October when they are most abundant. In the islands of French Polynesia, most infections occur in adults.

In the United States, Giant African land snails are illegal to import as pets. They are considered an invasive species capable of supporting the emergence of angiostrongyliasis in the United States, as well as an agricultural pest. In 2004, authorities seized the snails in over 100 U.S. exotic pet shops and among private owners. Additionally, several schools that kept Giant African land snails as projects turned them over to public health authorities.

SEE ALSO *Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Parasitic Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* Vol. 2. Philadelphia, Penn: Elsevier, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Angiostrongyliasis." Sep. 27, 2004 <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/DPDx/HTML/ImageLibrary/Angiostrongyliasis_il.asp?body=A-F/Angiostrongyliasis/body_Angiostrongyliasis_il2.htm> (accessed Jan. 25, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Fact Sheet: *Angiostrongylus cantonensis* Infection." May 13, 2004 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/angiostrongylus/factsht_angiostrongylus.htm> (accessed Jan. 25, 2007).

International Society for Infectious Diseases. "Angiostrongylus Meningitis—China (04)." Oct. 1, 2006 <http://www.promedmail.org/pls/promed/f?p=2400:1202:1604187183216986886::NO::F2400_P1202_CHECK_DISPLAY,F2400_P1202_PUB_MAIL_ID:X,34650> (accessed Jan. 25, 2007).

Animal Importation

Introduction

The prevention of zoonotic diseases (those capable of transmission from animal to human populations) is the primary focus of animal importation regimes. Every nation (as well as supranational bodies such as the European Union) has established protocols concerning the admission of foreign animals into domestic jurisdictions. In the United States, various governmental departments and agencies assume concurrent jurisdiction for the development, promulgation (publishing), and enforcement of animal importation standards. The primary American bodies that direct these initiatives are the Centers for Disease Control (CDC), specifically the National Center for Zoonotic, Vector-Borne, and Enteric Diseases, and the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA).

History and Scientific Foundations

The organized transport of livestock and other domesticated animals has played an important role in human

Three Philippine macaque monkeys are shown as they wait to be fed at a breeding farm south of Manila. More than 600 monkeys at the farm were ordered to be destroyed in 1979 following the discovery of an Ebola virus strain in two of them. The infected monkeys were shipped to the United States for scientific research. *AP Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

EPIZOOTIC: The abnormally high occurrence of a specific disease in animals in a particular area, similar to a human epidemic.

PRIONS: Prions are proteins that are infectious. Indeed, the name prion is derived from "proteinaceous infectious particles." The discovery of prions and confirmation of their infectious nature overturned a central dogma that infections were caused by intact organisms, particularly microorganisms such as bacteria, fungi, parasites, or viruses. Since prions lack genetic material, the prevailing attitude was that a protein could not cause disease.

QUARANTINE: Quarantine is the practice of separating people who have been exposed to an infectious agent but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. This can be done voluntarily or involuntarily by the authority of states and the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

food production since prehistoric times. The empires of Mesopotamia, Greece, and Rome employed successively more sophisticated methods to move desired animals more efficiently between various geographic regions.

The first Industrial Revolution (c.1780–1830) precipitated a European population surge that generated a corresponding demand for increased food production. After 1820, Britain was the world leader in the importation of cattle, securing both dairy and beef breeds from various parts of Europe to bolster its domestic stock. This burgeoning industry was essentially unregulated; any sickness or disease noted in an imported cattle herd or among domestic livestock that had contact with imported animals was regarded as a local phenomenon; contaminated beef was usually disguised by vendors and sold in the normal course of business.

In this *laissez-faire* industrial environment, the first great cattle epidemics swept both Britain and Europe after 1839. Foot and mouth disease (*aphthovirus*), bovine pleuro-pneumonia, and sheep pox were the most common of the epizootic outbreaks that posed significant challenges to veterinary medicine. The prominent British practitioner John Gamgee (1828-1886) was the first expert to propose the comprehensive government regulation of animals entering Britain to prevent "contagionism," his rudimentary appreciation of the viral properties of these newly identified animal plagues.

Rinderpest (*Morbillivirus*), a highly infectious and fatal bovine virus, became the impetus to European government regulation of imported cattle. In 1865, rinderpest caused the deaths of over 400,000 cattle in Britain alone and an estimated one million more livestock across continental Europe. Britain established the world's first state veterinary service that year. Rinderpest is transmitted between animals through direct physical contact and has remained a potent agricultural industry threat across modern Africa, where war and political unrest have often prevented effective regulation of cattle imports.

Applications and Research

There are three distinct but interrelated elements of the public interest that are addressed through governmental animal import controls: public health and disease prevention, the security of national food supplies, and enhanced scientific research capabilities.

Many types of imported livestock are intended for both breeding and direct food production. Cattle are the most prominent example of a dual-purpose animal. As all cattle breeds are susceptible to a myriad of highly contagious diseases, both zoonotic and bovine-specific, national import regulation is designed to anticipate such risks through mandatory inspections and reporting provisions.

The most prominent threat to the international animal importation regulatory framework was the discovery of bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE) in Britain in 1986. Also known as "mad cow disease," BSE is a progressive and fatal neurological condition that ultimately destroys the function of an animal's central nervous system. BSE is highly contagious, although the incubation period of the disease is in excess of five years. The precise cause of BSE remains unknown, although there is a scientifically validated relationship between the disease and the presence in a subject animal of infectious proteins known as prions. The disease is most likely transmitted through either direct animal-to-animal contact or through the ingestion of feed prepared from the bone marrow of infected animals. Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease (CJD) is a condition similar to BSE that occurs in humans; a variant of CJD is capable of being transmitted to humans through the consumption of BSE-contaminated beef.

The danger of BSE to both livestock and humans is so sufficiently grave that when a single cow was determined to be afflicted with BSE in Washington State in 2003, the Canada-United States border was closed to all cattle imports between each nation for 15 months. As BSE has no known treatment or cure except to slaughter and incinerate the affected animal, national border authorities inevitably err on the side of caution when BSE is suspected.

Scientific research involving animal experiments engages additional animal importation issues. The scientific community places a premium upon the ability to use monkeys and other non-human primates for research purposes, given the physiological similarities between these animals and humans. Primates also represent a significant risk to the human population as disease carriers.

The Ebola and Marburg viruses are the most prominent component of the Filoviridae family. African and Southeast Asian primates are known carriers of the various forms of these viruses. The strain that causes Ebola Hemorrhagic Fever (EHF) is a remarkably virulent virus that is transmitted by direct contact with a contaminated person or through the exchange of bodily fluids. EHF will trigger an often fatal attack upon the contaminated person's internal organs. The four most prolific outbreaks of Ebola occurred in the African nations of Zaire, Sudan, Gabon, and Cote d'Ivoire between 1976 and 1997, killing hundreds of people; in each instance the EHF mortality rates exceeded 60%. A typical victim will die within 21 days of contracting this disease.

It was for these reasons that the identification of a new Ebola strain at a primate research facility in Reston, Virginia in 1989 attracted significant international attention and touched off a fresh consideration of American research animal importation controls. The Reston animals were monkeys imported from the Philippines. Twenty-one of the animals were determined to have contracted this Ebola strain (later referenced as Ebola-R). Four human handlers became ill from exposure to Ebola-R, but each subsequently recovered. As the epidemiology and pathology of all Ebola variants remains poorly understood, strict importation rules, including express CDC permission for non-human primates, remain in force in the United States. The primary risk concerning a recurrence of Ebola-R in the United States or elsewhere is that this strain may mutate at a future time into a variant that is deadly to the human population.

■ Impacts and Issues

The transport of pets across national borders is the third significant aspect of animal import regulation. Dogs and cats form the vast majority of such animals. The number of pet dogs owned worldwide is difficult to estimate; the two largest domestic dog populations are located in the United States (60 million dogs) and Brazil (30 million dogs) respectively. The sheer number of household pets and the corresponding ability of a large number of animal-borne zoonotic diseases to move quickly through a given population to infect both pets and humans has led to rigorous pet importation controls being enacted in most countries.

Exotic or unconventional pets, including large members of the cat family and various reptiles, are governed by species-specific regulations throughout the world. As an example, a turtle with a shell measuring less than 4 in (10 cm) in length may not be imported into the United States without the advance permission of the CDC, due to a heightened risk to humans that Salmonellosis, a bacterial disease caused by contact with the bacterium *Salmonella*, may be contracted through the handling of these creatures.

Dogs and cats are subject to similar entry and quarantine regulations in most Western nations. In the United States, a pet cat or dog entering the country must be both quarantined and be proven free of any contagious disease. The standard requirement is a certificate from a licensed veterinarian confirming that the animal is free of rabies or any other infectious disease. The USDA possesses the discretion to quarantine any pet entering the United States, but, as a general rule, once rabies certification is available the animal will not be quarantined. These regulations apply equally to animals imported as pets or for breeding purposes. The most common of the zoonotic diseases sought to be contained through import control are rabies (Lyssavirus, transmitted through the bite of an infected animal), ringworm (*Tinea*, a fungal skin disease), and roundworm (*Trinchinella spiralis*, a parasitic worm that attacks a mammal's gastrointestinal tract).

SEE ALSO *Ebola; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Globalization and Infectious Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Swabe, Joanna. *Animals, Disease, and Human Society: Human-Animal Relations and the Rise of Veterinary Medicine.* London: Routledge, 1999.

Periodicals

Gips, Michael A. "Open Border, Insert Foot and Mouth." *Security Management* 45, 6 (2001): 14.

Grischow, Jeff D. "K.R.S. Morris and Tsetse Eradication in the Gold Coast, 1928-51." *Africa* 76, 3 (2006): 381-409.

Peters, C.J., and J.W. Leduc. "An Introduction to Ebola: The Virus and the Disease." *Journal of Infectious Diseases* Supp.1 (1999): 179-187.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Frequently Asked Questions about Animal Importation." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dq/faq_animal_importation.htm> (accessed June 8, 2007).

Bryan Davies

Anisakiasis

Introduction

Anisakiasis is an infection in humans caused by ingesting the larvae of nematodes (parasitic roundworms with long, cylindrical bodies) in raw or undercooked saltwater fish. When the larvae infect humans, the anisakiasis infection causes discomfort to the stomach and intestinal areas. According to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration's Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition, *Anisakis simplex* (herring worm) and *Pseudoterranova (Phocanema, Terranova) decipiens* (cod or seal worm) are linked to human infections in North America.

Before ingestion into the human body, anisakiads travel through a complex life cycle involving the ingestion by various marine and anadromous fish (those that breed by returning from the sea to the water bodies where they were born) and crustaceans.

Usually, marine life infected with *Anisakidae* larvae are only found in seawater because larvae need to grow within waters of higher salinity. It is also uncommon in areas where cetaceans (large ocean mammals like whales) are not found, such as waters in the southern North Sea.

Norwegian Crown Prince Haakon (second from left) observes sixth graders preparing sushi using Norwegian salmon during a 2005 goodwill tour in Tokyo, Japan. People in countries such as Norway and Japan, where raw fish is often consumed, have the greatest incidence of contracting illnesses such as Anisakiasis that result from ingesting parasite-laden fish. *AP Images.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Human anisakiasis was first reported in Japan during the middle part of the twentieth century. *Anisakis simplex* and *Pseudoterranova decipiens* is found frequently inside saltwater fish. *P. decipiens* is found typically in temperate and arctic environments.

The characteristics of anisakids include a long, cylindrical body shape (what is called vermiform, or worm-like). It does not contain segments. The posterior part narrows to a cavity (pseudocoel), with the anus somewhat off-centered. The mouth is encircled by projections, which are used for sensing and feeding.

Transmission of the adult *Anisakis simplex* and *Pseudoterranova decipiens* begins in the stomach of marine mammals, specifically in the mucosa (mucous membranes). The eggs of female anisakids are expelled as feces of infected mammals. The eggs develop into embryos in seawater, where first-stage larvae are formed. The larvae then molt and become second-stage larvae. Upon hatching, free-swimming larvae are ingested by crustaceans, turning into mature, third-stage larvae.

Infected crustaceans are eaten by fish and squid, who become intermediate hosts. Inside fish, anisakids are coil-shaped. When uncoiled, their average length is 0.8 inches (2 centimeters). When these fish and squid die, the larvae move into muscle tissues. Anisakids transfer between fish when larger fish eat smaller ones. During these times, larvae are infective to humans and marine mammals. Sometimes, larvae are ingested by humans when infected seafood is eaten raw, is undercooked, or improperly prepared. After humans ingest third-stage larvae, the larvae attach themselves to, or burrow into, stomach or intestine tissues.

When third-stage larvae are digested by marine mammals, the larvae molt two times and develop into adult worms. These parasites are longer than two centimeters when uncoiled, with a thicker and sturdier body than when inside fish. The adult worms produce eggs that are expelled by marine mammals.

Scope and Distribution

Anisakiasis is found worldwide. However, it is more common in areas where raw fish is eaten such as Scandinavian countries, the Netherlands, Japan, and along the Pacific Ocean coast of South American countries. As of 2007, according to the FDA, Japan has the highest incidence of infection. The incidence of anisakiasis in the United States is unknown, but is thought to be fewer than 400 cases per year. Fish and marine mammals most affected include cod, crabs, cuttlefish, halibut, herring, mackerel, porpoises, rockfish, salmon, seals, sea lions, squid, tuna, and whales.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANADROMOUS: Fish that migrate from ocean (salt) water to fresh water, such as salmon, are termed anadromous.

INTERMEDIATE HOST: An organism infected by a parasite while the parasite is in a developmental form, not sexually mature.

NEMATODES: Also known as roundworms; a type of helminth characterized by long, cylindrical bodies.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis cannot be accomplished from stool specimens. Instead, it is made by x-ray images and medical examinations of the patient's stomach and intestines using a flexible endoscope. In addition, microscopic examination of tissue can be made in which larvae are removed through biopsy or during surgery. *Anisakis simplex* and *Pseudoterranova decipiens* cannot survive in human hosts. They eventually die while inside the inflamed tissue.

In some case, invasive treatments may be attempted. Endoscopy may be used for the removal of larvae, especially in emergency cases involving obstruction or rupture of the bowel. Also, nasogastric suction (suction through a tube inserted through the nose and into the stomach) may be used, followed by drugs that target parasitic worms. If such action fails, worms can be removed surgically.

Surgical procedures sometimes may be avoided by drug treatments, including albendazole (marketed under

Albenza®, Eskazole®, and Zentel® brands). As of March 2007, albendazole has not been approved by the U.S. Federal Drug Administration (FDA) for treatment of the infection in the United States.

Anisakiasis infection can be prevented by heating seafood to a temperature higher than 122°F (50°C), or freezing it to at least −4°F (−20°C) for at least 24 hours. Such actions kill the larvae. If fish or shellfish is to be consumed raw or semi-raw, the FDA recommends that the food be blast frozen to −31°F (−35°C) or below for 15 hours, or regularly frozen to −4°F (−20°C) for seven days.

■ Impacts and Issues

When anisakid worms can infect humans, within several hours of ingestion they can produce severe sickness that affects the stomach and intestines. Sometimes the larvae are vomited or coughed up. Symptoms include vomiting, diarrhea, nausea, and severe abdominal pain that may resemble appendicitis, so cases are often misdiagnosed. With the increasing popularity of raw seafood dishes, government and medical organizations have made efforts to educate physicians to consider the possibility of anisakiasis in patients with these symptoms.

If larvae pass into the bowel, major symptoms may occur within one to two weeks due to tissue inflammation. They can also produce a minor chronic disease that causes stomach or intestinal irritation, which may last between weeks and years. These symptoms resemble stomach ulcers and tumors, or irritable bowel syndrome.

Fish and shellfish are important foods to maintain a healthy lifestyle. They are high in protein and other essential nutrients. However, the growing international popularity of eating such raw seafood dishes as sushi, sashimi, ceviche, and pickled herring, has produced an increase in the number of cases of anisakiasis, a trend that health authorities expect to continue upward.

SEE ALSO *Cancer and Infectious Disease; Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Helminth Disease; Host and Vector; Parasitic Diseases; Tropical Infectious Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Adley, Catherine C., ed. *Food-borne Pathogens: Methods and Protocols*. Totowa, NJ: Humana Press, 2006.

Guerrant, Richard L., David H. Walker, and Peter F. Weller. *Tropical Infectious Diseases: Principles, Pathogens, and Practice*. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone, 2006.

Parker, James N., and Philip M. Parker, eds. *The Official Patient's Sourcebook on Anisakiasis: A Revised and Updated Directory for the Internet Age*. San Diego, CA: Icon Health Publications, 2002.

Web Sites

Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition, Federal Food and Drug Administration. "*Anisakis simplex* and related worms." <http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~mow/chap25.html> (accessed March 1, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Anisakiasis." <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Anisakiasis.htm> (accessed March 1, 2007).

ProMED Mail, International Society for Infectious Diseases. "Anisakiasis—Israel: suspected." <http://www.promedmail.org/pls/promed/f?p=2400:1202:16245428003054921509::NO::F2400_P1202_CHECK_DISPLAY,F2400_P1202_PUB_MAIL_ID:X,23022> (accessed March 1, 2007).

Anthrax

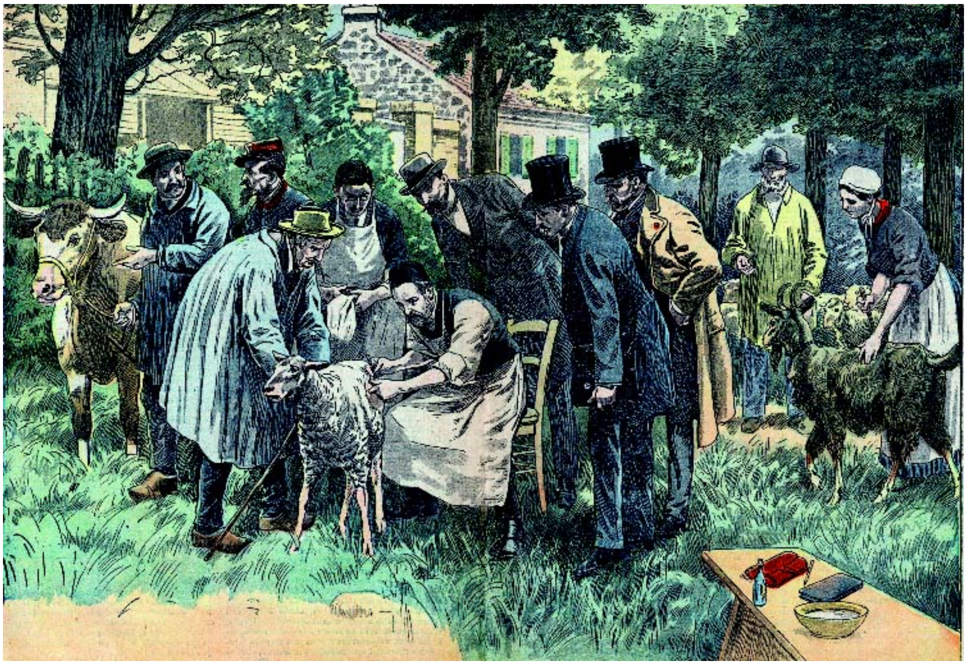
Introduction

Anthrax is an infection caused by the bacterium *Bacillus anthracis.* Its name comes from the black spots that can appear on the body in the cutaneous (skin) form of the disease; to suggest the color of the spots, doctors used the Greek word for coal, "anthrax." Anthrax is usually transmitted through hardy spores that can survive in soil for decades. Anthrax exists naturally in many parts of the world as an infection of herbivores (plant-eating animals), such as cattle and sheep. Because its spores are small enough to become airborne, anthrax can be contracted by humans as a lung infection. In this form it is fatal in at least 95% of cases that do not receive immediate antibiotic treatment. Because of the high fatality rate of the inhaled form of the disease, anthrax has been developed as a biological weapon by several major nations, including Japan, Russia, the United Kingdom, and the United States. No nation is known today to retain stocks of weaponized anthrax, but there is concern that terrorists might use anthrax as a weapon.

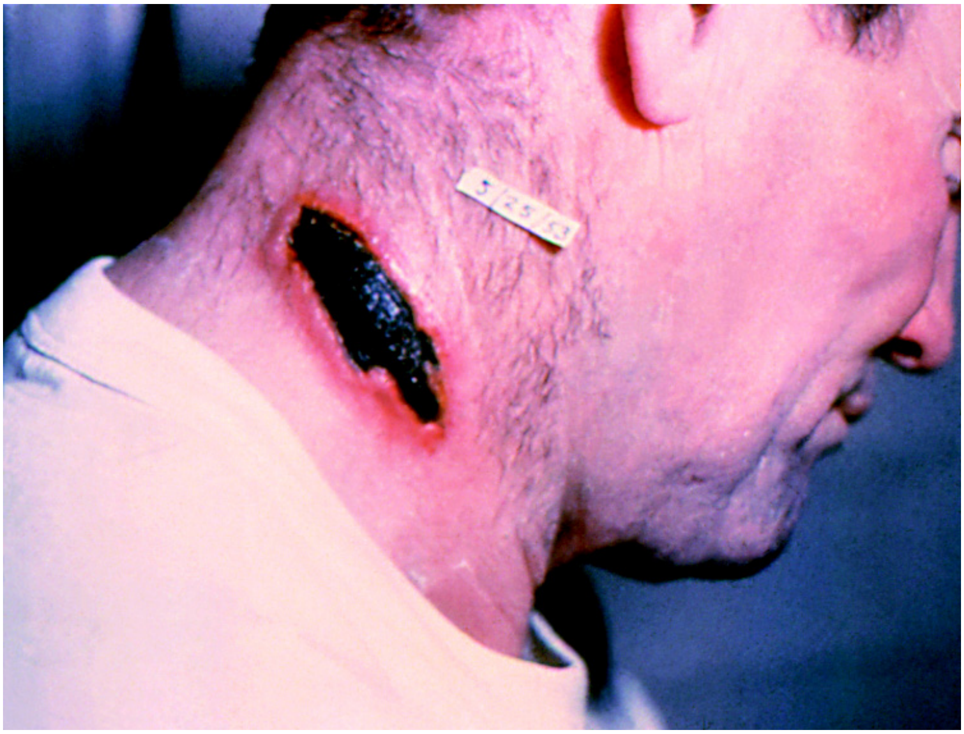
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

History

Anthrax is a naturally occurring disease afflicting livestock and occasionally, through contact with livestock,



In this illustration, French microbiologist Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) is shown vaccinating sheep and other animals against anthrax. © *Stefano Bianchetti/Corbis.*



A cutaneous anthrax lesion is shown on a man's neck. *© CDC/PHIL/Corbis.*

humans. Records show that in Europe in the 1600s, a cattle disease that was almost certainly anthrax, called the Black Bane, killed about 60,000 cattle. Until the development of antibiotics and an effective veterinary vaccine for anthrax in the mid-twentieth century, anthrax was one of the most common causes of death for cattle, goats, horses, pigs, and sheep.

In 1876, the German physician Robert Koch (1843–1910) showed that a bacterium was responsible for the disease, making anthrax one of the first diseases to be identified as having a bacterial cause. Koch, who was awarded a Nobel Prize in Medicine in 1905, also discovered the bacterial causes of tuberculosis and cholera. Cattle were first successfully inoculated against anthrax in 1880 by the French biologist Louis Pasteur (1822–1895).

The use of anthrax in modern warfare began in 1915 during World War I, when a German-American agent working for the Imperial German Government set up a secret laboratory in Washington, D.C., to produce anthrax bacteria. These were then used to infect cattle and draft animals being shipped to the Allied armies in Europe. Several hundred Allied military personnel were infected by the anthrax-ridden cattle.

During World War II (1939–1945), anthrax was developed as a major weapon by several countries. A biological warfare unit, Unit 731, was formed in the Japanese Imperial Army, which carried out experiments on thousands of Chinese prisoners of war in the 1930s. In one facility, about 4,000 prisoners were killed by biological agents, mostly anthrax. By 1945, Japan had prepared about 880 lb (400 kg) of powdered anthrax spores for use in fragmentation bombs intended to spread the spores in the air to be inhaled. Japan

WORDS TO KNOW

CUTANEOUS: Pertaining to the skin.

ENTERIC: Involving the intestinal tract or relating to the intestines.

HYPERENDEMIC: A disease that is endemic (commonly present) in all age groups of a population is hyperendemic. A related term is holoendemic, meaning a disease that is present more in children than in adults.

SPORE: A dormant form assumed by some bacteria, such as anthrax, that enable the bacterium to survive high temperatures, dryness, and lack of nourishment for long periods of time. Under proper conditions, the spore may revert to the actively multiplying form of the bacteria.

An Indonesian official (right) from the animal husbandry department gets help from a resident with burning goats suspected of being infected by anthrax disease in October 2004. The infected animals were destroyed after six people died of anthrax disease after consuming mutton from a sick goat. *© Dadang Tri/ Reuters/Corbis.*

surrendered before using anthrax bombs, but historians estimate that Japan may have killed over a half a million Chinese civilians using other forms of biological warfare. All members of Unit 731 were granted amnesty by the United States after the war in exchange for full disclosure of their wartime activities.

Japan was not the only country to place anthrax in bombs during World War II. In the United States, a major offensive biowar program was established at the Army's Camp Detrick, Maryland, in 1942. Anthrax and a number of other agents were developed as weapons there, and a plant for producing biological weapons was constructed near Terre Haute, Indiana. Thousands of anthrax bombs were produced, but none were used during the war. The British government, which was cooperating with the United States and Canada in developing anthrax as a weapon, contaminated the Scottish island of Gruinard with anthrax spores in 1942. Due to the long-lived nature of the spores, the island was off-limits for 48 years afterward, when it was finally decontaminated. The difficulty of decontaminating Gruinard shows how a large-scale attack with anthrax spores might render large areas of land uninhabitable. Decontamination of the small island involved soaking it in 308 tons (280 metric tons) of formaldehyde diluted in seawater and the removal of tons of topsoil in sealed containers.

The Soviet Union also instituted a biological warfare program during World War II, focusing on anthrax and other agents. The Soviet program continued for decades after the war, as did the U.S. program. In 1979, one of the worst anthrax outbreaks of the twentieth century occurred in the Ural Mountains in western Russia. The official toll was 96 people infected, resulting in 66 deaths, but the actual toll was probably higher. The Soviet government claimed that the outbreak was natural, but the United States and others accused the Soviets of violating the 1972 Biological and Toxic Weapons Convention. This treaty had been designed to ban the manufacture and stockpiling of biological and poison-gas weapons. In

IN CONTEXT: CULTURAL CONNECTIONS

The description of the sooty "morain" in the Book of *Exodus* is reminiscent of anthrax, and the disease is probably the "burning wind of plague" in Homer's *Iliad*. The mass death of horses and cattle (the primary targets of anthrax infection, along with sheep) during the Eurasian campaign of the Huns in 80 AD was also likely due to anthrax.

FBI special investigation team members wear hazmat suits as they work to decontaminate the American Media Inc. office in Florida in 2001. The publishing facility became a bio-hazard crime scene following the death of a worker from exposure to anthrax. *AP Images.*

the early 1990s, after the breakup of the Soviet Union, Russian and American scientists were able to study the 1979 outbreak in detail. They concluded that it was caused by an accidental release of anthrax spores from a military facility on the outskirts of the city Sverdlovsk (now called Yekaterinburg). All the cases in cattle and humans occurred in narrow oval pattern downwind of the facility.

In response to a 1969 decision by President Richard Nixon (1913–1994), the U.S. army destroyed all its anti-personnel biological warfare stocks, including anthrax, in 1971 and 1972.

The potential of even a small quantity of anthrax to disrupt a society and drain its resources was shown in 2001, when attacks were carried out through the U.S. mail using anthrax spores. The attacks began on September 18, a week after the attacks on the World Trade Center and Pentagon. Letters containing anthrax spores in powder form were mailed from a public mailbox in Princeton, New Jersey, and received by several TV networks, the newspaper the *New York Post*, and the offices of two senators, Tom Daschle (D-SD) and Patrick Leahy (D-VT). Five people were killed by the anthrax and seventeen others were made ill. (Neither of the senators was infected.) As of early 2007, no group or individual had claimed responsibility for the attacks, and the case remained unsolved.

Early news reports characterized the 2001 anthrax powder as weapons-grade, but, in 2006, the U.S. Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) confirmed that the powder did not have any of the special technical features (such as a coating on the spores to keep them from sticking together) that would identify it as coming from a military facility.

Anthrax, like other biological weapons, has little value as a battlefield weapon. It has several disadvantages for combat use:

1. No disease acts quickly enough to be decisive in combat.
2. Wind and other factors make it difficult to deliver spores or viruses in a controlled way to enemy troops.
3. Soldiers are the best-defended of any target group, often being equipped with protective clothing, filter masks, and immunizations.

Biological weapons, whether employed by nation-states or smaller organizations, are therefore primarily a terror threat to civilian populations. The U.S. National Academy of Sciences estimated in 2003 that 2.2 lb (1 kg) of anthrax spores sprayed aerially over a large city could kill over 100,000 people. Anthrax spores could also render hundreds of square miles uninhabitable for a many decades by lodging in the soil, causing immense economic damage.

Characteristics

Anthrax bacteria in their vegetative form are shaped like rods about 1 millionth of a meter (1 μm) wide and 6 μm long. The vegetative form multiplies inside a host animal. When conditions are not right for anthrax to grow and multiply—namely, when temperature, acidity, humidity, and nutrient levels are outside the favorable range—some of the vegetative anthrax bacteria sporulate, that is, take on a spore form. A spore is an extremely small, one-celled reproductive unit that is usually able to survive extreme environmental conditions. Unlike a seed, a spore does not store a significant amount of nutrients. Anthrax spores can survive in soil or as a dry powder for many years and are the most common source of anthrax infection.

Once in the body, anthrax spores germinate and multiply. Toxins released by the bacteria cause the immune system to break down. In the final phase of infection, the bacteria build rapidly in the blood, doubling in number every 0.75–2 hours. At death, there may be more than 10^8 (100,000,000) anthrax bacteria per milliliter of blood. (A milliliter is about the size of a small drop.) Toxins from the bacteria break down the blood vessels, causing death by internal bleeding.

After death, the bacteria continue to multiply in the carcass. Large numbers of spores are shed to the surrounding soil. The anthrax life cycle is continued when other creatures either eat the flesh of the dead animal or ingest enough of the spores.

There are three basic types of anthrax infection: pulmonary, cutaneous, and gastrointestinal (also called enteric, meaning of the intestines) anthrax. Pulmonary or lung infection with anthrax is caused by inhalation of spores; cutaneous or skin infection is caused by entry of spores or bacteria into cuts or sores; and gastrointestinal infection is caused by eating anthrax-contaminated meat.

Transmission

Anthrax is usually contracted either by taking spores or bacteria into the body through a lesion (cut or open sore), through the bite of a fly, by eating the flesh of an anthrax-infected animal, or by inhaling spores. Direct transmission of anthrax between humans is extremely rare.

Humans are moderately resistant to anthrax. The infectious dose for inhalation anthrax, measured by spore count, is probably between 2,500 and 760,000 spores, the range recorded for non-human primates. The U.S. Department of Defense estimates that 8,000–10,000 spores is the anthrax LD50 for humans; LD50 stands for “lethal dose 50,” the amount of an agent that will be fatal in about 50% of cases. Scientists have shown that in contaminated industrial settings, people can inhale over 1,000 anthrax spores per day without contracting the disease. When anthrax is developed as a weapon, it is meant to be delivered in extremely large quantities. For example, 220 lb (100 kg) of spores, often cited as a working figure in discussions of possible large-scale military use, contain about 10^{13} (10,000,000,000,000 or ten trillion) LD50 doses—about 1,500 times the population of the world. However, most of the spores distributed by a weapon would not end up being inhaled.

Scope and Distribution

As a naturally occurring disease, anthrax mostly afflicts cattle. In humans, it is relatively rare. Persons in agricultural settings in poor nations, who are likelier to contract the disease from livestock, account for the great majority of human anthrax cases worldwide. Natural anthrax remains hyperendemic or epidemic in about 14 countries today, including Burma (also known as Myanmar), Chad, Niger, Turkey, and Zambia. It is endemic in China, India, Indonesia, much of Latin America and Africa, and sporadic in most of the rest of the world, including Australia, the United States, and Europe. (A sporadic disease occurs only occasionally; an endemic disease coexists normally with its host population; a hyperendemic disease co-exists with its host population at a high rate; and an epidemic disease is one that episodically occurs at a high rate.) Human case rates are highest today in central and southern Asia, the Middle East, and Africa.

The human anthrax rate normally depends on the livestock anthrax rate in a given area. There is about one human cutaneous anthrax case for every 10 anthrax-infected livestock carcasses processed and one enteric case for every 100–200 cutaneous cases. Inhalation anthrax is relatively rare.

IN CONTEXT: TERRORISM AND BIOLOGICAL WARFARE

Accompanying the antiquity of anthrax is the exploitation of the disease as a weapon. Hundreds of years ago, diseased bodies were dumped into wells, to poison the enemy’s drinking water supply, or were launched over the barricading walls of the fortified cities of the enemy.

Treatment and Prevention

Prevention of anthrax is based on breaking the cycle of infection, which primarily means controlling its appearance in livestock. The World Health Organization (WHO) of the United Nations is trying to set up a global network of anthrax experts and diagnostic laboratories to better monitor and respond to anthrax outbreaks worldwide. WHO says that the following steps must be rigorously implemented when dealing with anthrax-infected livestock:

1. Correct disposal of carcasses of animals with anthrax. This means deep burial, heat treatment, or incineration without a post-mortem (to avoid releasing spores).

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

Project BioShield gives the National Institutes of Health funding to expedite research into the most promising new drug treatments and allows the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to make promising drugs widely available in emergency situations. In particular, procedures are used to speed up the funding process for grant proposals for research into new drug therapies for chemical, biological, and radiological diseases. Some of the innovations developed under Project BioShield may become important in the treatment of naturally occurring diseases.

IN CONTEXT: CULTURAL CONNECTIONS

An often-overlooked aspect of the use of anthrax as a terrorist weapon is the economic hardship that the dispersal of a small amount of the spores would exact. A report from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), entitled *The Economic Impact of a Bioterrorist Attack*, estimated the costs of dealing with an anthrax incident at a minimum of US$26 billion per 100,000 people. In just a few months in 2001 alone, a flurry of hoax anthrax incidents following the real attacks cost the U.S. government millions of dollars.

2. Disinfection and disposal of all contaminated materials. This includes the processing of possibly infected animal hides before export, the incineration or burial of dung, the chemical sterilization of tools, and the thorough washing of hands.
3. Vaccination of susceptible animals and humans in at-risk occupations, such as those processing meat, hides, and wool.

Vaccination is not universal for livestock because of its expense. It is not universal for humans because of the expense and the risk of presently available anthrax vaccines. The only anthrax vaccine that is approved by the government for use in the United States—trade name Biothrax, first licensed in 1970—involves giving the subject six injections over 18 months. This vaccine is mandatory for some categories of U.S. military personnel and civilian defense contractors. However, because the potency of the vaccine varies greatly, some scientists argue that many military personnel have suffered health damage from the vaccine.

For persons in contact with human anthrax patients, prophylactic (preventative) antibiotics are given. Treatment of anthrax infection is with large doses of antibiotics, both swallowed (oral) and injected directly into the bloodstream (intravenous). Especially for inhalation anthrax, treatment must begin soon after infection—generally within a day and before symptoms are seen.

Impacts and Issues

In countries where anthrax is naturally present, it exacts a steady human and economic toll. Persons contracting the disease may die or live with a decreased quality of life. Animals that contract the disease must be destroyed, and their carcasses are economically worthless.

The mere threat of the use of anthrax as a weapon has caused the U.S. government to undertake extraordinary preventive efforts in addition to its military vaccination program. In 2004, as part of a $5.6 billion program called Project BioShield, intended to protect the public from biological threats, the federal government ordered 75 million doses ($877 million worth) of a new anthrax vaccine from a private company, VaxGen Inc., to be stockpiled in case of an anthrax attack on the United States. The new vaccine was to have required no more than three separate injections. The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) has also stockpiled over a billion antibiotic tablets, enough to treat 20 million people for two months. The new anthrax vaccine was to be delivered in 2006, but the program was delayed. In December 2006, HHS cancelled its contract with VaxGen because the company was not able to start human clinical trials of its new vaccine on time. This leaves Project Bioshield without a plan for producing an emergency stock of anthrax vaccine for public use.

See Also *Biological Weapons Convention; Bioterrorism; Koch's Postulates; War and Infectious Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Sarasin, Philipp, and Giselle Weiss. *Anthrax: Bioterror as Fact and Fantasy.* Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2006.

Periodicals

Broad, William J. "Anthrax Not Weapons Grade, Official Says." *New York Times* (September 26, 2006).

Enserink, Martin, and Jocelyn Kaiser. "Accidental Anthrax Shipment Spurs Debate Over Safety." *Nature* 304 (2004): 1726–1727.

Hilts, Philip J. "'79 Anthrax Traced to Soviet Military." *New York Times* (November 18, 1994).

Lipton, Eric. "Bid to Stockpile Bioterror Drugs Stymied by Setbacks." *New York Times* (September 18, 2006).

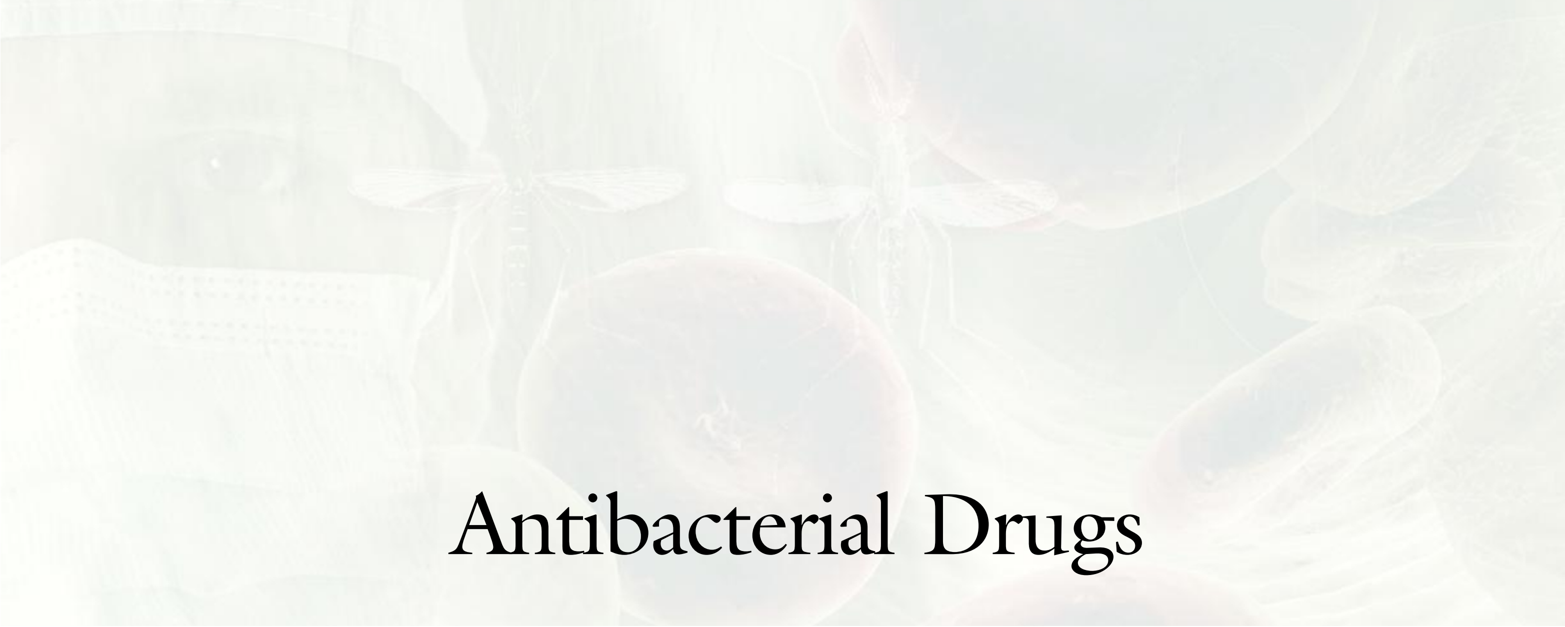
Rosovitz, M.J., and Stephen H. Leppla. "Virus Deals Anthrax a Killer Blow." *Nature* 418 (2002): 825–826.

Web Sites

British Broadcasting Corporation. "Britain's 'Anthrax Island.'" July 25, 2001. <http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/low/uk_news/scotland/1457035.stm> (accessed January 30, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Guidelines for the Surveillance and Control of Anthrax in Humans and Animals." <http://www.who.int/csr/resources/publications/anthrax/WHO_EMC_ZDI_98_6/en/> (accessed January 30, 2007).

World Health Organization. "World Anthrax Data Site." September 30, 2003. <http://www.vetmed.lsu.edu/whocc/mp_world.htm> (accessed January 30, 2007).



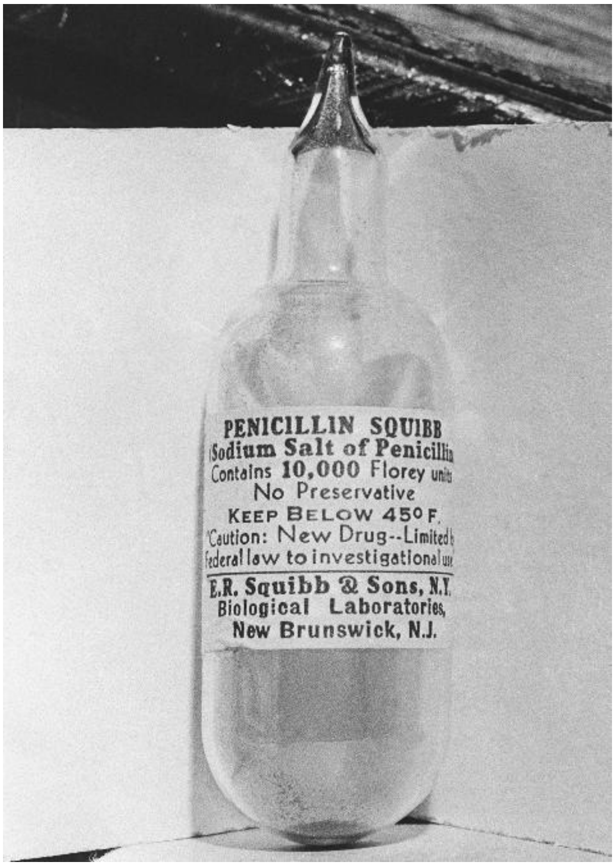
Antibacterial Drugs

Introduction

Antibacterial drugs stop bacterial infections in two ways: they prevent bacteria from dividing and increasing in number, or they kill the bacteria. The former drugs, which prevent bacteria from increasing in number but do not kill the bacteria, are termed bacteriostatic drugs. The latter, which kill the infectious bacteria, are known as bactericidal drugs. Both types of drugs can stop an infection.

The terms antibacterial drugs and antibiotics are often used interchangeably. Though the most common antibacterial drugs are the many types of antibiotics, other compounds can also be considered antibacterial. One example is alcohol, which kills bacteria by dissolving the cell membrane. Another example is carbolic acid, which was famously used by Joseph Lister (1827–1912) in the mid-nineteenth century as a spray to prevent bacterial contamination of wounds during operations. Antibacterial agents such as alcohol and carbolic acid are more accurately considered disinfectants, chemicals that kill or inactivate bacteria on surfaces and instruments, rather than antibiotics, which are generally taken internally and can create resistant strains of bacteria.

A technician loads patient samples with PCR reagents into a thermocycler, which heats and cools the samples and amplifies the DNA. Using fluorescence, the instrument then detects the resistant organism in the sample. The results are sent to a computer. *© Jerry McCrea/Star Ledger/Corbis.*



An early container of penicillin is shown c.1943 when the new drug was in short supply and mainly restricted to treating wounded soldiers in World War II. *© Bettmann/Corbis.*

History and Scientific Foundations

The use of antibacterial drugs is ancient. Thousands of years ago, although the scientific basis of infection and its treatment was unknown, infections were sometimes successfully treated with molds and plants. Centuries later, the production of antibiotics by some species of molds and plants was discovered. One argument against the large-scale deforestation of regions, such as the Amazon basin, is that there are likely still many antibiotic-producing molds and plants yet to be discovered.

The antibiotic era began in the first decade of the twentieth century, when Paul Ehrlich (1854–1915) discovered a compound that proved to be an effective treatment for syphilis. In 1928, Sir Alexander Fleming (1881–1955) discovered the antibiotic penicillin. With recognition of the compound's prowess in killing a wide variety of bacteria, interest in antibiotics soared. In 1941, Selman Waksman (1888–1973) coined the term antibiotic. In the ensuing decades, much work focused on the discovery of new antibiotics from natural sources, the laboratory alteration of existing compounds to increase their potency (and, later, to combat the problem of antibiotic resistance), and the synthesis of entirely new antibiotics.

Antibiotics kill bacteria in a variety of ways. Some alter the structure of the bacteria so that the bacteria become structurally weakened and unable to withstand physical stresses, such as pressure, with the result that the bacteria explode. Other antibiotics halt the production of various proteins in a number of ways: inhibiting the decoding of the genes specifying the proteins (transcriptional inhibition); blocking the production of the proteins following the production of the genetic message, messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA, in a process termed translational inhibition); blocking the movement of the manufactured protein to its final location in the bacterium; or blocking the import of compounds that are crucial to the continued survival of the bacterium.

Some antibiotics—described as broad-spectrum—are effective against many different bacteria. Other antibiotics—described as narrow-spectrum—are very specific in their action and, as a result, affect fewer bacteria.

Penicillin is the classic example of a class of antibiotics known as beta-lactam antibiotics. The term beta-lactam refers to the ring structure that is the backbone of these antibiotics. Other classes of antibiotics, which are based on the structure and/or the mechanism of action of the antibiotic, are tetracyclines, rifamycins, quinolones, aminoglycosides, and sulphonamides.

Beta-lactam antibiotics kill bacteria by altering the construction of a portion of the bacterial membrane called the peptidoglycan. This component is a thin layer located between the inner and outer membranes of Gram-negative bacteria (an example is *Escherichia coli*) and a much thicker layer in Gram-positive bacteria (an example is *Bacillus anthracis*, the bacterium that causes anthrax). The peptidoglycan is a tennis racket-like mesh of sugar molecules and other compounds that is very strong when intact. This network has to expand to accommodate the growth of the bacteria. This is done by introducing breaks in the peptidoglycan so that newly made material can be inserted and incorporated into the existing network, cross-linking the newly inserted material with the older material. Beta-lactam antibiotics disrupt the final cross-linking step by inhibiting the activity of enzymes called penicillin-binding proteins, which are the enzymes that catalyze the cross-linkage. Other enzymes called autolysins also are released. The autolysins degrade the exposed peptidoglycan at the sites that are defectively cross-linked. The result is the weakening of the peptidoglycan layer, which causes the bacterium to essentially self-destruct.

Another class of antibiotics with a mode of action similar to the beta-lactam antibiotics are the cephalosporins. There have been various versions, or generations, of cephalosporins that have improved the ability

A technician from an Indian pharmaceutical company works to produce ciprofloxacin, which is used to combat anthrax. Production of the pills at this facility increased to 100,000 per hour as worldwide demand for the drug skyrocketed after anthrax spores were mailed to several locations in the United States in 2001. *AP Images.*

of these antibiotics to withstand enzyme breakdown. The latest cephalosporins are the fourth generation of these antibiotics.

Aminoglycoside antibiotics bind to certain regions of the cellular structure called ribosomes. Ribosomes are responsible for decoding the information contained in mRNA to produce proteins. By binding to the ribosome, aminoglycoside antibiotics disrupt protein production, which is often lethal for the bacterium.

As an final example, quinolone antibiotics impair an enzyme that unwinds the double helix of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). This unwinding must occur so that the genetic information can be used to make proteins and other bacterial components. These antibiotics kill bacteria at the genetic level.

■ Applications and Research

Every year, antibiotics continue to save millions of lives around the world. In less developed regions, where access to medical care can be limited, campaigns by the World Health Organization (WHO) and other agencies to distribute antibiotics have been invaluable in the response to epidemics of diseases such as cholera, plague, and yellow fever.

The discovery and manufacture of antibiotics continues. Screening of samples to uncover antibacterial properties has been automated; thousands of samples can be processed each day. Furthermore, the increased knowledge of the molecular details of the active sites of antibiotics and the ability to target specific regions have been exploited in the design of new antibiotics.

■ Impacts and Issues

In the decades after pencillin's discovery and use, many different antibiotics were discovered or synthesized and introduced for use. The control of bacterial infections became so routine that it appeared infectious diseases would become a problem of the past. However, that optimism has proven to be premature. Instead, some bacteria have developed resistance to a number of antibiotics. For example, bacterial resistance was first observed only about three years after the commercial introduction and widespread use of penicillin in the late 1940s. Penicillin-resistant staphylococcus bacteria were reported in 1944, and, by the 1950s, a penicillin-resistant strain of *Staphylococcus aureus* became a worldwide problem in hospitals. By the 1960s, most staphylococci were resistant to penicillin. Two decades ago it was rare to encounter methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSa). In

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC: A drug, such as penicillin, used to fight infections caused by bacteria. Antibiotics act only on bacteria and are not effective against viruses.

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

BACTERIOCIDAL: Bacteriocidal is a term that refers to the treatment of a bacterium such that the organism is killed. Bacteriostatic refers to a treatment that restricts the ability of the bacterium to grow. A bacteriocidal treatment is always lethal and is also referred to as sterilization.

BACTERIOSTATIC: Bacteriostatic refers to a treatment that restricts the ability of the bacterium to grow.

BROAD-SPECTRUM ANTIBIOTICS: Broad-spectrum antibiotics are drugs that kill a wide range of bacteria rather than just those from a specific family. For, example, Amoxicillin is a broad-spectrum antibiotic that is used against many common illnesses such as ear infections.

DISINFECTANT: Disinfection and the use of chemical disinfectants is one key strategy of infection control. Disinfectants reduce the number of living microorganisms, usually to a level that is considered to be safe for the particular environment. Typically, this entails the destruction of those microbes that are capable of causing disease.

NOSOCOMIAL: A nosocomial infection is an infection that is acquired in a hospital. More precisely, the Centers for Disease Control in Atlanta, Georgia, defines a nosocomial infection as a localized infection or one that is widely spread throughout the body that results from an adverse reaction to an infectious microorganism or toxin that was not present at the time of admission to the hospital.

2007, MRSa is a daily concern of a hospital's infection control challenge.

The effectiveness of an antibiotic to which bacteria have developed resistance can sometimes be restored by slightly modifying a chemical group of antibiotic. For example, the antibiotics ampicillin and amoxicillin are variants of penicillin. However, this strategy usually produces only a short-term benefit, since resistance to the altered antibiotic also develops.

One factor contributing to the growth of antibiotic resistance is the overuse or misuse of antibiotics. All the bacteria responsible for an infection may not be killed if an insufficient concentration of an antibiotic is used or if antibiotic therapy is stopped before the prescription has been used completely. The surviving bacteria may possess resistance to the antibiotic, which can sometimes be passed on to other bacteria. For example, tuberculosis has re-emerged as a significant health problem, especially for people whose immune systems are compromised, since the tuberculosis bacteria have developed resistance to the antibiotics used to treat them.

Acinetobacter baumannii is another bacterium that has developed resistance to many antibiotics. This bacterium is normally found in soil and water, and so is commonly encountered. While *Acinetobacter baumannii* infections were once confined to hospitals, where they accounted for about 80% of all nosocomial (hospital-acquired) infections, the bacterium now has become a growing problem for the military. Over 200 U.S. soldiers wounded in Iraq since 2003 have developed serious infections caused by multi-resistant *A. baumannii*, and military physicians have few treatment options for these infections.

New antibacterial drugs are expected to produce blockbuster sales for their manufacturers, as emerging resistant organisms push the development of new and efficient antibiotics into the forefront.

See Also *Antibiotic Resistance; Antimicrobial Soaps; MRSA.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bankston, John. *Joseph Lister and the Story of Antiseptics.* Hockessin, DE: Mitchell Lane Publishers, 2004.

Levy, Stuart B. *The Antibiotic Paradox: How the Misuse of Antibiotics Destroys Their Curative Powers.* New York: Harper Collins, 2002.

Thompson, Kimberly, and Debra Fulghum. *Overkill: Repairing the Damage Caused by Our Unhealthy Obsession with Germs, Antibiotics, and Antibacterial Products.* New York: Rodale Books, 2002.

Walsh, Christopher. *Antibiotics: Actions, Origins, Resistance.* Herndon, VA: ASM Press, 2003.

Brian Hoyle

Antibiotic Resistance

Introduction

Penicillin was the first antibiotic to be mass-produced for use in treating bacterial infections. Following its introduction during World War II (1939–1945), infections that had until then been difficult to treat became easy to cure. The next 20 years was a time of great optimism; scientists heralded that most, if not all, bacterial infections would be controlled by penicillin and additional antibiotics. In 1969, the U.S. Surgeon General William Stewart proclaimed, “It is time to close the book on infectious diseases. The war against pestilence is over.”

This optimism proved to be premature. In fact, there had already been a hint of what was to come. Only three years after the introduction of penicillin, clinical infections caused by a penicillin-resistant form of the bacterium *Staphylococcus aureus* began to be reported. In the subsequent decades, antibiotic resistance has become a major concern in hospitals and in daily life. The problem does not have a single cause—bacteria have devised a number of ways to overcome antibiotics.

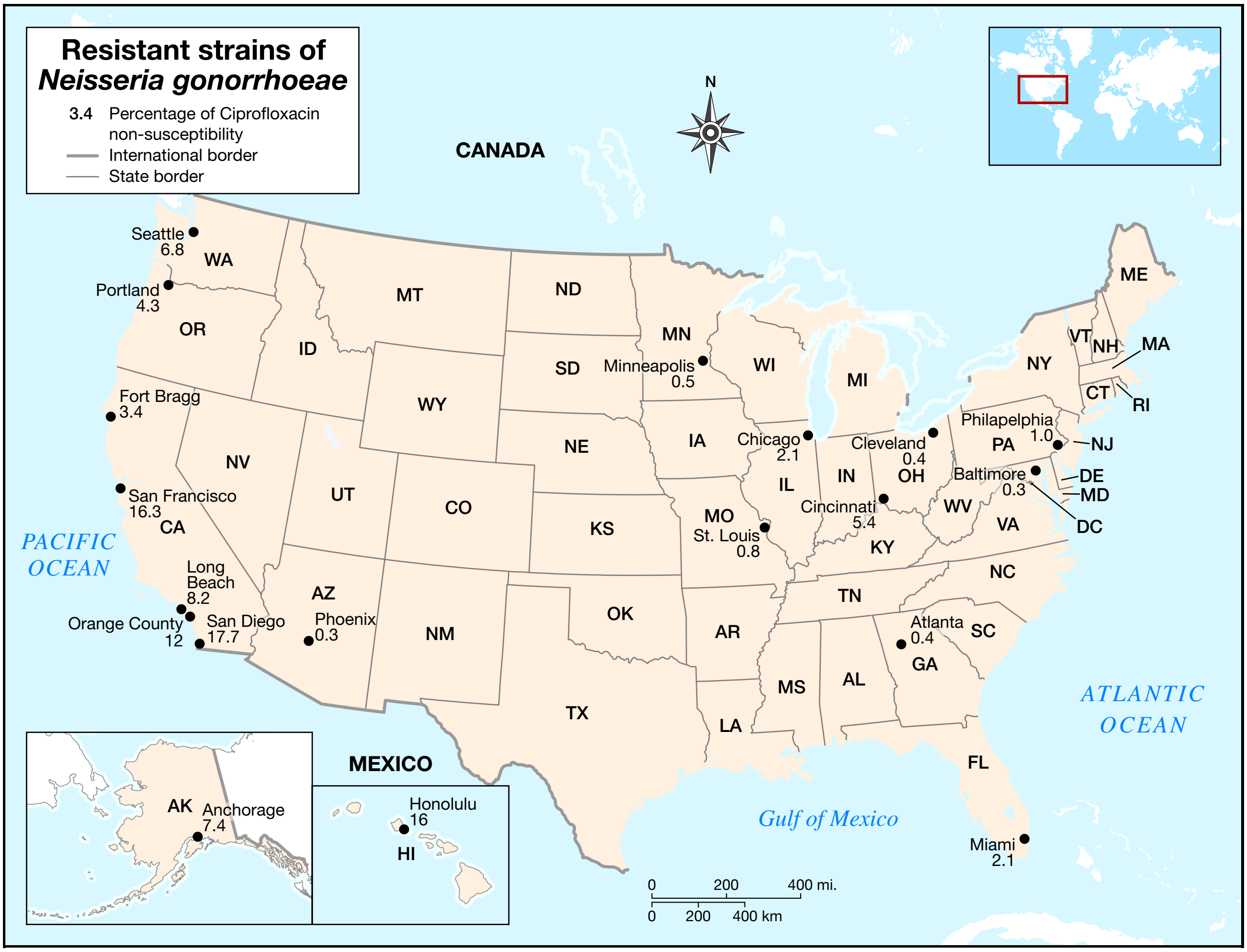
History and Scientific Foundations

By 1947, the antibiotic methicillin had been in widespread use for only two years. Nonetheless, resistance to this penicillin-related antibiotic by *S. aureus* was already known. This bacterium, since dubbed methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*, or MRSA, has become a huge problem, since it possesses resistance to a variety of other antibiotics commonly used to treat infections. As of 2007, about 50% of all infections caused by *S. aureus* in the United States are the result of MRSA.

Currently, there is only one antibiotic—vancomycin—that is effective against such multi-resistant bacteria. However, in 1997, a strain of *S. aureus* that also was resistant to vancomycin was reported in Japan. This resistant bacterium is now present in Europe and North America. While not yet as prevalent as MRSA, infection control experts warn that it is only a matter of time before the organism becomes more common.

Antibiotic resistance is present in other disease-causing bacteria as well. Acquisition of resistance has been a consequence of the use of antibiotics in hospitals. The selective pressure on a bacterium in a hospital is to develop antibiotic resistance, since the continued

American high school student Ashley Mulroy examined water samples from the Ohio River and discovered the presence of antibiotics in the river and in the drinking water of her hometown. She observed that inefficient wastewater treatment, which results in antibiotic contamination, can lead to bacterial resistance. *Taro Yamasaki/Time Life Pictures/Getty Images.*


Resistant strains of
Neisseria gonorrhoeae
3.4 Percentage of Ciprofloxacin non-susceptibility
International border
State border
CANADA
N
Seattle 6.8
WA
Portland 4.3
OR
ID
MT
ND
MN
SD
Minneapolis 0.5
WI
MI
NY
VT
NH
MA
ME
CT
RI
Fort Bragg 3.4
NV
WY
NE
IA
Chicago 2.1
Cleveland 0.4
Philapelphia 1.0
PA
NJ
San Francisco 16.3
CA
UT
CO
IL
IN
OH
Baltimore 0.3
DE
MD
DC
PACIFIC OCEAN
KS
MO
St. Louis 0.8
Cincinnati 5.4
WV
VA
KY
Long Beach 8.2
AZ
OK
TN
NC
Orange County 12
San Diego 17.7
Phoenix 0.3
NM
AR
Atlanta 0.4
SC
GA
MS
AL
ATLANTIC OCEAN
TX
LA
MEXICO
FL
AK
Anchorage 7.4
Honolulu 16
HI
Gulf of Mexico
Miami 2.1
0 200 400 mi.
0 200 400 km

Map showing Ciproflaxin resistance of strains of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in the United States, 2002. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

survival of the bacterium depends on its ability to thwart the antibiotic.

Bacteria can also become resistant to an antibiotic purely by chance. Changes in the bacterial deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) can occur randomly. Portions of DNA may be inserted or removed, or there may be a substitution of some of the building blocks (nucleotides) of the DNA. If the change occurs in a portion of DNA that codes for a bacterial component, the result can be resistance to an antibiotic. For example, a change in the composition of the bacterial membrane may prevent an antibiotic from passing as easily to the inside of the cell, or the enhanced activity of a bacterial enzyme may degrade a particular antibiotic. This spontaneous antibiotic resistance is thought to be responsible for the appearance of drug resistance in the bacterium that causes tuberculosis, which has led to the resurgence of this lung infection.

A second way that antibiotic resistance can be acquired is by the transfer of some of the DNA from the chromosomes of one bacterium to another. This typically occurs when the two bacteria are connected to each other by a hollow tube (a sex pilus). DNA can pass down the tube from the donor bacterium to the recipient bacterium. The process can be interrupted by breaking the tube, and so the transfer of genetic material can often be incomplete.

The third means by which antibiotic resistance develops is the most worrisome. This also involves the transfer of DNA from one bacterium to another, but instead of the transfer of DNA from the chromosomes of the donor bacterium to the recipient bacterium, the DNA found in a circular piece of DNA—known as a plasmid—is transferred from donor to recipient. Transfer of the plasmid to a new bacterium can easily occur, and the inserted plasmid may not need to be part of the recipient's genome to produce whatever factor is responsible for antibiotic resistance.

Plasmid-mediated transfer can occur at a much higher frequency than the other types of DNA transfer, and, as a result, antibiotic resistance can spread quickly. Furthermore, the DNA transfer can be promoted by selection pressure. For example, the presence of antibiotics can encourage the transfer DNA coding for antibiotic resistance among populations of bacteria.

A plasmid may contain a number of genes that each code for resistance to a certain antibiotic, as well as the genetic information that enables all this information to be deciphered and the necessary resistance factors made. The plasmid only needs to get inside the recipient bacterium for that cell to become resistant to the antibiotics.

There are different mechanisms of antibiotic resistance. Change of the target site of an antibiotic can make the antibiotic less effective or completely ineffective. For example, some Gram-negative bacteria can become resistant to a class of antibiotics called beta-lactam antibiotics by a modification to proteins called penicillin-binding proteins. The modification keeps the beta-lactam antibiotics from disrupting the construction of peptidoglycan, a component that is vital to maintaining the structure of the bacterial membrane. Other mechanisms of antibiotic resistance include the increased ability of the bacterium to pump an antibiotic back out of the cell, and the production of enzymes by the bacteria that can destroy the incoming antibiotic.

Laboratory tests can determine whether the bacteria isolated from an infection are resistant to antibiotics; which antibiotics the microbe is resistant to; and, most importantly for treatment, which antibiotics can kill the microbe. Typically, this testing involves adding the bacteria to the surface of a solid nutrient. The bacteria are spread over the surface so that they will grow as a continuous layer (often called a lawn). At about the same time, discs of a paper-like material that have been soaked in various concentrations of antibiotics are positioned on the nutrient surface. When the bacteria eventually grow, there will be circular clear zones devoid of bacteria wherever the antibiotic has been effective in killing the bacterial cells. Measurement of the diameter of these so-called inhibition zones can be used to determine how sensitive a particular type of bacteria is to the particular antibiotic. An automated version of this test also exists, but the basic design of the test is similar.

Applications and Research

Antibiotic resistance now involves a race between the development and introduction of an antibiotic and the development of bacterial resistance to the drug. Antibiotic discovery or synthesis is a long and costly process. This has hampered antibiotic research, since a pharmaceutical company needs to have a reasonable expectation of recouping the hundreds of millions of dollars spent on drug development before the drug becomes clinically less useful.

For some antibiotics, effectiveness can be regenerated relatively easily by modifying the three-dimensional structure of the molecule. Even a slight alteration involving the replacement of one chemical group in the molecule by another can restore the potency of the drug. Unfortunately, this effectiveness tends to be short-term. Within several years, bacteria can adapt to the modified drug and once again become resistant.

Research continues to try and find new mechanisms of antibiotic resistance. By understanding how bacteria become resistant to antibiotics, researchers hope to discover or design drugs that will kill the bacteria without stimulating the development of resistance. One approach that is promising is the use of bacteriophages—viruses that specifically infect and make new copies inside of a certain type of bacteria. Different bacteriophages each infect a particular bacterium. Since bacteriophages have been around for millions of years without the development of resistance by the target bacteria, researchers have been experimenting with the use of bacteriophages to deliver a toxic payload of antibacterial compounds. As of 2007, the research seems promising.

WORDS TO KNOW

BACTERIOPHAGE: A virus that infects bacteria. When a bacteriophage that carries the diphtheria toxin gene infects diphtheria bacteria, the bacteria produce diphtheria toxin.

MRSA: Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* are bacteria resistant to most penicillan-type antibiotics, including methicillin.

PLASMID: A circular piece of DNA that exists outside of the bacterial chromosome and copies itself independently. Scientists often use bacterial plasmids in genetic engineering to carry genes into other organisms.

Impacts and Issues

Antibiotic resistance is a problem that humans have created through the misuse and overuse of antibiotics. For example, it was once common practice to prescribe antibiotics for almost all illnesses, even those caused by viruses. Since viruses are not affected by antibiotics, this approach only served to exert a selection pressure favoring the development of resistance on the bacteria already present. In addition, antibiotics continue to be widely used in the poultry

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

Bacteria can adapt to the antibiotics used to kill them. This adaptation, which can involve structural changes or the production of enzymes that render the antibiotic useless, can make a particular bacterial species resistant to a particular antibiotic. Furthermore, a given bacterial species will usually display a spectrum of susceptibilities to antibiotics, with some antibiotics being very effective and others ineffective. For another bacterial species, the pattern of antibiotic sensitivity and resistance will be different. Thus, for diagnosis of an infection and for clinical decisions regarding the best treatment, tests of an organism's response to antibiotics are essential.

and cattle industries to enhance the weight gain of the birds or livestock. This practice involves giving antibiotics to healthy animals rather than using them to treat infections. It encourages the development of resistant bacteria, and this resistance can be passed to other bacterial populations.

Since 2000, the prevalence of community-associated MRSA (CA-MRSA) has been increasing. CA-MRSA infections are found in healthy people interacting normally in their community, not among those who have been hospitalized within the past year or had recent medical procedures, such as dialysis or surgery. This type of antibiotic resistance is especially challenging for health authorities, since it indicates that antibiotic resistance is capable of developing and spreading in the absence of antibiotic use. Recent outbreaks of community-associated MRSA occurred in Los Angeles county, California, and Chicago, Illinois, in 2004.

Primary Source Connection

In the following op-ed column published by the *New York Times* during the intense media coverage surrounding the 2001 anthrax attacks on the U.S. Postal Service, the Senate, and various media outlets, the authors Ellen K. Silbergeld and Polly Walker describe the dangers of the careless use of powerful antibiotics. At the time of publication, Ellen K. Silbergeld was professor of epidemiology at the University of Maryland School of Medicine. Polly Walker was associate director of the John Hopkins Center for a Livable Future.

What If Cipro Stopped Working?

Cipro, despite its current fame for preventing and treating anthrax, is in danger of becoming a casualty of what might be called the post-antibiotic age. Bayer, the maker of Cipro, also sells a chemically similar drug called Baytril, which is used in large-scale poultry production worldwide. The widespread use of Baytril in chickens has already been shown to decrease Cipro's effectiveness in humans for some types of infections.

Bayer recommends that Baytril be used only to treat infected poultry and says it poses no threat to public health. But the use of antibiotics in agriculture is part of a serious public health problem in the United States. According to the Union of Concerned Scientists, as much as 70 percent of all antibiotics produced in the United States are fed to healthy livestock for "growth promotion" in other words, to increase their weight for market. Not only does this reduce their effectiveness in animals; it poses a real danger to humans.

The discovery and use of antibiotics to treat human disease and save lives is one of the greatest feats of modern medicine. Many of us are alive today because of antibiotics. Just 60 years ago, the discovery of antibiotics revolutionized medicine, tipping the balance in our favor against the sea of pathogens that surrounds us. Now, with the very real threat of biological terrorism, preserving the power of antibiotics is a matter of the highest urgency.

Bacteria have always adapted to our new drugs faster and more efficiently than we can adapt to their genetic changes. Through prudent use, we can preserve the effectiveness of our drugs for use in treating human disease while we search nature and chemistry for new defenses. Yet we are now squandering this precious resource by using powerful antibiotics carelessly for livestock and poultry—mostly for nontherapeutic reasons.

Agribusiness argues that nontherapeutic use of antibiotics is essential to the continued supply of cheap food. But many countries have demonstrated that food can be safely and efficiently produced without robbing the medicine chest. In the European Union, the nontherapeutic use of antibiotics in agriculture has been banned.

The use of antibiotics in food animal production increases the risks of contracting drug-resistant infections from eating animal products. Despite a national network for testing food, every year the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention reports incidents of food poisoning by drug-resistant bacteria. In addition, using antibiotics in agriculture can result in environmental pollution by both drugs and drug-resistant bacteria.

Last month, the New England Journal of Medicine reported that drug-resistant bacteria were present in meat purchased at supermarkets in the Washington, D.C., area. An accompanying editorial recommended that the use of nontherapeutic antibiotics in farm animals be prohibited.

We need better information and more government oversight in this arena. Opinions differ on the amount of antibiotics currently used in animal production. Creating a national tracking system to measure how much of each antibiotic is used and for what purposes—as proposed by the Food and Drug Administration—is a necessary first step. Mandatory reporting of antibiotic use was discussed in January at meetings sponsored by the F.D.A., but no actual legislation or regulations have been proposed.

For Bayer, the maker of Baytril, the need for action is clear. The use of Baytril falls into a gray area between growth promotion and treatment; it is common practice in the poultry industry to add Baytril to drinking water during the last weeks of a flock's life, even if no disease has been diagnosed. Last year, the F.D.A. asked Bayer and Abbott Laboratories, the two producers of the chicken drug, to withdraw their Cipro-like antibiotics from agricultural use voluntarily. Abbott agreed. Bayer did not.

Bayer has committed itself to supporting our national efforts to protect the public health by supplying Cipro at a reduced cost to the federal government. Voluntarily withdrawing Baytril from the market would show that the company is serious about its commitment to the public health.

Ellen K. Silbergeld
Polly Walker

SILBERGELD, ELLEN K., AND POLLY WALKER. "WHAT IF CIPRO STOPPED WORKING?" *NEW YORK TIMES* (NOVEMBER 3, 2001). AVAILABLE ONLINE AT <HTTP://QUERY.NYTIMES.COM/GST/FULLPAGE.HTML?SEC=HEALTH&RES=9C0DEED91F30F930A35752C1A9679C8B63>.

See Also *Antibacterial Drugs; MRSA.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Salyers, Abigail A., and Dixie D. Whitt. *Revenge of the Microbes: How Bacterial Resistance Is Undermining the Antibiotic Miracle.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2005.

Periodicals

Wickens, Hayley, and Paul Wade. "Understanding Antibiotic Resistance." *The Pharmaceutical Journal* 274 (2005): 501–504.

Zoler, Mitchel L. "Long-term, Acute Care Hospitals Breed Antibiotic Resistance." *Internal Medicine News* 37 (September 15, 2004): 51–52.

Brian Hoyle

Antimicrobial Soaps

Introduction

Antimicrobial soaps refer to solutions that are designed to lessen the number of living (viable) microorganisms on the surface of the skin. As they are usually rubbed on the skin during handwashing, the most common form of the antimicrobial product is a soap.

The main target of antimicrobial soaps are the bacteria that commonly live on (colonize) the surface of the skin. These include bacteria in the genera of *Staphylococcus* and *Streptococcus*. Normally, these bacteria are innocuous; they do not cause harm to the host. But, if they gain access to niches inside the body due to a cut or other injury, they can cause serious and even life-threatening diseases. An example is the contamination of implanted heart valves by *Staphylococcus aureus*, which can cause endocarditis. By handwashing with an antimicrobial soap for an adequate length of time (at least one minute) to lessen the number of living *S. aureus* on the skin prior to heart valve surgery, a surgeon can diminish the risk of infecting the patient.

Antimicrobial soaps are also a common part of the home. The ubiquitous bar of soap in the shower and by the bathroom sink is an example of an antimicrobial soap.

History and Scientific Foundations

The use of antibacterial soap began in the mid-nineteenth century. At that time, the Viennese physician Ignaz Semmelweiss (1818–1865) noted the markedly higher death rate among hospitalized patients who received care from medical students, versus patients cared for by midwives. Semmelweiss determined that it was a common practice for the students to come from dissection and teaching labs to the hospital ward without washing their hands. By instituting a handwashing policy, the previous high death rate was almost completely eliminated.

With time came the knowledge that bacteria and other disease causing microorganisms such as fungi could be transferred from person to person on the skin of the caregiver. The use of antimicrobial compounds in soaps gained credence in the several decades following World War II (1939–1945), with the expanded use of antibiotics to treat bacterial diseases. The initial overwhelming success of antibiotics made the incorporation of antimicrobials into other products a health priority.

A U.S. Food and Drug Administration advisory panel said in 2005 that antibacterial soaps offer no more protection than regular soap and water in everyday use. In addition, the overuse of such soaps could potentially contribute to the development of bacteria resistant to antibiotics. *AP Images.*

The principle ingredient that has been most commonly used in antimicrobial soaps is triclosan. The compound contains a phenol ring structure to which are attached chlorine groups. The phenol ring is very difficult to break apart, which means that bacteria and fungi are less apt to be capable of degrading the triclosan molecule to a form that is inactive. As well, chlorine has a potent antibacterial and antifungal effect.

Triclosan has many sites of action in bacteria and fungi, which can vary depending on the applied concentration of the compound. For example, at the concentrations typically found in antibacterial soaps, triclosan binds to and inhibits the activity of a variety of proteins and other cell components both in the bacterial or fungal membranes and in the cytoplasm—the dense fluid that fills the interior of the microorganisms. The cytoplasmic targets are mainly enzymes—proteins that function to speed up chemical reactions, including those that are vital to cell survival. The multiple inactivations caused by triclosan are too much for the bacteria or fungi to overcome and they are rapidly killed.

Another antimicrobial compound used in soaps is triclocarban. This compound also has ring structures and chlorine groups, and its antimicrobial activity is similar to that of triclosan.

Applications and Research

Antibacterial soaps are a standard feature of hospitals and other health care facilities, where the need to control the spread of infections is essential. For example, the use of antibacterial soap or other type of skin wash is very important in controlling the spread of a type of bacteria designated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) from ward to ward in hospitals. This is because MRSA is resistant to many antibiotics, and so can be difficult to treat once present in a hospital. A patient whose immune system is not functioning efficiently can become extremely ill or can die if infected with MRSA.

Other triclosan containing products have become more widely popular in everyday life. Examples of commercially available antimicrobial soaps include the facial wash marketed as Clearasil®, which is designed to lessen the development of acne, and Dial Complete® soap.

Impacts and Issues

While antimicrobial soaps have been very effective in controlling the spread of infectious diseases, their overuse or misuse may be promoting the development of bacteria that are resistant to triclosan. Studies with *Escherichia coli* have indicated that the genetic alterations that render the bacteria resistant to triclosan might also confer resistance to other antibacterial compounds including some antibiotics. Put another way, the use of antimicrobial soaps may drive the bacteria to become more resistant and so a greater threat to health.

WORDS TO KNOW

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

RESISTANT ORGANISM: Resistant organisms are bacteria, viruses, parasites, or other disease-causing agents that have stopped responding to drugs that once killed them.

TRICLOSAN: A chemical that kills bacteria. Most antibacterial soaps use this chemical.

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

Disinfection is a key strategy of infection control. Disinfection refers to the reduction in the number of living microorganisms to a level that is considered to be safe for the particular environment. Typically, this entails the destruction of those microbes that are capable of causing disease.

Disinfection is different from sterilization, which is the complete destruction of all microbial life on the surface or in the liquid. The steam-heat technique of autoclaving is an example of sterilization.

There are three levels of disinfection, with respect to power of the disinfection. High-level disinfection will kill all organisms, except for large concentrations of bacterial spores, using a chemical agent that has been approved as a so-called sterilant by the United States Food and Drug Administration. Intermediate level disinfection is that which kills mycobacteria, most viruses, and all types of bacteria. This type of disinfection uses a chemical agent that is approved as a tuberculocide by the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). The last type of disinfection is called low-level disinfection. In this type, some viruses and bacteria are killed using a chemical compound designated by the EPA as a hospital disinfectant.

An important reason has been the expansion in the use of triclosan containing soaps in the home. Consumers have become more conscious of the possible health threat of microorganisms and the marketplace has responded by formulating products designed for everyday use. Unfortunately, if a microorganism is exposed to a sub-lethal concentration of triclosan, or not exposed to the compound long enough due to inadequate washing (the soap needs to be present on the skin for 30–45 seconds), the microbe

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

Improper handwashing can be dangerous. Particularly harsh soaps, or very frequent handwashing (for example, 20–30 times a day) can increase the acidity of the skin, which can counteract some of the protective fatty acid secretions. Also the physical act of washing will shed skin cells. If washing is excessive, the protective microflora will be removed, leaving the newly exposed skin susceptible to colonization by another, potentially harmful microorganism. Health care workers, who scrub their hands frequently, are prone to skin infections and damage.

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

In October 2005, a U.S. Food and Drug Administration panel advised that washing with popular antibacterial soaps and gels in the home was no more effective in preventing infections than washing with plain soap and water. The panel is currently considering recommendations for stricter rules in advertising and labeling of antibacterial products. The panel excluded alcohol-based antibacterial gels from the advisory, which were considered useful in preventing infections where adequate soap and water were not accessible.

may survive and become more resistant to the antimicrobial agent. If this resistance has been acquired because of a genetic alteration, the trait can be passed to future generations of microorganisms.

The link between triclosan resistance and resistance to other agents is contentious. While some studies published since 2003 have not found evidence of a link, other studies have. For example, triclosan has been demonstrated to be capable of blocking the manufacture of fatty acids, molecules vital to the construction of membranes. The altered membrane can make some bacteria resistant to antibiotics that formerly killed them.

The expanded and less controlled use of antimicrobial soaps is also a concern in light of a study published in 2006 that demonstrated that low doses of triclosan in the environment from domestic wastes cause hormonal alterations in the North American bullfrog. This indicates that there may be detrimental changes associated with the discharge of low levels of antimicrobial soaps into the environment.

SEE ALSO *Disinfection; Germ Theory of Disease; Handwashing; Resistant Organisms.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bankston, John. *Joseph Lister and the Story of Antiseptics.* Hockessin, DE: Mitchell Lane Publishers, 2004.

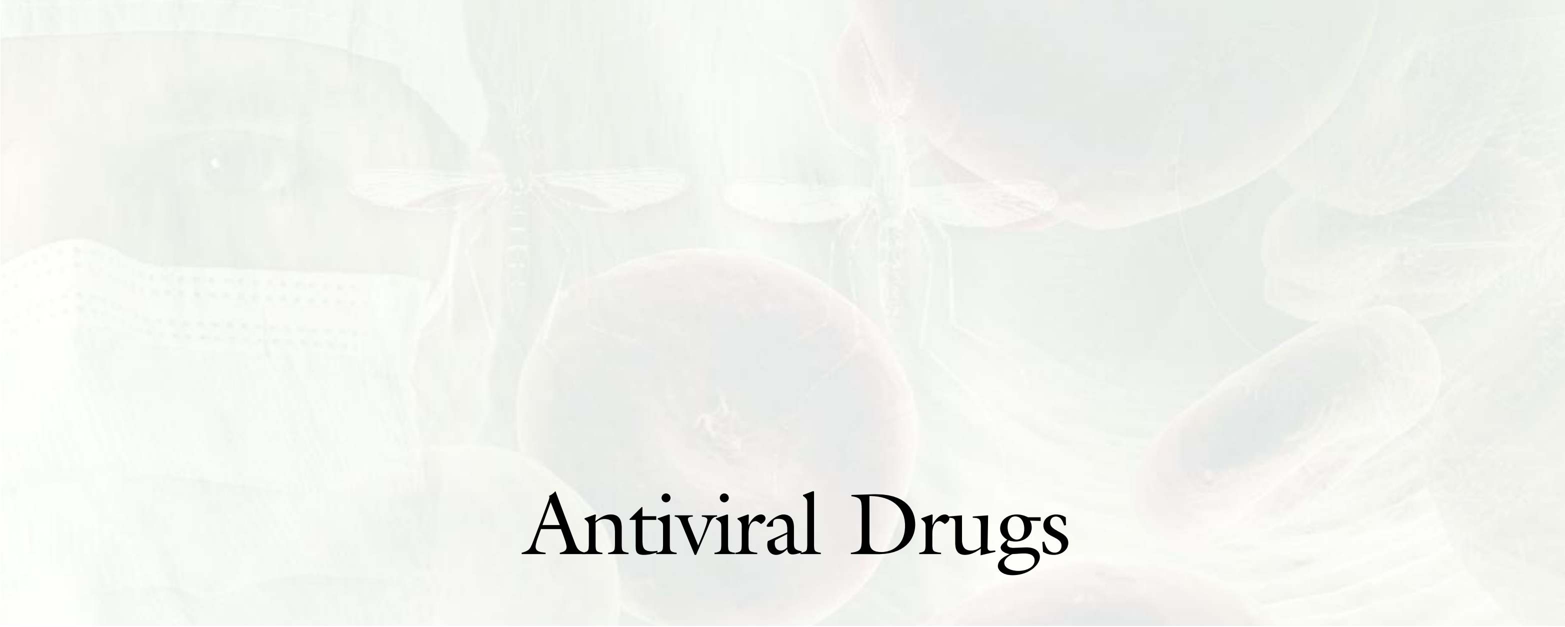
McDonnell, Gerald E. *Antisepsis, Disinfection, and Sterilization: Types, Action, and Resistance.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2007.

Tortora, Gerald J., Berdell R. Funke, and Christine L. Case. *Microbiology: An Introduction. 9th ed.* New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2006.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Antibacterial Household Products: Cause for Concern." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/vol7no3_supp/levy.htm> (accessed April 29. 2007).

Brian Hoyle



Antiviral Drugs

Introduction

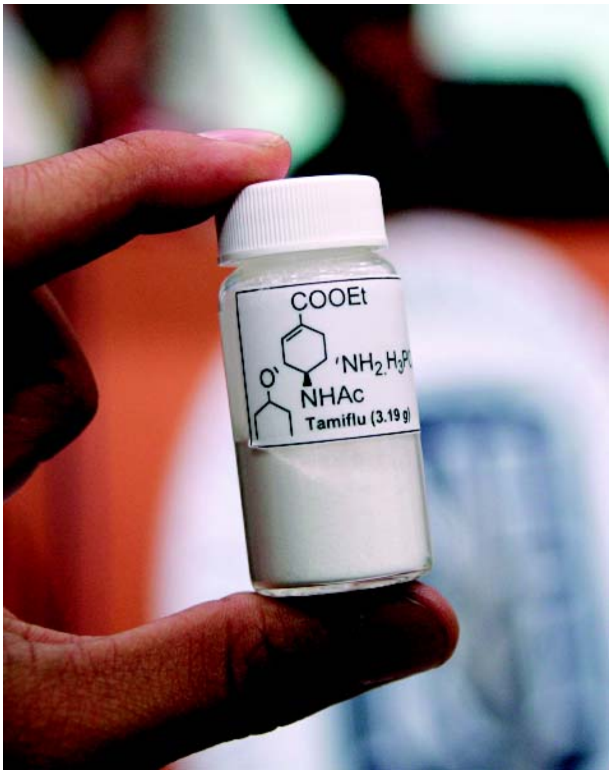
Antiviral drugs are used to prevent or treat viral infections. They are antimicrobial compounds, as are antibiotics. However, antiviral compounds do not have the same mode of action as antibiotics. This is because most antibiotics rely on the ability of the bacteria to grow and divide. Bacteria grow and divide independently. In contrast, viruses must infect a host cell before they can exploit the host cell's genetic machinery to manufacture the components of new virus particles. Antibiotics are useless against viruses, both because viruses are localized inside of another cell or tissue, and because viruses are not alive in the absence of the host cell.

Antibiotics and antiviral drugs are similar in that specific drugs are designed for specific targets. For example, anti-retroviral drugs specifically inhibit infections caused by retroviruses, such as the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Other antiviral drugs specifically target other viruses, including herpes viruses and the various hepatitis viruses.

History and Scientific Foundations

The history of antiviral compounds dates back only to the 1960s. Prior to that time, a viral illness had to run its course. In the 1960s, antiviral drugs were developed to deal with herpes infections (which include cold sores, genital infection, chickenpox, mononucleosis, and Kaposi's sarcoma). At that time, the development of the drugs was more a trial-and-error process than a directed process. The process typically involved growing cultures of a particular type of cell and then infecting the cells with a particular virus. Successful infection is often apparent by a change in the appearance of the host cell. By adding compounds during the infection, researchers could monitor whether the visible signs of infection occurred or not. The absence of changes in the host cells was an indication that the particular compound was a potential antiviral agent.

This process was tedious and time-consuming. Beginning in the 1970s, advances in molecular biology made antiviral drug design more focused. The genetic sequences of disease-causing viruses began to be determined. In addition, it was learned that many viruses initiated infection by recognizing and binding to sites on the surface of host cells. As the three-dimensional



Several facilities worldwide are licensed to produce generic versions of the antiviral drug Tamiflu in preparation of a possible avian (bird) flu pandemic. *© Richard Chung/Reuters/Corbis.*

An HIV-positive mother takes a break from painting her house to take her ARV medication in South Africa. She is now able to use this generic fix-dose combination drug, Triomune, instead of three separate pills. This makes it easier for her to take all the needed medication. © *Gideon Mendel/Corbis.*

shapes of these host sites and the molecular details of the binding of the virus were clarified, it became possible to design compounds to block the binding.

The binding process can be blocked in two ways. In one approach, the target site on the host surface is occupied by an added molecule. Because the site is occupied, the virus is unable to bind to it. In the second approach, the viral recognition site is blocked by the addition of a molecule. The blocking molecule may be an antibody—a protein that is produced by the immune system—that has been produced in the laboratory. Then virus particles cannot gain access to the host cell; they are stranded outside the host cells and can be destroyed when they are recognized by the hosts' immune system, which causes antiviral immune molecules to be made and deployed.

This strategy of blocking viral infection very early in the infectious process is the basis of some viral vaccines. It can be very successful if the host or viral target sites do not change. However, in viral infections such as influenza, the viral site can change from year to year. A vaccine designed for the viral strain that dominates one year may be ineffective the next year, which is why new influenza vaccines need to be produced and administered prior to each flu season.

Some antiviral drugs operate slightly differently, by blocking the uptake of virus into the host cell. Other antiviral drugs prevent the infecting virus from using the host cell's genetic replication (duplication) mechanisms. The numbers of infecting viruses are not reduced, but, because the infection process is blocked, new viruses are not made. Once again, the host's immune system can more easily deal with the stranded viruses.

Two antiviral drugs, idoxuridine and trifluridine, halt viral infection at the genetic level. These drugs act by replacing one of the units (a compound called thymidine) that forms the genetic material. The drugs are able to do this because their structure is similar to the structure of thymidine. The incorporation of either drug produces DNA that does not function. Other drugs mimic other compounds, and their incorporation produces the same result. However, the drugs can also be incorporated into the DNA of the host cells, which disrupts their function. This action can cause side effects, but if the infection is stopped it can be worthwhile in the longer term.

Other antiviral drugs, such as acyclovir, target an enzyme produced by the virus, usually early in the infection, that is vital for the replication of the genetic material. The drug binds to the enzyme, which prevents the enzyme from binding to its normal target. As a result, DNA formation stops. Acyclovir is used to treat infections due to herpes simplex viruses and Epstein-Barr virus.

Zidovudine (AZT) acts against HIV by blocking the activity of the reverse transcriptase enzyme. This enzyme makes it possible for the infecting virus to convert its RNA to DNA, and this DNA is subsequently used by the

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ENZYME: Enzymes are molecules that act as critical catalysts in biological systems. Catalysts are substances that increase the rate of chemical reactions without being consumed in the reaction. Without enzymes, many reactions would require higher levels of energy and higher temperatures than exist in biological systems. Enzymes are proteins that possess specific binding sites for other molecules (substrates). A series of weak binding interactions allow enzymes to accelerate reaction rates. Enzyme kinetics is the study of enzymatic reactions and mechanisms. Enzyme inhibitor studies have allowed researchers to develop therapies for the treatment of diseases, including AIDS.

MESSENGER RIBONUCLEIC ACID (MRNA): A molecule of RNA that carries the genetic information for producing one or more proteins; mRNA is produced by copying one strand of DNA, but in eukaryotes is able to move from the nucleus to the cytoplasm (where protein synthesis takes place).

REPLICATION: A process of reproducing, duplicating, copying, or repeating something, such as the duplication of DNA or the recreation of characteristics of an infectious disease in a laboratory setting.

RESISTANCE: Immunity developed within a species (especially bacteria) via evolution to an antibiotic or other drug. For example, in bacteria, the acquisition of genetic mutations that render the bacteria invulnerable to the action of antibiotics.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

host cell's replication machinery to produce new viral constituents. The compound can become incorporated into the host cell DNA, which also blocks the replication of viral genetic material. AZT is beneficial in reducing the transmission of HIV from a pregnant woman to her developing fetus and to her newborn during labor or breastfeeding.

Still other antiviral drugs focus on translation—the process whereby the messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) (which is formed from instructions encoded in DNA) is used to manufacture compounds, such as protein. Some antiviral drugs block mRNA formation and disrupt the translation process. Antiviral therapy also involves molecular tools. The best example is oligonucleotides, which are sequences of the building blocks of genetic material that are deliberately made to be complimentary to a target sequence of viral genetic material. The term complimentary means that the two sequences are able to chemically associate with one another. When the oligonucleotide binds to a stretch of viral genetic material, it prevents that stretch from being used in viral replication. One oligonucleotide-based drug is available for the treatment of eye infections in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome).

■ Applications and Research

The different mechanisms of action of different antiviral drugs have been useful in treating a variety of viral infections. For example, acyclovir, which was the first successful antiviral drug developed, is used to treat infections caused by herpes viruses, which include lesions on the genitals, in the mouth, and even in the brain, as well as treating chickenpox and shingles. The antiviral drug ganciclovir has been useful in the treatment of cytomegalovirus-mediated eye infections.

A well-known type of antiviral drug acts against retroviruses, in particular human HIV, the virus that causes AIDS. Most of the anti-retroviral drugs that have been developed have focused on combating HIV. The antiviral drug combination known as highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) is targeted at blocking the use of the HIV RNA to manufacture DNA (which is then used to make the viral components); blocking the integration of viral genetic material into the host genome; and blocking adhesion of the virus to host cells. This multi-pronged approach can delay the progression of AIDS.

Research is progressing on antiviral drugs to block enzymes that cut DNA or RNA or proteins. These enzymes are important in the viral manufacturing process, and so their disruption can stop viral replication. Researchers are also exploring ways to block the release of an assembled virus from the host cell. If release can be blocked, new host cells cannot be infected and the infection stops.

Impacts and Issues

Antiviral drugs are invaluable in the treatment of viral diseases. Millions of people infected with HIV or suffering from the symptoms of AIDS utilize them. The U.S. National Institutes of Health recommends HAART even if symptoms are absent. HAART is expensive, however. This has limited its use to those who can afford it, either because of personal finances or government assistance. In the regions that are most affected by AIDS, such as sub-Saharan Africa, HAART is far less available. Economics deprive those most in need of help. Organizations, including the International Center for Research on Health, are working to introduce HAART more widely in Africa, and to encourage its use.

Anti-retroviral drugs, such as those used in HAART, are urgently needed in sub-Saharan Africa, where more than 25 million people are infected with HIV. It has been argued that widespread availability and use of anti-retroviral drugs could make AIDS in Africa a treatable (although still chronic) disease, similar to the situation in Europe, Australia, and North America. However, such a large-scale humanitarian effort may be unrealistic, given that private industry would likely bear most of the economic burden.

Despite this gloomy picture, some hope can be drawn from a 2003 pilot project by Médecins Sans Frontières, which demonstrated that anti-retroviral programs could be implemented in regions as poor as rural Africa. Furthermore, a United Nations summit held in 2005 produced a pledge from the leaders of the economically advantaged Group of Eight countries to make access to anti-retroviral drugs universal by 2010. However, many challenges remain to realize this ambitious goal.

Another issue involving antiviral drugs is the risks posed by their use. One example is the reverse transcriptase inhibitor, AZT. While the use of AZT has reduced maternal transmission of HIV, research published in 2007, which utilized animal models of the infection and also the genetic examination of humans, indicates that this benefit may be accompanied by a risk of cancer later in the infant's life. Fetuses exposed to AZT were found to display markedly more mutations in their genetic material than those not exposed to the drug. Since many cancers are associated with mutations, the research has highlighted a previously unrecognized risk of AZT therapy.

A second example concerns the antiviral drug oseltamivir phosphate (sold as Tamiflu®). The drug, which is used to combat viral influenza and which is approved for Americans one year of age and older, has recognized side effects. The most common (nausea and vomiting) are relatively inconsequential, but Tamiflu has been anecdotally linked to instances of abnormal mental behavior in teenagers in Japan and 84 adverse events in Canada, including the deaths of 10 elderly people. Health Canada is monitoring its use and is prepared to take more stringent action if warranted, in light of the possibility that a flu epidemic could result in the use of Tamiflu® by millions of people worldwide.

In 2006, Tamiflu® resistance was reported in several people infected with the H5N1 strain of the influenza virus. H5N1 is the cause of a serious and sometimes lethal form of flu called avian influenza (bird flu). Resistance to drugs is always a concern, since over time and with the increased use of the particular drug, the resistant strain becomes predominant in a population, making the disease much harder, and usually more expensive, to treat. Since Tamiflu® is available at pharmacies, the possibility that the drug might be used improperly or inappropriately increases the likelihood that such resistance will develop. Monitoring by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) did not detect the resistant strain in the U.S. during 2006. However, surveillance is ongoing, since the global range of H5N1 is growing, and because the evolving ability of the virus to be more easily transmitted from person to person makes the possibility of a global epidemic increasingly likely.

See Also *Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Pandemic Preparedness.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Driscoll, John S. *Antiviral Drugs.* New York: Wiley, 2005.

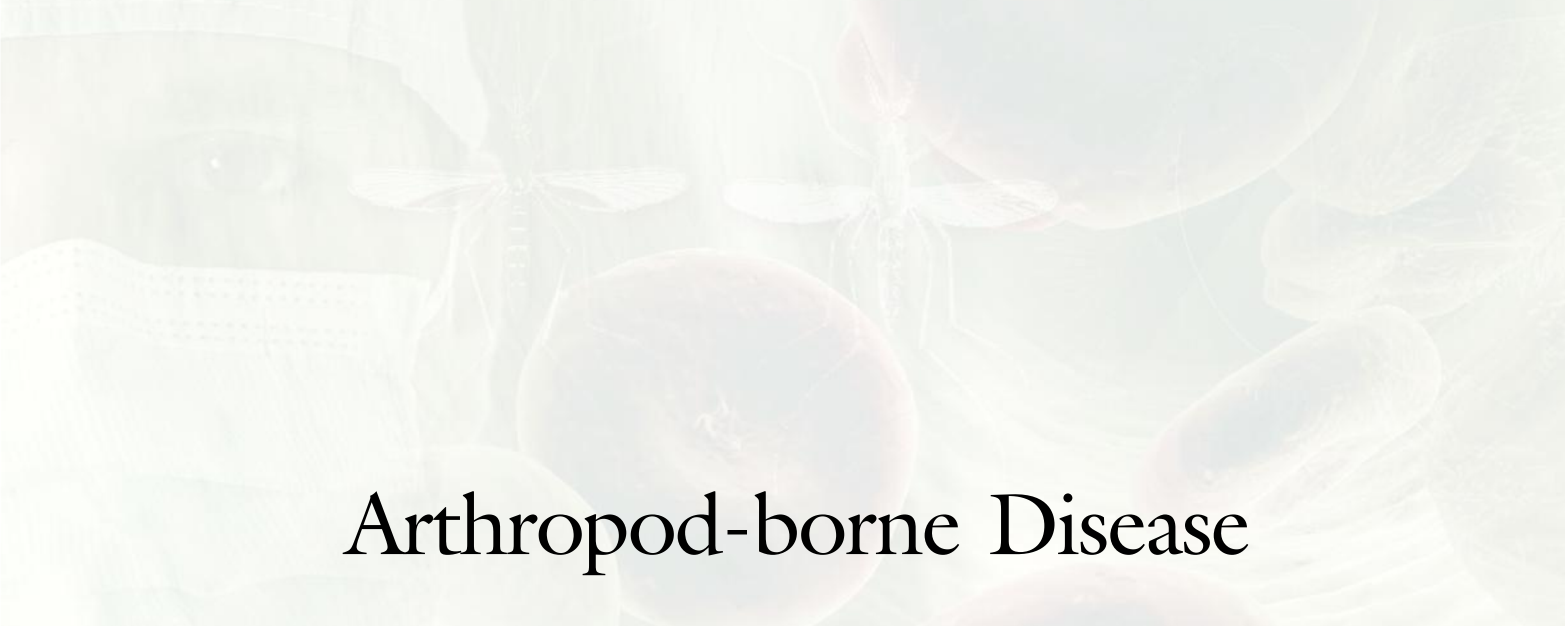
Torrence, Paul F. *Antiviral Drug Discovery for Emerging Diseases and Bioterrorism Threats.* New York: Wiley-Interscience, 2005.

Periodicals

Monto, Arnold S. "Vaccines and Antiviral Drugs in Pandemic Preparedness." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 12 (January 2006): 55–61.

Witt, Kristine L., et al. "Elevated Frequencies of Micronucleated Erythrocytes in Infants Exposed to Zidovudine in Utero and Postpartum to Prevent Mother-to-Child Transmission of HIV." *Environmental and Molecular Mutagenesis* 48 (April-May 2007): 322–329.

Brian Hoyle



Arthropod-borne Disease

Introduction

Arthropod-borne diseases are transmitted by arthropods, members of the invertebrate phylum Arthropoda, which includes insects, spiders, and crustaceans. Mosquitoes, fleas, ticks, lice, and flies are the arthropods that usually act as vectors for various pathogens (disease-causing microorganisms), including bacteria, viruses, helminths (parasitic worms), and protozoa. Transmission of these pathogens to humans by the arthropod vector can cause a variety of human diseases, including malaria, yellow fever, Chagas disease, and dengue fever. These and other arthropod-borne diseases can result in a wide range of effects, from mild flulike symptoms to death. Some survivors of arthropod-borne diseases can suffer chronic, crippling aftereffects.

While arthropod-borne diseases are a major concern worldwide, developing countries are the most affected. These diseases tend to occur primarily in tropical countries—the endemic zones of the pathogens and the arthropods that harbor them. However, these diseases can also spread when people travel between infected and non-infected areas, or when infected arthropods are inadvertently transported. Natural disasters, wars, poverty, and overpopulation can facilitate outbreaks of disease, since they may create conditions that are ideal for transmission or may cause a breakdown in the health care and public health systems.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Humans contract arthropod-borne diseases when a pathogen, such as a bacteria or virus, is transmitted from its reservoir (natural host) to a human via the arthropod vector. The most common arthropod vectors are flies, fleas, ticks, mosquitoes, and lice. Transmission from arthropod to human occurs either mechanically or biologically. In mechanical transmission, the arthropod deposits pathogens onto a surface from which a host either absorbs or ingests them. For example, a housefly may deposit bacteria onto food that is then eaten by a human. In biological transmission, the arthropod injects the pathogens directly into the body of the host; for example, when a mosquito bites a human.

The nymph tick that causes Lyme disease is shown on human skin. Other arthropods that can transmit diseases to humans include certain species of mosquitoes, fleas, mites, lice, and flies. *Dr. Jeremy Burgess/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ARTHROPOD: A member of the largest single animal phylum, consisting of organisms with segmented bodies, jointed legs or wings, and exoskeletons.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

The effects of arthropod-borne disease range from mild to severe. Arthropod-borne diseases, such as encephalitis and malaria, are characterized by symptoms such as headaches, fevers, weakness, and anemia. Some diseases can be fatal, and others, while not causing death, may have chronic effects that decrease quality of life.

Arthropod-borne diseases have shaped the course of history. From 1343–1351, several forms of plague caused by the bacterium *Yersinia pestis* were likely carried to humans by fleas on black rats. The event became known as the black plague or Black Death, which killed over two-thirds of the population of urban areas in Asia, one-third of the population of the Middle East, and between one-third and two-thirds of the population of Europe. Plague continued to ravage European cities sporadically, but never as it did during the Black Death. Isolated outbreaks of plague still occur, affecting under 5,000 people annually, but epidemic plague largely disappeared in Europe just before the turn of the nineteenth century—well before the advent of antibiotics. Scientists debate the reasons for its disappearance, but many point to increased sanitation and the possibility that *Yersinia pestis*-carrying fleas diminished as brown rat populations replaced black rats in Europe.

Until the mid-twentieth century, arthropod-borne diseases were an endemic health problem. American cities battled outbreaks of mosquito-borne yellow fever. Yellow fever, along with malaria, a disease involving a *Plasmodium* protozoan also transmitted by mosquitoes, stopped French construction of a canal through Panama during the 1880s when it claimed the lives of over 20,000 workers. The same diseases claimed an additional 5,000 lives when the United States completed the Panama Canal project two decades later.

Arthropod-borne diseases remain a threat, especially in less-developed countries. Malaria remains the most widespread arthropod-borne disease in the world, killing one to two million people and affecting between 250 and 500 million people per year (weather conditions can cause large changes in numbers of cases), almost exclusively in the developing world. Dengue fever, a viral disease transmitted by mosquitoes, increased in prevalence during the late 1990s and early 2000s. In 2005, it was endemic to over 100 countries, with about 50 millions cases of dengue fever occurring each year. Dengue hemorrhagic fever is a complication of dengue fever that is fatal in about 5% of cases.

Scope and Distribution

Arthropod-borne diseases occur worldwide, although they are more common in tropical areas such as are found in the Caribbean, Central and South America, Asia, the South Pacific, and Africa. Many regions in North America, Europe, and Australia are less affected by these diseases. Some arthropod-borne diseases are endemic to a particular country or locality, while others, such as malaria, are widely spread throughout the world.

Arthropod-borne diseases can be dispersed when infected individuals travel from a locality where they contracted the disease to an area where the disease is absent or less common. In addition, infected arthropods may be introduced to regions where the disease was previously absent, and, if conditions are favorable, the disease may gain a foothold in the new region. A variety of causes—from accidental transportation in food products to deliberate introduction of a species as a pest control agent—may be responsible for the transfer of an infected arthropod to an uninfected area.

Treatment and Prevention

The recommended treatment of an arthropod-borne disease depends upon the specific disease. Treatment often involves a course of antibiotics and, in some cases, a vaccine may be available for the specific disease. However, prevention measures are similar for all arthropod-borne diseases.

The most effective prevention method is to avoid being bitten by the arthropod vector in the first place. This can be achieved by wearing clothing that covers bare skin, using repellants to deter insects, avoiding outdoor activities at times when the arthropods are most active, and sleeping under mosquito netting. Travelers may want to avoid visiting tropical countries where certain arthropod-borne diseases are common, and anyone traveling to countries where these diseases are endemic certainly should take precautions to prevent being bitten. Vaccinations exist for some of these diseases to prevent development of the disease if transmission occurs. However, vaccinations are not available for all arthropod-borne diseases, and everyone does not have access to those vaccines that do exist.

For mechanically transmitted infections, prevention measures include excluding insects from areas where food is prepared and served, washing or thoroughly cooking any food that may have come into contact with an arthropod, and avoiding water bodies inhabited by arthropods. If these precautions are taken, ingestion or absorption of possible pathogens is unlikely.

■ Impacts and Issues

Arthropod-borne diseases spread rapidly when humans inhabit areas in high densities. This can occur during wars, where soldiers live in close quarters. It can also occur after natural disasters when homes are destroyed and people are forced to live close together in temporary shelters. It also occurs in poorer countries with large populations. An increase in the density of the human population leads to an increase in contact between humans and vectors, causing the rate of infection to rise.

Developing countries are most affected by arthropod-borne diseases. The World Health Organization estimates that up to 500 million cases of malaria occur each year, but fewer than 1,300 of these cases occur in the United States. An estimated one to two million people die every year due to malaria, and over 80% of the fatalities occur in Africa. This is primarily due to the poor living conditions—including lack of sanitation and the presence of stagnant water—that exist in many African regions. These conditions encourage the growth of arthropod populations. In addition, lack of access to high-quality health care in many areas limits prevention and treatment of disease, causing an increase in transmission, as well as, more serious outcomes when infection does occur.

Arthropod-borne diseases also have become a more significant risk in developed countries. For example, West Nile virus, a mosquito-borne disease, first emerged in the United States in 1999. This virus develops in birds and is transmitted to humans by mosquitoes. In 1999, 149 cases were reported in the United States. By 2003, over 9,000 cases were reported, including more than 250 fatalities. Methods to prevent the spread of West Nile virus focus on reducing the number of mosquitoes in an area and using personal protective measures (protective clothing, insect repellents, etc.) to prevent contact with mosquitoes.

One of the most common methods employed to combat arthropod-borne diseases is the use of insecticides to control the insect vectors. However, the sustainability of this method is questionable due to the emergence of insecticide-resistant arthropods. The widespread use of insecticides also can have unintended, negative environmental impacts. For example, the efficient insecticide DDT greatly reduced the number of malaria outbreaks in the 1950s and 1960s, but also caused extensive die-off of bird populations and other negative effects on the natural environment. Today, the World Health Organization recommends the reuse of DDT, but proposes that this use be limited to targeted areas only where it can efficiently kill large populations of disease-bearing mosquitoes with minimal negative environmental effects.

The development of vaccines is a growing area of interest. The World Health Organization's Initiative for Vaccine Research (IVR) was established to guide the development of vaccines for various diseases, and this program supports research on various arthropod-borne diseases, including dengue fever, Japanese encephalitis, malaria, and West Nile virus. The Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation also established the Malaria Vaccine Initiative (MVI) in 1999, with the goal of developing a vaccine for malaria and making it available in developing countries, including Africa.

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

Based on data collected for a study on ectoparasitism and vector-borne diseases, Phillipe Brouqui, Didier Raoult, Andreas Stein, and other researchers at the *Maladies Infectieuses et Tropicales* argued that "[h]omeless people are particularly exposed to ectoparasites. The living conditions and the crowded shelters provide ideal conditions for the spread of lice, fleas, ticks, and mites." The researchers also argued that "exposure to arthropod-borne diseases has not been evaluated systematically."

A medical team visited shelters in Marseilles, France, for 4 consecutive years. Homeless volunteers were examined and received care during the study.

SOURCE: *Brouqui, Phillipe, and Didier Raoult. "Arthropod-borne diseases in homeless." Ann N Y Acad Sci. (October 2006, 1078: 223-35) and Brouqui Phillipe, Andreas Stein, et al. "Ectoparasitism and vector-borne diseases in 930 homeless people from Marseilles." Medicine (Baltimore). (2005 Jan; 84(1): 61-8).*

SEE ALSO *Animal Importation; Bacterial Disease; Chagas Disease; Cholera; Contact Precautions; Demographics and Infectious Disease; Dengue and Dengue Hemorrhagic Fever; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Host and Vector; Japanese Encephalitis; Lice Infestation (Pediculosis); Rickettsial Disease; Rift Valley Fever; Malaria; Microorganisms; Mosquito-borne Diseases; Sanitation; Travel and Infectious Disease; Tropical Infectious Diseases; Vaccines and Vaccine Development; War and Infectious Disease; West Nile; Yellow Fever.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, et al. *Health Information for International Travel 2005–2006.* St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2005.

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* Vol. 2. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Periodicals

Hill, C.A., et al. "Arthropod-borne Diseases: Vector Control in the Genomics Era." *Nature Reviews Microbiology* 3 (March 2005): 262–268.

Web Sites

Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation. "Malaria Vaccine Initiative: Solving the Malaria Vaccine Puzzle." September 2005. <http://www.gatesfoundation.org/StoryGallery/GlobalHealth/SGGHMalaria MVI-011019.htm> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Dengue Fever." August 22, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/dengue/> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Infectious Disease Information: Insect- and Arthropod-related Diseases." September 8, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/diseases/insects/special_topics.htm> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "West Nile Virus." January 25, 2007. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/westnile/index.htm> (accessed January 31, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Dengue and Dengue Haemorrhagic Fever." April 2002. <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs117/en/> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Tony Hawas

Asilomar Conference

Introduction

The Asilomar Conference of 1975 was held to consider the possible biohazards of the then newly developed recombinant DNA technology. This technology involves selectively removing the genetic material (deoxyribonucleic acid or DNA) from one organism and inserting it into the DNA of a different organism. As a result of this recombination, the proteins encoded by the inserted genes are expressed in the host organism.

Following the development of recombinant DNA technology in the mid–1970s, researchers were soon able to successfully transfer DNA into target microorganisms, such as the bacterium *Escherichia coli*, thus enabling the target organism to produce the protein(s) encoded by the inserted DNA. Almost immediately, the researchers recognized the potential for the deliberate or accidental misuse of this technology to create an organism whose ability to cause disease was enhanced or even created anew.

The researchers took the extraordinary step of declaring a moratorium on recombinant DNA research until they could meet, discuss their concerns, and formulate guidelines to restore confidence in future research. The meeting took place in February 1975 in Asilomar, which is located on the northern coast of California near San Francisco.

History and Scientific Foundations

Recombinant DNA technology had its roots in the 1970 discovery by American microbiologist Hamilton Smith (1931–) of an enzyme dubbed a restriction enzyme. (In the decades that followed dozens of different restriction enzymes have been discovered.) Restriction enzymes function by recognizing a certain sequence (unique to each restriction enzyme) of nucleotides—the building blocks of DNA—and cutting the DNA at that site. The cut is made in such a way that a portion of one of the two nucleotide strands that normally intertwine to form the DNA double helix is exposed. Activity of the restriction enzyme on another segment of DNA produces an exposed portion of the opposite strand. Because the exposed nucleotides on one exposed portion can bind to the corresponding nucleotide on the other exposed strand (the exposed nucleotide sequences are described

A technician checks the quality of a sample of recombinant hepatitis B vaccine. Traditional hepatitis vaccine contains the full virus, which could potentially become active and infect patients. A recombinant vaccine only contains a viral protein, and not the whole virus, so there is no risk of the virus becoming active. *Volker Steger/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Laboratory technicians produce viral vectors for use in gene therapy. *Phanie/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

DNA: Short for deoxyribonucleic acid, a double helix shaped molecule that is found in almost all living cells and that determines the characteristics of each organism.

RECOMBINANT DNA: DNA that is cut using specific enzymes so that a gene or DNA sequence can be inserted.

RESTRICTION ENZYME: A special type of protein that can recognize and cut DNA at certain sequences of bases to help scientists separate out a specific gene. Restriction enzymes recognize certain sequences of DNA and cleave the DNA at those sites. The enzymes are used to generate fragments of DNA that can be subsequently joined together to create new stretches of DNA.

as being complimentary to each other), segments of DNA from different sources could be made to meld together.

Following the discovery of restriction enzymes, progress in recombinant DNA technology occurred with astonishing swiftness. In 1972, Paul Berg (1926–) of Stanford University reported the manufacture of recombinant DNA consisting of an oncogene from a human cancer-causing monkey virus ligated (joined) into the genetic material of the bacterial virus lambda. The following year, Stanley Cohen (1935–) and Herbert Boyer (1936–) were successful in transferring foreign DNA into *E. coli.*

The rapid developments of recombinant DNA technology, combined with Bergs' demonstration that a potentially-harmful gene could be transferred into a new organism caused great concern. The specter of the malicious design of a deadly microorganism that was capable of person-to-person transmission, and the realization that the technology had outpaced knowledge of its potential pitfalls prompted the moratorium and the Asilomar conference.

■ Impacts and Issues

In February 1975, the leaders of the international molecular biology community—then just over 100 researchers, in contrast to the hundreds of thousands of molecular biology researchers in 2007—met at the Asilomar conference center in California. The purpose of the gathering was to establish at least a minimal set of guidelines for those engaged in recombinant DNA research. Then, anyone seeking to conduct recombinant DNA research would be required to follow these guidelines (a goal since achieved).

Conference delegates considered all the equipment and laboratory facilities that would be required to perform recombinant DNA research, and the type of research that might be done, to rate the risks of the research as minimal, low, moderate, or high. As the riskiness of the research increased (e.g., the organism being used was a known pathogen), the stringency of the precautions increased. For example, a low-risk research lab would not need any special ventilation, while high-risk research would require a facility designed to contain the organism in the event of a spill or other accident.

This task was very difficult, since guidelines were being formulated to some experiments that had yet to be done. Still, some realistic guidelines emerged. For example, the scientists decided that the bacteria used in the research should be incapable of surviving outside the controlled environment of the lab. This could be achieved by, as one example, genetically crippling the bacteria so that the cells could not make some vital nutrient. As a result, bacterial survival depended on the presence of the nutrient in the artificial food source on which they were grown. In this way, the chance of spread of the recombinant bacteria to the outside world would be extremely remote.

Other risk-related guidelines included a ban on food in a laboratory; wearing of protective gear, including a lab coat, gloves, and face mask; scrupulous clean up of work areas before and after an experiment to make sure surfaces and equipment was free of bacteria; and, at the highest risk level, the design of a laboratory that was self-contained and, as a result, completely separated from the outside world.

The guidelines banned certain types of experiments, such as the use of highly pathogenic organisms or genetic material known to encode a harmful product like a toxin. Then as now, it was recognized that scientists or organizations bent on the deliberate design of harmful organisms would circumvent the guidelines. However, the vast majority of the scientific community supported and have followed the guidelines developed at the Asilomar conference.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Clark, David P. *Molecular Biology Made Simple and Fun*. 3rd ed. St. Louis: Cache River Press, 2005.

Dale, Jeremy W., and Simon F. Park. *Molecular Genetics of Bacteria*. New York: John Wiley, 2004.

Periodicals

Berg, Paul., et al. "Summary Statement of the Asilomar Conference on Recombinant DNA Molecules." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 72 (1975): 1981–1984.

Frederickson, Donald S. "The First Twenty-Five Years After Asilomar." *Perspectives in Biology and Medicine* 44 (2001): 170–182.

Brian Hoyle

RECOMBINANT FIRSTS

In 1972, Paul Berg of Stanford University was the first to create a recombinant DNA molecule. Berg isolated a gene from a human cancer-causing monkey virus, and then ligated (joined) the oncogene into the genome of the bacterial virus lambda. For this and subsequent recombinant DNA studies (which followed a voluntary one-year moratorium from his research while safety issues were addressed), he was awarded the 1980 Nobel Prize in chemistry.

In 1973, Stanley Cohen and Herbert Boyer created the first recombinant DNA organism, by adding recombinant plasmids to *E. coli*.

Since these firsts, advances in molecular biology techniques, in particular the development of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) techniques, make the construction of recombinant DNA swifter and easier.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD QUESTIONS

Potential applications of recombinant DNA technology include food crops engineered to produce edible vaccines. This strategy would make vaccination more readily available to children worldwide. Because of their use across many cultures and their ability to adapt to tropical and subtropical environments, bananas have been the object of considerable research effort. Transgenic bananas containing inactivated viruses that normally cause cholera, hepatitis B and diarrhea and transgenic potatoes carrying recombinant vaccines for cholera and intestinal disorders have been developed and evaluated, though their potential use remains controversial and the approach not yet fully accepted.

Aspergillosis

Introduction

Aspergillosis is a lung infection or allergic reaction that is caused by a type of fungus called *Aspergillus*. The fungus, which is found naturally on decaying organic material such as leaves, hay, and compost, can infect the lungs. Pulmonary aspergillosis can remain confined to the lungs or can spread to other parts of the body. The more widespread infection can be especially serious. It occurs most commonly in people whose immune systems are less capable of fighting off infections.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Aspergillosis is most typically caused by *Aspergillus fumigatus* or *A. flavus*. Less commonly, the infection is caused by *A. terreus*, *A. nidulans*, and *A. niger*.

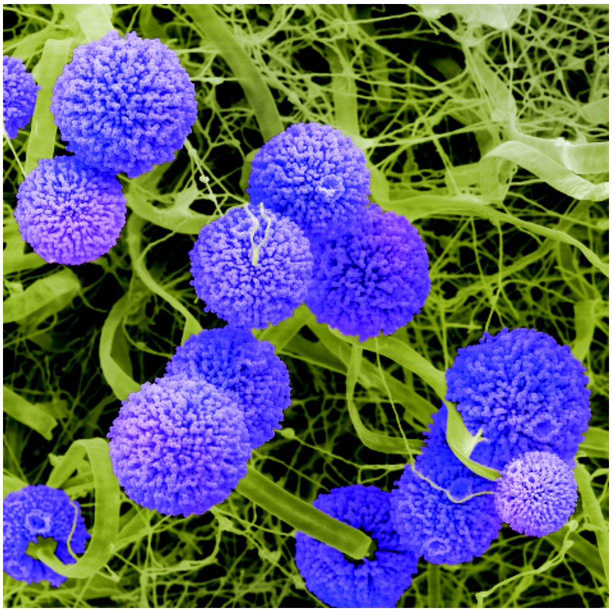
Inhalation of the spores of *Aspergillus* can lead to the growth of the fungus in the lungs. This growth can cause an allergic reaction called pulmonary aspergillosis. The infection, which can develop along with asthma, can diminish the ability of the lungs to function. Growth of the fungus also can produce a compact structure called a fungus ball. The ball tends to develop in an area of the lung that has previously been damaged by tuberculosis or some other infection that results in a localized build-up of fluid or infected material.

Pulmonary aspergillosis also can be more invasive, meaning the infection can move from the lungs to other parts of the body. This spread is promoted when the infection is less efficiently cleared due to a compromised immune system, as can occur during treatment for cancer and some other ailments, following organ transplantation to minimize rejection of the transplant, and in people with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome).

The symptoms of aspergillosis include fever, a general feeling of tiredness, cough that can be combined with expelled blood or mucous, wheeziness when breathing, loss of weight, and periodic difficulty in breathing. Additional symptoms can be present in the more invasive type of aspergillosis. These include chills, headaches, chest pain, increased amount of expelled mucous, decreased amount of urine, bloody urine, bone pain, inflammation of nerve lining in the brain or spinal cord (meningitis), sinus infection, diminished vision, and heart trouble.

Scope and Distribution

Aspergillosis is global in scope because the fungus that causes the disease is a common environmental organism. The prevalence of aspergillosis is unclear, however, it tends



This magnified image shows *Aspergillus niger,* a mold that results in allergic reactions. It produces aflatoxins and can lead to the serious lung disease aspergillosis. © *Visuals Unlimited/Corbis.*

to be more prevalent in areas where the population includes more immunosuppressed people. For example, the city of San Francisco, which has a higher proportion of people with AIDS than some other metropolitan areas, may have a rate of aspergillosis of 1–2 people per 100,000 every year, according to data from the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

Treatment and Prevention

Aspergillosis is diagnosed by the detection of the lung infection. The infection can be imaged using x-ray or a technique called computed tomography (or CT). The fungus also can be obtained from a sample of expelled mucous or sputum and grown on various food sources. The food sources can be selected to help distinguish one type of fungus from another, and so can help identify the fungus as being from the genus *Aspergillus*. In addition, the sputum can be stained and examined using a light microscope to detect fungal cells. The staining method produces a less precise result; it reveals the presence of fungi, but is not refined enough to distinguish one genus of fungus from another. However, just knowing that the infection is caused by a fungus can be enough to initiate treatment.

Aspergillosis can also be diagnosed by detecting the presence of protein components of the fungus. The proteins function as antigens and stimulate the production of specific antibodies by the immune system. *Aspergillus* antigens can be detected by a skin-based reaction, or in a test tube or well of a plastic assay dish by the formation of a cloudy precipitate that is comprised of a complex (product) formed between a specific antigen and antibody.

Treatment for aspergillosis varies depending on the nature of the infection. When the infection involves a fungal ball, treatment can be withheld if the infection is not associated with bleeding into the lung. Then surgery is performed to remove the fungal mass. Aspergillosis that has spread more widely is treated for several weeks with an antifungal agent such as amphotericin B. Treatment is usually done intravenously to maintain a constant and effective level of drug in the body. *Aspergillus*-infected heart valves are usually removed, and extended treatment with an antifungal drug follows the surgery.

People whose illness is due to an allergic reaction to *Aspergillosis* do not benefit from the use of an antifungal drug. For them, treatment with prednisone, which dampens the immune system and so reduces the allergic reaction, is the typical approach.

Treatment of aspergillosis carries a risk. Extended use of amphotericin B can harm the kidneys. Use of the drug is a balance of the benefit obtained versus the risk imposed.

Impacts and Issues

The invasive form of aspergillosis can be life threatening. The seriousness of the infection is especially pronounced in people with a malfunctioning immune system. This includes the millions of people around the world who are afflicted with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome) and are vulnerable to opportunistic infections. Aspergillosis is yet another danger that confronts someone with AIDS. The death rate from the invasive form of aspergillosis is at least 50%.

Other issues that affect aspergillosis are the lack of a rapid test for the infection, and a lack of knowledge of risk factors that might be modified so as to reduce the risk of the infection. In the United States, research is underway in these areas specifically.

In addition to humans, aspergillosis can affect other species. For example, waterfowl populations can be decimated by aspergillosis outbreaks if the birds feed on

WORDS TO KNOW

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

PULMONARY: Having to do with the lungs or respiratory system. The pulmonary circulatory system delivers deoxygenated blood from the right ventricle of the heart to the lungs, and returns oxygenated blood from the lungs to the left atrium of the heart. At its most minute level, the alveolar capillary bed, the pulmonary circulatory system is the principle point of gas exchange between blood and air that moves in and out of the lungs during respiration.

IN CONTEXT: SELECTIVE SURVEILLANCE

In the United States, there currently is no dedicated national surveillance program to track aspergillosis. However, some hospitals do monitor patients who receive transplants of stem cells and organs, because these patients are at higher risk for the infection.

decaying grain. Aspergillosis is a common and lethal infection in birds, such as parakeets and parrots.

See Also *Mycotic Disease; Nosocomial (Healthcare-Associated) Infections; Opportunistic Infection.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Black, Jacquelyn. *Microbiology: Principles and Explorations*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

DiClaudio, Dennis. *The Hypochondriac's Pocket Guide to Horrible Diseases You Probably Already Have*. New York: Bloomsbury, 2005.

Mader, Sylvia S. *Biology*. 8th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Aspergillosis." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/aspergillosis_t.htm> (accessed March 25, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Avian Influenza

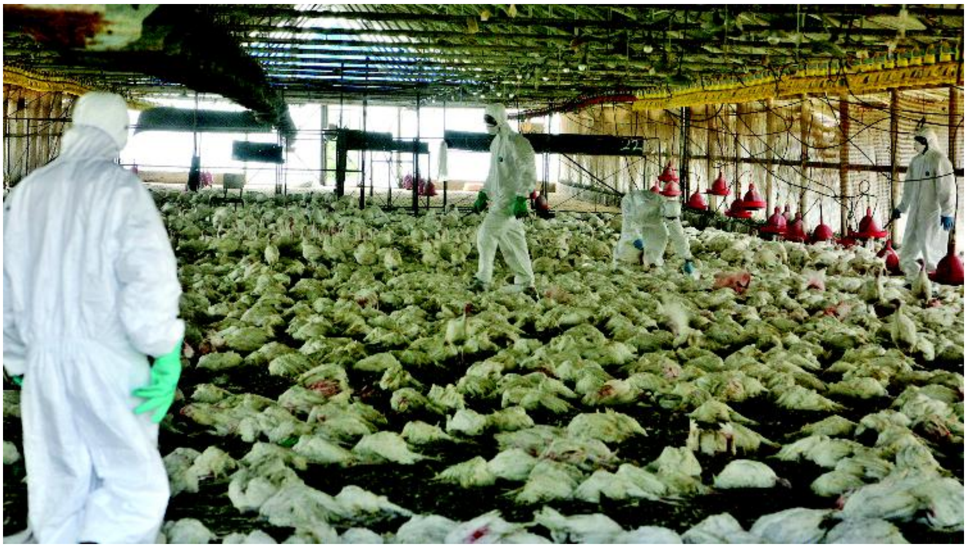
Introduction

Few phenomena in the field of infectious diseases have so captured world attention as avian (bird) influenza. From its onset in 2003, until this writing, only 310 cases were reported, resulting in 189 deaths—all limited to 12 countries. Indeed, during the same period, many times that number had died in those same countries of lightning bolts, jellyfish stings, and judicial beheadings. Not a single tourist has contracted the disease, and none of the thousands of health care workers involved in treatment and control has been infected. The few instances in which more than one family member developed avian influenza have been ascribed to common contact with infected birds, rather than human-to-human spread.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The term “avian influenza” is a misnomer, as virtually all strains (types) of the influenza virus pass through ducks or other birds before emerging into the human population. Influenza strains differ from one another according to the nature of two surface proteins:

The close proximity of animals and humans in some regions of the world facilitates passage of the influenza virus among them. For example, here a girl in China is shown herding ducks through a pig pen. *© Karen Kasmauski/Corbis.*



Workers wearing protective gear collect dead turkeys at a farm in Israel in March 2006 after poultry at several farms in the country were confirmed to have been infected with the H5N1 bird flu virus. Authorities believe Israel's migrating wild bird population poses a risk of spreading the disease, as the country is a major stopover for migrating birds to and from Eastern Europe, Central Asia, and Africa. *© Ammar Awad/Reuters/Corbis.*

hemagluttinin (H) and neuraminidase (N). There are 15 subtypes of the H antigen (a substance that induces an immune response).

The first recorded outbreak of influenza occurred in 1580, and an additional 31 pandemics (global epidemics) had been documented as of 2003. Twenty-one to 40 million deaths were estimated for the Spanish flu H1N1 pandemic of 1918–1919. The Asian flu (H2N2, 1957) and Hong Kong flu (H3N2, 1968) pandemics each resulted in one to four million deaths. Excess deaths attributable to influenza in the United States numbered 603,600 during the epidemics of 1918–1919, 1957–1958 and 1968–1969; and an additional 600,000 were estimated to have died in non-pandemic years during 1957 to 1990.

While most human infection is caused by types H1, H2 and H3, types H5 and H7 are known to be more virulent. In fact, before the current outbreak of H5N1 virus, small clusters of human infection by H7N7, H7N3, and even H5N1 had been reported on persons having close exposure to poultry in a variety of countries. Infections were generally mild, often limited to a mild cough and conjunctivitis (inflammation of the membranes of the eye). Nevertheless, prior outbreaks of H5N1 virus in Hong Kong during 1997–1998 resulted in six deaths. Antibody (a protein produced by the immune system in response to the presence of the specific H5N1 antigen) was demonstrated in 17.2 of poultry workers during the outbreak. Approximately 1.5 million chickens and other birds were slaughtered in attempts to control the virus, but the episode generated only passing interest.

H5N1 mutates rapidly and has a propensity to acquire genes from other animal species. Birds may excrete the virus from the mouth and cloaca (the excretory vent of a bird) for up to ten days. H5N1 virus was found to survive in bird feces for at least 35 days at low temperature (39.2°F, 4°C). At a much higher temperature (98.6°F, 37°C), H5N1 viruses have been shown to survive in fecal samples for 6 days.

Scope and Distribution

The current outbreak began in 2003, when one case of human H5N1 (fatal) was reported in China and 3 (fatal) in Vietnam. The following year, 17 cases (12 fatal) were reported in Thailand, and 29 (20 fatal) in Vietnam. Several asymptomatic (without symptoms) infections were subsequently reported in South Korea. In 2005, 20 cases (13 fatal) were reported in Indonesia, 5 (2 fatal) in Thailand, and 61 (19 fatal) in Vietnam. By the end of 2006, cases were being reported in Azerbaijan, Cambodia, China, Indonesia, Iraq, Turkey, and Africa (Djibouti and Egypt). As of 2007, the list of infected countries has expanded to include Laos and Nigeria.

In addition to human cases, numerous outbreaks limited to wild and domestic birds have been reported in Afghanistan, Albania, Austria, Azerbaijan, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Burkina Faso, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, France, Georgia, Germany, Ghana, Greece, Hungary, India, Iran, Israel, Italy, Ivory Coast, Jordan, Kazakhstan, Kuwait, Malaysia, Mongolia, Myanmar, Netherlands, Niger, Nigeria, Pakistan, Poland, Philippines, Romania, Russian Federation, Saudi Arabia, Scotland, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sudan, Sweden, Switzerland, Ukraine, and the United Kingdom. In other words, the principal mode of spread among countries is in the intestines of migrating wild birds—and not in the potential human airplane passenger.

Perhaps more significantly, H5N1 infection has already appeared in a number of non-avian hosts, including pigs, tigers, leopards, dogs, civet cats and domestic cats, Cynomolgus macques, ferrets, New Zealand white rabbits, leopards, rats, mink, and stone marten. Indeed, infected blow flies (*Calliphora nigribarbis*) have been identified in the vicinity of poultry infected with H5N1 influenza virus in Japan.

A few words concerning the disease itself. Avian influenza is characterized by fever greater than 100.4°F (38°C), shortness of breath, and cough. The incubation period is two to four days. Some persons have reported sore throat, conjunctivitis, muscle pain, rash, and runny nose. Watery diarrhea or loose stools is noted in approximately 50% of the cases, a symptom that is uncommon in the more familiar forms of influenza. All patients reported to date have presented with significant lymphopenia (diminished concentration of lymphocytes, white blood cells, in the blood) and marked chest x-ray abnormalities consisting of diffuse, multifocal or patchy infiltrates (areas of inflammatory cells, foreign organisms, and cellular debris, often indicating pneumonia). Physical examination reveals the patient to be short of breath, with signs of lung inflammation. Myocardial (heart muscle) and hepatic (liver) dysfunction are also reported. Approximately 60% of patients have died, on an average of 10 days after the onset of symptoms.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis depends on demonstration of the virus or serum antibody toward the virus in specialized laboratories. Because of intense media reporting (and misinformation) a given patient may be reported repeatedly; or a case of unrelated respiratory infection may be reported as "avian influenza." Thus, only reports issued by qualified centralized laboratories should be considered valid. As of 2007, only four anti-viral agents have been used for the treatment of influenza: Amantadine, Rimantadine, Oseltamivir, and Zanamivir. Although some success has been claimed in the use of Oseltamivir for the treatment of Avian Influenza H5N1, a large controlled clinical trial is not feasible. Vaccines against this strain are under development.

Impacts and Issues

So why has this text devoted precious space to a low incidence, non-contagious disease that primarily affects peripheral Asian communities? The answer might be summed up in three words: potential for spread. We all suffer attacks of influenza, most of us repeatedly throughout our lives. Influenza is one of the most contagious of human diseases, and while rarely fatal, impacts on all of us in terms of numbers incapacitated and requiring medical care. The new avian influenza strain,

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ANTIGEN: Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

CLOACA: The cavity into which the intestinal, genital, and urinary tracts open in vertebrates such as fish, reptiles, birds, and some primitive mammals.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

A person with the avian flu breathes with the help of a respirator in a Hanoi, Vietnam, hospital in November 2005. The mortality rate of those contracting H5N1 influenza during the first outbreak in Vietnam in early 2004 approached 100 percent. This occurred because few respirators were available; diagnostic testing was inadequate and slow; and a lack of personnel meant that family members often fed and cared for patients themselves. *© Dung Vo Trung/dung vo trung/politika/Corbis.*

while limited in time and place, is a very severe disease. The chance of dying of the better-known common strains is lower than one tenth of one percent; but the case-fatality rate for avian influenza is 61%. Thus, the fear of all those who deal with this outbreak is that the virus will one day revert to a contagious form, while retaining its high virulence ability to cause disease. At that point, we could be dealing with millions of cases . . . of a disease that carries a 61% mortality.

Another disturbing feature of the current outbreak is the age of infected persons. The common epidemic forms of influenza to date have had greatest impact among the elderly, with most deaths occurring in persons over age 65 with underlying heart or lung disease. Ninety percent of patients with the new H5N1 Avian influenza virus have been below age 40, with many deaths reported in children.

Primary source connection

The World Health Organization (WHO) publishes *Disease Outbreak News* reports to provide timely outbreak information and foster communication among various national and international public health organizations. As an example, the following report outlines WHO recommendations for combating the threat of pandemic Highly Pathogenic Avian Influenza H5N1.

Avian Influenza—Necessary precautions to prevent human infection of H5N1, need for virus sharing

WHO continues to be concerned by the simultaneous outbreaks of Highly Pathogenic Avian Influenza H5N1 in several Asian countries.

While these outbreaks thus far remain restricted to poultry populations, they nevertheless increase the chances of virus transmission and human infection of the disease, as well as the possible emergence of a new influenza virus strain capable of sparking a global pandemic.

In this context, WHO re-emphasizes the necessity of protecting individuals involved in the culling of H5N1-infected poultry. Workers who might be exposed to H5N1-infected poultry should have proper personal protective equipment (i.e. protective clothing, masks and goggles) since there is a high risk of exposure during the slaughtering process.

In addition to the use of personal protective equipment, WHO is recommending:

- To avoid the co-infection of avian and human influenza, which could allow for the emergence of a pandemic influenza virus, all persons involved in mass culling operations, transportation and burial/

incineration of carcasses should be vaccinated with the current WHO-recommended influenza vaccine.

- All persons exposed to infected poultry or to farms under suspicion should be under close monitoring by local health authorities. National authorities should also increase their surveillance of any reported clusters of influenza or influenza-like illness.
- Antiviral treatment should be available on an ongoing basis for treatment of a suspected human infection with a Highly Pathogenic Avian Influenza virus. If antivirals are available in sufficient quantities, prophylactic use should be considered.

Please see the full list of WHO's interim recommendations for the protection of persons involved in the mass slaughter of animals potentially infected with Highly Pathogenic Avian Influenza viruses.

WHO is also urging countries to work on standardized procedures for immediate sharing of all avian influenza virus strains responsible for outbreaks with WHO's international network of laboratories.

WHO is depending on the continued collaboration of the national health and agricultural services to establish routine procedures for immediate sharing of avian influenza virus samples. Without such virus samples, WHO will not be in a position to provide proper vaccine prototype strains and related guidance for vaccine producers.

World Health Organization

WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION, EPIDEMIC AND PANDEMIC ALERT AND RESPONSE (EPR). "AVIAN INFLUENZA—NECESSARY PRECAUTIONS TO PREVENT HUMAN INFECTION OF H5N1, NEED FOR VIRUS SHARING." *DISEASE OUTBREAK NEWS.* JULY 16, 2004.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

With regard to human transmission, as of May 2007, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) reports stated: "While there has been some human-to-human spread of H5N1, it has been limited, inefficient and unsustained. For example, in 2004 in Thailand, probable human-to-human spread in a family resulting from prolonged and very close contact between an ill child and her mother was reported. Most recently, in June 2006, World Health Organization (WHO) reported evidence of human-to-human spread in Indonesia. In this situation, 8 people in one family were infected. The first family member is thought to have become ill through contact with infected poultry. This person then infected six family members. One of those six people (a child) then infected another family member (his father). No further spread outside of the exposed family was documented or suspected. Nonetheless, because all influenza viruses have the ability to change, scientists are concerned that H5N1 virus one day could be able to infect humans and spread easily from one person to another. Because these viruses do not commonly infect humans, there is little or no immune protection against them in the human population. If H5N1 virus were to gain the capacity to spread easily from person to person, an influenza pandemic (worldwide outbreak of disease) could begin."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*

SEE ALSO *Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Emerging Infectious Diseases; H5N1; Influenza; Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation; Influenza Pandemic of 1918; Notifiable Diseases; Pandemic Preparedness; Vaccines and Vaccine Development.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bethe, Marilyn R. *Global Spread of the Avian Flu: Issues And Actions.* Hauppauge, NY: Nova Science, 2007.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services *2006 Guide to Surviving Bird Flu: Common Sense Strategies and Preparedness Plans—Avian Flu and H5N1 Threat.* Progressive Management, 2006.

Periodicals

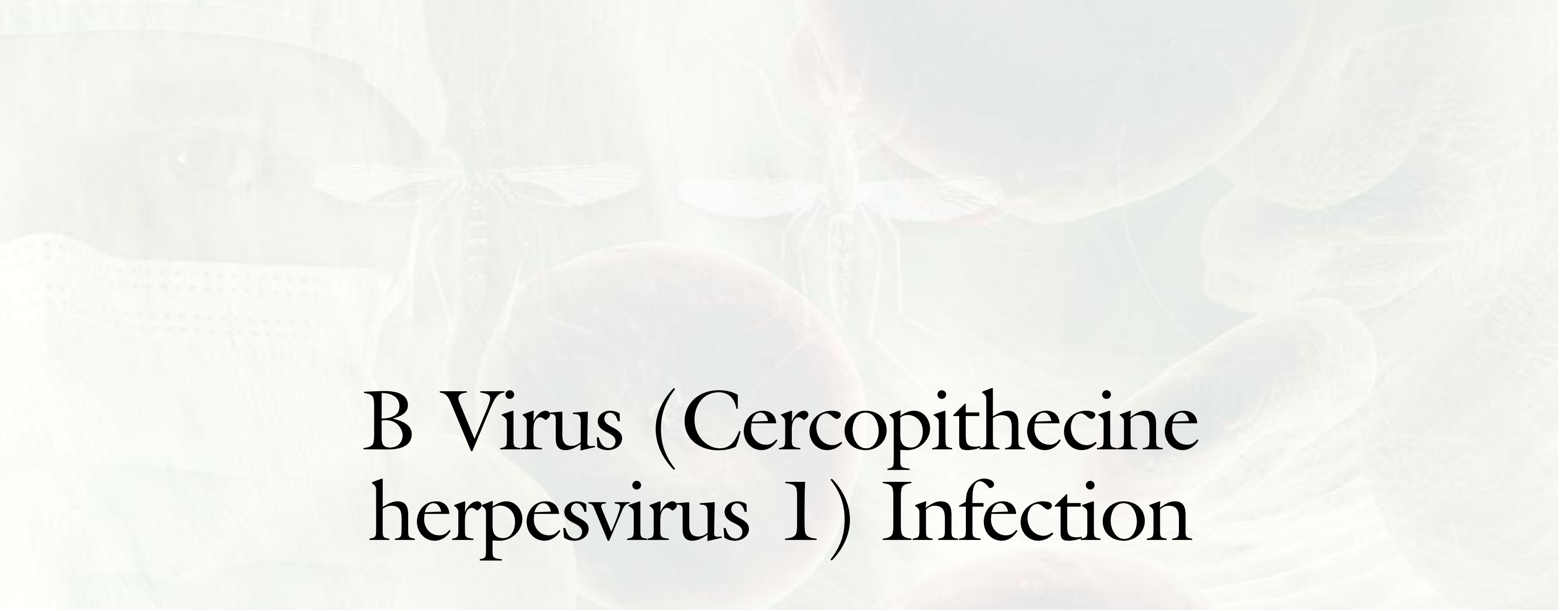
Webster, R.G. and E.J. Walker. "The World is Teetering on the Edge of a Pandemic that Could Kill a Large Fraction of the Human Population." *American Scientist* 91 (2003): 122.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Avian Influenza (Bird Flu)." <http://www.cdc.gov/flu/avian/> (accessed May 10, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Avian Influenza." <http: http://www.who.int/csr/disease/avian_influenza/en/index.html> (accessed May 10, 2007).

Stephen A.Berger



B Virus (Cercopithecine herpesvirus 1) Infection

Introduction

B virus, also called Cercopithecine herpesvirus 1, is an infectious virus found in macaques (short-tailed monkeys), such as rhesus macaques, pig-tailed macaques, stump-tailed macaques, and cynomolgus monkeys. The virus—which is a member of the herpes group of viruses—possesses origins and causes disease similar to that of the herpes simplex virus in humans. When humans are infected with B virus from macaques, they can become ill with severe and sometimes permanent central nervous system (CNS) involvement or death from encephalomyelitis (inflammation of the brain).

The National Center for Infectious Diseases (NCID), of the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), states that the mortality rate for undiagnosed/untreated B virus disease is historically almost 80%, mostly from complications of the disease. However, since antiviral therapy has become a treatment for B virus, the mortality rate has decreased.

B virus is also called herpes B virus, herpesvirus simiae, and monkey B virus. The last known fatality from B virus in the United States occurred in 1997 at the Yerkes National Primate Research Center, located at Emory University in Atlanta, Georgia. Biological material from a monkey infected the eye of a worker and, eventually, the infection killed the worker.

Because of this incident, the CDC formed a working group to devise recommendations for the evaluation, prevention, and treatment of B virus in humans. The group's report is called "Recommendations for Prevention of and Therapy for Exposure to B Virus (*Cercopithecine Herpesvirus* 1)." It was published in 2002 in the journal *Clinical Infectious Diseases.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The first medically documented case of human B virus infection occurred in 1932 when a researcher's hand was bitten by a rhesus macaque. The worker died two weeks later of encephalomyelitis.

Macaques are primates in the family Cercopithecidae (commonly called Old World monkeys), subfamily Cercopithecinae, and genus *Macaca*. The scientific name of the rhesus macaque is *Macaca mulatta*, the southern pig-tailed macaque is called *M. nemestrina*, the northern pig-tailed macaque is called *M. leonina*, the stump-tailed macaque (or bear macaque) is called *M. arctoides*, and the cynomolgus monkey (or crab-eating macaque) is called *M. fascicularis.*

Macaque monkeys infected with B virus usually become infected when oral or genital secretions from other monkeys contact their mucous membranes or skin. Infected monkeys usually have few or no symptoms. When symptoms are present, they usually consist of lesions on the face, genitals, lips, or mouth. Normally, the lesions heal themselves, however, they may re-appear repeatedly, especially during extended periods of stress or anxiety. This condition is called gingivostomatitis, which is a type of stomatitis, an inflammation of the mucous lining within the mouth (specifically on the tongue, lips, or gums). When the inflammation involves the gums (gingiva), it is called gingivostomatitis.

B virus infection in humans is rare. When it does occur, B virus usually comes from cells and tissues (such as in cultures) of monkeys, and less frequently from these animals' secretions (such as saliva), bites, or scratches. The incubation period is generally between two days and five weeks, although most symptoms appear in five days to three weeks. Symptoms usually limit themselves to the infected areas. They may include itching, numbness, skin lesions, and pain. However, some patients develop serious symptoms in the peripheral nervous system (PNS) or central nervous system (CNS). Some symptoms can initially include dizziness, headache, nausea, vomiting, and, later, seizures, respiratory failure, and coma.

Other patients have influenzalike (flulike) symptoms such as chills, fever, and muscle pain. Additional symptoms include itching, weakness, general pain, tingling, or numbness at the infection site. Often humans come down with acute encephalomyelitis (inflammation of the brain and spinal cord), which causes the death. Groups of people most at risk from B virus include laboratory workers, veterinarians, and other similar groups who have close contact with macaques or their cell cultures.

Scope and Distribution

B virus is found worldwide, but it is more likely to be found in areas inhabited by Asiatic monkeys of the genus *Macaca* or at locations where they are kept in captivity.

Treatment and Prevention

To prevent the transmission of the disease, protective equipment is recommended when working with macaque monkeys, especially virus-positive animals. Protective equipment includes eyewear (such as goggles or glasses with side shields), disposable head coverings, face shields (such as a welder's mask), gloves, disposable shoe covers, and disposable surgical scrubs or fluid-resistant cloth uniforms.

As recommended by the B Virus Working Group, which is headed by Jeffrey I. Cohen (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland), bites, scratches, and any exposures to mucous membranes, including the eyes, must be cleansed immediately. Culture samples from the macaque and human should be sent for B virus diagnostic testing.

Specifically, the minutes after exposure are critical. The skin or mucosa affected by bites, scratches, or monkey fluids should be cleansed for a minimum of 15 minutes. If the eyes are contaminated, they should be irrigated with sterile saline solution or water for 15 minutes. Exposed skin should be washed with a chemical antiseptic (such as chlorhexidine or povidoneiodine) or detergent soap. After cleansing, wounds should be lightly massaged to increase the effectiveness of the cleaning agent. As soon as possible, antiviral medicine should be started in order to prevent severe disease or death from B virus.

Impacts and Issues

According to the CDC, workers who handle monkeys directly or handle cultures, bones, and other objects that originate from monkeys are potentially at risk for contracting B virus. Since this work is potentially hazardous, the CDC has written a set of guidelines for the care and maintenance of macaques titled "Guidelines for Prevention of Herpesvirus Simiae (B Virus) Infection in Monkey Handlers."

Although thousands of humans have handled macaques since B virus was first reported, only about 40 cases of human infection have been well-documented as of 2003. Even though only a few cases have been reported, CDC health officials feel that precautions should be instituted to minimize health risks to monkey handlers since B virus is potentially deadly.

An effective vaccine for B virus, even after years of research, is still unavailable. Since the potential for human death from the B virus infection is high, and the handling and exposure to macaques is rising with increased use of the animals in laboratory settings, a better understanding of the infection is necessary. The mechanism by which the B virus lives within the macaque host is still unclear, and further research is needed to gain the knowledge necessary to combat this virus.

WORDS TO KNOW

ENCEPHALOMYELITIS: Simultaneous inflammation of the brain and spinal cord is encephalomyelitis.

HERPESVIRUS: Herpesvirus is a family of viruses, many of which cause disease in humans. The *herpes simplex*-1 and *herpes simplex*-2 viruses cause infection in the mouth or on the genitals. Other common types of herpesvirus include chicken pox, Epstien-Barr virus, and cytomegalovirus. Herpesvirus is notable for its ability to remain latent, or inactive, in nerve cells near the area of infection, and to reactivate long after the initial infection. *Herpes simplex*-1 and -2, along with chickenpox, cause familiar skin sores. Epstein-Barr virus causes mononucleosis. Cytomegalovirus also causes a flu-like infection, but it can be dangerous to the elderly, infants, and those with weakened immune systems.

MACAQUE: A macaque is any short-tailed monkey of the genus *Macaca*. Macaques, including rhesus monkeys, are often used as subjects in medical research because they are relatively affordable and resemble humans in many ways.

See Also *Antiviral Drugs; Personal Protective Equipment; Viral Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bannister, Barbara A. *Infection: Microbiology and Management.* Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing, 2006.

Cohen, Jonathan, and William G. Powderly, eds. *Infectious Diseases.* New York: Mosby, 2004.

Ryan, Kenneth J., and C. George Ray, eds. *Sherris Medical Microbiology: An Introduction to Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2004.

Periodicals

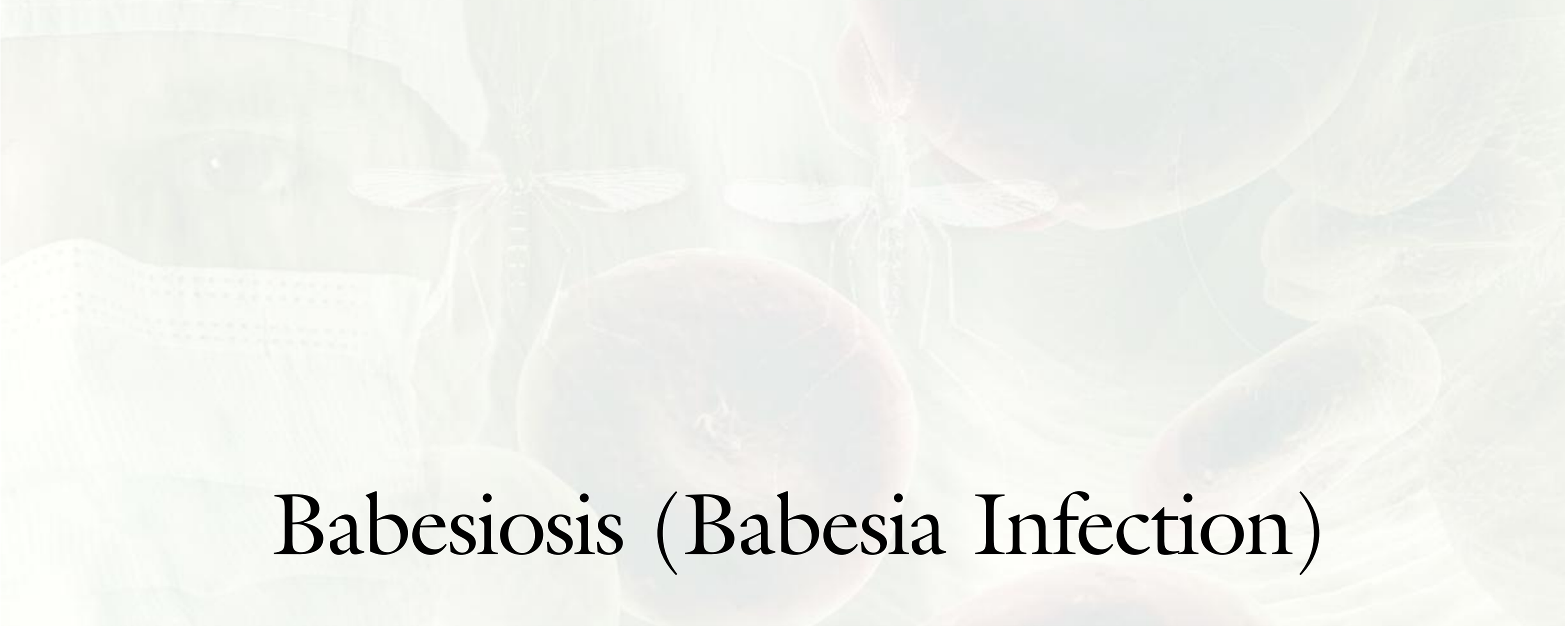
Huff, Jennifer L., and Peter A. Barry. "B-Virus (*Cercopithecine herpesvirus* 1) Infection in Humans and Macaques: Potential for Zoonotic Disease." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 9 (February 2003): 246–250. Also available online at: <http://oacu.od.nih.gov/UsefulResources/resources/emergindis2003.pdf>.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Recommendations for Prevention of and Therapy for Exposure to B Virus (*Cercopithecine Herpesvirus* 1)." November 15, 2002. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/diseases/BVIRUS.pdf> (accessed April 16, 2007).

Georgia State University. "National B Virus Resource Center." <http://www2.gsu.edu/~wwwvir/> (accessed April 17, 2007).

Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report. "Guidelines for Prevention of Herpesvirus Simiae (B Virus) Infection in Monkey Handlers." October 23, 1987. <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/00015936.htm> (accessed April 18, 2007).



Babesiosis (Babesia Infection)

Introduction

Babesiosis (bab-EE-see-OH-sis), also known as *Babesia* infection, was first reported in humans in 1957 and first appeared in the United States in 1969. Since then, there have been at least 300 cases reported in the United States. As symptoms are either mild or do not arise in people with strong immune systems, some people are unaware they are infected. The majority of reported cases occur in people with weakened immune systems.

Infection occurs when humans are bitten by ticks infected with parasites of the genus *Babesia*. When symptoms arise from infection, they usually include fever, chills, muscle aches, and fatigue. In severe cases, liver and kidney damage can occur.

Babesiosis can be treated using a combination of antibiotics and anti-parasitic medications, and can be prevented by avoiding tick bites. This is done by covering up bare skin and wearing insect repellent.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Babesiosis was first recognized in humans in 1957 after a Croatian cattle farmer contracted the disease. Prior to that case, babesiosis was thought to affect only animals. The biologist Victor Babes (1854–1926) first discovered the *Babesia* parasite in infected cattle. In 1893, Theobald Smith (1859–1934) and Frederick L. Kilbourne (1858–1936) determined that the parasite was transmitted via a tick vector, resulting in the disease babesiosis.

Babesiosis was first recorded in the United States in 1969 after an outbreak in Nantucket, Massachusetts. Since then, there have been further outbreaks throughout the U.S., mainly in the Northeast. Babesiosis outbreaks have also occurred in parts of Europe.

Babesiosis is caused by several species of parasites belonging to the genus *Babesia*. Although there are a number of species that cause the disease, the most common species that infect humans are *Babesia microti* and *B. divergens.* The parasite is transmitted from an infected animal to humans by ticks. The ticks feed off infected animals and ingest the parasite. When a tick bites a human, it transmits the parasite. The parasite then attacks

A female black-legged tick (*Ixodes scapularis*), formerly known as the deer tick (*Ixodes dammini*), is shown on a fingertip. These arthropods transmit diseases such as babesiosis and Lyme disease. *Scott Camazine/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASE: New infectious diseases such as SARS and West Nile virus, as well as previously known diseases such as malaria, tuberculosis, and bacterial pneumonias that are appearing in forms that are resistant to drug treatments, are termed emerging infectious diseases.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

the host's red blood cells, which results in infection. The parasite remains in the bloodstream and can be transmitted to other humans by blood transfusions.

Symptoms of babesiosis include fever, chills, sweating, muscle aches, fatigue, an enlarged spleen, and hemolytic anemia. These symptoms may appear one to eight weeks after infection, and in some cases, an individual may not show symptoms for months or even years.

Scope and Distribution

Babesiosis occurs worldwide, although it is predominantly reported in the United States. The prevalence of this disease is unknown in malaria-endemic countries, since the *Babesia* parasite may be misidentified as *Plasmodium*, the parasite that causes malaria.

In the United States, the coastal areas of the Northeast, such as New York and Massachusetts, are the areas where babesiosis usually occurs. The parasite *B. microti* has been identified as the primary causal agent in these areas, although other species have been reported to cause infections in Washington, California, and Missouri. In Europe, the parasite *B. divergens* has been found to cause infection.

The majority of babesiosis cases involve people with weak immune systems, such as the elderly, very young children, people with immunodeficiencies, and people whose spleens have been removed. Severe complications such as low blood pressure, liver problems, anemia, and kidney failure may occur with this disease. Most people exhibit mild symptoms or show no symptoms at all. Symptoms often go unnoticed so that people are unaware they are infected.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of babesiosis usually requires removal of the parasites with anti-parasite medications in conjunction with antibiotic therapy. Two treatments are available. The first uses the drugs clindamycin and quinine, but these drugs sometimes are not well tolerated by patients. Another treatment uses the drugs atovaquone and azithromycin. Both treatments have been found to be equally effective. In some cases, no treatment is necessary for the infection to resolve.

No vaccine is available to protect humans from babesiosis. Avoiding contact with ticks is the most important way to keep from getting the disease. A variety of measures to avoid tick exposure can be used, including wearing protective clothing (such as long-sleeved shirts and long pants) and using insect repellents to discourage or kill ticks. If a tick has attached to a person's body, quick removal of the tick may prevent infection. Therefore, a thorough body check for ticks and the quick removal of any ticks discovered is a wise prevention strategy after any outdoor activity in a tick-infested area.

Impacts and Issues

Most known cases of babesiosis occur in the United States. However, it is likely that cases in malaria-endemic countries are not being identified due to similarities between the parasites causing each infection. Therefore, the distribution of this disease, and thus its impacts worldwide, may be understated.

In the United States, babesiosis is most common in the northeastern coastal states, including Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New York. The disease is considered endemic in parts of these states. Babesiosis has also been reported in New Jersey, California, Georgia, Washington, and Minnesota. The increasing number of cases and increasing area of incidence indicates that babesiosis is an emerging disease.

The most common explanation for the increasing occurrence of babesiosis is an increase in the number of hosts for the parasite. The *Babesia* parasites reproduce in mice and other rodents, with the parasites being introduced into the mice while the tick feeds. While deer are not sites for parasite reproduction, they are a host for adult ticks. As a result, they have an indirect influence on the *Babesia* life cycle, since they ensure tick survival. Increased deer populations result in increased populations of ticks. This causes a higher likelihood that the parasite will be transmitted and a higher likelihood of human infection. In recent years, the size of deer populations in the United States has increased significantly, and this is thought to partially account for the increased incidence of babesiosis.

See Also *Arthropod-borne Disease; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Host and Vector; Immune Response to Infection; Immune System; Parasitic Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* Vol. 2. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Periodicals

Herwaldt, B.L., et al. "Endemic Babesiosis in Another Eastern State: New Jersey." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 9 (February 2003): 184–188.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Babesiosis." October 9, 2002. <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Babesiosis.htm> (accessed February 1, 2007).

New York Department of Health. "Babesiosis." June 2004. <http://www.health.state.ny.us/diseases/communicable/babesiosis/fact_sheet.htm> (accessed February 1, 2007).

Stanford University. "History [of Babesiosis]." May 24, 2006. <http://www.stanford.edu/class/humbio103/ParaSites2006/Babesiosis/history.html> (accessed February 1, 2007).

Bacterial Disease

Introduction

Bacterial diseases refer to a large variety of diseases caused by bacteria or bacterial components that affect humans, domesticated animals, wildlife, fish, and birds. Most of these diseases are contagious—that is, they can be passed from one member of a species to another member, or, in a smaller number of instances, from one species to a different species. Depending on the organism, bacterial disease can be spread in different ways. Examples include contaminated food or water, air currents, infection of an environment that is not normally inhabited by the particular bacterium, and the possession or release of toxins by the bacteria.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The history and characteristics of bacterial diseases are as varied as the diseases caused. *Bacillus anthracis*, the cause of anthrax, and *Yersinia pestis*, the cause of plague, have been present for millennia. Indeed, references to these diseases can be found in chapters of the Old Testament. Other bacterial infections have arisen only very recently. One example is the severe diarrheal and potentially kidney-destroying infection caused by the consumption of water or food that is contaminated by *Escherichia coli* strain O157:H7. The effects of O157:H7 are due to a cell-damaging toxin that can be released by the bacteria. Scientists who have studied this bacterium argue that this strain arose in the 1970s when *E. coli* residing in the intestinal tract (their normal environment) acquired genetic material that coded for the production of a destructive toxin from a related bacteria, *Shigella*.

Some bacterial diseases depend on the number of infecting bacteria present, and so are related to the growth of the bacteria. One example is the intestinal upset, diarrhea, and vomiting that results from the growth of *Campylobacter* following the ingestion of contaminated food or water. Poultry is a particularly important source of this infection, since the bacterium is a normal inhabitant of the intestinal tract of poultry. Release of intestinal contents during slaughter contaminates over 50% of the poultry sold each year in the United States, according to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. The symptoms of *Campylobacter* can take a few days to develop, since the bacteria need time to reach sufficient numbers in the intestinal tract.

Other bacterial infections, particularly those involving toxins, require the presence of only a few bacteria, and growth of the bacteria is not necessary to produce the disease.

Bacterial diseases also vary in their methods of establishing infection. Some bacteria readily cause infections, since they are contagious—they can be easily passed from person-to-person, or can be easily spread to humans via a vector (another organism that transmits the bacteria from their normal host to a susceptible recipient). An example of a contagious bacterial disease is plague, which is caused by *Yesinia pestis*, and which is passed to people via the bite of an infected flea. Throughout history, plague has claimed millions of lives. In contrast, other bacteria cause infections opportunistically—that is, they are not normally infectious but can cause disease under certain circumstances. An example is *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, a bacterium normally found in soil which is normally of little consequence to humans. However, in burn victims, the organism can infect the damaged skin. In addition, people who have cystic fibrosis and whose lungs can contain deposits of a thick mucus can be susceptible to recurring *P. aeruginosa* infections that can progressively compromise lung function.

Another means by which a few types of bacteria are able to cause infection is via their production of an environmentally hardy structure known as a spore. Similar to plant spores, bacterial spores are designed to help a bacterium survive tough environmental challenges, which can include temperatures that are too high or low for growth and lack of moisture. In a more hospitable

A medical doctor (above left), gives information about leptospirosis, a waterborne bacterial disease, to the residents of a village near Georgetown, Guyana, in 2005. After floods struck in January of that year, more than 20 people died from leptospirosis. *AP Images.*

environment, the spore can germinate and bacterial growth and division will resume. Bacteria in the genus *Bacillus* can form spores and, when they germinate, cause disease. A well known example is *B. anthracis*, which causes anthrax. Inhalation of only about 10 spores can be sufficient to cause pulmonary anthrax.

Scope and Distribution

Bacterial disease occurs virtually worldwide, with the exceptions of the far North and Antarctica and at very high altitudes. Even temperate waters can harbor disease-causing (pathogenic) bacteria, such as *Vibrio cholerae*, the cause of cholera.

Treatment and Prevention

Antibiotics are the standard treatment for bacterial infections caused by organisms sensitive to their actions. The type of antibiotic and the concentration required to kill the target bacteria depend on the organism. Frequently, bacteria develop resistance to a variety of antibiotics. Vaccines continue to be a valuable means of preventing bacterial diseases, such as diphtheria, meningococcal disease, and pertussis (whooping cough).

Bacterial diseases can be prevented in a variety of ways. Avoiding the source of the organism (for example, not drinking contaminated water), practicing good hygiene, such as regular handwashing with an antibacterial soap, and maintaining a balanced and healthy diet to keep the body's immune system efficient, are a few examples of good preventive measures.

Impacts and Issues

Bacterial diseases have been responsible for countless millions of deaths and continue to be a significant problem. Only a few decades ago, it was thought that many bacterial infections had been brought under control with the discovery or synthesis of a variety of antibiotics that were tremendously effective. However, this optimism has been short-lived. Antibiotic resistance is looming as one of the great medical challenges of the twenty-first century.

As of 2007, a number of vaccines that can be given orally are under development for several bacterial diseases. Vaccines against the intestinally damaging types of *Escherichia coli*, *Shigella*, and *Campylobacter* will hopefully lessen the occurrence of the diarrhea caused by these organisms. These and some other vaccines under development have the advantage of being stable at non-refrigeration temperatures, which would make them suitable for rural areas of underdeveloped and developing countries.

While progress is being made to lessen the occurrence of some bacterial diseases, the threat posed by the deliberate malicious use of disease-causing bacteria remains. Biological warfare has been practiced for centuries. In the twentieth century, a number of countries, including the United States, experimented with the use

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

RE-EMERGING DISEASE: Many diseases once thought to be controlled are reappearing to infect humans again. These are known as re-emerging diseases because they have not been common for a long period of time and are starting to appear again among large population groups.

SPORE: A dormant form assumed by some bacteria, such as anthrax, that enables the bacterium to survive high temperatures, dryness, and lack of nourishment for long periods of time. Under proper conditions, the spore may revert to the actively multiplying form of the bacteria.

of bacteria as a weapon. Now, this threat has moved from governments to organizations and individuals. The use of bacteria as a biological weapon has become part of the nightly news. As exemplified by the deliberate contamination of letters with *Bacillus anthracis* in Washington, D.C., in 2001, the danger posed by bioterrorism is real and difficult to prevent.

The specter of bioterrorism and the often frenzied reporting of bacterial disease outbreaks has spawned a growing apprehension in many people about diseases that are, in fact, not common. For example, the fear of the bacteria that cause necrotizing fasciitis, termed the "flesh-eating bacteria" by the media, is out of proportion to the handful of cases that occur in North America each year.

What is a more realistic concern is the emergence or re-emergence of bacterial diseases that do pose a health threat. One example is the re-emergence of tuberculosis. The emerging strains are also more antibiotic resistant than their predecessors. In developing nations, multidrug resistant tuberculosis is considered an emergency by agencies such as the World Health Organization (WHO). WHO and other agencies, including the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, have spearheaded surveillance and notification campaigns designed to detect and respond rapidly to such outbreaks.

SEE ALSO *Airborne Precautions; Antibiotic Resistance; Bioterrorism; Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Culture and Sensitivity; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Vaccines and Vaccine Development.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Brunelle, Lynn, and Barbara Ravage. *Bacteria.* Milwaukee: Gareth Stevens, 2003.

Roemmele, Jacqueline A., and Donna Batdorff. *Surviving the Flesh-eating Bacteria: Understanding, Preventing, Treating, and Living with Necrotizing Fasciitis.* New York: Avery, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases Home Page." May 12, 2006. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/index.htm> (accessed March 27, 2007).

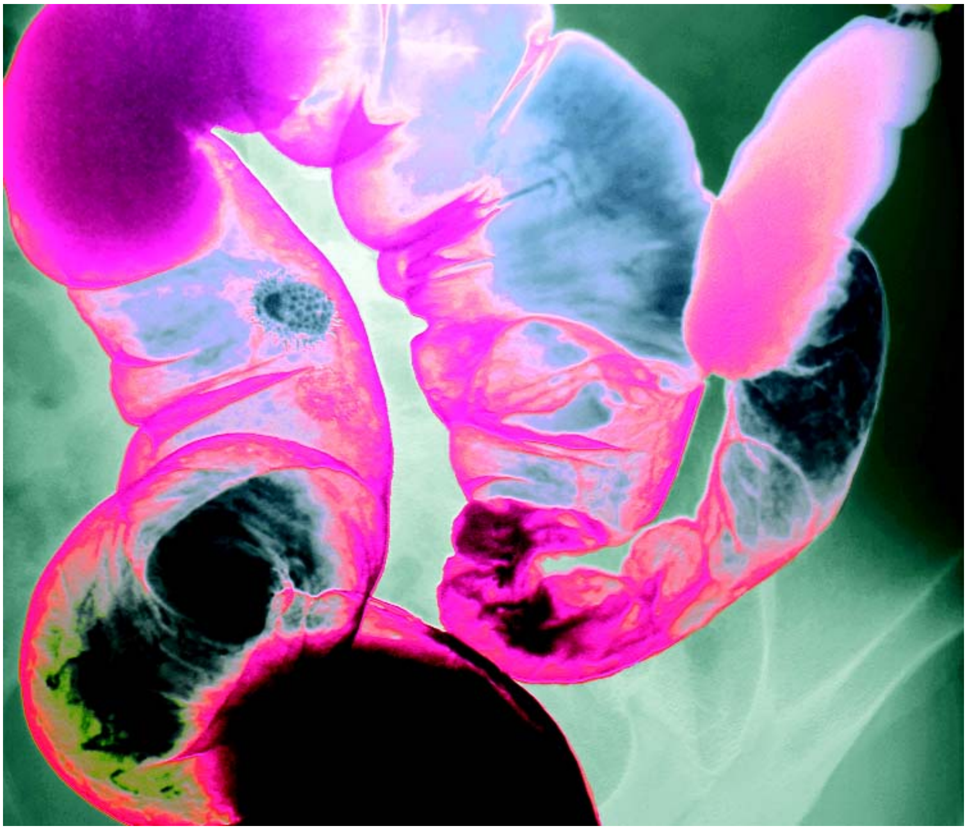
Brian Hoyle

Balantidiasis

Introduction

Ingestion of the protozoan parasite *Balantidium coli* causes balantidiasis (ba-lan-ti-DYE-a-sis) infection. This parasite is transmitted from animal reservoirs to humans by oral contact with fecal matter. This transmission occurs when unwashed food or unclean water is ingested, or if hands are not washed after handling animals. While balantidiasis infection is rare, and most cases are asymptomatic, some cases result in diarrhea, dysentery, colitis, abdominal pain, weight loss, and fatalities. Treatment is effective and involves a short course of antibiotics, which eradicates the parasite.

Balantidiasis occurs worldwide, but is more common in areas in which humans live in close contact with livestock, and particularly in areas with poor sanitation or



A colored barium X-ray shows the large intestine of a patient with balantidiasis. The disease is caused by the parasitic protozoan *Balantidium coli*, which is shown as a grey oval (center left). *Zephyr/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

TROPHOZOITE: The amoeboid, vegetative stage of the malaria protozoa.

other health problems. Infection is best prevented by treating water, washing food and hands, and reducing contact with livestock. Improving community sanitation standards, as well as educating communities on the importance of sanitation, can also help reduce infection.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Balantidiasis is an intestinal infection caused by the parasite *Balantidium coli*. Humans are infected when they ingest *B. coli* cysts—immobile, protected forms of the parasite. Once in the body, these cysts break open and a mobile stage called a trophozoite is released. The trophozoite feeds on bacteria within the intestine, or enters the intestinal lining and secretes a tissue-destroying substance. As a result, sores (ulcers) and abscesses develop in the intestinal lining. New cysts are formed by the trophozoites and are excreted from the body in the feces. The cysts are well-protected and can remain outside the body under favorable conditions for many weeks.

B. coli are transmitted to humans from animal reservoirs such as livestock, rodents, and non-human primates. The most common reservoirs are pigs, which are often infected with *B. coli*, but tend to be asymptomatic. Transmission occurs when humans ingest food or water contaminated with the feces of infected animals, or when the mouth comes in contact with something contaminated with feces, such as unwashed hands.

Balantidiasis infection is uncommon in humans, and most cases are asymptomatic. However, asymptomatic humans are still capable of spreading the infection. When symptoms do appear, the most common symptoms are diarrhea, dysentery, abdominal cramps, and inflammation of the colon. In severe cases, perforation of the intestinal wall may occur, which can be fatal.

Scope and Distribution

Balantidiasis infection occurs worldwide, although it is more common in the tropics. It also is more common in regions where livestock, particularly pigs, is kept in conjunction with poor water systems and poor sanitation. Bolivia, the Philippines, and Papua New Guinea have all had outbreaks of balantidiasis, although the prevalence of the parasite *B. coli* is usually lower than 1%.

Treatment and Prevention

Medical treatment of balantidiasis is usually effective and is administered to both symptomatic and asymptomatic patients. Asymptomatic patients are treated in order to prevent them from spreading infection to others. Symptomatic patients are treated because untreated balantidiasis can become chronic and lead to dehydration, abdominal bleeding, and perforation of the intestinal wall, any of which—left untreated—can be fatal. Treatment usually involves oral administration of one of the following antibiotics: tetracycline, metronidazole, and iodoquinol. Tetracycline is the treatment of choice, but it is not recommended for pregnant women and children under the age of eight.

The most effective methods to prevent infection by *B. coli* involve improving sanitation. This includes boiling contaminated water prior to using it, washing hands after handling pigs or using the toilet, effectively washing and cooking food prior to eating, and preventing water sources from coming into contact with animal and human feces. As the most common mode of infection is from pigs to humans, reducing contact between pigs and humans will reduce infection. This can be achieved by preventing pigs from sharing human water sources, washing hands after handling pigs, and putting up barriers between pig and human living areas.

Impacts and Issues

Balantidiasis infection most commonly occurs in communities in which sanitation is poor. This situation often arises due to a lack of resources to provide adequate sanitation, as well as a lack of education about sanitary living. Infections by the parasite *B. coli* have also been found to cause more severe infection in people who are already debilitated. This may be due to malnourishment, coinciding parasitic infections, or a weakened immune system.

Efforts to improve sanitation and health in communities may lead to a reduction in the prevalence of infection. Installing hygienic measures such as potable water sources, toilets separate from living areas, and separate housing for livestock and humans will greatly reduce the likelihood of transmission of *B. coli* between animals and humans. In addition, educating people on the risks associated with poor hygiene may also help prevent transmission. Addressing other health issues within communities, such as coexisting parasitic infections and malnourishment, will help improve the overall health of the community and will aid in reducing the severity of any infections that do occur.

SEE ALSO *Dysentery; Handwashing; Parasitic Diseases; Sanitation.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

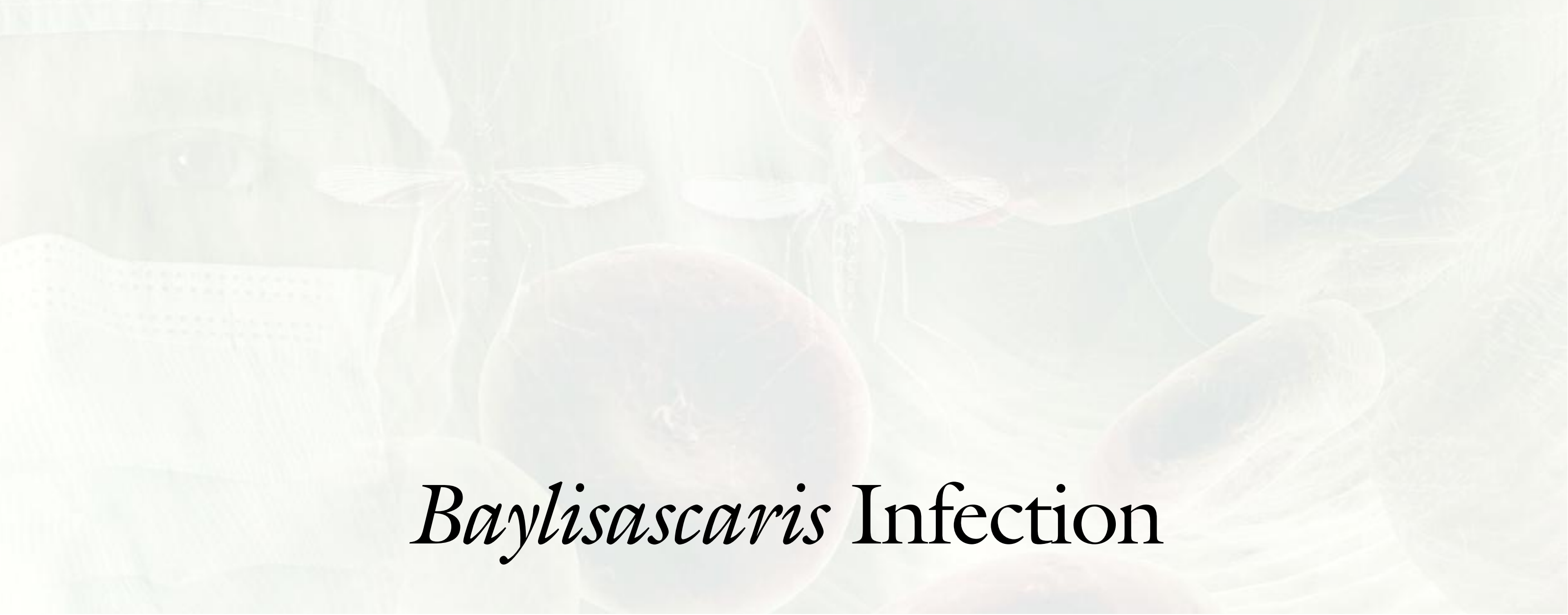
Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* Vol. 2. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Balantidiasis." May 6, 2004. <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Balantidiasis.htm> (accessed February 2, 2007).

Stanford University. "The Parasite: *Balantidium coli.* The Disease: Balantidiasis." May 23, 2003. <http://www.stanford.edu/class/humbio103/ParaSites2003/Balantidium/Balantidium_coli_ParaSite.htm> (accessed February 2, 2007).



Baylisascaris Infection

Introduction

Baylisascaris (Bay-liss-AS-kuh-ris) is an intestinal infection caused by the *Baylisascaris procyonis* larvae of roundworms that infect raccoons, their primary host. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), the infection has also been diagnosed as secondarily infecting over ninety animal species, both domesticated and wild, including birds, mice, rabbits, and humans. Initially, raccoon roundworms grow within the intestine of raccoons. Millions of microscopic-sized eggs produced by the mature worms are passed with the raccoon's feces. The raccoon is not generally affected by being infested with the worms. However, infestation inside humans can cause serious illness or death.

Generally, two to four weeks after their fecal release into the environment, the eggs are considered to be infectious to animals and humans. The group of large raccoon roundworms is a very robust species, able to survive environments such as harsh cold and hot temperatures. With enough moisture, *Baylisascaris procyonis* can survive for years.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

According to the CDC, the first U.S. fatal human case was reported in 1984 in a ten-month-old infant living in rural Pennsylvania.

Common characteristics of adult *Baylisascaris* worms include a length from 5–8 inches (13–20 centimeters) and a width of about 0.5 inch (1.3 centimeter). Colored whitish-tan, they have a cylindrically shaped body that narrows at both ends.

Human transmission occurs when infective eggs are eaten within water, soil, or on objects contaminated with raccoon feces. Upon ingestion, eggs hatch into larvae within the intestines. They travel throughout the body, often affecting the muscles and organs, especially the brain.

Symptoms generally take from two to three weeks to appear, up to a maximum of two months. Common symptoms include skin irritations, nausea, tiredness, lack of muscle control, and inability to focus. More severe symptoms include brain and eye damage, liver enlargement, loss of muscle control, blindness, and coma. Ultimately, death can occur.

Symptom severity depends on the number of eggs ingested and where the larvae spread. Estimates show that around a few thousand eggs are needed to cause infection. A few eggs cause little or no symptoms, while large numbers can cause serious problems.

Raccoons are infected in two ways. In the direct cycle, raccoons, especially young ones, ingest the *Baylisascaris* eggs while feeding and grooming. In the indirect cycle, eggs are eaten by intermediate hosts such as armadillos, birds, chipmunks, dogs, mice, rabbits, and squirrels. Within the host, the eggs hatch, and the larvae travel into the intestines, liver, and lungs and, later, into the head, neck, or chest. Adult raccoons then eat the intermediate host, and the *Baylisascaris* larvae are released and sent to the intestine to mature.

There are usually no outward symptoms visible when raccoons are infected. Symptoms can be observed, however, when intermediate hosts are infected. When in their brains, larvae can cause behavioral changes, destroy the brain, or kill the host. Early symptoms include awkwardness in walking and climbing, sight problems, and a tilting head. Later symptoms includes loss of fear of humans; activities of rolling on the ground, laying on its side, and feet paddling; and finally, a comatose state and death.

Scope and Distribution

Raccoons are commonly found throughout the United States; however the occurrence of *Baylisascaris* infection is most prevalent in the Midwestern, Northeastern, Middle Atlantic, and West Coast states. Specifically, according to the CDC Division of Parasitic Diseases, the states with the most *Baylisascaris* infections are California, Illinois, Michigan, Minnesota, New York, Oregon, and Pennsylvania.

Treatment and Prevention

Baylisascaris can infect humans when contacting animal feces and when hands are not properly washed. Careful decontamination procedures after contact can aid in prevention. Droppings—dark, tubular, and with a strong odor—may contain infectious larvae even after months. Larvae can survive severe heat and cold environments and harsh chemicals.

To disinfect contaminated areas, feces should be immediately buried, burned, or isolated at a landfill. Wearing gloves, a facemask, and protective clothing can prevent further contamination. Known infected surfaces should be cleaned with high temperatures, such as with boiling water, or treated with strong disinfectants. Feeding and interacting with stray raccoons should also be avoided.

It is difficult to diagnose *Baylisascaris* infection. Medical professionals often first eliminate other infections with similar symptoms. There are no known treatments to lessen the illness.

Currently, no definitive commercial serologic (blood) test exists to diagnose the infection. Drugs and vaccines are not available to effectively kill larvae. Laser surgery has been successful in killing larvae within the eyes. However, damage already present is likely permanent.

Impacts and Issues

Baylisascaris infection is an emerging helminthic zoonosis (increasingly seen worm infection acquired from animals), and therefore, a growing public health concern. Due to time spent outdoors, it is becoming an increasing cause of severe human disease. In addition, due to increased encroachment of humans into raccoon habitat, raccoons have increasingly more contact with humans, which exacerbates the problem.

People most likely to become infected include children and persons who spend more time outdoors than other groups and are more likely to swallow infected substances. Hikers, taxidermists, veterinarians, trappers, wildlife handlers, and other similar groups who spend large amounts of time outdoors near raccoons and their habitats are also at increased risk.

According to the CDC, exposure and infection rates are in humans likely much larger than is medically reported. Rates of infected raccoons have been widely found in the United States to be up to 70% in adults and 90% in juveniles. Many veterinarians advise against keeping raccoons as pets, due to the widespread high rate of infection of the roundworm in raccoons. One adult female worm can produce hundreds of thousands of eggs daily, and an infected raccoon can daily deposit as many as 45 million eggs.

Raccoons are among the most numerous wild animals in the U.S. Their close proximity to humans makes *Baylisascaris* infection a potentially major infectious disease. However, to date, the prevalence of infection in the U.S. population is not known and its identity as a growing public health problem is under-recognized.

Due to several factors, including the low infective dose, numerous availability of the host (raccoons), and lack of a definitive, effective treatment in human infection,

WORDS TO KNOW

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

INTERMEDIATE HOST: An organism infected by a parasite while the parasite is in a developmental form, not sexually mature.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

IN CONTEXT: HIDDEN DANGERS OF TREATING WILD ANIMAL AS "PETS"

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that to reduce risks of *Baylisascaris* infection that people should "avoid direct contact with raccoons—especially their feces. Do not keep, feed, or adopt raccoons as pets. Raccoons are wild animals."

The CDC further advises people to discourage raccoons from living in and around homes and parks by preventative measure that include:

- Keeping sand boxes covered at all times (sand boxes can become wild animal latrines).
- Keeping trash containers tightly closed.
- Clearing brush so raccoons are not likely to make a den on your property.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

Baylisascaris procyonis is also considered a potential agent of bioterrorism.

See Also *Handwashing; Host and Vector; Public Health and Infectious Disease; Roundworm* (Ascariasis) *Infection.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Samuel, William M., et al., editors. *Parasitic Diseases of Wild Mammals.* Ames, IA: Iowa State University Press, 2001.

Scheld, W. Michael, et al. *Emerging Infections.* Washington, D.C.: ASM, 2006.

Periodicals

Gompper, Matthew E. and Amber N. Wright. "Altered Prevalence of Raccoon Roundworm (*Baylisascaris procyonis*) Owing to Manipulated Contact Rates of Hosts." *Journal of Zoology.* (2005), 266: 215–219.

Sorvillo, Frank, et al. "*Baylisascaris procyonis*: An Emerging Helminthic Zoonosis." *Emerging Infectious Diseases.* (April 2002), 8, 4: 355–359.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Baylisascaris." <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Baylisascariasis.htm> (accessed March 4, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "*Baylisascaris* Infection." September 23, 2004 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/baylisascaris/factsht_baylisascaris.htm> (accessed March 4, 2007).

Bilharzia (Schistosomiasis)

Introduction

Bilharzia (bill-HAR-zi-a), or schistosomiasis (SHIS-toe-SO-my-uh-sis), is an infection that usually results in organ damage and is caused by parasitic worms of the genus *Schistosoma*. This disease is mostly restricted to developing countries in which the parasites are endemic. However, infections have been recorded in developed countries, usually due to travel, immigration, or the entrance of refugees. Schistosomiasis can be acute, in which a common symptom is a fever appearing six to eight weeks following infection and disappearing within a few months; or chronic, in which organ damage occurs as a result of the immune system attacking parasite eggs retained in the body's organs. Chronic schistosomiasis is more common and usually does not appear until months or years after infection.

Treatment of schistosomiasis is effective and safe, involving a course of oral medications. Infection can be prevented by avoiding infected water bodies and by treating water before bathing or drinking. Attempts to treat infected populations and to control infection have had positive results within the past decade.

A woman and her children wash clothes at a pond containing snails in Tanzania. The snails carry fluke worms that cause schistosomiasis. The infective larvae are released by the snails into fresh water. *Andy Crump/TDR/WHO/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

SCHISTOSOMES: Blood flukes that infect an estimated 200 million people.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Humans have suffered from schistosomiasis for thousands of years, with cases recorded in the period of the Egyptian pharaohs. However, the parasite causing this disease was not recognized until the nineteenth century. In 1851, Theodor Bilharz (1825–1862) first discovered a schistosome (a parasitic trematode worm) in infected people. Since then, a number of species of this parasite have been found to cause schistosomiasis, and their mode of infection and life cycle has been determined.

In humans, schistosomiasis is primarily caused by one of three types of *Schistosoma* parasites: *S. mansoni*, *S. haematobium*, and *S. japonicum*. There are also other, more localized species, such as *S. mekongi*, and *S. intercalatum*, which also cause human infections. While infection by these parasites usually results in some form of schistosomiasis, some species cause severe dermatitis, notably cercarial dermatitis.

There are both acute and chronic forms of this infection. Acute symptoms usually appear six to eight weeks after exposure to the parasite. The most common acute syndrome is called Katayama fever with symptoms including fever, loss of appetite, weight loss, abdominal pain, blood in the urine, weakness, headaches, joint and muscle pain, diarrhea, nausea, and cough. An initial symptom, usually occurring within days of exposure, is itchy skin. Acute symptoms usually disappear after a few weeks, although, some cases can be fatal. Chronic symptoms are more common than acute, and appear months to years after exposure. Chronic symptoms arise as a result of the body's immune system responding to the parasite's eggs. These eggs become lodged in various areas of the body depending on their species. Organ damage usually occurs as a result of the immune system responding to egg retention. The most commonly infected areas of the body are the urinary and intestinal systems, and damage to the bladder, intestines, spleen, and liver can occur. In rare cases, eggs may lodge in the spinal cord or brain, which can lead to seizures and paralysis.

Fresh water becomes contaminated with the eggs of *Schistosoma* parasite when a human who has the disease urinates or defecates in the water. The parasites hatch and are then ingested by freshwater snails, which are intermediate hosts during the parasite's life cycle. Following excretion from the snail, parasites can live in freshwater for 48 hours. During this time, they may come into contact with another human host and they can penetrate human skin within seconds. Once inside a host, the parasite develops into male and female worms that breed and lay eggs within blood vessels. While half of these eggs are excreted in urine or feces, the other half remain in the body and cause schistosomiasis symptoms. Excreted eggs hatch as soon as they enter fresh water, resulting in contamination of the water body. The cycle begins again if snails are present in the contaminated water.

Scope and Distribution

Schistosoma parasites are not found in the United States, but they are endemic to 74 developing countries. They are found in: Africa, the Caribbean, the Middle East, southern China, and Southeast Asia. Schistosomiasis is a major health risk, particularly within rural areas of Central China and Egypt. About 200 million people are estimated to be infected with *Schistosoma* parasites worldwide. While the majority of those suffering from this disease are found in countries where the parasite is endemic, some cases are found in other countries such as the United States and Great Britain as a result of travel, immigration, and entry of refugees into uninfected countries.

The majority of infected people tend to be rural agricultural workers who come into frequent contact with contaminated fresh water. In addition, a large number of children are infected. Across 54 countries, an estimated 66 million children are infected with the parasites. In one region alone, Lake Volta in Ghana, 90% of children in some villages are infected.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment for schistosomiasis is effective and safe, usually involving a one to two day course of oral medications. Depending on the type of infection, one of three drugs is usually used. Praziquantal can be used for all forms of infection; oxamiquine is exclusively used for intestinal infections in Africa and South America; and metrifonate is used to treat urinary infections. Re-infection is possible after treatment, although the risk of serious organ damage is reduced as a result of treatment.

Because schistosomiasis is caused by a freshwater-borne parasite, the most effective prevention methods involve avoiding or treating contaminated water. Since the parasite penetrates the skin within seconds, avoiding contact with any potentially contaminated water bodies, such as lakes, rivers, and dams, will prevent infection. This includes avoiding swimming, bathing, and working in these water bodies. Fresh water that has been filtered, or heated to at least 150°F (65.5°C), is suitable for bathing. Water held in storage for 48 hours is also suitable for bathing as the parasite only lives without a host for this length of time. To ensure drinking water is free of parasites, filtering or boiling for at least one minute removes or kills the parasites.

Vigorous towel drying may also prevent parasite penetration, if the body has only been briefly submerged in contaminated water. However, this method is not recommended as a reliable means of prevention.

Long-term prevention of parasite infection involves controlling the occurrence of infection. Methods of control include educating people on parasite transmission; supplying clean water to regions where the parasite is endemic; diagnosing and treating infected people; controlling freshwater snails, the parasite's intermediate host; and increasing sanitation in infected regions.

IN CONTEXT: SCHISTOSOME DISTRIBUTION

"Human contact with water is thus necessary for infection by schistosomes. Various animals, such as dogs, cats, rodents, pigs, horse and goats, serve as reservoirs for *S. japonicum*, and dogs for *S. mekongi*."

"*Schistosoma mansoni* is found in parts of South America and the Caribbean, Africa, and the Middle East; *S. haematobium* in Africa and the Middle East; and *S. japonicum* in the Far East. *Schistosoma mekongi* and *S. intercalatum* are found focally in Southeast Asia and central West Africa, respectively."

SOURCE: *The Centers for Disease Control & Prevention; National Center for Infectious Diseases. Division of Parasitic Diseases.*

Impacts and Issues

Schistosomiasis infection primarily occurs in developing countries. This is due to the fact that the parasites that cause schistosomiasis are endemic to developing countries, but the conditions of life in these regions also play an important role in the incidence and spread of the disease. Poverty; lack of awareness (both in terms of mode of infection and treatment methods); absent or inadequate of public health facilities; and unsanitary conditions all contribute to an increased risk of infection in developing countries. Furthermore, transmission of the disease to different areas is facilitated by the movement of populations and refugees. The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that schistosomiasis is the second most important tropical disease, in terms of public health, following malaria. It is estimated that 200 million people worldwide are infected with the schistosomiasis parasite, and that 20,000 deaths are associated with the severe consequences of infection. In both rural Central China and Egypt, it poses a major health risk to populations.

Schistosomiasis can result in symptomatic infections, as well as fatalities. However, the majority of infected people show no symptoms, or only mild infections. In some cases, this disease has been found to cause reduced productivity in infected adults and decreased growth and school performance in infected children. Treatment in infected regions has resulted in an increase in the health of the population, suggesting that the treatment methods are effective.

The WHO has reported dramatic improvements in certain regions as a result of an increase in treatment administration, along with increased efforts to control infection. Objectives of these infection control programs have been met within two years of implementation in some regions. However, the WHO also emphasizes the need to maintain this control for the programs to be fully effective. Schistosomiasis is also one of the infections targeted as part of the WHO's Initiative for Vaccine Research. A variety of vaccine candidates have been tested, but, so far, none have been able to provide more than a partial reduction in the worm burdens of those vaccinated relative to non-immunized controls. Hopefully, better success can be achieved using mixture of recombinant antigens. Another approach to vaccination against schistosomiasis is to reduce egg secretion by targeting the fecundity of the female worm. Some success with this approach has been reported.

Another significant impact of schistosomiasis on human health is the likely link between urinary schistosomiasis infection and bladder cancer. In a number of infected regions, a significant correlation exists between the occurrence of bladder cancer in patients also showing urinary schistosomiasis. For example, the WHO reports that in some parts of Africa, schistosomiasis-linked bladder cancer has an occurrence 32 times greater than bladder cancer in the United States.

SEE ALSO *Cancer and Infectious Disease; Economic Development and Disease; Immigration and Infectious Disease; Immune Response to Infection; Parasitic Diseases; Swimmer's Ear and Swimmer's Itch (Cercarial Dermatitis); Travel and Infectious Disease; Water-borne Disease; World Health Organization (WHO).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Arguin, P. M., P. E. Kozarsky, and A. W. Navin. *Health Information for International Travel 2005–2006.* Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Schistosomiasis." August 27, 2004. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/schistosomiasis/factsht_schistosomiasis.htm> (accessed January 30, 2007).

WebMD. "Schistosomiasis." March 31, 2005. <http://www.emedicine.com/emerg/topic857.htm> (accessed January 30, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Schistosomiasis." <http://www.who.int/vaccine_research/diseases/soa_parasitic/en/index5.html#vaccine> (accessed January 30, 2007).

Biological Weapons Convention

Introduction

The Biological Weapons Convention (also more properly, but less widely, known as the Biological and Toxin Weapons Convention) is an international agreement that prohibits the development and stockpiling of biological weapons. The language of the Biological Weapons Convention (BWC)—drafted in 1972—describes biological weapons as “repugnant to the conscience of mankind.”

History and Scientific Foundations

The BWC broadly prohibits the development of pathogens—disease-causing microorganisms, such as viruses and bacteria—and biological toxins that do not have established prophylactic merit (i.e., no ability to serve a protective immunological role), beneficial industrial use, or use in medical treatment.

The BWC prohibits the offensive weaponization of biological agents (e.g., anthrax spores). The BWC also prohibits the transformation of biological agents with established legitimate and sanctioned purposes into agents of a nature and quality that could be used to effectively induce illness or death. In addition to offensive weaponization of microorganisms and/or toxins, prohibited research procedures include concentrating a strain of bacterium or virus, altering the size of aggregations of potentially harmful biologic agents (e.g., refining anthrax spore sizes to spore sizes small enough to be effectively and widely carried in air currents), producing strains capable of withstanding normally adverse environmental conditions (e.g., disbursement weapons blast), and/or the manipulation of a number of other factors that make biologic agents effective weapons.

The United States renounced the first-use of biological weapons and restricted future weapons research programs to issues concerning defensive responses (e.g., immunization, detection, etc.), by executive order in 1969.

Applications and Research

Although the BWC disarmament provisions stipulated that biological weapons stockpiles were to have been destroyed by 1975, most Western intelligence agencies openly question whether all stockpiles have been destroyed. For example, despite the fact that it was a signatory party to the 1972 Biological and Toxin Weapons Convention, the former Soviet Union maintained a well-funded and high-intensity biological weapons program throughout the 1970s and 1980s that worked to produce and stockpile biological weapons including anthrax and smallpox agents. United States intelligence agencies openly raise doubt as to whether successor Russian biological weapons programs have been completely dismantled.

Impacts and Issues

According to the United States Bureau of Arms Control, as of May 2007, there were 147 countries that were parties to the Biological Weapons Convention. An additional 16 countries were listed as signatory countries who had signed, but not yet ratified, the BWC.

Recent United States intelligence estimates compiled from various agencies provide indications that some countries are still actively involved in the development of biological weapons. The U.S. Office of Technology Assessment and the U.S. Department of State

A U.S. Army soldier receives vaccinations to protect him against the potential biological threat of smallpox and anthrax. *AP Images.*

identify and report on states potentially developing biological weapons.

Although there have been several international meetings designed to strengthen the implementation and monitoring of BWC provisions, BWC verification procedures are currently the responsibility of an ad hoc commission of scientists. Broad international efforts to coordinate and strengthen enforcement of BWC provisions remains elusive.

WORDS TO KNOW

BACTERIUM: Singular form of the term bacteria—single-celled microorganisms—bacterium refers to an individual microorganism.

EXECUTIVE ORDER: Presidential orders that implement or interpret a federal statute, administrative policy, or treaty.

SPORE: A dormant form assumed by some bacteria, such as anthrax, that enable the bacterium to survive high temperatures, dryness, and lack of nourishment for long periods of time. Under proper conditions, the spore may revert to the actively multiplying form of the bacteria.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

WEAPONIZATION: The use of any bacterium, virus, or other disease-causing organism as a weapon of war. Among other terms, it is also called germ warfare, biological weaponry, and biological warfare.

See Also *Bioterrorism; War and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Cole, Leonard A. *The Eleventh Plague: The Politics of Biological and Chemical Warfare.* New York: WH Freeman and Company, 1996.

Periodicals

DaSilva, E., "Biological Warfare, Terrorism, and the Biological Toxin Weapons Convention." *Electronic Journal of Biotechnology.* 3(1999):1–17.

Dire, D.J., and T.W. McGovern. "CBRNE - Biological Warfare Agents." *eMedicine Journal.* 4(2002): 1–39.

IN CONTEXT: TERRORISM AND BIOLOGICAL WARFARE

The USA PATRIOT Act (commonly called the Patriot Act) is an acronym for the Uniting and Strengthening America by Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism Act of 2001. The bill was signed into law by President George W. Bush on October 26, 2001. According to the act, research facilities that handled certain chemical and biological agents were required to institute new employee screening and security procedures.

The Patriot Act was introduced to improve counterterrorism efforts by providing law enforcement with new tools to detect and prevent terrorism. Section 817 of the USA Patriot Act is titled "Expansion of the Biological Weapons Statute" and expands on chapter 10 of title 18 in the United States Code, providing new laws designed to prevent terrorist acts involving biological weapons.

The specific changes made by the Patriot Act include making it unlawful to possess biological agents, toxins, or delivery systems unless there is a reasonably justified purpose and making it unlawful for a restricted person to possess biological agents, toxins, and delivery systems that are classified as select agents.

Laboratories that operate within the United States or that are funded by the U.S. must comply with the new regulations regarding prohibiting access to selected agents by restricted persons. Each organization is required to develop its own screening or application forms to obtain the required information on persons working (or seeking work) in their laboratories in order to certify their right to access to selected agents.

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) regulates "the possession, use, and transfer of select agents and toxins that have the potential to pose a severe threat to public health and safety. The CDC Select Agent Program oversees these activities and registers all laboratories and other entities in the United States of America that possess, use, or transfer a select agent or toxin."

The U.S. Departments of Health and Human Services (HHS) and Agriculture (USDA) published final rules for the possession, use, and transfer of select agents and toxins (42 C.F.R. Part 73, 7 C.F.R. Part 331, and 9 C.F.R. Part 121) in the Federal Register on March 18, 2005.

Web Sites

United States Department of State. "Parties and Signatories of the Biological Weapons Convention." <http://www.state.gov/t/ac/bw/fs/2002/8026.htm> (May 25, 2007).

Paul Davies

Bioterrorism

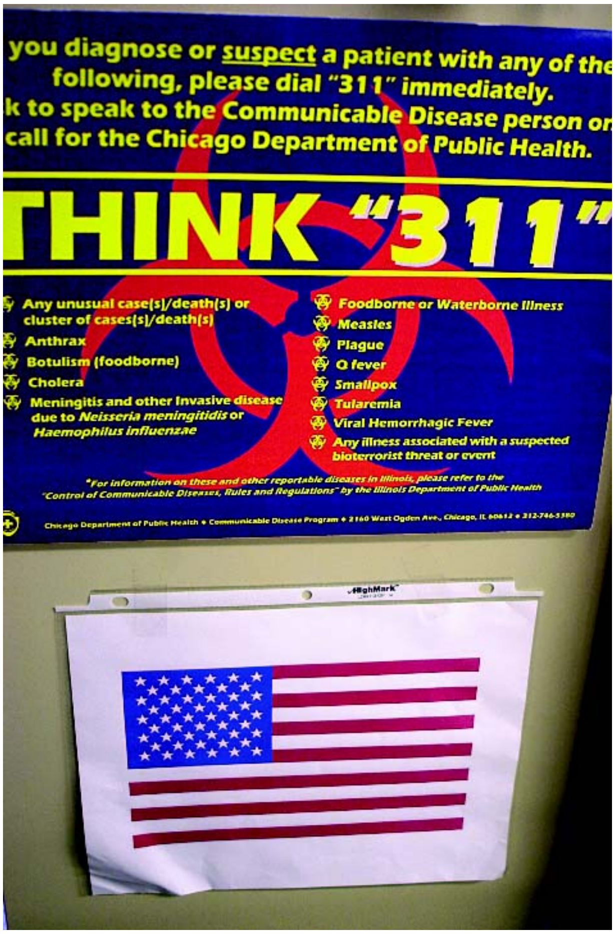
Introduction

After years of "back burner" low priority research, work on defensive measures against bioterrorism began in earnest in the United States soon after the anthrax attacks in 2001. Scientists are now developing strategies designed to protect the United States against a potentially limitless variety of biological weapons. The psychological impact of the anthrax attacks of late 2001 was enormous compared to the number of people actually killed and sickened during the episode. This is in keeping with the pattern of effective terror tactics in which expenditures of time, effort, and funds can be minimal, but impact on the target population is maximized.

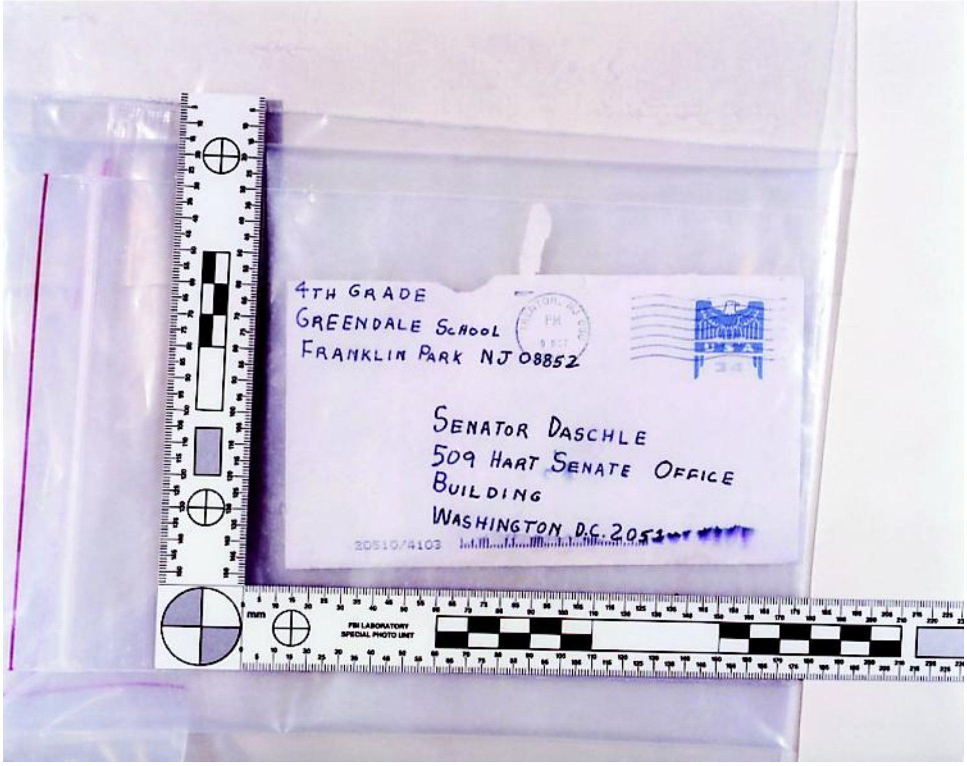
History and Scientific Foundations

Since 2001, most defensive activity against bioterrorism threats has been focused on preventing or combating known "Class A" threats, including the organisms that cause anthrax, plague, smallpox, tularemia, and viral hemorrhagic fevers, as well as botulinum toxin. Activity to develop new drugs and vaccines is budgeted under Project Bioshield, which is directed by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

Bioterrorism agents are essentially identical to biological warfare agents. Such agents may be classified operationally, as deadly or incapacitating agents, and as agents with or without the potential for secondary transmission (the ability to spread disease from one person affected by bioterrorism to another who was not exposed during the attack). Bioterrorism agents can also be classified according to their intended target, as when they are intended to sicken or kill people, animals, or vegetation such as crops; and according to type, including replicating pathogens (duplicating disease-causing organisms such as viruses, bacteria, or fungi), toxins, or biomodulators (immune system altering agents). Replicating pathogens and toxins are recognized as the greatest current threats.


you diagnose or suspect a patient with any of the
following, please dial "311" immediately.
k to speak to the Communicable Disease person or
call for the Chicago Department of Public Health.
THINK "311"
Any unusual case(s)/death(s) or cluster of cases(s)/death(s)
Anthrax
Botulism (foodborne)
Cholera
Meningitis and other Invasive disease due to Neisseria meningitidis or Haemophilus influenzae
Foodborne or Waterborne Illness
Measles
Plague
Q fever
Smallpox
Tularemia
Viral Hemorrhagic Fever
Any illness associated with a suspected bioterrorist threat or event
*For information on these and other reportable diseases in Illinois, please refer to the "Control of Communicable Diseases, Rules and Regulations" by the Illinois Department of Public Health
Chicago Department of Public Health ♦ Communicable Disease Program ♦ 2160 West Ogden Ave., Chicago, IL 60612 ♦ 312-746-5380
HighMark

Signs, such as this, were hung in emergency rooms across the United States after the anthrax attacks of 2001. They encouraged physicians to watch for infectious diseases or signs of possible intentional biological contamination. *AP Images.*


4TH GRADE
GREENDALE SCHOOL
FRANKLIN PARK NJ 08852

SENATOR DASCHLE
509 HART SENATE OFFICE
BUILDING
WASHINGTON D.C. 2051[illegible]

20510/4103

This envelope contained an anthrax-laced letter that was sent to then-Senate Majority Leader Tom Daschle in Washington, D.C., in October 2001. During the anthrax scare, two Washington, D.C., postal workers died from inhaled anthrax. Other anthrax-laden materials were sent to media centers in Florida and New York. Three others died from the disease as well. *© Reuters/Corbis.*

Applications and Research

Smallpox

Although many pathogens could be used to attack the U.S. population, only a few, including the smallpox virus, could cause illness or panic that could overwhelm existing medical and public health systems. The WHO authorizes two laboratories in the world to maintain stores of smallpox virus for research purposes, and authorities fear that additional smallpox virus may exist hidden away in laboratories other than the two WHO-designated repositories.

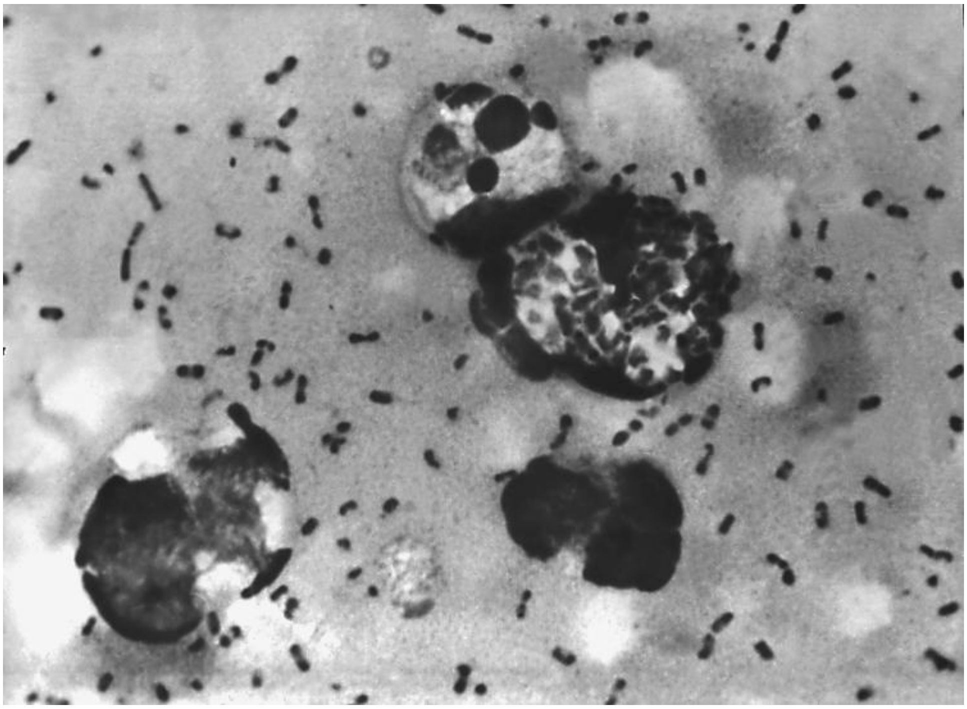
A new outbreak of smallpox could spread rapidly. The CDC strategy for controlling a new outbreak of smallpox incorporates principles that were used 30–40 years ago in eradicating the disease and have proven their effectiveness. They are based on knowledge that smallpox is mostly transmitted by close, face-to-face contact with infected individuals, while only a few cases could be transmitted by dry or aerosolized particles in close proximity to persons with the disease. New cases develop two weeks after exposure and take another two weeks to progress to pustules and scabs, giving a newly aware medical community some time to respond.

Smallpox vaccine is a live-virus vaccine composed of vaccinia virus that induces antibodies that also protect against smallpox. Smallpox vaccine production ceased in the early 1980s and current supplies of smallpox vaccine are limited. The CDC expects that new vaccines manufactured using cell cultures will be available within two to four years under the Bioshield program. Limited new supplies of the current vaccine are being manufactured under Bioshield.

After several years of considering mass vaccination as an alternative, CDC has settled on a ring vaccination strategy to combat a new smallpox outbreak. This includes isolation of confirmed and suspected smallpox cases with tracing, vaccination, and close surveillance of contacts to these cases as well as vaccination of the household contacts of the smallpox cases. Ring vaccination takes advantage of the relatively low infectivity of smallpox and focuses currently scarce vaccine resources where they will do the most good, minimizing adverse events, including rare deaths that could occur during indiscriminate mass vaccination.

Anthrax

Anthrax is an infectious disease caused by a spore-forming bacterium, the spores of which are very persistent and hard to break down in the environment, which makes anthrax a



A bubonic plague smear, prepared from an adenopathic lymph node, or bubo, of a plague patient, shows the presence of the *Yersinia pestis* bacteria that causes the plague. The disease, considered a likely bioterrorist agent since it isn't difficult to make, is easily treatable with antibiotics if diagnosed early and properly. *Getty Images.*

persistent public health threat in spite of available treatment with familiar drugs.

There are three forms of anthrax infection: skin, gastrointestinal, and inhalational anthrax. Inhalational anthrax, with the highest death rates, occurs when spores are inhaled and infect the lungs. The treatments for all types of anthrax are the antibiotics ciprofloxacin, tetracycline drugs such as doxycycline, and some types of penicillin.

The anthrax vaccine is primarily given to people in the military and is only recommended for individuals considered to be at high risk of contracting the disease, such as scientists who handle anthrax bacteria. Current government efforts are focused on encouraging the development of new anthrax vaccines intended to prevent inhalational anthrax before and after exposure. The emergency response to anthrax consists of administration of antibiotics and spore cleanup by workers using personal protective equipment. Unvaccinated, exposed people and remediation workers begin taking preventative antibiotics at the time of their exposure and continue for at least 60 days.

Plague

Plague is caused by the bacterium *Yersinia pestis.* Bubonic plague is the most common type of naturally occurring plague, and is transmitted through the bite of an infected flea or exposure through a cut. Symptoms of bubonic plague include swollen, tender lymph nodes, headache, fever, and chills. If untreated, bubonic plague may result in death.

In pneumonic plague, the lungs are infected with the plague bacterium. People with pneumonic plague can transmit plague to other people, whereas bubonic plague cannot be spread from person to person. Antibiotics approved by the FDA to treat plague are streptomycin, doxycycline, and other tetracycline drugs. The public health response to pneumonic plague would be similar to that of anthrax, with the addition of quarantines that could impact sizable crowded geographic areas.

■ Impacts and Issues

The response to the 2001 anthrax attacks has been extensively analyzed as researchers attempt to model the optimal response to future attacks. The 2001 attacks were small-scale events, affecting a relatively few people in restricted geographic areas. In a recent study of a small-scale attack, Veterans Administration researchers conducted a cost-effectiveness analysis using a simulation model to determine the optimal response strategy for a small-scale anthrax attack against U.S. Postal Service distribution centers in a large metropolitan area. (A cost-effectiveness analysis compares the relative effectiveness of two or more alternatives in view of their costs and attempts to determine the best value for money.) The study compared three different strategies: (1) pre-attack vaccination of all U.S. distribution center postal workers, (2) post-attack antibiotic therapy followed by vaccination of exposed personnel, and (3) post-attack antibiotic therapy without vaccination of exposed personnel. The results showed that post-attack antibiotic therapy and vaccination of exposed postal workers is the most cost-effective response compared with post-attack antibiotic therapy alone. This was due to the greater prevention of death and disease when post-attack vaccination is combined with antibiotics. Pre-attack vaccination of all distribution center workers is less effective and more costly than the other two strategies. This is because vaccinating all postal employees would be very expensive, and the immunity conferred by the current vaccine is not perfect or always permanent, and the time between vaccination and an anthrax attack is indeterminate.

Some commentators have decried the resources and energy being poured into bioterrorism defense. According to this perspective, bioterrorism preparedness programs have wasted public health resources with little evidence of benefit. For example, several deaths and many serious illnesses have resulted from the smallpox vaccination program, but there is no clear evidence that any threat of smallpox exposure has existed since the eradication of the disease. Even the anthrax attacks were linked to secret U.S. military laboratories; without these laboratories the attacks probably would not have been possible. The huge effort to prepare the country against bioterrorist threats is seen by some critics as a great distraction from the need to allocate public health resources to address other health needs, and has been conducted at the expense of some vital programs.

Nevertheless, the anthrax attacks did demonstrate the havoc that malign individuals could wreak with sufficient determination, access to pathogens, and laboratory resources. As public protection will always be the primary responsibility of government, leaving the population totally unprepared for the eventuality of bioterrorism is simply not an option in the post-9/11 world. Accordingly, The Center for Law and the Public's Health at Georgetown and Johns Hopkins Universities drafted the Model State Emergency Health Powers Act (MSEHPA or Model Act) at the request of the CDC. The Model Act provides states with the powers needed to detect and contain either bioterrorism or a naturally occurring disease outbreak. To this extent, bioterrorism preparedness appears in sync with more conventional public health preparedness. Legislative bills based on the MSEHPA have been introduced in most states. This legislative effort has uncovered problems of state law obsolescence, inconsistency, and inadequacy. Most current state laws provide inadequate public protection whether a disease outbreak would be natural or intentional. They often date back to the early twentieth century and predate the immense changes in public health science over the past half-century.

The Model Act is structured to support five basic public health functions to be facilitated by law: (1) preparedness, comprehensive planning for a public health emergency; (2) surveillance, measures to detect and track public health emergencies; (3) management of property, ensuring adequate availability of vaccines, pharmaceuticals, and hospitals, as well as providing power to abate hazards to the public's health; (4) protection of persons, powers to compel vaccination, testing, treatment, isolation, and quarantine when clearly necessary; and (5) communication, providing clear and authoritative information to the public. The act is also based on a legal framework to protect personal rights.

WORDS TO KNOW

PATHOGEN: A disease-causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

QUARANTINE: Quarantine is the practice of separating people who have been exposed to an infectious agent but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. This can be done voluntarily or involuntarily by the authority of states and the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

RING VACCINATION: Ring vaccination is the vaccination of all susceptible people in an area surrounding a case of an infectious disease. Since vaccination makes people immune to the disease, the hope is that the disease will not spread from the known case to other people. Ring vaccination was used in eliminating the smallpox virus.

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

Use of Spectroscopy in Identifying Pathogens

Traditional detection of pathogens such as bacteria and viruses involves serologic (blood) testing in which potential pathogens in a tissue sample from an infected patient are cultured in the laboratory, and various stains and reagents are made to react with proteins of the pathogen's outer membrane. This is a slow and labor-intensive process. A new technique of rapidly identifying bacteria such as anthrax called desorption electrospray ionization recently developed at Purdue University could be used for homeland security. This technique enables the fast "fingerprinting" bacteria using a mass spectrometer. The analysis of bacteria and other microorganisms usually takes several hours. The spectrographic technique ionizes molecules outside of the spectrometer's vacuum chamber. Ionized molecules can then be manipulated, detected, and analyzed using electromagnetic fields. This technique is extremely sensitive, capable of detecting 1-billionth of a gram of a particular bacterium and identifying its subspecies, which is the level of accuracy required for detecting and monitoring infectious microorganisms. The technology can determine the subspecies and collect other information by observing the pattern of the pathogen's outer membrane proteins, and creates a sort of fingerprint as revealed by mass spectrometry. Such accuracy and timeliness makes the technology particularly apt for detecting bioterrorism agents, as word of an intentionally caused outbreak would need to be spread very soon after the appearance of suspected cases in order to prevent rapid transmission of the pathogen.

Involving the General Public in Preparedness

The public health emergency responses being fashioned by the CDC to a bioterrorist attack focus mainly on readying emergency and medical workers to cope with infection transmission, panic, and decontamination. While there has been some refinement in terms of how agencies and response personnel should coordinate their efforts, so far there have been few urgent instructions or preventive measures disseminated to the general public. On the other hand, promising new research on detection technologies, vaccines, and medicines to prevent or combat infections is now being funded under Project Bioshield.

Most bioterrorism policy discussion and response planning has been conducted among experts and has not involved much public participation. The capacity of the public to take an active role and even to lead in the response to bioterrorism is often discounted, or policymakers have assumed that local populations would get in the way of an effective response. This bias is based on fears of mass panic and social disorder. While no one really knows how the population will react to an extraordinary act of bioterrorism, experience with natural and technological disasters and disease outbreaks indicates that the public response would be generally effective and adaptive collective action. Therefore, the public should be viewed as a partner in the medical and public health response. Failure to involve the public in planning could hamper effective management of an epidemic and increase the likelihood of social breakdown. Ultimately, actions taken by nonprofessional individuals and groups could end up having the greatest impact on the outcome of a bioterrorism attack. Guidelines suggested for integrating the public into bioterrorism response planning include (1) treating the public as a capable ally in the response to an epidemic; (2) enlisting civic organizations in practical public health activities; (3) anticipating needs for home-based patient care and infection control; (4) investment in public outreach and communication strategies; and (5) ensuring that planning reflects the values and priorities of affected populations.

■ Primary Source Connection

In an excerpt for the following journal article, the authors argue for a greater role for the biomedical research community in defense efforts against bioterrorism. Bradley T. Smith, PhD, is a Fellow, Thomas V. Inglesby, MD, is Deputy Director, and Tara O'toole, MD, MPH, is Director, all at the Johns Hopkins Center for Civilian Biodefense Strategies, Baltimore, Maryland.

Biodefense R&D: Anticipating Future Threats, Establishing a Strategic Environment

INTRODUCTION

The ultimate objective of the U.S. civilian biodefense strategy should be to eliminate the possibility of massively lethal bioterrorist attacks. A central pillar of this strategy must be an ambitious and aggressive scientific research, development, and production (R&D&P) program that delivers the diagnostic technologies, medicines, and vaccines needed to counter the range of bioweapons agents that might be used against the nation. A successful biodefense strategy must take account of the rapidly expanding spectrum of bioweapons agents and means of delivery made possible by 21st century advances in bioscientific knowledge and biotechnology. Meeting this challenge will require the engagement of America's extraordinary scientific talent and investments of financial and political capital on a scale far beyond that now committed or contemplated. The purpose of this article is to provide a brief analysis of the current biomedical R&D&P environment and to offer recommendations for the establishment of a national biodefense strategy that could significantly diminish the suffering and loss that would accompany bioterrorist attacks. In the longer term, a robust biodefense R&D&P effort, if coupled to substantial improvements in medical and public health systems, could conceivably render biological weapons ineffective as agents of mass lethality.

THE PROBLEM: 20TH AND 21ST CENTURY BIOWEAPONS

The advantage is now firmly with those who would seek to deploy offensive bioweapons; the state of biodefense is relatively weak. Following the terrorist attacks of

2001, the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) at the National Institutes of Health (NIH) received $1.7 billion to fund biodefense research projects. NIAID has since established a "roadmap" describing the scientific research needed to devise new "countermeasures" (i.e., diagnostic technologies, therapeutic drugs, and vaccines) for the pathogens thought to be the bioweapons agents of greatest concern. Much of the NIAID roadmap has, appropriately, focused on developing countermeasures for the six CDC Category A bioweapons threats (anthrax, smallpox, plague, botulism, tularemia, and the viral hemorrhagic fevers) for which there are striking gaps in available countermeasures…, and a selection of other bioweapons threats on the CDC's Category B and C lists (collectively termed "20th century bioweapons" in this article).

Growing numbers of people in the scientific community now recognize that looming just ahead is a far more daunting array of potential engineered bioweapon agents (collectively termed "21st century bioweapons" in this article). The life sciences are at the beginning of a revolutionary period. Scientific understanding of living systems and how to manipulate them is expanding exponentially, fueled by advances in computerization, the global dispersion of bioscientific expertise as well as biological databases, and substantial economic investment in biomedical and agricultural research and product development.

A prime example of these powerful advances was the identification in 2001 of the approximately 40,000 genes in the human genome. Scientists are rapidly learning how to translate this genomic "parts list" into a sophisticated understanding of how specific genes control human biological systems in the body. Such discoveries will bring great benefit to humankind, but they will also allow the development of a new constellation of powerful 21st century bioweapons.

There are already countless portents of the coming power of bioscience and how it will propel bioweapons developments. Scientists have shown that it is possible to create strains of the bacterium that causes anthrax to be resistant to the most powerful existing antibiotics. They have demonstrated the capacity to make viruses that can overcome vaccine-induced immunity. Viruses can be genetically modified to increase their ability to kill infected cells, or to become capable of attacking entirely new target species. Viruses and bacteria can be manipulated in ways that make them better able to survive environmental stress and to be disseminated over distances in the air as weapons. Technologies already exist that could be used to protect pathogens from detection or destruction by the human immune system. These are only a small sample of the developments ahead on the bioscience landscape.

The "dual use" aspect of bioscience does not pertain only to specific, isolated technological applications, as is the case in nuclear weapons work. Rather, it is biological knowledge itself that is the source of the power that can be applied toward beneficent or malevolent ends. The knowledge needed to engineer a more lethal viral or bacterial bioweapon is essentially the same as that needed to understand how that virus or bacteria causes disease and how to create an effective vaccine against it. The distinction between good biology and its "dark side" lies only in intent and application. With rare exception, it will be very difficult to sequester new bioscientific knowledge that might be applied to building biological weapons without simultaneously harming beneficial biomedical research and essential biodefense R&D&P.

Given the size, momentum, and global dissemination of the bioscientific enterprise and the great demand for the medical and agricultural products being created, the rapid global advance of bioscience is essentially unstoppable. A successful biodefense R&D&P strategy must accept that the growth and international diffusion of bio-scientific knowledge and technologies will continue at a phenomenal pace and must seek to leverage these powerful forces against the bioterrorist threat.

. . .

CONCLUSION

The full power of the nation's biomedical research, development, and production enterprise is not yet engaged in biodefense, and given the current environment, funding levels, priorities, and lack of clear vision for the biodefense R&D&P program, large numbers of the best biomedical scientists are unlikely to engage. Current biodefense initiatives, when compared to other U.S. government efforts to address top national security threats, suggest that the U.S. government either does not yet understand the grave nature and scope of the bioterrorist threat or is not prepared to commit fully to a robust biodefense research, development, and production effort. This must change if the nation is to counter the coming bioweapons threat and set the course to eliminate bioweapons as weapons of mass lethality.

Editor's note: Referenced citations omitted.

Bradley T. Smith, Thomas V. Inglesby, Tara O'toole

BRADLEY T. SMITH, THOMAS V. INGLESBY, AND TARA O'TOOLE. LDQUO;BIODEFENSE R&D: ANTICIPATING FUTURE THREATS, ESTABLISHING A STRATEGIC ENVIRONMENT.RDQUO; *BIOSECURITY & BIOTERRORISM.* 1(3):193–202, 2003.

See Also *War and Infectious Disease; Public Health and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Fong, I.W., and Kenneth Alibek, eds. *Bioterrorism and Infectious Agents: A New Dilemma for the 21st Century.* New York: Springer, 2005.

Periodicals

Cohen H.W., R.M. Gould, V.W. Sidel. "The Pitfalls of Bioterrorism Preparedness: the Anthrax and Smallpox Experiences." *Am J Public Health*, (2004): 94:1667–1671.

Glass T.A., M. Schoch-Spana. "Bioterrorism and the People: How to Vaccinate a City against Panic." *Clinical Infectious Diseases* (2002) 34:217–23.

Gostin L.O., J.W. Sapsin, S.B. Teret, et al. "The Model State Emergency Health Powers Act: Planning for and Response to Bioterrorism and Naturally Occurring Infectious Diseases." *JAMA* (2002): 288:622–628.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Bioterorism." <http://www.bt.cdc.gov/bioterrorism/> (accessed June 13, 2007).

Kenneth T. LaPensee

Blastomycosis

Introduction

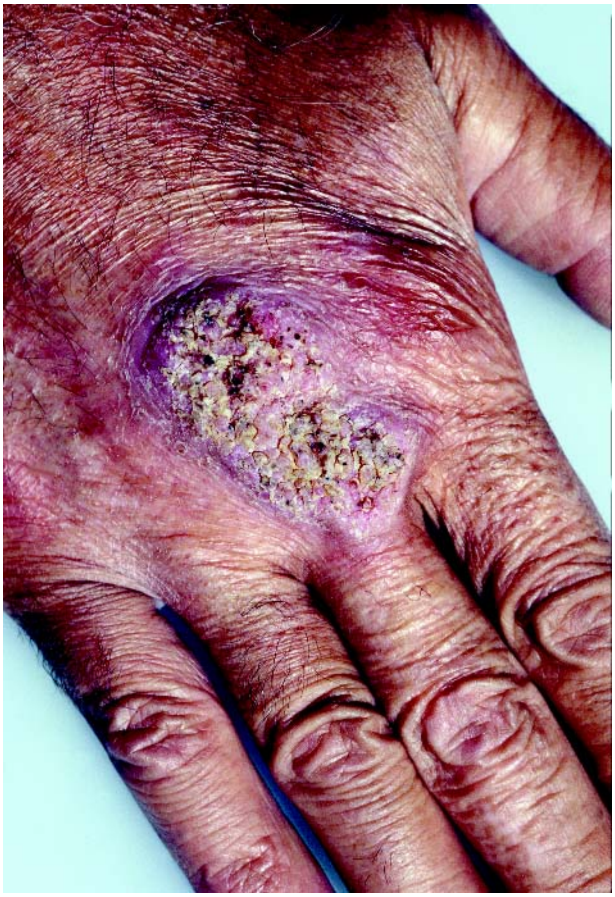
Blastomycosis is a rare fungal infection caused by inhaling the fungal organism *Blastomyces dermatitidis* through the nose or mouth. The organism is usually found in habitats containing wood and soil. It lives commonly as a mold in warm, sandy soils located near water and within moist soil full of decomposing organic matter. The infection is restricted to humans, dogs, and other mammals in portions of North America. Human symptoms of the infection are similar to the influenzalike disease of the lungs called histoplasmosis (also called Darling's disease). Rarely, persons with blastomycosis develop chronic pulmonary infection or widespread disseminated infection.

When found in a host, *Blastomyces dermatitidis* lives as yeast. Because it lives as mold outside a host and as yeast inside, it is called a biphasic organism. Blastomycosis is commonly misdiagnosed as Valley fever (coccidioidomycosis), Lyme disease, or other viral infections.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The first description of blastomycosis came in 1876 from French biologist Philippe Edouard Leon Van Tieghem (1839–1914). Later, in 1894, American dermatologist Thomas Gilchrist (1862–1927), from the University of Maryland School of Medicine, described it more thoroughly. At that time, Gilchrist isolated and proved the cause of the human infection. Because of this description, it is often called Gilchrist's disease or Gilchrist's mycosis. It is also sometimes called Chicago disease and North American blastomycosis.

Transmission of the fungus is by inhalation of airborne spores after contaminated soil has been disturbed. Persons, such as forestry workers, campers, hunters, and farmers, located near wooded sites are at increased risk. People who have compromised immune systems also are at high risk.



Skin lesions are typical of blastomycosis, a fungal disease that affects the skin and lungs. This infection is characterized by multiple inflammatory lesions of the internal organs, mucous membranes, or skin. *Scott Camazine/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

According to the Centers of Disease Control and Prevention Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases,

WORDS TO KNOW

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

MYCOTIC DISEASE: Mycotic disease is a disease caused by fungal infection.

SPORE: A dormant form assumed by some bacteria, such as anthrax, that enable the bacterium to survive high temperatures, dryness, and lack of nourishment for long periods of time. Under proper conditions, the spore may revert to the actively multiplying form of the bacteria.

symptoms occur in about 50% of all cases. Common symptoms, which sometimes parallel symptoms of influenza (flu), include a nonproductive cough, fever, chills, headache, and pain or stiffness in muscles or joints. When it resembles bacterial pneumonia, symptoms include high fever, chills, a productive cough with brown or bloody-looking sputum, and chest pain of the lungs. When it looks like tuberculosis or lung cancer, symptoms include a low-grade fever, productive cough, night sweats, and weight loss. Other symptoms can include shortness of breath, sweating, tiredness, overall discomfort and ill-feeling, rash, skin and bone lesions, and problems with the bladder, kidney, prostate, and testes.

Once the infection is inside the lungs, it grows rapidly, becoming noticeable in the blood, brain, bone, lymphatic system, skin, and genital and urinary systems. The incubation period is generally 30 to 100 days. No symptoms occur in about half the infections. The death rate from the infection is about 5%.

Scope and Distribution

Blastomycosis is concentrated in parts of North America, especially in the central southern, midwestern, and southeastern parts of the United States and the northwestern part of Ontario in Canada. Infection is more frequent in the basin areas around the Ohio River and Mississippi River and in the areas surrounding the Great Lakes. It occurs in about one to two people out of 100,000 in these North American regions.

Some cases are reported in Central America, South America, and Africa. Although anyone can contract the infection, it more commonly affects people with compromised immune systems. Males are more likely to become infected than are females.

Treatment and Prevention

Once identified, the diagnosis can be confirmed with cellular and tissue tests such as the KOH test. The KOH test is a procedure performed with a microscope that uses potassium hydroxide (KOH) to dissolve skin tissue and reveal fungal cells. Other diagnostic tests employed may include chest x-rays to show nodule growth or pneumonia; skin, organ or tissue biopsies; and blood and sputum cultures. When other tests fail, a urine antigen test usually identifies the disease.

Blastomycosis in the lungs does not always require drug treatment to eliminate it. However, when the infection spreads outside the lungs or has become severe within the lungs, amphotericin B (such as Abelcet® and Fungisome®), itraconazole (such as Sporanox®), or other antifungal medicines may be prescribed orally or intravenously. Amphotericin B is usually reserved for severe cases. While it is more effective than other antifungals, it also is more toxic. Periodic follow-up by a physician is recommended to detect any recurrences. Cure rates are high, however, treatment often takes many weeks or months.

People with minor irritations of the skin and lungs usually recover without suffering permanent problems. Major complications—such as large abscesses, relapses, or recurrences of the disease and negative side effects of drugs—can lead to complications. If patients do not recover, they may develop chronic lung infection or widespread infection of the bones, skin, and genitourinary tract. On occasion, the fungus affects the meninges, the protective covering of the brain and spinal column. If left untreated, severe cases can progress rapidly and eventually cause death.

Impacts and Issues

Blastomycosis has not been accurately and reliably reported by the medical community in the past. This is largely due to the fact that national reporting is not required in Canada and the United States and that its occurrence has been restricted to North America. However, the disease is becoming better defined as more research is performed. Unfortunately it is still not completely understood. Lack of information about the disease is primarily due to the difficulty in isolating the causative organism from its natural environment.

Most medical practitioners consider blastomycosis to be an important mycotic disease (fungal disease or infection). According to the *Canadian Medical Association Journal* (CMAJ), its prevalence (or endemicity) may be more extensive than previously thought. The CMAJ suggests that physicians include it in the potential diagnoses of unexplained granulomatous pulmonary (relating to the lungs) disease and cutaneous (relating to the skin) disease.

Currently, a number of uncertainties still surround the origins, characteristics, causes, and other important medical facts (that is, the epidemiology) of blastomycosis. A greater understanding of the epidemiology of this disease will allow it to be more effectively combated in the future.

See Also *Coccidioidomycosis; Histoplasmosis; Mycotic Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Al-Doory, Yousef, and Arthur F. DiSalvo, eds. *Blastomycosis.* New York: Plenum, 1992.

Korting, H. C., ed. *Mycoses: Diagnosis, Therapy and Prophylaxis of Fungal Diseases.* Berlin, Germany: Blackwell Science, 2005.

Sobel, Jack D. *Contemporary Diagnosis and Management of Fungal Infections.* Newtown, PA: Handbooks in Health Care, 2003.

Periodicals

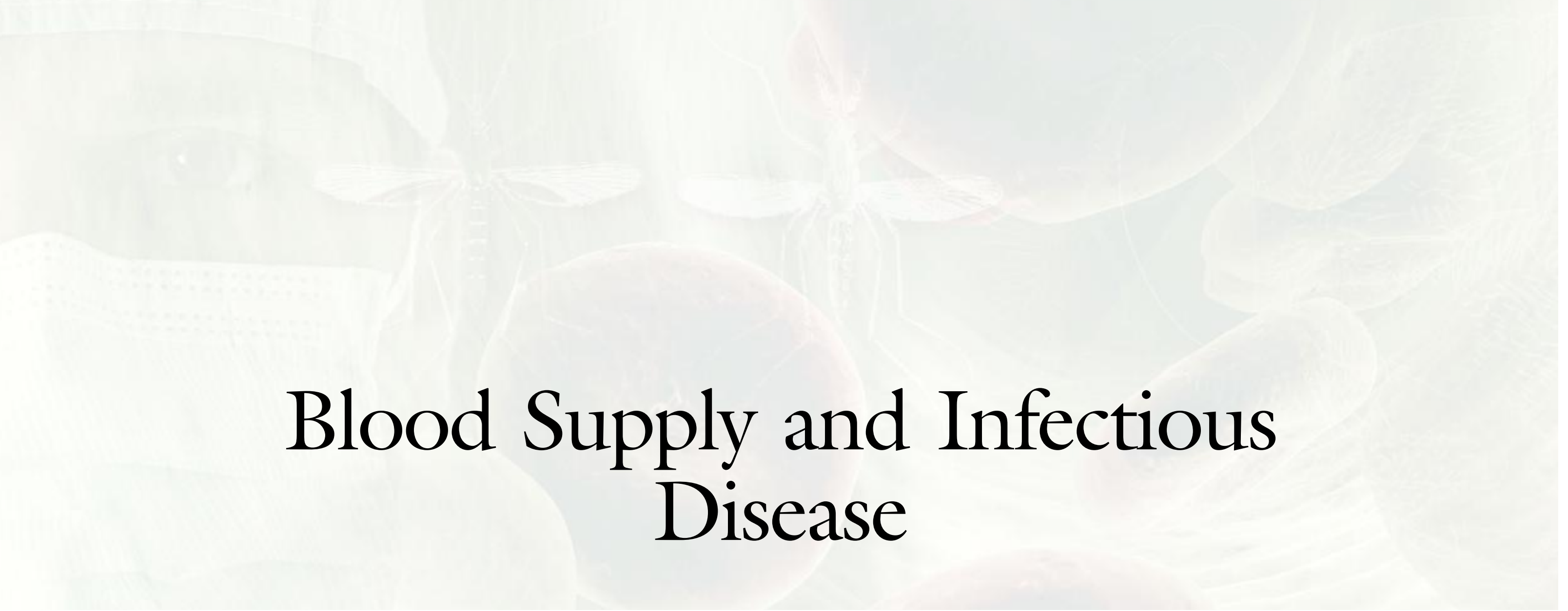
Lester, Robert S., et al. "Novel Cases of Blastomycosis Acquired in Toronto, Ontario." *Canadian Medical Association Journal* 163 (November 14, 2000): 1309–1312.

Ross, John J., and Douglas N. Keeling. "Cutaneous Blastomycosis in New Brunswick: Case Report." *Canadian Medical Association Journal* 163 (November 14, 2000): 1303–1305.

Web Sites

Canadian Medical Association. "Blastomycosis." November 4, 2000. <http://www.cmaj.ca/cgi/content/full/163/10/1231> (accessed March 11, 2007).

Centers of Disease Control and Prevention. "Blastomycosis." October 6, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/blastomycosis_t.htm> (accessed March 11, 2007).



Blood Supply and Infectious Disease

Introduction

In the 1980s, thousands of patients with hemophilia around the world contracted HIV/AIDS through contaminated blood. Many have since died. This tragedy led to new measures to ensure the safety of the blood supply to protect those needing transfusions or blood products. The use of unpaid, voluntary, regular donors is encouraged, and all donated blood units are tested for the presence of transfusion-transmissible infections (TTIs), like HIV and hepatitis, a viral infection of the liver. These changes have meant a dramatic decrease in the risk of contracting a TTI. For the vast majority of people in the United States and Europe, the medical benefits of blood transfusion or blood products now outweigh the risk from infection. However, this is not the case in many developing countries, where lack of resources and infrastructure mean that donors and donated blood may not be screened as carefully.

History and Scientific Foundations

The major TTIs spread by bloodborne pathogens are HIV, hepatitis B (HBV), and hepatitis C (HCV); in some regions, malaria, syphilis, and Chagas disease might also be transmitted through blood. HIV was first identified in the early 1980s, and a test that could be used for screening blood was discovered in 1985. Before this time, anyone who received blood from an HIV positive donor would have been at risk of getting infected themselves. People with hemophilia, a blood clotting disorder, were especially at risk of HIV, because they depend upon receiving Factor VIII (a protein which helps their blood clot normally) made from pooled blood donations. Over 1,200 people in the United Kingdom developed HIV through contaminated Factor VIII before standardized testing; many have since died of AIDS. According to a 1993 report by the Centers for Disease Control (CDC), more than half the hemophiliacs living in the United States in the early 1980s were similarly infected. A similar situation developed in the general population with HCV, a chronic liver infection that can lead to liver cancer, through exposure before 1990, when little was known of the virus and no test was available. Up to 200,000 Americans may have been infected with HCV through blood transfusion before testing began.

Applications and Research

To minimize the risk of TTIs, the World Health Organization (WHO) has developed a two-fold approach to blood safety. First, blood services are encouraged to use only voluntary unpaid donors who have a low risk of carrying a TTI, and use them regularly. Therefore, potential donors answer various health-related questions before blood is taken from them. After this, each unit of donated blood is tested for the most common of the TTIs. In the United States, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), which controls blood safety, mandates tests for HIV, HBV, HCV, human T-lymphotrophic virus (which can cause leukemia and diseases of the brain and nervous system), and syphilis. In the United Kingdom, the Department of Health requires donated blood to be tested for HIV, HBV, and HCV.

These measures for improving the safety of the blood supply do work. The American Red Cross says that the risk of contracting HIV from blood is now one in 1.5 million units. This risk is 2,000 times lower than it was 1982–1984, when donors and donations could not be screened because there was no test available. Donated blood is generally screened for TTIs using tests that detect either the infectious agent (viruses, in the case of HIV, HBV, or HCV) or antibodies to the infectious agent. Generally, the test results are in the form of a color response, which is read as positive or negative by computer, and the whole procedure is fast enough not to disrupt the supply of blood to those who need it.

■ Impacts and Issues

HIV took the world by surprise, and there is always the possibility of a new infection that might threaten the blood supply. At present, there is concern over variant Creutzfeld-Jakob disease (vCJD), a rare, fatal brain disease that was first identified in the United Kingdom in 1995. Three cases, out of a total of 158 cases (as of December 2006), have come from contaminated blood. There is currently no test for the prion protein, which is the infective agent in vCJD, so donations cannot be screened. The American Red Cross is dealing with the threat that vCJD could pose to the U.S. blood supply by disqualifying potential donors who have spent periods of time in the U.K. and some other European countries, in case they are infected.

Meanwhile, the safety of blood continues to be a global issue. Many developing countries have not yet adopted the WHO rules. Family or paid donors, known to carry a higher risk of TTIs, account for more than 50% of blood donated in developing countries. The populations in these countries are also at risk from the use of untested blood in transfusions. WHO has a number of projects underway aimed at building and supporting the blood supply around the world, so that everyone has access to safe transfusions and blood products.

See Also *Bloodborne Pathogens; Hepatitis B; Hepatitis C; HIV.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

American Red Cross. "Blood Donation Eligibility Guidelines." March 21, 2005. <http://www.redcross.org/services/biomed/0,1082,0_557_,00.html> (accessed January 16, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Blood Transfusion Safety." <http://www.who.int/bloodsafety/en/> (accessed January 16, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

WORDS TO KNOW

BLOODBORNE PATHOGENS: Disease-causing agents carried or transported in the blood. Bloodborne infections are those in which the infectious agent is transmitted from one person to another via contaminated blood.

CREUTZFELDT-JAKOB DISEASE (CJD): Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD) is a transmissible, rapidly progressing, fatal neurodegenerative disorder related to bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), commonly called mad cow disease.

TRANSFUSION-TRANSMISSIBLE INFECTIONS: Any infection that can be transmitted to a person by a blood transfusion (addition of stored whole blood or blood fractions to a person's own blood) is a transfusion-transmissible infection. Some diseases that can be transmitted in this way are AIDS, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, syphilis, malaria, and Chagas disease.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL AND SOCIAL RESPONSBILITY

Blood donation is the process in which a person (called a blood donor) voluntarily gives (or donates) blood that will be securely stored at a designated place (often times called a blood bank) for some future use, often times for a blood transfusion. People sometimes donate blood for themselves, particularly when they know that they are scheduled for surgery at a near future point in time.

Transfusion is the medical process of transferring whole blood or blood components from one person (donor) to another (recipient) in order to restore lost blood, to improve clotting time, and to improve the ability of the blood to deliver oxygen to the body's tissues. Whole blood is used exactly as it was received from the donor. Blood components are parts of whole blood, such as red blood cells (RBCs), plasma, platelets, clotting factors, immunoglobulins, and white blood cells. Use of blood components is a more efficient way to use the blood supply, because blood that has been processed (fractionated) into components can be used to treat more than one person. On average, one pint of blood components is used for three patients. Transfusions have saved countless numbers of people around the world. Each year in the United States, about 4.5 million people are in need of blood transfusions.

Bloodborne Pathogens

Introduction

Bloodborne pathogens are microscopic disease-causing organisms that are present in the blood of humans with certain infections that can cause disease in other humans who come in contact with the infected blood. The three major bloodborne pathogens are: hepatitis B virus (HBV), hepatitis C virus (HCV), and the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), although other diseases can be transmitted via the bloodborne route of infection. Exposure to blood containing any of these pathogens carries a risk of transmission of the infection.

Healthcare workers, including doctors, dentists, and nurses, can become exposed through needlestick injuries, which occur if they are accidentally pricked with a needle that has been used on an infected person. Drug users who share needles can also become infected with bloodborne pathogens, and this is a major route of transmitting HCV. In the past, people receiving blood transfusions and blood products were also at risk of infection by bloodborne pathogens. Reducing the risk from bloodborne pathogens depends upon people following the strict precautions laid down by the Occupational Safety & Health Administration

TO THE COMMISSIONING OF THE NATIONAL BL
By
USEGUN OBAS
USAID

With help from the United States, Nigeria set up the National Blood Transfusion Service, which became the first planned transfusion center in the country. Created to help the nation move away from relying on blood sellers and other questionable sources for blood exchange, it is designed to prevent the spread of blood-borne diseases such as AIDS and Hepatitis B. *AP Images.*

(OSHA) in the United States and equivalent organizations in other countries.

History and Scientific Foundations

When HIV was identified in the early 1980s, it soon became clear that transmission through infected blood was a real possibility. Indeed, thousands of people with the blood clotting disorder hemophilia became infected with HIV because of their dependence on blood products. Now that blood and donors are screened in many countries—and there are efforts on the part of the World Health Organization (WHO) to make this a global practice—this route of exposure to HIV and the two other major bloodborne pathogens HBV and HCV has become less significant.

However, there is still a risk of transmission of bloodborne pathogens to those who become exposed to infected blood, either through their occupation or through their lifestyle. For healthcare workers, a major risk of exposure comes from needlestick injury (NSI), which occurs if a healthcare worker is pricked with a needle that has been used to in an injection or to take blood from an infected person. A NSI can occur either during the procedure itself, or during disposal of the needle. A similar risk exists from cuts occurring from sharp instruments, like scalpels, that have been contaminated with infected blood. Instruments that can cause this kind of injury are generally known as sharps. Splashes of infected blood to the eye, nose, mouth or skin also carry a risk. According to the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), there are between 600,000–800,000 NSIs each year in the United States, with nurses being most at risk. And around one third of all NSIs take place during sharps disposal.

HBV is the most easily transmitted of the bloodborne pathogens. However, there is now a vaccine against HBV that is made available to those at risk. Without vaccination, there is a one-in-three chance of contracting HBV through a needlestick injury. For HCV, there is around a 2% risk of infection through NSI. The general risk of contracting HCV through exposure via a blood splash is not known, but there has been one case of infection through a splash in the eye and one from a splash into broken skin. Around 1% of healthcare workers have HCV infection, compared to around 3% of the general United States population. But it is not known how many of the healthcare worker HCV infections arose through occupational exposure.

For HIV, the risk of becoming infected through a needlestick injury is about one in three hundred, although the risk is higher when a person with advanced AIDS is the source of the infected blood. Deep injections, and instruments that are obviously contaminated with blood also carry a higher risk of infection. The risk following HIV-infected blood splashes is around one in a thousand. There have been no documented cases of HIV transmission due to an exposure involving contact of infected blood with intact skin.

WORDS TO KNOW

BLOODBORNE ROUTE: Via the blood. For example: Bloodborne pathogens are pathogens (disease-causing agents) carried or transported in the blood. Bloodborne infections are those in which the infectious agent is transmitted from one person to another via contaminated blood. Infections of the blood can occur as a result of the spread of an ongoing infection caused by bacteria such as *Yersinia pestis*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Staphylococcus aureus*.

NEEDLESTICK INJURY: Any accidental breakage or puncture of the skin by an unsterilized medical needle (syringe) is a needlestick injury. Healthcare providers are at particular risk for needlestick injuries (which may transmit disease) because of the large number of needles they handle.

PATHOGEN: A disease-causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

POSTEXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS: Postexposure prophylaxis is treatment with drugs immediately after exposure to an infectious microorganism. The aim of this approach is to prevent an infection from becoming established.

STANDARD PRECAUTIONS: Standard precautions are the safety measures taken to prevent the transmission of disease-causing bacteria. These include proper hand washing; wearing gloves, goggles, and other protective clothing; proper handling of needles; and sterilization of equipment.

Applications and Research

Commonsense precautions, such as protecting the hands, eyes, and mouth when dealing with blood from patients potentially infected with HBV, HCV, and HIV, can go a long way to reducing the risk of transmission of these bloodborne pathogens. It is also important to use properly trained staff (phlebotomists) to take blood samples. Simply reducing the number of times needles are used on patients, for injections, placing catheters, and taking blood samples, also reduces the risk of transmitting bloodborne pathogens, by cutting down on the number of occasions on which accidents can take place.

Science and technology have also contributed towards reducing the risk of transmission of bloodborne pathogens. For instance, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) say that the annual number of HBV infections has decreased more than 90% since the introduction of the vaccine in 1982. In 1983, there were more than 10,000 such infections in the United States every year and by 2001, this was down to fewer than 400. Unfortunately, there are no such vaccines against HCV or HIV, although research is ongoing. Postexposure prophylaxis (PEP) can be used to protect someone who may have been exposed to HIV through infected blood. This involves giving the antiretroviral drugs used to treat HIV/AIDS patients as soon as possible after exposure. Some studies have suggested this may reduce the risk of HIV transmission, although it is not universally recommended because the drugs have side effects and the risk of infection remains small.

Impacts and Issues

OSHA reports that 5.6 million workers in the United States are at risk of exposure to bloodborne pathogens. In 1991, OSHA issued the Bloodborne Pathogens Standard Prevention Act, which was updated in 2001. This law encompasses the "universal precautions" philosophy of CDC, now called standard precautions, and affects many aspects of the way healthcare, and other workers, carry out their day-to-day tasks. Basically, all persons receiving care are considered potentially contaminated with bloodborne pathogens unless proven otherwise, and therefore, using protective measures to avoid contact with blood is now standard procedure for healthcare workers.

Prevention of exposure involves physical protection of the worker with gloves, masks, and eye shields during surgery or other procedures where there is a potential for contact with blood. Safe devices such as retractable or sheathed needles must be used when taking blood, and any NSIs must be reported and followed up. Protection from infection depends upon all those who may be at risk taking this code seriously and following it before, during, and after handling blood from potential sources of bloodborne pathogen risk.

The advent of safer devices, such as needle-less injectors, has also been an important advance. CDC reports a 62–88% reduction in NSIs from the introduction of better devices. For injecting drug users at risk of bloodborne infections, especially HCV, education in harm reduction and needle exchange schemes may also reduce the incidence of new infections. However, it is difficult to document this, as there is often a lengthy time lag between exposure and evidence of infection.

SEE ALSO *Blood Supply and Infectious Disease; Hepatitis B; Hepatitis C; HIV; Infection Control and Asepsis; Standard Precautions.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons. *Bloodborne Pathogens.* 5th ed. New York: Jones and Bartlett, 2007.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Exposure to Blood: What Healthcare Personnel Need to Know." July 2003 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/pdf/bbp/Exp_to_Blood.pdf> (accessed Feb 8, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Infection Control Guidelines." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/guidelines.html> (accessed February 8, 2007).

U.S. Department of Labor Occupational Safety & Health Administration. "BloodbornePathogens and Needlestick Prevention OSHA Standards." <http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/bloodbornepathogens.standards.html> (accessed February 8, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Botulism

Introduction

Botulism is a disease that is caused by a bacterial toxin. The toxin is one of seven (A-G) made and released by the bacterium *Clostridium botulinum*. Botulism toxin types A, B, E, and F cause botulism in humans. Another bacterium called *Clostridium baratii* can also produce a disease-causing toxin, but this bacterium is rarely encountered, and is responsible for far fewer cases of botulism than is *C. botulinum*.

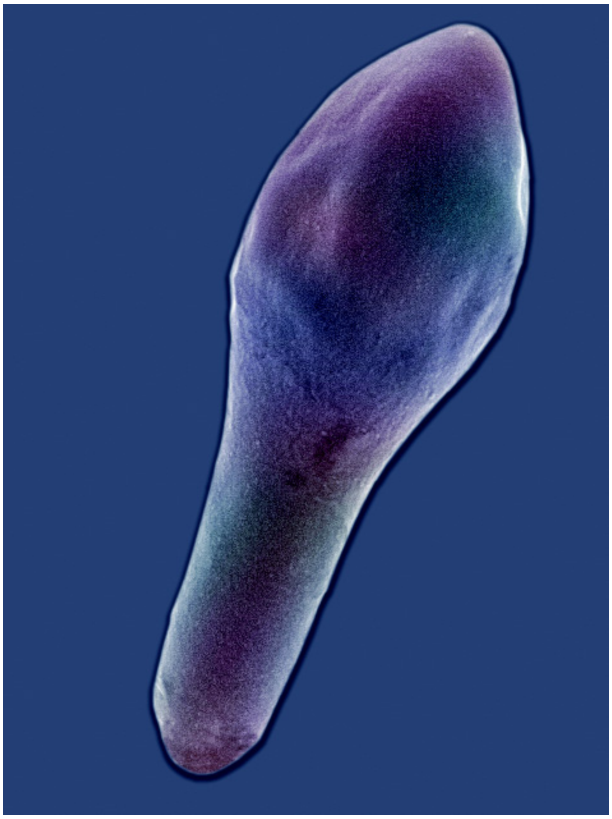
Botulism toxins are powerful neurotoxins; they affect nerves and can produce paralysis. One microgram of toxin—a millionth of a gram—can kill a person. Paralysis from botulism affects the functioning of organs and tissues, and when botulism is fatal, it is usually due to failure of the respiratory muscles.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Botulism was first described in 1735 in an illness outbreak that was traced to the consumption of contaminated German sausage. Indeed, the word botulism was derived from the Latin word *botulus*, meaning sausage.

C. botulinum are commonly found in soil. They can be present on vegetables and other food grown in soil, and can be eaten if the food is not completely washed free of bacteria. Fortunately, under these conditions where oxygen is present, the bacteria do not produce the toxin and so are harmless when eaten. Botulism is not a contagious disease—it cannot be spread from person to person. Rarely, botulism occurs as the result of a wound infected with *C. botulinum*.

The toxin is produced when the bacterium grows in the absence of oxygen. Growth of the bacteria in, for example, the low-oxygen and slightly acidic environment (the bacteria cannot grow above pH 5) of some canned foods is associated with the production of gas. Canned foods can bulge due to the build-up of the gas. Discarding a bulging unopened can is always a wise precaution. With foodborne botulism, growth of the bacteria in the food may occur, but is not mandatory for developing botulism, as the presence of the toxin alone is sufficient to cause illness. Because the toxin causes the illness, foodborne botulism is often described as a food intoxication.



The spore stage of *Clostridium botulinum*, a gram-positive, endospore-forming, rod bacteria that causes botulism (food poisoning) and wound infections, is shown. *© Visuals Unlimited/ Corbis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

NEUROTOXIN: A poison that interferes with nerve function, usually by affecting the flow of ions through the cell membrane.

SPORE: A dormant form assumed by some bacteria, such as anthrax, that enable the bacterium to survive high temperatures, dryness, and lack of nourishment for long periods of time. Under proper conditions, the spore may revert to the actively multiplying form of the bacteria.

Rarely, botulism can also be caused by the infection of *C. botulinum* in an open wound. Growth of the bacteria deep in the tissues leads to the production of the toxin, which then spreads via the bloodstream.

Symptoms of botulism are produced when the toxin enters the bloodstream. The toxin blocks the production of a neurotransmitter called acetylcholine, a chemical that bridges the physical gap between nerve cells and so aids in the transmission of impulses from nerve to nerve. As nerves are affected and paralysis occurs, a person experiences difficulty seeing, talking, and swallowing, and can become nauseous.

C. botulinum is one of a few types of bacteria that can produce a structure known as a spore. A spore is a form of the bacterium that is non-growing but which can persist in that form for a long time and in conditions of excess heat, dryness, and other harsh environments that would kill the normally growing cell. The spore form allows the organism to survive inhospitable conditions and then, when conditions improve, such as in canned food or inside the body, the bacteria can resume growth, division, and toxin production.

Scope and Distribution

Botulism is a fairly rare illness. In the United States, for example, only about 100 cases have been reported each year since the 1990s. Most cases are due to the improper canning of foods at home.

The different forms of the botulism toxin display some differences in their geography. In the United States, type A botulism, which is the most severe, occurs most often in western regions, particularly in the Rocky Mountains. Type B toxin, whose symptoms tend to be less severe, is more common in the eastern United States. Type E toxin is found more in the bacteria that live in fresh water sediments. The reasons for their different distributions is not clear.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis of botulism is complicated by the fact that the disease is infrequently seen. A physician may have little experience in dealing with the illness. As well, in its early stages, botulism has symptoms that are similar to other ailments such as Guillain-Barré syndrome and stroke. Both of these considerations sometimes lead to a delayed diagnosis of botulism.

Diagnosis involves the detection of toxin in the infected person's blood, which can be accomplished using specific immune components, or antibodies. An antibody to the specific botulism toxin will react with the toxin, producing a visible clump of material. As well, sometimes living bacteria can be recovered from the feces.

Treatment for botulism often involves the administration of an antibody-containing antitoxin that blocks the binding of the toxin to the nerve cells. With time, paralysis fades. However, recovery can take many weeks. If botulism is suspected soon after exposure to the bacteria, the stomach contents can be emptied to remove potentially contaminated undigested food. When lung muscles have been affected, a patient may need mechanical assistance in breathing.

Impacts and Issues

A century ago, botulism was frequently a death sentence—one of every two people who became ill with it died. In 2007, of the approximately 100 people predicted to become ill with botulism in the United States, eight will die. In contrast to some other diseases that take a toll on the underdeveloped of the world, botulism is more prevalent in developed regions, particularly where food is processed, canned, and sold.

Botulism does have significance in its potential as a bioterrorist threat. This potent killing power of the *Clostridium* neurotoxins has been recognized for decades. During World War II (1939–1945), several nations including the United States and Canada experimented with the development of botulism toxin-based weapons. Sprays that contained the spore form of *C. botulinum* were developed and tested. The idea was that inhalation of the spores would lead to resumed growth of the bacteria and production of the lethal neurotoxin. The sprays were never used in battle.

Botulinum toxin A is exploited cosmetically as a means of lessening wrinkles. Injection of Botox® relaxes muscles, which can produce a more youthful appearance. The American Society of Aesthetic and Plastic Surgery (ASAPS) estimates that the worldwide market for Botox® is around 900 million dollars annually, and over two million Botox® procedures are performed per year. Botulinum toxin A has also shown promise in lessening dystonia (muscle spasms) that occurs in cerebral palsy, and in treating crossed eyes (strabismus).

In 1976, a form of botulism was recognized in infants in the United States that stemmed from babies ingesting *C. botulinum* spores, which colonized their intestinal tract (an infant's intestinal tract is less acidic than that of an adult) and eventually produced botulinum toxin. Evidence indicated that honey was linked with both the reservoir of the bacteria and the resulting disease. Since that time, honey-linked infant botulism has been reported in other countries, prompting recommendations from the American Academy of Pediatrics for all infants less than 12 months of age not to receive foods containing honey.

As botulism is a rare occurrence, The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) maintains a central supply of antitoxin against botulism. State health departments consult with the CDC for release of the antitoxin when a case has been reported to them. Fast action is essential, as the antitoxin reduces the severity of the symptoms only if given early.

When a food source of botulism is discovered, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) issues a class-1 recall of the product. Class-1 recalls are reserved for dangerous or defective products that could cause serious health problems or death, and involve communication between the FDA, manufacturer or supplier, and the public to remove the product from the market, or remove the food source from the food supply. For instance, in February 2007, the FDA issued a warning against consumption of Earth's Best Organic 2 Apple Peach Barley Breakfast baby food because of the risk of contamination with *Clostridium botulinum*. The manufacturer initiated a recall of the food, and working in conjunction with the FDA, removed the potentially contaminated baby food jars from store shelves, began an awareness campaign, and tracked and corrected the source of the contamination. As of March 2007, a potential outbreak of infant botulism was prevented, and no cases of infant botulism were reported from ingesting Earth's Best Organic baby food.

IN CONTEXT: BOTULINUM TOXIN AS A BIOLOGICAL WEAPON

According to the CDC, aerosolized botulinum toxin is a possible mechanism for a bioterrorism attack. As yet inhalational botulism cannot, however, be clinically differentiated from the naturally occurring forms. What factors might assist or complicate the definitive initial determination of such an attack?

Key clinical or epidemiological factors assisting the determination of an intentional attack:

- Inhalational botulism does not occur naturally.
- Botulism is not transmissible from person-to-person.
- Indications of intentional release of a biologic agent aerosolized botulinum toxin might include an unusual geographic clustering of illness (e.g., persons who attended the same public event or gathering).
- Symptoms begin within six hours to two weeks after exposure (often within 12 to 36 hours).

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

See Also *Bacterial Disease; Food-borne Disease and Food Safety.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Prescott, Lansing M., John P. Harley, Donald A. Klein. *Microbiology*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2004.

Tortora, Gerard J., Berell R. Funke, Christine L. Case. *Microbiology: An Introduction*. New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2006.

Websites

U.S. Food and Drug Administration. "*Clostridium botulinum*." <http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~mow/chap2.html> (accessed March 1, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Bovine Spongiform Encephalopathy (“Mad Cow” Disease)

Introduction

Bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE) is a progressive infection of the brain and nervous system found in cattle. It is often known as “mad cow” disease, because of the way affected animals stagger. There is much evidence that BSE can be transmitted from cattle to humans via the consumption of infected beef, resulting in an invariably fatal brain disorder called variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (vCJD). An epidemic of BSE in the United Kingdom (U.K.) in the 1980s and 1990s has been linked to several cases of the human form of vCJD, mainly among younger people. The impact of BSE on Britain’s farmers and beef industry was severe, as countries rushed to boycott imports of meat that might have come from infected cows. Although the BSE epidemic has largely died away, occasional cases still appear around the world. Meanwhile, many scientific questions on how BSE is transmitted remain unanswered.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

BSE is a relatively new disease of cattle which was first identified in the United Kingdom in 1986. It proved to be one of a group of diseases called the transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs). On post-mortem examination with a light microscope, the brain tissue of an animal with a TSE shows a characteristic spongy appearance because the pathology of the disease creates holes within the brain tissue—hence the term “spongiform.”

TSEs affect other animals, including humans. For instance scrapie, a TSE found in sheep, has been known since the eighteenth century and is found at a low level in many parts of the world. The name comes from the tendency of animals with the disease to scrape their fleece against trees and bushes. TSEs have also been found in mink (transmissible mink encephalopathy) and in mule, deer, and elk (chronic wasting disease). CJD is the most significant TSE in humans; it is very rare, usually occurring at a rate of around one per million of the population. The cases that arose from exposure to

Cows at a farm in Washington state were quarantined in 2003 after one of them was found to have bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), better known as “mad cow” disease. Meat from the infected cow was processed and sold to consumers before the positive test results were received, prompting a recall of the meat. *© Kevin P. Casey/Corbis.*

BSE in the United Kingdom from the mid–1990s represent a new form of CJD.

BSE occurs in adult animals of both sexes. The incubation period—the time lag from exposure to the appearance of symptoms—of TSEs is usually measured in years. Therefore the disease is rarely seen in very young animals, even though they may be infected. Animals with BSE exhibit abnormalities of movement and posture and changes in mental state which an experienced vet or farmer would be able to detect. The disease lasts for several weeks and is invariably both progressive and fatal.

TSEs can be transmitted from one animal to another. However, there is a species barrier, which means that transmission within species is more likely than transmission between species. For instance, there are no known instances of scrapie being transmitted to humans.

It is widely (but not universally) accepted that BSE arose in cattle from exposure to feed derived from sheep infected with scrapie. Adding protein from the carcasses of ruminants (sheep and cows) to animal feed is a long-established practice. The U.K. BSE Inquiry, which was set up to look at the underlying causes of the BSE epidemic, concluded that changes in the way the feed was processed probably allowed infectious material to survive and infect the cattle consuming it. From the time the BSE epidemic first took hold there were fears that the disease might be transmitted to humans through exposure to meat and meat products (such as hamburgers) from infected animals. These fears were realized with the announcement of the first case of variant CJD in 1996.

However, it has been hard to prove for certain that exposure to BSE causes variant CJD. This is because the infective agent in TSEs is an unusual entity known as a prion. Research on infected tissue has shown that prions are not destroyed by either heat (which would destroy bacteria) or ultra-violet light (which would destroy viruses). Prions are an abnormal form of a protein that is found normally in the brain. When it infects the brain, the prion corrupts the normal prion protein molecules. These newly formed abnormal prion protein molecules go on to corrupt further normal prion molecules, beginning a cascade effect. The accumulation of more and more abnormal prion molecules triggers the brain damage that produces the symptoms of TSEs.

Scope and Distribution

By September 1, 2006, approximately 183,139 cases of BSE had been confirmed in the United Kingdom, according to the Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs. The epidemic peaked in 1992, with 36,680 confirmed cases in that year. In 2006, there were only 15 cases.

Although BSE has reached epidemic levels only in the United Kingdom, it has affected other countries too. The World Organization for Animal Health collects data on BSE. While there have been no cases, to date, in Australia, New Zealand, Africa and much of Asia, there have been several in European countries such as France, Germany, Ireland, and Portugal. As of August 23, 2006, there had been twelve confirmed cases of BSE in North America, nine in Canada, and three in the United States.

WORDS TO KNOW

ENCEPHALOPATHY: Any abnormality in the structure or function of the brain.

PRIONS: Prions are proteins that are infectious. Indeed, the name prion is derived from "proteinaceous infectious particles." The discovery of prions and confirmation of their infectious nature overturned a central dogma that infections were caused by intact organisms, particularly microorganisms such as bacteria, fungi, parasites, or viruses. Since prions lack genetic material, the prevailing attitude was that a protein could not cause disease.

TRANSMISSION: Microorganisms that cause disease in humans and other species are known as pathogens. The transmission of pathogens to a human or other host can occur in a number of ways, depending upon the microorganism.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no treatment for BSE, but much has been done to prevent its spread—both to other cattle in a herd and to humans. The government of the United Kingdom has introduced a number of measures to keep BSE under control. In July 1988, it imposed a ban on feeding cattle with potentially infected material. This measure kept animals that were not already infected from becoming infected and has been adopted in many countries, including those who are currently BSE-free. This measure alone made a major contribution to halting the growth of the U.K. BSE epidemic. However, because BSE has a long incubation time, there was a lag between introducing this ban and a fall in the number of cases. This is why the number of cases continued to rise from 1988, despite the ban. In 1997, the U.K. also began a selective cull—slaughtering those animals that were at risk of contracting BSE. This further reduces the risk of the spread of infection.

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

Variant CJD (vCJD) is the human form of bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE) disease that emerged in Britain in the mid–1990s. The vCJD outbreak in Britain echoed the emergence in the 1950s of a strange and invariably fatal condition called kuru (meaning "trembling with fear") among the Fore people of New Guinea. After years of living among the group, American doctor Carlton Gajdusek (1923–)—who went on to win the Nobel Prize for Medicine or Physiology in 1976—came to the conclusion that the disease was transmitted in the ritualistic eating of the brains of the deceased, a Fore funeral custom. He suspected that one of these brains, at least, must have belonged to someone with sporadic or familial CJD. There were some striking parallels between the emergence of vCJD and its links with the earlier epidemic bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE or mad cow disease), one of the transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs) found in cattle. The latter prompted a public enquiry to investigate the cause of the outbreak.

The picture that emerged from the inquiry was, briefly, that vCJD is, indeed, the human form of BSE (mad cow disease). The Inquiry concluded that infected material—either from sheep infected with scrapie (a sheep TSE) or from BSE-infected cattle—was incorporated into cattle feed. Further, it was found that changes in the processing of carcasses used for animal feed were the likely cause of this contamination. Fortunately, the epidemic, though tragic for the victims and their families, was limited by steps such as the wholesale slaughtering of infected cattle and a ban on imports of British beef.

The inquiry led to a variety of developments. For example, in an attempt to restore public confidence, a Food Standards Agency was set up in the United Kingdom to advise on food safety issues. Regulatory authorities are moving towards eliminating animal products from the manufacture of medicines and other items destined for human consumption. The BSE inquiry also led to changes in the supply of blood and blood products, in an attempt to screen out donors that are, unknowingly, carrying vCJD.

The spread of BSE to humans has been limited by restricting imports of meat and meat products that might be infected. In 1996, cattle over 30 months old were no longer allowed to enter the food chain—instead, they were incinerated after slaughter. This ban has now been lifted and replaced by BSE testing—only meat that tests negative can enter the food supply.

Impacts and Issues

The BSE epidemic hit British farmers and the United Kingdom meat industry hard. In 1996, the government of the U.K. admitted a link between BSE and variant CJD, and shortly afterward, France and many other European countries announced a ban on imports of British beef and related products. South Africa, Singapore, and South Korea soon joined in. The Meat and Livestock Commission stated that the bans had caused half of the U.K.'s slaughterhouse workers to lose their jobs. The import bans were gradually lifted over the next few years, as the BSE epidemic began to die down. But it has taken many years for British beef sales to begin to recover, both at home and abroad.

In 1998, a public inquiry into BSE and variant CJD began. This concluded with lessons to be learned to stop such a catastrophe from happening again. People in Britain and elsewhere are now more aware of safety issues around food. They wish to know where their food comes from and what is in it. In 2000, the government of the United Kingdom set up the Food Standards Agency, a department that looks after public health and consumer interests with respect to food. This was a response to public distrust generated by the way the government was seen to have handled the BSE crisis. Formerly, food and agriculture had been the responsibility of the same department, which many felt marginalized the interests of the consumer.

BSE has substantial economic impact. During the 1990s BSE outbreak in the United Kingdom, hundreds of animals were destroyed. Quarantined farms and slaughterhouses lost business. New regulations governing cattle feed and BSE testing programs proved expensive to implement. However, in most nations where BSE is detected, the most significant economic impact is the loss of revenue from the export of beef products. Beginning in 2001, several nations restricted the import of American beef products, concerned that the United States beef industry lacked sufficient testing and identification methods for BSE. In 2003, when the U.S. Department of Agriculture announced that BSE had been discovered in one cow in Washington state, approximately 60 nations temporarily banned the import of U.S. beef. The infected cow was later traced to a herd in Canada, but the discovery of BSE in the North American herd resulted in approximately $4.7 billion in beef industry losses that year.

See Also *Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease-nv; Prion Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

BSE Inquiry. "The BSE Inquiry: The Report." <http://www.bseinquiry.gov.uk/report/index.htm> (accessed January 26, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "BSE (Bovine Spongiform Encephalopathy, or Mad Cow Disease)." January 4, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/bse> (accessed January 26, 2007).

Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs. "BSE: Frequently Asked Questions." October 3, 2006 <http://www.defra.gov.uk/animalh/bse/faq.html> (accessed January 26, 2007).

Food Standards Agency. "BSE." <http://www.food.gov.uk/bse> (accessed January 26, 2007).

Meat and Livestock Commission. "Beef Information." October, 2005 <http://www.meatmatters.com/sections/britishmeat/beef_information.php> (accessed January 26, 2007).

U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). "Commonly Asked Questions about BSE in Products Regulated by FDA's Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition (CFSAN)." September 14, 2005 <http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~comm/bsefaq.html> (accessed January 26, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Brucellosis

Introduction

Brucellosis (broo-sell-OH-sis) is a disease that is caused by a variety of bacteria in the genus *Brucella*. Swine, cattle, and sheep can be directly infected by brucellosis. Humans can develop brucellosis indirectly by contact with infected animals (brucellosis is a zoonotic infection) or by consuming milk or dairy products that are contaminated with the bacteria.

Vaccination of animals born and raised in the United States against brucellosis is required, which helps protect both the nation's livestock and humans most at risk of being secondarily infected. However, monitoring of imported livestock is necessary to prevent introducing brucellosis into a population of animals, as vaccination programs are not in effect in every country.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Brucellosis was named after David Bruce, a researcher who isolated the organism in 1887 from five sick British soldiers stationed on the island of Malta. The designation of brucellosis as Malta fever recognizes this origin as

Wild bison are shown grazing in a small Montana town near the border of Yellowstone National Park. Bison are captured as they try to leave the park, and those testing positive for brucellosis are sent to slaughter. Humans who come into contact with infected animals can contract brucellosis. © *William Campbell/Sygma/Corbis.*

well as the 1905 description of human brucellosis cases in Malta from *Brucella*-contaminated unpasteurized milk. The disease is also known as undulant fever, as the fever tends to increase and decrease with time. Brucellosis dates back much further than these formal descriptions. Descriptions from the time of Hippocrates (Greek physician and philosopher born around 460 BC) are now thought to refer to brucellosis.

A number of different species of the bacterium are responsible for the disease in various livestock. *Brucella melitensis* infects goats and sheep, *B. suis* infects pigs and in caribou, *B. abortus* causes the disease in cattle, bison, and elk, *B. ovis* also infects sheep, and *B. canis* causes the disease in dogs.

Brucella are shaped somewhat like a football. In contrast to many disease-causing bacteria that have an outer coating called a capsule, *Brucella* lack a capsule. A capsule can help shield a bacterium from host defenses such as antibodies. Lacking a capsule, *Brucella* would be exposed to the body's defenses if not for its infection strategy. Instead, the bacteria cause infection by entering host cells. Within host cells, the bacteria are shielded and are able to grow and multiply.

The species of *Brucella* that are capable of causing brucellosis in humans are *B. melitensis*, *B. abortis*, and *B. suis.* The infection that develops in dogs is not transmitted to humans. Humans acquire the infection indirectly, usually by handling infected animals or even a carcass; if a person has a cut or abrasion in the skin, especially on the hands, the bacteria easily gain access to the bloodstream. However, entry is possible even in the absence of a wound, as the bacteria are able to invade skin cells and reach the bloodstream. Another route of infection is via contaminated moist soil and hay. In these environments, the bacteria can remain alive and capable of infection for months. As well, people are infected by drinking unpasteurized milk, or eating cheese or ice cream that has been made from unpasteurized milk. Finally, the organism can be inhaled and the bacteria spread to the bloodstream following invasion of lung cells.

Person-to-person spread via breastfeeding and during sex can occur, but is rare. It is possible that the transplantation of contaminated tissue could cause brucellosis.

When the bacteria enter the bloodstream, they migrate to lymph nodes. Normally, lymph nodes such as those located in the neck and the armpit function to destroy invading bacteria and viruses. However, *Brucella* circumvents this and invades the lymph node cells. From there, the bacteria can spread to the spleen, bone marrow, and liver. Tissue irritation and organ damage occurs. In severe cases, the lining of the heart can be infected.

The time from exposure to the appearance of symptoms is usually around three weeks. Symptoms include general feelings of weakness and tiredness, muscle pain, chills, and fever. The fever and chills can subside and recur during the illness. Brucellosis is lethal in about 10% of cases, usually because of heart infection.

WORDS TO KNOW

CULL: A cull is the selection, often for destruction, of a part of an animal population. Often done just to reduce numbers, a widespread cull was carried out during the epidemic of bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE or mad cow disease) in the United Kingdom during the 1980s

NOTIFIABLE DISEASES: Diseases that the law requires must be reported to health officials when diagnosed, including active tuberculosis and several sexually transmitted diseases; also called reportable diseases.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

Scope and Distribution

The prevalence of human brucellosis is related to the prevalence of the infection in domestic and wild animal populations. In countries such as the U.S. and Canada, where stringent monitoring and infection control measures are in place and where vaccination programs have been operating for years, brucellosis in both livestock and humans is rare. Culling (slaughtering) of infected animals in some North American wild elk and bison populations has been carried out to ensure that the infection does not spread from the wild populations to livestock.

Infection is most common in those who come into frequent contact with domestic and wild animals; veterinarians, cattlemen, and workers in slaughterhouses. In the U.S., there are about 100 of human brucellosis cases per year, representing one out of every three million Americans.

Elsewhere in the world, brucellosis is more frequent in countries where agriculture involves more people in closer contact with unvaccinated livestock, and where infection control precautions are not as stringent. Areas considered to be high risk according to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) are China, India, Peru, Mexico, Eastern Europe, the Mediterranean, the Caribbean, and the Middle East.

Age and race do not influence the occurrence of brucellosis. In developing countries where mostly women tend livestock, the disease is initially more prevalent in women. In developing countries where mostly men tend livestock, the situation is reversed.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

The Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases/Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases states that “direct person-to-person spread of brucellosis is extremely rare. Mothers who are breast-feeding may transmit the infection to their infants. Sexual transmission has also been reported. For both sexual and breast-feeding transmission, if the infant or person at risk is treated for brucellosis, their risk of becoming infected will probably be eliminated within 3 days. Although uncommon, transmission may also occur via contaminated tissue transplantation.”

To prevent infection the CCID and CDC recommend that travelers “do not consume unpasteurized milk, cheese, or ice cream while traveling. If you are not sure that the dairy product is pasteurized, don’t eat it. Hunters and animal herdsman should use rubber gloves when handling viscera of animals.”

As of 2007 there is no vaccine available for humans.

SOURCE: *Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases/Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

In October 2005, The Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases/Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases stated that “for previous 10 years, approximately 100 cases of Brucellosis per year have been reported.”

California, Florida, Texas, and Virginia account for most cases.

“In 2001, the National Brucellosis Eradication Program reported only 3 newly affected cattle herds, compared to 14 herds identified in 2000.”

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

Treatment and Prevention

Brucellosis is suspected based on the symptoms and a history of contact with animals. Confirmation of the infection relies on the recovery of the bacteria from blood samples, bone marrow, or liver tissue. The confirmation step can take months, since *Brucella* grows slowly during laboratory culture. This also poses a hazard for lab personnel, who may be exposed to the bacteria during the incubation period. A quicker means of detecting the bacteria is by the presence of antibodies produced against the infecting bacteria. Antibody production by the host may not be efficient, since the infection takes place inside host cells. But commercially available antibodies can be used to test blood for the presence of the corresponding bacterial component.

Human brucellosis that is caused by *B. abortus* is usually mild and may not require treatment. In contrast, the disease caused by *B. melitensis* and *B. suis* can produce severe, prolonged symptoms if not treated.

Treatment typically involves antibiotics; for adults, different antibiotics are given orally and by injection for several weeks. The intramuscular injections are necessary to allow the antibiotic to penetrate into the host cells to the site of infection.

Prevention is possible because of vaccines. Typically, vaccination of animals is the norm. Control of the disease in animals controls the disease in humans. In fact, two vaccine formulations used for animals contain live but weakened bacteria, and are capable of causing brucellosis if accidentally given to a person.

Multiple episodes of brucellosis among laboratory workers have been reported in the past, mostly from inhaling the bacteria in the confined space of a laboratory. In order to prevent exposure in the laboratory, scientists now study the bacteria using biosafety level three precautions, including gowns, gloves, and performing tests under a biosafety cabinet.

Impacts and Issues

In North America, brucellosis is prevalent in wild elk and bison herds. Trap and slaughter campaigns of affected animals have been accomplished in Montana and in Wood Buffalo National Park, which straddles the Canadian provinces of Alberta and British Columbia. Ironically, the national park was created in the 1920s to protect the declining bison population. The culls, which have been controversial, are aimed at keeping cattle and swine herds free of brucellosis.

While brucellosis in commercial livestock is unusual in North America, the continent is at risk if infected animals or food products are imported. Preventive measures include the vaccination of all animals that are raised for food. An individual can minimize their risk of brucellosis by not eating animal products from suspect countries and not eating unpasteurized diary products.

Brucellosis is also recognized as a potential biological threat because it can be spread through the air. There is a historical basis for this categorization. Following World War II (1939–1945), the United States military developed a weapon that would disperse *B. abortus* and *B. suis* upon detonation. The weapon, which was the first biological weapon developed by the U.S., was intended in part to cripple an enemy’s livestock-based agriculture. The weapons program was ended by President Richard Nixon in 1967. Today, scientists are working to develop a rapid diagnostic test for brucellosis in the event of a suspected biological attack, and brucellosis remains among the list of nationally notifiable diseases.

See Also *Animal Importation; Bacterial Disease; Bioterrorism; Public Health and Infectious Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Drexler, Madeline. *Secret Agents: The Menace of Emerging Infections.* New York: Penguin, 2003.

Hart, Tony. *Microterrors: The Complete Guide to Bacterial, Viral and Fungal Infections that Threaten Our Health.* Tonawanda: Firefly Books, 2004.

Periodicals

Kozukeev, Turatbek, B., S. Ajeilat, M. Favorov. "Risk factors for Brucellosis - Leylek and Kadamjay districts, Batken Oblast, Kyrgyzstan, January - November, 2003." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly.* 55(SUP01): 31–34 (2006).

Brian Hoyle

Burkholderia

Introduction

Burkholderia refers to a genus of bacteria. The genus is important from the standpoint of infectious disease because several species cause illness in humans and animals. *Burkholderia cepacia* can cause a lung infection in people who have cystic fibrosis. *B. pseudomallei* causes melioidosis, an infection of the blood that can result in pain and tissue destruction at different sites in the body. *B. mallei* causes an illness known as glanders, a respiratory illness that occurs primarily in horses, mules, and donkeys and can be transmitted to humans. Glanders infection is often lethal in people.

Infections such as meliodoisis are reaching epidemic levels in various regions of the world, and the respiratory infection caused by *B. cepacia* is a main health threat in those with cystic fibrosis. Adding to the concern about *Burkholderia*, several species are worrisome because of their documented use as biological warfare agents.

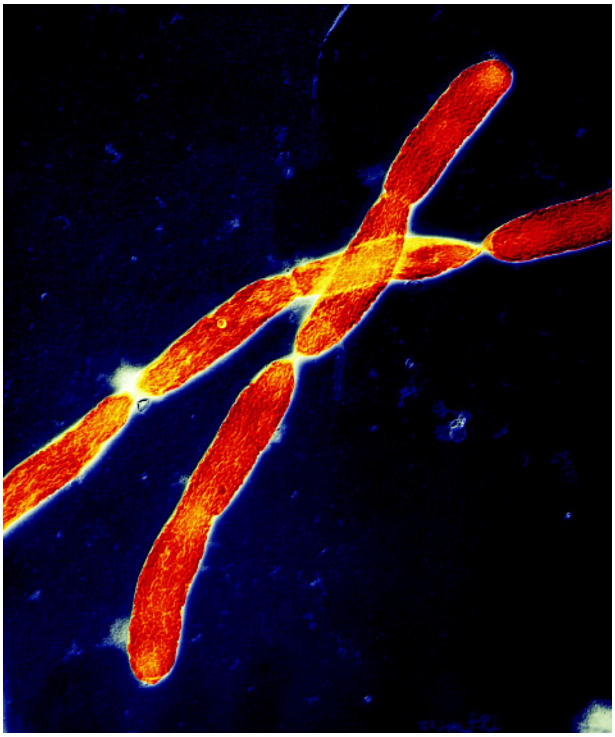
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

B. cepacia was discovered in the 1940s by Cornell University researcher Walter Burkholder during an investigation into a disease outbreak in New York State. By the 1980s, the organism was recognized as being able to colonize and form an infection in the lungs of people with cystic fibrosis. Then, the infection was regarded as being minor, compared to that caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Indeed, at first the organism was not recognized as a unique genus, and was called *Pseudomonas cepacia*. However, only a decade later, the uniqueness and seriousness of *B. cepacia* in cystic fibrosis had been recognized.

The lung infection caused by *B. cepacia* can become chronic. Over years, even decades, the infection will alternately become severe, leading to difficulty in breathing, and less severe, when it is managed more effectively by antibiotics and other forms of therapy. The lung infection is not contagious.

Glanders is another lung infection that, in contrast, can be spread from person to person by coughing. If not treated, the infection can be lethal within days. A less invasive form of the infection can require months from which to fully recover.

Glanders is not a significant health concern currently in North America and Europe, as imported livestock is monitored for the disease. However, it is still prevalent in



Burkholderia mallei, the bacterium that causes glanders, is shown. An infectious disease, glanders primarily affects horses, donkeys, and mules. *Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Africa, Asia, the Middle East, Central America, and South America.

Melioidosis is a third *Burkholderia*-mediated disease that is caused by *B. pseudomallei*. It is also a disease of the respiratory tract; indeed, it displays symptoms that are similar to glanders. However, melioidosis and glanders differ in how they are acquired.

Melioidosis is prevalent in tropical climates. For example, the disease is endemic—it is frequently present year-round—in the Southeast Asian countries of Cambodia, Thailand, Vietnam, Laos, Malaysia, and Myanmar, and is also prevalent in the northern portion of Australia. As well, the disease is present but less prevalent in the South Pacific, India, Africa, and the Middle East.

Elsewhere in the world, melioidosis does occur, but only sporadically. Cases have been reported from Mexico, Equador, Panama, Haiti, Brazil, Peru, and in the U.S. states of Hawaii and Georgia. In the U.S., only a few cases are reported each year, according to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, and these typically involve people who have been traveling in areas where melioidosis is prevalent.

Many animals are susceptible to melioidosis including horses, sheep, cattle, goats, dogs, and cats. The disease can be transferred from the infected animals to humans, hence it is a zoonosis. As well, the disease can be spread from person to person. The disease can also be acquired by drinking contaminated water or coming into contact with contaminated water in a crop field.

Melioidosis can occur just in the respiratory tract or, if the blood becomes infected, can become more widespread in the body. The symptoms of fever, muscle or bone ache, headache, and weight loss may appear in only a few days, or may take years to become evident.

Scope and Distribution

Burkholderia are common environmental organisms and so are common in many areas of the world.

Some types of *Burkholderia* infections are at epidemic proportions in tropical regions and are less common, but nevertheless present, elsewhere in the world. The distribution of *B. cepacia* is global. It is a health threat in persons with cystic fibrosis worldwide.

Treatment and Prevention

Melioidosis is diagnosed by isolating the organism from the blood, urine, sputum, or from sores on the skin. The illness is treated using antibiotics. As of 2007, no vaccine exists to protect people from melioidosis. Prevention consists of minimizing contact with potential sources of the organism.

Similarly, *B. cepacia* lung infections and glanders are treated using appropriate antibiotics and, in the case of cystic fibrosis, other treatments designed to lessen the clogging of the lungs with the overproduced mucous.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

BIOLOGICAL WARFARE: Biological warfare, as defined by The United Nations, is the use of any living organism (e.g. bacterium, virus) or an infective component (e.g., toxin), to cause disease or death in humans, animals, or plants. In contrast to bioterrorism, biological warfare is defined as the "state-sanctioned" use of biological weapons on an opposing military force or civilian population.

COLONIZE: Colonize refers to the process where a microorganism is able to persist and grow at a given location.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

IN CONTEXT: BIOLOGICAL WEAPON THREATS

B. mallei and *B. pseudomallei* are considered potential biological weapons. Horses and other animals used in the transport of troops and military gear were deliberately infected with glanders during World War I (1915–1918), and it was used by the Japanese to infect prisoners during World War II (1939–1945).

Impacts and Issues

Melioidosis is an important disease in some tropical regions of the world. The more persistent form of the illness can be debilitating, disrupting family life and making it impossible for a person to work.

B. cepacia is an important disease-causing organism for millions of people who have cystic fibrosis. The lung infection can persist for decades, and the long-term attempts by the host's immune system to destroy the infection can progressively damage the lungs to such an extent that survival is threatened.

B. cepacia lung infections also can similarly and progressively lessen lung function. Additionally, the attempts to eradicate the infection using antibiotics can be less than effective, which can result in the development of bacteria that are resistant to the antibiotics being used. This can make subsequent treatment more difficult and, as more potent antibiotics may be necessary, increasingly expensive.

B. mallei and *B. pseudomallei* are considered potential biological weapons. Both organisms can be resistant to a variety of antibiotics, which can make it more difficult to treat the infections they cause. Also, because they can infect both livestock and humans, they have been exploited during wartime.

Some species of *Burkholderia* are beneficial. In particular, *B. cepacia* and *B. fungorum* are able to degrade certain pesticides that otherwise tend to persist in the environment and cause ecological damage. This environmental benefit comes with the risk that those exposed to, for example, sprays containing the organisms, could be at risk to develop illness. However, under controlled conditions of use, *Burkholderia* can be useful in reducing pesticide contamination.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Bioterrorism; Glanders (Melioidosis); Opportunistic Infection.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

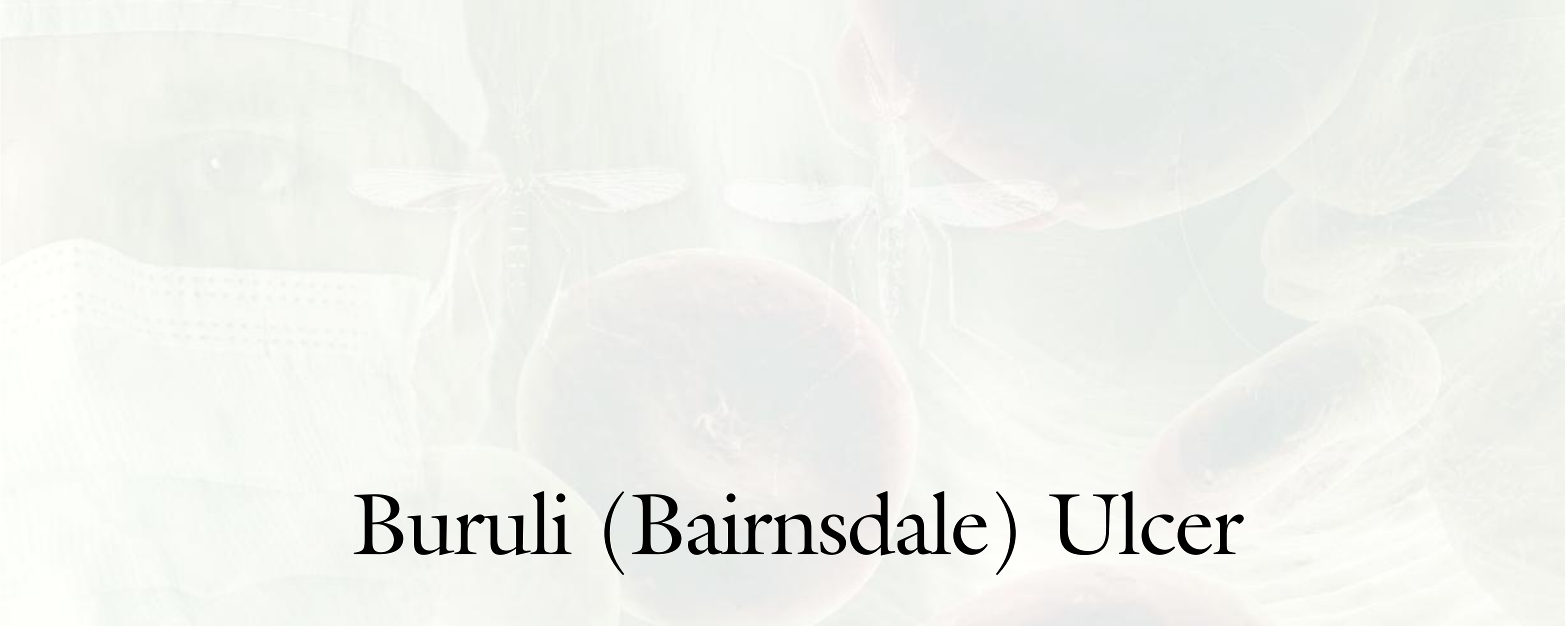
Black, Jacquelyn. *Microbiology: Principles and Explorations.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

DiClaudio, Dennis. *The Hypochondriac's Pocket Guide to Horrible Diseases You Probably Already Have.* New York: Bloomsbury, 2005.

Websites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "What You Should Know about *Burkholderia cepacia* infection." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/blastomycosis_t.htm> (accessed March 25, 2007).

Brian Hoyle



Buruli (Bairnsdale) Ulcer

Introduction

Buruli ulcer, also called Bairnsdale ulcer, is a chronic, infectious disease caused by the bacterium *Mycobacterium ulceranus.* This bacterium is a member of the family Mycobacteriaceae, the same family that includes the bacteria responsible for tuberculosis and leprosy.

Infection from the disease leads to deformation and destruction of blood vessels, nerves, soft skin tissues, and, occasionally, bones. Large ulcers often form on the body, usually on the legs or arms. The name Buruli is often associated with the infection because of its widespread incidence during the 1960s in Buruli County (now Nakasongola District) of Uganda.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Buruli ulcer disease was first discovered in Africa. It was described by Scottish explorer James Augustus Grant (1827–1892) in the book *A Walk Across Africa* that he published after his equatorial African journeys. During an expedition, Grant described his infected leg as being stiff and swollen and, later, discharging bodily fluids. His account is considered the first factual description of the disease.

In the late 1890s, British physician Sir Albert Cook described skin ulcers found on Uganda natives and, in the late 1940s, Australian professor Peter MacCallum described the disease in the Bairnsdale district of southwestern Australia. These two scientists are credited with first discovering that *M. ulceranus* caused the disease.

The *M. ulceranus* bacterium is commonly found in still or slowly moving water sources (such as swamps, ponds, and lakes), during flooding, and in small aquatic animals (such as insects). Humans are infected by contact with insects or with contaminated materials from water sources. Scientists have not yet determined the mode of transmission. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), infections occur in all ages and genders, however, most infections occur in children under 15 years of age, probably because they spend more time swimming in bodies of water.

Infection usually begins as a nodule within subcutaneous fat (the pre-ulcerative stage). Eventually, fat cells die due to exposure to countless numbers of mycobacteria (any rod-shaped bacteria of genus *Mycobacterium*). The infection can also occur as a skin ulceration—a pimple, or nodule, on the skin (dermis). In both cases, the infection is usually painless and without fever.

Later, larger lesions develop on the skin (the ulcerative stage). The infection may heal on its own, but more commonly the disease slowly progresses with more ulcers and resultant scarring. As much as 15% of the body can be covered eventually with ulcers. As this happens, destructive and dangerous toxins called mycolactone attack the immune system and destroy skin, tissues, and bones. According to the WHO, scarring of the skin can create permanent disabilities—most commonly, restricted movement of limbs.

This disease primarily affects the limbs, but also can occur on other exposed areas. The WHO states that about 90% of lesions occur on the limbs and almost 60% occur on the lower limbs. Buruli ulcers do not occur on the hands or feet of adults. In children, the disease can occur anywhere. A painful form of the disease produces severe swelling of limbs and fever. The infection, in this case, can occur anytime—after simple wounds to more serious physical traumas. Patients not treated early often suffer long-term disabilities, such as impaired joint movement and disfiguring cosmetic problems.

Scope and Distribution

Historically, Buruli ulcer has occurred in over 30 countries, primarily those with subtropical and tropical climates. These countries are in central and western Africa (such as Benin, Cameroon, Congo, Ghana, the Ivory Coast, Liberia, Nigeria, Uganda, and Zaire), Central

WORDS TO KNOW

BACTERIOLOGICAL STAIN: A bacterial subclass of a particular tribe and genus.

HISTOPATHOLOGY: Histopathology is the study of diseased tissues. A synonym for histopathology is pathologic histology.

LESION: The tissue disruption or the loss of function caused by a particular disease process.

MYCOBACTERIA: *Mycobacteria* is a genus of bacteria that contains the bacteria that causes leprosy and tuberculosis. The bacteria have unusual cell walls that are harder to dissolve than the cell walls of other bacteria.

PCR (POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION): The polymerase chain reaction, or PCR, refers to a widely used technique in molecular biology involving the amplification of specific sequences of genomic DNA.

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

Due to its increased frequency in western Africa and other poorer parts of the world, the WHO, in 1998, highlighted the plight of Buruli ulcer patients with its Global Buruli Ulcer Initiative (GBUI). In 2004, the World Health Assembly resolved to improve the research, detection, and control of Buruli ulcer.

SOURCE: *World Health Organization*

and South America, the western Pacific (including Australia and New Guinea), and Southeast Asia. In recent years, the disease is becoming more frequent in underdeveloped countries, specifically, in the countries of western Africa. In fact, in such areas *M. ulceranus* is the third leading cause of mycobacterial infection in healthy people.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis of Buruli ulcer is usually made from the ulcer that appears in an infected area. Tests performed to confirm a diagnosis of Buruli ulcer include polymerase chain reaction (PCR, a technique that copies a specific DNA [deoxyribonucleic acid] sequence), Ziehl-Neelsen stain (a bacteriological stain that identifies mycobacteria), culture of *M. ulceranus* (ulcer or tissue biopsies), and histopathology (tissue biopsies).

The treatment of Buruli ulcer usually involves the surgical removal of the lesion. This treatment is normally successful when performed early in the infection. Treatment that occurs in later stages of the infection may require long-term care with extensive skin grafting. The WHO recommends that rifampicin and streptomycin, two antibiotic drugs, be used together for eight weeks to reduce the need for surgery. According to WHO statistics, such treatment leads to complete healing of the lesion in nearly 50% of the cases. Currently, experimental drugs are being tested. These include diarylquinoline, epiroprim and dapsone, rifampicin, and sitafloxacin. Besides antibiotic therapy, surgery to remove necrotic tissue, repair skin defects, and correct deformities is often performed.

A bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccination, according to the WHO, provides short-term, but limited, protection. Medical scientists are investigating more advanced forms of vaccinations. For the time being, once Buruli ulcer disease has reached an advanced stage, medical professionals can only help to reduce suffering and disabilities.

Impacts and Issues

Buruli ulcer disease is one of the most ignored tropical diseases. Unfortunately, it is also one of the most treatable tropical diseases. The family of bacteria that cause Buruli ulcer also cause other serious diseases in mammals, including leprosy and tuberculosis. However, these diseases have garnered much more attention that Buruli ulcer disease. Although Buruli ulcer disease is found around the world, there is limited knowledge about the infection. Such ignorance of the disease is most likely due to the fact that it primarily affects the poorest of rural areas, coupled with insufficient knowledge among health workers and the general public about the disease and inaccurate diagnoses. As a result, only limited reporting of the disease occurs.

In February 2007, a team of researchers lead by Australian scientist Tim Stinear published the entire genome sequence of *M. ulceranus.* Such important information should help to stimulate new research into diagnostic tests, drug treatments, and vaccines. In fact, scientists are currently developing a diagnostic test that can be used locally so that treatment can be done quickly and inexpensively.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Tropical Infectious Diseases; World Health Organization (WHO).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Cohen, Jonathan, and William G. Powderly, eds. *Infectious Diseases.* New York: Mosby, 2004.

Lee, Bok Y., ed. *The Wound Management Manual.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2005.

Periodicals

Amofah, George, et al. "Buruli Ulcer in Ghana: Results of a National Case Search." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 8 (February 2002): 167–170. Also available online at: <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/vol8no2/pdf/01-0119.pdf>.

Web Sites

Armed Forces Institute of Pathology. "Buruli Ulcer." February 4, 2004. <http://www.afip.org/Departments/infectious/bu/> (accessed April 24, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Global Buruli Ulcer Initiative (GBUI)." <http://www.who.int/buruli/en/> (accessed April 24, 2007).

Campylobacter Infection

Introduction

The infection that is caused by the group of bacteria in the genus *Campylobacter* is called campylobacteriosis. The infection, which occurs in the intestinal tract of humans, causes abdominal pain and diarrhea. *Campylobacter jejuni* is responsible for more bacterial diarrhea in the United States than any other bacteria, and estimates are that upwards of 14% of all diarrhea worldwide is due to campylobacteriosis.

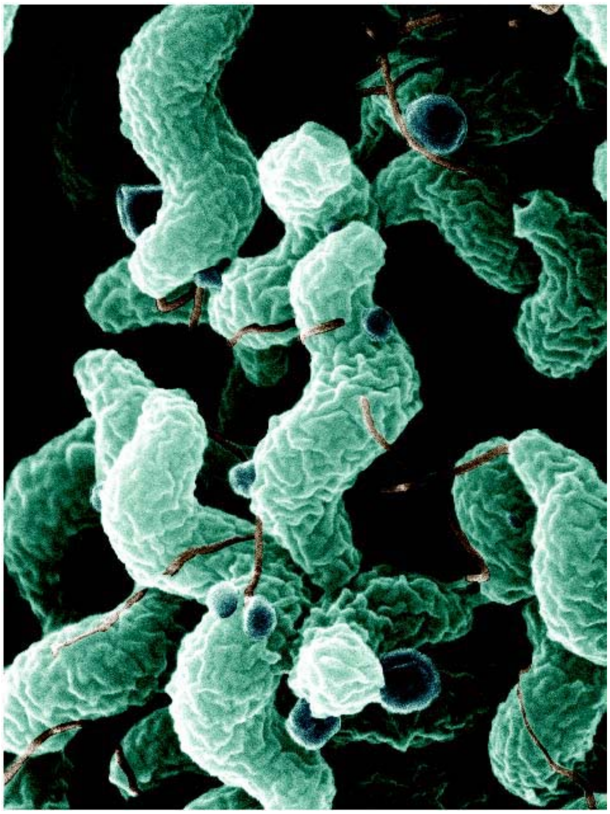
Campylobacter infections typically result from eating contaminated food or drinking contaminated water. The bacteria need time to grow to numbers that produce the symptoms of the infection; this is usually two to five days after the contaminated food or water has been ingested.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

It has been known for decades that *Campylobacter* bacteria are pathogenic, that is, they are capable of causing illness. For example, the capability of the bacteria to cause disease in animals has been known since the first decade of the twentieth century. But, the identity of *Campylobacter* as human pathogens has only been known since the 1980s.

According to the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), more than 10,000 *Campylobacter* infections are reported each year. Considering that the symptoms of nausea, fever, abdominal cramps, vomiting, and diarrhea are often not reported or are not even diagnosed, the actual number of cases is not doubt much higher. Indeed, CDC's own estimate is that the number of infections in the U.S. number in the millions each year.

The symptoms of *Campylobacter* infections are not usually life-threatening in the developed world, where the level of health and sanitary conditions are better than in underdeveloped and developing countries. Most people who become infected recover in about a week or less without the need of medical aid. Still, even in countries such as the United States, severe *Campylobacter* infections occur, producing bloody diarrhea (as intestinal cells are



Campylobacter bacteria are the number one cause of food-related gastrointestinal illness in the United States. To learn more about this pathogen, ARS scientists are sequencing multiple *Campylobacter* genomes. This scanning electron microscope image shows the characteristic spiral, or corkscrew, shape of *C. jejuni* cells and related structures. *Science Source.*

damaged). Some people can have abdominal cramps for several months after an infection. The fluid loss from the diarrhea can dehydrate a person if enough fluids are not taken in; in severe cases that require hospitalization, the fluid may need to be supplied intravenously. Very rarely, a high fever that accompanies an infection will trigger a seizure. Also, in an estimated one case in every 1,000, *Campylobacter* infection contributes to a neurological disorder called Guillain-Barré syndrome, where a person's own immune system attacks the nerves, producing paralysis.

Scope and Distribution

Campylobacter infections are an example of a zoonosis—an illness or disease that is transmitted to humans by animals or animal products. This is because *Campylobacter* is a natural resident in the intestinal tracts of creatures including swine, cattle, dogs, shellfish, and poultry. The animals harbor the bacteria without any ill effect. The bacteria also naturally inhabit the soil.

Treatment and Prevention

Campylobacter is readily susceptible to fairly conventional antibiotics. Treatment is not routinely done, as symptoms usually ease within a few days.

Preventing infection from the ingestion of contaminated food or water is a greater challenge. Poultry are an important source of the infection. Over 50% of raw chicken is contaminated with *Campylobacter*. During slaughter, the intestinal contents (including *Campylobacter*) can contaminate the carcass. If the chicken is undercooked, the bacteria can survive and can cause an infection after being ingested. Fortunately, the bacteria do not tolerate temperatures that are even slightly above room temperature (approximately 68°F [20°C]). Proper cooking of food kills the bacteria. Washing a cutting board after exposure to poultry, refrigeration of raw meat and poultry, and the thawing of meat in the refrigerator or microwave are efficient ways to prevent the transfer of *Campylobacter* to other foods.

Impacts and Issues

Research into *Campylobacter* infections consists primarily of genetic studies that are aimed at detecting genes of particular importance in the infection process. It is hoped that this knowledge will led to strategies to block the infection or to rapidly detect the presence of the bacteria on food products. One example of the latter approach is the incorporation of a detection system into food packaging. The presence of living bacteria is evident as a color change in an indicator strip in the packaging.

The United States Department of Agriculture carries out research on how to prevent *Campylobacter* infection from poultry. Organizations, including the CDC,

WORDS TO KNOW

MYCOTIC: Mycotic means having to do with or caused by a fungus. Any medical condition caused by a fungus is a mycotic condition, also called a mycosis.

PATHOGENS: Agents or microorganisms causing or capable of causing disease.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PREVENTION

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends the following tips for preventing Campylobacteriosis:

Cook all poultry products thoroughly. Make sure that the meat is cooked throughout (no longer pink), any juices run clear, and the inside is cooked to 170°F (77°C) for breast meat, and 180°F (82°C) for thigh meat.

If you are served undercooked poultry in a restaurant, send it back for further cooking.

Wash hands with soap before handling raw foods of animal origin. Wash hands with soap after handling raw foods of animal origin and before touching anything else.

Prevent cross-contamination in the kitchen:

- Use separate cutting boards for foods of animal origin and other foods. Carefully clean all cutting boards, countertops, and utensils with soap and hot water after preparing raw food of animal origin.
- Avoid consuming unpasteurized milk and untreated surface water.
- Make sure that persons with diarrhea, especially children, wash their hands carefully and frequently with soap to reduce the risk of spreading the infection.
- Wash hands with soap after having contact with pet feces.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

maintain surveillance programs that help determine how often *Campylobacter* disease occurs, and factors that favor development of the infection.

In 1982, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) began a national *Campylobacter* surveillance program in 1982. The program was revised in 1996 to further identify risk factors. In 2005 the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) revised its Model Food Code with hopes that the guide could reduce the risk of exposure to contaminated chicken. Exposure is not only risky and costly to those infected, but can potentially ruin or severely impact business and earnings for a commercial food establishment (and impact the people employed, etc.).

As with other pathogenic bacteria, researchers work to discover or manufacture antibiotics that are more adept at killing the bacteria without promoting the development of resistance to the antibiotic by the target bacteria.

See Also *Food-borne Disease and Food Safety.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ketley, Julian. *Campylobacter*. New York: Taylor & Francis, 2005.

Periodicals

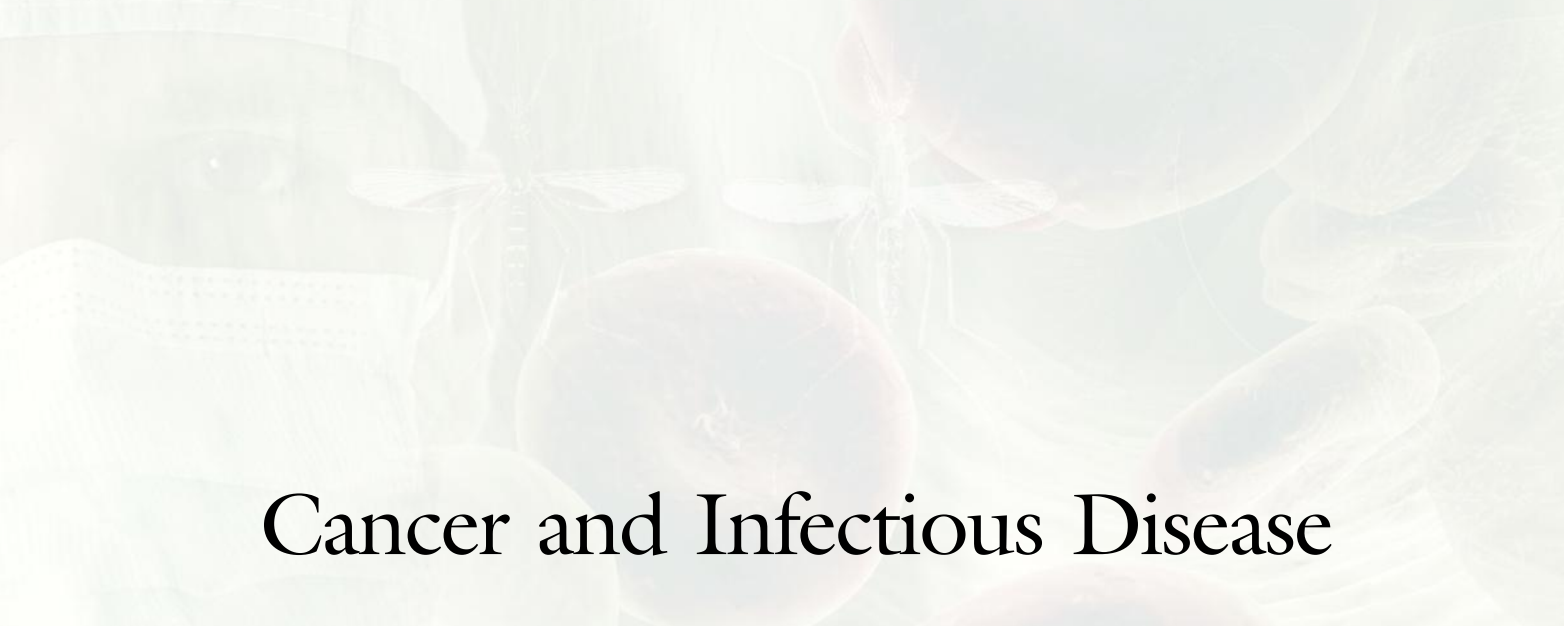
Durham, Sharon. “Finding Solutions to *Campylobacter* in Poultry Production.” *Agricultural Research*. 54 (2006): 10–11.

Price, Lance B., Elizabeth Johnson, Rocia Vailes, Ellen Silbergeld. “Fluoroquinolone-resistant *Campylobacter* Isolates from Conventional and Antibiotic-free Chicken Products.” *Environmental Health Perspectives*. 113 (2005): 557–561.

Web Sites

Food and Drug Administration. “Model Food Code: 2005 Recommendations of the United States Public Health Service Food and Drug Administration.” <http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~dms/fc05-toc.html> (accessed April 2007).

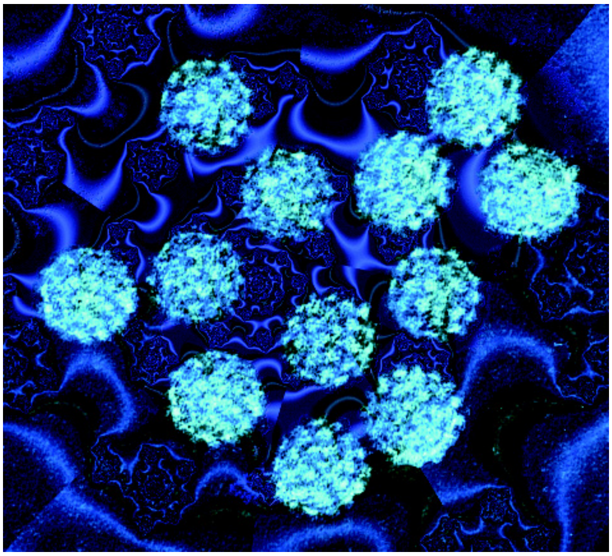
Brian Hoyle



Cancer and Infectious Disease

Introduction

Cancer is not normally considered an infectious disease. Yet there is an important link between some infectious agents and certain cancers. Research has shown that chronic infection with certain viruses, and at least one bacterium, can increase the risk of these cancers. For example, human papillomavirus (HPV) is the leading cause of cervical cancer, while chronic hepatitis B virus or hepatitis C virus infection may develop into liver cancer. These viruses are now listed as carcinogens (cancer-causing substances) by the U.S.—and other—governments. Viruses have a number of ways of causing changes in cells that can cause them to divide uncontrollably, leading to the formation of a tumor. The recognition that infection can play a role in cancer is leading to new approaches to prevention and treatment. For instance, vaccination against HPV is now being introduced for girls and young women, because there is now good evidence that it protects them against cervical cancer in later life.



A colored transmission electron micrograph (TEM) shows human papilloma viruses (HPV), the cause of warts. Warts commonly grow on the hands and soles of the feet, on the mucous membranes, and on the genitals. Papilloma viruses belong to the papovavirus group, most of whose members are capable of inducing non-malignant tumors. HPV has been implicated in certain skin and cervical cancers. *Dr Linda Stannard, Uct/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

History and Scientific Foundations

It has long been known that certain viruses can cause cancer in animals. Danish researchers Wilhelm Ellermann and Oluf Bang discovered a virus that spreads leukemia among chickens in 1908. Then, in 1911, Peyton Rous (1879–1970) of the Rockefeller Institute in New York identified a virus responsible for sarcoma (a cancer of a connective tissue, like bone or cartilage) in chickens. By the 1930s, it was recognized that viruses played a role in several animal cancers. However, the significance of Rous's work for human cancer was not appreciated for many years; he was finally awarded a Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine in 1966.

The first discovery of a human cancer virus came from research carried out in Uganda in the 1950s by the Irish surgeon Denis Burkitt (1911–1993). He discovered a type of cancer of the jaw that affected young children. The disease became known as Burkitt's lymphoma, and it is still the most common tumor among African children. Tumor samples were analyzed by Anthony Epstein back in London, who discovered the presence of a new type of herpes virus, named Epstein-Barr virus (EBV). Originally, it looked as if EBV was carried by mosquitoes, because Burkitt's lymphoma was found in areas where malaria is endemic. EBV infection is very common, affecting around 90% of the world's population, most of whom do not get Burkitt's lymphoma. It is not transmission by mosquitoes, but it is exposure to malaria in combination with EBV infection

WORDS TO KNOW

CARCINOGEN: A carcinogen is any biological, chemical, or physical substance or agent that can cause cancer. There are over one hundred different types of cancer, which can be distinguished by the type of cell or organ that is affected, the treatment plan employed, and the cause of the cancer. Most of the carcinogens that are commonly discussed come from chemical sources artificially produced by humans. Some of the better-known carcinogens are the pesticide DDT (dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane), asbestos, and the carcinogens produced when tobacco is smoked.

RETROVIRUS: Retroviruses are viruses in which the genetic material consists of ribonucleic acid (RNA) instead of the usual deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). Retroviruses produce an enzyme known as reverse transcriptase that can transform RNA into DNA, which can then be permanently integrated into the DNA of the infected host cells.

that allows cancer to develop. This fits what scientists now understand about cancer—that it develops in stages, over a long period of time, under the influence of a combination of different risk factors, both genetic and environmental. EBV has also been linked to other cancers, including nasopharyngeal cancer, which affects the area at the back of the nose, and it also is found in around half of Hodkgin's lymphoma cases.

The human papillomaviruses (HPVs) are a large group of viruses that can cause warts on the skin, mouth, and genitals. HPV infection is very common among people who are sexually active, and certain strains can cause cervical cancer. Most women who have cervical cancer show signs of infection with one of these strains. The risk of contracting HPV infection increases with the number of sexual partners a woman has.

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) and Hepatitis C virus (HCV) may cause chronic viral hepatitis, an infection of the liver that is linked to an increased risk of hepatocellular (liver) cancer. In the United States, about one-third of cases of liver cancer are related to HBV and HCV.

The human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) does not, in itself, increase the risk of cancer. However, HIV infection does increase the risk of infection by the human herpes virus 8 (HHV-8), which can lead to a skin cancer called Kaposi's sarcoma (KS). Indeed, it was the appearance of KS among homosexual men in the United States in the early 1980s that first alerted the medical community to the existence of HIV. Before the emergence of HIV, KS was rare in the West, although it was known in central Africa and the Middle East. HHV-8 is isolated from most KS tumors. Meanwhile, the human T-lymphotrophic virus (HTLV-1) is associated with a blood cancer called adult T-cell leukemia (ATL). Like HIV, HTLV-1 is a retrovirus—a type of virus whose genetic material is made of RNA rather than DNA. Both HIV and HTLV-1 are related to retroviruses known to cause leukemia in animals.

Finally, infection with the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori* increases the risk of stomach cancer. *H. pylori* is unusual because it can survive the acid conditions of the stomach. Infection causes inflammation of the stomach lining, increasing the risk of both stomach ulcers and stomach cancer. About one-third of the U.S. population has evidence of *H. pylori* infection. Although around one-half of all cases of stomach cancer are linked to the infection, most of those who do carry the infection will not develop cancer.

Applications and Research

Viruses and bacteria can raise the risk of cancer in various ways. They can cause chronic inflammation of the tissue they infect. Or, like HIV, they may suppress immunity and allow cancer-causing viruses to take hold. Immune suppression after an organ transplant is an important cause of HBV-associated lymphoma, for example. Some viruses can invade cells directly and alter their genetic machinery, disrupting normal control over cell division. But infection is only ever one link in a chain of events leading to tumor formation. Other factors, such as smoking, diet, or genetic disposition, may be equally important. The chain may be broken using a vaccine, which prevents infection, or by an antibiotic, which eliminates it. The introduction of a vaccine against HBV in Taiwan 25 years ago led to reduced rates of liver cancer in the country. There is, however, no vaccine against HCV—although research is ongoing. More recently, vaccines against HPV have been developed. In some clinical trials, this has provided girls and young women with 100% protection from infection. One of these, Gardasil, is now approved in some countries for use in females aged nine to 26, to protect them from cervical cancer. Eliminating *H. pylori* with antibiotics can prevent new stomach cancers from developing in patients who have had superficial stomach cancers removed.

The viruses described above, and *H. pylori*, have a well established link to cancer. The possibility that the role of infection in cancer may be even wider is being investigated. For example, there is evidence that infection with *Chlamydia trachoma* could increase the risk of cervical cancer, and a related species, *Chlamydia psittaci*, could be linked to a rare cancer of the eyes known as mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma. A monkey virus called SV40 has been linked to mesothelioma, a cancer of the lining of the chest wall, in which asbestos exposure is another risk factor. Researchers in England have even suggested that common infections contracted either in the womb or during childhood may lead to clusters of childhood cancers that have previously been attributed to other environmental factors, such as overhead power lines.

Impacts and Issues

Most viruses and bacteria are not known to be a risk factor for cancer, and cancer is not, in itself, contagious. Moreover, the majority of people infected with agents known to be carcinogenic will not actually contract cancer; the presence of one or more other risk factors is necessary for cancer to develop.

Worldwide, infection is linked to 15 to 20% of all cancers. Other important contributing factors include smoking, diet, sunlight exposure, and genetics. In developed countries, the cancers that can be linked to infection tend to be much less common than they are in developing countries. For example, cervical cancer is becoming rare in the West because of the availability of the Pap smear, a test that checks for changes in the cells of a woman's cervix and the basis of national screening programs. Cure rates of cases caught at an early stage are very high. But cervical cancer is still the second most common cancer among women worldwide. Vaccination or screening, if it could be afforded, could help cut the global toll from the disease. Nasopharyngeal cancer is more common in Africa and Southeast Asia. In China, a high consumption of salt combines with EBV to increase the risk of this disease. HBV and HCV infection, and hepatocellular cancer, are all more common in developing countries, while ATL is found mainly in southern Japan, the Caribbean, Central Africa, and Latin America. Meanwhile, stomach cancer is the fourth most common cancer worldwide.

In 2007, Texas became the first state to consider mandatory vaccination against HPV for girls entering the sixth grade. The vaccine, Gardasil®, was approved for use in girls and women ages nine to 26 in 2006; it protects against the four types of HPV that are responsible for causing 70% of cervical cancers. After concerns regarding parental rights, vaccine availability, and the high cost of the vaccine arose, plans to mandate vaccination against HPV were put on hold. Costing over $350 for the three-injection series, Gardasil® is one of the most expensive vaccines ever produced. This expense makes distributing the vaccine to young women in developing countries impractical at the present time without corporate, government, or philanthropic action. The Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and Merck, the manufacturer of the vaccine, plan a cooperative effort to distribute and administer Gardasil® to women in developing countries throughout the world.

IN CONTEXT: MONITORING DISEASE

Congress established the National Program of Cancer Registries (NPCR) with the Cancer Registries Amendment Act in 1992. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) administers the program and collects data related to the occurrence, type, extent, location, and treatment of cancers.

Cancer registries based in individual U.S. states within the United States also collect and analyze data related to cancers.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE BURDEN OF CANCER

According to the National Institutes of Health *Fact Book Fiscal Year 2004*: "Cancer costs (the United States) an estimated $210 billion overall in 2005, including nearly $136 billion for lost productivity and more than $70 billion for direct medical costs."

SEE ALSO *Epstein-Barr Virus; HPV (Human Papillomavirus) Infection;* Helicobacter pylori*; Hepatitis B; Hepatitis C.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Periodicals

Boseley, S. "Can You Catch Cancer?" *The Guardian* (January 24, 2006).

Crawford, D. H. "An Introduction to Viruses and Cancer." *Microbiology Today* 56 (2005): 110–112.

Web Sites

American Cancer Society. "Infectious Agents and Cancer." October 17, 2006. <http://www.cancer.org/docroot/PED/content/PED_1_3X_Infectious_Agents_and_Cancer.asp? sitearea=PED> (accessed February 19, 2007).

National Institutes of Health. "List of Cancer-Causing Agents Grows." January 31, 2005. <http://www.nih.gov/news/pr/jan2005/niehs-31.htm> (accessed February 19, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

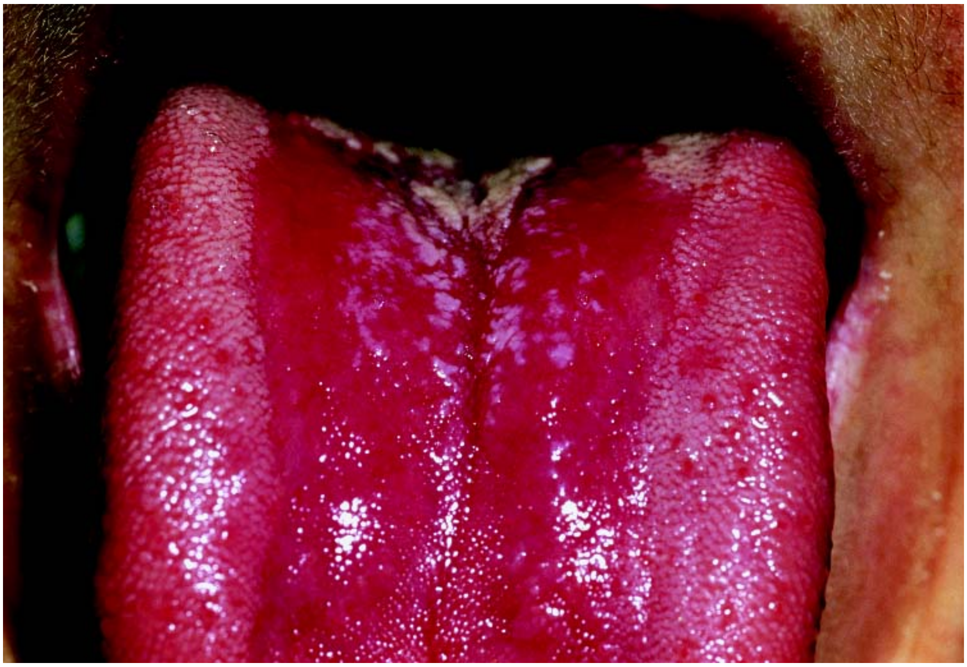
Candidiasis

Introduction

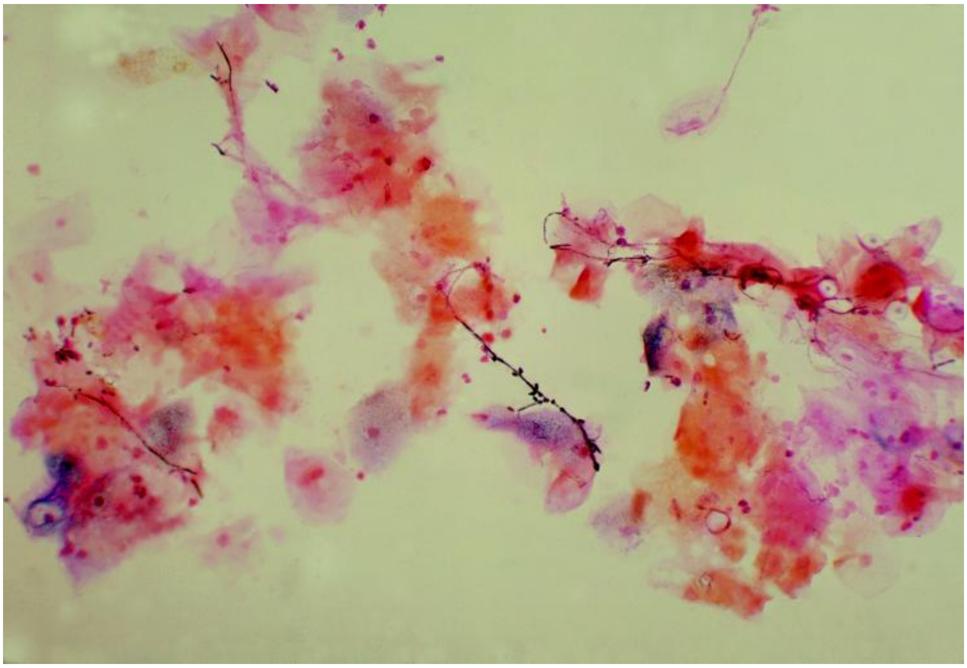
Candida is a group, or genus, of closely related species of yeast that occur naturally in the skin and gastrointestinal tract. They are the major fungal component of human flora—that is, the community of microbes that lives within the human body. If the flora remain in a healthy balance with their human host, then they do not cause disease. But various factors, such as antibiotic use or a weakened immune system, may upset this balance and lead to infection by species within the flora. Infection caused by *Candida* is known as candidiasis (can-di-DYE-a-sis), and is the most common fungal infection, or mycotic disease, that arises from the human flora. Candidiasis ranges from mild to severe and even life-threatening, depending upon its location. The most common forms of candidiasis affect the mouth, esophagus, vagina, and the bloodstream. Candidiasis does respond to antifungal drugs, although these must be carefully prescribed as some *Candida* species have developed resistance to specific drugs.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

There are over 150 different species of *Candida*. Most of these do not cause disease. Of those that do, *Candida albicans* is the most common cause of human mycoses,



Close-up of the tongue of a woman with thrush (candidiasis) shows the back of her tongue covered in white patches of *Candida albicans*, a yeast-like fungus. *Dr P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc.*



A micrograph of a vaginal smear of *Candida albicans* is shown. This fungus, which is common in most people, can cause an infection called candidiasis (also known as a yeast infection), when an imbalance occurs. © *CDC/PHIL/Corbis.*

including blood infections. However, infections from so-called non-*albicans Candida* (NAC) species, such as *C. glabrata* and *C. krusei*, are becoming more common. *C. albicans* is distinguished from NAC species under the microscope by the appearance of tiny cylindrical projections, called germ tubes, that appear within two to four hours of incubating a sample under investigation.

When the immune system is healthy and the skin and mucous membranes of the gastrointestinal and vaginal tract are intact, the existence of *Candida* will not cause any health problems. When these conditions do not hold, then *Candida* may become pathogenic, causing infection and leading to various types of illness.

One of the most important factors causing candidiasis is weakened immunity, which occurs in HIV/AIDS, after cancer chemotherapy (which depletes the white cells that fight infection), and after bone marrow or organ transplantation. Patients having transplants must take medication to stop rejection of the new organ for the rest of their lives. Unfortunately, this also impairs their immune systems and puts them at increased risk of infection, including candidiasis. Other causes of candidiasis include antibiotic use, which can alter the balance of the intestinal flora; the contraceptive pill; pregnancy; old age; malnutrition; and diabetes. In hospitals, the use of intravenous and urinary catheters, which are tubes inserted into the body to deliver fluids and medication and drain the bladder, respectively, often lead to candidiasis. Although *Candida* can be transmitted via the hands of caregivers and healthcare workers, most cases of candidiasis are endogenous—that is, the patient is infected *Candida* already present within the body.

Scope and Distribution

The most common sites of candidiasis are the mouth, the esophagus, the skin, the vagina, and the bloodstream. Oral and esophageal candidiasis are often also known as thrush (or oropharyngeal candidiasis [OPC]). Oral thrush is common among people with weakened immunity, especially those with HIV/AIDS. It causes white patches on the tongue and inside the mouth and may be associated with soreness and a burning sensation. Esophageal thrush is also found in HIV/AIDS; it may not cause any symptoms, but some people have difficulty in swallowing, pain, nausea, and vomiting.

Vulvovaginal candidiasis is also very common, affecting three quarters of all women at some stage in their lives. It causes genital itching and burning, with or without a "cottage cheese"-like discharge. Candidiasis can occur when the normal acidity of the vagina changes or with hormonal changes, both of which can encourage the overgrowth of *Candida.* Risk factors include pregnancy, diabetes, use of broad-spectrum antibiotics, and steroid medications. Men can get a form of the disease—genital candidiasis, which causes an itchy rash on the penis. However, transmission of thrush through sexual intercourse is rare; most infections are endogenous.

Candidiasis of the skin is sometimes called intertrigo and produces a rash in warm, moist areas such as the armpit, groin, and under the breast. Diaper rash is often a form of candidiasis that affects babies in the area where the diaper comes into contact with the skin. Sometimes, especially in people with HIV/AIDS, candidiasis may also affect the nails. Oral, esophageal, vaginal, and skin candidiasis can all clear up with antifungal treatment, with no lasting effects on health, although they may recur. They may cause some discomfort, even pain, but are relatively mild infections in their own right (although the patient may be suffering from serious disease, such as HIV/AIDS or diabetes, that has allows candidiasis to develop).

Invasive candidiasis, however, can be very serious, even life-threatening. It occurs when *Candida* invades the bloodstream, and it is dangerous because it may then spread throughout the body, reaching the liver, kidneys, spleen, and other organs. Patients with cancer, depletion of white cells from cancer treatment, or major burns are at risk, as are those who have had organ transplants, abdominal surgery, or broad-spectrum antibiotics. Patients with catheters are also at risk of invasive candidiasis. The death rate from invasive candidiasis can be as high as 50%. Therefore, if *Candida* is found in a blood culture from a patient, especially if they have fever, then it can be assumed that candidiasis may be spreading through the whole body and prompt treatment is essential.

WORDS TO KNOW

INTERTRIGO: Intertrigo, sometimes called eczema intertrigo, is a skin rash, often occurring in obese persons on parts of the body symmetrically opposite each other. It is caused by irritation of skin trapped under hanging folds of flesh such as pendulous breasts.

PATHOGENIC: Something causing or capable of causing disease.

FLORA: In microbiology, flora refers to the collective microorganisms that normally inhabit an organism or system. Human intestines, for example, contain bacteria that aid digestion and are considered normal flora.

MYCOTIC DISEASE: Mycotic disease is a disease caused by fungal infection.

NOSOCOMIAL: A nosocomial infection is an infection that is acquired in a hospital. More precisely, the Centers for Disease Control in Atlanta, Georgia, defines a nosocomial infection as a localized infection or one that is widely spread throughout the body that results from an adverse reaction to an infectious microorganism or toxin that was not present at the time of admission to the hospital.

PATHOGENIC: Something causing or capable of causing disease.

Treatment and Prevention

Candida species cannot be avoided or eliminated, as they occur naturally in the human body. Therefore, prevention depends on dealing with the risk factors that make people vulnerable to candidiasis. For instance, the introduction of the latest treatment for HIV/AIDS (HAART, highly active antiretroviral therapy), has reduced the incidence of esophageal candidiasis in this group. There are also antifungal drugs that can be applied either topically, as a cream or powder, or orally, as a tablet. Vaginal thrush can be treated with antifungal suppositories inserted into the vagina. The main antifungal drugs used in the treatment for candidiasis are amphotericin B, fluconazole, and nystatin, and there are several new drugs at the research stage. Meanwhile, patients with invasive candidiasis must have catheters removed or replaced, as these can be a major source of further infection.

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), recommends that "because genital candidiasis / Vulvovaginal Candidiasis (VVC) and urinary tract infections share similar symptoms, such as a burning sensation when urinating, it is important to see a doctor and obtain laboratory testing to determine the cause of the symptoms and to treat effectively. Symptoms, which may be very

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) warns that "Over-the-counter treatments for yeast infections/Vulvovaginal Candidiasis (VVC) are becoming more available. As a result, more women are diagnosing themselves with VVC and using one of a family of drugs called 'azoles' for therapy. However, misdiagnosis is common, and studies have shown that as many as two-thirds of all OTC drugs sold to treat VVC were used by women without the disease. Using these drugs when they are not needed may lead to a resistant infection. Resistant infections are very difficult to treat with the currently available medications for VVC."

SOURCE: *Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases / Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.*

uncomfortable, may persist. There is a chance that the infection may be passed between sex partners."

Impacts and Issues

Infections acquired in hospitals, also known as nosocomial infections from the Greek word for hospital (*nosocomium*), are an increasing public health problem. Those affected are often already very sick and are unable to fight an infection the way a healthy person would, because their immune system is weak. Added to this, many organisms that cause nosocomial infections are becoming resistant to antibiotics, so treatment may be ineffective. *Candida*, which is normally either harmless or the cause of only mild infection, is the fourth leading cause of nosocomial bloodstream infection, according to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Such infections occur at a rate of five to ten per 10,000 hospital admissions and carry a mortality rate of 40–50%. Even if a patient survives, hospital stays are prolonged and this involves significant extra health care costs, which may run to thousands of dollars. Once found mainly in cancer and bone marrow transplant units, nosocomial infections, including *Candida*, now appear in all parts of the hospital and are on the increase. An aging population, more frequent use of invasive therapies involving catheters, and overuse of antibiotics are among the contributing factors.

SEE ALSO *Mycotic Disease; Nosocomial (Healthcare-Associated) Infections.*

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) warns that overuse of antifungal medications to treat candidiasis of the mouth and throat (also known as a "thrush" or oropharyngeal candidiasis (OPC), "can increase the chance that they (antifungal medications) will eventually not work (the fungus develops resistance to medications). Therefore, it is important to be sure of the diagnosis from before treating with over-the-counter or other antifungal medications."

SOURCE: *Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Gates, Robert. *Infectious Disease Secrets,* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Hanley & Belfus, 2003.

Wilson, Walter, and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases: Candidiasis." Oct 6, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/default.htm> (accessed Jan 27, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Cat Scratch Disease

Introduction

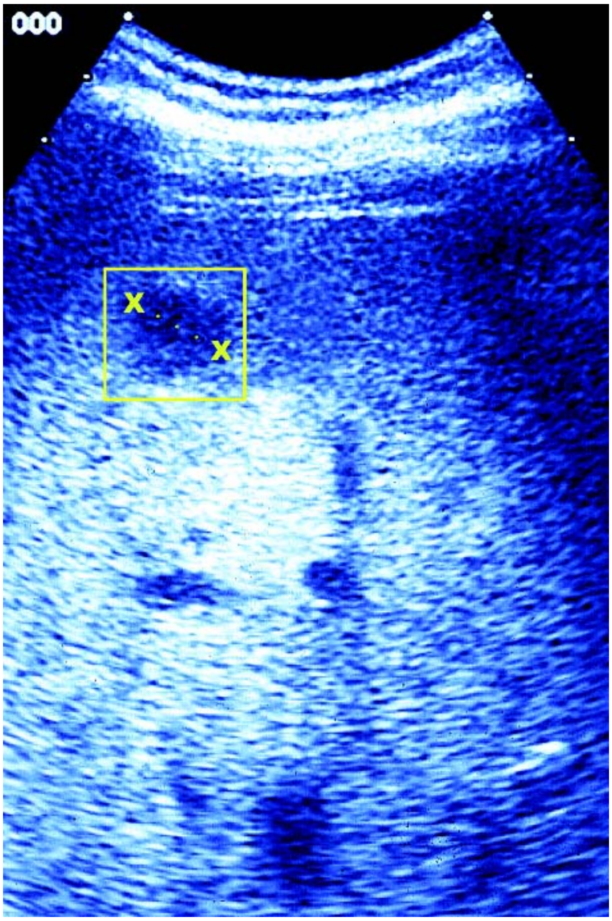
Cat scratch disease is an infection caused by the bacterium *Bartonella henselae*. It is most often transmitted to humans by the bite or scratch of a cat.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Cat scratch disease was first described in 1889. Recognition that the cat is important in the spread of the disease came in 1931, but the bacterium responsible for cat scratch disease was not identified until 1985. This bacterium was initially identified as *Rochalimaea henselae* (the bacterium that causes a disease called trench fever); it was later reclassified as *Bartonella henselae*. It took such a long time to identify *B. henselae* as the cause of cat scratch disease because the bacterium is difficult to grow in artificial lab media, due to its specific nutrient requirements. In addition, the bacterium grows slowly in the laboratory even in the presence of the appropriate food sources.

The first sign of cat scratch disease is a mild infection at the site of the bite or scratch. Often, this injury does not receive much attention, since it is minor, but if the injured area is not cleaned, the bacteria can enter the bloodstream. Characteristics of the resulting infection include soreness at the wound site (which may take days to develop), expansion of the wound site and the production of pus, swelling of the lymph nodes near the wound (generally those in the underarm and neck) to an inch or more in size, loss of appetite, headache, moderate fever, bone and joint pain, rash, sore throat, and a feeling of weakness that persists.

A domestic cat can carry the bacteria in its saliva, but not display any symptoms of infection (a condition called colonization), making it impossible for those who handle the cat to know that it can infect them. For many people, there is no need to worry, since the body's immune system can successfully fight off the infection. However, if a person is immunocompromised—the immune system is not functioning efficiently—cat scratch disease can develop. In addition, some immunocompromised individuals can develop more severe symptoms



An abdominal ultrasound shows damage to a liver due to cat scratch disease. *James Cavallini/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

when they contract cat scratch disease, including infections of the spleen, liver, lungs, and eyes. A compromised immune system is sometimes a natural result of the aging process or can arise as the result of a disease that affects the immune system, such as infection with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). The immune system also may be suppressed deliberately in patients who have received an organ transplant to avoid rejection of the transplanted organ.

Cat scratch disease cannot be passed from person to person, and usually does not require medical treatment. Once a person has had this infection, he or she is immune to the bacterium for life.

Scope and Distribution

About 40% of domestic cats will carry *B. henselae* at some time in their lives. The bacteria tend to be associated with younger cats, especially those who have fleas in their fur.

In the United States, more than 20,000 cases of cat scratch disease are diagnosed every year. Most cases involve people under the age of 21, with many of these being children who have been scratched or bitten by their family cat during play with the pet.

Treatment and Prevention

Cat scratch disease is typically diagnosed by the detection of swollen lymph nodes when the individual has been bitten or scratched by a cat. The infection tends to be resolved without treatment. However, immunocompromised patients may require treatment with antibiotics. If necessary, the swollen lymph nodes can be drained by inserting a needle into the node and withdrawing the fluid.

The risk of cat scratch disease is minimized by properly handling cats. Anyone who is scratched or bitten by a cat should wash the wound with soap and water to disinfect the area. Also, since cats can harbor the bacteria in their saliva, they should not be allowed to lick a person's face or a cut. Treating cats to reduce flea infestations is also a wise preventative strategy.

Impacts and Issues

With a population of more than 60 million domestic cats in the United States, there is ample opportunity for the spread of cat scratch disease. For most people, the consequences of the diseases are not serious and the disease does not require medical treatment. However, for about 10% of those who contract the disease, the result can be more serious, with consequences such as an altered mental state, loss of vision, and even pneumonia.

WORDS TO KNOW

COLONIZED: Colonized is the past tense of colonize, and refers to a surface that has been occupied by microorganisms.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PREVENTION

The National Center for Infectious Disease, Healthy Pets Healthy People published guidelines to reduce risk of cat scratch disease recommends:

- Avoid "rough play" with cats, especially kittens. This includes any activity that may lead to cat scratches and bites.
- Wash cat bites and scratches immediately and thoroughly with running water and soap.
- Do not allow cats to lick open wounds that you may have.
- Control fleas.
- If you develop an infection (with pus and pronounced swelling) where you were scratched or bitten by a cat or develop symptoms, including fever, headache, swollen lymph nodes, and fatigue, contact your physician.

SOURCE: *National Center for Infectious Disease and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

Cat scratch disease is seasonal. More than 90% of the cases occur in the autumn and early winter. This may be due to the fact that many kittens are born during the summer, and this population of new kittens has been infested with bacterium-carrying fleas by autumn. In addition, in more northern climates, the cooler months of the year usually bring people into closer contact with their house cats. In both cases, treating the pet for fleas and handwashing after petting kittens will reduce the chances of contracting the disease.

In addition to its close association with cat bites and scratches, cat scratch disease has been linked to the bites of dogs and even monkeys. This link between the disease and monkeys can put zoo staff and some veterinarians at risk for the disease in western countries, and larger populations at risk in developing countries where monkeys and humans come into contact.

See Also *Bacterial Disease; Vector-borne Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Torrey, E. Fuller, and R.H. Yolken. *Beasts Of The Earth: Animals, Humans, And Disease.* Rutgers, NJ: Rutgers University Press, 2005.

Van Der Merwe, Jacob I.T. *Survival of the Cleanest: A Common Sense Guide to Preventing Infectious Disease.* Victoria, BC: Spicers Publishing, 2005.

Periodicals

Finn, Robert. "Fever of Unknown Origin? Consider Cat Scratch Disease." *Family Practice News* 35 (September 1, 2005): 67.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Cat Scratch Disease." <http://www.cdc.gov/healthypets/diseases/catscratch.htm> (accessed March 16, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention)

Introduction

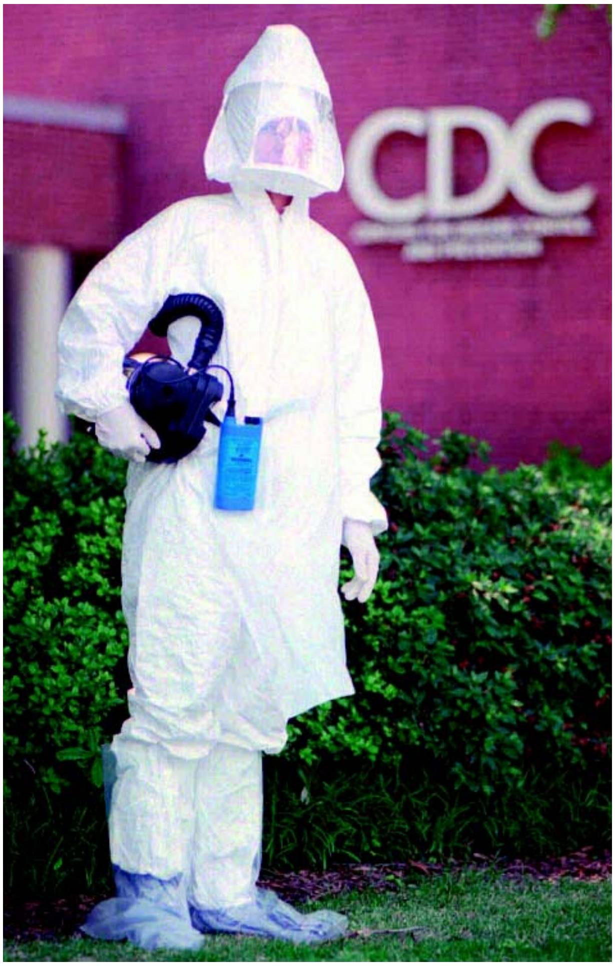
The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) is part of the federal government's U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Its headquarters are in Atlanta, Georgia. By maintaining viable relationships with state health departments and other related organizations, the CDC researches all aspects of diseases, along with developing and applying disease prevention and control, environmental health, and health education activities for all citizens of the United States. CDC also participates in international infectious disease research and response.

CDC has about 15,000 employees and 6,000 contractors in various positions, including biologists, behavioral and social scientists, physicians, veterinarians, microbiologists, statisticians, chemists, economists, engineers, epidemiologists, statisticians, and various other scientists and support personnel. CDC's headquarters coordinates its operations across the United States and Puerto Rico, including regional offices in Alaska, Colorado, Ohio, Maryland, North Carolina, Pennsylvania, Washington State, Washington D.C., and West Virginia. Other CDC employees are located in about 45 countries around the world.

History and Scientific Foundations

The CDC was established on July 1, 1946, in Atlanta, Georgia, under its original name: the Communicable Disease Center (CDC). At that time, it had fewer than 400 employees. Its founder was U.S. public health official Joseph Walter Mountin (1891–1952).

The organization was established out of the U.S. military agency called the Office of Malaria Control in War Areas, which was active during World War II (1939–1945). By taking over the military office, the CDC gained access to over six hundred military bases and related establishments in order to combat mosquitoes carrying malaria, which was still prevalent in the



A nurse with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in Atlanta wears a protective suit and respirator like those that researchers use when investigating cases of Ebola virus infection. *AP Images.*

A scientist exams a sample of cultured influenza viruses in a sealed laboratory. This influenza virus strain caused the Spanish flu pandemic in 1918, which infected one-fifth of the world's population and killed between 20 and 50 million people. In 2005 CDC scientists reconstructed the virus hoping to identify the traits that made it so deadly. This allows scientists to develop new vaccines and treatments for future pandemic influenza viruses. *CDC/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

southern states. Besides malaria, the fledgling organization also worked with typhus and other infectious diseases.

The agency hired engineers, entomologists (scientists that study insects), and physicians to research and develop ways to combat infectious health problems. These professionals of the Communicable Disease Center, a part of the U.S. Public Health Service, fought mosquito-carrying malaria with the use of the insecticide DDT that is now restricted in the United States and many other countries of the world. In those years, the organization sprayed millions of homes for malaria.

By 1947, Mountin was promoting his organization as an effective organization to pursue additional public health issues such as birth defects, chronic diseases, communicable diseases, health statistics, injuries, occupational health, and toxic chemicals. The organization expanded its operations when fifteen acres of Emory University land in Atlanta, Georgia, was donated by Robert Woodruff, chairman of the board of the Coca-Cola Company. The campus included two Biosafety Level 4 laboratories and other scientific facilities. Branches were established in Morgantown, West Virginia; Cincinnati, Ohio; Fort Collins, Colorado; and locations overseas.

Over the next sixty years, the organization expanded its expertise in the control and prevention of diseases. In 1970, its name was changed to the Center for Disease Control in order to include all of its work with communicable diseases such as AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome); chronic diseases such as cancer and heart disease; emerging diseases; birth defects such as those caused by lead poisoning; occupational illnesses and disabilities; injury control; workplace hazards; blood supply; environmental health threats; and bioterrorism.

In 1980, with expansion of the organizational structure, its name was changed to the Centers for Disease Control. Twelve years later, in 1992, its current name was adopted: the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. The U.S. Congress requested that the organization maintain the initials CDC when its new, longer name was adopted.

■ Applications and Research

The hierarchy of the CDC begins with the Office of the Director and the National Institute for Occupational Safety and health. The Office of the Director manages and coordinates the activities of the CDC by providing overall direction to its scientific and medical programs and by providing leadership and assessment of administrative management activities. The National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, which joined the CDC in 1973, ensures safety and health for all people in the workplace.

Six coordinating centers concentrate on specific areas of concern. Three of its coordinating centers are the: (1) Coordinating Center for Environmental Health and Injury Prevention (National Center for Environmental Health and National Center for Injury Prevention and Control); (2) Coordinating Center for Health Information Service (National Center for Health Marketing, National Center for Health Statistics, and National Center for Public Health Informatics); and (3) Coordinating Center for Health Promotion (National Center on Birth Defects and Developmental Disabilities, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, and Office of Genomics and Disease Prevention).

Further, its other three coordinating centers are the: (4) Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases (National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral Hepatitis, STD, and TB Prevention, National Center for Immunization and Respiratory Diseases, National Center for Zoonotic, Vector-Borne, and Enteric Diseases, National Center for Preparedness, Detection, and Control of Infectious Diseases); (5) Coordinating Office for Global Health; and

(6) Coordinating Office for Terrorism Preparedness and Emergency Response.

CDC began a reorganization of its Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases (CCID) on March 13, 2007. Various research centers were reorganized—or created anew—to better combat emerging and endemic global health threats.

CDC's reorganization also acknowledges the impact of globalization on infectious disease. Travel, migration, and trade have increased incidence of some infectious diseases. Disease outbreaks frequently cross state and national borders, requiring increased communication and coordinated response among various public health agencies and governments. Increased education of health care providers is necessary to help recognize, report, and respond to infectious diseases in regions where various diseases are rare or had been eliminated. The Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases works with other CDC branches (such as the Coordinating Office for Global Health) and international health agencies such as the World Health Organization (WHO) to research infectious diseases worldwide.

Under the umbrella of the Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, the National Center for Preparedness, Detection, and Control of Infectious Diseases works with researchers, public health organizations, and government agencies to track, study, and respond to infectious disease. Part of its mission is to develop United States policy on infectious disease including travel advisories and restrictions, quarantine and isolation laws, and epidemic preparedness requirements.

The National Center for Zoonotic, Vector-Borne, and Entric Diseases (NCZVED) will assist international efforts to prevent and treat diseases caused by animal and insect vectors as well as food and waterborne diseases. The center will play a key role in international efforts to combat neglected tropical diseases such as malaria and emerging threats in the United States such as rodent-borne hantavirus.

In response to the increasing global incidence of HIV/AIDS and reemerging tuberculosis (TB), CDC's National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral, Hepatitis, STD and TB Prevention (NCHHSTP) will focus on research, prevention, and intervention initatives to combat TB and sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), including HIV/AIDS. Research at the new center will assist treatment and education programs, as well as aid vaccine development.

The Coordinating Office for Terrorism Preparedness and Emergency Response works with federal, state, and local officials in the United States to develop emergency preparedness and response plans. While CDC efforts focus on response to bioterrorism events, it also advises officials on possible health concerns following a conventional terrorist event of natural disaster.

CDC also publishes several journals intended to relay information throughout the international public health community. *Emerging Infectious Diseases* is published by CDC's Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases and compiles articles and announcements on infectious diseases worldwide. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, commonly known as the *MMWR*, collects and publishes reports from state public health agencies. Both publications foster communication and share up-to-date information among various health organizations.

The CDC has the main Biosafety Level 4 laboratories in the United States in its Special Pathogens Branch. A Biosafety Level 4 laboratory is one of a select few laboratories whose scientists and technicians are allowed to work with dangerous and unusual agents that have the highest potential for individual health risks and life-threatening diseases.

WORDS TO KNOW

EPIDEMIOLOGY: Epidemiology is the study of various factors that influence the occurrence, distribution, prevention, and control of disease, injury, and other health-related events in a defined human population. By the application of various analytical techniques including mathematical analysis of the data, the probable cause of an infectious outbreak can be pinpointed.

NEGLECTED TROPICAL DISEASES: Many tropical diseases are considered to be neglected because despite their prevalence in less-developed areas, new vaccines and treatments are not being developed for them. Malaria was once considered to be a neglected tropical disease, but recently a great deal of research and money have been devoted to its treatment and cure.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

VECTOR-BORNE DISEASE: A vector-borne disease is one in which the pathogenic microorganism is transmitted from an infected individual to another individual by an arthropod or other agent, sometimes with other animals serving as intermediary hosts. The transmission depends upon the attributes and requirements of at least three different living organisms: the pathologic agent, either a virus, protozoa, bacteria, or helminth (worm); the vector, which are commonly arthropods such as ticks or mosquitoes; and the human host.

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention is also the only repository of smallpox in the United States. Smallpox is a highly contagious disease that is acquired only by humans. It is caused by two virus variants: *Variola major* and *Variola minor*.

The CDC also provides health information to various sectors of the U.S. economy. Working with state and local organizations, the organization collects and analyzes data to detect disease outbreaks and health threats, researches effective measures for disease and injury control and prevention, and identifies risk factors and causes of diseases and injuries. Along with actively protecting health and safety, the CDC provides information to individuals making personal health decisions and organizations making professional decisions affecting larger populations of people.

In general, CDC conducts research both in the field and in the laboratory. Several CDC centers maintain field response teams to aid in the identification and surveillance of infectious diseases. International health agencies may request CDC assistance in identifying or studying disease outbreaks.

CDC participates in several international efforts to identify, research, and respond to infectious disease. For example, CDC's international outreach includes participation in the Integrated Disease Surveillance and Response (IDSR) program. IDSR seeks to strengthen local public health surveillance of and response to infectious disease outbreaks. The program goals also include increasing communication between various health agencies, sharing accurate and timely information about outbreaks, and collecting samples and utilizing laboratory research to assist further disease surveillance.

■ Impacts and Issues

The CDC has made dramatic impacts into the health of U.S. citizens throughout its existence. Two important CDC accomplishments have been identifying the causes of toxic shock syndrome (TSS, a rare disease in which *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteria infect human skin, oral cavities, and vagina) and Legionnaires' disease (a serious type of pneumonia caused by the bacterium *Legionella pneumophila* that was first recognized in July 1976 at an American Legion convention in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania).

Today, the CDC is working to find solutions for many global health threats, from malaria to HIV/AIDS. CDC is committed to education and outreach efforts promoting food and water safety, sanitation, nutrition, wellness, and personal hygiene as means of fighting infectious disease.

CDC's broad international experience and close relations with other public health agencies also aids the fight against infectious diseases within the United States. In 1993, a mysterious illness appeared in the Four Corners region of the southwestern United States (the area at the borders of the states of Arizona, Colorado, New Mexico, and Utah). The CDC quickly identified the illness as a new form of hantavirus. Government laboratories once associated with the Department of Defense collected information on hantaviruses, especially Korean hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome (HFRS), after outbreaks among troops during the Korean War (1950–1953). CDC researchers were able to compare the emerging outbreak in the Four Corners area with previous studies on hantaviruses in Asia, thus quickly diagnosing hantavirus pulmonary syndrome (HPS), a new health threat never-before recognized in the Western Hemisphere. HPS remains an emerging health threat. The hantavirus is routinely found in rodent populations, the vector (transmitter) of the disease, in the U.S. southwest, occasionally sickening humans. CDC continues to research HPS and disseminate information on identification and prevention to local health officials.

CDC is currently participating in WHO's Global Alliance for Vaccines and Immunization (GAVI) initiatives to identify the sources of disease in underdeveloped and developing nations, as well as increase development of and access to vaccines and therapeutic medications. CDC's commitment to GAVI includes assisting the disease identification, control, elimination, and eradication efforts through field and laboratory research. CDC is also participating in GAVI research programs on microbial resistance, antibiotic usage, and pandemic influenza preparedness planning.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Travel and infectious disease; African Sleeping Sickness (Trypanosomiasis).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

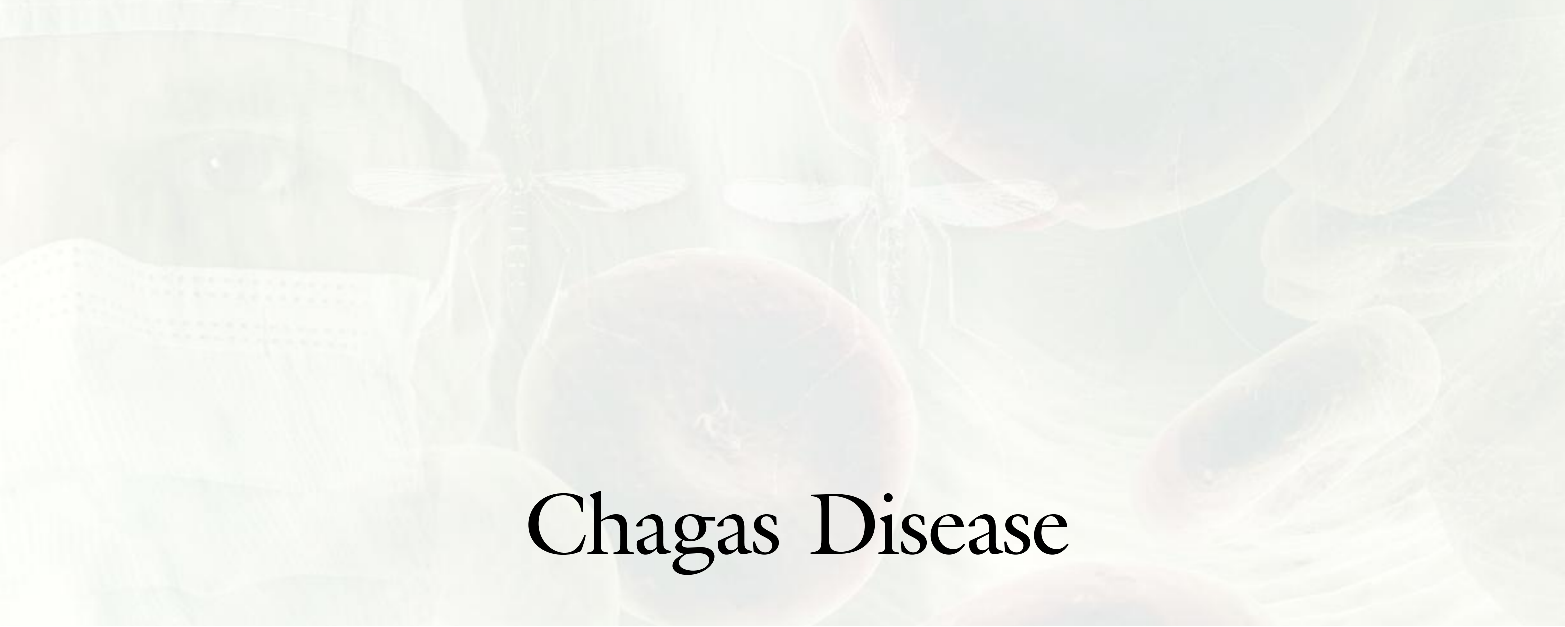
Books

Dowell, Scott F. *Protecting the Nation's Health in an Era of Globalization: CDC's Global Infectious Disease Strategy.* Atlanta, GA: Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control, 2002.

Web Sites

U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Home Website of the CDC." May 4, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/> (accessed May 4, 2007).

William Arthur Atkins



Chagas Disease

Introduction

Chagas (SHA-gus) disease is caused by infection with the parasite *Trypanosoma cruzi*, which is transmitted from an animal reservoir to a human or other animal host by insects. Chagas disease occurs mostly in Latin America and is endemic (occurs naturally in a region) to rural areas in Mexico, Central America, and South America. However, through migration and other mass movements of people, the disease has been spread all over the world. Since parasites can be transmitted via the bloodstream, another mode of infection is via exposure to infected blood. This is the main mode of infection in non-endemic countries.

Drug treatment for Chagas disease is usually only effective during acute stages of the disease and is aimed at removing the parasite. However, during the chronic stages treatment targets the effects of the disease, such as damaged organs. Chagas disease is best prevented through avoidance of insects that may be infected with *T. cruzi*, or through preventing infection from contaminated blood.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Chagas disease was first identified in 1909 by the Brazilian physician Carlos Chagas. This disease, also known as

RECONOCIENDO A LA
VINCHUCA
COMO TRANSMISORA
DE LA
ENFERMEDAD
SOLO ME GUSTA SANGRE
CHICHA
NO!

A mother and child visit a clinic during an outbreak of Chagas disease in Bolivia in 1997. The poster in the background illustrates how the disease is contracted from the bite of a parasite-infected triatomine insect, also called the kissing bug, found mainly in Central America, South America, and Mexico. *© Balaguer Alejandro/Corbis Sygma.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ARTHROPOD: A member of the largest single animal phylum, consisting of organisms with segmented bodies, jointed legs or wings, and exoskeletons. Includes insects and spiders.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

American trypanosomiasis, is caused by the parasite *Trypanosoma cruzi*, which is transmitted to animals and humans by an insect vector (*Triatoma infestans*).

Human infection usually occurs in one of two ways—parasites in the feces of insects enter the body by ingestion or through the skin, or parasites are passed from an infected bloodstream into an uninfected bloodstream. In endemic areas, contact with an insect vector is the source of most infections. When blood-sucking insects feed on infected animals, they become infected with the parasites. These insects then bite another animal or human and leave behind feces. These feces are usually rubbed into the open bite wound or into mucous membranes, such as are found in the eyes or mouth, when the animal or human scratches the area. The parasite enters the bloodstream of the host and infects tissue cells.

Transmission can also occur when blood from an infected person is introduced into an uninfected person. Such infections can occur during blood transfusions, between mothers and babies, during organ transplants, and from blood exposure in laboratories.

Chagas disease is characterized by acute and chronic stages, both of which can be symptom-free. Though the acute phase tends to be symptom-free, some people experience fever, fatigue, body aches, headaches, rashes, diarrhea, vomiting, and loss of appetite during this phase. Swelling can also occur in areas where the parasite entered the body. The most common swelling is known as Romana's sign—a swelling of the eyelid on the side of the face closest to the site of the parasite's entry. Symptoms usually fade, although infection persists if untreated.

The chronic phase usually occurs many years after infection, although some people never develop this chronic phase of the disease at all. The most common chronic problems are cardiac, including an enlarged heart, heart failure, altered heart rate, or cardiac arrest; and intestinal effects, such as an enlarged esophagus or colon, which causes problems eating or passing stool.

Scope and Distribution

Since Chagas disease can be transmitted by infected blood as well as by insect vectors, it can exist outside endemic areas. However, vector-borne infections of Chagas disease generally occur only in endemic areas from the southern United States to southern Argentina. Rural areas in Mexico, Central America, and South America are the principle locations of vector-borne infections.

The human populations at highest risk for developing Chagas disease are low-income people living in rural areas. Housing is often of poor quality and provides ideal habitats for insects carrying the disease. Rural areas in Central and South America, where houses are often built of mud, adobe, or thatch, have a high incidence of infection. It is estimated that as many as 11 million people in Mexico, Central America, and South America are infected with Chagas disease.

As populations have begun to make large-scale migrations, Chagas disease has spread from rural areas into previously uninfected areas. This has increased its global distribution and given rise to other modes of infection, resulting in a need to adopt new infection control strategies. Countries into which the disease is introduced must take steps to identify infected persons in order to prevent the spread of the disease. Any activities that involve potential mixing of blood, such as transfusions, require stringent monitoring.

Treatment and Prevention

Chagas disease can be effectively treated with medication during the acute stages of infection. The drugs most commonly used to treat Chagas disease are benznidazole and nifurtimox. These are antiparasitic drugs aimed at killing the parasite. However, they are toxic and must be taken under medical supervision, since they may cause adverse side effects. Chemotherapy can also be used in an attempt to remove the parasite, although this treatment is not 100 percent effective.

Treatment during the chronic stages of Chagas disease focuses on controlling the effects of the disease, such as cardiac and intestinal complications. This may include insertion of a pacemaker, to control the heart's rhythm and to prevent chronic heart failure; or surgery on enlarged organs, such as the esophagus or colon. Organ transplants are also sometimes performed to replace damaged organs.

As there is no vaccine or drug available to prevent infection, prevention efforts focus on preventing parasite transmission. In terms of vector-borne infection, avoiding rural areas in which the disease is likely to exist, or treating houses, clothes, and bodies with insect repellants may prevent contact with a vector. Feces-contaminated food can also carry the parasite. Therefore, careful handling and preparation of food, plus an awareness of whether insects have been near the food, may prevent infection.

Bloodborne transmission of Chagas disease can also occur. Therefore, medical procedures, such as blood transfusions and organ transplants, require strict screening to prevent transmission of the parasite. In addition, mothers infected with Chagas disease can potentially pass the parasite to their babies while breastfeeding, if the skin around the nipple is broken. Avoiding breastfeeding when the nipples have broken skin can prevent infection.

Impacts and Issues

Large-scale population movements have led to an increased risk of Chagas disease in areas outside Latin America where the disease is not endemic. In non-endemic areas, the disease is largely spread by infected blood, making strict screening of the blood supply imperative. However, some countries do not perform routine tests for Chagas disease in their blood banks, and, thus, the risk of infection is high in those countries. The World Health Organization ranks the infection rate for Chagas disease from Latin American blood banks higher than HIV, hepatitis B, and hepatitis C.

T. cruzi, the parasite that causes Chagas disease, has also been discovered in wild animals in some American states. This discovery suggests that wild reservoirs of this parasite may exist in the United States, raising the possibility of an outbreak of vector-borne infections, if insects feeding on these wild animals come in contact with humans.

Transmission between a vector and human is less likely to occur in densely vegetated habits, such as rainforests, or in city areas. However, regions in which the habitat is thinned out and the abundance of fauna is reduced while the human population increases are hotspots for an outbreak of Chagas disease. In these areas, a decrease in the abundance of animals drives the vector insects to seek a new food source, and the growing human population provides a ready target. Deforestation of the Amazon and other areas of tropical rainforest in Central and South America may create just such hotspots, and more people may be infected with Chagas disease as a result.

See Also *Arthropod-borne Disease; Blood Supply and Infectious Disease; Bloodborne Pathogens; Economic Development and Disease; Host and Vector; Immigration and Infectious Disease; Parasitic Diseases; Vector-borne Disease; Zoonoses.*

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

Chagas disease occurs most often in Mexico, Central America, and South America; infection in the United States is rare.

- An estimated 11 million people are infected worldwide; of these, 15–30% have clinical symptoms.
- Travelers rarely acquire Chagas disease. Triatomine bugs typically infest poor-quality buildings constructed of mud, adobe brick, or palm thatch, particularly those with cracks or crevices in the walls and roof.
- Because the bugs primarily feed at night, travelers can greatly reduce their risk for acquiring infection by avoiding overnight stays in such dwellings and by not camping or sleeping outdoors in endemic areas.
- Travelers should be aware that blood products might not be routinely or adequately tested for *T. cruzi* prior to transfusion.

SOURCE: *The Yellow Book. Health Information for International Travel, 2005–2006 Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Arguin, P.M., P.E. Kozarsky, and A.W. Navin. *Health Information for International Travel 2005–2006.* Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2005.

Periodicals

Aufderheide, A.C., et al. “A 9,000-year Record of Chagas’ Disease.” *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 101 (2004): 2034–2039.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). “Chagas Disease (American Trypanosomiasis).” December 13, 2006. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/chagasdisease/factsht_chagas_disease.htm> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Directors of Health Promotion and Education. “Chagas Disease.” <http://www.dhpe.org/infect/Chagas.html> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Pan American Health Organization. “Chagas Disease (American Trypanosomiasis).” <http://www.paho.org/english/ad/dpc/cd/chagas.htm> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Chickenpox (Varicella)

Introduction

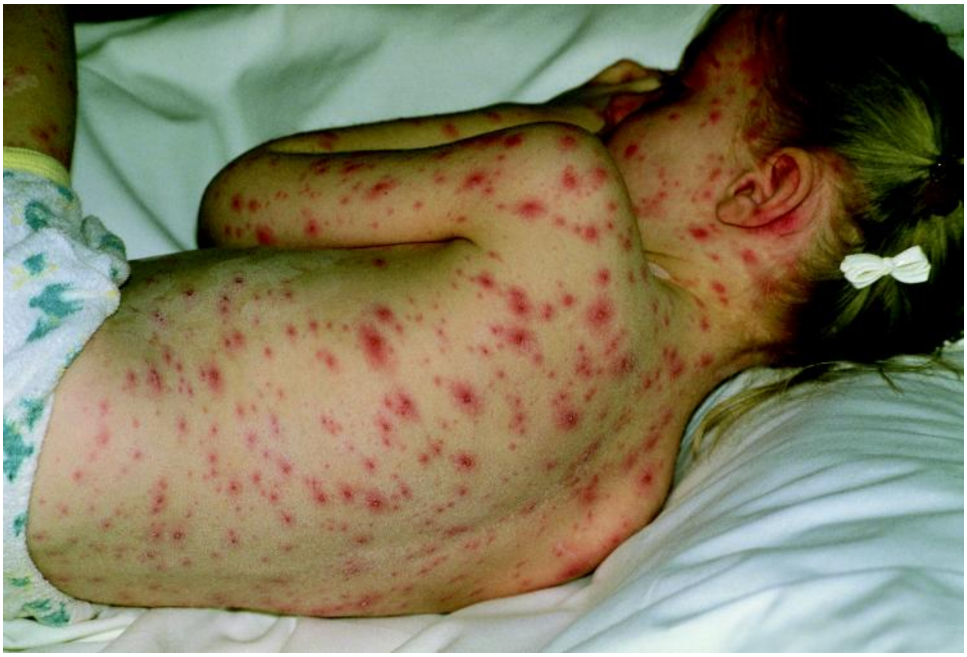
Chickenpox is a viral disease primarily of children, although it can infect any non-immune person. Infection is caused by the varicella-zoster virus (VZV), which is stored in human hosts and is transmitted via direct contact, as well as by inhalation of contaminated airborne particles. Infection with this virus results in the formation of an itchy rash that is sometimes accompanied by a fever. Treatment usually centers on the symptoms of the infections—the rash and fever—rather than on the virus itself. However, antiviral medication may be administered in severe cases. Complications such as bacterial infections, brain infections, viral pneumonia, and even death occur rarely. Following recovery from chickenpox, the virus remains in the body and can be reactivated, causing a new disease called shingles.

Chickenpox is a worldwide disease and most people will develop it by adulthood. Immunity develops after the infection. However, there is a vaccine available that is 80–90% effective. If a vaccinated person develops chickenpox, the vaccination appears to lessen the severity of infection.

Children develop chickenpox most frequently, although adults tend to have more severe infections. High-risk

Butts Are Gross.
Gap Athletic

A medical assistant is shown vaccinating a child for chickenpox in Washington state in 2006. The vaccination is required in Washington and most other states for children entering kindergarten and sixth grade, as well as children over 19 months of age who are in preschool or licensed child care. *AP Images.*



A girl displays the signs of chickenpox. © *Lester V. Bergman/Corbis.*

groups include those with compromised immune systems, newborns, and pregnant women. Individuals in these groups are also unable to use the vaccine due to the risk of developing the disease from the vaccine.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Chickenpox has existed for centuries. Originally, doctors were aware of the disease without knowing its cause. Similarities between chickenpox and smallpox, a deadly disease that no longer occurs in humans, made it hard for practitioners to differentiate between the two. The first description of chickenpox on record was made by the Italian scientist Giovanni Filippo during the 1500s. Subsequently, English physician Richard Morton identified the disease in the 1600s, as did the English physician William Heberden in the 1700s. Heberden first demonstrated that chickenpox and smallpox are different diseases.

Chickenpox is a viral disease that arises when humans become infected with the varicella-zoster virus (VZV), which is a type of human herpes virus. Humans are a reservoir for VZV and the virus is very contagious among humans. Transmission occurs when airborne particles from infected people are inhaled, or when direct contact occurs between infected and non-infected people. Therefore, coughing and sneezing spreads the virus, as does touching the open lesions of infected persons. There is a 70–80% chance that a person who has no history of chickenpox will get the disease following exposure to an infected person.

VZV has an incubation period of about 14–16 days after which the first symptoms appear. Chickenpox is characterized by the formation of itchy blisters that break out most commonly on the scalp, face, and torso. These blisters form vesicles that contain an infectious fluid, and within a day of developing, the blisters break and crust over. Blisters tend to continually form over a period of five to 10 days and the outbreak is over when all sores have formed a crust. Scratching the blisters may cause scarring. Accompanying symptoms include mild fever and weakness.

A person is contagious approximately one to two days prior to the rash developing, and he or she remains contagious until all the blisters have crusted over. Since the incubation period is two to three weeks, a person may be unaware they have contracted the disease until weeks after contact with an infected person.

While most cases of chickenpox are not considered serious, and recovery is likely, the disease potentially can be fatal in both children and adults. Complications can arise, such as bacterial infections under the skin, within bones and tissue, in the lungs, and in the blood. The virus can also cause complications directly, such as encephalitis and viral pneumonia. Prior to the development of a vaccine, approximately 100 people died from chickenpox in the United States every year.

Following recovery from chickenpox, the varicella virus remains in the body and settles among nerve fibers. The virus tends to remain dormant, but it can be

WORDS TO KNOW

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

POSTHERPETIC NEURALGIA: Neuralgia is pain arising in a nerve that is not the result of any injury. Postherpetic neuralgia is neuralgia experienced after infection with a herpesvirus, namely *Herpes simplex* or *Herpes zoster*.

VACCINE: A substance that is introduced to stimulate antibody production and thus provide immunity to a particular disease.

VARICELLA ZOSTER IMMUNE GLOBULIN (VZIG): Varicella zoster immune globulin is a preparation that can give people temporary protection against chickenpox after exposure to the varicella virus. It is used for children and adults who are at risk of complications of the disease or who are susceptible to infection because they have weakened immunity.

VESICLE: A membrane-bound sphere that contains a variety of substances in cells.

reactivated and result in a different infection known as shingles or zoster. This infection generally occurs in older people and is characterized by a painful rash, fever, headache, body aches, and general feelings of illness. While recovery is likely from shingles, many patients suffer ongoing complications, in particular, post-herpetic neuralgia. Post-herpetic neuralgia is nerve pain that arises most likely as a result of the virus becoming active within the nerve fibers and damaging them. This pain can vary from mild to severe and may be present for only three months, or for life. In general, people do not suffer a second case of chickenpox, but there have been some exceptions.

Scope and Distribution

Chickenpox is a worldwide virus. Its prevalence within society is so high that by adulthood almost all people will have contracted the disease. While children contract the highest number of cases, anyone who comes in contact with an infected person, and has not previously had the disease, is at risk of becoming infected with the virus. In the United States, approximately 4 million cases of chickenpox are reported annually, and despite vaccinations, fatalities still occur.

When children of school age contract the virus, they are required to stay home from school until they are no longer contagious. However, due to the high infectiousness of this disease, outbreaks are hard to prevent, and despite policies that keep infected children at home, outbreaks are likely to occur.

Adults also contract the virus, although the number of adult cases is much lower than the number of cases among children. Despite this, prior to the release of a vaccine in the United States, half of all fatalities were adults. This statistic highlights the fact that adults tend to develop more severe cases of chickenpox.

There are also groups of high risk people within society. These include immunocompromised people, pregnant women, newborn babies, and healthcare workers. Immunocompromised people include cancer and AIDS patients, as well as transplant recipients. Their immune systems are less able to fight off infection, making them more likely to contract the virus. Chickenpox infection during pregnancy may result in complications with the fetal development. These complications may include growth retardation, such as underdevelopment of limbs and lack of growth in some parts of the brain. In addition, a chickenpox infection during pregnancy may lead to miscarriage, premature labor, or infection of the fetus with the virus. Newborn babies have an increased fatality rate if they contract the disease and do not receive treatment. Healthcare workers and people taking care of sick family members are also at risk of contracting the virus.

The development of a second bout of chickenpox is rare and does not seem to be predetermined by any condition. However, the occurrence of shingles tends to be more likely in people 50 years old or older and in immunocompromised people. Shingles is not as common as chickenpox, but still has an annual rate of 1 million cases annually in the United States. Of these, approximately 20% will develop post-herpetic neuralgia. However, shingles does not spread from person to person, but arises in people who already have the varicella-zoster virus in their bodies. And, although shingles can cause chickenpox in non-infected people, it is not as contagious as chickenpox and usually requires contact with the blister fluid in order for transmission to occur. As of May 2006, a vaccine against shingles was approved and is recommended by the CDC for all adults over the age of 60.

Treatment and Prevention

Most cases of chickenpox do not require treatment for recovery to occur. In general, treatment is provided for the symptoms, namely the fever and rash. Fever is treated with non-aspirin medications, such as acetaminophen, since aspirin is linked with the development of Reye's syndrome. The rash is generally treated with calamine lotion, cool compresses, or oatmeal baths to alleviate the itching.

However, in some cases, more specific treatment is employed. Antiviral medication may be given to adults or to children at risk of developing a serious illness. In addition, bacterial infections may arise when blisters are scratched and opened, and anti-bacterial medication may be necessary. Bacterial infections can be prevented by avoiding scratching the blisters, and keeping them clean.

After infection with the chickenpox virus, most patients have a lifelong immunity to the disease. This reduces their chances of contracting the virus again, but it does not keep them from developing shingles. Newborn babies receive immunity from immune mothers, but this immunity lasts only for the first few months of their lives.

A vaccine is available to prevent chickenpox. The vaccine was developed in Japan and the United States and was first released in the United States in 1995. Vaccination is recommended for children between the ages of 12 and 18 months, since this ensures the best protection, but the vaccine can also be given to people older than 18 months. In children under 13 years old, one dose of the vaccine is necessary, whereas those 13 years old and older require two doses administered four to eight weeks apart. Some people do develop chickenpox after being vaccinated, but they tend to have very mild cases of the disease. Vaccination is recommended for almost everyone who has not had chickenpox with the exceptions noted below.

Some individuals should not be vaccinated against chickenpox, including newborns, children with leukemia or lymphoma, people with immune problems, people taking drugs that suppress the immune system, and pregnant women, because of the risk that they may develop the disease as a result of the vaccination. However, if a person in one of these categories is exposed to the virus, they can receive a temporary protective vaccine known as varicella zoster immune globulin (VZIG). VZIG acts to prevent the development of the disease or to modify the disease after exposure. The protection conferred by VZIG is only short term and the treatment is expensive. As a result, it is only administered to people at high risk of developing severe chickenpox when they are exposed to the virus.

During an outbreak of chickenpox, disease transmission can be minimized by separating those with the disease from others and by limiting the duration of any contact that must occur between infected and non-infected individuals. Since chickenpox is highly contagious, anyone who is not immune to the disease should avoid inhaling contaminated air and touching open lesions on infected people. Protection from shingles patients is less difficult due to the fact that transmission occurs via contact with rash fluid only. If these rashes are well covered, risk of transmission is greatly reduced.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD QUESTIONS

Questions sometimes arise as to whether varicella vaccine should be administered to a healthy child who has intimate personal contact with an immunocompromised individual (e.g., a sibling with leukemia, or an immunocompromised individual in their household). With regard to this issue, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Immunization Program states that the, "ACIP (Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices) and the American Association of Pediatrics (AAP) recommend that healthy household contacts of immunocompromised persons be vaccinated. This is the most effective way to protect the immunocompromised person from varicella. However, because of the small risk of household transmission of vaccine virus, vaccinees who develop a vaccine-related rash should avoid contact with immunocompromised persons while the rash is present. If a susceptible immunocompromised person is inadvertently exposed to a person with a vaccine-related rash, varicella zoster immune globulin (VZIG) need not be given because disease associated with this type of transmission would be expected to be mild. It is preferable to expose the immunocompromised person to the much lower risk of severe disease due to vaccine virus than to wild virus in household contacts."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Immunization Program*

Impacts and Issues

Despite the availability of an effective vaccine, many people are still not vaccinated against chickenpox for a number of reasons. The benefits associated with vaccination must be weighed against such factors as the cost, importance, and likely impact the vaccination will have. In developing countries, there are many diseases with high rates of morbidity and mortality that can be prevented by vaccination. Vaccination against chickenpox may not be as high a priority as vaccinations against other diseases, especially when funding is limited and the health care delivery system is overburdened.

In countries where the vaccine is affordable, generally available, and of significant benefit to the public health, many still avoid getting vaccinated. People may remain unvaccinated voluntarily because of misconceptions surrounding the seriousness of this disease. Many people are under the impression that chickenpox is a relatively mild virus that all people will encounter and recover from during their lives. However, complications and deaths occur from chickenpox infections, even in healthy individuals. Prior to the vaccine being made available in the United States, 100 people died annually from this disease. These people were not all high-risk patients, but rather, most were healthy individuals. Since vaccination was introduced, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention

(CDC) was still reporting deaths during 1999 and 2000 among healthy, unvaccinated people.

Vaccination appears to be a more cost-effective option for many populations, since the costs of preventing cases of chickenpox often outweigh the costs of combating an outbreak and treating those who contract the disease.

■ Primary Source Connection

In this newspaper article appeared in the *Washington Times* during the 2003 school year. The author, Denise Barnes, describes the actions that were taken after hundreds of students in Washington, D.C., failed to provide proof of their immunization status to school officials. Vaccination for chickenpox is required by the school district when students cannot verify that they have had the disease.

Time's Up on School Shots; 434 Students Sent to Court

D.C. public school officials yesterday referred 434 students to truancy court after they failed to provide updated immunization records after 30 days of school. Officials reminded their parents that they could face fines and jail time.

"We're going to court," said Ralph Neal, assistant schools superintendent. "It's been a whole month."

Mr. Neal said the D.C. Compulsory School Attendance Amendment Act of 1990 states that principals must refer students to truancy court if they fail to provide proof of immunizations by Oct. 1. He also said Superintendent Clifford B. Janey told principals yesterday to begin the legal process.

"Parents, if convicted, could be fined $100 or [spend] up to 10 days in jail," Mr. Neal said.

The biggest problems remain in middle, junior and high schools, which have 379 of the students. Among them, 285 are in senior high schools and 94 are in junior highs or middle schools.

The remaining 55 students are in elementary schools and special education centers. The District has 60,799 students in about 200 schools, including specialty schools and programs.

Officials estimated in mid-August that about 5,000 students were still without the mandatory shots and said they would know more when school started Sept. 1. They reported in mid-September that the number had been reduced to 1,190 students.

The school system in August 2003 had about 11,000 students without shots, which means the number of noncompliant students was reduced by more than 50 percent this summer, said Dr. Karyn Berry of the city's Department of Health.

The students who did not receive their shots or provide up-to-date proof were allowed inside schools but were kept in designated areas such as auditoriums or classrooms.

The required shots are DPT (for diphtheria, pertussis and tetanus), OPV (oral polio vaccine), MMR (measles, mumps and rubella), HIB (haemophilus influenza type B), HepB (hepatitis B), and varicella immunizations, if students have not had chicken pox.

"We've worked collaboratively with parents, and we are pleased that more than 60,000 parents have worked along with us," Mr. Neal said. "But we have [about] 400 students [without shots.] And the law states they must be immunized. Students not attending school are truant. Being a truant means that you are in violation of the law. We need to hold everyone accountable, and we need the cooperation of parents."

The District has improved the situation, in part, by offering free shots at clinics.

Vera Jackson, a spokeswoman for the city's Department of Health, said six clinics remain open, and no appointment is necessary.

"We're still working very hard to make sure everybody gets immunized," she said.

Denise Barnes

BARNES, DENISE, "TIME'S UP ON SCHOOL SHOTS; 434 STUDENTS SENT TO COURT." *THE WASHINGTON TIMES* (OCTOBER 2, 2003).

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Cancer and Infectious Disease; Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; HIV; Meningitis, Viral; Shingles (Herpes Zoster) Infection; Smallpox; Vaccines and Vaccine Development; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G. L., J. E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control. "Varicella Disease (Chickenpox)." May 26, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/nip/diseases/varicella/default.htm> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control. "Varicella Vaccine (Chickenpox)." April 25, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/nip/vaccine/varicella/faqs-gen-vaccine.htm> (accessed March 8, 2007).

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. "FDA Licenses Chickenpox Vaccine." March 17, 2005. <http://www.fda.gov/bbs/topics/NEWS/NEW00509.html> (accessed March 8, 2007).

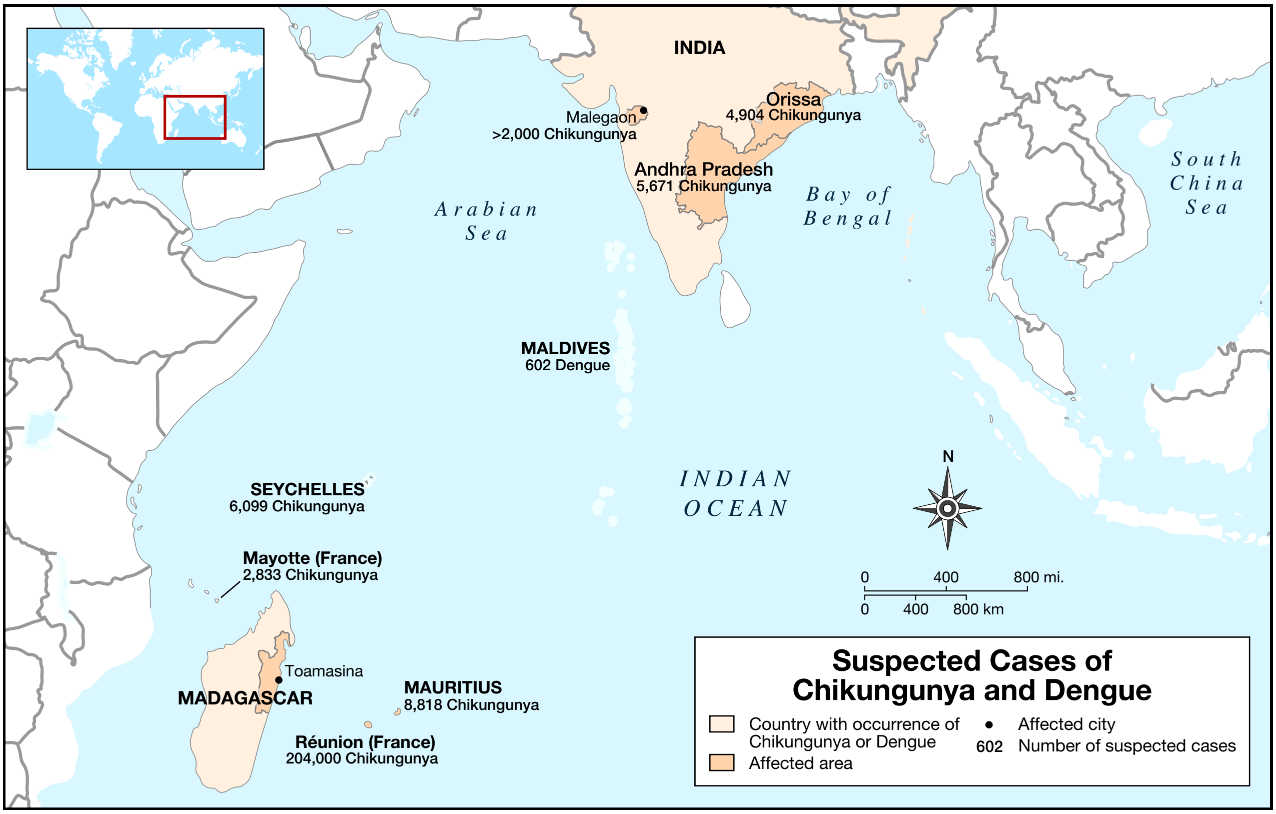
World Health Organization. "Immunization, Vaccines, and Biologicals: Varicella Vaccine." May 2003. <http://www.who.int/vaccines/en/varicella.shtml#vaccines> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Chikungunya

Introduction

Chikungunya (chick-un-GUNE-ya) is an arthropod-borne virus transmitted to humans via a mosquito bite. Transmission of the disease is known to occur in regions within India, Africa, Southeast Asia, the Philippines, and the Caribbean. However, since 2000, infections have occurred worldwide as travelers have contracted chikungunya from infected mosquitoes while traveling through endemic regions (areas where the disease exists normally), and then imported the disease when they traveled home.

Infection usually results in a range of symptoms including fever, aches, joint pains, nausea, vomiting, and chills. However, a full recovery is common following treatment involving rest, fluids, and drugs for fever or joint pains. There have been a large number of outbreaks between the years of 2004 and 2007, particularly in


INDIA
Orissa
4,904 Chikungunya
Malegaon
>2,000 Chikungunya
Andhra Pradesh
5,671 Chikungunya
Arabian Sea
Bay of Bengal
South China Sea
MALDIVES
602 Dengue
INDIAN OCEAN
N
SEYCHELLES
6,099 Chikungunya
Mayotte (France)
2,833 Chikungunya
Toamasina
MADAGASCAR
MAURITIUS
8,818 Chikungunya
Réunion (France)
204,000 Chikungunya
0 400 800 mi.
0 400 800 km
Suspected Cases of Chikungunya and Dengue
Country with occurrence of Chikungunya or Dengue
Affected area
Affected city
602 Number of suspected cases

Map showing the number of suspected cases of chikungunya and dengue in the Indian Ocean area, March 2006. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

WORDS TO KNOW

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

India and groups of islands in the Indian Ocean. Because of these outbreaks, the World Health Organization considers chikungunya an important re-emergent disease (a disease capable of causing large outbreaks after a period of relatively few occurrences).

There is no vaccine available to protect against infection with the chikungunya virus, therefore, the best prevention method is avoidance of mosquitoes. This is achieved by using insect repellants, wearing long-sleeved clothing, using mosquito nets, and removing stagnant water bodies where mosquitoes breed.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Chikungunya virus infection was first described during the 1950s by scientists Marion Robinson and W.H.R. Lumsden. The first known outbreak occurred during 1952 in Africa, and the first outbreak in India was in 1963 in Calcutta.

Infection is transmitted to humans via a bite from mosquitoes in the genus *Aedes*. These mosquitoes are also responsible for the transmission of dengue and yellow fever. Mosquitoes pick up the infection when they feed on infected people or non-human primates. This virus is from the family Togoviridae and the genus *Alphavirus*. Infection is not thought to be transmitted directly from person to person.

Chikungunya manifests itself in humans one to 12 days (usually about a week) after being bitten by an infected mosquito. Most cases result in a range of symptoms, although there have been some asymptomatic cases. The most common symptoms are: fever, headache, joint pain, swelling of joints, arthritis of the joints, chills, nausea, and vomiting. A rash may also occur, and in rare cases, bleeding and hemorrhaging result. Acute fever usually lasts from a few days to two weeks, and some people with chikungunya experience prolonged fatigue. The symptoms of chikungunya are similar to dengue fever, and as a result, the disease is sometimes misdiagnosed. Life-long immunity is thought to occur following chikungunya infection.

Scope and Distribution

Chikungunya first appeared in Africa in 1952 and was first discovered in India ten years later. The virus is distributed around Africa and Asia. Outbreaks have been reported in India, Central and South Africa, Africa, Southeast Asia, the Philippines, and the Caribbean.

In 2005, there was a reemergence of chikungunya in India with 180,000 cases reported between 2005 and 2007. In early 2005, an outbreak occurred in the Comoro Islands. Since this outbreak, other islands in the Indian Ocean have reported infections. On the island of Réunion, chikungunya infection was first identified in March 2005, with 150,000 cases identified before February 2006. Among the other islands in the Indian Ocean, 300,000 suspected cases were reported before May 2006. The chikungunya outbreak in this region constitutes the largest known outbreak since scientists began tracking the disease.

Transmission of chikungunya has not yet been found to occur in Europe or other non-endemic areas. However, there are an increasing number of travelers being infected while in regions with chikungunya outbreaks and then returning to non-infected regions. Between 2005 and 2006, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) diagnosed 12 travelers from the United States infected with chikungunya after traveling to known infected areas.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of chikungunya is aimed at relieving symptoms. No vaccine or specific antiviral treatment is available. The most common treatments for symptoms include rest, fluids, and anti-inflammatory/analgesic drugs such as ibuprofen, naproxen, acetaminophen, or paracetamol. These treatments help relieve fever, aches, joint pains, and arthritis. In most cases, people recover fully from chikungunya, often in a few days. However, in rare cases, joint pain can persist, or prolonged fatigue may be experienced. Death is unlikely, although there are a few reported deaths related to bleeding from this infection. Some deaths appear to be the result of using aspirin to treat symptoms, which may be linked with bleeding in persons with chikungunya.

As this infection is transmitted via mosquitoes, the best prevention method is to avoid the bite of infected mosquitoes. This can be achieved by eliminating mosquito breeding grounds, such as stagnant water bodies; using insect repellants on the body and clothing; using mosquito nets; and wearing long-sleeved clothing. In addition, to prevent infection from being spread to more mosquitoes, the above prevention methods should be used by infected people as well.

Impacts and Issues

Although chikungunya transmission is confined to endemic countries, infection can occur worldwide as travelers to infected regions become infected and return to their home countries. This has a potential impact on the distribution of this disease. The distribution of one chikungunya disease vector, the mosquito *Aedes aegypti*, is almost worldwide. Therefore, the risk for large geographic expansion of endemic areas of the disease is possible. Mosquitoes from non-infected regions could become infected by feeding on infected travelers, or could be imported within shipping containers, thus potentially spreading chikungunya to previously uninfected regions.

Distinguishing between chikungunya and dengue fever is sometimes difficult, as they have similar symptoms and are transmitted via the same vector. Therefore, the occurrence of chikungunya may be misrepresented due to misdiagnosis. The CDC suggests that the possibility that cases of chikungunya have been misdiagnosed as dengue fever could potentially mean that the number of chikungunya cases is higher than previously assumed.

French authorities received media criticism for a perceived slow response to the Réunion Island (an overseas department of France) outbreak in 2005. By February 2006, the French government took measures to eliminate mosquito breeding grounds on the island, and formed a task force to study re-emerging infectious diseases, especially chikungunya. Researchers in France are currently working to test a preliminary vaccine developed for chikungunya in the 1980s by United States Army scientists.

SEE ALSO *Arthropod-borne Disease; Dengue and Dengue Hemorrhagic Fever; Mosquito-borne Diseases; Travel and Infectious Disease; Vector-borne Disease; Yellow Fever.*

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD QUESTIONS

The CDC states, "The best way to avoid CHIKV infection is to prevent mosquito bites in impacted areas. As of February 2007, there is no vaccine or preventive drug. Prevention tips are similar to those for dengue fever or West Nile virus:

- Use insect repellent containing an DEET or another EPA-registered active ingredient on exposed skin. Always follow the directions on the package.
- Wear long sleeves and pants (ideally treat clothes with permethrin or another repellent).
- Have secure screens on windows and doors to keep mosquitoes out.
- Get rid of mosquito breeding sites by emptying standing water from flower pots, buckets and barrels. Change the water in pet dishes and replace the water in birdbaths weekly. Drill holes in tire swings so water drains out. Keep children's wading pools empty and on their sides when they aren't being used.
- A person with chikungunya fever or dengue should limit their exposure to mosquitoes in order to avoid spreading the infection to more mosquitoes."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Hochedez P., S. Jaureguiberry, M. Debruyne, P. Bossi, P. Hausfater, G. Brucker, F. Bricaire, and E. Caumes. "Chikungunya Infection in Travelers." *Emerging Infectious Diseases.* vol. 12, no. 10 (2006): 1565–1567.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Chikungunya Fever." Jan. 16, 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/Chikungunya/index.htm> (accessed February 8, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Chikungunya Fever Diagnosed Among International Travelers—United States, 2005–2006." Sep. 29, 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm5538a2.htm> (accessed February 8, 2007).

Public Health Agency of Canada. "Material Safety Data Sheet—Infectious Substances." Apr. 23, 2001 <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/msds-ftss/msds172e.html> (accessed February 8, 2007).

Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts

Introduction

Less than 100 years ago in the United States, a quarter of children died before their fifth birthday. Most of those died before reaching one year old. Today, the diseases that caused these deaths are rare in developed countries, and many American doctors have never treated a child with measles, polio, or diphtheria. The practice of immunizing children can claim a great deal of the credit for the miraculous reduction in childhood suffering and death during the last century.

History and Policy Response

The primary cause of infant and child deaths throughout recorded history has been infectious disease. For centuries, attempts to control infections included bloodletting, purging, use of leeches, or swallowing various concoctions of herbs and poisons. The epidemics of smallpox, measles, diphtheria, and pneumonia ignored these remedies and continued killing children.

In 1798, Edward Jenner (1749–1823) proved the effectiveness of vaccination as a strategy in preventing smallpox, and in 1956, the World Health Organization (WHO) in conjunction with national governments began a immunization program to eradicate smallpox from the world. The campaign was successful. In 1977, health officials in Somalia reported the last natural case of smallpox, and the WHO declared victory over smallpox in 1979.

The success of the smallpox campaign proved that effective immunization strategies could eradicate disease. Elimination of polio from North America in 1991 provided further proof that immunization is a powerful weapon for combating infectious diseases. While construction and production of vaccines can be quite complex, the idea behind how vaccines provide protection from disease is quite simple.

For centuries, medical practitioners knew that contracting a mild form of certain diseases protected against more severe forms of the same or similar diseases. The discovery that microorganisms caused infectious diseases provided a scientific foundation for this immunity phenomenon. When exposed to these microorganisms, the immune system will create specific neutralizing agents called antibodies. If the immune system produces

A two-month-old baby receives a vaccine against diphtheria, tetanus, whooping cough, and hepatitis B in Mozambique during an international drive to immunize thousands of the world's impoverished children. The initiative, largely funded by Microsoft co-founder Bill Gate's foundation, aims to prevent the spread of the deadly but preventable diseases that kill 3 million people annually. *AP Images.*

Edward Jenner (1749–1823) discovered a vaccine for smallpox in the late 1790s. *The Library of Congress.*

antibodies fast enough, the body survives. Some microorganisms spread too rapidly however, and the body is overwhelmed before the immune system can react. At times the immune system does eventually stop the spread of the microorganism, but the body is so weakened that it never fully recovers. In some children, a second disease develops soon after the first, and the weakened body succumbs. Immunization primes the immune system to react quickly.

Active immunization is the process of inducing immunity without causing disease. A vaccine is a substance that when administered, induces the immune system to produce protective antibodies. Vaccines may be purified toxins, specific bacterial or viral proteins, genetically engineered pieces of the organism, or even whole-killed bacteria. The vaccine mimics the disease-causing microorganism but does not cause disease. The vaccine fools the immune system to produce antibodies with little or no discomfort to the person. The immunity acquired may be life-long or may need repeated vaccine boosters to maintain protection.

Using the techniques developed early in the nineteenth century, vaccines for diphtheria, pertussis, tuberculosis, and tetanus entered the medical arsenal in the 1920s. When Jonas Salk (1914–1995) perfected injectable polio vaccine in 1955, parents waited in long lines to have their children vaccinated against polio. In the 1960s, an oral polio vaccine became available followed quickly by vaccines against measles, mumps, and rubella.

Despite the relative crude nature of the early vaccines, they provided effective control of many diseases and further refinement in vaccine design reduced side effects and reactions to the vaccines. Nations around the globe began widespread immunization programs in the latter part of the twentieth century. In 1962, the United States established a vaccination program coordinated by the federal government, and this program remains in existence, providing support to finance and administer a complete series of childhood vaccines. The Expanded Program on Immunization begun in 1974 by the WHO provides similar support worldwide for childhood vaccination.

While only smallpox has been eradicated, the impact of many diseases is a shadow of prior centuries. Immunization programs have virtually eliminated tetanus, diphtheria, measles, mumps, rubella, and *Haemophilus influenzae* type b meningitis from the United States. Experts at WHO estimate that the use of vaccines prevented more than two million childhood deaths in 2003.

These successes derive from the practices of giving vaccines to many children early in life. In many countries, school immunization laws facilitate active immunization of children against a core group of diseases prior to school entry. While the specific vaccinations vary from country to country, this core group recommended by WHO includes measles, polio, tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, and tuberculosis. Additionally, children receive vaccination against *Haemophilus influenzae* type b meningitis, rubella, and yellow fever in many countries.

■ Impacts and Issues

Success in defeating infectious diseases depends on obtaining and sustaining high rates of immunization in children. No vaccine is 100% effective. Even if every child received vaccinations against all diseases, some children would remain susceptible. A phenomenon called “herd immunity” helps to protect those children who remain susceptible after vaccination. Herd immunity helps to halt the spread of disease by surrounding those susceptible children with many children who are immune. Immune children shield the susceptible children. Diseases do not spread effectively if most children are protected and only a few are not.

Immunization of children is extremely cost effective. Children are easy to find and gather in groups. Actual contact time with the medical provider is minimal. Immunization requires no change in lifestyle. The current

The immunizations typically given to a two-month-old child in the United States include those for diphtheria, hepatitis B, meningitis, and tetanus. *David Davis/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

widely used vaccines produce few side effects or reactions. In the United States, every dollar invested saves between $2 and $27 in medical costs to treat infectious diseases.

Immunization programs do save lives, yet major efforts remain. An estimated 1.4 million children died worldwide in 2002 from vaccine-preventable diseases. Measles accounted for a third of the deaths and *Haemophilus influenzae* another third, while pertussis and neonatal tetanus killed most of the remainder. Many more children die from diseases potentially preventable by vaccines. For example, rotavirus causes the most common type of diarrheal disease worldwide. A new vaccine has recently become available to prevent rotavirus diarrhea that, if used worldwide, would prevent about 500,000 childhood deaths in developing nations annually. Use of a vaccine to prevent childhood pneumonia would save the lives of about two million children annually. Researchers work diligently to produce vaccines for the diseases such as malaria and HIV that are ravaging both adults and children. New forms of old diseases continue to emerge, and continued surveillance and research is a high priority.

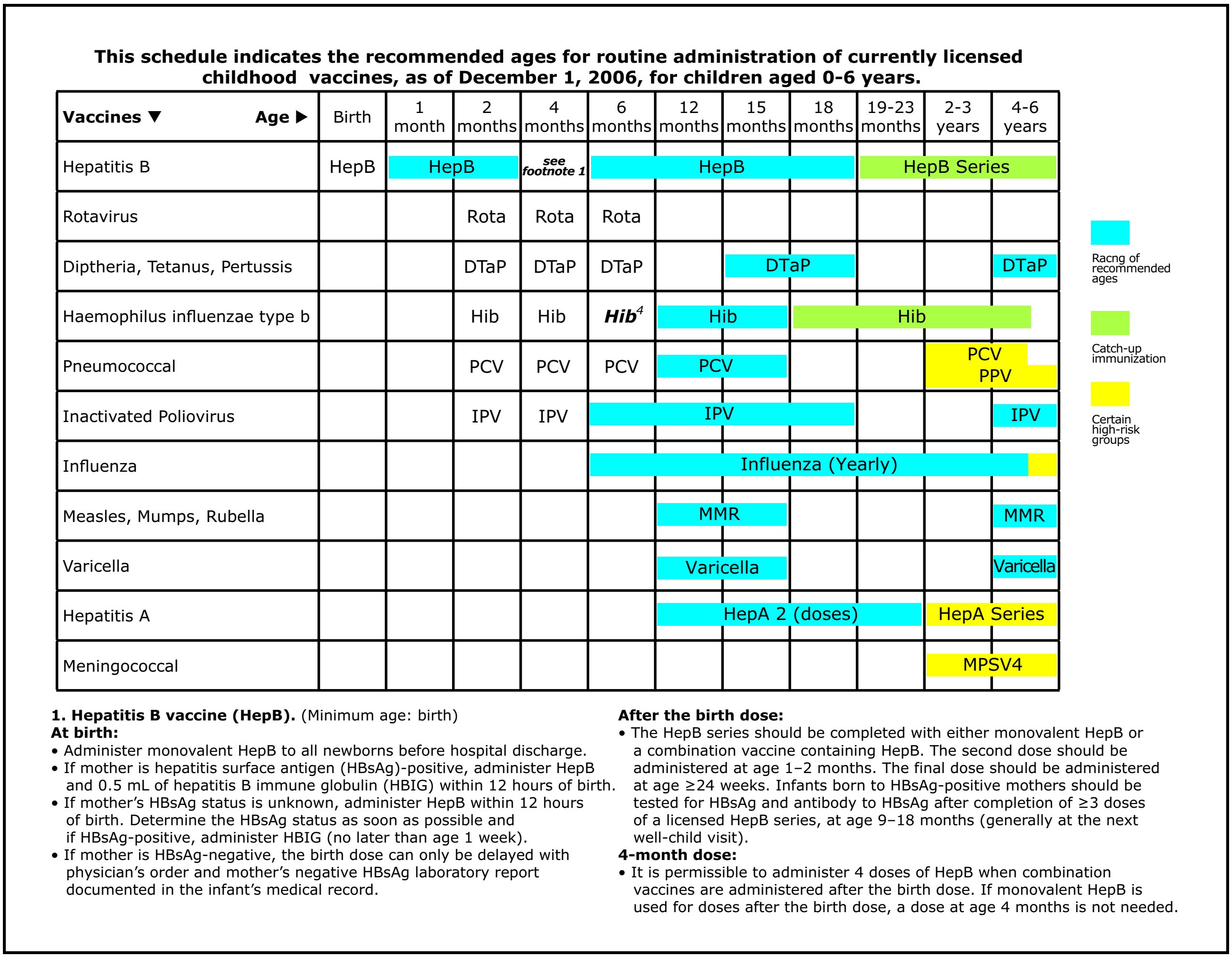
Some problems have developed while trying to continue the remarkable success of immunization programs obtained in the twentieth century. Many citizens of developed countries consider themselves safe because so few get sick from epidemic diseases such as polio or diphtheria, and vaccination rates have been dropping in developed countries as a result. Until a disease disappears from the world, no country can consider itself safe. No disease is more than an airplane trip away from anyone. If the percentage of immune individuals declines, the risk of epidemic disease skyrockets.

Compared to a century ago, the practice of immunization has reduced the burden of infectious disease worldwide. Children have benefited the most, with millions more children surviving to adulthood. The challenges for the twenty-first century include maintaining the progress, expanding the scope, and moving toward eventual eradication of infectious diseases. Complacency only benefits the disease-causing organisms in this war.

■ Primary Source Connection

In the following article in *Atlantic Monthly* magazine, Arthur Allen relates the story of a community in Colorado that has experienced outbreaks of pertussis (whooping cough) and other preventable diseases after parents chose not to vaccinate their children according to state recommendations.

As most of a population becomes vaccinated, a herd-immunity effect provides some protection to those who are unvaccinated. As Allen relates, this herd immunity is not enough to prevent outbreaks of infectious disease. Arthur Allen, a Washington-based journalist, is also the author of *Vaccine: The Controversial Story of Medicine's Greatest Lifesaver*.



This schedule indicates the recommended ages for routine administration of currently licensed childhood vaccines, as of December 1, 2006, for children aged 0-6 years.

Vaccines ▼ **Age ▶**	Birth	1 month	2 months	4 months	6 months	12 months	15 months	18 months	19-23 months	2-3 years	4-6 years
Hepatitis B	HepB	HepB		*see footnote 1*	HepB				HepB Series		
Rotavirus			Rota	Rota	Rota						
Diptheria, Tetanus, Pertussis			DTaP	DTaP	DTaP		DTaP				DTaP
Haemophilus influenzae type b			Hib	Hib	***Hib***[4]	Hib		Hib			
Pneumococcal			PCV	PCV	PCV	PCV				PCV PPV	
Inactivated Poliovirus			IPV	IPV	IPV						IPV
Influenza					Influenza (Yearly)						
Measles, Mumps, Rubella						MMR					MMR
Varicella						Varicella					Varicella
Hepatitis A						HepA 2 (doses)				HepA Series	
Meningococcal										MPSV4	

🟦 Racng of recommended ages

🟩 Catch-up immunization

🟨 Certain high-risk groups

1. Hepatitis B vaccine (HepB). (Minimum age: birth)
At birth:

- Administer monovalent HepB to all newborns before hospital discharge.
- If mother is hepatitis surface antigen (HBsAg)-positive, administer HepB and 0.5 mL of hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) within 12 hours of birth.
- If mother's HBsAg status is unknown, administer HepB within 12 hours of birth. Determine the HBsAg status as soon as possible and if HBsAg-positive, administer HBIG (no later than age 1 week).
- If mother is HBsAg-negative, the birth dose can only be delayed with physician's order and mother's negative HBsAg laboratory report documented in the infant's medical record.

After the birth dose:

- The HepB series should be completed with either monovalent HepB or a combination vaccine containing HepB. The second dose should be administered at age 1–2 months. The final dose should be administered at age ≥24 weeks. Infants born to HBsAg-positive mothers should be tested for HBsAg and antibody to HBsAg after completion of ≥3 doses of a licensed HepB series, at age 9–18 months (generally at the next well-child visit).

4-month dose:

- It is permissible to administer 4 doses of HepB when combination vaccines are administered after the birth dose. If monovalent HepB is used for doses after the birth dose, a dose at age 4 months is not needed.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) chart listing the recommended immunization schedule for children from birth to age six in the United States in 2007. *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Recommended immunization schedules for persons aged 0-18 years—United States, 2007. MMWR 2006;55(51&52):Q1-Q4./CDC.*

SEE ALSO *Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Immune Response to Infection; Polio Eradication Campaign.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Oshinsky, David. *Polio: An American Story*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.

Periodicals

Cohen, Stuart A. "On the Precipice: Private-Sector Vaccine Delivery." *Pediatric News* 40 (April 1, 2006).

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "National Immunization Program." <http://www.cdc.gov/nip> (accessed June 1, 2007).

Lloyd Scott Clements

Chlamydia Infection

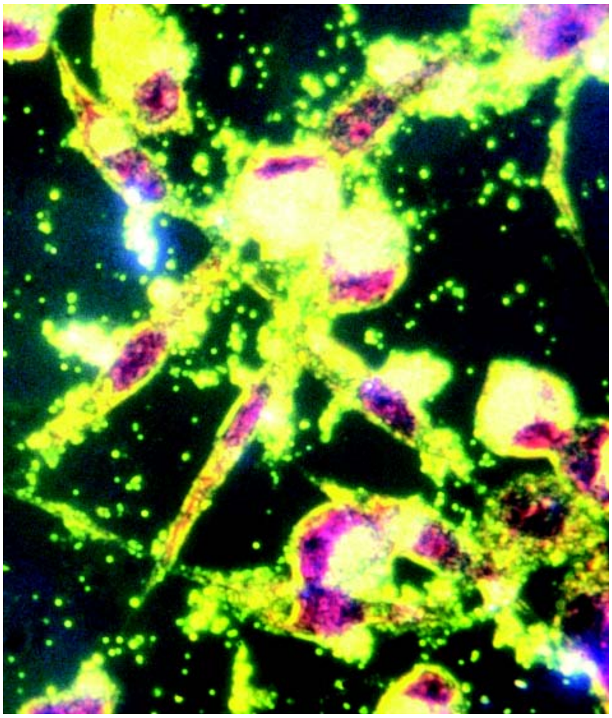
Introduction

Chlamydia trachomatis is the most common cause of sexually transmitted disease (STD) around the world. Any sexually active individual is at risk of chlamydia, as this infection is often known. Because the majority of cases produce no symptoms, people often do not realize they are infected and go on to infect others. Chlamydia can have serious consequences for a woman's reproductive health and often leads to infertility. Certain strains of *C. trachomatis* cause an eye disease called trachoma, which is responsible for about six million cases of infectious blindness in the developing world. In addition, *C. psittaci* is a *Chlamydia* species carried by birds that occasionally infects humans, resulting in an unusual form of pneumonia. The other important *Chlamydia* species is *C. pneumoniae*, which infects approximately one half of the world's population and sometimes causes upper and lower respiratory tract infections. All of these infections can be treated successfully with antibiotics, but many people go undiagnosed or do not have access to treatment.

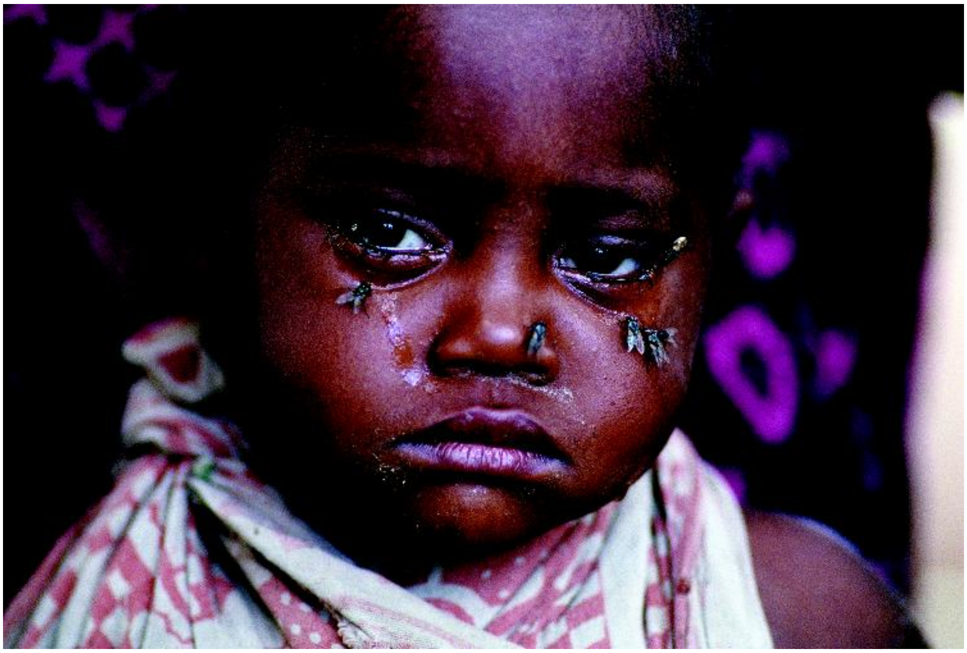
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The three main *Chlamydia* species are among the world's most prevalent microbial pathogens (disease-causing organisms) and are a significant cause of ill health. When *C. trachomatis* infects the genital tract it often produces no symptoms at all, but women may report a burning sensation on urination and a vaginal discharge. Men may experience a discharge from the penis, as well as itching and a burning sensation. Chlamydia infection, if left untreated, can cause extensive damage to the female reproductive system, leading to pelvic inflammatory disease and infertility. It can also lead to ectopic pregnancy, a potentially fatal condition where a fertilized egg begins to develop within one of the fallopian tubes instead of in the womb. Women with chlamydia are also up to five times more likely to become infected with HIV if exposed to it.

Trachoma is a chronic inflammation of the conjunctiva, which are the membranes covering the inside surfaces of the eyelids, the white of the eye, and the cornea. The infection leads to blindness through scarring of these tissues. *C. psittaci* causes a pneumonia of gradual



A photomicrograph shows the bacterium *Chlamydia trachomatis.* The bacterium causes a variety of ocular and urogenital diseases, including trachoma, one of the most common infectious causes of blindness worldwide. Chlamydia is the most frequently reported bacterial sexually transmitted disease in the United States. © *Mediscan/Corbis.*



In 2006 the World Health Organization estimated that some 80 million people worldwide have trachoma, which leads to blindness. It is most common in poor, remote, and dry regions of the world, in places such as Africa, Asia, and the Middle East, among others. Children infected with the disease spread the ailment as they play. Flies are also carriers from one child to another. *Joe McNally/Getty Images.*

onset over one to two weeks, with severe headache and a cough that may result in spitting up blood. *C. pneumoniae* can cause a range of infections including sinusitis, pharyngitis (throat infection), bronchitis, and pneumonia. It is responsible for up to 12% of cases of community-acquired pneumonia.

C. trachomatis is transmitted from person to person through genital, oral, and anal sexual intercourse, and can affect anyone who is sexually active. Young women are especially at risk, because the infection is more likely to take hold where the cervix is not fully matured. *C. trachomatis* can also be transmitted from mother-to-child during childbirth. Newborns exposed to *C. trachomatis* from their mother's cervix may develop conjunctivitis or pneumonia. The strains of *C. trachomatis* that cause trachoma are transmitted from hand-to-hand and also by handling fomites, objects that have been used by an infected person. Common fomites include sheets, crockery, clothing, books, and papers. Trachoma is more common in conditions of poor hygiene and overcrowding; it is often found in arid countries where access to water is limited. Reinfection between family members is common. Finally, *C. pneumoniae* is spread from hand-to-hand and by coughs and sneezes.

■ Scope and Distribution

Chlamydia is the most frequently reported bacterial sexually transmitted disease in the United States, according to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), with nearly one million cases reported in 2004. The true number is probably much greater than this—maybe three to five million cases per year—because so many people are unaware that they are infected. World Health Organization (WHO) data gathered from screening programs show that chlamydia is a significant public health problem the world over. In Australia, for

WORDS TO KNOW

FOMITE: A fomite is an object or a surface to which an infectious microorganism such as bacteria or viruses can adhere and be transmitted. Transmission is often by touch.

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASE (STD): Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) vary in their susceptibility to treatment, their signs and symptoms, and the consequences if they are left untreated. Some are caused by bacteria. These usually can be treated and cured. Others are caused by viruses and can typically be treated but not cured. More than 15 million new cases of STD are diagnosed annually in the United States.

IN CONTEXT: CONDOM USE BY YOUNG PEOPLE

Condom use can decrease transmission of sexually transmitted disease. The list below reflects selected data from the World Health Organization regarding condom use by young people (15–24), a group considered at higher risk due for sexually transmitted diseases.

The list below contains data from 20 countries selected to show the full spectrum (maximum and minimum) in results reported by WHO as of February 2007. Data was not available for all countries, including a lack of inclusion of data from countries such as Australia, Belgium, Brazil, China, France, Germany, Italy, Russian Federation, Thailand, Ukraine, United Kingdom, United States of America, and Zimbabwe.

Condom use by young people 15 to 24 years old (with the year data was gathered or reported):

- Madagascar Males: 12%; Females: 5% (2003)
- Chad Males: 25%; Females: 17% (2004)
- Ethiopia Males: 30%; Females: 17% (2000)
- Haiti Males: 30%; Females: 19% (2000)
- Mali Males: 30%; Females: 14% (2001)
- Mozambique Males: 33%; Females: 29% (2003)
- Bolivia Males: 37%; Females: 20% (2003)
- Rwanda Males: 41%; Females: 28% (2004)
- Zambia Males: 42%; Females: 33% (2001)
- Nigeria Males: 46%; Females: 24% (2003)
- United Republic of Tanzania Males: 46%; Females: 34% (2004)
- Kenya Males: 47%; Females: 25% (2003)
- Gabon Males: 48%; Females: 33% (2000)
- Uzbekistan Males: 50%; Females: % (2002)
- Ghana Males: 52%; Females: 33% (2003)
- Uganda Males: 55%; Females: 53% (2004)
- Cameroon Males: 57%; Females: 46% (2004)
- India Males: 59%; Females: 51% (2001)
- Viet Nam Males: 68%; Females: % (2005)
- Namibia Males: 69%; Females: 48% (2000)
- Botswana Males: 88%; Females: 75% (2000)

SOURCE: *Multiple Indicator Cluster Survey and Demographic and Health Surveys. WHOSIS (WHO Statistical Information System), World Health Organization.*

instance, it is the most common sexually transmitted disease, while in Europe, rates among pregnant women range from 2.7% in Italy, to 6.2% in the United Kingdom, 6.7% in Denmark, and 8% in Iceland. In African countries, rates of chlamydia infection among pregnant women range 6–13%. Globally, the WHO estimates there are around 92 million new cases of chlamydia infection each year, about 50 million of which are among women.

In some parts of the developing world, 90% of the population is infected with one of the strains of *C. trachomatis* that can cause trachoma. Despite ongoing efforts at control, there are still more than 500 million people at high risk of infection, over 140 million infected, and six million trachoma-blinded individuals in Africa, the Middle East, Central and Southeast Asia, and certain countries in Latin America, according to WHO data.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of chlamydia infections is straightforward, using antibiotics, such as tetracylines, macrolides, or fluoroquinolones. Resistance of the bacterium to these drugs is uncommon. However, diagnosis of the sexually acquired infection requires laboratory equipment that is not often available in less developed countries. Diagnosis involves a urine test and sometimes a swab of fluids from the cervix or penis. The sexual partners of those infected should also be tested and treated, if necessary, to prevent reinfection. Moreover, persons with chlamydia should abstain from sexual intercourse until treatment is completed. Condoms provide some protection against transmission of the bacterium.

Screening, that is, testing people who do not have symptoms, is an important part of monitoring the prevalence of chlamydia. Many countries have adopted screening programs. The CDC recommends annual screening for all sexually active women aged 25 or younger. Older women with risk factors, such as a new sex partner or multiple sex partners, are often advised to have an annual screening as well, as should all pregnant women.

According to the WHO, a vaccine against *C. trachomatis*, administered prior to adolescence and which would be effective through the childbearing years, would be the best way to halt the toll of the infection globally. There are two such vaccines currently in development.

Impacts and Issues

The greatest impact of sexually transmitted *C. trachomatis* is the silent nature of the infection. Three-quarters of those infected are unaware of the fact because they have no symptoms. This means they can infect others and continue to do so until the disease is diagnosed. For women, the damage that untreated chlamydia inflicts on the reproductive system is also silent. Over one-third of women with untreated chlamydia develop pelvic inflammatory disease and can lose fertility, often without even being aware of the reason why. Screening is important so that infection can be dealt with before permanent damage to the uterus, fallopian tubes, and the surrounding tissues develops.

The control of chlamydia and other sexually-transmitted diseases, like HIV, involves education aimed at reducing risky sexual behaviors. Both sexual abstinence and having sexual intercourse only with a partner who is not infected are effective ways of avoiding infection with *C. trachomatis.* Having sex with multiple partners increases the risk. International health officials attempt to offer advice and present facts about sexual behaviors and their link to sexually transmitted diseases such as chlamydia in a non-judgmental manner, taking into account cultural differences in differing populations.

The impact of trachoma in less developed countries has important social and economic implications. Loss of vision from trachoma often starts in middle life, although the infection may be present much earlier. It is also two to three times more common among women, probably due to the fact that women generally spend a greater time in close contact with small children, who are the main reservoir of infection. Middle-aged women often make an important contribution to the family income and, therefore, disability in this group has a severe economic impact. That is one of the reasons why the WHO launched a global health alliance in 1997 with the goal of eliminating trachoma as a blinding disease by 2020.

See Also Chlamydia pneumoniae; *Psittacosis; Sexually Transmitted Diseases; Trachoma.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter, and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). “Chlamydia—CDC Fact Sheet.” April 2006. <http://www.cdc.gov/std/chlamydia/STDFact-Chlamydia.htm> (accessed January 28, 2007).

World Health Organization Department of HIV/AIDS. “Global Prevalence of Selected Curable Sexually Transmitted Infections: Chlamydia.” <http://www.who.int/docstore/hiv/GRSTI/003.htm> (accessed January 29, 2007).

World Health Organization Initiative for Vaccine Research (IVR). “Sexually Transmitted Diseases.” <http://www.who.int/vaccine_research/diseases/soa_std/en/index.html> (accessed January 28, 2007).

World Health Organization Prevention of Blindness and Visual Impairment. “Trachoma.” <http://www.who.int/blindness/causes/priority/en/index2.html> (accessed February 14, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Chlamydia pneumoniae

Introduction

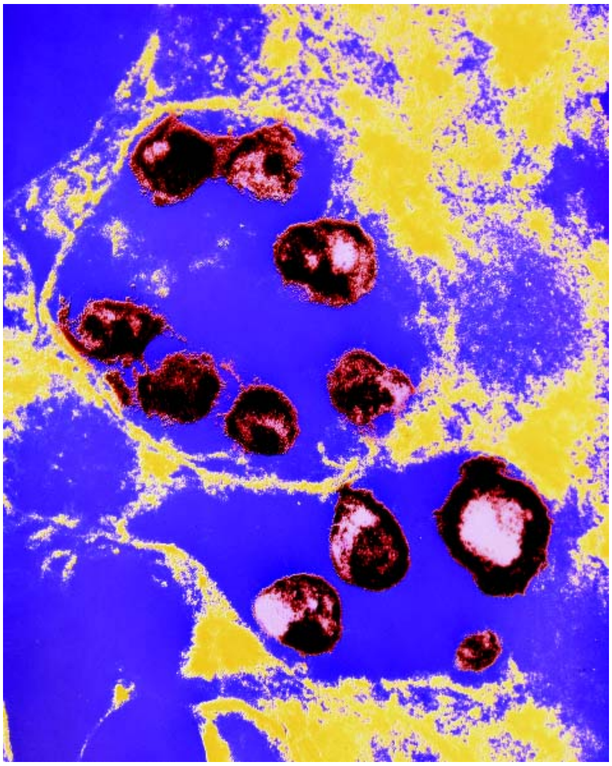
Around half of the world's population is infected with *C. pneumoniae*, although it does not cause any obvious health problems in the majority. *C. pneumoniae* can, however, cause upper and lower respiratory tract infections, ranging from mild to severe and life-threatening. As the name suggests, pneumonia is the most common infection associated with *C. pneumoniae*. It can be difficult to diagnose, and there is, as yet, no standard diagnostic method for identifying its presence. Fortunately, however, it does respond to standard antibiotic treatment. In recent years, research has also suggested that *C. pneumoniae* infection may have a long-term impact on health, possibly playing a role in the development of heart disease.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

C. pneumoniae infection may affect both the upper and the lower respiratory tract. Bronchitis and pneumonia are the most common forms of *C. pneumoniae* infection. Sinusitis, pharyngitis (infection of the throat), and laryngitis (infection of the larynx or voice box) are less likely. Pneumonia may develop gradually with fever, hoarseness, and cough, although sometimes fever may be absent. *C. pneumoniae* may also make asthma symptoms worse. Transmission of *C. pneumoniae* is by hand-to-hand contact or by exposure to the aerosols created by coughing and sneezing.

Scope and Distribution

C. pneumoniae infection is common, and school-age children seem to be most susceptible. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) reports that about 50% of adults are affected by the time they are 20 years old. Reinfection throughout life is also common. Older adults are most at risk for complications from *C. pneumoniae* infection, which may account for



A colored transmission electron micrograph (TEM) of a coronary artery of the heart shows pear-shaped structures (brown) believed to be *Chlamydia pneumoniae* bacteria. The bacteria are in vacuole spaces of a foam or fat-filled cell (yellow). Foam cells are found in atheroma plaque that coats arteries in the disease of atherosclerosis. *C. pneumoniae* may increase plaque formation and scarring of the diseased arteries as the immune system fights the bacteria. By contributing to atherosclerosis, *C. pneumonia* may be a cause of heart attack and stroke. If so, antibiotic drugs may be used to prevent heart attacks. *C.C. Kuo, University of Washington, Seattle/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

6–12% of all community-acquired pneumonia (CAP)—that is, as the name suggests, pneumonia acquired in the community (including retirement homes) rather than in hospital. Unlike influenza, *C. pneumoniae* is not seasonal in nature and does not “peak”in the winter months. Because *C. pneumoniae* is not easy to diagnose with certainty, there are neither precise figures for its incidence nor any definitive information about trends—that is, whether or not it is becoming more common. *C.pneumoniae* is not currently a notifiable infection.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of *C. pneumoniae* includes antibiotics in the tetracycline, macrolide, or fluoroquinolone classes. Like all infections spread by hand-to-hand contact or aerosol exposure, the best approach to prevention is frequent and thorough handwashing.

Impacts and Issues

C. pneumoniae is a significant contributor to CAP, which is a major public health problem. In the United States, pneumonia is the leading cause of death due to infectious disease and the sixth leading cause of death overall. Nearly half of all deaths from infection are caused by pneumonia and other respiratory infections, and most of these occur in people over the age of 65. There are 2–5 million cases of CAP in the United States each year, leading to around half a million hospitalizations, with associated healthcare costs. If a person with pneumonia is admitted to the hospital, the death rate from the disease goes up from one percent to 14%. For those admitted to intensive care, the mortality rate from pneumonia can be as high as 40%.

Research has suggested that *C. pneumoniae* may have other consequences for health. Atherosclerotic plaques are fatty deposits that are found lining the inner walls of the coronary and carotid arteries, the vessels serving the heart and brain, of those with heart disease. *C. pneumoniae* infection has been located within these plaques, possibly because the bacterium can infect many of the cells that make up the deposits. Research indicates that *C. pneumoniae* may aid in creating the inflammation and immune reaction within blood vessel walls that contribute to heart attacks and strokes. There is no definitive evidence, as yet, that a *C. pneumoniae* infection actually causes heart disease, merely that it is associated with it. There have been several clinical trials aimed at testing whether antibiotics can prevent heart disease by wiping out *C. pneumoniae* infection. So far it appears that antibiotic therapy does not reduce overall mortality from heart disease or the overall rate of heart attack or stroke. The potential role of *C. pneumoniae* in heart disease continues to be explored, while significantly and for the first time, evidence points to an infectious agent as a risk factor for the number one killer in the U.S.

Other research has suggested that *C. pneumoniae* could also play a role in Alzheimer’s disease, asthma, and arthritis.

WORDS TO KNOW

AEROSOL: Particles of liquid or solid dispersed as a suspension in gas.

COMMUNITY-ACQUIRED INFECTION: Community-acquired infection is an infection that develops outside of a hospital, in the general community. It differs from hospital-acquired infections in that those who infected are typically in better health than hospitalized people.

NOTIFIABLE DISEASE: A disease that the law requires must be reported to health officials when diagnosed; also called a reportable disease.

PATHOGEN: A disease-causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

CHLAMYDIA PNEUMONIAE AND *CHLAMYDOPHILA PNEUMONIAE*

The bacterium *Chlamydia pneumoniae* is one of the *Chlamydia* genus, a group that also includes *C. trachomatis* and *C. psittaci*. Together, these species are among the most common microbial pathogens (disease-causing organisms) in the world, although *C. pneumoniae* was only identified as such in 1983. A name change to *Chlamydophila pneumoniae* has been proposed for the bacterium to highlight its distinctiveness from other *Chlamydia* species associated with sexually transmitted disease (e.g. chlamydia infection).

SEE ALSO Chlamydia *Infection; Pneumonia; Psittacosis.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Gates, Robert H. *Infectious Disease Secrets,* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Hanley and Beltus, 2003.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Periodicals

Andraws, R., J.S. Berger, and D.L. Brown. "Effects of Antibiotic Therapy on Outcomes of Patients with Coronary Artery Disease: A Meta-analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials." *Journal of the American Medical Association*. no. 293 (2005): 2641–2647.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "*Chlamydia pneumoniae*." Oct 6, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/chlamydiapneumonia_t.htm> (accessed Jan 30, 2007).

Cholera

Introduction

Cholera, sometimes called Asiatic cholera or epidemic cholera, is a disease with roots in antiquity that remains a global threat. Many parts of the world have been hit by major epidemics over the course of human history. Cholera is an acute intestinal infection caused by the bacterium *Vibrio cholerae*. It can cause very rapid dehydration of the body, which can be fatal. Cholera is transmitted by contaminated food and water. It is endemic—that is, present all the time—in countries where there is inadequate access to clean water. Treatment of cholera is simple and relies on restoring the fluids lost by the body. However, even this simple treatment may not be available in very poor countries. The best approach to preventing cholera lies in better sanitation—improving public health through adequate sewage disposal and cleaning up the water supply. In many less developed countries, this is a difficult challenge to meet, since it requires political stability and increased investment in the national infrastructure.

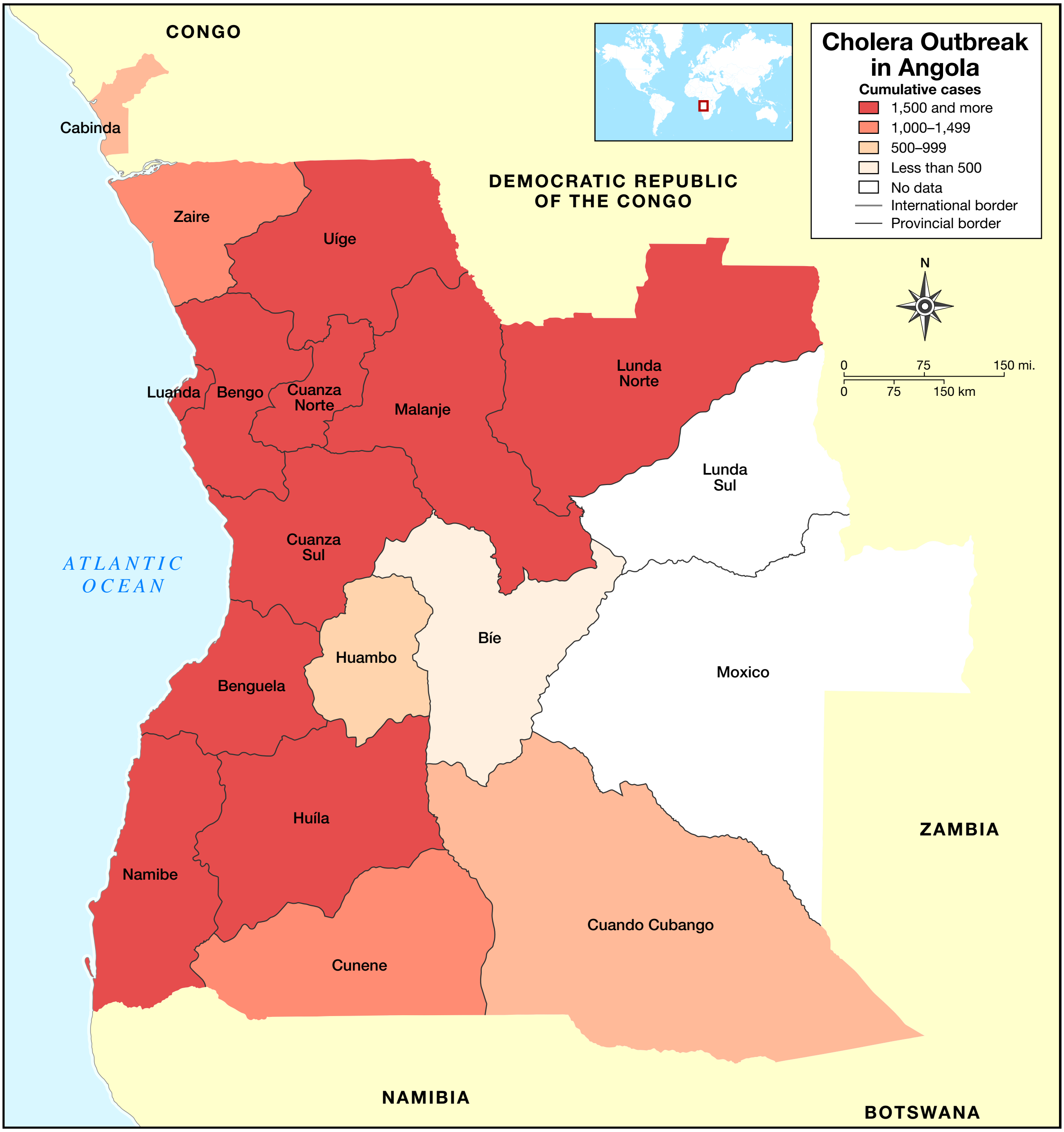
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

V. cholerae belongs to the *Vibrio* genus of Gram-negative bacteria. The term Gram-negative refers to the way in which a bacterium absorbs visualizing stains under a microscope for identification purposes. *Vibrio* species exist as straight or curved rods in watery environments. These bacteria use a whiplike projection called a flagellum to propel themselves. (The flagellum is an extension to the bacterial cell body.) *Vibrio* species prefer marine environments and grow best in the presence of salt. They are one of the most common organisms in the surface waters of the world.

There are 139 serotypes of *V. cholerae*—they are basically all the same species, but are distinguished by the number and type of antigen (protein) molecules on their cell surfaces. Most cholera infections are caused by the *V. cholerae* 01 serotype, but others have been found in specific outbreaks or epidemics. For instance, the *El Tor* serotype was first isolated in the quarantine station of the same name in Sinai in 1906, and was linked to an outbreak among pilgrims returning from Mecca. It seems to survive for longer than the 01 serotype, which is killed by 15 minutes of heating. In 1992, the 0139 serotype was first identified in Madras and was responsible for outbreaks in Bangladesh and Thailand during the following year.

Most people infected with *V. cholerae* do not actually become ill, although the bacterium is present in their feces for seven to 14 days, which means they may contaminate food or water. However, *V. cholerae* 01 and a few other serotypes produce a potent toxin that affects the mucosal lining of the small intestine, causing severe diarrhea, with very rapid onset. The incubation period of *V. cholerae* ranges from just a few hours to five days. In most cases, the illness is difficult to distinguish from other diarrheal diseases. But, in severe cholera, the diarrhea is copious—the patient may lose more than a quart (liter) of fluid every hour. Microscopic examination of stool samples reveals the presence of *V. cholerae* as "shooting stars"—as the bacteria use their flagella to dart through the sample. Pathologists may call a sample "rice-water stool" due to its appearance—clear, but flecked with mucus and cells. The diarrhea may be accompanied by vomiting, but pain and fever are minimal and certainly out of proportion to the severity of the diarrhea.

Severe cholera can lead to dehydration, through a combination of diarrhea and vomiting. The patient may enter a state of shock due to massive fluid loss and electrolyte imbalance, suffering seizures, kidney failure, heart rhythm abnormalities, and unconsciousness. Death from dehydration and shock may occur within hours. As a result, cholera is always considered a medical emergency and, indeed, it is one of the most rapidly fatal illnesses ever known. Left untreated, severe cholera has


Cholera Outbreak in Angola
Cumulative cases
1,500 and more
1,000–1,499
500–999
Less than 500
No data
International border
Provincial border
N
0 75 150 mi.
0 75 150 km
CONGO
DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF THE CONGO
ZAMBIA
NAMIBIA
BOTSWANA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Cabinda
Zaire
Uíge
Luanda
Bengo
Cuanza Norte
Malanje
Lunda Norte
Lunda Sul
Cuanza Sul
Huambo
Bíe
Moxico
Benguela
Huíla
Namibe
Cunene
Cuando Cubango

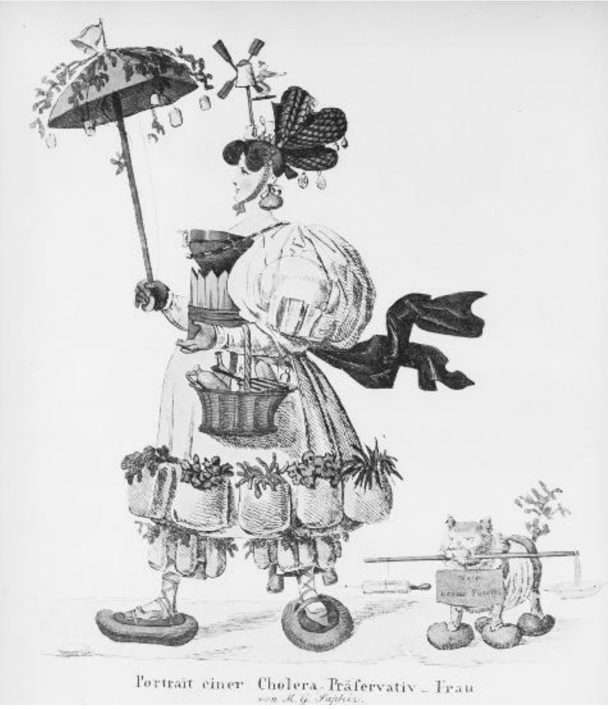
Map showing cumulative cases of cholera outbreak from February 13 to December 7, 2006 in Angola. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

a death rate of 30–50%, but when treated promptly, mortality falls to less than 1%.

Transmission of *V. cholerae* is through the fecal-oral route, which, in practical terms, means the consumption of, or contact with, contaminated food and water. *V. cholerae* is hard to avoid in places where sanitation is poor and access to clean water for drinking or washing is limited or non-existent. Imported foodstuffs are only a rare cause of cholera, and the risk can be kept at bay through high standards of food handling hygiene.

■ Scope and Distribution

Cholera affects many countries around the world. According to the latest data from the World Health



This costume was recommended to frantic citizens of Vienna during a 19-century cholera epidemic. The woman has a cholera band around her body, and her skirt is weighted down by bags of aromatic herbs. Her shoes are of double width and size to prevent infections from the street. The small windmill on her hat was to chase away evil winds. Her cat is dressed in similar attire. *© Bettmann/Corbis.*

Rwandan refugees with cholera are given saline drips at a Médecins sans Frontières (Doctors without Borders) emergency hospital in a refugee camp in Zaire (now the Democratic Republic of the Congo) in 1994. *© Howard Davies/Corbis.*

Organization (WHO), there were 131,943 cases reported in 2005, including 2,272 deaths, from 52 countries. This represents a 30% increase over 2004, although the number of countries reporting cholera was down from 56. The 2005 increase can be largely accounted for by a series of outbreaks in 14 countries in West Africa, including Senegal, Guinea-Bissau, Ghana, Guinea, and Mauritania. The latter, and Gambia, had previously been free from cholera for over a decade, so this is a downturn for them. Indeed, Africa accounted for about 95% of all cholera cases, although the number of cases from Asia also increased by 18%. The Indian subcontinent accounted for nearly half of all the Asian cases. There were 12 cases in the United States—four of them related to Hurricane Katrina—and ten in Europe. Globally, WHO admits that the toll from cholera is much higher, because surveillance and reporting systems are far from perfect. Some countries only report laboratory-confirmed cases, and there is often confusion over what is and is not cholera.

Cholera is rare in areas where basic hygiene standards can be assured. However, there has been a source of cholera present in the Gulf of Mexico since at least 1973. This has led to sporadic cholera cases in Texas, Louisiana, Georgia, and Florida, linked to eating crabs, shrimp, or oysters that were not properly cooked or stored.

Treatment and Prevention

The most important treatment for cholera is fluid and electrolyte (salt) replacement to treat the losses caused by diarrhea and vomiting. Oral rehydration fluid, containing glucose and salt dissolved in water, is the most convenient form of this treatment. Eighty percent of all cases of cholera can be treated in this way, and the treatment needs to be continued until the diarrhea stops. Intravenous administration of rehydration fluid sometimes may be necessary. In countries where oral rehydration fluid is not available, water in which rice has been boiled provides a good alternative. Where antibiotic treatment is needed, tetracycline is the drug of choice and has been shown to shorten the duration of the disease. Ampicillin is a suitable alternative for children and pregnant women.

Clean water and effective sanitation are the most effective preventive measures against cholera. Chlorination of water, boiling of water in households, and the

WORDS TO KNOW

ELECTROLYTES: Compounds that ionize in a solution; electrolytes dissolved in the blood play an important role in maintaining the proper functioning of the body.

FECAL-ORAL ROUTE: The transmission of minute particles of fecal material from one organism (human or animal) to the mouth of another organism.

construction and maintenance of latrines are basic measures that can help achieve these goals. High standards of personal hygiene and food preparation can also reduce the spread of the disease. Accurate and ongoing surveillance of outbreaks and epidemics can help reduce the toll from cholera.

There are now three oral vaccines against cholera, and research has shown them to be safe, effective, and capable of mounting an immune response against the disease. They are suitable for travelers, but WHO is also carrying out trials of mass vaccinations among vulnerable populations. Trials of one vaccine that have been carried out in Bangladesh and Peru show that it gives protection for at least six months among all age groups. A second cholera vaccine is being produced and tested in Vietnam, and there are plans to use this vaccine in India. The results on the third vaccine, not currently being produced, have been less convincing, although it has been shown to be safe.

■ Impacts and Issues

Cholera is one of the great killers of all time. The characteristic symptoms of the disease were described by the Greek physician Hippocrates (c.460–c.357 BC), and the disease is also mentioned by early Indian and Chinese writers. Epidemic cholera was first described in 1563 by Garcia del Huerto, a Portuguese physician working in Goa, India. The natural "home" of cholera appears to be the Ganges plain and delta in northern India and Bangladesh. From here, it spread along trade routes, although for many centuries the disease was generally confined to India. Beginning in the nineteenth century, cholera began to spread around the world as trade expanded. Between 1817 and 1923, there were six pandemics. It was the second pandemic, beginning in 1824, that brought cholera to England (1831), North America (1832), and the Caribbean and Latin America (1833).

The seventh pandemic of cholera, caused by the *El Tor* serotype, began in 1961 and affected the Far East, although most of Europe was spared. During the 1980s, outbreaks of cholera were common in refugee camps and city slums in famine and war-stricken countries such as Ethiopia and Sudan. The disease, carried by the *El Tor* serotype, returned to the Western Hemisphere in the early 1990s, beginning in Peru—where it had been absent for over 100 years—and spreading outwards through Latin America. In 1992, a large epidemic in Bangladesh was attributed to the newly identified 0139 serotype.

The rapid onset and high mortality of cholera brought great fear to populations during the nineteenth century, as it affected many areas for the first time. Many people thought the cause of cholera—and other diseases—was "miasma" or "bad air." Therefore, the standard treatment was to burn huge bonfires to cleanse the air. However, some blamed cholera on low morals and drunkenness. The belief that "cleanliness is next to Godliness" at least led to the beginnings of an interest in public health in England and America. Social reformers began to campaign for piped water, drains, and proper sewage disposal. Although these changes took many years to bring about, they eventually made a significant contribution towards cutting the death toll from cholera and many other infectious diseases.

It was the English physician John Snow (1813–1858) who suggested that contaminated water, rather than bad air, caused the transmission of cholera. He carried out a serious scientific investigation during the 1848 epidemic in London. His classic work on the subject is titled "On the Mode of Communication of Cholera." In August 1854, there was a fresh outbreak of cholera in and around Broad Street, near Snow's own home. He suggested removing the handle from the Broad Street pump, since this was the probable source of the outbreak. This was done and thereafter there were no more major cholera outbreaks in London.

Snow also accepted the germ theory of disease, put forward by the Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) and Robert Koch (1843–1910). In 1882, Koch discovered the bacillus that causes tuberculosis—also a major killer—and the following year, working in Egypt, he identified *V. cholerae* as the cause of cholera.

Thanks to Snow, Koch, and other researchers, cholera is a well-understood disease in scientific and clinical terms. The causative agents have been discovered, an effective cure is known, and there are vaccines against the disease. Its continuing existence is not due to a lack of scientific understanding or effective treatment and prevention options but to the economic and political factors in many countries that affect their level of development. Today, WHO says that most developing countries face the threat of a cholera outbreak or epidemic. According to WHO and its Global Task Force on Cholera Control, improvements in sanitation and access to clean water represent the only sustainable approach to cholera prevention and control. These factors are more important than drugs to treat the disease or vaccines to protect against it. In areas of the world afflicted by poverty or war (or both), the high standards of public health that are taken for granted in the West are too often hard to achieve and sustain.

The response to cholera is too often reactive—that is, dealing with an outbreak or epidemic once it has occurred. Fighting the threat of cholera requires a multidisciplinary approach involving a country's agriculture, water, health, and education sectors. Investment in infrastructure, including construction of water and sewage treatment plants, is key to improving public health. Long-term planning is needed so that attention is given not just to responding to cholera when it happens—although that is important—but also to prevention and surveillance. There is a need for far more openness and transparency on surveillance and reporting. Some countries fear that reporting a cholera outbreak will lead to travel and trade restrictions that will hurt their economy.

Because the above goals may be difficult to achieve in many countries, especially in urban slums and in crisis situations, the use of oral cholera vaccines as a complementary management tool is becoming more popular. For example, in 2002–2003 a mass vaccination campaign—the first in an endemic setting—was carried out in Beira, Mozambique, where there are yearly outbreaks. Vaccinated people were shown to have a high level of protection from cholera. Other mass vaccinations have been carried out in emergency settings—in Darfur in Sudan in 2004, for example. These campaigns are challenging, since they are costly and hard to implement, but WHO regards the experience gained as encouraging.

Cholera often is a seasonal disease, occurring each year during the rainy season. For example, in Bangladesh, where it is endemic, cholera comes after the monsoons. This is related to an increase in the growth of algae during the rainy season in the watery environment inhabited by *V. cholerae*. The algae and the bacteria form a symbotic (mutually beneficial) relationship, which allows the bacteria to survive indefinitely in contaminated water. Cholera is also associated with floods and cyclones and often spreads in times of war, especially in refugee camps, because upheaval and overcrowding cause the breakdown of basic facilities, such as water supply. For example, about 45,000 people died of cholera in refugee camps during the war in Rwanda in 1994.

The Global Task Force on Cholera Control has been considering how to improve the use of vaccination as a control tool. It is looking for ways to identify the populations most at risk and protocols for proper use of vaccines in complex emergency settings. Many countries are making significant efforts to control the spread of cholera. For example, there was an outbreak of 1,133 cases in Iran in 2005, including 11 deaths, but this outbreak was rapidly brought under control because the government was able to mount an effective emergency response. However, there are also increasing numbers of vulnerable people living in unsanitary conditions. For instance, in Afghanistan there was a recent outbreak of more than 150,000 cases of an acute watery diarrhea that WHO considers to be cholera. In the future, global warming may lead to more frequent droughts, which have also been linked to cholera outbreaks.

BOIL IT, COOK IT, PEEL IT, OR FORGET IT

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that "when simple precautions are observed, contracting the disease (cholera) is unlikely" and offers the following recommendations for travelers to lower their risk of cholera.

All travelers to areas where cholera has occurred should observe the following recommendations:

- Drink only water that you have boiled or treated with chlorine or iodine. Other safe beverages include tea and coffee made with boiled water and carbonated, bottled beverages with no ice.
- Eat only foods that have been thoroughly cooked and are still hot, or fruit that you have peeled yourself.
- Avoid undercooked or raw fish or shellfish, including ceviche.
- Make sure all vegetables are cooked. Avoid salads.
- Avoid foods and beverages from street vendors.
- Do not bring perishable seafood back to the United States.

A simple rule of thumb is "Boil it, cook it, peel it, or forget it."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

Primary Source Connection

Sometimes the fear of disease can be as captivating as the reality. Although rare in industrialized nations for more than a century, cholera still raises a powerful and feared specter, especially following disasters that devastate local sanitation resources. The essay below reflects on the fear of widespread cholera following Hurricane Katrina's landfall in along the Mississippi Gulf Coast and the devastation of New Orleans by flooding after levee breaks. The author, Steven Shapin, is Franklin L. Ford Professor of the History of Science at Harvard University. Shapin previously served as Professor of Sociology at the University of California, San Diego, and at Edinburgh University. He is a frequent contributor to the *The New Yorker* magazine.

IN CONTEXT: ACCESS TO IMPROVED SANITATION

The list below reflects selected data from the World Health Organization (WHO) that demonstrates the wide disparity in results reported by WHO as of February 2007 for the relative percentage of the population of a country reported to have access to improved sanitation.

- Afghanistan 8% of the population (year reported: 2002)
- Chad 8% (2002)
- Congo 9% (2002)
- Eritrea 9% (2002)
- Niger 12% (2002)
- India 30% (2002)
- Nigeria 38% (2002)
- Uganda 41% (2002)
- Viet Nam 41% (2002)
- Rwanda 41% (2002)
- China 44% (2002)
- Romania 51% (2002)
- Guatemala 61% (2002)
- Mexico 77% (2002)
- Iraq 80% (2002)
- Iran (Islamic Republic of) 84% (2002)
- Russian Federation 87% (2002)
- Tonga 97% (2002)
- Cuba 98% (2002)
- Ukraine 99% (2002)
- Canada 100% (2002)
- United States of America 100% (2002)
- United Arab Emirates 100% (2002)

SOURCE: *World Health Organization (WHO)*

Sick City

After Katrina, cholera. On August 31, 2005—two days after the hurricane made landfall—the Bush Administration's Health and Human Services Secretary warned, "We are gravely concerned about the potential for cholera, typhoid, and dehydrating diseases that could come as a result of the stagnant water and other conditions." Around the world, newspapers and other media evoked the spectre of cholera in the United States, the world's hygienic superpower. A newspaper in Columbus, Ohio, reported that New Orleans was a cesspool of "enough cholera germs to wipe out Los Angeles." And a paper in Tennessee, where some New Orleans refugees had arrived, whipped up fear among the locals with the headline "KATRINA EVACUEE DIAGNOSED WITH CHOLERA."

There was to be no outbreak of cholera in New Orleans, nor among the residents who fled. Despite raw sewage and decomposing bodies floating in the toxic brew that drowned the city, cholera was never likely to happen: there was little evidence that the specific bacteria that cause cholera were present. But the point had been made: Katrina had reduced a great American city to Third World conditions. Twenty-first-century America had had a cholera scare.

Cholera is a horrific illness. The onset of the disease is typically quick and spectacular; you can be healthy one moment and dead within hours. The disease, left untreated, has a fatality rate that can reach fifty per cent. The first sign that you have it is a sudden and explosive watery diarrhea, classically described as "rice-water stool," resembling the water in which rice has been rinsed and sometimes having a fishy smell. White specks floating in the stool are bits of lining from the small intestine. As a result of water loss—vomiting often accompanies diarrhea, and as much as a litre of water may be lost per hour—your eyes become sunken; your body is racked with agonizing cramps; the skin becomes leathery; lips and face turn blue; blood pressure drops; heartbeat becomes irregular; the amount of oxygen reaching your cells diminishes. Once you enter hypovolemic shock, death can follow within minutes. A mid-nineteenth-century English newspaper report described cholera victims who were "one minute warm, palpitating, human organisms—the next a sort of galvanized corpse, with icy breath, stopped pulse, and blood congealed—blue, shrivelled up, convulsed." Through it all, and until the very last stages, is the added horror of full consciousness. You are aware of what's happening: "the mind within remains untouched and clear,—shining strangely through the glazed eyes . . . a spirit, looking out in terror from a corpse."

You may know precisely what is going to happen to you because cholera is an epidemic disease, and unless you are fortunate enough to be the first victim you have probably seen many others die of it, possibly members of your own family, since the disease often affects households en bloc. Once cholera begins, it can spread with terrifying speed. Residents of cities in its path used to track cholera's approach in the daily papers, panic growing as nearby cities were struck. Those who have the means to flee do, and the refugees cause panic in the places to which they've fled. Writing from Paris during the 1831–32 epidemic, the poet Heinrich Heine said that it "was as if the end of the world had come." The people fell on the victims "like beasts, like maniacs."

Cholera is now remarkably easy to treat: the key is to quickly provide victims with large amounts of fluids and electrolytes. That simple regime can reduce the fatality rate to less than one per cent. In 2004, there were only five cases of cholera reported to the Centers for Disease Control, four of which were acquired outside the U.S., and none of which proved fatal. Epidemic cholera is now almost exclusively a Third World illness—often appearing in the wake of civil wars and natural disasters—and it is a major killer only in places lacking the infrastructure for effective emergency treatment. Within the last several years, there has been cholera in Angola, Sudan (including Darfur), the Democratic Republic of the Congo, and an arc of West African countries from Senegal to Niger. In the early nineteen-nineties, there were more than a million cases in Latin America, mass deaths from cholera among the refugees from Rwandan genocide in 1994, and regular outbreaks in India and Bangladesh, especially after floods. The World Health Organization calls cholera "one of the key indicators of social development." Its presence is a sure sign that people are not living with civilized amenities.

Of course, this is a state that continues to elude much of the world—including all those underdeveloped countries which are currently experiencing what epidemiologists call the Seventh Pandemic. The problem is no longer an incorrect understanding of the cause: around the world, people have known for more than a century what you have to do to prevent cholera. Rather, cholera persists because of infrastructural inadequacies that arise from such social and political circumstances as the Third World's foreign-debt burdens, inequitable world-trade regimes, local failures of urban planning, corruption, crime, and incompetence. Victorian London illustrates how much could be done with bad science; the continuing existence of cholera in the Third World shows that even good science is impotent without the resources, the institutions, and the will to act.

Steven Shapin

SHAPIN, STEVEN. "SICK CITY." *THE NEW YORKER* (NOV 6, 2006).

SEE ALSO *Public Health and Infectious Disease; Sanitation; War and Infectious Disease; Water-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Gates, Robert H. *Infectious Disease Secrets.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Hanley and Beltus, 2003.

Lock, Stephen, John M. Last, and George Dunea. *The Oxford Illustrated Companion to Medicine.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001.

Porter Roy, ed. *Cambridge Illustrated History of Medicine.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Periodicals

"Cholera 2005." *World Health Organization Weekly Epidemiological Record* 81 (August 4, 2006): 297–308. This article can be found online at <http://www.who.int/wer/2006/wer8131/en/index.html>.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Cholera." October 6, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/cholera_g.htm> (accessed February 13, 2007).

University of California, Los Angeles. School of Public Health. Department of Epidemiology. "John Snow." <http://www.ph.ucla.edu/epi/snow.html> (accessed February 13, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Cholera." <http://www.who.int/topics/cholera/en/> (accessed February 13, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Climate Change and Infectious Disease

Introduction

Climate change is any change in the weather pattern over a given area that lasts longer than a single season. It may be local or worldwide; it may mean higher or lower average temperatures, higher or lower average rainfall, more or less frequent storms, or other shifts. Climate change can take place on a time scale of a few years, like the El Niño climate oscillation, which recurs every three to eight years, or long-term and non-reversing, like the global climate change now being caused by human fuel-burning and unsustainable agricultural practices. Climate change can interact in complex ways with infectious disease. It may encourage or discourage the growth of mosquitoes or other animals that spread disease, change the seasonal availability of hosts for pathogens (disease-causing organisms) that can infect human beings, stimulate the evolution of new pathogens, or change temperatures or precipitation rates to make it more difficult to raise food or obtain clean drinking water. Scientists forecast that the global prevalence of some infectious diseases will increase in years to come.

History and Scientific Foundations

The connection between climate and disease has long been suspected. Over two thousand years ago, Greek physician Hippocrates (c. 460-370 BC) taught that weather was related to epidemics of infectious disease. In trying to understand such epidemics, doctors should, he said, have "due regard to the seasons of the year, and the diseases which they produce, and to the states of the wind peculiar to each country and the qualities of its waters." In the seventeenth century, English naturalist Robert Plot (1640-1696) wrote that if humans could make weather observations over widely separated parts of the world at one time, they might "in time thereby learn to be forewarned certainly of divers emergencies (such as heats, colds, deaths, plagues, and other epidemical distempers)."

Better understanding of the complicated relationships between climate, weather, and human health has been possible since the development of the germ theory of disease in the nineteenth century and of the science of ecology (the study of the relationships among communities of living things) in the twentieth century. Extreme weather events such as drought, flood, and heat waves have obvious, direct effects on human health; for example, the 2003 heat wave in Europe caused approximately 44,000 deaths. Such events can also cause death indirectly by triggering outbreaks of infectious diseases such

Avec
Amour,
POUR
LA SANTÉ
DU MONDE

A protester carries a sign reading "With Love, For the Health of the World" during a demonstration against global warming in December 2005 in Montreal, Canada. *AP Images.*

as cholera. Long-term climate shifts can be accompanied by increased numbers of extreme weather events, but can also change the infectious disease picture in less obvious ways. Today, scientists are increasingly concerned with these subtle, long-term relationships between global climate change and infectious disease.

Global climate change is the shifting of climate and weather patterns over the whole world. Such changes are definitely happening—recently scientists have measured faster melting of glaciers and ice caps, rising sea levels, warmer winters, and hotter summers. Specific locations still experience occasional cold, but the cold is usually not as intense or does not last as long. The years 1995 to 2006 contained 11 of the 12 warmest years since 1850, when record-keeping began; from 1960 to 2003, sea levels rose at an average rate of .07 in (1.8 mm) per year. Rainfall has increased in some parts of the world and decreased in others.

Global climate change can occur naturally and has done so many times in the history of Earth. However, the phrase "global climate change" is most often used to refer to changes caused by human beings. Humans change climate by releasing gases into the atmosphere from agriculture and burning fossil fuels. These gases, especially carbon dioxide (CO_2), methane (CH_4), and nitrous oxide (NO), absorb infrared radiation (heat) radiated by the Earth's surface, preventing the Earth from losing heat to space. In effect, the atmosphere acts like a blanket wrapped around the Earth, and increased greenhouse gas concentrations make it a warmer blanket. The atmospheric concentration of carbon dioxide, the most significant greenhouse gas, has increased by about 35% since the beginning of the Industrial Revolution in the mid-1700s. As of 2007, the majority—estimated at 95%—of scientists who study climate agreed not only that global climate change is occurring, but that it is mostly caused by human activity.

Some of climate change's predicted effects include hotter and more frequent heat waves, more frequent and violent weather events such as hurricanes, warmer weather, and increased or decreased precipitation (rain and snow), depending on location. These changes affect the environmental pathways by which organisms contaminate food and drinking water supplies. They also affect human activities and settlement patterns (how people live and where they live). These changes, in turn, can affect the prevalence of diseases borne by water, insects, and rodents. Diseases such as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), which involve organisms that are usually transmitted directly from person to person, are usually less likely to be affected by climate change. Disease organisms that spend a significant part of their life-cycle outside the human body, such as the malaria parasite, are most likely to be affected by climate change.

WORDS TO KNOW

EPIDEMIC: *Epidemic*, from the Greek meaning "prevalent among the people," is most commonly used to describe an outbreak of an illness or disease in which the number of individual cases significantly exceeds the usual or expected number of cases in any given population.

PATHOGEN: A disease-causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

PREVALENCE: The actual number of cases of disease (or injury) that exist in a population.

RE-EMERGING DISEASE: Many diseases once thought to be controlled are reappearing to infect humans again. These are known as re-emerging diseases because they have not been common for a long period of time and are starting to appear again among large population groups.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

■ Research

That global warming might someday be caused by human-released greenhouse gases was first proposed in 1890 by Swedish scientist Svante Arrhenius (1859-1927). The idea was revived by American physicist Stephen Schneider (1945-), among others, in the mid-1970s. By the 1990s, climate scientists were in broad agreement that global warming is real and primarily human-caused. This view has been supported by on-the-ground weather and temperature observations and by satellite measurements of Earth's heat output. Many computer models of Earth's weather have been used to research global climate change; for example, the 2007 report of the International Panel on Climate Change concluded, partly on the basis of 14 different computer climate models, that there is "very high confidence" that human activity is causing Earth to warm.

As the reality of global climate change became clearer in the 1990s, scientists saw that it might have implications for infectious disease. Malaria, which kills between one and three million people per year, was studied intensively. Both the malaria parasite and the mosquitoes that transmit it to humans are affected by temperature; mosquito populations are also affected by rainfall. (Mosquitoes require stagnant water in which to breed.) A computer-based study reported in 1999 that climate change would likely have two primary effects on malaria. First, increasing warmth in temperate zones such as North America, Europe, and central Asia would allow mosquitoes to transmit the disease in previously unaffected areas. Second, decreased rainfall in some areas, such as the Amazon basin in South America, might shorten the infection season in those areas (a positive effect). A similar study published in 2004 confirmed the core findings of the 1999 study. It predicted that by the year 2080, about 80 million additional people would be at risk of malaria because of climate change.

Impacts and Issues

Uncertainties

It is difficult to predict accurately the impact of climate change on human health for two basic reasons. First, predicting climate change itself is uncertain, especially over specific parts of the continents: where will more rain fall, where less? How many heat waves, droughts, or floods will there be, and when and where? Such forecasts can only be made using computer models, and these predictions always carry some level of uncertainty when the system being modeled is as complex as the weather of Earth. Predictions of average, global effects (or continent-wide effects) are less uncertain but are also less useful in predicting the effects of climate change on infectious diseases.

Second, infectious disease patterns depend not only on climate but on human population size, population density, poverty, government prevention policies, and medical advances. For example, spending money to provide village water pumps in some African villages would tend to decrease disease from water-borne organisms and might offset some or all the negative effects (that is, those effects relating to water-borne disease) of decreased rainfall. Or, the development of a cheap, effective vaccine for malaria would alter predictions of malaria's future prevalence.

Certain large-scale issues, however, are not in doubt. For example, extreme weather events such as severe hurricanes are predicted by climate models to become more common, and such events can cause outbreaks of infectious disease. In 1998, for example, Hurricane Mitch dropped 6 ft (1.8 m) of rain over much of Central America. Besides the 11,000 people killed directly by flooding, there were 30,000 cases of malaria and 1,000 cases of dengue fever in Honduras in the aftermath of the rains. In 2005, torrential rain in the area of Mumbai (formerly Bombay), India, triggered epidemics of malaria, dengue fever, cholera and other forms of diarrhea, and leptospirosis (a bacterial disease spread by the urine of infected animals, particularly rats).

Some of the infectious-disease effects of climate change are likely to involve drinking water. As of 2007, lack of clean drinking water (water free of significant quantities of microbes, toxins, and parasites) was already one of the worst health problems in the world. At that time, over one billion people had no access to clean drinking and washing water, while some 2.6 billion lacked adequate sanitation. Water-borne infectious diseases kill approximately 3.2 million people per year; about two million of those deaths are children. Diarrhea, which is generally caused by food- and water-borne pathogens such as cholera and *Escherichia coli*, already kills 2.2 million people per year, the majority under five years old. The World Health Organization (WHO) predicts that the number of cases of diarrhea in third-world countries will have increased by 2–5% by 2020 as a result of climate change.

Some infectious diseases are already apparently increasing in prevalence or range because of climate change, and more quickly than has been predicted. Physician Paul Epstein of Harvard University has said, "things we projected to occur in 2080 are happening in 2006." In 2005, a group of scientists including Epstein reported that because of warming climate, organisms that act as vectors (that is, as carriers of disease to humans), including mice, ticks, and mosquitoes, were already spreading to larger areas around the world.

Malaria, West Nile Virus, Lyme Disease

Forty percent of the world's population is vulnerable to infection by malaria, and malaria is already a worsening problem due to movements of population into malarial areas, destruction of forests, evolution of resistance to pesticides by mosquitoes and to antimalarial drugs by malaria parasites, and the breakdown of public-health facilities in some poor countries. Global warming is also contributing to the increasing prevalence of malaria and is likely to become a more important factor over the next few decades. Warmer temperatures can cause mosquitoes to mature more rapidly, breed over a longer season, bite more often, and speed up the growth of malaria parasites in the insect's digestive system. In Africa and Latin America, malaria is already spreading to higher elevations in mountainous regions as the climate at those altitudes warms. In 2005, the Harvard group projected that the percentage of the area of Zimbabwe that is climatically suitable for malaria would grow from less than one fourth today to about 90% by 2100. As a consequence, the percentage of the Zimbabwean population at risk for malaria would grow from about 45% to nearly 100%. Major climate-driven spread of malarial areas is also expected in other African countries, including Ethiopia and South Africa, and in highland regions of Latin America and Asia. On the other hand, it has been shown by projects such as the Lubombo Spatial Development Initiative in South Africa, Mozambique, and Swaziland that house-to-house insecticide spraying, systematic surveillance to detect malaria outbreaks, and improved medical care can greatly reduce malaria infection and death rates.

As noted above, AIDS is sometimes cited as typical of those diseases unlikely to be affected by climate change. However, in 2007 researchers reported that infection with malaria tends to increase the amount of HIV (human immunodeficiency) virus in a person with AIDS and to make HIV more easily transmitted to a sexual partner. Not only does malaria help AIDS spread, but AIDS helps malaria spread: AIDS weakens the immune system, making it more likely that a person will catch malaria. As malaria (probably) becomes more widespread because of climate change, the AIDS pandemic may thus be amplified along with it.

West Nile virus claims fewer lives than many other infectious diseases but has received intense publicity in North America due to its sudden re-emergence in 1999 and rapid spread since that time. The virus probably evolved about 1,000 years ago and was first identified in 1937. Outbreaks of West Nile have occurred since 1990 in Eastern Europe, Africa, and North America. Infection with the virus is most often asymptomatic (that is, without signs), but in a minority of cases it causes a debilitating or fatal infection of the central nervous system. In 2003 and 2004, West Nile cases in North America were concentrated in Colorado, Texas, Arizona, and California—regions that had undergone spring droughts. The southwestern and central parts of the United States are predicted by climate forecast models to experience more drought in the years to come because of global climate change, which increases the likelihood that West Nile will be a chronic and growing problem in these and similar states.

Lyme disease is a bacterial disease transmitted to humans by the bites of ticks (a type of blood-sucking insect). Lyme disease is found in North America, Europe, China, and Japan. Although rarely fatal, it can be severely debilitating. Ticks require wild populations of deer and mice in order to thrive and to pass Lyme disease to human beings: colder temperatures limit tick survival away from the mammal host (over 90% of the tick's life cycle), so warmer climates will allow larger tick populations and tend to spread Lyme disease to areas formerly protected by cold winters. In the United States, regrowth of forests in formerly agricultural areas has been the primary culprit so far in the increase of tick populations and the spread of Lyme disease, but scientists predict that climate change will play an increasing role in spreading Lyme disease. In the northeast and central United States and southeastern Canada, a 213% increase in tick habitat area by 2080 is predicted.

Mitigation

There is ongoing controversy over how to respond to climate change. Since change is already occurring, adaptation—changes in human practices that respond to the effects of changing climate, including new infectious disease challenges—is also already occurring. Many countries have agreed, at least in principle, to mitigate (lessen) climate change by stabilizing the amount of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere. This would require burning less fossil fuel or using new technologies to isolate the carbon dioxide released during such burning (e.g., injecting CO_2 from burning coal deep into the ground, where it cannot affect the climate). Other nations, including China, among the largest producers of greenhouse gases, have opposed mandating new industrial practices or energy efficiency in the home or on the road, because many of these changes would be costly. Nevertheless, in 2006, the WHO estimated that each year at least 150,000 deaths are already attributable to climate change.

See Also *Dengue and Dengue Hemorrhagic Fever; Lyme Disease; Malaria; Re-emerging Infectious Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Climate Change and Human Health: Risks and Responses, edited by A.J. McMichael, et al. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization, 2003.

Committee on Climate, Ecosystems, Infectious Diseases, and Human Health, Board on Atmospheric Sciences and Climate, National Research Council (U.S.A.). *Under the Weather: Climate, Ecosystems, and Infectious Disease.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2001.

Periodicals

Haines, A., et al. "Climate Change and Human Health: Impacts, Vulnerability, and Mitigation." *The Lancet* 367 (2006): 2101-2110.

Martens, Pim, and Susanne C. Moser. "Health Impacts of Climate Change." *Science* 292 (2001): 1065–1066.

McMichael, A.J., Rosale E. Woodruff, and Simon Hales. "Climate Change and Human Health: Present and Future Risks." *The Lancet* 367 (2006): 859-861.

Struck, Doug. "Climate Change Drives Disease to New Territory: Viruses Moving North to Areas Unprepared for Them, Experts Say." *Washington Post* (May 5, 2006).

van Lieshout, M., et al. "Climate Change and Malaria: Analysis of the SRES Climate and Socio-Economic Scenarios." *Global Environmental Change* 14 (2004): 87–99.

Web Sites

Harvard Medical School Center for Health and the Global Environment. "Climate Change Futures: Health, Ecological and Economic Dimensions." 2005

<http://chge.med.harvard.edu> (accessed May 26, 2007).

International Panel on Climate Change (United Nations). "Climate Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability." 2007 <http://www.ipcc.ch/SPM13apr07.pdf> (accessed May 26, 2007).

International Panel on Climate Change (United Nations). "Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis." 2007 <http://ipcc-wg1.ucar.edu/wg1/docs/WG1AR4_SPM_PlenaryApproved.pdf> (accessed May 26, 2007).

World Health Organization (United Nations). "Health Adaptation to Climate Change." 2005 <http://www.who.int/globalchange/climate/gefproject/en/index.html> (accessed May 26, 2007).

Larry Gilman

Clostridium difficile Infection

Introduction

Clostridium difficile is an anaerobic, spore-forming bacterium that is part of the normal human flora, that is, the normal community of microbes that lives within the human body. It accounts for around three percent of the bacteria in an adult gut, and 66% in the infant gut. *C. difficile* does not usually cause problems in children or healthy adults. However, certain strains of *C. difficile* can produce toxins that are a major cause of both antibiotic-associated diarrhea (AAD) and nosocomial diarrhea, a hospital-acquired infection. Sick people, especially if they are on long-term antibiotic treatment, are vulnerable to *C. difficile* infections, which may cause severe colitis, that is, inflammation of the colon. In the elderly, or those with weakened immunity, *C. difficile* infection may prove fatal. There have been various outbreaks of *C. difficile* infection in hospitals and nursing homes, which have been investigated by health authorities. Often, poor hygiene on the part of healthcare workers—lack of regular handwashing, for instance—has been the underlying cause of the outbreak.

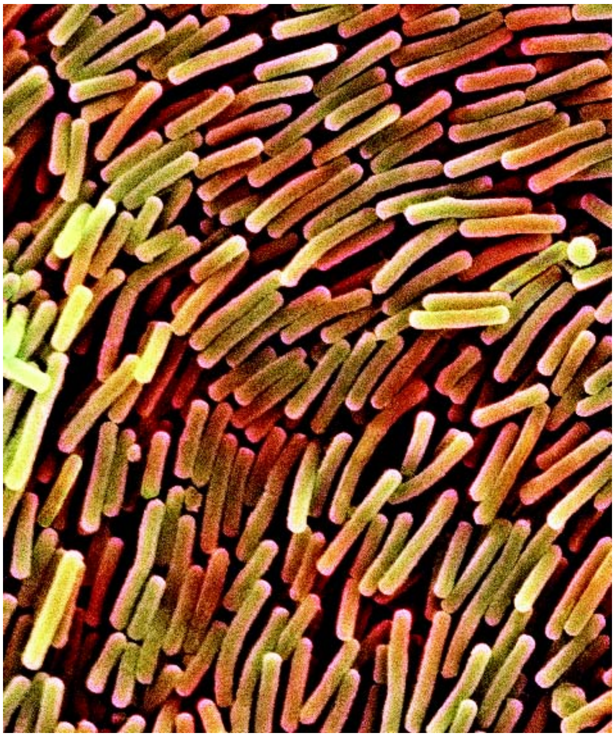
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Prolonged use of antibiotics can alter the balance of the intestinal flora and it is under these circumstances that *C. difficile* infection may take hold, causing AAD. Symptoms include watery diarrhea, fever, loss of appetite, nausea, and abdominal pain and tenderness. Symptoms can start during antibiotic treatment or after it has ended. Nearly all antibiotics can cause AAD, and the condition is also associated with the use of certain anticancer drugs such as fluorouracil and methotrexate. Sometimes AAD leads to a complication called pseudomembranous colitis, where inflamed, patchy deposits form on the inner lining of the colon.

C. difficile bacteria are found in feces, and people can spread infection if they touch items or surfaces that are contaminated and then touch their mouth or eyes. *C. difficile* also forms spores that can survive for long periods on surfaces and clothes, so re-infection is common.

Scope and Distribution

The elderly are particularly susceptible to *C. difficile* infection, with over 80% of cases being found in those aged over 65. Outbreaks are especially common in nursing



A colored scanning electron micrograph (SEM) shows *Clostridium difficile* bacteria. These rod-shaped bacteria cause antibiotic-associated diarrhea and pseudomembranous colitis, one of the most common hospital-acquired infections. *Biomedical Imaging Unit, Southampton General Hospital/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ANAEROBIC BACTERIA: Bacteria that grow without oxygen, also called anaerobes. Anaerobic bacteria can infect deep wounds, deep tissues, and internal organs where there is little oxygen. These infections are characterized by abscess formation, foul-smelling pus, and tissue destruction.

NORMAL FLORA: The bacteria that normally inhabit some part of the body, such as the mouth or intestines, are normal flora. Normal flora are essential to health.

NOSOCOMIAL: A nosocomial infection is an infection that is acquired in a hospital. More precisely, the Centers for Disease Control in Atlanta, Georgia, defines a nosocomial infection as a localized infection or one that is widely spread throughout the body that results from an adverse reaction to an infectious microorganism or toxin that was not present at the time of admission to the hospital.

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

homes and among hospitalized patients. Long term, or inappropriate, use of antibiotics is another strong risk factor for infection.

Although the incidence of *C. difficile* worldwide is unknown, many health authorities now collect data on outbreaks of *C. difficile* infection. For example, the United Kingdom Health Protection Agency reported an outbreak at a hospital in Nottinghamshire in November 2006 that led to the temporary closure of wards and the deaths of nine elderly people. Another hospital in the same area experienced a simultaneous outbreak, which contributed to the deaths of three patients. Emergency funds were made available by England's Health Secretary to track, study, and combat the outbreak of *C. difficile*.

Treatment and Prevention

In AAD, the aim of treatment is to restore the balance of the intestinal flora. This usually involves discontinuing or changing the antibiotic that has triggered the condition. If this is not successful, then further antibiotic treatment is used to get the infection under control. Vancomycin and metronidazole are the two antibiotics most commonly prescribed for *C. difficile*. Sometimes vancomycin is avoided because there is a risk of encouraging the growth of vancomycin-resistant enterococci, a species of gut bacteria that may lead to an infection that is no longer responsive to antibiotic treatment. Diarrhea often leads to dehydration, so it is also important to restore fluids and salts. Non-antibiotic treatment may sometimes be used to restore the intestinal flora. These may include *Lactobacillus* (as found in bioactive yogurts) and the yeast, *Saccharomyces boulardii*.

Anyone infected with *C. difficile* can spread the infection to others, whether or not they have become ill themselves. Transmission can be prevented by washing hands with soap and water, especially after using the bathroom and before eating. Surfaces in bathrooms, kitchens, and other areas should be kept clean with detergent and disinfectant on a regular basis.

Impacts and Issues

C. difficile infection highlights the potential dangers of long-term broad-spectrum antibiotic treatment. Although these drugs can play a valuable role in bringing infectious diseases under control, they can also upset the natural balance of the normal intestinal flora (bacteria that do not normally cause disease or that serve a beneficial purpose and regularly inhabit the intestines). This sets the scene for the emergence of *C. difficile*, which may cause the patient a more serious health problem than the one the antibiotic was initially prescribed for. That is why physicians avoid routine prescription of broad-spectrum antibiotics, especially over the long term among the elderly. *C. difficile* can also become a problem in hospitals and nursing homes if hygiene standards fall short.

The CDC reported in 2005 that a new and more virulent (and more resistant to antibiotic therapy) strain of *C. difficile* had emerged in North America. Persons who contracted this strain included those not previously identified at risk for the infection, including non-hospitalized persons, children, persons not taking antibiotics, and one pregnant woman. Termed *C. difficile* 027, the organism was also responsible for three outbreaks and the deaths of 21 people in Quebec hospitals over a six-month period from October 2006 until March 2007. Researchers are working to develop new alternatives to antibiotic treatment for *C. difficile* 027 infection, including a substance that would bind to the toxin produced by the bacteria and neutralize it, along with a potential vaccine.

SEE ALSO *Nosocomial (Healthcare-Associated) Infections; Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci; Resistant Organisms.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilks D., M. Farrington and D. Rubenstein. *The Infectious Disease Manual.* Malden: Blackwell, 2003.

Wilson, Walter R. and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "General Information about *Clostridium Difficile* Infections." Jul 22, 2005 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/id_CdiffFAQ_general.html> (accessed Jan 30, 2007).

Health Protection Agency. "*Clostridium Difficile.*" <http://www.hpa.org.uk/infections/topics_az/clostridium_difficile/default.htm> (accessed Jan 30, 2007).

CMV (Cytomegalovirus) Infection

Introduction

Cytomegalovirus (si-to-MEG-a-lo-vi-rus), or CMV, is one of the most common viruses infecting human beings. In healthy people, it rarely causes any symptoms. CMV infection is mainly of concern in persons who have weakened immunity, such as organ transplant recipients and those with HIV/AIDS. Some babies born with CMV infection, transmitted in the womb, may go on to suffer from severe health problems.

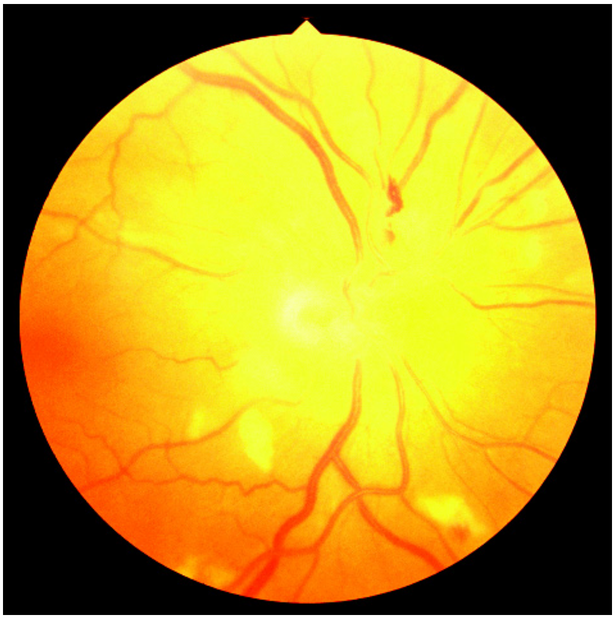
CMV belongs to the herpes family of viruses, all of which exist as viral particles of diameter around 200 nm, consisting of a protein exterior enclosing a molecule of double-stranded DNA. Other significant herpes viruses include the herpes simplex viruses, varicella-zoster virus (which causes chicken pox), and Epstein-Barr virus. CMV may lie dormant in white blood cells for many years, but the infection can be re-activated at any time. CMV cannot be eliminated, but symptoms of active infection can be treated with antiviral drugs, and there is also research on a preventive vaccine.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

CMV infects cells called fibroblasts, which are found in skin and connective tissue, and white blood cells. In most people, the infection lies dormant. Some people may experience symptoms similar to those of mononucleosis—fever, swollen glands, fatigue, and sore throat. These symptoms occur in many other conditions, however, so it is difficult to determine that CMV is responsible.

For people with weakened immunity, CMV can become a serious problem because the virus is no longer held in check. Those with HIV/AIDS may experience complications such as retinitis, an eye infection that can lead to blindness. CMV may also cause potentially fatal pneumonia among organ transplant recipients because they take immunosuppressant drugs to protect the new organ. Another group at risk of CMV infection includes newborns, who may become infected in the womb. Congenital (present at birth) CMV infection can lead to many problems, including deafness and mental retardation, some of which may not become apparent until the child gets older.

Transmission of CMV is by contact with infected body fluids such as blood, semen, vaginal fluid, tears, urine, and saliva, although the infection is not spread by casual contact. A woman can transmit CMV to her baby through the placenta, while still in the womb, by exposure



Retinitis, an inflammation of the retina, occurs due to an infection of cytomegalovirus (CMV). The disease usually begins as a white infiltrate within the retina and can progress rapidly to cause destruction of retinal tissue. Retinal damage can lead to detachment of the retina. © *Mediscan/Corbis.*

to cervical fluids during childbirth, or through breast milk. Infected children shed the virus in urine and other fluids for years and may transmit the infection horizontally to other children and adult caregivers in a nursery group setting.

Scope and Distribution

The prevalence of CMV worldwide is between 40% and 100% of all people infected, with those in less developed countries and of lower socioeconomic status being more at risk. In the United States, 50–80% of adults are infected with CMV by the time they are 40 years of age. One percent of newborns shed CMV in their urine, which indicates they have been infected, but 90% of them remain healthy. The rest may develop serious ongoing health problems.

CMV infection is widespread, but is generally contained by the immune system. If this begins to break down, then infection will take hold, which is why HIV/AIDS patients and organ transplant recipients are also at risk of infection, as they are from many other normally harmless microbes, such as *Candida*.

Treatment and Prevention

CMV does not respond to the antiviral drug acyclovir, but is sensitive to a closely related drug called ganciclovir, which has been shown to reduce the complications of CMV-induced mortality among immunosuppressed persons (persons with weakened immune systems, either through disease or deliberate medical treatment). Foscarnet is another antiviral drug that is used in the treatment of CMV retinitis in HIV/AIDS. Cidofovir, the other drug for CMV infection, can be used to protect people with HIV/AIDS and organ transplant recipients from episodes of infection.

Normal hygiene and precautions are currently the best way of preventing CMV infection; the drugs are too toxic to give to pregnant women. Vaccines for CMV are being developed and these could play a vital role in reducing infection among newborns.

Impacts and Issues

Congenital CMV infection is more common than other well-known congenital conditions such as Down syndrome, fetal alcohol syndrome, and neural tube defects. But only around 20% of those born with CMV will develop complications such as deafness, blindness, liver failure, and seizures. Those whose mothers become infected for the first time during pregnancy are most at risk of having babies with health problems. Scientists assume this is because there are no CMV antibodies present in the maternal blood supply to protect the fetus.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

CONGENITAL: Existing at the time of birth.

FIBROBLAST: A cell type that gives rise to connective tissue.

HORIZONTAL TRANSMISSION: Horizontal transmission refers to the transmission of a disease-causing microorganism from one person to another, unrelated person by direct or indirect contact.

IMMUNOSUPPRESSED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

SHED: To shed is to cast off or release. In medicine, the release of eggs or live organisms from an individual infected with parasites is often referred to as shedding.

In the United States, 1–4% of women develop such primary infections during pregnancy and one-third of these pass on the infection in the womb. Pregnant women and babies could benefit most from a vaccine against CMV.

SEE ALSO *Chickenpox (Varicella); Herpes Simplex 1 Virus; Herpes Simplex 2 Virus; Shingles (Herpes Zoster) Infection.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

With regard to CMV infection, the Division of Viral and Rickettsial Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), states the following:

- “CMV infection is very common in day care settings, but CMV usually does not harm the children who become infected. Adults who have not had CMV and who work with children in day care, especially children 1 to 2 years of age, are at high risk for CMV infection. Such adults face little risk of getting seriously sick from CMV infection. However, pregnant women who become infected with CMV are at high risk of passing the infection to their fetuses.”
- “Pregnant mothers who have young children in day care or who work in day care centers can help prevent getting infected with CMV by practicing good hygiene (such as handwashing). They should also avoid direct contact with saliva through behaviors such as kissing young children on the lips.”
- “Since CMV is spread through contact with infected body fluids, including urine and saliva, child care providers (meaning day care workers, special education teachers, therapists, and mothers) should be educated about the risks of CMV infection and the precautions they can take. Day care workers appear to be at a greater risk of becoming infected with CMV than hospital and other health care providers, and this may be due in part to the increased emphasis on personal hygiene (such as handwashing) and the lower amount of personal contact in the health care setting.”
- “Non-pregnant women of childbearing age who have never been infected with CMV and who are working with infants and children should not be routinely moved to other work situations to avoid CMV infection.”
- “Pregnant women working with infants and children should be informed of the risk of getting CMV infection, the possible effects on the unborn child, and appropriate prevention strategies.”
- “Routine laboratory testing for CMV antibody (immune protein) in female workers is not currently recommended. However, female workers who are pregnant or planning a pregnancy should be informed that a CMV antibody test can help them assess their risk. Whenever possible, CMV seronegative (without CMV antiobodies) pregnant women should consider working in a setting with less exposure to young children.”

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Viral and Rickettsial Diseases*

Tan, James S. *Expert Guide to Infectious Diseases.* Philadelphia: American College of Physicians, 2002.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). “Cytomegalovirus (CMV).” February 6, 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/cmv/> (accessed May 1, 2007).

Coccidioidomycosis

Introduction

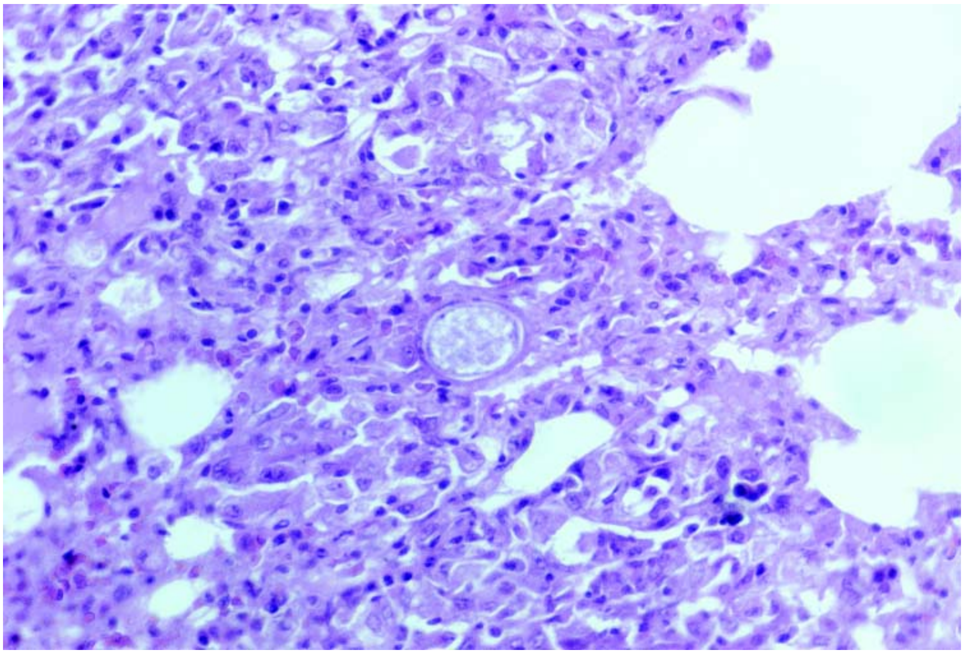
Coccidioidomycosis, also called valley fever, is a fungal disease caused by the spores (tiny seeds) of the fungus *Coccidioides immitis* (CI). The fungus is classified as dimorphic, meaning that it exists both as a mold and yeast. It is found in infected soil of the Sonoran climates of the southwestern United States, northwestern Mexico, and other isolated areas within the Western Hemisphere.

The disease causes several respiratory problems in humans. However, humans cannot acquire the disease from other people, only through inhalation of these airborne particles and contact with infected soil. Scientists assume that a person develops immunity to the disease once recovered from it.

Sixty percent of the time the disease causes no symptoms to the infected person. It is only recognized later by medical professionals when a coccidioidin skin test comes back positive from the laboratory. It is rarely fatal to humans, except to those with weakened immune systems.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Coccidioidomycosis was first described in the late 1800s. Only severe cases were reported. Milder cases began to



A light micrograph shows a section of human lung tissue infected with a spore (center) of the soil fungus *Coccidioides immitis*, which causes coccidioidomycosis, a pulmonary disease. This fungus, found in desert and semi-arid regions, is endemic to the southwestern United States as well as Mexico and South America. *CNRI/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ACUTE: An acute infection is one of rapid onset and of short duration, which either resolves or becomes chronic.

CHRONIC: Chronic infections persist for prolonged periods of time—months or even years—in the host. This lengthy persistence is due to a number of factors including masking of the disease-causing agent (e.g, bacteria) from the immune system, invasion of host cells, and the establishment of an infection that is resistant to antibacterial agents.

DIMORPHIC: This refers to the occurrence of two different shapes or color forms within the species, usually occurring as sexual dimorphism between the males and females.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

be reported in the early 1900s. It is also called valley fever, San Joaquin Valley fever, desert fever, Posadas-Wernicke disease, and California valley fever.

No signs of symptoms occur in over half of reported cases. When symptoms are apparent, they range from mild to severe. Forty percent of the time, they are similar to influenza or the common cold. More serious cases result in pneumonia-like symptoms. Symptoms can initially include cough, headache, fever, skin rash (lower legs), and muscle and joint pain and stiffness. Other symptoms include chest pain, chills, night sweats, neck or shoulder stiffness, blood-tinged sputum, loss of appetite and weight loss, wheezing, change in behavior, joint swelling (ankles, feet, legs), arthritis, and light sensitivity. Most cases resolve on their own and are not treated medically.

The disease occurs in acute, chronic, and disseminated forms. Acute coccidioidomycosis is rare, with few or no symptoms. Some symptoms include cough, chest pain, breathing difficulties, fever, and fatigue. According to the National Institute of Health, only about 3% of people contract the acute form. Seven to 21 days is the usual incubation period. Almost all cases resolve themselves without medical help.

With chronic infection, the fungus enters internal tissues and organs, such as the meninges (protective covering of brain and spinal column), joints, heart, and bone. It can also produce neurologic damage and tumors. People with compromised immune systems are especially affected by the chronic form of the disease. Coccidioidomycosis is not always recognized upon examination, but it does show up as nodules or cavities in the lungs. If diagnosis takes years, these lung abscesses can rupture. The chronic form occurs in 5–10% of infected patients.

Disseminated coccidioidomycosis is the most common form of the disease. It spreads to the lungs, bones (ankles, knees, feet, pelvis, wrists), organs (adrenal glands, gastrointestinal tract, liver, thyroid), meninges, brain, skin, and heart. Meningitis, the most serious complication, occurs in 30–50% of the cases.

Transmission occurs by inhalation of airborne dust containing the fungal spores. The fungus can also be contracted through the skin from infected soil. When they travel into lungs, the spores grow into spherical cells called spherules. The spherules enlarge, divide, and explode into numerous particles about 2–5 micrometers (one micrometer equals one millionth of a meter) in size.

Inhalation becomes more likely when soil is disturbed by artificial means (farming, excavation, construction) or by natural events (earthquakes, dust storms). Hispanic-, African-, and Asian-Americans are at higher risk than other ethnic groups. Pregnant women during the third trimester of pregnancy and immunocompromised individuals are also at higher risk.

■ Scope and Distribution

The disease is found in semiarid and desert regions of the southwestern United States (specifically, Arizona, California, Nevada, New Mexico, Texas, and Utah) and the northern part of Mexico. It is found in alkaline soils, climates with hot summers, and areas with annual rainfalls of 5–20 inches (13–50 cm). Between 1995 and 2005, California, New Mexico, and Arizona had the highest incidence of coccidioidomycosis, according to the NETSS (National Electronic Telecommunications System for Surveillance) of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). It is prevalent in California's San Joaquin Valley. It also occurs in parts of Central American and South America.

According to the CDC's Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, about 15 cases out of 100,000 occur in Arizona. Ten to fifty percent of people living in areas where the disease is common are found to be positive when tested. In the United States, about 100,000 people are infected with the fungus each year, but less than 10% of these people will develop the disease.

■ Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis can be made in a variety of ways, including recovery of *Coccidioides immitis* from cultures and smears of sputum or other body fluid; blood tests showing the body's reaction to fungal presence; skin tests (such as Spherulin test); and chest x-ray. Their reliability, however, may vary depending on the disease's stage. Chest x rays are used to find lung abnormalities, however, the specific disease causing the abnormalities is difficult to identify from the x ray alone.

Coccidioidomycosis patients with flu-like symptoms are given antifungal medicines. In particular, amphotercin B (Abelcet®, Fungisome®) is used. However, this drug is toxic, especially when injected underneath the skull to treat meningitis. Thus, oral antifungal medicines are increasingly used, including ketoconazole (Nizoral®), fluconazole (Diflucan®), and itraconazole (Sporanox®). One-year treatments are common. Severe cases involving lung and bone damage may require surgery.

Patients with the acute form usually recover completely. Relapses can occur with chronic or severe forms. The highest death rates occur with the disseminated form of the disease. The most frequent complications are infectious relapses, accumulation of fluid between lung and chest cavity membranes, and drug complications.

Impacts and Issues

Coccidioidomycosis has plagued humans for many years. A cure has long been sought, but not yet attained. Currently, the disease is impossible to control and very difficult to treat. Researchers are trying to find an effective vaccine for the disease that would provide lifelong immunity. Although symptoms may subside, persons recovering from coccidioidomycosis often require repeated follow-up examinations from one to two years after symptoms disappear.

In the 1990s, one outbreak in California signaled a dramatic increase in the number of identified cases of coccidioidomycosis and illustrated the costs of an outbreak to the community. Even though most of the infections were self-limited, the cost of direct medical expenses and time lost from work was estimated to be more than $66 million during the outbreak in one California county alone. This particular outbreak was linked to heavy rainfall that ended a five-year drought in California. The rainfall enabled the *Coccidioides immitis* that had remained dormant throughout the drought to multiply to a higher density than usual, since many competing organisms were killed by the drought conditions. Scientists continue to study climate change and weather patterns to better understand their relationship to outbreaks of coccidioidomycosis.

According to the *Arizona Daily Star* newspaper, Arizona health officials have issued public information statements about the disease, since the state has been in the midst of an outbreak since 2005. A record 5,493 Arizonans were diagnosed with the disease in 2006, but as in years past, health officials say thousands of other cases went unreported. An estimated 60% of all Arizonians have been infected with the fungus, and about 33% of persons diagnosed with pneumonia in Arizona actually have coccidioidomycosis. An ongoing campaign in Arizona is aimed at educating the medical community to consider coccidioidomycosis whenever anyone seeks medical treatment for flu or pneumonia symptoms in regions where coccidioidomycosis is endemic. The University of Arizona is also tracking the outbreak, and is studying the effectiveness of a new drug, nikkomycin Z, that has shown potential to cure the disease when tested in mice.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

Coccidioidomycosis is considered a re-emerging infectious disease. It has been difficult to determine the total number of cases each year, since many cases are unreported. Generally, it is estimated that about 7,500 new cases occur each year in the United States.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

SEE ALSO *Airborne Precautions; Colds (Rhinitis); Influenza; Mycotic Disease; Pneumonia.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Kumara, Vinay, Nelso Fausto, and Abul Abbas. *Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease.* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2004.

Ryan, K. J., and C. G. Ray. *Sherris Medical Microbiology: An Introduction to Infectious Diseases.* 4th ed. New York: McGraw Hill, 2003.

Periodicals

Hector, R., and R. Laniado-Laborin. "Coccidioidomycosis—A Fungal Disease of the Americas." *PloS Medicine*, January 25 2005. <http://medicine.plosjournals.org/perlserv/?request=get-document&doi=10.1371/journal.pmed.0020002> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases. "Coccidioidomycosis." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/coccidioidomycosis_t.htm> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Valley Fever Connections. "Valley Fever." <http://www.valley-fever.org> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Cohorted Communities and Infectious Disease

Introduction

Living in close proximity to others is a strong risk factor for the transmission of many diseases, including tuberculosis, pneumonia, and influenza. That is why infections tend to spread among cohorted communities—that is, large groups of people occupying the same living space. Individuals tend to share, or come into contact with, items which could transmit infection. The types of diseases transmitted in cohorted communities vary, depending on the characteristics of the group. However, three situations pose specific public health problems. College students living in dormitories may be more vulnerable to meningitis, an infection of the lining of the brain. People in prison, both inmates and staff, may be exposed to a number of infections, including HIV and tuberculosis. Finally, the elderly, frail residents of nursing homes run a high risk of urinary and gastrointestinal infections, as well as pneumonia.

WORDS TO KNOW

COHORT: A cohort is a group of people (or any species) sharing a common characteristic. Cohorts are identified and grouped in cohort studies to determine the frequency of diseases or the kinds of disease outcomes over time.

ISOLATION AND QUARANTINE: Public health authorities rely on isolation and quarantine as two important tools among the many they use to fight disease outbreaks. Isolation is the practice of keeping a disease victim away from other people, sometimes by treating them in their homes or by the use of elaborate isolation systems in hospitals. Quarantine separates people who have been exposed to a disease but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. Both isolation and quarantine can be entered voluntarily by patients when public health authorities request it, or it can be compelled by state governments or by the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

History and Scientific Foundations

Close contact between individuals in overcrowded dwellings has always been a factor in the transmission of disease. In modern societies, people generally have more personal space, but there are still situations when they may be at risk of infection because they find themselves in close proximity to others. In recent years, college students have become a focus for concern.

At colleges and universities, thousands of students may live together in shared residence halls or dormitories. Although most students are young and healthy, these conditions put them at risk of two infections in particular—mononucleosis (sometimes known as glandular fever) and bacterial meningitis. Mononucleosis is spread through saliva (that is why it is sometimes known as the "kissing disease"), so close physical contact between individuals and sharing items such as drinking glasses will increase the risk. Mononucleosis is characterized by sore throat, fever, and extreme fatigue; there is no cure other than prolonged rest, which will interrupt studies.

Bacterial meningitis, an inflammation of the meninges, which are the membranes covering the brain and spinal cord, is a far more serious condition. In students, the cause of meningitis is usually *Neisseria meningitides* which is present in the normal flora—or natural bacterial community—of the nose and mouth. It has long been known that meningitis is transmitted more readily among closed or crowded populations. Meningitis gives rise to high fever, severe headache, and stiff neck; it carries a mortality rate of around seven percent.

Prison inmates face a quite different spectrum of infection risk from overcrowding, with bloodborne viruses (BBVs) being the main concern. A high proportion of prison entrants have a history of drug use and so are likely to be infected with BBVs. Standards of hygiene within prison may be low, because of institutional failures combined with a lower standard of education among inmates, which encourages the spread of BBVs and also tuberculosis.

Finally, elderly residents of many nursing homes have been found to be at risk of several infections, including pneumonia, tuberculosis, diarrheal diseases; some of these infections are antibiotic resistant. Older people are more at risk of infection because they may have other chronic illnesses, and their immune systems tend to be weaker and less able to throw off an infection. Standards of hygiene may be lower in the presence of residents who are incontinent or who have dementia, thus increasing the likelihood of outbreaks of infectious disease.

Applications and Research

Research in prisons suggests that the rate of HIV infection ranges from 0.2% to over 10% and reveals case reports of transmission through sharing injecting equipment and sexual activity.

Meanwhile, research on nursing homes suggests influenza, which can be fatal in the elderly, is the most common cause of infectious outbreak. Reactivation of old tuberculosis (TB) infection is also common. Norwalk, rotavirus, and *Clostridium difficile* account for many outbreaks of gastrointestinal infection among nursing homes.

Impacts and Issues

There are many ways in which the spread of infection in cohorted communities can be prevented. Hygiene, both personal and institutional, should be paramount, whether the setting is a college dorm, a daycare center, a prison, or a nursing home. Programs that provide condoms and syringes have been found to decrease HIV transmission among at-risk populations. Screening of potential entrants to prisons and nursing homes for relevant infections such as HIV or TB can help identify those at risk and give treatment where appropriate. The CDC also recommends that freshmen entering dorms receive vaccination against meningitis.

Cohorting is also used to prevent the spread of infection under some conditions. Physicians, especially those who specialize in treating children, often provide separate waiting areas in their offices to separate sick patients from those without symptoms. Hospitals often cohort patients with like infections into semi-private rooms. During a large-scale epidemic of infectious disease, community health officials have plans to both cohort infected persons (such as in the SARS outbreak in Singapore in 2003, where all suspected SARS cases were taken to one hospital for evaluation and care) and to suspend natural cohorting that could encourage disease spread (including temporarily closing schools).

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) analyzed four studies of meningitis and concluded that American college students in dormitories, especially freshmen, had an increased risk of meningitis. Students in the United Kingdom run a similar risk. U.S. surveillance begun in 1998 suggested freshmen living in dormitories had a higher rate of meningitis (4.6 per 100,000) than any other group of the population, except for children under age two.

See Also *Hepatitis B; Hepatitis C; HIV; Isolation and Quarantine; Meningitis, Bacterial.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L, J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th Ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2005.

Periodicals

Hellard, M.E., and C.E. Aitken. “HIV in Prison: What are the Risks and What Can Be Done?.” *Sexual Health.* 1 (2004): 107–113.

“Meningococcal Disease and College Students.” *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Reports.* 49 (June 30, 2000): 11–20.

Strausbaugh L.J., S.R. Sukumar, and C.L. Joseph. “Infectious Disease Outbreaks in Nursing Homes: An Unappreciated Hazard for Frail Elderly Persons.” *Clinical Infectious Diseases.* 36 (2003): 870–876.

Susan Aldridge

Cold Sores

Introduction

Cold sores, also commonly known as fever blisters, are caused by an infection with the herpes simplex 1 (HSV-1) virus. Almost everyone has been exposed to the HSV-1 virus (an estimated 95% of all people), and the infection causes one or more fluid-filled blisters in the tissues of the mouth or around the nose. After the initial outbreak, the virus lies dormant in the skin and surrounding nerve tissue, and is reactivated from time to time, most often due to colds, influenza, too much sun, or stress. Why the virus causes outbreaks at different times is not completely understood. At the time of outbreaks, the fluid within the blisters and the skin around the ulcer contain high levels of the HSV-1 virus, and so are highly contagious until the ulcer is healed. Frequent handwashing and avoiding direct contact with others will minimize the risk of spreading HSV-1. Some antiviral medications may shorten the course of the cold sore if given early in the outbreak.

Editor's note: Infrequently, HSV-1 is also responsible for eye infections and other skin infections. A small percentage of genital herpes cases are also caused by HSV-1. More information about cold sores is found in the article about their causative agent, the herpes simplex 1 virus.

See Also *Herpes Simplex 1 Virus.*

Colds (Rhinitis)

Introduction

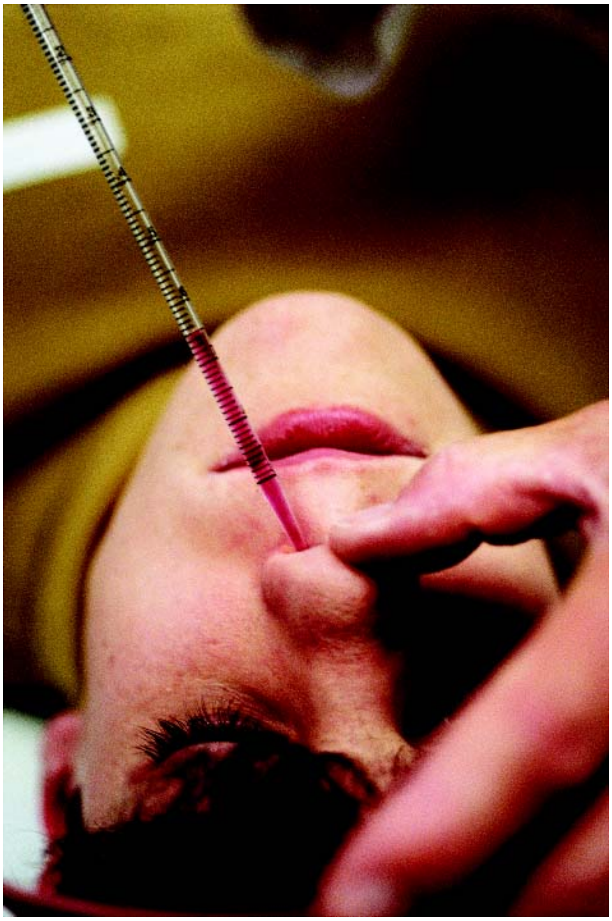
The common cold, also called rhinitis, is a viral infection of the upper respiratory tract, which includes the linings of the sinuses (cavities in the head behind the nose and eyes), throat, and pharynx. The word “rhinitis” means inflammation of the nose. The common cold is indeed common, being the infectious disease most often caught by human beings. Cold symptoms include runny nose, sore throat, tiredness, and sometimes coughing or sneezing. The common cold is never fatal in people with normal immune systems. The viruses that cause colds exist in a great variety of slightly different forms, and although a person cannot catch the same cold—that is, be re-infected by exactly the same cold virus—twice, there are always plenty of other colds waiting to be caught. There is no vaccine for the common cold for the same reason. Because a cold is a viral infection, antibiotics do not affect it.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

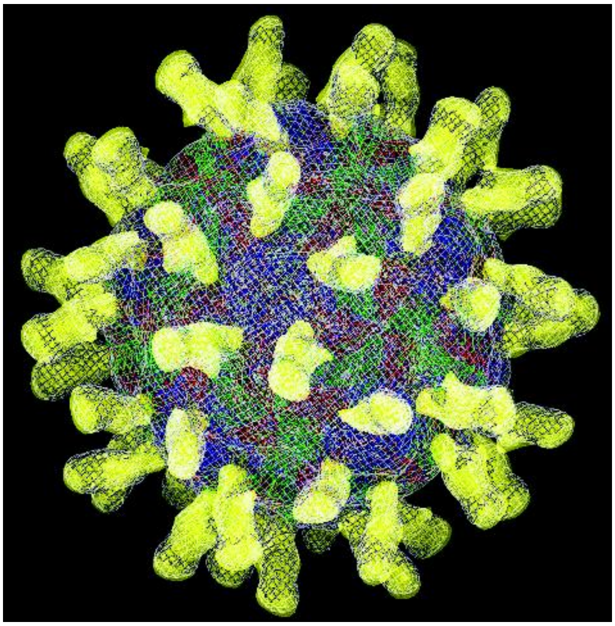
History

Most colds are caused by an adenovirus or a coronavirus. The only other animals that can be infected by these viruses are the few primates most closely related to humans, including chimpanzees. Colds have been known throughout recorded history. Over two thousand years ago, the Egyptians represented a cold by a drawing of a nose followed by a symbol for something coming out. Pre-modern European doctors thought that colds were caused by an imbalance of the four “humors” (blood, yellow bile, black bile, and phlegm). The existence of disease-causing microorganisms was not known until the 1800s, and viruses were not known until the 1890s.

Even after the discovery of viruses, doctors mistakenly thought that colds were caused by bacteria for many years. The viral nature of colds was discovered in the early twentieth century, when Walter Kruse, a German researcher, showed that colds could be transmitted by



A student volunteer participates in a study of the cold virus conducted by the University of Virginia. The students were isolated in a hotel and infected with the virus through a pink solution introduced into the nose. © *Karen Kasmauski/Corbis.*



A computer-generated model of the human rhinovirus 16 is shown. Rhinoviruses cause more than half of all common colds in humans. *AP Images.*

nose secretions passed through a filter having holes too small for bacteria to pass. The actual viruses causing most colds were isolated and grown in culture in laboratories in the 1950s and 1960s.

Characteristics

Cold symptoms include stuffy nose, runny nose, mild fever and chills, tiredness, sore throat, cough, impairment of smell and taste, and hoarseness of voice. The average duration of a cold is 7.4 days; mild colds last only two to three days and about 25% of colds last about two weeks. Symptoms are not caused directly by the virus interfering with body functions, but by the body's defensive response to the virus. When cells in the respiratory tract are infected, substances called inflammatory mediators are released by the body. These cause small blood vessels to widen, which makes tissue swell. They also increase mucus secretion, stimulate pain-sensing nerve fibers, and activate cough and sneeze reflexes. The body eventually clears itself of a cold by learning to identify specific molecules, called antigens, which exist only on the surface of the particular cold virus causing that cold. Immune-system cells can then attack anything in the body that bears these antigens. The antigens on each cold virus are slightly different, which is why the body has to learn from scratch how to fight every new cold.

About 1–5% of colds are complicated by acute bacterial sinusitis, a bacterial infection of the sinuses that can have serious side effects, including eye infection and meningitis. Unlike cold viruses, the bacteria that cause bacterial sinusitis can be killed using antibiotics.

Mild cases of influenza (also called flu) resemble colds; more severe cases cause the usual cold symptoms but also muscle aches, fever, and a more severe cough. However, influenza is a distinct disease from the common cold.

Transmission

Colds are usually contracted when cold-virus particles are picked up by touching a person with a cold or a surface contaminated with the cold virus. Cold-virus particles are then often transferred to the nostrils or eyes, again by touch. A virus can be inhaled into the nostrils and deposited in the back of the adenoid area (behind the soft palate at the back of the mouth). Virus particles in the eyes are transported down into the nasal passages and then to the adenoid area. There they colonize cells, which is why many colds begin with a sore throat. Some colds may be transmitted by airborne mucus particles ejected by sneezing. As few as one to 30 virus particles introduced into the nose can reliably produce an infection.

Cold viruses colonize cells by attaching to a molecular structure on the surface of the cell called a receptor (specifically, the ICAM-1 receptor). After attachment, the virus is absorbed into the cell, where it tricks the cell into manufacturing more of the virus. Eventually the cell produces so much virus that it ruptures, releasing many new virus particles. The cycle of virus reproduction takes about eight to 12 hours. Cold symptoms begin about 10 hours after infection and symptoms peak between 36 and 72 hours after infection.

Scope and Distribution

Colds afflict all nations, climates, and social classes about equally. Typically adults suffer one to four colds per year and children suffer six to ten colds annually.

Despite a widespread assumption that exposure to cold temperatures causes colds, populations living in colder climates do not get more colds. A 2005 experiment counting cold symptoms reported by groups who either underwent controlled chilling of the feet or did not showed a higher rate of symptoms among subjects whose feet had been chilled. However, the study has been criticized for not verifying whether experimental subjects who reported symptoms actually had colds. There is no scientific consensus that being chilled increases one's chance of catching a cold.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no effective treatment for the common cold. Contradictory evidence exists for the effectiveness of herbal treatments, zinc gluconate, and vitamin C, but there is no scientific agreement that any of these substances decrease one's chances of catching a cold, the length of a cold, or the severity of a cold. Cold treatment primarily targets the symptoms of the infection. Cold medicines often include antihistamines to reduce mucus production, pain relievers, cough suppressants, and alcohol and other drugs to induce sounder sleep.

Experimental antiviral drugs have shown some ability to combat the common cold, but scientists question whether the use of these drugs is appropriate, given the harmlessness of the common cold and the high cost and possible risks of antiviral drugs.

Colds can be prevented by following good hygiene practices. Four basic steps are recommended by disease-transmission specialists: washing hands, avoiding close contact with persons who have colds (or, if you have a cold, avoiding close contact with uninfected persons), covering up when sneezing or nose-blowing, and, for health-care professionals, wearing masks and clean gloves.

Impacts and Issues

There are at least 500 million colds per year in the U.S. population of about 300 million people, causing about 20 million lost workdays for adults and 21 million lost school days for children. The direct costs of colds, including purchase of cold remedies, are $17 billion per year in the U.S.; indirect costs, including lost productivity, are $22.5 billion. Lost workdays are a far more significant hardship for persons in nonprofessional, unskilled, or service-sector jobs that entitle the worker to few or no paid sick days.

In 2006, research at the Mayo Clinic indicated that some viruses that cause colds—picornaviruses—may damage the brain, causing cumulative loss of memory over a lifetime. "Our findings suggest that picornavirus infections throughout the lifetime of an individual may chip away at the cognitive [thinking ability] reserve, increasing the likelihood of detectable cognitive impairments as the individual ages," the researchers reported. There is no proof that picornavirus-caused colds do cause memory loss in human beings, but this is an active area of research.

See Also *Handwashing.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIGEN: Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

RHINITIS: An inflammation of the mucous lining of the nose, rhinitis is a nonspecific term that covers infections, allergies, and other disorders whose common feature is the location of their symptoms. These symptoms include infected or irritated mucous membranes, producing a discharge, congestion, and swelling of the tissues of the nasal passages. The most widespread form of infectious rhinitis is the common cold.

IN CONTEXT: MANY VIRUSES CAN CAUSE COLDS

There are over 200 viruses that can cause colds. Most are rhinoviruses and coronaviruses, although several other types are known. The viruses that cause colds are RNA viruses; that is, they contain RNA (ribonucleic acid), a type of long, ribbonlike molecule that encodes information. RNA viruses reproduce by tricking body cells into producing proteins and RNA according to the instructions in the viral RNA. These proteins and pieces of viral RNA then self-assemble into new virus particles.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Tyrrell, David, and Michael Fielder. *Cold Wars: The Fight Against the Common Cold.* New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.

Periodicals

Buenz, Eric J. "Disrupted Spatial Memory is a Consequence of Picornavirus Infection." *Neurobiology of Disease* 24 (2006): 266–273.

"Don't Catch Me If You Can." *Nature Structural and Molecular Biology* 11 (2004): 385.

Falsey, A.R., et al. "The Common Cold in Frail Older Persons: Impact of Rhinovirus and Coronavirus in a Senior Daycare Center." *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society* 45 (1997): 706–711.

Fendrick, A. Mark, et al. "The Economic Burden of Non-Influenza-Related Viral Respiratory Tract

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) asserts that research data does not support the popular linkage of colds to cold weather—or the development of the common cold from a person becoming either chilled or overheated. NIAID asserts that data developed by researchers find that "these conditions have little or no effect on the development or severity of a cold. Nor is susceptibility apparently related to factors such as exercise, diet, or enlarged tonsils or adenoids. On the other hand, research suggests that psychological stress, allergic disorders affecting the nasal passages or pharynx (throat), and menstrual cycles may have an impact on a person's susceptibility to colds."

SOURCE: *National Institutes of Health, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases*

Infection in the United States." *Archives of Internal Medicine* 163 (2003): 487–494.

Irwin, R.S., and J.M. Madison. "Primary Care: The Diagnosis and Treatment of Cough." *New England Journal of Medicine* 343 (2000): 1715–1721.

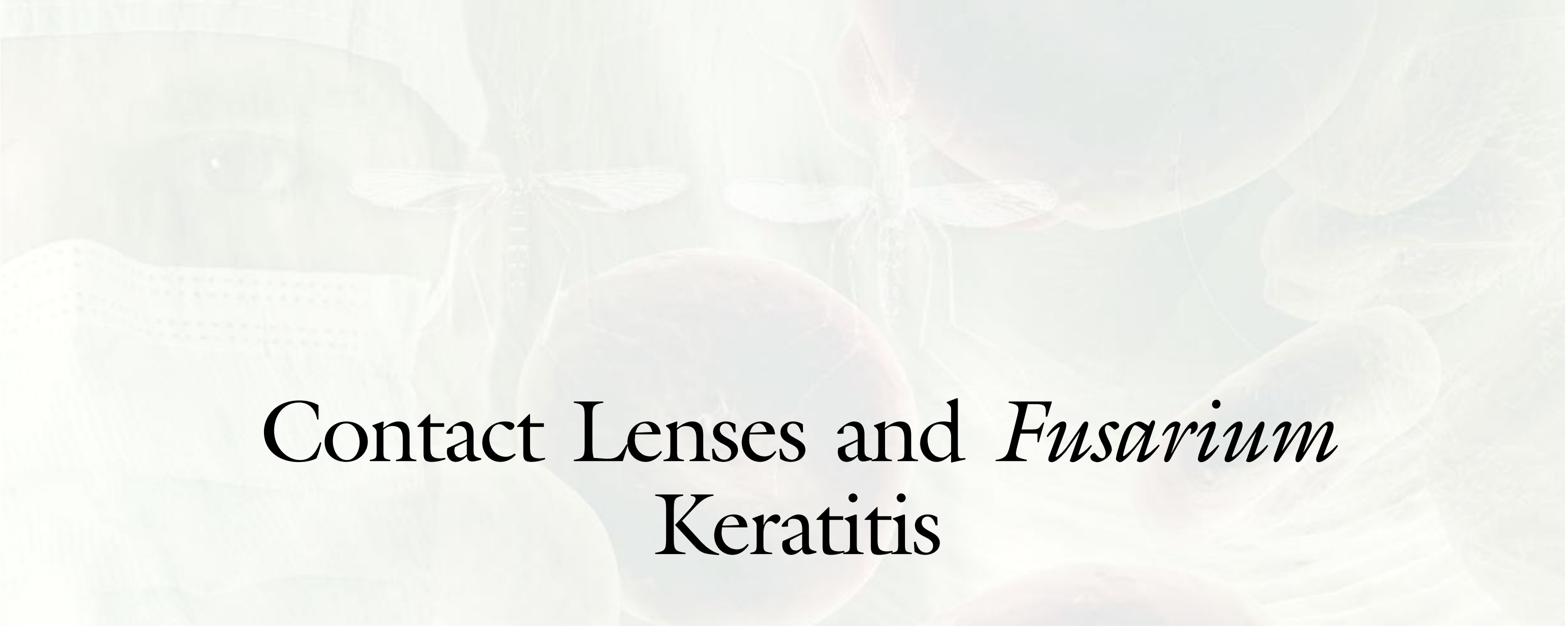
Squires, Sally. "Must You Be Such a Drip?" *Washington Post* (January 30, 2007).

Turner, Ronald B., et al. "An Evaluation of *Echinacea augustifolia* in Experimental Rhinovirus Infections." *New England Journal of Medicine* 353 (2005): 341–348.

Web Sites

Commoncold, Inc. "The Common Cold." 2005. <http://www.commoncold.org/> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Pan American Health Organization. "The Common Cold." <http://www.paho.org/English/AD/DPC/CD/AIEPI-1-3.9.pdf> (accessed January 31, 2007).



Contact Lenses and *Fusarium* Keratitis

Introduction

Fusarium is a type of fungus that is commonly found in the soil and on plants. In a 2005 outbreak of disease caused by *Fusarium*, the fungus was identified in contact lens cleaning solution, where it was transferred to the inner surface of a contact lens during the cleaning process. When the lens was worn, fungal growth caused an inflammation of the part of the eye called the cornea. Corneal inflammation is generally termed keratitis; in the case of this fungal infection, the inflammation is called *Fusarium* keratitis. Until recently, *Fusarium* keratitis was more common in agriculture-intensive regions, such as Florida, rather than in the general population.

The symptoms of *Fusarium* keratitis in contact lens wearers include blurred vision and a red and/or swollen eye. These symptoms do not improve when the contact lens is removed, since fungal growth is taking place in or on the cornea. Treatment typically involves antifungal drugs, such as natamycin and amphotericin B, which can be irritating and even toxic in high doses. In extreme cases, removal of the cornea and transplantation of another cornea is performed.

History and Scientific Foundations

Until 2005, *Fusarium* keratitis was a rare disease. This is because sources of the fungus, such as soil and plants, rarely come in contact with the solution used to clean contact lenses. However, in 2005, a case of *Fusarium* keratitis was diagnosed in the United States in a person who did not have a history of recent corneal damage. The infection was subsequently traced to contaminated contact lens cleaning solution. A wider investigation undertaken by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) uncovered 164 cases of *Fusarium* keratitis in 33 U.S. states and one U.S. territory by mid-2006.

Analysis of the data implicated a particular brand of contact lens solution (ReNu® with MoistureLoc). The source of the fungal contamination was not determined, since the fungus was not isolated from the production factory, storage warehouse, filtered samples of cleaning solutions, or unopened solution bottles from the same production runs. Nonetheless, sales of the product were stopped by Bausch & Lomb, who subsequently issued a recall of the product.

Applications and Research

Fusarium keratitis research is focused on understanding the scope of the problem. Whether *Fusarium* keratitis

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIFUNGAL: Antifungals (also called antifungal drugs) are medicines used to fight fungal infections. They are of two kinds, systemic and topical. Systemic antifungal drugs are medicines taken by mouth or by injection to treat infections caused by a fungus. Topical antifungal drugs are medicines applied to the skin to treat skin infections caused by a fungus.

KERATITIS: Keratitis, sometimes called cornea ulcers, is an inflammation of the cornea, the transparent membrane that covers the colored part of the eye (iris) and pupil of the eye.

RESISTANT BACTERIA: Resistant bacteria are microbes that have lost their sensitivity to one or more antibiotic drugs through mutation.

IN CONTEXT: THE HUMAN EYE

The eye is the organ of sight in humans and animals. It transforms light waves into visual images and provides about 80% of all information received by the human brain. In humans, light enters the eye through the cornea (the transparent layer at the front of the eye), passes through the pupil (the opening in the center of the iris, the colored portion of the eye), and then through a clear lens behind the iris. The lens focuses light onto the retina, which functions like the film in a camera. Photoreceptor neurons in retinas, called rods and cones, convert light energy into electrical impulses, which are then carried to the brain via the optic nerves. At the visual cortex in the occipital lobe of the cerebrum of the brain, the electrical impulses are interpreted as images.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

Eye infections can be caused by viral, bacterial, and fungal microorganisms. These organisms do not cause infections solely in the eye. In reality, eye infections tend to occur as infections disseminate, or spread, in the body. The cornea, the clear front part of the eye through which light passes, is subject to many infections and to injury from exposure and from foreign objects. Infection and injury cause inflammation of the cornea—a condition called keratitis. Tissue loss because of inflammation produces an ulcer. The ulcer can either be centrally located, thus greatly affecting vision, or peripherally located. There are about 30,000 cases of bacterial corneal ulcers in the United States each year.

is mainly due to an infrequent contamination of lens cleaning solution during manufacture, or is a more widespread problem involving improper hygiene on the part of the user is not clear. In addition, improved lens cleaners are being investigated, with the goal of developing a cleaner that is lethal to microbes but is safe for the user if cleaner residue remains on the lens.

The advent of molecular techniques of microorganism detection has aided the diagnosis of *Fusarium* keratitis. Advances in a technique that can quickly obtain many copies of a gene(s) of interest and the use of antibodies to *Fusarium* are being exploited to develop a rapid detection test for the fungus. Presently, the fungus is identified by culturing a scraping of cells from the cornea, but this process can take up to a week to yield a result.

■ Impacts and Issues

In the United States, about one out of every 20 contact lens wearers develops a lens-related eye complication every year. Some of these complications can threaten vision permanently. As of early 2007, the source of the 2005–2006 fungal contamination outbreak is still being investigated by the CDC in collaboration with the Food and Drug Administration and Bausch & Lomb.

One factor that may play a role in the survival of the *Fusarium* fungus in the lens cleaning solution is the surface growth of the organism. It is now well established that some microorganisms, including fungi and bacteria, become very resistant to a variety of agents when the organisms grow attached to a nonliving or living surface. When unattached, the organisms are usually readily killed by antibiotic agents. The increased hardiness of the attached organisms involves changes in their growth following attachment. These changes can be the result of genetic adaptation, with the activity of some genes enhanced by attachment, while other genes becoming less active.

Until recently, contact lens keratitis usually involved bacterial infections, predominantly caused by bacteria common in the environment or on the surface of the skin. Fungal keratitis due to organisms such as *Fusarium* has typically been due to accidental contact of plant material with the eye, especially in people whose immune systems are functioning inefficiently as a consequence of illness or drug therapy. Common routes of transmission include rubbing an eye with soil-laden fingers, injury to the eye by a thorn, or contact of plant material with the eye during harvesting. The association of *Fusarium* keratitis with contact lenses is new, and may reflect the growing popularity of these lenses, particularly lenses that are non-disposable and repeatedly cleaned.

Fusarium keratitis is an example of how improper hygiene or contaminated lens cleaners can cause illness. Even a properly cleaned lens can become contaminated if, after handling soil or plant materials, hands have not been washed off. Also, repeated use of lens cleaning solution can cause contamination. Fresh solution should be used for each cleaning. According to the American Optometric Association, other useful precautions are wiping the lenses before storing them in the lens case and replacing the lens case every few months.

The problem of fungal keratitis is a growing concern, since extended wear contact lenses are becoming increasingly popular. These extended wear lenses remain in contact with the cornea for a longer period of time than conventional non-disposable lenses and they are cleaned less often. With the convenience of extended wear can come a relaxed vigilance concerning lens hygiene.

See Also *Contact Precautions; Mycotic Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Black, Jacquelyn. *Microbiology: Principles and Explorations*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

Richardson, Malcolm, and Elizabeth Johnson. *Pocket Guide to Fungal Infection*. Boston: Blackwell, 2006.

Periodicals

Chang, Douglas C., et al. "Multistate Outbreak of *Fusarium* Keratitis Associated with Use of a Contact Lens Solution." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 296 (2006): 953–963.

Margolis, Todd P., and J. P. Whitcher. "Fusarium—A New Culprit in the Contact Lens Case." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 296 (2006): 985–987.

Brian Hoyle

Contact Precautions

Introduction

Contact precautions are a series of procedures designed to minimize the transmission of infectious organisms by direct or indirect contact with an infected patient or his environment. Along with standard precautions, which assume all body fluids and tissues are potentially infected with harmful microorganisms, contact precautions require the use of protective equipment such as disposable gowns, gloves, and masks when exposure to a patient's body fluids is anticipated. Contact precautions are often used with patients who have wound or skin infections.

A series of contact precautions has been formulated by the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and are intended to minimize the risk of the direct or indirect transfer of disease-causing (pathogenic) microorganisms. Direct-contact transmission involves person-to-person contact such as when a patient is touched by a healthcare provider. Indirect transfer involves contact with items that have been in contact with an infected person and which have become contaminated. These items, which are termed fomites, include clothing, towels, and utensils. A fomite may be only transiently contaminated by an infectious microbe, or the pathogen may actually colonize the object.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

FOMITE: A fomite is an object or a surface to which an infectious microorganism such as bacteria or viruses can adhere and be transmitted. Transmission is often by touch.

PATHOGENIC: Something causing or capable of causing disease.

STANDARD PRECAUTIONS: Standard precautions are the safety measures taken to prevent the transmission of disease-causing bacteria. These include proper handwashing, wearing gloves, goggles, and other protective clothing, proper handling of needles, and sterilization of equipment.

History and Scientific Foundations

It has been known for centuries that infection and hygiene are connected. More than 2,000 years ago, Hippocrates, who laid the groundwork for today's medical practices, observed that physicians' cleanliness affected their patients' health. Centuries later, Joseph Lister demonstrated in the mid-nineteenth century that spraying a disinfectant over a patient's wound during an operation reduced post-operative complications and death considerably. This was subsequently shown to be due to the protection of the wound from airborne microbes.

Microorganisms are readily transferred from one location to another via surfaces. The surface can be living, such as the skin of someone's hand, or non-living, such as a piece of equipment or clothing. Care must be taken to ensure that contact with a patient involves surfaces that are free of disease-causing (pathogenic) microorganisms.

The current CDC contact precautions have been in place since January 1996, as part of the overall *Guideline for Isolation Procedures in Hospitals*. Periodically, the guidelines are reviewed and, if necessary, revised.

Applications and Research

A fundamental contact precaution is handwashing. Proper washing with an anti-microbial soap will kill bacteria that are present on the surface of the skin, including normal residents of the skin such as *Staphylococcus aureus* and bacteria in the genus *Streptococcus*. Bacteria that are normally present on the skin will only be removed for a short time, but this will be long enough to protect patients. The physical act of washing, with the friction of skin rubbing against skin, helps remove viruses, provided it is done long enough. A few seconds of handwashing before surgery is dangerous, while a few minutes can save a life.

The CDC guidelines specify that handwashing be accomplished before and after contact with a patient and, if gloves are worn, as the final action after the gloves have been properly disposed of.

Fresh gloves need to be put on when contacting a patient for the first time. If various locations are to be touched on a patient, then the order should be from the least to the most contaminated, to minimize transfer of microbes to a relatively clean site. Gloves should be disposed of in a container designed for that purpose.

The high death rate following surgery that was the norm in the early decades of the nineteenth century was traced to the habit of physicians of wearing the same blood-soaked operating gowns during their rounds from patient to patient. Essentially, the physician was incubating each patient in turn with the collective microbial population that was adhering to the gown. To be an effective safety measure, disposable gloves, masks, and gowns are worn prior to seeing a patient and discarded in a designated container after seeing the patient. Containers should be available in each patient ward, so that the used protective clothing can be discarded in that room and not elsewhere on the hospital floor. This reduces the likelihood of transferring an infection from one room to another.

Another CDC-mandated contact precaution is to limit patient transport in the hospital as much as possible. A patient requiring contact precautions should only be moved when necessary, such as to an operating theater or X-ray room. Then, transport should be done to minimize contact with other patients. For example, a patient should not be moved into a hallway and kept there for a period of time before being transported to the final destination. Rather, transport should be direct and prompt. The more a patient is moved, the more the chance that an infection can be transferred from that patient to others.

When contact precautions are used, medical equipment such as blood pressure monitors, stethoscopes, or IV poles are dedicated solely to one patient, not shared. When contact precautions are discontinued, the equipment is cleaned and disinfected before use on another patient. Standards for the cleaning and disinfection of equipment, and for monitoring the success of these decontamination procedures, exist and must be followed. As well, records of equipment cleaning and maintenance must be kept, which makes it easier to investigate the source of a disease outbreak.

■ Impacts and Issues

Only 150 years ago, surgery was almost a death sentence. The cause of this dismal record was the inadvertent contamination of the patient by people whose task it was to ensure their care and recovery. Since then, precautions that minimize patient exposure to dangerous microbes has vastly improved the quality of health care.

Still, problems remain. The spread of antibiotic-resistant bacteria such as methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) in hospital wards shows that person-to-person transfer is still a reality. A big part of this problem remains the lack of proper handwashing by health care providers. Surveys done among health care providers in the United States, Canada, Europe, and elsewhere have revealed that nurses wash their hands correctly only about 50% of the time, with physicians being even less careful. The use of alcohol-based hand sanitizers, which are effective after only a few seconds exposure on the skin, is helping to encourage more compliance with handwashing by busy healthcare staff.

Contact precautions such as handwashing and wearing protective clothing are also important when dealing with a patient with diseases caused by antibiotic-resistant bacteria such as MRSA and bacteria that have developed resistance to the antibiotic vancomycin. Improper contact precautions can allow the bacteria to spread to both fellow patients and health care workers.

SEE ALSO *Airborne Precautions; Handwashing; Infection Control and Asepsis; Nosocomial (Healthcare-Associated) Infections; Standard Precautions.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Black, Jacquelyn. *Microbiology: Principles and Explorations.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

Tierno, Philip M. *The Secret Life of Germs: What They Are, Why We Need Them, and How We Can Protect Ourselves Against Them.* New York: Atria, 2004.

Websites

Yale-New Haven Hospital. "Contact Precautions." <http://www.med.yale.edu/ynhh/infection/contact/contact.html> (accessed May 27, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease-nv

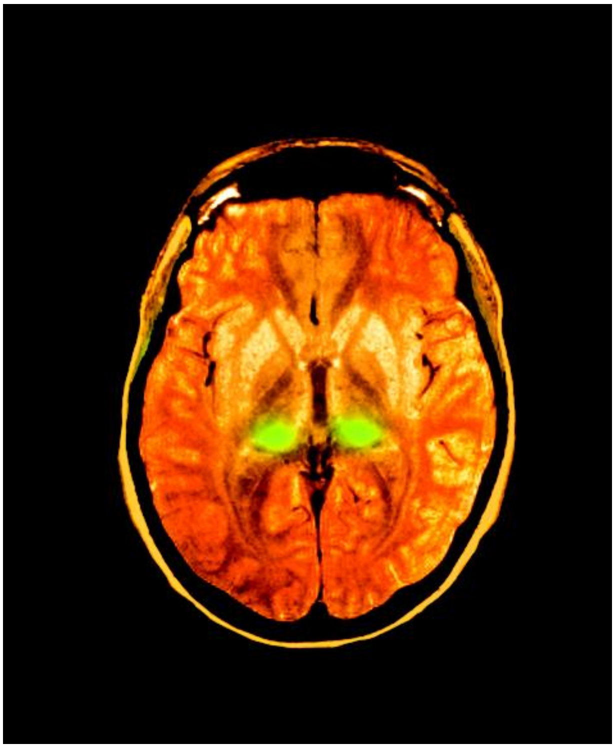
Introduction

Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease (CJD) is a rare, and invariably fatal brain disorder. It belongs to a group of diseases called the transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs), affecting both humans and animals and leading to the appearance of tiny holes within the brain tissue, giving it a "spongy"appearance. In 1996, several cases of a new form of CJD were reported in the United Kingdom. Because it differed in many ways from the so-called classical form of the disease, it was named variant CJD (vCJD, also known as new variant CJD, or CJD-nv). Since then, there have been around 200 cases of vCJD reported around the world. Exposure to bovine spongiform encephalopathy (also known as "mad cow"disease), a TSE of cattle, through consuming beef, appears to be the cause of vCJD. Control of BSE has led to a dramatic fall in the number of cases of vCJD. However, there is still a risk that the disease could be transmitted through blood donated by an infected, but asymptomatic, individual.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The classical form of CJD has been known since the early years of the twentieth century. It is a rare disease, affecting around one in a million of the population around the world. About 15% of classical cases are inherited, while the rest are sporadic, arising for no obvious reason. The classical form usually affects people over 50 and is marked by ataxia (unsteadiness on the feet), dementia, (a sharp decline in mental performance), blurred vision, and slurred speech. The majority of patients with classical CJD die within six months of the onset of symptoms. vCJD, on the other hand, has been found largely among teenagers and young adults, although there have been cases in older people. It begins with psychiatric symptoms, such as anxiety and depression, and persistent pain and odd sensations in the face and limbs. Later, ataxia and sudden jerky movements set in, along with progressive dementia. The time course of vCJD is longer, with death usually occurring around a year after the onset of symptoms. There are also significant differences in brain imaging, electroencephalogram, and pathology data between classical and vCJD.

The infective agent in all TSEs, including CJD, is neither a bacterium nor a virus, but an entity known as a



This colored magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scan shows the brain of a 17-year-old male suffering from Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease (CJD). In this axial "slice," the folded cerebrum is seen forming two hemispheres; the front of the head is at the top. The two green areas in the center show the thalamus diseased with CJD. *SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

prion, which is best described as an infectious protein. A prion is an abnormally-shaped version of a protein that occurs naturally in the brain. When the normal prion protein comes into contact with the abnormal version, it is converted into the abnormal version and can go on to corrupt other normal prion protein molecules. This cascade of damage then spreads throughout the brain. In sporadic cases of CJD, there may be a spontaneous change of a normal prion protein molecule into the abnormal form; no risk factors for this are known, however. In inherited CJD, there are mutations in the gene for prion protein which may render a person more susceptible to prion infection. All reported cases of vCJD have involved individuals who have spent time in a country affected by BSE, which provides at least indirect evidence for the mode of transmission—consumption of BSE-contaminated beef. Meanwhile, there have been a few cases of so-called iatrogenic CJD where the disease has been transmitted from one person to another through contaminated human growth hormone (which used to be extracted from the pituitary glands of human cadavers) or instruments used in brain surgery. There have also been three cases of vCJD arising among recipients of blood from an asymptomatic donor who later developed the disease. However, there have been no cases of direct person-to-person transmission of vCJD.

Scope and Distribution

Most of the cases of vCJD have occurred in the United Kingdom. As of February 2007, there had been 162 primary cases (contracted, presumably, though contaminated beef) of which six are still alive. Recent research suggests that blood may be a very efficient carrier of vCJD. Prion infection in vCJD can be detected in tonsil tissue but not in blood. The U.K. Health Protection Agency is carrying out an anonymized survey of 100,000 tonsil samples that should reveal how many people are potentially incubating vCJD. As this is a new disease, little is known of its incubation time. However, kuru, a human TSE discovered in Papua New Guinea in the 1950s, can have an incubation period of up to 40 years. Without knowing more about the details of how vCJD is transmitted, it is impossible to say how many more cases of vCJD may occur.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no proven cure for any form of CJD at present. However, there are three potential drug treatments under investigation—quinacrine, pentosan polysulphate, and flupirtine. There is some evidence that pentosan polysulphate, given as an injection into the brain, could prolong survival, and the United Kingdom Medical Research Council (MRC) is analyzing data on a number of patients who have received this treatment. One report suggests that flupirtine can improve cognition in CJD but it does not appear to prolong survival. The MRC is currently carrying out a clinical trial on flupirtine.

WORDS TO KNOW

ATAXIA: Ataxia is an unsteadiness in walking or standing which is associated with brain diseases such as kuru or Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease

CADAVER: The body of a deceased human, especially one designated for scientific dissection or other research.

DEMENTIA: Dementia, which is from the Latin word *dement* meaning "away mind," is a progressive deterioration and eventual loss of mental ability that is severe enough to interfere with normal activities of daily living, lasts more than six months, is not present since birth, and is not associated with a loss or alteration of consciousness. Dementia is a group of symptoms caused by gradual death of brain cells. Dementia is usually caused by degeneration in the cerebral cortex, the part of the brain responsible for thoughts, memories, actions, and personality. Death of brain cells in this region leads to the cognitive impairment that characterizes dementia.

HUMAN GROWTH HORMONE: Human growth hormone is a protein that is made and released from the pituitary gland, which increases growth and manufacture of new cells.

PRIONS: Prions are proteins that are infectious. Indeed, the name prion is derived from "proteinaceous infectious particles." The discovery of prions and confirmation of their infectious nature overturned a central dogma that infections were caused by intact organisms, particularly microorganisms such as bacteria, fungi, parasites, or viruses. Since prions lack genetic material, the prevailing attitude was that a protein could not cause disease.

SPONGIFORM: Spongiform is the clinical name for the appearance of brain tissue affected by prion diseases, such as Creutzfeld-Jakob disease or bovine spongiform encephalopathy. The disease process leads to the formation of tiny holes in brain tissue, giving it a spongy appearance.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD QUESTIONS

About 5–10% of all CJD cases are inherited. These cases arise from a mutation, or change, in the gene (called PRPN, which stands for prion-related protein) that controls formation of the normal prion protein. While prions themselves do not contain genetic information and do not require genes to reproduce themselves, infectious prions can arise if a mutation occurs in the gene for the body's normal prions. If the prion gene is altered in a person's sperm or egg cells, the mutation can be transmitted to the person's offspring. However, not all people with mutations in the prion gene develop CJD. This suggests that the mutations merely increase susceptibility to CJD and that other, still-unknown factors also play a role in the disease.

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

After inquires in the late 1990s, authorities in the United Kingdom moved to screen out blood donations from donors who unknowingly carry vCJD. Because transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs) have a long incubation period, however, (in the case of the disease Kuru, up to forty years) it is not clear how many more cases of vCJD will emerge. The BSE episode highlighted the problem of zoonotic disease—that is, the transmission of disease from animals to humans. The recent outbreak of H5N1 related avian flu ("bird flu") proves this is a continuing concern.

There are a number of drugs which can relieve symptoms and make the patient more comfortable, such as valproate and clonazepam for jerking movements. Eventually, all patients with CJD will require 24-hour nursing care, as they will lose the ability to do anything for themselves.

Prevention of vCJD depends upon elimination of exposure to BSE-contaminated beef. A number of measures have been adopted in Britain and elsewhere to this end. There remains the possibility that people could become infected through CJD-contaminated blood and blood products. The 20 remaining people who received blood from an infected donor in the United Kingdom have been banned from giving blood. In the United States, there are restrictions on people who have resided in the U.K. acting as blood donors, in case they are incubating vCJD.

Impacts and Issues

In 1986, bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE) appeared in cattle in the United Kingdom. Researchers identified cattle feed containing remnant parts of slaughtered cows, especially parts of the brain and nervous system, as the likely culprit spreading the disease. The U.K. government banned the use of cattle remnants in feed. In 1992, incidence of the BSE in U.K. cattle peaked in 1992 with 36,700 confirmed, about 1% of the U.K. cattle herd. Despite the epidemic of "mad cow disease," consumers were assured that British beef products were safe to eat. In 1996, researchers identified BSE-contaminated beef as the probable cause of vCJD in humans.

The link between BSE and vCJD had widespread social and economic effects. The United Kingdom cattle heard was culled of possibly infected animal, resulting in losses to herders. As the emergence of vCDJ received global media attention, consumption of beef within the U.K. dropped dramatically, some estimate as much as 40% in 1996-7. The meat slaughtering and packing industry was scrutinized, revealing slaughtering practices that carried the possibility of BSE-tainted nervous system tissue entering ground beef. Other European nations temporarily banned the import of U.K. beef products and began to evaluate their own herds for BSE. By 2005, BSE had been found in Europe, Asia, North America, and the Falkland Islands, a British territory off of the coast of Argentina. The vCJD epidemic peaked in Britain in 2000, with 28 cases. In 2006, there were five cases. After the U.K., France has had the highest number of vCJD cases. In the U.S., there have been three cases. Worldwide, there have been 201 cases of vCJD in 11 countries.

The vCJD epidemic also prompted fears about the safety of the international supply of human blood, plasma, tissues, and organs. Many nations excluded, or continue to exclude, donors who resided for several months in parts of Europe and the United Kingdom during 1980–2000. People who received transfusions or organ or tissue transplants in the U.K. are also excluded as potential donors in several countries. The three cases of transfusion-associated vCJD in the U.K. came from a pool of 23 recipients of blood from the infected donor. The latest case developed vCJD symptoms eight years after receiving a transfusion. Because the term of incubation for vCJD remains unknown, others who received the contaminated blood remain at risk. Tests that screen donated blood for vCJD are currently under development.

CJD, including vCJD, is still a very rare disease and one which is poorly understood. Although the U.S. researcher Stanley Prusiner was awarded the 1997 Nobel

Prize for Medicine or Physiology for his work on prions, there is still much to be learned about how these unconventional infective agents work. For example, the routes of transmission of prion diseases are not yet well established. There is no straightforward diagnostic test, such as a blood test, for CJD. Adding to the difficulty of making an unambiguous diagnosis, most neurologists never have seen a case of CJD even when symptoms are present. The disease, like other TSEs, may be present without symptoms for many years, putting people at risk of infection. However, current research aims to better understand all forms of CJD and other prion-transmitted diseases.

See Also *Blood Supply and Infectious Disease; Bovine Spongiform Encephalopathy ("Mad Cow" Disease); Kuru.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ridley, R.M, and H.F. Baker. *Fatal Protein: The Story of CJD, BSE and Other Prion Disease.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1998.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "vCJD (Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease)." January 4, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/cjd/> (accessed February 21, 2007).

U.K. Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease Surveillance Unit. "National Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease Surveillance Unit." February 5, 2007 <http://www.cjd.ed.ac.uk> (accessed February 21, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Crimean-Congo Hemorrhagic Fever

Introduction

Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever (CCHF) is a viral disease caused by infection with a tick-borne virus. The virus that causes CCHF is contained within *Nairovirus*, a member of related pathogenic (disease-causing) viruses within the Bunyaviridae family.

All *Nairovirus* viruses are transmitted by the bite of argasid (soft) or isodid (hard) ticks. However, only a few of these ticks have shown to cause human infections. According to the World Health Organization (WHO) and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), the tick of the *Hyalomma* genus is most capable of serving as the vector for the disease, especially in small vertebrates on which immature ticks feed.

CCHF is an infectious disease that is capable of being transmitted by ticks between domesticated and wild animals; from animals to humans; and from humans to animals. Common animals infected are cattle, sheep, goats, and hares. Humans are infected through contact with infected animal blood or ticks.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

CCHF was documented in Russia in the twelfth century. However, the first accurate description came from the Crimea region of the former U.S.S.R. in 1944–1945. At that time, it was called Crimean hemorrhagic fever. In 1969, it was realized that the pathogen causing CCHF was also an illness identified in 1956 in Stanleyville (now Kisangani), Congo. Because of this, it was renamed Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever.

Small vertebrates on which the immature ticks feed seem to serve as the primary method that the virus spreads. Infected female ticks pass the disease into their eggs, which develop into infected immature ticks. Mature ticks carry the virus to larger animals, such as large vertebrates, who can become intermediate hosts. CCHF transmission to humans occurs when people butcher or eat infected livestock, and when health workers became exposed to infected blood.

After a tick bite, the incubation period is about one to three days, but up to nine days. After contact with infected blood or tissue, the incubation period is usually five to six days, with a maximum of 13 days. Influenza-like symptoms occur suddenly. In most cases, they last for about one week. However, signs of bleeding appear 75% of the time in cases lasting longer than one week. Death occurs in 30–60% of cases.

Symptoms include high fever, aching muscles, dizziness, neck pain, backache, stomach pain, headache, sore eyes, and light sensitivity. Later, nosebleeds, red eyes, flushed face, red throat, bruising, bloody urine, vomiting, black stools, skin rash, and diarrhea occur. Still later, abdominal pain occurs, along with mental confusion and mood swings.

A Pakistani man with Crimean Congo hemorrhagic fever (CCHF) receives medical treatment at a local hospital. *© Fayyaz Ahmed/epa/Corbis.*

Unlike humans, most infected mammals do not show noticeable symptoms. Most cases occur in domesticated animals and wild animals. CCHF occurs less frequently in humans.

Scope and Distribution

The disease is found in over thirty countries around the world. It is reported in central Asia, northwestern China, the Middle East, eastern and southern Europe, the Indian subcontinent, across central and southern Africa (especially eastern and western parts) and Madagascar.

Small mammals carry the disease, especially the Middle-African hedgehog, multimammate rat, and European hare. Domestic animals, such as sheep, goats, and cattle, also carry the tick. Most birds do not become infected, except ostriches.

Groups most likely to become infected are slaughterhouse workers, veterinarians, surgeons and medical workers, animal herders, and agricultural workers. Widespread infections in medical facilities have occurred due to improperly sterilization of equipment, reuse of injection needles, and supply contamination. Travelers are at risk in countries where CCHF is present.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis includes the following: serological test (to find antibodies in serum); immunohistochemical staining (to find viral antigen in tissue); microscopic examination (to find viral RNA [ribonucleic acid] sequence in blood or tissue); polymerase chain reaction (PCR) technique (to detect viral genome); and enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) technique (to detect immunoglobulin-G and immunoglobulin-M antibodies in serum).

Oral and intravenous treatment involves the antiviral drug ribavirin (Copegus®, Ribasphere®, Virazole®). Ribavirin has been shown to be effective during actual outbreaks, although scientific studies have not supported that conclusion.

Treatment is generally supportive and based on the symptom's type and degree of severity. Fluid balance, electrolyte levels, and secondary infections are carefully monitored. Fatality rates in hospitalized patients range widely from 9% to 50%, depending on infection severity, care quality, and other variables.

CCHF is commonly prevented by governments that require de-ticking of farm animals. Insect repellents (containing DEET, N,N-diethy-m-toluamide), appropriate clothing (gloves and clothing treated with permethrin), and body inspections help prevent the disease. Persons are advised to avoid contact with blood and fluids of infected livestock and humans.

WORDS TO KNOW

ARTHROPOD: A member of the largest single animal phylum, consisting of organisms with segmented bodies, jointed legs or wings, and exoskeletons. Includes insects and spiders.

HEMORRHAGIC FEVER: A hemorrhagic fever is caused by viral infection and features a high fever and a high volume of (copious) bleeding. The bleeding is caused by the formation of tiny blood clots throughout the bloodstream. These blood clots—also called microthrombi—deplete platelets and fibrinogen in the bloodstream. When bleeding begins, the factors needed for the clotting of the blood are scarce. Thus, uncontrolled bleeding (hemorrhage) ensues.

INTERMEDIATE HOST: An organism infected by a parasite while the parasite is in a developmental form, not sexually mature.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

According to World Health Organization and the European Center for Disease Prevention and Control (ECDE), recent cases of Crimean hemorrhagic fever were reported in Albania (2001, 8 cases), Iran (1999–2004, 155 cases), Kosovo (2001, 18 cases), Mauritania (2003, 38 cases), Pakistan (2002, 3 cases), and Turkey (2001–2003, 83 cases). In Bulgaria and South Africa, between five and 25 cases are reported annually in each country. In July 2005, a major outbreak occurred in Turkey's Yozgat Province (one death out of 42 cases). Between January 1–4, 2006, 242 confirmed cases (20 deaths) were reported in Turkey.

SOURCE: *World Health Organization*

Impacts and Issues

Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever is one of the world's most severe arthropod-borne diseases. It has a mortality rate of up to 60%. CCHF remains a public health problem

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

As of May 2007, the World Health Organization states that "although an inactivated, mouse brain-derived vaccine against CCHF has been developed and used on a small scale in Eastern Europe, there is no safe and effective vaccine widely available for human use."

WHO also states that:

- The tick vectors are numerous and widespread and tick control with acaricides (chemicals intended to kill ticks) is only a realistic option for well-managed livestock production facilities. Persons living in endemic areas should use personal protective measures that include avoidance of areas where tick vectors are abundant and when they are active (spring to fall); regular examination of clothing and skin for ticks, and their removal; and use of repellents.
- Persons who work with livestock or other animals in the endemic areas can take practical measures to protect themselves. These include the use of repellents on the skin (e.g., DEET) and clothing (e.g., permethrin) and wearing gloves or other protective clothing to prevent skin contact with infected tissue or blood.

SOURCE: *World Health Organization*

in many parts of the world, including Africa, the Middle East, southern and eastern Europe, and western Asia.

Because of this, the CDC identifies the need for increased knowledge about CCHF. Currently, the prevalence of CCHF is not measured accurately. The CDC recommends: measurements to be performed on both animals and humans so accurate statistics are available; further CCHF research to be performed; effectiveness of treatments recorded; and a widespread, safe, and effective vaccine for CCHF developed. Currently, only a local vaccine developed in Eastern Europe, made from the brains of mice, is available.

Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever's causative agent, the *Nairovirus*, is classified as a biosafety level four (BSL4) pathogen by the CDC. Scientists study biosafety level four pathogens, which are mostly viruses, in specialized facilities designed to contain them. All biosafety level four pathogens have the capacity to cause life-threatening diseases, and no effective vaccine is readily available to prevent them. Currently, there are eleven BSL4 facilities in the United States, and several more are planned or under construction. Access to BSL4 labs is usually restricted to essential personnel. Among the extensive safety measures used by scientists when conducting research with BSL4 pathogens are multi-containment areas, one-piece positive pressure personnel suits with separate ventilation systems, negative air pressure rooms, and a safe working area called a biological safety cabinet. Other viral hemorrhagic fevers such as Ebola, Lassa, and Marburg, are also considered BSL4 pathogens.

See Also *Arthropod-borne Disease; Hemorrhagic Fevers; Travel and Infectious Disease; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ergonul, Onder, and Chris C. Whitehouse, eds. *Crimean-Congo Hemorrhagic Fever: A Global Perspective*. New York: Springer, 2007.

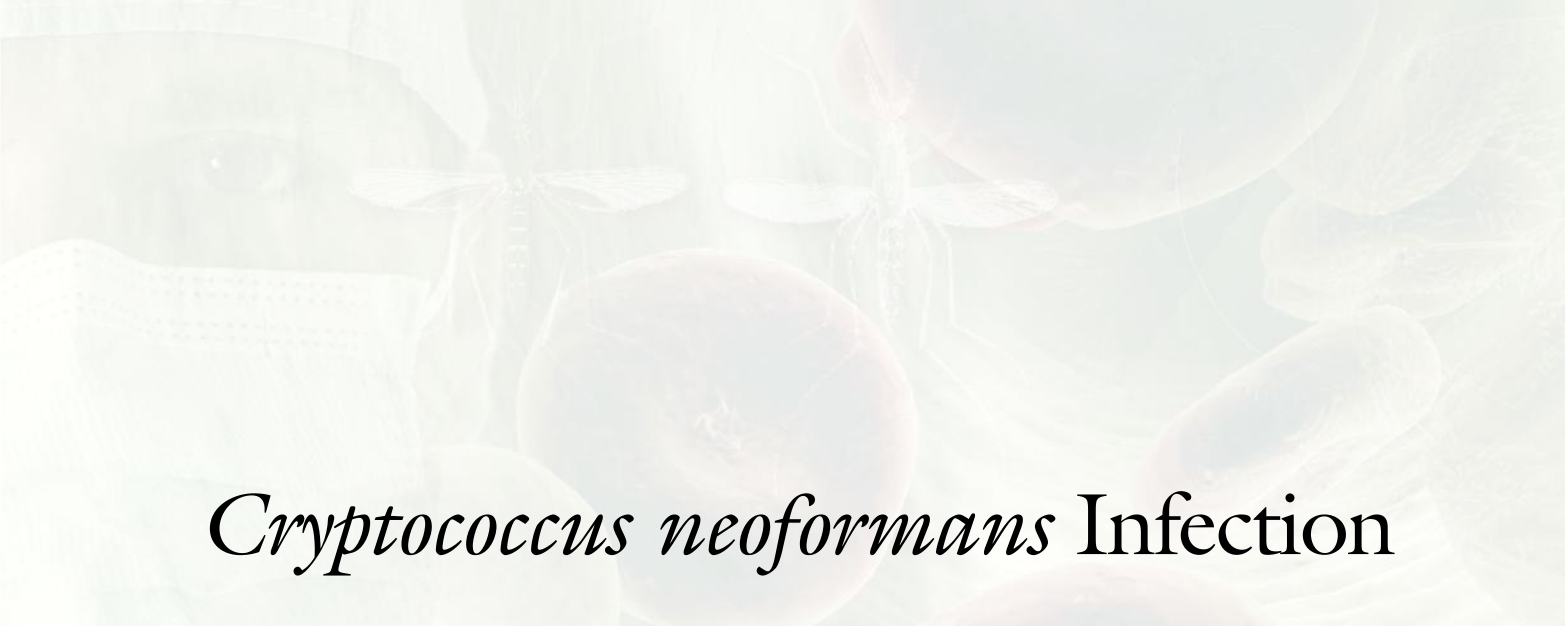
Farb, Daniel. *Bioterrorism Hemorrhagic Viruses*. Los Angeles: University of Health Care, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Crimean-Congo Hemorrhagic Fever." <http://dcd.gov/ncidod/dvrd/spb/mnpages/dispages/cchf.htm> (accessed March 8, 2007).

National Guideline Clearinghouse. "Hemorrhagic Fever Viruses as Biological Weapons: Medical and Public Health Management." March 5, 2007 <http://www.guideline.gov/summary/summary.aspx?ss=15&doc_id=3224&nbr=2450> (accessed March 11, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Crimean-Congo Hemorrhagic Fever." <http://who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs208/en/> (accessed March 8, 2007).



Cryptococcus neoformans Infection

Introduction

Cryptococcus neoformans is a yeast that is the sole species of the genus capable of causing mycotic (fungal) disease. There are three versions of *C. neoformans*, based on differences in the capsule that surrounds the yeast, in the use of various sugars as nutrients, and in the shape of the environmentally resilient structures called spores that can be produced by the yeast. *C. neoformans* variety *neoformans* causes most of the cryptococcal infections in humans.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

C. neoformans causes cryptococcosis. The infection begins in the lungs following the inhalation of the microorganism, particularly the small form of the organism called a basidiospore. These spores are smaller than the growing (vegetative) form of the yeast, and so can penetrate deeper into the very small air passages (alveoli) of the lung. In the warm and moist conditions of the lung, the basidiospores can increase in size and normal growth of the yeast can resume.

When the yeast begins to grow, a capsule that is usually only minimally produced by the spores is exuberantly produced. Like the capsule produced by some bacteria, the capsule of *C. neoformans* is made of sugars. The capsule helps shield the yeast from the immune response of the host, in particular the engulfing (phagocytosis) and breakdown of the yeast by a type of immune cell called a macrophage.

C. neoformans is equipped with enzymes known as proteases, which degrade proteins, as well as enzymes that destroy phospholipids. Both proteins and phospholipids are important components of the cell wall that surrounds cells. This causes the destruction of host cells, which makes it easier for *C. neoformans* to enter the host cells and to invade tissue.

Evidence from laboratory studies indicates that *C. neoformans* is not only capable of evading the host's immune response, but may also actively impair the response. This would explain the observation that people who survive a bout of cryptococcal meningitis can continue to have a malfunctioning immune system afterward.

Most commonly, *C. neoformans* causes the form of meningitis called cryptococcal meningitis. (Meningitis can also be caused by bacteria or viruses.) People who are immunocompromised—their immune system is not functioning properly due to infection with, for example, the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) or deliberate suppression to lessen the rejection of a transplanted organ—can are at particular risk for a potentially fatal infection with *C. neoformans.* The yeast can become more widely distributed in the body. This can produce inflammation and damage of the nerves in the brain (meningitis); and infections of the eye (conjunctivitis), ear (otitis), heart (myocarditis), liver (hepatitis), and bone (arthritis). Prior to the explosion of the number of cases of AIDS and the more routine use of immunosuppressant drugs, *C. neoformans* infections were rare.

Scope and Distribution

C. neoformans is found all over the world. It is a natural inhabitant of some plants, fruits, and birds such as pigeons and chickens. The microbe is often transferred to humans via bird feces. As the feces dry, the yeast spores can be wafted into the air to be subsequently inhaled.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment for cryptococcal meningitis usually includes anti-fungal drugs such as fluconazole. Often a compound called amphotericin B is also administered. It is usually given intravenously, which produces a higher concentration of the drug throughout the body. This is important since the infection can quickly become

WORDS TO KNOW

BASIDIOSPORE: A fungal spore of Basidomycetes. Basidomycetes are classified under the Fungi kingdom as belonging to the phylum Mycota (i.e., Basidomycota or Basidiomycota), class Mycetes (i.e., Basidomycetes). Fungi are frequently parasites that decompose organic material from their hosts, such as those growing on rotten wood, although some may cause serious plant diseases such as smuts (Ustomycetes) and rusts (Teliomycetes). Some live in a symbiotic relationship with plant roots (Mycorrhizae). A cell type termed basidium is responsible for sexual spore formation in Basidomycetes, through nuclear fusion followed by meiosis, thus forming haploid basidiospores.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

MYCOTIC: Mycotic means having to do with or caused by a fungus. Any medical condition caused by a fungus is a mycotic condition, also called a mycosis.

widespread. The treatment has a variety of potential side effects, including fever, chills, headache, nausea with vomiting, diarrhea, kidney damage, and a decrease in the number of red blood cells due to the inhibition of bone marrow. Fewer red blood cells means less oxygen and iron is capable of being transported throughout the body, a condition called anemia. Also, some people can have an allergic reaction to the drug.

Amphotericin B is available as a liposome preparation; that is, the drug is packaged inside a sphere made of lipid. The liposomes can also contain proteins that recognize target proteins in the patient. This allows the drug to be more specifically targeted to a site within the body, rather than applying the drug generally.

Prospects for recovery are good if the infection is identified and treated while it is still confined to the lungs. However, spread of the infection beyond the lungs, especially to the central nervous system, is a serious complication, and can threaten the life of someone who is immunocompromised.

■ Impacts and Issues

Other the past several decades, the prevalence of cryptococcal illness on Vancouver Island on Canada's west coast has been increasing. Researchers from the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and Health Canada who have been studying the illnesses have concluded that the increasingly temperate climate of the region is favoring the expansion of the yeast into a region that it formerly did not occupy. With regions of the world expected to warm over the next century, the geographic range of *C. neoformans* may increase.

As about 85% of cases of cryptococcosis in the United States occur among HIV-positive people, finding an affordable and readily available prevention strategy for persons whose immune system is already weakened is an important challenge for researchers. Globally, the increase in AIDS has made many more people vulnerable to *C. neoformans* infection.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Mycotic Disease; Opportunistic Infection.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

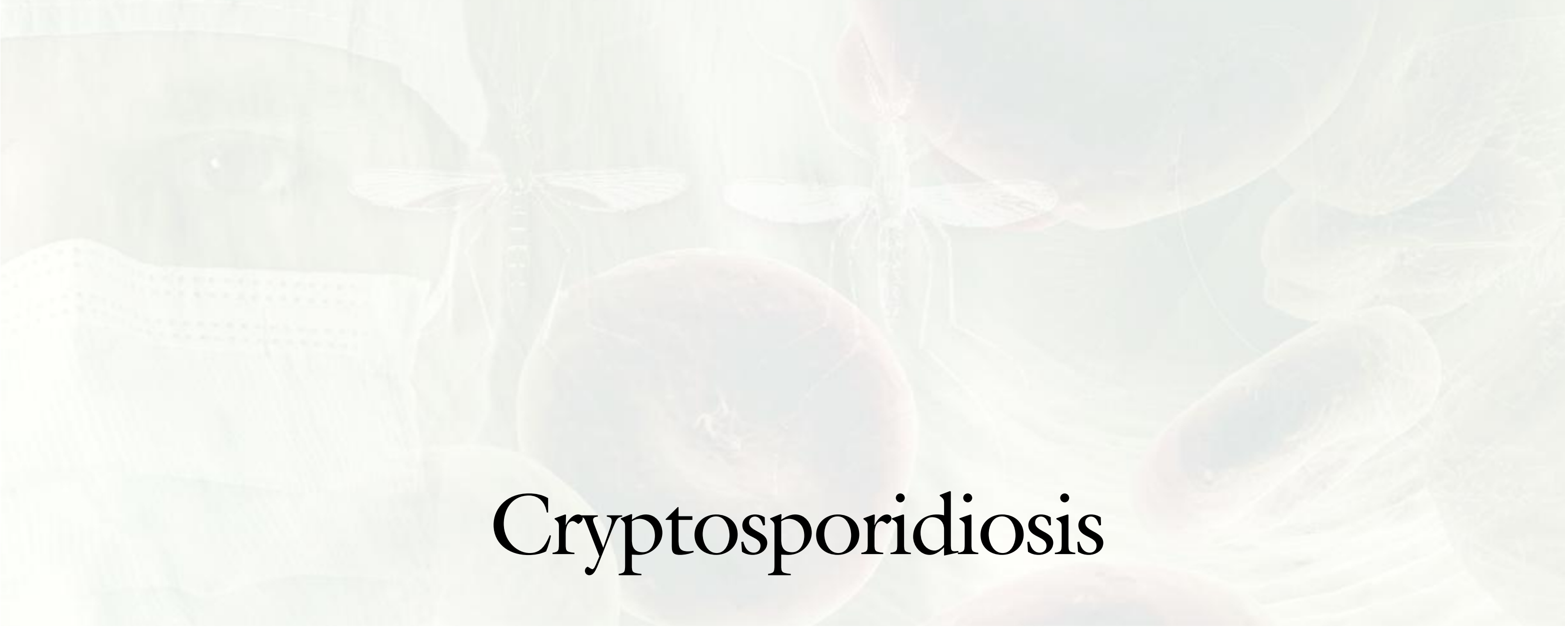
Black, Jacquelyn G. *Pigeons: The Fascinating Saga of the World's Most Revered and Reviled Bird*. New York: Grove Press, 2006.

Blechman, Andrew D. *Microbiology: Principles and Explorations*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Cryptococcosis" <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/cryptococcosis_t.htm> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Brian Hoyle



Cryptosporidiosis

Introduction

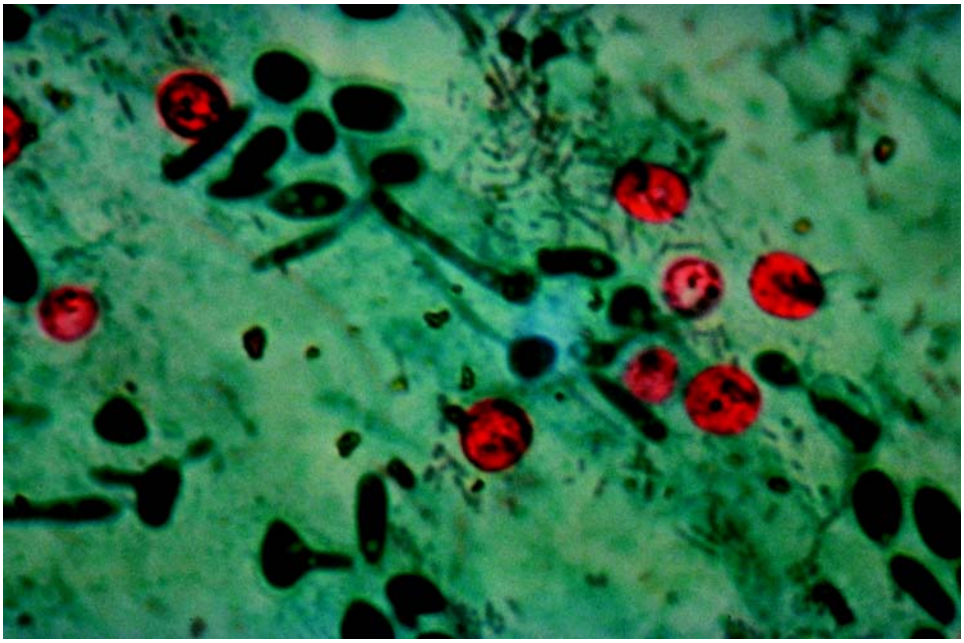
Cryptosporidiosis (KRIP-toe-spo-rid-ee-OH-sis) is a parasitic infection of the gastrointestinal tract that usually results in diarrhea. It occurs when the parasite *Cryptosporidium* is ingested due to contact between the mouth and fecal material containing the parasite. In addition to humans, more than 45 species of animals, including common farm animals, can become infected with *Cryptosporidium*.

There is often no treatment administered in otherwise healthy individuals following diagnosis, although fluid replacement may be necessary following severe diarrhea. Symptoms last around two weeks, and the disease is transmissible even in the absence of symptoms. Infection can be prevented through adhering to hygienic regimes including handwashing, washing or cooking food, boiling water, and avoiding contact with animals.

Outbreaks can occur, especially if drinking water becomes contaminated with the parasite. In this case, it is necessary to filter or boil water to prevent infection.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Cryptosporidiosis was first diagnosed in humans in 1976 after a three-year-old girl suffering from vomiting and



Cryptosporidium fungal cells, which cause cryptosporidiosis, are shown. Infection likely occurs via a fecal-oral transmission from kittens and puppies. *© Lester V. Bergman/Corbis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

PREVALENCE: The actual number of cases of disease (or injury) that exist in a population.

WATER-BORNE DISEASE: Water-borne disease refers to diseases that are caused by exposure to contaminated water. The exposure can be by drinking the water or having the water come in contact with the body. Examples of water-borne diseases are cholera and typhoid fever.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases recommends that states that "If you are unable to avoid using or drinking water that might be contaminated (with *Cryptosporidium parvum*), then you can make the water safe to drink by doing one of the following:

- Heat the water to a rolling boil for at least 1 minute OR use a filter that has an absolute pore size of 1 micron or smaller, or one that has been NSF rated for 'cyst removal.'
- Do not rely on chemicals to disinfect water and kill Cryptosporidium. Because it has a thick outer shell, this particular parasite is highly resistant to disinfectants such as chlorine and iodine."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases*

diarrhea was found to be infected with the parasite *Cryptosporidium.* The girl's digestive tract contained large amounts of gas in the colon, large amounts of fluid in the small and large bowel, and on further examination, the parasite was found within her digestive tract. Since the initial diagnosis, multiple outbreaks have occurred in the United States, including one significant outbreak transmitted through the Milwaukee, Wisconsin public water system occurred in 1993 during which 403,000 people became infected.

Cryptosporidiosis occurs after ingestion of the parasite *Cryptosporidium.* This parasite is a one-celled, ball-shaped organism that affects the digestive, biliary, and respiratory systems of other organisms. The parasite lays oocytes, which are egglike structures covered in a protective shell. Oocytes leave an infected organism's body in fecal matter. Oocytes can remain viable for two to six months in a moist environment, and due to their protective outer covering, are highly resistant to chemical disinfectant. Therefore, these parasites are potentially highly infectious.

Ingestion of infected fecal matter results in transmission of the parasite to a new organism. Ingestion of fecal matter occurs when the mouth comes in either direct contact with fecal matter, or in contact with something that has touched fecal matter. The most common means are: not washing hands after using the toilet, handling infected animals, not washing food or cooking food thoroughly, and drinking contaminated water. In addition, swimming pools and spas are common places for infection to occur due to the moist environment, and the resistance of the parasite to chemicals, including pool chlorine. Swallowing pool water infected with the parasite can lead to infection.

■ Scope and Distribution

Cryptosporidiosis is widespread within the United States, and is also present worldwide. Outbreaks have occurred in over 50 countries worldwide on six continents. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration estimates that about 80% of the American population has had cryptosporidiosis, and its prevalence (the proportion of a population having a particular disease at a given time) is about 2% in North America.

The people most commonly infected by cryptosporidiosis are children younger than two years of age, animal handlers, health care workers, and travelers. While the people most at risk of suffering long term, or even fatal cases of cryptosporidiosis, are those with weak immune systems. Young children are at risk due to the likelihood of them placing infected objects into their mouth, or not washing their hands after using the toilet.

Animal handlers are required to come into contact with animals on a daily basis. If hygienic procedures such as handwashing and washing clothes are not undertaken, transmission can occur between the animals and humans. Animals that can be infected include a range of common farm animals such as cattle and sheep, as well as common pets such as cats, dogs, birds, and fish.

Health care workers usually come into contact with fecal matter on a daily basis, which could potentially result in them becoming infected, particularly if they are caring for patients infected with cryptosporidiosis. To avoid infection, healthcare workers use contact precautions, including handwashing and wearing gloves when anticipating contact with potentially infected feces. People taking care of children may also be exposed to infection during diaper changing, as they are likely to come into contact with fecal matter.

Travelers are at risk as they may travel through areas with differing levels of hygiene in terms of food preparation and water standards. Lower standards may result in food and water harboring the parasite. Therefore, their chances of infection are greater.

People with weak immune systems are most at risk of suffering prolonged or severe symptoms of cryptosporidiosis. Persons with AIDS, who have transplanted organs, or who were born with weakened immune systems are more likely to develop complications from cryptosporidiosis, including severe dehydration and lung infection (pulmonary cryptosporidiosis) that can lead to death.

Treatment and Prevention

The most common symptoms of cryptosporidiosis in humans are diarrhea, stomach cramps, nausea, vomiting, slight fever, and weight loss. These symptoms usually appear between two and 10 days after infection, and last up to two weeks, sometimes occurring sporadically during that time. Following recovery, relapses may occur. In some cases, symptoms are not present. However, the infection is still contagious and can be passed on to other humans.

There is no standard cure for cryptosporidiosis, and the symptoms usually disappear after about two weeks. One new drug approved for treating the disease, nitazoxanide, has shown effectiveness in treating the diarrhea associated with cryptosporidiosis in people that are otherwise healthy. Some people also receive relief from antibiotics and from common anti-diarrhea and anti-vomiting medicines. In order to prevent dehydration, fluid and electrolyte replacement may be necessary in some cases. Therefore, persons with *Cryptosporidium* are encouraged to increase their water intake, and to watch for signs of dehydration, such as dry mouth, headaches, fatigue, joint aches, and decreased skin elasticity.

In order to prevent contracting cryptosproidiosis, contact with fecal matter should be avoided. This may involve washing hands after handling soil, after toileting, or after handling animals. To avoid infection via food, washing with uninfected water, or cooking it thoroughly will remove or kill the parasite. Water is a major source of infection due to the parasite's protective covering against chemicals. Boiling infected water for at least one minute will kill the parasite, and filtering it through filters small enough to prevent the parasite passing will remove the parasite. This water can then be used for all water-related uses such as drinking, washing food, and making ice.

The Western Australian Health Department recommends that infected people remain away from public places, especially public swimming bodies, while exhibiting cryptosporidiosis symptoms to prevent possible infection of other people.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

Advertising on filters can be deceptive. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases states that filters with any of the following messages on the package "should be able to remove Crypto" (*Cryptosporidium parvum*):

- Reverse-osmosis (with or without NSF testing)
- Absolute pore size of 1 micron or smaller (with or without NSF testing)
- Tested and certified by NSF Standard 53 for cyst removal
- Tested and certified by NSF Standard 53 for cyst reduction

"Filters labeled only with these words may not be designed to remove Crypto:"

- Nominal pore size of 1 micron or smaller
- 1-micron filter
- Effective against Giardia
- Effective against parasites
- Carbon filter
- Water purifier
- EPA approved - Caution: EPA does not approve or test filters.
- EPA registered - Caution: EPA does not register filters for Crypto removal
- Activated carbon
- Removes chlorine
- Ultraviolet light
- Pentiodide resins
- Water softener

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases*

Impacts and Issues

Cryptosporidiosis has the potential to spread rapidly and affect many people in a short amount of time, and infection of a community's drinking source puts the whole community at risk. Before 2001, water treatment in many locations in the United States did not remove the parasite, as chemical treatment usually did not kill them, and filters were too large to prevent them passing. The outbreak in Milwaukee in 1993 resulted in over 400,000 reported cases and remains the single largest outbreak of waterborne disease reported in the United States. More than 100 people, mostly persons with AIDS or elderly persons, died during the outbreak. Estimated monetary costs of the outbreak spiraled to over 95 million dollars, including 30 million dollars of direct medical care costs and 60 million dollars attributed to lost productivity in the Milwaukee workplace. As a result of this outbreak, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) mandated that major U.S. water systems (those relying surface water sources, such as a rivers or lakes, and serving more than 10,000 people) implement new EPA standards by 2001 that strengthened control over microbial contaminants, including *Cryptosporidium.*

Another notable occurrence occurred in New York in 2005 at a popular water park. The Senaca Lake State Park was found to have two water storage tanks infected with *Cryptosporidium.* Over 3,800 people reported cryptosporidiosis symptoms.

Cryptosporidiosis disease is a major cause of diarrhea worldwide. Due to differing food and water quality controls over the world, this disease has a large impact on travelers who are unfamiliar with a region's water quality. Travelers are often advised to consider the following precautions to prevent infection: bringing water to a full boil for one minute, avoiding undercooked food, handling or peeling raw food such as fruit themselves, avoiding swimming in freshwater rivers and lakes, and carrying bottled water when unsure of an area's water quality.

Persons with compromised immune systems are often advised to take extra precautions with their drinking water to prevent *Cryptosporidium* infection, including boiling it, installing point-of-use filters that remove particles one micrometer or less in diameter, or drinking bottled water from protected well or protected spring water sources.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Contact Precautions; Gastroenteritis (common causes); Handwashing; HIV; Parasitic Diseases; Travel and Infectious Disease; Water-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, vol. 2.* Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Web Sites

Australian Government. "Cryptosporidiosis." April, 2006 <http://www.healthinsite.gov.au/topics/Cryptosporidiosis> (accessed Jan. 29, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Cryptosporidium Infection Cryptosporidiosis." Aug. 19, 2005 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/cryptosporidiosis/factsht_cryptosporidiosis.htm> (accessed Jan. 29, 2007).

Department of Health, Western Australia. "Cryptosporidiosis: Environmental Health Guide." 2006 <http://www.health.wa.gov.au/envirohealth/water/docs/Cryptospordiosis_EH_Guide.pdf> (accessed Jan. 29, 2007).

New York State Department of Health. "Cryptosporidiosis." June, 2004 <http://www.health.state.ny.us/diseases/communicable/cryptosporidiosis/fact_sheet.htm> (accessed Jan. 29, 2007).

Culture and Sensitivity

Introduction

Culture and sensitivity in microbiology refers to laboratory techniques that allow a disease-causing microorganism to be identified, and that determine which antibiotics are sensitive to (effective against) the identified microorganism.

Physicians must take numerous important factors into account when deciding how to appropriately treat infectious disease. Broad patient-specific factors include the natural history of the infection and the strength of the patient's immune system. If antibiotic treatment of the disease is suitable, as in the case of bacterial, certain fungal, and some other microbial diseases, the type of antibiotics used may depend on ease of absorption, metabolism, ability to reach the infection site, and other factors. Microbe culturing and susceptibility testing offers information to help make appropriate decisions. The availability of such information from laboratory testing can be of life-saving assistance to doctors, but can also result in excessive reliance on testing when a simpler, broader approach to treatment may be more efficient.

History and Scientific Foundations

Most of the techniques of culturing microbes were developed in the mid- to late 1800s by Robert Koch, Paul Erlich, and Hans Christian Gram. Using some of these techniques, Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) developed the foundations of the modern science of infectious disease at that time.

The German physician Robert Koch (1843–1910) perfected a technique to distinguish different types of bacteria and grow pure cultures of these bacterial types, and in the process founded the science of bacteriology. He formalized the approach of determining whether a particular microbe caused a given disease in a set of rules now known as Koch's Postulates (1882), which supported the concept that a disease is caused by a specific microbe:

- The agent of an infectious disease must be present in every case of the disease.
- The agent must be isolated from the host and grown *in vitro* (pure culture) for several generations.
- The disease must be reproduced when a pure culture of the agent is inoculated into a healthy susceptible host.
- The same agent must be recovered once again from the experimentally infected host.

Koch developed a solid medium for bacterial growth using gelatin, later modified by other scientists to include a seaweed called agar to keep the medium solid at room temperature. The German bacteriologist Richard Julius Petri (1852–1921) developed a glass dish still used today that helps foster optimal bacterial growth.

In 1877, Koch also developed a technique for dry-fixing thin films of bacterial culture on glass slides, staining them with aniline dyes, and recording the microscopic images on film. Dry-fixing continues to be a standard procedure in identifying various bacterial cultures. Different types of media are optimal for specific types of bacteria, and identification of a specific pathogen can still be a matter of clinical experience and judgment.

Microbe staining techniques were developed in 1839 by the German scientist Christian Gottfried Ehrenberg (1795–1876). These staining techniques depended on two properties of stains: chromogenicity (inclusion of groups of atoms that are color-forming) and the ability to dissociate into positively charged ions (cations) and negatively charged ions (anions). For example, when the common methylene blue dye is added to water, it dissociates into a chloride anion and a methylene blue

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

ANTIBIOTIC SENSITIVITY: Antibiotic sensitivity refers to the susceptibility of a bacterium to an antibiotic. Bacteria can be killed by some types of antibiotics and not be affected by other types. Different types of bacteria exhibit different patterns of antibiotic sensitivity.

BROAD-SPECTRUM ANTIBIOTICS: Broad-spectrum antibiotics are drugs that kill a wide range of bacteria rather than just those from a specific family. For, example, amoxicillin is a broad-spectrum antibiotic that is used against many common illnesses such as ear infections.

COHORTING: Cohorting is the practice of grouping persons with like infections or symptoms together in order to reduce transmission to others.

CULTURE AND SENSITIVITY: Culture and sensitivity refer to laboratory tests that are used to identify the type of microorganism causing an infection and compounds that the identified organism is sensitive and resistant to. In the case of bacteria, this approach permits the selection of antibiotics that will be most effective in dealing with the infection.

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA: All types of bacteria identified and classified as a group that does not retain crystal-violet dye during Gram's method of staining.

GRAM-POSITIVE BACTERIA: All types of bacteria identified and classified as a group that retains crystal-violet dye during Gram's method of staining.

INPATIENT: A patient who is admitted to a hospital or clinic for treatment, typically requiring the patient to stay overnight.

OUTPATIENT: A person who receives health care services without being admitted to a hospital or clinic for an overnight stay.

MINIMAL INHIBITORY CONCENTRATION (MIC): The minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) refers to the lowest level of an antibiotic that prevents growth of the particular type of bacteria in a liquid food source after a certain amount of time. Growth is detected by clouding of the food source. The MIC is the lowest concentration of the antibiotic at which the no cloudiness occurs.

SEPSIS: Sepsis refers to a bacterial infection in the bloodstream or body tissues. This is a very broad term covering the presence of many types of microscopic disease-causing organisms. Sepsis is also called bacteremia. Closely related terms include septicemia and septic syndrome. According to the Society of Critical Care Medicine, severe sepsis affects about 750,000 people in the United States each year. However, it is predicted to rapidly rise to one million people by 2010 due to the aging U.S. population. Over the decade of the 1990s, the incident rate of sepsis increased over 91%.

cation, which is visible in solution and makes methylene blue a "cation dye." Another common dye, eosin, dissociates into a sodium cation and a visible eosin anion and is an anion dye. Anionic dyes such as eosin interact with the cationic portions of the bacterial protein being identified, while the converse happens with cationic dyes.

The Gram stain, developed in 1884 and named after discoverer Hans Christian Gram (1853–1938) is in a different category from ionic stains. This technique involves first staining bacteria with gentian violet dye, then washing the stained bacteria with iodine solution, and then with ethyl alcohol. For "Gram-negative" bacteria, the second and third steps wash away the dye, while "Gram-positive" bacteria remain colored after washing with iodine and alcohol. The final step is to stain the Gram-negative bacteria with a reddish-pink dye that does not stain the Gram-positive bacteria. The Gram-positive bacteria will thus have violet structural features under the microscope, while the Gram-negative bacteria will have pinkish structural features. Whether a bacterium is Gram-positive or Gram-negative is often an indicator or whether the bacteria can be destroyed using a particular antibiotic.

Many antibiotics can kill Gram-positive bacteria, while Gram-negative bacteria resist common antibiotics. Gram-negative bacteria have an extra layer of polysaccharides, proteins, and phospholipids, which blocks many antibiotics from reaching the peptidoglycan cell wall. For example, penicillin works by attacking the cell wall, but is prevented from doing so by this extra layer, making the bacteria penicillin-resistant.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing

The susceptibility methods used by clinical laboratories include the Kirby-Bauer disc diffusion susceptibility test, macrotube dilution susceptibility test, and the microtube dilution test. In the Kirby-Bauer test, disks containing antibiotics are placed over an agar plate inoculated with the organism. The size of the zone of inhibition indicates whether or not the organism is sensitive or resistant to the antibiotic at level normally used (doses). Laboratories report antibiotic sensitivities as "Susceptible," "Intermediate," or "Resistant" as defined by the National Committee on Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS).

The minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) is the lowest concentration of the antibiotic (mcg/ml) that will inhibit bacterial growth in vitro, and is correlated with the concentration of the antibiotic achievable in blood.

The MIC is traditionally determined using the macrotube dilution technique in which a standard inoculum is tested against serial dilutions of a particular antibiotic—a time-consuming process. A newer technique uses tiny wells in an automated plastic susceptibility card that are injected with standard dilutions of antimicrobial agents by the manufacturer. The laboratory adds a standard concentration of the organism to the card and the organism is automatically dispersed to all of the wells. After an incubation period of 12–24 hours, the card is machine-read for bacterial growth at hourly intervals and a growth curve for the isolate is calculated for each antibiotic on the plastic card. The antibiotics are grouped according to whether the organism being tested is Gram-positive or Gram-negative, and the antibiotics for the Gram-negative isolate are further grouped according to whether they can be used in an inpatient or outpatient setting depending on whether the patient is in the process of being admitted or discharged from the hospital.

Applications

Depending on MIC results, physicians may change the dosage of a particular antibiotic to be used in treatment, or choose a different antibiotic to treat the infection. For example, a blood-borne *Escherichia coli* infection tested with ampicillin may have a MIC of 2 mcg/ml (sensitive), multiplied by 2–4 times gives 4–8 mcg/ml as a potential peak level of the antibiotic in the blood, which is considerably less than an intravenous representative dose from the patient of 47 mcg/mg. Thus, ampicillin would be expected to provide adequate therapy for the patient.

In a different example of a leg wound tested with ampicillin, a higher MIC of, say, 16 mcg/ml would be correlated with a 32–64 mcg/ml peak blood concentration, which could fall over the range of the representative intravenous dose of 47 mcg/ml dose of bacteria from the patient. Furthermore, since the patient has a leg wound where the infection is in tissue rather than blood, the concentration of antibiotics in tissue will be lower than in blood. In this case, the physician would consider a higher ampicillin dose or a different antibiotic for treatment.

GERMAN PHYSICIAN ROBERT KOCH (1843–1910)

Robert Koch pioneered principles and techniques in studying bacteria and discovered the specific agents that cause tuberculosis, cholera, and anthrax. As a pioneer in microbiology and public health, Koch aided legislation and changing prevailing attitudes about hygiene to prevent the spread of various infectious diseases. For his work on tuberculosis, Koch was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1905.

In the first paper he wrote on tuberculosis, Koch stated his lifelong goal: "I have undertaken my investigations in the interests of public health and I hope the greatest benefits will accrue therefrom."

Impacts and Issues

Culturing and MIC testing are possible for most, but not all, types of bacteria-caused diseases. Infections for which cultures generally cannot be obtained include ear infections, sinusitis, and bronchitis, along with viral infections. For such infections there is a considerable risk of over-prescribing antibiotic treatments that are likely to be inappropriate and ineffective, and there are increasing calls for the distribution of procedures and new guidelines to address this issue.

The timing and choice of antibiotics can be important in treating older adults. For example, in sepsis (a generalized infection in the blood due to microorganisms or toxins) most research suggests that starting with broad-spectrum antibiotics without culturing is beneficial because deaths and long hospital stays are reduced if the initial antibiotic treatment attacks and reduces the infectious agent. Delaying therapy initiation by four or more hours after hospital admission, as could happen with long laboratory testing, is associated with higher mortality. On the other hand, up to 75% of antibiotic use in long-term care may be inappropriate, so strict minimum criteria for initiating antibiotic treatment should be set.

The emergence of resistant bacteria has led to the reliance on the newer class of antibiotics (fluoroquinolones) for relatively routine infections such as community-acquired pneumonia (CAP) in spite of the potential for adverse

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The medical dangers and escalating health care costs associated with antimicrobial resistance led to the formation of a special interagency task force tasked with developing effective plans to combat the problem. Formed in 1999, the Interagency Task Force on Antimicrobial Resistance is co-chaired by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), and the National Institutes of Health (NIH), and also includes the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ), the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS, formerly the Health Care Financing Administration [HCFA]), the Department of Agriculture (USDA), the Department of Defense (DoD), the Department of Veterans Affairs (DVA), the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), and the Health Resources and Services Administration (HRSA).

One of the top priorities of the task force is to "conduct a public health education campaign to promote appropriate antimicrobial use as a national health priority."

effects. Over-utilization has, in turn, given rise to increasing fluoroquinolone resistance in some geographic regions. Current Infectious Disease Society of America guidelines advise keeping newer fluoroquinolones that are active against *S. pneumoniae* in reserve, while using other antibiotics such as an advanced generation cephalosporin (e.g., cefotaxime) as initial therapy.

This example demonstrates the vicious circle that arises from physicians' reliance upon specialized antibiotics that show *in vitro* (in the body) potency against given infections when treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics would provide faster treatment yet would not lead to resistance to the specialized antibiotics.

Furthermore, over-reliance on antibiotics in long-term care facilities and in hospitals can cause health care workers to disregard simple infection control activities such as handwashing, isolation, and cohorting (grouping) of infected patients, skin testing for tuberculosis, and immunization to prevent infection with resistant organisms in the first place.

See Also *Antibacterial Drugs; Bacterial Disease; Resistant Organisms; Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ryan, Kenneth J. and C. George Ray. *Sherris Medical Microbiology: an Introduction to Infectious Disease*. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical, 2003.

Web Sites

National Center for Biotechnology Information. "Microbiologic Examination." in *Medical Microbiology*, 4th ed., Samuel Baron, ed. <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/bv.fcgi?rid=mmed.section.5451> (accessed April 2, 2007).

University of Virginia Health Systems. "What is Microbiology?" <http://www.healthsystem.virginia.edu/uvahealth/adult_path/micro.cfm> (accessed April 2, 2007).

Kenneth T. LaPensee

Cyclosporiasis

Introduction

Cyclosporiasis, (sigh-clo-spore-EYE-uh-sis) also called *Cyclospora*, is an infection caused by the pathogenic protozoan *Cyclospora cayetanensis*. The protozoan is a coccidium (causing disease in the gut) parasite that infects the gastrointestinal (GI) tract. It is spread when humans drink water or eat food that is contaminated with infected feces. The *Cyclospora* needs days or even a week after being passed in a bowel movement to become infectious.

Imported produce, especially raspberries, is most frequently associated with outbreaks of *Cyclospora* infection. *Cyclospora* often infect humans and other animals such as moles, myriapods (small, long arthropods such as centipedes), rodents, and vipers (poisonous snakes). Although still unproven, transmission between humans, and between animals and humans is unlikely. The primary source of the parasite is unknown. The infection sometimes causes diarrhea in travelers visiting foreign countries.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

According to the Division of Parasitic Diseases within the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), the first human case of *Cyclospora* infection was documented in 1979, although it had been recognized as early as 1977. During the mid–1980s, cases frequently were reported. According to the Epidemiology and Disease Control Program (EDCP), large outbreaks were reported in the 1990s and 2000s within the United States and Canada. The first U.S. case occurred in Chicago, Illinois, inside a medical dormitory whose water source became infected. A U.S. epidemic occurred between 1996 and 1997 when basil, lettuce, and raspberries became contaminated. A Canadian epidemic occurred in 1999 when berries became contaminated. In 2004, a Pennsylvania outbreak happened with basil and snow peas. After the AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome) epidemic bloomed, reported occurrences of Cyclosporiasis became more frequent.

The *Cyclospora cayetanensis* parasite is a one-celled organism and requires specialized microscopic inspection for identification, often from multiple stool samples. Transmission occurs when an oocyst (a fertilized sex cell) of *C. cayetanensis* is located within contaminated water that is ingested. It enters the small intestine (bowel) and travels to the mucous membrane (the moist lining inside body passages). The oocyst incubates for approximately one week (with a range from one to 14 days). After incubation is complete, the victim begins to experience symptoms of watery bloating, diarrhea, frequent and sometimes large bowel movements, low-grade fever, muscle aches, and stomach cramps. Other diarrhea-caused symptoms include fatigue, appetite and weight loss, and increased gas. However, some people show no symptoms. If not treated, the illness lasts from several days to about one month, sometimes longer. Relapses of the illness often occur.

All humans are susceptible to the infection worldwide. However, people in developing countries are most susceptible. Death rarely occurs, however, death can result in infected people with immunosuppressed systems, such as persons with AIDS. *Cyclospora* affect both sexes, and all ages and races equally, though children in developing countries are especially susceptible, as they are often the primary water carriers for their families.

Scope and Distribution

It is possible for the infection to occur anywhere in the world, although it is often found in underdeveloped or developing countries. It is frequently found (endemic) in Haiti, Nepal, and Peru. It has also been reported from people traveling within India, Indonesia, Mexico, Morocco, Pakistan, Puerto Rico, and Southeastern Asia. When it occurs in the United States, it happens mostly in the warmer months of late spring and summer.

WORDS TO KNOW

COCCIDIUM: Any single-celled animal (protozoan) belonging to the sub-class Coccidia. Some coccidia species can infest the digestive tract, causing coccidiosis.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

FOOD PRESERVATION: The term food preservation refers to any one of a number of techniques used to prevent food from spoiling. It includes methods such as canning, pickling, drying and freeze-drying, irradiation, pasteurization, smoking, and the addition of chemical additives. Food preservation has become an increasingly important component of the food industry as fewer people eat foods produced on their own lands, and as consumers expect to be able to purchase and consume foods that are out of season.

OOCYST: An oocyst is a spore phase of certain infectious organisms that can survive for a long time outside the organism and so continue to cause infection and resist treatment.

PROTOZOA: Single-celled animal-like microscopic organisms that live by taking in food rather than making it by photosynthesis and must live in the presence of water. (Singular: protozoan.) Protozoa are a diverse group of single-celled organisms, with more than 50,000 different types represented. The vast majority are microscopic, many measuring less than 5 one-thousandth of an inch (0.005 millimeters), but some, such as the freshwater Spirostomun, may reach 0.17 inches (3 millimeters) in length, large enough to enable it to be seen with the naked eye.

Treatment and Prevention

The diagnosis is oftentimes difficult because oocysts in feces and water are difficult to identify. Stool specimens are used; frequently, several specimens are taken over numerous days. The EDCP suggests that physicians specifically request a *Cyclospora* test in order to assure accurate laboratory results. The polymerase chain reaction-based DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) test and acid-fast staining test are often used.

Treatment involves antibiotics, often in combinations such as trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole. Traditional anti-protozoan drugs are usually not effective enough to stop the protozoan. People with compromised immune systems and severe diarrhea require additional supportive treatment.

To prevent its transmission through food, all fruits and vegetables should be washed before consuming. Handwashing before handling or eating food removes most of the parasites. Drinking water suspected to be contaminated, especially from rivers, streams, springs, and other untreated waters, should be avoided in order to prevent cyclosporiasis. Handwashing after using the toilet and changing diapers also prevents transmission of *Cyclospora*.

Impacts and Issues

Cyclosporiasis infection is part of a wider problem: emerging widespread foodborne outbreaks on a countrywide and international scale. Foodborne illnesses such as cyclosporiasis continue to increase in numbers and severity as the world rapidly moves toward a global food market. A contaminated food in one part of the world can now lead to an outbreak halfway across the globe in a matter of days.

According to the CDC, better recognition and management of outbreaks of foodborne infections such as those caused by *Cyclospora* are needed. Specifically, this would include: better coordination and action by federal, state, and local agencies; more comprehensive laboratory diagnostic training; structured development of epidemiologic studies; coordination between affected governments and the media; and early and effective involvement of companies involved in the growing, processing, exporting, importing, transporting, and wholesale and retail sales of foods.

Irradiation, the use of ionizing radiation for food pasteurization, is suggested as a way to reduce bacterial and parasitic causes of foodborne diseases. The CDC and World Health Organization and other international groups promote irradiation as a safe and effective method to reduce the risk of infection in globally distributed foods—but the use of ionizing radiation is opposed by some food advocacy groups and research continues.

See Also *Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Microorganisms; Travel and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Arguin, Paul M., Phyllis E. Kozarsky, and Ava W. Navin, eds. *Health Information for International Travel, 2005–2006.* Atlanta, GA: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, 2005.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition. *Bad Bug Book:*

Foodborne Pathogenic Microorganisms and Natural Toxins Handbook. McLean, VA: International Medical Publishing, Inc., 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Cyclospora Infection or Cyclosporiasis (sigh–clo–spore–EYE–uh–sis)." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/cyclospora/factsht_cyclospora.htm> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Epidemiology and Disease Control Program (EDCP). "Cyclosporiasis Fact Sheet." <http://edcp.org/factsheets/cyclospor.html> (accessed March 8, 2007).

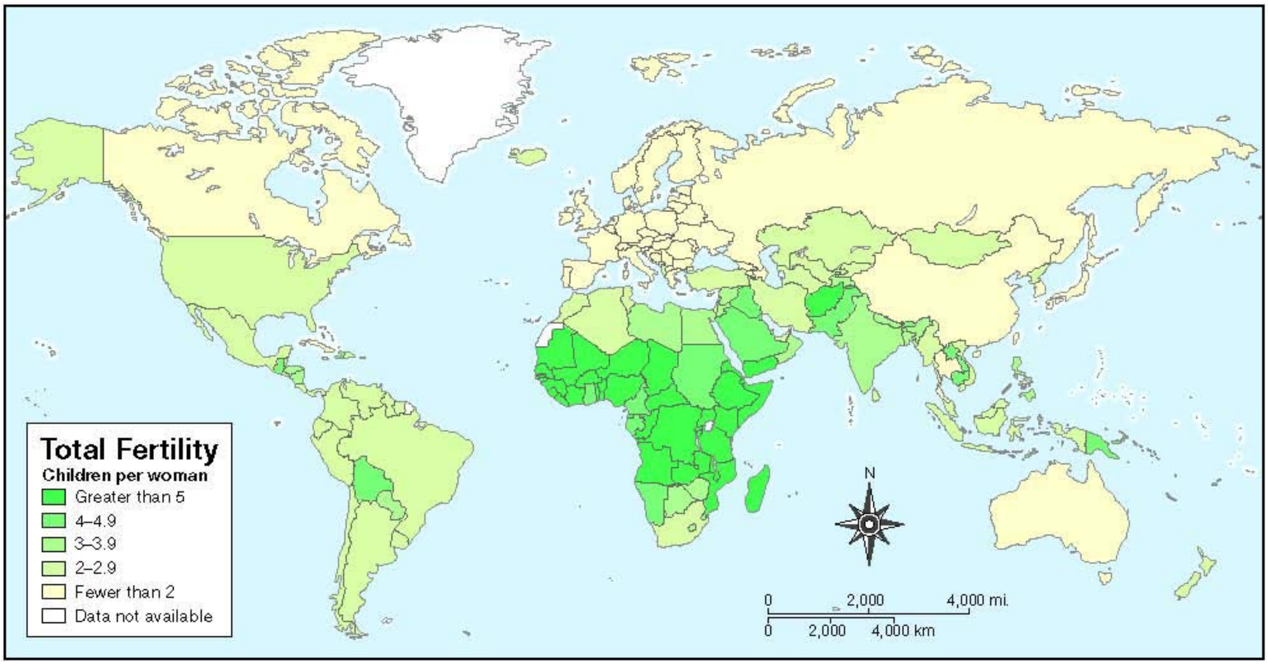
Demographics and Infectious Disease

Introduction

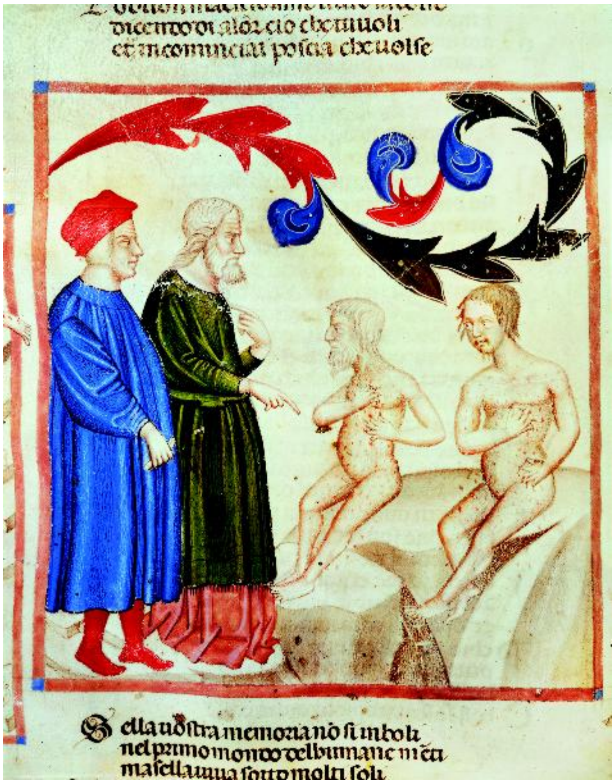
Demographic trends (trends in a population's vital statistics) within nations and across national boundaries have a profound effect on the distribution of infectious disease worldwide. Gender, age, the movement of populations due to economic opportunity or to escape conflict, and the sheer density of population relative to the capacity of local ecosystems, civic infrastructure, and public health resources all influence the infectivity and virulence (degree of ability to cause disease) of infectious diseases. Close quartering of a population such as in refugee camps, prisons, or schools, can also affect the outbreak and spread of infectious disease.

History and Scientific Foundations

One clear example of how many of these factors came together at once was the mass exodus of more than a million Kurds from Iraq as they fled their villages under attack from the Iraqi army after the end of the first Gulf



Map representing the average number of children born in each country per woman from 2000 to 2004. Many countries that already bear a high burden from AIDS and other infectious diseases due to a lack of immunization coverage and healthcare infrastructure, along with inadequate sanitation, are also among those with the highest fertility rates. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that by the year 2010, half of all deaths in children under age five will occur in Sub-Saharan Africa. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*



An anonymous drawing from a 16th-century version of Dante's *Divine Comedy* shows Dante (1265–1321) and Virgil (70 BC–19 BC) with people suffering from the plague in Europe. *Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY.*

War in 1991. With the absence of sanitary facilities and the crowding together of so many people in a weakened condition, contaminated water supplies from human waste quickly gave rise to an epidemic of cholera, as well as other communicable diseases. More recently, conflict in the Darfur region of Sudan has resulted in the movement of more than one million internally displaced persons who now live in crowded refugee camps where epidemics of typhoid, hepatitis E, cholera, and meningitis have taken hold.

Movement of populations such as migrants or refugees affects the population itself, the populations encountered, and the ecosystem. Each translocated person carries cultural practices, genetic vulnerabilities and resistances to infections, and organisms that have been held at bay by the individual's immunity, but lie dormant and are potentially dangerous to previously unexposed persons. In addition, the moving populations unwittingly transport microbes, animals that are disease vectors (transmitters), and other flora and fauna (plants and animals) that are foreign to the destination ecosystems.

Even when no mass population movements are taking place, the changing age and sex mix of stable populations over time will impact the spread of infectious disease. In other words, the population of potential disease hosts changes rather than remains stable. These changes affect the patterns of communicable diseases, particularly diseases that are sexually transmitted and that give rise to symptoms in one gender or the other (such as cervical cancer caused by human papilloma virus) or which attack people differentially in different age brackets, such as seasonal influenza, which usually infects older people more often than younger people.

Demographic factors in models of infectious disease

Demographics such as the population density of various age, sex, and ethnic subgroups, along with other statistics that affect patterns of disease can be made into mathematical models that help scientists map and predict infectious disease trends. These models involve various assumptions based on whether people can recover from infections, the rate of disease-related deaths, the development of immunity, and the duration of immunity (whether it is temporary or permanent). These models can also predict infectious disease catastrophes by location. For example, recent models have shown that the persistence (duration) of the AIDS epidemic in many rural African communities has reduced the population size to levels below those that are necessary to maintain the local population of the community. The models showed that AIDS was eliminating adults of reproducing age at a rapid rate.

The simplest models often assume that the total population size is constant. For short-term outbreaks of a disease, simple disease models used to predict the course of an epidemic assume that the population is fixed and closed, and depend only on the disease incidence and prevalence rates, disease duration (persistence), disease death rates, and occurrence of immunity. Models for an endemic disease (one that is naturally occurring in a region such as tuberculosis or malaria) usually assume that births and deaths balance each other so the population size remains unchanged. However, when the disease causes a significant number of deaths, as in the case of AIDS, this assumption is not realistic and more complicated models assuming variable population are needed to predict the course of the epidemic. These sophisticated models incorporate assumptions about both birth and death rates, which can be impacted by the incidence and prevalence of disease as well as other factors. By the same token, population size influences the rapidity with which a disease is spread, with large, dense populations promoting the rapid spread of disease, and small, dispersed populations inhibiting such spread.

■ Applications and Research

Demographics, seasonality, and infectious disease

Seasonality is an important factor in the in the spread of common infectious diseases that most affect the youngest

WORDS TO KNOW

CLUSTER: In epidemiology, cluster refers to a grouping of an infectious disease or foodborn illness that occurs very close in time or place.

DEMOGRAPHICS: The characteristics of human populations or specific parts of human populations, most often reported through statistics.

EPIDEMIOLOGY: Epidemiology is the study of various factors that influence the occurrence, distribution, prevention, and control of disease, injury, and other health-related events in a defined human population. By the application of various analytical techniques including mathematical analysis of the data, the probable cause of an infectious outbreak can be pinpointed.

HERD IMMUNITY: Herd immunity is a resistance to disease that occurs in a population when a proportion of them have been immunized against it. The theory is that it is less likely that an infectious disease will spread in a group where some individuals are less likely to contract it.

INCIDENCE: The number of new cases of a disease or injury that occur in a population during a specified period of time.

PERSISTENCE: Persistence is the length of time a disease remains in a patient. Disease persistence can vary from a few days to life-long.

PREVALENCE: The actual number of cases of disease (or injury) that exist in a population.

VIRULENCE: Virulence is the ability of a disease organism to cause disease: a more virulent organism is more infective and liable to produce more serious disease.

and oldest demographic groups (school children and the elderly). Illnesses such as influenza, measles, chickenpox, and pertussis (whooping cough) are all more prevalent at certain times of the year. Seasonality is a particularly important factor in models that predict whether these recurrent infectious diseases will occur in a given year or skip a year. Seasonal changes in disease transmission patterns and the susceptibility of a population susceptibility to a disease (such as attending school or staying inside in close quarters during the winter) can prevent late-peaking diseases (disease epidemics that take a long time to reach peak infectivity) from spreading widely. When this happens, the remaining population is more susceptible to future epidemics because of a lack of herd immunity (when the majority of immunized people in a group give some protection to those that are not immunized).

By analyzing seasonality and how much of the population remains susceptible to a disease, scientists can predict the course of newly emerging and re-emerging diseases, such as West Nile disease, that are brought on by seasonal vectors (transmitters) including mosquitoes or migratory birds.

Population clustering and disease spread

Of course, populations are not distributed uniformly even when they are stable and no significant migration is occurring. Infectious diseases spread in different patterns within a population that is divided into families or other groups, than in a population that consists mostly of people who are living alone. A household constitutes a small population cluster, which is in turn comprised of members that are resistant to the disease, along with members that are susceptible to the disease. An infectious disease spreads quickly and efficiently within the household, but the outbreak lasts longer if it spreads cluster by cluster, or from one household to another.

■ Impacts and Issues

Infectious disease in the elderly

As discussed above, the proportion of children and the elderly in a population is particularly important in the spread of communicable diseases, particularly because both age groups are more likely than the general population to be in very close quarters for extended periods in schools and in hospitals or nursing homes. In children, immune functioning is still developing and they are constantly being exposed to pathogens (disease-causing organisms) that are familiar to adults, but new to them. At the other end of the demographic scale, aging is associated with increased incidence and severity of many infectious diseases, including nosocomial infections (infections that originate in hospitals from contaminated equipment or close proximity to other infected people). This increased risk is due to an age-related decline in the body's immune system function. As the average age of the population increases in industrialized nations, the epidemiology (incidence and prevalence), morbidity (proportion of sick people), mortality (death rate), and needs for preventive action against nosocomial infections in the elderly also increase.

Impact of households on vaccination strategies

When an epidemic of a highly infectious disease is spreading in a community of households, the infection of any member of a household generally results in the infection of all susceptible members of that household. The rapidity of disease spread will thus depend on the household size and the variability of the number of susceptible people per household. If the rate of spread of infection from individual to individual within each household and the spread of infection from household to household are calculated, the rate and pattern of spread of the disease can be put into a mathematical model by public health scientists. This model can be used to calculate the levels of immunity that will be needed to prevent major epidemics in the community. It can also be used to evaluate alternative vaccination strategies that could immunize the same number of individuals.

For a community with households of approximately equal size (as seen in many suburban communities in the United States), random vaccination of individuals is better than immunizing all members of a fraction of households that would amount to the same total number of vaccinated people. On the other hand, when households vary widely in size (as seen in many U.S. urban areas) vaccinating all members of large households can slow down the spread of the epidemic more rapidly than would the vaccination of an equal number of randomly selected individuals. This is because disease transmission within these large households is easier than in the general community. Such epidemic spread models can also be used for a community of households with schools or day care centers. Immunizing every child within the school or day care center will be more effective than randomly immunizing an equal number of children in the community because the schools and day care centers are similar to very large households in which disease spread among many susceptible children is made easy by their close quarters.

Demographic characteristics of populations strongly determine the rate and extent of infectious disease distribution and spread. These demographic characteristics are in turn profoundly influenced by the processes of economic development, globalization, migration, and war. Although population demographics and patterns of infectious disease are in continual flux (change), they are rarely susceptible to policy-motivated human intervention. Rather, they are all aspects of the evolution of human cultures, which are intimately interconnected with evolving technology and commerce. The tools of epidemiological models that use demographic factors to help forecast the spread of infectious disease will constantly need to be updated as population characteristics change with increasing velocity in the years and decades ahead.

SEE ALSO *Economic Development and Infectious Disease; Public Health and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Connolly, M.A. *Communicable Disease Control in Emergencies: A Field Manual.* Geneva: World Health Organization, 2006.

Daly, D.J., and J. Gani. *Epidemic Modeling: An Introduction.* New York, Cambridge, 2001.

Jamison, Dean T., ed., et al. *Disease and Mortality in Sub-Saharan Africa.* New York: World Bank Publications, 2006.

Periodicals

Pramodh, Nathaniel. “Limiting the Spread of Communicable Diseases Caused by Human Population Movement.” *Journal of Rural and Remote Environmental Health.* (2003): 2(1), 23–32.

Stone L., R. Olinky, A. Huppert. “Seasonal Dynamics of Recurrent Epidemics.” *Nature.* (March 29, 2007): 533–6.

Web Sites

Science Blog. “Web Game Provides Breakthrough in Predicting Spread of Epidemics.” <http://www.scienceblog.com/cms/web_game_provides_breakthrough_in_predicting_spread_of_epidemics_9874> (accessed May 30, 2007).

Kenneth T. LaPensee

Dengue and Dengue Hemorrhagic Fever

Introduction

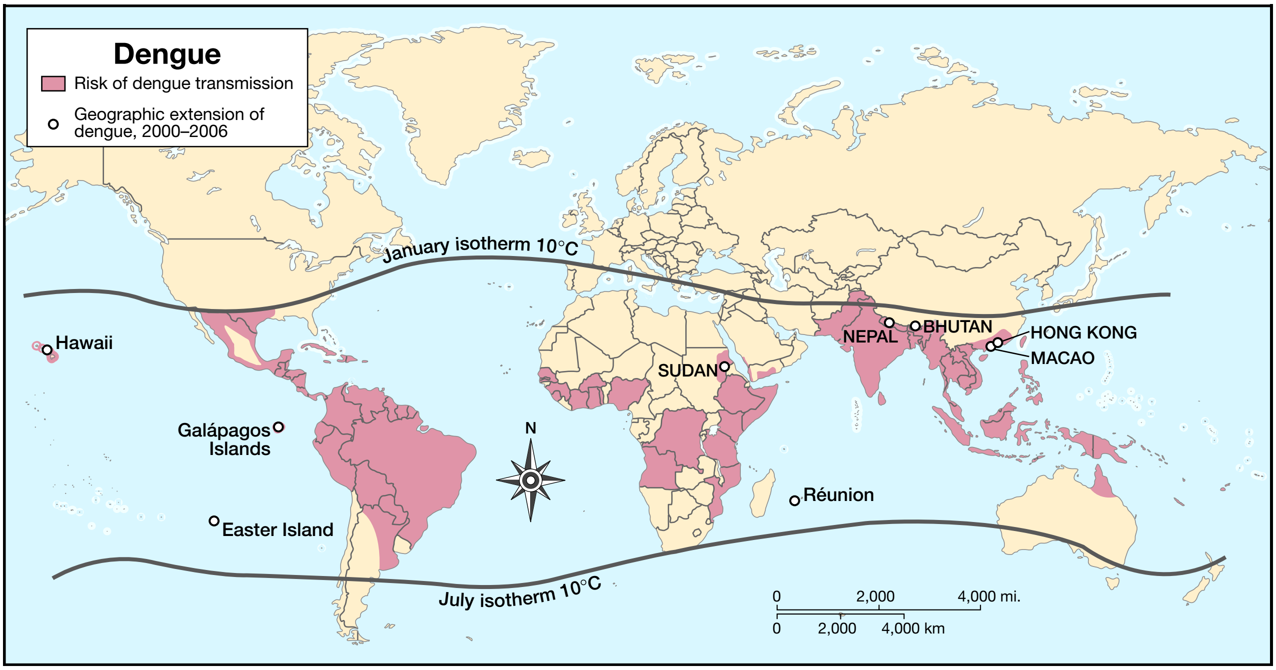
If all of the infectious diseases of mankind were listed in order of incidence, dengue (DEN-gay) fever would clearly rank among the top ten—rivaling chickenpox, influenza, and urinary tract infection. Unfortunately, diseases that occur in tropical areas often acquire exotic names that are obscure and irrelevant to Western cultures. Thus, dengue is thought to derive from the Swahili *dinga*, meaning a seizure or cramp caused by evil spirits. Other diseases which bear such names are Chikungunya and O'nyong nyong.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Historically, Dengue appears to have originated in the Old World. The disease was first reported in the Caribbean-Latin American region in 1827 (Virgin Islands), presumably imported with African slaves. A second pandemic during 1848–1850 involved Cuba and New Orleans; and a third pandemic struck the region during 1979–1980.

The fact that dengue is not exclusively a "tropical" phenomenon is well illustrated by the American experience with the disease. Dengue was first reported in the

Indonesians suffering from dengue fever receive treatment in the tent of a military-run hospital in the West Java province in 2004. *Beawlharta/Reuters/Corbis.*



Map showing areas at risk of dengue transmission, 2006. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

United States in 1827, and caused a number of massive outbreaks in Louisiana, Hawaii (50,000 cases in 1903) and Texas (500,000 cases in 1922).

Dengue virus was first isolated in Africa during 1964 to 1968, in Nigeria; however, surveys suggest that the disease is common in certain areas of West Africa, and probably East Africa as well. It is suggested that many cases are misdiagnosed as malaria. Although the disease had been relatively rare in Australia, as many as 800 cases per year are now reported in that country.

The virus that causes dengue is one of 19 Flaviruses that infect humans. Flaviviruses account for 20 percent of all infectious virus species. Other Flaviviruses include the agents of Hepatitis C, West Nile fever, Japanese encephalitis, and yellow fever. Only 29 percent of virus diseases are acquired through the bites of mosquitoes; however, 53 percent of Flaviviruses are transmitted in this manner. A variety of mosquito species serve as vectors (transmitters) of Flaviviruses that cause dengue, most belonging to the species *Aedes*. Although dengue is almost exclusively a human disease, natural infection of monkeys has been reported in Asia.

In most cases, dengue is a self-limiting flulike illness. Two to fifteen days following the bite of a mosquito, patients experience fever with varying combinations of headache, retro-orbital (around the eyes) pain, myalgia (muscle aches), arthralgia (joint pain), rash, and leukopenia (low white cell count). Occasionally a "saddleback" fever pattern is evident, with a drop after a few days and rebounding within 24 hours. The pulse rate is often relatively slow in relation to the degree of fever. Conjunctival redness (red eyes) and sore throat may occur, often with enlargement of regional lymph nodes. A rash appears in as many as 50 percent of persons with dengue, either early in the illness with flushing or mottling, or between the second and sixth day as a florid red rash that spreads out from the center of the body. The rash fades after two to three days.

Symptoms generally resolve within 2 to 7 days, with no long term residual effects; however, significant depression may occur and persist for several months.

In a small percentage of persons, dengue fever may evolve into a severe and even life-threatening illness: dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) or dengue shock syndrome (DSS). Over 700,000 cases of DHF and 21,345 deaths were reported worldwide during 1956 to 1980; and over 1.2 million cases of DHF and 15,940 deaths during the five-year span from 1986 to 1990.

DHF is characterized by initial symptoms of dengue fever, in addition to bleeding tendencies such as petechiae (tiny reddish skin lesions associated with blood vessel injury) or ecchymoses (spontaneous bruises related to blood leakage). In some cases, overt bleeding occurs from the nose, mouth, stomach, colon, or other sites. The blood platelet count is low (less than 100,000 per cubic millimeter) and the red blood cell concentration increases as a result of fluid leakage from the circulatory system. DSS is characterized by the findings of DHF, in addition to signs of shock: low blood pressure, cold clammy skin, and mental obtundation (dullness).

A Cuban worker sprays chemical fogger to kill mosquitoes in a house in Old Havana in 2005. After Cuban authorities initially denied dengue fever was a problem in Cuba, they began a campaign to control and prevent the spread of the disease by mosquitoes. *© Alejandro Ernesto/EFE/epa/Corbis.*

Scope and Distribution

Dengue is endemic (occurs naturally) in at least 115 countries, with over 2.5 billion persons at risk. Each year, an estimated 50 million to 100 million people are infected, most in Southeast Asia and Latin America. Approximately 30,000 to 50,000 persons die of dengue in any given year.

In recent years, most of the 100 or so cases reported annually in the U.S. have been acquired overseas; however, an outbreak of 122 cases was reported in Hawaii during 2001–2002, and 10–40 cases of local infection are reported in the southern border area of Texas each year.

Treatment and Prevention

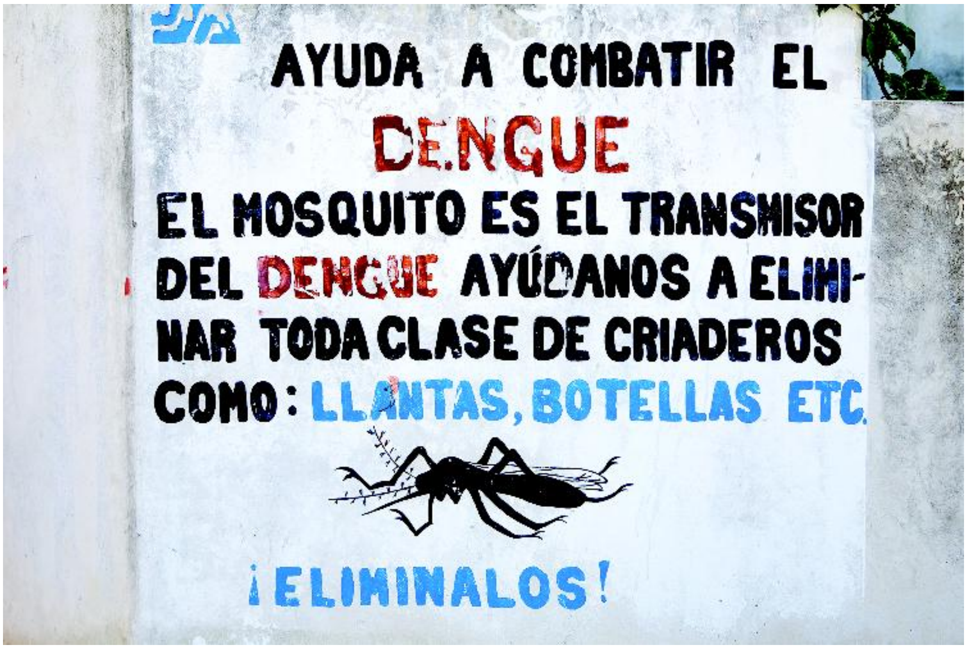
Although few laboratories are equipped to cultivate the virus of dengue, a variety of rapid tests are available for diagnosis through identification of antibodies which appear during the course of illness. There is no specific drug therapy for dengue, and the development of effective vaccines has been hampered by the need to include all four viral types in any preparation, with a theoretical risk that the body might recognize the vaccine as dengue fever, and react with DHF/DSS when the person is later exposed to the native viruses.

Because the major damage in DHF/DSS is related to fluid loss, persons with these complications generally respond to intravenous fluid replacement of blood volume. Isolation precautions are not necessary; however, steps should be taken to exclude mosquitoes from patient treatment areas in endemic areas.

Impacts and Issues

In recent years, *Aedes albopictus* (the Asian tiger mosquito) has gained prominence as a dengue vector in many parts of the world, largely as the result of dissemination of these insects in pools of water which accumulate in automobile tires transported on commercial ships. In addition, the spread of dengue fever is attributed to a rapid rise in the populations of cities in the developing world where dengue vectors thrive due to inadequate water storage and inadequate access to sanitation.

DHF and DSS appear to be related to immunological "over-reaction" in a person who develops dengue more than once in their lifetime. There are four serotypes (strains, or types) of Dengue virus, and sequential outbreaks in any given country may involve more than one serotype. Thus, if a person is infected with dengue type-1, and infected later in life (or during a later trip to a tropical area) with dengue type-2, his immunological experience from the first attack may prime him for a severe systemic (throughout the body) response to the new infection. As such, anyone who anticipates travel to an endemic country, or presents with signs suggestive of DHF/DSS, should be questioned regarding previous travel and experience with dengue.


AYUDA A COMBATIR EL
DENGUE
EL MOSQUITO ES EL TRANSMISOR
DEL DENGUE AYÚDANOS A ELIMI-
NAR TODA CLASE DE CRIADEROS
COMO: LLANTAS, BOTELLAS ETC.
¡ELIMINALOS!

A sign posted in Mexico warns people of an outbreak of dengue fever. The posting calls on residents to help fight dengue by eliminating water sources where mosquitoes breed. *© BIOS Gunther Michel/Peter Arnold, Inc.*

■ Primary Source Connection

In tropical cities, crowded conditions with little sanitation infrastructure can lead to an outbreak of dengue fever during the rainy season. In the following newspaper article, the author Adisti Sukma Sawitri describes the conditions of one neighborhood in west Jakarta, Indonesia, as it was in the midst of a dengue outbreak in early 2007 that eventually resulted in over 13,000 cases of dengue fever and 45 deaths. Sawitri is a journalist for the *Jakarta Post*.

SEE ALSO *Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Host and Vector; Mosquito-borne Diseases; Tropical Infectious Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Speilman, Andrew, and Michael D'Antonio. *Mosquito: A Natural History of Our Most Persistent and Deadly Foe*. New York: Hyperion, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Dengue Fever." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/dengue/index.htm> (accessed May 25, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Dengue and Dengue Hemorrhagic Fever." <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs117/en/> (accessed May 25, 2007).

Stephen A. Berger

Developing Nations and Drug Delivery

Introduction

In the developed world, access to medicines is taken for granted, despite ongoing debate over the price of certain drugs. However, around one-third of the world's population lacks access to essential medicines, such as antibiotics, painkillers, and drugs for HIV/AIDS, malaria, and leishmaniasis. In parts of Africa and Asia, this figure can rise to 50% of the population. Even if the drugs are available, people may be unable to afford to pay for them, or they may be of substandard or counterfeit quality, or improperly stored.

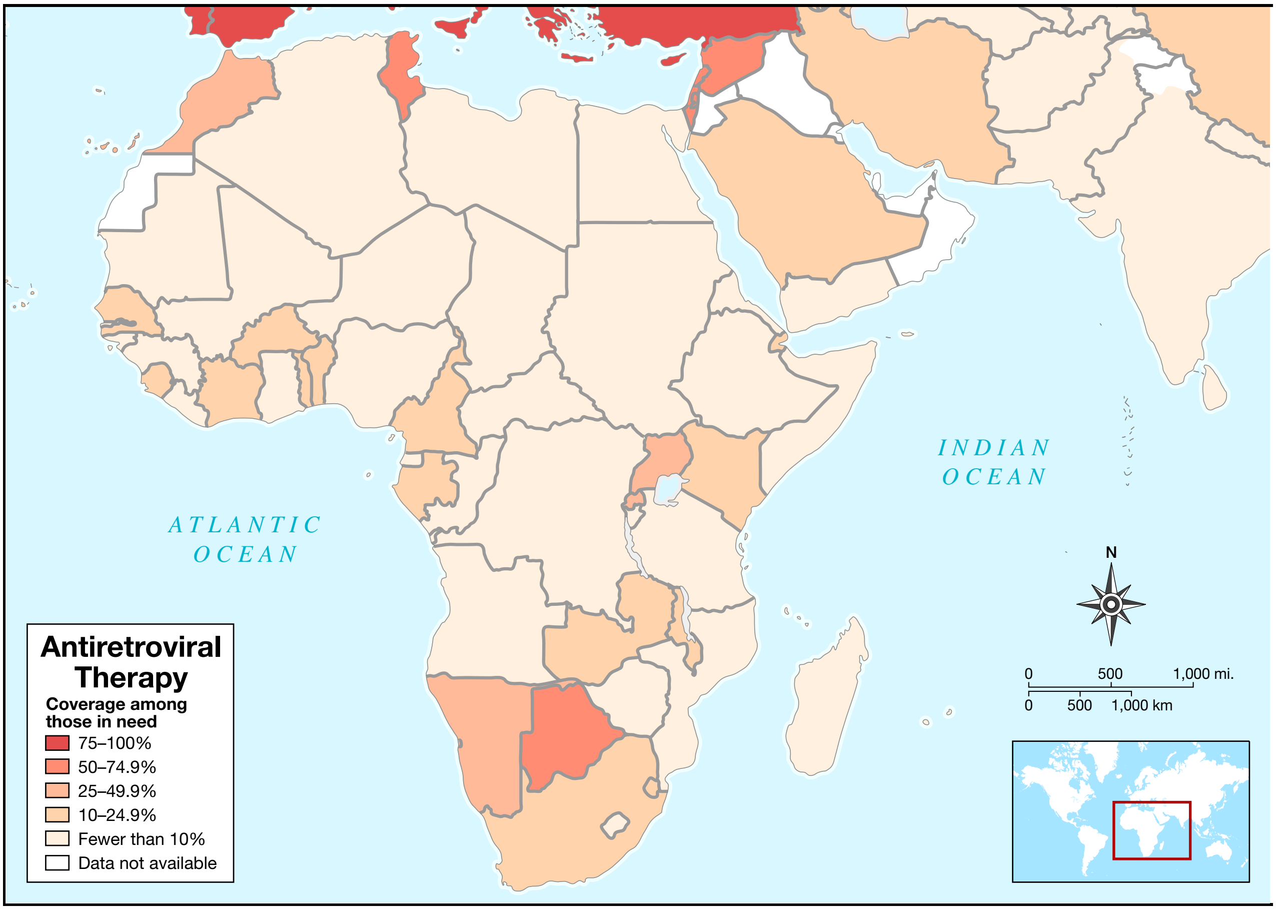
There have been some concerted efforts in recent years to improve the delivery of drugs to developing countries, led by the international humanitarian aid organization Médecins sans Frontières (MSF) and the World Health Organization (WHO). Not only do developing countries need access to essential medicines, they also need to know how to use them to gain maximum benefit.

History and Scientific Foundations

An early example of how to improve drug delivery in developing countries involved the treatment of river blindness (oncocerciasis) from 1989. The African Program for

HIV-positive patients wait to see a nurse at an AIDS clinic in South Africa. *© Gideon Mendel/Corbis.*

A village nurse carries a “vaccine bag,” a suitcase that keeps vaccines cold, near Tamil Nadu in India. *© Pallava Bagla/Corbis.*


Antiretroviral Therapy
Coverage among those in need
75–100%
50–74.9%
25–49.9%
10–24.9%
Fewer than 10%
Data not available
ATLANTIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
N
0 500 1,000 mi.
0 500 1,000 km

Map of Africa showing the estimated percentage of people on antiretroviral therapy among those in need as of June 2005. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

Oncocerciasis (APOC) grew out of this and was focused upon distribution of the drug ivermectin, which is known to be effective against the disease. The drug is donated by Merck & Co., the company which discovered it. To date, the APOC has protected more than 600,000 people from blindness and reclaimed more than 62 million acres (25 million hectares) of previously infested land for resettlement and agricultural cultivation.

One major guidance document for drug delivery in developing countries is the WHO's List of Essential Medicines, which was first established in 1977. This helps countries to select the appropriate medicines for their public health priorities, according to the best scientific evidence on quality, safety, and efficacy. It also provides guidance to the pharmaceutical industry on the global need for medicines.

Applications and Research

The WHO also has guidelines on donation of medicines, to try to ensure these are of good enough quality to be used. Some pharmaceutical companies donate medicines in accordance with these guidelines. They may also have other arrangements to try to improve access to, for example, HIV/AIDS drugs. For instance, they may choose not to take out patent protection in less developed countries, or not to take action against competitors making generic versions of their drugs.

Two organizations which make major contributions to the delivery of drugs in developing countries are MSF and the International Network for the Rational Use of Drugs (INRUD). In 1999, MSF launched its Campaign for Access to Essential Medicines with the aim of improving the global availability of drugs for the treatment of infectious diseases like malaria and tuberculosis (TB). The campaign aims to find ways of lowering the price of essential medicines and bring certain cheap and effective drugs back into production. MSF is also pushing for more research into malaria, TB, sleeping sickness, and leishmaniasis.

INRUD was established in 1989 to develop strategies to improve the way drugs are prescribed, dispensed, and used, trying to therefore address the misuse of scarce resources in developing countries. The network comprises 23 groups, 18 from Africa, Asia, and Latin America, and others from the WHO, Harvard Medical School, and various other academic groups.

Most of the effort in improving drug delivery in developing countries has been focused on the major infectious diseases. In malaria, for instance, MSF has been persuading governments to consider funding the artemisinin-based combination therapy favored by the WHO. This will help address the growing problem of chloroquine resistance. Although chloroquine is relatively cheap, it will not be effective in the areas where the malaria parasites are resistant—therefore, there is a need for alternative drugs to be made available.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIRETROVIRAL (ARV) THERAPY: Treatment with antiretroviral (ARV) drugs prevents the reproduction of a type of virus called a retrovirus. The human immunodefiency virus (HIV), which causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), is a retrovirus. These ARV drugs are therefore used to treat HIV infections. These medicines cannot prevent or cure HIV infection, but they help to keep the virus in check.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

RESISTANT ORGANISM: Resistant organisms are bacteria, viruses, parasites, or other disease-causing agents that have stopped responding to drugs that once killed them.

Leishmaniasis, a group of parasitic diseases which is spread by sandflies, can reach epidemic proportions in countries like Sudan and Bangladesh. It can be very difficult to treat and resistance is developing to existing drugs. Therefore, research efforts need to be focused upon developing new and more effective drugs. Sleeping sickness, another parasitic disease, is common in many parts of Africa and is often fatal if not treated. Melarsoprol, the standard treatment for sleeping sickness, appears to be losing its effectiveness, according to clinical trials carried out by WHO. Alternatives now preferable include eflornithine and nifurtimox.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

According to the World Health Organization (WHO), more than fourteen million people die in developing countries each year due to curable diseases (such as diarrheal diseases, tuberculosis, and malaria). The HIV/AIDS epidemic is one example of how access to affordable drugs in impoverished nations, a key component in disease intervention, is complicated by trade restrictions, policy, and the interests of the pharmaceutical industry.

Brazil's National AIDS Program (NAP) is regarded as a successful model of combating the HIV/AIDS epidemic. Since its inception, HIV death rates in Brazil have dropped fifty percent. Despite spending $232 million by 2001 to implement this national health initiative, Brazil has estimated a savings of more than $1.1 billion in healthcare costs. Many researchers urge immediate action using this model of intervention in other developing nations in Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa. However, others are more cautious and argue that a methodical approach (slower to enact) is necessary to implement a system that is sustainable and effective for the long term. Often, developing countries lack the resources and infrastructure to assure adequate delivery of the drugs to the population targeted for prevention and treatment. Factors such as intellectual property rights and trade policy further cloud the issue. With a market worth more than $65 billion per year, some human rights organizations ask why drug companies aren't investing more research and development dollars where it's needed most, on diseases that primarily affect poor nations.

Health disparities are exacerbated as this disease continues to thrive in marginalized populations (i.e. developing countries, drug users, the poor, rural areas, and minorities). HIV infection in American infants has nearly vanished due to prophylactic (preventative) therapy with antiretroviral (ARV) drugs. In North America and Europe, death rates within ten years of diagnosis for those with HIV have dropped almost eighty percent with ARV use. However, in developing countries, of the six million in need of treatment, only 400,000 actually received ARV therapy in 2003. Fifty percent of the population requiring treatment is located in sub-Saharan Africa and India. Moreover, most of the fourteen million HIV/AIDS orphans in the world reside in Africa. Without timely intervention, this figure is estimated to climb as high as twenty-five million by the year 2010. According to the WHO, "immense advances in human well-being co-exist with extreme deprivation. In global health, we are witnessing the benefits of new medicines and technologies. But there are unprecedented reversals. Life expectancies have collapsed in some of the poorest countries to half the level of the richest—attributable to the ravages of HIV/AIDS in parts of sub-Saharan Africa and to more than a dozen 'failed states.'"

In 2003, UNAIDS established a Global Reference Group on HIV/AIDS and Human Rights. The result is that access to HIV/AIDS therapy is now a human rights issue (as well as a financially sound strategy). In the end, an integrated approach is needed using medical, structural, and cultural interventions, with the cooperation of politicians, governments, private industry, and others.

Impacts and Issues

It is now well established that antiretroviral (ARV) therapy for HIV/AIDS is effective treatment, enabling people to live with the condition rather than almost inevitably dying from it. Therefore, improving access to ARV for patients in developing countries has become a top priority.

A program begun by MSF in 2003 showed that giving ARV therapy in even the poorest countries of the world was feasible; people adhered to the complex treatment regimes and benefited from them, just as HIV/AIDS patients in the West did. Therefore, the UN World Summit in 2005 made a pledge to achieve universal access to ARV therapy by 2010. However, there is some way to go before this is achieved. As of December 2006, only two million out of seven million people in need of treatment were actually receiving ARV drugs.

Fortunately, the price of ARV drugs has fallen sharply in developing countries—from several thousand dollars for a year of treatment, to just a few hundred dollars at most and possibly as low as 150 dollars. One of the main reasons for this has been the relaxing of patent rules in certain places to allow for the production of cheap, generic ARV drugs. Funding to support the infrastructure needed to provide the drugs and monitor their use has come from organizations such as the Global Fund for AIDS, TB and Malaria, the U.S. President's Emergency Fund for AIDS Relief, the World Bank, governments in developed countries, and various non-governmental organizations.

There have been many challenges involved in trying to get ARVs to those who need them. For instance, there must be a reliable supply chain from the factory where the drug is manufactured to the patient, as the drugs must be taken every day. In many developing countries, transport and communication systems are chronically weak. The funding organizations have been trying to address this by commissioning experts in supply chain management to work in this area. Efforts are also being made to increase the number of health workers in areas severely affected by HIV/AIDS—both by recruiting trained volunteers from developed countries and by training local people.

Today, many developing countries have their own policies that are intended to make essential medicines available to their populations—an approach strongly encouraged by the WHO. These policies also focus on how to distribute drugs to where they are needed and how the safety of medicines can be guaranteed. Pharmaceutical pricing is a complex issue. Companies cannot necessarily be expected to follow the Merck ivermectin example and distribute drugs free, when they have to take their shareholders' interests into account. One way around this is for developing countries to establish their own pharmaceutical industries, focusing upon making cheaper generic copies of essential drugs.

Supplying drugs to developing countries is just one aspect of ensuring universal access to medicine. Education is also needed in the best way of using these medicines and the local infrastructure must be improved to ensure a reliable supply chain. Standardizing the quality of the medicines and their secure storage are also current challenges.

SEE ALSO *African Sleeping Sickness (Trypanosomiasis); AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Leishmaniasis; Malaria; Médecins Sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

Avert: Averting HIV and AIDS. "Providing Drug Treatment for Millions." April 19, 2007. <http://www.avert.org/drugtreatment.htm> (accessed May 26, 2007).

INRUD. "International Network for the Rational Use of Drugs." <http://www.inrud.org> (accessed May 26, 2007).

Médicins sans Frontières. "Campaign for Access to Essential Medicines." <http://www.accessmedmsf.org> (accessed May 26, 2007).

World Health Organization. "WHO Model List of Essential Medicines." April 2007. <http://www.who.int/medicines/publications/EML15.pdf> (accessed May 26, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Diphtheria

Introduction

Diphtheria is an acute infectious illness affecting the throat and tonsils. In severe cases, suffocation may result and there may be complications involving the heart and nervous system. Diphtheria is caused by the bacterium *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*. In the past, diphtheria was a major killer, with children being especially susceptible. The introduction of mass immunization has made the disease rare in the industrialized world. However, immunity to diphtheria is lost over time. Those living in stable countries with high standards of public hygiene are unlikely to be at risk. The same cannot be said when health and political systems break down, or when childhood immunization is not universal. The re-emergence of diphtheria in the former Soviet Union in the 1990s resulted from a combination of these factors. The re-introduction of mass immunization eventually brought this epidemic under control. However, diphtheria remains a threat in countries where overcrowding, unsanitary conditions, and low levels of immunization are a fact of everyday life.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

C. diphtheriae is a Gram-positive bacillus. Bacilli are a group of bacteria characterized by their rodlike shape; Gram-positive refers to the way certain bacteria absorb

Gunnar Kasson (a musher) and his dog, Balto, are shown in front of a statue dedicated to Balto in 1925. Kasson and his team of dogs, led by Balto, braved blizzard conditions to bring serum to Nome, Alaska, by sled to help townspeople who were suffering from diphtheria. Their efforts saved many lives. *© Bettmann/Corbis.*

A man picks up discarded fruit in Moscow during a diphtheria epidemic in 1993. Peaking in 1995, the outbreak led to over 140,000 cases and 4,000 deaths in the former Soviet Republics. The epidemic was contained by the late 1990s due to widespread vaccination campaigns and improved economic conditions that allowed for better sanitation and public health measures. *© Keerle Georges De/Corbis SYGMA.*

stains applied for microscopic study of the organism. Most strains of *C. diphtheriae* produce a potent toxin that is responsible for the complications of diphtheria. There are two forms of the disease—respiratory diphtheria, which is the more common, and cutaneous diphtheria. The symptoms of respiratory diphtheria include painful tonsillitis and/or pharyngitis—inflammation of tonsils and/or throat. The voice may be hoarse and fever is often present. What distinguishes diphtheria from other throat infections is the presence of a pseudomembrane, a thick, bluish white or gray covering on the throat or tonsils that may develop greenish black patches. The pseudomembrane develops when the *C. diphtheriae* toxin kills cells within the mucous membrane lining the throat and tonsils. The membrane may spread downwards and can interfere with breathing, causing suffocation. At the same time, the neck tends to swell, giving the patient a characteristic "bull neck" appearance.

In 10 to 20% of cases, the toxin spreads to the heart and the peripheral nervous system. It can cause myocarditis, an inflammation of the heart muscle and heart valves, which may lead to heart failure in later life. In the nervous system, diphtheria toxin can cause paralysis, which could lead to respiratory failure. Even with prompt treatment, the death rate of respiratory diphtheria is 5 to 10%. Diphtheria tends to be more severe in children under five and in adults over 40.

Cutaneous diphtheria occurs when the bacterium infects bites or rashes and is more common in tropical regions. Again, a pseudomembrane forms at the site of the infection, and ulcers usually develop on the skin. However, the complications associated with respiratory diphtheria are far less common in the cutaneous form of the disease.

Diphtheria usually is transmitted by contact with droplets from the upper respiratory tract that are propelled into the air by the coughs and sneezes of infected individuals. It is highly infectious. People who are untreated remain infectious for two to three weeks. *C. diphtheriae* can also be spread by contaminated objects or food.

■ Scope and Distribution

Diphtheria was a major child killer in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. Now, thanks to mass immunization, it is rare in the United States and Western Europe. Before immunization there were 100 to 200 cases of diphtheria per 100,000 of the U.S. population; now there are only 0.001 cases per 100,000 of the population. In 1942, the year when immunization was introduced in the United Kingdom, there were 60,000 cases of diphtheria a year, of which around 4,000 proved fatal. Between 1937 and 1938 diphtheria was second only to pneumonia as a cause of death in childhood. With levels of immunization in the U.K. now reaching 94%, presently there are only very occasional cases. Several European countries have not seen a single case of diphtheria for many years.

A nurse is shown distributing meals in the diphtheria section of the contagious disease hospital at the Pasteur Institute in Paris, France, in 1937. *Time Life Pictures/Getty Images.*

Before the discovery of the vaccine, children were most at risk from diphtheria. Now all ages seem to be at risk and, although the risk is higher among those who have not been vaccinated, cases occur among those who have had the vaccine too, because immunity appears to decline over time. In the United States, Canada, and many countries in Western Europe, childhood vaccination beginning in the 1930s and 1940s led to a rapid reduction in cases. Where diphtheria does occur, it tends to be in an incompletely vaccinated, or unvaccinated person, of low socioeconomic status.

Diphtheria is found in temperate climates. As with any highly infectious disease, diphtheria is more commonly found in areas with poor sanitation and overcrowding. The disease is endemic in the former Soviet Union, the Indian subcontinent, Southeast Asia, and Latin America. In temperate regions, diphtheria is more common in the colder months of the year. In 2000, the World Health Organization (WHO) reported 30,000 cases of diphtheria worldwide, of which 3,000 were fatal.

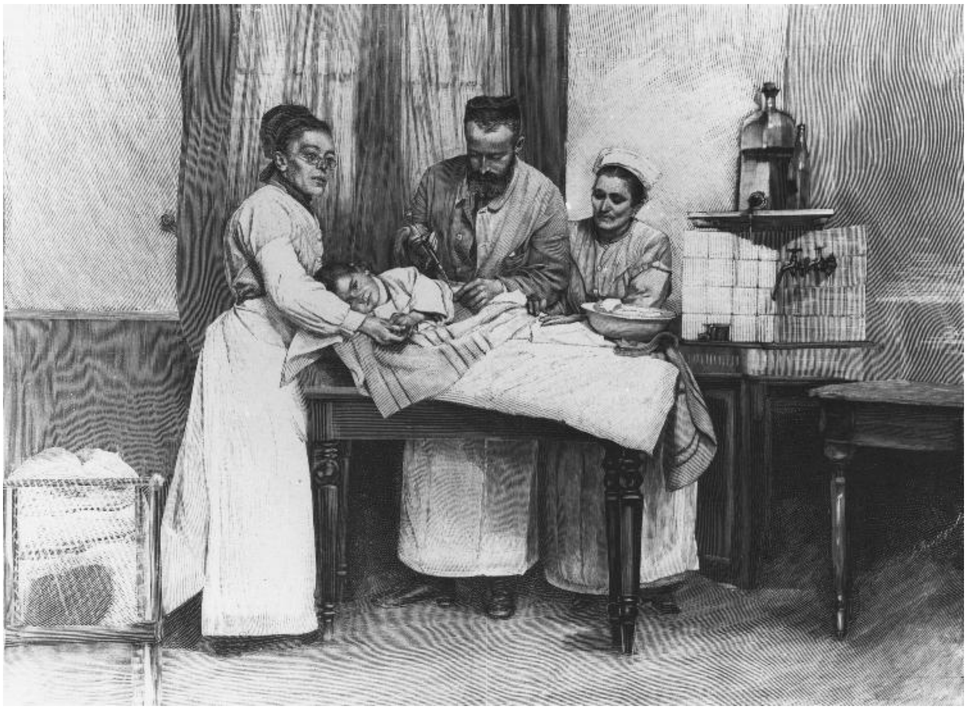
Treatment and Prevention

Since diphtheria is so rare in developed countries, it may be difficult for physicians to recognize when it does occur. However, the presence of the pseudomembrane, together with heart rhythm abnormalities linked to the toxin, should alert a physician to the possibility of diphtheria. Ideally, the presence of *C. diphtheriae* should be confirmed in the laboratory (it requires special methods for its identification), but this should not delay the start of treatment. Diphtheria is treated with antitoxin, which neutralizes the toxin before it can do too much damage, and antibiotics. The antitoxin, which was discovered in 1888, has saved the lives of many children, since it causes the pseudomembrane to recede dramatically. Diphtheria antitoxin is prepared from the serum of horses that have been immunized against the disease, and it needs to be given within four days of the onset of symptoms. Erythromycin and penicillin are the two most commonly prescribed antibiotics for diphtheria. Hospitalization and isolation are essential when dealing with diphtheria—the latter to prevent others from being exposed to the infection. If breathing is obstructed by the pseudomembrane, a tracheostomy may be needed. This procedure involves cutting an artificial opening in the trachea, or windpipe, and inserting a tube so that the patient can breathe.

Immunization has been shown to be the best way of preventing the spread of diphtheria. A toxoid is an inactivated version of a bacterial toxin. It has been found to give an excellent immune response in diseases where bacterial toxins play an important role, such as diphtheria and tetanus.

Most countries use diphtheria toxoid in combination with tetanus toxoid and pertussis (whooping cough) vaccine (DTP vaccine) to protect children. DTP is given by injection. WHO recommends children receive three separate doses of DTP. One vaccination schedule administers the three primary doses as the age of six, ten, and 14 weeks, with a booster between 18 months and six years of age. However, there is considerable variation between countries as to the vaccine and vaccination schedule used. For example, in the United States the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) recommends the use of DTaP, rather than DTP, as the safer version offering lessened side effects. Some countries have been using a combination vaccine that includes vaccines against diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, and pneumonia.

Parents often worry that a vaccine may harm their child, and this is one reason that vaccine coverage is never universal (some parents always opt out). DTP can cause fever shortly after the child receives an injection and some complain of pain, redness, and swelling at the injection site. More severe reactions, such as convulsions or shock, occur occasionally. However, for the vast majority of children, the benefits of DTP far outweigh the risk. DTP is not usually given after six years of age. Older children and adults are offered a tetanus-diphtheria toxoid vaccine (Td) and, in 2005, a combination tetanus, diphtheria, and pertussis vaccine (Tdap) was approved for adolescents and adults in the United States. Booster injections may be needed every ten years



Engraving of a child being inoculated with the diphtheria vaccine in the 1890s. *Snark/Art Resource, NY.*

to maintain immunity, where this might be important (for instance, if traveling to an area where diphtheria is endemic). There is evidence that immunity to diphtheria tends to wane over time.

Impacts and Issues

Like cholera, diphtheria has a long history. The disease was first described by the Greek physician Hippocrates (ca. 460–357 BC), and it was also mentioned in ancient Syrian and Egyptian texts. In seventeenth century Spain, epidemic diphtheria was known as "El Garatillo" or "The Strangler." There were also significant epidemics in England in the 1730s and in Western Europe in the second half of the nineteenth century. Diphtheria was known in America from the eighteenth century and reached epidemic proportions in 1735, often killing whole families. At the start of the twentieth century, diphtheria was still one of the leading causes of death among infants and children. When the first data on the disease were gathered, in the 1920s, there were around 150,000 cases and 13,000 deaths each year.

Today, most physicians in the United States will never see a case of diphtheria. Though diphtheria, like tuberculosis, is highly infectious, it is likely to be endemic in less developed countries where there is poverty, overcrowding, malnutrition, and poor sanitation. Mass immunization is known to be an essential tool in the prevention of diphtheria. However, less developed countries tend not to have the access to vaccine supplies or the health infrastructure to achieve WHO's goal of a 95% immunization rate.

Moreover, diphtheria still has the ability to spread and cause significant illness and death, even in a modern society where it had previously been all but eradicated. This was demonstrated clearly by the outbreaks and epidemics of the disease that occurred in the former Soviet Union in the 1990s. During the first half of the twentieth century, diphtheria rates were high in the Soviet Union; in the 1950s there were around 750,000 cases in Russia alone, but, after this time, the Communist regime of the former Soviet Union developed an excellent record on immunization. By 1976, rates of the disease were practically zero and eradication was thought to be within reach. However, in 1977, the disease began to make a comeback, with rates increasing in all age groups rather than just among children. Rates peaked in 1984 and then began to decline thereafter, although they never returned to the low of 1976. Researchers for the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) argue that the military may have contributed to the spread of diphtheria in the 1980s. Military service was universal and led to the housing of recruits, many of whom had not been immunized, in overcrowded conditions. Adult immunity, among those immunized many years earlier, appeared to be declining, accounting for adult cases of diphtheria. The immunization schedule among children was also less intense than previously, in part due to a campaign against immunization that found favor in a population increasingly distrustful of its government.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ANTITOXIN: An antidote to a toxin that neutralizes its poisonous effects.

CUTANEOUS: Pertaining to the skin.

RE-EMERGENCE: Reemergence is when something that has been absent appears again.

The breakup of the Soviet Union in the late 1980s and early 1990s was the final event that set the stage for a new wave of diphtheria in the former Soviet Union. In 1990, diphtheria returned to Russia in force. There were over 1,000 cases reported from St Petersburg, Kaliningrad, Orlovskaya, and Moscow. The epidemic grew over the next few years and deaths occurred because of failures in a health care system facing economic crisis. Epidemic diphtheria became established in urban Russia, Ukraine, and Belarus. In 1993, 19,462 cases were reported of which 15,211 were in Russia, an increase of nearly 300% from the previous year. Many of these cases were, again, among adults. This was the first large-scale diphtheria epidemic in a developed country for over three decades. At the peak of the epidemic, in 1995, there were over 50,000 cases reported in the region, compared to only 24 cases in the rest of Europe.

In 1994 and 1995, WHO, the United Nations Children's Fund, other agencies, and governments in the affected countries undertook massive efforts to vaccinate both children and adults. These efforts soon began to bring the epidemic under control, resulting in a 60% drop in cases by 1996. According to WHO data, gathered in 2000, incidence rates of diphtheria in Armenia, Estonia, Lithuania, and Uzbekistan were 0.5 to 1 per 100,000 of the population. In Russia and Tajikistan, rates were as high as 27 to 32 per 100,000 of the population. Fatality rates were 2 to 3% in Russia and Ukraine and 6 to 10% in Armenia, Kazakhstan, Moldova, and Latvia. In Azerbaijan, Georgia, and Turkmenistan the death rate from diphtheria was 17 to 23%. By 2004, the number of cases reported to the WHO European region, which includes the former Soviet Union, was down to 176.

The CDC says that the outbreak of diphtheria in the former Soviet Union shows that adults can become vulnerable to childhood diseases again when immunization does not confer lifelong immunity. This condition applies in any other country where there is mass immunization against diphtheria. However, there have been no similar epidemics anywhere else in the Western world. It was probably the combination of factors in the Soviet Union at the time that set the scene for the epidemic. Added to the decline in both childhood and adult immunity was the political breakup of the Soviet Union and the formation of several new states. Economic pressures led to mass migrations of people from rural areas into the cities in Russia; many failed to find work and ended up sleeping in primitive or crowded conditions. Many diphtheria cases occurred in this group. Refugees fleeing from fighting in Georgia, Armenia, Azerbaijan, and Tajikistan were also at risk. People were on the move in the region on a scale never seen before. This powerful factor—not seen in neighboring nations—probably encouraged the spread of the disease. The success of mass vaccination in controlling the epidemic in the former Soviet Union reconfirms the importance of this primary tool for fighting diphtheria.

A WHO report of a diphtheria outbreak in Afghanistan illustrates the factors that increase the risk of the disease. Between June and August 2003, there were 50 cases of diphtheria, including three deaths, in a resettlement camp for internally displaced people in Kandahar. About 75% of the patients were ages five to 14. A mass immunization campaign for the 40,000 residents of the camp was launched in August 2003. The Ministry of Health was assisted by WHO and several other organizations, such as Médecins sans Frontières-Holland and the Red Cross, in provision of drugs, antitoxin, and vaccine supplies to help bring the outbreak under control.

Lessons learned from Russia and Afghanistan can be applied to other diseases and other countries. Improving living conditions, mass immunization, and establishing a health infrastructure within a stable political system are the ways in which highly infectious diseases can best be controlled.

Primary Source Connection

Advances in the treatment of diphtheria and many other infectious diseases (along with advances in the treatment of illnesses such as diabetes) have significantly changed the expectations of parents and communities in countries with advanced health care and public health capacity.

Russell Baker is a Pulitzer Prize-winning writer. The excerpt below is republished from his autobiography and allows readers some insights into the resignation and thinking of a time, less than a century ago in America, when disease "mostly with prayer, and early death was commonplace."

SEE ALSO *Cholera; Médecins Sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Garrett, Laurie. *The Coming Plague: Newly Emerging Diseases in a World out of Balance.* London: Virago Press, 1995.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Periodicals

Vitek, C.R., and M. Wharton. "Diphtheria in the Former Soviet Union: Reemergence of a Pandemic Disease." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 4 (October-December 1998). This article is available online <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/vol4no4/vitek.htm>

Web Sites

Health Protection Agency. "Diphtheria." February 2, 2006. <http://www.hpa.org.uk/infections/topics_az/diphtheria/gen_info.htm> (accessed February 16, 2007).

Todar's Online Textbook of Bacteriology. "Diphtheria." <http://textbookofbacteriology.net/diphtheria.html> (accessed February 16, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Diphtheria." <http://www.who.int/topics/diphtheria/en/> (accessed February 16, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Disinfection

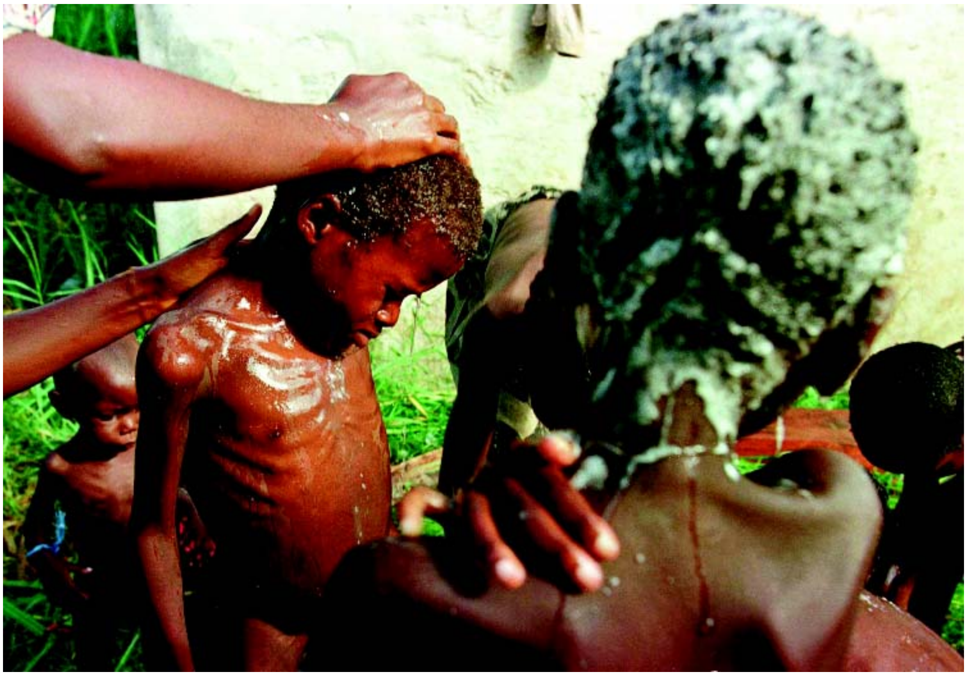
Introduction

Disinfection refers to treatments that reduce the numbers of living microorganisms and viruses (which are not considered to be alive, but which can cause disease when they infect a host cell) to a safe level. Disinfection is not intended to kill all the microbes present, which is the process that is called sterilization. Nonetheless, disinfection is a key component in infection control.

Health care facilities maintain three different levels of disinfection, based upon patient care levels and the purpose for which equipment and surfaces are used. High-level disinfection destroys all microorganisms on a surface, with the exception of high numbers of bacterial spores. Intermediate-level disinfection kills *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, most viruses and fungi, and bacteria, but it does not kill bacterial spores. Low-level disinfection kills most bacteria, certain viruses and fungi, but does not reliably kill bacterial spores or the bacteria that causes tuberculosis.

History and Scientific Foundations

Until the middle of the nineteenth century, surgeries and hospitalization frequently resulting in infections.



Hutu refugees are bathed with disinfectant soap at a transit camp outside of Kigali, Rwanda, in May 1997. *AP Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOFILM: Biofilms are populations of microorganisms that form following the adhesion of bacteria, algae, yeast, or fungi to a surface. These surface growths can be found in natural settings such as on rocks in streams, and in infections such as can occur on catheters. Microorganisms can colonize living and inert natural and synthetic surfaces.

HIGH-LEVEL DISINFECTION: High-level disinfection is a process that uses a chemical solution to kill all bacteria, viruses, and all other disease-causing agents except for bacterial endospores and prions. High-level disinfection should be distinguished from sterilization, which removes endospores (a bacterial structure that is resistant to radiation, drying, lack of food, and other things that would be lethal to the bacteria) and prions (misshapen proteins that can cause disease) as well.

INTERMEDIATE-LEVEL DISINFECTION: Intermediate-level disinfection is a form of disinfection that kills bacteria, most viruses, and mycobacteria.

LOW-LEVEL DISINFECTION: Low-level disinfection is a form of disinfection that is capable of killing some viruses and some bacteria.

STERILIZATION: Sterilization is a term that refers to the complete killing or elimination of living organisms in the sample being treated. Sterilization is absolute. After the treatment the sample is either devoid of life, or the possibility of life (as from the subsequent germination and growth of bacterial spores), or it is not.

The importance of personal hygiene and clean clothing had yet to be realized by health care providers. As a result, microbial infections easily spread from patient to patient. The French chemist Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) proposed that infections were connected with the presence of microorganisms. This idea prompted an English surgeon named Joseph Lister (1827–1912) to study this suggestion. Lister became convinced that infections following surgery often did involve microorganisms infecting the incision. To minimize this risk, Lister sprayed a film of carbolic acid over the patient during surgery. The treatment effectively disinfected the wound and helped reduce post-surgical infections. As Lister's findings became accepted, the importance of disinfection to medicine was recognized.

Applications and Research

Disinfection uses a chemical or other type of agent (typically ultraviolet light) to kill microorganisms. All of these agents are termed disinfectants.

Ultraviolet light disinfects because of the high energy of the waves of light. The energy is sufficient to break the strands of genetic material of the microbes. When many breaks occur in the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA) the damage is lethal, as it cannot be repaired by the microorganism. Ultraviolet light can be used to disinfect liquids of small volume, surfaces, and some types of equipment.

Alcohol is a liquid disinfectant that tends to be used on the skin to achieve short-term disinfection. It kills microbes, such as bacteria, by dissolving the membrane around the organisms. It can be sprayed on surfaces; the droplets of alcohol will kill microbes on contact. The spray needs to be fairly heavily applied to a surface to ensure disinfection because the alcohol evaporates quickly. If it evaporates within a few seconds, the microorganisms may not be exposed long enough to be killed. Alcohol-based hand washes are also available, and are becoming more widely used in hospitals because a busy doctor or nurse need only rub their hands for 10–15 seconds with an alcohol-based solution to adequately disinfect their hands between seeing patients. Typical disinfectant soaps such as those used in the home require skin contact of 30 seconds or more to be effective disinfectants.

The compound iodine is another disinfectant. In hospitals, surgical scrubbing is often accomplished using an iodine-containing soap. As with alcohol-based handwashing, the intent is to lower the number of living bacteria on the surface of the skin, although iodine is a more efficient disinfectant than alcohol.

Another liquid disinfectant that remains on a surface much longer is sodium hypochlorite. The active component of the disinfectant is chlorine, and it is also the disinfectant agent in household bleach. Water can also be treated using chlorine, and this is the basis of drinking water chlorination. The concentration of sodium hypochlorite used is important—too much chlorine can dissolve metal surfaces and can irritate the cells in the eye and the nose. A sodium hypochlorite solution (bleach) is used by medical personnel in the field when investigating outbreaks of diseases that can be spread by contact with infected body fluids, droplets, or contaminated surfaces, and when local infrastructure will not support high-tech disinfection methods. For example, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommended household bleach diluted with water in a 1:100 ratio to disinfect areas contaminated with blood and body fluids in a makeshift isolation ward hospital during a 2003 outbreak of Ebola in the Cuvette West region of the Democratic Republic of Congo.

Surfaces can also be disinfected using compounds that contain a phenol group. A popular example is Lysol®. In a hospital, phenol-based disinfectants are not used in certain cases, such as in an operating theater. This is because some disease-causing bacteria and viruses are resistant to phenol.

Chlorhexidine is a chemical disinfectant that kills fungi and yeast much more effectively than bacteria and viruses. Formaldehyde and glutaraldehyde possess a chemical group called an aldehyde, which is a very potent disinfectant. Glutaraldehyde is a general disinfectant, which means it is effective against a wide array of microbes after only a few minutes of contact. Another effective general disinfectant is quaternary ammonium.

The disinfection strategy that is selected depends on a number of factors. These include the surface being disinfected and the intended use of that surface (a doctor's hands should be disinfected rigorously, for example). A smooth crack- or crevasse-free surface is easier to disinfect, and so typically requires less time to disinfect than does a rougher surface. A rough surface, which has niches that microorganisms can fit into, is not an appropriate surface to disinfect with a rapidly evaporating spray of alcohol. The surface material is also important. For example, a wooden surface may soak up liquids and reduce the concentration of the disinfectant that acts on the microorganisms.

The number of microorganisms present can determine the type of disinfectant used and how long it should be used for. Higher numbers of microbes usually require a lengthier exposure time to reduce the number of living organisms to a level that is considered safe. How the organisms grow is also important. For example, many disease-causing bacteria can grow in a slime-encased community known as a biofilm. Biofilm bacteria are much more resistant to disinfectants than they are when dispersed from the biofilm. As another example, bacteria such as *Bacillus anthracis*, the organism that causes anthrax, and *Clostridium botulinum*, a neurotoxin-producing bacterium that can contaminate foods, can form a hardy structure called a spore, which often survives exposure to disinfectants.

Many disinfectants act against a variety of microbes; they are known as broad-spectrum disinfectants. Glutaraldehyde, sodium hypochlorite, and hydrogen peroxide are broad-spectrum disinfectants. Other disinfectants act on specific microorganisms, while the activity of other disinfectants is in between these extremes. An example of the latter is alcohol. It dissolves cell membranes that are made of lipids, and so is effective against many bacteria and viruses. Spores or viruses that do not have a lipid membrane, however, are not as affected by alcohol as bacteria.

Impacts and Issues

Disinfectants are a vital defense against infectious disease, especially in the health care, cosmetic, and food service industries. Still, the full benefits of disinfection have yet to be realized. Surveys conducted in North America and Europe have shown that health care providers do not wash their hands between patient visits as often as they should. Transfer of infection from patient to patient via the hands of medical personnel and their equipment (such as a stethoscope) still occurs, even though it could be avoided in many cases. Alternatively, overuse of disinfectants can cause microorganisms to develop resistance to disinfectants, if, for example, the compound is not applied for an adequate amount of time. This resistance can make it more difficult to eliminate sources of infection, which allows for their spread.

On a broader scale, wide-scale disinfection of drinking water supplies was one of the most significant public health accomplishments of the twentieth century. Outbreaks of waterborne diseases such as typhus and cholera were common in both the United States and abroad before modern disinfection methods were put into place. In the 1990s, researchers recognized that while disinfectants neutralized many pathogens (disease-causing organisms) in water, some disinfectants also reacted with naturally occurring organic and inorganic matter in water sources and municipal water delivery systems. These reactions produced potentially harmful compounds called disinfection byproducts (DBPs). After DBPs were found to cause cancer and adverse reproductive effects in laboratory mice, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) set in place in 2001 new regulations to maximize disinfection of drinking water supplies while minimizing public exposure to DBPs.

SEE ALSO *Antimicrobial Soaps; Infection Control and Asepsis.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

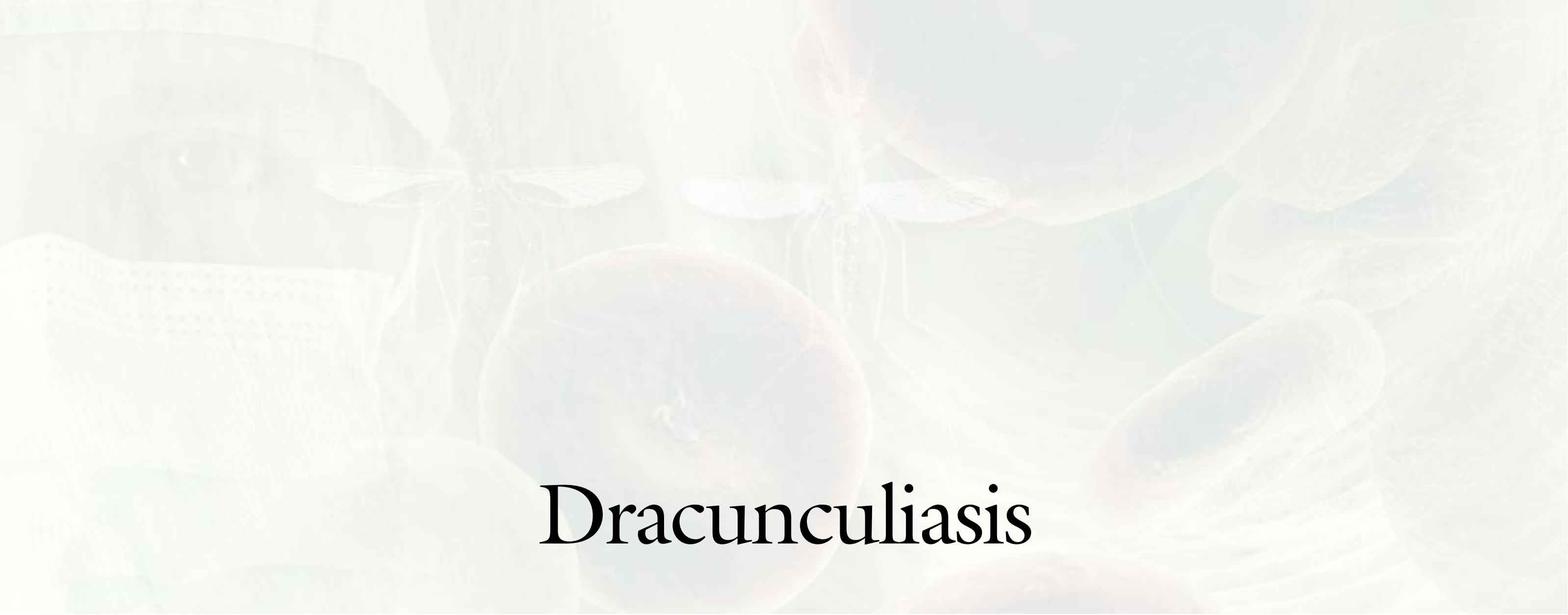
Books

Gladwin, Mark, and Bill Trattler. *Clinical Microbiology Made Ridiculously Simple.* 3rd ed. Miami: Medmaster, 2003.

Prescott, Lansing M., John P. Harley, and Donald A. Klein. *Microbiology.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 2004.

Tortora, Gerard J., Berell R. Funke, and Christine L. Case. *Microbiology: An Introduction.* New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2006.

Brian Hoyle



Dracunculiasis

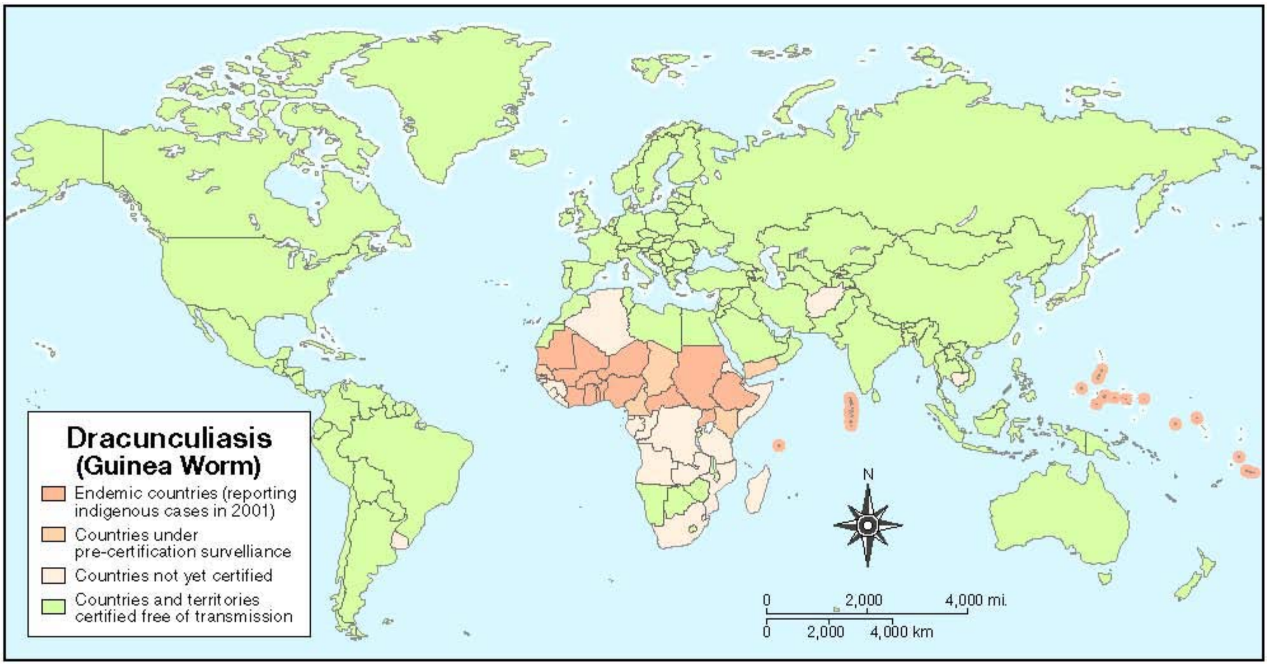
Introduction

Dracunculiasis, (dra-KUNK-you-LIE-uh-sis) or guinea worm disease, is a preventable helminth (parasitic worm) infection caused by the large female roundworm *Dracunculus medinensis.* It is endemic in some African countries (including Sudan, Ghana, and Nigeria) within rural communities without safe drinking water

This disease occurs when people drink water contaminated with *Dracunculus medinensis* larvae. However, symptoms do not usually manifest until about a year after infection. It is at that stage that the female worm ruptures the skin to release larvae, causing severe pain and discomfort to the infected person. There is no treatment for the infection itself except to manually remove the worm.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The mode of infection of dracunculiasis was recognized in 1870 when a Russian naturalist noticed the release of larvae from the female worm into a freshwater source. In the 1980s, it was found to be endemic throughout Africa and an eradication initiative was launched.


Dracunculiasis
(Guinea Worm)
Endemic countries (reporting indigenous cases in 2001)
Countries under pre-certification surveillance
Countries not yet certified
Countries and territories certified free of transmission
N
0
2,000
4,000 mi.
0
2,000
4,000 km

Map showing Dracunculiasis (Guinea worm disease) eradication status as of 2002. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

Symptoms of dracunculiasis do not usually present until around one year after infection, at which time a blister will form at a distal (away from the center) site of the body, such as the lower leg or foot. Some persons may experience allergic-type symptoms such as wheezing, fever, swelling around the eyes, and burning sensations of the skin just prior to lesion formation. After a few days, this blister will burst and the female worm emerges.

Upon making contact with water, the female worm releases millions of larvae that are subsequently ingested by copepods called "water fleas," where they develop into the infective stage. Human infection occurs by drinking contaminated water. The water flea is digested, but the larvae survive, migrate to the small intestine, mate, and the females mature to adult size of up to 39 inches (100 cm). The female then migrates to the distal site and the process repeats.

Scope and Distribution

The people most commonly affected by dracunculiasis are those living in rural communities without established water treatment facilities. Due to the mode of transmission, males and females of all ages are vulnerable to infection if exposed to a contaminated water source. In some endemic areas, over half of the infected individuals are children, as they are they main water carriers.

Following eradication efforts, by 2006, the occurrence of dracunculiasis was mostly restricted to remote rural villages in only 12 countries of sub-Saharan Africa. Over half of these cases had been reported from Sudan, where ongoing war conditions made it difficult to successfully eradicate the disease.

Sporadic cases of dracunculiasis have been noted in America and Australia among African immigrants.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment for dracunculiasis is limited and there is no definitive medication available to eliminate or prevent infection. The most common method for removing the worm once it has immerged is to gently pull it out a few inches each day. This slow process allows for the complete removal of the worm. This process may only take a few days, but generally takes weeks. Analgesics may also be used to reduce swelling and help with pain management.

As dracunculiasis is transmitted only by drinking contaminated water, disease prevention is possible by implementing simple measures. Ensuring the maintenance of a water source free from contamination is vital and the filtration of water prior to drinking would be further beneficial. Prevention is most often accomplished by either treating ponds with insecticide that kills the copepods that host the larvae while still leaving the water potable, or by filtering untreated water before it is consumed. Both methods break the chain of transmission. It is also essential to prevent people with open guinea worm wounds from swimming or bathing in shared water facilities used for drinking.

WORDS TO KNOW

DISTAL: Distal comes from the same root word as "distant," and is the medical word for distant from some agreed-on point of reference. For example, the hand is at the distal end of the arm from the trunk.

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

POTABLE: Water that can is clean enough to drink safely is potable water.

Impacts and Issues

Although the mortality rate for dracunculiasis is very low, morbidity is a major concern as the disease often affects entire communities and proves to be a heavy social and economic burden. Persons are often bedridden for some time during and following the emergence of the worm and as such, are unable to contribute to the work within the community. The seasonality of outbreaks further highlights the impact of disease whereby emergence often occurs during the peak of the agricultural year, often at harvest time, when the loss of labor is most damaging.

Children of parents infected with dracunculiasis are more likely to suffer from malnutrition than children of uninfected families. With an incapacitated parent, children are often required to assume adult roles within the family that, as a result, may also affect their chances of gaining an education. It is the culmination of these nutritional, social, economic, and educational factors, along with the practicality of possible prevention measures, that has made world health authorities identify dracunculiasis a candidate for eradication.

Former United States President Jimmy Carter has led a campaign to eliminate guinea worm disease for more than twenty years. Working in conjunction with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and others, if successful, the Carter campaign will result in the first eradication of an infectious disease since smallpox. Before the campaign, there were between three and five million cases occurring per year and the disease was endemic throughout Africa and areas of Asia.

IN CONTEXT: ERADICATION PROGRAM EFFECTIVENESS

Since the implementation of the eradication program in the 1980s, the global prevalence of dracunculiasis has drastically decreased. While in 1986, an estimated 3.5 million people were suffering from the disease worldwide, only 32,193 cases were reported in 2003, a decrease of over ninety percent.

SOURCE: *World Health Organization (WHO)*

By 1996, the number of worldwide cases had been reduced to around 150,000. By 2006, cases of reported guinea worm disease decreased to about 12,000, the disease was eliminated from Asia, and remained endemic in only about nine African countries.

See Also *Helminth Disease; Roundworm (Ascariasis) Infection; Sanitation; Vector-borne Disease; War and Infectious Disease; Water-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., Bennett, J.E., and Dolin, R. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* Vol. 2. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Periodicals

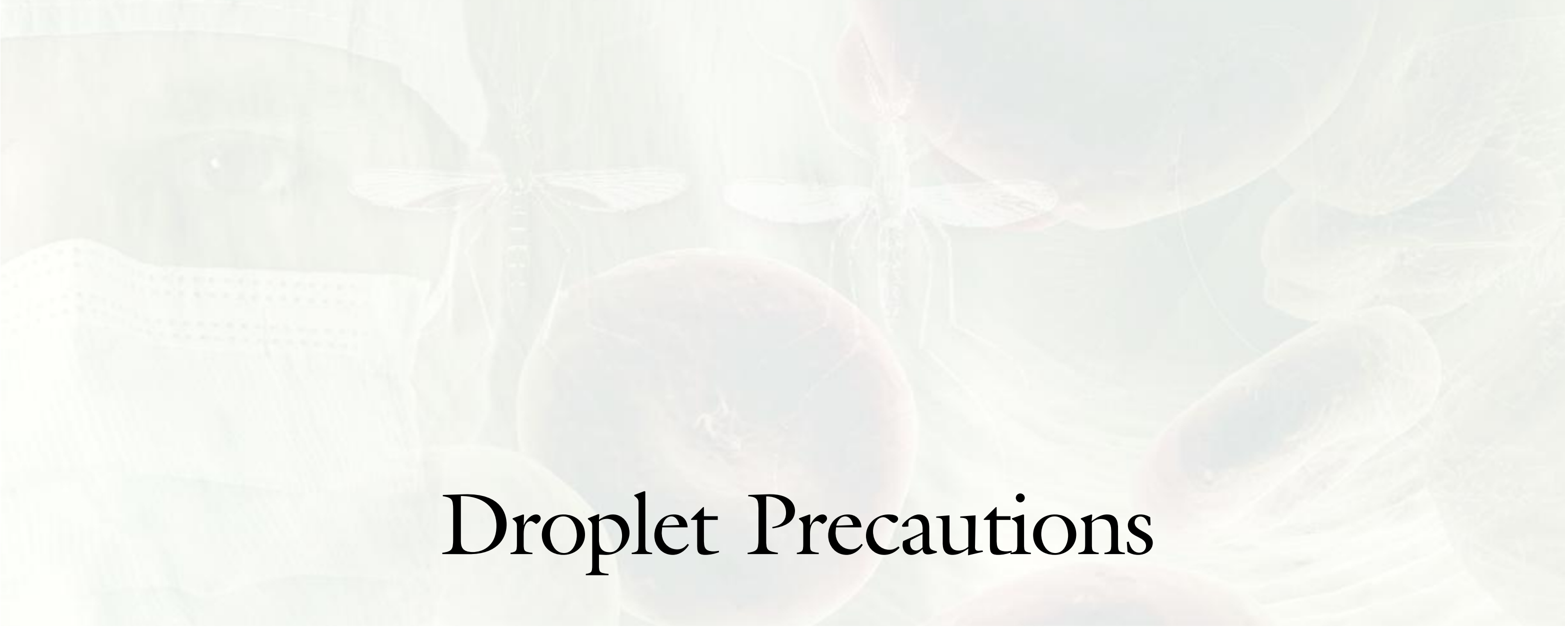
Cairncross, S., Muller, R., and Zagaria, N. "Dracunculiasis (Guinea Worm Disease) and the Eradication Initiative." *Clinical Microbiology Reviews.* 15, 2 (2002): 223–246.

Hopkins, D.R., Ruiz-Tiben, E., Downs, P., Withers, P.C., and Maguire, J.H. "Dracunculiasis Eradication: The Final Inch." *The American Journal of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene.* 73, 4 (2005): 669–675.

Web Sites

Directors of Health Promotion and Education. "Guinea Worm Disease." 2005 <http://www.dhpe.org/infect/guinea.html> (accessed Feb. 22, 2007).

World Health Organization (WHO). "Dracunculiasis eradication." 2007 <http://www.who.int/dracunculiasis/en/> (accessed Feb. 22, 2007).



Droplet Precautions

Introduction

Droplet precautions are measures that have been developed to limit the airborne spread of microorganisms in droplets that are larger than 5 microns in diameter (a micron is 10^{-6} of a meter or one millionth of a meter). These droplets are typically expelled into the air by coughing, sneezing, and even by talking.

Droplets that are smaller in diameter are considered to be aerosols and, since they may travel greater distances, are governed by the airborne precautions category of infection control.

History and Scientific Foundations

The droplet precautions developed by agencies including the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and issued as guidelines in 1996 are designed to limit the spread of droplets with the cells of the eyes, nose, and mouth. This is important in a hospital, where droplets expelled by someone with an infection could spread the disease to someone else.

Because the droplets are relatively large, they are heavier and tend not to travel as far (less than three feet) as aerosolized microorganisms. Thus, droplet precautions are designed to prevent the movement of microorganisms from one person to someone else who is within about three feet or less.

Viral diseases for which droplet precautions are necessary include chickenpox, influenza, measles, German measles, mumps, smallpox, and severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS). Bacterial diseases requiring these precautions include whooping cough, a form of meningitis, psittacosis, Legionnaire's disease, diphtheria, and pneumonia. Finally, the inhalation of fungi-laden droplets can cause allergic alveolitis, aspergillosis, histoplasmosis, and coccidiodomycosis.

Applications and Research

Droplet precautions are a necessary part of a hospital's infection control strategy. Without such precautions, the airborne spread of disease would occur more frequently. These precautions can be initiated by the attending health care providers, including the physician and the nursing staff, and by the person in charge of infection control. The latter usually has the final say in whether precautions will be observed or not. The use of droplet precautions must be documented in the patient records. This information that can be important in tracing the effectiveness of the precautions in controlling the infection and minimizing its spread.

Placing the infected patient in a separate room can be sufficient to prevent the spread of droplet-borne microbes. Specially ventilated rooms are not required, nor does the door to the room need to be closed. If a separate room is not available, then the infected patient should be housed with a patient who has an infection with the same microorganism and no other condition. That way, if the microbe is transferred between the

WORDS TO KNOW

AEROSOL: Particles of liquid or solid dispersed as a suspension in gas.

CONTACT PRECAUTIONS: Contact precautions are actions developed to minimize the transfer of microorganisms by direct physical contact and indirectly by touching a contaminated surface.

DROPLETS: A drop of water or other fluid that is less than 5 microns (a millionth of a meter) in diameter.

patients via droplets, it will have a negligible influence on either patient's health. The patients's beds should be physically separated by a minimum of three feet, and visitors should not be allowed within three feet of the patient they are visiting.

A face mask should be worn when either a health care provider or a visitor comes in close contact with the infected patient. Standard masks, similar to the type worn by carpenters to prevent inhalation of dust and other construction debris, are sufficient. Ideally, the mask should be put on as a person enters the patient's room and should be discarded in a hazardous waste container as the person is leaving.

The infected patient should be moved to other areas of the hospital only as is necessary, and should wear a mask during the transport. In addition, any visitors who have not been previously exposed to the infection that the patient has should not be allowed to enter the patient's room. Droplet precautions are often used in conjunction with contact precautions (infection control procedures designed to minimize the spread of disease by direct or indirect contact) in hospitals.

Droplet precautions can be discontinued when a patient's symptoms, such as coughing, have disappeared.

■ Impacts and Issues

Droplet precautions are intended to benefit the patient and medical personnel and to control and contain a disease outbreak. However, these measures come not only with a financial cost, but with a psychic cost when images of masked patients, cargivers, and even members of the general public are given wide circulation by the media. A recent example occurred in Toronto, Canada, in March 2003, when several hundred people were affected by a SARS outbreak. Unsettling images of masked citizens in China (where the SARS outbreak originated) engaging in everyday activities, and of masked healthcare workers in Toronto were shown around the world. The precautions observed during the Toronto outbreak were subsequently cited as key in containing the infection. Yet, this success came at a cost. A report released in 2005 documented that infection control procedures, including droplet precautions, lost revenue, and additional labor costs, for one of the several affected Toronto hospitals totaled $12 million.

SEE ALSO *Airborne Precautions; Contact Precautions; Infection Control and Asepsis; Isolation and Quarantine; Nosocomial (Healthcare-Associated) Infections.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Drexler, Madeline. *Secret Agents: The Menace of Emerging Infections.* New York: Penguin, 2003.

Tierno, Philip M. *The Secret Life of Germs: What They Are, Why We Need Them, and How We Can Protect Ourselves Against Them.* New York: Atria, 2004.

Wenzel, Richard P. *Prevention and Control of Nosocomial Infections.* New York: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2002.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Droplet Precautions." April 1, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/gl_isolation_droplet.html> (accessed April 3, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Dysentery

Introduction

Dysentery is the name given to an inflammation of the intestines, and especially the colon, that leads to abdominal pain and frequent stools which contain blood and mucus. Dysentery can be caused by bacteria, protozoa, worms, or even non-infectious agents. *Shigella* species are the causative agent in most cases of bacterial dysentery. *Entamoeba histolytica*, a protozoa, is the main cause of amebic dysentery.

Overcrowding and poor hygiene are major risk factors for dysentery. It occurs all around the world, among people of all ages. Dysentery is sometimes known as “travelers’ diarrhea” because it often affects those who visit developing countries. Although the disease normally clears up without treatment, antibiotics and drugs to get rid of amebic parasites might be necessary. Prior to the advent of antibiotics and improved sanitation, dysentery could be fatal and indeed, claimed the lives of many famous figures, including King Henry V of England (1387–1422) and the Spanish explorer Hernando Cortes (1485–1547).

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The four main *Shigella* species responsible for bacterial dysentery are *S. sonnei*, *S. flexneri*, *S.boydii* and *S. dysenteriae* and this disease is sometimes known as shigellosis. The *Shigellae* are rod-shaped bacteria of one to two millimeters in diameter, Gram-negative, and closely related to the *Escherichia* genus. Infection with *Shigella* is sometimes known as shigellosis. Gram-negative refers to the way bacteria interact with the Gram stain when being prepared for microscopic examination. Meanwhile, amebic dysentery—also called amebiasis—is caused by a single-celled protozoan parasite called *Entamoeba histolytica*.

The incubation period of shigellosis is usually one to three days. For amebic dysentery, the incubation time is much longer—maybe up to one year. Therefore, returning travelers who have acquired amebic dysentery abroad

A child rests after receiving treatment for symptoms of dysentery at a regional medical center in Biloxi, Mississippi, in 2005. An outbreak of dysentery occurred at a shelter in Biloxi in the wake of Hurricane Katrina. *Barry Williams/Getty Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

GRAM-NEGATIVE: A method of identifying bacteria based on whether crystal-violet dye is retained or not retained after being stained and decolorized with alcohol in a process called Gram's method.

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to disease causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (an example is food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (an example is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term "mortality" comes from the Latin word *mors,* which means "death." Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., "Rabies has a high mortality."

PROTOZOA: Single-celled animal-like microscopic organisms that live by taking in food rather than making it by photosynthesis and must live in the presence of water. (Singular: protozoan.) Protozoa are a diverse group of single-celled organisms, with more than 50,000 different types represented. The vast majority are microscopic, many measuring less than 5 one-thousandth of an inch (0.005 millimeters) but some, such as the freshwater Spirostomun, may reach 0.17 inches (3 millimeters) in length, large enough to enable it to be seen with the naked eye.

RELAPSE: Relapse is a return of symptoms after the patient has apparently recovered from a disease.

SENTINEL: Sentinel surveillance is a method in epidemiology where a subset of the population is surveyed for the presence of communicable diseases. Also, a sentinel is an animal used to indicate the presence of disease within an area.

SEPSIS: Sepsis refers to a bacterial infection in the bloodstream or body tissues. This is a very broad term covering the presence of many types of microscopic disease-causing organisms. Sepsis is also called bacteremia. Closely related terms include septicemia and septic syndrome. According to the Society of Critical Care Medicine, severe sepsis affects about 750,000 people in the United States each year. However, it is predicted to rapidly rise to one million people by 2010 due to the aging U.S. population. Over the decade of the 1990s, the incident rate of sepsis increased over 91%.

may not immediately make the connection between infection and symptoms, which may delay diagnosis.

The symptoms of shigellosis and amebic dysentery are similar, the chief one being diarrhea containing blood and mucus. Amebic dysentery is more likely to produce blood. There may also be severe pain in the abdomen, fever, nausea and vomiting. Shigellosis tends to produce a watery diarrhea that progresses to dysentery, especially when *S. dysenteriae* and *S. flexneri* are involved.

Symptoms of dysentery, including the frequency of attacks of diarrhea, can range from mild to severe. Complications are more likely with *S. dysenteriae* and include sepsis (blood poisoning) and kidney failure. Blood clots may also be seen in the liver and the spleen. Dysentery with severe complications can have a mortality (death) rate of 5–20%. However, the symptoms of most cases of dysentery last for only a few days, although relapse and chronic infection can also occur.

The fecal-oral route is important in the transmission of *Shigella*—that is, eating or drinking contaminated food or water. Cases in Europe have been linked to infected milk and food. Houseflies also carry the disease. Dysentery is highly infectious and can also be transmitted just by contact with infected individuals. *Shigella* species enter through the mouth and progress to the colon where they multiply producing the severe inflammation which causes the symptoms of the disease. A person with shigellosis may remain infectious for up to four weeks after the onset of symptoms.

Amebic dysentery is transmitted in a similar way. In part of its life cycle, the amebae can exist as a cyst—a group of cells surrounded by a wall that can survive the acid of the stomach and progress to the intestines. The cysts can stick to the walls of the colon, causing bleeding ulcers, loss of appetite, and weight loss. The cysts are passed in the feces and can infect others under conditions of poor sanitation.

Scope and Distribution

Dysentery has long had an impact on human health, but it was not until the nineteenth century that the cause was realized to be either bacterial or amoebic. The *Shigella* get their name from Kiyoshi Shiga (1871–1951) who discovered them in 1898. Dysentery has caused massive casualties in conflicts ranging from the Peloponnesian War in 431 BC to World War II (1939–1945). In the American Civil War (1861–1865), there were nearly two million cases of diarrhea, most of which was probably dysentery, resulting in over 44,000 deaths. It has only been with the advent of antibiotics that dysentery has ceased to be such a major problem in military campaigns.

S. dysenteri causes most outbreaks of dysentery in developing countries, in the tropics and subtropics and under conditions of overcrowding or war. Epidemic dysentery in the tropics is more common in the rainy season, perhaps because people tend to spend more time indoors together and sanitation suffers from the abundance of surface water. *S. sonnei* and *S. flexneri* are the most common causes of shigellosis in the United States, England, Europe, Egypt, the Middle East, and Asia. *S. boydii* is found mainly in India and Egypt, although strains of all four species have been found in the U.S. as well.

Shigellosis is endemic throughout the world, but is more common in less developed countries. In Europe, the United States, and other developed regions, shigellosis tends to be a disease of institutions—nursery schools, mental institutions, prisons, and military barracks. In the U.S. and the United Kingdom, shigellosis is a notifiable disease.

Around 10% of the world's population is infected with *Entamoeba histolytica*, but fewer than 10% of those infected exhibit any signs of disease. Infection is prevalent in Central and South America, southern and western Africa, the Southeast Asia, India, and China. Amebic dysentery is relatively rare in Australia, New Zealand, Canada, the United States and Europe. However, travelers may become infected abroad. Pregnant women, children, and people in developing nations are most at risk to contract amebic dysentery.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

Acute hunger can cause people to die of starvation directly, but there are many more individuals who may survive famine, only to be faced with the health problems that often accompany undernourishment and vitamin and mineral deficiencies. Common effects of malnutrition include stunted growth, weakness, and susceptibility to disease. People who are malnourished often have poor concentration, which exacerbates the problem of hunger, as it is difficult for hungry people to work in fields, or earn money for buying food. Pregnant women, those who are breast-feeding newborns, and children are the most vulnerable to hunger related problems. Over 150 million children, worldwide, below the age of five, are said to be underweight. Eleven million children under the age of five die each year, with over half the deaths directly related to malnutrition. Typically these children do not die from starvation itself, but rather from the diseases that strike a weak and vulnerable body, whose immune system is likely unable to put up a defense. The four most common childhood illnesses in developing countries are diarrhea, respiratory illness, malaria, and measles.

Treatment and Prevention

Most cases of bacterial and amebic dysentery resolve with rest and drinking plenty of fluids to replace that which is lost from the diarrhea. This is especially important for babies with dysentery as they can become rapidly dehydrated. Sometimes antibiotic treatment, including hospitalization for intravenous therapy is needed. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or ampicillin are often used.

A good standard of personal hygiene will prevent the transmission of dysentery. This means frequent handwashing, especially after using the toilet or after contact with someone who is infected with *Shigella*. Hands should also be washed before handling and cooking food, eating, handling babies, and feeding the young or elderly. To avoid spreading infection, personal items like towels or face cloths should not be shared.

Travelers should avoid drinking tap water in countries known to have poor sanitation. Ice cubes, salad, and uncooked vegetables should also be avoided, because these could have been washed in contaminated water. A child who has had dysentery should stay away from school or nursery care for at least 48 hours after symptoms have ceased. An adult with dysentery should not return to work in a food or healthcare environment without first consulting their employer.

Impacts and Issues

There are approximately 165 million cases of shigellosis worldwide each year. Shigellosis disproportionately affects developing nations. The United Nations World Health Organization (WHO) reports 163.2 million annual cases in developing countries, compared to 1.5 million cases in industrialized countries.

Among residents of industrialized nations, the increased popularity of international travel accounts for a significant percentage of dysentery cases. The WHO estimates that there are approximately 580,000 reported cases of tourism-related shigellosis annually. The Centers for Disease Control (CDC) and several international health organizations publish infectious disease warnings and vaccination and medication advisories for travelers. Many travelers' warnings also contain information on the quality and safety of local water. Individuals should consult these publications before traveling and follow their recommendations.

Dysentery is common wherever sanitation is inadequate or lacking, as with so many other water-borne infections. Therefore, development of adequate sewage disposal and access to clean drinking water should be a priority in helping prevent this globally important disease.

The WHO estimates that over one billion people worldwide do not have daily access to clean water. A greater number of people live in areas that lack basic sanitation systems. In 2005, the United Nations announced an initiative to halve by 2015 the number of people worldwide who lack potable water. The International Decade for Action, "Water for Life" project involves several U.N. and government agencies, as well as private charitable and health organizations.

■ Primary source connection

In this online news article, author Heidi Ledford discusses how travelers returning home inadvertently served as sentinels (lookouts) for an outbreak of *Shigella* in Africa in the 1990s, and how similar cases could alert health authorities in developing countries to future outbreaks if networks for sharing data are improved. Ledford has a PhD in plant biology and is a science journalist based in Boston, Massachusetts.

SEE ALSO *Amebiasis; Shigellosis; War and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ericsson, Charles D. *Traveler's Diarrhea* Hamilton, ON, Canada: BC Decker, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Amebiasis." Jan 21, 2004 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/amebiasis/factsht_amebiasis.htm> (accessed May 12, 2007).

Tropical Medicine Central Resource. "Shigellosis." <http://tmcr.usuhs.mil/tmcr/chapter19/intro.htm> (accessed).

Susan Aldridge

Ear Infections (Otitis Media)

Introduction

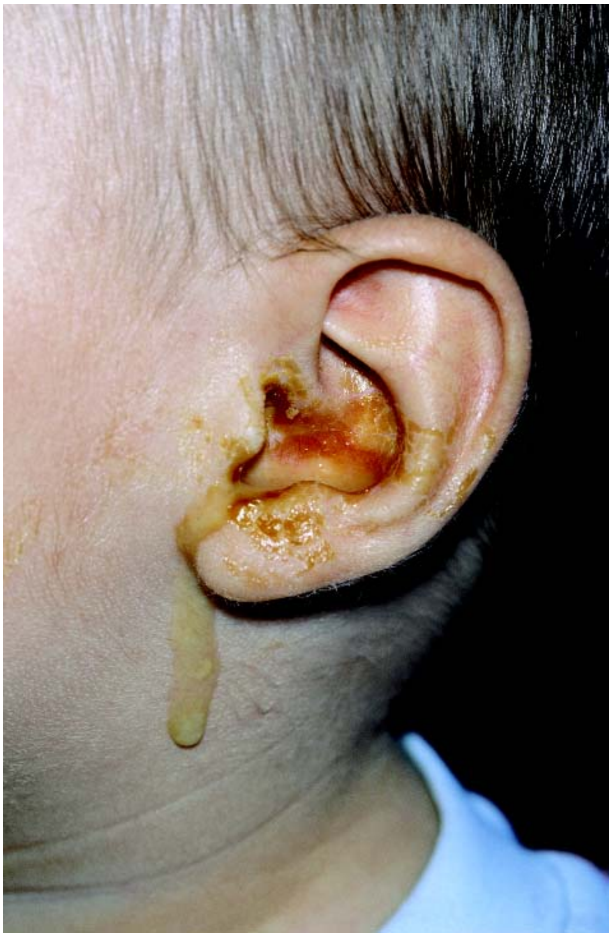
Otitis media is a recurring bacterial or, occasionally, viral, infection of the middle ear. The bacteria most commonly involved are *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, a type of *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Moraxella catarrhalis.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The human ear is composed of three parts—the external or outer ear, the middle ear, and the inner ear. The outer ear is the visible portion that lies outside of the skull. It functions as a sound trap to route sound waves via a canal to the middle ear. Separating the outer and middle ear is the tympanic membrane or eardrum. In the middle ear, an arrangement of three bones passes the sound vibrations to nerve cells that form the inner ear. The eustachian tube connects the middle portion of the ear to the nasal cavity and throat. Normally the eustachian tube acts to equalize the pressure on the two sides of the eardrum. However, when the inflammation associated with otitis media affects the eardrum, the pressure difference on either side of the eardrum can become so great that the eardrum ruptures, a painful complication.

There are several different kinds of otitis media. One type, called acute otitis media, tends to be associated with a runny or stuffy nose, and is triggered when the eustachian tube becomes blocked during the upper respiratory infection. In addition to inflammation, pus and fluid accumulate in the middle ear. The infection can also be associated with fever and irritable behavior. Other symptoms include interrupted sleep, tugging at the effected ear, and loss of balance due to the ear blockage. The acute infection tends to be of short duration.

An ear infection that does not display symptoms, including fever and irritable behavior, is known as otitis media with effusion (the infection was known as serous or secretory otitis media). Often, after the acute version of the infection, otitis media with effusion can last longer.



Close-up of pus (yellow) in the ear of a five-month-old boy with secretory otitis media, a middle ear infection. This chronic accumulation of fluid in the middle ear may cause hearing loss. *Dr. P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

If the infection lasts longer than several weeks, it is referred to as chronic otitis media. The chronic form can involve bacteria growths that have become colonized, or well established in the ear. These growths are often present as surface-adherent, polysaccharide (slime)-enclosed communities called biofilms. Antibiotic treatment will kill some of the bacteria and lessen the infection. However, bacteria deeper within the biofilm survive and can be the cause of a future infection. This is the reason that chronic otitis media can persist for years.

Scope and Distribution

In humans, episodes of otitis media typically can begin as early as a few months of age. It is a common childhood ailment. Less frequently, the infection occurs in adults. More than 10 million children visit a doctor for treatment of ear infections each year in the United States. As children grow older and the structure of the ear changes, the frequency and incidence of ear infections usually drop. Specifically, as children mature, the eustachian tube becomes more slanted from inside to outside, which allows fluid to drain more easily. In the earlier years of childhood, the eustachian tube can have a more horizontal orientation or can even slant more towards the inside of the ear, which impedes fluid drainage and encourages the development of frequent infections.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of otitis media can involve decongestants or antihistamines to help clear the blocked eustachian tube and antibiotics if the bacteria are the cause of the infection (antibiotics are not effective against viruses). Even with antibiotic treatment an infection may take weeks or months to completely clear, as bacteria within the biofilm are progressively killed. For this reason, the full course of antibiotic therapy must be followed. Stopping treatment early, because symptoms diminish or disappear, may allow bacteria to survive. These survivors may develop resistance to the antibiotic that was used, making treatment of the next infection more difficult.

When a chronic infection does not respond to treatment, more drastic action may be necessary. Surgery to install a plastic drainage tube—a procedure called myringotomy—may be performed. Less frequently, surgical removal of infected, swollen adenoids or tonsils may be done. Myringotomy is a common childhood surgery in the United States. The tube is removed later, as the maturing eustachian tube more naturally drains fluid from the middle ear.

Research concerning the nature of the biofilms formed by bacteria in otitis media is underway. It is unclear whether there are some distinguishing features about the bacteria that make them more likely to cause an infection. If so, identification of the genetic factors involved is important, since it could lead to better strategies to deal with an infection or, perhaps, help in the development of preventive measures. Current research also aims to discover why some children are more prone to ear infections than other children and to develop more accurate and rapid means of diagnosing otitis media.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

BIOFILM: Biofilms are populations of microorganisms that form following the adhesion of bacteria, algae, yeast, or fungi to a surface. These surface growths can be found in natural settings such as on rocks in streams, and in infections such as can occur on catheters. Microorganisms can colonize living and inert natural and synthetic surfaces.

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

Impacts and Issues

Otitis media is the number one reason that parents bring a sick child to a physician. Medical costs and lost wages due to otitis media in the United States alone are estimated to be almost $5 billion per year. The ultimate challenge for researchers in otitis media is to create a vaccine for infants that would prevent the first acute otitis media infection. Several vaccine candidates are at different stages in the testing and approval process, from animal testing to first-phase clinical trials.

OTITIS MEDIA VS. SWIMMER'S EAR

The The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Division of Parasitic Diseases is careful to warn the public that middle ear infection is not the same as Swimmer's Ear. The CDC states, "If you can wiggle the outer ear without pain or discomfort then your ear infection is probably not Swimmer's Ear."

SOURCE: *The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Division of Parasitic Diseases*

Otitis media can be a serious infection, producing chronic diminished hearing ability or permanent hearing loss. Hearing impairment in a child during the years of language acquisition can result in learning and socialization delays, and speech disabilities.

As with other chronic bacterial infections, the symptoms associated with chronic ear infections can be less severe and uncomfortable than those of the acute form of the infection. Chronic infections may thus escape detection for long periods of time, potentially leading to serious complications, including permanent damage to the ear and hearing loss.

SEE ALSO *Antibiotic Resistance; Swimmer's Ear and Swimmer's Itch (Cercarial Dermatitis).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Friedman, Ellen M., and James P. Barassi. *My Ear Hurts!: A Complete Guide to Understanding and Treating Your Child's Ear Infections.* Darby, PA: Diane Publishing Company, 2004.

Schmidt, Michael A. *Childhood Ear Infections: A Parent's Guide to Alternative Treatments.* Berkeley, CA: North Atlantic Books, 2004.

Periodicals

Jackson, Patricia L. "Healthy People 2010 Objective: Reduce Number and Frequency of Courses of Antibiotics for Ear Infections in Young Children." *Pediatric Nursing* 27 (2000): 591–595.

Web Sites

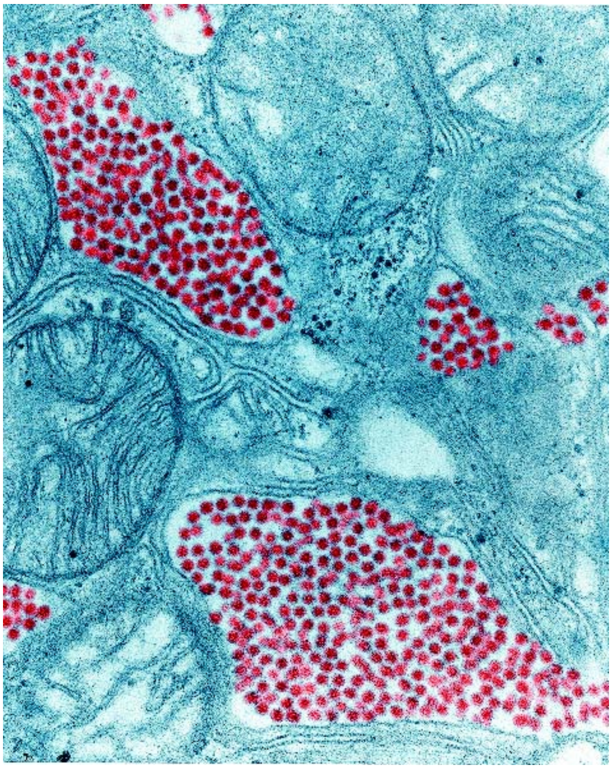
National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders. "Otitis Media (Ear Infection)." July 2002. <http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/health/hearing/otitism.asp> (accessed April 10, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Eastern Equine Encephalitis

Introduction

Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE) is a mosquito-borne virus that infects birds and mammals, including horses and humans. It is a rare disease—an average of five human cases of EEE occur in the United States each year. However, its high mortality rate makes it one of the country's most serious mosquito-borne diseases.



This transmission electron micrograph (TEM) shows a salivary gland of a mosquito that was infected by the eastern equine encephalitis (EEE) virus. The EEE virus occurs mainly in the eastern half of the United States. Due to the high fatality rate, it is regarded as one of the more serious mosquito-borne diseases in the nation. © *CDC/PHIL/Corbis.*

Transmission of EEE to humans usually occurs from bird hosts via mosquitoes from the *Aedes* and *Coquillettidia* species. While some cases are asymptomatic, some people experience mild to severe symptoms such as fevers, headache, and seizures. Severe infections occur when the disease spreads to the central nervous system, which results in permanent neurological damage, or death. No vaccine is available for humans, and no drug treatment for the infection is known. Prevention of infection is best achieved by avoiding mosquitoes, either by reducing mosquito populations or wearing protective clothing.

EEE is distributed in North America, Central and South America, and the Caribbean. Increased migration of humans into areas more likely to contain EEE infection raises the potential for exposure to infected mosquitoes, and thus increases the risk of infection in humans.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE) was first recognized in humans in 1938, although it had been diagnosed in horses since 1831. Transmission occurs via mosquitoes, and infection can cause a range of symptoms.

EEE is transmitted by the bite of an infected mosquito. Generally, the virus lifecycle is composed of passerine birds acting as hosts and the mosquito, *Culiseta melanura*, acting as the vector. However, other mosquitoes—including the *Aedes* and *Coquillettidia* species—which more commonly feed on mammals, such as horses and humans, are also capable of becoming infected and transmitting the disease. Horses and humans have a low level of the virus in their blood, making them ineffective as hosts for transmission. However, birds retain a high level of the virus and act as reservoirs for continued mosquito infection. Therefore, infection is more likely to occur from a mosquito that has fed on an infected bird, rather than via a mosquito that has fed on an infected

Workers spray a marsh to kill millions of mosquito larvae in New Hampshire in June 2006. They are trying to prevent a seasonal outbreak of eastern equine encephalitis (EEE), a mosquito-borne disease that affects humans and horses. *AP Images.*

mammal. Furthermore, infection in humans by blood transfusions is unlikely to occur. EEE tends to disappear during the winter months because low temperatures kill the vector populations. However, the infection tends to break out again when the weather becomes warm.

In some cases, EEE infection does not result in illness, but, in other cases, it can cause mild to severe symptoms. Mild symptoms include a flulike illness characterized by fever, headache, and sore throat. Severe symptoms arise when the infection enters the central nervous system. Severe symptoms include sudden fever and headache, followed by seizures and coma. The outcome of a severe infection of EEE is mild to severe permanent neurological damage, or death. The CDC reports that a third of severe cases of EEE are fatal, while half of those who surviving a severe EEE infection will have mild to severe permanent neurological damage. Symptoms generally appear 3 to 10 days after being bitten by an infected mosquito, and, in severe cases, rapid deterioration or death occurs soon after symptoms arise.

Scope and Distribution

The primary transmission cycle of the EEE virus, which involves the mosquito *Culiseta melanura* and passerine birds, occurs in freshwater, hardwood swamp environments. Therefore, EEE infections generally occur in these regions. Globally, EEE is found in North America, Central and South America, and the Caribbean. Within the United States, the disease is most prevalent in the Atlantic and Gulf Coast states and the Great Lakes region.

EEE is a serious disease as it has significant mortality rates in horses and humans. However, it is a rare disease, with the CDC reporting an average of five human cases occurring in most years. With increased migration of people in the United States into previously undeveloped areas, especially previously uninhabited swampland, the risk of infection has increased, making EEE an emerging infectious disease. During 2006, three people were reported infected with EEE in the state of Massachusetts with one fatal case. In 2005, four cases of infection were reported. In the four years prior to 2006, four people died from EEE.

While human cases of EEE are uncommon, outbreaks are more common among horses. In 2006, an epidemic of 26 equine cases was reported in North Carolina. The scope of equine cases is argued to be under-reported because owners may not consult a veterinarian when horses exhibit signs of EEE and thus no record is made of the infection.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no treatment for EEE. A vaccine is available for horses and for laboratory personnel working with the virus. As of 2007, there is no vaccine available for the general public. Infection with the EEE virus is thought to confer lifelong immunity against reinfection with this virus. However, this immunity is limited to the EEE virus and does not confer protection against other viruses.

When EEE is symptomatic, treatment is given for the symptoms of the infection. This involves hospitalization, supportive care, prevention of secondary infections, and physical therapy. There are no antiviral drugs against EEE, and antibiotic drugs do not fight viral infections.

EEE infections can be prevented by avoiding mosquitoes. In the United States, large-scale actions, such as the spraying of insecticides across regions known to be infected, may take place. This mosquito-control action reduces the likelihood that humans will come into contact with infected mosquitoes. Smaller scale methods to avoid mosquitoes include wearing protective clothing, using insect repellent, avoiding outdoor activities while mosquitoes are active, and removing standing bodies of water that may be used as breeding sites by mosquitoes.

WORDS TO KNOW

ENCEPHALITIS: A type of acute brain inflammation, most often due to infection by a virus.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

Impacts and Issues

Since EEE infection has a 30% fatality rate and survivors of severe infection may suffer permanent neurological damage, it is considered a major health concern in the United States despite its low incidence. However, there are some challenges associated with the control of this disease. No vaccination or drug treatment is available for humans as of 2007. Therefore, prevention of infection relies on avoidance of mosquitoes and recovery depends on the extent of infection. Prevention and control methods of EEE infection are expensive and controversial, since the most common control method is large-scale use of insecticides to reduce mosquito populations. A conflict of interest arises between laws mandating wetland protection and the need to apply toxic insecticides for mosquito control.

Another emerging issue is associated with the increased migration of humans into previously uninhabited swamplands. The transmission cycle of the EEE virus occurs naturally within these habitats, since *Culiseta melanura*, the mosquito that transmits this virus among birds, breeds there. Therefore, exposure to the virus increases as humans move into these areas.

The extent to which this disease is present among bird and horse populations is also uncertain. The prevalence of infection in horses is likely to be understated as owners fail to report cases of EEE. This may impact the extent to which a region prepares itself for the possibility of transmission of the EEE virus into the human population.

SEE ALSO *Arthropod-borne Disease; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Encephalitis; Host and Vector; Japanese encephalitis; Mosquito-borne Diseases; St. Louis Encephalitis; Vaccines and Vaccine Development; Vector-borne Disease; Viral Disease.*

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

With regard to the incidence of Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE) the Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) offers the following statistics regarding human cases:

- Approximately 220 confirmed cases in the U.S. 1964–2004
- Average of 5 cases/year, with a range from 0–15 cases
- States with largest number of cases are Florida, Georgia, Massachusetts, and New Jersey.
- EEEV transmission is most common in and around freshwater hardwood swamps in the Atlantic and Gulf Coast states and the Great Lakes region.
- Human cases occur relatively infrequently, largely because the primary transmission cycle takes place in and around swampy areas where human populations tend to be limited.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Eastern Equine Encephalitis Fact Sheet." July 12, 2006. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/arbor/eeefact.htm> (accessed February 22, 2007).

Directors of Health Promotion and Education. "Eastern Equine Encephalitis." <http://www.dhpe.org/infect/equine.html> (accessed February 22, 2007).

Boston Globe. "Middleborough Boy with EEE Dies." August 31, 2006. <http://www.boston.com/news/globe/city_region/breaking_news/2006/08/middleborough_b.html> (accessed February 22, 2007).

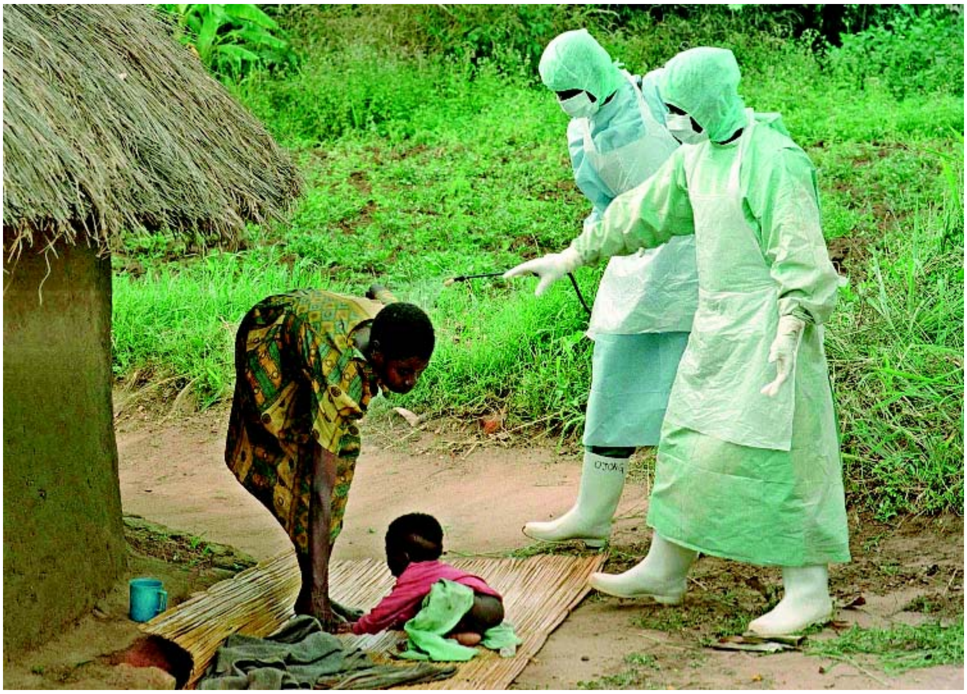
Ebola

Introduction

Ebola is a type of hemorrhagic fever that is caused by four subtypes of a virus called the Ebola virus. The virus is one of two members of Filoviridae, a family of RNA viruses. The name of the virus comes from a river located in the Democratic Republic of the Congo, formerly called Zaire, where the virus was first discovered during an outbreak of the disease.

Ebola is a terrifying disease that can progress steadily towards death. The destruction of internal organs caused by the infecting virus produces a great deal of internal bleeding and can cause bleeding from various parts of the body such as the eyes, gums, and nose. The disease caused by Ebola-Zaire, the first of the four types of the virus yet discovered, is fatal over 90% of the time.

The progression from health to death within a few weeks for those unlucky enough to contract the infection is one terrifying aspect of Ebola. The other is, essentially, a fear of the unknown. Even though the disease has been known since the late 1980s, the origin of Ebola, its reservoir, and how the disease can be prevented are still largely mysterious. The main reason for this is the infrequency of outbreaks and the speed of their appearance



Volunteers with the Ugandan Red Cross help a woman and her child who show signs of the deadly Ebola virus. The two were taken from their village to a hospital in the Gulu region of northern Uganda to have their blood tested for the virus. *Tyler Hicks/Getty Images.*

The Ebola virus is shown at 108,000x magnification. © *Royalty-Free/Corbis.*

and disappearance. The infection quickly spreads from person to person through a local population and, because of the high death rate, soon disappears after running out of new hosts to infect. This pattern has made the study of Ebola difficult.

It is thought that Ebola is transmitted to humans from a natural host by a vector. This route of transmission occurs in some other diseases. One example is malaria, which is transferred to a susceptible person from an infected animal or person via mosquitoes. Ebola may be naturally present in chimpanzees. At least two outbreaks of Ebola-Zaire were determined to be due to contact between humans and infected chimpanzees. However, it may be that chimpanzees are not the natural host, but are themselves infected by the virus, which is transmitted to them from another host. As discussed below, the natural host may be bats, although this has not been proven. Likewise, studies by the World Health Organization (WHO) and the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) have not yet identified the vector that carries the virus from that host to humans. What is clear from the ferocity of past outbreaks is that once someone has been infected with Ebola, the virus is easily transferred from person to person.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

As of 2007, four subtypes of Ebola virus have been identified. Three of the subtypes cause disease in humans. The four subtypes of Ebola are slightly different in the sequence of their genetic material and in the composition of the proteins that are present on their surfaces. Analysis of blood obtained from people infected by one of the four viral subtypes has revealed slightly different antibody patterns. (An antibody is a protein produced by the immune system in response to the presence of a specific protein, which is termed an antigen.) The four subtypes of virus may have originated from a single virus that mutated to create the four slightly different subtypes over time, but this hypothesis has not yet been confirmed.

The first Ebola virus to be discovered was Ebola-Zaire. It was isolated near the Ebola River in the Democratic Republic of the Congo during an outbreak in 1976. There were 318 reported cases. Of these, 280 people died, a mortality rate of 88%. Other known occurrences of Ebola due to Ebola-Zaire include:

- Democratic Republic of the Congo, 1977 (one case, one death)
- Gabon, 1994 (52 cases, 31 deaths)
- Democratic Republic of the Congo, 1995 (315 cases, 250 deaths)
- Gabon, January to April 1996 (37 cases, 21 deaths)
- Gabon, July 1996 to January 1997 (60 cases, 45 deaths)
- South Africa, 1996 (two cases, one death; the disease was contracted in the Democratic Republic of the Congo)
- Gabon and the Democratic Republic of the Congo, October 2001 to March 2002 (53 cases, 53 deaths

WORDS TO KNOW

AMPLIFICATION: A process by which something is made larger, or the quantity increased.

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ANTIGEN: Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ANTISENSE DRUG: An antisense drug binds to mRNA, thereby blocking gene activity. Some viruses have mRNA as their genetic material, so an antisense drug could inhibit their replication

BUSH MEAT: The meat of terrestrial wild and exotic animals, typically those that live in parts of Africa, Asia, and the Americas; also known as wild meat.

HEMORRHAGIC FEVER: A hemorrhagic fever is caused by viral infection and features a high fever and a high volume of (copious) bleeding. The bleeding is caused by the formation of tiny blood clots throughout the bloodstream. These blood clots—also called microthrombi—deplete platelets and fibrinogen in the bloodstream. When bleeding begins, the factors needed for the clotting of the blood are scarce. Thus, uncontrolled bleeding (hemorrhage) ensues.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

in the Gabon outbreak; 57 cases, 43 deaths in the Congo outbreak)

- Democratic Republic of Congo, December 2002 to April 2003 (143 cases, 128 deaths)
- Democratic Republic of Congo, 2003 (35 cases, 29 deaths).

The second type of Ebola virus to be discovered was Ebola-Sudan. It was discovered in 1976 during an outbreak that occurred in Sudan (284 cases, 151 deaths). Other outbreaks involving Ebola-Sudan include:

- England, 1976 (one case; when a lab technician studying the virus accidentally contracted the virus from a needle puncture)
- Sudan, 1979 (34 cases, 22 deaths)
- Uganda, 2000–2001 (425 cases, 224 deaths)
- Sudan, 2004 (17 cases, 7 deaths).

The third type of Ebola virus to be discovered was Ebola-Reston. Outbreaks of Ebola occurred simultaneously in 1989 in three animal facilities in the United States that had received monkeys imported from the Philippines. One of the facilities was in Reston, Virginia, and the virus took its name from the outbreak among the primates at this facility. No humans died in the outbreak, although four people were infected, as shown by the antibodies that they developed to the virus. This outbreak formed the basis for a best-selling book by Richard Preston called *The Hot Zone* and a motion picture called *Outbreak* Other outbreaks of Ebola-Reston in 1990, 1992, and 1996 involved deaths among other primates, but no human fatalities (although some people had produced antibodies to the virus). Thus far, Ebola-Reston has not caused human illness.

The final subtype of Ebola virus, as of 2007, is Ebola-Ivory Coast, which was discovered in 1994 in Ivory Coast. It caused one non-lethal case involving a scientist who contracted the infection after conducting an autopsy on a chimpanzee.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

As of May 2007, the natural reservoir of the Ebola virus remained unknown. The World Health Organization (WHO) states that "the natural reservoir of the Ebola virus is unknown despite extensive studies, but seems to reside in the rain forests on the African continent and in the Western Pacific."

"Although non-human primates have been a source of infection for humans, they are not thought to be the reservoir. They, like humans, are argued to be infected directly from the natural reservoir or through a chain of transmission from the natural reservoir. On the African continent, Ebola infections of human cases have been linked to direct contact with gorillas, chimpanzees, monkeys, forest antelope and porcupines found dead in the rainforest. So far, the Ebola virus has been detected in the wild in carcasses of chimpanzees (in Côte-d'Ivoire and Republic of Congo), gorillas (Gabon and Republic of Congo) and duikers (Republic of Congo)."

"Because bats deliberated infected with Ebola do not die there is continued scientific speculation that bats or mammals may play a role in harboring the virus in the wild."

SOURCE: *World Health Organization*

The various types of Ebola virus are all filoviruses. One characteristic of filoviruses is their long, stringlike shape. When observed using the high magnification power of the electron microscope, the viruses can be coiled, circular, U-shaped, or even shaped like a cane (or a shepherd's crook). The different shapes may not be natural, but rather may be formed artificially during purification of the virus.

The molecular details of the Ebola infection have been clarified. This work can only be done in a few laboratories in the world that are designed for research involving highly dangerous and infectious microorganisms. The infection begins when a protein on the surface of the virus recognizes a host molecule. It is not known whether the host molecule is another protein, lipid, or carbohydrate. Following the linkage between the viral protein and the host receptor, the viral genetic material enters the host cell. It is not known how this occurs. Increased understanding of these early steps is vital, since by blocking the viral attachment to the host cell and/or the transfer of the genetic material into the host cell, the subsequent infection could be stopped. Efforts to develop a vaccine are focusing on these steps. For example, blocking the adherence of a microbe to a host cell has proven successful in the development of a preliminary vaccine for cattle against a bacterium called *Escherichia coli* O157:H7, which can cause a lethal infection in humans, popularly known as "hamburger disease."

Ebola viruses contain RNA. For the manufacture of a new virus, the infecting virus must use the host cell's genetic machinery to read the viral payload of RNA and to manufacture one of the viral proteins. Once this so-called nonstructural protein is made, it can decode the remaining viral genetic material to manufacture seven other proteins. These proteins are described as being structural—they are used to form the new virus. The new virus particles are eventually released from the host cell when the cell bursts, and another cycle of infection begins as new cells are infected. How the virus, with just eight proteins, manages to make new copies of itself and evade the attempts by the hosts' immune system to stop the infection is unclear.

In their natural host, the Ebola virus presumably does not cause a serious infection. If it did, it would not persist, since the host would be killed. However, in humans the resulting infection can be devastating. Within days, Ebola-Zaire and Ebola-Sudan produce a high fever, headache, generalized muscle aches (myalgia), abdominal pain, tiredness, and diarrhea. Cells lining the intestinal tract and stomach can be damaged, causing bloody diarrhea and vomiting of blood. At this stage some people do recover. But, for many, the infection worsens. Massive internal bleeding sends a person into shock and can cause heart damage. Death soon follows.

One of the challenges of combating an Ebola outbreak is the fact that the early symptoms of the infection are similar to those of the flu, malaria, typhoid fever, and several bacterial infections, which occur more often and are not as serious. By the time the true nature of the infection becomes known, many people in a community could have been infected.

The swiftness of the infection has been noted by some authors. Others feel, however, that the two-week course of the infection is not unusually quick. The latter view is true when a patient is near medical care in a developed country. However, in rural regions of Africa where Ebola is most common, medical care may be days in coming and even then may not be capable of dealing with a severe infection. In that situation, even a disease that develops within a week is swift and serious.

In some Ebola outbreaks, the initial infection has been traced to contact between humans and an animal (usually a primate) that harbors the virus. However, it is still unclear whether the primate is the natural host or becomes infected through contact with another animal. What is now clear is that the contagious person-to-person transmission of the virus subsequently occurs via infected blood or body fluids. This transfer can occur directly, with someone coming into contract with blood or body fluids during handling and care of a patient. Accidental infection during study of the virus also has occurred.

The rapid spread of Ebola is also aided by the location of most of the outbreaks. The areas in Africa where Ebola appears are poor, rural, and do not have medical facilities close by. The health care facilities that are available are not likely to have space available to isolate the infected patient from other patients, which can contribute to the spread of the infection.

The pattern of the Ebola-Reston outbreak that occurred in Virginia in 1989 indicates that the virus may be capable of airborne spread. In that outbreak, at least one of the primates who became ill was never in contact or even in the same room as the other sick primates. Lab studies have demonstrated that aerosols of the virus can infect test animals. Whether this route plays a major role in Ebola is unclear, but the general feeling is that airborne transmission is not as important as transmission by body fluids.

Scope and Distribution

Almost all confirmed cases of Ebola through 2007 have been in Africa. However, the infection may also occur in the Western Pacific because the Reston, Virginia, outbreaks were caused by monkeys imported from the Philippines.

The rapid deterioration of a person following the appearance of symptoms and the fact that the affected villages can be difficult to reach has meant that response to infections by disease control officials from organizations such as the WHO and the CDC occurs long after the disease has begun. This has made the discovery of Ebola's origin difficult. As of 2007, the source of the Ebola viruses is still unknown. The general agreement among scientists who study Ebola is that, because other filoviruses can infect African monkeys, macaques, and chimpanzees without causing harm to these hosts, the host for the Ebola viruses may be similar. However, Ebola does harm some primates. Furthermore, an intensive 12-year-long sampling of tens of thousands of amphibians, mammals, birds, reptiles, and insects failed to detect the viruses.

Bats have also been considered as Ebola's natural host. The people who first became ill in two of the outbreaks worked in buildings where bats lived and may have come into contact with the bats. Furthermore, in a study that deliberately introduced Ebola virus into a number of vertebrates, the virus persisted only in bats. More evidence supporting the involvement of bats was published in *Nature* in 2006. The study reported on a survey of over 1,000 animals from Gabon and Republic of the Congo, including over 650 bats. Of these, Ebola virus RNA was found in 13 fruit bats. Bats also can harbor several other viruses that are related to Ebola. This evidence for the involvement of bats as the natural host of Ebola is still circumstantial. To date, there is no evidence that an infected bat is capable of infecting another animal, such as a primate.

Treatment and Prevention

Currently, there is no cure for Ebola. Treatment consists of keeping the patient as comfortable and pain-free as possible and minimizing the spread of infection. Additional treatment measures include restoring lost fluids, trying to minimize bleeding, and dealing with any secondary infections that might occur.

As of 2007, prevention of Ebola is impossible, but research is underway on several fronts. Antisense drugs have been used successfully in a small number of infected Rhesus monkeys. Antisense therapy uses genetic material that is complimentary to the region of interest in the virus. Because the added stretch of genetic material is complimentary, it binds with the target region. This prevents the target region from being used in the viral replication process. Put another way, antisense drugs can shut down the infectious process. Whether this approach will prove successful as a prevention strategy for Ebola is unclear, and much research still remains to be done.

Vaccines are another preventative strategy that is being actively explored. In the case of Ebola, several other viruses have been engineered to contain one of the Ebola proteins that is present on the surface of the virus. This bioengineered virus is then administered to monkeys, and the monkeys produce antibodies to the Ebola surface protein. When an intact Ebola virus is given to the monkeys, the anti-Ebola antibody can block the attachment of the Ebola surface protein to the host cell. This approach has shown enough promise to warrant giving the vaccine to humans to see if they produce the anti-Ebola antibody. As of 2007, this vaccine is still being studied.

IN CONTEXT: CULTURAL CONNECTIONS

Because the Ebola virus is transmitted by direct contact with the body fluids (blood, secretions, etc.) of infected persons, living or dead, various cultural practices can facilitate Ebola transmission. The World Health Organization (WHO) states "Burial ceremonies where mourners have direct contact with the body of the deceased person can play a significant role in the transmission of Ebola."

WHO also reports that "the infection of human cases with Ebola virus has been documented through the handling of infected chimpanzees, gorillas, and forest antelopes—both dead and alive—as was documented in Côte d'Ivoire, the Republic of Congo and Gabon."

SOURCE: *World Health Organization*

Impacts and Issues

Ebola affects people in the most basic way. It strikes with little warning and can sweep through a village in a short time. In the rural settings where the disease usually occurs, medical care is minimal and health care providers are stretched to their limits to contain the infection and provide basic comforts to those who are ill.

Though the best selling book *The Hot Zone* and the movie *Outbreak* were somewhat sensational, they address the lethality of Ebola. These popular depictions of Ebola served a useful purpose in making the average person more aware of Ebola specifically and infectious diseases in general.

Ebola is a striking example of how human encroachment on regions that were previously uninhabited can bring people into contact with microorganisms to which they had not been previously exposed. Another example of this phenomenon is the emergence of avian influenza in humans. Long a disease transferred between some species of poultry, closer human contact with poultry has enabled the avian flu virus to adapt so that it is capable of, initially, bird-to-human transmission and, within the past several years, human-to-human transmission.

In the case of Ebola, human encroachment on previously uninhabited areas includes increased contact with the natural host of the disease. The blurring of the boundaries between the human and the natural world has brought people into closer contact with primates, who are either the natural reservoir of the virus or who acquire the infection from the natural reservoir, possibly a fruit bat. The virus can spread to humans who kill and eat apes or chimpanzees. Bush meat, including the meat of primates, has long been eaten by rural Africans, and its sale is still an important part of the rural economy. In addition, bush meat has become increasingly popular as a delicacy in the western world.

The link between the consumption of bush meat and the spread of Ebola has spurred efforts to restrict poaching. A 2005 meeting involving 23 African nations and representatives of the United Nations addressed the problem of the declining great ape population and urged stricter controls on poaching and deforestation (which increases the access of people to ape territory). While admirable, the effectiveness of the campaign is debatable. Ape meat is still available for sale in many local markets in regions of Africa and is sought by buyers in western countries.

While some species may naturally harbor the Ebola virus without harm, other species are being decimated. Beginning in 2002, conservationists in some regions of Africa began to note a die-off of western gorillas and common chimpanzees. The great ape population in the African nation of Gabon has declined by half since the 1990s, with Ebola and poaching cited as the most likely causes. Without a concerted effort, these near-human creatures may become extinct within decades.

Part of the reason for the ferocity of an Ebola outbreak is a lack of understanding of the disease among those who are most affected by it. More education targeting those who are at risk of acquiring the infection is still needed. For example, burial customs in many African cultures include an open viewing of the deceased, which potentially exposes the mourners to the virus. This practice can amplify the spread of the virus—that is, the virus can affect more people than it otherwise would. Amplification is an important means by which a variety of viral and bacterial diseases can spread. In the case of Ebola and mourning customs, learning to pay respect to the deceased person without touching or even seeing them would help reduce the spread of Ebola.

During some initial outbreaks, well-meaning medical personnel helped spread the virus. The infection of health care workers is, unfortunately, a common aspect of Ebola outbreaks. The use of protective measures, such as masks and gloves, lessens the risk of passing the infection to caregivers. In some rural clinics, however, such measures—commonplace in medical clinics in developed countries—are a luxury.

Development of a vaccine is a primary goal of those concerned with the control of Ebola. In 2003, researchers at the Dale and Betty Bumpers Vaccine Research Center and the U.S. Army Medical Research Institute reported the development of a vaccine that protects monkeys from injected Ebola virus. The vaccine involves a two-stage process in which immunity results from the injection of non-infectious genetic material from the Ebola virus followed a few weeks later by the introduction of another virus that carries genes of the Ebola virus, which are vital to the establishment of an infection. The resulting immune response can stop the Ebola infection.

As of 2007, the DNA vaccine is still undergoing evaluation. Small-scale human trials have been done. However, one stumbling block in its development concerns the ethical issue of testing the vaccine in humans on the large scale required for approval processes, since this would involve exposing people to the virus. In addition, it is not clear whether a vaccine will work in people whose immune systems are not functioning normally. This is an important consideration, since Africa is also home to millions of people who suffer from acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), a disease whose hallmark is the deterioration in immune system function.

Another issue concerning serious infections, including Ebola, is the potential of the microbe to be used as a weapon. Indeed, Ebola has been considered for development as a biological weapon by both the United States and Russia (then the Soviet Union). More recently, members of the Japanese cult Aum Shinrikyo—who released sarin gas in the Tokyo subway system in 1995, killing 12 people and injuring almost 1,000—visited Zaire in 1992. Under the guise of offering medical aid to victims of an Ebola outbreak, cult members instead tried to acquire some virus to use as a terrorist weapon.

■ Primary Source Connection

The following press release from the World Health Organization details its field response to a 2004 Ebola outbreak in southern Sudan. Along with mobilizing supplies and health workers, education of local villagers at the center of the outbreak was crucial in containing the spread of the disease.

WHO Announces End of Ebola Outbreak in Southern Sudan

Geneva—Today marks the 42nd day since the last person identified as infected with Ebola haemorrhagic fever died on 26 June 2004 in Yambio Hospital, southern Sudan. As 42 days is twice the maximum incubation period for Ebola, and as no further cases have been identified, WHO declares today that the outbreak in southern Sudan is over.

"The rapid containment of this outbreak was a tremendous success for the health authorities, WHO, and the international community involved in the control operations," said Dr Abdullah Ahmed, head of WHO, southern Sudan, and coordinator of the response.

As of today, the health authorities of Yambio County have reported a total of 17 cases, including seven deaths from Ebola. Ebola haemorrhagic fever is a febrile illness which causes death in 50–90% of all clinically ill cases. It is transmitted by direct contact with the blood, secretions, organs or bodily fluids of infected persons.

"In Yambio, WHO and our partners were able to apply lessons learned during responses to the five Ebola outbreaks that have occurred since 2000," said Dr. Pierre Formenty, who worked as part of WHO's response team. Ebola outbreaks have been detected more frequently in recent years, making local and international collaboration essential.

During this outbreak, Ebola virus (sub-type Sudan) was confirmed by laboratory tests at the Kenya Medical Research Institute and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in the United States. When the outbreak was first reported in late May, a response team including members from WHO southern Sudan Early Warning and Response Network (EWARN), and WHO headquarters was formed to work with local health authorities in creating a Crisis Committee to control the outbreak.

The committee included UNICEF, Médecins Sans Frontières-France and other non-governmental organizations and churches working in public health. The international response to the outbreak also included partners from WHO's Regional Office for the Eastern Mediterranean, the Global Outbreak Alert and Response Network (GOARN) as well as experts from the CDC, the European Programme for Intervention Epidemiology Training, Field Epidemiology Training Programme, Egypt and the Health Protection Agency in the United Kingdom.

Intensive social mobilization for Ebola was essential to the outbreak's containment. Key messages about the disease and behaviour-specific precautionary advice were passed on to the people in and around Yambio by local community advocates.

"Once the people of Yambio were convinced of the very real risks Ebola posed and they understood what they could do to protect themselves and their families the outbreak response was greatly accelerated," said Ms. Asiya Odugleh from the WHO Mediterranean Centre for Vulnerability Reduction, Tunis, who assisted the county social mobilization team.

The control efforts included, for example, an isolation ward at Yambio Hospital with a low fence so that patients were effectively isolated, yet still able to see and talk to their family and friends over the fence at a safe distance. Such simple adaptations of disease control measures made it easier for families to accept the case management of patients in the isolation unit, while ensuring maximum protection for the medical team and patients.

"The lessons we learned in Yambio from this outbreak will strengthen our responses to future outbreaks," said Dr. Hassan El Bushra from the WHO Regional Office for the Eastern Mediterranean in Cairo. The Yambio experience has proven the value of rapid outbreak detection, local response capacities, active community involvement, and the coordination of specialized international assistance to the outbreak's containment.

"WHO cannot predict where or when the next Ebola outbreak will happen," said Dr. El Bushra, "But we can continue laying the groundwork by building on what we have learned in Yambio."

World Health Organization. Epidemic and Pandemic Alert and Response.

WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION. "WHO ANNOUNCES END OF EBOLA OUTBREAK IN SOUTHERN SUDAN." PRESS RELEASE, AUGUST 7, 2004. AVAILABLE ONLINE AT <HTTP://WWW.WHO.INT/CSR/DON/2004_08_07/EN/INDEX.HTML>

See Also *Antiviral Drugs; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Hemorrhagic Fevers; Vector-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Hirschmann, Kris. *The Ebola Virus.* San Diego: Lucent Books, 2006.

Regis, Ed. *Virus Ground Zero: Stalking the Killer Viruses with the Centers for Disease Control.* New York: Pocket Books, 2003.

Smith, Tara. *Ebola*. London: Chelsea House Publications, 2005.

Periodicals

Leroy, E.M., et al. "Fruits Bats as Reservoirs of Ebola Virus." *Nature* 438 (December 1, 2005): 575–576.

Brian Hoyle

Economic Development and Infectious Disease

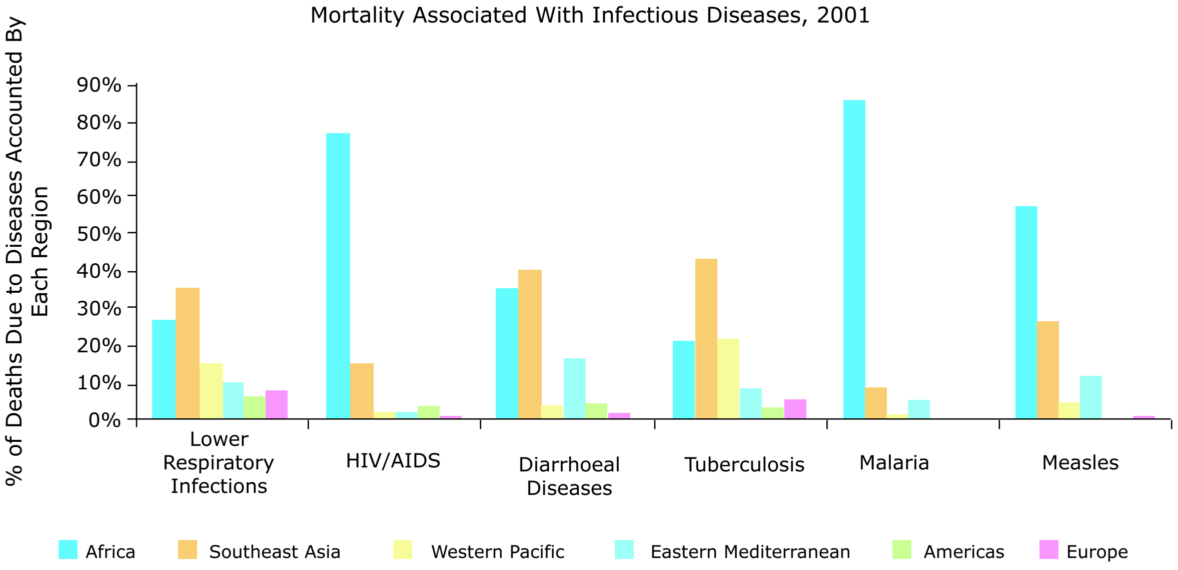
Introduction

Across the nations of the world, there is a relationship between income and health. Developed nations often have lower average morbidity (illness) and mortality (death) rates than developing nations. Mortality rates drop over time as countries increase in wealth. Within countries, wealthier people typically live longer than poorer people.

History and Scientific Foundations

The impact of economic conditions on health status has long been recognized, based on studies of the effects of food scarcity, shelter, and living space. Although economic conditions have been de-emphasized as factors in mortality and morbidity because of the dissemination of medical technologies, there is increasing evidence that this diffusion of health knowledge and technology has had differential effects in developed and underdeveloped nations. Studies of this topic typically focus on national income (the value of all goods and services produced in a given period). Secondly, per capita income (income per person) is the leading indicator of economic development and motivates many health policy decisions. Thus, many observers are calling for greater global economic development. Critics assail the emphasis on economic development over public health, but others assert that

A Chinese vendor is shown having lunch on a closed street in a tourist district in Beijing in spring 2003. The government estimates Beijing's tourism industry lost $7 billion because of SARS. *© Reuters/Corbis.*



This 2001 chart illustrates that the deaths resulting from five types of infectious diseases that occur more frequently in developing countries. *© World Health Organization (WHO).*

public health initiatives are too often thwarted by political and economic instability and food scarcity.

Studies have found a significant positive correlation between income and health status in both developed and developing economies. In more developed countries, the causal path typically goes from health status to income, with feedback from income to health. Healthier people are wealthy, but wealthy people may have increased access to healthcare and wellness resources. However, whether income "buys" better health and just how this may occur has proven difficult for economists to quantify, especially for adults in the work force. In developed countries, the most documented connection between income and health is based on studies of infant mortality rates, the scope of which cannot support a robust analysis of the feedback from health to income.

The mechanisms producing a relationship between money and health are complex. Variables such as race, education, and urban or rural status may also influence income or health for many individuals. The causes of poor health status in less developed countries may be different from the factors that undermine health in industrialized countries. In developing countries, infectious disease, lack of clean drinking water, and inadequate diet may present the greatest public health risks. In developed nations, lifestyle-related chronic diseases and reduced physical activity may present the greatest public health threats.

The connecting mechanisms underlying the relationship between health and income are sometimes not specific to the level of industrialization. This relationship in "middle income" or transition economies may be particularly hard to analyze because persons in the same communities, and even in the same households, can be disproportionately affected by problems common to both developed and less-developed regions. For example, obese women may be neighbors or even housemates of malnourished children. Thus the scientific underpinnings of the relationship between development, income and health are best served by focusing on universal mechanisms—such as psychosocial stress (stress caused by social, psychological, and environmental factors)—that are likely to be found in every society and community.

A study of data sponsored by the World Health Organization (WHO) summarized below that confirms a link between income and health casts light on the interplay between wealth and health. In particular, the study focused on how income improves health apart from the availability of medical services. The study results indicate that increased earnings capacity, along with policies that provide for income transfers to those less wealthy, may be as important for health outcomes as additional funds for service provision. Within countries, income is strongly correlated with health outcomes, especially in settings where the health services delivery is weak. This correlation exists apart from the presence of vital public health campaigns to provide clean water, eradicate malaria, vaccinate children, or deliver AIDS treatment drugs in developing countries.

In view of the possible independence of income as a factor in improving health, a question arises regarding the efficiency of public and private funds aimed at health

WORDS TO KNOW

MORBIDITY: The term “morbidity” comes from the Latin word “morbus,” which means sick. In medicine it refers not just to the state of being ill, but also to the severity of the illness. A serious disease is said to have a high morbidity.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term “mortality” comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means “death.” Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., “Rabies has a high mortality.”

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

promotion. For example, investment in economic development, employment opportunities and income support for the poor might have equal or greater impact on health than would public expenditures on health services availability. People with more income may spend income on goods and services associated with better health—more nutritious food, better housing, exercise, or leisure activities.

Applications and Research

The impact of improved pensions on health in South Africa

A “natural experiment” reported by Princeton University that illuminated the relationship between income and health dealt with the institution of larger pension payments to all elderly South Africans. To determine whether income has a causal effect on health, WHO-sponsored investigators identified state old-age pension payments as a source of income that is not determined by a respondent’s health status. According to the report, in South Africa, women aged 60 and older and men aged 65 and older are eligible for a monthly cash transfer, if they do not have an employer-based pension, and over 80% of eligible people take up this source of income, which in many communities, where unemployment reaches up to 40%, is the only stable and considerable source of income.

The health survey showed that pension income had a protective effect on the self-reported health of all adults in which the pension income was pooled with that of other household members. For pensioners living in households in which income was not pooled, the beneficial health effects of the pension accrued only to the pensioners, after they started receiving the pension. These effects persisted regardless of geographic location, race, educational level, and income level.

The researchers investigated whether higher income tended to have an impact on four major areas of daily life: medical care, water and sanitation, nutrition, and psychosocial stress. They found no evidence from the survey data suggesting that higher incomes enabled respondents to spend more time and money seeking out better health services such as private physicians and better equipped clinics. Also, access to cleaner water was apparently not improved, although higher and pooled income families were more likely to have a flush toilet. However, higher and pooled income families were more likely to report improved nutrition and fewer skipped meals, which were correlated with better health status. Finally, income was correlated with reduced self-reported depression symptoms connected to psychosocial stress. Depression has been associated with increased all-cause medical symptoms in many studies. Thus the researchers concluded that income has a causal effect on health status, which is mediated by a combination of improved sanitation, nutrition, and the reduction of psychosocial stress.

Impacts and Issues

Social inequality and infectious disease

Evidence is mounting that social inequalities contribute significantly to disease emergence. These inequalities have impacted not only the distribution of infectious diseases, but also the severity and outcome of disease in affected persons. Analyses of outbreaks of Ebola, AIDS, and tuberculosis indicate that disease emergence is influenced by specific events and processes, subject to local variation. Close examination of mutations in microorganisms often shows that human actions have been key factors in increasing the spread of disease and resistance to antibiotics. For example, tropical diseases such as malaria generally affect people in lower socioeconomic brackets, while people with higher incomes may purchase mosquito nets, insect repellants, or live in areas with better drainage and fewer mosquitoes.

The distribution of Ebola outbreaks affect (apart from researchers) people living in poverty and health care workers who serve the poor, but often not others in close physical proximity. For example, the 1976 outbreak in Zaire affected 318 persons. The cases could be traced to failure to follow contact precautions and improper sterilization of syringes and other equipment and supplies. Once these measures were taken, the outbreak was terminated. This explanation suggests that Ebola does not always emerge randomly. Rather, the likelihood of coming into contact with unsterile syringes in, for example, health clinics, is inversely proportional to social status. Population groups with access to high-quality medical services are thus unlikely to contract Ebola even in Ebola affected regions.

The reemergence of tuberculosis is another powerful example of the impact of social inequality on the epidemiology of infections. For decades the disease was largely absent Western Europe and North America, but remained endemic in many developing and underdeveloped nations worldwide. World trade, increased migration, and international travel have reintroduced tuberculosis to regions where the disease had once been eliminated.

Thus, socioeconomic (social and economic factors considered) inequality within nations may have helped foster the virulence of old and new infectious diseases. Economic inequality between nations may also accentuate differences in the distribution of infectious diseases. National borders cannot keep out all pathogens (disease-causing organisms), but can be substantial boundaries to infectious disease response and the provision of healthcare.

Economic development's impact on tuberculosis in India

Approximately a half-million people in India die of tuberculosis annually. Until recently, fewer than 50% of people with tuberculosis received an accurate diagnosis. Less than half of these people received effective treatment. A study by the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare analyzed the impact of health policies promulgated in 1993 that devoted increased resources such as improved diagnosis, case management of treatment, and the use of uniform anti-tuberculosis treatments as well as improved case reporting methods. The program trained more than 200,000 health workers and improved access to services for 436 million people (more than 40 percent of India's population). Under the program's auspices, about 3.4 million patients were evaluated for tuberculosis, and nearly 800,000 had received treatment by late 2001, with a success rate greater than 80 percent. Thus India's tuberculosis-control program has succeeded in improving access to care, the quality of diagnosis, and the probability of successful treatment. This has translated into the prevention of 200,000 deaths and the alleviation of indirect medical costs (e.g., productivity and caregiving costs) of more than $400 million—an order of magnitude greater than the cost of program implementation.

In spite of the program's success, ministry officials observe that it will be a challenging to sustain and expand the program due to the country's current limited primary health care system and large—but mainly unregulated—private health care system. Furthermore, India struggling with an increase in incidence of HIV and multi-drug-resistant tuberculosis.

The advance of public health systems and spread of advanced medical knowledge and technology has certainly resulted in improvements in the health status worldwide. However, lack of economic development and vast income inequalities across and within national boundaries continue to present major obstacles to public health. Poverty has prevented equality in healthcare among nations. Infectious diseases continue to be the major cause of death worldwide, with 25% of all deaths and 30% of the global disease burden attributed to communicable diseases. More than 95% of these deaths, the majority of which are preventable, occur in the poorest areas of the developing nations. HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, and malaria are the three most lethal infectious diseases in these regions.

Health assistance to developing countries, especially for these three diseases, has been based on advocacy for the principles of social justice and the human right to health in the developing world. Given the increasing integration of the global economy, economic development in lower income countries will increase profitable investment opportunities for wealthier countries in the developing world. Improved public health in developing countries also has political and international security benefits for developed nations.

■ Primary Source Connection

The following press release from the World Health Organization (WHO) outlines the economic impacts of malaria, including the costs on present generations for past failures to more significantly control the disease.

Economic Costs Of Malaria Are Many Times Higher Than Previously Estimated

AFRICA'S GDP WOULD BE UP TO $100 BILLION GREATER THIS YEAR IF MALARIA HAD BEEN ELIMINATED YEARS AGO, ACCORDING TO NEW RESEARCH BY HARVARD, LONDON SCHOOL AND WHO.

Abuja, Nigeria—The control of malaria in Africa would significantly increase the continent's economic productivity and the income of African families, according to the findings of a new report released today by the World Health Organization, Harvard University and the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine.

"The evidence strongly suggests that malaria obstructs overall economic development in Africa," said Dr. Jeffrey Sachs, Director of the Center for International Development at Harvard University. "Since 1990, the per person GDP in many sub-Saharan African countries has declined, and malaria is an important reason for this poor economic performance."

According to statistical estimates in the report, sub-Saharan Africa's GDP would be up to 32% greater this year if malaria had been eliminated 35 years ago. This would represent up to $100 billion added to sub-Saharan Africa's current GDP of $300 billion. This extra $100 billion would be, by comparison, nearly five times greater than all development aid provided to Africa last year.

According to the report, malaria slows economic growth in Africa by up to 1.3% each year. This slowdown in economic growth due to malaria is over and above the more readily observed short run costs of the disease. Since sub-Saharan Africa's GDP is around $300 billion, the short-term benefits of malaria control can reasonably be estimated at between $3 billion and $12 billion per year. "Malaria is hurting the living standards of Africans today and is also preventing the improvement of living standards for future generations," said Dr. Gro Harlem Brundtland, Director General of the World Health Organization. "This is an unnecessary and preventable handicap on the continent's economic development."

The report also finds that:

- Malaria-free countries average three times higher GDP per person than malarious countries, even after controlling for government policy, geographical location, and other factors which impact on economic well-being.
- One healthy year of life is gained for every $1 to $8 spent on effectively treating malaria cases, which makes the malaria treatment as cost-effective a public health investment as measles vaccinations. This analysis, carried out by Dr. Ann Mills, LSHTM, demonstrates that malaria control tools and intervention strategies provide good value for money.

"Malaria is taking costly bites out of Africa," said Dr. David Nabarro, executive director at WHO. "It is feasting on the health and development of African children and it is draining the life out of African economies."

The report recommends that $1 billion annually be devoted to malaria prevention and control and that most of this expenditure be focused in Africa. This is many times greater than the amount which is currently being spent. It argues that spending this amount is economically justifiable as the short-term benefits of malaria control can reasonably be estimated at between $3 billion and $12 billion per year.

"The benefits of committing substantial new economic resources to malaria will greatly exceed the costs," said Sachs.

The findings of the report will be presented today at the first ever summit to focus on malaria. The heads of state of twenty African nations and the executive directors of the African Development Bank, World Bank, UNDP, UNICEF, UNESCO and WHO are expected to be present to hear the findings. The Summit is being hosted in Abuja, Nigeria by the country's president, His Excellency Olusegun Obasanjo, and is co-sponsored by WHO.

Malaria accounts for nearly one million deaths each year in Africa; an estimated 700,000 of these deaths are among children. Research has found that the wider availability and use of insecticide treated bednets would result in 50 percent less malaria illness among children. Yet presently, only 2% of African children are protected at night with a treated bednet. "Roll Back Malaria aims to help African families create a mosquito free zone in the home through the use of nets, drapes, or bednets treated with insecticide," said Dr. Awash Teklehaimanot, acting project manager for Roll Back Malaria. "Our goal is to ensure that every person at risk of malaria in Africa is protected with an insecticide-treated bednet within the next five years."

In addition to ensuring wider availability of treated nets, Roll Back Malaria is also working to provide greater access to rapid diagnosis and quick treatment with the appropriate therapies—ideally in the home; preventing malaria illness during pregnancy; and detecting and responding to epidemics quickly.

"Halving the burden of malaria is realistic and achievable," said Dr. Gro Harlem Brundtland, Director-General of WHO. "We have the tools. We have the economic justification. We now need leaders from both the public and private sectors stepping forward to make this happen."

World Health Organization

WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION (WHO). "ECONOMIC COSTS OF MALARIA ARE MANY TIMES HIGHER THAN PREVIOUSLY ESTIMATED" PRESS RELEASE. APRIL 25, 2000.

SEE ALSO *Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Public Health and Infectious Disease; World Trade and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Lopez, Alan, Colin Mathers, and Majid Ezzati. *Global Burden of Disease and Risk Factors.* World Bank Group, 2006.

Periodicals

Adler, Nancy E., and Joan M. Ostrove. "Socioeconomic Status and Health: What We Know and What We Don't," *Ann N Y Acad Sci.* (1999): 3-15.

Farmer, P. "Social Inequalities and Emerging Infectious Diseases." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* Vol. 2, No. 4 (October-December, 1996).

Smith, J.P. "Healthy Bodies and Thick Wallets: The Dual Relationship between Health and Economic Status." *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, 13 (2) (1999): 145-66.

Web Sites

United Nations. "UN Millennium Development Goals." <http://www.un.org/millenniumgoals/> (accessed June 8, 2007).

Other Resources

Case, Anne, and Francis Wilson. "Health and Wellbeing in South Africa: Evidence from the Langeberg Survey," mimeo. Princeton University, 2001.

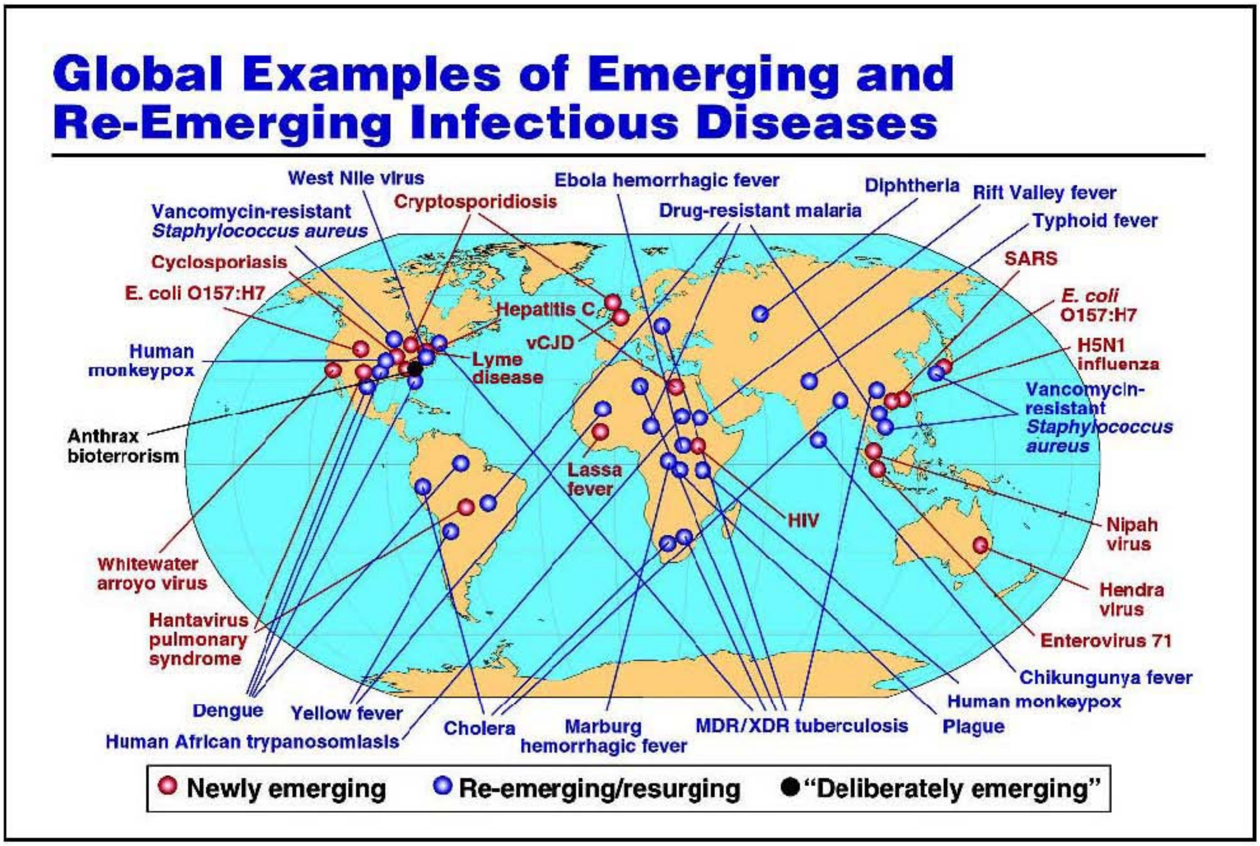
Kenneth T. LaPensee

Emerging Infectious Diseases

Introduction

Emerging infectious diseases are human diseases caused by pathogens (disease-causing organisms) that have increased in prevalence over the past several decades (since the 1970s), or microbial diseases that are becoming more widespread. These diseases can be new, previously unrecognized, or re-emergent (diseases that were once under control but which have reappeared and again become a concern).

Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome) is an example of a disease that has truly emerged. Another example of a newly emerging infectious disease is avian


Global Examples of Emerging and Re-Emerging Infectious Diseases
West Nile virus
Ebola hemorrhagic fever
Diphtheria
Rift Valley fever
Vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
Cryptosporidiosis
Drug-resistant malaria
Typhoid fever
Cyclosporiasis
SARS
E. coli O157:H7
E. coli O157:H7
Hepatitis C
H5N1 influenza
Human monkeypox
vCJD
Lyme disease
Vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
Anthrax bioterrorism
Lassa fever
HIV
Nipah virus
Whitewater arroyo virus
Hendra virus
Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome
Enterovirus 71
Chikungunya fever
Human monkeypox
Dengue
Yellow fever
Cholera
Marburg hemorrhagic fever
MDR/XDR tuberculosis
Plague
Human African trypanosomiasis
Newly emerging
Re-emerging/resurging
"Deliberately emerging"

Map showing newly emerging and re-emerging infectious diseases by color in 2007: newly emerging diseases (red); re-emerging/resurging diseases (blue); and "deliberately emerging" diseases (black). *Courtesy of Anthony S. Fauci, M.D., National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases.*

Doctors perform severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) research in a laboratory in Rotterdam, The Netherlands, in April 2003. Their experiments on monkeys confirmed the identity of the emerging coronavirus that causes SARS. *AP Images.*

influenza, a viral disease originally a problem in poultry that has evolved to be capable of infecting humans. Tuberculosis (TB) is an example of a re-emergent disease. Incidence of TB has increased in many regions and developed several drug-resistant strains.

History and Scientific Foundations

A microbial disease can appear and spread in a population for several reasons. Emergence may be genuine—that is, a microbe changes in some way that makes it capable of causing disease or of being transmitted. An example is *Escherichia coli* O157:H7, which emerged as a serious pathogen when a toxin-coding gene was passed to a non-pathogenic version of *E. coli* by a related organism, *Shigella*. Other changes can occur that alter the surface structure of a bacterium or virus that makes the organism more capable of infecting a host, environmentally hardy, or resistant to antibacterial agents.

Alternatively, a disease may be present but remain undetected in a population until the occurrence of an outbreak. An example is Hantavirus, which was first recognized in the early 1950s in Korea, but which sprang to prominence in 1993 when an outbreak in the southwestern United States. Ebola, which likely existed in its natural reservoir (an unaffected host that may be several species of fruit bat) for a long time, was not recognized as a human pathogen until a large human outbreak occurred in Uganda in 2000–2001.

Emerging infectious disease can also involve once-problematic diseases that were controlled but which have re-emerged as a problem. In addition to tuberculosis, other examples of reemerging infectious diseases include malaria, influenza, and gonorrhea.

Approximately 75% of all emerging infectious diseases are zoonotic in nature, meaning they are transmitted from animals to people. As humans increasingly encroach on wild habitats, the opportunity to contract such infectious organisms increases. This is the main reason for the increased prevalence in the United States of the infections caused by the water-borne protozoa of the genera *Cryptosporidium* and *Giardia* and of the appearance and spread of Lyme disease, which is caused by a tick-borne bacterium.

At some point in time, all infectious diseases were emerging diseases. Polio and smallpox are two examples. Today, smallpox has been eradicated and polio remains endemic (occurs naturally) in only four countries: Afghanistan, India, Nigeria, and Pakistan. More recent examples of emerging diseases include AIDS and variant Creutzfeld-Jakob (nv-CJD or v-CJD) disease.

The first report of AIDS in the science literature was in 1981. Even then, the disease was already spreading. By 2004, an estimated 40 million people were infected with the Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV), the virus linked to AIDS. Efforts to combat HIV/AIDS include an international consortium called the Global HIV/AIDS Vaccine Enterprise and, as of February 2007, the Canadian HIV Vaccine Initiative, a $139 million initiative funded by the government of Canada and the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation.

Malaria is considered to be a reemerging disease because of its increasing prevalence. Malaria disproportionately affects pregnant women and young children in underdeveloped and developing countries. From one million to 2.7 million people die of the disease each year.

An estimated two million people die of tuberculosis each year and 30% of the world's population is infected with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.* The appearance of *M. tuberculosis* that is resistant to multiple antibiotics is a great concern to agencies such as the World Health Organization (WHO). In May 2007, two cases of tuberculosis that were resistant to every drug available to treat the disease were reported; there is concern that extremely drug-resistant tuberculosis (XDR-TB) will become a growing global problem.

Applications and Research

The ability to isolate the genetic material from a variety of infectious microorganisms and determine the genetic sequence of the material—a process that can now be completed in just a few days—is allowing researchers to identify the sequences that are important in disease. The discipline of proteomics, in which the structure and function of proteins are determined, is helping to identify targets for antimicrobial drugs and to design vaccines and other antimicrobial agents that prevent or treat infections.

Disease surveillance is important in monitoring the appearance and spread of emerging infectious diseases. As of 2007, organizations including WHO and CDC are closely tracking the spread of H5N1 avian influenza, especially the few, but geographically diverse, cases involving person-to-person transmission. Scientists are studying how the flight patterns of migratory birds interact with outbreaks of this strain of influenza. Researchers from the University of Georgia reported in 2006 that wood ducks and laughing gulls are highly susceptible to the H5N1 strain of avian influenza, and that these two species could serve as sentinels (indicators, or lookouts) for the presence of the H5N1 virus in wild birds in North America.

Impacts and Issues

The emergence or re-emergence of infectious diseases is influenced by a number of factors. A nation's economy affects the type and availability of health care; inadequate vaccination programs and a lack of general health care can make it easier for a disease to become established. As well, the overall heath and nutritional status of citizens in developing nations can be compromised, which makes them more susceptible to infectious disease.

Of the nearly 40 million people infected with HIV, two-thirds live in sub-Saharan Africa. Widespread poverty exacerbates the HIV/AIDS crisis in Africa as drug treatments are typically expensive. Efforts by organizations such as the WHO, UNICEF, CDC and some pharmaceutical companies are helping make HIV/AIDS drugs less expensive and more widely available in Africa.

One well-known agent of emerging infectious diseases is the increased resistance of a variety of bacteria to antibiotics. The resistance has been driven by the overuse and misuse of antibiotics—such as when used to combat a viral infection or when antibiotic therapy is stopped too soon. This selective pressure encourages the development of changes in bacteria that confers resistance and aids the proliferation of the newly-resistant bacteria.

Political change or conflict can favor the proliferation of an existing disease or the spread of an emerging one. Military conflict disables access to food, water, and adequate health care, as well as results in the mass movement people. Malnutrition and densely populated refugee or displaced person camps, many lacking proper sanitation, can exacerbate disease outbreaks. A vivid example is the influenza epidemic that occurred in the aftermath of World War I (1914–1918). Troops returning home from the battlefield spread influenza across Europe, to Russia, the United States, Australia, and New Zealand. The pandemic eventually spread worldwide. From 1918–1919, influenza claimed at least 20 million people, more than had been killed in the just-ended war.

The delivery of health services that lead to the emergence of a disease can be interrupted by changes other than war. For example, the global effort to completely eradicate polio suffered a setback in 2003 when

WORDS TO KNOW

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

RESISTANT ORGANISM: Resistant organisms are bacteria, viruses, parasites, or other disease-causing agents that have stopped responding to drugs that once killed them.

SELECTIVE PRESSURE: Selective pressure refers to the tendency of an organism that has a certain characteristic to be eliminated from an environment or to increase in numbers. An example is the increased prevalence of bacteria that are resistant to multiple kinds of antibiotics.

SENTINEL: Sentinel surveillance is a method in epidemiology where a subset of the population is surveyed for the presence of communicable diseases. Also, a sentinel is an animal used to indicate the presence of disease within an area.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

vaccination of people in rural regions of the African country of Nigeria were halted by the government as a rumor circulated that the vaccine could cause sterility or AIDS. By the time these fears had been quelled and vaccination resumed in 2004, nearly 700 children had become infected with polio, representing almost 75% of the total number of cases around the world for the year. In 2005, WHO re-initiated the polio vaccination campaign in Nigeria. On National Immunization Day in May 2005, approximately 140,000 WHO-sanctioned volunteers went door-to-door in an attempt to inoculate every Nigerian child under five years of age.

WHO's Department of Communicable Disease Surveillance and Response is responsible for the global coordination of efforts to eradicate emerging infectious diseases such as avian influenza. Their global scope is necessary, as in the era of rapid travel diseases can quickly spread around the globe. This was exemplified by the 2003 emergence of Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS), which spread within days from Taiwan to North America, and eventually caused 229 deaths on four continents.

See Also *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Avian Influenza; Bioterrorism; Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Globalization and Infectious Disease; Pandemic Preparedness; Re-emerging Infectious Diseases; Virus Hunters.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

DiClaudio, Dennis. *The Hypochondriac's Pocket Guide to Horrible Diseases You Probably Already Have.* New York: Bloomsbury, 2005.

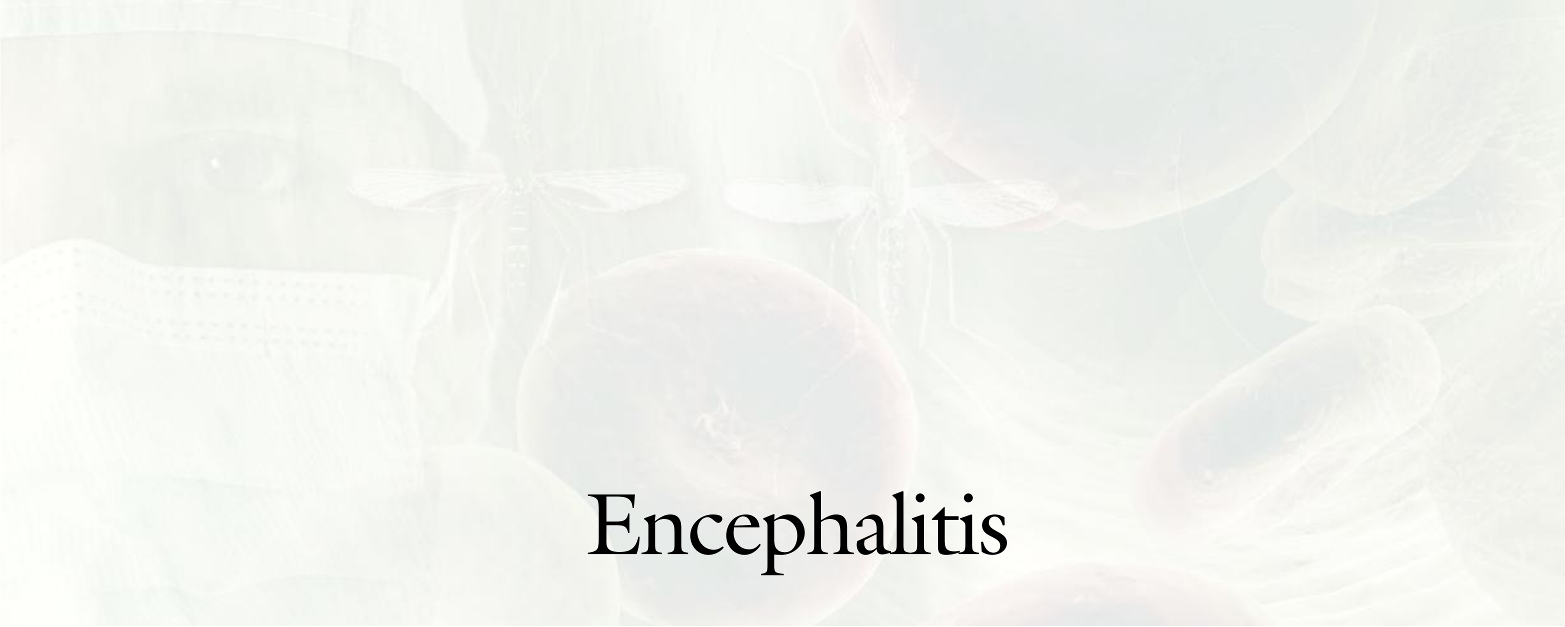
Fong, I.W., and Karl Drlica, eds. *Reemergence of Establish Pathogens in the 21st Century.* New York: Springer, 2003.

Palladino, Michael A., and Stuart Hill. *Emerging Infectious Diseases.* New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2005.

Web Sites

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Emerging Infectious Diseases." <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/dmid/eid/> (accessed May 25, 2007).

Brian Hoyle



Encephalitis

Introduction

Encephalitis is a type of acute brain inflammation, most often due to infection by a virus. When the inflammation occurs in the spinal cord, the condition is called myelitis, and when inflammation is in both the spinal cord and the brain, the condition is called encephalomyelitis. However, in reality, an infection in both areas is often referred to as encephalitis. The swelling in the brain that occurs in encephalitis can be serious and even life-threatening; brain damage, strokes, seizures, coma, and death can result. Encephalitis often accompanies bacterial meningitis (an infection of the lining of the brain known as the meninges).

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

There are two types of encephalitis—a primary form and a secondary form. Primary encephalitis is directly due to a new viral infection. This form of encephalitis can be localized in just one region of the brain or spinal cord (focal infection) or can be more widely distributed (diffuse infection).

A mother comforts her child, who suffers from Japanese encephalitis in India. The death toll from a 2005 Japanese encephalitis outbreak in northern India crossed the 1,000 mark, making it the most fatal outbreak of the illness in nearly two decades. Nearly all the dead were children. *STR/AFP/Getty Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ACUTE: An acute infection is one of rapid onset and of short duration, which either resolves or becomes chronic.

ARTHROPOD-BORNE DISEASE: A disease caused by one of a phylum of organisms characterized by exoskeletons and segmented bodies.

LATENT: A condition that is potential or dormant, not yet manifest or active, is latent.

MENINGITIS: Meningitis is an inflammation of the meninges—the three layers of protective membranes that line the spinal cord and the brain. Meningitis can occur when there is an infection near the brain or spinal cord, such as a respiratory infection in the sinuses, the mastoids, or the cavities around the ear. Disease organisms can also travel to the meninges through the bloodstream. The first signs may be a severe headache and neck stiffness followed by fever, vomiting, a rash, and, then, convulsions leading to loss of consciousness. Meningitis generally involves two types: nonbacterial meningitis, which is often called aseptic meningitis, and bacterial meningitis, which is referred to as purulent meningitis.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

Secondary encephalitis, or post-infective encephalitis, arises as a consequence of an ongoing viral infection or from an immunization procedure that utilizes a virus. The latter uses a virus that has been altered to be incapable of causing harm. However, in rare cases, the vaccine itself becomes harmful. Secondary encephalitis, which is also termed acute disseminated encephalitis, typically appears 2–3 weeks following the first infection or the immunization injection.

Worldwide, encephalitis due to infections by the herpes simplex viruses causes only about 10% of all cases of the disease. However, over half of these cases result in death. Many of the cases involve the reactivation of an earlier infection by a herpes simplex virus that became latent (this occurs when the viral genetic material is incorporated into the host's genetic material). Upon reactivation, production of new copies of the virus resumes, and the symptoms associated with the infection appear.

The original infection may be with herpes simplex type 1, which commonly causes cold sores and facial blistering. Encephalitis related to this virus can occur in anyone, but is most prevalent in people under 20 years of age and older than 40. The disease is contagious, being spread most often by inhalation of water droplets expelled by a cough or sneeze. The person who contracts the infection develops a headache and fever that can last almost a week. Subsequently, changes in personality and behavior, seizures, and delusions may appear, and severe brain damage may result. Encephalitis due to herpes simplex type 2 is typically spread through sexual contact or, less commonly, a newborn can contract the virus from his or her infected mother during birth.

In the United States and Canada, Powassan encephalitis is transmitted to humans by ticks, which have previously acquired the virus from infected deer. The symptoms of Powassan encephalitis—headache, fever, nausea, and disorientation—begin within two weeks following the tick bite. Paralysis and coma also can occur. About 50% of those who contract Powassan encephalitis will have permanent brain damage and more than 15% of those who become infected die of the infection.

In the United States, there are four types of mosquito-borne viral encephalitis. These are: equine encephalitis, LaCrosse encephalitis, St. Louis encephalitis, and West Nile encephalitis.

Rarely, a form of the disease known as limbic system encephalitis occurs. The primary symptom of this form of encephalitis is memory impairment similar to what is seen in individuals suffering from Alzheimer's disease or Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease. A variation of limbic encephalitis called paraneoplastic limbic encephalitis is linked to the development of cancer.

■ Scope and Distribution

In the United States, there are several thousand reported cases of encephalitis every year. However, according to the U.S. National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke, the actual tally is likely much higher, since many people do not seek medical help for cases that produce mild symptoms or no symptoms at all.

Encephalitis occurs in many regions of the world. For example, mosquito-borne forms of encephalitis are present in North and South America, Europe, Russia, Asia, India, northern Africa, and even Australia.

In the United States, encephalitis is usually caused by an enterovirus, by the herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2, by an arbovirus that is transmitted from an infected animal to humans via a vector such as a mosquito (an example is West Nile disease) or tick, or by the bite of a rabid animal such as a raccoon that is infected with the rabies virus. Lyme disease, which is caused by the bacterium *Borrelia burdorferi*, can also cause encephalitis.

One factor that has contributed to the global distribution of encephalitis is the fact that it is contagious, and can be passed from person to person by coughing or sneezing, releasing contaminated droplets into the air. In addition, the microorganisms that cause encephalitis can contaminate food and water.

Herpes simplex-mediated encephalitis is rare in the United States, occurring in about 1 person per 250,000–500,000 population per year. The other forms of the disease can occur more frequently. For instance, children can develop encephalitis after a bout of measles, mumps, or rubella.

Viral encephalitis that is transmitted to humans via a vector, like a mosquito or tick, is more common in the United States. One such vector-borne encephalitis is equine encephalitis. As its name implies, equine encephalitis can affect horses. This disease in horses can be serious, and often comes before the detection of the disease in humans. A form called eastern equine encephalitis (EEE) is prevalent along the eastern coastal region of the United States and the coast of the Gulf of Mexico. Fever, muscles aches, and headache develop 3–10 days after being bitten by a virus-carrying mosquito. The headache becomes progressively worse, and, in severe cases, a person can lapse into a coma and die. The disease is still rare, despite having been known to occur in the United States since the 1930s. Only an average of five cases of eastern equine encephalitis appear in the United States each year; for these people, however, the consequences can be dire, as up to 50% may die.

The natural host of the EEE virus is still not precisely known, but the virus tends to infect birds that live near freshwater swamps. Whether the virus can survive the winter in northern climates is also unknown. Surveys of birds that live year-round in the northern climates have not detected the virus, and scientists suspect that returning migratory birds in the spring bring the virus back to these areas.

Western equine encephalitis is distributed in the western and central states of the United States. The virus was isolated in the United States in 1930 from an infected horse. Both horses and humans can be affected by this disease. The virus normally resides in a number of species of animals and birds, and is transmitted by mosquitoes. Symptoms begin about a week following infection. Children are particularly at risk of developing a severe form of the disease that can produce permanent brain damage.

The prevalence of western equine encephalitis has been influenced by agricultural practices. For example, the increasing irrigation of land has created more regions of stagnant water, which become breeding grounds for mosquitoes. In addition, the land becomes populated by bird species that naturally carry the virus.

Another form of equine encephalitis called Venezuelan equine encephalitis has killed thousands of people in epidemics in Central and South America. Survivors can have permanent brain damage.

IN CONTEXT: INFLAMMATION AS A NON-SPECIFIC DEFENSE

Inflammation is a localized, defensive response of the body to injury, usually characterized by pain, redness, heat, swelling, and, depending on the extent of trauma, loss of function. The process of inflammation, called the inflammatory response, is a series of events, or stages, that the body performs to attain homeostasis (the body's effort to maintain stability). The body's inflammatory response mechanism serves to confine, weaken, destroy, and remove bacteria, toxins, and foreign material at the site of trauma or injury. As a result, the spread of invading substances is halted, and the injured area is prepared for regeneration or repair. Inflammation is a nonspecific defense mechanism; the body's physiological response to a superficial cut is much the same as with a burn or a bacterial infection. The inflammatory response protects the body against a variety of invading pathogens and foreign matter, and should not be confused with an immune response.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*

LaCrosse encephalitis is another form of vector-borne encephalitis found in the United States. It is named for LaCrosse, Wisconsin, where the disease was first detected in 1963. It is typically distributed in midwestern states including Illinois, Indiana, Ohio, Iowa, and Wisconsin, but also has occurred in more eastern states. The virus is passed to mosquitoes from infected chipmunks and squirrels. Children and adolescents under 16 years of age are most at risk. Headache, fever, vomiting, and fatigue develop about one week following the mosquito bite. In more severe cases, a person can experience seizures. About 100 cases occur in the United States each year.

St. Louis encephalitis has been among the most common encephalitis diseases reported in the United States. Typically, there are around 130 cases reported to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) each year, although outbreaks can make thousands of people ill. There have been approximately 4,500 reported cases since 1964, with an average of almost 200 cases each year. The disease is transferred to mosquitoes from infected birds. In contrast to other forms of encephalitis, adults are affected more severely than are children. Symptoms include headache, fever, and, in more serious cases, mental disorientation, muscles tremors, convulsions, and unconsciousness.

The final mosquito-borne encephalitis is West Nile disease. Its geographical distribution in the United States has expanded since it was first detected in 1999. The disease is also found in Canada, Africa, the Middle East, Russia, India, and Indonesia. People whose immune systems are impaired are most at risk. In addition to transmission by mosquito, the virus can be present in transplanted organs or transfused blood and blood products.

Japanese encephalitis is the most common cause of encephalitis worldwide. Approximately 50,000 cases and 15,000 deaths occur each year, according to the World Health Organization (WHO). This form of encephalitis is common in certain regions of Asia, including China, Korea, Japan, Taiwan, Sri Lanka, and the south of India. It also occurs on some Pacific islands. The disease is especially prevalent where rice production and pig rearing occur. This is because the mosquitoes that spread the disease can breed in the rice paddies and pigs are a host of the virus. The mosquitoes acquire the virus when taking a blood meal from a pig and then can spread the virus to humans.

■ Treatment and Prevention

The diagnosis of encephalitis involves an assessment of nerve function, hearing, speech, vision, balance and coordination, mental capability, and changes in behavior. The examination of body fluids, such as urine and blood, and a swab from the throat can be useful in revealing a bacterial or viral infection.

Tests that rely on growth of bacteria or the appearance of clear zones in a layer of bacterial growth (the clear zones are places where virus production has destroyed the bacteria) take 2–3 days. Antibody-based tests to detect protein components of the target bacteria or viruses and the use of polymerase chain reaction to amplify and detect specific regions of the viral or bacterial genetic material can produce results in as little as a day.

Other diagnostic procedures rely on imaging the brain or spinal cord. The two most widely used imaging procedures are computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). These techniques can be sensitive enough to detect inflammation of the meninges. These examinations need to be done promptly, since the inflammation associated with encephalitis can cause damage rapidly.

If viral encephalitis is suspected, treatment usually involves the antiviral drugs acyclovir and ganciclovir. Both drugs are similar in their three-dimensional structure to certain building blocks of the viral genetic material. Incorporation of the drug into the replicating genetic material instead of the normal building block inhibits the activity of an enzyme that is vital for the continued replication of the virus.

Milder cases of encephalitis are treated with bed rest and over-the-counter medications to relieve headache and make the person feel as comfortable as possible. In more severe cases, hospitalization may be necessary, and drugs may be given to control or prevent seizures. The swelling of the meninges can be reduced using corticosteroids, which are usually administered intravenously (into a vein) to get the drug to the site of swelling quickly and to maintain an effective concentration of the drug.

The best way to prevent encephalitis is to minimize contact with the vectors of the disease. Examples of preventative measures include the use of mosquito repellent, wearing protective clothing when outdoors, and eliminating sources of stagnant water (which can become breeding grounds for mosquitoes). In reality, however, these and other preventative measures are difficult to consistently maintain.

As of 2007, no vaccine for the forms of encephalitis that are prevalent in the United States is available, although development is underway. A vaccine for Japanese encephalitis is available in the United States. In Europe, a vaccine for tick-borne encephalitis is available. In addition, vaccines to protect horses from various forms of the disease are available.

■ Impacts and Issues

Encephalitis can be a devastating disease when it causes lasting effects, such as brain damage. A person can be incapable of resuming work or study, and can require assistance to perform routine daily tasks. This can place a burden on caregivers and can affect the person's capabilities as a family member and worker.

Sizeable outbreaks of encephalitis can occur. For example, a 1995 outbreak of Venezuelan equine encephalitis in Venezuela and Colombia sickened an estimated 90,000 people. The size of such an outbreak imposes yet another burden on developing countries, particularly those where acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome) is prevalent. The impaired immune system function that is a characteristic of AIDS makes individuals with the disease more susceptible to a wide range of other maladies, including encephalitis.

Even in a developed country with a relatively high access to medical care, like the United States, the costs of encephalitis are considerable. The CDC has estimated the cost of medical care, disease detection, and efforts such as spraying programs that are intended to control mosquito and other vector populations, at approximately $150 million a year. In addition, developed countries are becoming increasingly affected as the population ages and immune-compromising diseases, such as AIDS, become more prevalent. It is also likely that encephalitis will become more common in the more northerly regions of the United States, Canada, and Europe as global warming continues, since the warmer temperatures will be more favorable for the breeding of vectors, such as mosquitoes.

West Nile encephalitis is an emerging health hazard in the United States. The disease was first detected in the United States in 1999, and, in the following year, 284 Americans are known to have died of the disease. Since then, West Nile has increased in its geographical range and in the number of people affected. It has replaced St. Louis encephalitis as the most prevalent form of the disease in the United States. The CDC reported almost 1,300 cases of West Nile encephalitis in 2005, more than double the number of cases in 2002.

While vaccines are available for some forms of encephalitis, such as Japanese equine encephalitis, the high cost of the vaccines can make them prohibitively expensive for poorer nations. A number of agencies, such as WHO, are working to make encephalitis vaccines more widely available. For example, one of the priorities of the World Health Organization's Programme for Immunization Preventable Diseases in cooperation with the government of Nepal is the control of Japanese encephalitis. Over 8,000 cases, mainly involving children, have been reported in Nepal from 1998–2003.

Efforts also are underway to control encephalitis in North America. The CDC's Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases conducts surveillance programs that monitor the occurrence of the disease and manages programs that try to control the disease in these hotspots.

■ Primary Source Connection

This newspaper article details the temporary closing of an elementary school in Rhode Island in early 2007 after a student at the school died from an unusual form of encephalitis that was caused by a common bacteria. Two other students contracted the disease during the outbreak, prompting the school district to close all its schools for almost a week, and the CDC to investigate the outbreak.

See Also *Arthropod-borne Disease; Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Eastern Equine Encephalitis; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Encephalitis; Japanese Encephalitis; Meningitis, Viral; Mosquito-borne Diseases; Vector-borne Disease; West Nile.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bloom, Ona, and Jennifer Morgan. *Encephalitis.* London: Chelsea House Publications, 2005.

Booss, John, and Margaret M. Esiri. *Viral Encephalitis in Humans.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2003.

Web Sites

Medline Plus. "Encephalitis." <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/encephalitis.html> (accessed March 20, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Endemicity

Introduction

An endemic disease is one that occurs naturally in a community. This is opposed to an epidemic disease, in which the rate of infection suddenly increases in a community. Endemicity can be measured by determining how common an infection is, or by determining the change in rates of infection over time.

The endemicity of a disease may be altered by a number of factors. Human intervention has led to many previously endemic diseases being eradicated from specific regions. This has been achieved by vaccination, as well as by the elimination of the cause of the disease, such as a vector (the organism that aids in the transmission of the disease).

However, endemic diseases can also develop in previously non-endemic regions, or can develop into epidemics. This often occurs when infections are introduced, undergo mutation, or when conditions within a community change due to events such as wars or natural disasters. The extent to which the change persists influences whether the change in endemicity will be long term.

History and Scientific Foundations

An endemic disease is one with a constant rate of infection in a community. When new individuals are born into that community, they become infected, cured, and eventually recover and retain the infection for life, or obtain immunity. Conversely, an epidemic occurs when a disease is introduced to a community and it multiplies, or when the rate of infection of an existing disease increases and causes an excess of cases in a community.

Endemicity can be measured by examining the prevalence rate or incident rate of a disease. (Prevalence refers to how common the disease is within a given community.) Some communities may have higher levels of endemicity, which indicates a higher prevalence of infection. The incident rate refers to the change in the level of infection over time. Many infections tend to show seasonal incident rates, in which the level of infection increases during certain periods. When the incident rate increases above a certain threshold, the disease becomes an epidemic, that is, the rate of infection causes an excess of cases.

Within a community, there can be "foci," or areas of increased prevalence. Host focality refers to areas in which hosts have more severe infections than other hosts. For example, the infection schistosomiasis is characterized by infection with parasite eggs. Some hosts suffer heavier parasite loads due to more severe infections. When these heavier infections occur in specific areas, they form host foci. Geographic focality refers to a higher prevalence rate of the disease in certain regions. For example, malaria tends to show varying prevalence rates in urban versus rural regions.

The foci of a disease affect the treatment and eventual containment of the disease. If treatment methods aim to treat the entire community to the same extent, foci will maintain the infection. On the other hand, targeting foci will ensure that the infection is contained.

Applications and Research

Endemic diseases may not always remain endemic. In some cases, transmission of the disease may increase, causing the disease to become an epidemic. On the other hand, transmission of the disease may decrease, causing the number of cases in the community to go below an endemicity threshold. Many factors can influence the endemicity of a disease. Eradication techniques have played a major role in decreasing the endemicity of certain diseases in the world. Within the United States, measles, which was endemic prior to 1997, is no longer considered an endemic disease due to vaccination efforts. Similarly, malaria, which is still endemic in some regions

WORDS TO KNOW

EPIDEMIC: From the Greek *epidemic*, meaning “prevalent among the people,” is most commonly used to describe an outbreak of an illness or disease in which the number of individual cases significantly exceeds the usual or expected number of cases in any given population.

FOCI: In medicine, a focus is a primary center of some disease process (for example, a cluster of abnormal cells). Foci is pleural for focus (more than one focus).

GEOGRAPHIC FOCALITY: The physical location of a disease pattern, epidemic, or outbreak; the characteristics of a location created by interconnections with other places.

HOST FOCALITY: Host focality refers to the tendency of some animal hosts, such as rodents carrying hantavirus and other viruses, to exist in groups in specific geographical locations, acting as a local reservoir of infection.

INCIDENCE: The number of new cases of a disease or injury that occur in a population during a specified period of time.

PREVALENCE: The actual number of cases of disease (or injury) that exist in a population.

of the world, has been eradicated from the United States and some western European countries following large scale eradication efforts.

The viral disease measles is highly communicable among humans. As a result, it is endemic in many regions of the world. In the United States, measles was once a common childhood disease with over 90% of children under the age of 12 infected. However, following the introduction of a measles vaccine in 1963, measles outbreaks have decreased. Aside from outbreaks occurring following introduction of the disease from other countries, measles no longer circulates in the United States. Vaccination is an effective way of increasing the immunity of a population and causing a decrease in the transmissibility of an infection. As a result, when most or all of a population is vaccinated against a certain disease, that disease does not retain its endemic state.

Vaccination is one eradication technique employed against infectious diseases. However, vaccinations have not been developed for all infectious diseases. As a result, other methods must be used to control some endemic diseases. Malaria is an example of an endemic infectious disease that cannot be controlled by vaccination. This disease is transmitted via mosquitoes, which infect new hosts when they feed on them. Eradication efforts involved spraying human living spaces with dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT), a toxic insecticide that kills mosquitoes (DDT was banned from use in most developing countries in the 1980s). This technique was designed to remove the mode of transmission for the disease (in this case, the mosquito vector), with the expectation that this would prevent the spread of the disease.

Malaria was once a major endemic infectious disease worldwide. However, since the late 1940s, malaria is no longer endemic in the United States nor in many countries of Western Europe. However, worldwide efforts to completely eradicate malaria have not been as successful. A variety of problems, such as mosquito tolerance to DDT, banning of DDT use, outbreaks of war, lack of funding, and population movements, have hindered efforts to eradicate malaria worldwide. Health authorities now attempt to control outbreaks of malaria, rather than to eradicate it completely.

Impacts and Issues

Endemicity can develop in countries in which the disease did not previously exist or only existed in low numbers. A disease may be introduced to countries with no history of the disease, and thus no immunity against it. Endemicity may develop as the disease spreads unchecked throughout the community. If transmission continues to infect an increasing number of people, the endemic disease may develop into an epidemic.

Endemicity may also develop when a disease that is usually only transmitted from animal to human, begins to be transmitted between humans, causing an increased rate of human infection. For example, avian influenza, or bird flu, tends to be predominantly spread between birds, and occasionally from bird to human. However, the virus that causes this disease may mutate, allowing it to be transmitted more easily between birds and humans, and, perhaps, between human hosts. Therefore, avian influenza is being closely monitored in order to keep it from becoming an endemic—and possibly—epidemic.

Not only can certain conditions cause a disease to become endemic, but some conditions may prompt an endemic disease to develop into an epidemic. Climate change and disasters, such as floods or wars, may cause changes that favor disease transmission. Some diseases, such as malaria, are dependent upon an arthropod vector to spread among hosts. A change in the climate, such as increased temperature or moisture, may be favorable to the vector, causing an increased number of vectors in a region. This increases the chance that a human will become infected. If a disease is already endemic in the region, an increase in the number of cases may result in an epidemic.

Disasters, such as war or floods, may also cause other more favorable conditions for a disease. For example, during war, or following a flood or earthquake, a large number of people are often required to live together in close quarters, often with only very basic sanitation. As a result, diseases are more easily transmitted. Airborne diseases benefit from the close proximity of people, orally transmitted diseases benefit from the poor sanitation conditions, and vector-borne diseases benefit from conditions that promote vector breeding. Therefore, diseases may erupt during these times. However, when people are allowed to return to their homes, conditions change again and may no longer favor the transmission of infectious diseases. This can cause the transmission rate to decrease and thus a disease may no longer be endemic or epidemic.

IN CONTEXT: ENDEMIC DISEASE AND THE PANAMA CANAL

Endemic diseases such as yellow fever, plague, and malaria had frustrated earlier French attempts to build a canal through the Isthmus of Panama by disabling and killing thousands of project workers and managers. Dr. William Crawford Gorgas (1854–1920), chief of sanitary affairs for the American project, made the canal possible by organizing public health and sanitation efforts. It was not ignorance of public health principles that had doomed earlier efforts to build the canal, but a lack of effective public health organization and the thorough implementation of disease control measures.

See Also *Arthropod-borne Disease; Avian Influenza; Bilharzia (Schistosomiasis); Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Epidemiology; Host and Vector; Immigration and Infectious Disease; Influenza; Influenza Pandemic of 1918; Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation; Malaria; Measles (Rubeola); Mosquito-borne Diseases; Pandemic Preparedness; Sanitation; Travel and Infectious Disease; United Nations Millennium Goals and Infectious Disease; Vector-borne Disease; War and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Arguin, P.M., P.E. Kozarsky, and A.W. Navin. *Health Information for International Travel 2005–2006.* Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2005.

Nelson, Kenrad E., and Carolyn F. Masters Williams. *Infectious Disease Epidemiology: Theory and Practice.* 2nd ed. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett, 2007.

Webber, R. *Communicable Disease Epidemiology and Control.* New York: CABI Publishing, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Avian Influenza (Bird Flu).” June 30, 2006. <http://www.cdc.gov/flu/avian/gen-info/pdf/avian_facts.pdf> (accessed April 10, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Malaria.” April 23, 2004. <http://www.cdc.gov/malaria/index.htm> (accessed April 10, 2007).

Tony Hawas

Epidemiology

Introduction

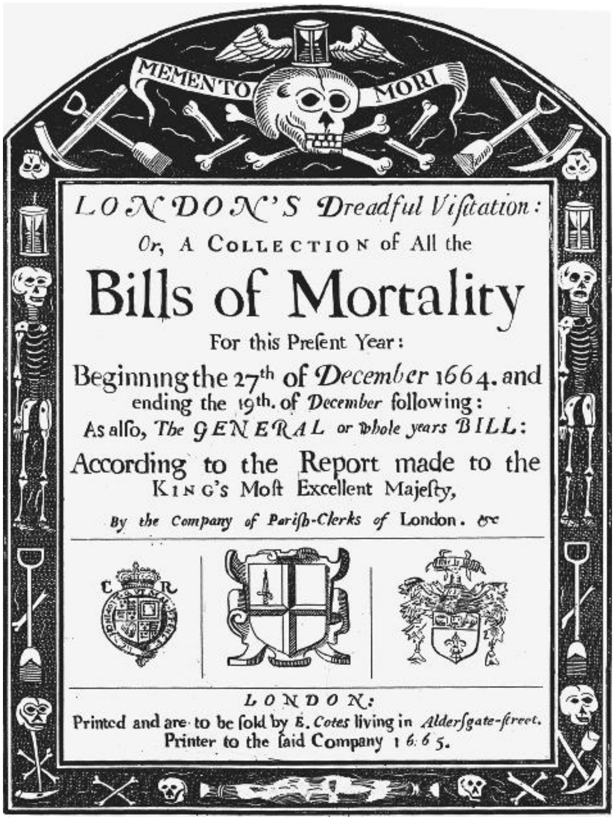
Epidemiology is the study of the causes and distribution of illness and injury. It constitutes the scientific underpinning of public health practice. According to noted British epidemiologist Sir Richard Doll (1912–2005), “Epidemiology is the simplest and most direct method of studying the causes of disease in humans, and many major contributions have been made by studies that have demanded nothing more than an ability to count, to think logically and to have an imaginative idea.” In practice, epidemiology is applied in the three main areas of public health: safety and injuries, chronic disease, and infectious disease. This article will emphasize examples and applications in infectious disease epidemiology.

History and Scientific Foundations

The first physician known to consider the fundamental concepts of disease causation was the ancient Greek Hippocrates (c.460—c.377 BC), when he wrote that medical thinkers should consider the climate and

FOOT AND MOUTH DISEASE
PLEASE STAY ON MAIN ROADS

An epidemiologist updates a map of affected farms in Scotland during a foot and mouth disease outbreak affecting cattle and sheep in the United Kingdom in 2001. Veterinary epidemiologists fought the spread of the disease for almost a year by tracking the proliferation of the disease; culling infected and exposed animals; restricting people from traveling to infected farms and inadvertently spreading the disease via their shoes and the tires of their cars; and placing a ban on transporting animals. *© The Scotsman/Corbis Sygma.*



MEMENTO MORI

LONDON'S Dreadful Viſitation:
Or, A COLLECTION of All the
Bills of Mortality
For this Preſent Year:
Beginning the 27th of December 1664. and
ending the 19th. of December following:
As alſo, The GENERAL or whole years BILL:
According to the Report made to the
KING's Moſt Excellent Majeſty,
By the Company of Pariſh-Clerks of London. &c

C R

LONDON:
Printed and are to be ſold by E. Cotes living in Alderſgate-ſtreet.
Printer to the ſaid Company 1665.

Bills of Mortality contained a listing of people who died during a given year. This bill lists London's dead from 1664–1665, covering part of the period of the Great Plague. John Graunt (1620–1674), considered by many to have founded the science of demography, based his statistical analysis on these weekly and yearly tables. *HIP/Art Resource, NY.*

seasons, the air, the water that people use, the soil and people's eating, drinking and exercise habits in a region. Subsequently and until recent times, these causes of diseases were often considered, but not quantitatively measured. In 1662, John Graunt (1620–1674), a London haberdasher, published an analysis of the weekly reports of births and deaths in London, the first statistical description of population disease patterns. Among his findings, he noted a higher death rate for men than women, a high infant mortality rate, and seasonal variations in mortality. Graunt's study, with its meticulous counting and disease pattern description, set the foundation for modern public health practice.

Graunt's data collection and analytical methodology was furthered by the physician William Farr, who assumed responsibility for medical statistics for England and Wales in 1839 and set up a system for the routine collection of the numbers and causes of deaths. In analyzing statistical relationships between disease and such circumstances as marital status, occupations such as mining and working with earthenware, elevation above sea level and imprisonment, he addressed many of the basic methodological issues that contemporary epidemiologists deal with. These issues include defining populations at risk for disease and the relative disease risk between population groups, and considering whether associations between disease and the factors mentioned above might be caused by other factors, such as age, length of exposure to a condition, or overall health.

A generation later public health research came into its own as a practical tool when another British physician, John Snow (1813–1858), tested the hypothesis that a cholera epidemic in London was being transmitted by contaminated water. By examining death rates from cholera, he realized that they were significantly higher in areas supplied with water by the Lambeth and the Southwark and Vauxhall companies, which drew their water from a part of the Thames River that was grossly polluted with sewage. When the Lambeth Company changed the location of its water source to another part of the river that was relatively less polluted, rates of cholera in the areas served by that company declined, while no change occurred among the areas served by the Southwark and Vauxhall. Areas of London served by both companies experienced a cholera death rate that was intermediate between the death rates in the areas supplied by just one of the companies. The geographic pattern of infections was carefully recorded and plotted on a map of London. In recognizing the grand but simple natural experiment posed by the change in the Lambeth Company water source, Snow was able to make a uniquely valuable contribution to epidemiology and public health practice.

After Snow's seminal work, investigations by epidemiologists have come to include many chronic diseases with complex and often still unknown causal agents, and the methods of epidemiology have become similarly complex. Today researchers use genetics, molecular biology, and microbiology as investigative tools, and the methods used to establish relative disease risk make use of the most advanced statistical techniques available. Yet, reliance on meticulous counting and categorizing of cases and the imperative to think logically and avoid the pitfalls in mathematical relationships in medical data remain at the heart of all of the research used to show elevated disease risk in population subgroups and to prove that medical treatments are safe and effective.

Basic Epidemiological Concepts and Terms

The most basic concepts in epidemiology are the measures used to discover whether a statistical association exists between various factors and disease. These measures include various kinds of rates, proportions, and ratios. Mortality (death) and morbidity (disease) rates are the raw material that researchers use in establishing disease causation. Morbidity rates are most usefully expressed in terms of disease incidence (the rate with

WORDS TO KNOW

INCIDENCE: The number of new cases of a disease or injury that occur in a population during a specified period of time.

MORBIDITY: The term "morbidity" comes from the Latin word *morbus*, which means sick. In medicine it refers not just to the state of being ill, but also to the severity of the illness. A serious disease is said to have a high morbidity.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term "mortality" comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means "death." Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., "Rabies has a high mortality."

NOTIFIABLE DISEASES: Diseases that the law requires must be reported to health officials when diagnosed, including active tuberculosis and several sexually transmitted diseases; also called reportable diseases.

PREVALENCE: The actual number of cases of disease (or injury) that exist in a population.

SURVEILLANCE: The systematic analysis, collection, evaluation, interpretation, and dissemination of data. In public health, it assists in the identification of health threats and the planning, implementation, and evaluation of responses to those threats.

which members of a population or research sample contract a disease) and prevalence (the proportion of the group that has a disease over a given period of time).

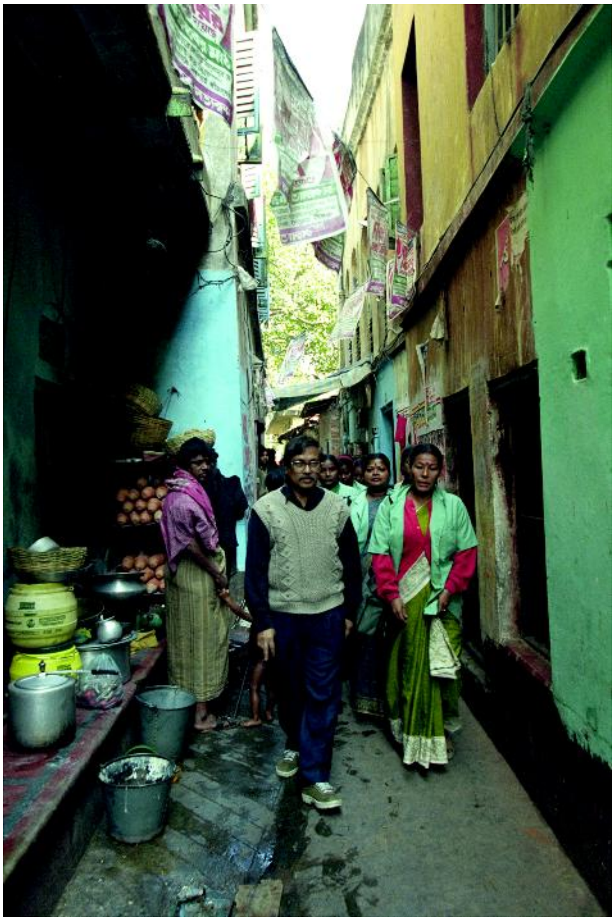
The most important task in epidemiology is the assessment or measurement of disease risk. The population at risk is the group of people that could potentially contract a disease, which can range from the entire world population (e.g., at risk for the flu) to a small group of people within a remote and isolated community (e.g., at risk for contracting a particular, ecologically restricted parasite). The most basic measure of a population group's risk for a disease is relative risk—the ratio of the prevalence of a disease in one group with particular biological, demographic, or behavioral characteristics to the prevalence in another group with different characteristics.

The simplest measure of relative risk is the odds ratio, which is the ratio of the odds that a person in one group has a disease to the odds that a person in a second, comparator group has the disease. The odds for contracting a disease are the ratio between the proportion of people in a population group that share particular characteristics that put them at risk for a disease to the proportion of people in a reference or control population (often the general population in a certain region or jurisdiction). For example, patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), an inflammatory condition of the lungs associated with smoking and long exposure to air pollution, are at significantly greater risk of contracting community-acquired pneumonia (CAP) compared to a general population group matched on age and gender. Thus in a sample of subjects that includes both COPD patients and subjects who do not have COPD, epidemiologists expect that the odds ratio for the COPD patients contracting CAP would be significantly greater than 1.0.

The mortality rate is the ratio of the number of deaths in a population, either in total or disease-specific, to the total number of members of that population, and is usually given in terms of a large population denominator, so that the numerator can be expressed as a whole number. Thus, in 1982, the number of deaths from all causes was 1,973,000 and number of people in the United States was 231,534,000, yielding a death rate from all causes of 852.1 per 100,000 per year. That same year there were 1,807 deaths from tuberculosis yielding a disease-specific mortality rate of 7.8 per million per year.

Assessing disease frequency is more complex because of the factors of time and disease duration. For example, disease prevalence can be assessed at a point in time (point prevalence) or over a period of time, usually a year (period prevalence, annual prevalence). This is the prevalence that is usually measured in illness surveys that are reported to the public in the news. Researchers can also measure prevalence over an indefinite time period, as in the case of lifetime prevalence, which is the prevalence of a disease over the course of the entire lives of the people in the population under study up to the point in time when the researchers make the assessment. Researchers calculate this by determining for every person in the study sample whether or not he or she has ever had the disease, or by checking lifetime health records for everybody in the population for the occurrence of the disease, counting the occurrences, and then dividing by the number of people in the population.

The other basic measure of disease frequency is incidence, the number of cases of a disease that occur in a given period of time. Incidence is a critical statistic in describing the course of a fast-moving epidemic, in which medical decision-makers must know how quickly a disease is spreading. The incidence rate is the key to public health planning because it enables officials to understand what the prevalence of a disease is likely to be in the future. Prevalence is mathematically related to the cumulative incidence of a disease over a period of time as well as the expected duration of a disease, which can be a week in



Epidemiologist Smarajit Jana walks through the narrow streets of the sex-trade area of Calcutta, India, where the Sonagachi social project he initiated has dramatically reduced the incidence of sexually transmitted diseases such as syphilis and gonorrhea. The program has also held the rate of HIV infection steady. *© Kapoor Baldev/Sygma/Corbis.*

the case of the flu or a lifetime in the case of juvenile onset diabetes. Therefore, incidence not only indicates the rate of new disease cases, but is the basis of the rate of change of disease prevalence.

Epidemiologists use statistical analysis to discover associations between death and disease in populations and various factors—including environmental (e.g., pollution), demographic (age and gender), biological (e.g., body mass index or "BMI" and genetics), social (e.g., educational level), and behavioral (e.g., tobacco smoking, diet or type of medical treatment)—that could be implicated in causing disease.

Familiarity with basic concepts of probability and statistics is essential in understanding health care and epidemiological research. Statistical associations take into account the role of chance in contracting disease. Researchers compare disease rates for two or more population groups that vary in their environmental, genetic, pathogen exposure, or behavioral characteristics and observe whether a particular group characteristic is associated with a difference in rates that is unlikely to have occurred by chance alone.

■ Applications and Research

Applications in Public Health Practice

Certain concepts are basic to infectious disease epidemiology. These include the *infectious agent*, which is the organism that can develop within a human host and be passed along to other people via a particular *mode of transmission*, for example by air, food, or sexual intercourse. Infectious diseases have geographic scope or *occurrence*, and take a certain length of time to result in disease symptoms called the *incubation period*. After this incubation period, there is a period during which the individual can pass the infection along to others, called the *period of communicability* of the disease. The *infectivity* of a disease is the probability that an infected individual can pass the infection to an uninfected person, and the *virulence* of an infectious agent is the relative power and pathogenicity possessed by the organism. Populations of animals or human groups that harbor the infectious agent constitute a *reservoir* of the disease, and an organism such as a tick or insect that carries the infectious agent from such a reservoir to vulnerable individuals is called a *vector*.

Once the epidemic is underway, public health officials must begin attempts to control it even as they continue to gather epidemiological information about its cause and distribution. These control efforts consist of preventive measures for individuals and groups, which are measures designed to prevent further spread of the disease, and treatment in order to minimize the period of communicability of the infection, as well as reduce morbidity and mortality. Control of patient contacts and the immediate environment are foremost among such preventive measures, which can extend to patient isolation and observance of universal precautions, including handwashing, wearing of gloves and masks, and sterilization in dangerous instances. Epidemic measures, including the necessary abrogation of civil rights as in quarantines, are sometimes necessary to contain a communicable disease that has spread within an area, state, or nation. The epidemic may have disaster implications if effective preventive actions are not initiated, and the scope of actions can be international, requiring the coordination of disparate public health capabilities across national boundaries.

Screening Programs

Screening a community using relatively simple diagnostic tests is one of the most powerful tools that healthcare professionals and public health authorities have in preventing or combating disease. Familiar examples of screening include HIV testing to help prevent AIDS, tuberculin testing to screen for tuberculosis, and hepatitis C testing by insurers to detect subclinical infection that could result in liver cirrhosis over the long term. In undertaking a screening program, authorities must always judge whether the benefits of preventing the illness in question outweigh the costs and the number of cases that have been mistakenly identified, called false positives.

The ability of the test to identify true positives (sensitivity) and true negatives (specificity) makes screening a valuable prevention tool. However, the usefulness of the screening test is proportional to the disease prevalence in the population at risk. If the disease prevalence is very low, there are likely to be more false positives than true positives, which would cast doubt on the usefulness and the cost-effectiveness of the test. For example, if the prevalence of a disease in the population is only 2% and a test with a false positive rate of 4% is given to everyone (normally a good rate for a screening test), then individuals falsely identified as having the disease would be twice as frequent as individuals accurately identified with the disease. This would render the test results virtually useless. Public health officials deal with this situation by screening only population subgroups that have a high risk of contracting the disease. In infectious disease, screening tests are valuable for infections with a long latency period, which is the period of time during which an infected individual does not show disease symptoms, or which have a lengthy and ambiguous symptomatic period.

Clinical Trials

Clinical trials are the experimental branch of epidemiology in which scientific sampling with randomized selection of research subjects is combined with prospective study design and experimental controls involving a placebo or comparator active treatment control group. The statistical analysis used in clinical trials is similar to what is used in other types of epidemiological studies, usually simple counting of cases that improve or deteriorate and comparisons of morbidity and mortality rates between the trial treatment groups.

Clinical trials in infectious disease are most common when a significant follow-up period is available. One such trial was a rigorous test of the effectiveness of condoms in HIV/AIDS prevention. This experiment was reported in 1994 in the *New England Journal of Medicine.* Although in the United States and Western Europe the transmission of AIDS has been largely within certain high-risk groups, including drug users and homosexual males, worldwide the predominant mode of HIV transmission is heterosexual intercourse. The effectiveness of condoms to prevent HIV transmission is generally acknowledged, but even after more than 25 years of the growth of the epidemic, many people remain ignorant of the scientific support for their preventive value.

A group of European scientists conducted a prospective study of HIV negative subjects that had no risk factor for AIDS other than having a stable heterosexual relationship with an HIV infected partner. A sample of 304 HIV negative subjects (196 women and 108 men) was followed for an average of 20 months. During the trial 130 couples (42.8%) ended sexual relations, usually due to the illness or death of the HIV-infected partner. Of the remaining 256 couples that continued having exclusive sexual relationships, 124 couples (48.4%) consistently used condoms. None of the seronegative partners among these couples became infected with HIV. On the other hand, among the 121 couples that inconsistently used condoms, the seroconversion rate was 4.8 per 100 person-years.

Because none of the seronegative partners among the consistent condom-using couples became infected, this trial presents extremely powerful evidence of the effectiveness of condom use in preventing AIDS. On the other hand, there appear to be several main reasons why some of the couples did not use condoms consistently. Therefore, the main issue in the journal article shifts from the question of whether or not condoms prevent HIV infection—they clearly do—to the issue of why so many couples do not use condoms in view of the obvious risk. Couples with infected partners that got their infection through drug use were much less likely to use condoms than when the seropositive partner got infected through sexual relations. Couples with more seriously ill partners at the beginning of the study were significantly more likely to use condoms consistently. Finally, the longer the couple had been together before the start of the trial was positively associated with condom use.

Impacts and Issues

The control of infectious disease is an urgent mission for epidemiologists employed in various state and federal public health agencies and their partners in private industry and research foundations. The American Public Health Association (APHA) provides guidance for the epidemiology and control of more than 100 communicable diseases that confront public health practitioners at present.

Infectious disease epidemiology requires accurate and timely incidence and prevalence data such as is provided with comprehensive disease surveillance of usual and emerging diseases. Although the development of an organized surveillance system is critical to the provision of these data, the system's effectiveness depends on the willingness and ability of health care providers to detect, diagnose, and report the incidence of cases that the system is supposed to track. A reporting system functions at four levels: 1) the basic data is collected in the local community where the disease occurs; 2) the data are assembled at the district, state, or provincial levels; 3) information is aggregated under national auspices (e.g., the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in the United States); and 4) for certain prescribed diseases, the national health authority reports the disease information to the World Health Organization (WHO).

The reporting of cases at the local level is mandated for *notifiable* illnesses that come to the attention of healthcare providers. Case reports provide patient information, suspect organisms, and dates of onset with basis for diagnosis, consistent with patient privacy rights. Collective case reports are compiled at the district level by diagnosis stipulating the number of cases occurring within a prescribed time. Any unusual or group expression of illness that may be of public concern should be reported as an epidemic, whether the illness is included in the list of notifiable diseases and whether it is a well-known identified disease or an unknown clinical entity.

Because of the emergence or re-emergence of HIV/AIDS and resistant strains of tuberculosis, malaria, gonorrhea, and *E. coli* among others, infectious disease epidemiology, once thought to be waning in importance due to significant advances in public sanitation and immunization programs, has re-emerged as an urgent challenge. Infectious diseases currently threaten to destroy social order in some developing nations and pose extremely difficult public health problems even in the wealthiest societies. Hantavirus infections, thought to be a serious problem primarily in Asia, have emerged as an epidemic in the southwestern United States. Lyme disease continues to afflict ever larger populations in the Northeast United States; Ebola virus has jumped from monkeys to humans in Africa and pneumococci are becoming resistant to the antibiotics used to treat infections.

Air travel has created the situation in which travelers can return home from areas where particular pathogens are endemic within the incubation period of every infectious disease, which can potentially precipitate an epidemic.

■ Primary Source Connection

John Snow (1813–1858) was an English physician who made great advances in the understanding of both anesthetics and the spread of disease, especially cholera.

The first pandemic, which reached Great Britain in 1831, caused as much fear and panic as tuberculosis did in the early twentieth century and HIV/AIDS does today. The death rate from cholera was over 50 percent and medical opinion was sharply divided as to the cause. At the time, John Snow was a doctor's apprentice gaining his first experience with the disease, noting its symptoms of diarrhea and extreme dehydration.

The germ theory of disease, which holds that viruses and bacteria are the causative infectious agents of diseases such as yellow fever, smallpox, typhoid, cholera, and others, was in its infancy at this time. Some doctors accepted the hypothesis of *contagion* in which disease spreads from one person to another. Others assumed that "miasmata" or toxins in the air, spread disease.

Snow first began a serious scientific investigation of cholera transmission during the 1848 London epidemic. In his classic essay, *On the Mode of Communication of Cholera*, published on August 29, 1849, he postulated that polluted water was a source of cholera—especially water contaminated by the waste of an infected person, a not-uncommon occurrence at the time. When an outbreak erupted a few years later in central London at the end of August 1854, close to where Snow himself lived, he resumed his research.

The historical claim that Snow removed the pump handle himself—which would, of course, have stopped exposure to the contaminated water—has little evidence and may be a myth. Snow recommended its removal, but the actual removal was probably done by the local curate, Henry Whitehead, several days after the outbreak began.

It is partially thanks to John Snow's work in the Broad Street area that Britain suffered fewer major outbreaks of cholera after this time. An influential figure in medical circles, he had been elected president of the Medical Society of London in 1855. Fortunately for British public health, the successful proof of his theory on the transmission of cholera—from person to person via contaminated water—took hold, and the "environmental" theory eventually died away. Although the actual causative agent, the bacterium *Vibrio cholerae*, would not be identified until 1883, Snow's preventive methods worked. Indeed, they are still effective today, for despite the advent of vaccination and antibiotics, handwashing and the avoidance of contaminated food and water are still fundamental ways of preventing infection.

Because Snow based his investigation on the idea of germ theory, which French microbiologist Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) would later prove, he used a scientific approach and epidemiological study of cholera victims to validate his hypothesis. As his case notes amply demonstrate, much of his research was driven by his patients' visible suffering.

SEE ALSO *Demographics and Infectious Disease; Public Health and Infectious Disease; Notifiable Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bennenson, A.S., ed. *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual.* 16th ed. Washington, DC: American Public Health Association, 1995.

Centers for Disease Control. *Tuberculosis Statistics: States and Cities, 1984.* Atlanta: Centers for Disease Control, 1985.

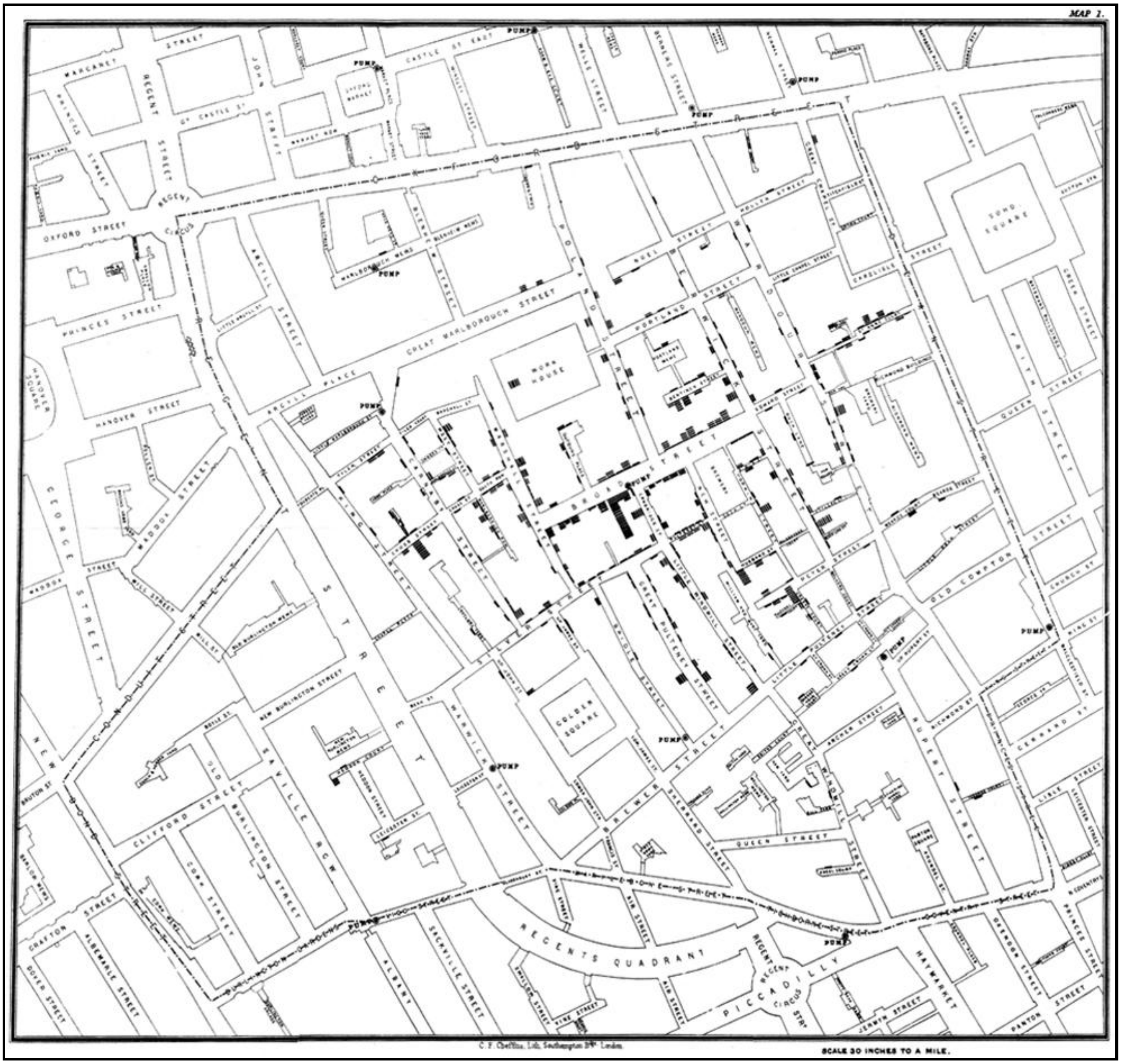
Graunt, J. *Natural and Political Observations Made upon the Bills of Mortality.* London, 1662. Reprinted by Johns Hopkins Press, 1939.

Hennekens, C.H., and J.E. Buring. *Epidemiology in Medicine.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1987.

Hippocrates. *On Airs, Waters and Places.*

Shephard, David A.E. *John Snow: Anaesthetist to a Queen and Epidemiologist to a Nation.* Cornwall, Prince Edward Island, Canada: York Point, 1995.

Epidemiological Investigation Solves London Epidemic


MAP 1.
PUMP
OXFORD STREET
REGENT STREET
REGENT CIRCUS
PRINCES STREET
HANOVER SQUARE
HANOVER STREET
GEORGE STREET
MADDOX STREET
CONDUIT STREET
NEW BOND STREET
GREAT MARLBOROUGH STREET
ARGYLL STREET
ARGYLL PLACE
POLAND STREET
NOEL STREET
PORTLAND STREET
BERWICK STREET
BROAD STREET
CAMBRIDGE STREET
MARSHALL STREET
WORK HOUSE
GOLDEN SQUARE
SILVER STREET
GREAT PULTENEY STREET
WARWICK STREET
SAVILLE ROW
OLD BURLINGTON STREET
NEW BURLINGTON STREET
CLIFFORD STREET
CORK STREET
BURLINGTON STREET
BREWER STREET
SHERRARD STREET
QUEEN STREET
RUPERT STREET
OLD COMPTON STREET
SOHO SQUARE
DEAN STREET
FRITH STREET
GREEK STREET
CARLISLE STREET
OXFORD MARKET
CASTLE ST EAST
WARDOUR STREET
REGENTS QUADRANT
PICCADILLY
REGENT CIRCUS
HAYMARKET
JERMYN STREET
ALBANY
SACKVILLE STREET
VIGO STREET
GRAFTON STREET
ALBEMARLE STREET
DOVER STREET
BRUTON ST
C. F. Cheffins, Lith, Southampton Bldgs London.
SCALE 30 INCHES TO A MILE.

Map showing the area of central London where British physician John Snow (1813–1858) documented cholera cases in 1854 (shown by dark bars) and linked them with contaminated water from a public pump in Broad Street. Snow's work was among the first examples of investigating a disease outbreak using principles of epidemiology. *Courtesy, Dr. Ralph R. Frerichs, http://www.ph.ucla.edu/epi/snow.htmlr.*

Periodicals

De Vincenzi, I. "A Longitudinal Study of Human Immunodeficiency Virus Transmission by Heterosexual Partners." *New England Journal of Medicine* 331 (August 11, 1994): 341–346.

UCLA. Department of Epidemiology. School of Public Health. "John Snow." <http://www.ph.ucla.edu/epi/snow.html> (accessed March 30, 2007).

Kenneth LaPensee

Epstein-Barr Virus

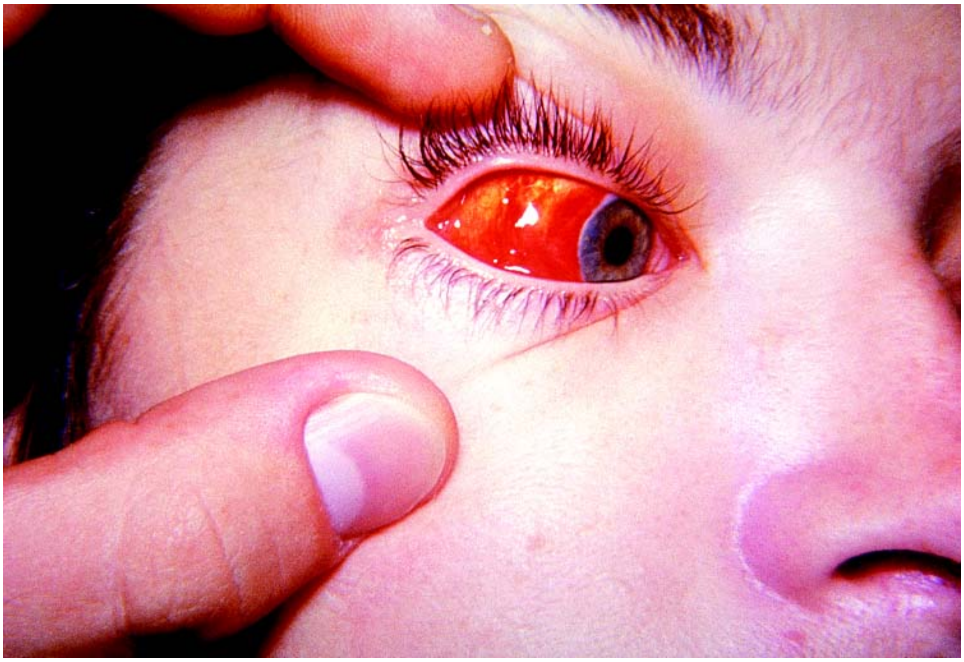
Introduction

Epstein-Barr Virus (EBV) is also known as the Human Herpesvirus 4 (HHV-4). It is one of the most common viruses present in humans. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that 95% of all adults aged 35–40 in the United States have been infected by EBV. Most people infected with EBV during childhood either show no symptoms or suffer a brief illness with symptoms indistinguishable from other mild, common illnesses.

In teenagers and young adults, EBV can result in mononucleosis, commonly called mono, with prolonged and more severe symptoms. Teenagers and young adults typically acquire EBV from infected cells in the mouth. EBV is present in saliva, also earning mononucleosis the nickname "the kissing disease."

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Epstein-Barr virus was first discovered in 1964 by Michael Epstein and Yvonne Barr while they were studying Burkett's lymphoma, a form of cancer that is relatively common in Africa. The virus was named after these



A conjunctival hemorrhage of the right eye is shown in a patient with infectious mononucleosis. On occasion, non-infectious conjunctivitis may occur in people suffering from infectious mononucleosis or Epstein-Barr Virus because of the body's systemic response to viral infections. *Science Source.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

HETEROPHILE ANTIBODY: A heterophile antibody is an antibody that is found in the blood of someone with infectious mononucleosis, also known as glandular fever.

LATENT: A condition that is potential or dormant, not yet manifest or active, is latent.

discoverers. Its role as the cause of infectious mononucleosis was later identified.

The virus is extremely prevalent in humans. The infection can persist, as the virus may remain latent for years. In response to triggers that are still not fully known, EBV can reinitiate an active infection. Latency and recurrence occur most often in individuals with compromised immune systems.

Initially, an EBV infection begins when the virus infects and then makes new copies of the virus in the thin layer of epithelial cells that line the mouth, throat, and cervix. The infection then expands to include B cells—cells that are components of the immune system. It is within the B cells that the virus becomes latent by integrating its DNA into the DNA of the host cells. As the host DNA duplicates by cell division, so does the viral DNA. Virus particles that are made in the B cells can escape to other cells in the body. Virus production in these other cells affects the functioning of the tissue, producing some of the symptoms of infection.

EBV is contagious—it can be spread from person to person. Transmission of EBV typically occurs through contact with saliva. Contact with infected cervical cells through sexual activity may transmit EBV. Transmission via blood transfusions is possible but rare.

Scope and Distribution

Epstein-Barr virus can be present in almost any person, in any country. However, studies that have examined the prevalence of antibodies against the virus have shown that EBV is almost universally present in adults in developing countries. Worldwide, most people are exposed to EBV early in life, when infection is most likely to cause only mild illness. In the United States, 50% of the population is positive for antibodies to the virus by the age of five.

Treatment and Prevention

Infection is determined by detecting the presence of the antibodies that have been produced by the immune system in response to the presence of the virus. The level of a particular antibody in the blood called the heterophile antibody is a reliable indicator of the intensity of the infection. Even though the virus is common in the cells of the mouth and throat, samples of cells taken from the areas are not a reliable means of detecting the virus.

Treatment of Epstein-Barr virus infection is difficult, as the virus can become latent for months or years. There are no available vaccines or antiviral drugs to prevent or treat EBV. Teenagers and young adults suffering from infectious mononucleosis are typically given medications to ease symptoms such as fever, aches, and fatigue that can persist for up to four weeks.

Impacts and Issues

Epstein-Barr virus affects just about everyone at some time. In most people, the infection is brief and may either produce no symptoms or brief, mild illness. The most severe symptoms associated with EBV occur in people aged 10–21 who were not previously exposed to EBV in early childhood and who develop mononucleosis. Infectious mononucleosis can have more serious impacts on people living in underdeveloped regions because the condition can leave persons more susceptible to other infections.

From the mid–1980s through the early 1990s, researchers identified EBV as a possible cause of chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) in adults. Many persons who displayed the symptoms of CFS—headaches, memory loss, and severe, prolonged exhaustion—also carried EBV. The CDC embarked on a four-year study of CFS, eventually finding no link between EBV and CFS. The scientific community now disregards EBV as a direct cause of chronic fatigue syndrome.

EBV has also been linked to the formation of certain types of cancer. EBV is linked to a cancer of the upper respiratory tract, nasopharyngeal carcinoma. This type of cancer occurs most commonly in Africa and parts of China, however, researcher have noted that the increase of nasopharyngeal carcinoma in China could also be influenced by environmental factors and diet. In equatorial Africa, malaria infections can reduce the body's ability to respond to chronic EBV infection. The two diseases in tandem have been linked to Burkitt's lymphoma, a cancer that often forms large tumors on the jaw.

SEE ALSO *Mononucleosis; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Hoffman, Gretchen. *Mononucleosis.* New York: Benchmark Books, 2006.

Powell, Michael, and Oliver Fischer. *101 Diseases You Don't Want to Get.* New York: Thunder's Mouth Press, 2005.

Tselis, Alex, and Hal B. Jenson. *Epstein-Barr Virus.* London: Informa Healthcare, 2006.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Epstein-Barr Virus and Infectious Mononucleosis." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/diseases/ebv.htm> (accessed April 10, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

The National Center for Infectious Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states the Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) is "one of the most common human viruses. The virus occurs worldwide, and most people become infected with EBV sometime during their lives. In the United States, as many as 95% of adults between 35 and 40 years of age have been infected. Infants become susceptible to EBV as soon as maternal antibody protection (present at birth) disappears. Many children become infected with EBV, and these infections usually cause no symptoms or are indistinguishable from the other mild, brief illnesses of childhood. In the United States and in other developed countries, many persons are not infected with EBV in their childhood years. When infection with EBV occurs during adolescence or young adulthood, it causes infectious mononucleosis 35% to 50% of the time."

SOURCE: *National Center for Infectious Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*

Escherichia coli O157:H7

Introduction

Escherichia coli is a Gram-negative bacterium (a bacterium that has a cell wall that contains two membranes sandwiching a thin, but strong supporting layer) that normally inhibits the intestinal tracts of humans and other warm-blooded animals.

There are hundreds of different types (strains) of *E. coli* that differ from one another only slightly in their composition. Most of these strains are harmless and many are beneficial, as they can manufacture some vitamins that are needed for proper functioning of the body. Strain O157:H7 is an exception; in contrast to many of the other strains, *E. coli* O157:H7 does not normally reside in the human intestinal tract of humans. It normally lives in the intestinal tract of cattle. While harmless in the cattle, it can be dangerous to people. Ingesting food or water that is contaminated with O157:H7—typically by exposure of the food or water to cattle feces or handling by someone whose hands are soiled—can produce a severe, even life-threatening infection.

The descriptor O157 is a code that refers to a structure called lipopolysaccharide that is located on the outer surface of the bacterium. Different configurations of lipopolysaccharide are possible, which can affect the disease-causing ability of the bacterium. The other descriptor, H7, refers to a form of the bacteria's locomotive structure called the flagellum.

Since its first description in the early 1980s, the illness due to *E. coli* O157:H7 has sickened thousands, and over one thousand people have died as a result of the infection that can destroy intestinal and kidney cells.

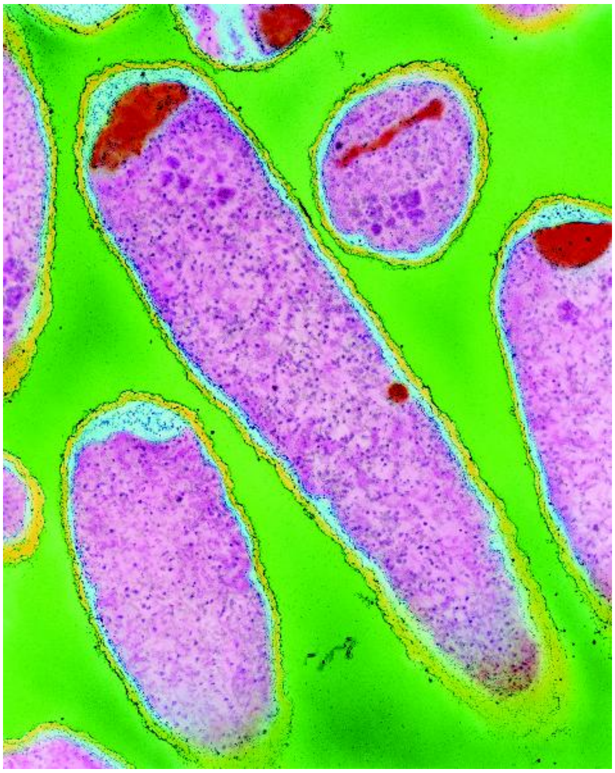
CAUTION:
WATER QUALITY ADVISORY
FOR YOUR SAFETY
• Swim at your own risk
• Do not ingest lake water
• Shower after swimming
• Wash hands before eating
• Do not swim if you are ill
Increased risk of illness may be present
Based on recent monitoring for E. coli bacteria
FOR MORE INFORMATION:
1-800-441-4636 ext. 1460
www.wibeaches.us

Beachgoers enjoy the water and sand despite a posted warning about the potential of dangerous *E. coli* bacteria in the water. *AP Images.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

E. coli O157:H7 is one of four types of the bacterium that can infect the gastrointestinal tract, causing a disease called gastroenteritis. Additionally, O157:H7 is described as being enterohemorrhagic—this means it is able to destroy the cells lining the intestinal tract, which causes copious bleeding.

The severe intestinal damage that occurs during an infection by *E. coli* O157:H7 is due to the production of powerful toxins. These toxins, which are called verotoxin and shiga-like toxin, are similar to the destructive toxin



A color transmission electron micrograph (TEM) shows *Escherichia coli* 0157:H7 bacteria, a cause of food-borne illness. *K. Lounatamaa/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

produced by another disease-causing bacterium, *Shigella dysenteriae*.

Indeed, the similarity of the toxins in the two different bacteria reflects how strain O157:H7 came into existence. The strain was discovered in Argentina in 1977. Studies of the sequences of the genetic material in O157:H7 and *S. dysenteriae* support the idea that, likely in the intestinal tract of a cow, a typical *E. coli* acquired genetic material from a neighboring *S. dysenteriae.* The acquired genetic material included the gene that coded for the destructive *Shigella* toxins. The genetically altered *E. coli*, O157:H7, now was capable of producing the toxins.

In 1982, strain O157:H7 was first identified as a cause of illness, when an outbreak of severe diarrhea in several states in the United States was found to be due to undercooked hamburgers. The disease became known as "hamburger disease." This is unfortunate, since subsequently it became clear that other foods including various kinds of produce, fruits, unpasteurized juices and milk, and cheese products can be contaminated with strain O157:H7. Produce and fruits can become contaminated when sprayed with sewage-containing water during their growth. If the food is not washed prior to eating, the bacteria can be ingested. In 2006, for example, a multi-state illness outbreak due to O157:H7 was traced to organically grown lettuce. Some consumers had eaten the lettuce without first washing it.

WORDS TO KNOW

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIUM: Any type of bacterium that is identified and classified by its property of not retaining crystal-violet dye during Gram's method of staining.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

The U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that up to 85% of all O157:H7 infections are food-borne infections.

When cattle are slaughtered, intestinal contents can splatter on the carcass. In whole cuts of meat such as a T-bone steak, the bacterial-contaminated surface can be made safe to eat by proper cooking of the cut of meat. However, when surface-contaminated meat is ground up, bacteria including O157:H7 can be distributed throughout the meat. The only way to kill all these bacteria is to adequately cook the meat. This is why undercooked meat can still contain living O157:H7 that are capable of causing the infection.

O157:H7 can also contaminate drinking water. This occurs when O157:H7-containing feces mixes with the drinking water. If the water is not properly treated to remove or kill the bacteria, drinking the water can sicken a person. For example, in the summer of 2000, one of the wells in the community of Walkerton, Ontario, Canada was contaminated by storm run-off from a cattle field. Improper treatment of the water caused thousands of people to become ill and seven people died. Some of the survivors had permanent kidney damage due to the destruction of the kidney caused by the O157:H7 toxins.

In a few instances in the U.S. and Canada, O157:H7 infection has been traced to childrens' petting zoos; stroking fur that is soiled by feces can be dangerous if the child puts the hand in their mouth.

The toxins are so destructive because they not only damage the host cells they contact, but, because they shut down the manufacture of host cell proteins, they prevent repair of the damage. The toxins can damage the cells because the bacteria bind very tightly to the cells. In fact, the association of O157:H7 with a host cell causes the cell to change its shape, forming a pedestal on which the bacterium anchors. This strong association enables the bacteria to remain in position and establish the infection.

An early symptom of the infection, which occurs as the intestinal cells become damaged, is watery diarrhea.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PREVENTION

The U.S. Department of Agriculture's Food Safety and Inspection Service and Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommend to avoid *E. coli* O157:H7 infection that people:

- Cook all ground beef and hamburger thoroughly. Because ground beef can turn brown before disease-causing bacteria are killed, use a digital instant-read meat thermometer to ensure thorough cooking. Ground beef should be cooked until a thermometer inserted into several parts of the patty, including the thickest part, reads at least 160° F (71.1° C). Persons who cook ground beef without using a thermometer can decrease their risk of illness by not eating ground beef patties that are still pink in the middle.
- If you are served an undercooked hamburger or other ground beef product in a restaurant, send it back for further cooking. You may want to ask for a new bun and a clean plate, too.
- Avoid spreading harmful bacteria in your kitchen. Keep raw meat separate from ready-to-eat foods. Wash hands, counters, and utensils with hot soapy water after they touch raw meat. Never place cooked hamburgers or ground beef on the unwashed plate that held raw patties. Wash meat thermometers in between tests of patties that require further cooking.
- Drink only pasteurized milk, juice, or cider. Commercial juice with an extended shelf-life that is sold at room temperature (e.g. juice in cardboard boxes, vacuum sealed juice in glass containers) has been pasteurized, although this is generally not indicated on the label. Juice concentrates are also heated sufficiently to kill pathogens.
- Wash fruits and vegetables under running water, especially those that will not be cooked. Be aware that bacteria are sticky, so even thorough washing may not remove all contamination. Remove the outer leaves of leafy vegetables. Children under 5 years of age, immunocompromised persons, and the elderly should avoid eating alfalfa sprouts until their safety can be assured. Persons at high risk of complications from foodborne illness may choose to consume cooked vegetables and peeled fruits.
- Drink municipal water that has been treated with chlorine or another effective disinfectant.
- Avoid swallowing lake or pool water while swimming. (For more information, see the CDC Healthy Swimming website.)
- Make sure that persons with diarrhea, especially children, wash their hands carefully with soap after bowel movements to reduce the risk of spreading infection, and that persons wash hands after changing soiled diapers. Anyone with a diarrheal illness should avoid swimming in public pools or lakes, sharing baths with others, and preparing food for others.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

Destruction of intestinal cells causes the diarrhea to become bloody. A person can also experience nausea and vomiting. The fluid loss and pain can be debilitating and intake of fluids is important to prevent more serious problems. In most people, these symptoms fade within several weeks, as the body's immune system is able to successfully deal with the infection. People whose immune systems are immature or malfunctioning can develop a more widespread infection. The kidney damage that can occur can be so extensive that the kidney stops functioning. This occurs in 10–15% of those who contract the infection. The infection can also affect the pancreas, brain, and other organs; this assault can be overwhelming and can cause death.

Approximately 10–15% of those infected with strain O157:H7 develop hemolytic uremic syndrome. The syndrome is the leading cause of sudden-onset kidney failure in children in the world. As well, the elderly can develop a condition known as thrombocytopenic purpura, which consists of fever and nerve damage. In the elderly, this complication of *E. coli* O157:H7 infection can kill almost half of those who become infected.

Scope and Distribution

E. coli O157:H7 is worldwide in distribution and occurrence. The prevalence of the illness is higher in countries where agriculture is more prominent and where standards of infection control in food sources are not as stringent as other countries.

There is no evidence that race or gender makes any difference in the susceptibility to infection. However, those with immune systems that are relatively inefficient can be at increased risk; this includes children, the elderly, and those whose immune systems have been impaired by surgery or during the course of caring for another illness.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of *E. coli* O157:H7 infection is supportive, including blood replacement and kidney dialysis in persons with hemolytic uremic syndrome.

E. coli O157:H7 infections can be lessened by properly preparing food (such as by adequate cooking until the center of a hamburger is no longer red), washing preparation surfaces that have been in contact with raw ground meat, and handwashing. O157:H7 is readily killed by heat; boiling drinking water will kill the bacteria and destroy the toxins.

Impacts and Issues

The CDC has estimated that the illness afflicts over 70,000 Americans each year. Of these, over 2,000 require hospitalization and approximately 60 people die. For those who become infected, the best that can be expected is a bout of severe diarrhea. Fortunately, for many, recovery is complete and the misery of the infection becomes a memory. For others, the infection can damage the kidney or completely destroy kidney function. For the latter, dialysis or a kidney transplant becomes a fact of life.

Aside from these human costs, the economic consequences of O157:H7 are important. The costs of medical care and lost productivity related to O157:H7 exceed $400 million annually in the United States.

E. coli O157:H7 highlights the necessity of proper hygiene, particularly proper handwashing after using the bathroom. Many food-borne cases of the illness could be prevented if food preparation was accomplished with clean hands. Furthermore, the infection can be easily prevented by cooking ground meat thoroughly. Since the initial outbreak in 1982, many restaurants no longer serve hamburgers that are not cooked to an internal temperature of 160°F (71.1°C), or are not considered "well done."

In 2007, a Canadian bio-pharmaceutical company announced the successful development and testing of a vaccine for cattle. The vaccine operates by blocking the formation of the bacteria to the intestinal epithelial cells. The stranded bacteria are washed out of the intestinal tract. By vaccination of cattle herds, the reservoir of O157:H7 could gradually be eliminated, and outbreaks from beef would be a thing of the past. In the meantime, food safety scientists are studying other methods to decrease contamination of meat on the farm and in the slaughterhouse, and encourage the use of irradiation to keep the ground beef supply safe.

See Also *Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Vaccines and Vaccine Development; Water-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Drexler, Madeline. *Secret Agents: The Menace of Emerging Infections.* New York: Penguin, 2003.

Nestle, Marion. *What to Eat.* New York: North Point Press, 2006.

Periodicals

Davies. M., et al. "Outbreaks of *Escherichia coli* O157: H7 associated with petting zoos—North Carolina, Florida, and Arizona, 2004 and 2005." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly.* 54: 1277–1281 (2005).

Brian Hoyle

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD FACTORS IN REPORTING DISEASE

Public health inspectors and scientists use variations of DNA fingerprinting on bacteria to determine the source of an *E. coli* infection. By comparing samples from patients exposed and potential sources, investigators can often identify a common source of an outbreak.

There are always delays between infection and source identification, typically two to three weeks. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) publishes the following the timeline of identification procedures so that, in part, the number of cases possible during an outbreak may be more accurately estimated:

1. Incubation time: The time from eating the contaminated food to the beginning of symptoms. For *E. coli* O157, this is typically 3-4 days.
2. Time to treatment: The time from the first symptom until the person seeks medical care, when a diarrhea sample is collected for laboratory testing. This time lag may be 1 to 5 days.
3. Time to diagnosis: The time from when a person gives a sample to when *E. coli* O157 is obtained from it in a laboratory. This may be 1 to 3 days from the time the sample is received in the laboratory.
4. Sample shipping time: The time required to ship the *E. coli* O157 bacteria from the laboratory to the state public health authorities that will perform "DNA fingerprinting." This may take 0 to 7 days depending on transportation arrangements within a state and the distance between the clinical laboratory and public health department.
5. Time to "DNA fingerprinting": The time required for the state public health authorities to perform "DNA fingerprinting" on the *E. coli* O157 and compare it with the outbreak pattern. Ideally this can be accomplished in 1 day. However, many public health laboratories have limited staff and space, and experience multiple emergencies at the same time. Thus, the process may take 1 to 4 days.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

Exposed: Scientists Who Risked Disease for Discovery

Introduction

Most physicians would not find much commonality between yellow fever and stomach ulcers. Yellow fever is a viral illness spread by the bite of an infected mosquito, and spiral-shaped bacteria living in the extremely acidic environment of the stomach cause the majority of stomach ulcers. The common thread lies in the stories of the medical researchers who solved the mysteries presented by these otherwise distinct ailments.

History and Scientific Foundations

Yellow fever is a viral disease now preventable by vaccination, but until the early twentieth century, this virus caused epidemics of severe disease and death. Called "yellow jack," yellow fever caused yearly summer epidemics in American coastal cities, and the disease struck year round in the tropics. The initial attempt by French engineers to build the Panama Canal in the 1880s failed in large part due to yellow fever and malaria putting a majority of canal workers in either the hospital or the grave. The United States Army lost more troops to yellow fever during the Spanish American War than to any other single cause. Some regiments lost over 50% of their men to yellow fever. When the United States began to plan resuming construction of the canal in the 1890s, medical officials realized the need to deal with yellow fever.

In 1900, United States Army Surgeon General George Sternberg (1838–1915) appointed four United States Army physicians to serve on the fourth Yellow Fever Commission. The physicians—Walter Reed (1851–1902), James Carroll (1854–1907), Aristides Agramonte (1868–1931), and Jesse Lazear (1866–1900)—received orders to travel to Cuba and initiate experiments to discover the cause of yellow fever. The prevailing medical wisdom asserted that yellow fever infected people when they came in contact with clothing or bedding contaminated by those afflicted with yellow fever. A competing theory taught that the bite of infected mosquitoes spread yellow fever. In 1897, physicians Ronald Ross and Patrick Manson showed that the *Anopheles* mosquito carried malaria, and Carlos Finley, a Cuban physician, had long-championed the belief that yellow fever was also carried by a mosquito.

The four physicians of the Yellow Fever Commission quickly found evidence refuting the contaminated bedding

Australian scientist Barry Marshall (1951–) was co-recipient of the 2005 Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine. He and fellow Australian J. Robin Warren (1937–) won the award for their work detailing how *Helicobacter pylori* plays a role in gastritis and peptic ulcer disease. © Tony McDonough/epa/Corbis.

theory, but they soon discovered providing evidence for the mosquito transmission theory would require dramatic actions. Yellow fever affected only humans. Animals are not susceptible. In order to show the bite of infected mosquitoes caused yellow fever, human volunteers needed to allow themselves to be bitten. The physicians agreed to experiment on themselves before requesting human volunteers. Agramonte was immune to yellow fever since he had acquired the disease years earlier, and Reed traveled back to Washington to complete a report to Surgeon General Sternberg. As the only physicians available, Lazear and Carroll, began the experiments with humans.

The doctors obtained mosquitoes that had fed on those suffering from yellow fever, and in late August 1900, James Carroll allowed these mosquitoes to feast on his blood. He fell sick a few days later. Two days later a second human volunteer, Private William Dean of the Seventh Calvary, also contracted yellow fever after a deliberate exposure to infected mosquitoes. Both Carroll and Dean recovered; however, Carroll's co-worker, the physician Jesse Lezear, developed a fatal case of yellow fever. Lezear's exposure was officially ruled accidental, but many historians argue Lezear also allowed himself to be a human guinea pig. The determination of accidental exposure allowed life insurance payments to his family. Reed, Carroll, and Agramonte went on to carry out a series of experiments, which conclusively showed the mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*, transmitted yellow fever.

The research did not provide the cause of yellow fever. Many years would pass before research determined yellow fever to be due to a virus, but showing that mosquitoes spread the disease provided a means to control yellow fever. American public health physicians rapidly declared war on the mosquito populations in American cities, and the summer epidemics of yellow fever along the southern and gulf coasts soon became a memory. The building of the Panama Canal in the early twentieth century proceeded without the horrific death toll of malaria and yellow fever due to aggressive control of the mosquito population.

Fast-forwarding nearly a century, stomach ulcers presented a serious problem as these ulcers frequently caused life-threatening bleeding. Stomach ulcers could be treated, but not cured. Few physicians investigated stomach ulcers since the cause of these ulcers was not in dispute; most physicians assumed and taught that stress together with dietary indiscretion caused stomach ulcers. Excessive acid in the stomach due to stress, diet, or smoking corroded the stomach lining and produced an ulcer.

Treating patients with acid-lowering drugs seemed to confirm this thinking as the ulcers did respond to the treatment; however, when patients stopped the drugs, the ulcers recurred. Pathologist J. Robin Warren (1937–) found odd bacteria present in the stomachs of many patients with stomach ulcers and gastritis (inflammation of the stomach lining). These bacteria presented a difficulty to explain because conventional medical wisdom thought bacteria could not survive in the highly acidic environment of the stomach. Another Australian physician, Barry Marshall (1951–), became interested in these novel bacteria, which eventually received the name *Helicobacter pylori*.

Marshall, collaborating with Warren, began to collect evidence that the spiral-shaped bacteria caused stomach ulcers. Since medical establishment already "knew" the cause of ulcers, Marshall's ideas resulted in considerable skepticism. The medical community derided Marshall's ideas and provided him little funding for research. Despite the obstacles from 1981 to 1984, Barry Marshall gathered considerable evidence implicating *H. pylori* as a cause of stomach ulcers and gastritis. The bacteria were present in biopsy specimens taken from ulcer patients, and grown in pure culture from these specimens. However, like the case with yellow fever, no animal model existed to study stomach ulcers. Marshall could not inoculate an ulcer-free animal with the *H. pylori* bacteria and show that ulcers or gastritis developed. This experiment was essential to show that *H. pylori* did indeed cause stomach ulcers, and the bacteria were not just colonizing (maintaining a population without causing disease) in the human stomach.

By 1984, Marshall and Warren had a good circumstantial case implicating *H. pylori* as the causative agent of most stomach ulcers. They also developed a treatment strategy, which clearly both destroyed the bacteria in the

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOSAFETY LABORATORY: A place for scientific study of infectious agents. A biosafety laboratory is specially equipped to contain infectious agents, prevent their dissemination, and protect researchers from exposure.

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

HELSINKI DECLARATION: A set of ethical principles governing medical and scientific experimentation on human subjects; it was drafted by the World Medical Association and originally adopted in 1964.

INFORMED CONSENT: An ethical and informational process in which a person learns about a procedure or clinical trial, including potential risks or benefits, before deciding to voluntarily participate in a study or undergo a particular procedure.

stomach and healed the ulcers and gastritis. What they still lacked was definitive proof that when *H. pylori* infected someone, ulcers or gastritis developed. Marshall knew he would not likely be able to get permission to experiment on humans, so he decided to swallow a pure culture of *H. pylori*. He would be the animal model to see if ulcers developed. He had already determined that his stomach did not harbor *H. pylori*. Within a week of ingesting the bacteria, Barry Marshall had classic symptoms of gastritis. Biopsies from his stomach showed bacteria and infection where previously there had been a healthy stomach lining.

Soon after Marshall published the result of his self-experimentation, he was able to obtain funding for a more detailed experiment to determine the role of *H. pylori* in stomach disease. Marshall and Warren went on to work out the way the bacteria cause infections and disease. They also determined why many people harbor the bacteria in their stomachs, but never develop disease. Other researchers confirmed their findings, and by the early 1990s, the role *H. pylori* played in stomach ulcers and chronic gastritis was well established. For their research, Marshall and Warren shared the Nobel Prize for medicine in 1995.

These stories dramatically illustrate medical research using human volunteers. At the time James Carroll and Jesse Lezear contracted yellow fever, medical research using the scientific method was scarcely a few decades old. No guidelines on using human volunteers existed when Carroll exposed himself to a deadly disease in the name of science. Many decades would elapse before guidelines established what truly constitutes informed consent.

The physicians of the Yellow Fever Commission knew they would need to obtain consent of the volunteers. When approached, both U.S. Army soldiers and Spanish immigrants consented to be part of the yellow fever experiments. The consent documents established a contract between individual volunteers and the Yellow Fever Commission, represented by Reed.

Each volunteer was at least 25 years old and each explicitly volunteered to participate in the research. The documents discussed the near certainty of contracting yellow fever while being in Cuba versus the risks of developing the disease as part of the experiment. The volunteers received promises of expert and timely medical care, and the volunteers had to remain at Camp Lazear, the site of the experiments, for the duration of the studies. The volunteers received $100 “in American gold,” with an additional $100 if they developed yellow fever. This money represented a near fortune for a poor Spanish immigrant or an underpaid Army private. A family member could receive the money in case of death, but if the volunteer deserted prior to completion of the experiment, they forfeited all payments.

This consent is quite coercive by the standards of today. Essentially, the volunteers heard that they would likely get yellow fever anyway, so if they volunteered they would receive both money and better medical care than the average soldier or immigrant would likely obtain. No organization overseeing human research would allow such a means of obtaining volunteers for research today. This “informed consent” has elements of coercion, forceful persuasion, and manipulation, particularly in the military situation with officers asking enlisted personnel to participate. However, the involved physicians truly put themselves first in line, and at that time, obtaining any consent was remarkable.

The modern practice of informed consent in human research did not come into being until after the revelations of the horrific abuse of human subjects the middle of the twentieth century. The well-documented atrocities committed by German and Japanese physicians during World War II (1939–1945) have made the names Josef Mengele and Shiro Ishii synonymous with torture in the name of medical science. Perhaps less well documented are the experiments during World War II by American physician Stafford Warren. In attempts to learn of radiation effects, researchers injected plutonium into humans without their consent. Experiments on American troops using mustard gas were conducted with the “volunteers” not knowing what they were volunteering for. Unlike the example of Carroll, none of the physicians involved in these experiments stepped forward to experiment first on themselves.

Knowledge of the abuse of human subjects in the Nazi concentration camps resulted in the drafting of the Nuremburg Code. Perhaps one of the most important of the ten principles in the Nuremburg Code is the assertion that consent to participate in medical research must be given free of coercive influence. Also directed in the codes is the assertion that the benefits of the research should exceed the risk to the human volunteers.

■ Issue and Impacts

In 1964, medical leaders drafted another somewhat more thorough set of guidelines known as the Declaration of Helsinki. This document sets forth ethical principles for medical research involving human subjects. The declaration—amended several times and most recently in 2004—together with the Nuremburg Code sets forth the ethical principles to which medical research using human beings must adhere.

Marshall discussed the ethics of his decision to experiment on himself in his Nobel Lecture. Marshall stated, “I had to be my own guinea pig.” He felt that he was the only one who could make truly informed consent to his own experiment, and this thinking confirmed his approach to the problem of using human subjects to prove the role of *H. pylori* in stomach disease. He clearly felt the benefits outweighed the risks.

Modern medical researchers delve into diseases involving very deadly bacteria and viruses. Experimental designs minimize the risks of exposure to these pathogens. Special containment facilities (biosafety laboratories) ensure that accidental exposures do not occur easily. Special animal models are built by genetic techniques, negating the need for experiments such as those used by Carroll. Still, a need will certainly always exist for courageous individuals to take great risks in order to solve serious medical problems.

SEE ALSO Helicobacter pylori*; Malaria; Public Health and Infectious Disease; Yellow Fever.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Pierce, John R., and James V. Writer. *Yellow Jack: How Yellow Fever Ravaged America and Walter Reed Discovered Its Deadly Secrets.* Hoboken, N.J.: John Wiley & Sons, 2005.

Web Sites

Marshall, Barry J. *Nobelprize.org.* "Nobel Lecture: Helicobacter Connections." 1995. <http://nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/medicine/laureates/2005/marshall-lecture.html/b> (accessed June 3, 2007).

National Institutes of Health. "Guidelines for the Conduct of Research Involving Human Subjects at NIH." <http://ohsr.od.nih.gov/guidelines/guidelines.html> (accessed June 1, 2007).

University of Virginia Health System. "Yellow Fever and the Walter Reed Commission." <http://www.healthsystem.virginia.edu/internet/library/historical/medical_history/yellow_fever/index.cfm> (accessed June 1, 2007).

Lloyd Scott Clements

Fifth Disease

Introduction

Fifth disease, or erythema infectiosum (infectious redness) refers to a common childhood viral infection that is characterized by a mild rash. The infection lasts less than two weeks, and is also known as slapped cheek syndrome, because of the characteristic redness of the face that develops.

The illness can also occur in adults, where it can also involve the joints. In people with some forms of anemia or immune system malfunction, fifth disease can become a more serious condition.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

While fifth disease is likely ancient in origin, its cause has been known only since 1975. Fifth disease is caused by a type of virus called human Parvovirus B19. Only humans can be infected by this virus, although other types of Parvovirus infect dogs and cats. Parvovirus B19 cannot be spread from humans to dogs and cats, nor can the parvoviruses that infect dogs and cats be passed to humans.

The designation fifth disease arose because, when the prevalence of childhood rash-producing illnesses were determined, it was fifth in occurrence behind scarlet fever and three forms of measles.

A hallmark feature of fifth disease is the presence of a bright red rash on the cheeks of the face. A duller rash can also be present on the arms, legs, stomach, and back. The rash sometimes fades, only to be re-activated by stresses like sunlight, exercise, and heat.

A child with fifth disease may also develop a mild fever and coldlike symptoms, and become tired in the few days before the appearance of the rash. Other symptoms can include swollen glands, red eyes, sore throat, and diarrhea.

Some adults who are infected with Parvovirus B19 may not develop symptoms. Others can develop the characteristic rash. In others, joints can become swollen and painful in a way that is similar to arthritis. Still other adults will develop both the rash and the joint discomfort.

Fifth disease is contagious, at least until the rash appears. This can occur as early as four days after infection with the parvovirus, but some people can be symptom-free for almost three weeks. Person to person transmission is likely during this time, especially among children who may be in close contact with each other in a day care or other facility, since both the child and the caregiver are usually unaware that an infection is present and so no special precautions are yet being taken. By the time the rash has appeared a child or adult is no longer contagious.

The incubation period for the disease is 4–20 days from the time of exposure. Transmission of the virus occurs via contaminated droplets, by the passage of saliva, sputum, or mucous from the nose from one person to another. Likely routes also include sharing eating utensils or drink containers.

Scope and Distribution

Fifth disease occurs worldwide and is a common childhood illness. It tends to be seasonal, occurring more frequently late in the winter and in early spring. However, cases can occur anytime of the year. During outbreaks in schools, from 10–60% of students acquire the disease.

Fifth disease occurs more commonly among children ages 5 to 14, but also occurs in preschool-age children and their parents. About 50% of tested adults show antibodies in their blood to the disease, meaning they have already contracted it and are immune.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment is usually not necessary, as the infection passes within a week or two. In some adults with fifth disease, joint swelling and pain can last for several months. Over-the-counter medications can be helpful in easing joint discomfort. In those with more serious symptoms, treatment with Parvovirus B19 antibodies can be useful. As of 2007, there is no vaccine for fifth disease.

Options for infected women who are pregnant and their unborn children should be discussed with a personal physician. As of 2007 the CDC asserted that there was "no universally recommended approach to monitor a pregnant woman who has a documented parvovirus B19 infection. Some physicians treat a parvovirus B19 infection in a pregnant woman as a low-risk condition and continue to provide routine prenatal care. Other physicians may increase the frequency of doctor visits and perform blood tests and ultrasound examinations to monitor the health of the unborn baby."

A bout of fifth disease protects a person from a further illness, as the immunity that is built up to the parvovirus last for a person's life.

Impacts and Issues

Fifth disease is an almost-universal aspect of childhood. Fortunately for the millions of children around the world who contract the infection every year, the illness is not severe and resolves on its own. A woman who contracts fifth disease during pregnancy is at risk for more serious complications that include development of anemia by the fetus or, if the anemia is especially severe, spontaneous abortion.

Children with fifth disease are sometimes excluded from school when the characteristic rash appears on the face, in an effort to reduce the chance of spreading the disease. In fact, the contagious period is earlier, when cold or flulike symptoms are present. Once the rash appears, the children are no longer able to spread the disease.

For people with anemia (a condition where the transport of oxygen by the blood is impaired), fifth disease can cause the anemia to become more severe. People whose immune system is not functioning efficiently due to illness (such as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, [AIDS]) or deliberate immunosuppression, as occurs to lessen the rejection of a transplanted organ, can develop anemia with fifth disease that is more long-lasting.

See Also *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Viral Disease.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODIES: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

DROPLET: A droplet is a small airborne drop or particle of fluid, such as may be expelled by sneezing or coughing.

IMMUNOSUPPRESSION: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to disease causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (an example is food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (an example is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

The National Center for Infectious Diseases, Respiratory and Enteric Viruses Branch states, "Excluding persons with fifth disease from work, child care centers, or schools is not likely to prevent the spread of the virus, since people are contagious before they develop the rash."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS.

The CDC does not recommend that "pregnant women should routinely be excluded from a workplace where a fifth disease outbreak is occurring."

The CDC "considers that the decision to stay away from a workplace where there are cases of fifth disease is an personal decision for a woman to make, after discussions with her family, physician, and employer."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Black, Jacquelyn. *Microbiology: Principles and Explorations.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

Douglas, Ann. *The Mother of All Toddler Books.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Parvovirus B19 (Fifth Disease)" <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/revb/respiratory/parvo_b19.htm> (accessed on April 1, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Filariasis

Introduction

Filariasis is a preventable parasitic disease caused by the threadworms *Wuchereria bancrofti*, *Brugia malayi*, and *Brugia timori*. It is endemic in over 80 countries and is considered to be the main cause of permanent disability worldwide.

When symptomatic, patients may present with severe lymphatic and limb swelling, commonly referred to as elephantiasis. The disfigurations resulting from elephantiasis and lymphodema raise issues among some communities and add to the socioeconomic impacts of this debilitating disease.

A Haitian man waits in a clinic to be treated for lymphatic filariasis, a disfiguring disease. Also known as elephantiasis, the mosquito-borne parasitic disease invades the lymph system. © *Karen Kasmauski/Corbis.*

Infection is transmitted through mosquito bites, where both the vector (disease carrier) and the human host are necessary in the successful completion of the parasitic life cycle. Anti-parasitic treatment is available, but is expensive and can take around a year to eliminate the parasites. Filariasis infection has been successfully curtailed in countries such as China, which has given hope for the campaign of global eradication.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

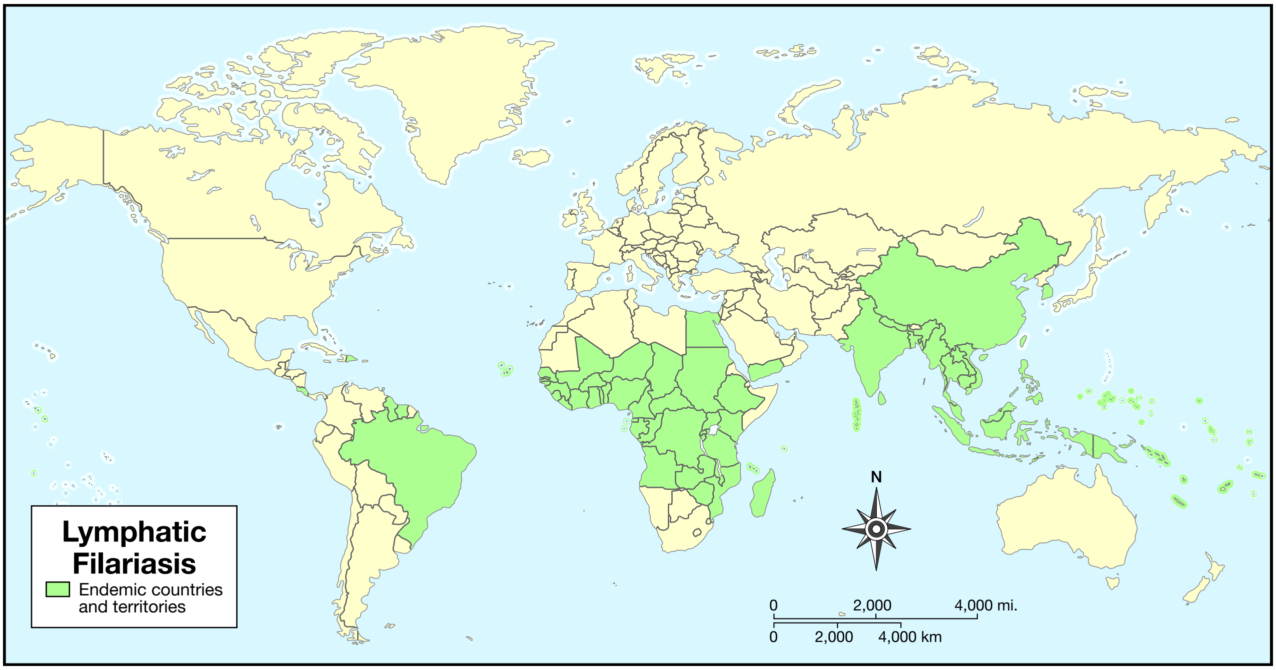
Filariasis was first recognized in its infectious form in 1866 when filarial larvae were detected in urine and identified as the causative agent.

The infection is usually acquired in childhood, but takes years to manifest and usually remains asymptomatic until adulthood. Once developed, symptoms may include chronic swelling of the lymph nodes and swelling of the arms, legs, and genitals. Elephantiasis refers to the thickening of skin and underlying tissue and often accompanies symptoms. Without presentation of symptoms, internal damage to the kidneys and the lymphatic system may also develop.

Transmission of filariasis is through mosquito bites, whereby the larval form is drawn out of blood by mosquitos, develops to the infective stage, and is injected into a new host. Here the larvae develop into the adult form, migrate to the lymph nodes, mate, and release millions of larvae into the host's bloodstream. Adult worms may live up to six years, during which time the host will remain a source of infection for others.

Scope and Distribution

Filariasis is a disease largely associated with poverty with more than a billion people in over 80 countries at risk. Infection caused by *W. bancrofti* is endemic in tropical regions of Southeast Asia, Africa, India, and Central and



Map showing lymphatic filariasis endemic countries and territories, 2006. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

South America, while *B. malayi* and *B. timori* are generally limited to areas of Southeast Asia. This disease state is rare in western countries with no cases having been reported within the United States.

Filariasis has been recognized as the leading cause of permanent disability worldwide. Of the 120 million people affected, 40 million have been left disfigured and completely incapacitated. Chronic disease symptoms present more in men than women as seen in endemic areas where from 10 to 50% of men are infected versus up to 10% of women.

Disease distribution is also affected by habitat suitability for the various forms of mosquito responsible for transmission of the parasite.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of this disease consists of a multifaceted approach. Treatment of the infection itself may be achieved with a concurrent dosage of strong anti-parasitic drugs such as diethylcarbamazine citrate (DEC), DEC-fortified salt, and albendazole. This proves to be 99% effective in removing microfilaria from the blood after one year of treatment.

Lymphodema and elephantiasis are often exacerbated due to bacterial and fungal infections taking advantage of the patient's compromised lymphatic condition. Following rigorous hygiene routines as prevention against infection from opportunistic pathogens and completing exercises to improve lymph flow often helps to reduce these causes of swelling. Surgery may be necessary for treatment of severe genital swelling in men.

Prevention of filariasis is achievable by reducing exposure to mosquito bites and treating endemic communities, in total, to remove the pool of infection. Some means of prevention are relatively simple and inexpensive. Using mosquito netting in sleeping areas, wearing clothing that covers the arms and legs, applying mosquito repellant on exposed skin, and remaining indoors during peak times of mosquito activity all reduce the risk of exposure to filariasis. These measures are the basis of a global campaign to eradicate filariasis.

Impacts and Issues

Filariasis causes permanent—and often painful—disability in over 40 million people worldwide. Most cases occur in developing or underdeveloped regions. Many disabled by filariasis cannot regularly farm, work, or attend school. Malnourishment rates are often higher among those affected by filariasis than in the surrounding non-affected population.

The social impacts of filariasis present not only in the loss of work labor due to incapacitation, but also in community relations. People disfigured by the disease are frequently shunned by society and chronic complications are often deemed shameful. Marriage is considered a near impossibility among those suffering genital manifestations, which then puts growth and development of the community at risk.

Filariasis is a disease with potential for eradication, but one that remains endemic in poor communities. The continued increase in infection may be attributed to the rapid growth of cities and the resultant spread of poverty-stricken housing areas. These regions provide breeding sites for the mosquitoes and aid in disease transmission. It is for these reasons that endemic areas are trapped in a vicious cycle of infection that has proven difficult to break.

SEE ALSO *Demographics and Infectious Disease; Economic Development and Disease; Helminth Disease; Host and Vector; Opportunistic Infection; Parasitic Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., Bennett, J.E., and Dolin, R. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* Volume 2. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Lymphatic Filariasis." February 16, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/lymphaticfilariasis/index.htm> (accessed March 5, 2007).

Directors of Health Promotion and Education (DHPE). "Lymphatic Filariasis." 2005 <http://www.dhpe.org/infect/Lymphfil.html> (accessed March 5, 2007).

World Health Organization (WHO). "Lymphatic Filariasis." September 2000 <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs102/en/> (accessed March 5, 2007).

WORDS TO KNOW

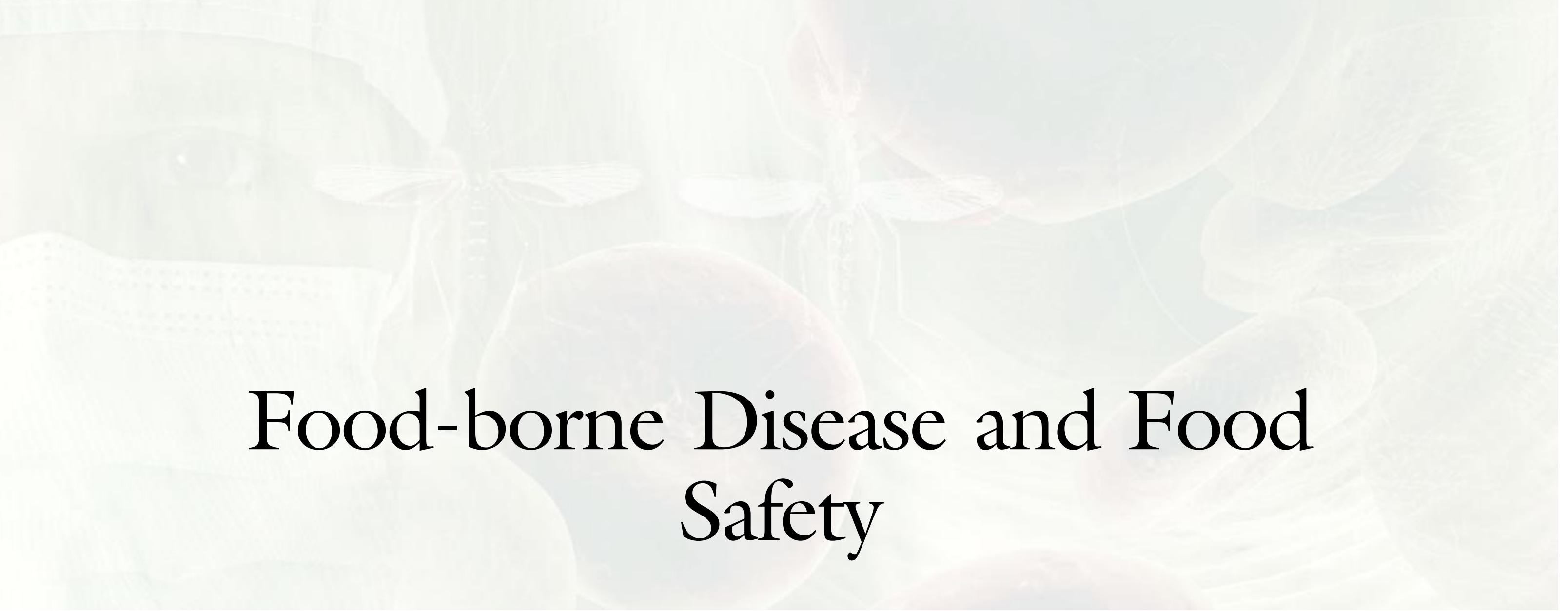
LYMPHATIC SYSTEM: The lymphatic system is the body's network of organs, ducts, and tissues that filter harmful substances out of the fluid that surrounds body tissues. Lymphatic organs include the bone marrow, thymus, spleen, appendix, tonsils, adenoids, lymph nodes, and Peyer's patches (in the small intestine). The thymus and bone marrow are called primary lymphatic organs, because lymphocytes are produced in them. The other lymphatic organs are called secondary lymphatic organs. The lymphatic system is a complex network of thin vessels, capillaries, valves, ducts, nodes, and organs that runs throughout the body, helping protect and maintain the internal fluids system of the entire body by both producing and filtering lymph, and by producing various blood cells. The three main purposes of the lymphatic system are to drain fluid back into the bloodstream from the tissues, to filter lymph, and to fight infections.

SOCIOECONOMIC: Concerning both social and economic factors.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

IN CONTEXT: RELATED DISEASE GROUPS

Filiariasis is a group of tropical diseases caused by thread like parasitic round worms (nematodes of the order Filaraiidae, commonly called filariae) and their larvae. The group affects humans and animals. The larvae transmit the disease to humans through a mosquito bite. Filariasis is characterized by fever, chills, headache, and skin lesions in the early stages and, if untreated, can progress to include gross enlargement of the limbs and genitalia in a condition called elephantiasis. There are hundreds of described filarial parasites, but only eight that cause infections in humans: *Brugia malayi*, *Wucheria bancrofti*, *Brugia timori*, *Onchocerca volvulus*, *Loa loa*, *Mansonella streptocerca*, *Mansonella ozzardi*, and *Mansonella perstans*.



Food-borne Disease and Food Safety

Introduction

Food is necessary for our growth and survival. The nutrients in many foods that are vital to humans, however, also provide a meal for microorganisms. The organic (carbon-containing) compounds and moisture content of many foods permit the growth of microbes. Sometimes this co-existence is beneficial. For example, bacteria in the genus *Lactobacillus* help produce yogurt. However, the presence of some microorganisms in foods threatens the food supply and the health of those who eat it.

Some bacteria that can form structures called spores can survive for extended periods of time in foods that are too acidic to permit growth of the bacteria. But, if the food is eaten, the spores can germinate and growth can resume in the more hospitable environment of the intestinal tract.

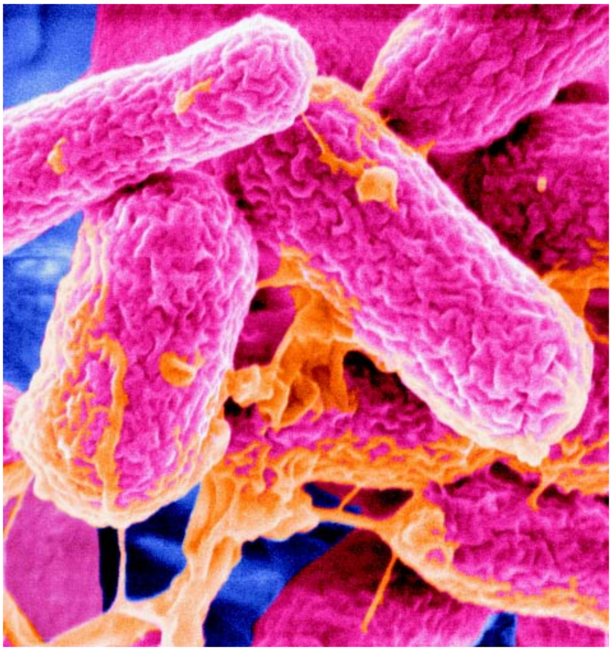
Bacteria, viruses, parasites, and the poisons (toxins) produced by some of the microbes cause more than 200 different food-borne diseases. This is a serious health threat worldwide. For example, in the United States, food-borne diseases occur an estimated 76 million times every year—affecting 30% of the population—and kills 7,000 to 9,000 people.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Food-borne illnesses tend to be from microorganisms that usually live in the intestinal tract. Generally, the illnesses produce intestinal upset, often with nausea and vomiting. Food-borne illnesses are commonly called “food poisoning”. However, the term food poisoning obscures the fact that there are several types of food-borne illnesses that vary in cause and severity. While mild to moderate illnesses tend to pass after a few days, more serious illnesses can cause kidney damage or failure, muscle paralysis, and death.

Death most often is due to the excessive loss of fluid that occurs in diarrhea. A person can lose fluid at a rate that is difficult to replace by drinking water. If they cannot get medical attention (such as the continual provision of fluids intravenously) they can go into shock and suffer organs failure.

In countries including the United States and Canada, *Campylobacter jejuni* is the leading cause of food-borne illness. The major source is poultry. The bacterium is a



A color enhanced scanning electron micrograph (SEM) of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 shows a strain of the bacteria that produces a powerful toxin, which causes abdominal cramps and bloody diarrhea, with kidney failure occurring in extreme cases. It can live in the intestines of healthy cattle; it is spread during the milking and slaughter processes. Another source of infection is sewage-contaminated water. *Dr. Gary Gaugler/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

normal resident in the intestinal tract of poultry. When poultry such as chickens are slaughtered, the intestinal contents can be spread onto the skin. Even with washing of the carcasses, bacteria can remain stuck in crevasses and other areas on the surface. Indeed, monitoring studies have proven that 70–90% of the poultry that reaches the supermarket shelf is contaminated with *C. jejuni.*

Even with the hundreds of millions of poultry meals eaten in the United States each year, the number of illnesses produced by *C. jejuni* is relatively low. This is because the bacteria are very susceptible to heat, thorough cooking will kill the bacteria long before the meal is eaten. However, improper cooking and the re-contamination of cooked meat by, for example, laying the meat on a cutting board that has not been washed after use, sickens millions of American annually.

Another bacteria, Salmonella is the next leading cause of food-borne illness in the United States, with an estimated 1.3 million cases each year. The estimated medical cost of treating these illnesses is $260 million. There are hundreds of species of Salmonella, and dozens are capable of causing illness. For example, *S. enteritidis* is commonly associated with egg containing prepared salad dressing or custards that have been left for several hours at room temperature. This allows the contaminating bacteria to grow to numbers that cause disease when eaten.

The third leading cause of food-borne illness in the United States is *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 and related *E. coli* that cause severe intestinal illnesses (they are collectively known as enterohemorrhagic *E. coli*, or EHEC). Still other varieties of *E. coli* are normally found in the intestinal tract of humans and animals; these are usually harmless. However, strain O157:H7 arose in the 1970s when genetic material from another bacterium called Shigella was somehow transferred to *E. coli*. The genetic material coded for the production of a very potent toxin, and made the new *E. coli* extremely dangerous. The toxin damages intestinal cells, which causes bleeding, and can spread via the bloodstream to the kidneys, potentially causing permanent organ damage or failure.

O157:H7 can be a normally part of the bacterial community found in the intestinal tract of cattle. The illness is usually produced when cattle feces contaminate drinking water. As well, the bacterium can contaminate ground beef during slaughter and packaging. As with Campylobacter, inadequate cooking allows the bacteria to remain alive. Vegetables can also become contaminated by manure supplied as fertilizer. Raw vegetables should be thoroughly washed before consumption. In September, 2006, contamination of organically grown spinach with O157:H7 killed three people and sickened hundreds in the United States.

Some bacteria in the genus *Listeria* also cause food-borne illnesses. *Listeria monocytogenes*, causes listerosis, a rare but serious illness. *Listeria* especially threatens people with compromised immune systems, the elderly, and pregnant women. In addition to the usual symptoms associated with food poisoning, listerosis can cause a severe form of meningitis. *Listeria* bacteria flourish in temperatures between 39°F (4°C) and 98.6°F (37°C).

Another common source of food-borne illness is a virus known as the Norwalk-like virus. The virus normally lives in the human intestinal tract, and is usually spread to food when the food is handled by people who have not washed their hands properly after a bowel movement. Over nine million infections are estimated to occur each year in the United States alone. Most of these could be eliminated by proper handwashing.

WORDS TO KNOW

FOOD PRESERVATION: The term food preservation refers to any one of a number of techniques used to prevent food from spoiling. It includes methods such as canning, pickling, drying and freeze-drying, irradiation, pasteurization, smoking, and the addition of chemical additives. Food preservation has become an increasingly important component of the food industry as fewer people eat foods produced on their own lands, and as consumers expect to be able to purchase and consume foods that are out of season.

IONIZING RADIATION: Any electromagnetic or particulate radiation capable of direct or indirect ion production in its passage through matter. In general use: Radiation that can cause tissue damage or death.

IRRADIATION: A method of preservation that treats food with low doses of radiation to deactivate enzymes and to kill microorganisms and insects.

Scope and Distribution

Food-borne infections can affect anyone, anywhere. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that over two million people around the world die each year from diarrhea caused by food-borne infections. Most deaths from food-borne illnesses occur in developing nations.

Because food-borne illnesses are mainly caused by microorganisms that are residents of the intestinal tract, most outbreaks are related to fecal contamination of food and water rather than to the time of year or particular aspect of a culture. Worldwide, poor hygiene is the culprit.

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

Although food irradiation is opposed by some advocacy groups and research continues, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that "food irradiation is a promising new application of an established technology. It holds great potential for preventing many important food-borne diseases that are transmitted through meat, poultry, fresh produce and other foods. An overwhelming body of scientific evidence demonstrates that irradiation does not harm the nutritional value of food, nor does it make the food unsafe to eat. Just as for the pasteurization of milk, it will be most effective when irradiation is coupled to careful sanitation programs. Consumer confidence will depend on making food clean first, and then using irradiation or pasteurization to make it safe. Food irradiation is a logical next step to reducing the burden of food-borne disease in the United States."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*

Treatment and Prevention

Prevention of food-borne illness must consider a number of factors. The type of disease-causing organism can be important. For example, Campylobacter can be effectively treated by the proper cooking of foods, whereas Clostridium, which can form an environmental hardy structure called a spore, may still be capable of causing an infection even after heating of the food. The environment is another factor; temperature and the amount of moisture in the food can influence the type of organisms that can thrive. Environment also includes the various places that the food passes through on its way to the dinner table; a food entering a processing plant may be safe only to become contaminated during processing. These factors are inter-related. For example, protecting a food from questionable environments, but failing to decontaminate the food does little to lessen the chance of a food-borne illness.

Treatment of foods prior to eating is absolutely important in preventing illness. Some treatments, such as drying or preserving food in salt prior to a sea voyage, were done centuries ago. Canning of foods as a means of preservation and protection from spoilage began in the eighteenth century. In the nineteenth century, the association of an unhygienic environment and disease was recognized. As food began to be shipped further to market, the problem of food deterioration during transit became apparent.

Food safety owes a great deal to Louis Pasteur, who developed the process of pasteurization. Pasteurization began in the 1890s. The process heats milk for a short time at temperatures high enough to be lethal to those microbes that would be expected to be contaminants without altering the taste or appearance of the milk. Milk is now routinely pasteurized before sale. Innovations in the pasteurization technique have increased the shelf-life of refrigerated milk and developed means of transporting and storing milk without the need for refrigeration.

Another prevention strategy is the development and legal enforcement of standards of food preparation, handling and inspection. In many places, food quality must be demonstrated or else the product can be pulled from the shelf and, if necessary, those responsible for its manufacture or distribution prosecuted. In the United States, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulates processing and labeling of most foods. However, the Department of Agriculture (USDA) regulates and oversees the safety of all meat, poultry, and egg products. The two agencies work together to ensure the safety of food produced within and imported into the United States. Both agencies also provide assistance to international organizations and developing nations who wish to implement or strengthen food safety programs.

While government agencies monitor the safety of food as it is produced and sold, monitoring food preparation and hygienic practices in the home must be done by individuals. Improper storage of foods prepared with raw or undercooked eggs, can cause growth of microorganisms in the food. Improper cleaning of cutting boards and other preparation surfaces can cross-contaminate one food by another. Many cases of food poisoning due to *Clostidium botulium* are related to improper home-canning of foods; the spores of the bacterium can survive the food preparation steps and remain capable of causing illness when the food is eaten, even years later.

Impacts and Issues

The impact of food-borne illnesses on the individual is substantial. The 76 million food-borne illnesses that are thought to occur each year (likely an underestimate, since many people will suffer from an illness without seeking medical attention) hospitalizes 325,000 people and kills 7,000 to 9,000, according to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Society suffers as well; medical costs, lost work days, travel costs to seek treatment, and the premature loss of people who would otherwise contribute wealth to the economy costs the United States almost seven billion dollars a year.

In February 2007, peanut butter was responsible for a nationwide Salmonella outbreak in the United States affecting over 300 people in approximately 40 states. The FDA warned consumers not to purchase or eat certain brands of peanut butter manufactured at a facility in Georgia. Soon afterwards, companies with brands associated with the salmonella outbreak recalled all potentially contaminated products. While Salmonella is typically associated with poultry products, the 2007 outbreak was not the first associated with peanut butter. A similar Salmonella event that occurred in Australia in the mid–1990s was traced to contaminated peanut butter.

In underdeveloped countries, where medical care is not as available or advanced, food-borne illnesses can be even more devastating. Diarrheal illnesses afflict millions of people every year, many of them are children. The illnesses are a major cause of the malnutrition that is a part of everyday life in many underdeveloped regions.

Prevention of food-borne illnesses does have some controversial aspects. Many food safety organizations advocate irradiation, or cold pasteurization, as method of preventing food-borne illnesses. Irradiation involves exposing food to extremely low levels of ionizing radiation to sterilize food. Proponents cite irradiation's ability to the causes of harmful bacteria such as *E. coli*, *Listeria*, and *S. enteritidis.* Irradiation can also destroy parasites and agricultural pests, as well as prolong the shelf-life of fruits and vegetables by preventing sprouting and delaying spoilage. Critics of irradiation cite the use of radioactive materials in some (mostly older) irradiation technology as a potential environmental and health threat. Others assert that irradiation forms new chemical compounds in treated foods and that the long-term effects of ingesting irradiated products have not been thoroughly studied. Furthermore, while irradiation is effective at killing the sources of many food-borne illnesses, food can still become contaminated after irradiation by improper storage or handling. Irradiation is approved to sterilize meat, egg, poultry, and other agricultural products in several countries, and most require labeling to indicate its use.

A food safety issue that has become more urgent since the 2001 terrorist attacks in the United States is the monitoring of foods to ensure their safety from deliberate tampering. The chain from the field to the supermarket leaves food vulnerable to the deliberate addition of microbiological agents that cause illness or death. While storage conditions, monitoring programs and even the design of packing that can detect contamination is useful in protecting foods from accidental contamination, it is very difficult to protect food from deliberate harm.

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

The Food and Drug Administration (FDA), one of the oldest consumer protection agencies in the United States (formed in 1927), is charged with the responsibility to ensure that foods are safe and wholesome, that medicines and medical devices are safe and effective, that cosmetics and products that emit radiation are harmless, and that products are honestly labeled and packaged. FDA is also responsible for feed and drugs for pets and farm animals.

Federal law requires that food manufacturers place labels on most foods. The food label must provide complete, useful, and accurate nutrition information. The requirement that packaged food be labeled has the effect of raising the quality of foods sold. It also gives the consumer a basis for making healthy food choices. Food labels appear in a consistent format to facilitate direct comparisons of the nutritional contents of various foods. These labels always appear on a package under the title *Nutrition Facts*.

See Also Escherichia coli *O157:H7;* Salmonella *Infection (Salmonellosis)*.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

DeGregori, Thomas R. *Bountiful Harvest: Technology, Food Safety, and the Environment*. Washington, Cato Institute, 2002.

Nestle, Marion. *What to Eat*. New York: North Point Press, 2006.

United States Food & Drug Administration. *Bad Bug Book: food-borne Pathogenic Microorganisms and Natural Toxins Handbook*. McLean: International Medical Publishing, 2004.

Brian Hoyle

Gastroenteritis (Common Causes)

Introduction

Gastroenteritis is an inflammation of the stomach and the intestines that is produced by the immune system's response to an infection that can be caused by a number of bacteria or viruses. Gastroenteritis is sometimes referred to as the stomach flu, but is not caused by influenza viruses.

The symptoms of gastroenteritis include a stomach or intestinal upset, vomiting, and often the production of watery feces that is called diarrhea. In developing regions of the world, and especially among children, gastroenteritis-induced diarrhea is a killer. Millions of deaths of newborns and children due to gastroenteritis occur each year in Asia, Africa, parts of the Indian subcontinent, and Latin America.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Gastroenteritis is caused mainly by viruses, but can also be caused by infection with bacteria and protozoa. The viruses that cause gastroenteritis include rotaviruses, enteroviruses, adenoviruses, caliciviruses, astroviruses, Norwalk virus, and a group of Norwalk-like viruses. Rotavirus infections are the most common.

The symptoms of viral gastroenteritis usually appear quickly, within a few days of ingesting the virus in contaminated water or food. The illness tends to pass quickly, usually being over within the same week. But, people whose immune system function is inefficient such as the young and the elderly, people who are ill with another ailment such as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), or someone whose immune system has been deliberately subdued (such as someone who has received an organ transplant, to reduce the chances of organ rejection) can be ill for a longer time.

Rotavirus is a member of the Reoviridae family of viruses, which contain ribonucleic acid (RNA) as the genetic material. When the virus infects a host cell, the host's genetic machinery is used to make deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) from the viral RNA; the viral DNA can then be transcribed and translated with host DNA to produce the components that will make new virus particles. There are three main groups of rotavirus that differ from each other slightly in the composition of the protein shell that surrounds the genetic material. These differences mean that a host's immune system will produce different antibodies to the different viruses. Group A rotavirus causes over three million cases of gastroenteritis in the United States annually. Group B rotavirus causes diarrhea that is more prevalent in adults; it has caused several large outbreaks in China. Group C causes diarrhea in children and adults, but is less common than the other two types of rotaviral gastroenteritis.

Rotavirus gastroenteritis hospitalizes 70,000 children every year in the United States. The main reason that rotaviral gastroenteritis is so common is the contagious nature of the virus. Rotavirus easily is spread from person to person, usually when fecal material gets into the mouth. This is known as the fecal-oral route of transmission. Not surprisingly, this type of gastroenteritis occurs frequently in day care facilities, where touching of soiled diapers and hand-to-mouth contact are common. In older children and adults, improper hygiene, particularly washing of the hands, is the main reason for the spread of the virus. People who are infected can excrete (or shed) very high numbers of virus in the watery diarrhea, and spread the infection. Also, handling of utensils and preparation of food with hands that are soiled spreads the virus to the diner. Another route of transmission that is not related to hygiene is the consumption of shellfish. Shellfish are filter feeders—they filter water through an apparatus that traps small food particles. The filter can also trap rotavirus that is present in fecal-contaminated water. As the shellfish feeds, more and more virus can accumulate, until the shellfish becomes toxic to anyone eating it. The danger is especially pronounced in shellfish such as oysters, which some people prefer to eat raw.

Another virus that causes gastroenteritis is the Norwalk virus. This form of the illness tends to be more common in adults, although surveys of children using sophisticated molecular techniques of viral detection have revealed the presence of Norwalk antibodies in children, meaning they have been exposed to the virus, or to a protein that is very similar to the Norwalk viral protein.

Bacteria also cause gastroenteritis. Common examples include certain strains of *Escherichia coli*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, and *Vibrio cholerae*. Bacterial gastroenteritis occurs less in developed countries, as the treatment of drinking water, and treatment and disposal of sewage water tends to be much better than in underdeveloped regions. In developing nations, bacterial gastroenteritis due to contaminated water remains a significant concern. Bacterial gastroenteritis can also be caused by eating contaminated food. Examples include foods such as potato salad that has been left at room temperature for some time prior to the meal and contaminated with *Salmonella*, and the presence of a type of *E. coli* designated O157:H7 in undercooked meat; a toxin produced by O157:H7 damages the cells lining the intestinal tract, causing bloody diarrhea.

A protozoan called *Cryptosporidium parvum*, which resides in the intestinal tract of some animals, also causes gastroenteritis when it contaminates drinking water. This type of gastroenteritis is becoming more prevalent in the United States. One reason is the continuing expansion of urban areas into regions that were previously wild, which brings humans into closer contact with wildlife and the *C. parvum* they carry. Another reason is that the protozoans can form an environmentally hardy form called a cyst that allows the protozoan to persist through water treatments such as chlorination and, because of the small diameter of the cysts, to pass through filters used in water filtration. Once inside a person, the cyst can rejuvenate into the growing form that is the cause of the illness.

The symptoms of gastroenteritis always include diarrhea. Fever and vomiting are also common. Typically, these symptoms last only several days and progressively lessen over the next few days as the infection abates. The diarrhea in gastroenteritis is very loose and watery. Bowel movements occur frequently, even several times an hour, as fluid pours out of the cells lining the intestine as a consequence of the infection and as an attempt to flush out the infecting bacteria or virus. Dehydration is not usually a problem in an adult, who will instinctively drink water. If dehydration occurs very quickly or if the individual is so sick that they are unaware or unable to take care of themselves, then they can become very ill. Hospitalization of a child for diarrhea is usually because of complications of the excessive fluid loss rather than any direct effect of the stomach and intestinal infection.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

FECAL-ORAL ROUTE OF TRANSMISSION: The spread of disease through the transmission of minute particles of fecal material from one organism to the mouth of another organisms. This can occur by drinking contaminated water, eating food that was exposed to animal or human feces (perhaps by watering plants with unclean water), or by the poor hygiene practices of those preparing food.

ORAL REHYDRATION THERAPY: Patients who have lost excessive water from their tissues are said to be dehydrated. Restoring body water levels by giving the patient fluids through the mouth (orally) is oral rehydration therapy. Often, a special mixture of water, glucose, and electrolytes called oral rehydration solution is given.

VIRAL SHEDDING: Viral shedding refers to the movement of the herpes virus from the nerves to the surface of the skin. During shedding, the virus can be passed on through skin-to-skin contact.

Scope and Distribution

Gastroenteritis is global in distribution. However, it most affects people living in the developing world, and most of these are children. Estimates put the death toll of children due to gastroenteritis-related diarrhea at 1–2 million each year, and the great majority of these deaths occur in developing countries. Still, this is much less than the near five million deaths that occurred annually until the 1980s, and the introduction of what is called oral hydration therapy—drinking a solution containing salts and sugars that helps replenish the body's essential electrolytes (salts and sugars) and fluids that are lost due to diarrhea.

The differences in the severity of the infection and the death rates in the developed versus developing worlds highlight the influence of living conditions, hygiene, and cultural practices on the consequences of gastroenteritis. Age is another factor; the very young and the elderly are particularly susceptible as they may be physically unable to seek prompt relief from the dehydration of diarrhea.

■ Treatment and Prevention

In the treatment of gastroenteritis it is important to distinguish whether the infection is due to bacteria, virus, protozoan or some other non-biological factor. An example of the latter is lactose intolerance. It is important to know the cause, as antibiotics are effective against bacteria, but are not useful against viruses and can actually make the disease worse since antibiotics can remove normal intestinal bacteria that can help clear the viral infection.

Antibiotics such as fluroquinolone are useful in treating bacterial forms of gastroenteritis, and over-the-counter compounds that lessen diarrhea can also be beneficial. Making sure a person is receiving plenty of fluids is a very important part of the treatment.

A vaccine for rotaviral gastroenteritis was approved for use in 1998, however complications in some children who received the vaccine resulted in its withdrawal from the market a few years later. In 2006, two rotavirus vaccines were licensed for use by the European Medicines Agency and the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Both are taken orally and consist of a weakened version of the virus—it is incapable of causing an infection, but stimulates the immune system to develop protective antibodies against rotavirus.

■ Impacts and Issues

The overwhelming impacts of gastroenteritis are its prevalence and the high death toll among children in underdeveloped and developing countries due to the debilitating effects of diarrhea. Diarrheal diseases are the second most common cause of death each year in children aged five years or less, according to the World Health Organization (WHO), resulting in over two million child deaths. Earlier and larger death tolls have been reduced by the use of oral rehydration therapy, which is spearheaded by organizations such as UNICEF.

Despite the availability of vaccines against rotavirus, the diarrheal gastroenteritis that is caused by this virus still kills over 600,000 children each year and over two million children require hospitalization because of the severity of their infection. Overwhelmingly, the deaths are in developing countries, where the vaccines and treatment are not as readily available as in developed countries.

Beginning in 2003, a number of agencies including the WHO and the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention initiated the Rotavirus Vaccination Program, which has sought to make rotavirus vaccines more widely available. As well, beginning in 2005, the Pan American Health Organization commenced an annual campaign of immunization that includes the FDA-licensed rotavirus vaccine.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Cholera;* Escherichia coli *O157:H7; Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Norovirus Infection;* Salmonella *Infection (Salmonellosis); Sanitation; Shigellosis; Water-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

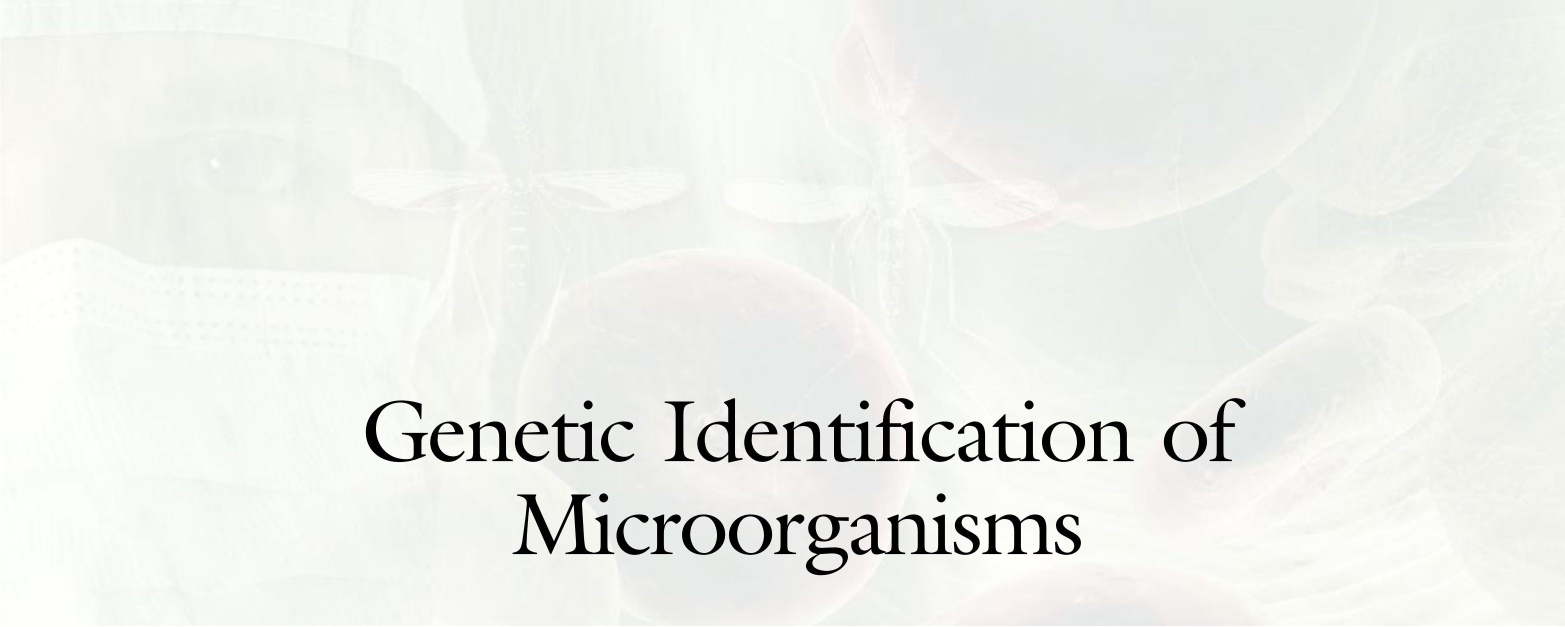
Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Cholera." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/cholera_g.htm> (accessed May 25, 2007).

World Health Organization. "International Network to Promote Household Water Treatment and Safe Storage." <http://www.who.int/household_water/en/> (accessed May 25, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Viral Gastroenteritis." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/revb/gastro/faq.htm> (accessed May 25, 2007).

Brian Hoyle



Genetic Identification of Microorganisms

Introduction

Genetic identification of microorganisms utilizes molecular technologies to evaluate specific regions of a microbial genome and uniquely determine to which genus, species, or strain that microorganism belongs. The techniques used were adapted from the DNA fingerprinting technology originally developed for human identification, which has led some individuals to refer to the genetic identification of microorganisms as a "microbial fingerprinting." Having these technologies available has resulted in a great improvement in the ability of clinical and forensic microbiology laboratories to detect and specifically identify an organism quickly and accurately.

History and Scientific Foundations

The process of genetic identification of microorganisms is basically a comparison study. In order to identify an unknown organism, its key DNA sequences (the order of structural units, called nucleotides, that make up a strand of DNA) are compared to DNA sequences from known organisms. An exact match will occur when the DNA sequences from the two organisms are the same. Related individuals have genetic material that is identical for some regions and dissimilar for others. Unrelated individuals will have significant differences in the DNA regions being evaluated. Developing a database of key sequences that are unique to and characteristic of a series of known organisms facilitates this type of analysis.

Applications and Research

Depending on the level of specificity required, an assay can provide information on the genus, species, and/or strain of a microorganism. The most basic type of identification is classification to a genus. Although this general identification does not discriminate between the related species that comprise the genus, it can be useful in a variety of situations. For example, if a person is thought to have tuberculosis, a test to determine if *Mycobacterium* cells (the genus that includes the tuberculosis causing organism) are present in a sputum sample will most likely confirm the diagnosis. However, if there are several species within a genus that cause similar diseases but that respond to different drug therapy, it would then be critical to know exactly which species is present for proper treatment. A more specific test using genomic sequences unique to each species would be needed for this type of discrimination.

In some instances, it is important to take the analysis one step further to detect genetically distinct subspecies or strains. Variant strains usually arise as a result of physical separation and evolution of the genome. If one homogeneous sample of cells is split and sent to two different locations, over time, changes (mutations) may occur that will distinguish the two populations as unique entities. The importance of this issue can be appreciated when considering tuberculosis (TB). Since the late 1980s, there has been a resurgence of this disease accompanied by the appearance of several new strains that are resistant to the standard antibiotic treatments (known as MDR-TB or multi-drug resistant TB). The use of genetic identification for rapid determination of which strain is present has been essential to protect health care workers and provide appropriate therapy for affected individuals.

The tools used for genetic studies include standard molecular technologies. Total sequencing of an organism's genome is one approach, but this method is time consuming and expensive. Southern blot analysis was used originally, but, in most laboratories, this has now been supplanted by newer technologies such as PCR (polymerase chain reaction). Solution-phase hybridization using DNA probes has proven effective for many organisms. In this procedure, probes labeled with a

WORDS TO KNOW

ASSAY: A determination of an amount of a particular compound in a sample (e.g., to make chemical tests to determine the relative amount of a particular substance in a sample). A method used to quantify a biological compound.

CHEMILUMINESCENT SIGNAL: A chemiluminescent signal is the production of light that results from a chemical reaction. A variety of tests to detect infectious organisms or target components of the organisms rely on the binding of a chemical-containing probe to the target and the subsequent development of light following the addition of a reactive compound.

DNA FINGERPRINTING: DNA fingerprinting is the term applied to a range of techniques that are used to show similarities and dissimilarities between the DNA present in different individuals (or organisms).

DNA PROBES: Substances (agents) that bind directly to a predefined specific sequence of nucleic acids in DNA.

GENOME: All of the genetic information for a cell or organism. The complete sequence of genes within a cell or virus.

HYBRIDIZATION: A process of combining two or more different molecules or organisms to create a new molecule or organism (oftentimes called a hybrid organism).

PCR (POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION): The Polymerase Chain Reaction, or PCR, refers to a widely used technique in molecular biology involving the amplification of specific sequences of genomic DNA.

QUANTITATED: An act of determining the quantity of something, such as the number or concentration of bacteria in an infectious disease.

REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE: An enzyme that makes it possible for a retrovirus to produce DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) from RNA (ribonucleic acid).

SOUTHERN BLOT ANALYSIS: Southern blot refers to an electrophoresis technique where pieces of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) that have resulted from enzyme digestion are separated from one another on the basis of size, followed by the transfer of the DNA fragments to a flexible membrane. The membrane can then be exposed to various probes to identify target regions of the genetic material.

reporter molecule are combined with cells in solution and upon hybridization with target cells, a chemiluminescent signal that can be quantitated by a luminometer is emitted. A variation of this scheme is to capture the target cells by hybridization to a probe followed by a second hybridization that results in precipitation of the cells for quantitation. These assays are rapid, relatively inexpensive and highly sensitive. However, they require the presence of a relatively large number of organisms to be effective. Amplification technologies such as PCR, LCR (ligase change reaction), and, for viruses with a RNA genome, RT-PCR (reverse transcriptase PCR) allow detection of very low concentrations of organisms from cultures or patient specimens such as blood or body tissues. Primers are designed to selectively amplify genomic sequences unique to each species, and, by screening unknowns for the presence or absence these regions, the unknown is identified. To speed the process up, multiplex PCR can be used to discriminate between several different species in a single amplification reaction. Going one step further, microarray technology will allow comparisons among much larger numbers of microorganisms and may be more successful at identifying specimens that contain more than one species.

Impacts and Issues

Microorganism identification technologies were important during the investigation of the anthrax outbreak in the United States in the fall of 2001. Because an anthrax infection can mimic cold or flu symptoms, the earliest victims did not realize they were harboring a deadly bacterium. After confirmation that anthrax was the causative agent in the first death, genetic technologies were utilized to confirm the presence of anthrax in other locations and for other potential victims. Results were available more rapidly than would have been possible using standard microbiological methodology and appropriate treatment regimens could be established immediately. Furthermore, unaffected individuals were quickly informed of their status, alleviating unnecessary anxiety.

The attention then turned to identification of the source of the anthrax used in the attacks. The evidence indicated that this event was not a random, natural phenomenon, and that an individual or individuals had most likely dispersed the cells as an act of bioterrorism. In response to this threat, government agencies collected samples from all sites for analysis. A key element in the search was the genetic identification of the cells found in patients and mail from Florida, New York, and Washington, D.C. The PCR studies suggested that the samples were derived from the same strain of anthrax, known as the "Ames strain". Although this strain has been distributed to many different research laboratories around the world, careful analysis revealed minor changes in the genome that allowed investigators to narrow the search to about fifteen United States laboratories. Unfortunately, despite further extensive genetic studies of these fifteen strains and comparison to the lethal anthrax genome, a final confirmation of the source of the anthrax used in the bioterrorism attacks still eludes investigators. This is due to the overall similarity between the strains and the lack of unique characters in the strain used in the attacks that could provide a definitive identification.

IN CONTEXT: TERRORISM AND BIOLOGICAL WARFARE

The capability for detecting and identifying microorganisms quickly and accurately is required to protect both troops on the battlefields and civilians confronted with terrorist attacks using biological agents. Because the systems currently available for sensing biological molecules rely on technologies that require several steps to identify biological weapons, the procedures are both labor and time intensive. The Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) initiated the Biosensor Technologies program in 2002 to develop fast, sensitive, automatic technologies for the detection and identification of biological warfare agents. The program focuses on a variety of technologies including surface receptor properties, nucleic acid sequences, identification of molecules found in the breath and mass spectrometry.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Dale, Jeremy W., and Simon F. Park. *Molecular Genetics.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

James, Jenny Lynd. *Microbial Hazard Indentification in Fresh Fruits and Vegetables.* New York: Wiley-Interscience, 2006.

Persing, David H., et al, eds. *Molecular Microbiology: Diagnostic Principles and Practice*. Seattle: Corixa Corp, 2003.

Periodicals

Jernigan, D.B., et al. "Investigation of Bioterrorism-Related Anthrax, United States, 2001: Epidemiologic Findings." *Emerging Infectious Diseases.* 8 (2002): 1019–1028.

Peplies, Jorg, Frank Oliver Glockner, and Rudolf Amann. "Optimization Strategies for DNA Microarray-Based Detection of Bacteria with 16S rRNA-Targeting Oligonucleotide Probes." *Applied and Environmental Microbiology.* 69 (2003): 1397–1407.

Read, Timothy R., et al. "Comparative Genome Sequencing for Discovery of Novel Polymorphisms in *Bacillus anthracis.*" *Science.* 296 (2002): 2028–2033.

Constance Stein

Genital Herpes

Introduction

Genital herpes is a common sexually transmitted disease that affects over 45 million people in the United States alone. Genital herpes is caused most often by infection with the Herpes Simplex 2 virus (HSV-2), but occasionally, the Herpes Simplex 1 (HSV-1) virus is also responsible. Often, people infected with these Herpes viruses have no symptoms, but when symptoms of genital herpes do appear, they usually involve blisters in the area of the genitals or rectum. The blisters are normally fluid-filled at first, and then break to form tender, itchy ulcers that can take up to a month to heal. Although infection with HSV-1 or HSV-2 can last a lifetime in the body, future outbreaks of genital herpes blisters usually decline in frequency and severity. Genital herpes is spread among sexual partners when the virus is released from a blister (or occasionally from intact skin) during sexual contact.

Editors note: Further information about genital herpes can be found in the articles about the specific causative agents, Herpes Simplex 2 Virus and Herpes Simplex 1 Virus.

SEE ALSO *Herpes Simplex 1 Virus; Herpes Simplex 2 Virus.*

Germ Theory of Disease

Introduction

The germ theory of disease states that microorganisms—organisms that, with only one known exception, are too small to be seen without the aid of a microscope—are the cause of many diseases. The microorganisms include bacteria, viruses, fungi, algae, and protozoa. The germ theory of disease also states that the microbes that cause a disease are capable of being recovered and will cause the same disease when introduced into another creature. This theory has withstood scientific scrutiny for centuries. Indeed, it is known with certainty that many diseases are caused by microorganisms. Two examples are anthrax, which is caused by the bacterium *Bacillus anthracis*, and bacterial meningitis, which is caused by *Neisseria meningitidis.*

While now an accepted part of infectious disease microbiology and the foundation of a variety of disciplines, such as hygiene and epidemiology (the study of the origin and spread of infections), the exact reasons why some microbes cause disease remain poorly understood and are still being investigated.

History and Scientific Foundations

Millenia ago, when microorganisms were unknown, some diseases were thought to be a consequence of divine punishment for a person's bad behavior. Illnesses that affected groups of people were sometimes attributed to the foul smelling gases from a nearby swamp or the vapors from sewage lagoon. While it is true that some microbes can become airborne and can cause disease when inhaled (anthrax is one example), this was not recognized for a long time. Other purported causes of disease included vapors created by the rotation of Earth or disturbances within Earth, which was thought to be hollow.

A publication dating back to 36 BC proposed that some illness was the result of the inhalation of tiny creatures present in the air. However, this farsighted view was the exception for centuries. With the development of the microscope in the seventeenth century by Robert Hooke (1635–1703) and Anton van Leeuwenhoek (1632–1723), it became possible to examine specimens, such as water, and to visually detect living organisms.

At that time, the prevailing view was that life and disease arose spontaneously from non-living material.

Louis Pasteur (1822–1895), the French chemist and microbiologist, developed vaccines for rabies and anthrax, among others. In addition, Pasteur is known for his work with sterilization and the pasteurization process. *Library of Congress.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ASEPSIS: Without germs, more specifically without microorganisms.

CARBOLIC ACID: An acidic compound that, when diluted with water, is used as an antiseptic and disinfectant.

COWPOX: Cowpox refers to a disease that is caused by the cowpox or catpox virus. The virus is a member of the orthopoxvirus family. Other viruses in this family include the smallpox and vaccinia viruses. Cowpox is a rare disease, and is mostly noteworthy as the basis of the formulation, over 200 years ago, of an injection by Edward Jenner that proved successful in curing smallpox.

EPIDEMIOLOGY: Epidemiology is the study of various factors that influence the occurrence, distribution, prevention, and control of disease, injury, and other health-related events in a defined human population. By the application of various analytical techniques including mathematical analysis of the data, the probable cause of an infectious outbreak can be pinpointed.

INFECTION CONTROL: Infection control refers to policies and procedures used to minimize the risk of spreading infections, especially in hospitals and health care facilities.

MICROORGANISM: Microorganisms are minute organisms. With the single yet-known exception of a bacterium that is large enough to be seen unaided, individual microorganisms are microscopic in size. To be seen, they must be magnified by an optical or electron microscope. The most common types of microorganisms are viruses, bacteria, blue-green bacteria, some algae, some fungi, yeasts, and protozoans.

PUERPERAL FEVER: Puerperal fever is a bacterial infection present in the blood (septicemia) that follows childbirth. The Latin word *puer*, meaning boy or child, is the root of this term. Puerperal fever was much more common before the advent of modern aseptic practices, but infections still occur. Louis Pasteur showed that puerperal fever is most often caused by *Streptococcus* bacteria, which is now treated with antibiotics.

SPONTANEOUS GENERATION: Also known as abiogenesis; the incorrect discarded assumption that living things can be generated from nonliving things.

VACCINATION: Vaccination is the inoculation, or use of vaccines, to prevent specific diseases within humans and animals by producing immunity to such diseases. The introduction of weakened or dead viruses or microorganisms into the body to create immunity by the production of specific antibodies.

Then, in 1668, the Italian scientist Francisco Redi (1627–1697) showed that maggots did not appear if decaying meat was kept in a sealed container, but that the maggots appeared if the meat was placed in the open air. This implied that the maggots were present in the air that contacted the meat, rather than spontaneously appearing on the meat.

Early in the eighteenth century, it was observed that people could be protected from developing smallpox by exposing them to pus from the lesions of other people with the illness. While we now recognize this as the basis of vaccination, at the time the idea—that something in the illness could protect others from the malady—was revolutionary. The English physician Edward Jenner (1749–1823) is recognized as the founder of the practice of vaccination. Jenner noticed that dairy workers who had been exposed to cowpox, a milder disease similar to smallpox, seldom contracted smallpox. He showed that injecting people with fluid from the cowpox blisters (which was subsequently shown to contain the cowpox virus, which is related to the smallpox virus) conferred protection against smallpox.

In 1848, Hungarian physician Ignaz Semmelweis (1818–1865) discovered that a disease called puerperal fever could be spread from corpses to living patients by attendants who did not wash their hands between the autopsy room and the hospital ward. Handwashing greatly reduced the number of these infections. In 1854, English physician John Snow (1813–1858) demonstrated that an ongoing cholera epidemic in London was caused by water coming from a particular pump. When the water flow from the pump was shut off, the outbreak ended.

However, even with the accumulating weight of evidence that some agent was responsible for various diseases, many physicians continued to maintain that these agents did not exist because they could not be seen with the unaided eye. If they did not exist, then they could not be the cause of disease. It remained for Agostino Bassi (1773–1856), Louis Pasteur (1822–1895), and Robert Koch (1843–1910) to perform the research necessary to finally convince the scientific community that germs did, indeed, cause disease.

In 1835, Bassi proposed the germ theory for the first time, when he hypothesized that a lethal disease of silkworms was due to a microscopic living organism. The agent was subsequently shown to be a fungus that was named *Beauveria bassiana*. Then, in a series of experiments in the middle of the nineteenth century, Pasteur convincingly demonstrated that the spoilage of wine, beer, and foods were caused by something in the air and not by the air itself.

In 1875, concrete evidence for the germ theory was provided by Robert Koch, who showed that *Bacillus anthracis* was the cause of anthrax in cattle and sheep.

Koch's step by step approach to his experiments laid the foundation for a series of conditions that must be met to demonstrate that a particular microorganism is the cause of a particular disease. The following conditions came to be known as Koch's postulates.

Koch's postulates drove the nail into the coffin of the theory of spontaneous generation. Once scientists accepted that the germ theory of disease was valid and began to search for more examples of microbial-caused diseases, the floodgates opened. By the end of the nineteenth century, it had been established that microbes were responsible for cholera, typhoid fever, diphtheria, pneumonia, tetanus, meningitis, and gonorrhea, as a few examples.

Also in the nineteenth century, English physician Joseph Lister (1827–1912) demonstrated that the development of infections in patients following surgery could be drastically reduced if a spray of carbolic acid was applied over the wound during surgery and surgical dressing put on the wound was soaked in the chemical. Since carbolic acid was known to kill microbes present in sewage, Lister helped convince people that microorganisms were important in post-operative infections.

Applications and Research

The germ theory is applied to infection control in hospitals, the treatment of food and water, and efforts to control the spread of infection in natural settings. Examples of the latter are the various vaccination and disease prevention programs that are spearheaded by agencies such as the World Health Organization (WHO) and the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Even in the present day, research continues to identify the microbes responsible for diseases, to rapidly and accurately detect their presence, and to devise strategies that will minimize or completely prevent the particular diseases.

Impacts and Issues

The germ theory is profoundly important in understanding and preventing a variety of diseases. Knowledge that microorganisms can cause disease spawned efforts to prevent the microbes from coming into contact with people, food, water, and other materials. The practices of disinfection, sterilization, personal hygiene, and proper food preparation have their basis in germ theory.

Knowledge that many diseases are caused by microorganisms, and that the microbes can be spread from person-to-person and from an inanimate surface to a person spurred the development of techniques to minimize or prevent microbial spread. One example is asepsis—the treatment of living and non-living surfaces to kill or prevent the growth of associated microorganisms. Aseptic technique is one of the cornerstones of research microbiology and is crucially important in medicine. Up until the middle of the nineteenth century, the absence of aseptic techniques during operations made surgery a risky procedure. However, after the adoption of techniques to minimize microbial contamination of wounds and the airborne spread of microorganisms, the mortality rate following surgery plummeted. The infection control practices that are routine in hospitals today are a result of the germ theory.

GERMAN PHYSICIAN ROBERT KOCH (1843–1910)

Robert Koch is considered to be one of the founders of the field of bacteriology. He pioneered principles and techniques in studying bacteria and discovered the specific agents that cause tuberculosis, cholera, and anthrax. For this he is also regarded as a pioneer of public health, aiding legislation and changing prevailing attitudes about hygiene to prevent the spread of various infectious diseases. For his work on tuberculosis, he was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1905.

Koch's postulates

- The particular microorganism must be present in every case of the disease.
- That microorganism must be able to be isolated from a person or other creature host with the particular disease and must be capable of being grown in a pure form free from other organisms. (This condition has since been modified, since not all organisms can be grown in the laboratory. However, with molecular techniques of organism identification that are based on the detection of certain unique sequences of genetic material, the microbe does not always need to be grown to fulfill this condition.)
- The microorganism that is recovered from the pure culture is capable of causing the disease when introduced into a previously healthy test creature.
- The microorganism can be recovered from the infected creature and can be shown to be the same as the originally recovered or detected microbe.

Similarly, knowledge that some disease-causing bacteria, viruses, and protozoa—particularly those that normally reside in their intestinal tract—can be spread via the contamination of water by feces prompted the implementation of techniques of water treatment. Techniques of drinking water treatment that include filtration, chlorination, or exposure of the water to ozone or ultraviolet light are designed to kill potentially harmful microbes in the water.

The techniques of modern day molecular biology have an important place in germ theory. Detection and identification of microorganisms based on the presence of target sequences of genetic material is making infection control more rapid and efficient. Furthermore, the use of antibodies and other compounds to block the adherence of microbes to living and non-living surfaces is useful in minimizing the spread of infections.

The discipline of epidemiology is rooted in the germ theory. Epidemiology is essentially the germ theory in reverse. Rather than tracing the path from the source of a microbe to the disease, an epidemiologist begins with a disease and then, by various means, determines the source and geographical dissemination of that particular disease. For example, a 2006 outbreak of disease that occurred in several Midwestern states in the United States was traced to a crop of organic spinach contaminated with the bacterium *Escherichia coli* O157:H7. Epidemiology is also important in designing strategies to combat an ongoing disease outbreak and in minimizing the chances of future illnesses.

Strategies to minimize the spread of disease-causing microorganisms are often wise. However, concern with the potential for microbial safety in the home and workplace has fostered a sense of urgency that is out of proportion to the risk posed by the microbes. Supermarket shelves are lined with antibacterial products designed to keep a home almost free of microbes. While this may seem sensible, it has, in fact, spawned the development of increased resistance of some microbes to the chemicals being used to control or kill them. In addition, evidence is accumulating that the human immune system requires exposure to microorganisms to keep the system primed and capable of a rapid and efficient response. The strategy of disinfecting a house may be contributing to an increase in allergic diseases, since the immune system may over-react when confronted by a foreign substance, such as a microorganism.

SEE ALSO *Bloodborne Pathogens; Disinfection; Koch's Postulates.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ewald, Paul. *Plague Time: The New Germ Theory of Disease.* New York: Anchor, 2002.

Tierno, Philip M. *The Secret Life of Germs: What They Are, Why We Need Them, and How We Can Protect Ourselves Against Them.* New York: Atria, 2004.

Waller, John. *The Discovery of the Germ: Twenty Years That Transformed the Way We Think About Disease.* New York: Columbia University Press, 2003.

Brian Hoyle

Giardiasis

Introduction

Giardiasis (pronounced GEE-are-DYE-uh-sis) is intestinal infection with the protozoan parasite *Giardia lamblia* (also called *Giardia intestinalis* or *Giardia* (gee-ARE-dee-uh). Protozoa are single-celled animals with more complex features and behavior than bacteria, which are also single-celled organisms. Giardiasis is a waterborne disease found almost everywhere in the world. Its symptoms include diarrhea, gas, stomach cramps, fatigue, weight loss, and nausea. Giardiasis is transmitted by ingestion of cysts—extremely small, dormant, seedlike objects—that have been shed in the feces of an infected person or animal. Several drugs can be used to treat giardiasis, but healthy individuals can usually overcome the disease without treatment. The symptoms of untreated giardiasis usually last from two to six weeks.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

History

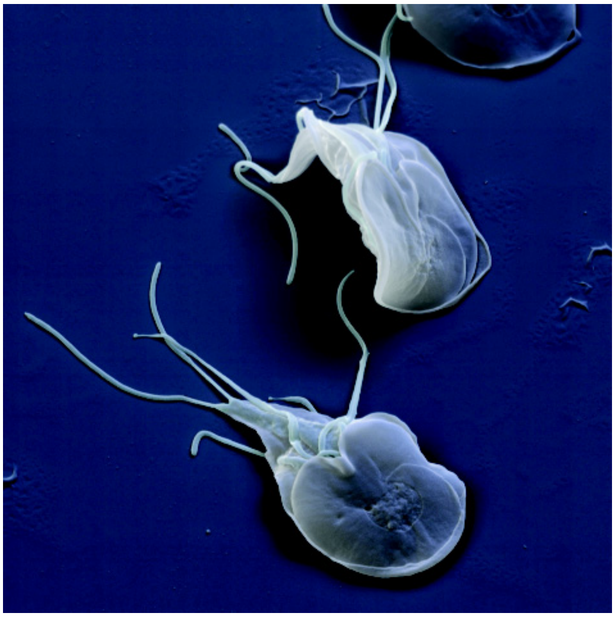
Giardiasis has probably been endemic since before modern humans evolved. *Giardia* were first described by the Dutch scientist Antony van Leeuwenhoek (1632–1723), who significantly improved the microscope and was the first person to observe single-celled organisms. He found *Giardia* living in his own feces. The organism was originally named *Cercomonas intestinalis* by the Czech physician Wilhelm Lambl (1814–1895) in 1859. It was renamed *Giardia lamblia* in 1915 to honor both Lambl and the French physician Alfred Giard (1846–1908), another early researcher of *Giardia*. Today, the term *Giardia intestinalis* is usually preferred by scientists.

In the twentieth century, five species of *Giardia* were identified. *Giardia intestinalis*, the species that afflicts humans, can be hosted by mammals, reptiles, and possibly birds.

Characteristics

Giardia is a protozoan flagellate, that is, a one-celled animal that propels itself using tiny, rapidly-waving hairs called flagella. It exists in two forms, the trophozoite and the cyst. A *Giardia* cyst is a microscopic, oval object about 1 to 12 μ (millionths of a meter) long and 7 to 10 μm wide. A *Giardia* infection occurs when a sufficiently large number of these cysts are ingested by an animal or human.

In the duodenum, the part of the small intestine just below the stomach, each cyst hatches and divides into



A color enhanced scanning electron micrograph (SEM) shows *Giardia lamblia*. This single-celled organism is a parasite that infects the small intestine in humans. *Oliver Meckes/Nicole Ottawa/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

TROPHOZOITE: The amoeboid, vegetative stage of the malaria protozoa.

two trophic individuals or trophozoites. A *Giardia* trophozoite is shaped somewhat like a limpet with a short, pointed tail. It attaches its flat surface to the cells of the intestinal wall and feeds on them. In a few days, the trophozoites detach from the intestinal wall and divide into two identical individuals. Some are carried downstream through the digestive tract to the large intestine, where feces are formed. The harsh chemical conditions in the large intestine signal the trophozoites to become cysts. Cysts can survive for months in surface waters such as lakes and streams.

Giardia infection usually lasts two to six weeks. In some cases, however, the infection can become chronic or ongoing. Exactly how *Giardia* cause the symptoms of giardiasis is not known. Between 60% and 80% of people infected with *Giardia* have no symptoms.

Transmission

During bouts of diarrhea caused by giardiasis, both trophozoites and cysts exit the body in the feces. The trophozoites die outside the body, but the cysts may be ingested by another animal and continue the life cycle. There can be from 1,000,000 to 100,000,000 cysts per gram in stool samples that test positive for *Giardia*, but many stool samples of infected persons do not contain detectable levels of *Giardia* at all.

Cysts are almost always transmitted by the fecal-oral route—that is, by the ingestion of fecal material, generally in very small or dilute amount, through the mouth. This may occur through feces-hand-oral contact (common among children or those caring for children) or in drinking water. The drinking water route is common worldwide, but less so in developed countries. A 2001 New Zealand study found that persons who were changing diapers were four times more likely to test positive for *Giardia* than others. *Giardia* cysts may also be foodborne, that is, transmitted through contact between food and infected workers or family members.

Whether pets and animals are significant in spreading *Giardia* is debated. *Giardia* is common in pets, wild mammals, and farm animals, but there is little evidence that these are important sources of human infection, despite the association in the United States of *Giardia* with drinking open waters containing fecal matter from beavers. (The disease is sometimes called "beaver fever" in the United States.)

Scope and Distribution

Giardia is present in most surface waters of the world, at rates varying from 0.1 to over 1,000 cysts per 26 gallons (100 liters) of water. About 12% of the groundwater sources in the United States are contaminated either with *Giardia* or *Cryptosporidium*, another protozoan parasite.

Globally, about 200 million people, about 3% of the world's population, are infected with *Giardia* at any one time. Giardiasis is particularly common in children in poor countries. In industrialized countries, giardiasis is most common among children one to four years old, in adults caring for small children, and in those who have traveled recently to the developing world. It can also be contracted by people who drink untreated lake or stream water while visiting wilderness areas. However, drinking such water does not usually result in infection. The body can usually fend off infection if it has ingested only a small to moderate number of cysts.

Treatment and Prevention

The primary public-health approach to preventing giardiasis is to keep *Giardia* cysts out of drinking water supplies. This is accomplished by keeping water sources used for drinking water from *Giardia* contamination by sewage or livestock waste, and by treating drinking water before distributing it. Because *Giardia* and other protozoan cysts are resistant to chemicals such as chlorine at the levels ordinarily used to treat water, the primary means of treating water is filtering. Portable, hand-operated filters can be used by persons in wilderness areas to filter out not only *Giardia* cysts, but other parasites and bacteria. The U.S. Centers for Disease Control (CDC) recommends not drinking recreational water, untreated surface water, or untreated ice or drinking water while traveling in developing countries.

For healthy individuals, treatment for giardiasis is usually not necessary, as the body is capable of freeing itself from the infection. Where treatment is needed or desired, a number of drugs are available, including albendazole, furazolidone, metronidazole, nitazoxanide, and quinacrine.

Impacts and Issues

Infection with *Giardia intestinalis* is the most commonly reported protozoan parasite infection worldwide. In developing countries, about 20% of patients with diarrhea are positive for *Giardia* (the range is 5% to 43%). In developed regions such as the United States and Europe, about 3% of diarrhea patients have *Giardia*. Because untreated diarrhea can cause severe dehydration (loss of water and electrolytes from the body), it can be life endangering in persons with little access to medical care and with compromised immune systems, especially small children. Diarrhea causes 4% of all deaths worldwide. In 1998, for example, diarrhea killed some 2.2 million people, most of them children under the age of five. It is not known how many of these deaths are due to *Giardia* infection. Chronic *Giardia* infection may also cause failure to thrive in children due to impaired uptake of fats and vitamins A and B_{12}.

SEE ALSO *Cryptosporidiosis; Parasitic Diseases; Waterborne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Erlandsen, Stanley, and Ernest Meyer. *Giardia and Giardiasis, Biology Pathogenesis, and Epidemiology.* New York: Springer, 2001.

Parker, James N., and Philip M. Parker. *The Official Patient's Sourcebook on Giardiasis.* San Diego, CA: Icon Health Publications, 2002.

Periodicals

Casemore, David P. "Foodborne Illness: Foodborne Protozoal Infection." *Lancet.* 336 (1990): 1427–1433.

Hawralek, Jason. "Giardiasis: Pathophysiology and Management." *Alternative Medicine Review.* 8.2 (2003): 129–143.

Hoque, M. Ekramul, et al. "Nappy Handling and Risk of Giardiasis." *Lancet.* 357 (2001): 1017.

Meng, Tze-Chiang, et al. "Inhibition of *Giardia lamblia* Excystation by Antibodies against Cyst Walls and by Wheat Germ Agglutinin." *Infection and Immunity.* 64 (1996): 2151–2157.

Reiner, David S., et al. "Identification and Localization of Cyst-Specific Antigens of *Giardia lamblia.*" *Infection and Immunity.* 57 (1989): 963–968.

Vogel, Gretchen. "Searching for Living Relics of the Cell's Early Days." *Science.* 277 (1997): 1604.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control (U.S. Government). "Parasitic Disease Information: Giardiasis." September 14, 2004 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/giardiasis/> (accessed February 1, 2007).

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases states that, "Anyone can get giardiasis. Persons more likely to become infected include:

- Children who attend day care centers, including diaper-aged children
- Child care workers
- Parents of infected children
- International travelers
- People who swallow water from contaminated sources
- Backpackers, hikers, and campers who drink unfiltered, untreated water
- Swimmers who swallow water while swimming in lakes, rivers, ponds, and streams
- People who drink from shallow wells."

"Contaminated water includes water that has not been boiled, filtered, or disinfected with chemicals. Several community-wide outbreaks of giardiasis have been linked to drinking municipal water or recreational water contaminated with Giardia."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

GIDEON

Introduction

The Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network (GIDEON) is a web-based software system designed for use in geographic medicine, a branch of medicine that deals with international public health issues including infectious and tropical disease. GIDEON is located at <www.gideononline.com>, and helps physicians to diagnose any recognized infectious disease occurring in the world.

The first module of GIDEON generates a ranked list of potential diagnoses based on signs, symptoms, laboratory tests, country of acquisition, incubation period, exposure (foods, animals, insects) and other relevant details. This list is not intended to replace the expertise of health care workers, but rather, present a comprehensive group of diseases which can focus further analysis of the case, suggest additional diagnostic tests, and offer in-depth analysis of each individual disease. At this point, the user can "ask" GIDEON why additional diseases are not listed, display information on the country-specific status of each disease listed, or access links to specific therapy and diagnostic options.

Additional options allow for generation of a list of diseases compatible with bioterrorism, and simulation of disease scenarios not associated with a specific patient. For example, the user might access a list of all infectious diseases associated with diarrhea or diseases associated with diarrhea in the United States, and then limit the listing to agents of diarrhea associated with water, or diarrhea which might develop in the United States within 24 hours of ingesting water.

The second GIDEON module presents the epidemiology of individual diseases, including descriptive text (infective agent, route of infection, incubation period, diagnostic tests, therapy, vaccines), a global and historical overview of the disease, and its status in every country and region. Country notes include specific regions of activity within each country, local foods, insects, etc. involved in transmission, reported incidence and rates (cases per 100,000 population per year) and a chronology of regional outbreaks. The vaccination standards for every relevant disease in every country are also listed. As of February 2007, the epidemiology module contains three million words of text and 30,000 references in 16,000 text notes. Reference numbers are electronically linked to available abstracts and titles in the medical literature. Over 22,000 graphs and 342 maps are automatically generated to follow the status of all diseases, both worldwide and in each specific country. Five thousand images include life-cycle charts, photomicrographs, x-rays, skin lesions, and the like. More than 5,700 outbreaks and 11,000 surveys are listed; for example, all outbreaks of measles reported in scientific literature, prevalence studies of hookworm, AIDS and liver fluke in African countries; and studies for food contamination in all European countries.

The third module follows the pharmacology and usage of all anti-infective drugs and vaccines. Drugs of choice, contraindications, doses for special patient groups, and interaction with other drugs, are presented in great detail. An index of all drug trade names (over 10,000) reflects the international nature of the program. The user may access a list of drugs for a specific indication, such as AIDS or tuberculosis; or antibiotics associated with a specified form or toxicity or drug interaction.

The vaccines module presents similar information regarding all vaccines, including lesser-known preparations used to prevent diseases such as Kyasanur Forest disease and Argentine hemorrhagic fever. Dosage schedules, boosters, side effects, and trade names are accessed through interactive menus.

The fourth module is designed to identify, compare, and characterize all species of bacteria, mycobacteria (tuberculosislike organisms) and yeasts. Technical material used in evaluating susceptibility standards of bacteria to anti-infective agents is also available.

All text, maps, images, and graphs are designed for transfer to PowerPoint®, word processors, or e-mail for preparation of publications, syllabi, student handouts, and other formats. A built-in network option allows for installation on any computer network. The network manager can add custom notes in their own language to the program regarding any disease, drug, or pathogen (disease-causing agent) relevant to his own institution. A text box allows the user to append custom notes in their own font and language to the GIDEON text, including, for example, contact information, submission of specimens, pricing, or ongoing outbreaks.

Impacts and Issues

As of 2007, 342 generic infectious diseases are distributed haphazardly through 230 countries and regions, and are challenged by 350 drugs and vaccines. An average of two new infectious diseases are described in humans every three years. 2,500 pathogenic bacteria, viruses, parasites and fungi have been reported, and a new species is discovered almost every week. Books and journals are inadequate for disseminating information immediately when dealing with ongoing outbreaks, epidemics, and breakthroughs in diagnosis and treatment.

As GIDEON is a web-based program, the server could easily be adopted to follow all diseases analyzed by users. This form of "syndromic surveillance" is an example of bioinformatics (using computers as tools to manage data and solve problems in the biological sciences) that can be useful to health departments or other agencies worldwide for rapid identification of disease outbreaks or unusual disease patterns in the community.

SEE ALSO *Globalization and Infectious Disease; Notifiable Diseases; ProMED; Public Health and Infectious Disease; Travel and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Felitti, Vincent J. "GIDEON: Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network." *JAMA*. 293 (2005): 1674–1675.

Web Sites

GIDEON. "GIDEON Content-Outbreaks." <http://www.gideononline.com/content/outbreaks.htm> (accessed May 1, 2007).

Stephen A. Berger

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOINFORMATICS: Bioinformatics, or computational biology, refers to the development of new database methods to store genomic information (information related to genes and the genetic sequence), computational software programs, and methods to extract, process, and evaluate this information. Bioinformatics also refers to the refinement of existing techniques to acquire the genomic data. Finding genes and determining their function, predicting the structure of proteins and sequence of ribonucleic acid (RNA) from the available sequence of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), and determining the evolutionary relationship of proteins and DNA sequences are aspects of bioinformatics.

GEOGRAPHIC MEDICINE: Geographic medicine, also called geomedicine, is the study of how human health is affected by climate and environment.

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to disease causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (an example is food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (an example is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

INCIDENCE: The number of new cases of a disease or injury that occur in a population during a specified period of time.

OUTBREAK: The appearance of new cases of a disease in numbers greater than the established incidence rate, or the appearance of even one case of an emergent or rare disease in an area.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

IN CONTEXT: GIDEON

The *Journal of the American Medical Association* (JAMA) calls GIDEON ".an intellectual tour de force for helping physicians quickly and successfully respond to the diagnostic and therapeutic problems of seeing patients with infectious illnesses that either are intrinsically complex or may have originated in unfamiliar, foreign settings/"

SOURCE: *Vincent J. Felitti, MD, Reviewer for JAMA, 2005*

Glanders (Melioidosis)

Introduction

Glanders and melioidosis (also called pseudoglanders) are related infectious diseases caused by bacterial species in the *Burkholderia* genus. Both diseases produce similar symptoms and are diagnosed, treated, and prevented similarly. However, glanders and melioidosis differ with respect to where they originate and how they spread.

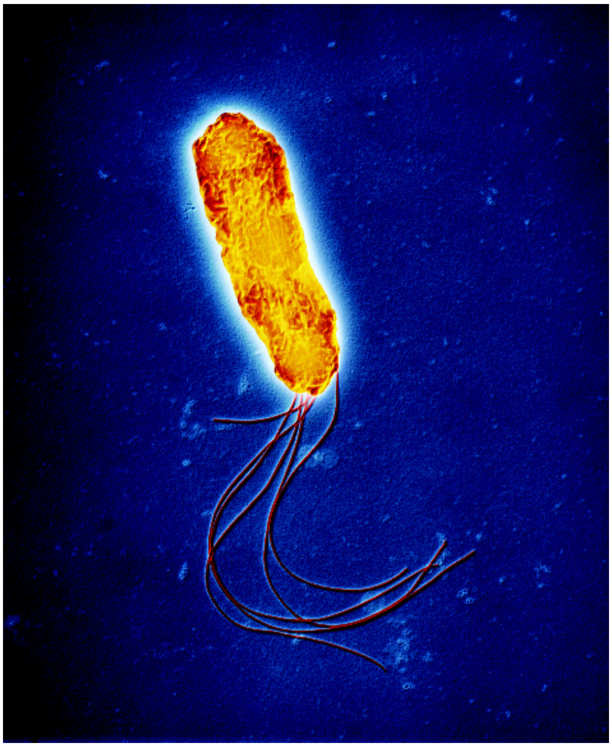
Glanders primarily infects horses, but can also infect donkeys, mules, cats, dogs, sheep, and goats. Such infected animals pass the infection on to humans either directly or indirectly. Melioidosis is found in contaminated water and soil. It spreads to humans and animals (the same ones as with glanders) by contact with such contaminated sources.

Glanders is caused by the bacterium *Burkholderia mallei*. The bacterium is found only in infected host animals and is not found in plants, soil, or water. Melioidosis is caused by the bacterium *Burkholderia pseudomallei*. Most animals that contract melioidosis do so by ingestion of contaminated food, soil, or water. Humans become infected with both glanders and melioidosis through openings in the skin, mucosal surfaces, and by inhalation.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Glanders is transmitted by direct contact with infected animals, and the bacteria enter the human body through breaks in the skin or through the mucosal surfaces of the eyes and nose. Melioidosis is transmitted by direct contact with contaminated soil and surface waters, and the bacteria are thought in enter the body through breaks in the skin, inhalation of contaminated soil, and ingestion of contaminated water. Person-to-person transmission of both glanders and melioidosis also have been documented. Symptoms depend on the amount of bacteria in the human system. A few bacteria inside the body rarely cause any symptoms, however, more symptoms appear when more organisms are present.

In glanders infection, symptoms appear in about one to five days, while melioidosis symptoms may not develop for years. When symptoms occur, their characteristics depend on the mode of transmission (skin or mucosal surfaces) into the body and the form of the infection (acute or chronic).



Melioidosis, a disease caused by *Burkholderia pseudomallei*, is considered to be a potential agent of biological warfare and biological terrorism. *Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

An acute localized infection with glanders results in swollen lymph glands, fever, sweats, muscle pains, and coughing. Other symptoms include eye tearing, light sensitivity, and diarrhea. Entrance into the body through the eyes, nose, and respiratory tract causes excessive and sometimes infectious mucus. The infection may also enter the bloodstream. This more serious bacterial infection in the bloodstream is called septicemia. Septicemia caused by *B. mallei* will usually cause death within seven to ten days.

An acute localized infection with melioidosis causes respiratory problems, headache, diarrhea, fever, pus-filled skin lesions, muscle soreness, and confusion. Usually the infection is resolved in a short period of time. However, people with unrelated serious illnesses such as renal failure, diabetes, and HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) infection can go into septic shock, resulting in multiple organ collapse and death.

Acute pulmonary infections in both glanders and melioidosis can cause symptoms ranging from mild bronchitis to severe pneumonia. Symptoms include fever, headache, anorexia, pulmonary abscesses, and muscle soreness.

Chronic infections of both diseases cause multiple abscesses within the arm and leg muscles or in the spleen or liver. For glanders, nasal and subcutaneous nodules (small lumps) form, followed with ulceration. Death can follow within a few months. Symptoms of chronic melioidosis are often similar to tuberculosis. Lung or spleen abscesses often cause abdominal pain and fever, while brain abscesses often cause neurological problems. Melioidosis infection also may travel into the bones, brain, lungs, and joints. It usually causes death when it infects the bloodstream, but is non-fatal in other areas. However, the severity of the infection and the timeliness of treatment is critical in the prognosis.

Scope and Distribution

Both diseases are rare in the United States. According to the Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases (DBMD), of the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), glanders has not appeared in the United States since 1945, and there are between zero to five cases of melioidosis annually, most often in travelers and immigrants.

Glanders is frequently found in Africa, Asia, Central and South America, and the Middle East. The disease has been controlled in North America, Australia, and most of Europe. Melioidosis is commonly found in parts of Southeast Asia (especially Thailand, Singapore, Malaysia, Myanmar, and Vietnam) and northern Australia. It is also occasionally found in Brunei, China, Hong Kong, India, Laos, Taiwan, and several countries in Africa, Central and South America, the Middle East, and the South Pacific.

WORDS TO KNOW

ABSCESS: An abscess is a pus-filled sore, usually caused by a bacterial infection. It results from the body's defensive reaction to foreign material. Abscesses are often found in the soft tissue under the skin, such as the armpit or the groin. However, they may develop in any organ, and they are commonly found in the breast and gums. Abscesses are far more serious and call for more specific treatment if they are located in deep organs such as the lung, liver, or brain.

ACUTE: An acute infection is one of rapid onset and of short duration, which either resolves or becomes chronic.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term "mortality" comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means "death." Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., "Rabies has a high mortality."

NODULE: A nodule is a small, roundish lump on the surface of the skin or of an internal organ.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis of glanders and melioidosis is made with cultures of blood, sputum, or urine. A pus culture from an abscess also is used with melioidosis. Detecting and measuring the number of bacterial antibodies is another means to diagnosis.

Treatment for acute glanders is limited. According to the DBMD, the antibiotic sulfadiazine has been found to be effective. Other antibiotics used include amoxicillin-clavulanic, azlocillin, aztreonam, ceftazidime, ceftriaxone, doxycycline, imipenem, penicillin, and ticarcillin-vulanic acid. Statistics for glanders are difficult to obtain, but medical professionals contend that a large percentage of people infected still die when antibiotics are not given. The best way to prevent glanders is to eliminate the infection in animals.

Treatment of acute melioidosis includes intravenous cephalosporin antibiotics, often ceftazidime. According to the CDC, other antibiotics used include amoxicillin-clavulanate, meropenem, and imipenem. Antibiotics are given for 10–14 days. After the initial course of antibiotics is completed, the antibiotic pair co-trimoxazole and doxycycline is prescribed for 12–20 weeks to prevent another occurrence.

IN CONTEXT: TERRORISM AND BIOLOGICAL WARFARE

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that with regard to *Burkholderia mallei* "very few organisms are required to cause disease." For this reason, *Burkholderia mallei* "has been considered as a potential agent for biological warfare and of biological terrorism."

CDC classifies glanders and melioidosis in the Category B Diseases/Agents, a classification reserved for "second highest priority agents, which include those that:

- are moderately easy to disseminate;
- result in moderate morbidity rates and low mortality rates; and
- require specific enhancements of CDC's diagnostic capacity and enhanced disease surveillance."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases."*

Before the use of antibiotics, acute melioidosis had a death rate of about 90%. Today, antibiotics have reduced the percentage to about 10% for simple cases that are early treated. However, untreated and severe cases still have a mortality rate of about 80%. Repeat occurrences of melioidosis happen about 10–20% of the time. In countries where melioidosis is prevalent, contact with soil, mud, flood waters, and surface waters should be avoided to prevent infection.

Medical researchers are still trying to develop a vaccine for both glanders and melioidosis.

■ Impacts and Issues

According to the DBMD, both glanders and melioidosis are considered potential biological weapons in warfare and terrorism due to the high incidence of death in infected humans. In the past, both have been studied intensively by the United States, the U.S.S.R. (now Russia), and other countries for use as military weapons. In addition, only a small number of the organisms need to be used to develop an effective biological warfare weapon. In wartime, enemy soldiers, civilians, and animals have been deliberately infected with them.

Glanders and melioidosis are also classified by the CDC in the Category B disease/agent grouping, the second highest grouping assigned to dangerous biological organisms.

Glanders is a major concern for the safety and health of people who regularly work around experimental or domestic animals. Therefore, people with high risk of glanders infection include those who are in close and frequent contact with infected animals such as animal caretakers, laboratory personnel, and veterinarians.

Melioidosis may remain dormant for many years before producing symptoms. Thus, it can be contracted without any visible signs of infection. As a result, travel to countries where melioidosis frequently occurs is considered risky. People with a higher than normal incidence of melioidosis infection include those engaging in frequent sexual activity with multiple partners and intravenous drug users.

See Also *Bacterial Disease; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Tropical Infectious Diseases; World Health Organization (WHO).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bannister, Barbara A. *Infection: Microbiology and Management*. Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing, 2006.

Periodicals

Cheng, Allen C., and Bart J. Currie. "Melioidosis: Epidemiology, Pathophysiology, and Management." *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* 18 (April 2005): 383–416. Also available online at: <http://cmr.asm.org/cgi/content/full/18/2/383>.

Raja, N.S., M.Z. Ahmed, and N.N. Singh. "Melioidosis: An Emerging Infectious Disease." *Journal of Postgraduate Medicine* 51 (2005): 140–145. Also available online at: <http://www.jpgmonline.com/article.asp?issn=0022-3859;year=2005;volume=51;issue=2;spage=140;epage=145;aulast=Raja>.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Glanders." October 11, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/glanders_g.htm> (accessed April 26, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Melioidosis." October 12, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/melioidosis_g.htm> (accessed April 26, 2007).

Virginia Bioinformatics Institute, Virginia Tech. "*Burkholderia mallei*." May 15, 2004. <http://pathport.vbi.vt.edu/pathinfo/pathogens/Burkholderia_mallei.html> (accessed April 26, 2007).

Globalization and Infectious Disease

Introduction

The rise of globalization has contributed significantly to the spread of infectious disease. As the AIDS epidemic has illustrated, a disease that emerges or re-emerges anywhere in the world can now move rapidly around the globe. With the increased ease of air travel and the growth of international trade, infectious diseases have more opportunities to spread than in previous eras. Dangerous microbes (pathogens) can arrive in people, in insects, in exotic animals, or in shipments of fruits, meats, or vegetables.

With globalization, diseases no longer have borders. Nations and international health organizations must now work together to prevent and control the spread of infectious diseases.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Trade and travel can transmit infectious diseases. More than 760 million people travel internationally each year, according to the World Tourism Organization. It takes less than 36 hours to travel to almost any destination on the globe—far shorter than the usual incubation periods for most infectious diseases. A person can become infected in Sierra Leone, travel through Europe, and die in the United States within the space of a few days, as the American traveler Joseph Ghoson demonstrated in 2004.

Lassa fever, a zoonotic or animal-borne disease, can also be spread through person-to-person contact. Transmission occurs when a person comes into contact with blood, tissue, secretions, or excretions of an infected individual. In epidemics of Lassa fever, as many as 50% of infected individuals may die. When Lassa fever was confirmed as Joseph Ghoson's cause of death, the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) rushed to compile a list of 188 people known to have had contact with him while he was infectious. They included five family members; 139 health-care workers at the hospital where he died; 16 employees of commercial laboratories in Virginia and California, where Ghoson's blood samples were tested; and 19 people on the London, England, to Newark, New Jersey, flight that he took home. If infected, these individuals could spread Lassa fever.

The CDC could not locate every person who had contact with Ghoson in part because of reporting problems. The CDC does not have electronic access to airline records and or flight manifests without special arrangement. Accordingly, investigators from the CDC's Global Migration and Quarantine unit had to fly to Newark and sift through paper documents to identify Ghoson's fellow travelers. There was no way to identify other people who may have come into contact with Ghoson on his trek back from Africa.

Scope and Distribution

The exact scope of infectious diseases spread through globalization is unknown. Many cases probably go unreported each year because surveillance is passive. Physicians must recognize a disease, inquire about the patient's travel history, obtain proper diagnostic samples, and report the case. A physician who does not expect to see an illness that is rare or unknown in his country could misidentify the disease.

Additionally, inspections of cargo are declining even as imports, legal and illegal, increase. Monkeypox is a zoonotic, or animal-borne, disease that first appeared in the United States when contaminated African rodents that had been imported into the country were housed next to prairie dogs. The virus passed from the prairie dogs to humans in 2003 after the animals were sold as pets. Tens of thousands of exotic animals are smuggled into the United States each year as part of a global black market. Meanwhile, the globalization of food production has created a boom in food import and export

WORDS TO KNOW

EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASE: New infectious diseases such as SARS and West Nile virus, as well as previously known diseases such as malaria, tuberculosis, and bacterial pneumonias that are appearing in forms that are resistant to drug treatments, are termed emerging infectious diseases.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

without an accompanying rise in inspectors. However, an infected insect or small animal in a corner of a large crate might elude even the most eagle-eyed official.

Treatment and Prevention

The CDC has revised its infectious disease priorities in response to globalization. International outbreak assistance is now a top priority. CDC plans to strengthen its diagnostic facilities and enhance its capacity for epidemiological investigations overseas. The CDC expects to offer follow-up assistance after infectious disease outbreaks as part of an effort to control new pathogens. It has also increased research on diseases that are uncommon in the United States. The CDC launched the International Emerging Infections Program, targeting disease sources in developing countries and working with international health organizations to prevent the spread of disease through travel, migration, and trade. It is also coordinating disease control and eradication efforts to stop the spread of malaria and tuberculosis.

The CDC is also attempting to strengthen preventive procedures at home. Prompted in part by the SARS epidemic of 2003 and the Ghoson incident, the CDC has asked Congress to toughen laws on disease reporting, increase the number of inspectors and quarantine stations, and require common carriers such as airlines and ships to maintain list of passengers for longer periods of time.

The CDC is also promoting the expansion of regional disease surveillance networks into a global network that could provide early warning of infectious diseases. With this strategy, the CDC works closely as a technical consultant with the World Health Organization (WHO). Like the CDC, WHO is charged with addressing health threats in the changing global landscape and it has focused on creating new strategies to coordinate response efforts.

Impacts and Issues

Coordination is the major issue that faces government agencies as they attempt to protect the public health. The CDC's Geographic Medicine and Health Promotion Branch has warned that there is inadequate national surveillance for zoonotic diseases. Human diseases are handled by the CDC, while animal diseases are addressed by the Department of Agriculture. Monkeypox is just one example of a zoonotic disease that has infected humans. Avian influenza, also known as H5N1, or bird flu, is a zoonotic disease that has the potential to cause enormous disruptions around the world. In 2005, World Bank economists forecast that a H5N1 pandemic could cost the global economy about 2% of the annual gross domestic product.

Vaccines offer a promising means of stopping infectious disease. Under the long-established WHO system, countries send influenza specimens to the agency, which then makes these samples available to the global community for public health purposes, including vaccine development. However, some developing countries have been reluctant to share viral samples for vaccine research because they want to ensure that their citizens have access to vaccines at affordable prices. Indonesia, the nation struck hardest by H5N1, announced in 2007 that it would not send human bird flu virus samples to WHO unless the agency could guarantee the specimens would not be used commercially. Indonesia and WHO subsequently came to an agreement that Indonesia would continue to send samples while WHO will stockpile vaccines in the event of an epidemic. A long-term WHO goal is that developing countries obtain enough technology and scientific training to produce vaccines.

Globalization also has positive effects for combating disease. Pharmaceutical companies have reached agreements with several nations and international health organizations to provide drugs and vaccines for some epidemic diseases at reduced cost. Increasing international attention on neglected diseases has garnered support for research and development of drugs and vaccines to fight illnesses rare in industrialized nations, are but endemic in under-developed nations. International agencies are better able to communicate vaccine and drug needs. Finally, an increasing amount of companies are producing vaccines and manufacturing therapeutic drugs in growing number of nations—India is poised to become one of the world's major suppliers of pharmaceuticals in the next several decades.

Increase in worldwide trade has posed unique challenges for disease prevention. In 1986, CDC investigators began an investigation of rising numbers of certain Asian mosquitoes in the United States. The invasive species served as vectors (transmitters) of disease, causing illnesses such as West Nile and dengue (DEN-gay) fever. Both illnesses were extremely rare in the United States, typically occurring only in people who traveled abroad. The CDC researchers discovered that ports of entry in California, Florida, New York, and Texas all had sizable populations of daytime biting mosquitoes native to Asia. Cargo ships were identified as the means of transport—especially those ships carrying large box containers or old tires.

To combat invasive species and vectors of disease, there are now more stringent laws governing inspection, decontamination, and quarantine of imported cargo. However, several invasive species have managed to establish sizable populations across the United States. The *Aedes albopictus* mosquito, associated with dengue virus found in varying numbers from Hawaii throughout the southeastern United States. Researchers tracked a sharp increase in the presence of day-biting mosquitoes to shipments of bamboo plants to California plant nurseries. Immediate control measures such as insecticide application and quarantine and decontamination of other shipments prevented the mosquitoes from establishing large local populations. Health officials warned nursery workers to use insect repellant and wear covering clothing to minimize the risk of bites. No cases of illness were linked to the event. Preventative measures have worked to combat similar cases of invasive mosquito species in 2004 and 2006.

■ Primary Source Connection

Airline travel can provide a vehicle for spreading infectious diseases. In June 2007, the first federal isolation order in the United States in over forty years was issued to traveler Andrew Speaker from Atlanta, Georgia, when he returned to the United States after boarding planes in Georgia, Italy, and France while he was infected with a highly resistant strain of tuberculosis. Although no active tuberculosis infections among Speaker's fellow travelers have been found, another case of air travel in 2003 by an infected person did result in spreading the newly-emerging disease known as SARS. In the following *New York Times* article, journalist Kieth Bradshear relates how SARS spread from one infected man to fellow passengers on a flight from Hong Kong to Beijing in 2003. Bradshear has been the Hong Kong Bureau Chief for the *New York Times* since 2001.

This text has been suppressed due to author restrictions.

This text has been suppressed due to author restrictions.

See Also *Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Re-emerging Infectious Diseases; World Trade and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Protecting the Nation's Health in an Era of Globalization.* Atlanta: Office of Health Communication, National Center for Infectious Disease, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2002.

Wamala, Sarah P., and Ichiro Kawachi. *Globalization and Health.* New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Lassa Fever." December 3, 2004 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/spb/mnpages/dispages/lassaf.htm> (accessed May 17, 2007).

Caryn E.Neumann

Gonorrhea

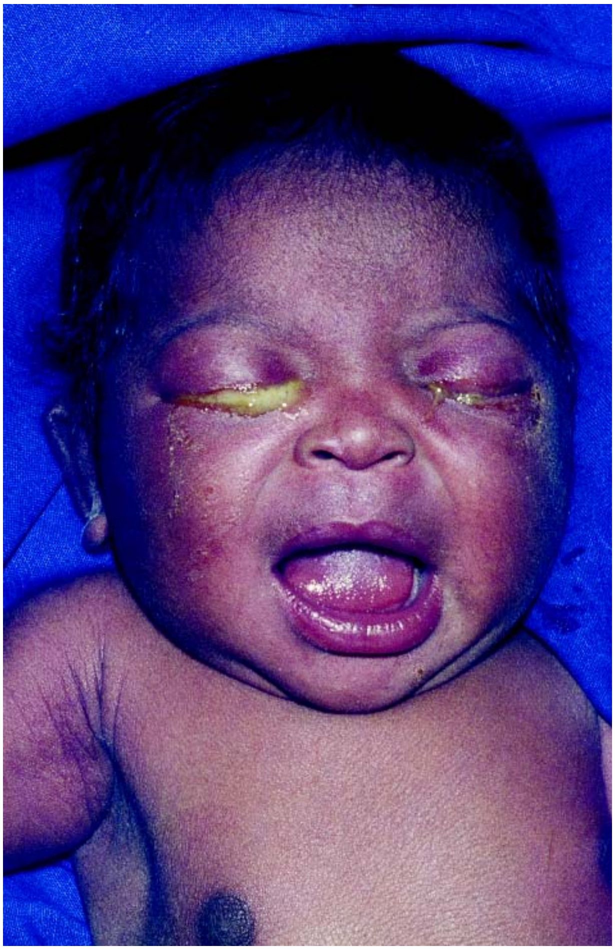
Introduction

Gonorrhea is one of the most common sexually transmitted diseases. It is caused by the bacterium *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* which infects parts of the reproductive tract such as the cervix, uterus, and Fallopian tubes in women and the urethra in both men and women.

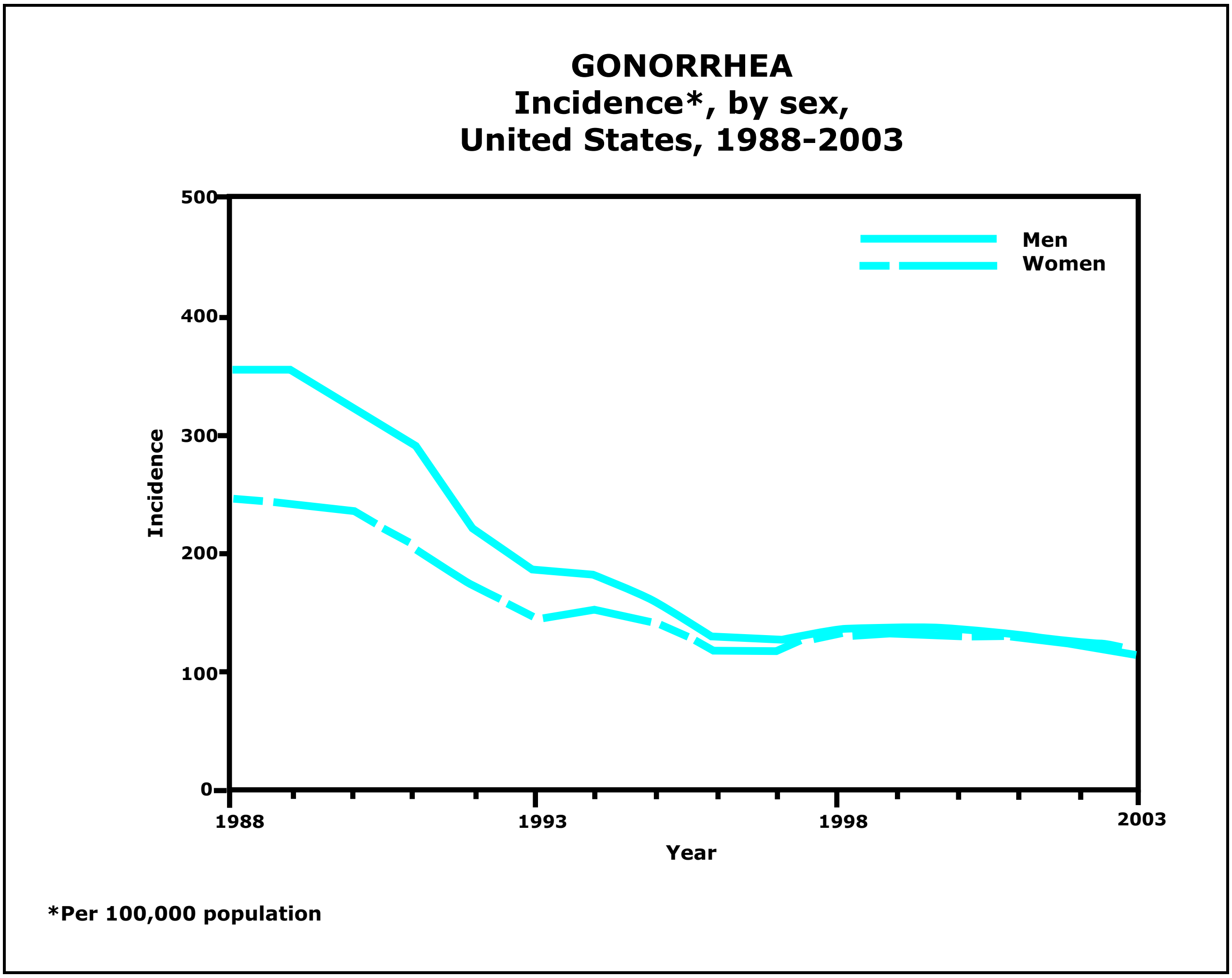
N. gonorrhoeae, sometimes known as gonococcus, is one of two pathogenic species in the *Neisseria* genus. The other, *N. meningitides*, is a leading cause of acute bacterial meningitis, an inflammation of the membranes covering the brain and spinal cord. Gonorrhea is curable and treatment is important as the disease can cause serious complications that may lead to both female and male infertility. Treatment must extend to the sexual partners of those who are diagnosed with the disease in order to help control its spread. Strains of gonorrhea that are resistant to antibiotics appear to be increasing in importance; for this reason, researchers need to develop new antibiotics that can carry on fighting the disease.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The word gonorrhea comes from the Greek words *gono* for seed and *rhoea*, meaning flow. The disease was first described in AD 170 by the Greek physician and philosopher Galen (c.129–216). It was thought that the characteristic discharge of gonorrhea in men consisted of semen. The causative agent, *N. gonorrhoeae*, was discovered in 1879 by Albert Neisser (1855–1916) who gave the bacterium its name. This was just one of many important advances during late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries in the understanding of the causes of venereal diseases (now know as sexually transmitted diseases, or STDs). *N. gonorrhoeae* is a coccus, a round-shaped bacterium that is Gram negative (a term referring to the way it is stained for microscopic examination). The *N. gonorrhoeae* bacteria tend to associate in pairs, a feature that aids identification.



An infants's eyes ooze pus due to an infection caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* bacterium. This congenital (present at birth) infection was passed from mother to baby during childbirth. *Dr. M.A. Ansary/ Photo Researchers, Inc.*



Graph showing the overall decrease in gonorrhea infections between 1988 and 2003 in both males and females in the United States. *Data courtesy of Centers for Disease Control.*

Infection with *N. gonorrhoeae* causes urethritis (inflammation of the lining of the urethra) among men and cervicitis (inflammation of the cervix) in women. The time of onset of symptoms following infection varies from one day to 30 days. In men, the first symptom of gonorrhea is usually painful urination, followed by a thick purulent (pus-containing) discharge from the urethra. The presence of pus makes the discharge yellow, white, or green, and it may be flecked with blood. In some cases, there is swelling in the testicles. However, many men have no symptoms. In women, painful urination is also the first symptom of gonorrhea—this may be followed by a vaginal discharge and possible bleeding. Sometimes the symptoms in women are so minor that they are mistaken for a vaginal or urinary infection. Most women with gonorrhea have no symptoms at all.

Untreated, gonorrhea tends to resolve after several weeks. However, during this time complications may set in and the person remains infectious. In men, the epididymis (the coiled tube leading sperm from the testicles) may become inflamed, which can lead to infertility. Gonorrhea in women can lead to salpingitis, which is inflammation of the Fallopian tubes. It is also a leading cause of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), which affects around one million women a year in the United States. Symptoms of PID can include severe abdominal pain and fever, and the condition may lead to the development of pus-filled abscesses, long-lasting pelvic pain, and infertility. PID can also scar the Fallopian tubes, increasing the risk of ectopic pregnancy. (An ectopic pregnancy occurs when a fertilized egg starts to develop inside a Fallopian tube instead of within the uterus; it requires immediate medical attention.) In around one percent of cases, gonorrhea spreads throughout the body and causes severe arthritis—inflammation of the joints—and skin lesions. Neonatal gonorrhea contracted during childbirth causes very severe conjunctivitis, an inflammation of the conjunctiva (the mucus membrane that lines the inner surface of the eyelid) covering the cornea, and may lead to blindness.

Gonorrhea is spread through contact with the anus, mouth, penis, or vagina—typically from various forms of unprotected sexual intercourse. Ejaculation is not necessary for infection to occur. The chance of a man contracting gonorrhea from an infected woman is 20%. The corresponding risk for a woman is 50%. A few 'core transmitters' spread the disease through having unprotected sex with many different partners. Those without symptoms are more likely to spread the disease than those who do have symptoms. As the infection affects the cervix in women, an infected woman can transmit the disease to the fetus during childbirth.

Scope and Distribution

After chlamydia, gonorrhea is the most common sexually-transmitted disease in the United States. In 2004, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recorded 330,132 new cases and the true figure is probably nearer to 700,000 because of under-reporting. Worldwide, there are around 62 million new cases of gonorrhea every year. Teenagers, young adults, and African-Americans appear to be most at risk of gonorrhea. It is also more common within lower socio-economic groups.

Treatment and Prevention

Penicillin was the first treatment for gonorrhea. Many other antibiotics, including ceftriaxone and ciprofloxacin, are used, but they can only treat the primary infection, not the complications. It is important that any sexual partners of the infected person are traced and treated to stop spreading the infection. Nearly half of those infected with *N. gonorrhoeae* are infected with *C. trachomatis* as well. Antibiotic resistance can be a problem, as strains of *N. gonorrhoeae* resistant to penicillin and the fluoroquinolone antibiotics have emerged in recent years. Pregnant women should be tested for gonorrhea and treated to prevent the infection passing to their babies. Newborn's are routinely treated with silver nitrate drops or other drugs to prevent conjunctivitis and reduce the risk of blindness.

Sexual abstinence or a monogamous sexual relationship with an uninfected partner are the most effective means of preventing the spread of gonorrhea. Condoms, used correctly and consistently, can also help prevent infection. Vaccines and microbiocides against *N. gonorrhoeae* are under development.

WORDS TO KNOW

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA: All types of bacteria identified and classified as a group that does not retain crystal-violet dye during Gram's method of staining.

PURULENT: Any part of the body that contains or releases pus is said to be purulent. Pus is a fluid produced by inflamed, infected tissues and is made up of white blood cells, fragments of dead cells, and a liquid containing various proteins.

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASE (STD): Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) vary in their susceptibility to treatment, their signs and symptoms, and the consequences if they are left untreated. Some are caused by bacteria. These usually can be treated and cured. Others are caused by viruses and can typically be treated but not cured. More than 15 million new cases of STD are diagnosed annually in the United States.

IN CONTEXT: A TOP SECRET WEAPON AGAINST GONORRHEA

The Unites States Army made immediate use of penicillin in World War II (1941–1945). In hospitals near the front, the new therapeutic agent saved thousands of soldiers from post-battlefield wound infections, and also proved an effective agent in treating many cases of syphilis and gonorrhea among the troops. Penicillin was initially considered a war asset and war secret in the United States and Britain but by the end of 1945, commercial manufacturing plants were capable of producing enough penicillin so that physicians also could prescribe it to their civilian patients.

Impacts and Issues

Gonorrhea is a serious public health problem because it can inflict long-term damage upon the female—and, to a lesser extent—male reproductive systems without an individual being aware that he or she is infected. There may be no symptoms associated with either the primary infection or the complications. According to the CDC, after a two-decade decline in the number of cases of gonorrhea in the United States, reported cases began

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

Researchers are increasingly concerned about antimicrobial resistance shown by *N. gonorrhoeae*. The problem presents an important global public health challenge in the struggle to control gonorrhea.

Gonococcal strains have been demonstrated that are resistant to fluoroquinolones, penicillins, spectinomycin, and tetracyclines. Moreover, strains that resist treatment doses of the antibiotics ciprofloxacin and ofloxacin that exceed the CDC recommended treatment doses have been discovered. According to World Health Organization (WHO) data and reports such resistant strains may be encountered in more than 40% of cases treated in some Asian countries.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Division of Sexually Transmitted Disease (STD)*

rising again in the 1990s. The CDC estimates that about five percent of people in the United States ages 18–35 are unknowingly infected with gonorrhea. Meanwhile, the antibiotic drugs used to control *N. gonorrhoeae* could be losing their effectiveness, as resistance spreads from Southeast Asia through Hawaii to the west coast of the United States.

Gonorrhea and HIV infection are closely related; those with both conditions are more likely to transmit HIV. People with gonorrhea who are HIV negative are also more likely to be infected with HIV than someone without gonorrhea. Without a vaccine against *N. gonorrhoeae*, prevention efforts focused on safer sex practices, regular STD testing, and routine gynecological examination remain essential to controlling the spread of gonorrhea.

See Also *Antibiotic Resistance; Bacterial Disease; Sexually Transmitted Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Gonorrhea." April 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/std/Gonorrhea/STDFact-gonorrhea.htm> (accessed April 9, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Gonorrhea." August 2006 <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/factsheets/stdgon.htm> (accessed February 23, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

H5N1

Introduction

The H5N1 virus is classified as an influenza A virus. This type of virus is normally found in avian species (birds) and is both highly contagious and highly lethal to bird populations ranging from wild migrating birds to chickens on commercial poultry farms.

The influenza in humans resulting from H5N1 infection is highly lethal. High death rates are not uncommon, including cases where infection resulted in death in more than 75% of persons infected during an outbreak.

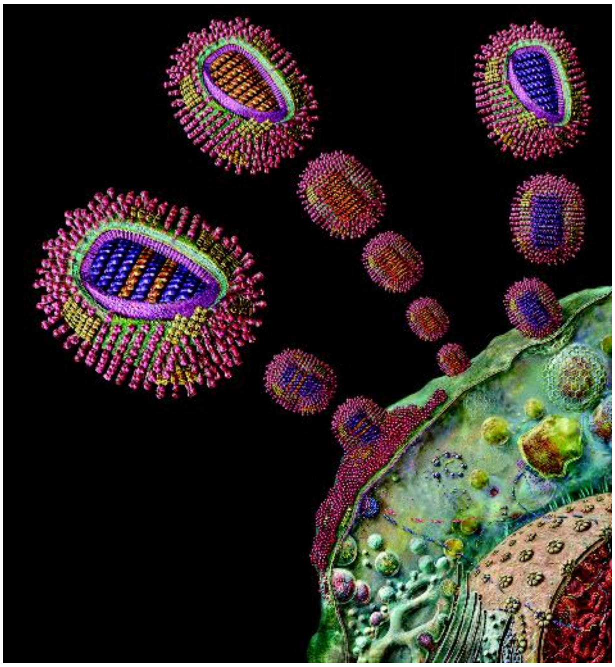
As of May 2007, H5N1 was not easily transmissible to humans. Most of the cases of human infection with H5N1 involved infections resulting from close contact with infected bird populations. Situations, for example, where people lived in proximity to infected birds (mostly poultry), handled infected birds, or had contact with H5N1-contaminated surfaces. Globally, epidemiologists (scientists who study the origin of disease) had documented only a few cases of human-to-human transmission of H5N1 and all of the documented cases involved close contact (e.g., a family member caring for an infected relative, etc).

History and Scientific Foundations

Genetic testing of the H5N1 flu virus shows it to be a highly mutable virus. H5N1 has been documented to infected pigs and pigs serve as a host for flu viruses that historically mutate easily into a form that can infect humans. Accordingly, the World Health Organization (WHO) has made the study and containment of H5N1 and other avian flu viruses originating in Asia its top priority. WHO officials fear a potentially devastating global pandemic if H5N1 is able to mutate into a form easier to transmit to humans or a form easier for humans to transmit to other humans.

A Vietnamese woman transports ducks from a poultry market in Hanoi, Vietnam, in August 2004. The World Health Organization reported that tests in Vietnam have shown the presence of the H5N1 strain in one of three people who have died of bird flu. *AP Images.*

A colored transmission electron micrograph (TEM) shows influenza A virus particles (green). This is the H5N1 strain. The red cells are MDCK (Madin-Darby canine kidney) culture cells, which are used in vaccine and virus research. *CDC/Photo Researchers, Inc.*



In this computer rendering, two subtypes of influenza virus are combining to form a new strain. The influenza belongs to the orthomyxovirus class of RNA (ribonucleic acid) viruses. Viruses use the machinery of a host cell (bottom right) to replicate their genomes. If a cell is infected with two influenza strains (purple genome and orange genome) simultaneously, the viral RNA may be mixed and repackaged to form a new strain (purple and orange genome). This could happen between a bird flu and a human strain of the virus. The resulting strain may be transmissible from human to human and spread rapidly though the population. *Russell Kightley/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Mechanism of action

The avian flu viruses attack human cells by first attaching themselves to the outer cell membrane with pointed probe-like hemagglutin (HA) molecules that are capable of binding to specific sites on the cell membrane.

Hemagglutinin (designated as HA) and neuraminidase (designated as NA) are glycoproteins (proteins that contain a short chain of sugar as part of its structure). Hemagglutinin and neuraminidase protrude from the outer surface of the influenza virus and neuraminidase is a constituent of the enveloping membrane that surrounds the viral contents. A typical influenza virus particle contains hundreds of molecules of hemagglutinin and neuraminidase studded across the viral surface.

Because the binding must be specific—that is, the HA molecule must be of a certain structure and configuration to bind to the membrane receptor sites—the vast majority of viruses that infect birds are not capable of binding to human cell membranes. Small and subtle changes, driven by the process of mutation, in either the protein structure or in protein configuration (the protein's shape in three dimensional space) can, however, permit binding to human cell membranes. This allows the virus to infect the human cell, and make the jump from birds to humans.

Applications and Research

Researchers and health officials find optimism for containing the current outbreaks of flu in the data obtained from comparative analysis of flu strains that show the structure of the H5N1 HA molecules from the strain responsible for the recent outbreaks in China and Vietnam is actually quite different from the structure of the HA molecules associate with the 1918 flu pandemic.

However, scientists remain vigilant—and public health officials remain concerned—because the changes required to make the jump to humans also occurred in the viruses responsible for during global outbreaks of influenza in 1957 and 1968.

Impacts and Issues

Biologically, however, there is little that can be done to stop the virus from spreading and mutating, except to reduce its host environment. Governments of the affected countries (especially Thailand, Viet Nam, Laos, Cambodia, Republic of Korea, Indonesia, and in more than a dozen provinces, municipalities and autonomous regions on the Chinese mainland) have often ordered the wholesale slaughter of sick, potentially infected, and exposed birds as a response to Avian flu outbreaks (the disease H5N1 causes in avian populations).

Millions of chickens, for example, have been culled in order to attempt to inhibit the spread to other flocks as governments imposed prompt and sometimes severe quarantine restrictions. In other countries chickens have been given vaccines (some with questionable effectiveness) against the disease in an attempt to minimize the potentially overwhelming negative economic impacts of H5N1 on commercial bird species.

The specific H5N1 virus linked to human deaths is especially dangerous because it is resistant to both amantadine and rimantadine, two commonly used antiviral drugs used to treat influenza. Other antiviral medications, oseltamavir (Tamiflu) and zanamavir, have shown effectiveness but the full extent (or limits of effectiveness) were, as of May 2007, still subject to additional testing. Although research programs (and clinical trials) existed in several countries, as of May 2007, no vaccine against H5N1 was yet formally approved for use in humans.

See Also *Avian Influenza; Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Influenza; Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation; Influenza Pandemic of 1918; Notifiable Diseases; Pandemic Preparedness; Vaccines and Vaccine Development.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Gorman C. "The Avian Flu: How Scared Should We Be?" *Time.* (October 17, 2005): 30.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "CDCSite Index A-Z." <http://www.cdc.gov/flu/avian/> (accessed May 21, 2007).

World Health Organization. "WHO Statistical Information System (WHOSIS)." <http://www3.who.int/whosis/menu.cfm> (accessed May 21, 2007).

World Health Organization. "WHO Weekly Epidemiologic Record (WER)." <http://www.who.int/wer/en> (accessed May 21, 2007).

Paul Davies

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIVIRAL DRUGS: Antiviral drugs are compounds that are used to prevent or treat viral infections, via the disruption of an infectious mechanism used by the virus, or to treat the symptoms of an infection.

CELL MEMBRANE: The cell is bound by an outer membrane that, as described by a membrane model termed the fluid mosaic model, is comprised of a phospholipid lipid bilayer with proteins—molecules that also act as receptor sites—interspersed within the phospholipid bilayer. Varieties of channels exist within the membrane. In eukaryotes (cells with a true nucleus) there are a number of internal cellular membranes that can partition regions within the cells' interior. Some of these membranes ultimately become continuous with the nuclear membrane. Bacteria and viruses do not have inner membranes.

EPIDEMIOLOGIST: Epidemiologists study the various factors that influence the occurrence, distribution, prevention, and control of disease, injury, and other health-related events in a defined human population. By the application of various analytical techniques including mathematical analysis of the data, the probable cause of an infectious outbreak can be pinpointed.

HEMAGGLUTININ: Designated (HA) a glycoprotein, a protein that contains a short chain of sugar as part of its structure.

MUTABLE VIRUS: A mutable virus is one whose DNA changes rapidly so that drugs and vaccines against it may not be effective.

NEURAMINIDASE: Designated (NA) a glycoprotein, a protein that contains a short chain of sugar as part of its structure.

Haemophilus Influenzae

Introduction

Haemophilus influenzae is a bacterium that can cause upper respiratory disease mainly in young children. *H. influenzae* type b, or Hib for short, is a particular cause for meningitis.

H. influenzae are Gram negative—this means that their cell wall consists of two membranes that are on either side of a thin, but strong layer called the peptidoglycan. The bacteria can be shaped like ovals or can adopt different shapes, and so are described as being pleomorphic. When grown on a solid nutrient, clumps of bacteria tend to form in the vicinity of another bacterium called *Staphylococcus* when the latter are present. This behavior can be important in identifying *H. influenzae*.

While vaccination against Hib has reduced the occurrence of infections in developed countries, *H. influenzae* remains responsible for many lower respiratory infections in children in other regions of the world.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

H. influenzae was first described Richard Johannes Pfeiffer (1858–1945) in 1892 during an influenza epidemic. The name for the bacterium reflects an early misunderstanding that it was the cause of the flu. In 1933, scientists demonstrated that influenza was instead caused by a virus. *H. influenzae*, however, was subsequently shown to be the cause of several other diseases.

Some types (strains) of *H. influenzae* are surrounded by a sugary coat called a capsule, while other strains do not have a capsule. The strains with a capsule tend to be more of a health concern, since the capsule helps protect a bacterium from attack by a host's immune system. Nonetheless, some strains without a capsule are also pathogenic (disease-causing) and can cause bronchitis, ear infections, and epiglottitis, an inflammation in the esophagus. Complications of epiglottis can produce a blockage of the airway that can be fatal in children under the age of five.

H. influenzae is normally found in the throat and nose of many people. The bacteria residing there are

ACT-HIB
Haemophilus Infl
Conjugate Vaccine
with the Adsorbed Dip
Pertussis Vaccine BP Past
Haemophilus influenzae
b polysaccharide conj
to tetanus prote
PL 674
I.M
0.1
0.2

The Hib vaccine protects against infection by the bacterium *Haemophilus influenzae* type B, which can cause a range of serious illnesses in children, including meningitis and pneumonia. The vaccine is given in several doses during the first year of a baby's life. *Tek Image/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

usually harmless. But, if the bacteria spreads to other areas of the body or if a person's immune system is compromised, the bacteria can cause infection. Thus, *H. influenzae* represents an opportunistic pathogen.

Only humans are known to be susceptible to *H. influenzae* infections. This has complicated research on the mechanisms of infection and vaccine development, since animal models of the disease cannot be established.

H. influenzae can be spread from person to person in the droplets that are expelled when someone coughs or sneezes. The bacterium most often affects children, where strains that possess a capsule can cause a lung infection (pneumonia). More seriously, the bacteria can infect the blood and spread. Joints can be affected, producing arthritis. A heart infection called pericarditis can occur. *H. influenzae* infections may also attack the lining of nerves such as those in the brain. The resulting inflammation is a form of bacterial meningitis, a potentially life-threatening complication. Stiffness in the neck accompanied by flulike symptoms can be an early indication of bacterial meningitis.

Hib infections were previously a much more common and dangerous threat. The availability of infant-and childhood-based vaccines against Hib, and their widespread use beginning in the late 1990s, included in the series of vaccinations that many children receive during their first decade of life, has reduced the prevalence of Hib meningitis dramatically. In the United States, the incidence of Hib infections in children less than five years old has dropped from 40–100 children per 100,000 in the 1990s, to less than two of every 100,000 children in 2006.

Scope and Distribution

H. influenzae is worldwide in distribution. Most affected are children who are in close contact with one another. There is no indication that girls, boys, or members any particular race group are more susceptible to infection.

H. influenzae pneumonia and meningitis are greater problems in developing countries. Agencies including the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and the World Health Organization (WHO) assist countries in determining the prevalence and geographical distribution of infections, which helps in infection control programs.

Treatment and Prevention

H. influenzae can be treated by a number of different antibiotics, although there have been reports of antibiotic resistance.

Hib pneumonia and meningitis are preventable. Vaccination in a series of inoculations, which can begin as early as six months of age, protects children. The discovery and widespread use of the three Hib vaccines have been invaluable in reducing the cases of childhood pneumonia and meningitis. Prior to the use of the vaccine, Hib was the most common cause of bacterial meningitis in countries such as Canada, where it caused more cases than all other forms of bacterial meningitis combined. The illness ravaged the young; almost 70% of cases involved children less than 18 months of age. Up to 30% of those affected had permanent brain damage.

WORDS TO KNOW

DROPLETS: A drop of water or other fluid that is less than 5 microns (a millionth of a meter) in diameter.

GRAM NEGATIVE BACTERIA: Gram-negative bacteria are bacteria whose cell wall is comprised of an inner and outer membrane that are separated from one another by a region called the periplasm. The periplasm also contains a thin but rigid layer called the peptidoglycan.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

HATTIE ELIZABETH ALEXANDER (1901–1968)

Hattie Elizabeth Alexander was a pediatrician and microbiologist who made fundamental contributions in the early studies of the genetic basis of bacterial antibiotic resistance, specifically the resistance displayed by *Hemophilus influenzae*, the cause of influenzal meningitis (swelling of the nerves in the spinal cord and brain). Her pioneering studies paved the way for advances in treatment saved countless lives.

Alexander pioneered studies of the antibiotic resistance and susceptibility of *Hemophilus influenzae*. In 1939, she successfully utilized an anti-pneumonia serum that had been developed at Rockefeller University to cure infants of influenzal meningitis. Until then, infection with *Hemophilus influenzae* type b almost always resulted in death. Her antiserum reduced the death rate by almost 80%. Further research led to the use of sulfa drugs and other antibiotics in the treatment of the meningitis.

In addition to her research, Alexander devoted much time to teaching and clinical duties. She was elected the first woman president of the American Pediatric Society in 1965.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that the "*Haemophilus influenzae* type b, or Hib, is a bacterium estimated to be responsible for some three million serious illnesses and an estimated 386,000 deaths per year, chiefly through meningitis and pneumonia. Almost all victims are children under the age of five, with those between four and 18 months of age especially vulnerable."

"In developing countries, where the vast majority of Hib deaths occur, pneumonia accounts for a larger number of deaths than meningitis. However, Hib meningitis is also a serious problem in such countries with mortality rates several times higher than seen in developed countries; it leaves 15 to 35% of survivors with permanent disabilities such as mental retardation or deafness."

SOURCE: *World Health Organization (WHO)*

Following the introduction of vaccine formulations for children (1987) and infants (1990), the number of cases of Hib meningitis decreased by over 80% in Canada and the United States within five years.

■ Impacts and Issues

Despite the overwhelming success of Hib vaccines in combating meningitis, *H. influenzae* continues to be a problem in developing countries. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that Hib causes three million serious illnesses and almost 400,000 deaths each year, mainly due to pneumonia. Meninigitis also is a health and economic threat is these countries; 15–35% of survivors are left with brain damage and hearing loss, which impairs their ability to function in family care and to work.

The vaccination rate for the approximately 90 countries who have Hib vaccination programs is over 90%. However, in developing countries, only about 42% of people are vaccinated, and in under-developed regions such as Sub-Saharan Africa the vaccination rate is less than 10%.

The major reason for the gulf between the developed and developing world in the prevention of *H. influenzae* disease is the cost of the vaccines. International assistance through agencies that includes CDC and WHO are aimed at increasing the availability and use of these vaccines in less-developed regions. For example, WHO is actively involved in implementing the GAVI Hib Intitiative, which will help countries most effectively vaccinate children. Agencies including WHO and UNICEF have developed the Global Immunization Vision and Strategy (GIVS), which seeks make vaccination against diseases including Hib more efficient.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Meningitis, Bacterial.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

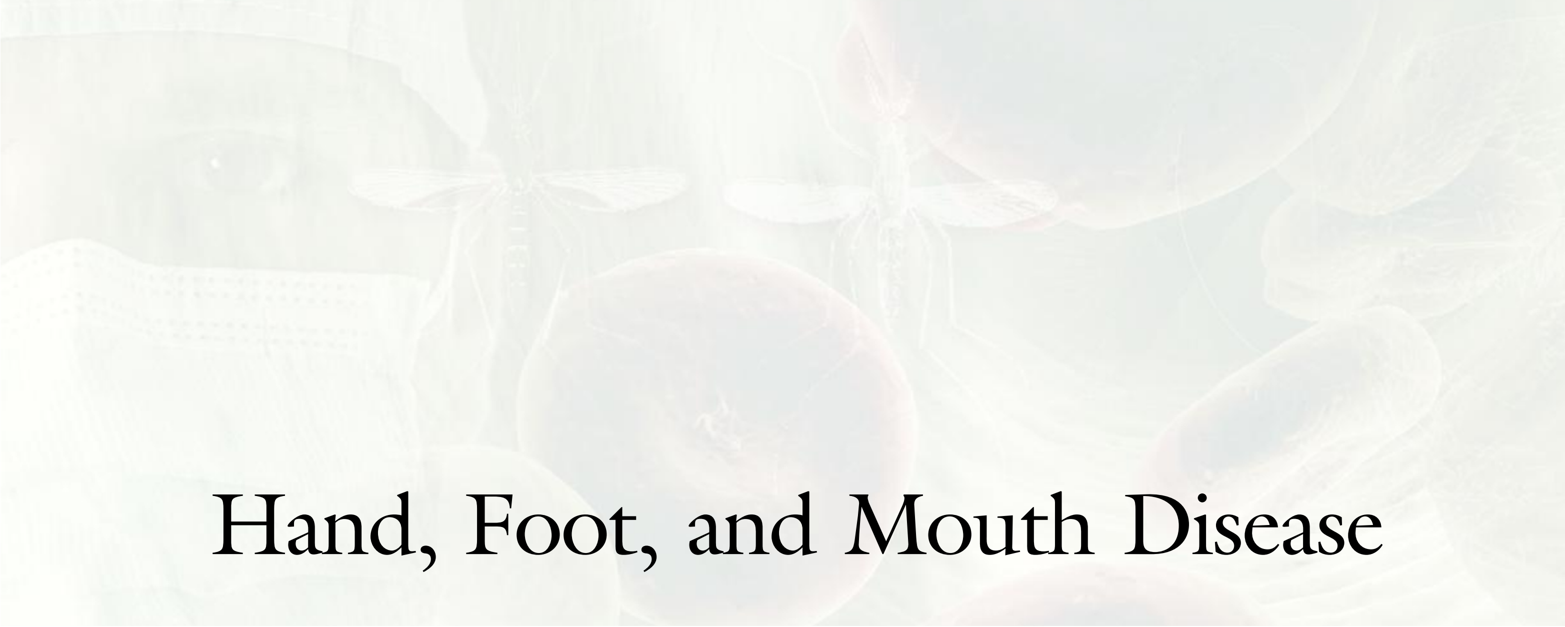
Bloom, Barry R., and Paul-Henri Lambert. *The Vaccine Book*. Oxford: Academic Press, 2002.

Ferreiros, C. *Emerging Strategies in the Fight against Meningitis*. Oxford: Garland Science, 2002.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "*Haemophilus influenzae/e* Serotype b (Hib) Disease." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/haeminfluserob_t.htm> (accessed April 10, 2007).

Brian Hoyle



Hand, Foot, and Mouth Disease

Introduction

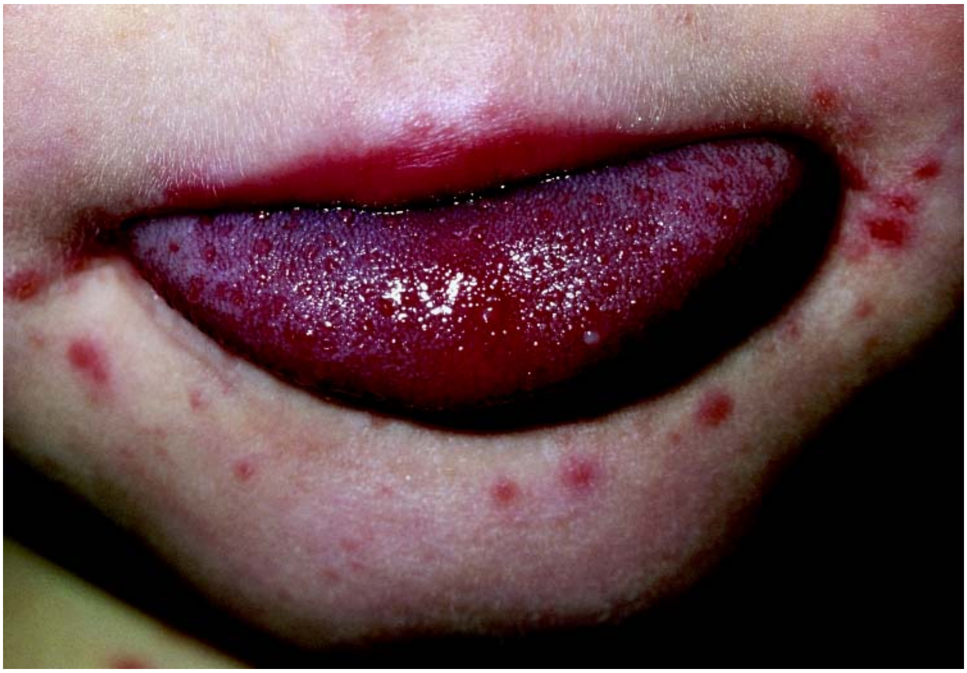
Hand, foot, and mouth disease (HFMD) is a mild, self-limiting disease caused by the enterovirus family of viruses. HFMD usually affects infants and children under the age of ten. It is endemic around the world, with periodic outbreaks. Symptoms include fever, nausea, ulcers in the mouth, and sores on the hands and feet. Infected individuals generally recover within two weeks; complications are rare. The disease is considered contagious and spreads through contact with fluids from infected persons.

Although there is no treatment for the disease and there are no formal preventative measures, the majority of persons with HFMD recover without any complications. However, more severe strains of enteroviruses have emerged, causing potentially fatal diseases, highlighting the need to monitor HFMD.

HFMD is not to be confused with foot-and-mouth disease, which is an unrelated disease that only affects cattle, sheep, and swine.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Hand, foot, and mouth disease was first diagnosed during an outbreak in Canada in 1957, but the name was not assigned until 1960 when Birmingham, England,



Skin lesions are shown on the tongue and around the mouth of a five-year-old boy who has contracted hand, foot, and mouth disease (HFM), common in children. *Dr P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ENTEROVIRUS: Enteroviruses are a group of viruses that contain ribonucleic acid as their genetic material. They are members of the picornavirus family. The various types of enteroviruses that infect humans are referred to as serotypes, in recognition of their different antigenic patterns. The different immune response is important, as infection with one type of enterovirus does not necessarily confer protection to infection by a different type of enterovirus. There are 64 different enterovirus serotypes. The serotypes include polio viruses, coxsackie A and B viruses, echoviruses and a large number of what are referred to as non-polio enteroviruses.

COHORT: A cohort is a group of people (or any species) sharing a common characteristic. Cohorts are identified and grouped in cohort studies to determine the frequency of diseases or the kinds of disease outcomes over time.

suffered a similar outbreak. Individual cases of HFMD occur worldwide with a peak occurrence in late summer and early fall.

The disease, most common in children, results from infection by a group of enteroviruses, namely coxsackievirus A16. More severe forms of infection have appeared due to human enterovirus-71, causing epidemics with associated fatalities from HFMD-associated meningitis or encephalitis in countries such as Japan, Taiwan, Singapore, Malaysia, and Indonesia.

The onset of disease symptoms is usually three to seven days, after which children will suffer from a mild fever, loss of appetite, nausea, abdominal cramping, and a sore throat. After one to two days, the fever will heighten. In addition, painful sores will develop on the tongue, gums, and cheeks; these begin as small dots but quickly blister and ulcerate. At this point, patients will usually also display a rash affecting the palms of hands, soles of feet, and often the buttocks.

HFMD is considered moderately to highly contagious during the first week of infection and can be transmitted through contact with nose and throat discharge, blister fluids, and stools of those affected. There is no evidence of transmission from mother to infant during pregnancy, but mothers infected just prior to delivery may pass the virus on to the newborn baby. The risk of severe infection among babies is highest during the first two weeks of life.

■ Scope and Distribution

The people most commonly infected with HFMD are infants and children below the age of ten, although some cases may occur in adults. Children are the most susceptible to the disease due to their lack of previous exposure to the antigens and therefore lack of inbuilt immune defense.

The development of outbreaks and epidemics of this infection is rapid among cohorted children attending childcare facilities and schools, due to the high degree of physical contact and child interaction aiding transmission. The ratio of boys affected to girls is 1:1 and there does not appear to be a higher susceptibility to infection among certain races or ethnic groups.

Both individual cases and outbreaks of HFMD occur worldwide with no regions demonstrating a higher predisposition to the disease caused by infection with the coxsackievirus. However, HFMD presents two very different disease states depending upon the specific enterovirus causing infection and demonstrates a varied distribution.

The more severe illness, which is caused by the human enterovirus-71, presented in the first outbreak in Singapore in 1970, then occurred in Malaysia in 1997, in Taiwan in 1998, and again in Singapore in 2000. As an example of the scope of this disease, 1.5 million people were reportedly affected during the outbreak in Taiwan, including 78 child fatalities. In nearly all of the above-mentioned outbreaks, fatalities occurred as a result of infection leading to viral meningitis or encephalitis. The mortality rates and chances of complication were higher in later epidemics than those previous, which raised much concern amongst health care facilities in these countries.

Despite the fatalities occurring during outbreaks associated with this disease, HFMD caused by coxsackievirus infection is generally still considered to be a mild disease with global distribution.

■ Treatment and Prevention

HFMD is caused by a viral infection and there is no specific treatment for the infection. The infection is self-limiting, so patients will usually recover once the virus has run its course, usually within ten days. The most common complication of HFMD is dehydration due to the pain experienced when swallowing. As such it is important for patients to maintain adequate fluid intake during the course of the illness. Medication may also be administered to manage symptoms, such as non-steroidal anti-inflammatory medication for pain and fever.

There is no vaccination or formal prevention available for HFMD, but transmission may be minimized by hygiene practices such as cleaning contaminated surfaces and preventing the sharing of utensils. It is also important to limit exposure of those infected, so infected children should avoid group environments until sores have healed and the fever subsided.

In cases of disease with a strong potential for outbreak, prevention must be maintained at both the individual and societal levels. Health ministries in Singapore have been made aware of the possible severity of enterovirus infection and have made laws requiring childcare centers and general practitioners to report any suspected outbreaks of HFMD. This creates a heightened awareness among the community of the possibility of infection and increases the chances of preventing an epidemic.

Impacts and Issues

One important feature of HFMD is the speed and ease with which it can be transmitted. In addition to the weeklong incubation period during which infected persons display no symptoms, the virus may remain present in the saliva for up to ten days and in the stool for months. This combination means that children may be contagious for months, even if symptoms have been displayed only for a short time, making implementation of successful prevention strategies difficult.

Once a person has had HFMD, they will no longer be susceptible to infection from that particular strain of enterovirus. However, the person will remain susceptible to infection from other enteroviruses, which means that previous infection does not infer complete immunity. Studies into outbreaks of HFMD involving human enterovirus-71 have suggested that previous infection by other enteroviruses, including coxsackievirus A16, may cause increased sensitivity to the disease, as well as increased severity.

Although generally HFMD enterovirus infection is mild and self-limiting, there has been an emergence of more critical forms of disease. The high numbers of fatalities among later outbreaks suggests that certain strains of infection are gaining virulence, while populations remain defenseless against them. Discrepancies exist among symptoms and presentation of persons with HFMD in epidemics involving fatalities. Some patients display the usual symptoms of HFMD before experiencing further complications, while others display no signs at all. The onset of complicating viral meningitis, encephalitis, or endocarditis following enterovirus infection is rapid, which further limits the treatment opportunities for persons affected with these strains of enterovirus.

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS.

With regard to public health concerns Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that CDC has "no specific recommendations regarding the exclusion of children with HFMD from child care programs, schools, or other group settings. Children are often excluded from group settings during the first few days of the illness, which may reduce the spread of infection, but will not completely interrupt it. Exclusion of ill persons may not prevent additional cases since the virus may be excreted for weeks after the symptoms have disappeared. Also, some persons excreting the virus, including most adults, may have no symptoms. Some benefit may be gained, however, by excluding children who have blisters in their mouths and drool or who have weeping lesions on their hands."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

See Also *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Contact Precautions; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Handwashing; Microbial Evolution; Notifiable Diseases; Polio (Poliomyelitis); Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, Vol. 2. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Mims, C., et al. *Medical Microbiology*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2004.

Periodicals

Chan, K.P., K.T. Goh, and C.Y. Chong. "Epidemic Hand, Foot and Mouth Disease caused by Human Enterovirus 71, Singapore." *Emerging Infectious Diseases*. 9, 1 (2003): 78–85.

McMinn, P.C. "An Overview of the Evolution of Enterovirus 71 and its Clinical and Public Health Significance." *FEMS Microbiology Reviews*. 26, 1 (2002): 91–107.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control (CDC). "Hand, Foot, & Mouth Disease." Sep. 5, 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/revb/enterovirus/hfhf.htm> (accessed Feb. 23, 2007).

Handwashing

Introduction

Handwashing (or hand hygiene) is the single most important method of preventing the spread of infection—in the hospital, at home, and in the community. Experts agree that regular and proper handwashing using soap and water is the simplest and most effective way to promote personal hygiene and reduce infections at school and in most workplaces. In the hospital, however, studies have shown that using alcohol-based hand sanitizers are effective in reducing the numbers of transient pathogens (infectious microorganisms) residing on the hands, and, as they are quicker to use, they are used more often by busy hospital personnel.

Handwashing minimizes the spread of pathogens between people, or between other living things and people. Fomites, or inanimate objects and surfaces, such as contaminated computer keyboards, desk tops, stair rails, and cutlery often provide surfaces that harbor microorganisms that are easily transferred to membranes of the mouth, nose, and eyes via the hands.

History and Scientific Foundations

As early as the mid-nineteenth century, doctors and nurses began to assert that handwashing could reduce illness. Florence Nightingale (1820–1910), an English pioneer of the nursing profession, wrote about her perceived relationship between unsanitary conditions and

Children wash their hands as they leave a petting zoo. To reduce illness and disease transmission, the sponsors use hand-washing stations along with signs telling children to wash up after touching the animals. *AP Images.*

disease based on her nursing experiences during the Crimean War in 1855. At about the same time, the Viennese physician Ignaz Philipp Semmelweis (1818–1865) noted the connection between mortalities (deaths) in hospital patients and contact with physicians who often moved from patient to patient without washing their hands. After Semmelweis introduced handwashing with a solution containing chloride, the incidence of mortality due to puerperal fever (infection after childbirth) diminished from 18% to less than 3%.

Today, handwashing protocols are a cornerstone of the infection control program in any healthcare facility. Standard precautions, the most basic concept of infection control (which assumes that all body fluids are potential sources of infection), state that handwashing should occur both before and after routine contact with body fluids, even though latex gloves are worn. For surgery or other involved procedures, handwashing is accomplished with a non-irritating antimicrobial preparation that has fast, long-lasting, broad-spectrum activity against pathogens.

Applications and Research

In 2005, the American Society for Microbiology (ASM) and The Soap and Detergent Association (SDA) released the results of a study showing that people do not wash their hands as often as they report doing so. The study first conducted a telephone survey about hand hygiene habits, and then observed people in public restrooms at six public attractions in four major cities: Atlanta (Turner Field), Chicago (Museum of Science and Industry, Shedd Aquarium), New York City (Grand Central Station, Penn Station), and San Francisco (Ferry Terminal Farmers Market). Results showed that 91% of American adults say they always wash their hands after using public restrooms, but only 83% actually did so. Women washed their hands more than men after using public restrooms (90% versus 75%).

In the telephone survey, women were reportedly also slightly better than men at washing their hands after coughing or sneezing, although at only 39% and 24% respectively, hand hygiene after a cough or sneeze was reportedly low. The viruses that cause colds and influenza are spread more often by contaminated hands that come in contact with mucous membranes in the eyes, mouth, and nose than are spread through the air during sneezing, according to the Secretary of the ASM.

To maximize effectiveness, careful attention must be paid to proper handwashing technique. The act of handwashing is best accomplished by vigorous rubbing together of the hands and fingers. This is because the removal of microorganisms is accomplished not only by the presence of the soap or antiseptic, but also by the friction of the opposing skin surfaces rubbing together. Warm water, soap, and friction loosen dirt and grime. The soap does not need to specifically labeled as "antibacterial," but liquid soap lasts longer without hosting bacterial growth than bar soap. Far more important than the type of soap is the effort put into washing. Friction is key and it is important to work the soap into lather on both sides of the hands, wrists, between the fingers, and on the fingertips. Careful attention should also be given to areas around nail beds that may harbor bacteria in broken cuticles. It is important to wash for about 15 seconds (contact time is often critical in effectively killing germs) before rinsing well without touching the faucet or sides of the washbasin, and drying with an air dryer or disposable towel (preferred) or clean cloth towel. Equally important is to avoid recontamination by turning the water faucet off with the paper towel or cloth. Children can be taught to count, repeat a simple rhyme, or to softly sing a "washing song" to make sure they invest the needed time in washing.

WORDS TO KNOW

BROAD-SPECTRUM: The term "broad spectrum" refers to a series of objects or ideas with great variety between them. In medicine, the term is often applied to drugs, which act on a large number of different disease causing agents.

ELBOW BUMP: The elbow bump is a personal greeting that can be used as an alternative to the handshake: the two people greeting each other bump elbows. It is recommended by the World Health Organization for use by researchers handling highly infectious organisms, such as Ebola virus.

FOMITES: Objects that can spread disease organisms are fomites. Papers, clothing, dishes, and other objects can all act as fomites.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

Impacts and Issues

Although it is difficult to estimate the financial impact of proper hygienic practices, conservative estimates by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control place the savings due to successful handwashing in clinical settings at over one billion dollars per year. As more than 20 million school days are lost due to the common cold alone, the savings of proper handwashing in schools and in the workplace could exceed this figure by a significant factor.

The American Society for Microbiology began focusing on increasing public awareness about the importance of handwashing in regular campaigns since 1996. The ASM also belongs to the Clean Hands Coalition, along with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and other partners, which sponsors yearly handwashing awareness programs throughout the United States, usually in September near the start of the school year.

Especially during influenza season, both the CDC and World Health Organization (WHO) recommend the "elbow bump" greeting as a replacement for the handshake. Cold and influenza viruses that remain on the hands after a sneeze (and before handwashing) are often passed on through a handshake, then the recipient infects himself when touching his eyes or mouth with the contaminated hand. As it is difficult to contaminate the elbow with a sneeze, bumping elbows transfers fewer pathogens. WHO and CDC scientists responding to outbreaks of infectious disease where infrastructure is lacking commonly use the elbow bump greeting. In the event of an influenza pandemic, the U.S. government recommends the elbow bump greeting as a measure of social distancing in addition to regular handwashing to prevent the spread of infection.

■ Primary Source Connection

Handwashing is a primary means of stopping the spread of germs and preventing routine infectious diseases such as influenza and common colds. Shaking hands, a common greeting in several nations, can transmit germs from person to person. While handwashing is recommended as part of a routine of basic hygiene, it is not always possible. The article below discusses the use of hand sanitizer gels on the political campaign trail. Political candidates in the United States often meet and exchange greetings with thousands of people every day. Some politicians use gel hand sanitizers to ward off infection. Others assert that the practice is not particularly beneficial—at least to their image.

The article's author, Mark Leibovich, is a writer and political correspondent for the *New York Times.*

See Also *Antimicrobial Soaps; Infection Control and Asepsis.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Goldmann, Donald. "System Failure versus Personal Accountability—The Case for Clean Hands" *NEJM* (July 13, 2006): 355: 121–123.

Web Sites

American Society for Microbiology. "Don't Get Caught Dirty Handed." <http://www.washup.org/> (accessed June 10, 2007).

American Society for Microbiology. "Gross. . .You Didn't Wash Your Hands?" <http://www.microbeworld.org/know/wash.aspx> (accessed June 10, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "An Ounce of Prevention Keeps the Germs Away." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/op/gt;. (accessed June 10, 2007).

National Food Service Management Institute. "Wash Your Hands." <http://www.nfsmi.org/Information/handsindex.html>. (accessed June 10, 2007).

Brenda Wilmoth Lerner

Hantavirus

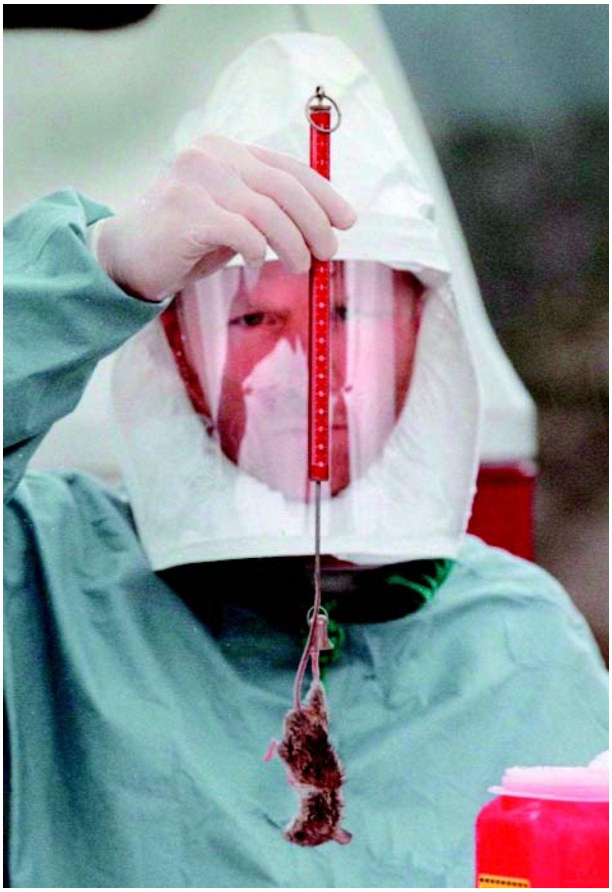
Introduction

During the 1950s, more than 6,000 United Nations military personnel serving in Korea were stricken by a mysterious illness characterized by high fever, kidney failure, and spontaneous bleeding. Few realize that this disease continues to claim victims in the region, with 418 cases reported in 2006 alone. Eventually a group of viruses was identified as the cause of this "Korean hemorrhagic fever" and [the group] was named Hantaan virus, after the Hantaan River, which flows through Gangwon and Gyeonggi Provinces.

Subsequently, similar illnesses of varying severity in Asia and Europe were found to be caused by a number of distinct viruses, and the group came to be known as the Hantaviruses. In 1993, a new illness was reported in the southwestern United States. Unlike the Korean disease, prominent features included rapidly progressive lung infection with high mortality (death rates). Despite the unique nature of the disease, a viral agent was discovered which had all of the common biological features of the older Hantavirus group. The new illness was therefore referred to as Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome (HPS). 396 cases were reported by 32 American states as of July 6, 2005, including 142 fatal cases. As in the Asian variety, a large number of additional Hantavirus species have since been identified in the United States, as well as Central and South America.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Regardless of differences in clinical presentation and geographic occurrence, all of the Hantaviruses are found in rodents. Man acquires the disease through inhalation of dried rodent excreta, or occasionally through ingestion of milk and other foods that had been contaminated by these animals. In fact, the ability of the virus to survive in dust and the contagious nature of infected material have suggested Hantaviruses as potential agents of biorerrorism.



A researcher from the University of New Mexico weighs a mouse caught in an trap during a study of the Hantavirus in 1996. *AP Images.*

Scope and Distribution

The following is a summary of the clinical features, distribution, and epidemiology (patterns, characteristics, and causes) of Hantaviruses that infect humans. Specific viruses (strains, or types) are arranged alphabetically.

Old World Hantaviruses

Clinical features Infection by the European and Asian Hantaviruses is characterized by sudden onset, with intense headache, backache, fever, and chills. Hemorrhage is manifested during the febrile phase as a flushing of the face or injection of the conjunctiva (membranes lining the eye) and mucous membranes. A petechial rash (tiny, red dots) may appear on the palate and axillary (underarm) skin folds. Extreme albuminuria (protein in the urine), typically appearing on the fourth day, is characteristic of severe hemorrhagic fever renal syndrome (HFRS).

As the febrile (with fever) stage ends, hypotension (low blood pressure) may develop and last for hours to days, accompanied by nausea and vomiting. One-third of deaths occur during this phase, related to vascular leakage (bleeding) and shock. Approximately 50% of deaths occur during the subsequent oliguric phase (when the kidneys produce very little urine). Patients who survive and progress to the diuretic phase show improved renal function, but may still die of shock or pulmonary (lung) complications. The final (convalescent) phase can last weeks to months.

Case-fatality rates (rates calculated to show the severity of disease; the number of deaths divided by number of cases expressed as a percentage) range from less than 0.1% for hemorrhagic fever renal syndrome (HFRS) caused by Puumala [PUU] virus to approximately 5% to 10% for HFRS caused by Hantaan (HTN) virus.

Epidemiology Dobrava/Belgrade virus causes severe hemorrhagic fever with renal (kidney) syndrome. The reservoirs (organisms that maintain the infective agent), *Apodemus flavicolis* (the yellow-necked mouse) and *Apodemus agrarius*, are found from England and Wales, through northwest Spain, France, southern Scandinavia, European Russia to the Urals, southern Italy, the Balkans, Syria, Lebanon, and Israel.

Hantaan virus causes epidemic hemorrhagic fever (Korean hemorrhagic fever and hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome). The reservoir, the striped field mouse (*Apodemus agrarius*), is found in Central Europe south to Thrace, the Caucasus and Tien Shan Mountains, the Amur River to East Xijiang and East Hunnan, West Sichuan, Fujian, and Taiwan.

Puumala virus causes nephropathia epidemica (a usually less severe form of hemorrhagic fever). The reservoir, the bank vole (*Clethrionomys glariolus*) is found in the West Palearctic from France and Scandinavia to Lake Baikal, south to northern Spain, northern Italy, the Balkans, western Turkey, northern Kazakhstan, the Altai and Sayan Mountains, Great Britain, and southwestern Ireland. The house mouse (*Mus musculus*) is implicated in Serbia, and *Clethrionomys rutilis* in western Russia. The muskrat (*Ondatra zibethicus*) has been implicated as a disease reservoir in Germany. Note that Puumala virus may remain infective in the environment for as long as 12 to 15 days.

Saaremaa virus has been associated with human disease in Estonia, and is closely related to Dobrava virus.

Seoul virus causes less severe hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome. The reservoir rat (*Rattus norvegicus*) is found worldwide. Wounds inflicted by other rats appear to be a major source for transmission among rats.

Thailand virus has been identified in humans and bandicoot rats (*Bandicota indica, B. savilei*) in Thailand.

Note: There are no proven cases of Hantaan or Seoul virus infections either from Europe or from western Russia (west of the Urals)—as of 2000, all claimed cases have turned out to be caused by Dobrava virus. Dobrava virus has been confirmed in the former Yugoslavia, Albania, Greece, Germany, Estonia and Russia. This is in contrast to the Balkan region, where Dobrova virus seems to be carried mainly by *Apodemus flavicollis.* In Estonia and Russia, the virus has only been found in *Apodemus agrarius.*

WORDS TO KNOW

CASE FATALITY RATE: The rate of patients suffering disease or injury that die as a result of that disease or injury during a specific period of time.

HEMORRHAGIC FEVER: A hemorrhagic fever is caused by viral infection and features a high fever and a high volume of (copious) bleeding. The bleeding is caused by the formation of tiny blood clots throughout the bloodstream. These blood clots—also called microthrombi—deplete platelets and fibrinogen in the bloodstream. When bleeding begins, the factors needed for the clotting of the blood are scarce. Thus, uncontrolled bleeding (hemorrhage) ensues.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome

Clinical features The typical illness is characterized by fever, chills, headache, and occasionally gastrointestinal symptoms. Five days after onset, patients develop dyspnea (difficult breathing), with rapid progression to pulmonary edema/ARDS (adult respiratory distress syndrome) within as little as 24 hours. Recently, cases of prodromic infection (having symptoms of oncoming disease) without severe pulmonary disease have been reported.

Epidemiology Andes virus is transmitted by the long-tailed pygmy rice rat (*Oligoryzomys longicaudatus*), found in the north central to southern Andes, approximately 50 degrees S latitude, in Chile, and Argentina (and possibly Uruguay).

Bermejo virus (reservoir *Oligoryzomys species*) has been associated with human infections in Bolivia.

Bayou virus is transmitted by the rice rat (*Oryzomys palustris*) in Louisiana and eastern Texas.

Black Creek Canal virus is transmitted by the cotton rat (*Sigmodon hispidus*), found in the eastern and southern United States from southern Nebraska to central Virginia, south to Southeastern Arizona and peninsular Florida; and from central to eastern Mexico through Central America and central Panama to northern Colombia and northern Venezuela.

Cano Delgadito virus (clinical significance unknown) is found in rodents in central Venezuela.

Central plata virus is associated with human infections in Uruguay, and is transmitted by the yellow pygmy rice rat (*Oligoryzomys flavescens*).

Choclo virus (reservoir *Oligoryzomys fulvescens*) is implicated in human infections in Panama. Calabazo virus (clinical significance unknown) has been identified in *Zygodontomys brevicauda* in Panama.

Convict Creek virus (similar, possibly identical to Sin Nombre virus) has been identified in California, and was implicated in a fatal case in Ontario, Canada.

Juquitiba virus, Ararquare virus and Castelos dos Sonhos virus have been implicated in human infections in Brazil; HU39694 (yet unnamed) in Argentina—reservoirs unknown.

Laguna negra virus has caused human disease in Argentina, Chile and Paraguay, and is transmitted by the vesper mouse (*Calomys laucha*). This rodent is found in northern Argentina and Uruguay, southeastern Bolivia, Chile, western Paraguay, and west-central Brazil.

Maporal virus (clinical significance unknown) has been identified in the fulvous pygmy rice rat (*Oligoryzomys fulvescens*) in western Venezuela.

Monongahela virus (similar, possibly identical to Sin Nombre virus) is found in the eastern United States and Canada, and carried by the white-footed mouse (*Peromyscus leucopus*) and possibly *P. maniculatus nubiterrae.*

New York-1 virus is transmitted by the white-footed mouse (*Peromyscus leucopus*), found in the Central and Eastern United States to Southern Ontario, Southern Alberta, Quebec and Nova Scotia; and Northern Durango and along the Caribbean coast of Mexico to the Isthmus of Tehuantepec and Yucatan Peninsula.

Oran virus (reservoir *Ol. Longicaudatus*), Lechiguanas virus (*reservoir Or. Flavescens*) and Andes virus (reservoir *Ol. Longicaudatus*) are found in Argentina.

Rio Mamore virus (reservoir *Neacomys spinosus*) has been associated with human infections in Peru.

Sin Nombre virus is transmitted by the deer mouse (*Peromyscus maniculatus*) in the southwestern United States. The reservoir is found from the Alaska panhandle across Northern Mexico, Canada, most of the continental United States, to southernmost Baja California and north central Oaxaca, Mexico. The mouse itself shows evidence of pneumonia. The virus has also been found in *Pe. boylii, Pe. truei, Reithrodontomys* spp., *Mus musculus* and *Tamias* spp.

■ Treatment and Prevention

Although the viruses in this group can be cultivated using standard techniques, viral culture is limited to a small number of institutions which meet strict standards of bio-safety. Diagnosis can also be established through testing for serum antibodies in specialized laboratories. Treatment is directed at support of renal, pulmonary and other systems affected by the viruses. The value of specific antiviral agents is not proven, but some authorities have suggested Ribavirin in the treatment of the Old Word Hantaviruses. A vaccine (Hantavax) has also been developed for the Old World variety.

■ Impacts and Issues

The Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome (HPS) was first identified as such in May 1993, in the so-called “Four Corners” region of the United States, where the states of New Mexico, Utah, Arizona, and Colorado meet. Initially, it was unclear what was able to quickly kill healthy adults in this region. Virologists from the U.S. Center of Disease Control (CDC) used techniques that allow an analysis of a virus at the molecular level, to link the pulmonary illness to a previously unknown type of hantavirus, which was later named *Sin Nombre* (Spanish for without name).

In addition to molecular and clinical studies, scientists are studying HPS through the study of rodent populations (which often requires the trapping and collection of various mice species), weather patterns, and climate change,

Research in the southwestern United States has linked the years having higher levels of precipitation with a larger population of rodents, as the moisture leads to a greater supply of food for rodents, as well as higher vegetation growth, which provides ample habitat and protection for the rodents. Associated with the weather phenomenon El Niño in 1991 and 1993, rainfall levels increased in the southwestern United States. The population density of deer mice in New Mexico then increased from one deer mouse per hectare (2.47 acres) to twenty to thirty per hectare during that time period. It is thought that this large population of mice led to the first identified outbreak of HPS in May 1993.

Although rare, HPS has since been found throughout the United States. As of May 2007, rodent control remains the primary defense against the hantavirus.

SEE ALSO *Emerging Infectious Diseases; Hemorrhagic Fevers.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Harper, David R., and Andrea S. Meyer. *Of Mice, Men, and Microbes: Hantavirus.* Burlington, MA: Academic Press, 1999.

Leuenroth, Stephanie J. *Hantavirus Pulmonary Syndrome (Deadly Diseases and Epidemics).* New York: Chelsea House, 2006.

Periodicals

Kreeger, Karen Young "Stalking the Deadly Hantavirus: A Study in Teamwork." *The Scientist.* 8 (July 1994): 1–4.

Web sites

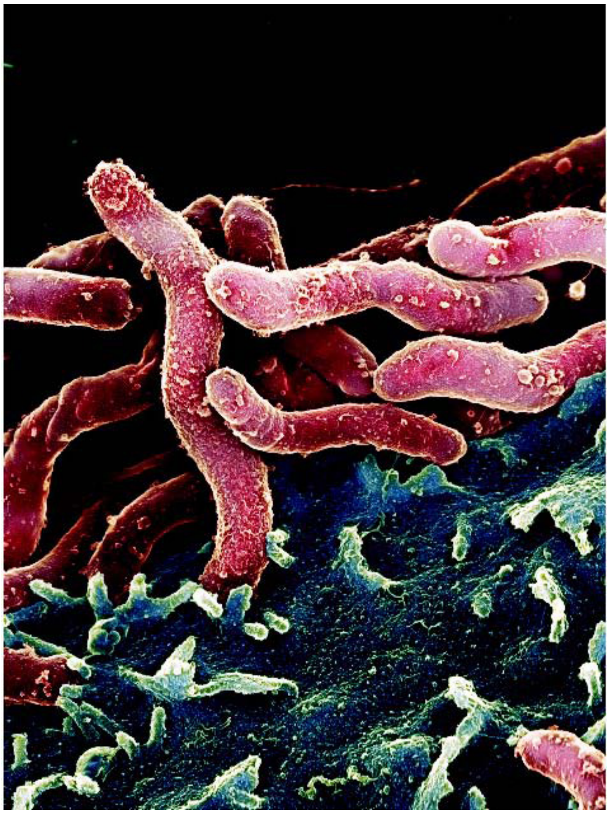
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "All About Hantaviruses." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/diseases/hanta/hps/index.htmgt; (accessed May 10, 2007).

Stephen A. Berger

Helicobacter pylori

Introduction

Helicobacter pylori are bacteria that live in the lining of the stomach and sometimes cause stomach inflammation and ulcers. The discovery of *H. pylori* changed scientists' thinking about the nature of stomach ulcers, and led to the broader study of bacteria and other pathogens (infectious agents) as possible contributors to other well-known diseases, including heart disease and some types of cancer.



A colored scanning electron micrograph (SEM) shows *Helicobacter pylori bacteria* (red) on the surface of a human stomach. SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.

History and Scientific Foundations

In 1975, J. Robin Warren of Australia discovered the presence of helical (spiral-shaped) bacteria in the antrum, the section of the stomach that empties into the duodenum (the top part of the upper intestine) through the pyloric valve. At that time, Warren observed that the bacteria were present in 50% persons who had stomach biopsies, and that infected persons invariably showed signs of stomach inflammation. Later, he named the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori* after working with fellow Australian Barry J. Marshall to cultivate the species from biopsied patients.

The two scientists hypothesized that an *H. pylori* infection played a part in stomach disorders, including gastritis and peptic ulcers. Many of their peers in the medical community considered this hypothesis to be preposterous, since the theory that ulcers were caused by lifestyle and psychological stress was widely accepted by both the scientific community and the general public. Robin observed that no one else noticed the bacterium in affected patients before, and that for some time after its discovery, his research team was virtually alone in investigating *H. pylori*.

Perhaps the greatest barrier to acceptance of such a simple explanation as a bacterial infection was the simplicity of the potential cure, a course of antibiotics and acid secretion inhibitors for a serious chronic and often disabling condition. The idea of stress and lifestyle as the cause of stomach ulcers was so pervasive and impervious to new evidence that Marshall undertook drastic action, putting himself at risk to demonstrate the role of *H. pylori* in disease. He allowed colleagues to obtain a sample of his stomach tissue in a biopsy to show that he was free of infection, then infected himself with the bacterium and subsequently, contracted gastritis. This act of personal commitment and courage had a decisive impact on the medical profession, which began to accept his work, although the *H. pylori* hypothesis as a major cause of peptic ulcers did not gain worldwide acceptance until 1991.

Applications and Research

Subsequent studies have shown that about half of all humans have chronic *H. pylori* infection, and clinical experience confirms that this infection and the consequent destruction of the stomach lining and predisposition for stomach cancer can be halted by antibiotic treatment. Thus, Warren and Marshall brought about a paradigm shift, or a fundamental change in thinking regarding the relative importance of infectious agents as opposed to psychosocial factors in the cause and origin of gastric disease. This paradigm shift in turn led to a marked improvement in the health and quality of life for the large population stomach ulcer sufferers around the world, and led to research about the possible role of infectious agents in other diseases. For example, scientists are currently studying the potential role of infectious agents in inflammation of the walls of blood vessels that could relate to heart disease and strokes.

Thus, chronic gastritis is a disorder influenced by bacterial and the genetic predispositions of the human host. A 2007 study in which gastric biopsies were evaluated showed that the presence of *H. pylori* is strongly associated with both acute and chronic inflammation. The presence of neutrophils (the most common white blood cell involved in immune system function and which attacks infected tissue with inflammatory biochemicals, called cytokines) on biopsy is predictive of the presence of *H. pylori* as well as the extent of inflamed tissue. Long-term inflammation leads to atrophy (wasting, or decreasing size) of the stomach lining. This persistent inflammation appears to be due either to a weakness in the immune system in which the predisposed individual is unable to eliminate the bacterium, or a physiological weakness in the structure of the stomach lining that fosters the growth of *H. pylori* colonies (populations).

Impacts and Issues

As a persistent colonizer of the human stomach, *Helicobacter pylori* is now known to be involved in the development of gastric cancer as well as extra-intestinal diseases. Public awareness of its contribution in the development of gastric cancer is less than 15 years old. Current antibiotic therapies against *H. pylori* have been limited by antibiotic resistance and recurrence of infection, probably due to the predisposing factors in susceptible individuals discussed above. Consequently, promising vaccine development programs have been mounted as an effective preventive measure. So far, however, developmental vaccines have failed the transition from animal models to human trials. *H. pylori* is implicated not only in gastric cancer, but also childhood lymphomas. The latter type of cancer probably could arise from the proliferation of lymphocytes in the stomach lining in the inflammatory response to chronic infection mentioned earlier. Such proliferation could raise the probability of a lymphocyte replication error that results in cancer.

WORDS TO KNOW

ATROPHY: Decreasing in size or wasting away of a body part or tissue.

CHRONIC INFECTION: Chronic infections persist for prolonged periods of time—months an even years—in the host. This lengthy persistence is due to a number of factors including masking of the bacteria from the immune system, invasion of host cells, and the establishment of an infection that is resistance to antibacterial agents.

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

Paradoxically, scientists have found an inverse association between *Helicobacter pylori* infection and esophageal cancer. This inverse relationship has been attributed to reduced stomach acidity that can damage the esophagus because of the atrophy of the gastric lining.

Epidemiologists might wonder about genetic or environmental factors that differentiate the 50% of the population chronically infected with the bacterium from the 50% that show no infection. Chronic infection with *Helicobacter pylori* illustrates the damage that can occur when the genetic variability of individuals results favorable conditions for a pathogen (disease-causing organism) that is harmless to a large proportion of the human population. The inability of the immune system and even antibiotic treatment to conclusively end the infection in these individuals can result in severe tissue damage and possibly, cancer. Perhaps the larger lesson to be taken from *H. pylori* infection is that humans and microbes are in a constant struggle to adapt to one another, and some of the resulting infections resemble a chronic and desultory war that eventually wears down the host. The work of Marshall and Warren is all the more important for having provided the basis for relieving a significant amount of the misery caused by this stubborn microbial foe. Marshall and Warren were awarded the Nobel Prize for the discovery of the role of *Helicobacter pylori* infection in the development of stomach ulcers in 2005.

See Also *Cancer and Infectious Disease; Exposed: Scientists Who Risked Disease for Discovery.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

Helicobacter Foundation. "*H. pylori*." <http://www.helico.com/h_general.html> (accessed May 30, 2007).

Nobelprize.org. "The Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine 2005." Press Release, October 3, 2005. <http://nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/medicine/laureatgt; (accessed June 7, 2007).

Kenneth T. LaPensee

Helminth Disease

Introduction

Helminth diseases are caused by parasitic worms known as helminths. These worms are categorized into three main categories: roundworms, tapeworms, and flukes. There are around 300 identified helminths that infect humans. Transmission of helminths typically involves direct contact with the parasite, or ingestion of the parasite via contaminated food or water. In some cases, the parasites can pass through human skin from infected water or soil.

Symptoms range depending on the type of helminth causing the disease. There may be general symptoms, or more specific symptoms as certain regions of the body are affected. Furthermore, while full recovery is possible from some infections, death or debilitating disabilities occurs with other infections. Treatment, when possible, usually involves administration of anti-inflammatory drugs alone or in combination with anti-helminth drugs that kill the existing parasites in various stages of their development.

Helminths cause human disease worldwide, although climate conditions limit many species of helminths to tropical or semi-tropical areas. However, with changes in climate, certain infections are becoming widespread. Developing or poverty-stricken countries are heavily affected with helminth diseases, a problem compounded by lack of education, funding, and additional problems in these countries such as HIV infection, lagging infrastructure, political instability, and war.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Helminths are parasitic worms, that is, they infect a host and survive by feeding off the host's nutrients, a process that usually harms the host. The adverse effects of the helminth lead to the development of disease within the host. There are roughly 300 recognized helminths that infect humans. Helminths are thought to have been present in humans as far back as ancient Egyptian times, and gradually, specific disease-causing species were identified over the centuries. The study of helminths increased in the twentieth century, which caused the number of recognized helminths to increase from 28 to over 300.

Helminths are separated into three main categories based on morphology (structure) and mode of transmission. These categories are roundworms or nematodes, tapeworms or cestodes, and flukes or trematodes.

Most roundworms hatch and live in the intestines. The eggs of roundworms enter the body of the host and travel towards the intestines, where they hatch. Depending on their subtype, they remain in the intestine or migrate to other regions of the body. Transmission of roundworms occurs when contaminated material enters the body. This could be via ingestion of contaminated food or water, entry of eggs via the anal or genital tracts, or ingestion of, or contact with, contaminated soil. Symptoms of roundworm infection vary depending on the type of worm. Some cause general symptoms such as abdominal pain, diarrhea, fatigue, itching, and fever, while others can be more specific and cause damage to certain regions of the body.

Tapeworms generally live in the intestines. Their eggs are normally ingested when meat containing the parasites is undercooked or raw. While symptoms may not occur, some patients will experience abdominal pain, fatigue, and diarrhea.

Flukes are a group of helminths that live in various regions of the body including the spleen, liver, lungs, and intestines. The lifecycle of these worms involves freshwater snails as intermediate hosts. Following the release of larval forms of the worm from the snail into fresh water, the larval worms can enter humans via contact with the skin. Most cases of fluke infection do not cause initial symptoms, and the parasites pass out of the body. However, reinfection can occur. If it occurs continuously over time, this can cause damage to body organs. In symptomatic cases, infection usually results in a rash, itching, muscle aches, coughing, chills, and fever. Severe infections involve flukes entering the liver, lung, or brain and spinal cord.

WORDS TO KNOW

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

HYGIENE: Hygiene refers to the health practices that minimize the spread of infectious microorganisms between people or between other living things and people. Inanimate objects and surfaces such as contaminated cutlery or a cutting board may be a secondary part of this process.

MORPHOLOGY: The study of form and structure of animals and plants. The outward physical form possessed by an organism.

SANITATION: Sanitation is the use of hygienic recycling and disposal measures that prevent disease and promote health through sewage disposal, solid waste disposal, waste material recycling, and food processing and preparation.

Scope and Distribution

Helminth diseases occur worldwide. However, different types of infections are present in different regions. One factor that influences where an infection can occur is climate. Some helminths survive only in tropical climates, while others require temperate conditions.

Soil-transmitted helminths and schistosomes, a type of trematode, are the cause of most of the world's helminth disease burden. Regions that are poverty-stricken, in the midst of conflict, or have low sanitation standards have a high prevalence of infection. Poverty-stricken countries in the developing world, located in Africa, China, East Asia, and the Americas, account for most of the world's helminth infections.

However, some infections of helminths are common in developed countries. For example, infection by the pinworm, a nematode that causes itching, is common in temperate areas such as Western Europe and North America. Large infection rates are recorded for these regions. Cambridge University reports infection in 30% to 80% of Caucasian children in the United States, Canada, and Europe. Despite its large prevalence in the temperate zone, this infection is rare in the tropics.

Treatment and Prevention

As there are a large variety of helminths that cause disease in humans, there is no specific treatment. However, most infections can be treated via the use of vermifuges, which are anti-worm drugs that effectively kill parasitic worms. In addition, while some helminth infections can be cured within a short period of time, others may take months or years to heal, and in some cases, patients are left with debilitating disabilities due to organ and limb damage.

There are several ways to prevent infection from helminths. First, avoiding contact with the parasites ensures infection does not occur. Contact can be prevented by frequent washing of hands, maintaining a clean bathroom and kitchen, and avoiding contact with infected animals. Furthermore, thorough cooking of food, particularly pork and beef that may potentially carry parasites, prevents ingestion of parasites. Chlorinating, filtering, or boiling drinking water prevents parasites being ingested while drinking. To avoid parasite uptake while bathing or swimming in infected water, a problem particularly for fluke parasites, water can be boiled prior to bathing, or avoided completely.

Another way to prevent infection is to lower the prevalence of helminths within a community. This is achieved through regular deworming, or administration of anti-worm treatments to infected people. This can effectively reduce the long-term effects of the parasites on infected persons, as well as reduce the prevalence of the parasite within a community.

In order to effectively implement prevention methods in communities affected by helminth infestations, communities can be educated about hygiene, sanitation, and proper food preparation. Together with helminth treatments, these methods help to reduce the prevalence and effects of helminths on communities.

Impacts and Issues

Parasitic infections are a worldwide issue as millions of people become infected by helminths every year. Although knowledge about helminths is increasing, the prevalence of infections is also increasing rather than declining. There are a number of reasons for this occurrence.

The Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) and AIDS causes decreased immunity in infected people, and makes them more susceptible to infection by emerging parasites that are taking advantage of weakened immune systems. Furthermore, existing helminth infections also take advantage of people with low immunity and have increased as a result. This problem compounds when countries with a high prevalence of HIV infection also have a high prevalence of helminth infection.

Helminth invasion into new areas has also become a major contributor to global increases in infection. This is initiated by changes in the climate that make previously helminth-free regions suitable for helminths to survive and reproduce. In addition, war and its resulting social upheaval results in lower standards of sanitation and nutrition that has lead to re-emergence of helminth infections in some populations. Helminth resistance to anti-worm drugs has also caused issues in controlling and treating infections.

The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that nearly one billion people worldwide do not have access to clean drinking water. Water polluted by sewage, refuse, and agricultural byproducts (such as manure) spreads some helminths. Several international organizations help communities build wells, water purification stations, and sewage collection systems.

Several world leaders serve as advocates for international, cooperative anti-helminth efforts, including former United States President Jimmy Carter (1924–), Amadou Toumani Touré (1948–) of Mali, and Yakubu Gowon (1934–) former Nigerian head of state. The Carter Center's International Task Force for Disease Eradication, with support from the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, sponsors anti-helminth programs with the aim of eradicating dracunculiasis (Guinea worm disease) and lymphatic filariasis across the globe, eradicating onchocerciasis (river blindness) in the Americas, and controlling schistosomiasis.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Bilharzia (Schistosomiasis); Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Dracunculiasis; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Handwashing; HIV; Hookworm (Ancylostoma) Infection; Liver Fluke Infections; Lung Fluke (Paragonimus) Infection; Opportunistic Infection; Pinworm (Enterobius vermicularis) Infection; River Blindness (Onchocerciasis); Roundworm (Ascariasis) infection; Sanitation; Tapeworm Infections; War and Infectious Disease; Water-borne Disease.*

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

Helminth diseases are most likely to strike children, especially in the developing world, causing malnutrition and illness. Malnutrition during childhood has life-long effects on an estimated 182 million children worldwide, from increased rates of illness and stagnated development, to disability and premature death. Thus, the World Health Organization (WHO), in partnership with UNICEF, focuses its anti-helminth efforts on children and schools. In areas where helminths thrive in local water or soil, efforts to curb helminth diseases include food safety, hygiene, and sanitation education, as well at the widespread administration of anti-helminth drugs. Such comprehensive public health measures have reduced incidence of helminth diseases in limited parts of Indonesia by as much as 50%.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Crompton, D.W.T., A. Montresor, and M.C. Nesheim. *Controlling Disease Due to Helminth Infections.* Geneva: World Health Organization, 2004.

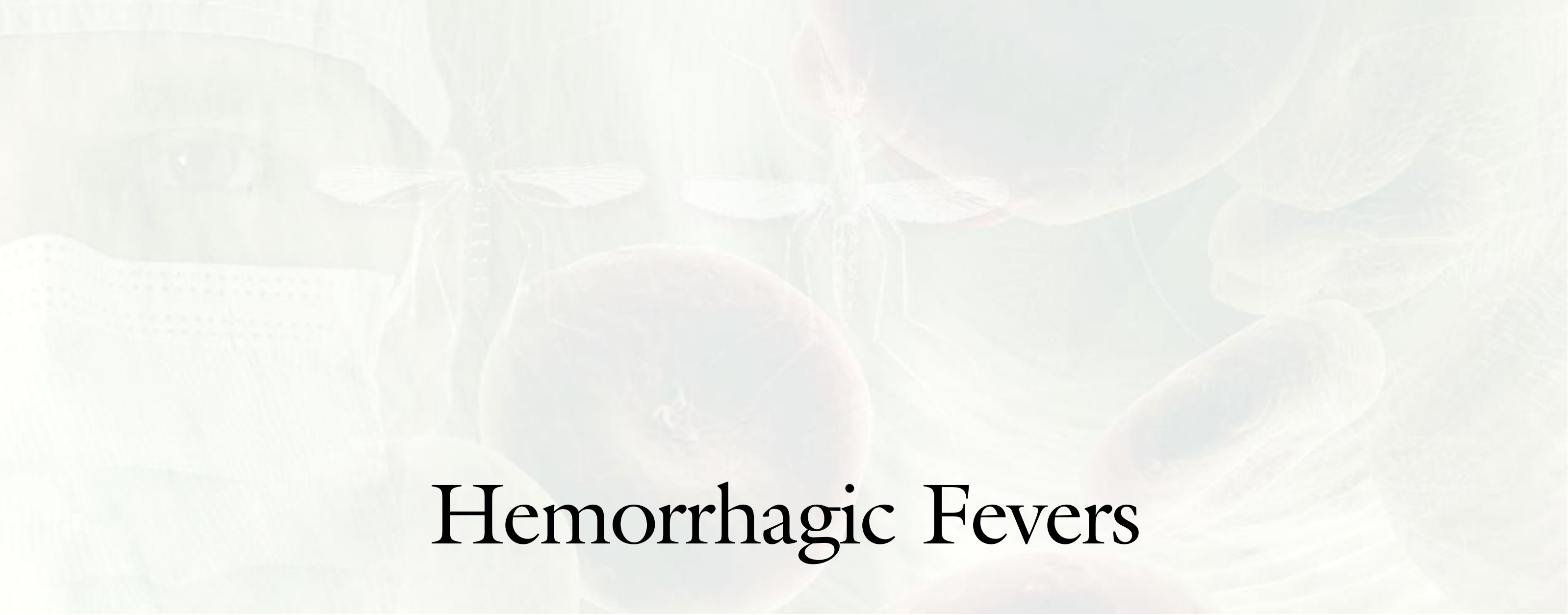
Mims, C., H. Dockrell, R. Goering, I. Roitt, D. Wakelin, and M. Zuckerman. *Medical Microbiology.* St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2004.

Periodicals

Cox, F.E.G. "History of Human Parasitology." *Clinical Microbiology Reviews.* vol. 15, no. 4 (2002): 595–612.

Web Sites

Cambridge University. "Helminth Infections of Man." Oct. 5, 1998 <http://www.path.cam.ac.uk/~schisto/General_Parasitology/Hm.helminths.html> (accessed Feb. 23, 2007).



Hemorrhagic Fevers

Introduction

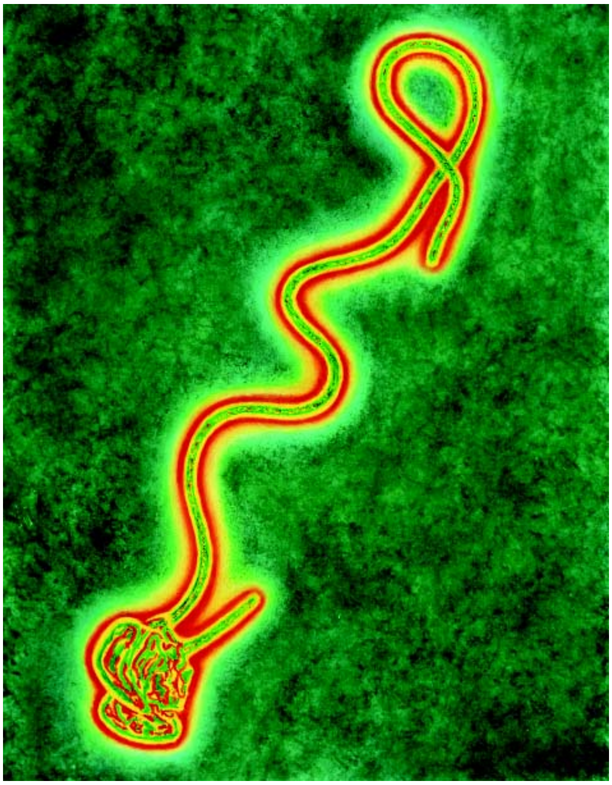
Hemorrhagic diseases are caused by infection with certain viruses and, rarely, bacteria. Hemorrhage is severe and uncontrolled bleeding. As implied by their name, a central feature of hemorrhagic fevers is this uncontrolled bleeding, which is caused by the destruction of cells inside the body as the virus makes new copies of itself.

Hemorrhagic fevers are terrifying to those affected, to those attempting to care for the sick, and to those who read about or watch images of an outbreak. Hemorrhagic infections cause symptoms that appear and progress swiftly. Because outbreaks of hemorrhagic fevers appear and sweep through a population very rapidly before disappearing, very little is known of the details of the various viral infections.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Hemorrhagic diseases are mainly caused by viruses. They are also known collectively as viral hemorrhagic fevers. Bacterial hemorrhagic infections are rare, but one example of such a disease is scrub typhus.

Viral hemorrhagic fevers are caused by viruses in four groups—arenaviruses, filoviruses, bunyaviruses, and the flaviviruses. Arenaviruses are a family of RNA viruses (their genetic material is not composed of DNA, only RNA) that are associated with human diseases transmitted by rodents. They cause a number of hemorrhagic fevers, including Lassa fever (caused by the Lassa virus), Argentine hemorrhagic fever (caused by the Junin virus), Bolivian hemorrhagic fever (caused by the Machupo virus), Venezuelan hemorrhagic fever (caused by the Guananto virus), and Brazilian hemorrhagic fever (caused by Sabia).



This colored transmission electron micrograph (TEM) shows a single Ebola virus, the cause of Ebola hemorrhagic fever (Ebola HF). Although the virus appears similar to the Marburg virus that causes green monkey disease, different antibodies are used for treatment. Both viruses cause fever, skin rash, and hemorrhaging. *CAMR/A. Barry Dowsett/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

The first arenavirus was isolated in 1933 during an investigation into an outbreak of St. Louis encephalitis. The virus was found not to be the cause of the outbreak, but the severity of its health threat was revealed. The limited studies that have been done in the intervening decades (studies are limited because of the great danger in working with the viruses) have shown that arenaviruses are typically transmitted to humans via animals such as rodents. These viruses are characterized as zoonotic, which

The deadly Ebola virus killed four Italian nuns who worked at the Kikwit hospital in Zaire (now the Democratic Republic of Congo) in 1995. *AP Images.*

means that they reside in another host (a wild or domesticated animal) but are capable of causing disease when transmitted to humans.

Bunyaviruses are a family of RNA viruses that are associated with rodent- or insect-borne diseases in humans. Viruses in this family are known to cause Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, Rift Valley fever, and Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome. Congo-Crimean fever, a disease known for many years in eastern Europe and central Asia, is caused by a virus that is transmitted to humans and a variety of domestic and wild animals by ticks. Humans can become infected when they come into close contact with infected cattle, and slaughterhouses have been involved in disease outbreaks. Rift Valley fever is generally found in areas of eastern and southern Africa where cattle and sheep are raised. The virus responsible for the disease primarily affects livestock, but humans can also contract the disease when they are bitten by mosquitoes infected with the virus or when they come into contract with the blood or body parts of infected animals. Hantavirus disease is transmitted to humans mainly through the inhalation of aerosolized virus particles from dried mouse feces. Investigation of a disease outbreak that occurred in the United States in 1993 determined that a virus called the Sin Nombre virus (a type of hantavirus) was a cause. Another virus called that Hantaan virus causes Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome. This virus was isolated during an investigation of a disease outbreak that occurred in the 1950s near the Hantan River in Korea.

Filoviruses cause severe hemorrhagic diseases in humans and other primates, including Ebola hemorrhagic fever and Marburg hemorrhagic fever. Flaviviruses cause a wide range of human diseases, including tick-borne encephalitis, yellow fever, Dengue hemorrhagic fever, Kyasanur Forest disease, and Omsk hemorrhagic fever. Depending on the virus, the disease may be transmitted to humans via rodents, ticks, and mosquitoes. In some cases, such as Ebola, the host is still not known. Bats are a suspected natural reservoir of the virus that causes Ebola, but the virus has yet to be isolated from these animals.

The various viral hemorrhagic viruses differ in structure. For example, arenaviruses are spherical, while filoviruses, such as the Marburg virus, can be U-shaped, O-shaped, or even shaped like the number 6. Although these hemorrhagic viruses differ, they do share some common features. For example, they all contain ribonucleic acid (RNA) as their genetic material. In addition, humans are not their normal host. While the viruses are able to live without severely affecting natural hosts, such as cattle, the infection caused in humans is severe. This is the primary reason that human outbreaks of hemorrhagic fever disappear so rapidly. The high death rate makes it impossible for the virus to persist in a human population for very long once an outbreak has been recognized and treatment measures, such as isolation of those who are infected, is initiated.

Most hemorrhagic viruses share another feature in common. Once a human is infected he or she can then transfer the virus to other people (person-to-person transmission), often via contaminated body fluids. Caregivers can become infected in this way. This transmission can occur in a hospital or clinic, and such hospital-acquired infections are called nosocomial infections.

While the various viral hemorrhagic fevers have their own distinct symptoms, they do share some symptoms and a pattern of symptoms over time. The diseases typically begin a sudden fever, a general feeling of fatigue, myalgia, dizziness, pain and stiffness in the neck and back, diarrhea, and severe headache (which can be so bad that a person becomes nauseated and vomits, and becomes very sensitive to light). Some people do recover, and recovery can be as rapid as the onset of the disease. However, others deteriorate further, and begin to hemorrhage from the mouth, eyes, and ears. This bleeding is only the external manifestation of the massive bleeding that is occurring inside the body, as various organs become infected. In the final stages of a hemorrhagic fever, organs fail and the nervous system breaks down, leading to coma, seizures, and death.

■ Scope and Distribution

The filoviruses that cause Marburg hemorrhagic fever and Ebola are found in various regions of the Africa continent. Three of the four known species of Ebola are named for the regions in which they were first discovered—Ivory Coast, Sudan, and Zaire.

HAPPY HYDERABAD
BEWARE OF THE BITE
MCH
DENGUE IS CAUSED BY MOSQUITOES.
KEEP YOUR SURROUNDINGS CLEAN &
STAY SAFE!

An Indian woman carries vegetables on her head as she passes by a sign warning people about the risk of contracting dengue fever. The sign is part of an awareness campaign launched by the Municipal Corporation of Hyderabad in India's southern state of Andhra Pradesh in 2006. *Noah Seelam/AFP/Getty Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOSAFETY LEVEL FOUR LABORATORY: A specially equipped, secured laboratory where scientists study the most dangerous known microbes. These labs are designed to contain infectious agents and disease-causing microbes, prevent their dissemination, and protect researchers from exposure.

HEMORRHAGE: Very severe, massive bleeding which is difficult to control.

MYALGIA: Muscular aches and pain.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

The occurrence of viral hemorrhagic fevers in areas as widely separated as Korea, Arizona, and Africa highlight the global distribution of the virus that cause hemorrhagic fevers. A particular virus may be more localized; for example, the viruses that cause Ebola appear to be localized to a few regions in Africa. However, because so little is still known about viral hemorrhagic fevers, it is possible that the true distribution of the various viruses is not yet known.

Treatment and Prevention

Hemorrhagic diseases are difficult to treat because outbreaks occur quickly, often in remote regions of the world. The speed and ferocity of the infection often means that patients are near death by the time they are seen by a health care provider. Vaccines are available only for yellow fever and Argentine hemorrhagic fever. For the remaining hemorrhagic fevers, the best prevention is to avoid contact with animals that are known to be hosts of the particular virus. However, in many cases, a population has little knowledge of the infections and their exposure risks, making prevention virtually impossible. One exception is hantavirus pulmonary syndrome in the United States. This disease has been well publicized and many people are aware that it is spread by rodents. When insects are involved in the transmission of a virus, spraying programs that kill insect populations, especially during their breeding season, can be helpful.

When combating an outbreak, isolating infected patients from other patients can help reduce the spread of the disease. In addition, all protective clothing and soiled material used in patient treatment should be stored in a secure container until it can be destroyed (usually by incineration).

Impacts and Issues

While relatively little is known about viral hemorrhagic fevers, they may have a serious impact on life in the areas of the world where they occur. For example, it is estimated that 100,000–300,000 Lassa fever infections occur annually in regions of West Africa where that virus is most prevalent, and about 5,000 of those infected die of the disease. But, since the rodent species that carries the virus is found much more widely, the actual range of Lassa fever may be much greater. In regions where the virus is found, about 15% of people admitted to hospital have Lassa fever; many more people never make it to a hospital, so the actual impact of the disease is difficult to determine.

As of 2007, much less is known about hemorrhagic fevers than remains to be discovered. One reason for this lack of knowledge is that the infections are very difficult to study during an outbreak. Health care providers faced with an outbreak struggle to mount a quick and efficient response that can save lives. Sometimes, cultural norms and taboos in remote regions hinder efforts to contain outbreaks and study their cause. For instance, during the 2005 Ebola outbreak in the Cuvette Ouest region of the Republic of Congo, medical workers from United Nations aid agencies arrived at the scene wearing white protective biohazard suits and were met with skepticism and hostility, as the color white is associated with evil in the remote village where the outbreak first occurred.

Viral hemorrhagic fevers can only be studied in a few specialized laboratories known as biosafety level four (BSL-4) laboratories. These laboratories are designed with safety and containment features that make it safe for researchers to work with the viruses and that prevent escape of the viruses outside of the lab. In BSL-4 laboratories, hemorrhagic fevers are studied in a high-containment environment, where incoming and outgoing airflow is controlled and where researchers wear protective clothing that includes one-piece positive pressure suits with separate ventilation systems. Protocols for studying the viruses that cause hemorrhagic fevers include restricted access to the laboratory, working under Class III biological safety cabinets, and decontamination following work with the virus. Currently, there are about 30 BSL-4 laboratories in the world, 10 of which are in the United States.

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC QUESTIONS

Ebola virus and Marburg virus are the two known members of the filovirus family that cause hemorrhagic fevers. Ebola viruses were first isolated from humans during concurrent outbreaks of VHF in northern Zaire and southern Sudan in 1976. An earlier outbreak of VHF caused by Marburg virus occurred in Marburg, Germany, in 1967 when laboratory workers were exposed to infected tissue from monkeys imported from Uganda. Two subtypes of Ebola virus—Ebola-Sudan and Ebola-Zaire—previously have been associated with disease in humans. In 1994, a single case of infection from a newly described Ebola virus occurred in a person in Cote d'Ivoire. In 1989, an outbreak among monkeys imported into the United States from the Philippines was caused by another Ebola virus but was not associated with human disease.

Initial clinical manifestations of Ebola hemorrhagic fever include fever, headache, chills, myalgia (muscle aches throughout the body), and malaise; subsequent manifestations include severe abdominal pain, vomiting, and diarrhea. In reported outbreaks, fifty percent to ninety percent of cases have been fatal.

The natural reservoirs for these viruses are not known. Although nonhuman primates were involved in the 1967 Marburg outbreak, the 1989 U.S. outbreak, and the 1994 Côte d'Ivoire case, their role as virus reservoirs is unknown. Transmission of the virus to secondary cases occurs through close personal contact with infectious blood or other body fluids or tissue. In previous outbreaks, secondary cases occurred among persons who provided medical care for patients; secondary cases also occurred among patients exposed to reused needles. Although aerosol spread has not been documented among humans, this mode of transmission has been demonstrated among nonhuman primates. Based on this information, the high fatality rate, and lack of specific treatment or a vaccine, work with this virus in the laboratory setting requires biosafety level four containment.

See Also *Ebola; Marburg Hemorrhagic Fever.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

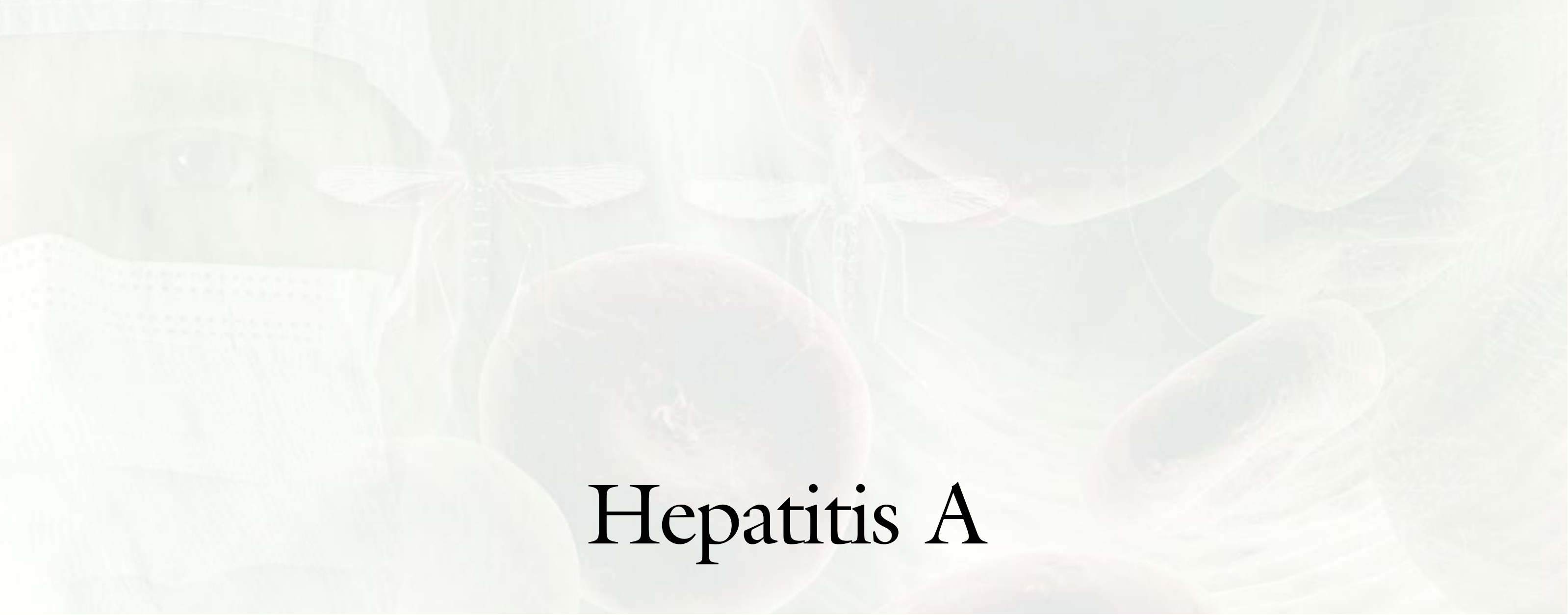
Books

Drexler, Madeline. *Secret Agents: The Menace of Emerging Infections.* New York: Penguin, 2003.

Powell, Michael, and Oliver Fischer. *101 Diseases You Don't Want to Get.* New York: Thunder's Mouth Press, 2005.

Zimmerman, Barry E., and David J. Zimmerman. *Killer Germs.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 2002.

Brian Hoyle



Hepatitis A

Introduction

Hepatitis is an inflammation of the liver that can be caused by exposure to chemicals including alcohol, or by any one of six hepatitis viruses. Hepatitis A infection is caused by the Hepatitis A virus (HAV), and was formerly known as infectious hepatitis. HAV was discovered in the early 1970s in the stool of a patient incubating the disease. Hepatitis A is an acute disease, with symptoms including nausea, malaise, diarrhea and enlarged liver. Some infected people, particularly children, have no symptoms. Unlike other forms of hepatitis, it does not progress to chronic disease, which damages the liver.

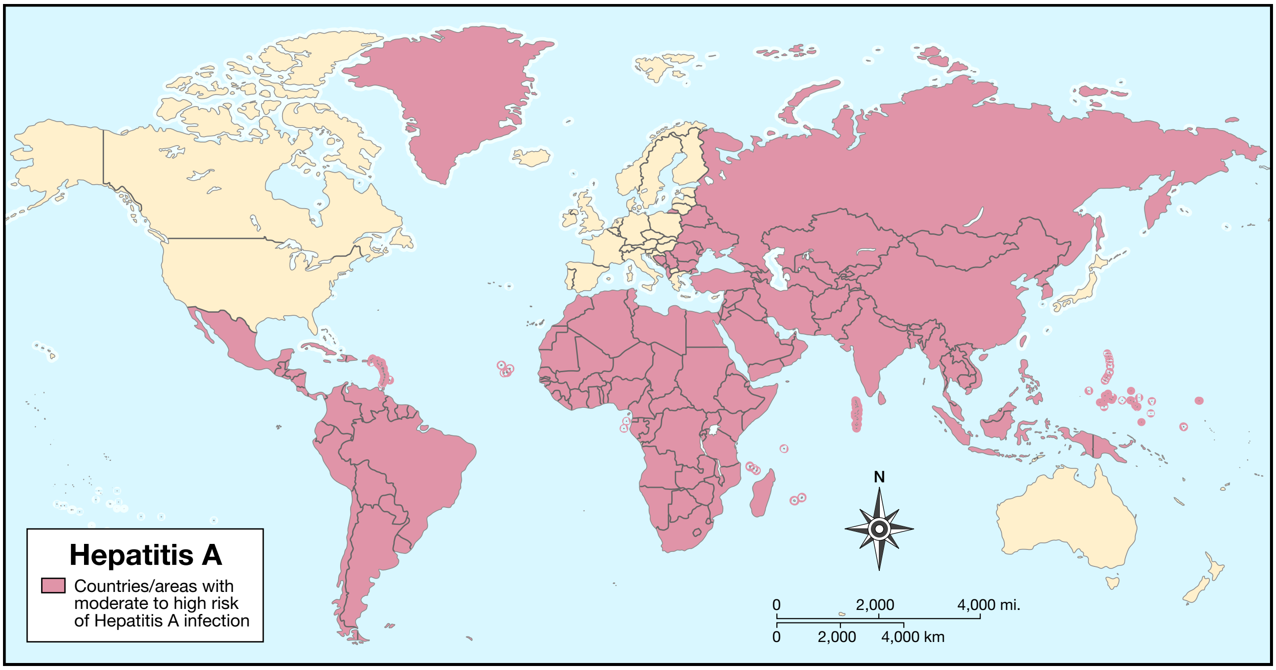
Hepatitis A has been on the decline in developed countries since the 1970s, although epidemics still occur, especially under conditions of overcrowding and poor hygiene. It is still a risk to travelers, as HAV can be spread through seafood, fruit, and vegetables that have been in contact with contaminated water. Those at risk can be protected through vaccination against HAV.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Hepatitis A is a single-stranded RNA virus (that is, its genetic material is made of RNA, not DNA), unrelated to the other hepatitis viruses. During its average incubation time of 28 days, it first infects the intestines and then passes through the blood into the liver. The onset of symptoms including nausea, loss of appetite, diarrhea and fever, is acute. The person with hepatitis A may have an enlarged liver with pain and tenderness in the upper

		Hepatitis A				
		2005	**2004**	**2003**	**2002**	**2001**
Number of Acute Clinical Cases Reported		4,488	5,683	7,653	8,795	10,616
Estimated Number of Acute Clinical Cases		19,000	24,000	33,000	38,000	45,000
Estimated Number of New Infections	**Current**	42,000	56,000	61,000	73,000	93,000
	Historical			**mean**	**min**	**max**
	1990-1999			301,000	181,000	373,000
	1980-1989			254,000	221,000	380,000
Number of Persons with Chronic Infection		no chronic infection				
Estimated Annual Number of Chronic Liver Disease Deaths		no chronic infection				
Percent Ever Infected		31.3%				

Table showing the number of hepatitis A cases from 2001 to 2005. *Data courtesy of Centers for Disease Control.*


Hepatitis A
Countries/areas with moderate to high risk of Hepatitis A infection
N
0 2,000 4,000 mi.
0 2,000 4,000 km

Map showing outbreaks of hepatitis A in 2003. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

right abdomen. Many go on to develop jaundice, a yellowing of the skin and eyes resulting from liver inflammation. The urine may be dark and stools a pale clay color.

The vast majority of cases of hepatitis A clear up within a week or so, although 15% are prolonged and relapsing over a period of months. The disease does not, however, become chronic like hepatitis B and hepatitis C. Only 0.3% of the cases reported to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) prove fatal, although the mortality rate rises to nearly two percent in those over 50 years of age. Hepatitis A is transmitted through the fecal-oral route, commonly through eating seafood, raw fruit, or vegetables that have come into contact with water contaminated with infected sewage.

Scope and Distribution

Adults are more likely than children to develop symptoms of hepatitis A. Household and sexual partners of those with hepatitis A are at elevated risk of contracting the disease, as are men who have sex with men, and both injecting and non-injecting drug users. Epidemic of hepatitis A are fairly common in institutions such as prisons and nursing homes, and among those of low socioeconomic status living in overcrowded conditions.

According to CDC data, there were 4,488 cases of acute hepatitis A in the USA in 2005. Computer modeling of this data suggests the true number of new infections that year was about 42,000 (many of which would have been asymptomatic). This represents the lowest figure since 2001, which is a reflection of the decline in hepatitis A in developed countries, although epidemics may still occur where hygiene is poor. Hepatitis A most often represents a risk to those traveling into less developed countries where the disease is common.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no definitive treatment for hepatitis A, and often the disease resolves with adequate nutrition and rest. Those at risk of infection can be given either immune serum globulin, prepared from pooled plasma, or a vaccine against hepatitis A (or both). There are two hepatitis A vaccines, both made of inactivated virus. One protects against hepatitis A only, while the other is a combined hepatitis A and hepatitis B vaccine.

Impacts and Issues

People travel more widely today than ever before which means they may be exposed to diseases they otherwise would not be. For travelers, Hepatitis A is the most common preventable infection. The extent of the risk depends upon the length of stay, the living conditions in the place visited, and the level of hepatitis A in the country visited. In general, the risk of contracting

WORDS TO KNOW

FECAL-ORAL ROUTE: The transmission of minute particles of fecal material from one organism (human or animal) to the mouth of another organism.

IMMUNE GLOBULIN: Globulins are a type of protein found in blood. The immunoglobulins (also called immune globulins) are Y-shaped globulins that act as antibodies, attaching themselves to invasive cells or materials in the body so that they can be identified and attacked by the immune system. There are five immune globulins, designated IgM, IgG, IgA, IgD, and IgE.

INACTIVATED VIRUS: Inactivated virus is incapable of causing disease but still stimulates the immune system to respond by forming antibodies.

JAUNDICE: Jaundice is a condition in which a person's skin and the whites of the eyes are discolored a shade of yellow due to an increased level of bile pigments in the blood resulting from liver disease. Jaundice is sometimes called icterus, from a Greek word for the condition.

hepatitis A is low in North America (except Mexico), New Zealand, Australia and developed European countries. However, epidemics still occur even on standard tourist itineraries. Before traveling, it is advisable to check out the latest information on proposed destinations through public health departments and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

In destinations where high standards of hygiene and sanitation may be lacking, it is recommended to stick to bottled water and avoid ice, seafood, raw fruit and vegetables, and foods sold by street venders. Personal hygiene is also essential—thorough handwashing after the bathroom and before eating or preparing food will help avoid transmission of HAV.

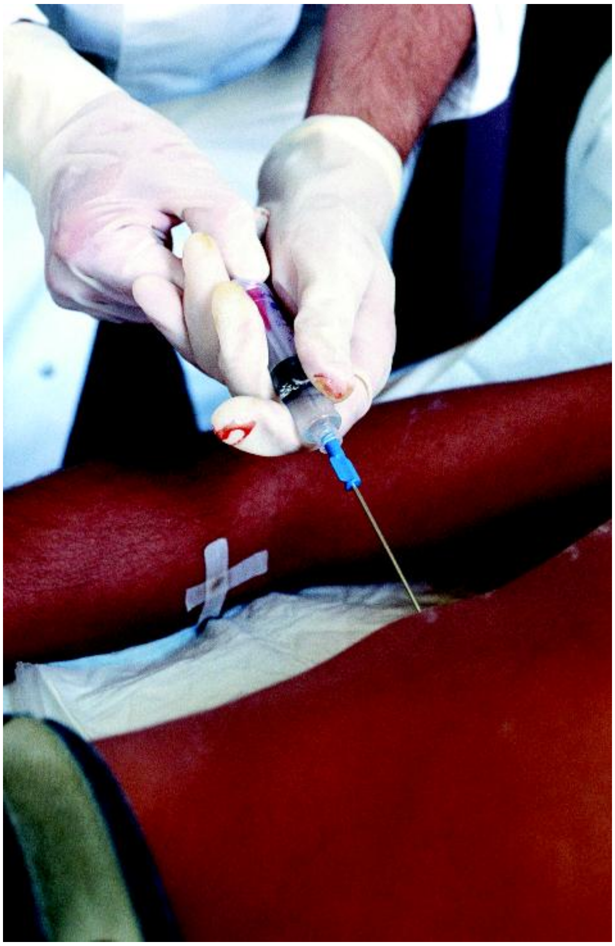
Despite food safety measures, outbreaks of Hepatitis A sometimes occur wherever food is prepared and served. In February 2007, an employee at a well-known catering company in Los Angeles, California was diagnosed with Hepatitis A, sparking an investigation into

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PREVENTION

The National Center for HIV/AIDs, Viral Hepatitis, STD and TB prevention recommends that with regard to prevention of Viral Hepatitis A:

- Hepatitis A vaccine is the best protection.
- Short-term protection against hepatitis A is available from immune globulin. It can be given before and within 2 weeks after coming in contact with HAV.
- Always wash your hands with soap and water after using the bathroom, changing a diaper, and before preparing and eating food.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*



A doctor removes a sample of liver tissue to test for hepatitis or cirrhosis (scarring of the liver). *Phanie/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

events the company had catered during the concurrent Hollywood entertainment industry awards season. Several celebrities and movie industry executives were contacted by health authorities, recommending immune globulin injections to prevent Hepatitis A infection after they were possibly exposed to the disease by food served during the festivities.

SEE ALSO *Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Hepatitis B; Hepatitis C; Travel and Infectious Disease.*

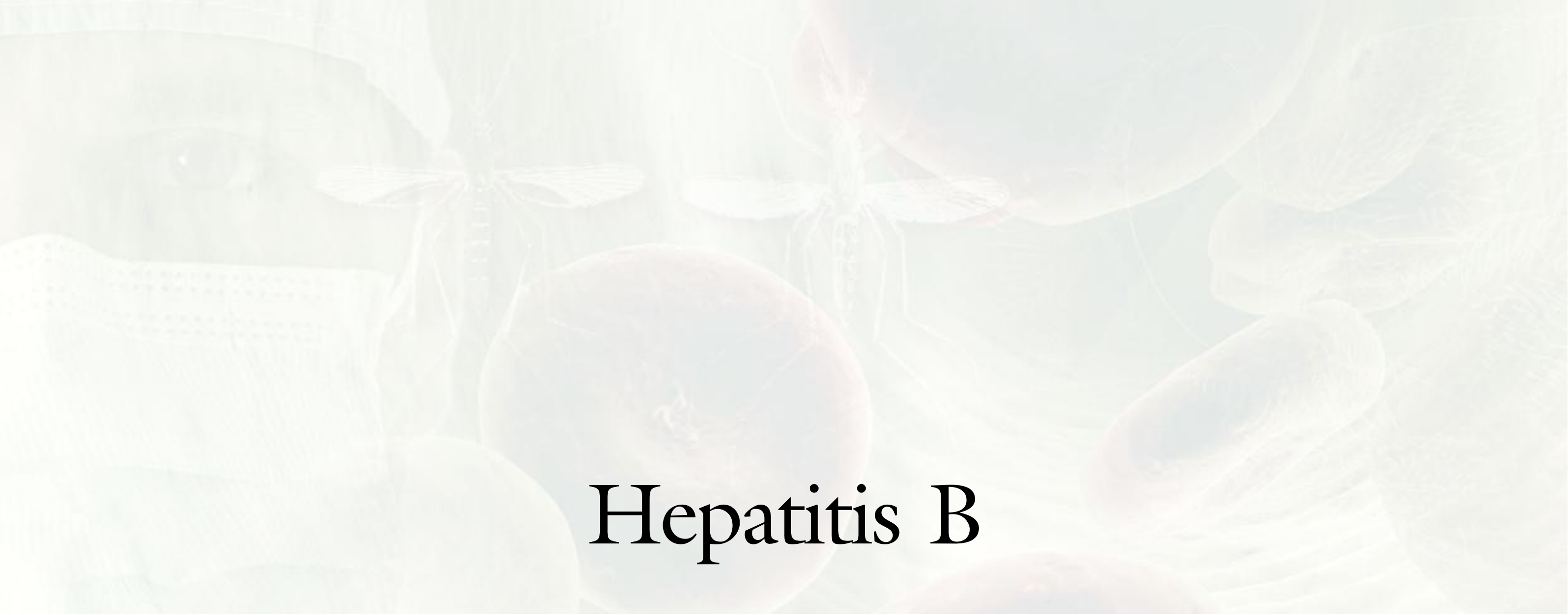
BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Achord, James L. *Understanding Hepatitis.* Oxford, MS: University of Mississippi Press, 2002.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Hepatitis A Fact Sheet." October 4, 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis> (accessed March 2, 2007).

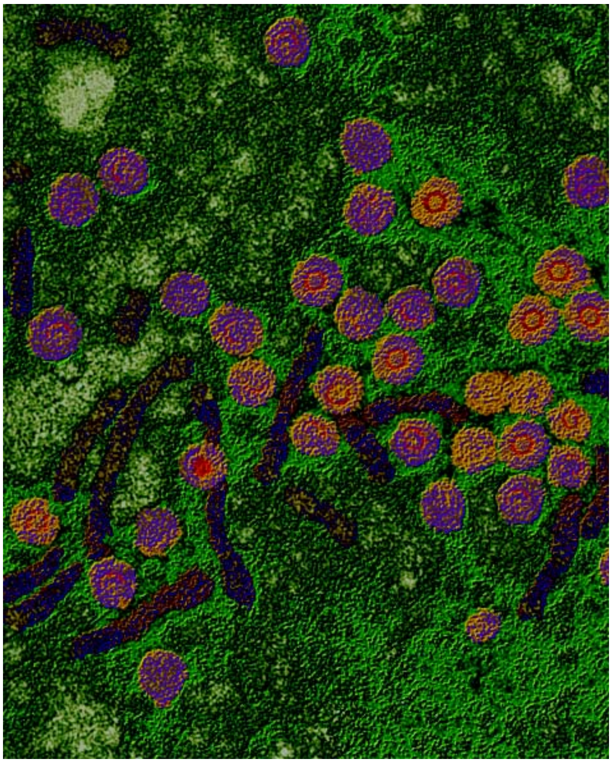


Hepatitis B

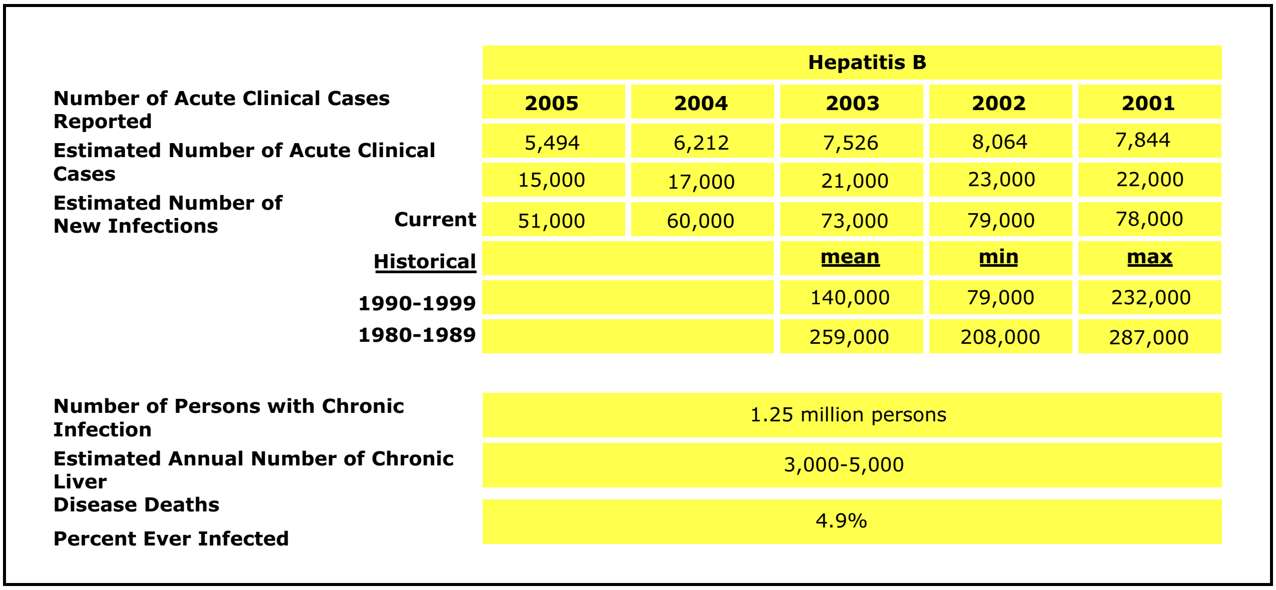
Introduction

Hepatitis B (HBV) is one of six viruses which cause hepatitis, an inflammation of the liver. Formerly known as post-transfusion or serum hepatitis, HBV is transmitted through infected blood and other body fluids, rather than by food or casual contact. Infection can cause acute disease, with symptoms including nausea, malaise, diarrhea, joint pain, and abdominal pain. In some cases, HBV infection progresses to chronic disease, damaging the liver and causing cirrhosis and liver cancer, which may be fatal. In countries where HBV infection is common, liver cancer rates are relatively high. Since the advent of screening of blood for HBV in developed countries, rates of infection have gone down, although people are still at risk through injecting drug use and sexual contact. An effective vaccine helps to protect babies from mother-to-child transmission and to stop those who work with blood from being infected with HBV through accidental exposure.

A virologist holds a sample tray with sections that contain live hepatitis B viruses. *Will & Deni McIntyre/Photo Researchers, Inc.*



Micrograph of the hepatitis B virus shows orange spheres with red cores, known as Dane particles, which are the complete virus. The brown rods, parts of the disassembled virus, are inactive. *Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc.*



		Hepatitis B				
		2005	2004	2003	2002	2001
Number of Acute Clinical Cases Reported		5,494	6,212	7,526	8,064	7,844
Estimated Number of Acute Clinical Cases		15,000	17,000	21,000	23,000	22,000
Estimated Number of New Infections	Current	51,000	60,000	73,000	79,000	78,000
	Historical			mean	min	max
	1990-1999			140,000	79,000	232,000
	1980-1989			259,000	208,000	287,000
Number of Persons with Chronic Infection		1.25 million persons				
Estimated Annual Number of Chronic Liver Disease Deaths		3,000-5,000				
Percent Ever Infected		4.9%				

Table depicting the number of hepatitis B cases from 2001 to 2005. *Data courtesy of Centers for Disease Control.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

HBV is unrelated to any known human virus, although similar liver viruses are found in other animal species. It exists as spherical particles with double stranded DNA as the genetic material. Around 70% of those infected with HBV will develop symptoms around 12 weeks after exposure. These symptoms include nausea, diarrhea, joint pain, abdominal discomfort, fatigue, and loss of appetite. Jaundice—a yellowing of the skin and whites of the eyes—may develop, along with dark urine and clay colored stools. The symptoms may continue for several months. In around 10 percent of cases, the HBV infection causes chronic viral hepatitis. Around 15–25 percent of those who develop chronic HBV will die of the disease, through cirrhosis (scarring) of the liver or liver cancer.

Transmission of HBV occurs through infected blood and other body fluids. Sex contact with an infected person, or injecting drug use with sharing of needles and other items, is strongly associated with HBV transmission. The virus is highly infectious; experiments have shown that it can be spread through a mere 0.0001 ml of blood. But for most people the HBV infection clears up within a few weeks. However, those with chronic disease remain infectious, even if they do not have symptoms. HBV infection can also pass from mother to child through contact with infected blood during childbirth.

WORDS TO KNOW

CIRRHOSIS: Cirrhosis is a chronic, degenerative, irreversible liver disease in which normal liver cells are damaged and are then replaced by scar tissue. Cirrhosis changes the structure of the liver and the blood vessels that nourish it. The disease reduces the liver's ability to manufacture proteins and process hormones, nutrients, medications, and poisons.

INTRAVENOUS: It the vein. For example, the insertion of a hypodermic needle into a vein to instill a fluid, withdraw or transfuse blood, or start an intravenous feeding.

JAUNDICE: Jaundice is a condition in which a person's skin and the whites of the eyes are discolored a shade of yellow due to an increased level of bile pigments in the blood resulting from liver disease. Jaundice is sometimes called icterus, from a Greek word for the condition.

Scope and Distribution

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recorded 5,494 cases of acute HBV infection in the United States in 2005. Using this data, the CDC

IN CONTEXT: SOCIAL AND PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY

The National Center for HIV, STD, and TB Prevention, Divisions of HIV/AIDS Prevention at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that the following are the best practices to reduce the risk of contracting Hepatitis B:

- "Hepatitis B vaccine is the best protection.
- If you are having sex, but not with one steady partner, use latex condoms correctly and every time you have sex. The efficacy of latex condoms in preventing infection with HBV is unknown, but their proper use may reduce transmission.
- If you are pregnant, you should get a blood test for hepatitis B; Infants born to HBV-infected mothers should be given HBIG (hepatitis B immune globulin) and vaccine within 12 hours after birth.
- Do not shoot drugs; if you shoot drugs, stop and get into a treatment program; if you can't stop, never share drugs, needles, syringes, water, or 'works,' and get vaccinated against hepatitis A and B.
- Do not share personal care items that might have blood on them (razors, toothbrushes).
- Consider the risks if you are thinking about getting a tattoo or body piercing. You might get infected if the tools have someone else's blood on them or if the artist or piercer does not follow good health practices.
- If you have or had hepatitis B, do not donate blood, organs, or tissue.
- If you are a health care or public safety worker, get vaccinated against hepatitis B, and always follow routine barrier precautions and safely handle needles and other sharps."

predicted that there were around 51,000 total new HBV infections that year. The incidence of infection is on the decline in the United States, but there are 1.25 million people already carrying the infection. Each year, between 3,000 and 5,000 people in the United States die of complications of chronic HBV infection such as liver cirrhosis and liver cancer.

Infants are most at risk of developing chronic HBV infection even though they are unlikely to have symptoms of acute disease. Others at high risk include sex and household partners of those with chronic HBV, men who have sex with men (especially if they have more than one sexual partner), intravenous drug users, and people whose work brings them into contact with blood, such as healthcare workers.

Around 10% of those with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) are also chronic carriers of HBV. The risk of HBV infection has also been shown to be higher among those whose parents were born in Southeast Asia, Africa, the Amazon basin, the Pacific Islands, and the Middle East. Rates of HBV in part of Africa and Asia are high and liver cancer accounts for 20–30 percent of all cancer cases in these areas.

■ Treatment and Prevention

There is no specific treatment for acute HBV infection once acquired. Adequate nutrition and rest are most often recommended to ease symptoms. Chronic infection can be treated with interferon, an immune system protein, and antiviral drugs such as lamivudine.

The hepatitis B vaccine is manufactured through genetic engineering, a process that involves inserting the HBV gene into yeast cells. It was introduced in 1982 and is highly effective against infection. The vaccine is now recommended for all newborns. Adults with an increased risk of exposure to HBV through work, travel, sexual practices, or drug use are also encouraged to get vaccinated.

■ Impacts and Issues

HBV is a bloodborne infection. Those who are, or have been, infected should not donate blood, organs, or tissue. People should not share razors or toothbrushes, which may carry invisible traces of blood. People who inject drugs should never reuse or share needles. Needle exchange programs in some countries have demonstrated limited success in reducing incidence of HBV among intravenous drug users.

Nearly one million people die each year from cirrhosis or liver cancer caused by HBV. Deaths from HBV-related illnesses disproportionately affect the developing world. HBV is endemic in some regions. In China, as much as 10 percent of the population is HBV infected. In certain parts of Eastern and Southeast Asia, 7–10 percent of all pregnant women are infected; 70–90 percent of the children born to these women become infected during childbirth. Though HBV is vaccine-preventable, the vaccine remains significantly more costly than other childhood vaccines.

Though most HBV infections are acquired during infancy or childhood, HBV has life-long effects. The social and economic effects of populations with high rates of HBV infections are substantial. Care of patients with chronic HBV is costly. HBV is one of the few viruses that can lead to cancer, although the way in which it does so is not well understood. HBV-related liver cancer and cirrhosis increase demand for liver transplants in an environment already strained by a lack of suitable donor organs. If the HBV vaccine could be made more readily available in those countries where infection is common, it could reduce the number of cases of liver cancer among the population.

See Also *Blood Supply and Infectious Disease; Bloodborne Pathogens; Hepatitis C.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

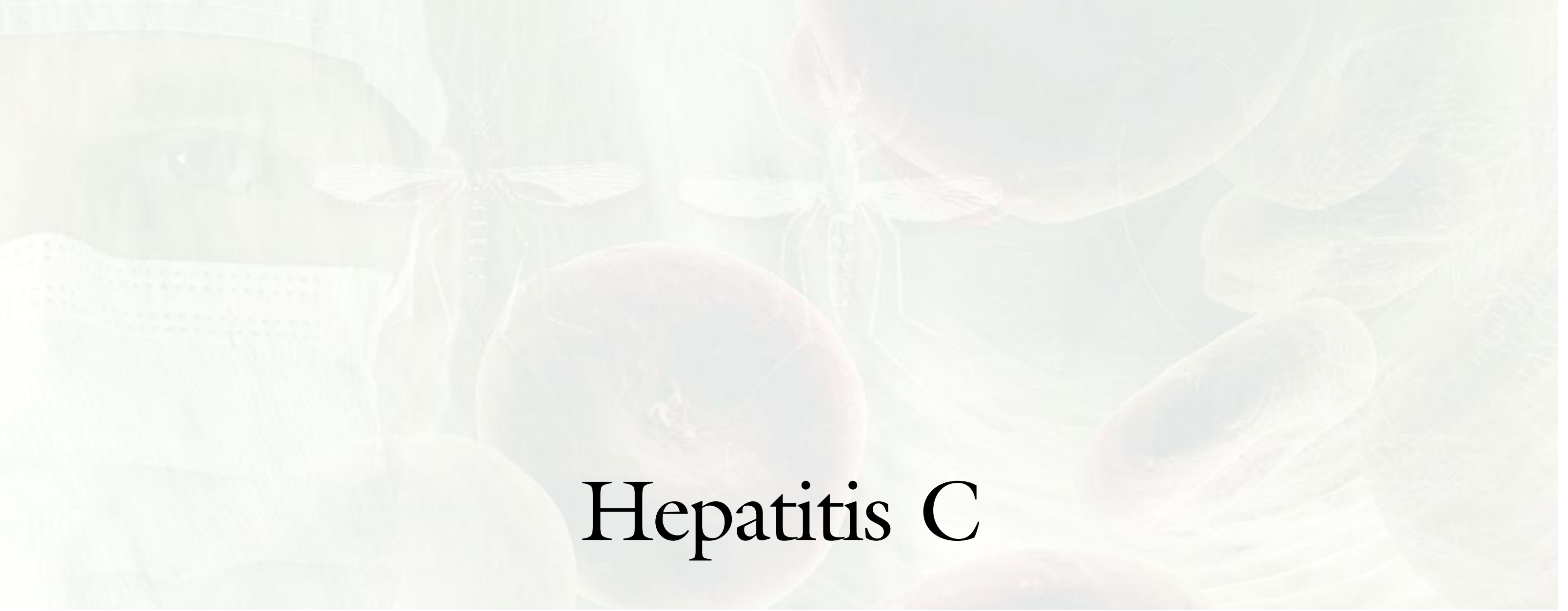
Books

Koff, R.S., and G.Y. Wu. *Chronic Viral Hepatitis.* Totowa: Humana Press, 2002.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Hepatitis B Fact Sheet." November 7, 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis> (accessed April 25, 2007).



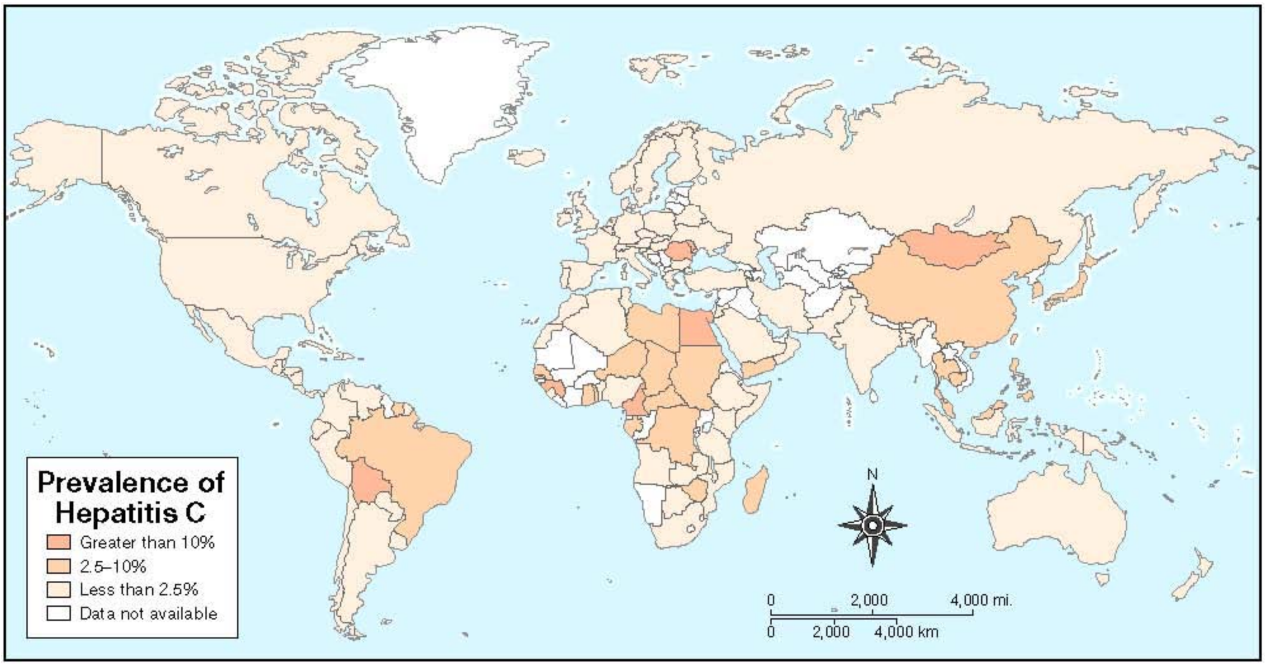
Hepatitis C

Introduction

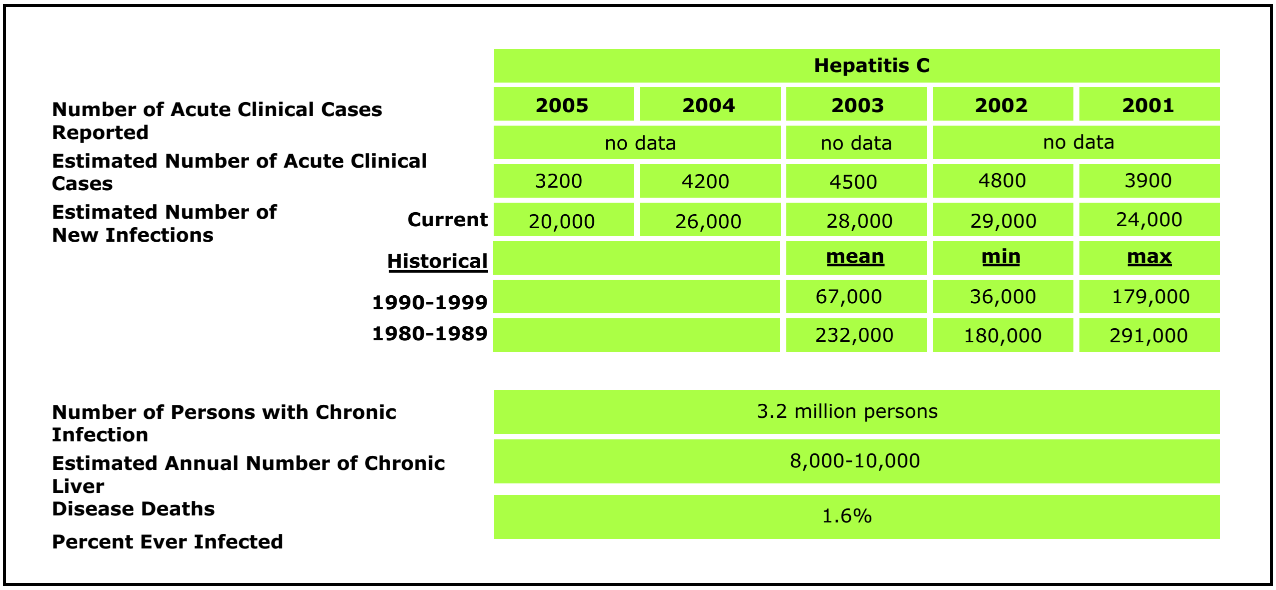
The Hepatitis C virus (HCV) is one of six viruses that cause hepatitis, an inflammation of the liver. Formerly known as non-A non-B hepatitis (HCV was not discovered until 1989), Hepatitis C accounts for the majority of cases acquired through infected blood transfusions that cannot be attributed to Hepatitis B virus (HBV). Unlike Hepatitis A and Hepatitis B, Hepatitis C rarely causes an acute infection, but many cases progress to chronic hepatitis, which can cause liver damage and eventually lead to liver cancer. Hepatitis C is a major indication for liver transplantation. Antiviral treatment is available for hepatitis C, but there is, as yet, no vaccine to protect against the disease. For many people around the world, especially in the Far East, hepatitis C is a silent killer as even those with chronic infection may have no symptoms until liver disease is well advanced.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

HCV is an RNA virus (that is, its genetic material consists of RNA rather than DNA) and is a flavivirus, related



Map showing the prevalence of hepatitis C infection throughout the world in 2003. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*



		Hepatitis C				
		2005	**2004**	**2003**	**2002**	**2001**
Number of Acute Clinical Cases Reported		no data		no data	no data	
Estimated Number of Acute Clinical Cases		3200	4200	4500	4800	3900
Estimated Number of New Infections	**Current**	20,000	26,000	28,000	29,000	24,000
	Historical			**mean**	**min**	**max**
	1990-1999			67,000	36,000	179,000
	1980-1989			232,000	180,000	291,000
Number of Persons with Chronic Infection		3.2 million persons				
Estimated Annual Number of Chronic Liver Disease Deaths		8,000-10,000				
Percent Ever Infected		1.6%				

Table illuminating the number of hepatitis C cases from 2001 to 2005. *Data courtesy of Centers for Disease Control.*

to the viruses causing yellow fever and dengue. It exists in six different genotypes which have varying distributions around the world and which respond differently to treatment. The incubation period for HCV is 6 to 12 weeks and most acute infections do not cause any symptoms. In 55 to 85% of cases, HCV becomes chronic over a period of several years, during which time the liver becomes progressively inflamed and damaged. Around 70% of those who are chronically infected with HCV will develop significant liver disease, including cirrhosis (scarring) and/or liver cancer.

HCV is a bloodborne pathogen, that is, a disease-causing organism transmitted through infected blood and body fluids that may contain blood. With the screening and treatment of blood and blood products, transmission of HCV by blood transfusion or receipt of blood clotting factors is now rare in Western countries. This leaves injection drug use as the main route of HCV infection in North America and Europe. To a lesser extent, Hepatitis C is transmitted through body fluids during sexual contact. Occupational exposure, through needlestick injuries by healthcare workers, may also transmit HCV. Hepatitis C can also pass from an infected mother to her baby during childbirth, although the risk is relatively low. Hepatitis C is not spread through coughing, sneezing, kissing, or casual contact between people.

Scope and Distribution

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that there were 20,000 new HCV infections in 2005, which is a decrease over previous years. Around 3.2 million people in the United States have chronic hepatitis C and about 1.6% of the population have probably been infected at some stage during their lifetime. Injecting drug users are at high risk of HCV and thousands of people with hemophilia (a blood disorder requiring the administration of blood clotting factors) became infected through receipt of blood products before 1987. Sex with an infected person or with multiple partners carries an intermediate risk of infection.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment for hepatitis C consists of injections of interferon, an immune system protein, which may be combined with the oral antiviral drug ribavirin over a period of months. Response to treatment depends upon the genotype of HCV with which the patient is infected. Those with genotype 1 are less likely to respond to antiviral treatment than those with genotype 2 or 3 and will require a longer course of treatment. There are side effects, such as flulike symptoms, anemia, and depression associated with hepatitis C treatment; not all patients are able to tolerate it.

To reduce the risk of spreading HCV, people who inject drugs should not share needles or other drug-related items. Toothbrushes, razors, and other personal items that could contain invisible traces of blood should not be shared. A person with hepatitis C cannot donate blood, organs, or tissue. Condoms may provide some protection to those having sex with an infected person. Occupational exposures for healthcare workers can be avoided by following the appropriate guidance on cleaning up blood spills, using needles with protective shields, and other infection control procedures. As there is no

WORDS TO KNOW

BLOODBORNE PATHOGEN: Disease-causing agents carried or transported in the blood. Bloodborne infections are those in which the infectious agent is transmitted from one person to another via contaminated blood.

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to disease causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (an example is food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (an example is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

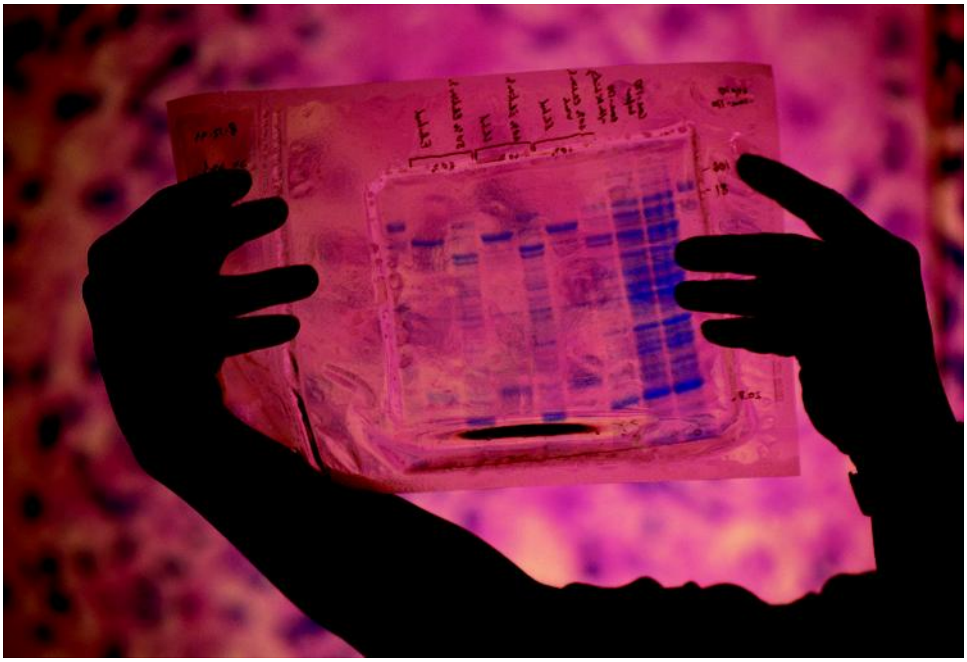
vaccine against HCV, these practical precautions against infection offer the most efficient protection strategies.

Impacts and Issues

Hepatitis C is a silent killer because many people do not realize they are infected and can pass the virus on to others. Moreover, the infection causes progressive damage to the liver, but may not produce any symptoms for many years. HCV is the most common cause of unexplained liver disease around the world and responsible for many deaths from liver cancer. The CDC recommends that those at risk of infection be tested for HCV in order to help identify infections early and maximize the chances for successful treatment.

Many persons with tattoos and body piercings may also be at higher risk of harboring the Hepatitis C virus than previously thought. Research at the University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center has shown that commercially acquired tattoos among persons in one study group accounted for more than twice as many hepatitis C infections as injection-drug use. Data from the CDC does not support this conclusion, as only a small percentage of hepatitis C cases reported to the CDC involve people with a documented history of receiving tattoos. CDC officials have found, however, that outbreaks of hepatitis C can be traced back to tattoo and piercing establishments, and that often oversight of sterilization techniques at such establishments are lacking and not adequately monitored by health authorities. Currently, the CDC is conducting a large-scale study that could provide definitive scientific evidence of any links that exist between tattooing and body piercing and the incidence of hepatitis C.

The World Health Organization estimates that worldwide, for every one person infected with the virus that causes AIDS, four people are infected with HCV. Within the next two decades, many of these persons now displaying relatively few symptoms will progress to the



A research scientist studies a DNA map of the hepatitis C virus. *Richard T. Nowitz/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

end stages of the disease. The number of cases of cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma (liver cancer), and liver failure are expected to dramatically increase, placing a major burden on healthcare resources. The need for donor livers for transplantation is expected to increase more than 500% during this time.

In 2006, scientists reproduced the Hepatitis C virus in mice cells, and identified a gene called protein kinase R (PKR) that blocks the virus from replicating within the cell. This could provide clues as to why interferon, which stimulates PKR to keep the HCV in check, works better against some genotypes (strains) of Hepatitis C virus than others. This research is in its initial stages, but by understanding how the virus responds to interferon treatment, scientists hope to design more effective long-term treatments for HCV. In the meantime, the blooming hepatitis C epidemic has sparked some of the largest and most varied efforts at promoting alternative and holistic treatments for HCV. No complimentary or alternative treatment has yet been proven both safe and effective for Hepatitis C infection. The National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine, however, is sponsoring a second (phase II) clinical trial to determine possible benefits of silymarin compounds in milk thistle for liver disease associated with hepatitis C.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PREVENTION

The National Center for HIV/AIDs, Viral Hepatitis, STD and TB prevention states that the following persons may be at risk for hepatitis C and should contact their medical care provider for a blood test:

- If you were notified that you received blood from a donor who later tested positive for Hepatitis C.
- If you have ever injected illegal drugs, even if you experimented a few times many years ago.
- If you received a blood transfusion or solid organ transplant before July, 1992.
- If you were a recipient of clotting factor(s) made before 1987.
- If you have ever been on long-term kidney dialysis.
- If you have evidence of liver disease (e.g., persistently abnormal ALT levels).

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

SEE ALSO *Blood Supply and Infectious Disease; Bloodborne Pathogens; Hepatitis B.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Askari, Fred. *Hepatitis C: The Silent Epidemic.* Cambridge, MA: Da Capo, 2005.

Koff, R.S and Wu, G.Y. *Chronic Viral Hepatitis.* Totowa: Humana Press, 2002.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). “Hepatitis C Fact Sheet.” May 24, 2005 <http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis> (accessed February 25, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Hepatitis D

Introduction

The Hepatitis D virus (HDV) is one of six viruses that cause hepatitis, an inflammation of the liver. It is unusual in that it is found only with Hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection. HDV is transmitted in a similar way to HBV, that is, through infected blood and other body fluids, rather than by food or casual contact. HDV infection can cause acute disease, with symptoms similar to that of HBV, including nausea, malaise, diarrhea, joint pain and abdominal pain. People with HBV and HDV tend to be at higher risk of serious liver damage and death than those with HBV alone. However, HDV is uncommon in the United States, and most cases occur in injecting drug users.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

HDV is a single-stranded RNA virus which exists as one of seven genotypes (genetic identities). There are two types of HDV infection. Hepatitis D may occur as a co-infection, that is, simultaneously with HBV, or it may be seen as a superinfection in someone who already has chronic HBV infection. The symptoms of acute HDV infection are difficult to distinguish from those of hepatitis A and hepatitis B, and include jaundice, a yellowing of the skin and whites of the eyes, fatigue, abdominal pain, loss of appetite, nausea, vomiting, joint pain, and dark urine. A condition called fulminant hepatitis, which is a sudden, severe form of the disease with rapid onset, is more likely to develop from acute HDV infection than with Hepatitis A or Hepatitis B. Around 2–20% of those with co-infection will develop acute liver failure, which is often fatal. Superinfection causes a worsening in the severity and progression of Hepatitis B; those affected are likely to develop chronic cirrhosis of the liver or liver cancer.

A human liver shows the effects of hepatitis. *Martin M. Rotker/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Transmission of HDV is similar to that of HBV, that is, through infected blood and other body fluids. Sexual contact with an infected person, or injecting drugs with shared needles is strongly associated with HDV transmission. Rarely, HDV infection can pass from mother to child through contact with infected blood during childbirth.

Scope and Distribution

There are little surveillance data for hepatitis D, but the disease is less prominent in the United States (where there is no routine surveillance data), Northern Europe, and Japan. It is found mainly in Southern Europe, Africa, and South America. Estimates put the number of people infected with Hepatitis D at about 15 million people worldwide. Those at risk include injecting drug users, those on hemodialysis (filtering the blood by machine), sexual contacts of people with the infection, men who have sex with men, and those who may be exposed to HDV through their occupation.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no treatment for hepatitis D other than rest and adequate nutrition. Chronic infection can be treated with interferon, although response is less effective than if the person is infected only with Hepatitis B. Higher doses of interferon may be necessary with co-infection. Liver failure can be treated with liver transplant. Transmission of HDV is prevented in the same way as HBV, preventing contact with infected blood.

Blood is not screened specifically for HBV and HDV in all countries, so this is a possible route of infection, particularly when traveling abroad, for someone who already has hepatitis B. If someone is protected against HBV, then they are automatically protected from HDV as well. Therefore, the HBV vaccine is an effective method of preventing HDV transmission. Researchers are working on a vaccine specific for HDV.

Impacts and Issues

Hepatitis D is an unusual virus in that it cannot infect people on its own. It requires the presence of hepatitis B. Anyone who is at risk of hepatitis B infection may also be at risk of hepatitis D if they live an area where the virus is common. Being infected with both viruses leads to a poorer prognosis than being infected with hepatitis B alone.

In those parts of the world where hepatitis D is common, more widespread access to hepatitis B vaccine and screening and treatment of the blood supply could considerably cut the death toll from liver disease. Recent research suggests a decrease in HDV among drug users and prostitutes in Taipei, China. However, the virus has a new potential reservoir among the populations of male and immigrant prostitutes moving into the area. Increased surveillance of the health of these groups could help stop the spread of HDV in the area.

WORDS TO KNOW

BLOODBORNE PATHOGEN: Disease-causing agents carried or transported in the blood. Bloodborne infections are those in which the infectious agent is transmitted from one person to another via contaminated blood.

FULMINANT: A fulminant infection is an infection that appears suddenly and whose symptoms are immediately severe.

RNA VIRUS: An RNA virus is one whose genetic material consists of either single or double-stranded ribonucleic acid (RNA) rather than deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA).

SUPERINFECTION: When a new infection occurs in a patient who already has some other infection, it is called a superinfection. For example, a bacterial infection appearing in a person who already had viral pneumonia would be a superinfection.

SEE ALSO *Blood Supply and Infectious Disease; Bloodborne Pathogens; Hepatitis B.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Achord, James L. *Understanding Hepatitis.* Oxford, MS: University of Mississippi, 2002.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). “Hepatitis D Fact Sheet.” <http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis> (accessed March 5, 2007).

Stanford University. “Hepatitis D virus.” <http://www.stanford.edu/group/virus/delta/2004hammon/Deltavirus.htm> (accessed March 5, 2007).

Hepatitis E

Introduction

Hepatitis is an inflammation of the liver that can be caused by exposure to chemicals, including alcohol, or by any one of six hepatitis viruses. Hepatitis E infection is caused by the Hepatitis E virus (HEV), and was shown to be a separate form of hepatitis in 1980. Hepatitis E infection is always acute, like hepatitis A virus (HAV) infection. It causes symptoms such as nausea, malaise, diarrhea, and enlarged liver. Occasionally HEV infection can be severe, especially among pregnant women. It is rare in the United States, but common in Asia and Africa, where epidemics may occur, Like HAV, HEV is spread through contaminated water and food. It is, therefore, a risk to travelers to areas where sanitation standards are poor. There is no commercially available vaccine against HEV; therefore prevention relies upon maintaining personal hygiene and avoiding potential sources of exposure.

A group of displaced persons in the Darfur region of the Sudan wait for a medical visit in 2004. The UN health organization said that although the health situation in Darfur was stable at that time, an increasing number of cases of hepatitis E were spreading due to the consumption of contaminated water. Thousands of displaced people live in such camps. *AP Images.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The hepatitis E virus is a single-stranded RNA virus, with no outer envelope, but distinguished by the appearance of spikelike structures on its surface. The incubation time of HEV is three to eight weeks. Infection may give rise to no symptoms or just very mild illness. Symptoms of HEV can infection include jaundice, a yellowing of the skin and whites of the eyes, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, fatigue, fever, dark urine, and pale stools. In 0.5 to 4% of cases, HEV infection is fulminant, that is, severe and rapid in onset. Fulminant hepatitis E is fatal to mother and child in about 20% of cases if it occurs during late pregnancy. It is difficult to distinguish HEV from HAV infection and other forms of acute viral hepatitis. It does not progress to chronic disease, unlike hepatitis B and hepatitis C.

Hepatitis E is transmitted by the fecal-oral route, via contaminated water and foods such as shellfish and raw fruits and vegetables. Unlike Hepatitis B and Hepatitis C, Hepatitis E is not transmitted sexually or through blood.

Scope and Distribution

Testing for antibodies against HEV has suggested that strains of the virus occur around the world. However, HEV infection is more of a problem in developing countries and epidemics occur in Central and Southeast Asia, North and West Africa, and Mexico. The risk is highest where access to clean water is restricted and where sanitation is poor. Travelers to such area are at risk of HEV infection, as they are to infection with HAV. Symptomatic infection with HEV is most common in the 15–40 age group. Children get infected also, but are more likely to be asymptomatic.

Treatment and Prevention

Hepatitis E infection is usually self-limiting and there is no specific treatment for it, other than rest and adequate nutrition. A vaccine against HEV is under development. In the absence of a widely available vaccine, prevention of HEV infection, depends upon maintaining a good standard of personal hygiene, including handwashing after using the bathroom and before eating or preparing food.

Impacts and Issues

Hepatitis E is rare in the United States, but those who live or travel to developing countries may be at risk of exposure. While the disease is generally not serious, it occasionally develops in a potentially fatal form called fulminant hepatitis that can be especially dangerous in pregnant women. Therefore, travelers to areas where HEV is endemic are advised to take precautions. In destinations where high standards of hygiene and sanitation may be lacking, it is best to drink bottled water and avoid ice, seafood, and raw fruit and vegetables. For those who live in developing countries, improvement of the infrastructure with respect to access to clean drinking water and adequate sanitation is the most effective method of preventing outbreaks with viruses like HEV. If research on a vaccine against HEV is successful, then it may prove worthwhile to carry out mass vaccination among populations at risk. Meanwhile, outbreaks of Hepatitis E can be limited by adequate surveillance measures.

WORDS TO KNOW

FECAL-ORAL ROUTE: The transmission of minute particles of fecal material from one organism (human or animal) to the mouth of another organism.

FULMINANT: A fulminant infection is an infection that appears suddenly and whose symptoms are immediately severe.

JAUNDICE: Jaundice is a condition in which a person's skin and the whites of the eyes are discolored a shade of yellow due to an increased level of bile pigments in the blood resulting from liver disease. Jaundice is sometimes called icterus, from a Greek word for the condition.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

See Also *Hepatitis A; Hepatitis B; Travel and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Seppa, N. "Hepatitis E Vaccine Passes Critical Test." *Science News* 171 (March 3, 2007): 9, 131.

Web Sites

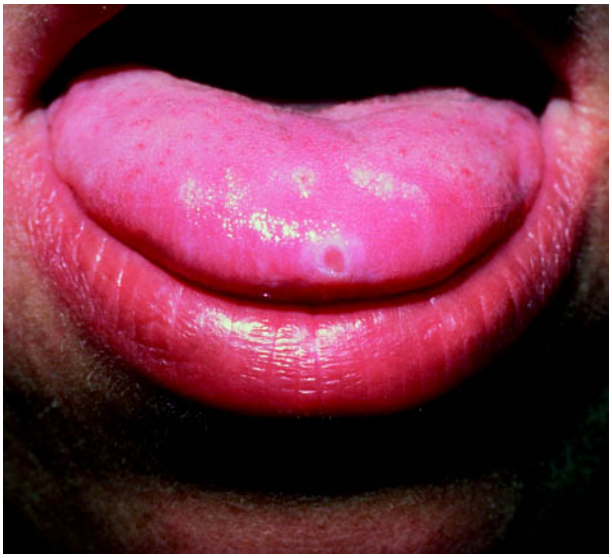
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Hepatitis E Fact Sheet." Nov 1, 2005 <http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis> (accessed March 5, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Hepatitis E." <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs280/en/print.html> (accessed March 7, 2007).

Herpes Simplex 1 Virus

Introduction

The Herpes Simplex 1 virus (HSV-1) causes painful sores, known as cold sores, on the skin or in the eyes. Less frequently, HSV-1 can cause genital ulcers. HSV-1 is closely related to HSV-2, which is the virus generally associated with similar lesions in the genital area (known sometimes just as "herpes"). Both HSVs belong to the Herpes family of viruses, all of which exist as viral particles of diameter around 200 nm (nanometers), consisting of a protein exterior enclosing a molecule of double-stranded DNA. Other significant Herpes viruses include the Varicella-Zoster virus, which causes chicken pox, Epstein-Barr virus, and Cytomegalovirus (CMV). The Herpes virus invades cells, such as neurons, and may lie dormant for many years, causing no obvious symptoms. However, a herpes infection can be activated at any time and may often recur during life. Symptoms tend to occur only when the Herpes virus is active. Although the virus itself cannot be eliminated, symptoms of active infection, like cold sores, can be treated with antiviral drugs.



A cold sore on the tongue caused by the Herpes Simplex type I virus. *© Dr. Milton Reisch/Corbis.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

HSV-1 often causes no symptoms when it first enters the body, creating a latent infection within nerve cells. However, in around one-quarter to one-third of those infected, it will eventually become active. Triggers for activation of HSV-1 include stress, sunlight exposure, fever, broken skin, and menstruation. When HSV-1 activation occurs, new virus particles are formed and may move from neurons to the mucous membranes of the body, such as the mouth, skin, and eyes.

HSV-1 reactivation is not always accompanied by symptoms. However, the virus particles may continue to replicate within surface cells, which then begin to swell, releasing fluid. This forms a blister—usually referred to as a fever blister or cold sore. Each blister contains millions of new virus particles and is highly infectious. A single blister or a cluster of them may occur, and they often recur around the same location on the upper or lower lip, nose, chin, cheeks, or inside of the mouth. The formation of a cold sore is often preceded by burning, tingling, itching, or pain in the area where the blister is going to form. The time between the warning signs and the appearance of the cold sore is typically a few hours to a day or so. Once the blister has formed, it breaks and produces a yellow crust. This falls off within a few days, leaving behind pinkish skin that heals without forming a scar. The whole process normally takes 8-10 days.

The fingers, generally around the fingernails (where the virus may enter through torn cuticles), are a common site of HSV-1 infection, which results in a painful condition known as herpetic whitlow. This area is especially vulnerable because it contains many nerve endings through which HSV-1 can be transmitted. Also, HSV-1 is the cause of *Herpes gladiatorum*—sometimes called "wrestler's herpes"—a herpes infection on the face, neck, chest, or arms that is spread via skin contact.

HSV-1 may also cause fever and swollen glands in children and tonsillitis, pharyngitis (throat infection), and even encephalitis (infection of the brain) among adults. Although HSV-1 encephalitis is rare, it still accounts for about 10 percent of cases of this infection in the United States.

HSV-1 is transmitted by person-to-person contact, via the mucous membranes—that is, through kissing and sexual intercourse. Contact with infected secretions from items such as cups, glasses, towels, and food is also a significant mode of transmission. In a person with an intact immune system, symptoms of reactivation may not be apparent, but they still make new copies of the HSV-1 virus. This phenomenon is known as viral shedding and leads to people without symptoms spreading HSV-1 unknowingly through the usual modes of transmission. HSV-1 can also be transmitted from mother to baby during childbirth, resulting in general infection of the newborn and possibly encephalitis.

Scope and Distribution

Herpes infections are found all around the world, but prevalence is influenced by age and socioeconomic status. In less developed countries, about one-third of children are infected by five years of age and this goes up to 70–80 percent by early adolescence. In developed countries, around 20 percent of children are infected by the age of five and 40–60 percent by early adulthood. People with weakened immunity, such as transplant recipients and HIV/AIDS patients, are more susceptible to serious HSV-1 infections. Those with eczema—whose skin is frequently broken or damaged—are often affected with widespread HSV-1 infection, a condition known as eczema herpeticum, which requires prompt treatment with antiviral drugs. Healthcare workers, such as anesthesiologists and dentists, are at risk of herpetic whitlow if their fingers come into contact with patients who have cold sores or through viral shedding from patients who are infected but do not have symptoms.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no cure for HSV-1 infection. Once the virus is present in cells, it is there for life, even though it may not cause any symptoms. However, there are a number of antiviral drugs that can treat the symptoms of cold sores. The main ones are acyclovir, valacyclovir, and famciclovir; the former can be used as a cream, a tablet, or an intravenous injection, but the other two are only available in tablet form. These drugs are most effective in treating a first episode of cold sores. An outbreak of cold sores can be prevented by using lip balm—to avoid broken skin—and minimizing stress and sun exposure. People who have cold sores should not kiss others and should keep any items such as cups, washcloths, and towels separate.

The TORCH test, which is sometimes called the TORCH panel, belongs to a category of blood tests called infectious-disease antibody titer tests. This type of blood test measures the presence of antibodies (protein molecules produced by the human immune system in response to a specific disease agent) and their level of concentration in the blood. The name of the test comes from the initial letters of the five disease categories. The TORCH test measures the levels of an infant's antibodies against five groups of chronic infections: Toxoplasmosis, Other infections, Rubella, CMV, and HSV. The

WORDS TO KNOW

DORMANT: Inactive, but still alive. A resting nonactive state.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

LATENT INFECTION: An infection already established in the body but not yet causing symptoms, or having ceased to cause symptoms after an active period, is a latent infection.

VIRAL SHEDDING: Viral shedding refers to the movement of the herpes virus from the nerves to the surface of the skin. During shedding, the virus can be passed on through skin-to-skin contact.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

The eye is less commonly affected by HSV-1 infection, but when it happens, it can be very serious. Typically, HSV-1 infection of the eye occurs as conjunctivitis, affecting the membrane covering the cornea and inside of the eyelids. There may also be blisters and swelling of the eyelids. HSV-1 infection can lead to scarring of the cornea, and it is the most common cause of infectious blindness in the developed world.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The Herpes 1 virus is also the cause of a condition known as *Herpes gladiatorum* (a skin infection common in wrestlers, rugby players, and other athletes playing sports with extensive skin contact between competitors). First described in the 1960s, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that, "In a national survey of 1477 trainers of athletes approximately 3% of high school wrestlers were reported to have developed HSV skin infections during the 1984-85 season. Lesions occur most often on the head and neck. Primary infection may cause constitutional symptoms with fever, malaise, weight loss, and regional lymphadenopathy (a swelling of the lymph nodes). Ocular (eye) involvement includes keratitis (a swelling or inflamation of the transparent covering at the front of the eye that protects the iris and pupil), conjunctivitis (a swelling or inflammation of the conjunctiva often termed 'pinkeye'), and blepharitis (a swelling or inflammation of the eyelids). Transmission occurs primarily through skin-to-skin contact."

The CDC further states that, "Control methods should include education of athletes and trainers regarding *herpes gladiatorum*, routine skin examinations before wrestling contact, and exclusion of wrestlers with suspicious skin lesions."

SOURCE: *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (February 9, 1990), Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.*

category of other infections usually includes syphilis, hepatitis B, Coxsackie virus, Epstein-Barr virus, Varicella-Zoster virus, and Human Parvovirus.

■ Impacts and Issues

HSV-1 is a common infection that usually lies dormant in the body within the nervous system. It causes health problems mainly in immunocompromised people, although the infection may be triggered in anyone carrying the virus through stress or sunlight exposure. People without symptoms may easily pass on the infection to those who are more vulnerable, so anyone who has ever had an outbreak of cold sores should consider themselves infected with HIV-1 and should take extra care with hygiene. Although antiviral drugs can treat the symptoms of cold sores, lessening their duration, they do not cure the infection itself.

HSV-1 infection is occasionally life-threatening. Untreated, HSV-1 encephalitis has a mortality rate of 70 percent and requires intravenous acyclovir to bring the infection under control. Neonatal (newborn) HSV-1 infection, although rare, can have a mortality rate of 60 percent, since the infant immune system is incapable of fighting it. Babies who survive often have severe neurological problems. Although for many people HSV-1 infection is of little consequence, for those who are already vulnerable, it may be extremely serious.

See Also *Chickenpox (Varicella); CMV (Cytomegalovirus) Infection; Herpes Simplex 2 Virus; Shingles (Herpes Zoster) Infection.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Gates, Robert H. *Infectious Disease Secrets.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Hanley and Beltus, 2003.

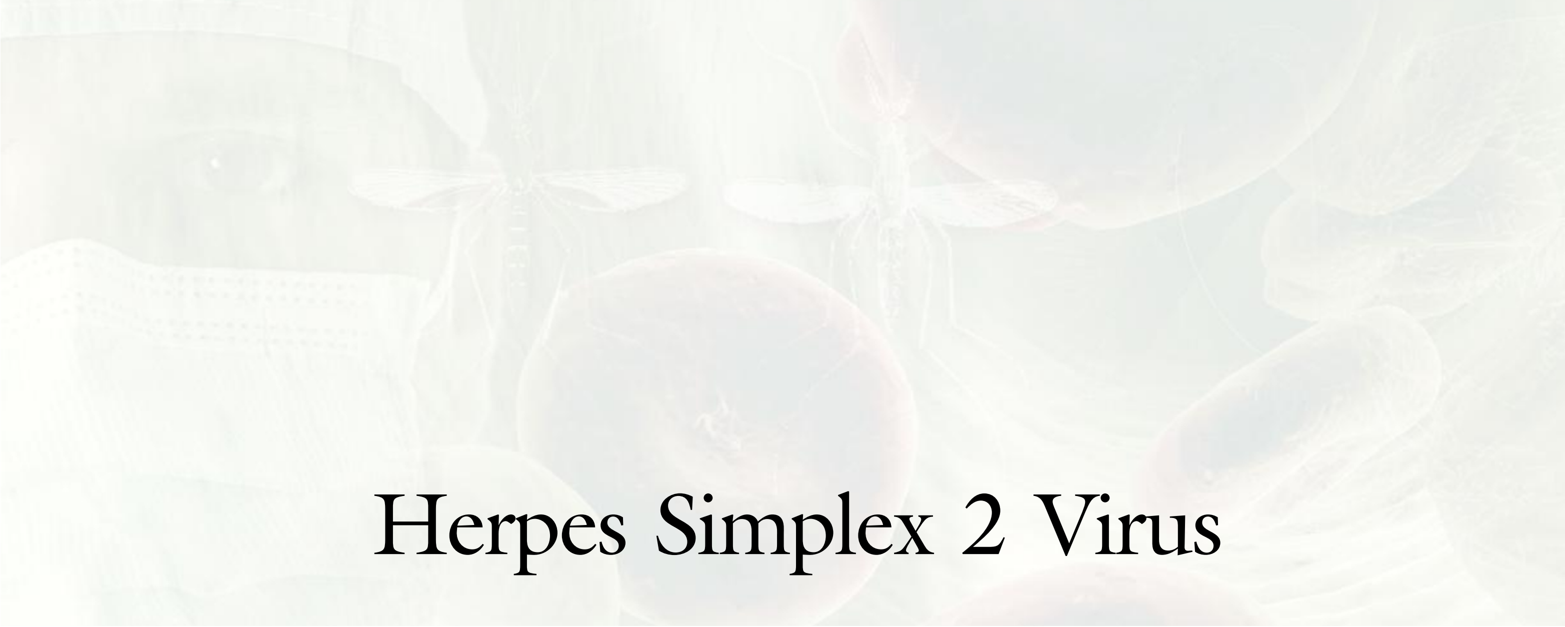
Gillespie S., and K. Bamford. *Medical Microbiology and Infection at a Glance.* Malden, U.K.: Blackwell, 2000.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

SkinCareGuide Network. "Herpes Guide—From Cold Sores to Genital Herpes." November 1, 2006. <http://www.herpesguide.ca> (accessed February 3, 2007).

Susan Aldridge



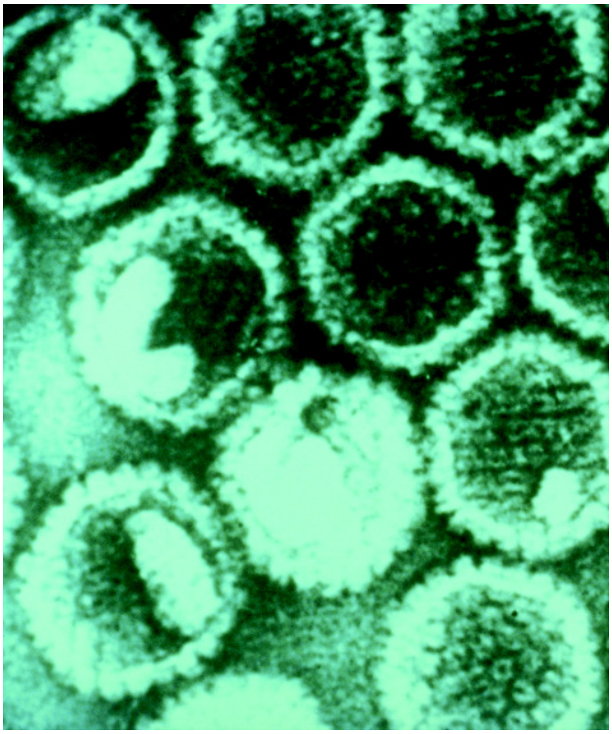
Herpes Simplex 2 Virus

Introduction

Genital herpes (often known just as herpes) is an infection by the Herpes Simplex virus (HSV) which leads to the formation of painful sores in the genital area. Most cases of genital herpes are caused by HSV-2, but the closely related HSV-1, which normally causes cold sores, is occasionally involved. Both HSVs belong to the herpes family of viruses, all of which exist as viral particles of a diameter around 200 nm (nanometers). Other significant herpes viruses include the Varicella-Zoster virus, which causes chicken pox, Epstein-Barr virus, and Cytomegalovirus (CMV). The herpes virus invades cells and may lie dormant for many years, causing no obvious symptoms. However, a herpes infection can be activated at any time and often recur throughout life. Symptoms typically are present only when the herpes virus is active. Although the virus itself cannot be eliminated, symptoms of active infection, like genital sores, can be treated with antiviral drugs.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

HSV-2 frequently causes no symptoms when it enters the body, creating a latent infection within nerve cells. However, HSV-2 infection can be activated—or re-activated—by triggers such as stress, sunlight exposure, fever, broken skin, and menstruation. New virus particles then move towards the genital area where they start to multiply in surface cells, causing them to swell and release fluid. This leads to the formation of groups of small, painful blisters, which may eventually rupture to give an ulcer or sore. Men develop genital sores on the tip or shaft of the penis and in the rectal area. Women develop the sores in the vulva, perineum, cervix, vagina, and rectal area. The symptoms are often more severe among women. The first episode of genital herpes may be accompanied, in around 10% of cases, by symptoms such as fever, malaise, aches and pains, and a swollen groin. Meningitis, an illness involving inflammation of the membranes covering the brain and spinal cord, is an occasional complication of genital herpes. The symptoms typically lessen or disappear within four to five days. Sores usually heal within two weeks. Women infected with HSV-2 may transmit herpes to their babies during childbirth. Neonatal herpes (herpes infections in newborns) varies in its severity, but has an overall mortality rate as high as 60% and can cause long-term neurological complications. As many as 1% of childbirthing women in



An electron micrograph shows the Herpes Simplex virus. The virus can cause genital lesions and is generally transmitted through sexual contact. *© Lester V. Bergman/Corbis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ASYMPTOMATIC: A state in which an individual does not exhibit or experience symptoms of a disease.

DORMANT: Inactive, but still alive. A resting non-active state.

LATENT INFECTION: An infection already established in the body but not yet causing symptoms, or having ceased to cause symptoms after an active period, is a latent infection.

LESIONS: The tissue disruption or the loss of function caused by a particular disease process.

PRODROMAL SYMPTOMS: Prodromal symptoms are the earliest symptoms of a disease.

the United States shed HSV-2 during delivery, and 6% of the babies thus exposed develop neonatal herpes. HSV-1 is much less likely to lead to neonatal herpes.

In 80% of cases, genital herpes recurs. However, symptoms are most often less severe during recurrence. Prodromal symptoms (early signs that herald an illness), such as a tingling sensation in the genital area, often precede a recurrence of genital herpes.

HSV-2 infection is transmitted through sexual contact with an infected person and is one of the most common of the sexually transmitted diseases. An infected, asymptomatic person (a person who has no symptoms) can still infect sexual partners. The time between sexual contact and the appearance of symptoms, if any, is about five days.

Scope and Distribution

HSV-2 infection is found around the world and is the most common cause of genital ulcers. However, detection of HSV-2 antibody, a sign of infection, is unusual before puberty. Around one third of sexually active adults in the Western world have HSV-2 antibody. It has been isolated from the cervix or urethra of between 5–12% of adults attending sexual health clinics. Mostly these patients are asymptomatic or have tiny, unnoticed genital lesions.

In the United States, it is estimated that there are around half a million new cases of HSV-2 per year. Women are more at risk of contracting HSV-2 infection than men. Risk increases for both men and women who have multiple sexual partners. A heterosexual woman with one partner has a 10% chance of contracting the infection. A heterosexual man in the same situation has a negligible risk. Homosexual men run a higher risk of developing HSV-2.

HSV-2 infection also makes transmission of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) more likely.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no cure or vaccine for HSV-2 infection. There are a number of antiviral drugs that can be used to treat outbreaks of genital herpes, such as acyclovir, valacylcovir, and famciclovir. Those who know they are infected, because of past outbreaks, can help protect their sexual partners by using condoms. People with active genital sores should not have sexual contact with others even if using a condom, since sores and lesions can appear outside of the area covered by the condom.

The Division of Sexually Transmitted Disease (STD) at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that "all pregnant women should be asked whether they have a history of genital herpes. At the onset of labor, all women should be questioned carefully about symptoms of genital herpes, including prodromal symptoms, and all women should be examined carefully for herpetic lesions."

Impacts and Issues

HSV-2 usually lies dormant within the body, with people being unaware that they can infect others through sexual contact. As herpes infections can be life threatening in the newborn and in those with impaired immunity, the risk of infection is a serious concern. HSV-2 infection has also been found to promote HIV transmission. The link between genital ulcers and HIV has been known for over 20 years, but more sensitive methods of detecting HSV-2 infection has allowed detailed investigation of the connection. Genital ulceration, even if it is not visible, attracts the CD4 cells that HIV infects. More recent research, from India, has shown that HIV infection is twice as likely among people with newly acquired HSV-2 infection, as compared to those with long-standing infections. Activation of HSV-2 infection in those who also have HIV may also make them even more likely to transmit HIV to an uninfected partner. These findings suggest a new approach to reducing HIV infection. Treatment with acyclovir, a relatively cheap drug, could help prevent reactivation of HSV-2 thereby potentially reducing the risk of HIV transmission.

According to the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) from the 1970s to the early 1990s, the prevalence of

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2006 states that the following recommendations apply to counseling of persons with HSV infection:

- Persons who have genital herpes should be educated concerning the natural history of the disease, with emphasis on the potential for recurrent episodes, asymptomatic viral shedding, and the attendant risks of sexual transmission.
- Persons experiencing a first episode of genital herpes should be advised that suppressive therapy is available and is effective in preventing symptomatic recurrent episodes and that episodic therapy sometimes is useful in shortening the duration of recurrent episodes.
- All persons with genital HSV infection should be encouraged to inform their current sex partners that they have genital herpes and to inform future partners before initiating a sexual relationship.
- Sexual transmission of HSV can occur during asymptomatic periods. Asymptomatic viral shedding is more frequent in genital HSV-2 infection than genital HSV-1 infection and is most frequent during the first 12 months after acquiring HSV-2.
- All persons with genital herpes should remain abstinent from sexual activity with uninfected partners when lesions or prodromal symptoms are present.
- The risk of HSV-2 sexual transmission can be decreased by the daily use of valacyclovir by the infected person.
- Recent studies indicate that latex condoms, when used consistently and correctly, might reduce the risk for genital herpes transmission.
- Sex partners of infected persons should be advised that they might be infected even if they have no symptoms. Type-specific serologic testing of asymptomatic partners of persons with genital herpes is recommended to determine whether risk for HSV acquisition exists.
- The risk for neonatal HSV infection should be explained to all persons, including men. Pregnant women and women of childbearing age who have genital herpes should inform their providers who care for them during pregnancy and those who will care for their newborn infant. Pregnant women who are not infected with HSV-2 should be advised to avoid intercourse during the third trimester with men who have genital herpes. Similarly, pregnant women who are not infected with HSV-1 should be counseled to avoid genital exposure to HSV-1 during the third trimester (e.g., oral sex with a partner with oral herpes and vaginal intercourse with a partner with genital HSV-1 infection).
- Asymptomatic persons diagnosed with HSV-2 infection by type-specific serologic testing should receive the same counseling messages as persons with symptomatic infection. In addition, such persons should be taught about the clinical manifestations of genital herpes.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2006*

herpes cases in the United States increased by 30%. The most dramatic rise in new cases occurred among teens and young adults. Since the late 1990s, the incidence of herpes infections in young people has stabilized. Many credit aggressive education campaigns about safer sex practices for this change. Medical testing and care, honest discussion between sexual partners about health issues, and the habitual and proper use of condoms can help reduce—but not eliminate—the risk of transmitting HSV-2.

SEE ALSO *Chickenpox (Varicella); Herpes Simplex 1 Virus; Shingles (Herpes Zoster) Infection.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Gates, Robert H. *Infectious Disease Secrets*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Hanley and Beltus, 2003.

Gillespie, S., and K. Bamford *Medical Microbiology and Infection at a Glance*. Malden: Blackwell, 2000.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases*. New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD FACTS

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2006 state that "genital herpes is a chronic, life-long viral infection. Two types of HSV have been identified, HSV-1 and HSV-2. The majority of cases of recurrent genital herpes are caused by HSV-2, although HSV-1 might become more common as a cause of first episode genital herpes. At least 50 million persons in the United States have genital HSV infection. The majority of persons infected with HSV-2 have not been diagnosed with genital herpes. Many such persons have mild or unrecognized infections but shed virus intermittently in the genital tract."

"The majority of genital herpes infections are transmitted by persons unaware that they have the infection or who are asymptomatic (without observable symptoms) when transmission occurs."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2006*

Periodicals

Wald, A., and L. Corey. "How Does Herpes Simplex Virus Type 2 Influence Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection and Pathogenesis?" *The Journal of Infectious Diseases.* 187 (2003): 1519–1512.

Web Sites

SkinCareGuide Network. "Herpes Guide—from Cold Sores to Genital Herpes." February 21, 2007 <http://www.herpesguide.ca> (accessed February 22, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Histoplasmosis

Introduction

Histoplasmosis is a disease caused by a mycotic (fungal) infection of *Histoplasma capsulatum* fungal spores. The infection develops when fungal spores are inhaled, and the resulting disease affects the lungs. The fungus is found globally and is endemic (occurs normally) in some areas of America. The key factor about these spores is their resilience in the environment and their ability to become airborne when the ground is disturbed. Those at risk of disease are people exposed to contaminated soils, caves, and bat and bird housings. The disease is not transmissible between humans.

In the majority of cases, infection will not result in disease, but in severe cases, persons with histoplasmosis may present with chronic tuberculosis-like symptoms. People with existing immune system problems are at an increased risk of the disease spreading to other organs of the body, which can be potentially fatal if untreated. Treatment commonly includes anti-fungal medication.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Histoplasmosis was first reported in the United States in 1926. It occurs worldwide and is endemic in some parts of the United States. It primarily affects the lungs, but in some cases spreads to other organs in the body. Histoplasmosis is also known as Darling's disease, Ohio River Valley Fever, Mississippi River Valley disease, and Appalachian Mountain disease.

Approximately 95% of people infected with this disease remain asymptomatic (without symptoms) or have symptoms that heal spontaneously; in most cases these people will develop partial immunity against re-infection. If symptoms do occur, they will usually develop within 3–18 days. Acute symptomatic pulmonary histoplasmosis has a short duration, with possible symptoms including fever, chills, chest pain, and a non-productive cough.

Chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis presents with longer-lasting symptoms that are similar to tuberculosis: chest pain, loss of breath, coughing, sweating, and fever. Disseminated histoplasmosis is the most serious form of the disease; it is only common among immunosuppressed people and can be fatal if left untreated. In these cases, the disease spreads from the lungs to other organs, and symptoms include neck stiffness, skin lesions, and mouth sores.

Histoplasmosis is contracted by inhalation of the *Histoplasma* fungal spores, which thrive in damp, organically rich soil, and some animal droppings, such as those of birds and bats. Once these microscopic spores enter the lungs, they imbed in the small air sacs and trigger an immune reaction that, in serious cases, leads to inflammation, scarring, and calcium deposits on the lungs. The extent of histoplasmosis infection is dependent both on the number of spores inhaled and the immunity of the host.

Scope and Distribution

Histoplasmosis is primarily located in the temperate regions of the world and is endemic in areas of America, including the south-eastern, mid-Atlantic, and central states of Arkansas, Kentucky, Missouri, Tennessee, West Virginia, Ohio, and Texas, as well as Central and South America. Most cases of the disease are sporadic, but point source outbreaks have been previously described.

The fungal spores are commonly found in fertile soils, caves, poultry houses, bird roosts, and areas harboring bats. The spores frequently become airborne when disturbed; are extremely resilient; and remain viable in the environment for long periods of time. In fact, plants fertilized with droppings may contain spores and produce infectious smoke when burned. This gives the spores the ability to transfer large distances from the initial source and still retain viability in causing disease.

WORDS TO KNOW

MYCOTIC: Mycotic means having to do with or caused by a fungus. Any medical condition caused by a fungus is a mycotic condition, also called a mycosis.

IMMUNOSUPPRESSION: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

SPORE: A dormant form assumed by some bacteria, such as anthrax, that enable the bacterium to survive high temperatures, dryness, and lack of nourishment for long periods of time. Under proper conditions, the spore may revert to the actively multiplying form of the bacteria.

Due to the high prevalence of histoplasmosis fungi, infection is common, and 80% of people living in fungal rich areas of the United States could exhibit a positive skin test for the presence of histoplasmosis fungi. However, development of disease is rare and is only considered a risk to people with weakened immune systems, such as very young children, elderly people, organ transplant and chemotherapy patients, and persons with autoimmune disease. The ages of people affected range from children to adults, and there is no increased incidence among either sex, although chronic lung infections are more common in men than women.

Although quite infrequent, outbreaks of histoplasmosis have been previously described and generally result from a single event causing the disruption of a large area housing the fungus, such as construction, clearing, cleaning, and cave exploration. One such outbreak occurred in 2001 in Indiana and infected 523 school students. The cause of the outbreak was rototilling of a courtyard containing the fungus.

Treatment and Prevention

Histoplasmosis may present symptoms similar to other diseases, and as such, diagnosis is achieved through blood tests or laboratory culture. Generally, histoplasmosis fungal infections do not lead to the development of disease, and, even in mild cases, the disease usually resolves without treatment. When required in severe disease states, the most common treatment for histoplasmosis is anti-fungal medication. In most cases, previous infection will result in partial protection against reinfection.

Awareness is a key factor in ensuring successful disease prevention, so before beginning a job or activity with a potential risk of exposure to the histoplasmosis fungi, it is important to investigate all of the potential risk factors involved. When working in areas carrying a high risk of making contact with the fungal spores, it is also important to wear appropriate protective clothing, such as disposable coveralls, to prevent transfer of the spores from the worksite and a dust mask that covers both the nose and the mouth to filters out all particles larger than 2 microns in size.

Due to the natural widespread occurrence of *Histoplasma capsulatum*, it would be virtually impossible to decontaminate all infected sites. Prevention is commonly achieved by minimizing the disruption of soils in affected areas in addition to limiting the exposure of persons to dust in contaminated environments. In areas where soil disruption is unavoidable, spraying infected areas thoroughly with water mist prior to beginning excavation reduces the number of aerosols produced.

Impacts and Issues

Cases of chronic disease caused by histoplasmosis are on the rise, and are attributed mainly to the increasing number of persons living with HIV and weakened immune systems due to chemotherapy, organ transplant, or autoimmune disease. It has also been seen that immunosuppression later in life may also result in reactivation of quiescent infection born from earlier exposure. As the number of people living with immune disorders increases, scientists expect there will be a proportional increase in the prevalence of chronic histoplasmosis. For this reason, scientists consider histoplasmosis to be an emerging infectious disease.

Land use might also play a part in the resurgence of histoplasmosis. Development of lands traditionally used for farming in the nitrogen-rich belt of the central and Southern United States could also be a factor in the increased number of reported cases.

Scientists have learned that histoplasmosis infection can also lead to ocular histoplasmosis syndrome (OHS). OHS is a condition that damages blood vessels in the eyes and leads to impaired vision. It is thought that the fungal spores travel from the lungs to the eye and lodge in the blood vessels leading to the retina. This causes no initial damage to eyesight, although it does leave recognizable histo spots on the blood vessels. Vision loss can occur years after the initial infection. Detecting the histo spots can indicate future vision loss, and laser eye surgery can reduce the likelihood of vision loss by 50%. The National Eye Institute recommends that individuals that live in areas where histoplasmosis is endemic have their eyes checked regularly, and for medical practitioners to consider the presence of histo spots as an indication that vision loss may occur.

Awareness of this disease acts to minimize unnecessary exposure to contaminated areas and promote the use of protective equipment when required. The National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, along with the Center for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), engages in promotions geared to educate employers and workers about the risks and prevention strategies for histoplasmosis.

See Also *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Emerging Infectious Diseases; HIV; Land Utilization and Disease; Opportunistic Infection; Tuberculosis.*

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) list the following as "risk groups" for histoplasmosis:

- Persons in areas with endemic disease with exposures to accumulations of bird or bat droppings (e.g., construction or agricultural workers, spelunkers).
- High risk groups are immunocompromised persons (e.g., persons with cancer, transplant recipients, persons with HIV infection).

No national surveillance exists.

SOURCE: *Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases/Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*, Vol. 2. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Periodicals

Chamany, S., et al. "A Large Histoplasmosis Outbreak Among High School Students in Indiana, 2001." *Pediatric Infectious Disease Journal*. Vol. 23, no. 10 (2004): 909–914.

Web Sites

Directors of Health Promotion and Education. "Histoplasmosis." 2005 <http://www.dhpe.org/infect/histo.html> (accessed February 23, 2007).

National Eye Institute. "Histoplasmosis." December 2006 <http://www.nei.nih.gov/health/histoplasmosis/index.asp> (accessed February 23, 2007).

HIV

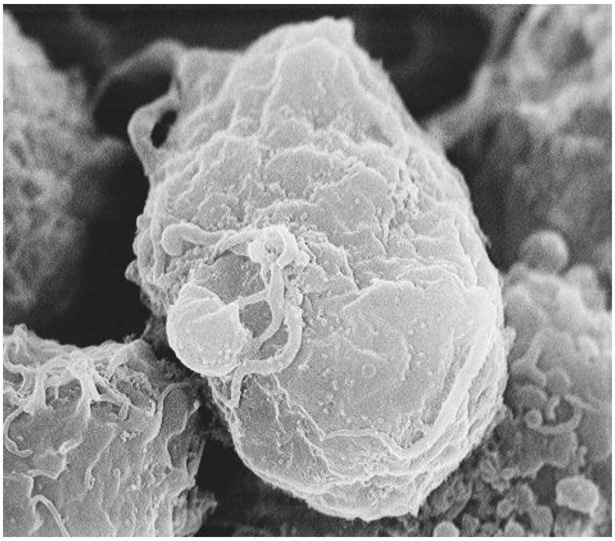
Introduction

The Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) is the microorganism responsible for acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS. HIV attacks the immune system, and eventually leaves the body vulnerable to potentially fatal opportunistic infections. An estimated 36 million people worldwide are infected with HIV.

History and Scientific Foundations

HIV is a type of "retrovirus" with a genetic code that is comprised of RNA rather than DNA. As it has no DNA, which is necessary to create RNA viral genome (genetic material) copies, it uses the DNA of infected host cells to create a new RNA genome for replicates (copies) of the virus. A retrovirus replicates by using a DNA intermediary, i.e., an infected cell's DNA. Retroviruses rely on the enzyme reverse transcriptase in order to perform the reverse transcription of its genetic code from its RNA into DNA, which can then be inserted into the host cell's genome using another enzyme. The virus then replicates as part of the cell's DNA. One of the major classes of HIV drugs targets reverse transcriptase, inhibiting the virus' ability to create the DNA segment for insertion into the infected cell's DNA.

One of the most important features of HIV replication is its ability to generate large numbers of new genetic combinations through a process known as recombination. This, together with a high rate of genetic mutations of individual genes, enables HIV to rapidly create new drug-resistant strains. After HIV was identified as the cause of AIDS, researchers suspected that genetic recombination could also play a key role in the evolution of the virus. Very recently, studies of HIV infections worldwide have produced an estimate for the occurrence of HIV genetic recombination and have revealed that recombination frequencies appear to be much higher than expected. Recombination is currently regarded as a central aspect of the HIV infectious cycle.



An electron micrograph shows an HIV virus that was grown in cultured lymphocytes. *© CDC/PHIL/Corbis.*

HIV has a globular structure with a spiked envelope. The spikes on HIV virus carry the mystery of how the virus is attracted to CD4+ cells (a type of white blood cell) that play an important role in the immune system. The spikes on the HIV virus control the process by which the virus fuses with the targeted CD4+ cells. Despite intensive efforts by scientists, the spikes have been slow to reveal their structural and functional secrets. Recent advances are providing the first glimpses of the overall three-dimensional structure of the spiked envelope. Increasing knowledge of the viral envelope's component atomic structures offers new insights into the structural elements within the spike and could lead to entirely new avenues for the treatment of AIDS. The new treatments would target the ability of HIV to fuse with target cells, while current therapies interrupt viral replication.

H.I.V.
POSITIV
...UED BY TREATMENT ACTION CA...

An HIV-positive South African woman holds her daughter, one of approximately 100,000 babies who are born HIV-positive annually in South Africa. Activists often wear similar t-shirts in support of those who are HIV-positive. They claim that the government's anti-viral program for pregnant women is not effective enough. *© Reuters/Corbis.*

The immune system has a so-called innate component (innate immunity) comprised of white blood cells called phagocytes, which migrate to affected areas and engulf disease-causing organisms (pathogens). Special cells of innate immunity called dendritic cells are particularly important for regulating immune response. When dendritic cells encounter foreign material, they have unique receptors that allow them to distinguish harmless and pathogenic (disease-causing) organisms. These cells carry fragments of pathogen to the lymph nodes, where they could stimulate a response by the adaptive immune system (called adaptive immunity), depending on the ability of the foreign material to cause disease.

If dendritic cells decide that the material is pathogenic (part of a virus or bacteria), they activate CD4+ helper T cells. (CD4+ refers to a surface protein on this type of T cell.) Helper T cells can then stimulate another group of white blood cells called B cells to produce antibodies that bind to the specific antigen and immobilize it, preventing it from causing infection. Antibodies are specific for only one antigen. Once activated, memory cells are produced that insure faster and stronger immune response when the body is re-exposed to the same pathogen.

Pathogens that escape antibody detection can enter and infect body tissue cells. The cell membrane of infected cells changes in a way that is recognized by T cells. Cytotoxic T cells kill infected cells, preventing them from producing more pathogen. Cytotoxic T cells must interact with Helper T cells to regulate the destruction of infected cells, in order to destroy cells that are infected by the specific microbe that has been presented to the helper cells by the dendritic cells.

HIV specifically attacks Helper T cells. Without an adequate number of Helper T cells, the immune system cannot signal B cells to produce antibodies to kill infected cells. When HIV has critically depleted the Helper T cell population, the body can no longer launch an adaptive immune response and becomes susceptible to many opportunistic infections, thus resulting in the immunodeficiency that characterizes AIDS. Research shows that the CD4+ membrane proteins are targets for HIV infection. Thus, memory helper T cells are quickly infected and destroyed in the mucus membranes of tissues. Only recently, researchers have recognized that the memory cell destruction occurs in the first several days after HIV infection, suggesting that therapies should begin as soon as the infection is detected.

Mysteries remain about how HIV causes disease, particularly the reason why there is uncontrolled viral replication in the majority of infected patients. In the past several years, investigation into HIV disease has focused on T regulatory (Treg) cells, a subset of CD4+ T-cells whose main function is to maintain a certain amount of tolerance in order to avoid autoimmunity (in which the immune system attacks the body's own tissues). Preliminary data point to two main roles for Treg cells in HIV: a detrimental effect in which

WORDS TO KNOW

AUTOIMMUNITY: Autoimmune diseases are conditions in which the immune system attacks the body's own cells, causing tissue destruction. Autoimmune diseases are classified as either general, in which the autoimmune reaction takes place simultaneously in a number of tissues, or organ specific, in which the autoimmune reaction targets a single organ. Autoimmunity is accepted as the cause of a wide range of disorders, and is suspected to be responsible for many more. Among the most common diseases attributed to autoimmune disorders are rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosis (lupus), multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, pernicious anemia, and scleroderma.

CD4+ T CELLS: CD4 cells are a type of T cell found in the immune system, which are characterized by the presence of a CD4 antigen protein on their surface. These are the cells most often destroyed as a result of HIV infection.

CYTOTOXIC: A cytotoxic agent is one that kills cells. Cytotoxic drugs kill cancer cells but may also have application in killing bacteria

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

RECOMBINATION: Recombination is a process during which genetic material is shuffled during reproduction to form new combinations. This mixing is important from an evolutionary standpoint because it allows the expression of different traits between generations. The process involves a physical exchange of nucleotides between duplicate strands of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA).

HIV-specific immune responses are muted and a beneficial effect that limits immune activation (thus limiting the helper T-cell targets of HIV). There is currently a lack of standardized assays to measure levels and function of Treg cells, which continues to hamper research into this promising area. Thus, it is possible that HIV takes advantage of a feature of the immune system that naturally limits immune response.

Impact and Issues

The level of specificity of the science required to provide breakthroughs in the battle against HIV is unprecedented. Most disease cures and treatments that have been discovered during the past 100 years have been based on only limited knowledge of a microbe's ability to causes disease. As with the fight against cancer, the effort to find a cure for AIDS is leading scientists into ever more minute aspects of the pathogen, all the way down to the atomic structure of viral envelope spikes and the molecular mechanisms of genetic replication.

HIV is an amazingly versatile and adaptive enemy, probably owing to millennia of evolution in non-human primates and now being offered a new and relatively open ecological niche within humanity. While HIV transmission is preventable, a variety of social and behavioral factors have led to what will ultimately become the worst epidemic in terms of lives lost in the history of the human species. Also, as with the struggle against cancer, contending with the perplexing mysteries of HIV will leave a mark not only on the history and future development of medicine, but on human behavior and social evolution for the foreseeable future.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); AIDS: Origin of the Modern Pandemic; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Palladino, Michael A., and David Wesner. *HIV and AIDS (Special Topics in Biology Series)*. San Francisco: Benjamin Cummings, 2005.

Periodicals

Sempere J.M., V. Soriano, and J.M. Benito. "T Regulatory Cells and HIV Infection." *AIDS Rev.* (January–March 2007): 9 (1): 54–60.

Web Sites

University of Arizona: The Biology Project. "Immunology and HIV. Immune System's Response to HIV." <http://www.biology.arizona.edu/immunology/tutorials/AIDS> (accessed June 8, 2007).

Kenneth T. LaPensee

Hookworm (*Ancylostoma*) Infection

Introduction

Ancylostoma (an-cy-LO-sto-ma) infection, also called hookworm infection, is an infection of one of two different roundworms: *Ancylostoma duodenale* or *Necator americanus*. Depending on maturity, the roundworms range from 0.3 to 0.5 inches (0.7 to 1.3 cm) in length.

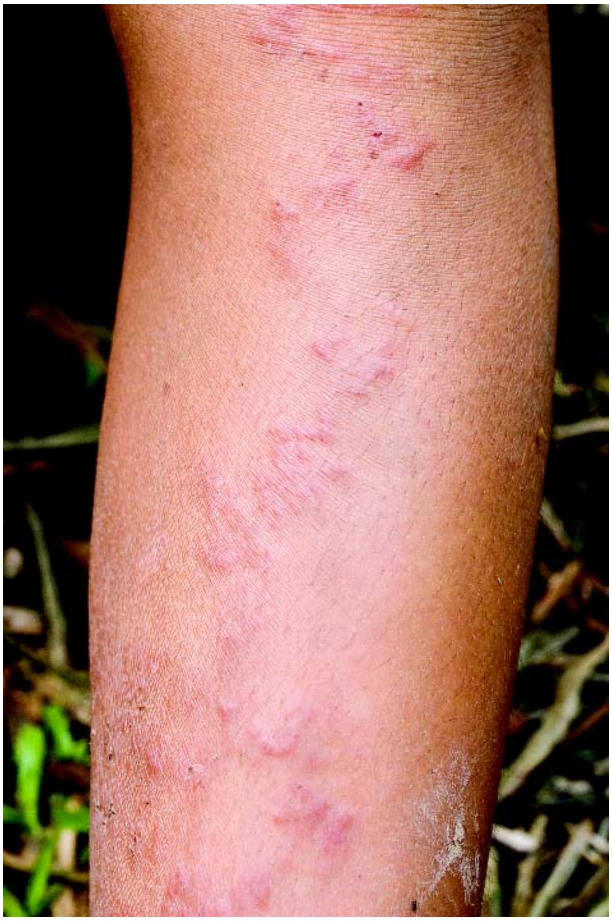
Hookworms are parasitic roundworms, specifically infesting the intestines of their host. They have hooklike appendages, from which they take their name. Hookworms belong to the class Nematoda. Moderate infestation of hookworms in humans is considered by the World Health Organization (WHO) to be between 2,000 and 3,999 eggs per gram of feces. Heavy infestation is counted at 4,000 or more eggs per gram of feces.

Hookworm infection is most common with areas of rural poverty and low socioeconomic status, especially in southern China, the Indian subcontinent, and in parts of the Americas. The worldwide number of cases was first estimated in 1990 to be 740 million people. By 2005, the number of cases worldwide was about double that initial estimate.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Hookworms deposit eggs on ground containing warm, moist, shaded soil. Such conditions allow eggs to develop into larvae. The larvae are barely visible; however, they are easily able to penetrate human skin. They frequently enter the body through the soles of the feet or when humans handle feces. Children often are infected because they frequently play in dirt and go barefoot. Humans cannot infect other humans.

Once inside the body, larvae travel through the bloodstream to the lungs and respiratory tract, and on to the trachea. They are swallowed into the digestive tract and stomach where they end up in the small intestines. From skin to intestines, the trip takes, on average, about one week. At this point, larvae develop into adult worms about 0.5 inches (1.3 cm) in length. They attach



Cutaneous larva migrans, a parasitic skin condition showing subcutaneous (under the skin) burrowing tracks of hookworm (*Ancylostoma braziliense*) larva, are visible on the lower leg of a child in Peru. *Gregory G. Dimijian, M.D./Photo Researchers, Inc.*

themselves to the walls of the small intestine where they suck blood. The hookworm causes symptoms to its host when the worms drain blood and nourishment from the intestinal wall. One adult worm can produce thousands of eggs and live up to ten years. Eggs are expelled in feces. Under the proper conditions, the eggs hatch, molt, and develop into infective larvae after five to ten days.

WORDS TO KNOW

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

MORBIDITY: The term “morbidity” comes from the Latin word “morbus,” which means sick. In medicine it refers not just to the state of being ill, but also to the severity of the illness. A serious disease is said to have a high morbidity.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host’s body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host’s body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

The World Health Organization (WHO) states that hookworm infection “is a leading cause of anaemia and protein malnutrition. The largest numbers of cases occur in impoverished rural areas of sub-Saharan Africa, Latin America, South-East Asia and China.”

SOURCE: *World Health Organization (WHO)*

Most of the time, there are no symptoms. However, symptoms can occur at any point within the worm’s life cycle. Initial symptoms include itching and a rash at the larvae’s entrance site to the host. Asthma- or pneumonia-like symptoms may occur when worms are in the lungs. Symptoms from intestinal infection include anemia, loss of appetite and weight loss, excessive intestinal gases, cramps and abdominal pain, and diarrhea. In chronic infections, symptoms may include malnutrition, breathing difficulties, dizziness, pale complexion, tiredness and weakness, swelling and bloating, impotence, enlargement of the heart, and irregular heartbeat.

In children, physical development and growth can be slowed or not fully attained because of loss of sufficient amounts of iron and protein. Infection can be especially problematic for newborn and infant children, pregnant women, and people who are malnourished. Death is uncommon but can occur, especially in newborn and infant children.

Scope and Distribution

Hookworm infection occurs mostly in tropical and subtropical regions of the world. *Ancylostoma duodenale* is found in China, India, Japan, and Mediterranean countries. *Ancylostoma americanus* is located in the tropical areas of Africa, Asia, and the Americas. According to the Division of Parasitic Diseases of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), approximately 1.3 to 1.6 billion people are infected worldwide, about one-fourth to one-fifth of the world’s population.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis is often accomplished by identifying hookworm eggs in a stool sample with the use of a microscope. A blood sample is also used because positive results show iron or protein deficiency.

Treatment consists of anthelmintic drugs (that is, drugs proven to effectively remove worms), along with iron supplements and a high protein diet. In particular, the drug mebendazole (MBZ) is used because it causes immobilization and eventual death of the worms by restricting the ingestion of nutrients. It is often branded under the names Antiox®, Ovex®, Pripsen®, and Vermox®. It cures the infection about 99% of the time when given twice a day for three days. Other drugs also given are albendazole (Albenza®) and pyrantel (Antiminth®), which are given once each day for three days. They should not be given to pregnant woman.

Hookworm infection is prevented by promoting safe sanitary practices. Feces should be disposed of properly and contaminated areas cleansed thoroughly. Wearing shoes, avoiding swimming in contaminated pools, and treating or boiling contaminated water before drinking also help prevent hookworm infection.

Impacts and Issues

Hookworm infection is the leading cause of iron deficiency anemia in developing countries. In developing countries where food is scarce, people with heavy hookworm infections are sometimes unable to eat enough calories to compensate for those lost due to intestinal iron and protein depletion brought on by hookworms. In the past, hookworm infection has been neglected due to its concentration among the world's poorest peoples. Generally, in the past, international coordination involving the infection has not been accomplished. Over the decades of the 1990s and 2000s, however, there has been increasing concern over the global incidence of hookworm infection. International efforts are increasing to control the occurrence of hookworm, flatworm, and related helminth (parasitic worm) infections. The World Health Organization estimates that over two billion people worldwide suffer from illnesses associated with helminths.

Children are especially susceptible to hookworm infection because of the amount of time they spend outdoors. WHO estimates that about 400 million school-aged children are annually infected. Once infected, the children often suffer morbidity that includes physical and mental problems such as anemia, attention deficits, learning disabilities, and school absenteeism. Children who are not properly treated are permanently affected.

WHO adopted in 2001 a resolution to target all countries where helminth infections occur most frequently. The project called Partners for Parasite Control (PPC) aims to regularly treat at least 75% of all school children at risk by the year 2010. PPC also supports local health facilities so that they have adequate supplies of anti-helminth drugs and perform regular treatment to high-risk groups.

SEE ALSO *Bilharzia (Schistosomiasis); Helminth Disease; Roundworm (Ascariasis) infection.*

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Division of Parasitic Diseases states that hookworm infection cause any serious health problems and that "The most serious results of hookworm infection are the development of anemia and protein deficiency caused by blood loss. When children are continuously infected by many worms, the loss of iron and protein can retard growth and mental development, sometimes irreversibly. Hookworm infection can also cause tiredness, difficulty breathing, enlargement of the heart, and irregular heartbeat. Sometimes hookworm infection is fatal, especially among infants."

SOURCE: *The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Division of Parasitic Diseases*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Holland, Celia V., and Malcolm W. Kennedy, eds. *The Geohelminths: Ascaris, Trichuris, and Hookworm.* Boston, MA: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2002.

Periodicals

Hotez, Peter J., et al. "Hookworm Infection." *New England Journal of Medicine.* 351, 8 (August 19, 2004): 799–807.

Web Sites

Division of Parasitic Diseases of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Hookworm Infection." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/hookworm/factsht_hookworm.htm> (accessed March 14, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Partners for Parasite Control (PPC)." <http://www.who.int/wormcontrol/en/> (accessed March 14, 2007).

Host and Vector

Introduction

The terms host and vector refer to the route of transmission of some infectious diseases to humans and animals.

The host is the living being that the bacteria, virus, protozoan, or other disease-causing microorganism normally resides in. Some bird species, for example are normal hosts to arboviruses such as West Nile virus. Typically, the microorganism does little or no harm to the host, which is important if the disease-causing organism is to successfully persist in that host over time. Occasionally, the host population maintains the organism even though some members suffer from infection caused by it. Several species of birds in North America have experienced West Nile infection although they are considered the natural host.

A reservoir host, or simply a reservoir, refers to a living (human, animal, insect, or plant) or non-living (soil, water) entity where a disease-causing organism can normally live and multiply. A host in which a parasite resides to sexual maturity is called a primary host, and a host in which a parasite spends only part of its life cycle or does not reach sexual maturity is called an intermediate host. Certain species of snails, for example, are the intermediate host of the *Schistosoma* larvae that are responsible for causing the disease bilharzia in humans.

A vector is an organism that helps transmit infection from one host to another. For example, the mosquito serves as the vector to infect humans with the West Nile virus. The mosquito acquires the virus from birds when it takes a blood meal. If the same mosquito subsequently feeds on a human, the virus can be transferred, and the result can be West Nile disease in humans.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The host-vector route of transmission is responsible for a number of diseases including several types of encephalitis that sicken humans and horses (Western equine encephalitis, Eastern equine encephalitis, and St. Louis encephalitis). Malaria, which is caused by a number of protozoans of the genus *Plasmodium* (the most common and serious forms of malaria are caused by *P. falciparum* and *P. vivax*) is also a vector-borne disease. The vector for transmission of the malaria protozoa is also the mosquito. Typically, the host is another human whose blood harbors the protozoan. As with encephalitis, the mosquito acquires the microbe when it feeds on the infected host, and transfers the microbe to a susceptible human host when it seeks another blood meal.

Mosquitoes also function as the vectors in the transmission of arbovirus species that cause Yellow fever and Dengue fever in humans. Other examples of potential disease vectors include flies, mites, fleas, ticks, rats, skunks, and even dogs.

Scope and Distribution

The host-vector route of disease transmission occurs globally. Some diseases are confined to certain regions of the world. One example is malaria, which is associated with equatorial regions. Malaria's influence is huge; the World Health Organization estimates that 350 to 500 million cases of malaria and up to three million deaths occur each year. Other vector-borne diseases can be present even in colder climates. For example, West Nile disease is increasing in Canada.

Treatment and Prevention

The best way to eliminate host-vector diseases is to break the vector-mediated chain of transmission between the infected host and the susceptible person or animal that will become a new host. In the case of malaria, for example, spraying areas that are breeding grounds for mosquitoes can help curb their population, and so reduce the likelihood of disease transmission. In some malaria-prone areas of Africa, the use of dichlorodiphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT) is being advocated as a means of mosquito control. Despite the infamous history of DDT due to its overuse and resulting environmental harm, its controlled application may be a relatively safe means of host-vector control.

Another means of malaria host-vector control that is becoming more widely practiced is the use of mosquito netting to protect people while they sleep. This inexpensive and easy-to-use method prevents the mosquito from feeding on a sleeping person and interrupts the transmission path of the *Plasmodium* protozoan.

Similarly, protective clothing can minimize the chance that a vector will be able to get access to unexposed skin.

More exotic vector control approaches are being explored by scientists. An example is an ongoing program to breed and release male mosquitoes that cannot breed into malaria-prone regions. The intention is that, since malaria is transmitted only by female mosquitoes, the lack of availability of a male breeding partner will drive down the female population over time.

Impacts and Issues

Changing the behavior of vectors influences the transmission of a disease. Knowledge of a vector's habitat, life cycle, behavior, and migratory patterns, for example, is vital to efforts to curb the spread of disease. Vector-borne diseases with simple transmission cycles can be difficult to treat and prevent. This is because the vectors are living things that are often capable of moving from one location to another, sometimes over thousands of miles.

Threats from vector-borne diseases with complicated transmission cycles that involve one or more intermediate hosts are sometimes easier to eliminate. This is because breaking only one link in the disease transmission chain will result in fewer infections. Guinea worm disease, for example, infected 3 to 5 million people in Asia and Africa about 20 years ago. Through an international effort, ponds in endemic areas were treated with a simple insecticide that eliminated the intermediate host, a copepod or "water flea", but left the water potable (drinkable). By 2006, cases of Guinea worm infection numbered fewer than 12,000 in Africa, and the disease was eliminated from Asia.

A looming issue for host-vector diseases involves climate change. As vector-borne diseases such as malaria are associated with warmer climates, some researchers have warned that the increasing warming of the Earth's atmosphere could expand the habitat of mosquito species, and so increase the prevalence of mosquito-borne diseases such as malaria.

SEE ALSO *Arthropod-borne Disease; Bloodborne Pathogens; Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Dengue and*

WORDS TO KNOW

INTERMEDIATE HOST: An organism infected by a parasite while the parasite is in a developmental form, not sexually mature.

PRIMARY HOST: The primary host is an organism that provides food and shelter for a parasite while allowing it to become sexually mature, while a secondary host is one occupied by a parasite during the larval or asexual stages of its life cycle.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

IN CONTEXT: REDUCING COSTS AND RISKS OF VECTOR CONTROL

Integrated vector management (IVM) strategies are emerging as part of an effort to achieve effective disease-control at costs countries can afford and at the same time minimize potential negative impacts on biodiversity, ecosystems, and public health (e.g., reduce risks related to pesticides, bioaccumulation of toxic or potentially toxic chemicals).

The World Health Organization (WHO) Global Strategic Framework for Integrated Vector Management defines IVM as a strategy to "improve the efficacy, cost-effectiveness, ecological soundness and sustainability of disease vector control. IVM encourages a multi-disease control approach, integration with other disease control measures and the considered and systematic application of a range of interventions, often in combination and synergistically."

The IVM approach is also designed to reduce the development of vector resistance to vector control measures (e.g., increasing resistance to pesticides).

Cost effectiveness is an important aspect of IVM strategy. For example, officials in Sri Lanka initially indicate that "costs of periodic river flushing to eliminate mosquito breeding habitats compared favourably with the use of insecticide-impregnated bednets as a mosquito-control measure."

SOURCE: *World Health Organization*

Dengue Hemorrhagic Fever; Encephalitis; Malaria; Vector-borne Disease; Zoonoses.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Honigsbaum, Mark. *The Fever Trail: In Search of the Cure for Malaria.* New York: Picador, 2003.

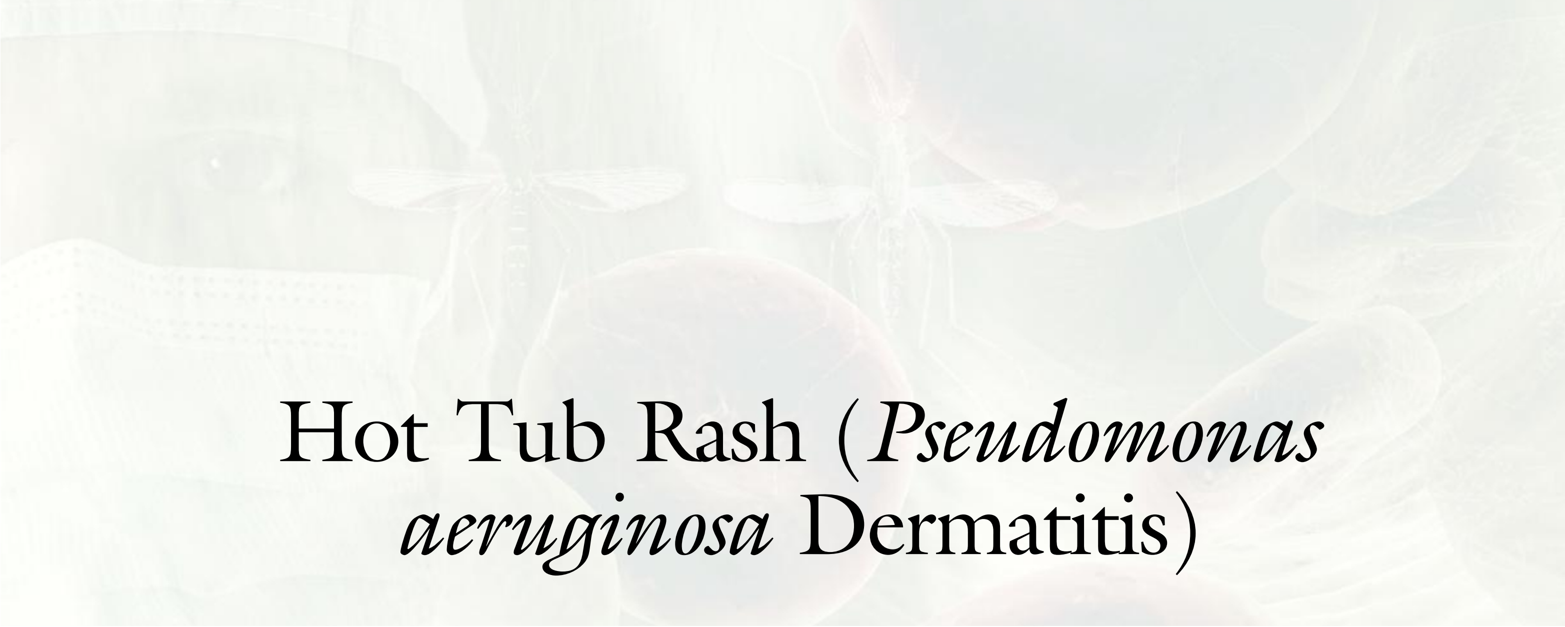
Marquardt, William H. *Biology of Disease Vectors. 2nd ed.* New York: Academic Press, 2004.

Marqulies, Phillip. *West Nile Virus: Epidemics Deadly Diseases throughout History.* New York: Rosen Publishing Group, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Division of Vector-Borne Diseases" <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/> (accessed April 2, 2007).

Brian Hoyle



Hot Tub Rash (*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* Dermatitis)

Introduction

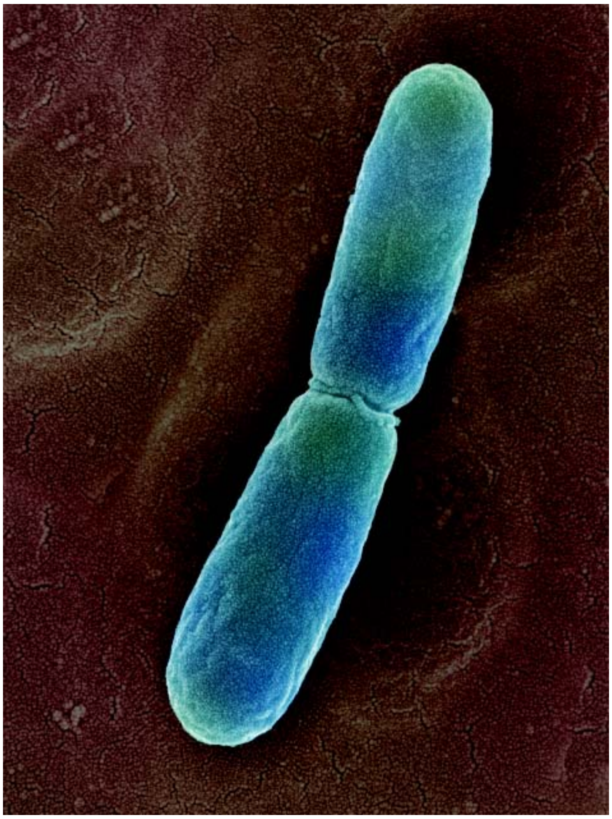
Hot tub rash is a form of skin irritation that results from an infection caused by the bacterium *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. This bacterium is commonly found in environments such as water and soil.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Hot tub rash is a skin infection that is known as dermatitis. The infected skin becomes itchy, and a red rash develops 48 hours to several weeks after contact with contaminated water. The depressions in the skin that surround hair follicles can also become contaminated, which can lead to the development of pus-filled blisters, a condition known as folliculitis. Less commonly, hot tub rash can lead to other and more serious infections in the eye, breast, lung, and urinary tract.

The term hot tub rash reflects the prevalence of the infection in hot tubs, where warm water can provide ideal conditions for the growth of *P. aeruginosa*, but hot tub rash is not exclusive to hot tubs. The skin infection can also occur from swimming in a contaminated lake or pool, and *P. aeruginosa* skin infections have also been documented in waterslides and bathtubs, as well as following the use of diving suits that have not been properly washed between use, particularly when someone has a cut or scratch in the skin. Any opening on the skin surface increases the likelihood that *P. aeruginosa* can establish an infection. Skin that is covered by a bathing suit can develop a more severe infection, as the contaminated water is held in closer and has more prolonged contact with the skin.

Chemicals such as chlorine, which are added to keep the water free from microorganisms, lose their potency more quickly at the elevated water temperatures in hot tubs. Back-yard or commercial hot tubs are sometimes inadequately disinfected, which also creates opportunity for the growth of *P. aeruginosa*.



Pseudomonas aeruginosa is a rod bacteria that causes skin and urinary tract infections and septicemia. It produces a blue-green pigment, pyocyanin, which causes the bluish pus produced by the infections. © Visuals Unlimited/Corbis.

The construction of a hot tub can contribute to *P. aeruginosa* growth. Many hot tubs are made of wood. Even if the tub's inner surface looks smooth, the wood will contain many tiny cracks in which the bacteria can grow. When growing on surfaces, *P. aeruginosa* often produces a sugary coating called an exopolysaccharide. The resulting exopolysaccharide-enclosed population of bacteria (which is

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOFILM: Biofilms are populations of microorganisms that form following the adhesion of bacteria, algae, yeast, or fungi to a surface. These surface growths can be found in natural settings such as on rocks in streams, and in infections such as can occur on catheters. Microorganisms can colonize living and inert natural and synthetic surfaces.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PREVENTION

To ensure safe and healty use, The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that spa users observe the following rules to protect against recreational water illnesses:

- Refrain from entering a spa when you have diarrhea.
- Avoid swallowing spa water or even getting it into your mouth.
- Shower or bathe with soap before entering the spa.
- Observe limits, if posted, on the maximum allowable number of bathers.
- Exclude children less than 5 years of age from using spas.
- If pregnant, consult a physician before spa use, particularly in the first trimester.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

called a biofilm) can become very resistant to chlorine and other disinfectants. Bacteria can slough off from the biofilm into the water; if someone is in the hot tub there can be an opportunity for the skin infection to develop. Even plastic hot tubs can have surface-adhering *P. aeruginosa* biofilms.

Scope and Distribution

As *P. aeruginosa* is widespread in the environment, hot tub rash is also common. In a hospital, the infection is more of a concern, especially for patients with malfunctioning immune systems. In these patients, *P. aeruginosa* often causes infection in the moist tissues of the lung.

There is no age, race, gender, or geographical influence on the occurrence of hot tub rash.

Treatment and Prevention

Hot tub rash tends to clear without treatment in several weeks. However, some people can benefit from the use of an antibiotic-containing ointment that is rubbed onto the affected areas of the skin. This treatment may be ineffective, however, as some strains of *P. aeruginosa* are resistant to a variety of antibiotics.

For people at higher risk of more serious infection (such as those with an inefficient immune system), treatment with the antibiotic ciprofloxacin can be useful.

Hot tub rash can be prevented by avoiding environments where *P. aeruginosa*-contaminated water might be found. Most commonly, this means avoiding the use of a domestic hot tub, or not using a crowded hot tub. If this is unrealistic, then regular disinfection of the tub water and cleaning of the inside surface of the tub should be considered essential maintenance.

Impacts and Issues

While hot tub rash is often an inconvenience rather than a health concern, the infection can be serious for someone whose immune system is less able to fight off infection. In such people *P. aeruginosa* becomes an opportunistic pathogen—an organism that does not normally cause disease but which is capable of causing disease under the appropriate circumstances.

In an public environments such as hospitals or spas, whirlpools and hot tubs need to be regularly maintained and the water tested for the presence of microorganisms. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends maintaining the free-chlorine or bromine level of the hot tub or pool between 2–5 parts per million and maintaining the pH level of the water at 7.5–7.8. As well, the whirlpool or tub should be located in a well-ventilated room, as the agitation of the hot water could create aerosolized bacteria. If the bacteria become aerosolized, they can be inhaled, which can result in a lung infection. The possibility of a lung infection is especially serious for persons who have cystic fibrosis, since *P. aeruginosa* can establish a persistent infection that can progressively damage the lung tissue.

SEE ALSO *Swimmer's Ear and Swimmer's Itch (Cercarial Dermatitis).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Tortora, Gerard J., Berell R. Funke, and Christine L. Case. *Microbiology: An Introduction*. New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2006.

Brunelle, Lynn, and Barbara Ravage. *Bacteria*. Milwaukee: Gareth Stevens Publishing, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Hot Tub Rash." <http://www.cdc.gov/healthyswimming/derm.htm> (accessed March 1, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

HPV (Human Papillomavirus) Infection

Introduction

The human papillomavirus (HPV) grows exclusively in the epithelial cells making up the surface of the skin, including the cervix, vagina, and anus. While HPV infection often causes no symptoms, it sometimes triggers benign tumors known as papillomas or warts on the hands and feet, or in the genital area. Most HPV infections clear up on their own, but they are also capable of causing cancers in the cervix and, more rarely, in the vagina, vulva, penis, and anus. The link between HPV and cancer is not well understood, but the virus could trigger abnormal growth and multiplication in the cells it infects. The genetic material (DNA) of HPV has been found in the majority of cervical cancers studied and the disease is a major killer of women in certain parts of the world. However, there is now a vaccine that can protect girls and young women against the main types of HPV causing both genital warts and cervical cancer.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Over 100 types of HPV have been identified—about 60 of them cause skin warts, while another 40 or so cause

Warts are contagious, yet harmless, skin growths caused by the human papillomavirus (HPV). *CNRI/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

DYSPLASIA: Abnormal changes in tissue or cell development.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term “mortality” comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means “death.” Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., “Rabies has a high mortality.”

PREVALENCE: The actual number of cases of disease (or injury) that exist in a population.

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASE (STD): Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) vary in their susceptibility to treatment, their signs and symptoms, and the consequences if they are left untreated. Some are caused by bacteria. These usually can be treated and cured. Others are caused by viruses and can typically be treated but not cured. More than 15 million new cases of STD are diagnosed annually in the United States.

genital warts. Most people with HPV infection will not have symptoms, although they can still transmit the infection to others. Skin warts are either flat (shallow) or plantar (deep), occurring mainly on the hands and feet in children and young adults. Sometimes papillomas grow in the mouth or on the larynx (voicebox). Anogenital warts can occur anywhere in the external genitalia, in the vagina, on the cervix, or around the anus. They consist of soft, moist, pink or flesh-colored swellings. In an otherwise healthy person, these warts are benign. Ninety percent of anogenital warts are caused by HPV type 6 or HPV type 11.

HPV can also cause cervical cancer, with HPV type 16 or HPV type 18 being involved in around 70% of cases. Microscopic evaluation of cells from the cervix taken in a Pap test (a routine screen for cervical cancer) can reveal a series of changes that may lead to cervical cancer. The first stage is known as dysplasia, an abnormality that often reverts to normal by the time a second test is taken. However, these changes may progress to a condition known as cervical intraepithelial dysplasia (CIN), which is generally regarded as being precancerous and likely to develop into cervical cancer within ten years, if left untreated. Most genital HPV infections do not develop into cervical cancer, however.

HPV infection is transmitted by skin contact and, in the case of genital warts, through sexual contact, usually involving intercourse. Rarely, a mother can transmit an HPV infection to her newborn baby, who may then develop warts in the throat or larynx.

Scope and Distribution

Infection with HPV is very common around the world. It is estimated that 50–75% of all those who have ever had sexual intercourse will have HPV infection at some time in their lives, although this will usually not cause symptoms. About 1% of sexually active men and women have genital warts. A recent study for the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) revealed that the prevalence of HPV infection among women aged 14–59 in the United States is probably higher than previously estimated. Vaginal swabs were tested for the presence of HPV DNA and found to be positive in 27% of the group. In women aged 20–24, the rate of HPV infection was 44.8% and in the 14–24 age group, the rate was 33.8%. When the infections were analyzed by HPV type, 3.4% of the women were infected with type 6, 11, 16, and 18, which are responsible for the majority of genital warts and cervical cancer. If extrapolated to the whole U.S. population, this study suggests that the number of HPV infections among women aged 14–59 is 7.5 million, rather than the 4.5 million previously estimated.

Men also can get HPV and, for both sexes, the risk of infection goes up as the number of sexual partners increases. Having sex with someone who has had many sexual partners is also risky. In other words, the risk of HPV goes up with the number of possible exposures to the virus.

Globally, HPV infection exacts a significant toll in the form of cervical cancer. One in ten of all cancers in women, worldwide, are cervical cancer. It is the most commonly diagnosed cancer among women in southern Africa and Central America. The disease causes more than 273,000 deaths every year, accounting for 9% of cancer mortality in women.

Treatment and Prevention

Often, no treatment is needed for the symptoms of HPV infection, because both skin and genital warts tend to disappear over time. Ninety percent are gone within two years. If warts are large or painful, they can be destroyed by burning (electrocautery), freezing (cryotherapy), and chemical treatment. Laryngeal papillomas can be surgically removed.

Sexual abstinence is the only sure way of avoiding genital HPV infection. Limiting the number of sexual contacts and using condoms will provide some protection. Women who are sexually active should have regular Pap smears to check for the early signs of cervical cancer. In countries that have a national screening program, cervical cancer has become far less common than previously and cases tend to occur among women who have never had a Pap test. Finally, a vaccine against HPV types 6, 11, 16 and 18 has recently (2006) become available.

Impacts and Issues

Gardasil®, the HPV vaccine, was approved for use in the United States in June 2006, and is recommended for use in girls aged 11–12. The vaccine has been shown to be safe and effective in females aged 9–26. Research is ongoing into whether the vaccine works for older women and boys, and how long the protection lasts. The vaccine is made from the proteins that compose the outer coat of the HPV virus. Research has shown that it affords the highest level of protection against genital warts and cervical cancer among those who have not been exposed to HPV infection already—that is, those who have not become sexually active. Females who have been exposed may gain some protection, but the vaccine cannot cure any existing infection. It is important for those who have been vaccinated to still receive regular Pap tests, because the current vaccine does not protect against all the HPV types that can cause cervical cancer. If Pap screening and the HPV vaccine became available worldwide, it is possible that cervical cancer might be eradicated.

In early 2007, Texas Governor Rick Perry issued an executive order requiring HPV vaccination for all schoolgirls entering the sixth grade for the 2008–2009 school year. With this order, Texas became the first state to require vaccination against HPV. The governor's order was intended to bypass political objections in the state legislature and local some communities, including objections by parents' groups to giving young girls a vaccine that prevents a complication of a sexually transmitted disease before the girls become sexually active. Perry also ordered Texas health agencies to provide the vaccine free or at a reduced cost to girls without health insurance, as well as to those without health coverage for routine vaccinations. As of April 2007, the state legislature was considering a new bill that would remove the HPV vaccine from the list of required vaccinations for Texas school children, and the debate about mandatory HPV vaccination remains unresolved.

SEE ALSO *Cancer and Infectious Disease; Sexually Transmitted Diseases.*

IN CONTEXT: SOCIAL AND PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY

The Division of Sexually Transmitted Disease (STD) Prevention of the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) states that "the surest way to eliminate risk for genital HPV infection is to refrain from any genital contact with another individual."

For individuals who take the risks of sexual activity the CDC states that "a long-term, mutually monogamous relationship with an uninfected partner is the strategy most likely to prevent future genital HPV infections. However, it is difficult to determine whether a partner who has been sexually active in the past is currently infected."

The CDC further recommends that "for those choosing to be sexually active and who are not in long-term mutually monogamous relationships, reducing the number of sexual partners and choosing a partner less likely to be infected may reduce the risk of genital HPV infection. Partners less likely to be infected include those who have had no or few prior sex partners."

With regard to condom use, the CDC states "HPV infection can occur in both male and female genital areas that are covered or protected by a latex condom, as well as in areas that are not covered. While the effect of condoms in preventing HPV infection is unknown, condom use has been associated with a lower rate of cervical cancer, an HPV-associated disease."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Division of Sexually Transmitted Disease (STD)*

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

The Division of Sexually Transmitted Disease (STD) Prevention of the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) states that "every year, about 5.5 million people acquire a genital HPV infection. While there is no way to know for sure if HPV is increasing, there are no signs of a significant decline. With improved testing technology, researchers have been able to get a much clearer picture of the true extent of HPV in certain groups in recent years, and the infection is even more common than originally asserted."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Division of Sexually Transmitted Disease (STD)*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Periodicals

Dunne, E.F., et al. "Prevalence of HPV Infection Among Females in the United States." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 297 (February 28, 2007): 813–819.

Web Sites

American Cancer Society. "Frequently Asked Questions About Human Papilloma Virus (HPV) Vaccines." <http://www.cancer.org/docroot/CRI/content/CRI_2_6x_FAQ_HPV_Vaccines.asp> (accessed February 25, 2007).

Cancer Research UK. "Cervical Cancer. International Statistics." <http://info.cancerresearchuk.org/cancerstats/types/cervix/international/> (accessed February 25, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Genital HPV Infection—CDC Fact Sheet." May 2004. <http://www.cdc.gov/std/hpv/STDFact-HPV.htm> (accessed February 25, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Immigration and Infectious Disease

Introduction

Every day, an estimated two million people cross an international boundary. Many of these people are simply travelers who have planned short visits. Others are immigrants, either refugees or voluntary migrants. Some migrants never cross national borders but are displaced within their own nations. As of 2007, there are an estimated 25–45 million internally displaced persons (IDPs) worldwide. IDPs typically migrate or are forced to move because of war, ecological disaster, disease, or economic collapse. This increasing movement of people across the globe plays a significant role in the spread of disease.

Since antiquity, health hazards have moved across long distances through movement of people. Travel, trade, exploration, and war forged nations but also spread disease. Travel by horse or on foot was slow, serving as a limited barrier to the transport of infectious disease—those who fell ill often died or were no longer ill by the time they reached other population centers. Ships spread diseases faster as a disease could linger on ship for months, infecting whole crews. Also, the large cargo load of ships posed a unique disease risk. In the case of the Black Death (plague), rats aboard cargo ships likely hosted fleas responsible for spreading plague throughout Asia, the Middle East, and Europe. In the modern era, the spread of air travel and its reduced costs have greatly increased the number of travelers as well as heightened the risk of disease. Air travel permits infected persons and diseases to reach new populations—often in distant locations—within hours.

Immigration raises many of the same disease issues as voluntary travel. However, immigrants also have unique health needs. Some immigrant populations come from areas with parasites or other infectious diseases that are endemic to their homeland, but have been eliminated in the industrialized world. Immigrants may not have had access to routine healthcare in their home countries. Providing effective healthcare to immigrant groups requires training healthcare professionals to recognize the health needs of diverse immigrant groups.

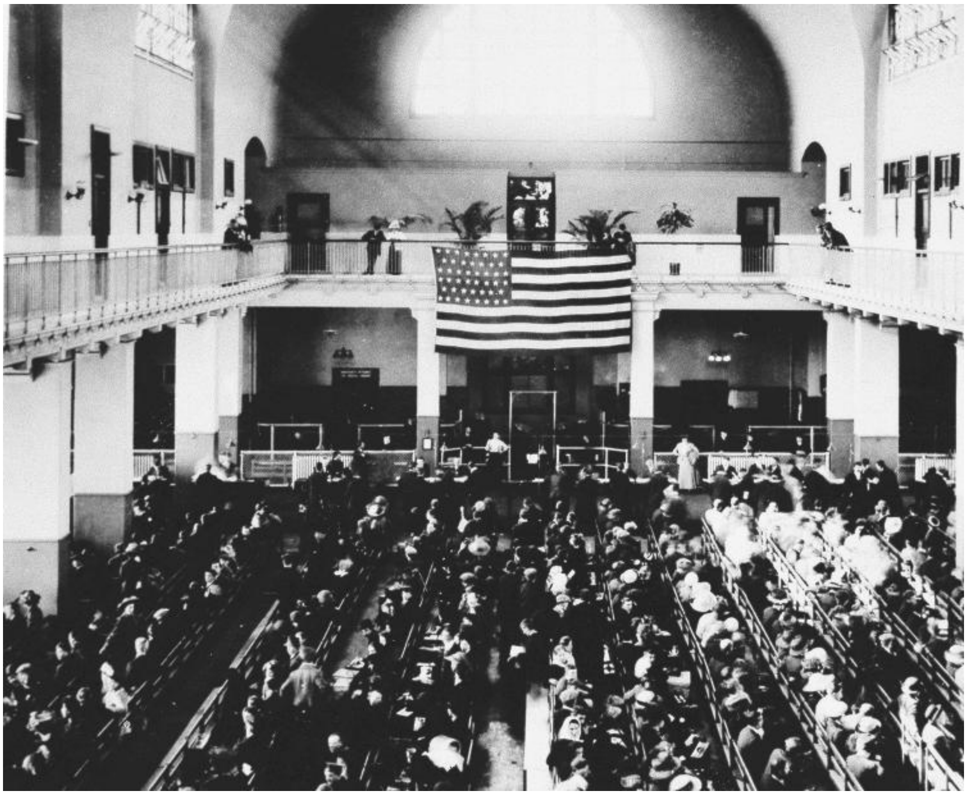
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Cholera, dysentery, typhoid, tuberculosis, HIV/AIDS, and malaria are only a few of the infectious diseases that migration and immigration have helped to spread. Illnesses that have been largely eliminated from some areas, such as malaria or tuberculosis, can be reintroduced by migrants, and such cases of disease are labeled imported cases.

Cholera, dysentery, and typhoid are major killers that are spread by poor sanitation. Densely packed refugee camps with improper sanitation and poor hygienic conditions foster outbreaks of infectious disease. In 2007, one person died and 30 others were hospitalized after a cholera outbreak at a Congolese refugee camp in Uganda. The refugees were subsequently advised by Ugandan officials to observe precautionary measures like washing hands, avoiding raw foods, and using clean utensils. These measures, as well as construction of latrines, helped reduce some incidence of infectious disease. Such measures are not always possible at severely underresourced, overcrowded, and hastily constructed camps. Food shortages and malnutrition in refugee and IDP camps also contribute to the spread of disease.

Scope and Distribution

It is difficult to measure the scope and distribution of infectious disease spread by immigrants because of reporting difficulties. Health care systems in some countries, including developing nations that have received large numbers of refugees from neighboring nations, are too inadequate to correctly identify diseases and complete the necessary procedures for effective reporting.



Hundreds of immigrants sit in the Great Hall of Ellis Island in New York City awaiting possible entry into the United States. Approximately 16 million hopeful immigrants arrived at Ellis Island between 1892 and 1924; 20 percent were refused entry due to poor health or their political backgrounds. *AP Images.*

However, the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) and the World Health Organization (WHO) have helped identify areas of concern.

Haiti has sent large numbers of economic and political refugees to the United States and to other Caribbean nations. In 2006, the Jamaican Health Ministry reported that there was a link between Haitian immigrants and a recent outbreak of malaria in Jamaica. DNA testing by the CDC tied an outbreak in Kingston to a single source consistent with the *Falciparum* malaria parasite found in Haiti. At least 302 Jamaicans were infected. The government conducted an island-wide surveillance of breeding sites for the *Anopheles* (malaria-spreading) mosquito and destroyed about 450 *Anopheles* breeding sites in 256 communities.

Tuberculosis, an infectious disease that in some forms is resistant to treatment, is spread through air droplets expelled when infected persons cough, sneeze, speak, or sing. It had largely been eliminated from some nations, notably the United States and the United Kingdom, until immigration brought it back. In 2001, 61.4% of all tuberculosis cases in the Netherlands occurred among foreign citizens. Tuberculosis transmission during air travel has been documented by WHO.

Varicella, the chickenpox virus, is yet another disease that can be spread by immigrants. In tropical countries, varicella does not generally infect in early childhood as it does in temperate zones. In the tropics, infections typically occur in the late teens and 20s, meaning immigrants from those countries don't have the same high level of immunity to chickenpox as do young adults who grew up in temperate countries.

Treatment and Prevention

The International Health Regulations (IHR), a WHO-designed legal instrument, aims to provide maximum security against the international spread of diseases with a minimum interference with world traffic. The first IHR, approved in 1969, only targeted cholera, yellow fever, and plague. The rise of globalization prompted a revised IHR, which took effect on June 15, 2007. Among its many measures, the IHR establishes a single code of procedures and practices for routine public health measures at international airports and ports and some ground crossings. The regulations focus on ensuring early detection, confirmation, investigation and rapid response for any emergencies of international concern.

However, some nations are having difficulty with the IHR. As the deadline for the enforcement of the IHR approached, Kenya's borders continued to be frontiers for the spread of communicable diseases. Meanwhile, an unprecedented resurgence of communicable diseases such as tuberculosis, malaria, avian influenza, and SARS is causing international concern. Kenya, as one example, reported outbreaks of polio and Rift Valley fever in 2006. Kenya is hosting refugees from Somalia, Sudan, Rwanda, and the Congo.

Impacts and Issues

Infectious diseases do not recognize borders. Accordingly, nations need to improve their medical surveillance to safeguard the health of their citizens. The IHR is one step in this direction. Screening and immunization programs would protect the health of immigrants and established residents. Canadian medical researchers have recommended that family doctors should ask young adult immigrants and refugees whether they have ever had chickenpox, test those who answer in the negative, and offer to vaccinate those who are susceptible to the disease.

Somalia until recently had an HIV prevalence rate of about one percent, which was lower than that of many African countries. After much cross-border movement of HIV-infected refugees from Ethiopia, the HIV infection rates in Somalia subsequently increased. By 2006, United Nations AIDS (UNAIDS) officials expressed fears that Somalia will experience a general AIDS epidemic within ten years. Condoms are generally unavailable in Somalia and there is a lack of adequate healthcare. Other African nations have experienced similar patterns of disease progression with HIV. Eleven African nations have HIV prevalence rates over 13%.

Political issues are also affecting international public health. Taiwan lacks full membership in WHO because of an historically strained relationship with mainland China. Taiwan has had more success than any other East Asian country in fighting H5N1, or avian influenza. Nevertheless, WHO has refused Taiwan's applications to attend avian flu-related international conferences, thus preventing Taiwan from effectively sharing its valuable experience in disease prevention. According to Taiwan's National Immigration Agency, an average of 1,200 people travel between Taiwan and China each day, and the number of Taiwanese traveling to the United States averages more than 1,600 per day.

In May 2007, a man with a strain of tuberculosis that is highly resistant to current drug therapies was the subject of the first federal order for isolation issued in the United States for over forty years after he re-entered the country from Canada. The man had traveled by air among several countries including France and Italy against the advice of his physicians who determined that he had tuberculosis. While abroad, medical personnel determined that his tuberculosis was the extremely resistant type (XDR-TB), and finally persuaded him to seek medical care, but only after he had returned to the United States. The CDC then began intensive efforts to track possible contacts that were in close contact with the infected man, including his fellow aircraft passengers and flight attendants.

The United Nations estimated that there were nearly 200 million international migrants in 2006—approximately 3% of the total global population. The annual number of migrants worldwide is likely increase. While immigration has the potential to spread disease, it also has brought attention to many health issues. Industrialized nations with large immigrant populations, such as the United States, have renewed interest in combating neglected diseases (diseases rare or eliminated in developed nations) across the globe. For example, international cooperative projects have sought to reduce incidence of

WORDS TO KNOW

IMMIGRATION: The relocation of people to a different region or country for their native lands; also refers to the movement of organisms into an area in which they were previously absent.

IMPORTED CASE OF DISEASE: Imported cases of disease happen when an infected person who is not yet showing symptoms travels from his home country to another country and develops symptoms of his disease there.

INTERNATIONAL HEALTH REGULATIONS: International regulations introduced by the World Health Organization (WHO) that aim to control, monitor, prevent, protect against and respond to the spread of disease across national borders while avoiding unnecessary interference with international movement and trade.

ISOLATION: Isolation, within the health community, refers to the precautions that are taken in the hospital to prevent the spread of an infectious agent from an infected or colonized patient to susceptible persons. Isolation practices are designed to minimize the transmission of infection.

MIGRATION: In medicine, migration is the movement of a disease symptom from one part of the body to another, apparently without cause.

PREVALENCE: The actual number of cases of disease (or injury) that exist in a population.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

tuberculosis and endemic parasitic diseases in Central and South America, as well as encourage screening and treatment for immigrants from those regions.

■ Primary Source Connection

The letter below to the editor of the journal *Pediatrics* highlights the special vaccination needs of children immigrating to the United States. Since Laurie C. Miller, a Boston-based physician specializing in internationally adopted children, wrote this letter in 1999, more than 100,000 additional children have been adopted by adults living in the United States. Miller is an associate professor of pediatrics and director of the International Adoption Clinic at Tufts University School of Medicine. She is the author of *The Handbook of International Adoption Medicine: A Guide for Physicians, Parents, and Providers.*

Internationally Adopted Children—Immigration Status

To the Editor,—

The number of internationally adopted children arriving in the United States has increased dramatically (13,620 in 1997, compared with 9,945 in 1986). Many children have received vaccines in their birth countries; however, the efficacy [effectiveness] of the vaccines and the accuracy of the records are sometimes questionable. Hostetter, et al. have reported protective diphtheria and tetanus titers in only 38 percent of Chinese, Russian, or Eastern European children with written evidence of age-appropriate vaccines.

We have observed that polio titers also may not be protective. Four children in our clinic with written evidence of 3 to 6 polio vaccines were found to have incompletely protective titers. The children were from Lithuania (1), Russia (2), and China (1). They ranged in age from 12 months to 8 years. In 3 children, protective titers to Type 1 and Type 2 polio were found, but no titers to Type 3 polio were measured. In one child, protective titers to Type 1 were absent, but were present for Types 2 and 3.

Although the *Red Book* recommends that "written documentation should be accepted as evidence of prior immunization," clinicians caring for internationally adopted children should be aware of the possibility of incomplete immunity to polio, and should either revaccinate or verify immunity to all 3 types of polio. Revaccination or verification of protective titers should be considered for all immunizations in this population.

LAURIE C. MILLER, MD
International Adoption Clinic
New England Medical Center
Boston, MA 02111

Laurie C. Miller

MILLER, LAURIE C. "INTERNATIONALLY ADOPTED CHILDREN–IMMIGRATION STATUS." LETTER TO THE EDITOR. *PEDIATRICS.* 103.5 (MAY 1999): P1078(1).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

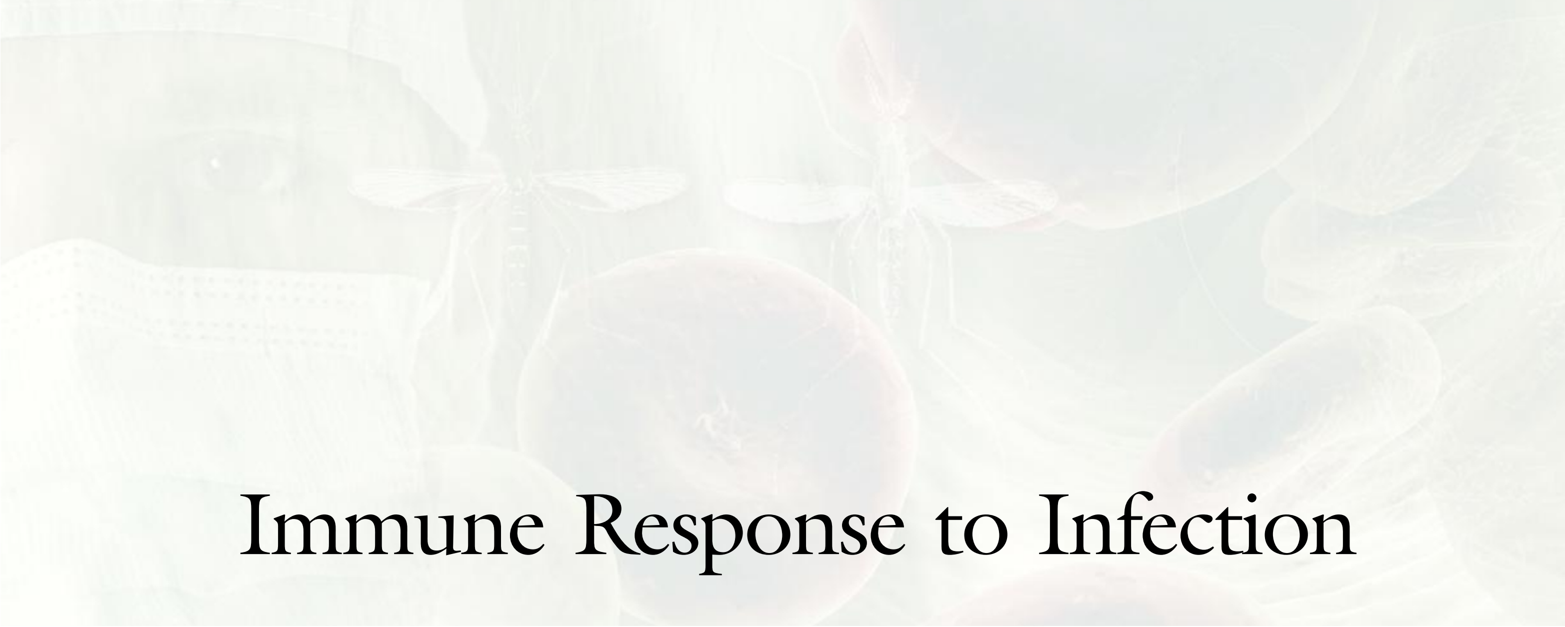
Clark, Robert P. *Global Life Systems: Population, Food, and Disease in the Process of Globalization.* Lanham, MD: Rowman and Littlefield, 2000.

Web Sites

World Health Organization. "International Health Regulations." 2006 <http://www.who.int/csr/ihr/en/> (accessed May 17, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Tuberculosis and Air Travel: Guidelines for Prevention and Control." 2006 <http://www.who.int/tb/publications/2006/who_htm_tb_2006_363.pdf> (accessed May 17, 2007).

Caryn E. Neumann



Immune Response to Infection

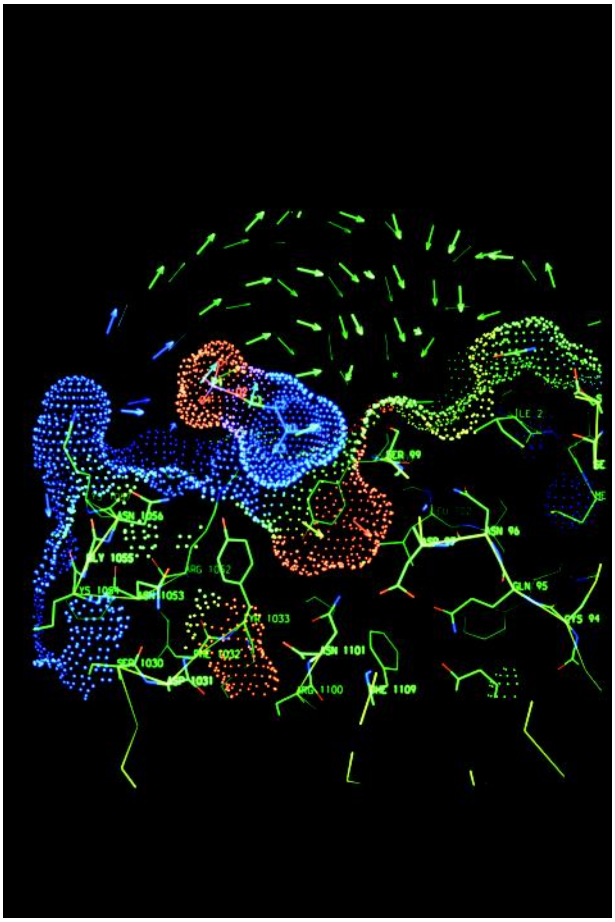
Introduction

The immune system is a series of cells, tissues, organs, and processes in the body that differentiates the self from foreign bodies, fights infections, and develops immunity against future attack. The function of the immune system is to identify pathogens (disease-causing organisms) of all types and to destroy them through immune processes. Bacteria, viruses, fungi, parasites, cancerous cells, and single-celled organisms such as amoebas can all attack the body and cause disease. The immune system must recognize and act on these pathogens without attacking its own healthy tissues, thereby causing illness. The immune system also works to keep dangerous pathogens out of the body. This is an important function of the skin and mucous membranes, which have high concentrations of immune system cells: resisting, trapping, and killing microorganisms, preventing them from causing disease.

Scientific Foundations

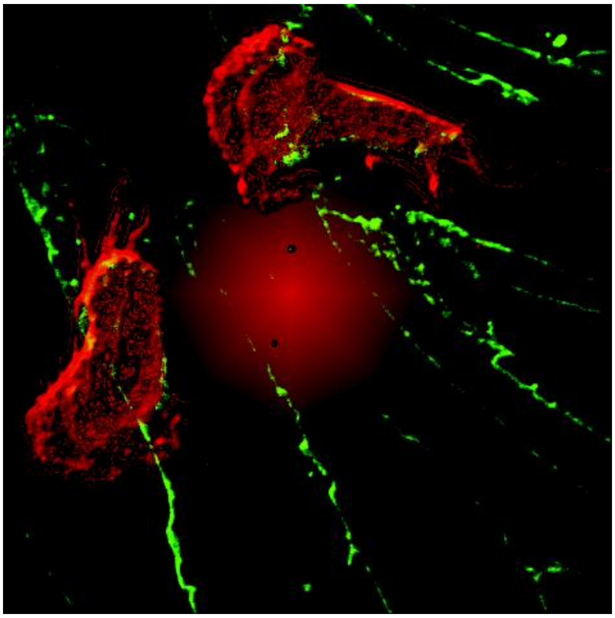
One of the most important jobs of the immune system is to differentiate the self from the non-self. Almost all the cells of the body have specific proteins on their surfaces that identify them as "self." This is referred to at the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) protein. Foreign bodies, like bacteria, viruses, or cells belonging to another organism lack the appropriate MHC protein and are thus identified as "non-self." The healthy immune system reacts to things identified as non-self and not to things identified as self.

Many organs in the body are regarded as part of the immune system because they produce, transport, coordinate, or help mature immune cells. The bone marrow is often considered first because it is the source of all blood and immune cells. The thymus is the developing ground for T-cells (a lymphocyte, or white blood cell that fights pathogens), where large numbers of unsuitable cells undergo apoptosis (programmed cell death) for each mature T-cell that is produced. One of the functions of the spleen is to store and release generalized immune cells to respond to infection. Other lymphoid organs, such as the tonsils, adenoids, and appendix, are



The first sightings of actual antibody-antigen docking are seen via X-ray crystallography. © *Ted Spiegel/Corbis.*

This colored scanning electron micrograph (SEM) shows a macrophage white blood cell (brown) attacking a group of *Borrelia* bacteria (blue, lower left). The macrophage extends a long pseudopod toward the bacteria prior to engulfing and destroying them. Several diseases are caused by various types of *Borrelia* bacteria, including Lyme disease and relapsing fever. *Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

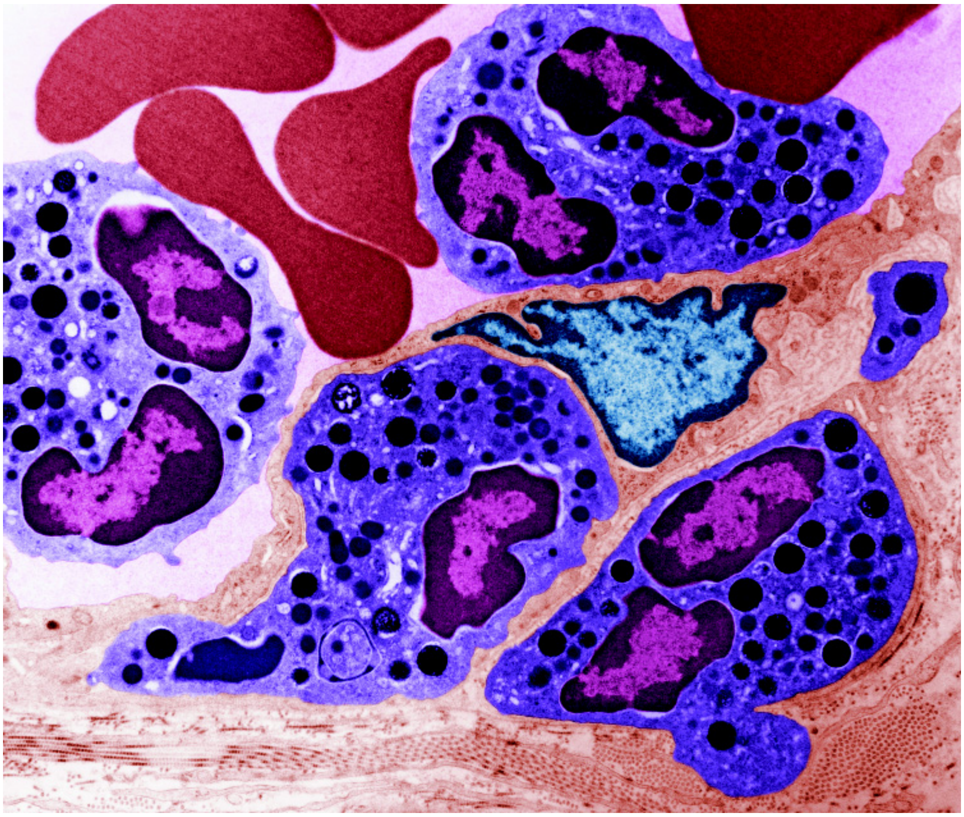


A confocal light micrograph shows white blood cells (red) moving through the intact walls of a blood vessel (green) in a process known as diapedesis. This is characteristic of the inflammatory response that occurs at the site of an injury. The cells leave the blood for the surrounding tissues so that they can destroy any invading organisms that may be present. *David Becker/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

placed strategically in the respiratory and digestive tracts to intercept infectious agents before they enter further into the body.

The lymphatic system is a complex network of vessels and nodes that transport lymph, a fluid very similar to blood plasma. The lymph system connects the organs of the immune system with one another and with the rest of the body, carrying immune cells to their necessary locations. Lymph nodes are small compartments that provide space for immune cells to interact with antigens and begin their response. They also allow transfer of immune cells between the lymph system and the circulatory system. Unlike the blood, which is pumped around the body at high pressure by the heart, the lymph fluid is slow-moving and at low pressure, lacking a central pump. The lymph fluid is extracted from the body's tissues by osmosis, and then is transported around the body by the movement of muscles. Because of its slow-moving nature, lymph fluid can sometimes build up in the limbs, causing swelling and the possibility of infection. This is called lymphedema.

Anything that the immune system responds to, whether it is a microbe, protein, virus, or fragment of a pathogen, is called an antigen. The presence of antigens activates specific immune cells to destroy the pathogen and



A neutrophil, a type of white blood cell, is shown as it moves from inside a capillary of an endothelial cell into the site of an infection in neighboring connective tissue. Neutrophils attack invaders and engulf them by phagocytosis. *© Visuals Unlimited/Corbis.*

teach the immune system to recognize it in the future. There are two major kinds of immune cells: those that react generally to all pathogens and those that are keyed to a specific disease-causing agent. Generalized immune cells include neutrophils, which consume pathogens and kill them with powerful chemical granules, and then send signals to other cells. Macrophages then arrive to consume the foreign bodies. Natural killer cells also use toxic granules to kill disease agents, responding to cells lacking the correct MHC proteins.

Lymphocytes, also known as white blood cells, are produced in the bone marrow and are present in the blood. From the bone marrow, certain lymphocytes known as T-cells travel to an organ known as the thymus to mature. Lymphocytes are also carried around the body by the lymphatic system. Two major types of lymphocytes react to specific pathogens. B-cells create antibodies, while T-cells destroy invaders and coordinate the overall immune response. Antibodies are special markers that lock onto antigens and alert the T-cells to destroy them. Cells use proteins called cytokines to communicate that they are injured and to organize immune cells.

After a pathogen has been detected and destroyed, a small number of antibodies and specialized T-cells remain to guard against future attack. When that same pathogen is encountered again, the number of specialized cells multiplies to mount an immune response.

■ Impacts and Issues

The generalized immune system cells provide innate immunity, the ability to identify a foreign body and destroy it without having been exposed to it previously. Once the immune system has encountered a pathogen, activated its immune cells, and developed antibodies, the body is said to have developed acquired (or adaptive) immunity. Vaccines provide resistance from diseases that the body has not encountered by causing the production of antibodies. Thus, vaccines induce a kind of acquired immunity. Nursing infants also obtain antibodies and immune system proteins from their mothers when they breast-feed. This is widely recognized as one of the benefits of nursing, since the immune system of infants is immature at birth.

One of the first bodily responses to infection or injury is inflammation, the familiar redness, swelling, heat, and pain associated with trauma. Inflammation is initiated locally by the blood vessels in the infected area.

WORDS TO KNOW

ACQUIRED (ADAPTIVE) IMMUNITY: Immunity is the ability to resist infection and is sub-divided into innate immunity, which an individual is born with, and acquired, or adaptive, immunity, which develops according to circumstances and is targeted to a specific pathogen. There are two types of acquired immunity, known as active and passive. Active immunity is either humoral, involving production of antibody molecules against a bacterium or virus, or cell-mediated, where T-cells are mobilized against infected cells. Infection and immunization can both induce acquired immunity. Passive immunity is induced by injection of the serum of a person who is already immune to a particular infection.

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ANTIGEN: Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

CYTOKINE: Cytokines are a family of small proteins that mediate an organism's response to injury or infection. Cytokines operate by transmitting signals between cells in an organism. Minute quantities of cytokines are secreted, each by a single cell type, and regulate functions in other cells by binding with specific receptors. Their interactions with the receptors produce secondary signals that inhibit or enhance the action of certain genes within the cell. Unlike endocrine hormones, which can act throughout the body, most cytokines act locally near the cells that produced them.

INNATE IMMUNITY: Innate immunity is the resistance against disease that an individual is born with, as distinct from acquired immunity that develops with exposure to infectious agents.

LYMPHOCYTE: A type of white blood cell; includes B and T lymphocytes. A type of white blood cell that functions as part of the lymphatic and immune systems by stimulating antibody formation to attack specific invading substances.

MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX (MHC): The proteins that protrude from the surface of a cell that identify the cell as "self." In humans, the proteins coded by the genes of the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) include human leukocyte antigens (HLA), as well as other proteins. HLA proteins are present on the surface of most of the body's cells and are important in helping the immune system distinguish "self" from "non-self" molecules, cells, and other objects.

NEUTROPHIL: An immune cell that releases a bacteria-killing chemical; neutrophils are prominent in the inflammatory response. A type of white blood cell that phagocytizes foreign microorganisms; also releases lysozyme.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

The activated vessels release fluids, which cause the swelling, as well as cytokines, which send signals to the immune system. This causes white blood cells of all types to rush to the area. The white blood cells begin acting on pathogens in their customary ways, identifying and consuming pathogens and creating antibodies. The cytotoxic (toxic to cells) chemicals present in neutrophils and other granulocytes are also responsible for reinforcing the inflammatory response. Inflammation can become harmful when it moves from a localized response to a systemic condition. Some heart problems, asthma, blood vessel disease, colitis (bowel disease), arthritis, fibromyalgia, and nephritis (kidney disease) are all associated with excessive or inappropriate inflammation.

Disorders of the immune system can cause serious disease. HIV is a well-known virus that attacks the helper T-cells, which activate and manage immune response. Once levels of helper T-cells fall to sufficiently low levels, the normal immune response breaks down and the victim becomes more susceptible to opportunistic infections. Many types of autoimmune diseases are the result of the immune system attacking the body. Crohn's disease, type I diabetes, rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, celiac disease, and Addison's disease are among the serious conditions associated with misdirected immune response. It should be noted that some developmental processes and the destruction of cancer require the immune system to act upon the self, and so not all autoimmune responses are harmful.

All organisms require defense from invasive pathogens. In humans and other vertebrates, the intricate and multi-layered protection provided by the organs, cells, proteins, and chemicals of the immune systems provides resistance to many kinds of attack. Even single-celled organisms use chemical substances to defend themselves. The proper function of the immune system is necessary for the health of the organism, avoiding both infection and autoimmune disease. Without the immune system, the body would be susceptible to endless attack, shortening lifespan or even making life impossible.

Primary Source Connection

Why an unequal society is an unhealthy society: poor relationships and low status don't just make people envious. They also interfere with the immune system and damage health.

Among those who see the mind as the work of natural selection, there is a sense that the time has come: we are beginning to understand what we really are.

From the construction boom in Darwinian theory, two major propositions have emerged, sustained by confidence that supporting data will increasingly be delivered in hard genetic currency. One is that human nature is evolved and universal; the other is that variations in personality and mental capabilities are substantially inherited. The first speaks of the species and the second about individuals. That leaves society—and here a third big idea is taking shape. In two words, inequality kills.

The phrase (which is that of Richard Wilkinson, one of the leading researchers in the field) sticks out from the current consensus like a sore thumb. For the most part, the major biological ideas concerning human nature and mental capabilities tend to confirm the way the world has turned out. But what might be the biggest biological idea of all, in terms of its implications for human health and happiness, shows the world in a very different light. It finds that society has a profound influence over the length and quality of individuals' lives. The bodies of data are legion and the message from them is clear: unequal societies are unhealthy societies. They are unhealthy not just in the strict sense, but also in the wider one, that they are hostile, suspicious, antagonistic societies.

The most celebrated studies in this school of thought are those conducted among Whitehall civil servants by Michael Marmot, who presents his ideas in popular form in his recent book *Status Syndrome*. He and his colleagues found a steady gradient in rates of death between the lowest and the highest ranks of the civil service hierarchy. Top civil servants were less likely to die of heart disease than their immediate subordinates, and so on down the ladder; at the bottom, the lowest grades were four times more likely to die than the uppermost.

The main features of these findings were that the gradient was continuous, and that only about a third of the effect vanished when account was taken of the usual lifestyle suspects such as smoking and fatty food. This influence upon life and death affected everybody in the hierarchy, according to their position in it. Differences in wealth were an implausible cause in themselves, for most of the civil servants were comfortably off and even the lowest-paid were not poor. The fatal differences were those of status.

What goes for Whitehall seems to go for the world. In rich countries, death rates appear to be related to the differences between incomes, rather than to absolute income levels. The more unequally wealth is distributed, the higher homicide rates are likely to be. Although the findings about income inequality are controversial, the broad picture is consistent; and remains so when softer criteria than death are measured—for instance, trust or social cohesion. Inequality promotes hostility, frustrates trust and damages health.

It is hard to make sense of these findings outside a framework based on the idea of an evolved psychology. However, understanding humans as evolved social beings, made what we are by the selective pressures of life in groups of intelligent beings, it is easy to see that our minds and bodies depend upon our relations with our kind. These relations assume central importance for our health once economic development has minimised the dangers of infectious disease and relegated starvation to history.

Studies of baboons, social primates obliged by their nature to form hierarchies, tell the same story. A state of subordination is stressful; such stress may put the body into a mode that is vital in emergencies but corrosive as a permanent condition, interfering with the immune system and increasing the risk of heart disease. Conversely, human relationships formed on a broadly equal basis may support the immune system and promote health.

An American researcher, Sheldon Cohen, demonstrated this by dripping cold viruses into volunteers' noses, and then asking them about the range and frequency of their social relationships. The more connections they had—with acquaintances, colleagues, neighbours and fellow club members as well as with nearest and dearest—the less likely they were to develop colds.

The relationship between the length of life and its everyday quality is the relationship between its biological and social dimensions, which demands an evolutionary explanation; and the findings seem to demand egalitarian measures. Such Darwinian readings of the data on health and equality do not confound claims that humans are innately unequal. They do, however, lead to different views of how to make the best of people.

So do the prior ethical commitments that evolutionary thinkers bring to their projects. In his book *The Blank Slate*, having stated that all human characteristics are substantially impervious to parental influence, the psychologist Steven Pinker denounces the past century's art and related theories of art. Folk wisdom and popular taste are right, he affirms; "elite art" is perverse and wrong. The argument, built upon the idea that we all share an evolved human nature, is a standard-issue right-leaning castigation of the liberal elite.

Pinker takes his moral bearings from literary reference points, such as *Nineteen Eighty-Four*, that affirm the individual and condemn attempts to impose equality upon humankind's natural inequality. Modern Darwinism of this kind holds that evolutionary processes act on individual organisms rather than upon groups of organisms.

It makes no particularly strong predictions about variations among individual minds. That part of the picture comes from the behaviour geneticists, who compare identical twins with fraternal twins (or study their prize specimens, identical twins who have been reared apart) and conclude that a large proportion of the variation between individuals' personality traits, temperaments and intelligence is due to inherited differences.

Such findings readily lend themselves to a view of the world which attaches great importance to allowing individuals to fulfil their potential, while regarding social programmes to reduce inequalities as vain at best. Equality of opportunity is a fundamental principle; equality of outcome is a pernicious fantasy.

The result is an upbeat fatalism: upbeat about the prospects for scientific understanding of human psychology, fatalistic about the prospects that society might be improved by such understanding, and upbeat, also, in the confidence that society needs no radical alteration. Many of those who dislike such visions collude in them by acquiescing in the assumption that the effects of environments can be altered, but those of genes cannot.

The big idea that provides much of the driving force for evolutionary psychology, the project to describe a universal human nature, is that the sexes have different reproductive interests. The sex which invests the most in reproduction will be the one which takes more care in choosing its mates. Among humans, this implies that women will tend to be more discriminating than males in their choice of partners. It also implies that men and women will have different emotional propensities—as Stephen Jay Gould put it, conceding the central principle of evolutionary psychology in the very act of deploring the neoDarwinian school. It does not imply that every woman will be more circumspect in choice of partners than every man, or that every man will be readier to take risks than every woman, any more than the tendency for men to be taller than women means that all men are taller than all women. Through the widespread failure to recognise that evolved behaviours and ways of thinking are tendencies, evolutionary psychology has determinism thrust upon it.

In the application of evolutionary perspectives to health and equality, however, the prospect of a better society—or at least of better communities or workplaces—is unmistakable. This way of understanding human nature has the qualities that have marked great Darwinian ideas since *The Origin of Species*: it is profound in its implications, potentially transformative, and it challenges existing wisdom. On the one hand, it calls into question the idea that equality of opportunity should be pursued without regard for equality of outcome. On the other, it goes beyond the assumption that the task of "progressive" politics is to ensure that the least well-off have enough, and instead emphasises that how much is enough depends on how much others have.

The application of natural selection to social justice replaces vestigial sentiments about the abstract virtue of co-ops and community spirit with hard data about life and death, implying that we would all (or almost all) be healthier and happier if we were prepared to share more of what we have. Above all, it speaks to the world we live in, where want is marginal but trust is precarious. In Richard Wilkinson's words, it is "the science of social justice."

Like other big evolutionary ideas, however, it may be honoured more by denial than by engagement.

Marek Kohn

KOHN, MAREK. "WHY AN UNEQUAL SOCIETY IS AN UNHEALTHY SOCIETY: POOR RELATIONSHIPS AND LOW STATUS DON'T JUST MAKE PEOPLE ENVIOUS. THEY ALSO INTERFERE WITH THE IMMUNE SYSTEM AND DAMAGE HEALTH." *NEW STATESMAN* (1996) 133.4698 (JULY 26, 2004): P30(2).

See Also *Bacterial Disease; HIV; Vaccines and Vaccine Development; Viral Disease; Water-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

Bugl, Paul. "Immune System." *University of Hartford.* <http://uhaweb.hartford.edu/BUGL/immune.htm> (accessed June 13, 2007).

Carter, J. Stein. "Immune System." *University of Cincinnati.* <http://biology.clc.uc.edu/Courses/bio105/immune.htm> (accessed June 13, 2007).

National Center for Biotechnology Information. "Diseases of the Immune System." <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/disease/Immune.html> (accessed June 13, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease. "Understanding the Immune System." <http://health.nih.gov/viewPublication.asp?disease_id=63&publication_id=2841&pdf=yesgt; (accessed June 13, 2007).

Kenneth T. LaPensee

Impetigo

Introduction

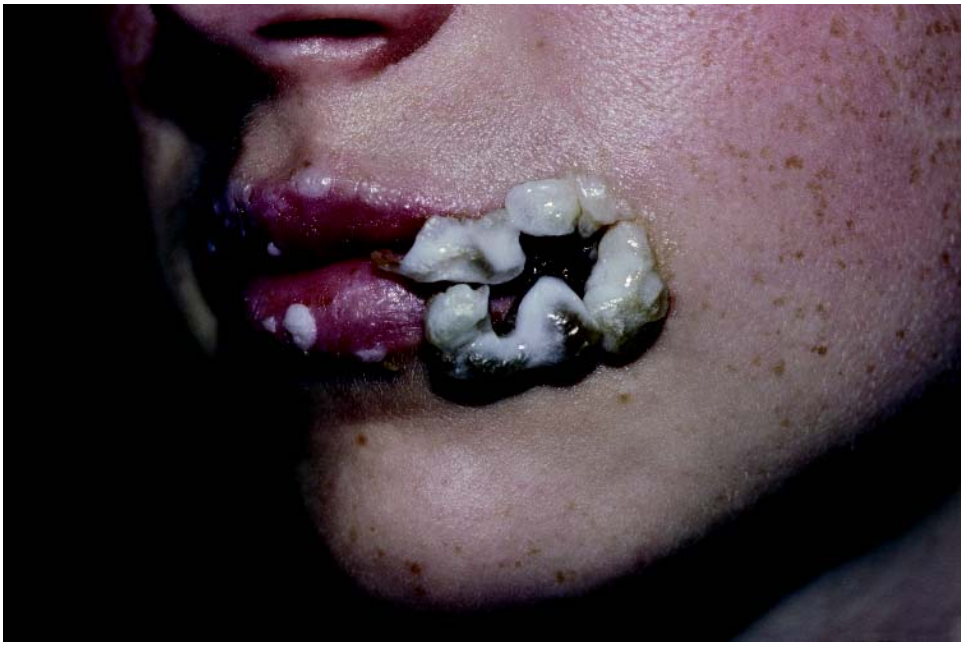
Impetigo is a skin disorder characterized by crusting lesions and commonly occurs among children at an early school age. Infection is due to either *Staphylococcus* or *Streptococcus* bacteria and occurs at sites of skin trauma such as bites, scratches, or cuts.

Symptoms present as a tiny cluster of fluid-filled blisters that weep after bursting and form a crust. Fluids at these sites, as well as the nasal fluids of persons who harbor the causative agent in their nose, carry infection and allow for easy transmission between people. Washing sores with antibacterial soap and covering them can prevent transmission of the bacteria.

Treatment with antibiotics is usually very effective, and sores generally heal slowly without scarring. Prevention is achieved through good hygiene practices such as handwashing and treatment of other skin sores to prevent establishment of infection. Impetigo and its causative pathogens (disease-causing organisms) are found throughout the world.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Impetigo is a skin disorder that results from bacterial infection, commonly by *Staphylococcus aureus* but also by



The impetigo infection is shown on the lips and side of the mouth of a patient. *Dr. M.A. Ansary/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Streptococcus bacteria. Infection usually occurs when the protective barrier of the skin is irritated or breached due to cuts, scratches, insect bites, or eczema.

The disease is one of the most common among children and is characterized by crusting skin lesions usually located around the nose, mouth, hands, and forearms. Symptoms begin as small pimplelike sores surrounded by reddened skin, which quickly develop into fluid-filled blisters. Once the blisters rupture, that patch of skin will continue to weep and a yellowish crust will develop over four to six days. The lesions may vary slightly depending on the causative agent, but generally symptoms have the same presentation and will appear around two to three days after infection.

Impetigo is extremely contagious and transmission occurs through contact with the infected site, nasal fluid, or fomites (items such as clothing and bedding that contain infected material on their surface). Scratching may also spread the lesions.

Scope and Distribution

Those most commonly affected by impetigo are toddlers and school children between the ages of two and six years old, with peak incidence usually occurring in the hot and humid weather of the summer months. The disease tends to occur in small outbreaks, although epidemics are rare.

Impetigo often follows a recent upper respiratory tract infection caused by streptococcus bacteria, and people who suffer from cold sores may also have a higher chance of developing the disease.

There is often no apparent source of infection for impetigo. This is due largely to the fact that *Staphylococcus aureus* is part of the human body's normal flora, which means that it is one of many bacteria that readily colonize areas of the human body without causing infection. *Staphylococcus* bacteria are commonly found on the skin's surface, nose, and mouth and cause infection when they enter open wounds at these sites.

Treatment and Prevention

The focus of treatment for impetigo is to cure the infection and to relieve symptoms. If the infection is limited to a small area, a topical antibiotic ointment will generally be sufficient. If this is not effective, oral antibiotics may be required. Healing will begin within a few days of treatment and sores generally clear within ten days without severe scarring.

Prevention of impetigo may be achieved by maintaining good hygiene practices such as regular handwashing, bathing, and tending to skin injuries such as cuts, scrapes, bites, and rashes. To prevent passing along infection, infected sites should be covered and items such as linen and cutlery should not be shared.

WORDS TO KNOW

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

FOMITE: A fomite is an object or a surface to which an infectious microorganism such as bacteria or viruses can adhere and be transmitted. Transmission is often by touch.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

Impetigo refers to a very localized bacterial infection of the skin. It tends to afflict primarily children, but can occur in people of any age. Impetigo caused by the bacteria *Staphylococcus aureus* (or staph) affects children of all ages, while impetigo caused by the bacteria called group A streptococci (*Streptoccus pyogenes* or strep) are most common in children ages two to five years.

Impacts and Issues

Impetigo, although often widespread, generally poses little threat to communities and treatment is readily available in developed countries. The ease of transmission between people infected is heightened among groups of young children where limiting contact can prove difficult. In situations of outbreak among school groups, it is important that parents and teachers work together to ensure the infected children are appropriately and effectively treated while those not infected are successfully protected.

Evidence suggests that geography and climate will influence the primary infective organism causing impetigo. In developing nations and warmer climates, *Streptococcus* bacteria is the most common. In rare cases, impetigo caused by *Streptococcus* bacteria can progress deeper than the skin. One such complication arising from infection by *Streptococcus* may lead to damage of the kidneys, heart, or other organs. This makes early detection and treatment important in these developing regions.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Handwashing;*

Microorganisms; Staphylococcus aureus Infections; Strep Throat.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, vol. 2.* Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Mims, C., H. Dockrell, R. Goering, I. Roitt, D. Wakelin, and M. Zuckerman. *Medical Microbiology.* St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2004.

Web Sites

Health Protection Agency. “Impetigo: Factsheet for Schools.” <http://www.hpa.org.uk/infections/topics_az/wfhfactsheets/WFHImpetigo.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Medline Plus. “Impetigo.” Feb. 26, 2007 <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000860.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases states that The spread of all types of GAS infection (Group A Streptococcal Disease (strep throat, necrotizing fasciitis, impetigo) can be reduced by good handwashing, especially after coughing and sneezing and before preparing foods or eating. Persons with sore throats should be seen by a doctor who can perform tests to find out whether the illness is strep throat. If the test result shows strep throat, the person should stay home from work, school, or day care until 24 hours after taking an antibiotic. All wounds should be kept clean and watched for possible signs of infection such as redness, swelling, drainage, and pain at the wound site. A person with signs of an infected wound, especially if fever occurs, should seek medical care. It is not necessary for all persons exposed to someone with an invasive group A strep infection (i.e. necrotizing fasciitis or strep toxic shock syndrome) to receive antibiotic therapy to prevent infection. However, in certain circumstances, antibiotic therapy may be appropriate. That decision should be made after consulting with your doctor.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases*

Infection Control and Asepsis

Introduction

Steps that are taken to reduce or prevent infection in health care settings are known as infection control. Almost two million people in the United States acquire a nosocomial (hospital or health-care-related) infection each year, adding more than five billion dollars to health care costs annually. Most hospitals have dedicated infection control practitioners on staff, whose job it is to oversee the infection control procedures as specified by the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and the Association for Professionals in Infection Control and Epidemiology (APIC). Infection control professionals (ICPs) are usually nurses, physicians, medical technologists, or epidemiologists, and their main focus is to investigate and gather data about existing infections in order to take the appropriate actions to contain them and prevent future infections.

History and Scientific Foundations

Before infection control and asepsis were recognized, surgery was often a death sentence for the patient. Up until the mid-nineteenth century, the death rate following surgeries was over 50%. Instead of being a life-saving measure, surgery was a desperate last resort when all other treatments had failed. British surgeon and scientist Joseph Lister (1827–1912) changed the role of surgery by demonstrating the value of infection control. When he applied a spray of disinfectant over a patient's wound during surgery, Lister showed that post-operative infections could be markedly reduced. Later, this was shown to be due to the killing of bacteria that were present in the air of the operating room or on the clothing or gloves of the health care providers. By killing the bacteria before or immediately after they contacted the wound, infection was minimized. In the decades after Lister's method became popular, post-operative patient deaths dropped to less than 1%. This was the beginning of the modern concept of aseptic technique.

Asepsis is defined as the absence or removal of disease-causing (pathogenic) microorganisms. Compounds that are used to achieve asepsis are termed antiseptics. Asepsis is designed to leave a surface sterile, free from microorganisms, and is used in surgery and for procedures where surfaces of medical equipment such as instruments or wound dressings will come in contact with sterile areas of the body. Sanitization is sufficient for other surfaces in the healthcare setting (and at home or in the community) to prevent infections. Sanitization does not leave surfaces sterile, but reduces the amount of disease-causing microorganisms to an insignificant level.

The cornerstone of infection control involves breaking the cycle of infection and interrupting the transmission of disease-causing organisms. The concept of standard precautions is the infection control foundation for healthcare workers, and is used universally in the developed world. Standard precautions assumes that any patient's body fluid, tissue, or secretion could be potentially infectious until determined otherwise, and along with handwashing, barrier protection such as latex (or a latex-alternative) gloves, disposable gowns, and masks should be used as appropriate to avoid exposure to them. Likewise, barrier protections are used to prevent patients from being exposed to body fluids or surface disease-causing organisms that might be present on or in the healthcare worker.

Additional infection control measures are based upon isolating or grouping together (cohorting) persons with infectious diseases according to how the disease is spread. Isolation means setting apart a person with a known infection. Additional sets of precautions are used for persons with documented infections and include airborne precautions, droplet precautions, and contact precautions. When airborne precautions are implemented, as with a person who has an active tuberculosis infection, negative-pressure airflow rooms assure that the extremely small tuberculosis bacteria will not enter other patient

WORDS TO KNOW

ASEPSIS: Without germs, more specifically without microorganisms.

BIOFILM: Biofilms are populations of microorganisms that form following the adhesion of bacteria, algae, yeast, or fungi to a surface. These surface growths can be found in natural settings such as on rocks in streams, and in infections such as can occur on catheters. Microorganisms can colonize living and inert natural and synthetic surfaces.

COHORTING: Cohorting is the practice grouping persons with like infections or symptoms together in order to reduce transmission to others.

INFECTION CONTROL PROFESSIONAL (ICP): Infection control professionals are a group of nurses, doctors, laboratory workers, microbiologists, public health officials, and others who have specialized training in the prevention and control of infectious disease. Infection control professionals develop methods to control infection and instruct others in their use. These methods include proper hand washing, correct wearing of protective masks, eye-guards, gloves, and other specialized clothing, vaccination, monitoring for infection, and investigating ways to treat and prevent infection. Courses and certifications are available for those wishing to become infection control professionals.

ISOLATION: Isolation, within the health community, refers to the precautions that are taken in the hospital to prevent the spread of an infectious agent from an infected or colonized patient to susceptible persons. Isolation practices are designed to minimize the transmission of infection.

NOSOCOMIAL INFECTION: A nosocomial infection is an infection that is acquired in a hospital. More precisely, the Centers for Disease Control in Atlanta, Georgia, defines a nosocomial infection as a localized infection or one that is widely spread throughout the body that results from an adverse reaction to an infectious microorganism or toxin that was not present at the time of admission to the hospital.

STANDARD PRECAUTIONS: Standard precautions are the safety measures taken to prevent the transmission of disease-causing bacteria. These include proper hand washing, wearing gloves, goggles, and other protective clothing, proper handling of needles, and sterilization of equipment.

rooms, and specialized masks are used by both hospital staff and the patient to prevent the spread of tuberculosis. Droplet precautions are used for persons with known or suspected diseases that can be spread through larger infectious particles that are released by coughing or sneezing, such as polio or measles. Gown, masks, and gloves are usually worn by healthcare personnel and visitors when they are in the room of a patient with droplet precautions. Contact precautions are used with persons who have infections that can be transmitted by direct or indirect skin-to-skin contact, such as wounds infected with resistant bacteria. Regardless of the type of specialized precautions implemented in persons with infections, standard precautions are always additionally in effect.

Other key elements to infection control in the healthcare setting include disposing infectious waste (such as gloves and wound dressings) in separate containers that receive special handling and are labeled "biohazard", disposing of needles, scalpels, and other sharp medical equipment in thick, biohazard labeled containers, limiting patient or visitor exposures, and specialized housekeeping and laundry methods.

Asepsis has long been a valuable means of infection control. One of the first laboratory procedures a microbiology student learns is to wipe down the working surface with an alcohol solution before and after doing any work involving bacteria. This simple step kills most bacteria that are adhering to the work surface. This is because the alcohol dissolves the membrane(s) of bacteria. Bacterial membranes are composed mainly of phospholipids—molecules that have a water-loving (hydrophilic) ends and a central portion that is water-hating (hydrophobic). This allows phospholipids to spontaneously associate with the hydrophilic portions oriented to the outside of the membrane and the hydrophobic regions buried inside; this products a barrier that is vital for the structure and the survival of the bacteria. Alcohol, which is also hydrophobic, can induce hydrophobic portions of the phospholipids to associate with it instead of remaining as an intact membrane. As a result, the bacterial membrane dissolves, killing the microbe. The simple act of wiping down a work surface prevents the spread of potentially harmful bacteria.

Applications and Research

Many infections are contagious and so are capable of being spread from person to person and from another host to a person. People may even contaminate themselves and contract an infection. An example of the latter is the fecal-oral route, where hands soiled by feces during a bowel movement and which have not been properly cleaned come in contact with in the mouth or other parts of the body. A common example is the infections that occur in day care facilities. Infants can handle their soiled diaper and subsequently put a hand in their mouth or another persons's mouth. Another example is at the other end of the age spectrum. Elderly people who may be incontinent and whose attentiveness to their sanitary habits may have deteriorated can unknowingly transfer feces to the urinary tract through inadequate hygiene after a bowel movement. This route of transfer can also allow the fecal bacteria to enter the bloodstream. The subsequent blood infection (sepsis) can spread through the body quickly, lethally overwhelming the ability of the immune system to fight the infection.

A simple and time-tested way to minimize person to person transmission of microbes is handwashing. Proper handwashing is the most effective way to prevent the spread of infection. In the home, the use of household soap and vigorous scrubbing of the hands for 30–60 seconds has been shown to eliminate most microorganisms of concern from the hands. This is especially important for those who are involved in food preparation, since fecally-acquired bacteria and virus can contaminate food during handling. In a related step, the cleaning of cutting boards and utensils such as knives helps prevent transfer of microbes. As an example, on of the main reasons for the millions of foodborne contamination with the bacterium *Campylobacter jejuni* that occurs each year in the United States is not washing cutting boards used to process raw poultry before the board is used for another food. The bacteria sticking to the board are transferred to the other food which, if not cooked or undercooked, can cause illness when eaten.

In the hospital setting, handwashing is done according to CDC guidelines. These specify that healthcare providers wash their hands before and after seeing each patient and, if gloves have also been worn, as the final step when the gloves have been removed and put in the proper disposal container. Many hospitals are equipped with an alcohol-based washstand at the foot of each patient bed or in the room. Handwashing using alcohol takes only seconds—the time savings can be important in a healthcare providers busy schedule.

Various infection control procedures are in place in most hospitals to lessen the spread of infection. This is important for several reasons. Firstly, bacteria that are resistant to most antibiotics are becoming more prevalent. An example is methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA); the prevalence of MRSA in hospitals has gone from sporatic and rare in the early 1980s to over 90% of all clinical *S. aureus* isolates in hospitals in the United States and United Kingdom in 2006. In fact, in the UK, MRSA infections now make up over half of all hospital infections. The fact that only a few antibiotics remain effective against MRSA is frightening, and makes control of the bacterium's presence and spread in a hospital critical for patient health and survival.

A second reason for infection control is the emergence of new infectious viral and bacterial diseases that are easily spread from person to person. An example is the viral disease called severe acute respiratory syndrome, or SARS. Another example of a disease that is poised to become a global problem is avian influenza (bird flu). As of 2007, the virus that causes avian influenza, which has been capable of transmission from birds to humans and which has been of limited concern, is adapting to be capable of person to person transmission. The World Health Organization and CDC are monitoring avian influenza cases closely.

Infection control measures are also important because diseases that used to be rampant but which were controlled decades ago are now re-emerging to become a significant health threat. One example is the form of tuberculosis caused by the bacterium *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.*

Research laboratories and hospitals often have a variety of CDC- and APIC-mandated infection control procedures in place. Depending on the organism being studied or encountered, most countries have a series of mandated safety controls, with more dangerous microbes requiring more stringent safety and infection control measures. One example is the use of filters in the ventilation system that trap bacteria and even particles as small as viruses. The filters prevent the movement of the microbes from the room to other parts of the building or outside. Some work surfaces can be inside of an enclosed structure called a fume hood, which is separate from the rest of the lab. The fume hood can be open to the rest of the room; just having a semi-enclosed space cuts down on air movement. Fume hoods can also be completely enclosed, with the work begin done by means of plastic gloves that the person slips their hands into. Equipment and other items can be introduced into the chamber of the fume hood by a two-way door that does not allow air inside the fume hood to move to the outside. Even the work surface itself is designed for infection control. A century ago, the work surfaces in labs were made of wood; while pretty, the surfaces had cracks and crevasses that were ideal breeding grounds for infectious bacteria. Modern lab surfaces are made of chemically-resilient plastic that is very smooth, watertight, and free of gaps. The same principle can be used in the operating theater, where the floor is a single, crack-free unit that is made of material that can be easily cleaned.

Another infection control procedure in a hospital is the use of protective hand wear and clothing. This helps protect the health care provider from contamination from a patient, and, because the protective gear is discarded when moving from patient to patient, minimizes the chance that the health care provider will become a vehicle of transfer of an infection. The use of protective gear depends on the risk posed by a patient. For example, the CDC guidelines indicate that if there is a reasonable chance that someone could be exposed to the splashing or spraying of blood (such as can occur in an Ebola infection, where copious bleeding can occur), a protective gown and perhaps a face mask should be worn. The gown may need to be made of a water-resistant material.

Highly infectious patients will tend to be isolated from other patients in a hospital, and wards containing people who are particularly susceptible to infection (such as transplant recipients, whose immune system is usually deliberately suppressed to reduce the chance of rejection of the transplanted organ) may be in an area of the hospital that has less daily traffic. Contact precautions specify that such patients should be housed in a private room or with similarly-affected people.

Infection control actions can also be taken in the community; an example is malaria. The disease is transmitted by mosquitoes, so steps to control mosquito populations, especially during the insect's breeding season, can help lessen the infection. Spraying prime breeding grounds with insecticide is a common strategy. As well, more high-tech science approaches are being used. For example, a program in malaria-prone regions of Africa that releases genetically altered and infertile male mosquitoes has shown promise. The males are unable to successfully mate with female mosquitoes, which reduce the numbers of the next generation. As malaria is transmitted only be female mosquitoes, reduced numbers of new females means there is less opportunity for the spread of malaria. Another simple and effective infection control mechanism for insect-borne diseases is the use of mosquito netting over a bed during sleep. Organizations including WHO and World Vision conduct campaigns that solicit money for the purchase of mosquito netting and the delivery of the netting to rural villages in malaria-prone regions of Africa. This simple step saves many lives by preventing the mosquito-borne transmission of the infection.

The use of antimicrobial or antiviral agents can help overcome an infection and, in the case of vaccines, can prevent someone from contracting an infection. An example of the power of a vaccine is polio. Prior to the 1950s, polio was a dreaded childhood viral illness that paralyzed many children. After the introduction and refinement of two polio vaccines, polio has become a rare event. The Polio Eradication Initiative launched by the World Health Organization (WHO) in 1988 has reduced the global number of polio cases by over 99%. In 2006, four countries had polio epidemics, as compared to 125 countries in 1988.

The WHO campaign also highlights the importance of maintaining an infection control program. During 2006, the interruption of the campaign in Nigeria due to a military conflict caused a renewed polio outbreak. Infection control cannot be done once and then forgotten; vigilance must be continual.

Even with vigilance, infection control can be difficult. An example is the use of antibiotics. In the decades of 1940s–1960s following the introduction of penicillin and the discovery or synthesis of new antibiotics, these agents were hugely successful at dealing with bacterial infections. But, as with the polio campaign, initial success does not guarantee long-term success. Bacteria haven proven to be capable of adaptation to many of the antibiotics that have been introduced. This resistance can appear within only a few years, and can spread. Strains of enterococci and *Staphylococcus aureus* that are resistant to virtually all known antibiotics currently in use pose a challenge in patient care.

Antibiotic resistance can spread through a bacterial population quickly because the genetic information that specifies the protein involved in the resistance is often located on a piece of genetic material that is not part of the main chromosome, but which is more mobile. This means that the information is more capable of being transferred from one bacterium to another bacterium that it comes into contact with.

The hospital is a prime breeding ground for antibiotic resistance. The heavy use of antibiotics and disinfectants in a hospital imposes a selection pressure on bacteria. Those bacteria that can adapt to be resistant stand a better chance of surviving and thriving.

Impacts and Issues

Infection control and asepsis will always be fundamentally important measures in hospitals. One reason is evident from the prevalence of hospital-acquired (nosocomial) infections. In the United States, nosocomial infections kill 90,000 patients each year according to CDC, which in 2005 issued new recommendations aimed at lessening the toll from these infections.

Infection control and asepsis are also becoming more important in the prevention of infections, as infectious diseases become more resistant and as new diseases emerge. People are more at risk for infections, especially since the populations of many developed countries are aging. In general, the elderly are increasingly vulnerable to infections as their immune systems and overall resilience declines. As the population of a country like the United States ages, the costs of health care will grow. In 2007, the costs of delivering health care in the United States and elsewhere are skyrocketing, as the many infection control measures and the development of new effective weapons against microbial diseases is expensive. As health care becomes increasingly more expensive to deliver, the ability to supply the needed care becomes more difficult. Governments in countries such as the United States, Canada, and England are recognizing that the current systems of health care are likely not sustainable. Reducing the need for health care by improved infection control is also recognized as an economical, vital strategy to ensure good health for future generations.

Traditionally, infection control strategies for bacterial disease have been geared towards the types of bacteria studied in the laboratory. Scientists now know, however, that these bacteria that live and grow while floating in the lab growth medium are not at all like the populations found in the real world. Infections are often caused by bacteria that grow by adhering to surfaces. These so-called biofilms are more resistant to drugs that would easily kill their floating counterparts. This means that infection control strategies need to change to more realistically deal with the real world of biofilm-caused bacterial infections.

■ Primary Source Connection

Institutions such as schools, hospitals, and nurseries are especially prone to infectious disease that spread through casual contact or the fecal-oral route. A 2006 outbreak of *E. coli* in nurseries in Scotland highlighted the importance of institutional hygiene and infectious disease control practices in preventing disease.

Nurseries Told to Clean Up Their Act

FILTHY CONDITIONS have been uncovered at scores of Scotland's nurseries, the Sunday Mail can reveal today.

The alarming hygiene failures at the nurseries can be exposed as suspected cases of potentially fatal E Coli linked to a nursery in Fife hit 25.

Inspectors have ordered 84 nurseries to clean up their act after discovering:

Vermin in a nursery classroom.

Toddlers asked to do their own cleaning with chemicals.

Dishes being washed in a toilet.

Tots being asked to share facecloths.

The Care Commission assessed 2380 nurseries and playgroups.

Of those, 84 were ordered to change their practices on infection control.

Inspectors found signs of vermin in a cabin used as Auchtertyre Primary School's nursery in the Highlands.

Bosses of the school in Kyle of Lochalsh were told to destroy the cabin.

They had been warned about the health hazard last year but took no action.

The warning was repeated in findings published in February, yet the building is still standing.

A spokesman for Highland Council said: "It is planned for demolition.

"Vermin control measures have been and are in place at the school but because of the rural nature of the site, mice can sometimes be an issue."

At Dundee's Wonderland nursery, staff gave kids chemicals to clean up.

The inspectors reported: "The nursery must review its practice of permitting children to use a chemical cleaning agent to clean the tables.

"Staff should also ensure that cleaning materials remain in the original container."

At the time of the inspection, the youngsters were eating sandwiches without plates.

The inspectors added: "They should provide plates for the children at meal times to improve hygiene.

Owner Graham MacDonald said: "For years, we had been allowing the children to use anti-bacterial sprays to clean up.

"We thought it was a good way to teach them about hygiene but have stopped it.

"The children do get given plates to eat from but on the day of the inspection, they were having sandwiches."

Staff at Beauly Playgroup in Invernessshire were told to make changes after inspectors discovered the only sink to wash dishes was in the toilet. Yesterday, the owners were unavailable for comment.

Coringa Day Care in Dundee was told to produce an infection-control procedure immediately and were slammed for using communal bedding and face-cloths. In April, the centre was reopened as Sweeties Day Care.

The new owner, Jane McDonald, is eager to distance herself from the report.

She said: "I am getting antibacterial mats for the children. I will only use bedding for the cots and it will be washed every day."

Also in April, organisers of the Kiwi Pre-school Playgroup in East Kilbride, Lanarkshire, were told to clean up dirty toilets.

The inspectors' report said: "The toilet area was uninviting. It was dark and dirty and had not been well maintained."

A spokesman for South Lanarkshire Council said: "Kiwi Pre-School Playgroup will take forward the points raised and improvements to the toilet area will be in their plan of action."

Toilets also featured in the inspectors' remarks about Langholm Primary School Nursery Class in 2005. Toys were found stored there.

The experts said: "The nursery is required to make proper provision for the health and welfare of the children and to ensure appropriate attention to infection control by making alterations to flush mechanisms, washbasin taps and hot water supply and making appropriate arrangements for the storage of play resources."

A spokesman for Dumfries and Galloway Council said an alternative area had been found to store the toys.

Croft Park Nursery in Airdrie, Lanarkshire, was criticized because food was not being served at the correct temperature.

Janette Rose, of the Early Years Service which runs the nursery, said they had amended their food preparation practice.

A commission spokesman said: "All care staff must adopt the highest standards with regard to hygiene and infection control to minimise the risk to children."

Himaya Quasem and Heather Greenaway

QUASEM, HIMAYA, AND HEATHER GREENAWAY. "NURSERIES TOLD TO CLEAN UP THEIR ACT; EXCLUSIVE THE E COLI CRISIS." *SUNDAY MAIL*, MAY 14, 2006. P.5.

SEE ALSO *Airborne Precautions; Contact Precautions; Handwashing; Standard Precautions; Water-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bankston, John. *Joseph Lister and the Story of Antiseptics.* Hockessin, DE: Mitchell Lane Publishers, 2004.

Lawrence, Jean, and Dee May. *Infection Control in the Community.* New York: Churchill Livingstone, 2003.

Websites

Yale-New Haven Hospital. "YNHH Infection Control; Introduction." <http://www.med.yale.edu/ynhh/infection/precautions/intro.html> (accessed June 13, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Influenza

Introduction

Influenza is a viral disease that has plagued humans since the time of learning to walk upright. The medical writings of antiquity contain evidence that implicates influenza in causing epidemics of death and disease. A form of the influenza virus exists in nearly all animals, including domesticated birds and pigs, and these animal viruses bear a close genetic relationship to human influenza viruses.

A typical attack of influenza starts with high fever, chills, muscle aches, a dry cough, and feeling distinctly ill. Soon a sore throat with nasal congestion and a runny nose develops. The cough worsens and misery results. In healthy adults and children, a case of influenza lasts about a week and recovery is complete. Many think the illness is nothing more than a particularly severe "cold." However, influenza can be unpredictable, and can kill healthy adults and children.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Most often, influenza primarily attacks the nose, throat, and lungs, but any part of the body can be infected. Sometimes influenza will cause abdominal pain, nausea,

In Bali, Indonesia, scientists swab a pig's nostril to obtain a sample for their study of the evolution of influenza viruses in late 2006. Earlier that year, two cases of H5N1 (bird flu) were found in pigs, which are susceptible to many of the viruses that infect humans. *Dimas Ardian/Getty Images.*

A woman receives a flu shot, offered free by the city of Chicago in October 2006. In a switch from recent years, vaccine makers produced an ample supply, and health officials administered more than 100 million doses nationwide by the end of the year. *Tim Boyle/Getty Images.*

and diarrhea. Rarely, the muscles will be infected and can be severely damaged. Infants may develop a severe form of viral pneumonia with the heart and lungs struggling to sustain life. Influenza can infect the brain as well, resulting in seizures and coma. Influenza is predictably unpredictable in how severe the disease may be in any one person.

Other diseases can take advantage of the weakened state of the body after a case of influenza and cause a secondary infection. Bacteria such as group A streptococcus, *Staph aureus*, and strep pneumonia are particularly efficient at causing a lethal pneumonia after influenza damages the lungs. About 10% of children will develop a secondary infection while recovering from influenza, and ear infections frequently afflict infants and young children just as they are trying to recover from influenza. The secondary infections often cause another visit to the doctor when parents discover their child, who seemed to be recovering, is ill again.

Influenza is highly contagious and primarily spreads person to person in virus-laden droplets produced by sneezing or coughing. Alternatively, the droplets land on a surface and contaminate the hands that, if not washed, carry the virus to the mouth or nose. School-aged children are the main culprits in spreading influenza. Usually 10–40% of school-aged children will get influenza in any one season. They swap virus at school and bring it home to infect family members. Children are contagious before they even appear or feel ill, and the virus is present in nasal mucous and cough droplets for over a week after apparent recovery from influenza.

The microbiology of the influenza virus is quite complex. Influenza viruses consist of three different major types known as A, B, and C. Of the three types, only A and B cause significant disease in humans. Both A and B types cause the seasonal epidemics around the world, but at any one time there may be hundreds of different variations of each type circulating the globe. This multitude of subtly different varieties presents a challenge to the human immune system.

Both influenza A and B virus change their structure often enough such that the immune system can never develop long-lasting immunity. Influenza B virus changes much more slowly than influenza A and usually causes milder illness compared to influenza A. However, influenza B can cause severe disease in the elderly, those with impaired immunity, or those with chronic lung or heart disease.

Influenza A generally causes more severe disease and is the most unpredictable. The yearly season epidemics of the “flu” are primarily the result of influenza A. The virus has two specific proteins on its surface, which are important for infecting humans. These proteins, known as antigens, bear the names hemagglutinin (HA) and neuraminidase (NA). The HA and NA proteins vary in their chemical structure from year to year. This process, termed antigenic drift, results in virus particle proteins with subtle variations in structure. Fifteen different HA subtypes are known to exist while there are nine NA subtypes. These slightly different proteins get different number designations, and the various influenza strains are named by the specific HA and NA proteins on the virus. The H3N1 virus contains HA protein 3 and NA protein 1.

Influenza A employs an additional means of evading the immune system. When two different viral strains infect someone at the same time, the two viral variants will swap component genes and create yet another slightly different form of influenza. The new virus will contain some proteins of one variety of influenza A and some proteins of the other variety. This sloppy way of making new virus particles extends to swapping genetic material with animal or bird influenza viruses. This process, termed antigenic shift, will sometimes create an influenza virus for which humans have no immunity at all. A novel virus produced this way has the potential to spread worldwide, resulting in a pandemic.

Three influenza pandemics have occurred in the twentieth century. The influenza pandemic in 1918 killed at least twenty million people, and some experts think there were fifty million deaths within a period of 24 weeks. Nearly as many United States soldiers died of influenza in 1918 as died in battle in all of World War I. In the United States, the 1957 pandemic resulted in 70,000 deaths while in 1968 about 30,000 died. During influenza pandemics, a larger proportion of healthy adults die than during the yearly "flu season" outbreaks.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIGEN: Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ANTIGENIC SHIFT: Antigenic shift describes an abrupt and major genetic change (e.g. in genes coding for surface proteins of a virus).

DROPLET TRANSMISSION: Droplet transmission is the spread of microorganisms from one space to another (including from person to person) via droplets that are larger than 5 microns in diameter. Droplets are typically expelled into the air by coughing and sneezing.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

Treatment and Prevention

Medicine has developed weapons with which to combat influenza, specifically the adamantanes and the neuraminidase inhibitor drugs. The adamantanes treat only influenza A while the neuraminidase inhibitors will treat both influenza A and B. Both of these classes of medicines interfere with the ability of the influenza virus to make more virus particles. They either stop production of the viral genetic material or prevent the viral particles from escaping from infected cells to infect other cells. In order to help relieve symptoms or shorten the course of influenza, one must take these drugs early in the course of influenza. Once the illness is established and new influenza virus particles have replicated, the medications are largely ineffective. Many of the symptoms of influenza are due to the damage the virus does to the body during the making of new virus particles so stopping the virus early provides the greatest relief in symptoms.

Until effective medications became available to treat influenza, determining who has influenza rather than one of a similar multitude of viral respiratory illnesses was of little use. Treatment involved decreasing the fever, resting, and drinking plenty of fluids. This treatment is appropriate for most viral illnesses, but now with medications available, there is a difference whether the illness is a "cold" or the "flu" and testing for influenza is often done.

Several rapid tests are available to detect the influenza virus. These tests, often run in a doctor's office, use a sample of mucus taken from the nose or from the back of the throat. The tests are rapid usually taking only five minutes and will detect influenza virus accurately about 75-85% of the time if properly done.

Contrary to popular belief, antibiotics are not effective treatment for influenza. Antibiotics are useful in the treatment of bacterial infections and have no benefit during viral illnesses. Antibiotics may be helpful if secondary bacterial infections develop during the course of influenza.

Drugs provide a treatment option unavailable in past decades, but they do not provide the best option for control of influenza. Many will not realize their illness is influenza until it is too late for medications to be effective. Additionally they have usually already spread influenza to family members and co-workers.

Influenza vaccination provides the most effective treatment by preventing the disease, but the influenza virus poses a challenge for vaccine development. Since the virus changes slightly year to year and changes dramatically at unpredictable intervals, vaccines also need altering from year to year. Each year, public health officials make an educated guess as to what will be the prevalent strains circulating in the next season, and vaccine preparation commences targeting those strains.

Influenza vaccines provide excellent protection when administered at least two weeks before exposure to the influenza virus, and vaccination is needed each year. The vaccine itself does not cause influenza, but depending on the exact form of vaccine administered, side effects may include soreness at the injection site, muscle aches, runny nose, or sore throat. Young children often need two doses of vaccine for full protection. In the United States, the current vaccine recommendations include everyone older than 65 years, those between six months and five years, and everyone with chronic health problems involving the lungs or heart.

■ Scope and Distribution

Every year about 35,000 deaths occur in the United States due to influenza. Most of these deaths are those older than 65 years, but more children die of influenza or its complications each year than all the deaths due to whooping cough and measles combined. The World Health Organization credits influenza with causing between 250,000 and 500,000 deaths yearly throughout the world. For example, in 2002, an influenza outbreak started in Madagascar. Over a period of three months, 27,000 people developed influenza, and despite rapid medical intervention, 800 deaths occurred.

■ Impacts and Issues

Unless a family member or close friend dies of influenza, many people do not really give much thought to the impact influenza has on their health and pocketbook. Influenza ranks far behind heart disease and cancer as a worldwide cause of death, yet its economic impact is considerable. Public health experts have estimated a cost of $60-$4,000 for every case of influenza in a healthy adult in the United States. These costs include direct medical expenses, lost wages, and lost productivity at work. For parents, the cost often includes lost work while caring for the sick child, and afterwards, lost work from the case of influenza caught from the child.

A pandemic raises great concern for public health officials worldwide. Influenza pandemics occur several times a century but are unpredictable as to the exact timing. Each of the past three influenza pandemics (in 1918, 1957, and 1968) resulted from human influenza virus sharing genetic material with a bird influenza virus. Human immune systems had never encountered the new virus, and everyone was susceptible to the new form of influenza. As a result, the new virus swept through countries throughout the globe.

The pandemic of 1918 deserves further explanation as medical history warns that a similar event at some point in the future is highly likely. In the 1918 pandemic, about one third of the world's population suffered a severe case of influenza, and nearly 3% of those infected with the virus died. An unusually high percentage of the young and healthy died during this pandemic. All current strains of influenza A virus are descended from the 1918 virus, but the current strains have weakened considerably. Now less than 0.1% of people die when infected by today's forms of influenza.

Given that the medical system has advanced since 1918, what would be the impact of a new, more lethal influenza virus today? The answer is that the impact could be devastating. Public health experts predict an estimated 90,000–200,000 deaths, over 700,000 hospital admissions, and about forty million visits to doctors in the United States alone. The estimated economic impact exceeds $160 billion, not including the disruptions due to illness in the police, transportation workers, and the health workers themselves.

Over the past several years, a particularly vicious strain (type) of avian (bird) flu, known as H5N1 influenza, has caused many cases of disease and death in humans. Presently, transmission of this virus from human to human does not readily occur. Close contact with infected birds is required to catch this form of influenza. If this bird virus ever acquires the ability to infect humans from one person to another, a new pandemic could occur. The Center for Disease Control and the World Health organization recognize this possibility, and planning for the potential pandemic continues.

■ Primary Source Connection

Scientists at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention play a key role in accessing influenza viruses and formulating vaccines for them. In order to prepare for a future pandemic influenza, CDC scientists studied the characteristics of the 1918 pandemic flu virus. The CDC press release below, released in February 2007, relates that by manipulating the 1918 virus, CDC scientists have found a way to render it less capable of spreading among animals that were in close contact with each other. This type of research could prove beneficial in reducing the ability of future influenza viruses to spread rapidly across heavily populated regions and cause a pandemic.

Small Changes in 1918 Pandemic Virus Knocks Out Transmission: Research Provides Clues for Assessing Pandemic Potential of New Influenza Viruses

Press Release

Embargoed Until 2 p.m. EST: February 1, 2007

Contact:

CDC Media Relations

(404) 639-3286

Experts at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention have shown that a molecular change in the 1918 pandemic influenza virus stops its transmission in ferrets that were in close proximity, shedding light on the properties that allowed the 1918 pandemic virus to spread so quickly and potentially providing important clues that could help scientists assess emerging influenza viruses, such as H5N1.

The study, which is published in the Feb. 5 issue of *Science*, showed that a modest change of two amino acids in the main protein found on the surface of the 1918 virus did not change the virus's ability to cause disease, but stopped respiratory droplet transmission of the virus between ferrets placed in close proximity. The experiments were conducted with ferrets because their reaction to influenza viruses closely mimics how the disease affects humans.

"With this vital research, we are learning more about what may have contributed to the spread and deadliness of the 1918 pandemic," said CDC Director Dr. Julie Gerberding. "By better understanding how this virus spreads, we can be better positioned to slow down or stop the spread of the pandemic virus and hence be better prepared for the next pandemic."

To spread and cause illness, the influenza virus must first bind to host cells found in humans and animals. The *Science* study suggests that the hemagglutinin (HA), a type of protein found on the surface of influenza viruses, plays an important role in the 1918 virus's ability to transmit from one host to another efficiently. This research suggests that, for an influenza virus to spread efficiently, the virus's HA must prefer attaching to cells that are found predominately in the human upper airway instead of cells found predominately in the gastrointestinal tracts of birds. Other changes may be necessary as well. Current H5N1 viruses prefer attaching to avian cells, suggesting the virus would need to make genetic changes before it could pass easily between humans.

"Work on the 1918 virus is providing clues that are helping us evaluate other influenza viruses with pandemic potential, such as H5N1, that may emerge," said Dr. Terrence Tumpey, lead author of the paper and a CDC senior microbiologist. "Though we still don't know what changes might be necessary for H5N1 to transmit easily among people, it's likely that changes in more than one virus protein would be required for the H5N1 virus to be transmitted among humans."

Influenza pandemics occur when a new strain emerges to which people have little or no immunity. Most experts argue another pandemic will occur, but it is impossible to predict which strain will emerge as the next pandemic strain, when it will occur or how severe it will be.

The 1918 pandemic caused an estimated 675,000 deaths in the United States and up to 50 million worldwide, in the worst pandemic of the past century.

The research was done in collaboration with Mount Sinai School of Medicine and the Southeast Poultry Research Laboratory. All laboratory work with 1918 virus was conducted at CDC in a high containment Biosafety Level 3 laboratory with enhancements, using stringent biosecurity precautions to protect both laboratory workers and the public from exposure to the virus. Currently available antiviral drugs have been shown to be effective against the 1918 influenza virus and similar viruses.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)

CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION (CDC). "SMALL CHANGES IN 1918 PANDEMIC VIRUS KNOCKS OUT TRANSMISSION." PRESS RELEASE. FEBRUARY 1, 2007. <HTTP://WWW.CDC.GOV/OD/OC/MEDIA/PRESSREL/2007/R070201.HTM> (ACCESSED JUNE 4, 2007).

See Also *Droplet Precautions; H5N1 Virus; Influenza Pandemic of 1918; Influenza Pandemic of 1957; Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation; Pandemic Preparedness; Vaccines and Vaccine Development; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Barry, John M. *The Great Influenza: The Story of the Deadliest Pandemic in History.* New York: Penguin Books, 2004.

Goldsmith, Connie. *Influenza: The Next Pandemic?* Brookfield, CT: Twenty-first Century Books, 2006.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Influenza (Flu)." <http://www.cdc.gov/flu> (accessed June 4, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Influenza." <http://www.who.int/topics/influenza/en> (accessed June 4, 2007).

Lloyd Scott Clements

Influenza Pandemic of 1918

Introduction

Influenza ("flu" for short) is an infection of the lungs and bronchial tubes by an influenza virus. Common symptoms of flu include cough, muscle aches, vomiting, loss of appetite, and fever. Flu can also cause death, usually from respiratory failure and in people with weakened immune systems. The 1918 influenza pandemic, a global wave of flu infection in 1918–1919, was one of the most deadly infectious-disease events in human history. A figure of 20–50 million deaths has traditionally been attributed to the pandemic, but in 2002, the *Bulletin of the History of Medicine* estimated that the toll was more likely between 50 and 100 million. The pandemic killed about 675,000 people in the United States, some 18 million in India (about 5% of the population at that time), and similar percentages elsewhere. The virus eventually evolved into less harmful forms. The lethal 1918 influenza virus was re-created by U.S. government scientists in 2005 for medical research purposes. There have been a number of flu outbreaks since 1918, but none have been anywhere near as deadly as that which occurred in 1918.

In 1998 scientists pay homage to victims of the 1918 influenza pandemic before exhuming their bodies, which were buried on an island off the coast of Norway. By collecting naturally preserved samples buried in the permafrost, scientists determined the composition, genetic structure, and nature of the 1918 virus. *© K.Moe/Svalnard Posten/Corbis Sygma.*

Influenza patients rest in a U.S. Army camp hospital in Aix-les-Baines, France, in 1918. Soldiers returning home from World War I helped fuel the spread of the influenza into one of the largest and deadliest pandemics in human history. © *Corbis.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Disease History

The exact origin of the virus strain that caused the 1918 flu pandemic is still a mystery. Although the flu was called the Spanish Flu at the time, it may have originated not in Spain but, like most new flu varieties, in Asia. Another hypothesis, based upon epidemiological evidence, places the origin in the United States.

Normally, in the United States, about 5% to 20% of the population gets a symptomatic flu infection each year. One hundred thousand to 200,000 people are hospitalized with flu complications annually, and up to 36,000 people, mostly elderly, die. Similar figures apply to most countries of the world in proportion to population. In the 1918 pandemic, however, 25–40% of the world population contracted flu and 2.5–5% of those persons died. In the United States, about 2.5% of persons with the flu died, resulting in about 675,000 deaths—about 10 times as many Americans as died in World War I (1914–1918). Two hundred thousand people died in the United States in October 1918 alone. Previous influenza outbreaks had death rates of about 0.1% in the United States, only one twenty-fifth as high as the 2.5% rate of 1918–1919.

The 1918 flu appeared 28 years after the pandemic of 1890, sweeping the world suddenly in September 1918. The flu was called Spanish Flu in the United States because it was especially deadly in Spain early in its history, killing as many as 8 million people. The 1918 flu was unique in that it was deadlier for young people than for the elderly: 99% of its victims were under age 65. Victims sometimes died within a few hours of infection. It should be noted that the great majority of those infected did not die. It struck rich, poor, and middle-class alike, with similar death rates for all groups.

By late November 1918, the death rate from the flu was tapering off in the United States. By early 1919, the pandemic was over, both in the United States and most of the rest of the world.

Disease Characteristics

Influenza is an infection of the lungs and other parts of the respiratory tract (breathing organs) that is caused by a virus. Viruses are tiny clusters of molecules that are smaller than a cell. Each individual virus, called a virion or virus particle, consists of a sheath or covering called a capsid, which is made of proteins (proteins are a type of complex molecule basic to life). The capsid carries a core of RNA (sometimes DNA). A virus cannot live on its own, but reproduces by attaching to a true cell such as a

WORDS TO KNOW

CAPSID: The protein shell surrounding a virus particle.

CREPITANT: A crackling sound that accompanies breathing, a common symptom of pneumonia, or other diseases of the lungs.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

RALES: French term for a rattling sound in the throat or chest.

REASSORTMENT: A condition resulting when two or more different types of viruses exchange genetic material to form a new, genetically different virus.

bacterium or human body cell and injecting its RNA or DNA into that cell. The cell is tricked into using the viral RNA or DNA to manufacture new virus particles, which can then infect other cells.

A global influenza pandemic occurs when a form of flu virus evolves that can be easily transmitted between human beings. There were three global flu pandemics in the twentieth century (1918–1919, 1957–1958, and 1967–1968). There had been none in the twenty-first century as of early 2007.

There are three basic types of flu virus, termed influenza A, B, and C. Influenza A viruses are the most common. They are also called avian viruses because “avian” means having to do with birds and these viruses are hosted by birds as well as by humans and some other mammals. The 1918 flu virus was an influenza A virus.

Each influenza A capsid consists of eleven different proteins. Two of these proteins tend to vary widely among flu strains. These are hemagglutinin (HA) and neuraminidase (NA). Strains of influenza A virus are named for which kinds of HA and NA protein they contain. For example, there are H1N1 flu viruses, H3N2 flu viruses, and dozens of others. The strain that caused the 1918 flu was an H1N1 virus. Not all H1N1 viruses are identical, as there are other proteins in the virus that can differ, and the H1 (HA number 1) protein itself can take on slightly different forms.

These differences are a matter of life and death. In the body, the immune system fights viral infections by destroying virus particles and the cells that have been infected by them. It decides what cells or particles to destroy by detecting molecules that belong to the virus. These molecules are called antigens. The HA protein of an influenza A virus is an especially important antigen. When the body’s immune system knows to attack a particular form of HA, it can effectively fight the virus bearing that form of HA. If a form of HA is unknown to the immune system, however, the virus is free to spread through the body while the immune system is learning how to identify it. If a person survives that variety of flu, they are permanently immune to it afterward because their immune system remembers it.

From about 1919–2005, the 1918 H1N1 flu strain was considered extinct. However, samples of the virus’s RNA were recovered in the 1990s from an Inuit Eskimo woman who had died of the flu in 1918 in Alaska and whose body had been frozen in permafrost since that time, as well as from preserved laboratory samples of lung tissue of four U.S. soldiers who died of flu in 1918. The full RNA sequence of the virus, which was reconstructed by scientists studying these samples and published in the journal *Science* in 2005, showed that the 1918 virus was probably transmitted directly from birds—which are a large natural reservoir of influenza A viruses—to human beings, unlike later pandemic influenzas, which are thought to have originated via reassortment. Reassortment can occur when two different (but related) viruses infect a single cell. Their RNA fragments, mixing inside the cell, can be reassembled into a new virus, a reassortant that contains RNA from both. The pandemic flu strains of 1957 and 1968 were probably reassortant viruses that mixed human flu viruses with avian flu viruses, but the 1918 flu was apparently a purely avian flu virus.

Re-creation of the 1918 flu virus has yielded some understanding of why this particular influenza A virus was so deadly. First, the virus replicates rapidly in the body’s tissues. How it does so is not entirely understood, but it was known as of early 2007 that the particular form of HA protein possessed by the 1918 virus was necessary to this rapid spreading. The HA protein is used by a flu virus to stick to host cells, and the form of HA protein possessed by the 1918 virus may be more efficient at doing this job. Also, the 1918 virus spreads more widely in the body than most flu viruses. Most flu viruses use a molecule called trypsin to activate HA molecules and attach to cells. The trypsin must usually come from the cell being attacked. Lung cells are rich in trypsin, which is why flu viruses thrive in lung tissue. In contrast, the NA protein of the 1918 virus can activate the virus’s own HA attachment molecule without help from cellular trypsin. The 1918 virus, therefore, was equipped to rapidly attack a wider variety of cells.

A second factor in the deadliness of the 1918 virus is that it triggers an excessive immune response from the body. Excess amounts of the chemicals called interferons, cytokines, and chemokines are produced by the tissues attacked by the virus, and these substances themselves damage the tissues—an event called by immunologists a "cytokine storm." Cells of the immune system also attack the tissues in response to these chemicals. In effect, the 1918 virus not only attacks the body but also tricks the body into attacking itself. This explains why the 1918 virus was most fatal to young adults—the population that has, on average, the strongest immune system.

Disease Transmission

Flu virus is spread mostly through contact with droplets emitted during coughing and sneezing. It is also spread through direct skin contact. The contagious period, during which a person infected with the disease can spread virus particles to an uninfected person, is about one day before symptoms appear to five days after symptoms appear. Typically, about half of all flu infections are asymptomatic (the person does not feel sick). Whether this was true of the 1918 flu is not known, because the viral nature of the disease was not understood until 1933, so asymptomatic cases could not be discovered.

The 1918 flu may have been more easily transmitted than later strains of flu because of the extreme number of virus particles probably produced in lung tissue of people that contracted it. Experiments in 2005 showed that 50 times more virus particles were released from human lung tissue growing in laboratory culture than were released when the tissue was infected by a modern H1N1 flu strain called the Texas virus. Mouse lungs infected with the 1918 virus contained 39,000 times more virus particles after 4 days than mouse lungs infected with the modern virus. However, a 2004 study published in *Nature* concluded from historical information that the transmissibility of the 1918 flu was "not large relative to many other infectious diseases."

Transportation systems such as ships and planes contribute to the global spread of viruses. The worldwide travel activity of troops during World War I (1914–1918) probably helped the 1918 flu pandemic to occur by spreading the virus quickly between countries and continents. Today, commercial jet travel is the usual means of global flu transport.

■ Scope and Distribution

H1N1 flu virus varieties are widespread today in humans and pigs. However, a number of genetic differences distinguish the present-day strains of H1N1 from the deadly 1918 strain. Today, the precise strain of H1N1 that caused the 1918 flu pandemic exists only in a few laboratories.

■ Treatment and Prevention

In 1918 the viral natural of influenza was not understood. No antiviral drugs had yet been discovered, and even antibiotics were not available. Antibiotics are drugs that kill bacteria; they are not useful directly against viral infections because they do not destroy virus particles, but they can help patients survive bacterial infections that may occur when the body is weakened by the primary, viral infection.

Influenza vaccines are now considered the best way to prevent flu. Each year, a new dominant type of influenza reliably appears in Asia. Medical researchers identify the strain and produce a vaccine that is distributed in parts of the world that have not yet experienced the new virus strain. A vaccine is a preparation that contains antigens—chemicals that alert the body's immune system to fight back against a specific invader. After being trained on specific antigens by a vaccine, the body can attack a disease agent carrying those antigens as soon as it appears. In the case of a flu vaccine, the HA protein, which is harmless by itself, is often used as the antigen. Virus particles that have been damaged so that they cannot cause an infection are also used in vaccines.

International surveillance of new influenza viruses is coordinated by the World Health Organization (WHO) Influenza Surveillance Network, set up in 1952. Scores of medical institutions in 83 countries collect flu specimens and send them to four centers (one each in Australia, Japan, the United Kingdom, and the United States) for analysis. WHO scientists study these samples each year to design vaccines for the northern and southern hemispheres, then send these vaccine designs to manufacturers for mass production. The Influenza Surveillance network works well for the industrialized countries of the world, but according to the U.S. National Academy of Science, the network is not as effective in Africa and Asia. This leaves more people vulnerable to flu pandemic in those places.

Today, vaccines are not the only tool for fighting a flu pandemic. Several antiviral drugs are available that would probably be effective against the 1918 virus or a similar virus. These drugs are designed to interfere with the functioning of one or more of the proteins a virus uses to reproduce. For instance, relenza and tamiflu are

A LEGACY OF DEATH

The influenza pandemic of 1918 killed more people—mostly otherwise healthy young adults—than any other disease of similar duration in world history. Exact numbers of those struck by influenza are unknown. In 1919, a U.S. Public Health Service survey of eleven cities and towns discovered that about 280 out of 1,000 persons had influenza during the pandemic, yielding an estimated national infection rate of over 25 million afflicted Americans in 1918–1919.

RECONSTRUCTING PAST PANDEMICS, PREPARING FOR THE FUTURE?

In 2005, scientists announced that they had sequenced the genetic structure of the virus responsible for the 1918 influenza pandemic. By analyzing tissue samples recovered from a 1918 flu victim found frozen in the Alaskan tundra, along with preserved lung tissue samples from affected World War I soldiers, scientists were able to determine that the virus is a variety of avian (bird) influenza, known as the H1N1 strain. In 2005, the World Health Organization warned that the H5N1 avian influenza strain (commonly known as the "bird flu"), which recently emerged in Asia, may lead to the next global influenza pandemic. Evidence suggests that the H5N1 flu is genetically similar to the virus that caused the 1918 pandemic.

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

Deaths from the 1918 flu in the United States reduced the statistical average life span of an American by 10 years. In the age range of 15 to 34 years, the death rate in 1918 due to pneumonia and influenza was 20 times higher than the normal rate. The large number of deaths in many of the young generation had an economic effect for decades to come. South America, Asia, and the South Pacific were also devastated by the infection.

In the United States the influenza outbreak greatly affected daily life. Gatherings of people, such as at funerals, parades, or even sales at commercial establishments were either banned or were of very short duration.

flu-specific drugs called neuraminidase inhibitors. That is, they are designed to interfere with the action of the NA (neuraminidase) proteins that help viruses spread through the body. The drugs must be given very soon after infection in order to stop its spread; they do not kill the virus, but slow its progress while the body's immune system actually kills the virus particles.

These drugs are relatively expensive to produce and not available today in stockpiles large enough to treat the populations of whole countries. Therefore, despite the existence of effective antiviral drugs, the World Health Organization warns that a 1918-type flu pandemic could still be a global disaster.

■ Impacts and Issues

As described above, the 1918 flu virus is no longer extinct. In 2005, scientists at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (a U.S. government group) in Atlanta, Georgia, reconstructed live virus from RNA fragments recovered from tissue dating to the original pandemic. This caused some controversy. Most scientists agreed that prevention of a future flu pandemic could be aided by studying live 1918 virus. However, some also argued that resurrecting the 1918 virus itself created an unacceptable risk; if the virus were to escape from the laboratories that were using it to infect mice, monkeys, and tissue cultures, it could cause another global pandemic all by itself. Others argued that publishing the RNA information for the virus might enable sophisticated terrorists to re-create the virus as a weapon. An emergency meeting of the U.S. National Science Advisory Board for Biosecurity was called before publication of the virus data in 2005, and the board decided that the benefits of the work outweighed the risks. While it may be unlikely that the 1918 flu will escape from captivity and cause a global pandemic, WHO and other expert groups warn that a new virus might evolve naturally with properties similar to those of the 1918 flu.

By 2007, an H5N1 virus causing a variety of avian flu had been circulating in Asia for several years and was causing increasing international concern as it moved into Africa, Russia, and Europe. The present form of the virus, which was highly dangerous to humans, could only be contracted directly from birds, or by intimate association of family members or health care providers with a person sick with Avian Flu. Human to human transmission by routine contact had not been documented as of April 2007, making that form of H5N1 an unlikely candidate for a human pandemic. However, if the properties of this virus are modified by re-assortment or mutation (always an ongoing process) so that it can spread quickly among humans, it is possible to cause a global pandemic with millions of casualties. As of 2004, WHO estimated that such a pandemic would cause at least two to seven million deaths worldwide and perhaps over 50 million—comparable to the 1918 pandemic. Such large numbers of deaths are possible because the modern antiviral drugs that are effective against influenza would not be available in large enough supply, and a targeted vaccine, if one could be developed before the pandemic fulminated (reached its peak), could not be manufactured in sufficient quantities quickly enough to vaccinate enough of the population to prevent the pandemic.

■ Primary Source Connection

The influenza pandemic of 1918 killed more people than any other epidemic in recorded history, including the bubonic plague pandemic of the fourteenth century known as the Black Death. The flu moved too quickly for public health authorities to adequately respond. In both military and civilian life, hospital resources were strained by the sheer number of persons sick with influenza. Physicians and nurses were overwhelmed and in short supply. Quarantine measures were enacted, but did little to stem the spread of the disease. Mortuaries were overcrowded. One Army physician, known only as "Roy," documented his observations of the epidemic at the base hospital at Camp Devens, Massachusetts, in the letter below. The letter was found years later and now resides in the archives at the University of Michigan.

Camp Devens Letter

Camp Devens, Mass.
Surgical Ward No 16
29 September 1918
(Base Hospital)

My dear Burt,

It is more than likely that you would be interested in the news of this place, for there is a possibility that you will be assigned here for duty, so having a minute between rounds I will try to tell you a little about the situation here as I have seen it in the last week.

As you know I have not seen much Pneumonia in the last few years in Detroit, so when I came here I was somewhat behind in the niceties of the Army way of intricate diagnosis. Also to make it good, I have had for the last week an exacerbation of my old "ear rot" as Artie Ogle calls it, and could not use a Stethoscope at all, but had to get by on my ability to "spot" 'em thru my general knowledge of pneumonias. I did well enough, and finally found an old Phonendoscope that I pieced together, and from then on was all right. You know the Army regulations require very close locations etc.

Camp Devens is near Boston, and has about 50,000 men, or did have before this epidemic broke loose. It also has the Base Hospital for the Div. of the N. East. This epidemic started about four weeks ago, and has developed so rapidly that the camp is demoralized and all ordinary work is held up till it has passed. All assemblages of soldiers taboo.

These men start with what appears to be an ordinary attack of La Grippe or Influenza, and when brought to the Hosp. they very rapidly develop the most viscous type of Pneumonia that has ever been seen. Two hours after admission they have the mahogany spots over the cheek bones, and a few hours later you can begin to see the cyanosis extending from their ears and spreading all over the face, until it is hard to distinguish the coloured men from the white. It is only a matter of a few hours then until death comes, and it is simply a struggle for air until they suffocate. It is horrible. One can stand it to see one, two, or twenty men die, but to see these poor devils dropping like flies sort of gets on your nerves. We have been averaging about 100 deaths per day, and still keeping it up. There is no doubt in my mind that there is a new mixed infection here, but what I don't know.

IN CONTEXT: EPIDEMIC NUMBERS

In 2005, the world's population totalled about 6.5 billion people—more than three times greater than the 1918 population. An influenza pandemic with mortality rates similar to those seen in the 1918 epidemic could kill an estimated 150 million people.

My total time is taken up hunting rales, rales dry or moist, sibilant or crepitant or any other of the hundred things that one may find in the chest, they all mean but one thing here—Pneumonia—and that means in about all cases death.

The normal number of resident Drs. here is about 25 and that has been increased to over 250, all of whom (of course excepting me) have temporary orders—"Return to your proper Station on completion of work." Mine says "Permanent Duty," but I have been in the Army just long enough to learn that it doesn't always mean what it says. So I don't know what will happen to me at the end of this.

We have lost an outrageous number of nurses and Drs., and the little town of Ayer is a sight. It takes Special trains to carry away the dead. For several days there were no coffins and the bodies piled up something fierce, we used to go down to the morgue (which is just back of my ward) and look at the boys laid out in long rows. It beats any sight they ever had in France after a battle. An extra long barracks has been vacated for the use of the morgue, and it would make any man sit up and take notice to walk down the long lines of dead soldiers all dressed and laid out in double rows. We have no relief here, you get up in the morning at 5.30 and work steady till about 9.30 P.M., sleep, then go at it again. Some of the men of course have been here all the time, and they are TIRED.

If this letter seems somewhat disconnected, overlook it, for I have been called away from it a dozen times the last time just now by the Officer of the Day, who came in to tell me that they have not as yet found at any of the autopsies any case beyond the Red. Hepatitis stage. It kills them before they get that far.

I don't wish you any hard luck, Old Man, but I do wish you were here for a while at least. It's more comfortable when one has a friend about. The men here are all good fellows, but I get so damned sick of pneumonia that when I go to eat I want to find some fellow who will not "Talk Shop" but there ain't none nohow. We eat it,

"SPANISH FLU" OR "LA GRIPPE:" AN EFFICIENT KILLER

The 1918 influenza outbreak was called the "Spanish Flu" or "La Grippe." The moniker came from the some 8 million influenza deaths that occurred in Spain in one month at the height of the outbreak. Ironically, more recent research has demonstrated that the strain of influenza that ravaged Spain was different from that which spread influenza around the world.

Recent research has demonstrated that the particular strain of virus was one that even an efficiently functioning immune system was not well equipped to cope with. A mutation produced a surface protein on the virus that was not immediately recognized by the immune system; this contributed to the ability of the virus to cause an infection.

live it, sleep it, and dream it, to say nothing of breathing it 16 hours a day. I would be very grateful indeed if you would drop me a line or two once in a while, and I will promise you that if you ever get into a fix like this, I will do the same for you.

Each man here gets a ward with about 150 beds (mine has 168) and has an Asst. Chief to boss him, and you can imagine what the paper work alone is—fierce—and the Govt. demands all paper work be kept up in good shape. I have only four day nurses and five night nurses (female), a ward-master, and four orderlies. So you can see that we are busy. I write this in piecemeal fashion. It may be a long time before I can get another letter to you, but will try.

This letter will give you an idea of the monthly report which has to be in Monday. I have mine most ready now. My Boss was in just now and gave me a lot more work to do so I will have to close this.

Goodbye old Pal,

"God be with you till we meet again"

Keep the Bouells open.

(Sgd) Roy.

Roy

"CAMP DEVENS LETTER." *BRITISH MEDICAL JOURNAL* (DECEMBER 22–29, 1979).

SEE ALSO *Avian Influenza; H5N1 Virus; Influenza; Influenza Pandemic of 1957; Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation; Pandemic Preparedness; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Corsby, Alfred W. *America's Forgotten Pandemic.* New York: Cambridge University Press, 2003.

Duncan, K. *Hunting the 1918 Flu: One Scientist's Search for a Killer Virus.* Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2003.

Kolata, Gina. *Flu: The Story of the Great Influenza Pandemic of 1918 & the Search for the Virus That Caused It.* Upland, PA: Diane Pub. Co., 2001.

Periodicals

Holmes, Edward C. "1918 and All That." *Nature.* 303 (2004): 1787–1788.

Johnson, Niall P.A.S. "Updating the Accounts: Global Mortality of the 1918–1920 'Spanish' Influenza Pandemic." *Bulletin of the History of Medicine.* 76 (2002): 105–115.

Kaiser, Jocelyn. "Resurrected Influenza Virus Yields Secrets of Deadly 1918 Pandemic." *Science.* 310 (2005): 28029.

Koelle, Katia, et al. "Epochal Evolution Shapes the Phylodynamics of Interpandemic Influenza A (H3N2) in Humans." *Science.* 314(2006): 1898–1903.

Laver, Graeme, and Elspeth Garman. "The Origin and Control of Pandemic Influenza." *Science.* 293 (2001): 1776–1777.

Loo, Yueh-Ming, and Michael Gale Jr. "Fatal Immunity and the 1918 Virus." *Nature.* 445 (2007): 18–19.

Mills, Christina E., James M. Robins, and March Lipsitch. "Transmissibility of 1918 Pandemic Influenza." *Science.* 432 (2004): 904–906.

Smith, Kerri. "Concern as Revived 1918 Flu Virus Kills Monkeys" *Nature.* 445 (2007): 237.

Tumpey, Terrence M., et al. "Characterization of the Reconstructed 1918 Spanish Influenza Pandemic Virus." *Science.* 310 (2005): 77–80.

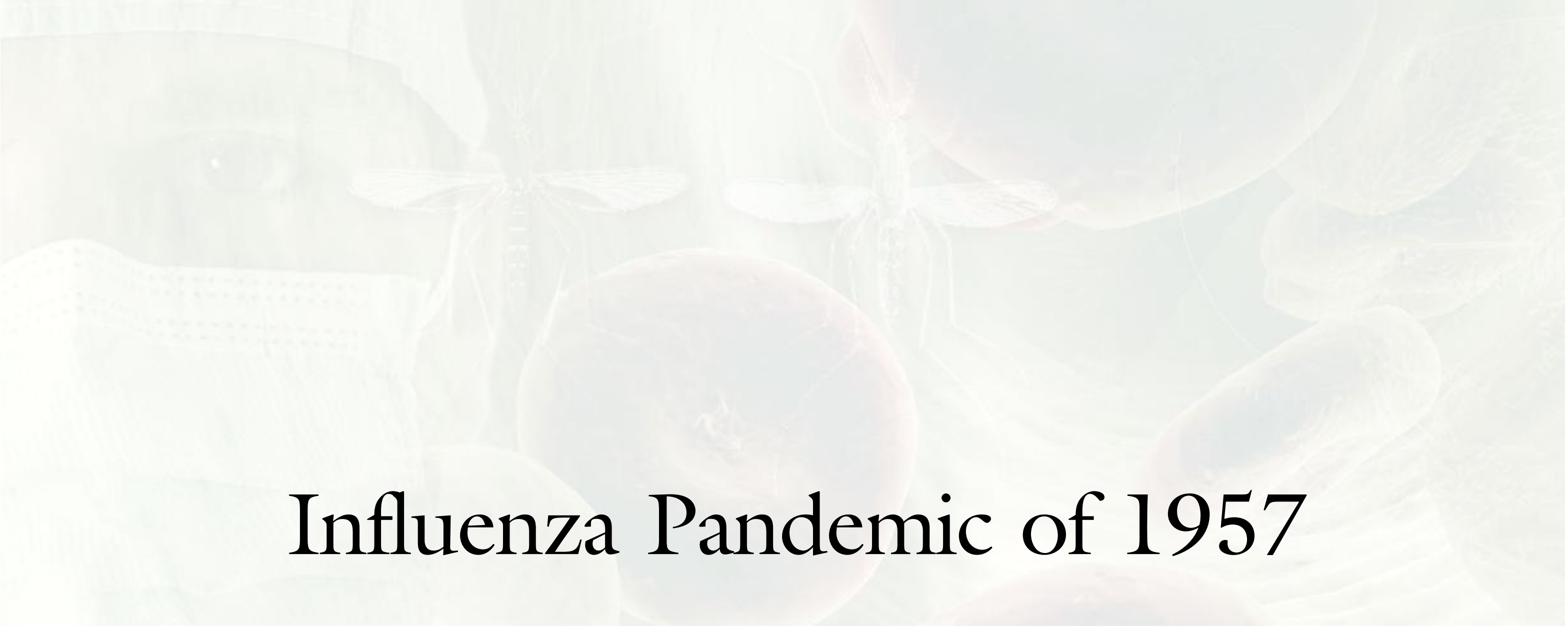
Web Sites

National Vaccine Program Office, United States Department of Health and Human Services. "Pandemics and Pandemic Scares in the 20th Century." <http://www.hhs.gov/nvpo/pandemics/flu3.htm#10> (accessed January 23, 2007).

The White House (U.S. Government). "National Strategy for Pandemic Influenza." November 1, 2005 <http://www.whitehouse.gov/homeland/pandemic-influenza.html> (accessed January 23, 2007).

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. "PandemicFlu.org/AsianFlu.org." August 24, 2006 <http://www.pandemicflu.gov> (accessed January 25, 2007).

Larry Gilman



Influenza Pandemic of 1957

Introduction

The 1957 influenza pandemic was the second-greatest influenza pandemic in the twentieth century. It killed approximately one to two million people worldwide, including about 70,000 in the United States. The first influenza pandemic of the twentieth century, in 1918–19, killed between 20 and 100 million people worldwide and about 675,000 in the United States; the third, in 1968, killed about 700,000 people worldwide and 34,000 in the United States. Influenza (“flu” for short) is a viral infection of the respiratory system that is spread either by contact or by droplets of mucus or saliva ejected into the air by a cough or sneeze. Symptoms of flu include cough, muscle aches, vomiting, loss of appetite, fever, and, in extreme cases, death. Flu pandemics tend to occur every 10 or 11 years, but most are not as severe as those of 1918, 1957, and 1968.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The flu that caused the 1957 pandemic is called Asian flu because it was first detected in China in February, 1957. United States government experts could not decide at first whether a 1918-style disaster was in the making and did not want to alarm the public, so the Surgeon General

A Dallas schoolteacher conducts class with 7 of her 30 students present during the 1957 influenza pandemic. *© Bettmann/Corbis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

CAPSID: The protein shell surrounding a virus particle.

MUTATION: A mutation is a change in an organism's DNA that occurs over time and may render it less sensitive to drugs which are used against it.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

REASSORTMENT: A condition resulting when two or more different types of viruses exchange genetic material to form a new, genetically different virus.

VIRION: A virion is a mature virus particle, consisting of a core of ribonucleic acid (RNA) or deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) surrounded by a protein coat. This is the form in which a virus exists outside of its host cell.

recommended that flu vaccinations be given only through ordinary doctor-patient channels. The pandemic did spread through the United States, however, starting in the late spring and peaking in October 1957. A second wave of infections, mostly affecting the elderly, occurred in January and February 1958. About 69,800 people died of the Asian flu in the United States (In a typical year, as of the early 2000s, about 36,000 people die of flu each year in the United States. However, the U.S. population was much smaller in 1957, so the death rate from the pandemic was relatively much higher.) Flu costs billions of dollars even in a non-pandemic year because of hospitalizations and lost work time.

Influenza is caused by a virus. Viruses are tiny clusters of molecules called virions or virus particles. Each influenza virion consists of an out shell or capsid made of proteins (a kind of complex molecule used by all living things) and an inner core of RNA (ribonucleic acid). A virion attaches to a cell using capsid proteins. It then injects its RNA into the cell. The cell's mechanisms cannot tell viral RNA from its own RNA, and manufacture proteins according to the instructions in the viral RNA. These molecules assemble themselves into new virus particles. New influenza viruses escape from the host cell by budding off from the cell membrane.

There are three types of flu, namely influenza A, B, and C. Influenza A viruses are also called avian viruses because they live in birds as well as in human beings. The 1957 flu virus was an influenza A virus. Influenza A viruses are given code names to distinguish them. These names are based on two of the 11 proteins found in the capsid, hemagglutinin (HA) and neuraminidase (NA). HA and NA each occur in a variety of forms which are given numbers by biologists. A virus having a type 2 HA protein and a type 2 NA protein is an H2N2 virus. The virus that caused the 1957 pandemic was an H2N2 virus.

Mutations (changes) occur in viral RNA, changing the capsid proteins in new viruses. When enough of these changes happen, the immune system's memory of its previous encounter with flu is no longer useful; the new, changed virus is not recognized as soon as it appears, and so has a chance to cause an infection before the body destroys it. Viruses can also change by reassortment. Reassortment can happen when two different types of virus infect the same cell at the same time. The new viruses that the cell manufactures may contain RNA from both types. The 1957 H2N2 virus probably arose through reassortment of a virus originating in birds (an avian influenza) and a virus already easily transmitted among humans.

Scope and Distribution

Today, the strain of H2N2 influenza A virus that caused the 1957 pandemic exists only in laboratory cultures. Other H2N2 viruses exist in the wild.

Treatment and Prevention

No antiviral drugs existed in 1957. A vaccine was created for this flu but was not available to most people. Treatment, as for the common cold, consisted mostly of rest, fluids, and staying warm. Antibiotics—drugs that kill only bacteria—are sometimes given to flu patients to fight secondary bacterial infections but do not treat the flu itself.

Today, vaccination remains the first line of defense against any flu outbreak, but several antiviral drugs are available. Efforts are sometimes made to prevent the origin of 1957-type flu viruses by preventing people who have virus infections from working around or slaughtering birds while sick. The goal is to lessen the chances that reassortment will occur in cells infected by an avian virus from the birds and a virus already easily transmitted among humans.

Impacts and Issues

Unlike the Spanish flu pandemic of 1918–1920, international strategies to report and respond to pandemic threats gave many nations advance warning of the new pandemic. Soon after the virus was identified in China, several nations were able to develop and produce vaccines to stem the spread of the illness. In addition to limited vaccination programs, many of the same quarantine techniques that were used to combat the 1918 pandemic were used again in 1957. Since children and families with young children were disproportionately affected, many schools and libraries closed temporarily to prevent the spread of the flu within local communities. Such measures helped limit the spread of the flu among children, but the disease reemerged in early 1958. Most of the victims of the "second wave" of the pandemic were elderly.

In 2005, it was found that quality-control kits containing live Asian flu virus had been sent to 6,000 labs in 19 countries. To prevent the reintroduction of the 1957 pandemic flu virus into the general population, efforts were overseen by the World Health Organization (WHO) to track down and destroy all the virus samples. No outbreak occurred.

SEE ALSO *Avian Influenza; H5N1; Influenza; Influenza Epidemic of 1918; Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Goldsmith, Connie. *Influenza: The Next Pandemic?* New York: Twenty-First Century Books, 2006.

Periodicals

Altman, Lawrence K. "Flu Samples, Released in Error, Are Mostly Destroyed, U.S. Says." *New York Times.* April 22, 2005.

Check, Erika. "Heightened Security After Flu Scare Sparks Biosafety Debate." *Nature.* 432 (2005): 943.

Ferguson, Neil M. "Ecological and Immunological Determinants of Influenza Evolution." *Nature.* 4222 (2003): 428-433.

Laver, Graeme and Elspeth Garman. "The Origin and Control of Pandemic Influenza." *Science.* 293 (2001): 1776–1777.

Web Sites

National Vaccine Program Office, United States Department of Health and Human Services. "Pandemics and Pandemic Scares in the 20th Century." <http://www.hhs.gov/nvpo/pandemics/flu3.htm#10> (accessed January 23, 2007).

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. "PandemicFlu.org/AsianFlu.org." August 24, 2006 <http://www.pandemicflu.gov> (accessed January 25, 2007).

The White House (U.S. Government). "National Strategy for Pandemic Influenza." November 1, 2005 <http://www.whitehouse.gov/homeland/pandemic-influenza.html> (accessed January 23, 2007).

Larry Gilman

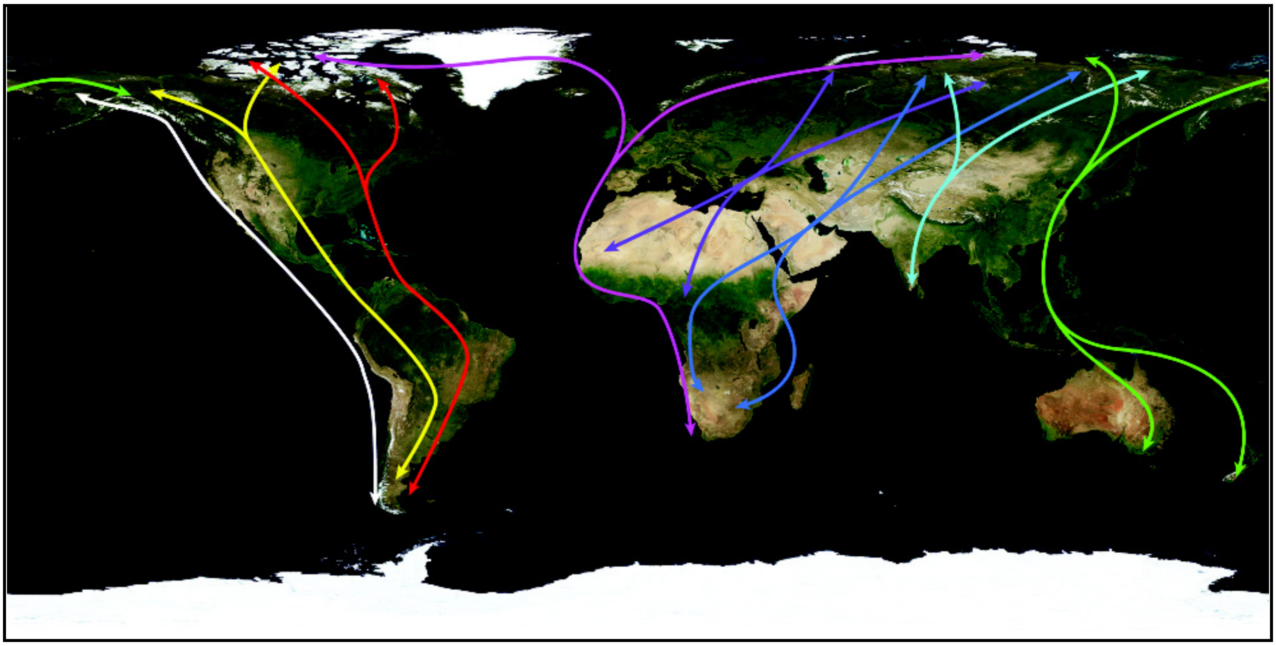
Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation

Introduction

Influenza is an important disease because of the rapidity with which epidemics spread, the widespread morbidity, and the severity of complications, including viral and bacterial pneumonias. During major epidemics, severe illness and death occur, mainly among the elderly and people with compromised immune systems. In the United States, between 10,000 and 40,000 people die each year from influenza complications. However, in the 1918 pandemic, most of those who died were young and healthy adults. Given the potential for serious complications and high mortality rates with influenza, it is critical that public health agencies develop a system for tracking influenza epidemics from their origin each year in order to mount defensive measures such as vaccines and educational programs for potential victims.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Influenza is an acute viral disease of the respiratory tract characterized by fever, headache, myalgia (muscle aches),



Bird migration routes are superimposed on this satellite map of the world. Many birds migrate on a seasonal basis from one area to another. The most common pattern is for birds to breed in the northern hemisphere's temperate or Arctic regions, and then migrate to the tropics or the temperate region of the southern hemisphere, avoiding the winter of the northern hemisphere. The different routes (flyways) are colored: Pacific Americas (white); Mississippi Americas (yellow); Atlantic Americas (red); East Atlantic (pink); Black Sea and Mediterranean (purple); East Africa and West Asia (blue); Central Asia (turquoise); and East Asia and Australian (green). It is thought that diseases such as avian flu can be spread along bird migratory routes. *SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

prostration, nasal inflammation and discharge, sore throat, and cough. Cough can often be severe and protracted, but other manifestations are usually self-limiting, with recovery in two to seven days. The recognition of influenza is usually based on epidemiological characteristics as part of a general epidemic; otherwise it is difficult to distinguish influenza from a severe cold or other viral respiratory diseases such as viral pneumonia. Viral pneumonia can also be caused by influenza virus, although gastrointestinal tract symptoms (nausea, vomiting, diarrhea) have been reported in about 25% of children in school outbreaks. The spread of influenza virus is predominantly airborne among crowded populations in confined spaces, especially school buses and barracks. Transmission may also occur by indirect contact, as the influenza virus may persist for hours, particularly in cold and dry weather. The viral incubation period is short; usually one to three days. Influenza is communicable for about three to five days after onset in adults and up to a week in young children.

There are three types of influenza virus currently recognized: types A, B, and C. Type A includes three subtypes (H1N1, H2N2, and H3N2) that have been associated with widespread epidemics and pandemics. Type B has been associated with regional or widespread epidemics. Type C is typically associated with sporadic cases and minor localized outbreaks. The viral type is determined by the antigenic properties of two relatively stable structural proteins, the nucleoprotein and the matrix protein.

The emergence of a completely new subtype, the process of known as antigenic shift, occurs at unpredictable intervals and only with type A viruses. Viruses characterized by antigenic shift are responsible for the pandemics that result from the unpredictable recombination (new combinations of genetic material) of human and swine or avian (usually duck) antigens. Relatively minor antigenic changes—known as "drift"—of type A and type B viruses that are responsible for frequent epidemics and regional outbreaks occur constantly, necessitating periodic (almost annually) reformulation of influenza vaccine. During the past 125 years, pandemics occurred in 1889, 1918, 1957, and 1968.

Scope and Distribution

Once an epidemic is underway, case attack rates range from 10% to 20% in the general population and can range up to 50% in confined populations such as boarding schools, military bases, or nursing homes. Influenza epidemics caused by type A viruses, type B viruses, or both occur in the United States almost every year. In temperate zones, epidemics usually occur in winter. In the tropics, they often occur during the rainy season, but outbreaks or sporadic cases may occur in any month. Influenza also occurs naturally in swine, horses, mink, and seals, and in many domestic and wild bird species all over the world. Transmission between species and reassortment (exchanging genetic material inside a host) of influenza A viruses have been reported to occur between swine, humans, ducks, and turkeys. The human influenza viruses responsible for the 1957 and 1968 pandemics contained gene segments closely related to those of avian influenza viruses.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIGENIC DRIFT: Antigenic drift describes the gradual accumulation of mutations in genes (e.g. in genes coding for surface proteins) over a period of time.

COHORTING: Cohorting is the practice of grouping persons with like infections or symptoms together in order to reduce transmission to others and keep patients under close observation for a particular condition.

EPIDEMIC: From the Greek *epidemic*, meaning "prevalent among the people," is most commonly used to describe an outbreak of an illness or disease in which the number of individual cases significantly exceeds the usual or expected number of cases in any given population.

REASSORTMENT: A condition resulting when two or more different types of viruses exchange genetic material to form a new, genetically different virus.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

PROSTRATION: A condition marked by nausea, disorientation, dizziness, and weakness caused by dehydration and prolonged exposure to high temperatures; also called heat exhaustion or hyperthermia.

Humans are the primary reservoir for human infections, though mammalian reservoirs such as swine and avian reservoirs such as ducks are likely sources of new human subtypes thought to emerge through genetic reassortment. New virulent subtypes cause pandemic influenza by spreading through a population that has little or no immunity because of lack of exposure to the new viral surface antigens.

When a new viral subtype appears, all children and adults are equally susceptible except for individuals who have lived through earlier epidemics of the same subtype. Infection produces immunity to the specific infecting virus but the duration of immunity depends on the degree of antigenic drift and the number of previous infections. Flu vaccines produce responses that are specific for the included viruses and also boost responses to related strains to which the individual has been exposed before. Attack rates tend to be age specific; people that have lived long enough to experience earlier epidemics of the same subtype usually have at least partial immunity years later, and this partial immunity protects them from closely related subtypes.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment

Because any outbreak of influenza has important and sometimes catastrophic implications, all cases must be reported to local health authorities in order to assist disease surveillance. The identity of the disease agent by viral subtype as determined by laboratory testing should be provided if possible. Although annual vaccination is the primary strategy for preventing complications of influenza virus infections, the CDC notes that antiviral medications with activity against influenza viruses can be effective for the chemoprophylaxis and treatment of influenza. Four licensed influenza antiviral agents are available in the United States: amantadine, rimantadine, zanamivir, and oseltamivir. These treatments should be started within 48 hours of the onset of symptoms. Influenza A virus resistance to amantadine and rimantadine can emerge rapidly during treatment. On the basis of antiviral testing results conducted at the CDC and in Canada indicating high levels of resistance, the CDC recommends that neither amantadine nor rimantadine be used for the treatment or chemoprophylaxis of influenza A in the United States until susceptibility to these antiviral medications has been re-established among circulating influenza A viruses. Oseltamivir (Tamiflu™) may have caused delirium in some pediatric patients.

Since influenza is usually self-limiting in healthy adults under age 65, the CDC generally advises against personal stockpiling of the drugs. Federal and state health authorities and healthcare institutions are creating stockpiles of antiviral influenza medications for persons at greatest risk for complications from influenza. A potential consequence of personal stockpiling is depletion of existing supplies of antivirals so that they will not be available to those persons who most need them. In addition, widespread personal stockpiling and inappropriate use of antivirals (e.g., as a daily regimen regardless of the degree of influenza risk) might compound the risk for influenza by creating conditions for the emergence of resistant strains of influenza. Widespread resistance to oseltamivir could be catastrophic in the event of an avian flu pandemic on the scale of the 1918 pandemic.

Prevention

Influenza vaccination remains the cornerstone for the control and treatment of influenza, and antiviral influenza medications should serve as an adjunct to vaccine. In addition, the public and healthcare personnel need to be trained to avoid unprotected coughs and sneezes as well as proper handwashing. Patient isolation is impractical in most cases because of the viral incubation period during which victims are infectious without symptoms. However, during an epidemic it would be desirable to isolate patients, especially infants and children, by putting them in the same room ("cohorting") during the first five to seven days of illness.

Immunization may provide 70% to 80% protection against infection in healthy young adults when the vaccine antigen closely matches circulating viruses. Vaccine programs have been less successful in preventing disease, but have reduced the hospitalization of people over 65 for complications such as pneumococcal pneumonia by 30% to 50%. The CDC recommends that influenza vaccination for the elderly be supplemented with immunization against pneumococcal pneumonia. Immunization can benefit any individual, but it should especially be considered for emergency responders, people performing essential services, and military personnel.

Influenza vaccine should be provided each year before influenza is expected in the community (November through March in the United States). Travelers should be immunized attending on the different seasonal patterns of influenza in various parts of the world. The single dose suffices for persons with prior exposure to Influenza A and B. Two doses of vaccine one month apart are required for younger persons with no previous immunization history. Routine immunization programs should be directed primarily at those with the greatest risk of serious complications or death, and those who might spread infection to them, such as Health Care personnel and household contacts of high-risk people.

Tracking

Influenza is a disease that is under surveillance by the World Health Organization (WHO); the following procedure is recommended:

1. Influenza epidemics within a country should be reported to the WHO.
2. The viral subtype should be reported and prototype strains should be submitted to one of the three WHO centers for reference and research on influenza (Atlanta, London, and Melbourne). Throat secretion specimens, aspirates, and paired blood samples may also be sent to any WHO-recognized national influenza center.
3. Conduct epidemiological studies and promptly identify viruses at the national health agencies.

4. Ensure sufficient commercial and/or governmental facilities for the production of adequate quantities of vaccine and programs for vaccine administration to high-risk people and essential personnel.

In view of the seriousness of the threat of an avian flu pandemic, the stockpiling of adequate supplies of antiviral medications should be added to this list of national health agency responsibilities.

Impacts and Issues

Recent news media publicity regarding the possibility of another avian flu epidemic on the scale of the 1918 pandemic stimulated many members of the public to purchase, privately stockpile, and consume pharmaceutical products, especially oseltamivir, as a way to ward off a supposed "imminent" outbreak of H5N1 influenza. This consumption amounted to a waste of valuable antiviral supplies and has increased the probability of the emergence of resistant viral strains. During treatment, drug resistant viruses may emerge late in the course of therapy and be transmitted to others. Therefore, the cohorting of people on antiviral therapy should be considered, especially in closed populations with many high-risk individuals. Antibiotics should be administered only if patients develop bacterial complications. However, if government agencies are to ask individuals to forgo private stockpiles of antivirals, government must assure adequate supplies of antivirals for the public in case of a severe outbreak of type A influenza. In the case of a severe outbreak, aggregations of people in emergency shelters should be avoided, since this will favor outbreaks of the disease if the virus is introduced.

SEE ALSO *H5N1; Influenza; Pandemic Preparedness; Public Health and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Heymann, David L. *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, 18th ed. Washington, DC: American Public Health Association, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Antiviral Medications for Influenza." <http://www.cdc.gov/flu/professionals/treatment> (accessed June 13, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Increased Antiviral Medication Sales before the 2005-06 Influenza Season—New York City." <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm5510a3.htm> (accessed June 13, 2007).

Kenneth LaPensee

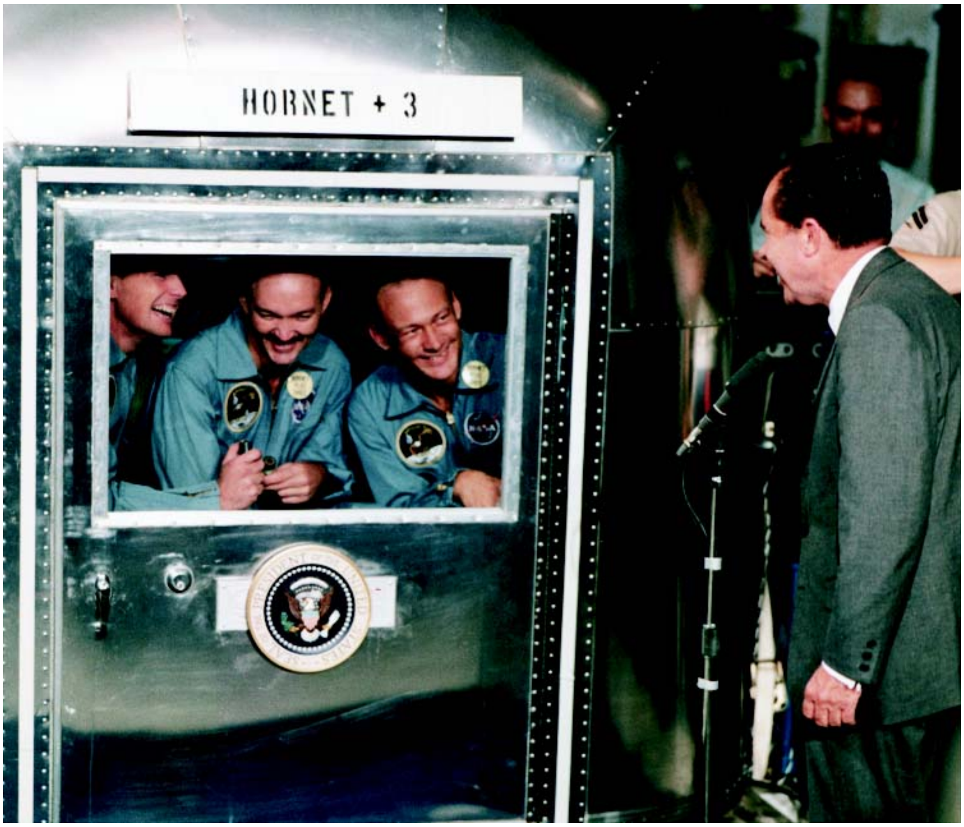
Isolation and Quarantine

Introduction

Isolation and quarantine are two strategies that can be used to control the spread of a disease that is contagious (easily passed from person-to-person). Both approaches are minimize the exposure of other people to infected persons.

Isolation and quarantine are not the same. Isolation is more common than quarantine and used for someone who is known to have a disease. Quarantine is used for someone who has been exposed to a disease or disease-causing agent, but who is not currently displaying symptoms and who may not necessarily become ill.

Isolation and quarantine may be voluntary. For example, during the 2003 outbreak of Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS) in Toronto, Canada, over 15,000 people were asked to voluntarily quarantine themselves for 10



Quarantined *Apollo* 11 astronauts Neil Armstrong, Michael Collins, and Edwin E. Aldrin Jr. receive a welcome home from President Richard Nixon after completing their mission to the moon in 1969. © *Corbis.*

days during the height of the outbreak. During a voluntary quarantine, people may elect to remain at home, forgo public gatherings, and curtail travel on airplanes, busses, trains, and other forms of public transit. However, if an outbreak involves a disease that is judged by public health authorities to be a severe contagious threat, isolation or quarantine may be imposed by law. In the United States, only disease threats that are listed in an Executive Order by the President qualify for government-imposed quarantine.

History and Scientific Foundations

The concept of quarantine dates back to the 14th century, when ships arriving in Venice from regions where plague was occurring were required to anchor in the harbor for forty days before the crew were permitted to go ashore. The word quarantine is derived from the Italian *quaranta giorni*, meaning forty days.

In the United States, federal legislation governing the imposition of quarantine was first enacted in 1878 in response to outbreaks of yellow fever. Then the quarantine powers of the federal government were minimal and did not override state and local government public health practices. The federal government assumed more responsibility for quarantine in 1892, in response to outbreaks of cholera.

While states continue to have powers to issue quarantines for illnesses within their borders, the federal government has had responsibility for quarantine on a national scale since the implementation of the 1944 Public Service Act. In 1967, the federal responsibility for the imposition and enforcement of quarantine was transferred to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), where it has remained. The Division of Global Migration and Quarantine is responsible for the nationwide system of quarantine stations (as of 2006 there were 18, with two more slated to open during 2007).

Both quarantine and isolation are designed to protect the larger community from people known to be infected with a contagious disease deemed to be a public health threat (isolation) or people who have had contact with someone who has become ill with the disease and so who may themselves be infected while not yet displaying symptoms (quarantine). Those in isolation can be treated while at the same time minimizing the chance that the disease will spread. People under quarantine can be monitored for symptoms of the disease; if symptoms do not appear within a certain time (10 days is typical, since voluntary compliance with a quarantine becomes difficult after that) then the quarantine can be lifted.

Applications and Research

Isolation and quarantine are public health responses to an illness outbreak. Of these, isolation is common, being practiced daily in most hospitals, particularly since the appearance and increasing prevalence of tuberculosis and disease causing bacteria that are resistant to multiple antibiotics (an example is methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, or MRSA). A common site in hospitals nowadays are posted warnings restricting visitation to a ward room housing a patient with a contagious infection.

Isolation is a standard procedure. In contrast, quarantine is less common and is more of a drastic measure to control an infectious disease. While it can be useful in controlling an illness outbreak, quarantine can leave lasting effects on those involved. A study conducted on some of those who were quarantined during the 2003 SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome) outbreak in Toronto, Canada, documented symptoms of posttraumatic stress disorder and depression in about 30% of study respondents.

WORDS TO KNOW

CONTAGIOUS: A disease that is easily spread among a population, usually by casual person to person contact.

EXECUTIVE ORDER: Presidential orders that implement or interpret a federal statute, administrative policy, or treaty.

NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATIONS (NGOS): A voluntary organization that is not part of any government; often organized to address a specific issue or perform a humanitarian function.

Impacts and Issues

Quarantine can affect civil liberties. Imposed quarantines may restrict freedoms of movement and assembly. Schools, restaurants, businesses, means of transit, and public spaces may be closed. The degree to which civil liberties are curtailed in response to an epidemic may be controversial, and whenever possible, quarantine is a voluntary measure. In the event of an imposed quarantine, government entities, law enforcement, media, and public health organizations should provide as much information as possible to those affected by a quarantine.

Isolation and quarantine can also affect someone's privacy, since of necessity the community will need to know who is being contained. This lack of privacy can even include revealing a person's medical history. Thus, isolation and quarantine are considered carefully and not undertaken without a demonstrated and immediate need to do so.

In the United States, an Executive Order of the president identifies quarantinable diseases and authorizes government action to implement quarantines, restrict

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

In the United States, [42 U.S.C. 247d] Sec. 319(a) of the Public Health Service Act allows the Health and Human Services (HHS) Secretary to declare a public health emergency and "take such action as may be appropriate to respond" including quarantine, prevention of disease, treatment recommendations, research, etc. if "the Secretary determines, after consultation with such public health officials as may be necessary, that (1) a disease or disorder presents a public health emergency; or (2) a public health emergency, including significant outbreaks of infectious diseases or bioterrorist attacks, otherwise exists, the Secretary may take such action as may be appropriate to respond to the public health emergency, including making grants, providing awards for expenses, and entering into contracts and conducting and supporting investigations into the cause, treatment, or prevention of a disease or disorder as described Any such determination of a public health emergency terminates upon the Secretary declaring that the emergency no longer exists, or upon the expiration of the 90-day period beginning on the date on which the determination is made by the Secretary, whichever occurs first. Determinations that terminate under the preceding sentence may be renewed by the Secretary (on the basis of the same or additional facts), and the preceding sentence applies to each such renewal. Not later than 48 hours after making a determination under this subsection of a public health emergency (including a renewal), the Secretary shall submit to the Congress written notification of the determination."

travel, and detain persons to stop the spread of certain infectious diseases. Executive Order 13295 lists cholera, diphtheria, infectious tuberculosis, plague, smallpox, yellow fever, and viral hemorrhagic fevers (such as Ebola, Marburg, and others) as quarantinable. In 2003, following an outbreak in Asia, SARS was added to the list. The growing threat of H5N1 virus and possible pandemic influenza prompted the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) to request its addition to the list. On April 3, 2005, U.S. President George W. Bush amended Executive Order 13295, identifying pandemic influenza as quarantinable in the United States.

Increased movement of peoples worldwide—through migration, travel, or war—has prompted the need for better international protocols for preventing the spread of infectious diseases. Quarantine across national borders is problematic, sometimes complicated by war, political tensions, different languages, health, and legal systems. Over the past several decades, national governments and international agencies have worked to develop a global network of disease reporting. Increased communication about outbreaks of infectious diseases help nations prepare for disease threats and enact preventative measures within their own borders. The United Nations World Health Organization (WHO) and other non-governmental organizations (NGOs), such as Doctors Without Borders, also report and respond to infectious disease outbreaks. International agencies and NGOs typically work with national and local governments to implement disease treatment and prevention strategies, including recommendations of isolation or voluntary or imposed quarantine.

Many of the newest international epidemic identification and national quarantine protocols were tested during the intercontinental SARS outbreak in 2003. Italian physician Carlo Urbani (1956–2003) identified the new illness when asked to travel to a Vietnamese hospital to look at a patient thought to have a new strain of influenza. Urbani diagnosed the patient, an American businessman, as suffering from a new, and possibly highly contagious disease. Urbani notified the WHO, CDC, and Vietnamese national health officials, recommending isolation of patients, quarantine of SARS-exposed healthcare workers, and screening of travelers. Urbani himself contracted SARS, and after developing symptoms while aboard an airline flight to Bangkok, Thailand, relayed the need for his own isolation upon landing. Urbani died shortly thereafter of SARS-related complications. However, his rapid identification of the disease and notification of international health authorities, and the concerted efforts of health officials in implementing screening, isolation, and quarantine, stemmed the spread of the disease and saved many lives.

See Also *Contact precautions; Influenza Pandemic of 1918; Personal Protective Equipment; Standard Precautions.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Barry, John M. *The Great Influenza: The Epic Story of the Deadliest Plague In History.* New York: Viking, 2004.

Rothstein, Mark A. *Quarantine And Isolation: Lessons Learned from Sars: A Report to the CDC.* Darby PA: Diane Publishing, 2003.

Tierno, Philip M. *The Secret Life of Germs: What They Are, Why We Need Them, and How We Can Protect Ourselves Against Them.* New York: Atria, 2004.

Periodicals

Day, Troy, Andrew Park, Neal Madras, Abba Gumel, and Jianhong Wu. "When is quarantine a useful control strategy for emerging infectious diseases?" *American Journal of Epidemiology.* 163 (2006): 479-485.

Hawryluck, Laura, Wayne L. Gold, Susan Robinson, Stephen Pogorski, Sandra Galea, and Rima Styra. "SARS control and psychological effects of quarantine, Toronto, Canada." *Emerging Infectious Diseases.* 10 (2004): 1206–1212.

Brian Hoyle

Japanese Encephalitis

Introduction

Encephalitis is an inflammation of the brain that is most often caused by a virus. The Japanese encephalitis virus (JEV) is the leading cause of viral encephalitis in Asia, but the infection is relatively rare in the West. Although only a minority of cases of Japanese encephalitis causes symptoms, such as headache, seizures and paralysis, the disease is potentially fatal, and there can be long-lasting disability among survivors. There is no cure for Japanese encephalitis, but there are vaccines available. Countries that vaccinate their populations against JEV, including Japan, tend to have fewer cases of encephalitis than those where vaccination is less routine, such as in India and Vietnam. Vaccination is often recommended for travelers, especially if they expect lengthy stays in rural endemic areas (where the disease occurs consistently within a specific region/locality). People who intend to reside in an area where JEV is endemic also need vaccination to protect themselves.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Japanese encephalitis virus (JEV) is a flavivirus, a type of single-stranded RNA virus that is related to the St. Louis

At a medical college in India in 2005, mothers cradle their children who are afflicted with Japanese encephalitis. In northern India, the largest outbreak of the disease in decades struck more than 5,000 people and claimed over 1,300 lives. *AP Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ARTHROPOD-BORNE DISEASE: A disease caused by one of a phylum of organisms characterized by exoskeletons and segmented bodies.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to disease causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (an example is food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (an example is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

MORBIDITY: The term "morbidity" comes from the Latin word "morbus," which means sick. In medicine it refers not just to the state of being ill, but also to the severity of the illness. A serious disease is said to have a high morbidity.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

encephalitis virus and West Nile virus. The incubation period of JEV is 5–15 days, and persons with symptoms will usually have a history of exposure to mosquitoes in an endemic area in Asia. Most JEV infections are subclinical, that is, the infected person has no symptoms or only mild symptoms, such as headache and fever. One person with JEV in 250 will develop acute (rapid-onset) symptoms, including headache, neck stiffness, stupor, disorientation, tremor, seizures, paralysis, and even coma. Japanese encephalitis can be difficult to distinguish from the other types of viral encephalitis; tests of blood or cerebrospinal fluid can give a definitive diagnosis if this is needed. The mortality rate among the symptomatic cases is between 10% and 30%, and is higher where there is only limited access to intensive care facilities which may be required if paralysis leads to breathing or feeding problems. Up to 30% of survivors of Japanese encephalitis are left with morbidity (complications) including long-term disabilities such as movement problems, changes in behavior, blindness, and seizures. Because intensive care is often needed in Japanese encephalitis to help the patient feed and breathe, there may also be various complications arising from the bacterial infections, such as pneumonia and urinary tract infection, that are common to any patient requiring incubation for breathing, elimination, or nutrition.

Japanese encephalitis is an arthropod-borne virus, and is transmitted through the bite of the rice paddy-breeding *Culex* mosquito, which is why the disease tends to occur mainly in rural areas. Mosquitoes become infected with JEV through feeding on the natural animal reservoirs of JEV, which are wild birds and domestic pigs. Once JEV has been transmitted to a human host, through a mosquito bite, it may spread through the body and reach the brain. The transmitting mosquitoes prefer to bite humans outdoors and are at their most active during the evening and night. JEV cannot be transmitted via direct person-to-person contact.

Scope and Distribution

Children and the elderly are the most likely to develop the symptomatic form of Japanese encephalitis. The disease is endemic in the countries of the Indian sub-continent, South East Asia, and North East Asia, including Japan. It is transmitted by *Culex* mosquitoes living in rural rice-growing and pig-farming regions, breeding in flooded rice fields, marshes, and standing water around rice fields. Research has shown that most people in endemic areas have been exposed to JEV, even though they may not have had any symptoms of encephalitis. The rate of symptomatic disease in an endemic area is estimated at about one per 150,000 of the population.

Japanese encephalitis is seasonal, as might be expected from a disease transmitted by mosquitoes whose activity depends upon temperature. In temperate regions, it occurs from June to September; in the sub-tropics, the season is extended from April to October, and in tropical regions, Japanese encephalitis occurs all year round. In the United States, just 12 cases were recorded between 1978 and 1993, and these were among expatriates, travelers, or military personnel returning from parts of the world where Japanese encephalitis is endemic. Currently, the rate of infection among U.S. citizens remains at less than one case per year. In endemic areas, it is those living in rural areas that are most at risk; the disease tends to occur less frequently in towns and cities. In general, the risk of travelers contacting JEV infection is low, but much depends on where they are residing and the length of potential exposure.

Treatment and Prevention

As of early 2007, there are no specific anti-viral drugs effective against JEV. Treatment of Japanese encephalitis involves supportive treatment dealing with the symptoms of the disease. For instance, anticonvulsant drugs can be used to treat seizures. Intensive care is often needed, if neurological problems like paralysis set in, to provide feeding and airway support. There are a number of vaccines against JEV, some of which are only available in Asia. One of these is a vaccine composed of killed JEV that sometimes causes adverse reactions, but can be used to protect those who intend an extended stay of more than a month to an area where Japanese encephalitis is endemic. If a traveler is sleeping in a rural area where JEV is endemic, then avoiding mosquito exposure is crucial by using bednets treated with the proven mosquito repellent and insecticide DEET (diethyltoluamide). It is best to avoid the outdoors during the evenings and at night, and to stay in well-screened rooms. However, only certain *Culex* species transmit JEV and only a small number of these mosquitoes are infected. Among those travelers who are infected with a JEV-bearing mosquito bite, only one in 50 to one in 1,000 will become ill with JEV.

■ Impacts and Issues

Travelers are still considered to be at low risk of contracting Japanese encephalitis. Interest in vacations to Asia has been on the increase in recent years, therefore, there are potentially more people at risk of exposure to JEV. Advice on precautions and prevention changes frequently, so those traveling to countries such as Vietnam, Japan, India, or almost anywhere in Asia are recommended to seek travel health advice from their physician prior to departure. Vaccination may or may not be recommended, depending on the traveler's specific plans, but advice on reducing exposure to mosquitoes should always be heeded.

There is a clear need for improved and cheaper vaccines against JEV. This may enable whole populations at risk to be protected. Where vaccination is practiced as routine, such as China, Korea and Japan, have tended not to have the epidemics that still occur in India, Nepal and Myanmar, where vaccination is not yet the norm. In May 2006, the World Health Organization (WHO) adopted a 10-year strategy to increase immunization coverage worldwide for several preventable diseases, including Japanese encephalitis. Advanced clinical trials of a new vaccine for children are also underway in India. In the meantime, it also appears that the range of JEV may be extending and may continue to do so with global warming and increased frequency of international travel.

There have been two outbreaks of Japanese encephalitis in Australia—one in 1995, on islands in the Torres Strait and another in 1998 on the Cape York Peninsula. In 2004, JEV was found in mosquitoes in the Cape York Peninsula, indicating an ongoing risk from Japanese encephalitis.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

In 2005, after an unusually heavy monsoon season, an epidemic of Japanese encephalitis occurred in India's most populous state, Uttar Pradesh. The outbreak soon spread into the neighboring state of Bihar and eventually crossed the border into Nepal. Officials in overcrowded hospitals filled every available space with Japanese encephalitis patients, and some families with children suffering from the disease camped outside hospitals hoping to gain access to treatment. After running out of oxygen masks, one Indian hospital fashioned makeshift oxygen masks out of cardboard rolled into the shape of a cones. The outbreak resulted in over 5,000 Japanese encephalitis cases and approximately 1,300 deaths, mostly among children.

See Also *African Sleeping Sickness (Trypanosomiasis); Arthropod-borne Disease; Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Mosquito-borne Diseases; St. Louis Encephalitis; West Nile.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mackenzie, J.S., et al. *Japanese Encephalitis and West Nile Viruses* New York: Springer, 2002.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases. "Japanese Encephalitis Fact Sheet." June 21, 2001 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/jencephalitis/facts.htm> (accessed July 20, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Japanese Encephalitis." <http://www.who.int/immunization/topics/japanese_encephalitis/en/index.html> (accessed March 25, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Kawasaki Syndrome

Introduction

Kawasaki syndrome is a disease of unknown cause that can affect children of any age, but tends to be most prevalent in children younger than five years of age. The disease causes acute symptoms including fever, rash, swelling, irritations in the eyes and around the mouth, and red or peeling hands and feet. In more serious cases, Kawasaki syndrome can lead to heart complications such as congestive heart failure, along with coronary artery dilations and aneurysms, both of which increase the risk of heart attacks. Kawasaki is the leading cause of acquired heart disease in children, with around 20% of children with Kawasaki syndrome developing aneurysms (thinned, weakened areas of arteries) within two weeks if the condition is not treated.

Kawasaki syndrome occurs worldwide, with a higher occurrence in Japan. It is treatable using an administration of aspirin, or via a treatment known as gamma globulin (a group of proteins in blood plasma that contains many antibodies). Due to the risk of heart complications being enhanced when treatment is delayed or not given, treatment is vital to prevent complications arising. As its causes are unknown, there is no known way to prevent contracting Kawasaki syndrome.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Kawasaki syndrome was first described by Tomisaki Kawasaki in Japan in 1967. The disease mostly affects children and has become the most common cause of heart disease in children from developed countries. The cause of this disease is unknown although suggested causes include exposure to a toxin, exposure to chemicals used in carpet cleaning, and exposure to an airborne pathogen. The incidence of Kawasaki syndrome is also higher in Japan, and within the United States, the incidence is greatest in individuals of Asian and Pacific Island descent. This suggests that there may be a genetic component that predisposes individuals to the disease.

After acquiring Kawasaki syndrome, patients develop acute (rapid onset) symptoms. These include: fever; rash; swelling of the hands and feet; swollen lymph nodes; irritation and inflammation of the mouth, lips, and tongue; red eyes; and red palms of the hands and soles of the feet. Chronic symptoms include coronary artery dilatations and aneurysms, which leads to an increased chance of a heart attack.

Since the cause of the disease is unknown, little is known about the transmission of Kawasaki syndrome. However, it is known that the disease is not contagious.

Scope and Distribution

Kawasaki syndrome was first diagnosed in Japan, and the highest incidence of this disease remains in Japan. However, Kawasaki syndrome occurs worldwide. In the United States, around 4,000 children are diagnosed with the condition each year.

Children under the age of five years are at greatest risk of developing Kawasaki syndrome. In 2000, within the United States, 77% of all children being treated for Kawasaki syndrome were under five years of age, and peak prevalence occurred in children aged 18–24 months. However, older children, including teenagers, also develop the disease. Worldwide, cases of Kawasaki syndrome are uncommon before age six months, and this is thought to be due to the protective action of maternal antibodies.

Incidence of Kawasaki syndrome also appears to be influenced by sex and race. Males tend to be more prone to developing the disease, as are children of Asian or Pacific Island descent. Studies have also shown that Kawasaki syndrome in the United States is linked to socioeconomic status, with the disease more common in families with a high median household income.

Most incidences of Kawasaki syndrome occur during winter or early spring, suggesting that the disease may have a winter-spring seasonality.

Treatment and Prevention

People who have developed Kawasaki syndrome require hospitalization during which time they are treated with aspirin and an intravenous treatment known as gamma globulin (IVGG). IVGG treatment contains antibodies and comes from donor blood. This treatment is given for 8 to 12 hours and acts to decrease fever and to lower the risk of heart complications. Aspirin is also administered for both its anti-inflammatory action and to lower fever. In the majority of cases where treatment is given within 10 days after disease onset, recovery from acute symptoms is complete and heart problems are unlikely. However, the risk of developing heart problems increases the longer the patient goes without treatment.

Although recovery of the acute symptoms of Kawasaki syndrome is possible without treatment, the risk of heart problems is significant. Approximately 20–25% of children may develop enlargement of the heart and its arteries if left without treatment. This increases the likelihood of heart problems, and other complications such as arthritis, meningitis, and death. As the cause of this disease is unknown, there is no definitively known way to prevent contracting the disease.

Impacts and Issues

Kawasaki syndrome has become the leading cause of acquired heart problems in children less than five years of age who live in developed countries. Kawasaki syndrome now has this number one distinction after the incidence of scarlet fever (along with the rheumatic heart disease that often accompanied it) has dropped dramatically due to the introduction of antibiotics in the 1940s.

As there is no current prevention against contracting Kawasaki syndrome, it is important that patients be identified and treated as soon as possible. Furthermore, the risk of heart disease and other medical complications increases when treatment is not administered or when treatment is delayed. This is another reason why rapid administration of treatment is necessary.

Determining the cause of the disease would increase the likelihood of being able to control and prevent Kawasaki syndrome. Research has been conducted since the disease was first diagnosed in 1967. However, the specific cause for the disease remains unknown. In addition, it remains unknown whether the disease is caused by reaction to a chemical or toxin, or is a classic infectious disease of bacterial or viral origin. Current research points to an infectious trigger for the disease, but many scientists consider an autoimmune component (a condition where the body's immune system falsely interprets its own tissues as foreign and attacks them) to be an important factor in the development of the disease. Kawasaki syndrome presents researchers with the

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ACUTE: An acute infection is one of rapid onset and of short duration, which either resolves or becomes chronic.

AUTOIMMUNITY: Autoimmune diseases are conditions in which the immune system attacks the body's own cells, causing tissue destruction. Autoimmune diseases are classified as either general, in which the autoimmune reaction takes place simultaneously in a number of tissues, or organ specific, in which the autoimmune reaction targets a single organ. Autoimmunity is accepted as the cause of a wide range of disorders, and is suspected to be responsible for many more. Among the most common diseases attributed to autoimmune disorders are rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosis (lupus), multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, pernicious anemia, and scleroderma.

GAMMA GLOBULIN: Gamma globulin is a term referring to a group of soluble proteins in the blood, most of which are antibodies that can mount a direct attack upon pathogens and can be used to treat various infections.

PREVALENCE: The actual number of cases of disease (or injury) that exist in a population.

challenge of solving a mysterious link between infectious disease and autoimmunity.

See Also *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Demographics and Infectious Disease; Immune Response to Infection.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Pemberton M.N., I.M. Doughty, R.J. Middlehurst, and M.H. Thornhill. "Recurrent Kawasaki Disease." *British Dental Journal.* 186 (1999): 6, 270–271.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Kawasaki Syndrome." Jan. 10, 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/diseases/kawasaki/index.htm> (accessed February 28, 2007).

Kawasaki Disease Foundation. "Kawasaki Disease Foundation: Caring for Precious Hearts." <http://www.kdfoundation.org/> (accessed February 28, 2007).

Maryland Department of Health and Mental Hygiene. "Kawasaki Disease Fact Sheet." May 2002 <http://edcp.org/factsheets/kawasaki.html> (accessed February 28, 2007).

Koch's Postulates

Introduction

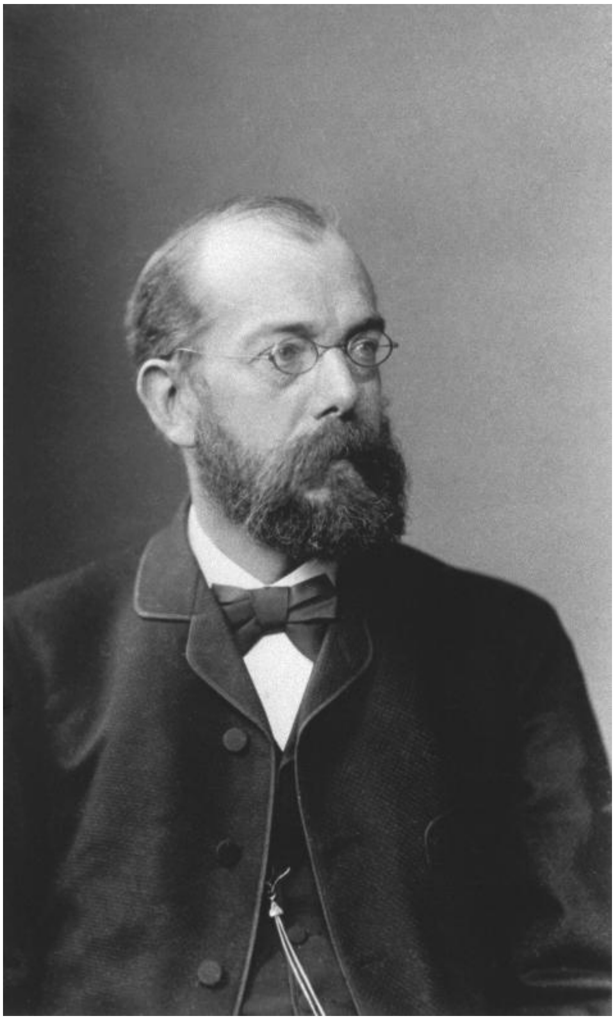
Koch's postulates are a set of principles that guide scientific efforts to establish the cause of an infectious disease. Koch's postulates are named after the German physician Robert Koch (1843–1910), who was the first scientist to identify several important pathogens (disease-causing agents). The postulates named after him require a series of observational and experimental conditions to be satisfied before it can be concluded that a particular microorganism causes a certain disease. Because of advances in microbiology over the last century, Koch's postulates have been revised, but they remain relevant to modern research. For example, they have been extended to include nonliving molecular causes of disease such as prions.

History and Scientific Foundations

Robert Koch was a German medical researcher. He is today famous not only for formulating Koch's but for using them to identify the pathogens that cause some of the deadliest diseases that afflict humankind, including anthrax, cholera, and tuberculosis. Along with the French physician Louis Pasteur (1822–1895), he is considered one of the pioneers of bacteriology (the study of bacteria). Working at home in an improvised laboratory, without assistance from any university, rich patron, or government agency, Koch proved that anthrax is caused by a bacterium—the first occasion on which a disease was shown to be caused by a specific microorganism. Koch received a Nobel Prize in medicine in 1905.

Koch's postulates are four rules for deciding whether the scientific evidence warrants concluding that a certain microorganism is the cause of a disease. They are as follows:

1. The organism must be found in all animals that have the disease, not present in healthy animals.



German bacteriologist Robert Koch (1843–1910) won the Nobel Prize in 1905. *The Library of Congress.*

2. It must be possible to isolate the organism from a diseased animal and grow it in pure culture (a nonliving nutritional medium in a container).

WORDS TO KNOW

CULTURE: A culture is a single species of microorganism that is isolated and grown under controlled conditions. The German bacteriologist Robert Koch first developed culturing techniques in the late 1870s. Following Koch's initial discovery, medical scientists quickly sought to identify other pathogens. Today bacteria cultures are used as basic tools in microbiology and medicine.

ETIOLOGY: The study of the cause or origin of a disease or disorder.

PATHOGEN: A disease-causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

GERMAN PHYSICIAN ROBERT KOCH, PIONEER OF BACTERIOLOGY

In 1880, German physician Robert Koch (1843–1910) accepted an appointment as a government advisor with the Imperial Department of Health in Berlin. His task was to develop methods of isolating and cultivating disease-producing bacteria and to formulate strategies for preventing their spread. In 1881 he published a report advocating the importance of pure cultures in isolating disease-causing organisms and describing in detail how to obtain them. The methods and theory espoused in this paper are still considered fundamental to the field of modern bacteriology and set the foundation for the first three postulates in what were later described as Koch's postulates. The fourth postulate was added by the plant biologist E.F. Smith in 1905.

3. It must then be possible to infect a healthy animal with the organisms grown in culture.
4. The organism must then be isolated again from the experimentally infected animal.

Using the principles that were later named in his honor, students of Koch in the late nineteenth century quickly identified the bacteria that cause bubonic plague, diphtheria, gonorrhea, leprosy, syphilis, tetanus, typhoid, and several other diseases.

The power of Koch's postulates as an aid to science, scientists have pointed out, comes not from their rigid application, but from their encouragement of a spirit of scientific rigor. They serve as guidelines—not absolute rules—for collecting the scientific evidence that will prove what the cause of a given disease is. Exceptions to Koch's postulate numerous; for example, many pathogens, including those that cause giardiasis, polio, and AIDS, can be carried asymptomatically, which violates the first postulate. That is, these pathogens can sometimes live and reproduce in an individual without making that individual sick. Koch's original first postulate has, therefore, been clarified, in practice, to "The organism must be found in all animals that have the disease." Also, not all pathogens can grow in pure culture, as the second postulate requires; viruses and prions, for example, can only reproduce with the help of living cells.

Impacts and Issues

New infectious diseases are emerging at the rate of about one per year, but it is often difficult to discover the cause of a particular infectious disease. Koch's postulates, therefore, remain relevant today. According to the editors of the journal *Nature Reviews Microbiology*, writing in 2006, "more than 120 years after they were first proposed, Koch's postulates still remain the gold standard for any investigation that sets out to prove the etiology (origin or cause) of an infectious disease."

One modern example of fulfilling Koch's postulates involves the Australian physician Barry Marshall and his work with the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori.* Marshall, a gastroenterologist, studied the bacteria in the 1980s, after a colleague noticed that *H. pylori* was present in the stomachs of patients with gastrointestinal ulcers and not present in patients without ulcers. Marshall set out to determine if *H. pylori* caused stomach ulcers, and eventually succeeding in growing it in the laboratory. Lacking human test subjects, Marshall first determined that his stomach was without disease, then infected himself by drinking a mixture containing *H. pylori.* After about a week, Marshall began vomiting, and an endoscopy (examination with a thin, flexible, camera-mounted cable) proved he had developed severe inflammation in the lining of his stomach, from which *Helicobacter pylori* was recovered. By satisfying Koch's postulates, Marshall had proven that *H. pylori* could cause disease in humans. This revolutionized the treatment of stomach ulcers, which were until this time, considered caused by stress and excess stomach acid. By the mid 1990s, scientists recognized that stomach ulcers were caused by an infectious agent, and could be successfully treated with antibiotics. Marshall was awarded the Nobel Prize for his discovery in 2005.

Koch's postulates were also been cited in the 1980s in the long and acrimonious debate between the great majority of scientists and American virologist Peter Duesberg (1936–) and a few others over whether AIDS is in fact caused by HIV. Duesberg has long maintained that HIV does not cause AIDS (he claims that recreational and other drugs do). For some years, he argued that HIV had not been shown to be the cause of AIDS according to the standards of Koch's postulates. In the mid–1990s, however, many researchers indicated that all of Koch's postulates had finally been fulfilled and that HIV had indeed been proved to be the cause of AIDS.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Culture and Sensitivity;* Helicobacter pylori.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Brock, Thomas D. *Robert Koch, A Life in Medicine and Bacteriology.* Madison, WI: Science Tech Publishers, 1988.

Periodicals

Cohen, Jon. "Fulfilling Koch's Postulates." *Science.* 266(1994):1647.

Editorial. "Following Koch's Example." *Nature Reviews Microbiology.* 3(2005):906.

Vacomo, V., et al. "Natural History of *Bartonella* Infections (An Exception to Koch's Postulate)." *Clinical and Diagnostic Laboratory Immunology.* 9(2002):8–18.

Web Sites

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease, National Institutes of Health (U.S. Government). "HIV/AIDS: Koch's Postulates Fulfilled." September, 1995 <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/Publications/hivaids/12.htm> (accessed February 1, 2007).

Larry Gilman

CHALLENGES TO KOCH'S POSTULATES

Since the proposal and general acceptance of the postulates, they have proven to have a number of limitations. For example, infections organisms such as some the bacterium *Mycobacterium leprae*, some viruses, and prions cannot be grown in artificial laboratory media. Additionally, the postulates are fulfilled for a human disease-causing microorganism by using test animals. While a microorganism can be isolated from a human, the subsequent use of the organism to infect a healthy person is unethical. Fulfillment of Koch's postulates requires the use of an animal that mimics the human infection as closely as is possible.

Another limitation of Koch's postulates concerns instances where a microorganism that is normally part of the normal flora of a host becomes capable of causing disease when introduced into a different environment in the host (e.g., *Staphylococcus aureus*), or when the host's immune system is malfunctioning (e.g., *Serratia marcescens*).

Despite these limitations, Koch's postulates remain useful in clarifying the relationship between microorganisms and disease.

Kuru

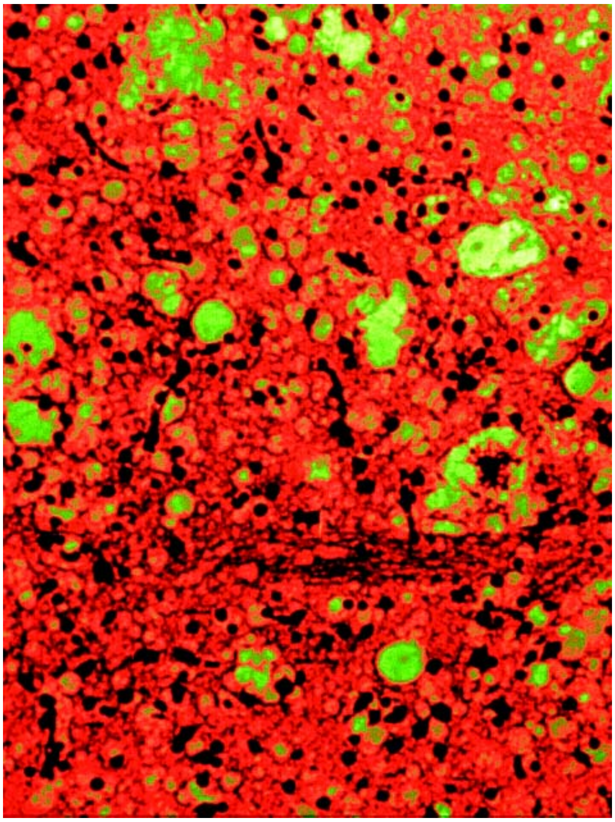
Introduction

Kuru is a progressive, fatal, brain disease which was discovered in the 1950s by the American physician Carleton Gajdusek among the Fore (fore-ay) people of the eastern highlands of New Guinea. The name *kuru* means trembling with fear in the Fore dialect and refers to the tremor that is characteristic of the disease. Gajdusek went on to win the Nobel Prize in medicine in 1976 for his research, which suggested that the disease was linked to the ritualistic handling or consumption of human brain tissue during funeral ceremonies. Kuru is one of a group of rare brain diseases called the transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs), which also includes Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD). Postmortem studies show that TSEs lead to the development of tiny holes in brain tissue, giving it a "spongy" appearance. Kuru has now disappeared, as the Fore stopped the funeral practices that led to its spread.

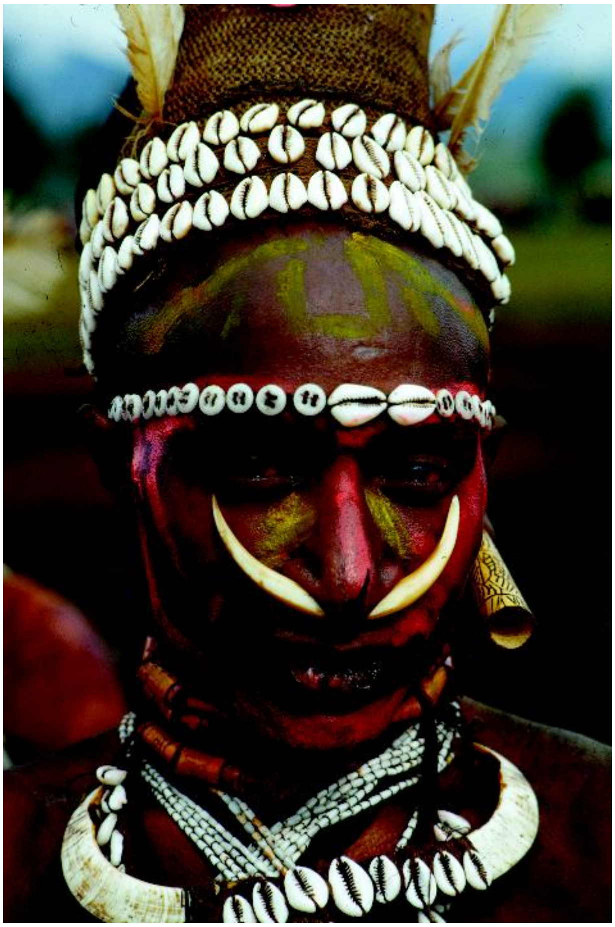
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Kuru affected the cerebellum, which is the area at the base of the brain that controls coordinated movement. Accordingly, the symptoms of kuru included ataxia, or unsteadiness, tremor, stiffness, rigidity, and slurred speech. Persons with kuru did not usually suffer from memory loss or dementia until a later stage of the disease, or at all, although mood changes were common. Eventually, victims of kuru would become unable to stand or eat and they would slip into a comatose state. Death, from starvation or pneumonia would usually occur between three and nine months after the onset of symptoms.

Transmission of kuru occurred by exposure to infected brain tissue. The Fore custom was to remove the brains of the deceased during a funeral, possibly for ritualistic cooking and eating. The task of handling the brain fell to women relatives who were probably infected through any cuts or sores on their skin, or by actually consuming tissue. The women could also transmit the infection to their children through unwashed hands over the next several weeks. Once the disease entered the Fore food chain, it reached epidemic proportions. TSEs, like kuru and CJD are unusual because the infective



Taken with an electron microscope, this image of a monkey's brain shows it being infected with kuru prion. Between the rounded nuclei of the nerve cells (green) are tiny vacuole spaces typical of the disease's dark spots. *Phanie/Photo Researchers, Inc.*



An Iwan warrior in New Guinea wears a bone through his nose in commemoration of his tribe's past cannibal practices. The fatal prion disease kuru, once associated with cannibalism, has largely disappeared from New Guinea. *© Charles & Josette Lenars/Corbis.*

agent is a kind of infectious protein called a prion, rather than a bacterium or virus. The long incubation time of kuru, which can be up to 40 years, meant that new cases continued to appear even as the disease itself began to die out once the funerary practices were abolished.

Scope and Distribution

Kuru was always confined to the Fore people who lived in the eastern highlands of New Guinea. They were isolated from Western civilization and from other natives by very mountainous terrain and disease has never been found elsewhere. Women and children of either sex seemed to be most at risk in the early years. Later, when adults exposed as children began to develop the disease, it affected men and women equally. During the 1950s and 1960s, it reached epidemic proportions and wiped out the population of many Fore villages.

Treatment and Prevention

There was no treatment for kuru and, at the present time, there is also no treatment for any TSE. Prevention of kuru meant stopping the funerary practices that allowed exposure to the infective prion. After this happened, in 1959, occasional cases still arose because of the long incubation time of the disease. The disease was first described in 1957 and the Fore people said that it appeared only a few years before this. No one knows how kuru first arose. It is possible that a few cases of a TSE crossed the species barrier from an animal with a similar disease and was spread by the consumption of infected tissue.

Impacts and Issues

Kuru has both cultural and scientific significance. Decimated Fore populations in the twentieth century endured upheaval to their communities and customs. Because more women than men died from the disease, Fore men were sometimes executed by village rulers in order to even out the population. When scientists first considered the disease to be triggered by a genetic susceptibility in the 1950s, the Australian government restricted the movements of the Fore to their own villages in an attempt to prevent intermarriage with islanders considered not susceptible. After Gajdusek discovered that kuru was caused by an infectious agent, the custom of honoring the dead by cannibalizing their tissue and brains ceased out of necessity. There has not been a case of kuru among the Fore in those born since cannibalism was eliminated.

Kuru might have remained as no more than a medical curiosity, had it not turned out to be a TSE. The infective agent in all TSEs, including CJD, is neither a bacterium nor a virus, but an entity known as a prion, which is best described as an infectious protein. A prion is an abnormally shaped version of a protein that occurs naturally in the brain. When the normal prion protein comes into contact with the abnormal version, it is converted into the abnormal version and can go on to corrupt other normal prion protein molecules. This cascade of damage then spreads throughout the brain. Interest in kuru was heightened with the emergence of variant CJD in the United Kingdom in the mid–1990s. The clinical course of kuru resembles that of variant CJD, rather than classical CJD. Both are spread through consumption of exposure to infected tissue and both may have arisen in the population in a similar way. Kuru could have started from a TSE that jumped the species barrier from an unknown animal host. Variant CJD is the human form of bovine spongiform encephalopathy, a TSE of cattle thought to have started when scrapie, a sheep TSE, entered cattle feed. Therefore, rare as TSEs are, it is worthwhile studying their pathology, as circumstances could conspire to allow the emergence of a new type of this fatal brain disease.

WORDS TO KNOW

EMERGING DISEASE: New infectious diseases such as SARS and West Nile virus, as well as previously known diseases such as malaria, tuberculosis, and bacterial pneumonias that are appearing in forms that are resistant to drug treatments, are termed emerging infectious diseases.

ENCEPHALOPATHY: Any abnormality in the structure or function of the brain.

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to disease causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (an example is food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (an example is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

PRIONS: Prions are proteins that are infectious. Indeed, the name prion is derived from "proteinaceous infectious particles." The discovery of prions and confirmation of their infectious nature overturned a central dogma that infections were caused by intact organisms, particularly microorganisms such as bacteria, fungi, parasites, or viruses. Since prions lack genetic material, the prevailing attitude was that a protein could not cause disease.

SEE ALSO *Bovine Spongiform Encephalopathy ("Mad Cow" Disease); Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease-nv; Prion Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Jansen, Paul A. *eMedicine.* "Kuru" Oct 15, 2005. <http://www.emedicine.com/med/topic1248.htm> (accessed March 19, 2007).

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. "Kuru Information Page." Feb 14, 2007. <http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/kuru/kuru.htm> (accessed March 19, 2007).

Lassa Fever

Introduction

Lassa fever is an animal-borne (zoonotic) virus that is transmitted via contact with contaminated rat urine or feces. Rural regions of the West African countries Nigeria, Sierra Leone, Guinea, and Liberia known as the "Lassa belt" experience intermittent ongoing outbreaks of Lassa fever. Following infection with Lassa virus, 80% of persons remain symptom free, or develop mild symptoms, while the remaining 20% develop a more severe illness. Symptoms increase in severity as infection progresses, with neurological problems and sometimes death occurring in the later stages. Lassa fever is treated via antiviral drugs in addition to symptom management. As no vaccine is available, prevention methods focus on avoiding contaminated material, avoiding rats, and taking precautions while in close contact with infected people.

Following peace agreements within endemic countries previously upset by civil unrest, progress has been made in the treatment and prevention of Lassa fever. Furthermore, work is underway to improve diagnostic testing for Lassa fever, as well as to discover a vaccine for the virus.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Lassa fever was first described in the 1950s, although the virus responsible for the infection was not identified until

In Sierra Leone, a rat is trapped to provide information about Lassa fever, a highly dangerous virus carried by such rodents. *© Karen Kasmauski/Corbis.*

In September 2004, the ship *Overseas Marilyn* waits off the coast of Galveston, Texas, flying a yellow quarantine flag. The ship and 20 crew members were held under a voluntary quarantine as health officials investigated the death of one of the crew. Lassa fever, a virus common in West Africa, was suspected. *AP Images.*

1969, when missionary nurses in Nigeria, West Africa, died from an infection caused by a virus identified as the Lassa virus. Lassa virus is a member of the Arenaviridae family and is transmitted to humans via contact with infected urine or droppings of certain species of rats.

Rats from the genus *Mastomys* are the reservoirs of Lassa virus. They are efficient hosts due to their high frequency of breeding and large number of offspring. Furthermore, they tend to colonize human habitats, increasing the chances of human exposure. *Mastomys* rats become infected with Lassa virus, but do not become ill from it. Humans become infected following exposure to infected rat excreta, either directly or indirectly. The virus is transmitted when humans touch objects or eat food that is contaminated with rat excreta, or when excreta comes in contact with cuts and sores. In addition, inhaling small particles of excreta in the air transmits the virus, as does consuming infected rats as food. Lassa fever is also transmitted between humans. This occurs following contact with infected body fluids such as blood, excretions, secretions, and tissues from infected humans.

Lassa fever is asymptomatic or mild in 80% of infected people. However, the remaining 20% experience severe disease in which many organs within the body are affected. Symptoms include fever, aches, vomiting, diarrhea, conjunctivitis (inflammation, redness of the conjunctiva of the eye), facial swelling, protein in the urine, and mucosal (mucous membranes such as in the nose and mouth) bleeding. Symptoms increase in severity as the disease progresses, leading to neurological problems such as hearing loss, tremors, and coma in the later stages. Symptoms usually take one to three weeks to appear, and generally last for one to four weeks. Mortality rates have been estimated to be 1% in total, and up to 15% in hospitalized patients. In fatal cases, death usually occurs within two weeks following the arise of symptoms.

■ Scope and Distribution

Lassa fever occurs predominantly in West Africa. While it is endemic (occurs naturally) in certain regions, such as Guinea, Liberia, Sierra Leone, and Nigeria, the disease may exist in adjoining regions due to the wide distribution of the host rodent species. Imported cases of Lassa fever have been reported from the United States where, in both cases, the patients were travelers who had returned from endemic regions of West Africa.

The number of annual infections within West Africa is estimated to be between 100,000 and 300,000, and annual deaths from the disease number about 5,000. As disease surveillance for Lassa fever is not uniformly undertaken, these estimates are rudimentary and subject to error. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Lassa fever tends to be restricted to the rural regions of West Africa, particularly in areas where humans live in close proximity to the rats that are the main reservoir of the virus. Infections have also occurred as a consequence of laboratory exposure elsewhere in the world.

The people who tend to be most at risk of infection with Lassa virus are those who reside in areas with high densities of *Mastomys* rats, or those who come in contact with infected humans. Therefore, populations living in rural areas in which rat populations are high, as well as hospital staff in these areas, are at the greatest risk. However, hospital staff greatly reduce their risk by taking preventative measures including standard and isolation precautions in order to avoid contact with the virus.

WORDS TO KNOW

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

SPECIAL PATHOGENS BRANCH: A group within the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) whose goal is to study highly infectious viruses that produce diseases within humans.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

Treatment and Prevention

Lassa fever is treated using the anti-viral drug ribavirin. This drug has been shown to be effective against early stages of Lassa fever, but does not appear to be as effective if given during the later stages of the illness. In addition to drug treatment, patients should also receive supportive care. This includes caring for the fever symptoms, and maintaining fluid and electrolyte balance, along with blood pressure and oxygenation levels.

There is no vaccine for Lassa fever, and thus, prevention consists mainly of avoiding contact with potentially contaminated materials. Contamination from rat excreta can be avoided by discouraging rats from human living quarters through removing garbage from the home, keeping cats, and maintaining clean living quarters. Furthermore, keeping food stored in rodent-proof containers prevents food becoming contaminated with infected rat excreta. People in close contact with infected persons, such as family members and health care workers can prevent contact with blood and body fluids by taking precautions such as wearing gloves, gowns, face shields, and masks while in contact with the person.

Complete eradication of *Mastomys* is unlikely to occur due to their high prevalence in endemic areas. Therefore, avoidance rather than eradication appears to be the most effective way of preventing infection via rat excreta. In order to achieve avoidance, good hygiene practices are being promoted within infected communities.

Impacts and Issues

The symptoms of Lassa fever are common to a variety of viral fevers, and thus diagnosis is difficult and often requires diagnostic testing that can be both expensive and time consuming. Therefore, improved testing procedures would lead to increased accuracy of diagnosis and a more accurate idea of infection prevalence. Research is also being completed to develop a vaccine for Lassa fever.

Changing the cultural attitudes among traditional peoples of Sierra Leone about the nature of Lassa fever presents a continuing challenge to workers in the London-based charity Merlin's Lassa fever group. Many traditional people in Sierra Leone still consider Lassa fever an inevitable fact of life, and are hesitant to invest in efforts to reduce exposure to rats when other diseases such as malaria remain ever-present, and are often not distinguished from Lassa fever when a person becomes ill. Workers with Merlin and other agencies continue to travel from village to village, conducting education campaigns that explain the particular connection between rats and Lassa fever, and discouraging trapping, eating, and sharing living areas with rats.

Exportation of Lassa fever, as well as many other diseases such as malaria and typhoid occurs when travelers pass through endemic areas and become infected. This creates the threat that these diseases will become introduced to areas previously unaffected by these diseases.

The Lassa virus is also considered a potential candidate for use as an agent of bioterrorism.

SEE ALSO *Airborne Precautions; Animal Importation; Antiviral Drugs; Malaria; Rapid Diagnostic Tests for Infectious Diseases; Travel and Infectious Disease; Typhoid Fever; Vaccines and Vaccine Development; War and Infectious Disease.*

IN CONTEXT: ERADICATION PROGRAM EFFECTIVENESS

Control of Lassa fever has been set back by civil unrest within endemic countries such as Guinea, Liberia, and Sierra Leone. However, peace initiatives have led to steps being taken by these three countries to develop prevention and coping strategies for Lassa virus. These developments have been led by the formation of the Mano River Union Lassa Fever Network, which has begun enhancing diagnostic testing, improving clinical management, and performing environmental control. In addition, better care facilities are being constructed for patients suffering from Lassa fever.

SOURCE: *World Health Organization (WHO)*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Arguin, P.M., P.E. Kozarsky, and A.W. Navin. *Health Information for International Travel 2005–2006.* U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Lassa Fever." December 3, 2004 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/spb/mnpages/dispages/lassaf.htm> (accessed February 22, 2007).

tanford University. "Lassa Fever Virus." 2005 <http://www.stanford.edu/group/virus/arena/2005/LassaFeverVirus.htm> (accessed February 22, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Lassa Fever." April 2005 <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs179/en/> (accessed February 22, 2007).

Legionnaire's Disease (Legionellosis)

Introduction

Legionellosis refers to a disease caused by a type of bacteria called *Legionella*. Most commonly, the responsible organism is *Legionella pneumophila*.

The bacteria are normal residents of freshwater creeks, ponds, and lakes. They can also be present in the water supply inside buildings, where they have entered the air via tiny water droplets from ventilation or water ducts.

There are two forms of Legionellosis. The first is a more severe pneumonia that is known as Legionnaire's disease. The second includes a milder type of pneumonia and is called Pontiac fever.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

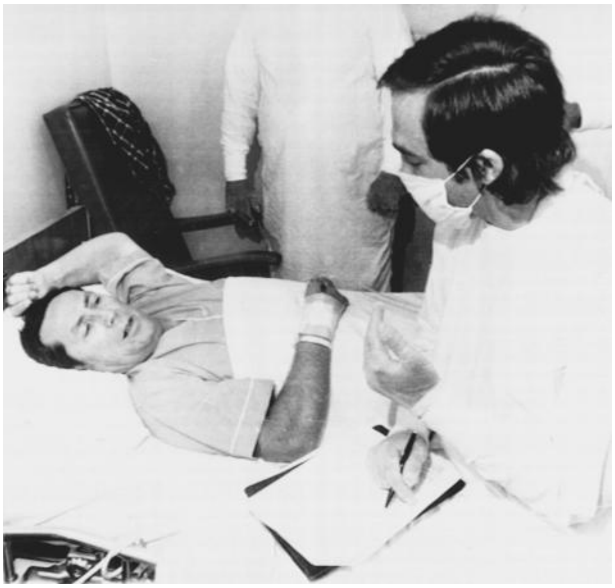
Legionellosis was first apparent in July 1976. At that time, an outbreak of pneumonia occurred during an American Legion convention being held at the Bellevue-Stratford Hotel in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania. Ultimately, 221 veterans were sickened during the outbreak. Thirty-four of these people eventually died of the infection, which was later dubbed Legionnaire's disease.

The disease outbreak caused national alarm, since it was feared to be the start of an epidemic of Swine Flu, which was at the time affecting Asia. However, an investigation conducted by the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) determined that the Philadelphia outbreak was due to a newly discovered bacterium, which was eventually named *L. pneumophila*.

The outbreak was traced to bacteria growing in the hotel's cooling tower. Later, investigators showed that the bacterium is capable of growth as a surface-adherent structure called a biofilm. It is likely that bits of the biofilm broke off and were sucked into the hotel's ventilation system, where the bacteria were inhaled. Other outbreaks have been traced to biofilms growing on showerheads and in contaminated drinking water.

Legionellosis is an example of an opportunistic infection—an infection that is caused in some people by a bacterium that normally does not cause harm. For example, studies have determined that 5 to 10% of Americans contain *Legionella* antibodies even though they have not developed Legionellosis. However, in people whose immune systems are less capable of fighting off an infection, the bacteria can cause disease. Pneumonia due to *Legionella* comprises 2 to 15% of all pneumonia cases in U.S. hospitals, according to the CDC.

The majority of Legionellosis—over 90% of cases—is caused by *L. pneumophila*. *L. micdadei* can also cause legionellosis, especially in people who are immunocompromised.



Medical doctor (right) with the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) interviews Thomas Payne in a Pennsylvania hospital in 1976. Paine was one of the Legionnaires who became ill after attending a convention in Philadelphia. *AP Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOFILM: Biofilms are populations of microorganisms that form following the adhesion of bacteria, algae, yeast, or fungi to a surface. These surface growths can be found in natural settings such as on rocks in streams, and in infections such as can occur on catheters. Microorganisms can colonize living and inert natural and synthetic surfaces.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases/Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases states that:

- Each year, between 8,000 and 18,000 people are hospitalized with Legionnaires' disease in the U.S. However, many infections are not diagnosed or reported, so this number may be higher. More illness is usually found in the summer and early fall, but it can happen any time of year.
- Legionnaires' disease can be very serious and can cause death in 5% to 30% of cases. Most cases can be treated successfully with antibiotics (drugs that kill bacteria in the body), and healthy people usually recover from infection.
- People most at risk of getting sick from the bacteria are older people (usually 65 years of age or older), as well as people who are smokers, or those who have a chronic lung disease (like emphysema).
- People who have weak immune systems from diseases like cancer, diabetes, or kidney failure are also more likely to get sick from Legionella bacteria. People who take drugs to suppress (weaken) the immune system (like after a transplant operation or chemotherapy) are also at higher risk.

SOURCE: *Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases/Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

Approximately 10,000 to 40,000 Americans acquire Legionnaires' disease every year, and 8,000 to 18,000 require hospitalization. The people who are the most likely to become ill are over age 50. The risk is greater for those with diminished immune system function due to illness, diabetes, cigarette smoking, and who are taking immunosuppressing drugs. Legionnaires' disease can occur in children, but is not normally considered a disease of childhood. Children who are at risk are those who are on a respirator to assist with breathing, and those whose immune systems are impaired due to recent surgery or drug treatment. Curiously, those infected with the human immunodeficiency virus or who have developed acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome) do not appear to be at higher risk than others, although when contracting the disease, their symptoms are often more severe.

Legionnaire's disease is caused by inhaling *Legionella* suspended in minute water droplets, or by aspirating *Legionella* bacteria, which occurs when particles bearing the bacteria escape the gag reflex and fall directly into the respiratory tract. The bacteria can be naturally found in bodies of fresh water and whirlpool spas (the source of the first outbreak of Pontiac fever), where they can be dispersed into the air by the action of wind and waves. As well, the bacteria growing within biofilms in stagnant water at the intake of air conditioning cooling towers, humidifiers, faucets, shower heads, and even the water misters in supermarket produce departments can slough off and be carried on water droplets. Person-to-person transmission has not been demonstrated.

When inhaled or aspirated, *Legionella* bacteria enter the lungs. Normally, as bacteria enter the lungs they are engulfed and dissolved by cells called alveolar macrophages. However, *Legionella* are able to grow and divide inside the macrophages. Eventually, the infected macrophages burst, releasing the bacteria, which infect other macrophages and continuing the cycle of infection.

The symptoms of legionellosis develop 2 to 10 days after inhalation of the bacteria. At first, the symptoms include a feeling of tiredness, headaches, fever, chills, aching muscle, and a loss of appetite. A fever of up to 104°F (40°C) can develop. A dry and hacking cough also develops; it can change to a cough that involves the release of bloody mucus. The pneumonia affects breathing in about 50% of people and can cause chest pain in about 30% of those who get the infection. Some people develop a decreased heart rate, which can be dangerous when combined with the decreased breathing capability of the lungs.

In addition to pneumonia, legionellosis can involve other areas of the body. Other, less common complications include diarrhea, nausea with vomiting, abdominal pain, kidney failure and impaired urine production (which allows the build up of toxic by-products of body processes), and diminished mental capacity.

Pontiac fever is a milder form of legionellosis, which does not involve the lower respiratory tract. The symptoms, which are flulike and which typically appear within two days of exposure to the bacteria, include fever, headache, muscle aches, and fatigue. The infection passes within a few days and often, persons do not seek medical treatment.

Scope and Distribution

Legionellosis can occur almost anywhere in the world. A 2003 survey conducted by the 36-country European Working Group for *Legionella* Infections found the disease in 34 of the member nations. As one example, scientists investigating the May 1980 eruption of Mt. St. Helens became ill, likely with *L. pneumophila* found in ponds on the hillside.

Treatment and Prevention

Cases of legionellosis that occur as part of an outbreak are usually diagnosed more quickly than isolated cases. Diagnosis is complicated by the fact that the early symptoms and appearance of the chest in an x-ray are similar to other types of bacterial or viral pneumonia. Prompt diagnosis and treatment results in a better prognosis for persons with legionellosis. Death occurs about 5% of the time for previously healthy individuals and almost 25% of the time for people who were already ill or whose immune system was impaired when they contracted the disease. In severe cases that require mechanical assistance for breathing and kidney function, the death rate can be over 65%.

Legionellosis can be diagnosed by detecting antibodies to *L. pneumophila* produced by the immune system. A number of tests use the antibodies to detect the bacteria. For example, the antibodies can be linked to a fluorescent probe, and when samples are treated with the fluorescent antibody, *L. pneumophila* will appear as bright objects upon microscopic examination. Other tests can detect the presence of protein components of the bacteria in the urine, or the presence of the bacterial genetic material in urine and other body fluid.

Legionellosis is treated with antibiotics. As the bacteria reproduce inside host cells, the antibiotics must be capable of penetrating into the host cells. Typically, levofloxacin or azithromycin are used. Prompt antibiotic therapy leads to a complete recovery in the majority of cases.

Legionellosis is prevented by keeping ductwork, pipes, cooling towers, showerheads, and other potential breeding spots clean and free of stagnant water. In reality, this sort of vigilance can be difficult to maintain unless a mandated and inspection schedule is imposed and documentation required.

As of 2007, there is no vaccine for legionellosis.

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that "a person diagnosed with Legionnaires' disease in the workplace is not a threat to others who share office space or other areas with him or her. However, if you thought that there your workplace was the source of the person's illness, contact your local health department."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

Impacts and Issues

In the aftermath of the Philadelphia outbreak, regulations governing the cleaning and monitoring of air conditioning systems in public places were changed to minimize the development of *L. pneumophila.*

Legionellosis has the most impact in places where people gather and which are ventilated or have shower facilities; examples include indoor recreation centers, pools, spas, hotels, and hospitals. The latter is especially important since ill people are even more susceptible to the infection. Construction workers can also be at increased risk, since the bacteria may be dispersed into the air during excavation of the site.

In contrast to diseases such as bacterial meningitis and AIDS, there is no indication that poorer regions of the world are any more at risk than the more wealthy developed world. Indeed, the association of legionellosis with facilities such as hospitals and hotels has made the disease more of a problem in developed countries.

SEE ALSO *Opportunistic Infection; Water-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Betsy, Tom and James Keogh. *Microbiology Demystified.* New York: McGraw-Hill Professional, 2005.

McCoy, William F. *Preventing Legionellosis.* London: IWA Publishing, 2006.

Websites

www.Legionella.org <http://www.legionella.org/> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Legislation, International Law, and Infectious Diseases

Introduction

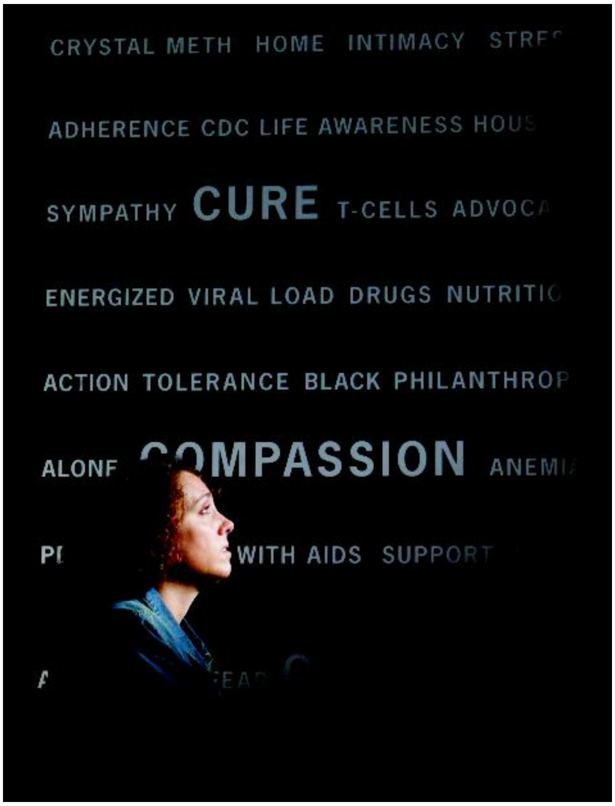
While national infectious disease laws and legislation are essential, globalization demands increasingly international solutions as epidemic diseases do not respect national boundaries. International cooperation among national governments and between governments and international non-government agencies (NGOs) is facilitated by a basic set of international public health and infectious disease laws.

The body of international infectious disease law is composed of different types of agreements among nations, including: treaties, accords, conventions, and agreements. Also, nations may contribute to international infectious disease law by participating in international organizations such as the United Nations, World Trade Organization, or World Bank. Furthermore, several nations may sponsor or aid the missions of various NGOs, agreeing to let their members assess and respond to infectious disease outbreaks within their national borders.

History and Policy Response

The earliest attempts at systematized government responses to epidemic disease arose out of the persistent threat of plague in Europe. Quarantine (the confinement of persons who have been exposed to a disease, but do not show symptoms of the disease) was widely used to control epidemic plague. From the time of the Black Death, during which one-third of Europe's population perished from the plague, those who could afford to leave densely plague-infested cities often retreated to residences in the countryside. This exodus from the cities may have saved some from being exposed, but also helped spread the disease. After the Black Death, many small municipalities forbade entry to those fleeing the cities. In rural Italy, a Catholic priest wrote the Vatican asking for a decree permitting monasteries to close their doors on plague victims and refugees. Instead, the Church viewed plague as punishment for peoples' sins and instructed non-cloistered orders of lower-level clergy across Europe to minister and aid the sick.

When epidemic plague struck England in 1665, the royal government left the city. The mayor and alderman



CRYSTAL METH HOME INTIMACY STRE
ADHERENCE CDC LIFE AWARENESS HOUS
SYMPATHY CURE T-CELLS ADVOCA
ENERGIZED VIRAL LOAD DRUGS NUTRITI
ACTION TOLERANCE BLACK PHILANTHROP
ALONE COMPASSION ANEMI
WITH AIDS SUPPORT

A social worker who counsels HIV patients stands by a poster in the lobby of her Chicago office. In 2006, Illinois joined 38 other states in tracking HIV cases using infected patients's names. Previously, such data were tracked anonymously. Many believe this method of tracking the disease will discourage people from being tested and treated for the virus that causes AIDS. *AP Images.*

were left in charge of governing the city through the epidemic. Isolation and quarantine were again employed. Businesses, public spaces, restaurants, and inns were closed—churches, however, remained open, undermining the efficacy of the health laws. The city government hired physicians and regulated burial practices, criminalizing the dumping of bodies into the River Thames. Some plague-infested inns and public housed were ordered burned. When the plague escaped the confines of London to the village of Eyam, the villagers isolated the sick and quarantined the village. Nearly 75% of its inhabitants died, but surrounding villages were largely spared from the epidemic.

The often-conflicting laws—the result of a lack of understanding about disease transmission—proved limitedly effective against plague. While it was never epidemic in London after the Great Fire of 1666, plague continued to arise periodically in European cities until the late eighteenth century. The disappearance of epidemic plague was less a victory for infectious disease law and more likely the result of diminishing numbers of its vector—the decline of black rat populations and their plague-carrying fleas. When epidemic cholera hit Europe in the 1830s, officials looked to the historical example of public health measures and laws enacted to combat plague as a foundation.

The genesis of modern infectious disease law is often traced to the cholera pandemic in Europe from 1829 to 1851. From 1816 to 1826, a cholera pandemic spread through India, Southeast Asia, and China. Three years after the pandemic subsided in China, it reached parts of Europe. In 1831 and 1832, cholera was epidemic in several of Europe's major cities. In 1849, cholera again spread through several European, and then U.S., cities. Many historians note that the time period was one of rapidly increasing immigration and trade, a dangerous situation for infectious disease. Medicine and modern scientific research were newly emerging, but scientific knowledge of disease had limitedly progressed in the preceding century. The cholera epidemics prompted substantial change in medicine, public health, and infectious disease law.

In 1954, John Snow identified polluted public water supplies as the source of cholera. Snow advocated radical changes in sanitation and water safety, persuading the London city government to approve construction of new water systems and enact laws protecting the water supply. Sanitation and hygiene laws, championed by the growing sanitation and public health movement, helped reduce incidence of cholera and other water-borne diseases.

In 1851, the First International Sanitary Conference convened in Paris, France—cholera identification and prevention was a primary concern of the attendees. Pandemic cholera spurred diplomacy between nations. England and France both sent public health officials to medical academies and hospitals abroad to study the disease and possible treatments. Infectious disease and sanitation laws that proved effective in one location were often adopted elsewhere. From 1851 to 1900, ten international sanitary conferences met to discuss the international impacts of infectious disease. Eight international conventions were drafted, though few were adopted into force by national governments.

By the dawn of the twentieth century, science drove infectious disease law. The professionalization of medicine and scientific training of physicians in universities,

WORDS TO KNOW

EPIDEMIC: From the Greek *epidemic*, meaning "prevalent among the people," is most commonly used to describe an outbreak of an illness or disease in which the number of individual cases significantly exceeds the usual or expected number of cases in any given population.

GERM THEORY OF DISEASE: The germ theory is a fundamental tenet of medicine that states that microorganisms, which are too small to be seen without the aid of a microscope, can invade the body and cause disease.

ISOLATION: Isolation, within the health community, refers to the precautions that are taken in the hospital to prevent the spread of an infectious agent from an infected or colonized patient to susceptible persons. Isolation practices are designed to minimize the transmission of infection.

LATENT INFECTION: An infection already established in the body but not yet causing symptoms, or having ceased to cause symptoms after an active period, is a latent infection.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

QUARANTINE: Quarantine is the practice of separating people who have been exposed to an infectious agent but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. This can be done voluntarily or involuntarily by the authority of states and the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

IN CONTEXT: SABIN HEALTH LAWS

Florence Sabin (1871–1953) was the first woman to graduate from the Johns Hopkins Medical School. She then became the first woman appointed to a full professorship at Johns Hopkins and was elected the first woman president of the American Association of Anatomists. After becoming the first lifetime woman member of the National Academy of Sciences, Sabin ultimately expanded her work to include research on understanding the pathology and immunology of tuberculosis.

Sabin's methods of blood analysis became important indictors of various disease states, and her work was important in attempts to combat tuberculosis. Near the end of World War II (1939–1945), Sabin was called upon to chair a study on public health practices in her home state of Colorado. As part of her work, Sabin conducted studies on the effects of water pollution and the prevention of brucellosis in cattle, At the time, brucellosis, especially in infants, often resulted from exposure to contaminated and unpasteurized milk from diseased cows.

The result of Sabin's work was the passage of the Sabin Health Laws, which signaled a critical change in public health policy. The Sabin Health Bills mandated stringent regulations regarding infectious disease, milk pasteurization, and sewage disposal.

the wide acceptance of germ theory, and the discovery of antisepsis revolutionized public health. Infectious disease laws became more effective as researchers were better able to identify the sources of disease and understand how diseases spread. By the outbreak of World War I (1914–1918), international agencies already operated to assess sanitation conditions and identify and treat disease outbreaks across national borders. The Red Cross and Pan American Sanitary Bureau helped draft international conventions on infectious disease prevention. International treaties and agreements outlined infectious disease controls associated with trade and immigration. National governments had passed laws outlining effective isolation and quarantine measures, adopted food safety regulations, instituted comprehensive health screening for arriving immigrants and restricted entry to healthy individuals, and established national public health agencies.

After World War II (1939–1941), the availability of antibiotics and the rapid development of modern vaccines again changed the ways in which health officials were able to respond to diseases. International agreements provided for the sharing and distribution of vaccines and antibiotics. The founding of the United Nations created a global organizational structure for international public health programs and laws. The World Health Organization was created on July 22, 1946, to promulgate international public health regulations and promote public health laws worldwide.

Since the 1960s, economic and trade organizations have played an increasing role in international infectious disease laws. Free trade agreements often carry requirements that exports will meet quality and safety standards or that nations can decline imports if they pose a general health threat. Trade agreements on agricultural, animal, and food products typically stipulate regulations for disease testing, hygienic packaging, safe handling, and inspection. Sometimes, trade agreements contain public health provisions, such as aid for combating endemic parasites or infectious diseases.

Even with the rise of trade organizations and the formation of the United Nations and the WHO, public health laws remain uneven throughout the world. Most international public health laws are non-binding or difficult to enforce without total cooperation by participating nations. UN and trade organization member nations have full national sovereignty, meaning they reserve the power to adopt and enforce laws within their national borders. Adding to the inequalities in national healthcare systems, sanitation systems, and resources for combating diseases, some nations do not recognize international infectious disease conventions or do not participate in WHO-led anti-disease programs. International infectious disease conventions sometimes fail completely in conflict-torn nations, often areas where infectious disease monitoring, prevention, and response are needed most. NGOs (non-governmental organizations), such as the International Red Cross and Doctors without Borders are often effective at responding to epidemic disease in these regions.

■ Impacts and Issues

Today, laws that govern response to infectious diseases are increasingly international. Increased migration and trade has expanded the reach of once-localized diseases. While globalization has aided in the spread of some diseases, it has also opened new channels for combating infectious disease. Once the exclusive domain of local and national governments, laws governing reporting and responding to infectious diseases are increasingly international.

Infectious Disease Response, Civil Liberties, and Medical Privacy in the United States

The expansion of scientific research capabilities and computerized information systems has aided the global fight against infectious disease. Researchers and public health officials are better able to identify, study, respond to, and communicate about disease outbreaks. However, disease prevention and containment measures can impede personal civil liberties or impact personal privacy.

In the United States, Executive Order 13295 provides for government authority to detain, seize, apprehend, quarantine, or isolate persons potentially sickened by or exposed to cholera, diphtheria, emerging pandemic influenza, infectious tuberculosis, plague, severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), smallpox, yellow fever, and viral hemorrhagic fevers. States have passed varying forms of the Model State Emergency Health Powers Act (MSEHPA), outlining state and local epidemic disease response plans and powers. Some critics assert that governments can too greatly encroach on freedoms of travel and association in when responding to epidemic disease by instituting quarantines or isolation orders.

Several nations have responded to concerns about personal privacy by passing laws safeguarding patients' personal information. In the United States, concerns of medical privacy were addressed through the passage of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) in 1996. The primary aim of the legislation was to protect access to private health insurance for workers who lose or change their employment. However, the legislation also contains several provisions on privacy and security. Under HIPAA, a patient's health status, medical history, payment history for medical services, and private identifying information must be protected. While insurers still have access to some of this information to facilitate payment of patient claims, patients have greater control over how much information insurers may obtain and doctors may release. Patients must be notified of any use of their personal health information or sign a waiver.

While patient privacy advocates applaud the legislation, several researchers have asserted that HIPAA hampers the ability to conducted needed avenues of research, especially those that formerly involved studying past patient medical charts. Furthermore, some researchers have noticed a drop in follow-up survey responses, complicating research on recovery and relapse.

HIPAA does not affect the reporting of notifiable diseases to federal and state health officials. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) National Electronic Disease Surveillance System (NEDSS) is also unaffected as individually identifiable health information is available for public health research use without consent, but cannot include personal identifiers such as name or address.

Fighting Epidemic Disease across National Borders

There is no universally accepted international body of law. Thus, international anti-infectious disease regulation is typically the result of participation in United Nations initiatives by member nations or through voluntary cooperative efforts governed by treaty. Not all nations participate in or acknowledge the authority of various international laws governing infectious diseases. Other nations participate in some programs and treaties while opting out of others.

Problems may also arise when national legal systems are in conflict with international law mandates. For example, many international laws are based on the assumption that national governments have broad power over local police, health officials, and healthcare facilities. The United States often adapts international regulations to fit within its system of federalism, which delegates significant powers to state and local governments. While laws governing patient privacy or federal quarantine orders apply to the whole nation, states may enact supplemental public health laws. In contrast, many other nations have centralized public health and healthcare systems that are only governed at the national level.

As infectious disease threats, treatment options, and prevention mechanisms change, so too must international law governing disease response. On July 25, 1951, WHO member states adopted the International Sanitary Regulations, later renamed the International Health Regulations (IHR), to "ensure the maximum protection against the international spread of disease with minimum interference with world traffic." IHR

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

In June 2007, Atlanta-based attorney Andrew Speaker flew aboard a commercial aircraft to Europe for his wedding. Before he left, Speaker consulted doctors in Atlanta, where he was diagnosed with a latent (dormant) tuberculosis (TB) infection. While he was honeymooning in Italy, scientists at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) identified Speaker's tuberculosis as a potentially rare, often deadly form of TB, known as XDR-TB, that is resistant to almost all known antibiotics. CDC officials contacted Speaker in Italy and instructed him not to fly home on a commercial jet and to proceed to Italian health authorities for further instructions and treatment. Speaker defied the request, flew to Canada, and entered the U.S. via New York by car. Once inside the U.S., health officials issued a federal order for isolation for Speaker, the first federal isolation order issued since the 1960s. Speaker was later flown by CDC aircraft to the national Lung Institute in Denver, Colorado, for treatment, and an international cooperative effort was launched to trace fellow passengers and air crew who came into close contact with Speaker during his international flights. Preliminary tests showed the risk for Speaker transmitting XDR-TB to others was low, but the incident highlighted the need for rapid international communication and cooperation when attempting to prevent the transmission of infectious diseases across international borders.

guidelines require that nations notify other countries about disease outbreaks within their borders, maintain accurate records about such outbreaks, establish public health protocols at national points of entry and exit (such as border crossings or airports), and that substantial restrictions on trade for disease-prevention be based on scientific evidence of a public health concern. Nations may require vaccine certificates or health screenings of travelers and immigrants, and adopt hygiene, disinfection, isolation, or quarantine protocols at points of entry as needed. Diseases that the IHR guidelines currently address include cholera, yellow fever, plague, smallpox, polio, severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), and new strains of human influenza.

Many aspects of the IHR remain difficult to enforce. Member nations have adopted several provisions of the IHR, while abandoning others. National laws governing reporting of diseases are sometimes not as stringent, or nations have failed to report epidemics. The annual World Health Assembly approved revised IHR in May 2005, addressing these issues and updating the list of targeted diseases to include new threats such as SARS and pandemic influenza. The revised regulations, which were accepted by the United States in December 2006, took effect in June 2007.

SEE ALSO *CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention); Economic Development and Disease; Isolation and Quarantine; World Health Organization (WHO).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Fidler, David P. *International Law and Infectious Diseases.* Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1999.

Fluss, Sev S. “International Public Health Law: An Overview,” *Oxford Textbook of Public Health*, 3rd ed. Roger Detels, Walter W. Holland, James McEwen, and Gilbert S. Omenn, eds. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1997.

Hays, J.N. *The Burdens of Disease: Epidemics and Human Response in Western History.* New Brunswick, New Jersey: Rutgers University Press, 1998.

Roemer, Ruth. “Comparative National Public Health Legislation,” *Oxford Textbook of Public Health*, 3rd ed. Roger Detels, Walter W. Holland, James McEwen, and Gilbert S. Omenn, eds. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1997.

Web Sites

United States Department of Health and Human Services. “Medical Privacy—National Standards to Protect the Privacy of Personal Health Information.” <http://www.hhs.gov/ocr/hipaa/> (accessed June 8, 2007).

World Health Organization. “International Health Regulations (IHR).” <http://www.who.int/csr/ihr/en/> (accessed June 8, 2007).

Adrienne Wilmoth Lerner

Leishmaniasis

Introduction

Leishmaniasis (LEASH-ma-NIGH-a-sis) is a parasitic disease caused by a protozoan of the genus *Leishmania* and spread by the bite of a sand fly. The disease is endemic in 88 countries worldwide and about 2 million cases occur each year.

Leishmaniasis usually affects people living in tropical and subtropical regions frequently exposed to the sand fly. Signs and symptoms vary depending on the form of infection, but mild cases present with skin sores on the face, arms, and legs that eventually heal with treatment. The more severe cases of visceral leishmaniasis affect organs such as the spleen and liver and may be fatal if untreated.

Treatment with drugs is usually quite effective if administered prior to significant immune damage, but, in the majority of cases, severe scarring is often unavoidable. There is no vaccine or drug available for the prevention of leishmaniasis, however, minimizing contact with the sand fly vector significantly reduces the risk of infection.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

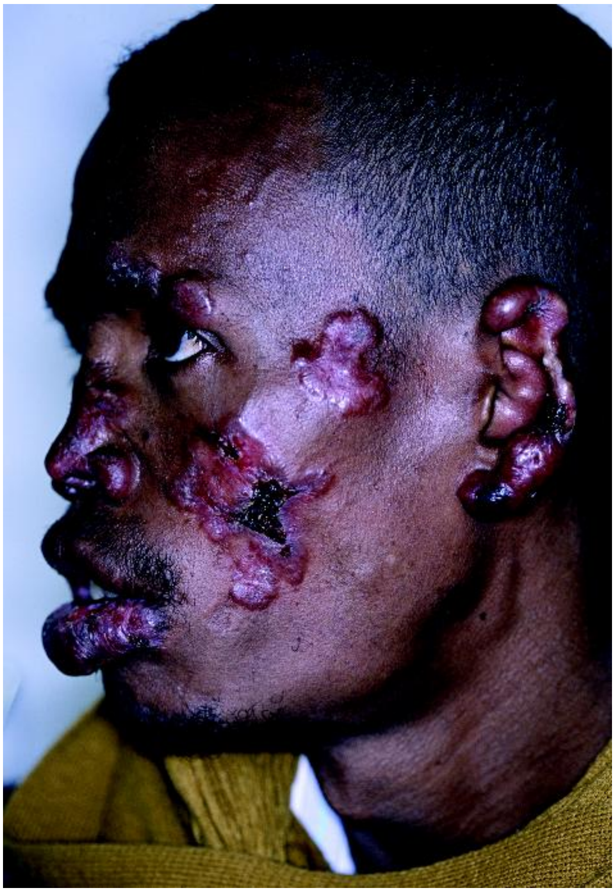
One of the first clinical descriptions of leishmaniasis appeared in 1756, although the disease has been referenced as far back as the first century AD. The name leishmaniasis was given to the disease in 1901 when a Scottish doctor identified the causative organism as being the protozoa *Leishmania*.

Leishmaniasis has several forms, each with varying symptomatic presentation and clinical severity. Cutaneous leishmaniasis is the most common form. It is characterized by skin sores over the face, arms, and body, which may be painful or painless. Glands near the sores may be swollen. The sores usually develop within a few weeks of infection, and may leave severe scarring.

Visceral leishmaniasis is the most serious form of the disease. It affects organs, such as the liver and spleen, and presents symptoms such as persistent chronic fever, fatigue, scaly/gray skin, weight loss, anemia, and enlarged spleen or liver. In developing countries, this form of leishmaniasis may have a 100% fatality rate within two years if untreated.

Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis often occurs if the cutaneous (skin) form is untreated. In this form of the disease, the skin sores spread and may cause partial or total destruction of mucous membranes found in the nose, mouth, and throat. These mucosal sores often leave patients with severe facial deformities.

In this macrophotograph, a sand fly (*Lutzomyia longipalpis*) feeds on a human. The sand fly is a vector for leishmaniasis, a disease that causes a breakdown of tissues in humans. *Sinclair Stammers/Photo Researchers, Inc.*



A man displays multiple disfiguring skin lesions caused by infection with *Leishmania*. The disease closely resembles a form of leprosy and is often misdiagnosed. *Andy Crump, TDR, WHO/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Leishmaniasis is transmitted by the bite of about 30 species of the phlebotomine sand fly, which are most active between dusk and dawn. Only female sand flies are capable of spreading the disease after infecting themselves by ingesting host blood containing the protozoa. Hosts of the parasite include dogs, foxes, jackals, and rodents. After 4 to 25 days within the sand fly, the protozoon transforms and completes its lifecycle upon being re-injected into a new host. Transmission is possible between humans through blood transfusions or the use of contaminated needles.

Scope and Distribution

There are an estimated twelve million cases of leishmaniasis globally. It is found in 88 countries around the world and is most common in tropical and subtropical regions of Africa, South America, and Asia. Within these regions, over 350 million people are at risk of contracting the disease. Each year there are over 1.5 million new cases of cutaneous leishmaniasis and more than 500,000 cases of visceral leishmaniasis.

The geographic distribution of the disease is limited by the suitability of habitat for the sand fly, their ability to remove blood from the host and transfer it to another, and the role the flies play in completing the life cycle of the infecting protozoa. Over 90% of global cases of visceral leishmaniasis are found in India, Bangladesh, Nepal, Sudan, and Brazil. These regions offer tropical and subtropical climates and provide the perfect conditions for phlebotomine sand flies to live, breed, and successfully transmit the disease.

People at greatest risk of contracting leishmaniasis are those living, working, or visiting those areas where sand flies are found, and there is a notably higher incidence of infection in rural areas than in urban areas. There is no indication of transmission between pregnant women and unborn children, although contaminated blood or needles can spread of disease.

Leishmaniasis is rarely occurs in the United States, but some cases of skin sores arising from cutaneous leishmaniasis have been reported in rural areas of southern Texas. As of 2007, no cases of visceral leishmaniasis have been reported in the United States.

Treatment and Prevention

Leishmaniasis is caused by parasitic infection and treatment with drugs is usually effective if applied prior to immune system damage. In some parts of the world, the parasite has become resistant to traditional drug treatments and, as a result, new drugs must be constantly developed to maintain effectiveness. In some cases of drug resistant visceral leishmaniasis, it may be necessary to remove the patient's spleen.

The sores caused by cutaneous leishmaniasis may lead to unsightly scarring if not treated, and severe cases of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis may require reconstructive surgery to repair damage to facial tissues. Because the disease is parasitic, there may be reactivation of infection after the initial signs and symptoms disappear. Previous infection does not provide any form of immunity against future infection.

There is no vaccine or drug available to prevent leishmaniasis, but transmission may be avoided by limiting exposure to the sand fly vector that carries the disease. Sand flies are most active from dusk to dawn, and it is best to limit outdoor activities during these times in areas where the disease occurs. Protective clothing, such as long-sleeved shirts and long pants, can reduce the amount of exposed skin and prevent fly bites. If the sleeping area is not well screened or air-conditioned, a bed net that has been soaked in or sprayed with insecticide should be used. Dogs and rodents should be kept away from sleeping areas. When exposure to sand flies is unavoidable, it is beneficial to use a strong insect repellent and spray sleeping areas with insecticides, if possible.

In addition to undertaking individual prevention, governments may implement public health measures. While avoidance of the vector is helpful in preventing individual cases, a reduction in animals harboring infection will have a greater impact on preventing the spread of disease. Public awareness is important to ensure that communities are working towards the same goal and following similar guidelines to reduce sand fly populations and animal reservoirs.

Impacts and Issues

The impacts of a widespread condition such as leishmaniasis are evident at the community level and also across countries and continents. One of the significant physical effects of leishmaniasis infection is the severe scarring caused by the sores that develop on the face, legs, and arms. In some communities affected by the disease, social prejudices exist towards people with these unattractive scars and in some situations people with disabling disfigurations become social outcasts. This may cause division within communities and may eventually lead to social breakdown.

On a larger scale, human-caused environmental changes are having an impact on natural habitats and as a result are increasing the risk of human exposure to the sand fly vector. Activities, such as dam building, mining, deforestation, irrigation, and conversion of land to cultivation, permanently alter the conditions under which the vectors exist naturally and create new opportunities for vector contact. Although it was previously a disease associated with poverty stricken, rural areas, leishmaniasis has successfully adapted to the urban environment. The movement of large groups from rural to urban areas, in addition to the worldwide urbanization, is also adding to this effect.

When war breaks out in areas where leishmaniasis is endemic, the disease can have an international impact. The deployment of foreign troops to these regions places those soldiers at increased risk of contracting the disease, despite extensive measures taken to prevent sand fly contact. The deployment of United States troops to Iraq in 2003 and 2004 resulted in 237 cases of leishmaniasis out of a force of about 200,000 soldiers. Soldiers fighting in Iraq have dubbed the disease "Baghdad Boil." When these foreign soldiers return to their home countries, they potentially create a portal of entry for the parasite to move into previously unaffected zones, thus aiding the worldwide spread of leishmaniasis. While these countries generally are able to implement stringent preventative measures among their troops to protect them from infection, there remains a potential risk of spreading the disease to new areas.

Co-infection of HIV and leishmaniasis also is common. HIV infection increases the risk of leishmaniasis infection, while leishmaniasis causes an increase in the progression of HIV to AIDS. In Europe, the primary way in which leishmaniasis is transmitted is through sharing of intravenous needles. The World Health Organization considers co-infection of HIV and leishmaniasis to be a significant concern, since it could lead to spread of the disease into previously non-endemic areas. In 1998, the World Health Organization and UNAID implemented the Programme for the Surveillance and Control of Leishmaniasis to monitor leishmaniasis/HIV co-infection, improve response capability, and ensure that epidemics are detected and contained.

WORDS TO KNOW

CUTANEOUS: Pertaining to the skin.

PROTOZOA: Single-celled animal-like microscopic organisms that live by taking in food rather than making it by photosynthesis and must live in the presence of water. (Singular: protozoan.) Protozoa are a diverse group of single-celled organisms, with more than 50,000 different types represented. The vast majority are microscopic, many measuring less than measuring less than 5 one thousandth of an inch (0.005 millimeters), but some, such as the freshwater Spirostomun, may reach 0.17 inches (3 millimeters) in length, large enough to enable it to be seen with the naked eye.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

VISCERAL: Visceral means pertaining to the viscera. The viscera are the large organs contained in the main cavities of the body, especially the thorax and abdomen; for example, the lungs, stomach, intestines, kidneys, or liver.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Blood Supply and Infectious Disease; Emerging Infectious Diseases; HIV; Host and Vector; Parasitic Diseases; War and Infectious Disease; World Health Organization (WHO).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2005.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Division of Parasitic Diseases recommends that the "best way for travelers to prevent leishmaniasis is by protecting themselves from sand fly bites." and that to decrease their risk of being bitten, travelers should:

- Stay in well-screened or air-conditioned areas as much as possible. Avoid outdoor activities, especially from dusk to dawn, when sand flies are the most active.
- When outside, wear long-sleeved shirts, long pants, and socks. Tuck your shirt into your pants.
- Apply insect repellent on uncovered skin and under the ends of sleeves and pant legs. Follow the instructions on the label of the repellent. The most effective repellents are those that contain the chemical DEET (N,N-diethylmetatoluamide). The concentration of DEET varies among repellents. Repellents with DEET concentrations of 30-35% are quite effective, and the effect should last about 4 hours. Lower concentrations should be used for children (no more than 10% DEET). Repellents with DEET should be used sparingly on children from 2 to 6 years old and not at all on children less than 2 years old.
- Spray clothing with permethrin-containing insecticides. The insecticide should be reapplied after every five washings.
- Spray living and sleeping areas with an insecticide to kill insects.
- If you are not sleeping in an area that is well screened or air-conditioned, use a bed net and tuck it under your mattress. If possible, use a bed net that has been soaked in or sprayed with permethrin. The permethrin will be effective for several months if the bed net is not washed. Keep in mind that sand flies are much smaller than mosquitoes and therefore can get through smaller holes. Fine-mesh netting (at least 18 holes to the inch; some sources say even finer) is needed for an effective barrier against sand flies. This is particularly important if the bed net has not been treated with permethrin. However, it may be uncomfortable to sleep under such a closely woven bed net when it is hot.
- NOTE: Bed nets, repellents containing DEET, and permethrin should be purchased before traveling and can be found in hardware, camping, and military surplus stores.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

Web Sites

American Academy of Dermatology. "Researchers Urge Soldiers and Civilians Returning from Iraq to Be Aware of 'Baghdad Boil.'" June 30, 2005. <http://www.aad.org/aad/Newsroom/Researchers+Urge+Soldiers+and+civilians+returning.htm> (accessed February 26, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control. "Leishmania Infection." April 1, 2004. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/leishmania/default.htm> (accessed February 26, 2007).

Deployment Health Clinical Center. "Leishmaniasis." June 21, 2004. <http://www.pdhealth.mil/leish.asp> (accessed February 26, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Leishmaniasis: Background Information." 2007. <http://www.who.int/leishmaniasis/en/> (accessed February 26, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Surveillance and Control of Leishmaniasis." 2007. <http://www.who.int/leishmaniasis/surveillance/en/> (accessed February 26, 2007).

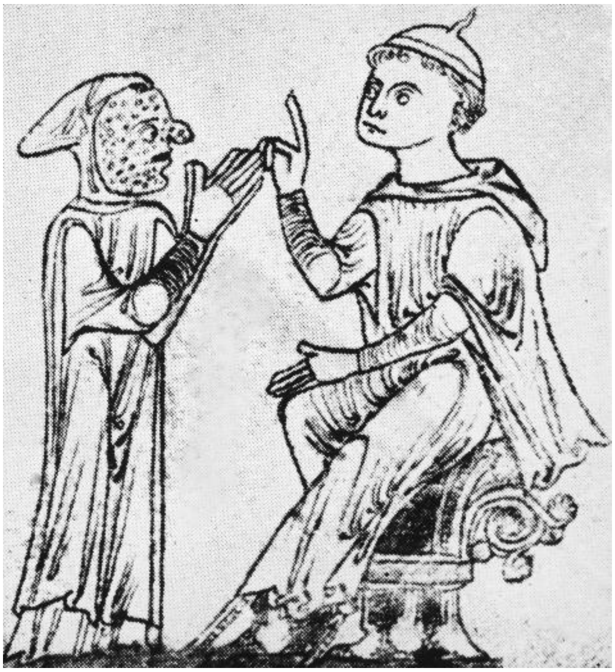
Leprosy (Hansen's Disease)

Introduction

Leprosy, also known as Hansen's disease, is a chronic (long-term) disease caused by infection with the bacillus *Mycobacterium leprae* (*M. leprae*). The disease was greatly feared for many centuries because of the extreme disfigurement it can cause; it is widely known today from references to *Tzaraath* in the Hebrew Bible, translated as "leprosy," although the translation probably included a wide range of skin diseases. Leprosy is treatable by combination drug therapy, and eradication campaigns are under way in Africa, India, Brazil, and other places where the disease remains common.

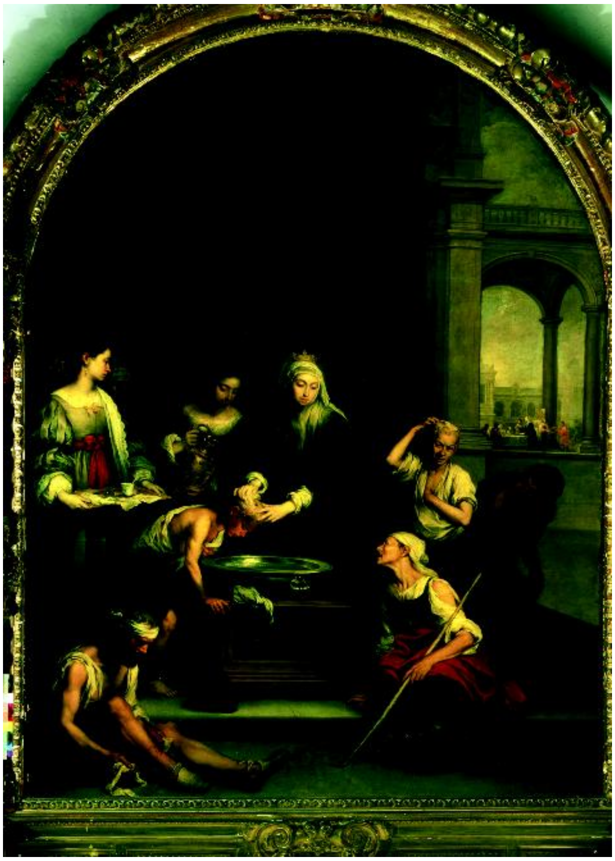
Leprosy does not, as commonly assumed, cause fingers, toes, and noses to drop off: this is a side effect of the disease's attack on the peripheral nerves. Loss of sensation makes patients unable to respond to minor injuries and infections in their fingers, toes, and elsewhere, and it is

A resident in a leprosarium in Egypt sits on a bench outside the facility, which was created in 1932. Although he was cured from Hansen's disease, also known as leprosy, the resident has remained at the center since 1944. Like hundreds of other cured patients, he opted to stay there due to the social stigma surrounding the disease. The facility houses the largest leper colony in the Middle East. *Khaled Desouki/ AFP/Getty Images.*



A man with leprosy (c. 1200) is pictured on the left in this illustration from a manuscript by early medical writer Roger of Salerno. The man's face is covered with sores. *Hulton Archive/Getty Images.*

these secondary causes that lead to the characteristic loss of body parts. However, leprosy can also cause puffy, deforming lesions on the face and elsewhere, as well as a number of other symptoms.



Saint Elizabeth of Hungary (1207–1231), also known as Elizabeth of Thuringia, is shown caring for the sick and those suffering from leprosy. *Giraudon/Art Resource, NY.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

History

Leprosy has been recognized for thousands of years in Asia, Egypt, and India. According to genetic data collected in recent years, *M. leprae* first probably infected human populations in East Africa over 100,000 years ago. From there, the disease spread to other parts of the world by hitchhiking on repeated waves of human migration. Leprosy is thought to have been brought to Europe by Greek soldiers returning from the conquest of India by Alexander the Great (356–323 BC); it is first mentioned explicitly in Roman records dating to 62 BC, coinciding with the return of troops from western Asia.

Particularly in the Middle Ages, when Arab invasions and the Crusades brought renewed rates of leprosy to Europe from Africa and the Middle East, the disease was intensely feared throughout Europe. People afflicted by leprosy were termed "lepers," a term now disfavored as it implies social stigma. By the 1100s approximately 19,000 asylums or leper-houses had been established by monks and nuns to isolate and care for the victims of the disease. Persons with leprosy not confined to the leper-houses were required to give warning of their approach by sounding a wooden clapper, and were forbidden to enter churches, inns, mills, or bakeries, to touch or dine with persons without leprosy, or to walk on narrow pathways (where people coming the other way might have to touch them). Thanks to these stringent isolation measures—or possibly because of reduced frequency of the genes causing vulnerability to leprosy, leprosy slowly decreased in Europe and had become rare there by the 1600s.

Leprosy was probably spread to West Africa by European traders or colonialists, since the variety found there closely resembles that found in Europe. From West Africa it was brought to Caribbean and South America by the slave trade in the eighteenth century. The European variety is that found in North America and was introduced by colonialism and emigration. In the 1700s and 1800s, for example, immigrants from Scandinavia, where a leprosy epidemic was occurring at the time, brought the disease with them to the Midwestern United States.

In 1873, Norwegian physician The Gerhard Henrik Armauer Hansen (1841–1912) showed that leprosy is caused by a bacillus, later named *M. leprae*. Hansen did not actually identify the objects he saw in his microscope as bacteria, but noted that he found them in the tissues of all persons suffering from the disease. Initially, his discovery was given little attention. In 1879, he shared tissue samples with German physician Albert Neisser (1855–1916), who identified the bacteria and attempted to claim credit for their discovery.

Despite the identification of *M. leprae* as the cause of leprosy, progress on creating a treatment for the disease was slow. Until about 1940, treatment was by injection of oil derived from the chaulmoogra nut, a traditional remedy. Numerous injections forced the oil under the skin, a painful procedure, and today physicians do not assume that this treatment resulted in significant permanent benefit. In 1921, the U.S. Public Health Service built a research and live-in treatment center for leprosy in Carville, Louisiana. Carville researchers announced the discovery of an effective anti-leprosy drug, Promin, in 1941. Promin—a sulfone drug—still required numerous painful injections.

In the 1950s, another drug, dapsone, became available in pill form. Dapsone was highly effective but *M. leprae* began to evolve resistance to the drug over the next decade. Given alone, it would not have remained effective for more than a few decades. In the 1970s, the first multi-drug therapy (MDT) for leprosy was developed, blending dapsone with other drugs to prevent the development of resistance. In 1981, the World Health Organization (WHO) endorsed an MDT regimen consisting of dapsone, rifampin, and clofazimine. This mixture continues to be used today. Like the drug cocktails used to fight human immunodeficiency virus, MDT for leprosy exploits the fact that it is more difficult for a microorganism to evolve resistance to a several agents at once than to evolve resistance to each agent separately or in series.

For years, an obstacle to a fuller scientific understanding of *M. leprae* was the fact that it apparently impossible to grow the bacillus in pure culture (growing cells in a prepared medium) in the laboratory. Also, its population doubling time in tissue is the longest of any known bacterium, from 13 to 20 days (compared to about 20 minutes for *Escherichia coli*, the dominant bacterium in the human digestive tract). Until the early 1970s, *M. leprae* was not known to thrive in any laboratory animal; it grew only in humans and, in relatively small numbers, in the footpads of mice. In 1971, however, researchers discovered that the nine-banded armadillo (a mammal native to South America and now also found across the southern United States) can be infected with *M. leprae*. Having acquired the disease from human sources, many armadillos in the wild now have leprosy. About five percent of armadillos in Louisiana show symptoms of the disease and about 20% probably are infected with *M. leprae*.

WORDS TO KNOW

ALLELE: Any of two or more alternative forms of a gene that occupy the same location on a chromosome.

CULTURE: A culture is a single species of microorganism that is isolated and grown under controlled conditions. The German bacteriologist Robert Koch first developed culturing techniques in the late 1870s. Following Koch's initial discovery, medical scientists quickly sought to identify other pathogens. Today bacteria cultures are used as basic tools in microbiology and medicine.

DROPLET TRANSMISSION: Droplet transmission is the spread of microorganisms from one space to another (including from person to person) via droplets that are larger than 5 microns in diameter. Droplets are typically expelled into the air by coughing and sneezing.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

ERADICATION: The process of destroying or eliminating a microorganism or disease.

LATENT: A condition that is potential or dormant, not yet manifest or active, is latent.

MULTI-DRUG THERAPY: Multi-drug therapy is the use of a combination of drugs against infection, each of which attacks the infective agent in a different way. This strategy can help overcome resistance to anti-infective drugs.

RESISTANCE: Immunity developed within a species (especially bacteria) via evolution to an antibiotic or other drug. For example, in bacteria, the acquisition of genetic mutations that render the bacteria invulnerable to the action of antibiotics.

Characteristics

Mycobacterium leprae is a rod-shaped bacterium about 1—8 μm long and .2–.5 μm wide. Bacteria of the genus Mycobacterium are characterized by an unusually thick, multi-layered cell wall, which helps make them resistant to antibiotics (drugs that kill bacteria). Both the bacterium that causes tuberculosis (*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*) and *Mycobacterium leprae* are in this genus.

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

As of early 2006, the World Health Organization stated that there were approximately 220,000 active cases of leprosy worldwide, with 296,500 new cases detected in 2005—a 27% decrease from the number of new cases detected in 2004. There can be more new cases than active cases because MDT treatment is widely available for new cases but is not able to prevent the emergence of new ones. In the early 2000s, however, the new-case rate was declining rapidly; 775,000 new cases ere counted in 2001, 296,500 in 2005.

M. leprae infects the mucus membranes, nerves, and skin. It tends not to invade deeper tissues because it thrives at temperatures slightly lower than that of the body core; the armadillo's low body temperature is thought to be one reason *M. leprae* can infect that species as well as humans. *M. leprae* has a particular affinity for nerve cells, which is why loss of feeling can be a symptom of leprosy.

Leprosy causes a spectrum of disease, from mild to severe. Progression of the disease is slow, with incubation times of a few years to 30 years. About 90% of persons with leprosy experience loss of temperature sensation of some part of the body (e.g., fingers) as their first symptom: that is, the patient cannot sense hot and cold with parts of their body. This often happens before any lesions or spots appear. Ability to sense pain is lost next, and then the ability to sense deep pressure. The inability to sense pain allows otherwise trivial injuries or irritations to go unchecked, often leading to infections, injuries, and loss of tissue. The progress of leprosy is divided into four stages:

1. Intermediate leprosy. In this early, mildest form, some spots (lesions) may appear on the skin. Patients with low susceptibility may defeat the infection without assistance at this stage.
2. Tuberculoid leprosy. Large pale spots called macules may appear on the skin. These lesions lack sensation. Nerves are infected, and may thicken and cease to function.
3. Borderline leprosy. In this stage, skin lesions are present and numerous. They may now take the form protruding nodules or sunken lesions that are sometimes described as appearing punched-out.
4. Lepromatous leprosy. This is the most developed and severe form of the disease. Lesions are numerous and more severe (that is, more protruding or deeper-set) than in the earlier stages. The eyes may become involved, leading to pain, light-sensitivity, glaucoma, and blindness. The testicles may atrophy. Deepening nerve damage may lead to partial paralysis. Any of the three earlier stages of leprosy may regress to less severe stages, but not this stage.

For purposes of treatment, leprosy is separated into two types, paucibacillary and multibacillary. In paucibacillary leprosy, there are no more than five skin lesions on the patient and the number of *M. leprae* bacteria in the body is small, approximately less than a million. A skin smear shows no *M. leprae*. (A skin smear is a obtained by making a small cut in the most prominent lesion and scraping tissue from it. The sample is then placed on a microscope slide, stained with a substance that highlights the presence of *M. leprae*, and examined to see if any of the bacteria are present.) Most leprosy infections are of this type. In multibacillary leprosy, a skin smear is positive and there are more than five lesions. All more severe and advanced cases of leprosy are in the multibacillary category.

Transmission

The mode of transmission of leprosy remains uncertain. Most experts state that the disease is probably transmitted by mucus and saliva droplets produced by sneezing and coughing. People who have close contact with people with active, untreated infection are at risk for contracting the disease and so, more generally, is anyone living in a country where the disease is endemic. Experts speculate that insect bites, some animals, and bacilli in soil may also spread the disease, but none of these routes has been proved.

Only about 10% of the human population is vulnerable to infection by *M. leprae*; and of those persons, only about half will develop detectable disease. Susceptibility to infection by *M. leprae* has been shown to be associated with a person's genetic makeup, namely the possession of certain alleles (alternative forms of a gene) for a specific area of human DNA also shared by the Parkinson's disease gene *PARK2* and its co-regulated gene *PACRG*. The mechanism by which these alleles make persons more susceptible to leprosy is not yet known.

■ Scope and Distribution

Between one and two million people worldwide have been disabled by leprosy. In many countries, leprosy has been virtually eliminated. It still exists in over 100 countries, however, combining the cases in Angola, Brazil, India, Madagascar, Mozambique, Nepal, and Tanzania together account for over 95% of all cases. India accounts for 70% of cases and Brazil has the world's highest per-capita leprosy rate. In the United States, only a few dozen cases occur each year.

Treatment and Prevention

Prevention of leprosy was traditionally through isolation of victims from the uninfected. Conventional antibiotics such as penicillin have never been effective against *M. leprae*. However, the MDT combination of dapsone, rifampin, and clofazimine first developed in the late 1970s has proved highly effective. The primary drug in this combination is dapsone, which inhibits bacterial growth by preventing the formation of folic acid. Rifampin acts by inhibiting the bacterial enzyme RNA polymerase, which is needed for cell functioning. It is always used in combination with another drug. The third drug, clofazimine, inhibits bacterial growth by binding to DNA and so interfering with transcription and replication.

For paucibacillary leprosy, a two-drug MDT consisting of dapsone and rifampin is given for six months; for multibacillary leprosy, the full three-drug MDT is given for two years. MDT is given out in calendar-marked blister packs to patients, who must take the pills at home on a regular schedule.

Impacts and Issues

International efforts to eliminate leprosy have been under way since 1991, when the 49th World Health Assembly (the body which governs the World Health Organization) resolved to eliminate leprosy as a public health problem by 2000, defined as reducing the worldwide prevalence rate to less than 1 in 10,000 persons. In 1999, WHO formed the Global Alliance for the Elimination of Leprosy, based in India, with a strategy of early detection, MDT treatment, and eliminating the stigma historically attached to persons with leprosy. The global elimination goal was met, but rates remain significantly higher in the countries listed above. At an annual new-case rate of less than 1 per 10,000, India alone could register as many as 100,000 new cases a year. The U.S.-based company that makes the three anti-leprosy drugs, Novartis, is in partnership with the Global Alliance for the Elimination of Leprosy and supplies them at no cost.

The genome of *M. leprae* was sequenced in 2000, aiding researchers who are attempting to develop new anti-leprosy drugs and vaccines.

The impact of leprosy on the infected symptomatic individual has historically been severe. Furthermore, isolation and shunning of persons with Hansen's disease (use of the alternate name Hansen's disease today is intended to reduce social stigma associated with the term leprosy, although both terms are correct) did not end with the Middle Ages. Loss of one's job, social standing, family position, and the like continue to be common consequences in many societies for persons with leprosy.

In 2006, a worrisome problem was discovered; the drugs being given for the AIDS virus, which already infects about 38 million people in the undeveloped world, can make silent or asymptomatic leprosy become symptomatic. Patients on AIDS drugs are reporting ulcers or are losing sensation in toes and fingers as their latent (dormant) leprosy becomes active. This is something of a medical paradox; AIDS itself, which weakens the immune system, has not caused latent leprosy to become active, but the treatment for AIDS has.

Finally, as with all drug treatments for infectious disease, the evolution of drug resistance by *M. leprae* is a concern. Resistance to all major anti-leprosy drugs has been reported worldwide, particularly for dapsone. However, reports of relapse after MDT have been rare, and resistance to leprosy drugs is not yet considered a major problem.

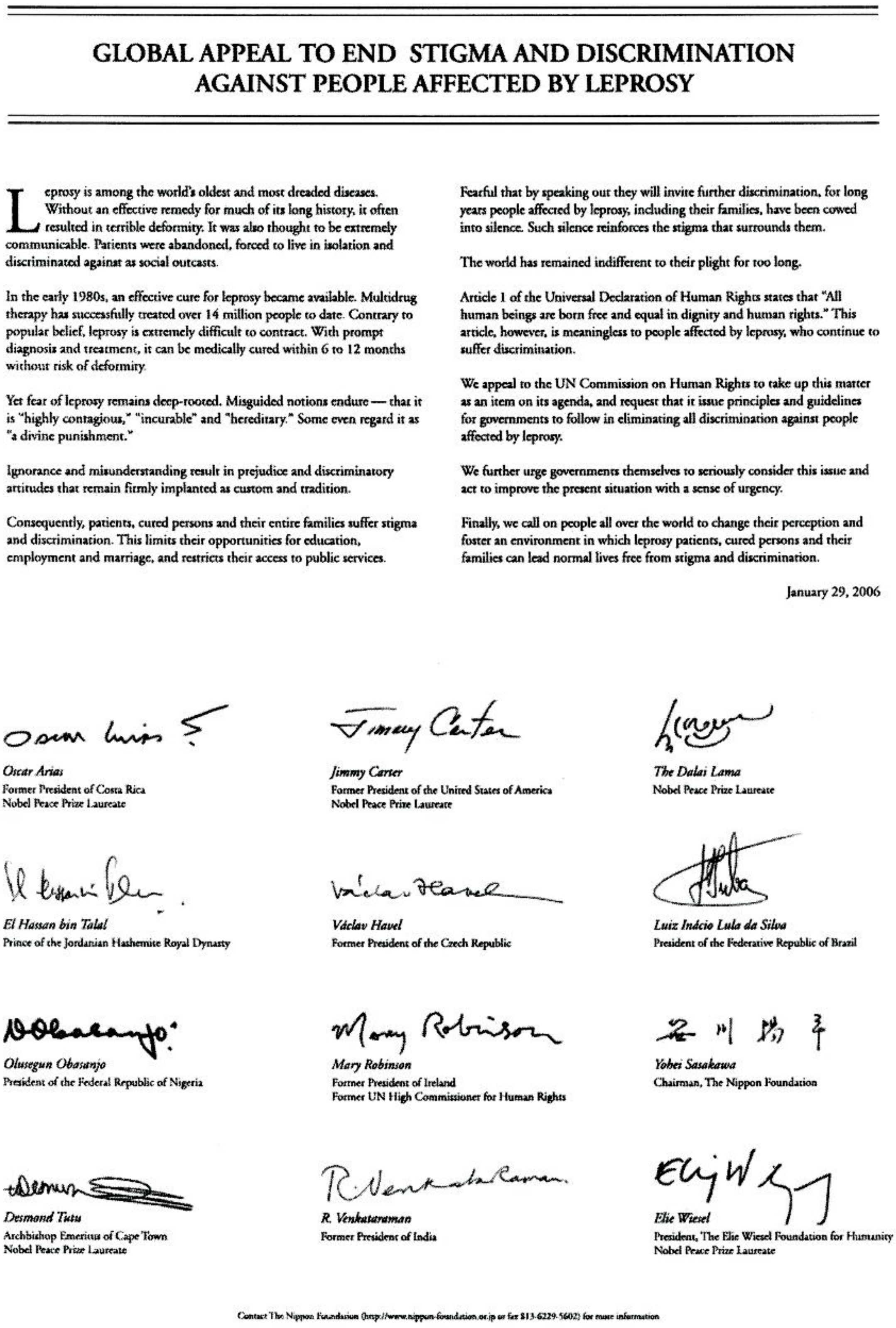
IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

The stubbornness of the leprosy stigma was underlined in Japan in 2001, when a court ruled that the Japanese government owed millions of dollars in compensation to leprosy patients who had been confined and abused in leper colonies since the 1950s. The colonies or centers were established under the 1953 Leprosy Prevention law (repealed in 1996) that forced all persons with leprosy, including children, to move to those locations. According to a Japanese government commission that studied the leper colonies, patients were sterilized—surgically rendered unable to have children—forced to have abortions, and treated as research subjects. Infanticide was also practiced. All this continued for decades after outpatient treatment with anti-leprosy drugs became available in 1960. "For 60 years, I was not treated as a human," one former patient, Mamoru Kunimoto, said. The fact that the government apologized rather than disputing the court's ruling, he said, "has given me back my humanity."

Primary Source Connection

In January 2006 in New Delhi, India, Yohei Sasakawa, chairman of The Nippon Foundation, published a Global Appeal to End Stigma and Discrimination against People Affected by Leprosy. The text of that appeal was issued in the names of 12 world leaders and Nobel Peace Prize laureates.

The Nippon Foundation, a non-governmental organization, founded in 1962, supports research and programs for the betterment of people's lives around the world. With a special focus on developing countries, the foundation is active in issues dealing with human resources development, hunger alleviation, public health, and help for the disabled.



GLOBAL APPEAL TO END STIGMA AND DISCRIMINATION AGAINST PEOPLE AFFECTED BY LEPROSY

Leprosy is among the world's oldest and most dreaded diseases. Without an effective remedy for much of its long history, it often resulted in terrible deformity. It was also thought to be extremely communicable. Patients were abandoned, forced to live in isolation and discriminated against as social outcasts.

In the early 1980s, an effective cure for leprosy became available. Multidrug therapy has successfully treated over 14 million people to date. Contrary to popular belief, leprosy is extremely difficult to contract. With prompt diagnosis and treatment, it can be medically cured within 6 to 12 months without risk of deformity.

Yet fear of leprosy remains deep-rooted. Misguided notions endure — that it is "highly contagious," "incurable" and "hereditary." Some even regard it as "a divine punishment."

Ignorance and misunderstanding result in prejudice and discriminatory attitudes that remain firmly implanted as custom and tradition.

Consequently, patients, cured persons and their entire families suffer stigma and discrimination. This limits their opportunities for education, employment and marriage, and restricts their access to public services.

Fearful that by speaking out they will invite further discrimination, for long years people affected by leprosy, including their families, have been cowed into silence. Such silence reinforces the stigma that surrounds them.

The world has remained indifferent to their plight for too long.

Article 1 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights states that "All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and human rights." This article, however, is meaningless to people affected by leprosy, who continue to suffer discrimination.

We appeal to the UN Commission on Human Rights to take up this matter as an item on its agenda, and request that it issue principles and guidelines for governments to follow in eliminating all discrimination against people affected by leprosy.

We further urge governments themselves to seriously consider this issue and act to improve the present situation with a sense of urgency.

Finally, we call on people all over the world to change their perception and foster an environment in which leprosy patients, cured persons and their families can lead normal lives free from stigma and discrimination.

January 29, 2006

Oscar Arias
Former President of Costa Rica
Nobel Peace Prize Laureate

Jimmy Carter
Jimmy Carter
Former President of the United States of America
Nobel Peace Prize Laureate

The Dalai Lama
Nobel Peace Prize Laureate

El Hassan bin Talal
Prince of the Jordanian Hashemite Royal Dynasty

Václav Havel
Former President of the Czech Republic

Luiz Inácio Lula da Silva
President of the Federative Republic of Brazil

Olusegun Obasanjo
President of the Federal Republic of Nigeria

Mary Robinson
Mary Robinson
Former President of Ireland
Former UN High Commissioner for Human Rights

Yohei Sasakawa
Chairman, The Nippon Foundation

Desmond Tutu
Archbishop Emeritus of Cape Town
Nobel Peace Prize Laureate

R. Venkataraman
Former President of India

Elie Wiesel
President, The Elie Wiesel Foundation for Humanity
Nobel Peace Prize Laureate

Contact The Nippon Foundation (http://www.nippon-foundation.or.jp or fax 813-6229-5602) for more information

In 2006 various humanitarian leaders signed the "Global Appeal to End Stigma and Discrimination Against People Affected by Leprosy." The signers—including former U.S. President Jimmy Carter, spiritual leader the Dali Lama, and Archbishop Desmond Tutu—asked the UN Commission on Human Rights, as well as governments and people throughout the world, to end stigma and discrimination against people with leprosy. *The Nippon Foundation.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Demaitre, Luke. *Leprosy in Premodern Medicine: A Malady of the Whole Body.* Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 2007.

Gould, Tony. *A Disease Apart: Leprosy in the Modern World.* New York: St. Martin's Press, 2005.

Periodicals

McNeil Jr., Donald G. "Worrisome New Link: AIDS Drugs and Leprosy." *New York Times.* October 24, 2006.

Mira, Marcelo, et al. "Susceptibility to Leprosy is Associated with *PARK2* and *PACRG.*" *Nature.* 427(2004):636-40.

Monot, Marc, et al. "On the Origin of Leprosy." *Science.* 308(2005):1040–1042.

Web Sites

British Broadcasting Corporation. "Koizumi Apologises for Leper Colonies." May 25, 2001 <http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/asia-pacific/1350630.stm> (accessed February 6, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Hansen's Disease (Leprosy)." October 12, 2005 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/hansens_t.htm> (accessed February 6, 2007).

International Leprosy Association. "Global Project on the History of Leprosy." October 10, 2003 <http://www.leprosyhistory.org/english/englishhome.htm> (accessed February 6, 2007).

World Health Organization, United Nations. "Leprosy." 2007 <http://www.who.int/topics/leprosy/en/> (accessed February 6, 2007).

Leptospirosis

Introduction

Leptospirosis is a disease that is caused by bacteria from the genus *Leptospira*. It is considered an emerging disease and is found worldwide. Leptospirosis often goes undiagnosed, since the symptoms of this disease are similar to those of a number of other diseases, including influenza. For this reason, the prevalence of the disease is unknown.

Infection occurs when humans come in contact with freshwater, soil, or vegetation that is contaminated with the urine of an infected animal. The bacteria pass from the urine into the human body via mucosal linings, such as the linings of the eyes, nose, or mouth; through broken skin; or orally, when food or water is ingested. Illness develops, usually within 10 days, and is characterized by fever, aches, vomiting, diarrhea, and jaundice. Treatment with antibiotics leads to successful recovery, although, in some cases, a second phase can occur with more severe symptoms. During this second phase, known as Weil's disease, patients suffer more severe symptoms that may include kidney failure, liver failure, or meningitis. Weil's disease occurs in around 10% of cases.

Leptospirosis occurs mainly in the tropics, although it is a worldwide disease found both in rural and urban regions of developed and developing countries. There is no vaccine for this disease, and prevention efforts focus on avoiding contact with anything that may have been contaminated with the bacteria. Risk is highest for people who work or spend time outdoors, in freshwater, or with animals.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Leptospirosis was first recognized in 1886 by the German scientist Adolf Weil (1848–1916). The cause of the disease was not identified until about 40 years later, during the 1920s, when both Japanese and German scientists discovered that bacteria were responsible. Leptospirosis is caused by leptospires, which are disease-causing bacteria in the genus *Leptospira*. The primary agent causing leptospirosis is *Leptospira interrogans*.

Scope and Distribution

Leptospirosis most commonly occurs in the tropics, although it is present in temperate regions. Leptospires

DANGER
CROSSING
HAZARDOUS
DURING
HIGH WATER
WARNING!
LEPTOSPIROSIS
HEALTH HAZARD
WARNING !
LEPTOSPIROSIS
HEALTH HAZARD
FRESH WATER STREAMS AND MUD
POSSIBLY POLLUTED WITH BACTERIA
SWIM OR HIKE AT YOUR OWN RISK
FOR MORE INFORMATION CALL
HAWAII DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

A sign warns of the dangers of contracting leptospirosis or Weil's disease from a contaminated water source. Leptospirosis is caused by *Leptospira* bacteria, which are excreted in the urine of rats and other rodents. The presence of rodent urine in water can lead to infections in humans, dogs, and cattle. *Simon Fraser/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

In humans, the spiral-shaped *Leptospira* bacteria cause fever, chills, aches, eye inflammation, and a skin rash. The disease can also cause damage to the liver, kidneys, and nervous system. *Omikron/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

thrive best in warm temperatures and moist conditions. They are transmitted by wild and domestic animals including rodents, dogs, cattle, horses, and pigs. Therefore, people who spend a great deal of time outdoors, or with animals, are more likely to contract leptospirosis. This includes veterinarians, military personnel, farmers, and sewer workers. In addition, people taking part in outdoor recreational activities, such as camping or water sports, are also at higher risk, since they are more likely to come in contact with urine-contaminated water.

Leptospirosis occurs worldwide but tends to be underreported in most countries, since it is often overlooked during diagnosis. This is due to the similarities between symptoms of leptospirosis and those of other tropical diseases. As a result, the global prevalence of this disease is unknown. However, increases in the occurrence of this disease were observed in Germany between 1962 and 2003. These increases are thought to be a result of more frequent travel, increases in freshwater recreational activities, and higher rat populations in cities.

Treatment and Prevention

Patients with leptospirosis can recover without treatment, although recovery may take several months, and lack of treatment may lead to complications. Treatment is usually administered as soon as possible and involves a course of antibiotics. A range of antibiotics can be used, including doxycycline, penicillin, ampicillin, and amoxicillin. Recovery can take from three days to several weeks. However, in most cases recovery is complete. More severe complications arise when the patient does not receive antibiotics or if the patient develops the second phase of the illness.

There is no vaccine for leptospirosis, so prevention is best achieved by avoiding contaminated water, soil, or vegetation, particularly in areas with infected or potentially infected animals. Clothing, such as boots or waders, will provide protection during recreational activities, and gloves will provide protection when handling animals. Taking antibiotics while traveling through infected areas may also help prevent severe infections from developing, if people become contaminated.

WORDS TO KNOW

JAUNDICE: Jaundice is a condition in which a person's skin and the whites of the eyes are discolored a shade of yellow due to an increased level of bile pigments in the blood resulting from liver disease. Jaundice is sometimes called icterus, from a Greek word for the condition.

LEPTOSPIRE: Also called a leptospira, a leptospire is any bacterial species of the genus *Leptospira*. Infection with leptospires causes leptospirosis.

WEIL'S DISEASE: Weil's disease, named after German doctor Adolf Weil (1848–1916), is a severe form of leptospirosis or seven-day fever, a disease caused by infection with the corkscrew-shaped bacillus *Leptospira interrogans.*

Impacts and Issues

Leptospirosis is becoming more common and has been recognized as an emerging infectious disease by the United States Directors of Health Promotion and Education. Since this disease occurs in both developed and developing countries and in both urban and rural areas, it has become globally important.

Despite the high likelihood of recovery following treatment, there is still a significant mortality rate for leptospirosis. This is largely due to delayed diagnosis, since the disease is hard to recognize. In addition, due to the lack of a vaccine, avoidance of the bacteria remains the best prevention method. This avoidance depends on

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

As of April 2007, the CDC states that "No vaccine is available to prevent leptospirosis in the United States. Travelers who might be at an increased risk for the disease should be advised to consider preventive measures such as wearing protective clothing and minimizing contact with potentially contaminated water. Such travelers also might benefit from chemoprophylaxis (a course of treatment prior to exposure that reduces risk or impact of disease). Until further data become available, CDC recommends that travelers who might be at increased risk for leptospirosis be advised to consider chemoprophylaxis begun 1 to 2 days before exposure and continuing through the period of exposure."

Individuals should always seek advice from their personal physician with regard to specific medications and doses.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Health Information for International Travel 2005–2006. Atlanta: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, 2005.*

the maintenance of rigorous sanitation methods, which is not always possible in developing countries or in countries experiencing war or other social upheavals. Therefore, contamination still occurs frequently.

The chance of exposure to contaminated sources is exacerbated during floods, outdoor activity, or in animal-populated regions. In 1995, widespread flooding in Nicaragua spread the bacteria, and more than 2,000 people contracted leptospirosis. At least 13 of those with the disease died. Two years later, nine Americans became infected while white-water rafting in Costa Rica. In addition, growing rat populations, especially in inner cities, increase public exposure to leptospirosis when water systems and sewers become contaminated. This has been suggested as one cause of the higher levels of leptospirosis seen in Germany during 1962–2003.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Meningitis, Bacterial; Personal Protective Equipment; Travel and Infectious Disease; War and Infectious Disease; Water-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G. L., J. E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2004.

World Health Organization. *Human Leptospirosis: Guidance for Diagnosis, Surveillance and Control.* Malta: World Health Organization, 2003.

Periodicals

Jansen, A., et al. "Leptospirosis in Germany, 1962–2003." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 11 (2005): 1048–1054.

Web Sites

Directors of Health Promotion and Education. "Leptospirosis." <http://www.dhpe.org/infect/Lepto.html> (accessed March 1, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Leptospirosis." October 12, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/leptospirosis_g.htm> (accessed March 1, 2007).

Lice Infestation (Pediculosis)

Introduction

Of the many parasites that can infest humans, one of the most common is the louse, a wingless insect. There are several types of lice that infect humans, usually classified as one of three species. These are the head louse (*Pediculus humanus capitis*), which infests only the head; the body louse *Pediculus humanus corporis*), which lives in clothing near the skin; and the crab louse or pubic louse (*Phthirus pubis*), which mostly infests the groin. Infestation with lice is called pediculosis (ped-ih-q-LO-sis). Recently some biologists have argued that the head louse and body louse may be different varieties of a single species. Head and body lice can interbreed in captivity, but do not do so on the human body.

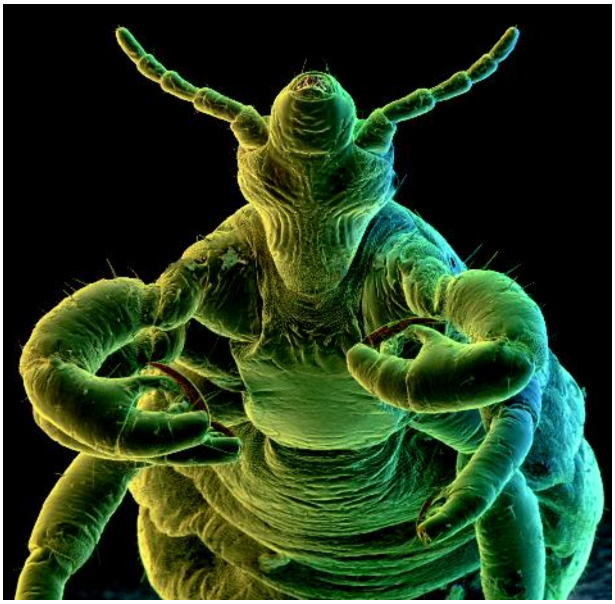
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Human lice can exist only on human beings; they die in about 24 hours if they are removed from the body. Lice also infest humans' nearest evolutionary cousins, the chimpanzees and gorillas, but these lice belong to a different species than those that infest humans. As apes and humans continued to evolve over the last few million years, their lice evolved along with them.

The female head or body louse lays several eggs a day. Lice eggs are called nits (the source of the word "nitpick") and are cemented to the hair or, in the case of body lice, to clothing fibers. The eggs take 7–10 days to hatch. A female louse can start laying eggs 7–10 days after hatching. A louse bites through the skin to suck blood from its host about five times a day.

On a healthy host, lice can cause itching, rash, fever, headaches, and fatigue, but are rarely life-threatening. However, body lice can act as carriers of more serious diseases. Three types of disease can be transmitted by body lice to the humans that they bite, namely relapsing fever (caused by the bacterium *Borrelia recurrentis*), trench fever (caused by the bacillus *Bartonella quintana*), and—most seriously—typhus (caused by *Rickettsia prowazekii*).

Lice spread by crawling from one host to another or through the transfer of eggs. The majority of head lice are spread by head to head contact or, more rarely, by coming into contact with objects that have picked up eggs from the hair, such as combs, pillows, hats, hair ties, and the like. Body lice are spread through body contact or shared clothing and bedding. Pubic lice are spread primarily through sexual contact or other body contact.



A colored scanning electron micrograph (SEM) shows the blood-sucking human body louse, *Pediculus humanus corporis.* At the upper center is the head of the louse, with its two antennae and biting mouthparts (at top). The three pairs of legs each terminate in a powerful curved claw for gripping. *David Scharf/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The Division of Parasitic Diseases (DPD), Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that "for children under 2 years old, remove crawling bugs and nits by hand. If this does not work, ask your child's health care provider for treatment recommendations. The safety of head lice medications has not been tested in children 2 years of age and under."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*

Scope and Distribution

Throughout history, lice infestation has been common in most populations. Dead lice and eggs have been found on Egyptian mummies and Roman bodies buried under volcanic ash at Pompeii. About 6–12 million people acquire head lice in the United States each year; smaller numbers acquire body or pubic lice.

The head louse is still found worldwide at all levels of society. Head lice are extremely common in developing countries. In Western industrialized countries, outbreaks are often associated with schoolchildren.

With the Industrial Revolution and the spread of bathing technology through much of the modern world—indoor plumbing, soap, shampoo, laundry machines, and detergent—the body louse has become less common. Today human body lice are found mostly in situations where poor hygiene, overcrowding, and wearing the same clothing for extended periods are more common—whether these be entire countries or impoverished groups, such as the homeless, in richer countries.

Treatment and Prevention

Prevention of lice infestation is accomplished by treating those who are infested and by environmental control (cleaning objects that may have picked up eggs). The two methods of treating lice infestation are pesticides (chemicals that kill insects or other pests) and physical removal of the lice via lice combs. The pesticides most often used are permethrin and pyrethrins, followed by malathion or lindane. However, as is common with pesticides, heavily exposed populations of lice have evolved resistance to these chemicals. The U.S. National Pediculosis Association advises against the use of pesticides on any person with pre-existing illnesses such as severe asthma, epilepsy, cancer, or AIDS. Fine-toothed steel combs can also be used to remove head lice and nits from hair.

Impacts and Issues

According to studies reported in the *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences* in 2006, lice and louse-borne disease were being increasingly reported among homeless and poor inner-city populations in industrialized countries such as the United States, France, Holland, and Russia.

Wars and social breakdown can lead to large outbreaks of lice, as can any condition where people exist in crowded areas without acess to sanitation and clean clothing. A large outbreak of typhus occurred in several refugee camps in Burundi in 1997 where most of the inhabitants were louse-infested.

The safety of the pesticides used in standard anti-lice products is questioned by the American Pediculosis Association, which has campaigned for the use of fine-toothed combs as the treatment of choice in removing lice. Some individuals can have allergic reactions to the pesticides used to treat pediculosis.

SEE ALSO *Parasitic Diseases; Typhoid Fever; Typhus.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Elston, Dirk M. "Drugs Used in the Treatment of Pediculosis." *Journal of Drugs in Dermatology* 4.2 (March-April 2005): 207–211.

Raoult, Didier, and Véronique Roux. "The Body Louse as a Vector of Reemerging Human Diseases." *Clinical Infectious Diseases* 29 (1999): 888–911.

Wade, Nicholas. "What a Story Lice Can Tell." *New York Times* (October 5, 2004).

Witkowski, Joseph A., and Lawrence Charles Parish. "Pediculosis and Resistance: The Perennial Problem." *Clinics in Dermatology* 20 (2002): 87–92.

Web Sites

The National Pediculosis Association. "Welcome to Headlice.org." 2007. <http://www.headlice.org/> (accessed January 22, 2007).

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS.

Schools and daycare facilities often exclude children for 24 hours after treatment for head lice, or they maintain a "no-nit policy" that excludes treated children until nits are not visible upon inspection of the scalp. Evidence shows these policies often result in the needless loss of instructional time. Usually by the time a case of head lice is discovered, the possibility of transmission to others has already existed for at least a month, and pesticide treatment quickly kills both adult lice and nits. Also, killed nits may temporarily remain in the hair after treatment.

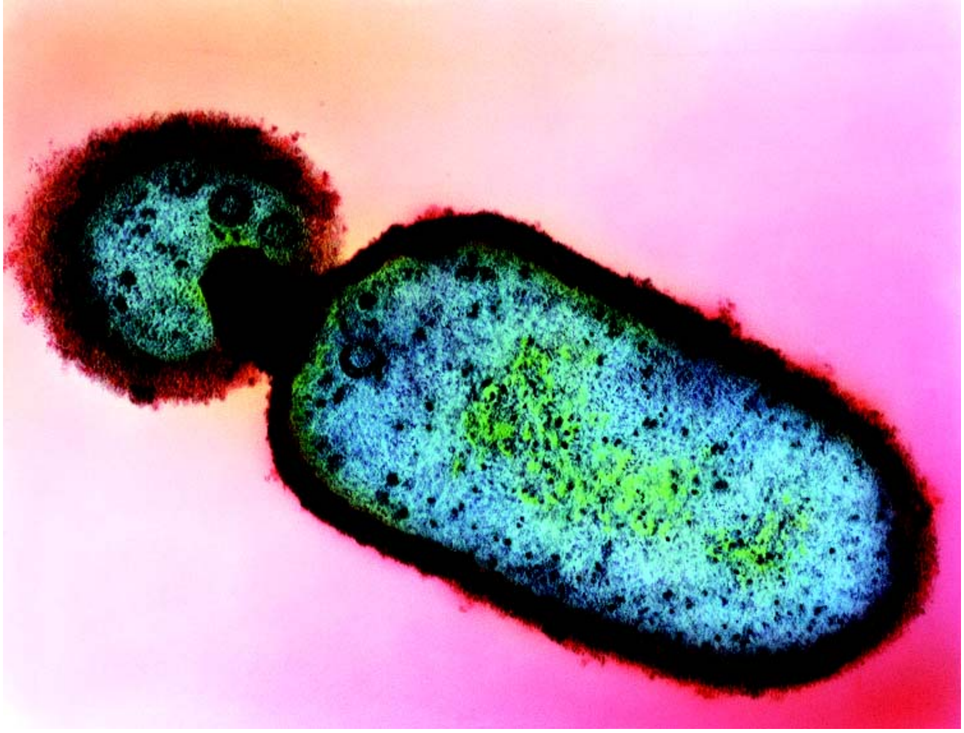
Listeriosis

Introduction

Listeriosis is an infection that is caused by eating food that is contaminated by the bacterium *Listeria monocytogenes.* The infection, which can be serious, primarily affects pregnant women, infants, and immunocompromised people (those whose immune systems are not functioning as efficiently as is normal).

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The bacterium *Listera monocytogenes* is a normal inhabitant of soil and water. Vegetables can become contaminated with the bacterium, if soil or manure clings to them. Humans can then become infected if the contaminated vegetables are not properly washed before eating.



A colored transmission electron micrograph (TEM) shows *Listeria monocytogenes* bacterium (center to bottom right). It is dividing by a process of unequal cell growth known as budding. Its progeny, or daughter cell, is seen at the upper left. It causes listeriosis, a form of food poisoning that results in abdominal pains, fever, and diarrhea. *Dr Kari Lounatmaa/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Foods other than vegetables also can become contaminated, since animals, such as cattle, can harbor the bacterium without any ill effects. Meat and dairy products may become contaminated unknowingly. Infection can result, if the meat is eaten raw or is cooked improperly and if unpasteurized milk is consumed. Other foods that can be contaminated by *L. monocytogenes* include cheeses (particularly those made with unpasteurized milk) and processed meats that are unrefrigerated for a time sufficient for contaminating bacteria to multiply. In contrast to some bacterial infections, where a large number of living bacteria need to be consumed to cause illness, relatively few *L. monocytogenes* need to be eaten to cause listeriosis.

Symptoms of listeriosis include flulike fever, nausea, and vomiting, as well as abdominal cramping, diarrhea, and headache. The symptoms may appear within a few days after eating the contaminated foods, but also can appear 2–3 months later. In people whose immune systems are compromised, the infection can progress to a lethal blood infection (sepsis) or brain infection. Infections during pregnancy can lead to infection of the newborn, as well as to miscarriage, stillbirth, or premature birth.

Scope and Distribution

Listeriosis has become a significant health threat. In the United States, for example, approximately 2,500 people are sickened with listeriosis each year. Of these, about 500 die, representing a mortality (death) rate of 20%.

Pregnant women are about 20 times more likely to acquire listeriosis than are other adults. In addition, immunocompromised individuals, who cannot as easily fight off infections, are susceptible to listeriosis. The proper functioning of the immune system may be impaired by certain diseases, including diabetes, cancer, kidney disease, and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), as well as by advanced age, and certain drugs, such as those taken by transplant patients to reduce the likelihood of transplant rejection. Listeriosis also can occur in individuals whose immune systems are functioning normally, but the infection is usually not nearly as serious.

Treatment and Prevention

L. monocytogenes is easily killed by pasteurization—a process during which a product is held at a certain temperature for a certain length of time to kill most bacteria without altering the chemistry or taste of the product. However, some foods can become contaminated after they have been processed, but before they are packaged for sale. Delicatessen-style meat and hot dogs are two common examples. The bacteria can remain alive and capable of causing infection during transport of the product to the supermarket, sale, and consumption.

A number of common-sense precautions can prevent listeriosis. Thoroughly cooking beef, pork, and poultry is sufficient to kill any *L. monocytogenes* that may contaminate the product. Washing vegetables removes bacteria. When storing food, uncooked meat should not be allowed to come into contact with vegetables, food that is already cooked, or prepared foods. All items used in the preparation of uncooked foods should be thoroughly washed before re-use to avoid transferring *L. monocytogenes* to other foodstuffs. While cheeses made from unpasteurized milk (such as Brie, Camembert, and feta) are preferred by some people, and the consumption of unpasteurized milk is sometimes advocated as a healthy alternative, there is a risk to these practices, since they increase the likelihood of exposure to the bacteria. Finally, prepared foods should be eaten promptly, since *L. monocytogenes*, in contrast to most other disease-causing bacteria, can slowly grow at temperatures above 39°F (4°C). A malfunctioning refrigerator can also create conditions in which the bacteria can grow.

WORDS TO KNOW

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

PASTEURIZE: To subject a substance to pasteurization, a process where fluids such as wine and milk are heated for a predetermined time at a temperature that is below the boiling point of the liquid. The treatment kills any microorganisms that are in the fluid but does not alter the taste, appearance, or nutritive value of the fluid.

SEPSIS: Sepsis refers to a bacterial infection in the bloodstream or body tissues. This is a very broad term covering the presence of many types of microscopic disease-causing organisms. Sepsis is also called bacteremia. Closely related terms include septicemia and septic syndrome. According to the Society of Critical Care Medicine, severe sepsis affects about 750,000 people in the United States each year. However, it is predicted to rapidly rise to one million people by 2010 due to the aging U.S. population. Over the decade of the 1990s, the incident rate of sepsis increased over 91%.

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

Government agencies such as the U.S. Food and Drug Administration and the U. S. Department of Agriculture monitor food regularly in an attempt to reduce contamination of food by the Listeria bacterium and other infectious agents. Food monitoring and plant inspection are key monitoring and prevention tools, recalls can also be issued for contaminated or suspect food.

■ Impacts and Issues

Listeriosis can be a serious infection and, in the case of pregnant women, it can lead to miscarriage, stillbirth, premature delivery, or infection in the newborn. Although pregnant women in the United States are not routinely tested for infection with the bacteria that causes listeriosis, many health care providers recommend that pregnant women avoid consuming unpasteurized milk products and ready-to-eat deli-type meat products unless they are reheated until steaming hot.

From 1996–2002, the rate of listeriosis cases in the United States fell by 35%. This is attributed to aggressive sampling and testing programs by government meat inspectors, and education designed to raise awareness about the dangers of *L. monocytogenes*, especially among at-risk groups, such as pregnant women. In 2003, the U.S. Food Safety and Inspection Service established new regulations for scrutiny at plants that make or process ready-to-eat meat and poultry products. The rule also encourages plants to install new technologies to eliminate or reduce the growth of *L. monocytogenes*.

Researchers are working on "smart packaging" that may help reduce the sale and consumption of contaminated foods, such as deli meats. One type of this packaging incorporates molecules that recognize surface components of *L. monocytogenes*. These molecules are combined with other molecules that change color in the presence of the bacterium, and this color change can alert consumers that the product is contaminated.

See Also *Bacterial Disease; Food-borne Disease and Food Safety.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

DiClaudio, Dennis. *The Hypochondriac's Pocket Guide to Horrible Diseases You Probably Already Have*. New York: Bloomsbury, 2005.

Rosaler, Maxine. *Listeriosis (Epidemics)*. New York: Rosen Publishing Group, 2003.

Ryser, Elliot T., and Elmer H. Marth. *Listeria, Listeriosis, and Food Safety*. 3rd ed. Boca Raton: CRC, 2007.

Brian Hoyle

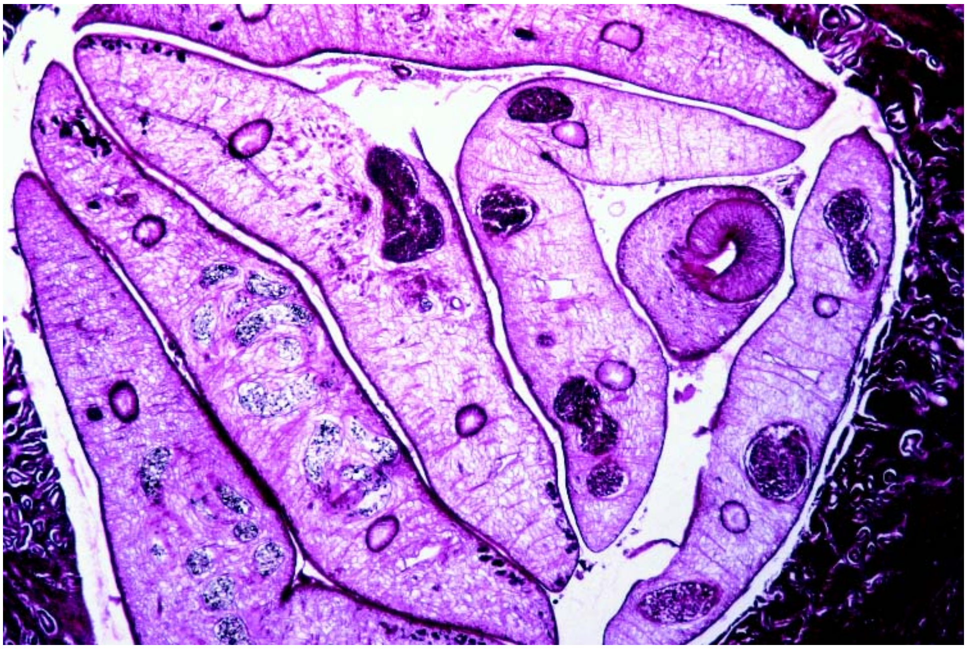
Liver Fluke Infections

Introduction

Liver fluke infections are the result of infestation by parasitic worms known as liver flukes. There are two main types of liver fluke infections, Fascioliasis and Pisthorchiasis. Although each infection is caused by different species of flukes, they share similarities in characteristics and transmission. Humans become infected when they ingest the cysts containing parasitic forms of the flukes. These cysts open in the digestive system and release the parasites. Humans most often ingest the cysts after drinking contaminated water or eating raw or undercooked food that contains the cysts.

Infection can be asymptomatic or can be either acute or chronic. Mild cases of both Fascioliasis and Opisthorchiasis result in tiredness, fever, aches, swollen liver, abdominal pain, and rash. Symptoms of chronic forms include exacerbated versions of the acute symptoms with possible diarrhea, nausea, swelling of the face, blockage of the bile ducts, and sometimes complications such as migration of flukes to other regions in the body. Administration of one of a variety of antihelminthic drugs is usually effective, with recovery likely to occur.

Fascioliasis occurs worldwide, while Opisthorchiasis generally occurs in regions of Asia. Increased cases of liver fluke infection have been reported in China, argued to be a consequence of an increase in the consumption of raw foods.



This section of liver tissue shows multiple *Clonorchis sinensis*, commonly known as Chinese liver flukes. *Pr. Bouree/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIHELMINTHIC: Antihelminthic drugs are medicines that rid the body of parasitic worms.

ASYMPTOMATIC: A state in which an individual does not exhibit or experience symptoms of a disease.

CYST: Refers to either a closed cavity or sac or the stage of life of some parasites during which they live inside an enclosed area. A stage in a protozoan's life when it is covered by a tough outer shell and has become dormant.

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

LARVAE: Immature forms (wormlike in insects; fishlike in amphibians) of an organism capable of surviving on its own. Larvae do not resemble the parent and must go through metamorphosis, or change, to reach the adult stage.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

TREMATODES: Commonly known as flukes; a class of worms characterized by flat, oval-shaped bodies.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Liver fluke infections are caused by liver flukes, which are a type of helminth or parasitic worm. There are two main diseases that affect humans infected with liver flukes: Fascioliasis, or liver fluke infection, and Opisthorchiasis, or Chinese liver fluke infection.

Liver flukes belong to a specific group of parasitic worms known as flukes, or trematodes. Fascioliasis is caused by species of fluke from the genus *Fasciola*, namely one species, *Fasciola hepatica*, the sheep liver fluke. The life cycle of this fluke is as follows: eggs released from host's feces into water; larvae from the eggs infect snails; snails release larvae, which forms cysts containing infective parasite stages, onto vegetation; humans ingest cysts when they eat the vegetation (for example, watercress). The cysts then break open in the human digestive tract and the flukes enter the liver and destroy tissue. Opisthorchiasis is caused by a species of fluke from the genus *Clonorchis* or *Opisthrochis*, namely *C. sinensis*, *O. viverrini*, or *O. felineus*. These flukes have a similar lifecycle to the sheep liver fluke, except, rather than being encysted on plants, they are encysted inside fish. Humans then consume the fish and become infected.

Scope and Distribution

Liver fluke infections occur worldwide, though the distribution of Fascioliasis and Opisthorchiasis differs. Fascioliasis is known to occur worldwide, occurring in both temperate and tropical regions. *F. hepatica* infections have been reported in Europe, the Middle East, and Asia. *F. gigantica* infections have been reported in Asia, Africa, and Hawaii. In general, Fascioliasis is closely connected to regions where sheep and cattle are raised. Sheep and cattle are natural hosts for liver flukes, and thus are likely to transmit the parasite to humans in close contact with the animals or their water supply.

Opisthorchiasis occurs in areas of Asia and Europe. In particular, *O. viverrini* infections have been reported from northeast Thailand, Laos, and Kampuchea. *O. felineus* infections have been reported mostly in Europe and Asia. Almost all of China contains infections of *O. sinensis.*

In China, health officials reported a 75% increase in the number of cases of liver fluke from 2001 to 2004. The cause of the increase has been attributed to an increased desire to consume raw or undercooked seafood and meat, both of which are a source of liver flukes. As a consequence of this increase in infections, there has also been an increase in the number of cases in which a liver disorder has developed due to the flukes.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment for liver fluke infections is achieved through administration of medications. There are a number of effective drugs, including triclabendazole, praziquantel, bithionol, albendazole, and mebendazole. Treatment of infection caused by *Fasciola hepatica* usually involves triclabendazole or bithionol. Use of praziquantel has been ineffective in some cases and is thus not recommended by the CDC to be used to treat *F. hepatica* fluke infections. Opisthorchiasis fluke infections can be effectively treated using praziquantel, which is the preferred treatment as suggested by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). These medications act to eradicate the parasite. Praziquantel works by paralyzing the flukes' attachment apparatus, which disables them from remaining attached to the host's blood vessels. This leads to the death of the parasites and eventually the infection dissipates.

On occasions, treatment using the above mentioned drugs may cause side effects such as diarrhea, dizziness, or headache. However, full recovery is likely to occur following treatment. In some cases, liver damage resulting from the attachment of flukes to tissue may make patients vulnerable to other infections. Treatment may be required for several days or weeks depending on the type of fluke causing the infection.

There are no vaccines against liver fluke, thus avoidance of these parasites is the best method of prevention. Avoidance can be achieved by boiling or purifying drinking water, ensuring freshwater fish and vegetation is cooked thoroughly prior to consumption, and eradicating or controlling snails as they are an intermediate host for flukes.

■ Impacts and Issues

Liver flukes are transmitted to humans via consumption of raw meat, fish, and vegetation. Therefore, the food habits of humans have strong implications for the prevalence of liver fluke infections. In China, an increase in the consumption of raw or undercooked meat and seafood resulted in a large increase in the number of people infected with liver flukes. During the years 2001–2004, Chinese health officials reported a 75% increase in fluke infections, highlighting the possibility that increased consumption of food potentially containing liver flukes is causing increased infection.

The liver fluke *F. hepatica*, also known as the sheep liver fluke, often infects livestock such as sheep, cattle, and pigs. This creates issues for the beef, lamb, and pork industries, as the flukes can do extensive damage to the animals, and can be a source of infection for human populations. Prevention of liver fluke infection in livestock requires routine worming of animals, as well as the implementation of snail control methods such as exclusion of animals from snail-infested regions, or drainage of water bodies containing snails. The disease is likely to occur in wet areas where snails are present. If snails are absent, so too are these flukes due to their dependence on snails.

Incidence of liver flukes are greatest in areas that lack adequate sanitation and water purification resources. Increased sanitation practices, including proper disposal and treatment of human and livestock wastes, prevention of water source contamination by fecal matter, and safer food storage and preparation practices, could dramatically reduce the occurrence of disease caused by all helminths. However, the World Health Organization (WHO) notes that over one billion people worldwide do not have access to clean, uncontaminated water. Coupled with a diet rich in the foods that most often carry liver flukes, unsanitary conditions make liver flukes difficult to prevent in underdeveloped regions.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

In taxonomic terms, liver flukes belong to the the class Trematoda, which is then subdivided into two orders of obligate parasites, Digenea and Monogenea. Obligate parasites are those that are unable to live independently of a host. The trematodes of importance to human disease are part of the Digenea order and include blood, tissue, and intestinal flukes. All are mainly found in developing nations located in tropical and subtropical regions. Flukes are rarely a natural problem in temperate climatic zones.

See Also *Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Helminth Disease; Lung Fluke (Paragonimus) Infection; Opportunistic Infection; Parasitic Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

Cambridge University. "Fasciola hepatica: The Liver Fluke." Oct. 5, 1998 <http://www.path.cam.ac.uk/~schisto/OtherFlukes/Fasciola.html#minorFasc> (accessed February 23, 2007).

Cambridge University. "Opisthorchis sinensis: The Chinese Liver Fluke." Oct. 5, 1998 <http://www.path.cam.ac.uk/~schisto/OtherFlukes/Opisthorchis.egg.html> (accessed February 23, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control (CDC). "Fascioliasis." May 6, 2004 <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/html/Fascioliasis.htm> (accessed February 23, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control (CDC). "Opisthorchiasis." May 6, 2004 < http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Opisthorchiasis.htm> (accessed May 2, 2007).

Meat Promotion Wales. "Liver Fluke." <http://www.hybucigcymru.org.uk/content.php?nID=206&lID=1> (accessed February 23, 2007).

ProMED-Mail. "Food-borne Parasitic Infections Increase in China." May 18, 2005 <http://www.promedmail.org/pls/promed/f?p=2400:1202:997653105689672184::NO::F2400_P1202_CHECK_DISPLAY,F2400_P1202_PUB_MAIL_ID:X,28969> (accessed February 23, 2007).

Lung Fluke (Paragonimus) Infection

Introduction

Lung fluke infection, or paragonimiasis, is a potentially serious illness that is caused by over 30 species of trematodes (parasitic flatworms) of the genus *Paragonimus*. Among the more than 10 species reported to infect humans, the most common is *P. westermani*, found in tropical and subtropical regions of the Far East.

Lung flukes are not transmitted from person to person. Humans contract paragonimiasis when they eat inadequately cooked or pickled flesh that is infected. Most reported cases result from consuming raw freshwater crabs or crayfish. However, some species of lung fluke occur only in domestic or wild animals. Humans can contract the illness from consuming the raw flesh of these creatures. *Paragonimus* infect wild boars, wild and domestic canids, wild and domestic felids, raccoons, mongooses, rats, and weasels.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Until the last quarter of the twentieth century, the public health importance of lung fluke infections was grossly underestimated. As a result, knowledge of the epidemiology of some species of fluke is still limited.

Both snails and crustaceans serve as intermediate hosts of the parasitic flatworms that cause paragonimiasis. Lung fluke eggs hatch in freshwater into miracidia (early-stage larvae), which penetrate the snails. The miracidia develop into very short-tailed cercariae (larvae in the final free-swimming stage) that penetrate and form cysts in the gills or muscles of freshwater crayfish and crabs. Humans or other animals then consume the raw infected crustaceans. The eggs hatch in the duodenum and the young flukes penetrate the gut wall, and eventually, the pleural cavity. Within two to three weeks, the worms, which are hermaphroditic (having both male and female reproductive organs), penetrate beneath the lungs where they meet and cross-fertilize. Adult trematodes become partly encapsulated in the lung tissues of their definitive host, where they lay eggs. The eggs pass into the alveoli. They are then passed in sputum (matter coughed up from the respiratory tract) or swallowed and are passed later in feces. Eggs that reach water hatch and begin the cycle again. The time from infection to oviposition is 65–90 days.

Lung fluke infections can be serious illnesses. Onset of symptoms generally occurs between six and ten weeks after infection. A classical symptom is bloody sputum in which eggs can be found. Other symptoms include cough, difficulty breathing, diarrhea, abdominal pain, fever, and hives. The infection is often mistaken for pulmonary tuberculosis. The parasite can migrate from the lungs to other organs including the brain and striated muscles. Lung flukes that become localized in the brain can create major neurological symptoms. Humans infected with *Paragonimus* usually display symptoms of epilepsy for the first time in adult life. Infections can persist for years, with some cases reported in which people suffered for twenty to forty years.

Scope and Distribution

At the start of the twenty-first century, over 21 million people worldwide were estimated by tropical disease specialists to be infected with lung fluke. *Paragonimus westermani* is the most common parasite responsible for human infection in the Far East, where it has a large range of mammalian reservoirs. Human infections with *P. heterotremus* are well known in Thailand and with *P. pulmonalis* in the Far East. *P. africanus* and *P. uterobilateralis* are distributed among humans in West Africa. *P. mexicanus* affects people in parts of Central and South America.

The best method of avoiding infection is to only consume properly cooked food. The preferred treatment is praziquantel tablets with bithionol tablets as an alternative drug. Praziquantel stops worms from developing or multiplying in the body.

Impacts and Issues

Paragonimiasis once tended to be limited to regions where the appropriate crustaceans formed part of the human diet in one culinary delicacy or another. However, the rise of a global cuisine has contributed to the spread of lung flukes. In 2006, two people who consumed live, imported, freshwater crabs in an Orange County, California, restaurant contracted paragonimiasis.

The invasion of nonnative species into American and Canadian waters poses a further threat to human health. The mitten crab, *Eriocheir sinensis*, was first spotted in fisheries on the west coast in 1992. This Yellow Sea native is a Chinese delicacy and crabs were imported live to markets in Los Angeles and San Francisco before California outlawed their possession. A female can carry from 250,000 to 1 million eggs. The crabs, adept on land, climb easily over levees as they migrate upstream. Mitten crabs can carry lung fluke, though no infected crabs have been detected in North American waters.

SEE ALSO *Helminth Disease; Parasitic Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Peters, Wallace, and Geoffrey Pasvol. *Tropical Medicine and Parasitology.* London: Mosby, 2002.

Web Sites

International Society for Infectious Diseases. "ProMed Mail: Mitten Crab—USA and Canada." August 1, 1999. <http://www.promedmail.org/pls/promed/f?p=2400:1000> (accessed May 26, 2007).

International Society for Infectious Diseases. "ProMed Mail: Paragonimiasis from Eating Raw Imported Freshwater Crab." August 20, 2006. <http://www.promedmail.org/pls/promed/f?p=2400:1000> (accessed May 26, 2007).

WORDS TO KNOW

ALVEOLI: An alveolus (alveoli is plural) is a tiny air sac located within the lungs. The exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide takes place within these sacs.

DEFINITIVE HOST: The organism in which a parasite reaches reproductive maturity.

INTERMEDIATE HOST: An organism infected by a parasite while the parasite is in a developmental form, not sexually mature.

OVIPOSITION: Ovum is Latin for "egg" to oviposition is to position or lay eggs, especially when done by an insect.

PLEURAL CAVITY: The lungs are surrounded by two membranous coverings, the pleura. One of the pleura is attached to the lung, the other to the ribcage. The space between the two pleura, the pleural cavity, is normally filled with a clear lubricating fluid called pleural fluid.

TREMATODES: Trematodes, also called flukes, are a type of parasitic flatworm. In humans, flukes can infest the liver, lung, and other tissues.

Lyme Disease

Introduction

Lyme disease is a bacterial infection caused by the spirochete (corkscrew-shaped bacterium) *Borrelia burgdorferi*. It is transmitted to humans through the bites of several kinds of ticks, including deer ticks (*Ixodes scapularis*) and the western black-legged tick (*Ixodes pacificus*) in the United States and *Ixodes ricinis*) in Europe. The untreated disease presents in two or three stages, starting with a localized infection that produces a skin rash and sometimes fever, headache, and other symptoms. The second stage may involve arthritis, neurological symptoms, such as depression and Bell's facial palsy, and meningitis (inflammation of the membranes that enclose the central nervous system). In the third stage, long-term arthritis and neurological symptoms may occur. The disease is treated using antibiotics. Earlier treatment is more effective, as the symptoms of untreated Lyme disease may take years to reverse or be irreversible. There is controversy between Lyme patient advocacy groups and many doctors about the existence of hard-to-detect, chronic Lyme infection and the advisability of treating such infections with antibiotics.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

History

Lyme disease has probably existed for centuries. Judging by case records, observations of what was probably Lyme disease were recorded in Germany and Scandinavia in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. Examination of museum specimens of deer ticks collected in the United States has detected Lyme disease bacteria dating to the 1940s. In 1975, some mothers in the town of Lyme, Connecticut—for which the disease is named—began noticing arthritis, fatigue, erythema migrans rashes, and other symptoms in about 50 local children. Two of these women, Judith Mensch and Polly Murray, began tracking the cases by recording dates and locations. Several of the children recalled being bitten by a tick just before becoming ill. Murray called rheumatologist Allen Steer, who investigated the cases and concluded that a tick-borne pathogen was to blame for the disease.

Thus, the existence of Lyme disease was recognized and its transmission by ticks was known in 1975. However, the specific pathogen causing the disease was still unknown. In 1981, Dr. Willy Burgdorfer, working at the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) of the U.S. National Institutes of Health, was studying the transmission of Rocky Mountain spotted fever by ticks. Studying the microorganisms found in black-legged ticks (one of the two U.S. tick varieties that transmits Lyme disease), Burgdorfer noticed a hitherto-unknown variety of corkscrew-shaped bacterium (spirochetes) in fluids from two ticks. Within a year, this bacterium had been named *Borrelia burgdorferi* in Burgdorfer's honor.

In 1982, other researchers found *Borrelia burgdorferi* in deer ticks. By combining cultured *B. burgdorferi* bacteria with blood samples from people with Lyme disease, it was shown that the patients' blood contained an antibody specific to *B. burgdorferi*. This showed that the blood donors had been infected with *B. burgdorferi*. Finally, in 1983, researchers found *B. burgdorferi* in blood and tissue samples from patients with Lyme disease, and the proof that the bacterium caused the disease was clinched.

In the years since 1983, there has been persistent controversy over the question of whether Lyme disease can exist in a chronic form that is not detected by standard tests, causing a wide range of neurological and other symptoms that overlap with those of fibromyalgia and chronic fatigue syndrome. There is also expert disagreement over the question of whether treatment of possible chronic Lyme infection with antibiotics is good medical practice.

A magnified deer tick (*Ixodes scapularis*), a blood sucking arachnid, can cause disease in humans and animals. Such ticks can transmit the bacterium that causes Lyme disease. *Kent Wood/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Characteristics and Transmission

Lyme disease is caused by the spirochete *B. burgdorferi*, a member of the phylum Spirochaetes. Spirochetes are corkscrew- or helix-shaped bacteria. *B. burgdorferi* are about 0.2–0.5 μm wide, 3–18 μm long, and are built with a double-layered structure, like a long, blunt-ended corkscrew nested within a slightly larger corkscrew of the same shape. In the space between the two layers are flagella. Each flagellum is a long, hairlike filament attached to a rotating base embedded in the outer cell wall. Many types of bacteria have flagella, but normally the flagella protrude into the bacterium's environment and are used for propulsion like tiny outboard propellers. A spirochete uses a different strategy—its internal flagella wrap lengthwise around the inner layer of the bacterium, forcing it into its characteristic corkscrew shape. Furthermore, as the flagella rotate, they cause the whole shape of the bacterium to change as if it were rotating on its axis. Just as an actual corkscrew is driven into a cork by rotating, a spirochete progresses through the medium in which it is embedded. Its corkscrewing mode of locomotion gives it a mobility advantage over other bacteria in more viscous (thicker, stickier) media.

Both syphilis and Lyme disease are caused by spirochetes. There are three common species of *B. burgdorferi*, namely *Borrelia garinii*, *Borrelia afzellia*, and *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu stricto (meaning in the strict sense); together, these three are known as *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu lato ("in the wide sense") or simply, for convenience, as *Borrelia burgdorferi*. *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu strictu is the only Lyme strain so far found in the United States as of 2007. Three other, less-common species of *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu lato (in the broad sense) have been discovered to cause Lyme disease in Africa, Asia, and Europe.

Lyme disease is a vector-borne disease, meaning that it is transmitted to human beings by an intermediate host (in this case a tick), not directly from other human beings. Although far from the most common infectious disease in the United States, it is the most common vector-borne disease, accounting for over 95% of reported vector-borne illness cases. The vector for Lyme disease is the deer tick, and the transmission of Lyme disease to humans is intimately involved with the life cycle of both the *B. burgdorferi* spirochete and the tick.

In the spring, tick eggs lying on the ground hatch, producing tick larvae. Each larva attaches to a small mammal, usually a mouse. Ticks attach firmly to the skin and feed on their host by sucking blood. The larval tick ingests *B. burgdorferi* from its mouse host and becomes infected: this infection does not sicken the tick. In the fall and winter, the larva drops off the mouse and becomes dormant, attaching itself to vegetation. The next spring, it molts and becomes a nymph-stage tick. The nymph attaches to a deer, mouse, or human host—its preferred host is the deer—and bites the host, transmitting Lyme disease. The tick develops to an adult form throughout the summer, living on the host. In this stage it mates. In the fall, it drops off its host and lays eggs in leaf litter on the ground (about 3,000 eggs per laying

WORDS TO KNOW

BABESIOSIS: An infection of the red blood cells caused by *Babesia microti*, a form of parasite (parasitic sporozoan).

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

GRANULOCYTE: Any cell containing granules (small, grain-like objects) is a granulocyte. The term is often used to refer to a type of white blood cell (leukocyte).

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

MENINGITIS: Meningitis is an inflammation of the meninges—the three layers of protective membranes that line the spinal cord and the brain. Meningitis can occur when there is an infection near the brain or spinal cord, such as a respiratory infection in the sinuses, the mastoids, or the cavities around the ear. Disease organisms can also travel to the meninges through the bloodstream. The first signs may be a severe headache and neck stiffness followed by fever, vomiting, a rash, and, then, convulsions leading to loss of consciousness. Meningitis generally involves two types: non-bacterial meningitis, which is often called aseptic meningitis, and bacterial meningitis, which is referred to as purulent meningitis.

NYMPH: In aquatic insects, the larval stage.

SPIROCHETE: A bacterium shaped like a spiral. Spiral-shaped bacteria, which live in contaminated water, sewage, soil, and decaying organic matter, as well as inside humans and animals.

SPOROZOAN: The fifth Phylum of the Protist Kingdom, known as Apicomplexa, comprises several species of obligate intracellular protozoan parasites classified as Sporozoa or Sporozoans, because they form reproductive cells known as spores. Many sporozoans are parasitic and pathogenic species, such as *Plasmodium falciparum, P. malariae, P. vivax, Toxoplasma gondii, Pneumocysts carinii, Cryptosporidum parvum* and *Cryptosporidum muris*, The Sporozoa reproduction cycle has both asexual and sexual phases. The asexual phase is termed schizogony (from the Greek, meaning generation through division), in which merozoites (daughter cells) are produced through multiple nuclear fissions. The sexual phase is known as sporogony (i.e., generation of spores) and is followed by gametogony or the production of sexually reproductive cells termed gamonts.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

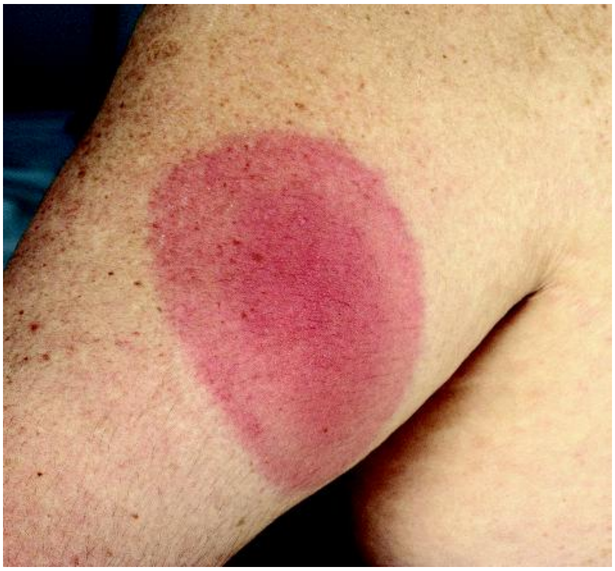
female), beginning a new two-year cycle. This is the basic ecology of Lyme disease in the northeastern and north-central United States.

In northern California and Oregon, a more complex vector ecology exists. A reservoir of *B. burgdorferi* is maintained in the wild by *Ixodes neotomaei* ticks (which do not bite humans) and the dusky-footed wood rat. A second type of tick, *Ixodes pacificus*, which usually feeds on lizards—which does not host *B. burgdorferi*—occasionally feeds on infected wood rats in its nymphal stage. Those few *Ixodes pacificus* ticks that feed on infected wood rats and then on humans can cause Lyme disease.

Once in a human host, *Borrelia burgdorferi* can cause three stages of disease. Stage 1 is the erythema migrans rash, which is centered on the site of the tick bite. There is disagreement over how common this rash is. Some experts say that less than 50% of Lyme disease patients experience it, while others say 80%. Stage 2 affects the nervous system, joints, and heart. Stage 3 is late or chronic infection.

Stage 1 (early Lyme disease). The characteristic Lyme rash is a red, inflamed patch of skin about 2 in (5 cm) or more wide. It sometimes takes on a bull's-eye form with a central clear space. The rash usually develops within 3–30 days (most often 7–14 days) of the detachment of the tick. A single spot is most common, but multiple spots may develop as the bacteria spread widely from the tick bite. Influenzalike symptoms are also common at this stage. Symptoms include joint pain, fatigue, neck pain, headache, and fever. Coughing, vomiting, and diarrhea do not happen, allowing this condition to be told apart from a real flu.

Stage 2 (early disseminated Lyme disease). Within 4–6 weeks, neurological and arthritic symptoms develop. About 15% of untreated patients develop neurological symptoms. Meningitis (inflammation of the meninges, the membranes that enclose the central nervous system)



A bull's eye rash (*Erythema migrans*) is an early symptom of Lyme disease. Ticks transport the acute inflammatory disease characterized by skin changes, joint inflammation, and flu-like symptoms. *Larry Mulvehill/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

may occur, with headache and neck stiffness, Bell's palsy (partial paralysis of facial muscles), blindness due to pressure on the optic nerve (especially in children), depression, anxiety, memory loss, and more. These neurological symptoms usually go away after some weeks or months; however, the infection may remain, and in up to 5% of untreated patients may become chronic. (These figures are disputed by some physicians, who argue that the chronic rate is higher in both treated and untreated patients.) About 5% of untreated patients also develop cardiac symptoms, including atrioventricular block and inflammation of the heart. Several months into the illness, most untreated patients (about 60%) develop arthritis—joint swelling and pain, especially in large joints such as the knee. These arthritic symptoms may become chronic in some patients. Arthritis may persist in the knees even years after antibiotic therapy. In Stage 2, other common symptoms include diarrhea, shortness of breath, rapid or irregular heartbeat, testicular pain, shaking hands, frequent need to urinate, and poor sense of balance. Exactly how *Borrelia burgdorferi* causes all these symptoms remains largely unknown.

Stage 3 (chronic or late Lyme disease). According to some physicians, 30–50% of treated and untreated Lyme patients develop a disorder with several symptoms that is hard to distinguish from fibromyalgia and chronic fatigue syndrome. Symptoms include fatigue, joint paint (arthralgia), muscle pain (myalgia), and other dysfunctions of the nervous system. It should be noted that the existence of a third-stage, chronic or late form, of Lyme disease has been controversial. Some researchers have maintained that Lyme disease is reliably eradicated by treatment with antibiotics and that cases of apparent chronic infection are actually psychiatric (mental) disorders. This controversy persists partly because laboratory tests for the presence of *B. burgdorferi* are unreliable, with many false negatives (tests showing no infection when there is infection).

One reason why Lyme disease may produce such varied symptoms is that the ticks that transmit it are also host to numerous other pathogens, and can serve as vectors for such disorders as babesiosis (infection of the red blood cells caused by the parasitic sporozoan *Babesia microti*) and human granulocytic ehrlichiosis (an infection of white blood cells caused a species of bacteria in the *Ehrlichia* genus). When more than one pathogen infects a person at a time, the result is called co-infection. Some researchers state that the majority of Lyme disease victims are probably co-infected with other organisms.

Even untreated, Lyme disease is rarely fatal.

Scope and Distribution

Lyme disease is a larger problem in the United States than elsewhere in the world, with about 15,000 new cases reported each year. However, most experts agree that the disease is greatly underreported and that the true number of new cases is probably more on the order of 100,000 per year. As of 2006, about 150,000 cases had been reported in the U.S. since 1976, the year after Lyme disease was officially recognized as a new disease.

There are 12 U.S. states in which Lyme disease is most commonly found: Connecticut, Delaware, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, Minnesota, New Jersey, New Hampshire, New York, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, and Wisconsin. Lyme disease is endemic (normally occurs), with incidences as high as 3%, in parts of these states. About 70% of persons who contract Lyme disease catch it from a tick picked up in their own backyard; most of the remaining 30% acquire ticks while hiking or walking in woods or fields away from home.

Treatment and Prevention

Lyme disease is treated primarily with antibiotics. Which antibiotics are used depends on disease stage, symptoms, and allergic reactions. If Lyme disease is diagnosed early—as often happens when a person visiting his physician displays a characteristic rash and or flulike symptoms and reports a tick bite—treatment is a 14- to 21-day course of oral (swallowed) antibiotics, most often doxycycline, clarithomycin, or amoxicillan. Treatment success at this stage is about 95% (although some researchers state that a much higher percentage of patients than 5% go on to develop a chronic form of the disease).

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

The Division of Vector Borne Infectious Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that to reduce risks of contracting Lyme Disease that you should:

- Avoid areas with a lot of ticks. Ticks prefer wooded and bushy areas with high grass.
- Take extra precautions when ticks that transmit Lyme disease are most active.
- If you do enter a tick area, walk in the center of the trail to avoid contact with overgrown grass, brush, and leaf litter.
- Keep ticks off your skin. Properly use insect repellent with 20% - 30% DEET on adult skin and clothing to prevent tick bite. Effective repellents are found in drug, grocery and discount stores. Permethrin is another type of repellent. It can be purchased at outdoor equipment stores that carry camping or hunting gear. Permethrin kills ticks on contact! One application to pants, socks, and shoes typically stays effective through several washings. Permethrin should not be applied directly to skin. For details on permethrin visit the National Pesticide Information Center.
- Wear long pants, long sleeves, and long socks to keep ticks off your skin. Light-colored clothing will help you spot ticks more easily. Tucking pant legs into socks or boots and tucking shirts into pants help keep ticks on the outside of clothing. If you'll be outside for an extended period of time, tape the area where your pants and socks meet to prevent ticks from crawling under your clothes.
- Check your skin and clothes for ticks every day!
- If a tick is attached to your skin for less than 24 hours, your chance of getting Lyme disease is extremely small. But just to be safe, monitor your health closely after a tick bite and be alert for any signs and symptoms of tick-borne illness.

SOURCE: *Division of Vector Borne Infectious Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Division of Vector Borne Infectious Diseases*

For Stage 2 (early disseminated) Lyme disease, the same agents are used but in large doses. In this case they are given intravenously (by needle, into a vein) rather than in pill form. If the heart is inflamed, penicillin G also may be used. Supportive medicines may be given for specific symptoms, such as pain relievers for arthritis symptoms and antidepressants for neurological symptoms, such as depression and anxiety.

Lyme disease is prevented by avoiding infected ticks. Particularly in spring, areas that are known to be infested with ticks should be avoided. Light-colored clothing makes it easier to spot ticks and remove them before they bite. Wearing long-sleeved shirts, tucking pants into socks, and applying insect repellents containing DEET (n,n,diethyl-m-toluamide) or treated with permethrin can decrease the chances of a tick bite. Promptly removing a tick that has attached is important, because *B. burgdorferi* usually does not infect the host until 36 hours after tick attachment. Ticks should be removed by gripping them right next to the skin with tweezers and pulling: the body of the tick should never be squeezed or irritated by heat or chemicals while the tick is attached, as this will drive its stomach contents into the skin and increase the chances of infection.

Many of the ticks acquired by people engaged in outdoor activity in the northeast United States, where 90% of all Lyme disease cases have been reported, are dog ticks (*Dermacentor variabilis*), which cannot transmit Lyme disease. The Lyme-transmitting deer tick *Ixodes scapularis* is notably smaller than a dog tick. Even if one is bitten by a tick, it is not necessary to seek treatment for Lyme disease unless flulike symptoms or the characteristic erythema migrans rash appear.

As of early 2007, no vaccine for Lyme disease was available.

Impacts and Issues

Lyme disease has become the most common vector-borne inflammatory disease in the United States thanks to changing human activities. In the nineteenth century, the central and northeastern United States were largely deforested and deer populations were eliminated or greatly reduced by hunting and habitat loss over large areas. After food production shifted elsewhere, these regions have largely reforested, and deer populations, along with the ticks that infest them, have rebounded. At the same time, greater numbers of human beings have been brought into contact with ticks by living in suburban developments and enjoying outdoor recreations such as hiking.

A 79 percent-effective vaccine for Lyme disease, LYMErix, was placed on the market in 1999. It was withdrawn in 2002, however, because of low sales. Low demand was caused by a combination of the vaccine's high cost ($50 per inoculation), its inconvenience (three shots were needed over a year), and fears that the vaccine might trigger permanent arthritis or neurological problems. Debate among experts over whether LYMErix was sufficiently safe remains fierce to this day. As of 2007, a European company was developing a vaccine that is intended to work for a wider range of *B. burgdorferi* species and to avoid the possible health dangers of the LYMErix vaccine.

Lyme disease is a notoriously contentious subject, dividing patient advocacy groups from many physicians. This is partially due to the fact that Lyme disease has no definitive, predictable course. Some infected persons show no symptoms; others show symptoms, are debilitated for a time, and are successfully treated; still others are left with permanent disabilities from the disease. Disagreements, often angry, persist on whether long-term Lyme infection exists, what its symptoms and proper treatment are (if any), and whether Lyme disease is diagnosed too much or too little. As Lyme disease is argued to be drastically under-reported—both Lyme disease patient groups and the CDC claim that the number of cases meeting CDC diagnostic criteria is about 10 times greater than the number actually counted in official figures—the total economic and personal impact of the disease is hard to estimate.

Finally, patient advocacy groups argue that Lyme disease research is greatly underfunded compared to that for other diseases such as West Nile virus, although there were eight times more reported Lyme disease cases than West Nile virus cases in 2005. This is with only the reported number, but since the CDC states that there may be 10 times more cases of Lyme disease each year that meet CDC diagnostic standards than are reported, the underfunding situation is much worse than it seems from official numbers. Advocates for greater attention to Lyme disease introduced Federal Lyme Bill HR 741, the Lyme & Tick-Borne Disease Prevention, Education & Research Act of 2007, which would allot $100 million over a five-year period for research, prevention, and other measures to combat Lyme disease. As of March, 2007, the House of Representatives had not voted on the bill.

PETS CAN CONTRACT LYME DISEASE, TOO

The tiny deer ticks that harbor Lyme disease bacteria can also transmit the disease to many pets, including dogs, horses, and occasionally, cats. Although a vaccine against Lyme exists for dogs, reducing the opportunity for ticks to bite an animal remains the front line of defense against Lyme disease in pets. Veterinarians recommend that pet owners:

- Walk dogs and ride horses on cleared trails.
- Use an approved anti-tick and flea product specific to dogs, cats, and horses.
- Groom horses daily, checking for ticks, especially near the head, throat area, belly, and under the tail.
- Remove brush and woodpiles from horse pastures.
- Mow lawns and pastures, keeping grass short.
- Examine dogs and cats regularly for ticks, especially pets that spend time both indoors and outdoors.
- Watch for symptoms of Lyme disease in pets, including fever, limping, loss of appetite, and fatigue in dogs and cats, and weight loss, swollen joints, muscle tenderness, and intermittent lameness in horses.

Primary Source Connection

Travel advisories are maintained by most developed countries in an effort to provide citizens with information about health and safety hazards while traveling abroad. In the United States, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) maintains a Traveler's Health website at <http://www.cdc.gov/travel/> that features vaccination recommendations and other health information for specific countries and destinations. In the newspaper article below, the author discusses recommendations, including Lyme disease prevention, made by foreign governments for its citizens traveling to the United States. It should be again noted that the LYMErix vaccine mentioned in the article is no longer available.

Travel Advisories: Wait 'Til You Hear What They Say about Us

You've checked the travel advisories, gotten a few vaccinations and stocked up on Imodium and antimalarials.

Now, you're off on that exotic vacation.

But what about travelers heading here, to the good old U.S.A.?

They get travel advisories, too. The advisories aim to keep U.S.-bound tourists, students and workers safe from our health hazards.

Most international health and travel organizations agree that travelers risk little in the United States by drinking the tap water or eating food bought from street vendors.

But they warn about West Nile encephalitis, an illness that is passed on to humans by infected mosquitoes, who in turn, are infected by birds. West Nile virus can cause flu-like symptoms and is especially worrisome for adults over 50, who are at a greater risk for developing serious complications.

"Use insect repellent accordingly" and "stay in during dusk and dawn hours," Great Britain's travel Web site advises.

Visitors from Japan, where U.S. beef is banned, worry about bovine spongiform encephalopathy, better-known as "mad cow disease." One Washington-state cow was found to have the brain-wasting disease in 2003.

"They are very afraid of mad cow disease in Japan," said Chigusa Suzuki, a Japanese editor and translator living in New York City. "But once they get to the United States, the fear disappears and they go to a steakhouse. They want the American experience and that includes having a steak."

Travelers to the United States also are warned about Lyme disease, which is passed on by ticks.

Many international travel Web sites recommend being watchful for tick bites or even considering a three-dose vaccine of LYMErix if tourists plan on spending a lot of time in U.S. forests.

The U.S. Centers for Disease Control, which advises U.S. travelers heading to foreign lands, reassures people coming here: "There are, of course, health risks, but in general, the precautions required are minimal," its Web site says.

But often, health dangers that are of little concern to people actually living in the United States seem most pressing for visitors from afar. For instance, while you might not worry about contracting rabies, the illness can be spotted on nearly every international health advisory Web site.

The United Kingdom's Department of Health Web site warns travelers to the United States to be especially wary of rabies and to "avoid being bitten by any animal."

That's good advice for any traveler, of course.

Maureen Mckinney

MCKINNEY, MAUREEN. "TRAVEL ADVISORIES: WAIT 'TIL YOU HEAR WHAT THEY SAY ABOUT US." *DAILY HERALD* (ARLINGTON HEIGHTS, IL) MARCH 21, 2005.

SEE ALSO *Arthropod-borne Disease; Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Mosquito-borne Disease; Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever; Vector-borne Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Edlow, Jonathan A. *Bull's Eye: Unraveling the Medical Mystery of Lyme Disease.* New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 2004.

Vanderhoof-Forschner, Karen. *Everything You Need to Know About Lyme Disease and Other Tick-Borne Disorders.* 2nd ed. New York: Wiley, 2003.

Periodicals

Donta, Sam. "Late and Chronic Lyme Disease: Symptom Overlap with Chronic Fatigue Syndrome and Fibromyalgia." *Medical Clinics of North America* 86 (2002): 341–349.

Hayes, Edward B., and Joseph Piesman. "How Can We Prevent Lyme Disease?" *New England Journal of Medicine* 348 (2003): 2424–2429.

Ramamoorthi, Nandhini, et al. "The Lyme Disease Agent Exploits a Tick Protein to Infect the Mammalian Host." *Nature* 436 (July 28, 2005): 573–577.

Steere, Allen C. "Lyme Disease." *New England Journal of Medicine* 345 (2001): 115–123.

Wormser, Gary P. "Early Lyme Disease." *New England Journal of Medicine* 354 (2006): 2794–2800.

Web Sites

American Lyme Disease Foundation. "Home Page." September 22, 2006. <http://www.aldf.com/> (accessed February 7, 2007).

Malaria

Introduction

Malaria is the leading cause of death worldwide from parasitic infection. According to the World Health Organization (WHO) there are more than 500 million cases of malaria each year in tropical and subtropical regions of the world, and one to two million deaths, most of which occur in sub-Saharan Africa, with children being disproportionately affected.

The name "malaria" means "bad air" which used to be thought the cause of the disease. However, in the nineteenth century, it was established that malaria is caused by *Plasmodia* which are single-celled parasites that are carried by mosquitoes belonging to the *Anopheles* genus. Four species of *Plasmodia* are involved in malaria: *P. falciparum*, *P. vivax*, *P. ovale* and *P. malariae*. Malaria caused by *P. falciparum* is by far the most serious and the cause of most fatalities. There are several drugs that can be used for both the treatment and prevention of malaria. However, parasites have evolved resistance to one of the main ones, chloroquine, in certain areas.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

What historical accounts of war call "marsh fever," "intermittent fever," or "remittent fever," match current descriptions of malaria. One of the earliest recorded casualties of malaria may have been the great military campaigner of ancient Greece, Alexander the Great, who died of a fever in 323 BC. Malaria and dysentery also caused much sickness during the Crusades (1095–c.1300). It was also a major cause of disease among European armies on campaigns in tropical regions up to the 1820s, when quinine—extracted from cinchona bark—was found to be useful in both treating and preventing the disease.

However, quinine proved to be only a partial solution to malaria among the military, for it continued to be a problem during World War I (1914–1918) in Macedonia, Mesopotamia, and East Africa. In 1918, around 90% of British and French troops in Macedonia contracted malaria despite the use of quinine. In the World War II

Women are shown treating mosquito nets with insecticides at an overcrowded medical clinic in Senegal in 2004. The insecticides will help prevent malaria, which kills more than one million children in the world each year, especially in Africa south of the Sahara desert. *© Nic Bothma/epa/Corbis.*

A health worker sprays down a tent to prevent malaria from breaking out in a refugee camp in Banda Aceh, Indonesia, one month after the earthquake and tsunami of December 2004. *Charles Pertwee/Getty Images.*

(1939–1945), quinine supplies were limited, and military commanders had lost their faith in it, so the Allies turned to the synthetic drug mepacrine instead. This was shown to have a dramatic effect in reducing the rate of malaria among Australian troops in New Guinea and among Allied troops in Burma. The insecticide DDT was introduced in 1944 and this was sprayed from the air to protect troops operating in marshy malarious areas of Burma and Italy.

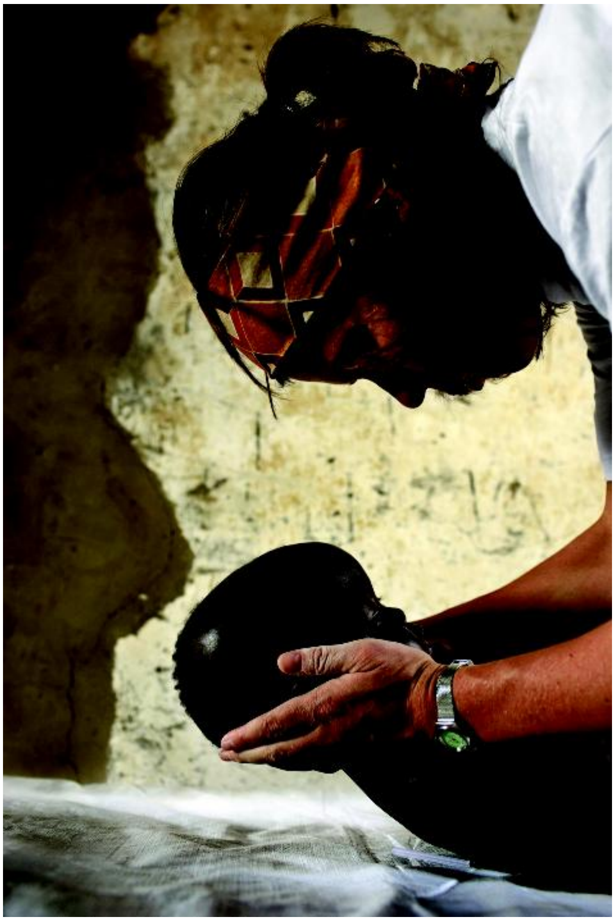
The malaria parasite enters the body through the bite of an infected female *Anopheles* mosquito and travels through the blood to the liver, then back to the blood, undergoing a complex life cycle as it does so. The incubation time of malaria is typically between seven and 30 days. Symptoms occur within a month in 75% of cases, and within two months in 90% of cases. For travelers returning from areas where malaria is endemic, symptoms may, therefore, not start until well after their return home. Sometimes persons are infected with two or more species of *Plasmodium*.

The specific pattern of symptoms experienced in a bout of malaria depends upon which of the four species of Plasmodium is responsible for the disease. High fever with chills, headache, aching limbs, nausea, and diarrhea are common symptoms, however. Often the patient will experience a cycle of shivering and chills followed by flushing, fever, and profuse sweating. This bout of symptoms tends to spike (peak or temporarily worsen) every day or so, and is related to the parasites bursting out of the red blood cells they have infected.

In acute malaria, there may be swollen liver, pallor (paleness), jaundice (yellowing of the skin and eyes), anemia (reduced ability of blood to transport oxygen), and respiratory distress. Complications are most common among children, pregnant women and travelers and are usually caused by *P. falciparum* malaria. Cerebral malaria is the most serious complication of malaria and accounts for 80% of all fatalities from the disease. Around 0.5–1% of *P. falciparum* malaria cases lead to cerebral malaria. The other *Plasmodium* species do not cause cerebral malaria. The symptoms of cerebral malaria include seizures, stupor and coma. The death rate is between 20 and 50%. However, a full recovery without morbidity (disease or disability) is common among many survivors.

Other complications of *P. falciparum* malaria include a swollen spleen, kidney failure, and low blood sugar—the latter occurring because the parasites consume glucose 75 times faster than the red blood cell and therefore deplete its supplies. Death from a ruptured spleen has been reported in *P. ovale* malaria.

The risk of relapse depends upon the type of malaria the patient has. *P. falciparum* malaria, although responsible for most fatalities, does not actually lead to long-term relapse although survivors may suffer flare-ups over the year after the first attack. *P. vivax* causes a relapsing form of the disease, lasting up to five years, because of dormant parasites residing in the liver, as does *P. ovale*, although the latter is far less common. *P. malariae* may produce a low-grade chronic infection characterized by bouts of fever, lasting up to 50 years, although it too is uncommon.



A doctor cradles the head of a one-year-old who is suffering from malaria at the Médecins sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders) hospital at a camp for the internally displaced in Uganda, June 2005. *AP Images/James Stanmeyer/VII.*

The process by which *Plasmodia* parasites are transmitted begins with the bite of the infected female *Anopheles* mosquito, in order to take a blood meal from the host. The infectious sporozoite form of the parasite is injected into the skin through the mosquito's salivary glands, and travels through the bloodstream to the liver. They then reproduce asexually within liver cells. This process takes one to two weeks, and during this period, the patient will not have any symptoms.

The infected liver cells rupture, releasing parasite forms called merozoites which enter red blood cells, maturing and multiplying. This process takes about 48 hours and then these parasites rupture the red blood cell, releasing more merozoites, which go on to infect further red blood cells. The release of the merozoites causes inflammation and a release of toxins, which causes a spike of fever. This stage can cause a massive increase in the number of parasites, particularly in *P. falciparum* because this species infects all types of red blood cells. It is possible for more than 1% of all the red blood cells in the body to contain *P. falciparum* parasites.

In a further twist to this complex life cycle, some *Plasmodium* merozoites develop within the red blood cells into sexual forms, known as gametocytes. If another mosquito bites, she may take up these parasites in the blood meal and they can mate sexually inside the mosquito to form more sporozoites, ready to complete the cycle from the beginning with the next bite of the same, or another, host.

P. vivax and *P. ovale* have a hepatic form which lies dormant for several weeks, giving rise to relapse symptoms when they are released into the blood. *P. malariae* may be transmitted from person-to-person through blood and organ donations from people who are already infected with the parasite, even though they may not have symptoms. Each stage in the life cycle of each species of *Plasmodium* has a specific morphology, which allows for accurate diagnosis in expert hands.

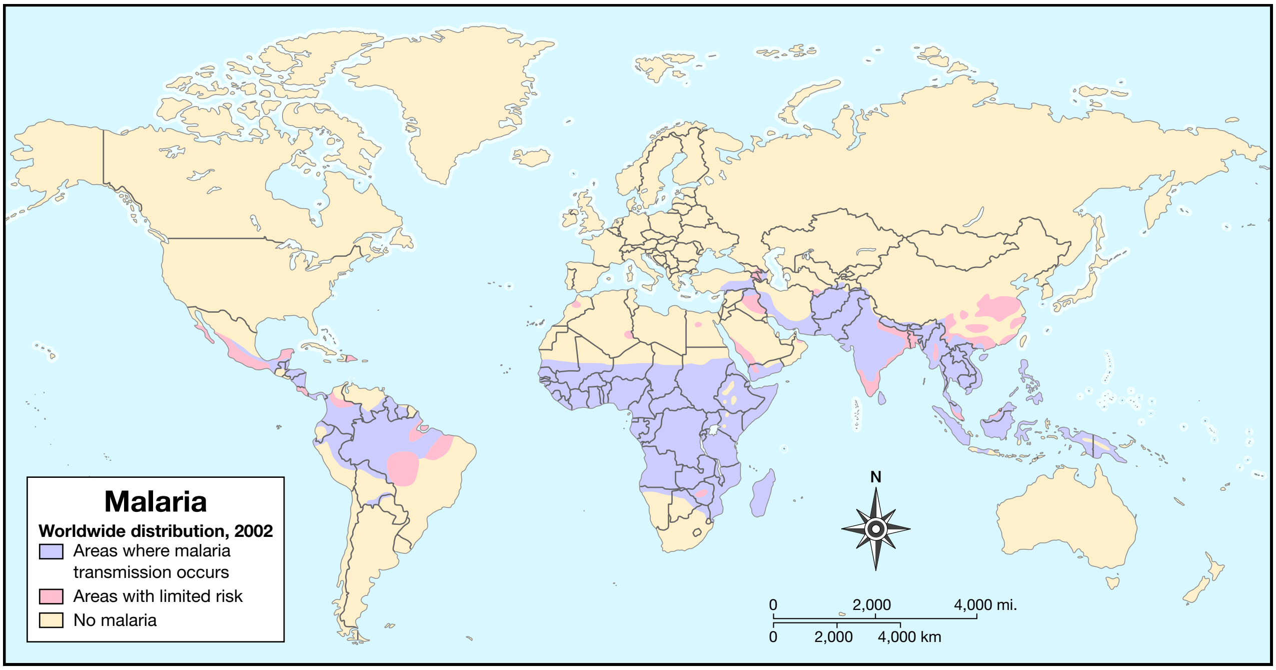
■ Scope and Distribution

There are around 500 million symptomatic cases of malaria every year around the world. Most of the one to two million deaths occur in Africa and at least half of these occur among children. In the United Kingdom and the United States, there are 1,000 to 2,000 cases of malaria each year, and around ten deaths, mainly occurring in travelers returning from endemic areas, leading to around ten deaths. Around 80% of those affected have returned from traveling in Africa.

Malaria is endemic in tropical and subtropical regions, including sub-Saharan Africa, South East Asia, Papua New Guinea, the Pacific States, Haiti and parts of South America. The parasites require a temperature of at least 68°F (20°C) to complete their lifecycles. Besides temperature, humidity and rainfall are factors affecting the transmission of malaria. The disease is endemic in more than 100 countries and territories, with more than 40% of the world's population being at risk.

Malaria has been known for more than 4,000 years and the disease used to be even more widespread than it is today, for endemic malaria has been eliminated from the United States, Europe, Puerto Rico, Chile, Israel, Lebanon, Taiwan, Singapore, most of the Caribbean, and North Korea. Some Pacific islands do not have malaria, despite favorable climatic factors, because *Anopheles* mosquitoes do not live there. However, despite elimination from some countries, there has been a resurgence in others, such as Sri Lanka.

The four *Plasmodium* parasites have differing geographical distributions. *P. falciparum* has the widest spread, and is found in Central and South America, Haiti, the Dominican Republic, sub-Saharan Africa, India, Pakistan and South East Asia. *P. vivax* occurs in sub-Saharan Africa, Central and South America and Asia. *P. ovale* occurs in sub-Saharan Africa, South East Asia and Papua New Guinea. *P. malariae* is found only in sub-Saharan Africa. There are



Map depicting worldwide malaria distribution in 2005. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

430 species in the *Anopheles* genus and only 30 to 50 transmit malaria. Some prefer to bite non-human animals, other are active inside rather than outside—therefore, risk of contracting malaria depends very much on the nature of the local mosquito population.

Returning travelers are especially at risk of malaria, as are pregnant women. Malaria should always be suspected if someone develops fevers and chills up to one year after return from a malarious area. Malaria in a pregnant woman can cause fetal death or low birth weight. The disease can also be passed on during childbirth, and will cause severe anemia in the newborn.

Malaria has often accompanied military campaigns throughout the course of human history because the disease is encouraged by the conditions of war. The movement of troops or refugees leads to the spread of many kinds of parasites, including *Plasmodia*, and those without immunity are at risk when they travel to areas where the disease is endemic. Moreover, war may damage drainage and irrigation systems, which encourages the breeding of mosquitoes.

Treatment and Prevention

There are several drugs which can be used for the treatment and prevention of malaria. These include chloroquine, mefloquine, pyrimethamine, proguanil, primaquine, and artemisinin. The latter is the most recent drug introduced and it comes from the Chinese herbal remedy qinghaosu. Drug resistance has begun to emerge in some areas, with chloroquine resistant *P. falciparum* being a problem in Africa and elsewhere, and chloroquine resistant *P. vivax* in South East Asia. The WHO recommends the use of artemesinin in combination with another anti-malarial drug as first-line treatment for malaria, but the choice depends upon the *Plasmodium* species involved and the extent of drug resistance in the area where the disease was contracted.

Patients with malaria need close medical attention as well as medication. Often this means supervision in the high dependency or intensive care unit. It is especially important that fluid balance and glucose levels are maintained.

Prevention of malaria involves taking prophylactic medication before, during and after travel to malarious areas. The highest risk is a trip to an area where there is chloroquine-resistant *P. falciparum* where mefloquine, doxycycline or Malarone (a combination of atovaquone-proguanil) is often prescribed for malaria prophylaxis (prevention). Would-be travelers should take advice from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) or their national equivalent on the specific protection they need. Pregnant women, in particular, need prophylaxis. Only chloroquine and proguanil are recommended for use during pregnancy, therefore travel to chloroquine-resistant areas should be avoided.

The other key to prevention is avoiding the bite of the *Anopheles* mosquito. This can be challenging, as it is smaller and less conspicuous than some other mosquito species, and a bite could go unnoticed. *Anopheles* bite primarily between dusk and dawn. Wearing clothes of thick woven material, like cotton, that cover most of the body and sleeping under bed nets impregnated with permethrin insecticide are helpful, along with the use of an insect repellent containing DEET (diethylmethyltoluamide) on exposed areas of skin. Malaria sometimes occurs despite preventive measures, including medication, so those who at risk should still be on the lookout for telltale symptoms like fever.

Impacts and Issues

An effective vaccine would be an enormous advance in the global fight against malaria. For 20 years, various agencies of the United Nations, the World Bank and other non-governmental organizations have been searching for a vaccine as a top priority in their tropical disease research programs. Success has, unfortunately, proved elusive. It is hard to grow the malaria parasites in culture, which means the experiments that would help develop a vaccine cannot readily be carried out. The complex lifecycle of the parasites, which are constantly evolving, is also a huge challenge to vaccine researchers. Some people in endemic areas seem to have a natural immunity to malaria. Understanding the biochemical basis of this might open up a route to a vaccine but, so far, this has proved difficult.

Each death from malaria is a tragedy—whether it occurs in a returning traveler to the United States or in a child in Africa. There have been many needless deaths because of wrong or delayed diagnosis. Many doctors in the West are unfamiliar with malaria and may not realize that gastrointestinal symptoms are often prominent in the disease; fever may not be the only symptom. Returning travelers may assume that if they have taken prophylactic medication, then protection is assured. Symptoms setting in several weeks or even months after return from a malarious area may wrongly be assumed to be severe influenza.

The correct diagnosis of malaria depends upon identifying the parasites in a blood smear treated with Giemsa stain. Both thin and thick smears are usually examined. The thin smear preserves the morphology of the parasites so that the species involved can be identified. The thick smear contains more parasites and allows for more rapid diagnosis. Levels of parasites in the blood fall between bouts of fever and the smear may appear negative, even if the person has the disease. Three negative smears, taken at intervals, are required to definitely exclude the disease.

Malaria continues to be a global health problem. The disease has re-emerged in places where it was assumed the disease has been eradicated. For instance, Sri Lanka and India were virtually free of malaria at the end of the 1970s, but from the 1980s, the number of cases began to increase, reaching levels not seen since before World War II by the 1990s. Resistance of the parasites to anti-malarial drugs, and resistance of *Anopheles* mosquitoes to insecticides are the major factors in the resurgence of the disease. Moreover, increased movements by travelers and migrants on a global scale are likely to add to the risk of re-introducing the malaria to countries where it had previously been eradicated.

WORDS TO KNOW

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

GAMETOCYTE: A germ cell with the ability to divide for the purpose of producing gametes, either male gametes called spermatocytes or female ones called oocytes.

MEROZOITE: The motile, infective stage of malaria, responsible for disease symptoms.

MORBIDITY: The term “morbidity” comes from the Latin word “morbus,” which means sick. In medicine it refers not just to the state of being ill, but also to the severity of the illness. A serious disease is said to have a high morbidity.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host’s body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host’s body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

PROPHYLAXIS: Treatment to prevent the onset or recurrence of disease.

RE-EMERGENT DISEASE: A disease that has disappeared for a period of time, only to reappear at a later time.

SPOROZOITE: Developmental stage of the malaria protozoan during which it is transferred from mosquito to human host.

IN CONTEXT: CHILDREN UNDER-5 WITH FEVER WHO RECEIVED TREATMENT WITH ANY ANTIMALARIAL

The list below shows the estimated percentage of children under five years of age with fever who received treatment with any antimalarial medication as reported in February 2007 by the World Health Organization. Not all [malaria endemic] countries reported data. The year of report is indicated in parenthesis

- Indonesia: 0.7 % (2002–03)
- Azerbaijan: 0.8 % (2000)
- Nicaragua: 1.8 % (2001)
- Guyana: 2.6 % (2000)
- Ethiopia: 3 % (2000)
- Eritrea: 3.6 % (2002)
- Haiti: 11.7 % (2000)
- Rwanda: 12.6 % (2000)
- Namibia: 14.4 % (2000)
- Somalia: 18.5 % (1999)
- Swaziland: 25.5 % (2000)
- Kenya: 26.5 % (2003)
- Burundi: 31.3 % (2000)
- Malawi: 31.6 % (2004)
- Mauritania: 33.4 % (2003-04)
- Nigeria: 33.8 % (2003)
- Senegal: 36.2 % (2000)
- Mali: 37.6 % (2003)
- Madagascar: 41.1 % (2004)
- Democratic Republic of the Congo: 45.4 % (2001)
- Timor-Leste: 47.4 % (2002)
- Niger: 48.1 % (2000)
- Equatorial Guinea: 48.6 % (2000)
- Burkina Faso: 49.6 % (2003)

SOURCE: *World Health Organization,World malaria report 2005. Geneva, World Health Organization and United Nations Children's Fund, 2005.*

The Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation supports mosquito-borne disease research and prevention efforts worldwide, including the development of effective and affordable drugs, improvement of existing preventative measures, and vaccine development. In 2005, The Gates Foundation announced three grants totaling $258.3 million for continued research and development of anti-malarial drugs, vaccines, and insecticide-based mosquito control methods. On the eve of the first White House Malaria Summit, the Gates Foundation announced another large grant of $83.5 million to expand access to bednets and treatment in malaria prone regions.

As most scientists agree that the Earth's temperature is rising, it is likely that more areas of the world will become habitats for the *Anopheles* mosquito and its parasites. Therefore, the search for a vaccine and new anti-malarial drugs has never been more urgent.

■ Primary Source Connection

Use of the insecticide DDT in the decades after World War II helped to greatly reduce the incidence of malaria throughout many countries of the world. By the 1970s, agricultural use of DDT was linked to thinning bird egg-shells, and after the populations of many birds plummeted, DDT use was banned in most developed countries by the 1985. A large drop in DDT use in developing countries followed, and by the 1990s, malaria made a resurgence.

In the following speech delivered to the National Press Club in Washington, D.C., in September 2006, Arata Kochi called for the renewed use of DDT in Africa, especially indoors in shelters made of mud and thatch, where it could function as both insect repellent and insecticide. Kochi, a Japanese physician, is the director of the malaria department for the World Health Organization. As of 2007, Kochi's plan of targeted DDT use indoors is being carried out in several sub-Saharan African nations including Zambia, South Africa, Angola, Uganda, Tanzania, and Mozambique.

WHO Malaria Head to Environmentalists: "Help Save African Babies as You Are Helping to Save the Environment."

I am here today with one urgent message to everyone who cares about the environment. Your concern, your activism, your heroics have helped—and continue to help—protect the earth's wildlife and nature.

I am here today to ask you, please: Help save African babies as you are helping to save the environment.

African babies do not have a powerful movement like the environmental movement to champion their well-being. They need your help.

Nearly one year ago, I was asked to take charge of the World Health Organization's Global Malaria Programme. I knew the job would be a challenge. Little progress was being made in controlling malaria, even though WHO had declared—way back in 1998—that rolling back malaria would be one of its greatest priorities.

I asked my staff; I asked malaria experts around the world: "Are we using every possible weapon to fight this disease?" It became apparent that we were not. One powerful weapon against malaria was not being deployed. In a battle to save the lives of nearly one million children ever year—most of them in Africa—the world was reluctant to spray the inside of houses and huts with insecticides; especially with a highly effective insecticide known as *dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane*, or "DDT."

Even though indoor spraying with DDT and other insecticides had been remarkably effective in preventing malaria sickness and death where used, this strategy seemed to have been abandoned by most countries nearly 30 years ago. By the early 1980s, WHO was no longer actively promoting it.

Some people told me that there was a good reason why its wide scale use had been phased out. I was told the practice was unsafe for humans, birds, fish, and wildlife; that the use of DDT in the United States in the 1950s had led to the near extinction of the bald eagle. I was told that indoor spraying with DDT was "politically unpopular."

But I believe that public health policies must be based on the science and the data, not on conventional wisdom or politics. As we examined the issue, we found that the scientific and programmatic evidence told a different story: We found that:

- One of the best tools we have against malaria is indoor residual house spraying, as it has proven to be just as cost effective as other malaria prevention measures.
- Of the dozen insecticides WHO has approved as safe for house spraying, the most effective is DDT.
- DDT presents no health risk when used properly indoors. Well-managed indoor spraying programmes using DDT pose no harm to wildlife or to humans.

That is why today, after this reevaluation, the World Health Organization is announcing that indoor residual spraying with DDT and other insecticides will again play a major role in its efforts to fight the disease.

WHO is now recommending the use of indoor spraying not only in epidemic areas, but also in areas with constant and high malaria transmission, including throughout Africa.

WHO is calling on all malaria control programmes around the world to develop and issue a clear statement outlining their position on indoor spraying with long lasting insecticides such as DDT, specifying where and how it will be implemented in accordance with WHO guidelines, and how these progammes will provide all possible support to accelerate and manage this intervention effectively.

WHO *will* use every possible and safe method to control malaria.

Help save African babies as you are helping to save the environment. Help us advocate for careful limited use of indoor spraying. Help us set up the appropriate and proper management systems so that DDT is used effectively. And finally, help us raise the necessary funds to research and develop even more effective and affordable interventions.

Arata Kochi

KOCHI, ARATA. "WHO MALARIA HEAD TO ENVIRONMENTALISTS: HELP SAVE AFRICAN BABIES AS YOU ARE HELPING TO SAVE THE ENVIRONMENT." WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION PRESS STATEMENT. SEPTEMBER 15, 2006.

Primary Source Connection

Malaria is an ancient killer. For thousands of years, no one knew exactly what caused malaria and, therefore, no one could stop it. In 1880, Charles-Louis-Alphonse Laveran, a French military physician serving in Algeria, identified the plasmodium parasite in the blood of a sick artilleryman. Seventeen years later in India, Captain Ronald Ross extracted a plasmodium cyst from a dissected female *Anopheles* mosquito and identified malaria as an insect-borne parasitic disease.

Sir Ronald Ross (1857–1932) studied medicine in London before joining the Indian Medical Service in 1881. Throughout his career he focused with a single-minded intensity on the prevention of malaria, and in 1897 discovered the species of mosquito that spreads the disease. His work won him a Nobel Prize in 1902. Ross spent the remainder of his life conducting studies in the malarial centers of the world, and forming organizations to combat malaria. He directed the Ross Institute and Hospital for Tropical Diseases, established in his honor in 1926, until his death in 1932. In addition to his medical work, Ross was an acclaimed poet, and wrote the following poem shortly after discovering how malaria was transmitted.

This Day Relenting God

This day relenting God
Hath placed within my hand
A wondrous thing; and God
Be praised. At his command,

Seeking his secret deeds
With tears and toiling breath,
I find thy cunning seeds,
O million-murdering Death.

I know this little thing
A myriad men will save,
O Death, where is thy sting?
Thy victory, O Grave?

Ronald Ross

ROSS, RONALD. "THIS DAY RELENTING GOD." IN *MEMOIRS WITH A FULL ACCOUNT OF THE GREAT MALARIA PROBLEM AND ITS SOLUTION* LONDON: JOHN MURRAY, 1923.

See Also *Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Travel and Infectious Disease; Tropical Infectious Diseases; Vector-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Lock, Stephen, John Last, and Georg Dunea. *The Oxford Illustrated Companion to Medicine.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001.

Tan, James. *Expert Guide to Infectious Diseases.* Philadephia: American College of Physicians, 2002.

Wilson, Walter, and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Malaria." <http://www.cdc.gov/malaria> (accessed May 9, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Malaria." May 2007 <http://www.who.int/topics/malaria/en> (accessed May 9, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Marburg Hemorrhagic Fever

Introduction

Marburg hemorrhagic fever is one of a group of severe infections known as hemorrhagic fevers. The term hemorrhagic denotes the ability of these viral diseases to cause massive bleeding (hemorrhaging).

Marburg hemorrhagic fever is caused by a type of virus called a filovirus. The virus contains ribonucleic acid (RNA) as the genetic material. It was the discovery of the agent of Marburg hemorrhagic fever that led to the creation of the filovirus viral group. Other filoviruses identified so far include the four strains (types) of Ebola virus.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Both Marburg fever and Marburg virus were discovered in 1967. At that time, outbreaks of the fever occurred in three laboratories where scientists were studying the virus. One of these labs was located in the German city of Marburg, from which the name of both the disease and the virus was taken.

Over 30 people became ill during this initial outbreak. The source of the virus was found to be African green monkey tissues that had been imported to the lab from Uganda as part of an effort to develop a polio

World Health Organization officials examine the home of a suspected Marburg virus victim in the northern Angolan town of Uige in April 2005. More than 200 people died from the disease during the outbreak, with children under the age of five being particularly vulnerable. *© Mike Hutchings/Reuters/Corbis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

FILOVIRUS: A filovirus is any RNA virus belong to the family *Filoviridae*. Filoviruses infect primates; Marburg virus and Ebola virus are filoviruses

HEMORRHAGIC FEVER: A hemorrhagic fever is caused by viral infection and features a high fever and a high volume of (copious) bleeding. The bleeding is caused by the formation of tiny blood clots throughout the bloodstream. These blood clots—also called microthrombi—deplete platelets and fibrinogen in the bloodstream. When bleeding begins, the factors needed for the clotting of the blood are scarce. Thus, uncontrolled bleeding (hemorrhage) ensues.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

vaccine. Victims included not only laboratory staff who were directly exposed to the virus, but also family members and caregivers who contracted the illness from a staff member with the disease. This pattern of transmission helped to establish the contagious nature of the virus.

The next reported case occurred in 1975, and it was determined to have been acquired in Zimbabwe. Another case was reported in 1980, this time in western Kenya. Cases reported in 1987 and 1998 also originated in other African countries.

The exact mechanism of transmission of the virus to humans is unknown. However, it is known that person-to-person transmission is possible, probably via contaminated blood or other body fluids. Other methods of transmission include handling medical equipment or touching surfaces that are contaminated with fluids infected with the virus.

Symptoms appear suddenly 5–10 days after infection. Presumably during this incubation period the virus is commandeering host cell replication machinery so that deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) can be synthesized from the viral RNA, with that DNA then being used to produce the necessary components for new virus.

The symptoms of Marburg hemorrhagic fever include fever, chills, and headache. Initial symptoms may be mistaken for influenza. Approximately five days later, a rash appears mainly on the chest, stomach, and back. Nausea with vomiting, chest and abdominal pain, and diarrhea can develop. Subsequently, more severe symptoms may appear, including liver dysfunction with jaundice, pancreas inflammation, rapid weight loss, liver failure, and hemorraging. At this stage, organ failure often leads to a rapid death.

In the small number of cases known so far, the mortality rate is approximately 25%. Those who recover can display a number of recurring diseases, such as hepatitis.

Scope and Distribution

Marburg hemorrhagic fever is endemic (naturally occurring) in Africa. So far, it has not been discovered to be indigenous to any other continent. As of 2007, the full distribution of the virus in Africa is still unclear, but seems to include western Kenya, Uganda, and possibly Zimbabwe. The only way to determine distribution presently is to wait for the appearance of an outbreak of the disease.

Primates are a suspected natural reservoir of the infection, since the 1967 German outbreak involved African monkeys. However, this assumption has not been proven. This situation is similar to that of the other known filovirus, the Ebola virus. The sporadic and devastating nature of past Ebola and Marburg hemorrhagic fever outbreaks have limited scientists' ability to study the virus and determine its natural reservoir and potential hosts.

Treatment and Prevention

As of 2007, there is no cure or specific treatment for Marburg hemorrhagic fever. Rather, combating the infection involves standard precautions by attending physicians and other caregivers, such as handwashing and changing surgical garb before examining or tending to another patient. In addition, precautions to prevent the spread of the virus include wearing protective gowns, caps, foot covers, and masks equipped with face shields to guard against a spill or spray of blood. Treatment so far has been a catch-up effort designed to try and keep a patient stabilized and, in the worse cases, alive by the maintenance of blood pressure, fluid levels, and the proper concentrations of electrolytes. Also, ensuring that the blood remains capable of clotting can help reduce the loss of blood during hemorrhaging.

Even diagnosing the disease is challenging. In its early stages, the disease displays symptoms that are

A woman brings her child to the hospital for testing following an outbreak of the deadly Marburg virus in Luanda, Uganda, in April 2005. Medical experts worked around the clock during the outbreak to check for suspected cases of the disease. *Florence Panoussian/AFP/Getty Images.*

similar to influenza, malaria, and typhoid fever. In addition, once symptoms appear the disease can swiftly worsen.

The presence of the viral genetic material can be detected using a number of molecular techniques. This can confirm the presence of the virus just a few days after infection. However, because there have been so few cases to date and since Marburg hemorrhagic fever is not a disease that is easily studied in the laboratory, the diagnostic significance of these molecular advances is unclear.

Impacts and Issues

Outbreaks of Marburg hemorrhagic fever are sporadic. This limits the number of people who are affected by the disease. However, this does not diminish the severity of the illness. The rapid onset of the disease and its high death rate can cause panic in communities that are affected.

Despite the rarity of Marburg hemorrhagic fever, outbreaks can occur. A recent example is the outbreak that occurred in 2005 in Uige, Angola, in which at least 270 people became ill. The death rate exceeded 90%. Another large outbreak occurred from 1998–2000 in the Democratic Republic of the Congo, in which 154 people became ill and 128 died.

Investigations of the 2005 Angolan outbreak determined that one cause was the unsafe use of needles to deliver injections in homes, medical clinics, and a pediatric ward. Re-use of the needles, which were intended to be used once and disposed of, facilitated in the spread of the virus. In the aftermath of the outbreak, the World Health Organization (WHO) instituted a safe injection campaign, which has helped reduce the re-use of contaminated needles in the region.

In both outbreaks, the isolated nature of the regions that were affected contributed to the spread of the disease. Medical care was rudimentary and clinics were not always adequately supplied to cope with the infection. Cultural practices, such as the open viewing and touching of the deceased prior to burial, also likely contributed to the spread of the virus. The WHO is working to increase awareness of the disease, especially in rural regions of countries such as Angola. With an increased understanding of the disease and its spread, it is hoped that alterations in behavior and cultural practices may help reduce the potential for future outbreaks.

Perhaps the greatest impact the disease has had is as an example of how diseases may be spreading from their natural, nonhuman hosts to humans. Identification of the natural host of a disease and the regions in which the natural host exists in greater numbers is vital if the disease is to be eradicated. In the case of Marburg hemorrhagic fever, the natural host is thought to be a primate.

Avoiding contact with primates in the wild (including their use as food) reduces the risk of contracting the disease.

The study of Marburg hemorrhagic fever requires a high containment facility called a biosafety type-4 lab, where air flow into and out of laboratories is controlled and stringent precautions regarding the wearing of protective clothing and decontamination following work with the virus are enforced. These steps help ensure that the virus does not escape from the lab and that researchers are protected from infection. Efforts to educate the medical community about Marburg symptomology are also important, since the virus can quickly infect health care workers and has the potential for rapid spread into the community. This potential for rapid person-to-person spread combined with the ferocity of the disease has heightened concerns that the Marburg virus could be used as an agent of bioterrorism.

See Also *Ebola; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Hemorrhagic Fevers.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Drexler, Madeline. *Secret Agents: The Menace of Emerging Infections.* New York: Penguin, 2003.

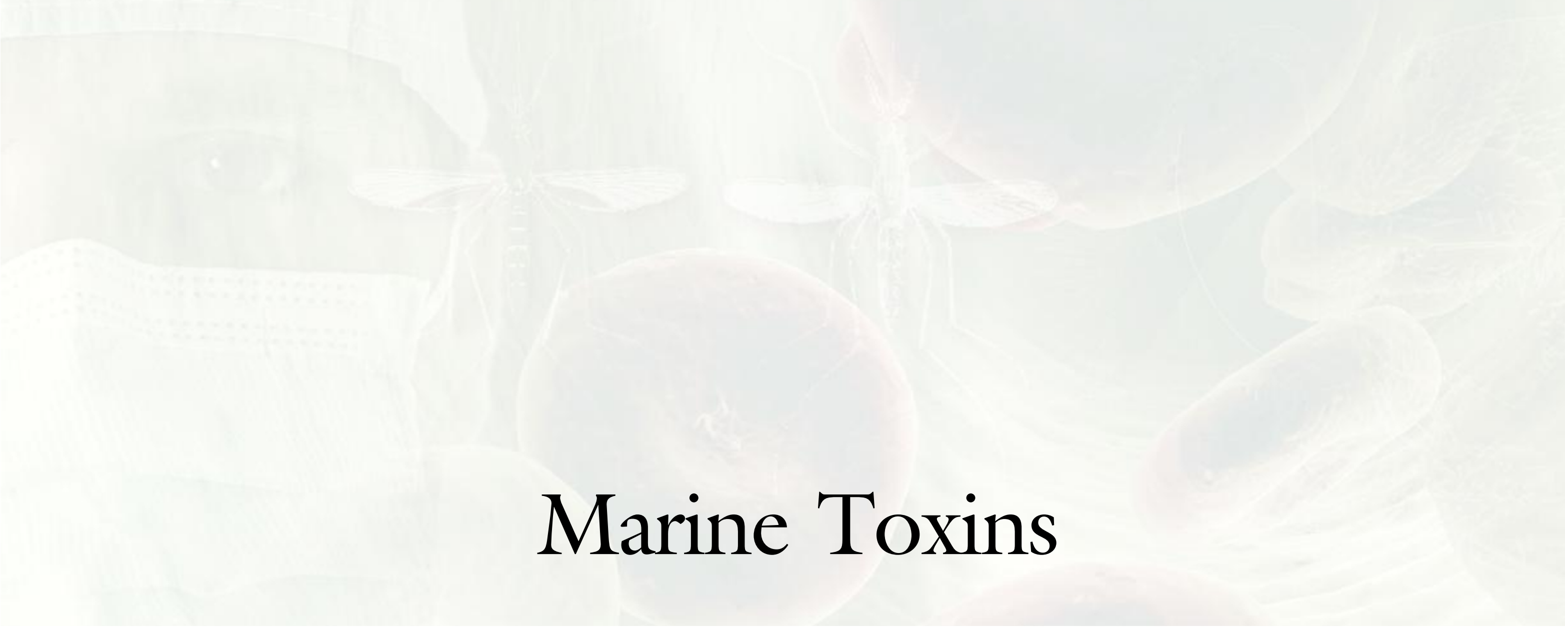
Powell, Michael, and Oliver Fischer. *101 Diseases You Don't Want to Get.* New York: Thunder's Mouth Press, 2005.

Zimmerman, Barry E., and David J. Zimmerman. *Killer Germs.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 2002.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Marburg Hemorrhagic Fever." March 3, 2006. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/spb/mnpages/dispages/marburg.htm> (accessed May 7, 2007).

Brian Hoyle



Marine Toxins

Introduction

Marine toxins are naturally occurring compounds that can contaminate some types of seafood. The seafood may not show any signs of contamination, but, if eaten, it can cause various human illnesses.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Marine toxins have probably existed for thousands of years. Biblical accounts of illnesses match the symptoms of paralytic shellfish poisoning, and the Red Sea may have been named "red" because of the frequent explosive growth of certain algae. Accounts of the consequences of marine toxins date back centuries. For example, a June 17, 1793, entry in a diary kept by the ship's surgeon during Captain George Vancouver's expedition off the West Coast of North America describes the death of a shipmate that is consistent with the effects of eating contaminated mussels.

In the coastal regions of the United States, the illnesses most frequently caused by marine toxins, from most common to least common, are scombrotoxic fish poisoning, ciguatera poisoning, paralytic shellfish poisoning, neurotoxic shellfish poisoning, and amnesic shellfish poisoning.

Scombrotoxic fish poisoning is a bacterial illness caused by the degradation of fish (mainly tuna and bonito). The bacteria degrade fish proteins, and a by-product of the protein decomposition is a group of compounds called histamines. When the spoiled fish is eaten, the high histamine level causes poisoning. Symptoms may begin only a few minutes after eating the seafood or several hours later. The symptoms include the development of a rash, flushing of the skin, sweating, and headache. As the body tries to expel the poison, abdominal pain, vomiting, and diarrhea also can occur. Some people also experience a burning or metallic sensation in the mouth.

The symptoms of scombrotoxic fish poisoning are temporary, and tend to fade after a few hours. Usually no treatment is necessary, although some people do benefit from drugs called antihistamines that counteract the effects produced by the excess histamines, as well as from a drug called epinephrine. Symptoms can be more severe in those who are taking some medications that slow the breakdown of histamine.

The second most common type of illness caused by marine toxins in the United States is ciguatera poisoning. This type of poisoning is due to the contamination of tropical reef fish by tiny marine plants called dinoflagellates. The illness is an example of what is termed biological magnification or biomagnification. In this case, the dinoflagellates are present in fish species that are food for a larger species. That species in turn becomes food for a larger marine animal. This pattern continues, with the concentration of the poison increasing from creature to creature. The animal at the top of this food chain (with ciguatera poisoning, it is often the barracuda) may have a high concentration of the poison. The person who eats that animal ingests the accumulated load of toxin. In addition to the barracuda, other fishes may contain high levels of the dinoflagellate toxin, including grouper, sea bass, snapper, and mullet. These popular sport fishes are found in tropical waters off of Hawaii, the Virgin Islands, Puerto Rico, and islands in the South Pacific.

Symptoms of ciguatera poisoning usually appear within minutes of eating a contaminated fish. The symptoms include nausea with vomiting, abdominal cramps, diarrhea, sweating, headache, muscle aches, dizziness, itchy skin, and general weakness. More usual symptoms are possible, such as alterations in taste and temperature sensations, and nightmares and hallucinations may occur. The symptoms tend to fade in 1–4 weeks.

Paralytic shellfish poisoning is caused by another dinoflagellate that can explode in numbers during an event called a "red tide." The name refers to the appearance of

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOMAGNIFICATION: The increasing concentration of compounds at higher trophic level or the tendency of organisms to accumulate certain chemicals to a concentration larger than that occurring in their inorganic, non-living environment, such as soil or water, or in the case of animals, larger than in their food.

DEGRADATION: Degradation means breakdown and refers to the destruction of host cell components, such as DNA, by infective agents such as bacteria and viruses.

DIATOM: Algae are a diverse group of simple, nucleated, plant-like aquatic organisms that are primary producers. Primary producers are able to utilize photosynthesis to create organic molecules from sunlight, water, and carbon dioxide. Ecologically vital, algae account for roughly half of photosynthetic production of organic material on Earth in both freshwater and marine environments. Algae exist either as single cells or as multicellular organizations. Diatoms are microscopic, single-celled algae that have intricate glass-like outer cell walls partially composed of silicon. Different species of diatom can be identified based upon the structure of these walls. Many diatom species are planktonic, suspended in the water column moving at the mercy of water currents. Others remain attached to submerged surfaces. One bucketful of water may contain millions of diatoms. Their abundance makes them important food sources in aquatic ecosystems.

DINOFLAGELLATE: Dinoflagellates are microorganisms that are regarded as algae. Their wide array of exotic shapes and, sometimes, armored appearance is distinct from other algae. The closest microorganisms in appearance are the diatoms.

HISTAMINE: Histamine is a hormone that is chemically similar to the hormones serotonine, epinephrine, and norepinephrine. A hormone is generally defined as a chemical produced by a certain cell or tissue that causes a specific biological change or activity to occur in another cell or tissue located elsewhere in the body. Specifically, histamine plays a role in localized immune responses and in allergic reactions.

RED TIDE: Red tides are a marine phenomenon in which water is stained a red, brown, or yellowish color because of the temporary abundance of a particular species of pigmented dinoflagellate (these events are known as "blooms"). Also called phytoplankton, or planktonic algae, these single-celled organisms of the class Dinophyceae move using a tail-like structure called a flagellum. They also photosynthesize, and it is their photosynthetic pigments that can tint the water during blooms. Dinoflagellates are common and widespread. Under appropriate environmental conditions, various species can grow very rapidly, causing red tides. Red tides occur in all marine regions with a temperate or warmer climate.

the water, which becomes discolored by the presence of vast numbers of the reddish brown dinoflagellates. The affected marine creatures are often filter-feeders—those that feed by straining sea water to remove tiny nutrients. The toxin-laden dinoflagellates accumulate in mussels, clams, oysters, crabs, and scallops. Lobsters also can become contaminated.

Symptoms of paralytic shellfish poisoning begin within several minutes to several hours of eating contaminated seafood. Initially, the symptoms are mild and include numbness of the face, arms, and legs; more severe symptoms follow, including dizziness, nausea, and loss of coordination. Some people become paralyzed and can die when they become unable to breathe.

Neurotoxic shellfish poisoning is another illness that is caused by a dinoflagellate. Shellfish are involved; they concentrate the toxin during filter-feeding. As with the other illnesses caused by marine toxins, symptoms tend to occur soon after consuming the contaminated seafood. Symptoms include dizziness, numbness, a tingling sensation in the mouth, arms, and legs, and loss of coordination. Recovery occurs within several days.

Finally, amnesic shellfish poisoning is a rare event that is caused by a microscopic plant (diatom) called *Nitzchia pungens.* Concentration of the diatom in shellfish, such as mussels, also concentrates a component of the diatom known as domoic acid. When contaminated mussels are eaten, the domoic acid causes an intestinal upset, dizziness, headache, and loss of orientation. In severe cases, there can be brain damage when domoic acid attaches to chemical receptors in brain cells, disrupting cell function. Permanent loss of memory, paralysis, and death can result.

Scope and Distribution

Marine toxins are found in coastal regions in almost all parts of the globe, except at the higher latitudes of the Arctic and Antarctic. Different illnesses often have different distributions. For example, neurotoxic shellfish poisoning tends to occur in the Gulf of Mexico and along the southern Atlantic Coast of the United States.

Illnesses caused by marine toxins occur in greater numbers in more equatorial regions, since the warmer waters encourage the growth of the microorganisms that produce the toxins. However, outbreaks occur during the warmer months in other regions.

There is no evidence that gender or race influences a person's susceptibility to marine toxins. The elderly and those with a less efficient immune system may be more at risk.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment typically involves making the patient as comfortable as possible and waiting for the illness to pass. Scombrotoxic fish poisoning can be treated with drugs aimed at neutralizing the effects of the excess histamine.

There are no vaccines that provide protection against poisoning by marine toxins. The best prevention strategy is to use caution when eating seafood. For example, eating raw shellfish is risky and should be avoided. Warnings about algal blooms and reports of seafood-related illnesses should be taken seriously. Seafood from the affected region should be avoided until public health officials have determined that the danger is over.

Impacts and Issues

In the United States, about 30 people are poisoned by the toxins in seafood each year. The consequences of this poisoning can range from a short-term and inconvenient illness to permanent damage, memory loss, and death.

Because coastal areas often attract tourists and tourists often want to sample the local seafood, an outbreak of poisoning by a marine toxin can affect the local economy. For example, in 1987 there was an outbreak of amnesic shellfish poisoning on Prince Edward Island, Canada, which sickened more than 100 people and caused several deaths. In the years following the outbreak, fear over consumption of seafood and a lingering perception that the coast of the province was dangerous caused a marked drop in visitors. This adversely affected the island' economy, which heavily relies on summer tourism.

Periodic outbreaks involving larger numbers of people also occur. In fact, studies by the Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution and the U.S. National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration indicate that the frequency of algal blooms has been increasing along the coasts of the United States and other countries since the 1970s. While the cause of the increased number of blooms is not absolutely certain, a general consensus among scientists is that the documented warming of the coastal oceans has made conditions more favorable for algal growth. If so, a consequence of global warming could be more algal blooms and more cases of marine toxin-related illness.

In coastal regions of the United States, Canada, and other maritime countries, government agencies monitor ocean catches and aquaculture facilities for the presence of the various toxic species. Detection of these toxic species can lead to the closure of a region to fishing and the sale of commercially raised seafood until the problem is resolved.

The health risk posed by marine toxins has been balanced somewhat by the discovery that some marine toxins can act as anti-cancer drugs. A 2006 University of Wisconsin study reported that marine toxins can bind to a cell component called actin and that this interaction can disable rapidly growing cells, such as cancer cells.

See Also *Waterborne Disease.*

IN CONTEXT: MARINE MICROORGANISMS

Marine microorganisms often inhabit a harsh environment. Ocean temperatures are generally very cold—approximately 37.4° F (about 3° C) on average—and this temperature tends to remain this cold except in shallow areas. About 75% of the oceans of the world are below 3,300 ft (1,000 m) in depth. The pressure on objects like bacteria at increasing depths is enormous.

Some marine bacteria have adapted to the pressure of the ocean depths and require the presence of the extreme pressure in order to function. Such bacteria are barophilic if their requirement for pressure is absolute or barotrophic if they can tolerate both extreme and near-atmospheric pressures. Similarly, many marine bacteria have adapted to the cold growth temperatures. Those which tolerate the temperatures are described as psychrotrophic, while those bacteria that require the cold temperatures are psychrophilic ("cold loving").

Marine microbiology has become the subject of much commercial interest. Compounds with commercial potential as nutritional additives and antimicrobials are being discovered from marine bacteria, actinomycetes and fungi. For example the burgeoning marine nutraceuticals market represents millions of dollars annually, and the industry is still in its infancy. As relatively little is still known of the marine microbial world, as compared to terrestrial microbiology, many more commercial and medically-relevant compounds undoubtedly remain undiscovered.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

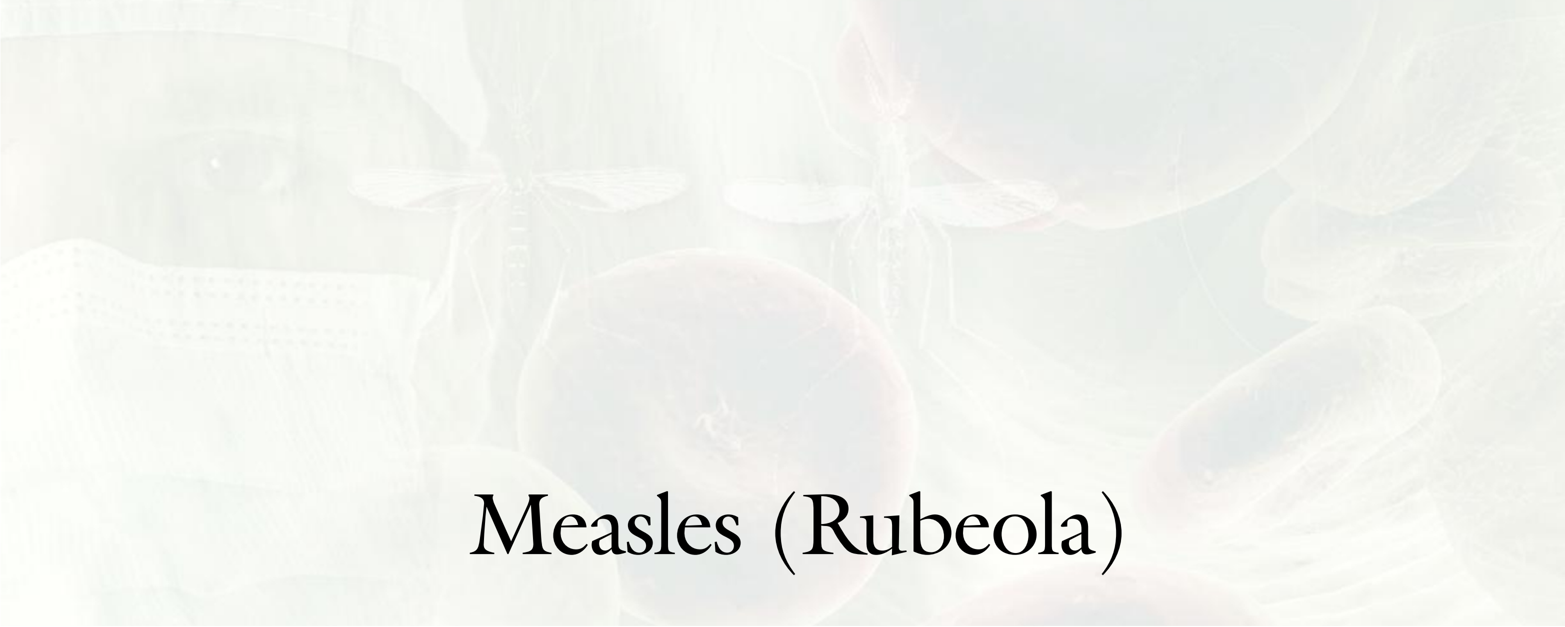
Belkin, Shimshon S., and Rita R. Colwell. *Oceans and Health: Pathogens in the Marine Environment*. New York: Springer, 2005.

Sindermann, Carl J. *Coastal Pollution: Effects on Living Resources and Humans*. Boca Raton: CRC, 2005.

Periodicals

Allingham, J. S., et al. "Structures of Microfilament Destabilizing Toxins Bound to Actin Provide Insight into Toxin Design and Activity." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science* 102 (2005): 14527–14532.

Brian Hoyle



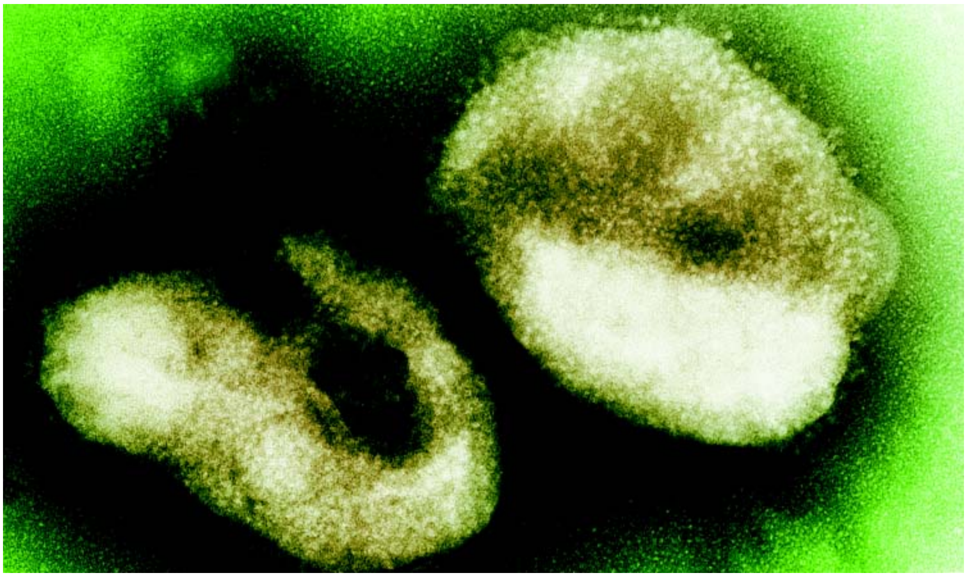
Measles (Rubeola)

Introduction

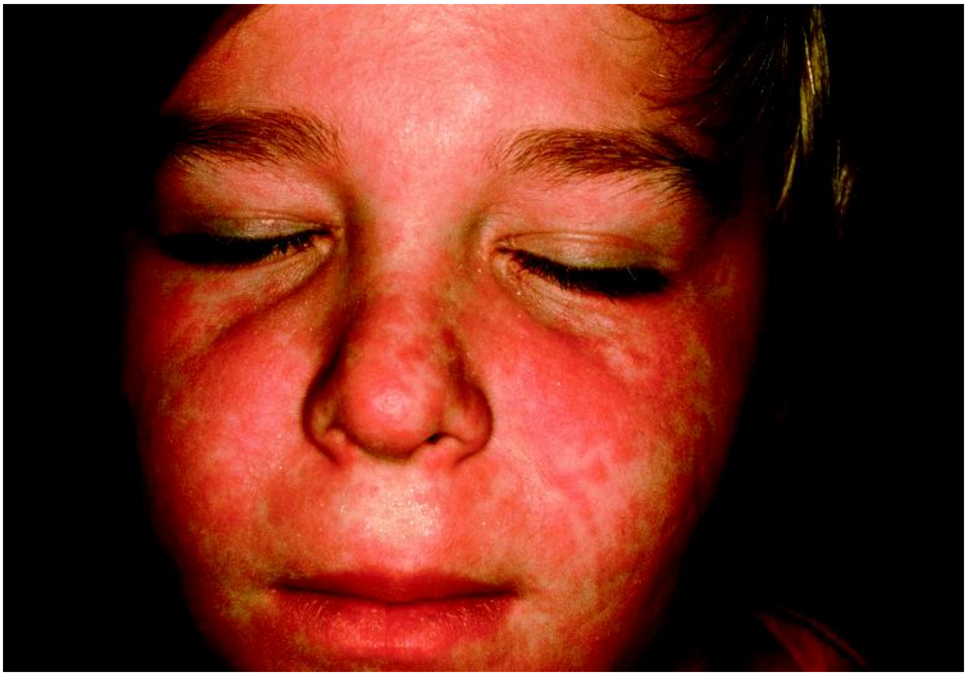
Measles is an acute viral illness that is one of the most common diseases of childhood, along with mumps and German measles (rubella). The clinical name for measles is rubeola, which comes from the Latin word *ruber* meaning red, and is a reference to the pinkish-red rash that is characteristic of the disease. Measles is a highly infectious disease, spread by coughs, sneezes, and person-to-person contact. It will occasionally lead to serious and even potentially fatal complications, such as pneumonia and encephalitis. Once someone has had measles, they are usually immune for life. Vaccination was introduced in the 1960s in the Western world and has led to a dramatic reduction in the number of children contracting measles. Since humans are the only hosts for the measles virus, it should be possible to eradicate measles, through universal vaccination. This requires a global effort to bring the vaccine to children everywhere.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Measles is caused by a virus from the Paramyxoviridae family, which also includes the influenza and mumps viruses. It is a single stranded, enveloped, RNA virus—that is, its genetic material is RNA rather than DNA. The incubation time of the measles virus is 9–12 days. The virus first infects the epithelial cells lining the upper respiratory tract and then spreads to the rest of the body.



Paramyxoviruses are a group of viruses that include the agents of human measles (rubeola), mumps, and respiratory diseases, as well as canine distemper. © *Visuals Unlimited/Corbis.*



The measles (rubeola) rash as seen on a child's face. *CNRI/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

In typical or natural measles, the early symptoms are like those of a common cold and include coughing, sneezing, sore throat, and fever. Within a few days, characteristic small white spots called Koplik's spots develop inside the mouth. A day or so later, a rash appears, starting behind the ears and spreading to the face and down the body and lasting for three or four days. Complications occur in up to 30% of cases of measles, and include pneumonia and otitis media, a middle ear infection that can lead to deafness. Encephalitis, an inflammation of the brain, is a complication in around one out of 1,000 cases of measles and has a 10% mortality rate. Mortality (death) from measles complications is highest among infants under two years old and in adults.

There is also a modified form of measles that occurs among those who have been incompletely vaccinated. Modified measles is less severe than typical measles and Koplik's spots may be absent. However, the risk of complications is the same. Rarely, a form of the disease called atypical measles may occur, usually among those who received vaccine in the 1960s. Atypical measles is characterized by sudden onset of fever, muscle pain, abdominal pain, and headache. Koplik's spots are rarely present and pneumonia is a common complication. Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis is an extremely rare degenerative disease of the brain and nervous system that is thought to arise from persistent measles infection in the brain. It occurs at a rate of around one per 100,000 cases and develops several years after measles exposure.

Measles is spread through the aerosol route—that is, through coughs and sneezes—and also by person-to-person contact. It is one of the most infectious diseases known, with around 90% of those being exposed becoming infected. A person is infectious for three to four days before the rash appears and for up to four days while the rash is present.

■ Scope and Distribution

Practically all children developed measles at some stage before vaccination, with the disease being most common in the winter and early spring. Before the introduction of the measles vaccine in 1963, there were 200,000–600,000 cases of measles a year in the United States, and this was probably a gross underestimate of the true scale of the disease. Before vaccination, measles killed more children than polio did. There was a sharp decline in measles cases following mass vaccination, followed by resurgence from 1983. This occurred among those who had not been vaccinated and among previously vaccinated teenagers. By 1989, there were 19,000 reported cases. A revised vaccination strategy, involving two doses instead of one, brought measles under control again. By 1993, cases were down to fewer than 1,000 annually in the United States. Measles has always been a global problem and has a major impact upon child health in developing countries, where vaccination is not readily available. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), there were around 30 million cases of measles around the world in 2004, of which

454,000 proved fatal. Measles can be dangerous to the fetus if a pregnant woman contracts measles in the first three months of pregnancy. Patients with weakened immunity, such as those with HIV/AIDS, are also at risk of complications from measles.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of measles is often unnecessary, although antibiotics may be given for secondary bacterial infections. Vitamin A may be useful in very severe cases and in countries where this vitamin deficiency is common. The antiviral drug ribavirin may be used in very severe cases also, and in patients with weakened immunity.

The spread of measles can be prevented by good hygiene, including handwashing. People with measles should isolate themselves while they are infectious and not attend school or day care. The best way of preventing measles is by vaccination. A killed vaccine was introduced in 1963, followed by a live vaccine from the late 1960s. It is now usual to give a combined measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR) vaccine—one dose between 12 and 15 months and a second before a child enters school. Most people can take MMR, but it is not usually recommended for people with weakened immunity or for pregnant women. Some parents have concerns over the safety of the MMR vaccine, because it has been linked with autism, and have refused vaccination for their children. In areas where vaccination rates have fallen, for this and other reasons, there have been new and significant measles outbreaks.

Impacts and Issues

Measles is the leading cause of vaccine-preventable death among children. The death rate from measles in developed countries is very low but reaches 1–5% in developing countries. The death rate from measles can be as high as 10–30% among malnourished children or those in refugee situations. Around 400,000 children under five years of age die from measles each year. But measles is a disease that could be eradicated from the planet, since humans are the virus' only host. In 2001, the Measles Initiative was established by the American Red Cross, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, UNICEF (the United Nations Children's Fund), and the WHO. The Initiative aims to cut deaths from measles by 90% by 2010 compared to figures from the year 2000, using vaccination that can cost less than a dollar per child. In the first five years, the Initiative supported campaigns, with national governments, that led to the vaccination of more than 217 million children, mainly in Africa. This saw measles deaths in Africa drop by 75%—from 506,000 in 1999 to 126,000 in 2005. The Initiative has now expanded its vaccination activities to Asia and is working in all six WHO regions of the world in an attempt to eradicate measles and its impact on child health.

WORDS TO KNOW

AEROSOL: Particles of liquid or solid dispersed as a suspension in gas.

KOPLIK'S SPOTS: Koplik's spots, named after American pediatrician Henry Koplik (1858–1927) and also called Koplik's sign, are red spots with a small blue-white speck in the center found on the tongue and the insides of the cheeks during the early stages of measles.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term "mortality" comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means "death." Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., "Rabies has a high mortality."

Primary Source Connection

During the late 1970s and early 1980s, the rise of individualism and the popularity of self-help movements in the United States and Western Europe provided a new challenge to public health officials. Individuals began to take control of their own heath care and, in essence, some control and responsibility was wrested away from the physician and other health care workers. This presented a special challenge to public health agencies because a manifestation of the movement toward self directed health care also involved the rejection of traditional vaccinations such as the MMR vaccine.

Over the last decade, many parents further rejected using the MMR vaccine out of fears that the vaccine was linked to autism.

The newspaper article by Mark Porter and commentary below demonstrate different aspects of the scientific and social debate over the MMR vaccine. The article also demonstrates the attempts by scientific community to be both self-correcting and to discipline breeches of ethics. The commentary offers a view that although the original research linking the MMR vaccine to autism appears tainted, the vigorous investigation might lead to future benefits in the way vaccines are developed and tested.

Mark Porter is is a medical doctor who provides regular advice and commentary on medical issues for radio and television programming in the United Kingdom.

A United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF) doctor vaccinates a child against measles as part of a national immunization campaign in the Philippines in February 2004. *Jay Directo/AFP/Getty Images.*

Doctor Who Sparked the MMR Debate Faces Misconduct Charge

THE doctor whose research sparked the international scare over the safety of the MMR vaccine is to be charged with serious professional misconduct.

Andrew Wakefield is to be ordered in front of the General Medical Council after publishing a paper in *The Lancet* in 1998 that suggested a link between the jab and autism as well as Crohn's, a bowel disease.

A sheet of preliminary charges accuses him of putting out "inadequately founded" research, of failing to obtain ethical committee approval, obtaining funding "improperly" and of subjecting children to "unnecessary and invasive investigations."

Dr. Wakefield's study is held responsible by many doctors for a dramatic slump in the number of parents allowing their children to have the combined injection against measles, mumps and rubella.

Take-up of the vaccination has fallen to only 12 per cent of children in some areas of London, while city-wide little more than half are having the jab - putting an estimated 100,000 of London children at risk of infection.

In 2004, *The Lancet* withdrew the paper, with the editor declaring it "fatally flawed" after it emerged Dr. Wakefield had been paid [pounds sterling]55,000 (more than $100,000) by lawyers for parents of children who claimed they had been damaged by the MMR vaccine to look for evidence that could be used in legal action. GMC lawyers are working on the list of charges with a hearing expected next year. If found guilty of serious professional misconduct Dr. Wakefield, 50, faces being struck from the medical register. The GMC decided to bring a case against the doctor contrary to normal procedures. It usually only brings charges when it receives a complaint, but in this case it acted without one, following a two-year investigation.

Why we all owe Wakefield a debt of thanks

COMMENTARY

DR ANDREW WAKEFIELD has had a spectacular fall from grace.

Eight years after sparking worldwide concern about the safety of the MMR vaccine, his research has been rejected by the journal that originally published it, and most of his fellow researchers have distanced themselves from his conclusions.

A promising career in the UK has come to an abrupt end and he has left the country. To cap it all, he is set to be charged with professional misconduct by the General Medical Council. While intrigued by Wakefield's theory that exposure to the measles virus could predispose some children to autism, I have always felt that he was wrong to cast doubts on the safety of MMR without more evidence.

But just because we didn't see eye to eye it doesn't mean that I am comfortable with the public pillorying that he has recently endured. Indeed, I am distinctly uncomfortable with it. We need mavericks like Andrew Wakefield, and his plight can only stifle the sort of independent thinking required to make major breakthroughs in medicine. History has taught us that there is a fine line between being dismissed as an eccentric and being lauded as a genius. Nobel Prize winner Dr. Barry Marshall is a case in point.

At first Dr Marshall's claims that stomach and duodenal ulcers were caused by an infection (*H.pylori*) and could be treated with antibiotics, rather than a lifetime of acid suppressing drugs, were treated with derision.

But he persevered.

Fifteen years later his discovery has transformed the lives of millions of patients and he has become one of medicine's most distinguished academics.

While Dr. Wakefield has achieved notoriety rather than eminence, his enthusiasm left me in little doubt that he really did believe he had stumbled across something that questioned the safety of the MMR vaccine. Time may have proved him wrong, but back in 1998 when he first raised the possibility, we simply didn't have enough data to back the bland reassurances issued by the Department of Health.

Thanks to him sticking his head above the parapet, we now know far more about the MMR vaccine than we ever would have known had he not questioned its safety.

And I suspect the resulting scepticism, both lay and professional, that now surrounds the introduction of new vaccines will benefit us all in the long-term.

Mark Porter

PORTER, MARK. "DOCTOR WHO SPARKED THE MMR DEBATE FACES MISCONDUCT CHARGE." *THE EVENING STANDARD.* JUNE 12, 2006.

See Also *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Mumps; Rubella.*

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

With regard to a potential connection between the measles, mumps, and rubella vaccine (MMR vaccine) and autism, scientists at the National Immunization Program (NIP) at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) state that "the weight of currently available scientific evidence does not support the hypothesis that MMR vaccine causes autism. CDC recognizes there is considerable public interest in this issue, and therefore supports additional research regarding this hypothesis. CDC is committed to maintaining the safest, most effective vaccine supply in history."

As of May 2007 the CDC further states that, "there is no convincing evidence that vaccines such as MMR cause long term health effects. On the other hand, we do know that people will become ill and some will die from the diseases this vaccine prevents. Measles outbreaks have recently occurred in the UK and Germany following an increase in the number of parents who chose not to have their children vaccinated with the MMR vaccine. Discontinuing a vaccine program based on unproven theories would not be in anyone's best interest. Isolated reports about these vaccines causing long term health problems may sound alarming at first. However, careful review of the science reveals that these reports are isolated and not confirmed by scientifically sound research. Detailed medical reviews of health effects reported after receipt of vaccines have often proven to be unrelated to vaccines, but rather have been related to other health factors. Because these vaccines are recommended widely to protect the health of the public, research on any serious hypotheses about their safety are important to pursue. Several studies are underway to investigate still unproven theories about vaccinations and severe side effects."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Immunization Program*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

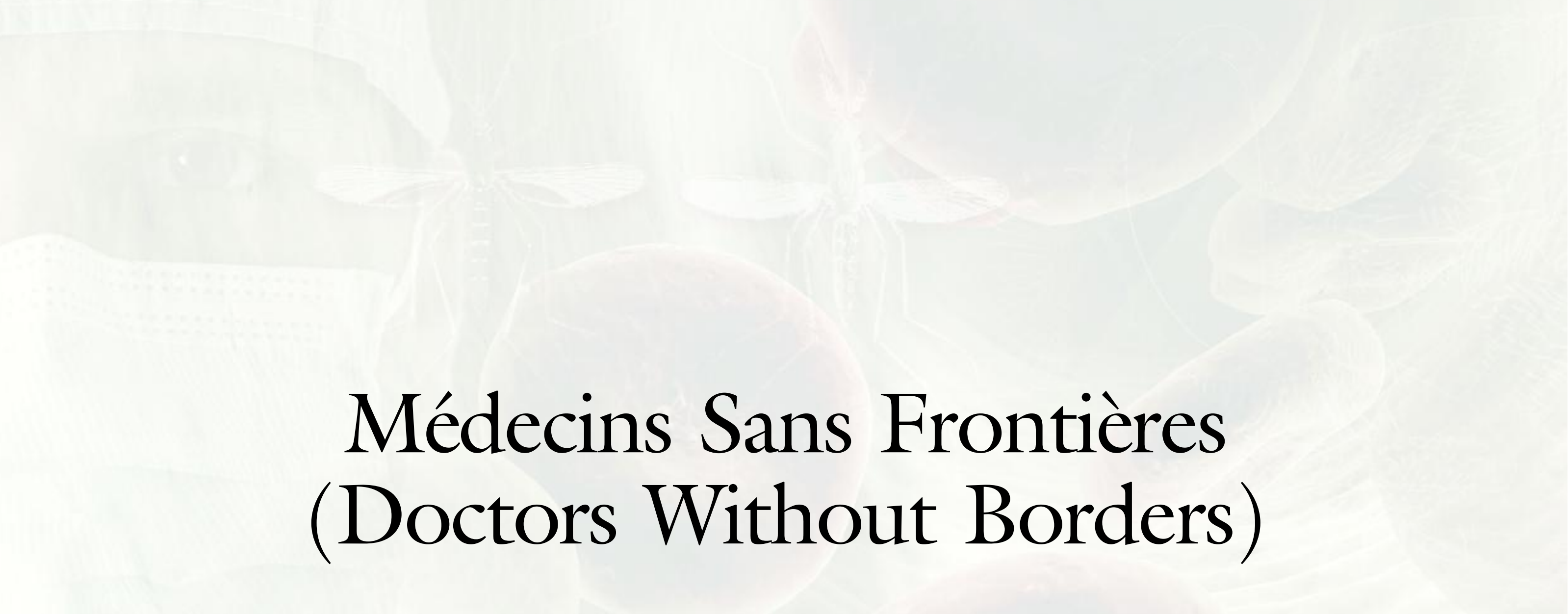
Tan, James S. *Expert Guide to Infectious Diseases.* Philadelphia: American College of Physicians, 2002.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

The Measles Initiative. "Home Page." March 16, 2007. <http://www.measlesinitiative.org/index3.asp> (accessed March 20, 2007).

Susan Aldridge



Médecins Sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders)

Introduction

Médecins Sans Frontières (MSF), known in English as Doctors Without Borders, is an international, independent humanitarian organization designed to provide assistance in emergency situations caused by war, drought, famine, epidemics, disasters (either natural or man-made), or lack of available healthcare. It was established in 1971. Among the characteristics that distinguish MSF from other charitable organizations are its independence from government funding (it relies on primarily private donations and is very successful at fundraising) and its ability and willingness to make public opinion statements. Currently, MSF has branches in nearly twenty countries around the world. Roughly 80% of its funding comes from public and private donations; the remaining 20% is received from governmental and international humanitarian agencies.

Médecins Sans Frontières was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 1999.

History and Scientific Foundations

Because MSF is an independent international organization, it has no political ties or limitations to prevent it from responding to any situation thought likely to benefit from its assistance. It was not designed to become involved in international governmental affairs. For those involved in the local response of MSF, the effort is a humanitarian one. Traveling staff are primarily volunteers (although their personal expenses are paid and they may receive a small stipend) who are willing to make themselves available with very little notice; they are typically deployed in an area for six to twelve months. Assigned locations may be remote and dangerous. MSF hires local staff and provides them with training and materials, and all personnel (MSF core and local staff) work in cooperation with other local and international emergency and relief organizations.

MSF is staffed by physicians, nurses, healthcare providers, logisticians, technicians, technical and non-medical personnel, sanitation and water experts, and administrative workers. There is a small core of paid staff, a large number of volunteer workers, and a significant number of local staffers hired at each major site. MSF participates in an average of nearly 4,000 medically related missions each year.

Applications and Research

MSF's primary tasks are the provision of basic and emergency physical and mental health care on-site at hospitals and clinics (either existent or created locally by MSF staff); the performance of surgery; the provision of vaccinations and immunizations; and the operation of feeding centers, primarily for children and mothers of babies. MSF also employs experts who are able to dig and construct wells or bring in potable (safe to drink) water, in order to establish a means of supplying clean drinking water. When necessary, MSF also assists in creating temporary shelters and can supply blankets and plastic sheeting materials.

In addition to their emergency operations, MSF operates longer-term projects to treat infectious and communicable diseases such as HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, and sleeping sickness, and to provide physical and mental health treatment for marginalized groups and street children. MSF also has an expert epidemiology section, and it has been utilized around the world to diagnose, treat, monitor, and contain epidemics of cholera, meningitis, and measles, among other diseases.

Impacts and Issues

By traveling in small teams and enlisting local resources, MSF teams have penetrated war zones and reached

An Australian nurse (right) with Médecins sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders) examines a patient in Sigli, Indonesia, in January 2005. The patient is about to undergo an operation for an infection in a leg wound acquired during the Indian Ocean Tsunami. *AP Images/James Nachtwey/VII.*

refugee groups and epidemic epicenters. The photograph below shows a makeshift refugee camp in the Democratic Republic of Congo set up by MSF in January 2006 after over 18,000 people fled conflict between the Congolese Army and Mai Mai rebels.

Because of its size, well-trained staff, and ability to hire significant numbers of local people in order to meet personnel needs, MSF is generally able to respond extremely quickly to emergencies. They utilize highly specialized kits and equipment packs that enable them to carry all needed supplies with them when they mobilize, so they are literally able to "hit the ground running," with no delay before they are able to begin emergency operations.

Their field kits are tailored to be an exact match for the type of emergency situation, geographic conditions, terrain, environmental conditions, and estimated patient population size. They can set up portable operating theatres, clinics, and hospitals immediately upon arrival in an affected area. They have created myriad treatment and response protocols that are customized to fit any necessary situation; their kits and protocols have been adopted by emergency and relief organizations worldwide.

One of the unique aspects of MSF, in contrast to nearly all other relief and aid organizations, is its commitment to combining humanitarian medical care with outspoken opinion on the causes of worldwide suffering. It is equally vocal on perceived impediments to the provision of effective medical care. For example, MSF has spoken publicly against pharmaceutical companies that refuse to manufacture pediatric dosages of AIDS-related drugs or to provide affordable and appropriate medications to African countries hardest hit by the AIDS pandemic. MSF has sought (and received) audiences with the United Nations, various international and governmental organizations, and the worldwide media, in an effort to communicate both the needs of their various patient groups and to educate the world on violations of international humanitarian doctrines that they have witnessed or that they argue have been perpetrated across the globe. Researchers, academics, and scientists associated with MSF publish scholarly articles, create media campaigns, engage in public education programs, and offer presentations and exhibits at local and international conferences, in an effort to create public awareness of medical and living conditions in underserved, impoverished, and war-torn areas of the world. MSF has launched a major initiative called the Campaign for Access to Essential Medicines, through which they are trying to help underserved or marginalized populations obtain safe, effective, affordable treatments for such diseases as HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, and malaria.

■ Primary Source Connection

Médecins Sans Frontières (MSF), or Doctors Without Borders, is an international humanitarian organization that provides emergency medical assistance in over seventy nations. MSF's mission is to provide medical care in

WORDS TO KNOW

EPIDEMIOLOGY: Epidemiology is the study of various factors that influence the occurrence, distribution, prevention, and control of disease, injury, and other health-related events in a defined human population. By the application of various analytical techniques including mathematical analysis of the data, the probable cause of an infectious outbreak can be pinpointed.

NOBEL PEACE PRIZE: An annual prize bequeathed by Swedish inventor Alfred Nobel (1833–1896) and awarded by the Norwegian Nobel Committee to an individual or organization that has “done the most or the best work for fraternity between the nations, for the abolition or reduction of standing armies and for the holding and promotion of peace congresses.”

NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATIONS (NGOS): A voluntary organization that is not part of any government; often organized to address a specific issue or perform a humanitarian function.

POTABLE: Water that can is clean enough to drink safely is potable water.

to the world’s neediest populations, often those touched by war, conflict, epidemic disease, natural disaster, and famine. In the following article, an MSF worker describes the organization’s work in Somalia. The story of one patient, Isaac, evidences the significant health threats facing the war-torn region, including tuberculosis, leishmaniasis, and widespread malnourishment.

Isaac

“. . .WHEN HE FIRST ARRIVED HE WAS TOO WEAK TO STAND AND SO TO SEE HIM WALKING GIVES EVERYONE HOPE.”

BY JAKE MCKNIGHT, MARCH 2006

Isaac is seven but he looks much younger. His weak legs barely support the top half of his meagre frame, forcing him to press his hands into his knees to hold himself upright. His movements are further restricted by the horrific damage inflicted by tuberculosis of the spine, which has caused him to effect the hunch of an old man. In his ragged t-shirt and near useless flip-flops, I often see Isaac walking the thirty or so metres from the tuberculosis ward to paediatrics with his head down, concentrating his efforts against the hot winds that almost carry enough dust to hide his cheerful smile. It would seem that Somalis don’t make very good victims.

I have been working for MSF for about a year now, first in Angola and now in Huddur, the small town in central Somalia where I have been for the last six weeks.

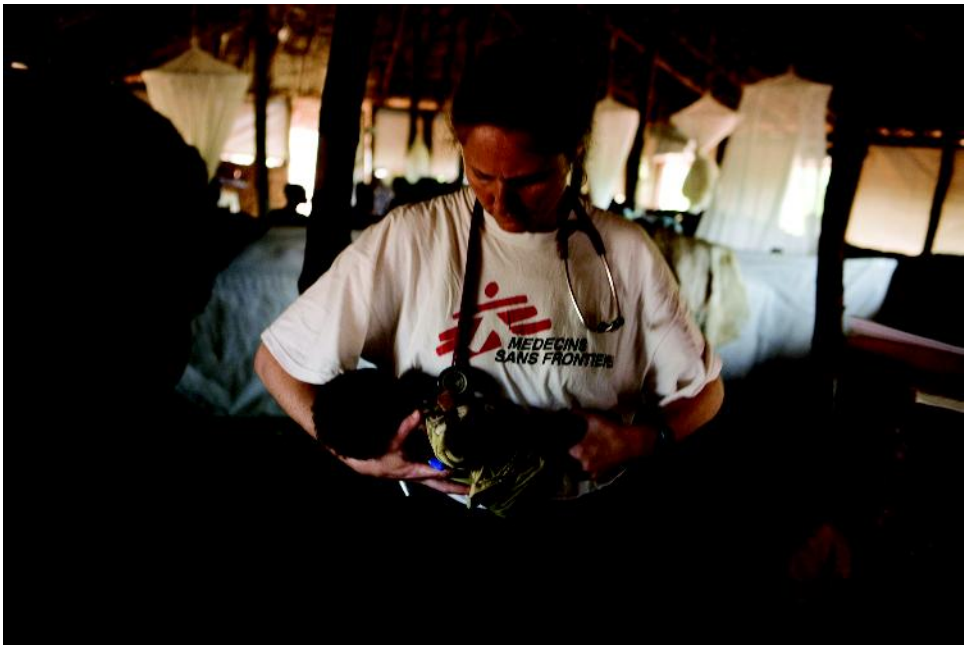
On reading a little about Somalia I had felt compelled to come here. For the last century, the country has been at war: firstly with the colonial powers of Italy, France and Britain; secondly with Ethiopia; thirdly with Siad Barre, the dictator who was deposed in 1991. Finally—in the power vacuum that resulted—Somalia has been at war with itself.

Hundreds of clans and sub-clans have split the country into an immensely complex framework of allegiances and ties. All efforts to bring this system under control have failed, earning Somalia the dubious title of being the only country in the world without a government. In addition to this long history of woes, the southern regions—including Huddur—are currently suffering the terrible results of the drought, which is spreading across the horn of Africa.

In such an environment, it would be fair to assume that the Somalis might be quite a bitter people. However, in the late afternoons, when the sun is less fierce and the winds die down, I regularly have the chance to walk around the hospital wards. Despite the cramped conditions and lack of amenities, the patients and their carers sit sometimes in groups, sometimes nursing children and almost always content and peaceful.

Part of the reason for both the lack of space and the happy faces is that MSF is achieving a lot in Somalia. One of the most prevalent serious diseases we treat here is kala azar (leishmaniasis), a condition that mostly affects children. If not treated, kala azar is almost always fatal. When patients arrive in the health centre they are often desperately sick and sometimes malnourished. After careful treatment of the disease and admission into our Therapeutic Feeding Programme for the severely malnourished, it generally takes about five weeks for kala azar patients to be discharged: fat, happy and cured. Word has spread to the surrounding areas and we have noted a month on month increase in patients for over a year.

It will be a while before Isaac leaves the hospital. His condition is serious and unfortunately, although his spine will not become any worse, he will not recover completely. However, when he first arrived he was too weak to stand and so to see him walking gives everyone hope. Doubtless, like the country itself, he has many problems ahead of him. There are no schools, very few hospitals and many of the charities and agencies that would usually be willing to help improve the situation are absent due to the high level of insecurity. Given these factors, the future looks as grim as ever for Somalia but,



A member of Médecins sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders) holds an infant at a camp for internally displaced persons in the eastern part of the Ituri province in the Democratic Republic of the Congo in May 2005. Diseases such as cholera and malaria, complicated by malnutrition, have taken millions of lives in the region. *AP Images/Ron Haviv/VII.*

watching Isaac walk, head down against the wind, I feel not pity but hope and admiration for these uniquely brave people.

Jake McKnight

MCKNIGHT, JAKE. *MEDECINS SANS FRONTIERES.* "ISAAC." JUNE 13, 2007. <HTTP://WWW.UK2.MSF.ORG/UKNEWS/LETTERS/JAKEMCKNIGHTISAAC.HTM> (ACCESSED JUNE 11, 2007).

See Also *CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention); Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; United Nations Millennium Goals and Infectious Disease; World Health Organization (WHO).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bertolotti, Dan. *Hope in Hell: Inside the World of Doctors Without Borders.* Tonawanda, NY: Firefly Books, 2004.

Médecins Sans Frontières, eds. *In the Shadow of Just Wars: Violence, Politics, and Humanitarian Action.* Translated by Fabrice Weissman and Doctors Without Borders. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 2004.

Web Sites

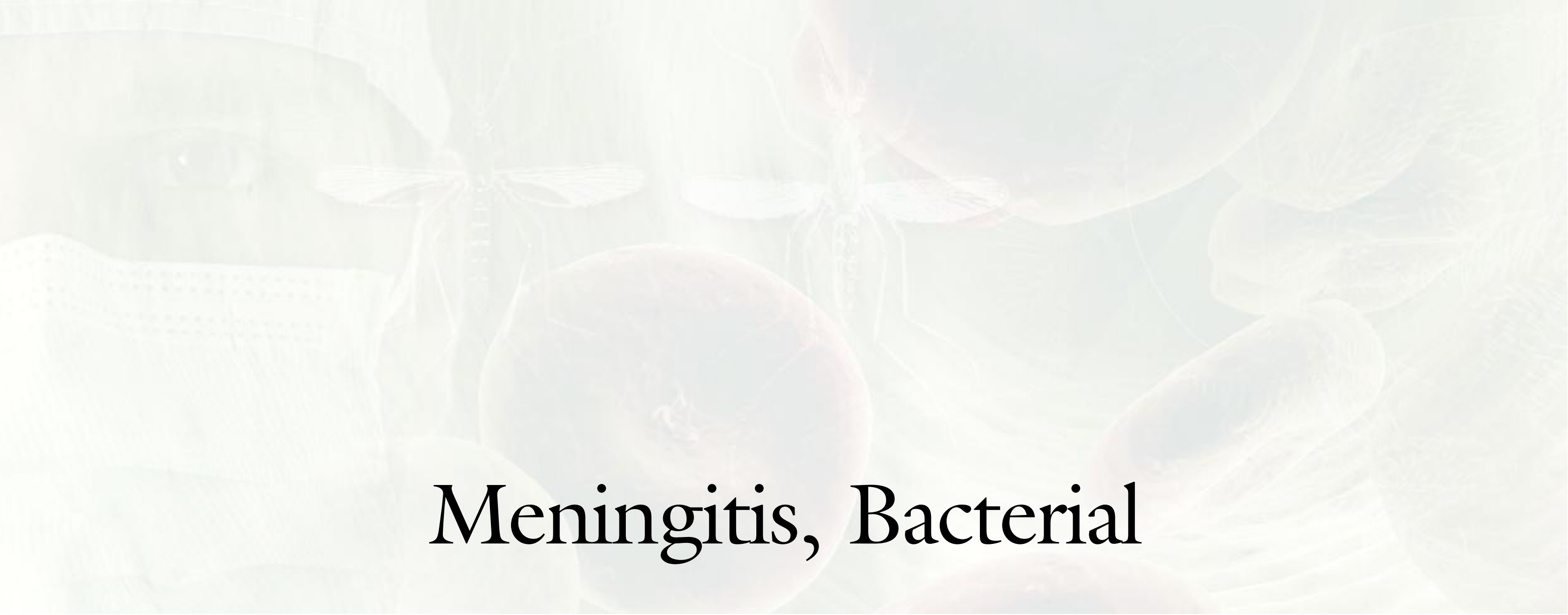
Campaign for Access to Essential Medecines. "Companies Not Selling New AIDS Drugs in Africa." <http://www.accessmed-msf.org/index.asp> (accessed May 15, 2007).

Médecins Sans Frontières/Doctors Without Borders. "About Us." <http://www.doctorswithoutborders.org/aboutus/index.cfm> (accessed May 15, 2007).

Network for Good. "Doctors Without Borders USA." <http://partners.guidestar.org/controller/searchResults.gs?action_gsReport=1&partner=networkforgood&ein=13-3433452> (accessed May 20, 2007).

Nobelprize.org. "The Nobel Peace Prize 1999: Médecins Sans Frontières." <http://nobelprize.org/peace/laureates/1999/index.html> (accessed May 20, 2007).

Paul Davies



Meningitis, Bacterial

Introduction

Bacterial meningitis refers to an acute disease caused by several different types of bacteria, in which a membrane called the meninges, which surrounds the brain and the spinal cord, becomes inflamed. Inflammation-related swelling of the membrane can cause serious problems that include septicemia (blood poisoning) brain damage, coma, and death.

A child suffering from bacterial meningitis recovers at a hospital in New Delhi, India, in 2005. The strain of bacterial meningitis killed 14 people in the Indian capital and affected more than 90 others. © *Kamal Kishore/Reuters/Corbis.*

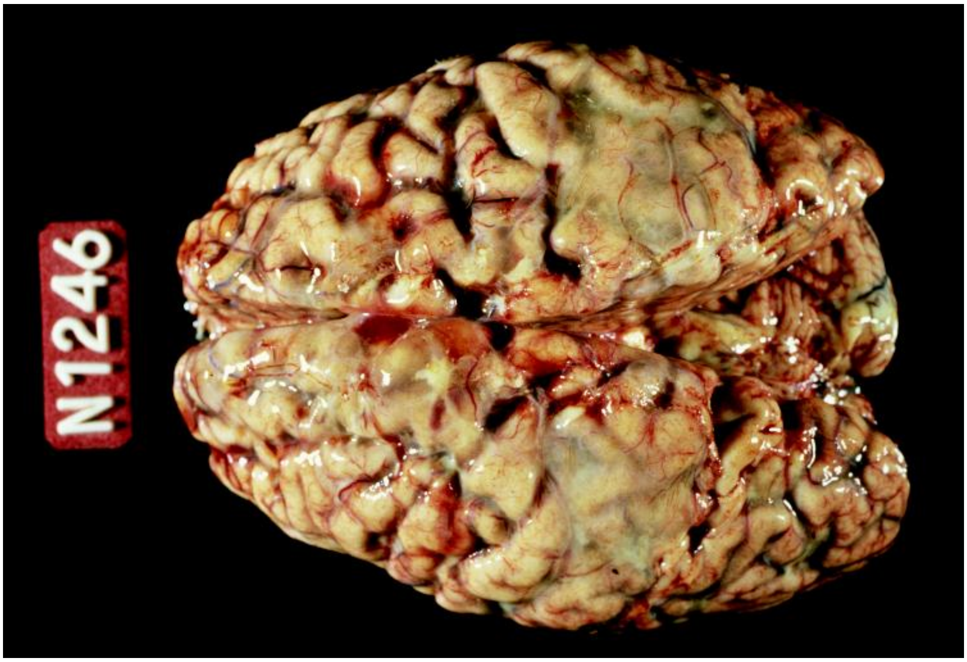
Bacterial meningitis is the result of a bacterial infection of the blood that spreads to the cerebrospinal fluid, which is the fluid that flows around the meninges. The illness is serious; if not treated, the death rate is high. Those who survive can be left with life-long disabilities that includes impaired hearing due to damage to the hair cells in a portion of the ear that are responsible for converting sound waves to the electrical signals that the brain can interpret. Longer-term problems also include paralysis, mental dysfunction, and paralysis.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Like other bacterial diseases such as plague and anthrax, bacterial meningitis has likely been occurring for thousands of years. Comparison of the genetic material of the bacteria that cause meningitis with other bacteria—an approach that can indicate whether the bacteria have existed for a long time or have appeared relatively recently—indicates that bacterial meningitis is ancient in its origin. Documented descriptions of the disease date back to 1805, when an outbreak was described in Geneva, Switzerland. In that century, meningitis also decimated the ruling family in Japan.

Bacterial meningitis can be caused by a number of different strains of bacteria. The bacteria that are the most common causes are *Neisseria meningitidis* (also known as meningococcus), *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (also known as pneumococcus), and *Listeria monocytogenes.* Less commonly, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus agalactiae*, and *Haemophilus influenzae* type b (also known as Hib) can cause meningitis. As well, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* can be a problem in developing countries.

The less common bacteria are often not a health concern. But, in someone whose immune system is inefficiently functioning due to age, illness, or deliberate immunosuppression (as occurs following organ transplantation to avoid



This specimen of a brain shows bacterial meningitis, an infection of the tissues lining the brain. *CNRI/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

rejection of the transplant) the bacteria are capable of causing meningitis infection.

The source of the infection is sometimes never determined. It is known that bacteria can spread from an ear infection to the meninges. The most common source is the spread of bacteria into the bloodstream from an infection in the heart (endocarditis). In endocarditis, the infecting bacteria can adhere to tissues and produce a colony of bacteria that is enclosed in a slimelike overlay. The organized structure, which is called a biofilm, can then slough off bacteria into the bloodstream.

Infection of the meninges by bacteria usually produces a fever, headache, sensitivity to light, and mental disorientation. As well, when the spinal cord is involved, a person can experience pain in the neck and the legs that becomes progressively worse. These symptoms also occur in the type of meningitis that is caused by viruses. Distinction between the two types of meningitis usually requires obtaining the bacteria from the cerebrospinal fluid. The bacteria are detected when the cerebrospinal fluid is added to a culture, source of nutrients that the bacteria can use. With time, the bacteria grow and divide repeatedly to form a visible mound of cells called a colony.

Bacteria can also be detected by a staining procedure called the Gram stain. Depending on which of two stains the bacteria retain, they can be distinguished as Gram-positive (these bacteria have a single membrane) or Gram-negative (which have two membranes). This distinction is important for determining the most effective antibiotic to use. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* is an example of a Gram-positive bacterium that can cause meningitis. *Neisseria meningitidis* is an example of a Gram-negative bacterium that is a cause of meningitis.

In the meningitis due to *Neisseria meningitidis*, the first symptoms to appear is often a rash that appears as small reddish or purple spots. The rash can spread quickly over the middle part of the body, legs, the conjunctiva in the eyes, and parts of the hands and feet.

Scope and Distribution

Bacterial meningitis occurs all over the world. In areas such as Sub-Saharan Africa, the disease is especially prevalent.

The main reason for the global distribution of bacterial meningitis is the equally wide distribution of the bacteria. Some of the bacteria capable of causing meningitis are normally found in the mouth. These can be spread from person to person by coughing or kissing.

In developed countries including the United States, meningitis is rare and occurs as isolated cases. More widespread epidemics still do occur in other parts of the world, in particular northern Africa.

Treatment and Prevention

Bacterial meningitis is treated with antibiotics. The choice of the antibiotic depends on the bacterium that is causing the infection. But, when first treating an infection that is suspected of being meningitis, several

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOFILM: Biofilms are populations of microorganisms that form following the adhesion of bacteria, algae, yeast, or fungi to a surface. These surface growths can be found in natural settings such as on rocks in streams, and in infections such as can occur on catheters. Microorganisms can colonize living and inert natural and synthetic surfaces.

MENINGITIS BELT: The Meningitis Belt is an area of Africa south of the Sahara Desert, stretching from the Atlantic to the Pacific coast, where meningococcal meningitis is common.

SEPTICEMIA: Prolonged fever, chills, anorexia, and anemia in conjunction with tissue lesions.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

ASEPTIC AND BACTERIAL MENINGITIS

The meninges are a series of three membranes covering the brain and spinal cord that act to protect and partition the central nervous system (CNS). The membranes comprising the meninges are the dura mater, arachnoid layer, and the pia mater.

Meningitis is an inflammation of the *meninges*—the three layers of protective membranes that line the spinal cord and the brain. Meningitis can occur when there is an infection near the brain or spinal cord, such as a respiratory infection in the sinuses, the mastoids, or the cavities around the ear. Disease organisms can also travel to the meninges through the bloodstream. The first signs may be a severe headache and neck stiffness followed by fever, vomiting, a rash, and, then, convulsions leading to loss of consciousness.

Meningitis generally involves two types: non-bacterial meningitis, which is often called aseptic meningitis, and bacterial meningitis, which is referred to as purulent meningitis.

antibiotics that are effective against the widest variety of bacteria are often used even before the cause of the infection has been identified. This is done because rapid treatment is important to minimizing the danger of the infection. Once the cause of the infection has been determined, the antibiotic therapy can be adjusted to specifically target the particular bacterium.

Antibiotics are usually given intravenously—they are added directly into a vein, where they circulate in the bloodstream. This produces a high level of the antibiotic throughout the body and, because the antibiotic can be continuously supplied, the dose can stay constant during the several weeks of treatment that is usually required.

Vaccines directed towards *Neisseria* and *Haemophilus* have lessened childhood meningitis dramatically. Two *Neisseria meningitidis* vaccines are available in the United States. One has been available since the early 1980s, while the other was approved only in 2005. As well, both newborns and the elderly benefit from vaccines against *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. The American Association of Pediatrics recommends vaccinating newborns against penumococcal meningitis as early as six weeks after birth and the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends vaccination for everyone over the age of 65.

■ Impacts and Issues

Bacterial meningitis continues to be a great health concern, especially in some under-developed regions of the world. In areas of Sub-Saharan Africa known as the meningitis belt, epidemics of meningitis continue to kill many people. In 1996, more than 250,000 contracted meningitis during one epidemic, and about 25,000 people died of the disease. While outbreaks that large are not common, the occurrence of the disease is a frequent occurrence in some areas of their world.

This continued threat posed by bacterial meningitis is one of the health concerns being addressed by the World Health Organization as part of the Consolidated Appeals Process, which seeks to galvanize support from countries around the globe to assist in aiding under-developed regions.

In both under-developed and developed countries, the disease is a serious health concern for infants less than a year old; the high fever that can be produced can cause seizures. Because bacterial meningitis is contagious, infants in day care facilities are at increased risk for the disease.

Despite the ongoing problem of bacterial meningitis, the introduction of vaccines has greatly reduced the prevalence of the infection. Before a vaccine to *Haemophilus influenzae* type b was introduced in the 1990s, meningitis due to Hib was the leading cause of bacterial meningitis. Now, because of the routine immunization of schoolchildren with a *Haemophilus* vaccine, Hib meningitis is rare.

For survivors of a bacterial meningitis infection, hearing loss can be a consequence. Artificial implants in an area of the ear called the cochlea can sometimes restore hearing to a level that allows normal function. But, the implant must be installed within weeks of the end of an infection to be fully effective. This is because the fluid that has accumulated in the ear changes consistency over time and becomes almost jellylike, making installation of an implant impossible.

See Also *Bacterial Disease; Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Meningitis, Viral.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ferreiros, C. *Emerging Strategies in the Fight Against Meningitis.* Oxford: Garland Science, 2002.

Lax, Alister. *Toxin: The Cunning of Bacterial Poisons.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2005.

Periodicals

Wilson-Clark, Samantha D., S. Squires, S. Deeksi "Bacterial Meningitis among Cochlear Implant Recipients—Canada 2002." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly.* 55: S20-S25 (2006).

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Meningococcal Disease" <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/meningococcal_g.htm> (accessed May 25, 2007).

World health Organization. "Meningitis in Africa: Hundreds of Thousands Vaccinated." <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/news/notes/2007/np12/en/index.html> (accessed May 25, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Meningitis, Viral

Introduction

There are two types of meningitis—an inflammation of the meninges which are the tissues covering the brain and spinal cord. Bacterial meningitis, such as meningiococcal meningitis, is a bacterial infection. Aseptic meningitis is caused by viral, fungal, or other infection. Aseptic meningitis also may have a noninfectious cause such as an underlying illness. Some types of aseptic meningitis respond to antibiotic treatment, but viral meningitis does not. Aseptic meningitis causes between 25,000 and 50,000 hospital admissions per year in the United States alone.

The symptoms of meningitis vary, but severe headache, neck stiffness, and an aversion of light are common. Accurate diagnosis of the cause of meningitis, through examination of the cerebrospinal fluid, is important because treatment for bacterial meningitis needs to begin as soon as possible. Viral meningitis is rarely fatal, but may occasionally cause permanent disability.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

More than 80% of cases of aseptic meningitis are caused by viruses. Many different viruses are implicated, including: enteroviruses, mumps, herpes, HIV, and viruses borne by mosquitoes and ticks, otherwise known as arboviruses. The enteroviruses account for around 90% of cases of viral meningitis. These viruses live in the human intestine. They rarely cause meningitis, but are a common cause of colds, sore throats, stomach upsets, and diarrhea. Until the introduction of the MMR (measles, mumps, and rubella) vaccine, the mumps virus was the most common cause of viral meningitis among children under five years of age.

Although viral meningitis is usually considered to be a mild illness, it often requires physician care or hospitalization for treatment. Some symptoms of viral meningitis are caused by pressure on the brain from inflamed meninges (membranes that envelop the nervous system) and include a severe headache and stiffness of the neck. A high fever and photophobia—an aversion to light—are also common side effects of enterovirus-associated meningitis. Patients may have a strong desire to be in a quiet, dark room.

Many people with viral meningitis experience nonspecific symptoms such as vomiting, cough, diarrhea, loss of appetite, and rash. Many such cases are mistaken as influenza (flu). Where symptoms are severe, bacterial meningitis might be suspected and immediate hospital admission is appropriate. Occasionally, the virus affects the brain itself causing encephalitis, an inflammation that can lead to lasting brain damage.

The symptoms of viral meningitis have a rapid onset, usually within three to ten days after exposure. Other causes of aseptic meningitis may produce disease following a slower course. In the early stages, it can be hard to distinguish aseptic and bacterial meningitis. One clue is that the person with aseptic meningitis usually remains alert. Confusion and disorientation may occur with bacterial meningitis, along with neurological abnormalities such as deafness or visual disturbances—such symptoms are uncommon in viral meningitis.

It is more difficult to identify the symptoms of viral meningitis in infants. Fever, fretfulness and irritability, difficulty in waking up, or refusal to eat may be noted.

Anyone with possible meningitis symptoms should seek prompt medical attention. Though viral meningitis is generally less severe, early symptoms of viral and bacterial meningitis may be difficult to distinguish without medical testing. Bacterial meningitis requires antibiotic treatment and can cause permanent disability or death if left to untreated. Diagnosis involves an examination of the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), the watery fluid that bathes and protects the brain and spinal cord. A sample of CSF is removed from around the spinal cord in a procedure called lumbar puncture. Bacteria can usually be cultured from this in cases of bacterial meningitis.

Most people make a full recovery from viral meningitis, with no lasting effects. Sometimes recovery is slow, with patients experiencing headache, tiredness, fatigue, depression, and loss of concentration for many months.

Transmission of meningitis depends upon the underlying viral cause. Enteroviruses, the most common cause, are spread through direct contact with the saliva, mucus, or nasal mucous of an infected person. Exposure to their coughs and sneezes, shaking hands, or touching something they have handled can cause infection if one then touches their nose or mouth. However, this kind of person-to-person transmission is unusual.

Enteroviruses are also shed into the feces of people who are infected. Children who are not yet toilet-trained may spread the virus in this way. Adults changing the diaper of an infected infant may therefore be at risk. The infectious period lasts from about three days after a person has been infected until ten days after they develop the symptoms of viral meningitis.

Scope and Distribution

Viral meningitis is far more common than bacterial meningitis. It is found mainly among babies, children, and adolescents. There are an estimated 300,000 cases per year in the United States, with 25,000–50,000 hospital admissions. Because many mild cases are not reported to the physician, the true number of cases is unknown. Moreover, as the main purpose of hospital investigations is to rule out bacterial meningitis, the specific virus involved in an aseptic case is often not detected.

There are seasonal variations in viral meningitis, depending upon the virus involved. Viruses borne by arthropods, such as mosquitoes and ticks, cause disease most often in late summer and early fall. Enteroviruses follow a similar seasonal pattern. Mumps virus tends to cause meningitis most often in late winter and early spring while herpes meningitis does not have a seasonal pattern.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no general anti-viral treatment for viral meningitis, although the anti-viral drug aciclovir might be used if the cause is found to be herpes simplex. Accurate diagnosis is needed to be sure the cause really is viral. Bacterial meningitis and some types of aseptic meningitis respond to antibiotic therapy. Sometimes antibiotics will be started straight away if someone is admitted to hospital with any form of meningitis, but these will be discontinued if the cause is found to be viral. Bed rest, fluids, and medication to relieve pain and fever are the best approach to alleviating the symptoms associated with viral meningitis.

It is difficult to prescribe a specific way of preventing viral meningitis, because there are so many different causes of the disease. The MMR vaccine will prevent meningitis caused by the measles and mumps virus. Since the majority of cases are caused by enteroviruses, which are spread by infected saliva and other bodily secretions, good personal hygiene stems transmission. Regular and thorough handwashing can stop enteroviruses from

WORDS TO KNOW

ARBOVIRUS: An arbovirus is a virus that is typically spread by blood-sucking insects, most commonly mosquitoes. Over 100 types of arboviruses cause disease in humans. Yellow fever and dengue are two examples.

ARTHROPOD: A member of the largest single animal phylum, consisting of organisms with segmented bodies, jointed legs or wings, and exoskeletons.

ENTEROVIRUS: Enteroviruses are a group of viruses that contain ribonucleic acid as their genetic material. They are members of the picornavirus family. The various types of enteroviruses that infect humans are referred to as serotypes, in recognition of their different antigenic patterns. The different immune response is important, as infection with one type of enterovirus does not necessarily confer protection to infection by a different type of enterovirus. There are 64 different enterovirus serotypes. The serotypes include polio viruses, coxsackie A and B viruses, echoviruses and a large number of what are referred to as non-polio enteroviruses.

MENINGITIS: Meningitis is an inflammation of the meninges—the three layers of protective membranes that line the spinal cord and the brain. Meningitis can occur when there is an infection near the brain or spinal cord, such as a respiratory infection in the sinuses, the mastoids, or the cavities around the ear. Disease organisms can also travel to the meninges through the bloodstream. The first signs may be a severe headache and neck stiffness followed by fever, vomiting, a rash, and, then, convulsions leading to loss of consciousness. Meningitis generally involves two types: nonbacterial meningitis, which is often called aseptic meningitis, and bacterial meningitis, which is referred to as purulent meningitis.

spreading. Potentially contaminated surfaces should be cleaned down with soap and water or diluted bleach. These precautions are especially important in institutions such as child care centers, schools, public bathing facilities, and dormitories.

Impacts and Issues

Viral meningitis is a serious condition. Though viral meningitis may alleviate without treatment, all people who suspect that they have meningitis should seek medical care. Viral meningitis rarely has serious long-term health consequences in otherwise healthy individuals. Bacterial meningitis, however, can be life-threatening. Since early symptoms of viral and bacterial meningitis are similar, prompt and accurate diagnosis is necessary to distinguish between the two forms of meningitis.

In August 2006, an outbreak of viral meningitis was reported from the region of Khabarovsk, on the Russian Far East border, affecting over 800 children. It is thought they contracted the infection through either swimming in the river Amur or from drinking its waters. There have been ongoing summer outbreaks of viral meningitis in this area for some time, arising usually from fecal contamination of the Amur's waters. Swimming is therefore prohibited in the summer months. During the 2006 outbreaks, public health doctors tried to stem the outbreak by asking parents to keep their children away from social activities, as the meningitis could be spread by infected air droplets.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Tan, J. *Expert Guide to Infectious Diseases.* Philadelphia: American College of Physicians, 2002.

Wilks, D., M. Farrington, and D. Rubenstein. *The Infectious Diseases Manual* 2nd ed. Malden: Blackwell, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Viral ('Aseptic') Meningitis." Sep 5, 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/enterovirus/viral_meningitis.htm> (accessed May 3, 2007).

The Meningitis Trust. "Viral Meningitis The Facts." <http://www.meningitis-trust.org/disease_info/Viral-Meningitis.pdf> (accessed May 3, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Microbial Evolution

Introduction

Microbial evolution refers to the genetically driven changes that occur in microorganisms and that are retained over time. Some microbial changes can be in response to a selective pressure. The best examples of this are the various changes that can occur in bacteria in response to the presence of antibiotics. These changes can make an individual bacterium less susceptible or completely resistant to the killing action of one or more antibiotics.

Other microbial changes can occur randomly in the absence of any selective pressure. These changes, which often are due to a change in the sequence of the units (nucleotides) that comprise an organism's genetic material, can confer an advantage to the organism, as compared to unaltered organisms. In the classic scenario of evolution, such as advantageous trait will be retained and can be passed on to future generations of the organism.

Gene transfer between bacteria can occur even between species that are not related to one another. This so-called horizontal gene transfer is an important form of microbial evolution that occurs in nature, and it can be important in infectious disease, for example in the acquisition of a gene that determines antibiotic resistance.

In contrast to Darwinian evolution, which takes place over millions of years, microbial evolution can occur within hours. This is because some bacteria are capable of growing and dividing in about 20 minutes under ideal growth conditions. A bacterium containing an altered gene that confers a survival advantage can, over 24 hours, give rise to thousands of progeny that carry the same gene. Each new bacterium can in turn give rise to thousands of progeny by the next day. Thus, a mutation can rapidly spread in a bacterial population and, because the trait is capable of being transferred to unrelated bacteria, to other bacterial populations as well.

Human-imposed selective pressures, such as the overuse or misuse of antibiotics, factory-farm types of agriculture that crowd animals in a small space, and the encroachment of humans on previously undisturbed territory are influencing microbial evolution and the emergence or re-emergence of infectious diseases.

History and Scientific Foundations

Darwinian evolution can be depicted as a tree, with the original organism at the base of the trunk and the myriad evolutionary changes that occur over time generating the branches and even smaller twigs at their tips. Put another way, this route of evolution is vertical, with genetic changes transferred from one generation of a species to succeeding generations.

In contrast, evidence that has been accumulating since the 1970s has firmly established that microbial evolution occurs differently. The tree analogy is inaccurate when describing microbial evolution. Rather, microbial evolution is considered to be more like a web or a net, with the transfer of genetic information occurring between many different species simultaneously, rather than between succeeding generations of one particular type of microbe.

This wider, interspecies transfer is called horizontal transfer. It is one route by which a bacterium can become resistant to one or more antibiotics. A bacterium that carries the genetic determinants for resistance to an antibiotic may be able to transfer the gene to another, unrelated bacterium, which then also becomes resistant to the antibiotic.

The transfer of genes between bacteria can occur in several ways. A gene that resides in the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) of a donor bacterium can be transferred to the recipient bacterium through a tube that transiently connects the two cells. Once inside the recipient, the inserted DNA can become part of the recipient's genome (its hereditary information encoded in its DNA) and express its encoded product.

Bacterial genes can also reside on more mobile genetic elements known as plasmids. Plasmids are more

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

BACTERIOPHAGE: A virus that infects bacteria. When a bacteriophage that carries the diphtheria toxin gene infects diphtheria bacteria, the bacteria produce diphtheria toxin.

HORIZONTAL GENE TRANSFER: Horizontal gene transfer is a major mechanism by which antibiotic resistance genes get passed between bacteria and accounts for many hospital-acquired infections.

MUTATION: A mutation is a change in an organism's DNA that occurs over time and may render it less sensitive to drugs which are used against it.

PLASMID: A circular piece of DNA that exists outside of the bacterial chromosome and copies itself independently. Scientists often use bacterial plasmids in genetic engineering to carry genes into other organisms.

SELECTIVE PRESSURE: Selective pressure refers to the tendency of an organism that has a certain characteristic to be eliminated from an environment or to increase in numbers. An example is the increased prevalence of bacteria that are resistant to multiple kinds of antibiotics.

easily transferable between bacteria. Genes that code for products that render a cell resistant to particular antibiotics can be located on plasmids. If a bacterium that possesses an antibiotic-resistance gene is adjacent to another bacterium (not necessarily the same type of bacterium), a copy of the plasmid can move to the recipient bacterium, which then becomes resistant to the antibiotic(s).

A third genetic mechanism of bacterial evolution involves bacteriophages—viruses that specifically infect a particular type of bacteria (for example, various types of coliphages infect various strains of *Escherichia coli*). When a bacteriophage infects a bacterium, the viral genetic material can insert into the host's genetic material. When the viral material is excised, some of the host's genetic material can be removed as well, to become part of the genome of the bacteriophage. A subsequent infection by the bacteriophage of another bacterium can transfer genes from the first bacterium to the second bacterial host. If the new gene confers an advantage to the second bacterium, it will be retained and passed on to subsequent generations of that bacterium.

The processes described above are directed in the sense that a genetic trait that changes an organism is transferred from one organism to another. In contrast, a final mechanism of microbial evolution—mutation—can occur randomly. A change in the arrangement of nucleotides that makes up a gene can occur by chance during the replication of the DNA. For example, one nucleotide can be substituted for another. Alternatively, additional nucleotides may be accidentally inserted or may be deleted. If the genetic change is not drastic enough to completely disable the gene's action, then the protein produced will be different. Sometimes this difference can be advantageous to the microbe. For example, the altered protein may produce enhanced activity of an enzyme that degrades antibiotics, or it may produce a membrane protein that adopts a different three-dimensional configuration that makes the microbial surface more resistant to antimicrobial compounds. Once again, such an advantageous mutation will be retained and can be passed to subsequent generations.

Applications and Research

The ability of bacteria to evolve via horizontal gene transfer has been exploited in genetic engineering that involves the deliberate insertion of a certain gene into a recipient bacterium and the expression of the gene product by the recipient. Indeed, this aspect of biotechnology is essentially a faster version of the natural pace of microbial evolution.

The acquisition of a gene by a microorganism can be tracked. Similar genes can be isolated from various organisms and the sequence of nucleotides that makes up the gene can be deduced. By comparing the gene sequences, researchers can determine how precisely the sequences match. Sequences from different organisms that match exactly provide strong evidence that the gene arose in a single organism and was passed on to another organism. Since changes in a genetic sequence will occur randomly over time, the degree of gene difference can be used as an indication of how recently a gene was acquired by one microbe, relative to another. In this way it is possible to generate a sort of map of the movement of a gene among microbes over a long period of time.

Impacts and Issues

The ability of disease-causing microorganisms, particularly bacteria and viruses, to evolve is a fundamentally important factor in infectious diseases. For example, the horizontal acquisition of a gene that encodes for the production of a potent and destructive toxin created *Escherichia coli* O157:H7, which can cause a serious and even lethal infection in humans. Without the gene, *E. coli* is a normal and harmless resident of the intestinal tract of warm-blooded creatures, including man. In another example, genetic changes have also spawned a variety of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* that is resistant to all antibacterial agents currently used to treat tuberculosis. The fact that the bacterium is also easily passed from person-to-person is a cause for concern.

The emergence of avian influenza (caused by an influenza virus designated H5N1) is one example of how human agricultural practices can influence microbial evolution. The tremendous crowding together of poultry that is done to optimize the income generated by a poultry farm made it easier for viral disease to spread in a flock. Then, the ability of many viruses to rapidly mutate allowed the avian influenza virus to spread, first, from bird-to-human and now from human-to-human. While the latter is still rare, the number of cases of human-transmitted H5N1 infection is growing and the geographical range is expanding. The possibility that this serious and sometimes fatal disease will develop into a global epidemic is real and has spurred efforts by agencies, including the World Health Organization (WHO) and the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), to monitor the disease and participate in efforts to develop a vaccine.

The fact that microbial evolution can be manipulated in the laboratory has implications for bioterrorism. In the aftermath of World War II (1939–1945), a number of countries, including the United States, engaged in research aimed at designing more potently infectious bacterial and viral diseases. While this research was discontinued, the advent of molecular biology in the 1970s has created legitimate fears that rogue nations or organizations could design and deploy a deadly version of a contagious microorganism.

■ Primary Source Connection

Harvey B. Simon is a physician and an associate professor of medicine at Harvard Medical School. He also serves as a consultant in infectious disease at Massachusetts General Hospital in Boston, Massachusetts. In this article appearing in *Newsweek* magazine in December 2006, Simon discusses the evolution of some increasingly troublesome microorganisms.

See Also *Antibiotic Resistance; Emerging Infectious Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ewald, Paul. *Plague Time: The New Germ Theory of Disease*. New York: Anchor, 2002.

Schopf, J. William. *Life's Origin: The Beginnings of Biological Evolution*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2002.

Seifert, H. Steven, and Victor J. Dirta, eds. *Evolution of Microbial Pathogens.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2006.

Brian Hoyle

Microorganisms

Introduction

Microorganisms are life forms that are too small to be seen with the naked eye, but that play an important role in human health and disease. The main types of microorganisms are bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and viruses. The first three are single-celled organisms, of which only bacteria have a nucleus. Viruses, however, need to be inside a host cell in order to survive.

Microbes occupy a wide range of ecological niches. Some live inside the human intestine or on the skin, others are found in soil, on the ocean floor, or even in the Arctic ice cap. Microbes have potential for both benefit and harm. They help keep the digestive system healthy and play an important role in decomposing dead plants and animals. However, microbes also cause a wide range of diseases, from colds and flu, to tuberculosis, AIDS, and cholera.

History and Scientific Foundations

The first microbes were observed by the Dutch biologist Anton van Leeuwenhoek (1632–1723) in 1674 using a primitive microscope he had invented. He observed what he called "animalcules" of all shapes and sizes in samples from many sources. The origin and function of these life forms was widely discussed over the next two centuries, but it was not until the nineteenth century that the scientific foundations of microbiology were laid down by Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) and Robert Koch (1843–1910).

Pasteur's work in the 1870s and 1880s showed that putrefaction depended upon the action of microbes. He went on to develop pasteurization, a technique of gentle heating that stops food and drink from spoiling by decreasing their levels of microbial contamination. Meanwhile, Koch isolated the anthrax bacillus in 1876 and the tuberculosis bacillus in 1882. By the end of the century, the microbes responsible for plague, meningitis, gonorrhea, typhoid, tetanus, diphtheria, dysentery, and pneumonia had been discovered and characterized.

Koch pushed forward the germ theory of disease, which rested on his four postulates. First, the responsible microorganism had to be isolated from infected animals, and then cultivated and identified in the laboratory. Finally, on re-injection to other lab animals, the disease had to be reproduced.

Microbes are classified according to the hierarchical system adopted for plants and animals, with related species being grouped together in the same genus. For example, *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* are two species belonging to the *Staphylococcus* genus. This name comes from the Greek word "staphyl," meaning bunch of grapes and "coccus," which means grain or berry, and refers to the appearance of the bacteria under the microscope.

Bacteria are single-celled organisms of average length two micrometers and average diameter of 0.5 micrometers. They occur in a range of characteristic shapes from which their names are sometimes derived—for instance, rods (bacilli), spheres or ovals (cocci), and spirals (spirochaetes). Bacteria do not have a nucleus and their genetic material (DNA) lies free in the cell or on tiny circular structures called plasmids. They cause a range of infections, including sore throats, pneumonia, and food poisoning.

Fungi and protozoa have a cell structure that is more like that of a human cell, with a nucleus carrying their DNA. Protozoa are single-celled microbes, including algae and trypanosomes, which often have complex lifecycles and interactions with their human hosts. They cause some serious tropical diseases, including malaria. The fungi group includes yeasts, molds and mushrooms. They play an important part in decomposing biological material, such as dead plants, and in the food and drink industry. Some fungi cause diseases of the skin and hair, such as athelete's foot. Fungal infections can also cause health problems in people with reduced immunity, such as those with HIV/AIDS.

Viruses were first discovered in the late 1880s when it was realized that some disease agents could pass through filters that would usually hold back the smallest bacteria. These filtrates were implicated in diseases such as yellow fever and foot and mouth disease (a disease of

WORDS TO KNOW

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

ERADICATION: The process of destroying or eliminating a microorganism or disease.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

RESISTANT ORGANISM: Resistant organisms are bacteria, viruses, parasites, or other disease-causing agents that have stopped responding to drugs that once killed them.

animals). Unlike other microbes, viruses need a living cell in which to replicate themselves. Without a host, they die. Viruses are responsible for a range of human diseases, including hepatitis, AIDS, colds, influenza and some forms of pneumonia and meningitis.

Applications and Research

Understanding microbiology leads to a better appreciation of many diseases, which can allow for more accurate diagnosis and effective treatment. Sometimes one microorganism can cause many different diseases, such as *S. aureus* which causes strep throat, scarlet fever, and toxic shock syndrome. On the other hand, one disease can often be caused by many different microorganism. For instance, pneumonia can be caused by adenovirus, respiratory syncytial virus, influenza virus, parainfluenza virus, and cytomegalovirus. Among the bacteria that can cause pneumonia are *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Chlamydia pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. The disease can also be caused by mycoplasma, which are organisms that have some of the characteristics of both bacteria and viruses.

Most microorganisms are actually harmless to human health. Pathogens—microbes that cause disease—are of two kinds, strict pathogens and opportunistic pathogens. A strict pathogen is always associated with disease; these include *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, which causes tuberculosis (TB), and rabies virus. However, most human infections are caused by opportunistic pathogens, which colonize, or normally live on the skin or in the nose or mouth, or in the surroundings without causing any problems. However, if they enter unprotected sites like the blood, they may cause disease. Among the most common of the opportunistic pathogens are *Pneumocystis carinii*, *Candida albicans*, and cytomegalovirus, which often cause complications among those with HIV/AIDS.

Impacts and Issues

Infectious diseases including HIV/AIDS, malaria, and tuberculosis, continue to claim millions of lives each year. There are also emerging infections such as SARS and bird flu, which have the potential to cause pandemics. However, science has shown that infections can be defeated—smallpox has been eradicated and polio and measles could be eradicated in the near future.

Antibiotics—which are active against bacteria, fungi, but not viruses—have been the major weapon against infection. Starting with the introduction of penicillin in the 1940s, doctors now have a wide range of drugs against infections like TB. Anti-viral drugs are also making AIDS a chronic disease rather than a death sentence. However, microorganisms are developing resistance against these chemical weapons so it is vital that scientists continue to extend their understanding of microbial physiology so that new drugs against infection can be developed.

Vaccines are the other major tool against microbial disease. They generally contain either a killed or weakened version of the microbe or a part of the organism, such as a protein borne on its surface, which can elicit an immune response. There is an urgent need for the development of vaccines against malaria, AIDS, and hepatitis C.

A new and more detailed level of understanding of microbiology may come from genetics. The genomes of several medically significant microbes have now been solved. Their genes have been recorded and will now, hopefully, be identified. These include *Hemophilus influenzae*, which can cause meningitis or pneumonia, *Nesseria meningitidis*, another meningitis organism, and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* which causes meningitis and pneumonia. The genomics approach means a better understanding of how microorganisms cause human illnesses and new opportunities for developing more effective antibiotics, antivirals, and vaccines.

SEE ALSO *Antibiotic Resistance; Germ Theory of Disease; Koch's Postulates; Microbial Evolution; Microscope and Microscopy.*

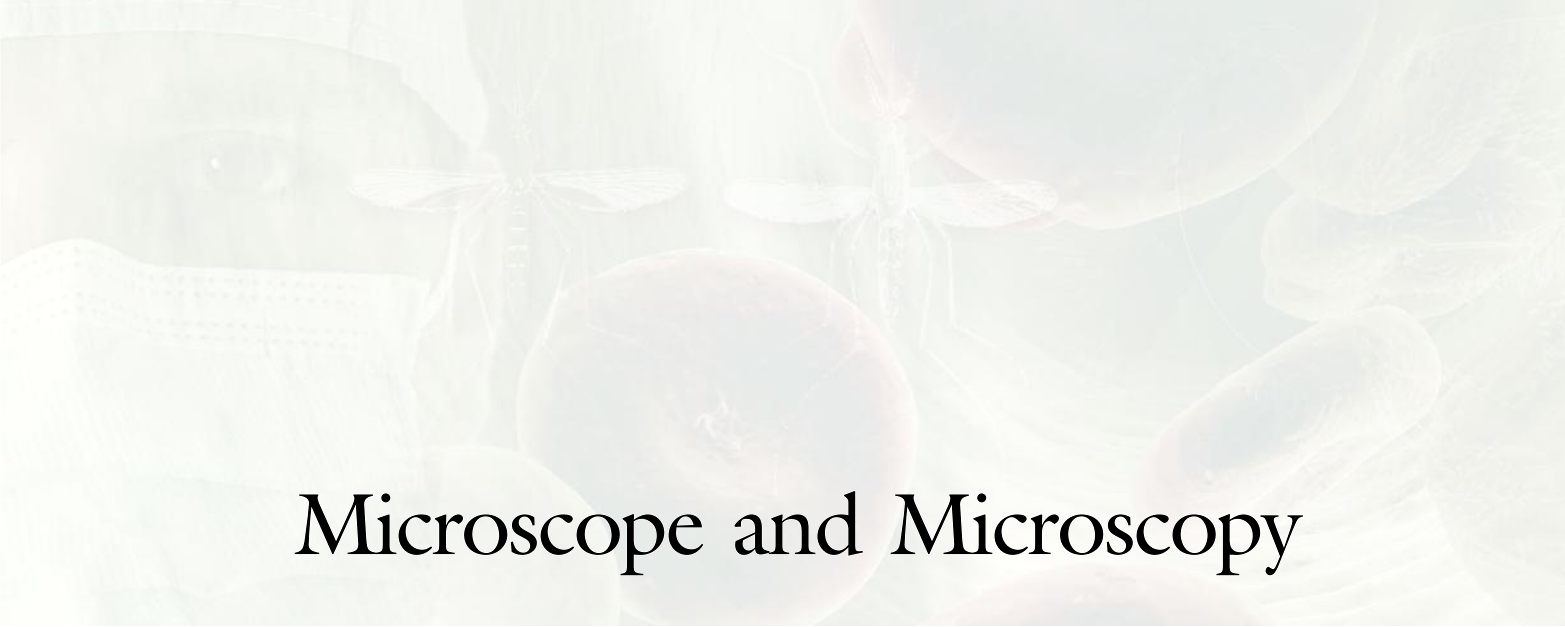
BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Lock, Stephen, Stephen Last, and George Dunea. *The Oxford Illustrated Companion to Medicine*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001.

Murray, Patrick, Ken Rosenthal, and Michael Pfaller. *Medical Microbiology*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2005.

Susan Aldridge



Microscope and Microscopy

Introduction

The microscope is a powerful tool for investigating the complexity of biological life. This includes looking at the identity and structure of microorganisms, which is essential in the diagnosis of many infectious diseases. Microorganisms are not visible to the human eye, owing to their small size. The light microscope focuses visible light upon a clinical specimen and allow the microbe to be magnified through a series of lenses.

Staining a specimen that may contain microorganisms is an additional aid to identification. Some microbes will absorb a certain stain while others will not, which provides a way of identifying them. Modern microscopic technologies allow for quick and accurate identification of microorganisms involved in human disease. However, microscopic identification alone is only part of the investigations underlying a diagnosis of an infectious disease. The patient's medical history and biochemical tests upon clinical specimens are equally important.

History and Scientific Foundations

The magnifying power of lenses—curved pieces of glass that can bend light—was first mentioned in the writings of the Roman philosophers Seneca and Pliny the Elder during the first century AD. But they were not put to practical use until the development of spectacles towards the end of the thirteenth century. The Dutch spectacle makers Zaccharias Janssen and his son Hans began to experiment with the magnifying properties of combinations of lenses in the late sixteenth century. News of their work spread to Galileo who produced a primitive microscope in 1609. But it was Anthony van Leewenhoek (1632–1723), the Dutch biologist, who first realized the potential of the microscope for the study of the world of microorganisms.

Looking at specimens from many different sources, he described the appearance of what he called animalcules—namely, yeast, bacteria, and protozoa. During his life, he wrote over 100 papers on his discoveries for both the Royal Society of England and the French academy. The English scientist Robert Hooke went on to confirm van Leewenhoek's work and improved on the design of his light microscope. Towards the end of the nineteenth century, there were some major advances in microscope manufacture. The American pioneer Charles A. Spencer founded an industry based upon instruments with fine optical systems, which are similar to today's basic light microscopes.

Magnifications of 1,250 are achievable with ordinary white light and up to 5,000 if blue light is used. The microscope is a compound optical system. A condensing lens focuses a bright beam of light upon the clinical specimen, which is placed on a platform called a stage and covered with a thin sheet of glass called a cover slip. The objective lens, near the specimen, forms an intermediate magnified image, which is magnified again by the eyepiece, which is close to the eye.

The magnification of a light microscope is limited by the wavelength of the light used to illuminate the specimen. It cannot distinguish objects that are smaller than half the wavelength of the light. Thus, white light has an average wavelength of around 0.55 micrometers, so any two lines that are closer together than half of this—0.275 micrometers—will shown up as a single line and an object that is smaller than this in diameter will show up as a blur, or not at all. Smaller objects, such as viruses, can only be seen with the aid of the electron microscope, in which the beam of illuminating light is replaced by a beam of electrons. Electron microscopes were invented in the late 1940s and are much more expensive than light microscopes. However, they have allowed not only the study of viruses but also of so called biological ultrastructure, which is the fine details of cells, tissues, and their activities in health and disease.

WORDS TO KNOW

ELECTRON: A fundamental particle of matter carrying a single unit of negative electrical charge.

LENS: An almost clear, biconvex structure in the eye that, along with the cornea, helps to focus light onto the retina. It can become infected with inflammation, for instance, when contact lenses are improperly used.

MICROORGANISM: Microorganisms are minute organisms. With the single yet-known exception of a bacterium that is large enough to be seen unaided, individual microorganisms are microscopic in size. To be seen, they must be magnified by an optical or electron microscope. The most common types of microorganisms are viruses, bacteria, blue-green bacteria, some algae, some fungi, yeasts, and protozoans.

STAINING: Staining refers to the use of chemicals to identify target components of microorganisms.

WAVELENGTH: A distance of one cycle of a wave; for instance, the distance between the peaks on adjoining waves that have the same phase.

ANTONI VAN LEEUWENHOEK

Antoni van Leeuwenhoek (1632–1723) who, using just a single lens microscope, was able to describe organisms and tissues, such as bacteria and red blood cells, which were previously not known to exist. In his lifetime, Leeuwenhoek built over 400 microscopes, each one specifically designed for one specimen only. The highest resolution he was able to achieve was about 2 micrometers.

Applications and Research

The chemical and dyestuffs industry that began in Germany in the nineteenth century provided microscopists with a range of stains that made the identification of specific microorganisms much easier. Many of these are still used in modern microbiology laboratories. For instance, Gram's stain distinguishes between bacteria on the basis of the thickness and composition of their cell wall. Gram-positive bacteria, such as *Corynebacterium, listeria* and *Bacillus* species, which have a more complex cell wall, do absorb the stain, trapping it between the layers of this wall. Gram-negative bacteria, such as *Salmonella* and *Shigella* species, do not retain the stain because their walls lack one of the layers.

Ziehl-Nielsen stain is useful for identifying the mycobacteria that cause tuberculosis (TB), and silver methenamine stains chitin, a carbohydrate that is found in the walls of fungi and of *Pneumocystis carinii*, the microorganism that causes an otherwise rare form of pneumonia among HIV/AIDS patients. Giemsa stain is found useful in identifying malaria and other parasites, such as *Leishmania*.

Immunofluorescence is a modern microscopy technique that uses antibodies labeled with a fluorescent marker to bind to specific parts of a microbial pathogen. When the specimen is examined under ultraviolet light, the antibody will glow with a green fluorescence, if the pathogen is present.

Microsocopy aids diagnosis by examining the clinical specimens that are likely to be infected with the causative organism. Therefore, sputum is examined for TB, blood for malaria, stool samples for parasites, and urine to detect bacteria causing urinary tract infections. Viruses are detected, although not routinely, with an electron microscope. There are many other laboratory methods for the detection of microorganisms that complement microscopy.

The optics of a light microscope are adjustable depending on the type of result desired. In light field microscopy, the specimen is visualized by light passing from the condenser through the specimen, while dark field microscopy uses oblique illumination that gives higher resolution of detail, if this is needed. Phase contrast microscopy involves modification to the condenser and objective to give an optical interference pattern in the viewed image. This is very valuable for transparent specimens because it makes details appear darker against a light background.

Impacts and Issues

A microscope must be operated by a skilled scientist, if findings are to be of clinical value. Some microorganisms are easy to identify under the microscope, especially if the specimen is given the correct preparation, including staining. However, it is not always possible to distinguish between a pathogen and a harmless organism present within the same specimen.

But sometimes inadequate preparation will give faulty results and an important diagnosis may be missed. Use of the microscope is also relatively insensitive as a diagnostic tool in that many organisms must be present for a positive result to be given. Infections caused by relatively few bacteria may be missed.

It also takes time and experience to come to a correct conclusion based upon microscope findings. If lab technicians are handling a large number of specimens—from a cervical cancer screening program, for example—they may miss positive findings. Cancer cells have different features under the microscope compared to healthy cells. Sometimes these differences may be missed, leading to a false negative. The microscope is just one of many diagnostic tools at the disposal of the pathology laboratory for the diagnosis of infectious and other diseases.

SEE ALSO *Microorganisms; Rapid Diagnostic Tests for Infectious Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Gillespie, Stephen, and Kathleen Bamford. *Medical Microbiology and Infection at a Glance.* Oxford: Blackwell, 2000.

Web Sites

Molecular Expressions(tm). "Optical Microscopy Primer." March 6, 2005. <http://micro.magnet.fsu.edu/primer/index.html> (accessed May 8, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

ELECTRON MICROSCOPES

There are two types of electron microscope, the transmission electron microscope (TEM) and the scanning electron microscope (SEM). The TEM transmits electrons through an extremely thin sample. The electrons scatter as they collide with the atoms in the sample and form an image on a photographic film below the sample. This process is similar to a medical x ray, where x rays (very short wavelength light) are transmitted through the body and form an image on photographic film behind the body. By contrast, the SEM reflects a narrow beam of electrons off the surface of a sample and detects the reflected electrons. To image a certain area of the sample, the electron beam is scanned in a back and forth motion parallel to the sample surface, similar to the process of mowing a square section of lawn. The chief differences between the two microscopes are that the TEM gives a two-dimensional picture of the interior of the sample while the SEM gives a three-dimensional picture of the surface of the sample. Images produced by SEM are familiar to the public, as in television commercials showing pollen grains or dust mites.

Monkeypox

Introduction

Monkeypox is an infectious viral disease that is very similar to smallpox but milder. There is very low prevalence of this disease, with almost all cases occurring in west and central Africa. The first outbreak in the United States occurred in 2003. This disease causes smallpox-like symptoms, including fever, headache, muscle aches, backache, exhaustion, and discomfort in addition to a papular rash over the body. One symptom common in monkeypox but not smallpox is the swelling of the lymph nodes.

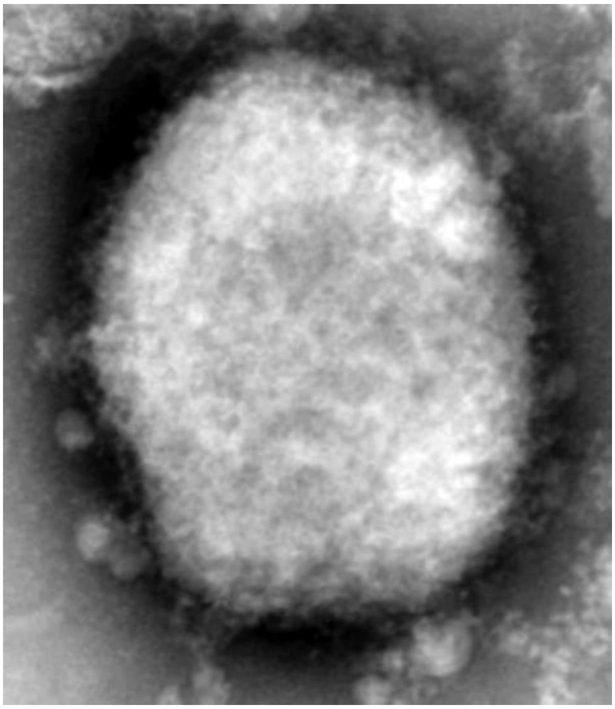
Monkeypox is a zoonosis, a disease humans can contract from an infected animal. It is usually contracted via an animal bite, or by coming into contact with the bodily fluids of infected animals. There is no treatment for monkeypox, but fatality rates are low, with most patients recovering in 2–4 weeks. Monkeypox can be prevented by controlling the transmission of the disease from animals to humans. This involves reporting diseased animals, and taking appropriate action to prevent transfer of the virus to humans.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Monkeypox is a rare disease caused by the monkeypox virus. This virus belongs to the orthopoxvirus group of viruses, which also includes smallpox and cowpox. Monkeypox was first discovered in 1958. It was first identified in laboratory monkeys and later in rodents. The first human case of monkeypox was reported in 1970.

Monkeypox is found in many animals including monkeys, mice, rats, rabbits, and squirrels. All mammals are thought to be susceptible to this virus. Humans become infected with monkeypox when they come into direct contact with an infected animal's bodily fluids—either through an animal bite or by touching its lesions. This virus can also be transmitted by airborne droplets from the respiratory tract. Therefore, face to face contact between an infected animal and a human also can spread this virus. Contact with contaminated items, such as bed sheets, can also spread the disease.

Monkeypox is a milder version of smallpox, presenting similar, although less severe, symptoms. Approximately 12 days after infection with the monkeypox virus, a person will develop an illness characterized by fever, headache, muscle aches, backache, exhaustion, and discomfort. Unlike smallpox, monkeypox also causes the lymph nodes to swell. A few days after these initial symptoms, a papular rash (raised bumps on the skin) begins to form. This rash usually develops first on the face before spreading across the body. The bumps develop, crust



The monkeypox virus. *CDC/Science Source.*

over, and finally fall off. The infection usually lasts 2–4 weeks. Between 1% and 10% of the people in Africa who contract monkeypox will die of the disease. No monkeypox fatalities have been reported outside of Africa.

Scope and Distribution

Monkeypox was first found in Africa. Most cases of monkeypox occur in central and western Africa, particularly in Zaire, and the countries in which it occurs are characterized by tropical rainforest. There is a low prevalence of the disease. Between 1970 and 1986, only 400 cases worldwide were reported by the World Health Organization.

In 2003, the first ever cases of monkeypox occurred in the United States. Of at least 79 reports of monkeypox, 29 were confirmed as true cases of monkeypox. It is argued that the virus was transmitted to humans by tame prairie dogs that were earlier in contact with infected Gambian rats from Africa. The tame prairie dogs probably contracted the virus from the Gambian rats.

Although the virus is similar to smallpox, which devastated populations prior to its eradication, monkeypox is not as transmissible as smallpox. While smallpox spread rapidly from person to person, only one-third of monkeypox cases arise in this way.

The people most at risk of developing monkeypox are those exposed to infected animals or infected patients. This includes investigators of current monkeypox outbreaks, veterinarians, health care workers, laboratory workers, and friends or family of monkeypox patients.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no safe, specific treatment for monkeypox. However, a good health care system, including adequate supportive care for symptoms, as well as good nutrition, aids recovery. The illness normally lasts 2–4 weeks and a person is no longer infectious when the rash lesions are crusted. No fatalities have been reported outside of Africa. However, within rural African regions, where health care is generally poor, monkeypox fatalities may reach 10% of reported cases.

There is no vaccination against monkeypox, although the smallpox vaccination has been found to be effective against monkeypox. However, the CDC does not recommend widespread smallpox vaccination. Instead, use of the vaccine is recommended only for high risk individuals, such as those caring for monkeypox patients, or people who have been in contact with infected animals and are at risk of becoming infected. Vaccination after exposure to the virus has been found to help prevent or reduce the severity of infection. However, vaccination should be avoided in patients with weakened immune systems or patients with life-threatening allergies to the smallpox vaccine and its ingredients, since the smallpox vaccine could be more harmful than the monkeypox virus in these cases.

In order to prevent spread of this disease, infected animals are separated from human populations as soon as possible. These animals are reported to the health department, and appropriate action is taken to keep the animal from transmitting the disease. As contact with fomites (contaminated surfaces such as clothing) and bedding can also result in transmission of the disease, these items must be washed with hot water and detergent to remove the virus.

WORDS TO KNOW

CHAIN OF TRANSMISSION: Chain of transmission refers to the route by which an infection is spread from its source to susceptible host. An example of a chain of transmission is the spread of malaria from an infected animal to humans via mosquitoes.

FOMITE: A fomite is an object or a surface to which an infectious microorganism such as bacteria or viruses can adhere and be transmitted. Transmission is often by touch.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

PAPULAR: A papule is a small, solid bump on the skin; papular means pertaining to or resembling a papule.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

Impacts and Issues

Monkeypox is not a widespread disease. While low mortality outbreaks occur in Africa, few outbreaks have been reported outside of African countries. Prior to 2003, monkeypox had not appeared in the United States and was not considered a threat. Since 2003, there has been one outbreak of monkeypox in the United States and, although the disease was contained, it is now considered a possible threat for United States citizens.

The outbreak in the United States included at least 29 confirmed cases of monkeypox. However, no deaths occurred due to this disease. The effect of this disease on victims in the United States was noticeably milder than its effect on African populations. A better national health care network is thought to have resulted in a more efficient and

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that "past data from Africa suggests that the smallpox vaccine is at least 85% effective in preventing monkeypox." CDC states that: "for most persons who have been exposed to monkeypox, the risks from monkeypox disease are greater than the risks from the smallpox vaccine."

"Studies of monkeypox in West Africa—where people live in remote areas and are medically underserved—showed that the disease killed 1%to 10% of people infected. In contrast, most people who get the smallpox vaccine have only expected minor reactions, like mild fever, tiredness, swollen glands, and redness and itching at the place where the vaccine is given. However the smallpox vaccine does have more serious risks too. Based on past experience, it is estimated that between 1 and 2 people out of every 1 million people vaccinated will die as a result of life-threatening reactions to the vaccine."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*

thus more effective containment of the disease. This health care network includes better nutrition, access to good supportive care, and availability of a vaccine.

Future outbreaks in the United States and in other countries outside of Africa are still possible. However, not only are the chances of transmission throughout a population low, but it is unlikely that a chain of transmission would be sustained within a human community.

There has been some debate within the United States over the potential for monkeypox to be used by terrorists as a biological weapon. However, the efficient containment of this disease during the 2003 outbreak, coupled with the low likelihood that this disease would spread rapidly through the population, significantly reduces its risk as a bioweapon.

SEE ALSO *Bioterrorism; Smallpox; Smallpox Eradication and Storage; Viral Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Huhn, G.D., et al. "Monkeypox in the Western Hemisphere." *New England Journal of Medicine* 350 (April 22, 2004): 1790–1791.

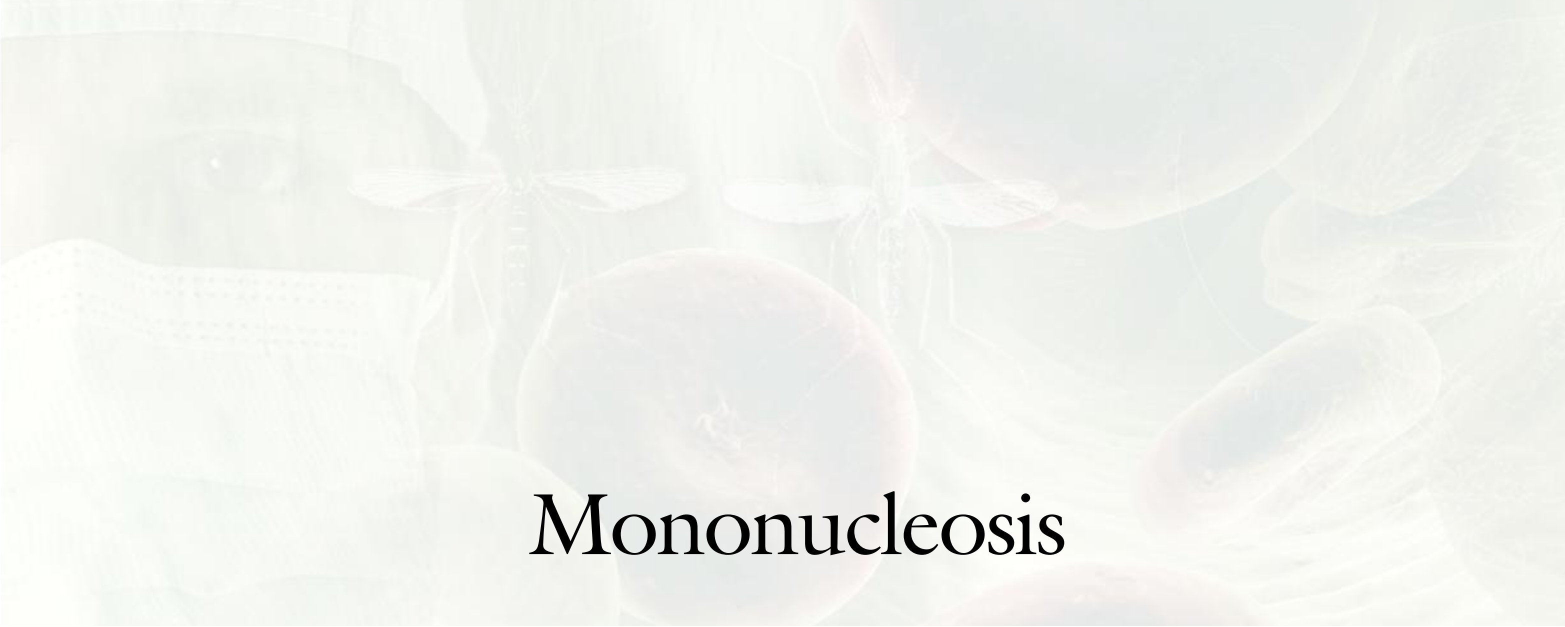
Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Questions and Answers about Monkeypox." November 4, 2003. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/monkeypox/qa.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Illinois Department of Public Health. "Monkeypox." <http://www.idph.state.il.us/health/infect/monkeypox.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Stanford University. "Monkeypox." Winter 2000. <http://www.stanford.edu/group/virus/pox/2000/monkeypox_virus.html> (accessed March 6, 2007).

University of Alabama. "History of Monkeypox." May 25, 2005. <http://www.bioterrorism.uab.edu/EI/monkeypox/history.html> (accessed March 6, 2007).



Mononucleosis

Introduction

Mononucleosis is a self-limiting viral disease caused by the Epstein-Barr virus (EBV). EBV is considered to be one of the most common viruses among humans and most people become infected with the virus at some point during their lives. When infection with EBV occurs during adolescence or young adulthood, the infection develops into mononucleosis 35–50% of the time. The disease occurs worldwide.

EBV infection during early childhood is usually asymptomatic. When an adolescent or young adult develops mononucleosis the symptoms include fever, sore throat, swollen glands, swollen lymph nodes, and general fatigue. In severe cases, patients may display symptoms for months, but usually they will resolve within four weeks of initial infection. There is no vaccine to prevent mononucleosis and treatment of symptoms relies largely on rest and rehydration.

No areas have been identified as having an increased risk of infection and most cases occur sporadically with no reports of outbreaks. The long incubation period of infection coupled with the universal presence of the viral agent makes epidemiological control impractical.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

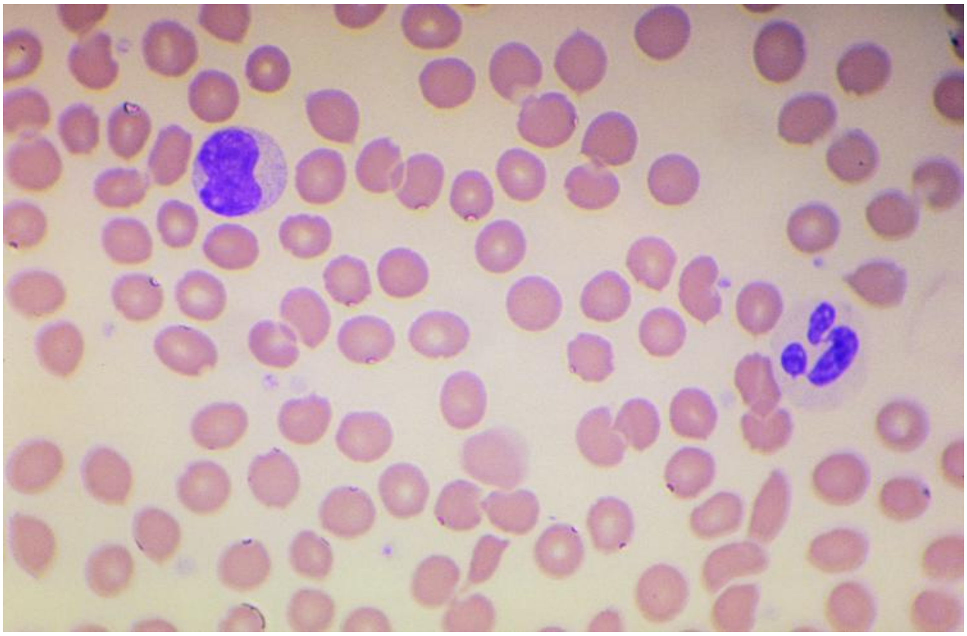
Mononucleosis is also known as Pfeiffer's disease, Filatov's disease, the kissing disease, glandular fever, or, simply, mono. The disease was first termed glandular fever by a group of German physicians in the 1880s due to the obvious swelling of the lymph nodes and glands. In 1920, scientists discovered that the infection was associated with white blood cells called mononuclear leukocytes, and thus it was also called infectious mononucleosis. The causative agent wasn't identified as EBV until 1968, when Michael Epstein (1921–) and Yvonne Barr (1932–) discovered the virus.

EBV is a member of the family of human herpes viruses. It is one of the most common human viruses and is responsible for 90% of mononucleosis cases. Cytomegalovirus is another member of this family of viruses and may cause mononucleosis in a small number of cases. EBV causes mononucleosis by infecting lymphocytes, or white blood cells, which subsequently reduces host immunity for the period of infection. EBV has also been implicated in more severe diseases, such as post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease, Hodgkin's disease, nasopharyngeal carcinoma, and Burkitt's lymphoma.

Mononucleosis has an incubation period of 4–7 weeks, during which symptoms may not be present. Most children are exposed to EBV at a young age, which generally results in a mild, asymptomatic infection. If initial infection occurs during adolescence or young adulthood, symptoms may present as a persistent cold or flu and may include fever, enlarged lymph nodes on the neck, sore throat, muscle aches, fatigue, and white patches on the tonsils. Enlargement of the spleen occurs in 25–75% of cases and poses threat of further complications due to the possibility of rupture. Other symptoms may include abdominal pain, headache, jaundice, depression, weakness, skin rash, and swollen liver. The broad spectrum of possible symptoms means that almost all cases of mononucleosis are unique to each patient.

Generally the infection is self-limiting within 2–4 weeks, but in some cases the course of disease is considered chronic and patients may suffer from symptoms for months, or even years. In most cases, hospitalization is seldom required unless complications, such as ruptured spleen or liver problems, arise. There have been no indicating factors to suggest why some people develop more serious symptoms than others, however it is postulated that external stressors in a patient's life could potentially play a key role. The EBV infection does not necessarily affect only people with compromised immunity and quite often, those that contract mononucleosis appear fit and healthy.

Mononucleosis is considered relatively contagious and is transmitted through contact with saliva or mucus,



Infectious mononucleosis is caused by the Epstein-Barr virus. The patient's blood contains large, atypical mononuclear cells, which are activated lymphocytes. © *Lester V. Bergman/Corbis.*

which can occur by kissing or by the sharing of drinks and utensils. In some instances, transmission has been linked to blood and may occur through transfusion. Infected people may be contagious while symptomatic but even asymptomatic persons can carry and spread the virus for life, and, as such, remain a primary reservoir for transmission.

Scope and Distribution

EBV is found worldwide. Mononucleosis most frequently occurs in young adults between 15 and 17 years of age, but it potentially affects people of all ages. One to three percent of college students are affected annually.

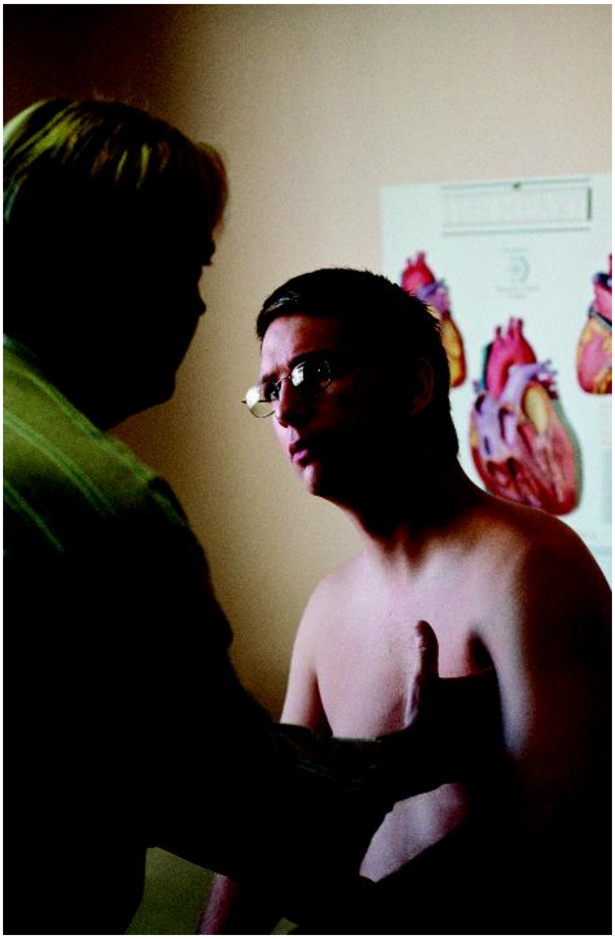
Generally, most people will contract EBV at some stage of their life and in the United States, 95% of 35 to 40 year-olds have previously been infected. In most cases, previous infection will have occurred without recognition or diagnosis. This is due to the fact that during early childhood, infection is mild, usually producing no symptoms, or only mild symptoms similar to the common cold.

The statistics are much the same for developing nations, where 90% of children contract asymptomatic EBV when under five years old. These individuals are then not susceptible to mononucleosis caused by EBV. It is interesting to note that mononucleosis is a disease that more commonly affects people in developed countries than those in developing countries. Variations in social etiquette and acceptable social behaviors may account for such differences, since mononucleosis is a disease that requires direct contact with saliva for transmission, such as through intimate kissing. Another theory accounting for this difference is that in developing countries, individuals are likely to be exposed to EBV while young, and so would develop a mild form of the infection. In developed countries, individuals may be protected from the virus until adolescence. Without the immunity conferred by prior infection, mononucleosis would develop.

There does not appear to be a strong link between the health status of a person and the extent to which they will develop mononucleosis, but potentially people who have a compromised immune systems may be at higher risk of developing mononucleosis when infected with EBV.

The global scope of EBV almost certainly ensures the continued transmission of the disease. Most cases of mononucleosis occur sporadically and outbreaks are rare. In most cases, people presenting symptoms of the disease have no recollection of possible exposure to the virus, and it is uncommon that infection would be transmitted to a group from a single source. In any large adult group environment, over 90% of the people will probably have been exposed to the EBV previously and, in such situations, an outbreak is unlikely.

There are no known ethnic, racial, or sexual factors that predispose a person to develop mononucleosis. However, it is interesting to note that, in developed countries, infection more often occurs in persons belonging to a higher socioeconomic class. This may be attributed to differences in lifestyle and increased opportunities for the social interactions associated with this disease. In addition, the fact that these individuals receive a higher level of protection from childhood



A doctor examines the lymph nodes of a person who has contracted mononucleosis. © *Steve Raymer/Corbis.*

infections may also play a role. The only gender-related factor associated with mononucleosis is that 90% of cases of ruptured spleens occur in males.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis of mononucleosis may be confirmed through serological testing to determine the presence of abnormal white blood cells. The "mono spot" test is a specific test designed to detect the presence of antibodies that have developed as a result of the viral infection. These are known as heterophile antibodies and usually develop about one week after onset of the disease. They peak during the first month of illness, but may persist in the blood for several months and up to one year. Some people infected with mononucleosis may never develop these antibodies and so the test may return a false negative result. Generally, the testing is accurate with false positive results occurring in only a small number of patients.

There is no vaccine or preventative medicine available for mononucleosis, largely due to the fact that it results from a viral infection. However, the severity of other infections related to EBV, in addition to a further understanding of the virus, has prompted scientists to investigate avenues for creating a potential vaccine. It is likely that the vaccine would be targeted towards minimizing the clinical manifestations of primary infection with EBV, rather than towards malignancies associated with the disease.

The fact that EBV infection in early childhood seldom results in development of mononucleosis, while primary infection occurring after adolescence develops into the disease in 35–50% of cases has encouraged researchers. This observation suggests that a vaccine generating a minimized immune response may potentially limit the clinical symptoms of mononucleosis. The limiting factor in this area of research is that such a vaccine requires the use of an attenuated (weakened) virus, which has been deemed unsafe for administration to healthy adolescents. For this reason, it is unlikely that the vaccine would meet strict licensing laws.

In most cases, mononucleosis resolves within four weeks after symptoms first arise, during which time treatments are targeted at the symptoms of the infection. Rest is one of the key elements to recuperation and maintenance of fluid intake is essential. Patients are also advised to avoid heavy activity for at least one month following initial infection to reduce the risk of spleen rupture. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory (NSAID) medication may be used to treat pain and reduce fever and swelling, and dietary supplements may help boost the immune system. Antibiotics may be useful in treating throat infections often accompanying mononucleosis, but will not be effective against EBV. It is not recommended that patients use aspirin due to the possibility of developing Reye's syndrome, a potentially fatal disease.

The typically benign and self-limiting course of mononucleosis, in addition to the ubiquitous nature of the virus, makes prevention virtually impossible. With over 90% of the western adult population returning positive tests for previous infection, person-to-person infection remains highly likely in societies worldwide.

Prevention of the disease may not be beneficial. As noted, childhood infection with EBV typically results in few or no symptoms. In contrast, infection during adolescence tends to result in a more serious disease. This suggests that intentional early primary exposure could potentially be used as a method of preventing the later onset of mononucleosis.

Impacts and Issues

The statistics show that inevitably, at some stage of their life, almost the entire world population will be exposed to, contract, and harbor the Epstein-Barr virus. However, the majority of people who encounter infection during early childhood will not even develop

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

CHRONIC FATIGUE SYNDROME: Chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) is a condition that causes extreme tiredness. People with CFS have debilitating fatigue that lasts for six months or longer. They also have many other symptoms. Some of these symptoms are pain in the joints and muscles, headache, and sore throat. CFS appears to result from a combination of factors.

EPSTEIN BARR VIRUS (EBV): Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) is part of the family of human herpes viruses. Infectious mononucleosis (IM) is the most common disease manifestation of this virus, which once established in the host, can never be completely eradicated. Very little can be done to treat EBV; most methods can only alleviate resultant symptoms.

MONO SPOT TEST: The mononucleosis (mono) spot test is a blood test used to check for infection with the Epstein-Barr virus, which causes mononucleosis.

MONONUCLEAR LEUKOCYTE: A mononuclear leukocyte is a type of white blood cell active in the immune system.

mononucleosis. It is the omnipresence of EBV that prevents the eradication of the infection.

The impact of mononucleosis may be seen on a personal level. Severe cases may keep patients in bed and away from their normal activities for many weeks or even months. This is a particular problem for students, since they may miss classes during this time. In addition, being removed from social groups for extended periods may generate emotional issues among adolescents. This is especially significant considering that the disease commonly occurs at an important time in social development.

In addition, social pressures can occur when adults contract mononucleosis. Adults may lose income due to an inability to work, which may put economic pressures on families and further strain family relationships. Such concerns may lead individuals to shorten their recovery period and return to their regular activities earlier than recommended. In these cases, symptoms of fatigue may persist for longer than usual and result in lower productivity.

In some chronic cases of the disease, patients suffer symptoms for more than six months and sometimes for years. In many chronic cases, it is considered that the mononucleosis contributed to the development of chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS). Although the exact causes of CFS have not been identified, approximately 10% of mononucleosis patients will go on to suffer from it and so CFS is considered a possible side effect of the disease. In these situations, people are unable to work, study, or socialize for long periods of time and, sometimes, permanently.

Cases of mononucleosis are generally much more severe in people with compromised immunity, and the complications that develop from such infections may prove fatal. Immunocompromised individuals include those who have undergone organ or marrow transplants, individuals receiving chemotherapy, and those with autoimmune diseases. The development of an immune disorder later in life may also result in a severe relapse of mononucleosis infection among people who previously only carried the virus in a latent form. While fatalities resulting from mononucleosis were previously a rare occurrence, the growing numbers of people suffering from immune disorders makes this a potentially significant threat in the future.

Bone marrow has been identified as one site of latent EBV persistence within the body. It has also been observed that an EBV-positive individual who receives a bone marrow transplant from an EBV-negative donor is found to be EBV-negative following transplantation. This means that this recipient is again susceptible to infection and most likely, if the transplant occurs during adulthood, will develop mononucleosis. This raises a new concern—the loss of immunity to certain diseases following transplantation. This could become a more serious problem as organ transplantation becomes a more common procedure.

Primary Source Connection

A diagnosis of mononucleosis can mean a period of convalescence for about two months, and that is usually a difficult order for an otherwise healthy teenager or young adult, who are the prime ages for infection with the viruses that cause mono. In the following article from the *FDA Consumer*, author Judith Levine Willis discusses mono and it's implications for physical and social limitations for young people. At the time the article was published in 1998, Judith Levine Willis was on the public affairs staff of the Food and Drug Administration. She has since authored, as Judith Levine, books about gender, health, and consumer issues.

Mono: Tough for Teens and Twenty-Somethings

Missed parties. Postponed exams. Sitting out a season of team sports. And loneliness. These are a few of the ways that scourge of high school and college students known as "mono" can affect your life.

The disease whose medical name is infectious mononucleosis is most common in people 10 to 35 years old, with its peak incidence in those 15 to 17 years old. Only 50 people out of 100,000 in the general population get mono, but it strikes as many as 2 out of 1,000 teens and twenty-somethings, especially those in high school, college, and the military. While mono is not usually considered a serious illness, it may have serious complications. Without a doubt your lifestyle will change for a few months.

You've probably heard people call mono the "kissing disease." But if your social life is in a slump, you may wonder, "How did I get this 'kissing disease'when I haven't kissed anyone romantically recently?"

Here's how. Mono is usually transmitted though saliva and mucus—which is where the "kissing disease" nickname comes from. But the kissing or close contact that transmits the disease doesn't happen right before you get sick. The virus that causes mono has a long incubation period: 30 to 50 days from the time you're exposed to it to the time you get sick. In addition, the virus can be transmitted in other ways, such as sipping from the same straw or glass as an infected person—or even being close when the person coughs or sneezes. Also, some people can have the virus in their systems without ever having symptoms and you can still catch it from them.

Two viruses can cause mono: Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) and cytomegalovirus (CMV). Both viruses are in the herpes family, whose other members include viruses responsible for cold sores and chickenpox.

EBV causes 85 percent of mono cases. About half of all children are infected with EBV before they're 5, but at that young age, it usually doesn't cause any symptoms. If you don't become infected with EBV until you're a teen or older, you're more likely to develop mono symptoms. After you're infected, the virus stays with you for life, but usually doesn't cause any additional symptoms. Still, every now and then you may produce viral particles in your saliva that can transmit the virus to other people, even though you feel perfectly fine. By age 40, 85 to 90 percent of Americans have EBV antibodies, indicating they have the virus in their systems and are immune to further EBV infection.

CMV is also a very common virus. About 85 percent of the U.S. population is infected with it by the time they reach adulthood. As with EBV, CMV is frequently symptomless, and mono most often results when infection occurs in the teens and 20s. Sore throat is less common in people who have CMV mono than in those infected with EBV.

As another one of its nicknames—glandular fever—implies, perhaps the most distinguishing mono symptom is enlarged glands or lymph nodes, especially in the neck, but also in the armpit and groin.

Another common mono symptom is fever. A temperature as high as 39.5 degrees Celsius (103 degrees Fahrenheit) is not uncommon. Other symptoms include a tired achy feeling, appetite loss, white patches on the back of the throat, and tonsillitis.

"My tonsils got so swollen they were touching each other in back," says Heidi Palombo of Annandale, Va., who had mono when she was a senior in college. She recalls her throat being "so hot and swollen that the only thing that felt good was ice water."

Cold drinks and frozen desserts are both ways to relieve sore throat symptoms. Doctors also recommend gargling with saltwater (about half a teaspoon salt to 8 ounces of warm water) and sucking on throat lozenges available over the counter in pharmacies and other stores. If throat or tonsils are infected, a throat culture should be taken so the doctor can prescribe an appropriate antibiotic. Ampicillin is usually not recommended because it sometimes causes a rash that can be confused with the pink, measleslike rash that 1 out of 5 mono patients develops.

For fever and achiness, you can take acetaminophen (marketed as Tylenol, Datril and others) or ibuprofen (marketed as Advil, Motrin, Nuprin, and others). If you're under 20, don't take aspirin unless your doctor approves it. In children and teens, aspirin taken for viral illnesses has been associated with the potentially fatal disease Reye syndrome. Sometimes a person with mono may have trouble breathing because of swelling in the throat, and doctors have to use other medications and treatment. A person who has mono—or those caring for the person—should contact a doctor immediately if the person starts having breathing problems.

Some people with mono become overly sensitive to light and about half develop enlargement of the spleen, usually two to three weeks after they first become sick. Mild enlargement of the liver may also occur.

Whether or not the spleen is enlarged, people who have mono should not lift heavy objects or exercise vigorously—including participating in contact sports—for two months after they get sick, because these activities increase the risk of rupturing the spleen, which can be life-threatening. If you have mono and get a severe sharp, sudden pain on the left side of your upper abdomen, go to an emergency room or call 911 immediately.

Because its symptoms can be very similar to those of other illnesses, doctors often recommend tests to find out exactly what the problem is.

"I was misdiagnosed at first and told I was bit by a spider," writes John L. Gipson, of Kansas City, Mo., in a note he posted to a Website. "That's what I thought because I had killed a spider in my room. I figured I'd been bitten by a spider in my sleep. A few days after. I had no energy, a fever. and those pea-sized bumps on the back of my neck." Gipson returned to his doctor, who did blood tests and diagnosed mononucleosis.

Other diagnostic problems can result because enlarged lymphocytes, a type of white cell, are common with mono, but can also be a symptom of leukemia. Blood tests can distinguish between the type of white cell seen in leukemia and that with mono.

If your throat is sore, having a throat culture is usually a good idea for several reasons. First, the symptoms of mono and strep infection (including that caused by Strep-A, a particularly serious form of strep) are very similar. Second, strep throat or other throat infections can develop anytime during or shortly after in the disease. In any case, it's important that throat infections be diagnosed as soon as possible and treated with antibiotics that can kill the organism responsible for the infection.

The test most commonly used to tell whether you have mono or some other ailment is the mononucleosis spot test. This blood test detects the antibodies (proteins) that the body makes to fight EBV or CMV. Because it takes a while for antibodies to develop after infection, your doctor may need to order or repeat the test one to two weeks after you develop symptoms. At that time the test is about 85 percent accurate.

Other tests your doctor might order include a complete blood count (CBC) to see if your blood platelet count is lower than normal and if lymphocytes are abnormal, and a chemistry panel to see if liver enzymes are abnormal.

Bed rest is the most important treatment for uncomplicated mono. It's also important to drink plenty of fluids. Mono is not usually a reason to quarantine students. Many people are already immune to the viruses that cause it. But if you have mono you'll want to stay in bed and out of classes for several days, until the fever goes down and other symptoms abate. Even when you've started to get better, you can expect to have to curtail your activities for several weeks, and it can take two to three months or more until you feel your old self again.

The author of this article had mono herself when she was 16. Though she didn't mind getting out of all that homework (or at least putting it off), having to delay finals only added to her anxiety about college applications that many high school juniors experience. And then there was that guy who never called again.

When you add the time spent recuperating to the fact that most people are not exactly anxious to get close to a person with mono, you can understand why some students find themselves combating loneliness on top of their other troubles.

Getting through mono may be both challenging and depressing—and seem to take forever. But if you rest when your body tells you to, you can lessen the chances of complications and get back your life.

Judith Levine Willis

WILLIS, JUDITH LEVINE. "MONO: TOUGH FOR TEENS AND TWENTY-SOMETHINGS." *FDA CONSUMER* (MAY, JUNE 1998): 32,3.

See Also *Blood Supply and Infectious Disease; Cancer and Infectious Disease; Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Demographics and Infectious Disease; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Collier, L., and J. Oxford. *Human Virology.* New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2004.

Tselis, A., and H.B. Jenson. *Epstein-Barr Virus.* New York: Taylor & Francis, 2006.

Umar, C.S. *New Developments in Epstein-Barr Virus Research.* New York: Nova Science Publishers, 2006.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Epstein-Barr Virus and Infectious Mononucleosis." 2007. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/diseases/ebv.htm> (accessed March 7, 2007).

Mosquito-borne Diseases

Introduction

Mosquitoes have harmed more humans than any other group of insects. The scientific names conveyed upon mosquitoes reflect the torment that they can cause: *Psorophora horrida*, *Culex perfidiosus*, *Mansonia perturbans*, *Aedes vexans*, and *Aedes tormentor*. However, the annoyance caused by mosquitoes pales in comparison to the widespread suffering and millions of deaths that these insects cause. These flies from the order Diptera transmit some of the most devastating diseases.

There are over 2,500 different species of mosquitoes throughout the world. The vast majority of mosquitoes are harmless to humans, feeding only on nectar or other plant juices. Only females of some species consume blood. These mosquitoes transmit such diseases as malaria, yellow fever, dengue, filariasis and encephalitis (St. Louis encephalitis [SLE], Western Equine encephalitis [WEE], LaCrosse encephalitis [LAC], Japanese encephalitis [JE], Eastern Equine encephalitis [EEE] and West Nile virus [WNV]) to humans and to animals.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

A vector-borne disease results from an infection transmitted to humans and other animals by blood-feeding

The female *Aedes aegypti* mosquito is primarily responsible for the spread of dengue fever. *Aedes aegypti* is a domestic, day-biting mosquito that prefers to feed on humans. Martin Dohrn/Photo Researchers, Inc.

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

Developed during the 1940s, the pesticide dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT) was used to fight malaria and other insect-borne diseases—and was considered by many to be a so-called miracle pesticide. During three decades of use, approximately 675,000 tons of DDT were applied in the United States.

Although DDT can greatly reduce the burden of mosquito-borne disease in the 1960s, DDT use remains controversial. DDT is an environmentally persistent chlorinated hydrocarbon that accumulates in the food chain and has significant environmental consequences that offset its benefits in the control of disease. The pesticide was banned in many developed nations, including the United States since 1972, because of its potential to damage ecosystems and wildlife. It is, however, still used for disease control in some countries. Proponents of DDT use assert that its environmental impact has been overstated, and that prohibitions on DDT use and manufacturing may have contributed to worldwide deaths from mosquito-borne diseases over the past several decades. It is again recommended for limited use in targeted areas because of its effectiveness in removing this severe public health hazard. Others assert that safer insecticides than DDT should be used in all locations.

American biologist and author Rachel Louise Carson (1907–1964), was a seminal figure in the environmental movement during the 1950s and early 1960s. Carson's book *Silent Spring* was an indictment of overzealous pesticide use and its effects on the environment, was published in 1962 and quickly became a controversial and enduring contribution to the environmental literature. Carson argued against indiscriminate pesticide use without consideration of its ecological consequences. Largely as a result of *Silent Spring*, DDT was banned by the United States in 1972 and is currently illegal in many other countries.

anthropods, such as mosquitoes. Female mosquitoes take a blood meal by bending back a troughlike protective scabbard to permit other mouthparts to penetrate the skin. The piercing "needle" is a long tube composed of six long, separate, stilettolike stylets wet with saliva that adhere to each other. The tube is traversed by two channels, a wide one through which the blood is sucked into the digestive system and a narrow one through which saliva containing an anticoagulant can be injected into the vertebrate host. Pathogens are transmitted from the mosquito to the host at this point.

In 1878, English parasitologist Patrick Manson discovered the link between bloodsucking insects and disease. European and American infectious disease experts subsequently focused on the most common mosquito-borne diseases in these regions: malaria and yellow. The rapid worldwide movement of goods and people has also helped mosquitoes to cross the globe. By the end of the twentieth century, scientists battled mosquito-borne diseases that were worldwide plagues.

West Nile fever, caused by a mosquito-borne virus related to yellow fever, made its first appearance in the Western Hemisphere in New York City in 1999. First isolated and identified in Uganda in 1937, West Nile came to the United States via an infected mosquito, a sick person, or an infected bird. A human source is improbable because human blood generally contains too little virus to contaminate a mosquito. It may have come to New York in mosquitoes that stowed away on a airplane. However, the most likely scenario is that it arrived in illegally imported birds that had been not been quarantined before entering the country. It has subsequently spread by migrating birds, and is now present in all 48 contiguous states in the U.S.

Scope and Distribution

Malaria occurs in tropical areas of Central and South America, Africa, Asia, and the East Indies. Until the mid-twentieth century, it was far more widespread. Malaria was established in virtually all subtropical and tropical areas as well as some temperate areas. Malaria receded because breeding sites for mosquitoes were drained for agricultural and industrial purposes. Meanwhile, people moved into in better housing that was less open to mosquitoes. While the disease has been all but obliterated from most of the developed world, it continues to kill elsewhere. More than one million people, mostly in Africa, die annually from malaria with a child succumbing every 30 seconds.

Several different species of the *Aedes* and *Haemogogus* (South America only) mosquitoes transmit the yellow fever virus. While control programs successfully eradicated mosquito habitats in the past, particularly in South America, these programs have lapsed. As a result, mosquito populations have jumped and there is an accompanying rise in the risk of yellow fever epidemics. There are 200,000 estimated cases of yellow fever with 30,000 per year. However, the World Health Organization (WHO) suspects that yellow fever may be underreported.

Dengue is also spread by the Aedes mosquito. Dengue haemorrhagic fever (DHF) is a potentially lethal complication. WHO estimated in 2007 that there were 50 million cases of dengue annually, but the disease is rapidly spreading worldwide. DHF, mostly found in Asia, is a leading cause of hospitalization among children with over 500,000 requiring such care annually.

Treatment and Prevention

The best method of preventing mosquito-borne diseases is to kill mosquitoes. To eradicate mosquitoes, public health experts advise emptying containers of standing water that attract egg-laying females. Some governments kill mosquitoes through insecticide spraying programs or swamp-draining efforts. Exposure to mosquito-borne diseases can be minimized by limiting outdoor movement. Screens are effective at keeping mosquitoes from entering homes.

Infection with the parasite that causes malaria is treated with chloroquine, unless the parasite is resistant to this medication, in which case quinine sulfate and antibiotic combinations are used. As many other mosquito-borne diseases are viral in nature, treatment is mostly supportive or in some cases, involves antiviral medications.

Vaccines are available to protect against Japanese encephalitis and yellow fever. However, vaccine development for dengue and DHF is difficult because any of four different viruses may cause disease. Protection against only one or two dengue viruses could actually increase the risk of more serious illness. Other vaccines are in development. As of 2005, at least one potential vaccine for malaria was ready for clinical trial in humans.

Impacts and Issues

In some regions, mosquitoes have shown the ability to become resistant to pesticides. *Anopheles* mosquitoes in some areas are no longer killed by applications of DDT. Pesticide can also be prohibitively expensive. In 2007, Uganda announced that it could not spray DDT to fight malaria because it had failed to raise the 400 million United States dollars necessary to purchase the pesticide. An estimated 320 Ugandans die of malaria daily.

Several international organizations and charities have been instrumental in the fight against mosquito-borne diseases. The Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation supports mosquito-borne disease research and prevention efforts worldwide, including the development of effective and affordable drugs, improvement of existing preventative measures, and vaccine development. RAPIDS (Reaching HIV-Affected People with Integrated Development and Support), a consortium of several organizations, targets its efforts against mosquito-borne diseases in HIV/AIDS affected communities in Zambia. RAPIDS distributes protective netting and provides in-home follow-up care, ensuring that mosquito netting is properly used.

Promotion of specific sanitation measures is underway in areas where mosquito-borne diseases pose public health threats. Biological control methods, such as wasps that kill mosquitoes, are also being investigated. Researchers are also developing and investigating the use of genetically engineered mosquitoes to fight malaria. The modified mosquitoes are resistant to malaria, and breed at a faster rate than unmodified, non-resistant mosquitoes. Researchers hope that such mosquitoes can be introduced into malaria-prone regions and overtake wild disease-carrying mosquito populations. However, little is known about the impact genetically engineered mosquitoes could have on the transmission or development of other diseases.

Outdoor time-released insecticide misting systems are increasing in popularity, particularly in the United States, as means of controlling mosquitoes. These systems utilize various synergized formulations of natural pyrethrins or synthetic pyrethroids that are dispensed into the environment at intervals determined by the user. Some systems

WORDS TO KNOW

BEDNETS: A type of netting that provides protection from diseases caused by insects such as flies and mosquitoes. It is often used while sleeping to prevent insects from biting while still allowing air to flow through its mesh structure.

GENETIC ENGINEERING: Genetic engineering is the altering of the genetic material of living cells in order to make them capable of producing new substances or performing new functions. When the genetic material within the living cells (i.e., genes) is working properly, the human body can develop and function smoothly. However, should a single gene—even a tiny segment of a gene go awry—the effect can be dramatic: deformities, disease, and even death.

INSECTICIDE: A chemical substance used to kill insects.

MOSQUITO COILS: Mosquito coils are spirals of inflammable paste that, when burned, steadily release insect repellent into the air. They often used in Asia, where many coils release octachlorodipropyl ether, which can cause lung cancer.

MOSQUITO NETTING: Fine meshes or nets hung around occupied spaces, especially beds, to keep out disease-carrying mosquitoes are called mosquito netting. Mosquito netting is a cost-effective way of preventing malaria.

PESTICIDE: Substances used to reduce the abundance of pests, any living thing that causes injury or disease to crops.

also utilize minimum risk pesticides to control or repel mosquitoes. The American Mosquito Control Association (AMCA) opposes this method of dispensing pesticides as inconsistent with the Integrated Mosquito Management practices approved by the Environmental Protection Agency as part of the Pesticide Environmental Stewardship Program. The AMCA specifically fears unnecessary insecticide use, indiscriminate killing of beneficial insects, pesticide exposure to humans, and promotion of insecticide resistance.

The regular use of insecticide-impregnated curtains and bednets can reduce the rate of such diseases, particularly among children. The success of using bednets for sustained mosquito control is dependent upon regular treatment of the nets with pyrethroid insecticide once or twice a year. Dip-it-yourself kits have been distributed for this purpose in some countries, and researchers are developing better, longer-lasting insecticide-impregnated fabrics for netting, drapery, and clothing.

Travelers visiting areas known for major outbreaks of mosquito-borne diseases are advised to use mosquito repellent insecticide. The use of mosquito coils, and protective clothing and bedding is also often recommended, along with available vaccinations.

IN CONTEXT: LIVING WITH DISEASE

It was once argued that malaria could be eradicated. The draining of marshlands and the use of the pesticide DDT dramatically reduced the six million cases a year that the U.S. experienced in the first decades of the twentieth century. By 1960, the World Health Organization (WHO) had established antimalarial policies in 100 nations and was confident that the disease could be eradicated.

A number of sociopolitical factors, however, combined to slow the advance of medicine. People became complacent about malaria and public health programs were allowed to falter and lapse. Without outside aid, poor nations did not have the money for malarial control methods. Additionally, countries torn by war focused resources on fighting, not on medical care. Meanwhile, malarial microbes evolved in response to drugs, while the ready availability of air travel brought new strains into areas that lacked immunity to them. Global warming is expected to bring malaria back to northern Europe, and it never completely left southern Europe or the United States. WHO now forecasts a 16 percent growth rate in the disease per year.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

In October 2006 the Division of Global Migration and Quarantine at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) issued an updated list of measures to prevent bites from mosquitoes, ticks, fleas and other insects and arthropods. The preventative measures were designed to "reduce the possibility of being bitten by insects or arthropods that can transmit diseases (vector-borne), such as malaria, dengue, and tickborne encephalitis (TBE)." CDV recommendation include:

- Use an insect repellent on exposed skin to repel mosquitoes, ticks, fleas and other arthropods. EPA-registered repellents include products containing DEET (N,N-diethylmetatoluamide) and picaridin (KBR 3023). DEET concentrations of 30% to 50% are effective for several hours. Picaridin, available at 7% and 15 % concentrations, needs more frequent application. DEET formulations as high as 50% are recommended for both adults and children over 2 months of age.
- Protect infants less than 2 months of age by using a carrier draped with mosquito netting with an elastic edge for a tight fit.
- When using sunscreen, apply sunscreen first and then repellent. Repellent should be washed off at the end of the day before going to bed.
- Wear long-sleeved shirts which should be tucked in, long pants, and hats to cover exposed skin. When you visit areas with ticks and fleas, wear boots, not sandals, and tuck pants into socks.
- Inspect your body and clothing for ticks during outdoor activity and at the end of the day. Wear light-colored or white clothing so ticks can be more easily seen. Removing ticks right away can prevent some infections.
- Apply permethrin-containing (e.g., Permanone) or other insect repellents to clothing, shoes, tents, mosquito nets, and other gear for greater protection. Permethrin is not labeled for use directly on skin. Most repellent is generally removed from clothing and gear by a single washing, but permethrin-treated clothing is effective for up to 5 washings.
- Be aware that mosquitoes that transmit malaria are most active during twilight periods (dawn and in the evening).
- Stay in air-conditioned or well-screened housing, and/or sleep under an insecticide treated bed net. Bed nets should be tucked under mattresses and can be sprayed with a repellent if not already treated with an insecticide. Daytime biters include mosquitoes that transmit dengue and chikungunya viruses and sand flies that transmit leishmaniasis.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Global Migration and Quarantine.*

An elderly Indonesian woman covers her nose as a health department worker sprays pesticide in a slum area of Jakarta during an outbreak of the dengue fever in 2004. *© Dadang Tri/Reuters/Corbis.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Speilman, Andrew, and Michael D'Antonio. *Mosquito: A Natural History of Our Most Persistent and Deadly Foe.* New York: Hyperion, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases. "Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases." February 23, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/> (accessed April 25, 2007).

Caryn E. Neumann

MRSa

Introduction

MRSa is an acronym for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, which is a particular type (strain) of *S. aureus.* The bacterium is important because of its antibiotic resistance and because it can cause a number of severe diseases. One such disease is necrotizing fasciitis, more popularily known as "flesh-eating disease." MRSa is also known as oxacillin-resistant *S. aureus* (oxacillin is another antibiotic) and multiple-resistant *S. aureus.*

Until the beginning of this century, MRSa was almost exclusively found in hospitals, because the tremendous antibiotic use in hospitals provided a powerful selection pressure, that is, an environment where only the most resiliant bacteria could survive. In 2007, the prevalence of MRSa in environments outside of the hospital is increasing. This form of the bacterium (whether it is different from the hospital form of MRSa is not known) has been designated as community associated-MRSa or CA-MRSa.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

MRSa is resistant to methicillin, a synthetic penicillin antibiotic. It is also resistant to all of the penicillin class of antibiotics. This wide range of resistance makes the bacterium hard to treat, since commonly used antibiotics are will not kill it.

MRSa has been evident almost as long as methicillin has been in use. Methicillin was introduced in 1959 to treat strains of *S. aureus* that had developed resistance to penicillin. By chemically altering the structure of penicillin, scientists were able to produce methicillin, and the penicillin-resistant *S. aureus* were killed by the newly synthesized antibiotic. But this beneficial effect did not last long. By 1961, MRSa were making a comeback, despite the use of methicillin in the United Kingdom (UK). Soon, reports of MRSa came from other countries in Europe, Japan, Australia, and North America. By 2005, thousands of hospital deaths in the UK were caused by MRSa, and the organism accounted for almost 50% of all hospital-acquired infections.

Methicillin resistance is caused by the presence of a gene (a section of genetic material that codes for the production of a protein or other compound) that codes for a protein that binds to the antibiotic and prevents the antibiotic from entering the bacteria. The *S. aureus* that is susceptible to methicillin does not have this gene. It is the transfer of this gene from one bacterium to another that has spread the resistance through populations of *Staphylococcus* around the globe.

The spread of MRSa has been aided by the fact that *S. aureus* is normally found in the environment. The

Hospital doctors use a disinfectant to clean their hands. The disinfectant will reduce the amount of bacteria on their hands and is more convenient to use than a sink. *John Cole/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

bacterium is present in soil and in our bodies. Studies of the bacteria present in certain areas of the body have revealed that approximately 30% of healthy adults harbor *S. aureus*, including MRSa, on the surface of their skin or in other places, like their noses. In these environments, the bacterium is harmless. But, if MRSa gets into a wound and/or if a person's immune system is not functioning efficiently, illness can result.

MRSa is sometimes capable of causing necrotizing fasciitis, an extremely invasive disease that progresses rapidly. Sometimes amputation of the infected limb is the only way to save the patient's life. MRSa can also carry genes that code for the production of potent toxins. If these toxins get into the bloodstream, the resulting effects can be devastating to the body.

WORDS TO KNOW

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

RESISTANCE: Immunity developed within a species (especially bacteria) via evolution to an antibiotic or other drug. For example, in bacteria, the acquisition of genetic mutations that render the bacteria invulnerable to the action of antibiotics.

SELECTION PRESSURE: Selection pressure refers to factors that influence the evolution of an organism. An example is the overuse of antibiotics, which provides a selection pressure for the development of antibiotic resistance in bacteria.

■ Scope and Distribution

Since *S. aureus* has a worldwide distribution, it is not surprising that MRSa has a similar distribution. In the past, MRSa was usually found in hospitals and athletic facilities, since both are places where abrasions, cuts, and scrapes occur. In 2007, however, MRSa is becoming increasingly prevalent in the community, which raises the possibility that certain illnesses, such as necrotizing fasciitis, may become more common.

It is estimated that over 50 million people around the globe carry MRSa in their bodies. In the United States, about 32% of people are colonized with *S. aureus* in their noses. Colonization refers to bacteria (or other pathogens) that establish a presence on a tissue. Fewer than one percent of otherwise healthy individuals colonized with MRSa will develop a MRSa-related disease.

Having another infection can increase the likelihood of developing a MRSa infection. For example, individuals with cystic fibrosis often have recurring lung infections that require treatment with a number of different antibiotics. This situation increases the risk that MRSa will be able to gain a foothold in these patients.

Ominously, in February of 2007, an article appeared in *Clinical & Infectious Disease* detailing the person-to-person spread of CA-MRSa via sexual contact. This is the first time this route of transmission has been reported for MRSa.

■ Treatment and Prevention

Treating MRSa is challenging. Only a few antibiotics remain effective against the bacterium. One of these is vancomycin. It has the disadvantage of not being absorbed easily into the body; it cannot be given by mouth because there will be little active compound left by the time the antibiotic circulates through the bloodstream to the site of the infection. Rather, vancomycin must be given intravenously—via a needle inserted into a vein. This usually means that a person being treated must be hospitalized.

The search continues for new antibiotics that will be effective against MRSa. This research is literally a race against time. The development of new antibiotics must at least keep pace with the evolution of resistance by MRSa.

Another potential treatment option is called phage therapy. Phage is short for bacteriophage, which is a virus that specifically infects and forms new phage particles inside of a bacterium. The phage-bacterium association is specific—a certain type of phage infects a certain type of bacterium. In doing so, the phage ultimately destroys the bacterial cell. Scientists are experimenting with a phage that targets MRSa. If this technique proves successful, it would be a powerful treatment, since resistance to a phage does not typically develop.

Contact precautions, including handwashing, are critical in preventing MRSa infection. In a hospital, washing hands before and after caring for a patient is the most important method of preventing the spread of MRSa from patient to patient. Many hospitals now have alcohol-based hand cleansers in each room, sometimes right by each patient's bed. Washing with an alcohol-based wash takes only a few seconds, and, thus, is easier for busy health care providers to do. Moreover, MRSa is usually sensitive to alcohol. Compliance with handwashing precautions is surprisingly low. Surveys in the United States and Europe have confirmed that health care

IN CONTEXT: EXPERT ADVICE FOR REAL-WORLD QUESTIONS

Question: Can I get a staph or MRSA infection at my health club?

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states, "In the outbreaks of MRSA, the environment has not played a significant role in the transmission of MRSA. MRSA is transmitted most frequently by direct skin-to-skin contact. You can protect yourself from infections by:

- practicing good hygiene (e.g., keeping your hands clean by washing with soap and water or using an alcohol-based hand rub and showering after working out);
- covering any open skin areas such as abrasions or cuts with a clean dry bandage;
- avoiding sharing personal items such as towels or razors;
- using a barrier (e.g., clothing or a towel) between your skin and shared equipment;
- and wiping surfaces of equipment with disinfectant before and after use."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). February, 2007.*

providers only wash their hands about half as much as is optimum for reducing the spread of infection. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention has estimated that properly performed handwashing could save 30,000 lives a year that are currently lost due to hospital-acquired infections, including MRSa infections.

Impacts and Issues

Studies have indicated that a hospitalized patient who acquires MRSa is about five times more likely to die than a patient in the same hospital that does not carry the bacterium.

Variants of MRSa are appearing that are resistant even to vancomycin. These new forms of the bacterium, which are called vancomycin intermediate-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, are especially troublesome, as they can be treated with only a very few compounds. With time, further resistance could develop, and, if newer and more powerful (and likely more expensive) antibacterial agents have not been discovered and tested, there could be no means of combating the infections.

In 2006, researchers published a paper in *Nature* describing the development of a new antibiotic produced by a fungus. This antibiotic, called platensimycin, successfully treats MRSa infections, but further preclinical studies and human clinical trials are necessary before the drug can be approved for human use.

Community-acquired MRSa is a great concern. The organism tends to more aggressively invade tissues and produces a more severe infection than that produced by hospital-acquired MRSa, for reasons that are not yet clear. In addition, it has been discovered that MRSa can grow and divide inside another microscopic organism called *Acanthamoeba*. *Acanthamoeba* can become airborne and drift for a considerable distance on air currents. This may mean that MRSa is acquiring the ability to spread great distances, which would make treatment even harder.

SEE ALSO *Antibiotic Resistance; Contact Precautions; Resistant Organisms.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Brunelle, Lynn, and Barbara Ravage. *Bacteria.* Milwaukee, WI: Gareth Stevens Publishing, 2003.

DiClaudio, Dennis. *The Hypochondriac's Pocket Guide to Horrible Diseases You Probably Already Have.* New York: Bloomsbury, 2005.

Roemmele, Jacqueline A., and Donna Batdorff. *Surviving the Flesh-eating Bacteria: Understanding, Preventing, Treating, and Living with Necrotizing Fascitis.* New York: Avery, 2003.

Periodicals

Cook, H., et al. "Heterosexual Transmission of Community-associated Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus." *Clinical & Infectious Disease* (2007) 44: 410–413.

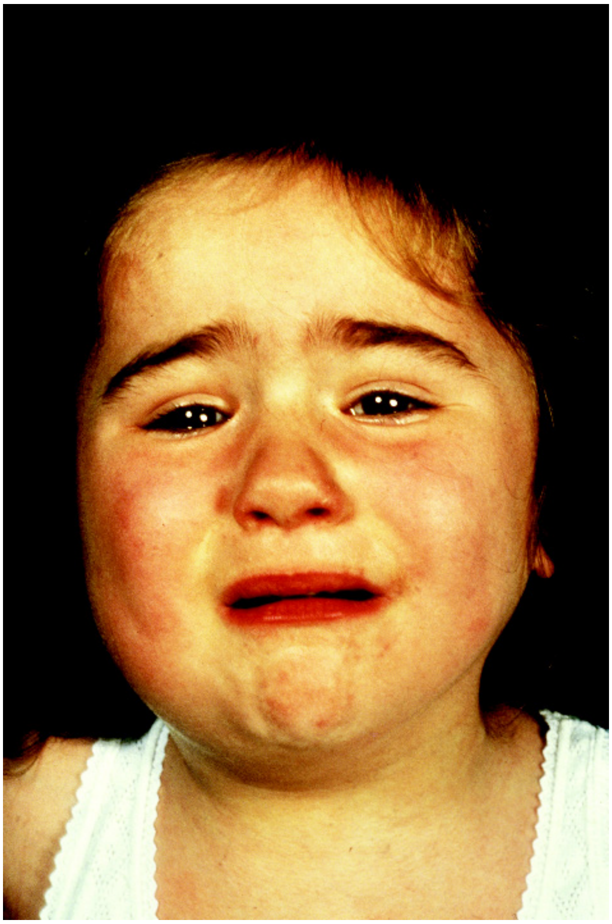
Wang, J., et al. "Platensimycin Is a Selective FabF Inhibitor with Potent Antibiotic Properties." *Nature* (2006) 441: 358–363.

Brian Hoyle

Mumps

Introduction

Mumps is an acute viral illness whose main symptom is parotitis, an inflammation of the salivary glands in the neck. It was first described by the great Greek physician, Hippocrates, in the fifth century BC. Before an effective vaccination program was introduced in 1968, mumps was one of the most significant childhood diseases.



A child's face shows the telltale signs of mumps—swollen cheeks. *Biophoto Associates/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Mumps is as infectious as influenza and rubella (German measles), but somewhat less so than measles and chickenpox. Many of those infected with the virus have no symptoms at all. Mumps usually clears up within a week or so, and those infected then have lifelong immunity. However, the virus can spread through the lymph glands to cause a number of complications, including permanent deafness, so protecting children from mumps through vaccination is important. The introduction of vaccination for mumps has cut the rate of infections in the United States by 98%. However, local epidemics still sometimes occur.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Mumps, also known as infectious parotitis, is caused by a paramyxovirus, which consists of single-stranded RNA (its genetic material [ribonucleic acid], as opposed to DNA [deoxyribonucleic acid]) surrounded by a protein envelope. The incubation period of the virus is 12–25 days, during which time it infects the upper respiratory tract and may pass to the glandular tissue of the ovaries, testes, or pancreas through the lymphatic system.

The most common symptom of mumps is parotitis, an inflammation of the salivary glands. The patient will experience pain, tenderness, and swelling in the jaw area, which may be accompanied by an earache. Approximately half of mumps infections are accompanied by parotitis. However, bacterial infection by *Staphylococcus* species can also cause parotitis, and that may be confused with mumps on diagnosis. Headache is another common symptom of mumps, and malaise, fever, and loss of appetite may also occur, especially in the early stages. Parotitis peaks about two days after its onset and the infection begins to clear within a week, with the vast

WORDS TO KNOW

MALAISE: Malaise is a general or nonspecific feeling of unease or discomfort, often the first sign of disease infection.

OOPHORITIS: Oophoritis is an inflammation of the ovary, which happens in certain sexually transmitted diseases.

ORCHITIS: Orchitis is inflammation of one or both testicles. Swelling and pain are typical symptoms. Orchitis may be caused by various sexually transmitted diseases or escape of sperm cells into the tissues of the testicle.

PANCREATITIS: Pancreatitis is an inflammation of the pancreas, an organ that is important in digestion. Pancreatitis can be acute (beginning suddenly, usually with the patient recovering fully) or chronic (progressing slowly with continued, permanent injury to the pancreas).

PARAMYXOVIRUS: Paramyxovirus is a type of virus that contains ribonucleic acid as the genetic material and has proteins on its surface that clump red blood cells and assist in the release of newly made viruses from the infected cells. Measles virus and mumps virus are two types of paramyxoviruses.

PAROTITIS: Parotitis is inflammation of the parotid gland. There are two parotid glands, one on each side of the jaw, at the back. Their function is to secret saliva into the mouth.

REPORTABLE DISEASE: By law, occurrences of some diseases must be reported to government authorities when observed by health-care professionals. Such diseases are called reportable diseases or notifiable diseases Cholera and yellow fever are examples of reportable diseases.

RIBONUCLEIC ACID (RNA): Any of a group of nucleic acids that carry out several important tasks in the synthesis of proteins. Unlike DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), it has only a single strand. Nucleic acids are complex molecules that contain a cell's genetic information and the instructions for carrying out cellular processes. In eukaryotic cells, the two nucleic acids, ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), work together to direct protein synthesis. Although it is DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) that contains the instructions for directing the synthesis of specific structural and enzymatic proteins, several types of RNA actually carry out the processes required to produce these proteins. These include messenger RNA (mRNA), ribosomal RNA (rRNA), and transfer RNA (tRNA). Further processing of the various RNAs is carried out by another type of RNA called small nuclear RNA (snRNA). The structure of RNA is very similar to that of DNA, however, instead of the base thymine, RNA co

majority of patients making a full recovery. One attack of mumps confers lifelong immunity, therefore it does not recur.

However, mumps does sometimes cause complications and, indeed, is responsible for one death a year, on average, in the United States. When the virus spreads to the glands, it can cause orchitis (inflammation of the testicles), oophoritis (inflammation of the ovaries), pancreatitis, arthritis, and encephalitis. Central nervous system involvement in the form of asymptomatic meningitis is common, while symptomatic meningitis with headache and stiff neck occurs in up to 15% of patients, although this usually resolves itself within several days. Around one in 10,000–20,000 cases of mumps will lead to permanent deafness, with sudden onset. In 80% of these cases, the deafness is confined to one ear.

The mumps virus is spread by airborne transmission and through the droplets created by coughs and sneezes. Those infected will spread the virus about a week before they develop symptoms—if any occur—and will remain infectious for up to ten days after the symptoms begin. People without symptoms may still be infectious.

Scope and Distribution

The mumps virus affects both children and adults around the world, with the peak of infection occurring in late winter and early spring, although cases occur throughout the year as well. However, mass vaccination has had a dramatic impact on the number of cases of mumps where it is used. In World War I (1939-1945), only gonorrhea and influenza caused more hospitalizations than mumps among the military.

When it comes to the complications of mumps, adults appear to be more susceptible than children. Men in the 15–29 age group are the most susceptible to orchitis, which affects 20–50% of those developing mumps. In

30% of these cases, both testicles are affected, which raises the threat of infertility. However, although shrinkage of the testicles does occur in some cases of orchitis, infertility rarely results. Around 5% of young women with mumps will develop oophoritis, which may cause severe pelvic pain, but this complication is not linked to infertility. Pregnant women who develop mumps run an increased risk of spontaneous abortion. Mumps has been a reportable disease in the United States for several years.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of mumps infection includes hydration and painkillers. If headache is severe, then lumbar puncture may bring relief. Strong painkillers may be needed in cases of orchitis, because the pain can be quite severe. Children and adults with mumps should be excluded from school or work during the infectious period.

Mumps can be prevented by immunization with a live mumps vaccine. This is part of the measles, mumps and rubella (MMR) vaccine, which is given as childhood immunization—once at 12–15 months and again between four and six years of age. Although the mumps vaccine is generally safe, it should not be given to pregnant women, those with a fever, or patients with weakened immunity. There have been occasional side effects of mumps vaccine on the central nervous system, some of which have led to deafness. As with all airborne diseases, good personal hygiene helps prevent transmission. Therefore, people should always cover their nose and mouth when they cough or sneeze, and wash their hands regularly.

Impacts and Issues

Mumps was once a major childhood disease with occasional serious complications, such as deafness and infertility. Vaccination has changed that. Mumps became a reportable disease in the United States in 1968, when vaccination was introduced. Before that, there were an estimated 212,000 cases per year. However, between 1983 and 1985, there were only around 3,000 cases reported annually, demonstrating the value of mass vaccination.

In 1986 and 1987, there was a relative resurgence of mumps, with around 13,000 cases being reported in the United States. Most occurred in the 10–19 age group, who were born before vaccination was introduced. Since mumps can affect adults too, this was not unexpected. There were several outbreaks among highly vaccinated school populations, which suggested that a single dose might not be sufficient to protect children.

Since 1989, there has been a marked decline in the number of reported cases of mumps, from 5,712 cases to a total of 258 cases in 2004. But childhood infections like mumps can still come back unexpectedly. In 2006, there were outbreaks in several states, mostly among young adults, which led to a total of more than 6,000 reported cases. Most of these cases had received either one or two shots of MMR, but possibly had not developed a full immune response for some reason.

Introduction of mumps vaccine has been associated with a shift in the age at which people get the disease. Previously, 90% of cases occurred among children aged 15 or younger. But since 1990, those aged 15 or older have accounted for 30–40% of cases each year, with males and females being affected equally. These trends may reflect the effect of vaccine coverage in the population, and also the tendency of mumps to affect both children and young adults. Mumps is a disease that should not be taken lightly. Any lapse in vaccination coverage could lead to more outbreaks, with the attendant—albeit rare—complications.

See Also *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Measles (Rubeola); Rubella.*

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

With regard to a potential connection between the measles, mumps, and rubella vaccine (MMR vaccine) and autism, scientists at the National Immunization Program (NIP) at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) state that "the weight of currently available scientific evidence does not support the hypothesis that MMR vaccine causes autism. CDC recognizes there is considerable public interest in this issue, and therefore supports additional research regarding this hypothesis. CDC is committed to maintaining the safest, most effective vaccine supply in history."

As of May 2007 the CDC further states that, "there is no convincing evidence that vaccines such as MMR cause long term health effects. On the other hand, we do know that people will become ill and some will die from the diseases this vaccine prevents. Measles outbreaks have recently occurred in the UK and Germany following an increase in the number of parents who chose not to have their children vaccinated with the MMR vaccine. Discontinuing a vaccine program based on unproven theories would not be in anyone's best interest. Isolated reports about these vaccines causing long term health problems may sound alarming at first. However, careful review of the science reveals that these reports are isolated and not confirmed by scientifically sound research. Detailed medical reviews of health effects reported after receipt of vaccines have often proven to be unrelated to vaccines, but rather have been related to other health factors. Because these vaccines are recommended widely to protect the health of the public, research on any serious hypotheses about their safety are important to pursue. Several studies are underway to investigate still unproven theories about vaccinations and severe side effects."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Immunization Program*

IN CONTEXT: SOCIAL AND PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY

Social issues can still arise out of even the most effective and seemingly well-intended of medical advances. For example, although childhood diseases such as measles, mumps, whooping cough, and diphtheria have been effectively controlled by childhood vaccinations, some parents resist or reject vaccinating their own children because they feel that the small personal risk is not mitigated by the larger social benefit of disease control. By opting out of the system (by relying on the immunizations of others to reduce the risk of disease) they rely upon the acts their social group to offer their open children personal protection.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilks, David, Mark Farrington, and David Rubenstein. *The Infectious Disease*. 2nd ed. Malden: Blackwell, 2003.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases*. New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Pink Book—Mumps." <http://www.cdc.gov/nip/publications/pink/mumps.pdf> (accessed March 25, 2007).

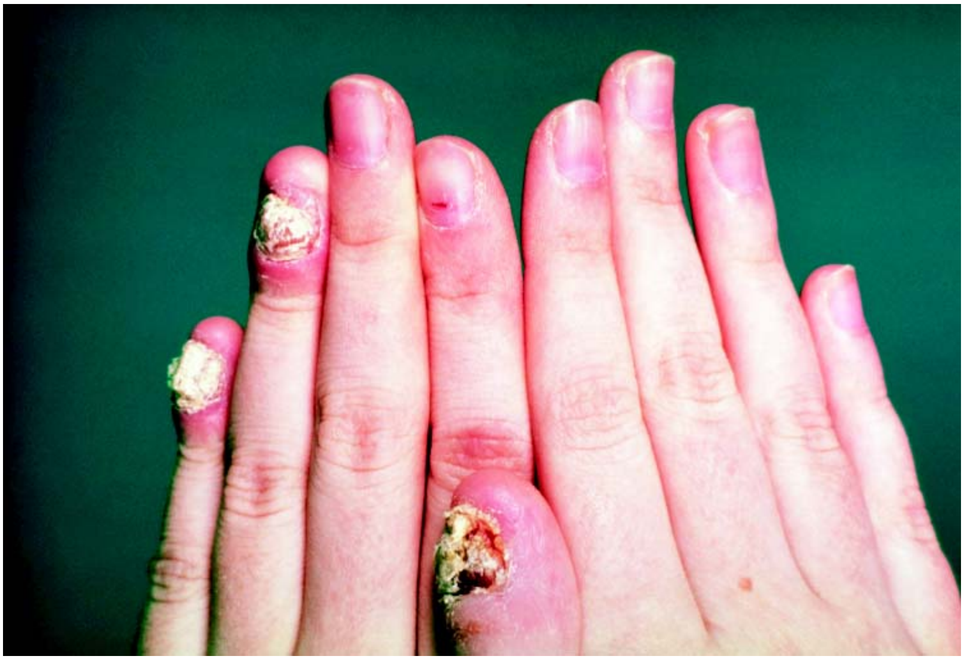
Susan Aldridge

Mycotic Disease

Introduction

Mycotic diseases are caused by fungi, which are present in many forms in the environment. Many fungi are found in soil and are transmitted to humans either via cuts in the skin or by inhalation of the spores or cells of the fungi. Fungi can also inhabit moist environments, such as damp clothing, shoes, and showers. Transmission occurs when a person's skin comes in contact with the fungi. Other fungi may already be present in the human body at a certain population level (this is termed colonization) and cause infection only when the fungal population grows. An example of this is the common fungal infection of the mouth known as thrush.

Symptoms of a fungal disease can range from skin irritations to organ damage, such as lung disease. Fungi are characterized by the area of the body that they affect. Some fungi affect the outer layer of the skin, while others affect the cutaneous and subcutaneous layers of the skin. Furthermore, some fungi develop first in the lungs before spreading to other regions, while other fungi are opportunistic and develop wherever they can. Fungal infections are generally treated with antifungal drugs taken internally or applied externally. However, many of these drugs are toxic and cause side effects. In addition, some fungi are beginning to develop resistance to treatment making it difficult to eradicate an infection.



The fungal infection *Candida albicans* is shown on a patient's fingernails. *© Lester V. Bergman/Corbis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

CUTANEOUS: Pertaining to the skin.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

SPORE: A dormant form assumed by some bacteria, such as anthrax, that enable the bacterium to survive high temperatures, dryness, and lack of nourishment for long periods of time. Under proper conditions, the spore may revert to the actively multiplying form of the bacteria.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Different types of fungi affect different regions of the body and mycotic diseases are characterized according to the region being affected. Superficial infections involve the outer layers of the skin and hair; cutaneous infections involve the epidermis, hair and nails; and subcutaneous infections involve the dermis, subcutaneous tissues, and muscle. There are also systemic infections that are caused by either primary fungi or opportunistic fungi. Primary fungi originate in the lungs before spreading infection to other organ systems. Opportunistic fungi infect anywhere in the body. Opportunistic fungal infections tend to occur most commonly in people with a suppressed or weakened immune system, when their health is already compromised.

Fungal infections cause a range of symptoms depending on the body region they infect. Cutaneous (skin) infections such as tinea, which is a disease of the skin, tend to result in itchy, peeling skin, sometimes with pus or inflamed areas. These symptoms are usually not life threatening, but can cause discomfort and irritation. Subcutaneous infections tend to occur when fungi enter under the skin and forms lesions as they grow. Systemic fungi originate in the lungs and eventually spread to other organs, potentially causing tissue damage, ulcers, and pulmonary symptoms. Opportunistic fungi can potentially cause disease in any region of the body.

Humans develop fungal infections when they come in contact with a fungus. Some fungi are present in the soil. Therefore, when soil is disturbed, for example, during an earthquake or while gardening, fungal spores can become airborne and be inhaled. The fungi can then cause infection. Other fungi thrive in moist, dark conditions. Therefore, moist clothing, shoes, or certain rooms, such as bathrooms, can harbor fungi. When humans come in contact with these fungi, infection can occur. One example is athlete's foot, a type of tinea. Often the fungi responsible for this disease will develop in shoes or in showers and can be spread from these sources. One common fungi from the genus *Candida* gives rise to thrush, a common infection that causes an itchy rash. This infection can occur in the genital area, in the mouth, or in the bloodstream. The fungus is already present in humans in small amounts, and infection occurs when the fungus grows out of control, often in response to a hormonal imbalance.

Scope and Distribution

There are a range of mycotic diseases worldwide. A common fungal infection is tinea, which refers to cutaneous infection of various parts of the body. This infection is common on the feet where it is known as athlete's foot, and in the crotch where it is known as jock itch. Both of these infections can be present in males and females and spread of this disease is facilitated by shared locker rooms or showers where people tend to walk around barefoot.

Some infections occur more commonly in certain people, or people with certain conditions. Genital thrush, which is caused by the fungus *Candida*, is very common in women, and is also more common during pregnancy, in women with diabetes mellitus, or in women using broad-spectrum antibiotics or corticosteroid medications.

Immunocompromised people appear to be at a significantly greater risk of developing fungal infections. Even fungi that normally do not cause infections in healthy people have been found to cause illness in people with compromised immune systems, such as are caused by certain conditions including cancer, diabetes, or AIDS. In addition, some fungal infections can cause more severe symptoms when they develop in these people. For example, HIV-infected people may develop severe pulmonary disease leading to death following infection by the fungus *Coccidioides immitis.* Other factors such as stress can also increase the likelihood of a fungal infection.

Fungal infections occur worldwide, although specific infections may be found only in some locations. Cryptococcosis, a fungal infection that causes potentially fatal meningitis, can be found in soils worldwide. Coccodioidomycosis on the other hand is endemic to areas in the United States, Mexico, and South America. The potential to pick up a fungal infection depends on whether it is present within the country, and whether living or working conditions promote the growth and transmission of the fungus. Sporotrichosis occurs in hay and is transferred via cuts in the skin. Therefore, individuals, such as farmers, who handle hay on a regular basis are more susceptible to this fungal infection.

Treatment and Prevention

Fungal infections are generally treated using antifungal drugs. These drugs can be taken orally, via the genital tract, or applied externally. Some common antifungal treatments contain azole derivatives and actively prevent the fungus from producing ergosterol. Ergosterol is used by fungal cells to produce a cell membrane, and lack of ergosterol results in cell death and death of the fungus. However, many treatments for fungal infections are extremely toxic and can cause serious side effects, if used incorrectly.

As no vaccines are available for mycotic diseases, avoidance or removal of fungi is the best method of prevention. Maintaining high sanitary standards can help avoid coming into contact with potentially dangerous fungi. For example, wearing bath shoes in communal showers, avoiding wearing moist clothes, or drying damp shoes can all help prevent contracting the fungus responsible for athlete's foot. Thorough cleaning of contaminated items, such as clothing and bedclothes, using hot water and detergent may remove the fungi from these items, and prevent infection.

For fungi that can be transmitted via airborne spores or cells, avoiding areas in which soil has been disturbed will help minimize contact with fungal spores. For example, in an area where soil fungi are a potential problem, wearing a facemask following an earthquake may help prevent infection. Wearing gloves can also provide protection against soil fungi that are transmitted via cuts in the skin. This is one way to avoid sporotrichosis, which is caused by fungi present in bales of hay or other plant materials that are often harvested and used by humans.

Impacts and Issues

The U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases reports that mycotic infections are becoming an increasing risk to the public health. Immunocompromised people, such as cancer patients, HIV-infected individuals, and people with diseases such as diabetes, are at a high risk of developing fungal infections due to opportunistic fungi, such as aspergillosis, candidiasis, and cryptococcosis. Furthermore, new forms of old fungal infections, such as coccidioidomycosis, are occurring in these patients. In addition, previously harmless fungi, which normally grow in rotting food, soil, or plants, are now causing potentially fatal or debilitating infections in immunocompromised individuals.

Another issue of significant concern is the development of resistance to antifungal drugs by certain strains of fungi. This has occurred in response to the use of antifungal treatments for fungal infections. For example, in some people, *Candida* fungi, which cause thrush, have developed resistance to the antifungal treatments used to eradicate this infection. Therefore, fewer treatment options are available as the fungi become resistant to the certain drugs.

The rise in the number of mycotic infections has led to a increased research into the control and prevention of fungal diseases. Mycotic disease research involves determining the cause of outbreaks, risk of outbreaks, outbreak trends, and methods of control.

IN CONTEXT: FUNGI

Fungi play an essential role in breaking down organic matter and thereby allowing nutrients to be recycled in nature. As such, they are important decomposers and without them living communities would become buried in their own waste. Some fungi, the saprobes, get their nutrients from nonliving organic matter, such as dead plants and animal wastes, clothing, paper, leather, and other materials. Others, the parasites, obtain nutrients from the tissues of living organisms. Both types of fungi obtain nutrients by secreting enzymes from their cells that break down large organic molecules into smaller components. The fungi cells can then absorb the nutrients.

Although the term fungus invokes unpleasant images and can be a source of disease, fungi are also a source of antibiotics, vitamins, and industrial chemicals. Yeast, a form of fungi, is used to ferment bread and alcoholic beverages.

In addition to human diseases fungi also cause food spoilage, wheat and corn diseases, and, perhaps most well known, the Irish potato famine of 1843–1847 (caused by the fungus *Phytophthora infestans*), which contributed to the deaths of 250,000 people in Ireland.

SEE ALSO *Antibiotic Resistance; Aspergillosis; Blastomycosis; Candidiasis; Coccidioidomycosis;*

Cryptococcus neoformans Infection; Histoplasmosis; Opportunistic Infection; Ringworm; Sporotrichosis.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

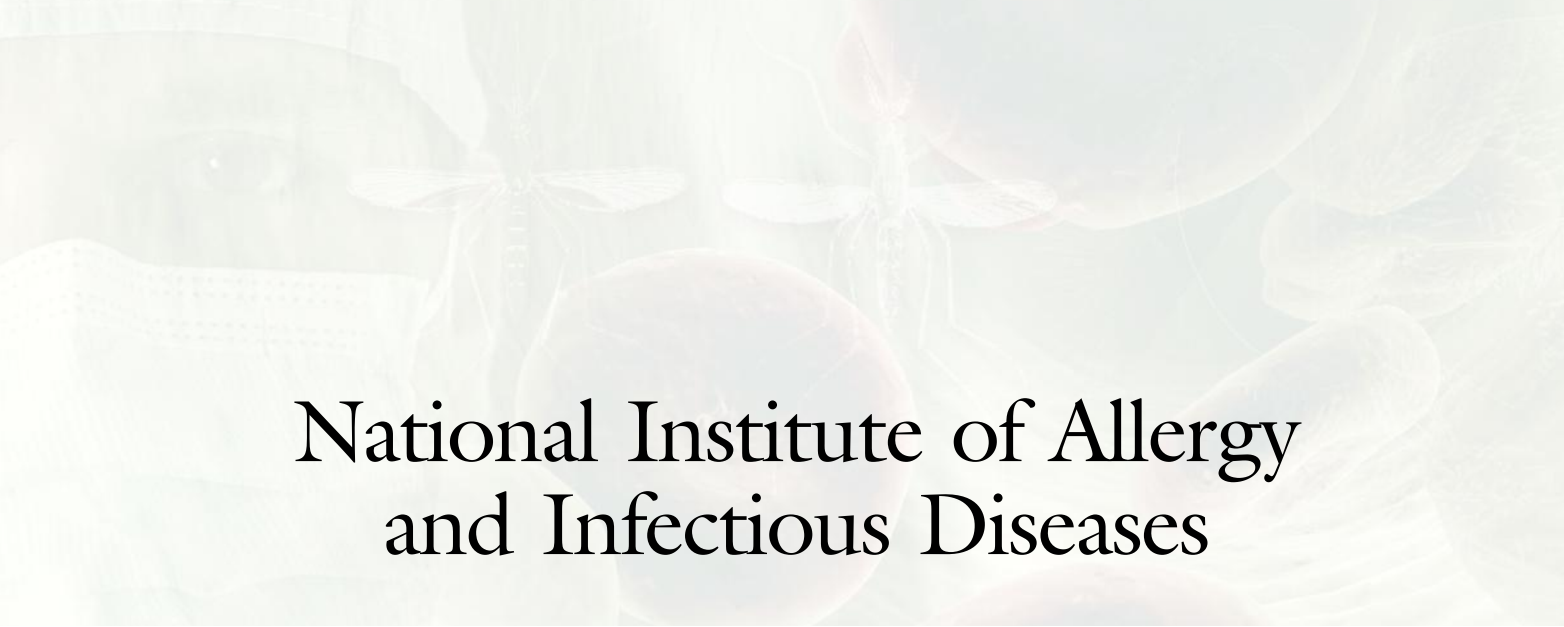
Dismukes, W. E., P.G. Pappas, and J.D. Sobel. *Clinical Mycology.* New York: Oxford University Press, 2003.

Howard, D.H. *Pathogenic Fungi in Humans and Animals.* New York: Marcel Dekker, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "WHO Collaborating Center for the Mycoses." February 5, 2007. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/mdb/index.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Southern Illinois University. "Mycotic Infections." <http://www.cehs.siu.edu/fix/medmicro/mycotic.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).



National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases

Introduction

The National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) is part of the National Institutes of Health (NIH). The NIH, in turn, is an arm of the United States Department of Health and Human Services of the U.S. federal government. NIAID's mission is to conduct and support research into the causes of allergic, immunologic, and infectious diseases and to develop better ways to prevent, diagnose, and treat such illnesses. It does so both by funding its own researchers and by granting billions of dollars annually to researchers in universities and industry to pay for research. Scientists wishing to receive grants must apply to NIAID for them competitively. Some of NIAID's many areas of investigation are acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), allergic diseases, defense of the public against possible terrorism using bacteria or viruses, radiation exposure, emerging infectious diseases, genetics and transplantation, immune-mediated diseases such as asthma and organ rejection, vaccine development, sexually transmitted infections, and malaria.

History of Organization

In 1948, two government-funded biology laboratories, the Rocky Mountain Laboratory and Biologics Control

AIDS RESEARCH LABORATORY
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY
1. GOWNS MUST BE WORN
2. GLOVES MUST BE USED
3. WASH HANDS
EXPERIMENT IN PROGRESS
CAUTION
RADIOACTIVE MATERIALS

An early AIDS research laboratory was established at the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. *© Nathan Benn/Corbis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASE: New infectious diseases such as SARS and West Nile virus, as well as previously known diseases such as malaria, tuberculosis, and bacterial pneumonias that are appearing in forms that are resistant to drug treatments, are termed emerging infectious diseases.

GENOME: All of the genetic information for a cell or organism. The complete sequence of genes within a cell or virus.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

T-CELL VACCINE: A T-cell vaccine is one that relies on eliciting cellular immunity, rather than humoral antibody-based immunity, against infection. T cell vaccines are being developed against the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and hepatitis C.

Laboratory (both founded in 1902), were combined with two divisions of the National Institute of Health into a single organization, the National Microbiological Institute. This was the organization that eventually became NIAID. In 1951, the National Microbiological Institute began distributing cash grants to support research by scientists, and in 1955 was renamed NIAID. In the following decades, the types of research supported by NIAID multiplied and its organizational structure was repeatedly reorganized to deal with this widening range of concerns. For example, in 1986, the organization established an Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome Program to coordinate the institute's support of research into AIDS, then a recently-discovered disease.

A number of research laboratories have been established by NIAID over the years. For example, the Laboratory of Immunoregulation was established in 1980, the Laboratory of Molecular Microbiology in 1981, the Laboratory of Immunopathology in 1985, the Laboratory of Allergic Diseases in 1994, and so forth. In 2002, as part of the national response to the terrorist attacks of 2001, an Office of Biodefense Research Affairs was established within the Division of Microbiology and Infectious Diseases.

Today, NIAID is organized into seven divisions: (1) Office of the Director, (2) Vaccine Research Center, (3) Division of Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome, (4) Division of Allergy, Immunology, and Transplantation, (5) Division of Extramural Activities, (6) Division of Intramural Research, and (7) Division of Microbiology and Infectious Diseases.

Several of these divisions are devoted specifically to supporting medical research:

- The Division of AIDS was founded in 1986. Its mission is to increase basic scientific knowledge of the disease in order to end the AIDS epidemic (as of early 2007, almost 40 million people were infected with AIDS worldwide and over 25 million had already been killed by the disease).
- The Division of Allergy, Immunology, and Transplantation supports research to unravel the mechanisms underlying disease of the immune system, with the goal of more effective treatment and prevention.
- The Division of Intramural Research oversees research by the 17 laboratories owned and operated by NIAID, all located in Maryland and Montana.
- The Division of Microbiology and Infectious Diseases supports research to control and prevent diseases caused by infectious agents other than human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the cause of AIDS. For example, this division funds projects to sequence the genomes of infectious agents. NIAID-funded researchers have sequenced the genomes (the complete genetic content of an organism) of the bacterium that causes Lyme disease (*Borrelia burgdorferi*) and a number of others.

Impacts and Issues

Due to the scope of NIAID's efforts, basic scientific knowledge of many diseases has been greatly increased. Further, a number of vaccines have been developed using NIAID funds. In 2005, NIAID made its first cash research grants under Project Bioshield, the Federal program to defend the public against possible bioterrorism. Its attempt to fund private-sector development of a vaccine for anthrax, one of the candidate organisms for use as a terror weapon, has not yet proved successful, as the vaccine was not successfully developed by its original target date.

Other vaccine challenges for the NIAID include the pursuit of a vaccine to protect against HIV/AIDS. The current NIAID-sponsored candidates for an HIV vaccine are not formulated to prevent infection as do most vaccines, but instead could delay the onset of AIDS by keeping the levels of HIV in the blood in check. Called T-cell vaccines, these types of vaccines could also reduce the ability of an infected individual to transmit the HIV virus to others. Several T-cell vaccines will soon begin expanded clinical trials, and although they have potential benefits in the battle against HIV/AIDS, the NIAID continues to pursue a traditional type vaccine that would prevent the establishment altogether of HIV infection.

Influenza, in both its seasonal and potential pandemic forms, is also major focus of NIAID research and resources. In April 2007, the NIAID announced that its researchers, along with an international team, used antibodies taken from humans who survived the H5N1 avian influenza (bird flu) to successfully treat mice infected with H5N1, and also to successfully prevent uninfected mice from acquiring the disease. NIAID researchers plan to move ahead with this research by further testing in animals, and if successful, then in human volunteers. Ultimately, this line of research could yield both a vaccine and an effective treatment for H5N1, a strain (type) of influenza virus often cited by scientists as a likely candidate to begin a new influenza pandemic.

SEE ALSO *CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention); Epidemiology; Public Health and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Brower, Jennifer, and Peter Chalk. *The Global Threat of New and Reemerging Infectious Diseases: Reconciling U.S. National Security and Public Health Policy.* Santa Monica, CA: Rand Corporation, 2003.

Periodicals

Kaiser, Jocelyn. "Quick Save for Infectious-Disease Grants at NIAID." *Science.* 303(2004):941.

Web Sites

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. <http://www3.niaid.nih.gov/> (accessed February 9, 2007).

Necrotizing Fasciitis

Introduction

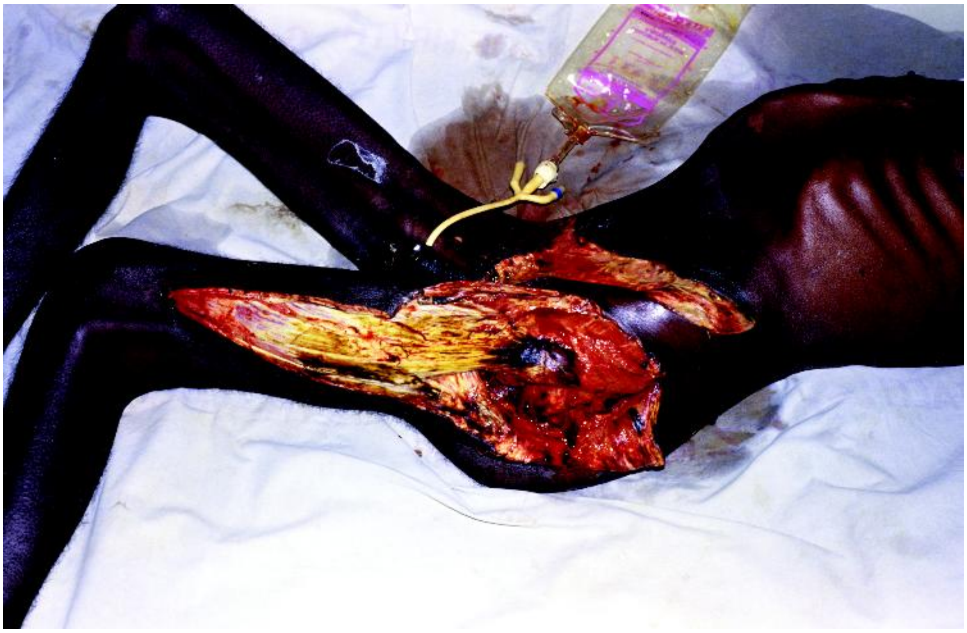
Necrotizing fasciitis is a rare, and often fatal, infection by the bacterium *Streptococcus pyogenes*, also known as group-A streptococcus or GAS. Varieties of this bacterium also cause a wide range of other diseases, including strep throat, impetigo, cellulitis, erysipelas, scarlet fever, rheumatic fever, and more. To necrotize tissue is to kill it, and the word fasciitis signifies inflammation of the fascia, which are the thin sheaths of fibrous connective tissue that cover the muscles and other organs. In necrotizing fasciitis, group-A streptococci infect the deeper layers of the skin and the fascia in the tissue underneath the skin. Although this disease has often been referred to in the press as being caused by "flesh-eating bacteria," GAS is not flesh-eating; that is, it does not actually eat away the flesh of victims of necrotizing fasciitis. Rather, GAS releases toxins that cause the body's own immune system to dissolve certain tissues. Necrotizing fasciitis first became popularly known in the 1990s. There was fear that it would become widespread, but it has remained rare. Necrotizing fasciitis is only one form of invasive group-A streptococcus infection. Other closely related forms include streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome (multi-organ infection) and bacteremia (infection of the blood).

Nobel laureate Eric Cornell (1961–), shown here with his wife, Celeste Landry, had to have his left arm and shoulder amputated to stop necrotizing fasciitis. *AP Images.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The German-Austrian surgeon Christian Theodor Billroth (1829–1894) first described the streptococci bacterium. Billroth discovered *Streptococcus pyogenes* growing in infected wounds. The streptococci are gram-positive bacteria that tend to clump in pairs or chains and are classed into two basic types based on their ability to cause partial or complete hemolysis (breakdown of blood cells). Group A streptococci, which cause complete hemolysis, are further subdivided into a series of alphabetically labeled groups called Lancefield groups. In the 1930s, Rebecca Lancefield (1895–1981) defined the Lancefield groups using standard laboratory tests. She also showed that a protein in the GAS cell wall, M protein, is important to this bacterium's disease-causing power. Varying types of M protein can be used to distinguish over 120 different varieties of *S. pyogenes*, including those that cause necrotizing fasciitis.

Shifts in the M proteins and other substances produced by various strains of *S. pyogenes* are caused by genetic mutations and by genetic alterations caused by viruses (which can change the DNA of bacteria and other cells).



The leg of a 15-year-old African AIDS patient shows extensive tissue loss due to necrotizing fasciitis, a bacterial infection of connective tissue. *Dr. M.A. Ansary/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Because of these changes, the virulence (tendency to cause disease) of various *S. pyogenes* strains waxes and wanes over time. During World War II (1939–1945), for example, there were reports of GAS bacteria causing toxic shock and destruction of tissue. These reports then abated until the late 1980s, when clusters of such infections began appearing in Australia, New Zealand, Scandinavia, and the central United States. A survey of four American states by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) conducted from 1989 to 1991 estimated that 10,000–15,000 invasive group A streptococcus infections were occurring in the U.S. each year. British tabloid writers coined the phrase "flesh-eating bacteria" to describe the new type of GAS infection. Necrotizing fasciitis has continued to occur at a more or less steady rate in the years since, neither disappearing nor becoming epidemic.

There are several types of life-threatening, invasive streptococcus A infections. Necrotizing fasciitis is a deep-seated infection of the tissues beneath the outer skin that destroys fascia and fat but may or may not destroy muscle and skin. It can be caused not only by *S. pyogenes* but, less commonly, by *Clostridium perfringens* or *C. septicum*. Necrotizing fasciitis may be caused by a blend of organisms in patients with diabetes or open wounds contaminated with fecal matter. An early term for the condition was "streptococcal gangrene." Infections can begin at the site of a major or even invisible breakage of the skin. Typically, within 24 hours a lesion or sore spot appears at the wound site that is red, hot, and painful to the touch. There may also be fever. In the next 24–48 hours, the lesion becomes purple, violet, or blue, and blisters appear. Influenzalike symptoms occur in about 20% of cases, with symptoms including nausea, diarrhea, confusion, weakness, and tiredness. In three to four days gangrene may appear, with the entire limb, in some cases, appearing necrotic. The disease can cause death through shock, kidney failure, and respiratory arrest.

S. pyogenes is transmitted by direct contact or via airborne saliva droplets released by sneezing or coughing. Necrotizing fasciitis occurs when an appropriate strain of *S. pyogenes* enters a break in the skin. The break may be a large wound or a pinprick; in half of all cases, the break through which the pathogen entered cannot be identified.

■ Scope and Distribution

Severe invasive group-A streptococcal disease, including necrotizing fasciitis, is primarily found in Europe and North America. In 2004, 3,833 cases of severe group A streptococcal disease were reported to the CDC.

■ Treatment and Prevention

Necrotizing fasciitis is treated with antibiotics, including penicillin, erythromycin, and clindamycin. In some cases, treatment may require amputation or other surgery to remove damaged tissue. Prompt care is essential. Without antibiotics, the death rate for invasive group-A streptococcus infection, including necrotizing fasciitis, is

WORDS TO KNOW

CLINICAL TRIALS: According to the National Institutes of Health, a clinical trial is “a research study to answer specific questions about vaccines or new therapies or new ways of using known treatments.” These studies allow researchers to determine whether new drugs or treatments are safe and effective. When conducted carefully, clinical trials can provide fast and safe answers to these questions.

FASCIA: Fascia is a type of connective tissue made up of a network of fibers. It is best thought of as being the packing material of the body. Fascia surrounds muscles, bones, and joints and lies between the layers of skin. It functions to hold these structures together, protecting these structures and defining the shape of the body. When surrounding a muscle, fascia helps prevent a contracting muscle from catching or causing excessive friction on neighboring muscles.

GANGRENE: Gangrene is the destruction of body tissue by a bacteria called *Clostridium perfringens*, or a combination of streptococci and staphylococci bacteria. C. perfringens is found widespread in soil and the intestinal tracts of humans and animals. It becomes dangerous only when its spores germinate, producing toxins and destructive enzymes, and germination occurs only in an anaerobic environment (one almost totally devoid of oxygen). While gangrene can develop in any part of the body, it is most common in fingers, toes, hands, feet, arms, and legs, the parts of the body most susceptible to restricted blood flow. Even a slight injury in such an area is at high risk of causing gangrene. Early treatment with antibiotics, such as penicillin, and surgery to remove the dead tissue will often reduce the need for amputation. If left untreated, gangrene results in amputation or death.

HEMOLYSIS: The destruction of blood cells, an abnormal rate of which may lead to lowered levels of these cells. For example, Hemolytic anemia is caused by destruction of red blood cells at a rate faster than which they can be produced.

M PROTEIN: M protein is an antibody found in unusually large amounts in the blood or urine of patients with multiple myeloma, a form of cancer that arises in the white blood cells that produce antibodies.

MUTATION: A mutation is a change in an organism’s DNA that occurs over time and may render it less sensitive to drugs which are used against it.

NECROTIC: Necrotic tissue is dead tissue in an otherwise living body. Tissue death is called necrosis.

***STREPTOCOCCUS*:** A genus of bacteria that includes species such as *Streptococci pyogenes* a species of bacteria that causes strep throat.

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that About 9,400 cases of invasive GAS disease occurred in the United States in 1999. Of these, about 300 were streptococcal toxic shock syndrome (STSS) and 600 were necrotizing fasciitis. In contrast, there are several million cases of strep throat and impetigo each year.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases*

nearly 100%. Even with treatment the death rate is estimated by various experts at 25% to as much as 70%. In the 1990s, when public concern over this disease was at its height, Dr. Vincent Fischetti of Rockefeller University in New York advised the public that “If you see a rapidly progressing reddening area that is hot and quite sore to the touch and if you are running a fever, I would go to the doctor very quickly.”

■ Impacts and Issues

Public consciousness of invasive group A streptococcal disease, including necrotizing fasciitis, has been out of proportion to the number of deaths it causes as compared to many other diseases and behaviors. Undoubtedly, one reason for this is the dramatic nature of the disease. A bacterial infection that “eats flesh” and has a 25–70% fatality rate even with the best medical care is certainly attention-getting. In addition, there have been a number of well-publicized deaths from the disease, including leading British economist David Walton (1963–2006), who died within 24 hours of diagnosis.

A vaccine for group-A streptococcus is being investigated, but remains elusive. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), clinical trials—experiments in human volunteers designed to test the vaccine's effectiveness and safety—are under way, but will probably take years to complete.

See Also *Impetigo; Puerperal Fever; Scarlet Fever; Streptococcal Infections, Group A; Streptococcal Infections, Group B.*

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that "two of the most severe, but least common, forms of invasive GAS disease are necrotizing fasciitis and streptococcal toxic shock syndrome. Necrotizing fasciitis (occasionally described by the media as 'the flesh-eating bacteria') destroys muscles, fat, and skin tissue. Streptococcal toxic shock syndrome (STSS) causes blood pressure to drop rapidly and organs (e.g., kidney, liver, lungs) to fail. STSS is not the same as the 'toxic shock syndrome' frequently associated with tampon usage. About 20% of patients with necrotizing fasciitis, and more than half with STSS, die. About 10%–15% of patients with other forms of invasive group A streptococcal disease die."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

ICON Health Publications. *Necrotizing Fasciitis.* San Diego, CA: ICON Health Publications, 2004.

Periodicals

Factor, Stephanie H., et al. "Invasive Group A Streptococcal Disease: Risk Factors for Adults." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 9 (2003): 970–977.

Factor, Stephanie H., et al. "Risk Factors for Pediatric Invasive Group A Streptococcal Disease." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 11 (2005): 1062–1066.

Kolata, Gina. "A Dangerous Form of Strep Stirs Concern in Resurgence." *New York Times* (June 8, 1994).

Musher, Daniel M., et al. "Trends in Bacteremic Infection Due to *Streptococcus pyogenes* (Group A Streptococcus), 1986–1995." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 2 (1996): 54–56.

Stevens, Dennis L. "Streptococcal Toxic-Shock Syndrome: Spectrum of Disease, Pathogenesis, and New Concepts in Treatment." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 1 (1995): 69–76.

Web Sites

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Group A Streptococcal Infections." November 2005. <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/factsheets/strep.htm> (accessed February 14, 2007).

National Necrotizing Fasciitis Foundation. "Home Page." January 28, 2007. <http://www.nnff.org/> (accessed February 14, 2007).

Nipah Virus Encephalitis

Introduction

Nipah virus is best known as the causative agent of a large outbreak of disease among pigs in Malaysia in 1999. It is a member of the Paramyxoviridae family of viruses and is naturally harbored in fruit bats of the *Pteropus* genus in Malaysia.

The virus may be transmitted to pigs in contact with bat urine or feces and subsequently spread to humans through contact with the pig's bodily fluids on pig farms and in abattoirs (slaughterhouses). In humans, Nipah virus infection presents as encephalitis and respiratory disease and carries a significant mortality rate. Treatment is limited to reducing symptoms, but appropriate preventative measures may be implemented to limit spread.

Nipah virus is considered an emerging infectious disease and is argued to pose a significant potential threat to human health. The impact of this viral infection is evident both economically and socially and the recent evidence of person-to-person transmission raises significant cause for public concern.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Nipah virus was first isolated in 1999 during an outbreak of encephalitis and respiratory illness among a group of men in Malaysia. The outbreak resulted in 265 cases of encephalitis, 105 of which were fatal. The virus was named after the location in which it was first detected, Sungai Nipah New Village. Affecting pigs and humans, Nipah virus is a member of the *Henipavirus* genus of the Paramyxoviridae family. The natural reservoir of the virus is argued to be *Pteropus* fruit bats.

Transmission from bats to pigs is thought to occur when pigs are exposed to the urine and feces of the bats. Humans may contract the disease following exposure to contaminated tissue and bodily fluids of infected pigs.

Farm workers hurl pigs into a large grave in Malaysia during a 1999 outbreak of a disease caused by a newly emergent pathogen called the Nipah virus. In an effort to halt the transmission of the epidemic, health authorities killed more than 300,000 pigs that were suspected of carrying the virus. The epidemic killed more than 100 people in Malaysia. *AP Images.*

Person-to-person transmission has been suspected in more recent cases.

In humans, infections are primarily encephalitic after an incubation period of 4–18 days. Symptoms initially include fever and headache, followed by drowsiness and disorientation, nausea, weakness, and in some cases, respiratory illness. In 60% of patients, these signs and symptoms may progress to coma within 24–48 hours. In pigs, the virus generally produced only mild illness, characterized by respiratory distress.

Scope and Distribution

It has been observed that the *Pteropus* genus of fruit bats are susceptible to Nipah virus infection, but do not develop illness. Populations of these bats are distributed across a wide area, including the northern, eastern and southeastern regions of Australia, Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, and other Pacific islands.

This disease has a wide host range, which accounts for the emergence of Nipah virus as a zootic pathogen. Those people most at risk of contracting the disease are those working in close association with infected pigs in areas of where the virus is endemic (naturally present).

Nipah virus was first implicated in encephalitis in the outbreak of neurological and respiratory disease that occurred on Malaysian pig farms in 1999. Cases also occurred in Singapore in 1999 and were attributed to pigs that had been imported from the infected Malaysian pig farms. Between 2001 and 2005, six outbreaks occurred in India and Bangladesh. These were all in areas where *Pteropus* fruit bats live, suggesting that the spread of the virus is limited to those areas where these fruit bats are found.

Treatment and Prevention

During the initial outbreaks of Nipah virus infection, the antiviral drug ribavirin was used and was deemed helpful in reducing the duration of feverish illness and the severity of the disease. However, the precise clinical usefulness of the drug remains uncertain. The usual treatment for infected persons is intensive supportive care. Researchers have made progress in identifying the way in which the virus enters cells and replicates, and this knowledge could potentially lead to an effective treatment for the virus.

Nipah virus infection may be prevented by avoiding contact with animals known to harbor the infection and by using appropriate personal protective equipment when handling infected tissue. Transmission of the virus from bats to pigs may be avoided by minimizing the overlap of the habitats of these animals, thus reducing the likelihood that pigs will come into contract with bat urine, feces, or partially eaten fruits.

WORDS TO KNOW

EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASE: New infectious diseases such as SARS and West Nile virus, as well as previously known diseases such as malaria, tuberculosis, and bacterial pneumonias that are appearing in forms that are resistant to drug treatments, are termed emerging infectious diseases.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

Impacts and Issues

Nipah virus is classified as an emerging infectious disease by the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). It is considered a cause for public concern due to the significant mortality rates observed following infection, as well as the social impacts of the infection.

Later human outbreaks of the disease in Bangladesh were characterized by a high rate of respiratory disease, which potentially increases the chances of person-to-person transmission and may indicate the emergence of more dangerous strains (types) of the virus. It is assumed that the virus did not emerge suddenly, but has been slowly adapting to humans as a host and therefore poses an greater threat.

Nipah virus infection among pigs carries a significant economic impact. The 1999 outbreak in Malaysia caused about one million pigs to be slaughtered. This loss of potential income exacts an economic toll on both individual farmers and the community as a whole.

SEE ALSO *Antiviral Drugs; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Viral Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2004.

Periodicals

Butler, D. "Fatal Fruit Bat Virus Sparks Epidemics in Southern Asia." *Nature* 429 (May 6, 2004): 7.

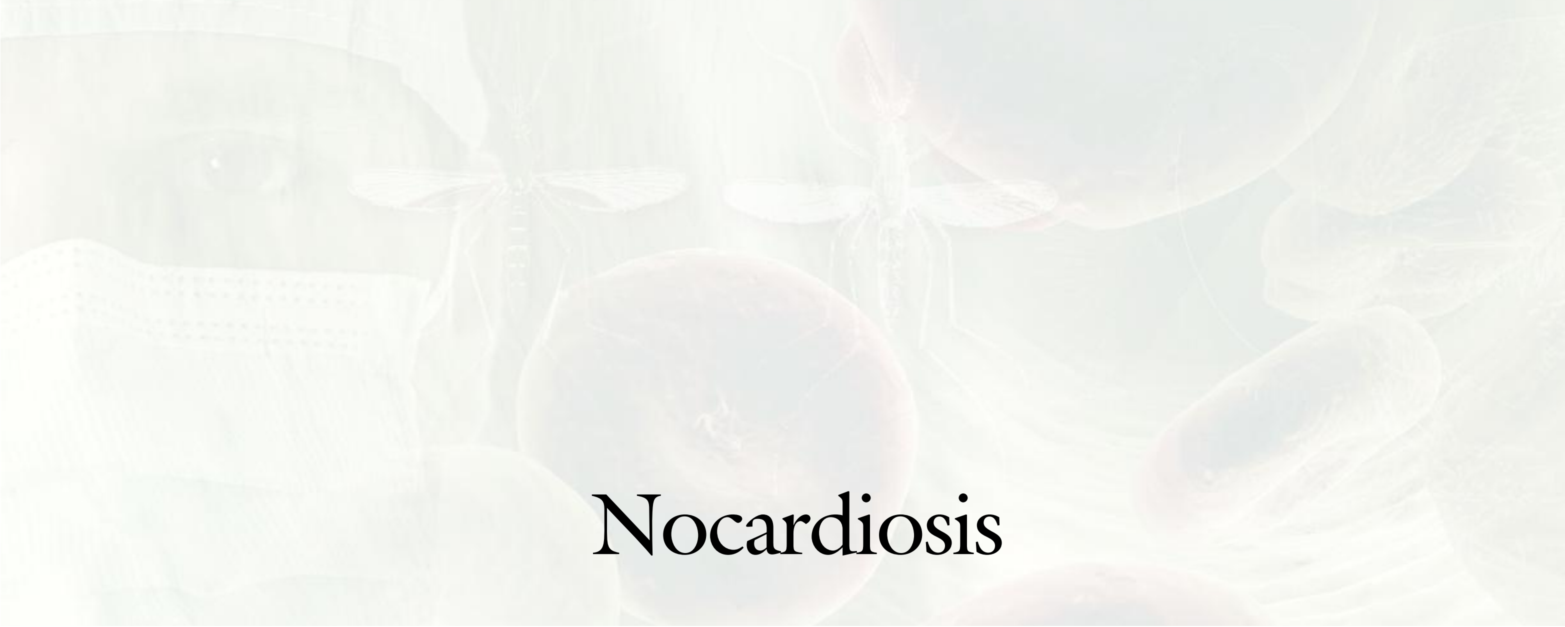
Pulliam, J.R., H.E. Field, and K.J. Olival. "Nipah Virus Strain Variation." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 11 (December 2005): 1978–1979.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Hendra Virus Disease and Nipah Virus Encephalitis." August 23, 2004. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/spb/mnpages/dispages/nipah.htm> (accessed March 28, 2007).

Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation (CSIRO). "Fighting Nipah Virus." May 23, 2006. <http://www.csiro.au/science/ps1so.html> (accessed March 28, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Nipah Virus." September 2001. <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs262/en/> (accessed March 28, 2007).



Nocardiosis

Introduction

Nocardiosis is a serious infectious disease with a high mortality (death) rate. It is caused by funguslike bacteria that affect the lungs (pulmonary nocardiosis), skin (nocardiosis), or the entire body (disseminated or systemic nocardiosis), especially the brain and meninges. According to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), the majority of cases—about 80%—involves lung infections, brain abscesses, or disseminated (widespread) diseases. The other 20% of cases involve the skin. With respect to cures, when the skin and soft tissues are involved, cure rates are about 100%; when the lungs are involved, the cure rate is about 90% of the cases; disseminated cases are cured about 63% of the time; and when the brain is involved, the cure rate drops to 50% These cure rates are only achieved when proper therapy is given in a timely manner.

This colored scanning electron micrograph (SEM) shows the *Nocardia* bacteria. One species of this gram-positive bacteria causes nocardiosis, a rare pulmonary infection that affects people with weakened immune systems. *BSIP/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

The infection itself is caused by bacteria of the genus *Nocardia*. At least 15 species have so far been identified, with new species still being found. The bacteria that cause infection the most frequently are: *Nocardia astreoides* and *Nocardia brasiliensis*. However, *N. farcinica*, *N. nova*, *N. transvalensis*, and *N. pseudobrasiliensis* also cause infection. *N. astreoides* is responsible for about 50% of all invasive cases, and is the species responsible for the most cases of nocardiosis in the United States.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Nocardia are often found in soil and dust particles. They cause occasional disease in humans and animals around the world. Transmission of pulmonary nocardiosis is usually accomplished by inhalation of the organisms when they are within airborne dust particles. Transmission of systemic nocardiosis usually occurs by direct contact with soil through puncture wounds. Abrasions (scrapes) can also be a route for transmission, but less frequently than the other two means. There are no known cases of human-to-human transmission of *Nocardia*. The incubation period is not known, however, it is suspected to be several weeks.

Symptoms of the pulmonary form are usually chills, fever, cough (similar to pneumonia or tuberculosis), thick (often bloody) sputum, night sweats, and chest pain. When the bacteria affect the brain, symptoms usually include severe headaches, lethargy, disorientation, confusion, dizziness, nausea and seizures, problems with

WORDS TO KNOW

CUTANEOUS: Pertaining to the skin.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term "mortality" comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means "death." Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., "Rabies has a high mortality."

SYSTEMIC: Any medical condition that affects the whole body (i.e., the whole system) is systemic.

walking, and sudden neurological problems. These symptoms are often more severe in patients with compromised immune systems. If a brain abscess (localized area of infection) ruptures, the infection can often lead to meningitis (infection of the outer covering of the brain, or meninges). When the skin is affected, rashes, lumps, and sores are usually present, along with swollen lymph nodes. They are often located in the skin or directly underneath the skin. Lesions may also form in the kidneys, liver, and bones.

Scope and Distribution

Nocardiosis is found throughout the world. People of all ages can contract the infection, although it occurs more frequently in people 40–49 years of age. Nocardiosis is more common in males than females by a three to one ratio. It is especially common in people with impaired immune systems and people who have chronic lung problems, such as emphysema.

About 0.4 cases occur in 100,000 people in the United States. According to the CDC, about 500–1,000 new cases are reported annually. No accurate statistics are available internationally. People with lowered immune systems are especially vulnerable; however, people with no history of serious diseases can also get the disease. It cannot be transmitted from person to person.

Immunocompromised persons are at increased risk from *Nocardia*. This risk includes such groups as people with cancer, connective tissue disorders, bone marrow transplants, solid organ transplants, high-dose corticosteroid use, and HIV/AIDS (human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome).

Treatment and Prevention

The diagnosis is sometimes difficult because *Nocardia* grow more slowly than most bacteria, and so cultures are often not analyzed for a sufficient amount of time in the clinical laboratory. In addition, the infection inside cultures of sputum or discharge is not easily identifiable. It is most often identified from respiratory secretions, abscess aspirates, and skin biopsies. Physicians also use special staining techniques. In addition, they take a complete medical history to help evaluate the patient. Lung biopsies and chest x rays are also sometimes taken. For brain infections, computer tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scans are usually used.

A treatment usually lasts at least six months, but sometimes 12–18 months or longer is needed to cure the infection. Bed rest is recommended during antibiotic drug treatment. Short-term antibiotic treatment does not work. Sometimes, co-trimoxazole or sulfonamide drugs (in high doses) are used. Sulfadiazine is often used. The combination of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) is generally the drug treatment preferred by the medical community. If patients do not respond to these medicines, ampicillin, erythromycin, or minocycline may be added to them.

Recently, according to the CDC Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, the drug combination of sulfonamide, ceftriaxone, and amikacin has shown promising results, especially when TMP-SMX is difficult to administer. Treatment sometimes also includes surgery to excise dead tissue and drain abscesses. Bed rest is recommended while the patient recovers, however, activity may slowly resume. Sometimes with chronic cases, a therapy called chronic suppressive therapy is used that includes prolonged, low-dose antibiotic therapy. The prognosis is best for the patient when nocardiosis is diagnosed early and before it reaches the brain.

Diagnosis has been difficult in the past. However, new diagnostic tools, including molecular diagnostic and subtyping methods, are helping to better identify the infection.

Impacts and Issues

Nocardia infections are difficult for physicians because they cause a wide variety of diseases, especially in immunocompromised patients, that require extra expertise. The number of cases has been increasing. However, this increase in numbers is generally attributed to improvements in diagnostic techniques and to the overall increase in the number of severely immunocompromised persons throughout the world.

Recovery may be slow. Treatments are usually able to control the infection. Sometimes, allergies to the antibiotics prescribed to treat the infection occur, and alternatives may need to be provided. The prognosis is generally good when the diagnosis and treatment are prompt and on target. However, the outcome is generally poor after the infection has spread widely in the body, and treatment has not been prompt. Three of the major complications are rib lesions, brain abscesses, and skin infections.

SEE ALSO *Antibacterial Drugs; Bacterial Disease; CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention).*

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

The Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that "500 to 1,000 new cases of Nocardia infection occur annually. An estimated 10% to 15% of these patients also have HIV infection."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases.*

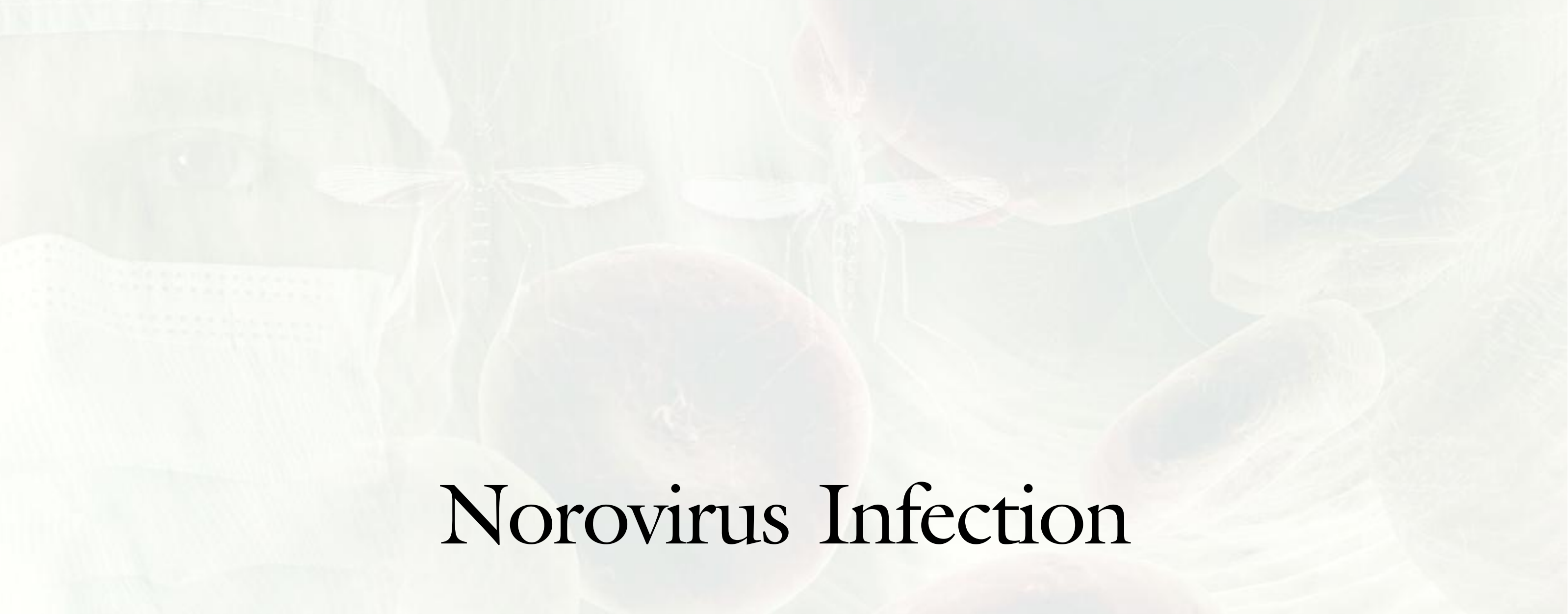
BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Handbook of Diseases. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Nocardiosis." October 13, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/nocardiosis_t.htm> (accessed March 15, 2007).



Norovirus Infection

Introduction

A Norovirus infection is a type of stomach ailment known as viral gastroenteritis. The infection is also commonly (and incorrectly) known as the stomach flu, and is not related to the respiratory symptoms caused by the influenza virus.

The infection is caused by Noroviruses, which have also been termed Norwalk-like viruses and calciviruses.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Noroviruses are named after the "Norwalk virus," which was the cause of a gastroenteritis outbreak in a school in Norwalk, Ohio, in 1968. Once called Norwalk-like viruses, they have since been officially designated as Noroviruses.

An infection caused by a Norovirus is usually not life threatening, but can certainly cause a person to feel miserable. Typically, a person develops the symptoms of infection suddenly and becomes ill for several days. Vomiting and diarrhea occur many times during the illness; the loss of fluids can cause dehydration. Dehydration can be serious in infants, elderly people, and people whose immune systems are not functioning efficiently.

Recovery is usually complete, with no lingering symptoms or infection. However, as different strains (types) of the Norovirus exist, repeated gastrointestinal infections throughout a person's life are possible.

WORDS TO KNOW

GASTROENTERITIS: Gastroenteritis is an inflammation of the stomach and the intestines. More commonly, gastroenteritis is called the stomach flu.

Norovirus are found in the intestinal tract. A Norovirus infection can occur when fecal material is transferred to food, liquid, or an object; most often this occurs when food has been handled or an object like a doorknob is handled by someone who has not properly washed their hands after having had a bowel movement. The virus is ingested by eating the contaminated food or handling the object and then touching that hand to the mouth—this is called the fecal-oral route. A person becomes contagious from the moment they display symptoms to as long as two weeks after the symptoms have ended.

There is no evidence that the virus can by transferred by inhaling virus-laden air, even though it has been shown that vomiting does release virus particles into the air.

Scope and Distribution

Norovirus infection is common. The United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that about 23 million cases of Norovirus infection occur in the United States each year, with over 50% of all foodborne disease outbreaks being due to Noroviruses. Most of the foodborne outbreaks are due to the handling of food by someone whose hands are contaminated with virus-laden fecal material.

A wide variety of foods can be contaminated including salad dressing, deli-style meats, bakery items, cake icing, fruits, and vegetables. Seafoods such as oysters can become contaminated and can concentrate the virus in high numbers when they filter Norovirus-laden water and then eating the raw oysters can transmit the virus to people. Drinking water can also be contaminated with Norovirus.

Norovirus infections occur anywhere in the world. Indeed, because the virus is easily spread among persons, difficult to kill, and contagious, the probability exists of repeated, large-scale outbreaks.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment for a Norovirus infection consists of keeping a person hydrated and as comfortable as possible while waiting for the infection to subside.

Good personal hygiene is the best prevention strategy. Proper handwashing is crucial in preventing transfer of the virus. Similar to the viruses that cause the common cold and influenza, having an infection does not produce an immunity to future infections since there are many, slightly different version of Norovirus. An immune response to one version is not protective against other versions of the virus.

Washing fruits and vegetables before eating them, especially those labeled organically grown, is wise, as some organic produce is fertilized with manure. Because virus particles require a host cell before they can replicate, Norovirus particles that adhere to produce can remain capable of causing an infection for a long time.

Impacts and Issues

The intensity of the symptoms of a Norovirus infection is of most concern when the infection occurs in settings such as a day care, cruise ship, school, or a hospital. This is because the rapid loss of fluid that occurs with repeated bouts of diarrhea and vomiting can be quickly dehydrating. In an infant or an infirmed person, the combination of the infection and dehydration can be dangerous.

The consequences of the immune catch-up response that occurs when a new version of Norovirus appears can be enormous. An example involves the high number of Norovirus infections that occurred in the United States and Europe in 2002 with the appearance of a new Norovirus variant. The majority of cases occurred in hospitals, cruise ships, and nursing homes. In some cases, patient and surgical wards and the emergency room were temporarily shut down, crippling hospital services and escalating medical costs. Cruise lines cancelled cruises, quarantined ill crewmembers, and kept ships out of service for cleaning and sanitizing. Outbreaks of Norovirus occurred in 25 cruise ships bound for U.S. ports in 2002, affecting almost 3,000 passengers. Cruise ships sailing into U.S. ports are required to notify the CDC of each case of gastroenteritis diagnosed aboard ship 24 hours prior to arrival. If the number of affected passengers or crew reaches 2%, the ship must file an alert informing U.S. health authorities of the outbreak. The CDC monitors reports of outbreaks of gastroenteritis aboard cruise ships on a daily basis, and helps to identify the causative agent.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

With regard to preventing norovirus gastroenteritis, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), National Center for Infectious Diseases states:

- "Many local and state health departments require that food handlers and preparers with gastroenteritis not work until 2 or 3 days after they feel better. In addition, because the virus continues to be present in the stool for as long as 2 to 3 weeks after the person feels better, strict handwashing after using the bathroom and before handling food items is important in preventing the spread of this virus. Food handlers who were recently sick can be given different duties in the restaurant so that they do not have to handle food (for example, working the cash register or hostessing)."
- "People who are sick with Norovirus illness can often vomit violently, without warning, and the vomit is infectious; therefore, any surfaces near the vomit should be promptly cleaned and disinfected with bleach solution and then rinsed. Furthermore, food items that may have become contaminated with Norovirus should be thrown out. Linens (including clothes, towels, tablecloths, napkins) soiled to any extent with vomit or stool should be promptly washed at high temperature. Oysters should be obtained from reputable sources and appropriate documentation kept. Washing raw vegetables thoroughly before eating and appropriate disposal of sewage and soiled diapers also help to reduce the spread of norovirus and prevent illness. In small home-based catering businesses or family owned or operated restaurants, sick children and infants in diapers should be excluded from food preparation areas."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases*

Another outbreak of Norovirus among people in close quarters occurred in the Reliant Astrodome in Houston, Texas, during September 2005, when it was used to house evacuees from hurricane Katrina. Approximately 1,500 evacuees and relief workers received treatment for gastroenteritis at the Astrodome complex between September 2–12, 2005. The causative agent was later identified as a Norovirus, and despite the rapidly changing population of evacuees, the outbreak was contained within one week by isolating persons with symptoms within one area of the complex, distributing hand sanitizer, conducting handwashing awareness campaigns, and installing additional portable sinks in the facility.

Protection against Noroviruses in the form of a vaccine is not available, although at least one pharmaceutical company is attempting to develop an inhalable vaccine. Norovirus infection also has consequences for the military. The debilitating and contagious natures of the infection can lessen the combat readiness of troops. Recognizing this, the vaccine development effort is being largely funded by U.S. defense agencies.

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

With regard to the disease burden of norovirus gastroenteritis, in August 2006 the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimated that:

- 23 million cases of acute gastroenteritis are due to Norovirus infection, and it is now thought that at least 50% of all foodborne outbreaks of gastroenteritis can be attributed to noroviruses.
- Among the 232 outbreaks of norovirus illness reported to CDC from July 1997 to June 2000, 57% were foodborne, 16% were due to person-to-person spread, and 3% were waterborne; in 23% of outbreaks, the cause of transmission was not determined. In this study, common settings for outbreaks include restaurants and catered meals (36%), nursing homes (23%), schools (13%), and vacation settings or cruise ships (10%).
- Most foodborne outbreaks of Norovirus illness are likely to arise though direct contamination of food by a food handler immediately before its consumption. Outbreaks have frequently been associated with consumption of cold foods, including various salads, sandwiches, and bakery products. Liquid items (e.g., salad dressing or cake icing) that allow virus to mix evenly are often implicated as a cause of outbreaks. Food can also be contaminated at its source, and oysters from contaminated waters have been associated with widespread outbreaks of gastroenteritis. Other foods, including raspberries and salads, have been contaminated before widespread distribution and subsequently caused extensive outbreaks.
- Waterborne outbreaks of Norovirus disease in community settings have often been caused by sewage contamination of wells and recreational water.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases*

See Also *Gastroenteritis (common causes); Handwashing; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Janse, Allison. *The Germ Freak's Guide to Outwitting Colds and Flu: Guerilla Tactics to Keep Yourself Healthy at Home, at Work and in the World.* Deerfield Beach: HCI, 2005.

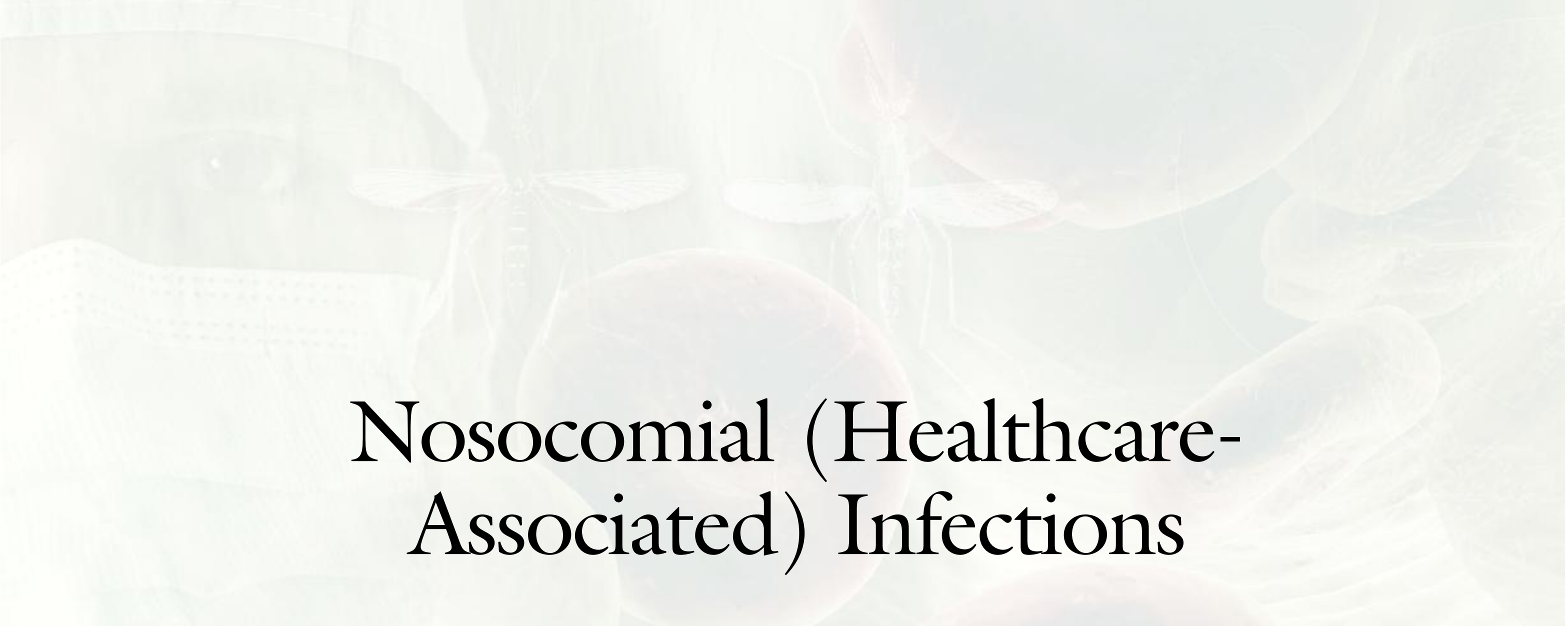
Periodicals

Maunula, Leena. "Norovirus Outbreaks from Drinking Water." *Emerging Infectious Diseases.* 11: 1716–1722 (2005).

Palacio, H., et al. "Norovirus Outbreak among Evacuees from Hurricane Katrina - Houston, Texas, September 2005." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly.* 54: 1016–1019 (2005).

Splete, Heidi. "Raspberries Implicated in Norovirus Outbreaks." *Family Practice News.* 36: 23–24 (2006).

Brian Hoyle



Nosocomial (Healthcare-Associated) Infections

Introduction

Nosocomial infections—also called healthcare-associated infections—are infections contracted in health-care settings, usually hospitals. Such infections have occurred for as long as doctors have handled patients, but their source only began to be widely understood in the mid- to late nineteenth century. Nosocomial infections occur primarily at sites where objects such as catheters, scalpels, needles, breathing tubes, and similar devices are introduced into the body, providing a place for bacteria to grow. Infections caused in this way are an increasing problem, partly due to the ongoing evolution of resistance to many antibiotics by bacteria. Approximately 1.4 million people worldwide acquire healthcare-associated infections at any given time. These infections claim many tens of thousands of lives every year and occur in both developed and developing nations. Countermeasures include handwashing, glove-wearing, increasing blood-supply safety, improvement of injection practices, immunization of health-care workers and others, and improvement of water supply quality and waste management.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The word "nosocomial" comes from the Greek word *nosokomos*, meaning "person who tends the sick." The idea that physicians might themselves be a major cause of disease did not occur until the 1790s, when a few doctors began to notice that puerperal fever, a disease caused by the group-A streptococcus bacterium *Streptococcus pyogenes*, was afflicting women after childbirth and seemed to be transmitted to patients by doctors. These observations received little attention from the medical world as a whole, however, until the mid-nineteenth century. At that time, puerperal fever was common in hospitals, where *S. pyogenes* was transmitted by physicians' unwashed hands as they went from patient to patient. During childbirth, women were often infected with the *S. pyogenes* that contaminated their doctors' hands as they moved between patients, or from the autopsy room directly to the delivery room. This commonly resulted in death rates in maternity wards of 10–25%, with occasional epidemics wiping out entire wards.

In 1843, writer and physician Oliver Wendell Holmes (1809–1904) published a seminal essay titled "The Contagiousness of Puerperal Fever." In it, he argued forcefully against the widespread medical opinion that puerperal fever was not a contagious disease. "The

WORDS TO KNOW

PUERPERAL FEVER: Puerperal fever is a bacterial infection present in the blood (septicemia) that follows childbirth. The Latin word *puer*, meaning boy or child, is the root of this term. Puerperal fever was much more common before the advent of modern aseptic practices, but infections still occur. Louis Pasteur showed that puerperal fever is most often caused by *Streptococcus* bacteria, which is now treated with antibiotics.

RESISTANT ORGANISM: An organism that has developed the ability to counter something trying to harm it. Within infectious diseases, the organism, such as a bacterium, has developed a resistance to drugs, such as antibiotics.

STANDARD PRECAUTIONS: Standard precautions are the safety measures taken to prevent the transmission of disease-causing bacteria. These include proper hand washing, wearing gloves, goggles, and other protective clothing, proper handling of needles, and sterilization of equipment.

disease known as Puerperal Fever," he wrote, "is so far contagious as to be frequently carried from patient to patient by physicians and nurses." He noted that in case after case, a string of maternal deaths could be traced to a series of visits by a single doctor or midwife. In one instance, he documented a string of deaths 40 cases long—all caused by a single doctor.

Also in the 1840s, Hungarian-German physician Ignaz Semmelweis (1818–1865) documented similar facts in the Vienna General Hospital. The death rate in the section of the hospital in which women in childbirth were attended by doctors was three times higher than that in which they were attended by midwives. Semmelweis concluded that doctors were infecting patients by visiting them with unwashed hands after performing autopsies (dissecting corpses). He managed to institute a program of handwashing using a chlorine solution, greatly reducing the death rate. In the 1860s and 1870s, French scientist Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) established that infectious disease was caused by germs, that is, living organisms too small to be seen by the naked eye. With this discovery, Pasteur finally explained the mechanism by which unwashed hands can transmit disease. By the end of the century, medical opinion had shifted towards a nosocomial origin for puerperal fever. However, there were still many doctors who washed their hands after delivering babies, but not before.

In the twentieth century, nosocomial puerperal fever rapidly became a thing of the past, at least in industrialized countries. However, other forms of nosocomial infection eventually became more common for two reasons. The first is the proliferation of various devices—hypodermic needles, catheters, intravenous lines, breathing tubes, and the like—for delivering air or fluid to or from the body. The second is the rise, especially in health-care settings, of antibiotic-resistant bacteria. Intrusive medical devices and antibacterial drugs have saved many lives that would otherwise been lost, but not as many as they could have saved without the nosocomial infections that accompanied their use.

Nosocomial infections of the respiratory tract, associated with breathing tubes, are the most common; in particular, ventilator-assisted pneumonia is common in intensive-care units. The next most common sources of nosocomial infection, in order of decreasing frequency, are central lines (also called central venous catheters, tubes inserted into large veins and left in place for days or weeks), urinary drainage catheters, and surgical wounds. Two factors combine to cause a typical nosocomial infection. The first is decreased immune-system function in a patient who is already ill, and the second is the introduction of bacteria into the patient, usually by some type of invasive device. The National Nosocomial Infection Surveillance system of the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention has found that about 83% of nosocomial pneumonia cases are associated with breathing machines (ventilators), 97% of urinary-tract infections are associated with catheters, and 87% of cases of bacteremia (infection of the bloodstream) are associated with central lines.

The most common cause of nosocomial infection is the *Staphylococcus aureus* bacterium. Some strains of this bacterium have evolved resistance to all penicillin-type antibiotics and others. For example, the USA300 strain of *S. aureus*, first identified in 2000, has evolved resistance to cefalexin, erythromycin, doxycycline, beta lactams, dindamycin, tetracycline, ciprofloxacin, and mupirocin. When a patient is infected with the bacteria, physicians may need to search by trial-and-error for an antibiotic that will work. During this time, an infection may progress and even kill a patient.

■ Treatment and Prevention

Nosocomial bacterial infections are treated with antibiotics, although antibiotic-resistant strains of bacteria are making this increasingly difficult. Prevention is accomplished through infection control and standard precautions by health-care workers, including handwashing, flushing of catheters and intravenous lines using saline (salt water) solution or other chemicals, wearing disposable gloves, using disposable needles, and properly sterilizing surgical instruments. In 2005, the World Health Organization announced an initiative called the Global Patient Safety Challenge 2005–2006, with the motto "Clean Care is Safer Care." This was an effort to reduce nosocomial infection risks throughout the world by improving practices related to the purity of blood products, injection practices, water and sanitation, emergency care, and hand hygiene.

■ Scope and Distribution

Of all patients admitted to hospitals in the industrialized world, between 5% and 10% acquire a nosocomial infection—sometimes more than one. For patients admitted to intensive care (also called critical care, often requiring the use of breathing machines and other high-tech support devices), the rate is between 15% and 40% because these patients are subject to more invasive devices. In poor countries, the nosocomial infection rate for hospital patients is 2–20 times higher (i.e., can approach 100% in some locations). More than half the babies in neonatal care units in developing countries acquire a nosocomial infection, with death rates ranging from 5% to 56%.

Health-care workers may not only transmit nosocomial infections but acquire them. During the SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome) epidemic of 2002–2003, health-care workers accounted for 20–60% of cases around with the world, depending on location.

Impacts and Issues

In the United States, as of 2005, 1 out of 136 patients admitted to a hospital became seriously ill from a nosocomial infection. This entailed a caseload of 2 million nosocomially infected patients yearly with an annual monetary cost probably over $5 billion and some 80,000 deaths per year. For comparison, a little over 40,000 people die each year in the U.S. from car accidents. In Mexico, the per capita nosocomial infection rate is somewhat higher: Mexico sees about half the number of deaths from this cause in a population about a third the size of the U.S. population.

According to the medical journal *The Lancet*, "perhaps the most important topic in infection control is handwashing; yet health-care workers are notoriously bad at washing their hands each time that they should." Thus, ironically, the same behavioral problem that caused thousands of women's deaths from puerperal fever in the nineteenth century—dirty hands—remains a problem in twenty-first century medicine.

Nosocomial infection is a growing problem worldwide, partly because more patients are suffering serious underlying illnesses, such as AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome). In many health-care settings in industrialized countries, rushed health care workers often comply poorly with rules for hand-cleansing. In poorer countries, dirty instruments, crowding, lack of safe water sources, and dirty overall conditions also help spread nosocomial infections.

SEE ALSO *Antibiotic Resistance; Blood Supply and Infectious Disease; Infection Control and Asepsis; Streptococcal Infections, Group A.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wenzel, Richard P. *Prevention and Control of Nosocomial Infections.* Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2003.

Periodicals

Diep, Binh An, et al. "Complete Genome Sequence of USA300, An Epidemic Clone of Community-Acquired Meticillin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus.*" *The Lancet* 367 (March 4, 2006): 731–740.

Pittet, Didier, et al. "Effectiveness of a Hospital-Wide Programme to Improve Compliance with Hand Hygiene." *The Lancet* 356 (October 14, 2000): 1307–1312.

Vincent, Jean-Louis. "Nosocomial Infections in Adult Intensive-care Units." *The Lancet* 361 (June 14, 2003): 2068–2077.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance System." February 16, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/nnis.html> (accessed February 20, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Global Patient Safety Challenge 2005–2006: Clean Care is Safer Care." 2005. <http://www.who.int/entity/patientsafety/events/05/GPSC_Launch_ENGLISH_FINAL.pdf> (accessed February 20, 2007).

Larry Gilman

Notifiable Diseases

Introduction

Notifiable diseases are infectious diseases whose occurrence must be reported by physicians and laboratories to a public health agency. This monitoring is necessary to prevent or contain outbreaks of disease, and to maintain surveillance about current disease patterns. Reporting notifiable diseases is mandatory at the state level, and diseases that are required to be reported vary slightly by state. Reporting is voluntary at the federal level, although all fifty states and districts cooperate to report information about cases of notifiable infectious diseases to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

WORDS TO KNOW

NATIONAL ELECTRONIC TELECOMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM FOR SURVEILLANCE (NETSS): A computerized public health surveillance information system that provides the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) with weekly data regarding cases of nationally notifiable diseases.

NOTIFIABLE DISEASE: A disease that the law requires must be reported to health officials when diagnosed; also called a reportable disease.

QUARANTINE: Quarantine is the practice of separating people who have been exposed to an infectious agent but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. This can be done voluntarily or involuntarily by the authority of states and the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

SURVEILLANCE: The systematic analysis, collection, evaluation, interpretation, and dissemination of data. In public health, it assists in the identification of health threats and the planning, implementation, and evaluation of responses to those threats.

Examples of some notifiable diseases in the United States include acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), anthrax, cholera, diphtheria, giardiasis, influenza (both bacterial and viral), Lyme disease, malaria, measles, mumps, plague, severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), tuberculosis, and yellow fever. The list of notifiable diseases changes with time as emerging infectious diseases present new public health concerns, or as an older disease becomes more prevalent. An example of a newly emerging notifiable disease is SARS, which was added to the list following the outbreak in Asia, Canada, and elsewhere in 2003. An example of a disease that has assumed a greater prominence due to its resurgence and development of heightened antibiotic resistance is tuberculosis.

History and Scientific Foundations

In the United States, the history of notifiable diseases dates back to 1878, when Congress authorized the predecessor of the present-day public health service to collect reports of overseas deaths due to infectious diseases that were prevalent at the time such as smallpox, cholera, and yellow fever. The intention was to use the knowledge to institute quarantine for people coming into the United States from the affected regions to prevent domestic outbreaks of these diseases.

The following year, the authority for collection of notifiable disease information was extended to state and local public health officials. By 1928, every U.S. state and territory was contributing information to a national report of 29 designated infectious diseases. CDC assumed

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD REPORTING

Below is the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) list of nationally notifiable infectious diseases, revised in mid-2007 to include novel, or unusual type-A influenza. By encouraging states to report a newly observed type-A influenza, scientists aim to recognize a candidate for a pandemic flu virus and respond in its early stages. Physicians, laboratories, and other health providers are mandated to report notifiable diseases to state health authorities, and reporting at the federal level is voluntary.

- Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
- Anthrax
- Arboviral neuroinvasive and non-neuroinvasive diseases (California serogroup, Eastern equine encephalitis, Powassan, St. Louis encephalitis, West Nile, and Western equine encephalitis viruses)
- Botulism (food-borne, infant, other [wound and unspecified])
- Brucellosis
- Chancroid
- *Chlamydia trachomatis*, genital infections
- Cholera
- Coccidioidomycosis
- Cryptosporidiosis
- Cyclosporiasis
- Diphtheria
- Ehrlichiosis (human granulocytic, human monocytic and human, other or unspecified agent)
- Giardiasis
- Gonorrhea
- *Haemophilus influenzae*, invasive disease
- Hansen disease (leprosy)
- Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome
- Hemolytic uremic syndrome, post-diarrheal
- Hepatitis, viral, acute (A, B, B virus, perinatal infection, C)
- Hepatitis, viral, chronic (B, C virus [past or present]
- HIV infection (adult [13 years], pediatric [13 years])
- Influenza-associated pediatric mortality
- Legionellosis
- Listeriosis
- Lyme disease
- Malaria
- Measles
- Meningococcal disease
- Mumps
- Novel influenza A virus infections
- Pertussis
- Plague
- Poliomyelitis, paralytic
- Poliovirus infection, nonparalytic
- Psittacosis
- Q fever
- Rabies (animal, human)
- Rocky Mountain spotted fever
- Rubella
- Rubella, congenital syndrome
- Salmonellosis
- Severe acute respiratory syndrome-associated Coronavirus (SARS-CoV) disease
- Shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli* (STEC)
- Shigellosis
- Smallpox
- Streptococcal disease, invasive, Group A
- Streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome
- *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, drug resistant, invasive disease
- *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, invasive in children 5 years
- Syphilis (primary, secondary, latent, early latent, late latent, latent/unknown duration, Neurosyphilis, late, non-neurological, syphilitic Stillbirth, congenital
- Tetanus
- Toxic shock syndrome (other than Streptococcal)
- Trichinellosis (Trichinosis)
- Tuberculosis
- Tularemia
- Typhoid fever
- Vancomycin - intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* (VISA)
- Vancomycin - resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (VRSA)
- Varicella (morbidity)
- Varicella (deaths only)
- Vibriosis
- Yellow fever

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

responsibility for the collection and reporting of the information in 1961. As of 2007, 58 diseases comprise the list of nationally notifiable diseases. Information on some of these diseases is issued weekly in a CDC publication called the *Mortality and Morbidity Weekly Report*, and annually in the *Summary of Notifiable Diseases.*

Applications and Research

A key part of CDC's National Notifiable Diseases Surveillance System is a computerized and Internet-linked communications network called the National Electronic Telecommunications System for Surveillance (NETSS). The network was established in 1985 (it was then called the Epidemiologic Surveillance Project) and was linked to all states by 1989. It is via NETSS that the weekly data is conveyed to CDC by U.S. states and territories. While participation is voluntary, all states, territories and the District of Columbia participate.

The criteria for reporting of notifiable diseases was published in 1990 by CDC in collaboration with the Council of State and Territorial Epidemiologists. The disease-by-disease criteria ensure that the information for a given notifiable disease is sufficient. For example, some diseases require the inclusion of laboratory data while other diseases, particularly those like salmonellosis that can arise due to eating contaminated food, require epidemiological information such as the food eaten at the gathering and the number of cases.

Data gathered on notifiable diseases also typically includes information such as the detected date of the illness, geographical information (state, county), and aspects of those affected including their age, gender, and race/ethnicity. Information is also gathered on the disease itself including its type, severity, diagnosis, treatment history, and health care facilities and public health response capabilities in the affected region. Personal information such as the name and address of those who become ill are recorded with some diseases that require tracing and notifying close contacts who could have been exposed to the disease.

■ Impacts and Issues

The nationwide network established in the United States, Canada, England, and other countries around the world for the prompt and regular reporting of infectious diseases deemed to have a significant potential for spread and whose effects can be debilitating and even fatal has likely saved countless lives, as it has allowed public health officials to detect and respond to infectious illnesses faster and in a more coordinated fashion.

The disease surveillance networks have also become useful in monitoring illnesses that might result from a deliberate release of an infectious agent. By monitoring the pattern of an illnesses' spread, experts can gauge whether the infection has appeared and progressed naturally (cases appear geographically as a sort of bull's-eye, with concentration in one region and subsequent spread out from this region) or unnaturally (cases suddenly appear in similar numbers in different areas of a region).

The storage of the information in electronic databases is of some concern to those who argue that the databases can be tampered with or information extracted and used for malicious purposes. Countering this, security surrounding the databases is very robust. State and the federal health authorities must take steps to safeguard as much as possible the privacy of someone's personal information gained via the report of a notifiable disease. Typically, names and other personal information are indexed by numbers or other blind identifiers in databases, which allows access to data, but not specific personal information.

As new diseases emerge, they may be added to the list of notifiable diseases. For example, in mid-2007 the list was revised to include reporting of influenza A virus subtypes that are different from the typical influenza A viruses common in circulation at a given time. With the reporting of novel influenza type A viruses, scientists aim to quickly spot influenza viruses with pandemic potential.

The United States also abides by the International Health Regulations (IHR), which guide the World Health Organization (WHO) and member states in responding to and reporting international health emergencies. The IHR also added novel influenza virus subtypes to the list of diseases that should be immediately reported to the WHO.

See Also *Epidemiology; Public Health and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Schneider, Mary Jane. *Introduction to Public Health.* 2nd ed. Boston: Jones & Bartlett Publishers, 2005.

Szklo, M., and F. Javier Nieto. *Epidemiology: Beyond the Basics.* Boston: Jones & Bartlett Publishers, 2006.

Turnock, Bernard J. *Public Health, Third Edition: What It Is and How It Works.* Boston: Jones & Bartlett Publishers, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "National Notifiable Diseases Surveillance System." <http://www.cdc.gov/epo/dphsi/nndsshis.htm> (accessed May 26, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Opportunistic Infection

Introduction

An opportunistic infection is one that is caused by a bacterium, fungus, or virus that would normally be kept in check by the immune system. The advent of AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome) focused attention upon the problem of opportunistic infections. As the name suggests, AIDS results in weakened immunity, giving normally harmless microbes the opportunity to invade the body and cause infection.

Besides AIDS, other medical conditions associated with opportunistic infections include cancer, severe burns, malnutrition, and diabetes. Medical treatments such as cancer chemotherapy and the long-term immunosuppressant drug therapy needed after organ transplantation also undermine immunity. Among the most common of the opportunistic pathogens (disease-causing organisms) are *Pneumocystis carinii* (recently renamed *P. jiroveci*), *Candida albicans*, and cytomegalovirus. None of these pathogens would normally cause disease in a healthy person. Treatment of an opportunistic infection is therefore two-fold. The infection is treated with antibiotics or other drug therapy, and then the underlying immune problem should also be addressed.

HIV-positive patients are shown at a clinic for tuberculosis (TB) treatment in Rwanda. TB progresses more rapidly and causes more severe disease in people infected with HIV. *Chris Sattlberger/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA: All types of bacteria identified and classified as a group that does not retain crystal-violet dye during Gram's method of staining.

GRAM-POSITIVE BACTERIA: All types of bacteria identified and classified as a group that retains crystal-violet dye during Gram's method of staining.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term "mortality" comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means "death." Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., "Rabies has a high mortality."

PROPHYLAXIS: Treatment to prevent the onset or recurrence of disease.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The fungus *Pneumocystis carinii* infects nearly everyone at some point during their lives, but is normally completely harmless. The reporting of cases of *P. carinii*-associated pneumonia among previously healthy young men in the early 1980s was one of the early warning signs of the emergence of AIDS, as *P. carinii* pneumonia is normally a very rare occurrence.

The symptoms of an opportunistic infection depend upon the nature of the associated organism. Nearly all microbes—bacteria, fungi, viruses, and protozoa—can become pathogenic, given the right opportunity. However, certain organisms have a strong association with specific types of impaired immunity.

Gram-positive bacteria, such as *Staphylococcus aureus*, tend to invade the skin and implanted devices such as catheters. Gram-negative bacteria, including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* are associated with a form of immune deficiency known as granulocytopenia. This refers to depletion of a type of white blood cell called a granulocyte, a condition that is found in leukemia and during chemotherapy for cancer. The terms Gram-positive and Gram-negative refer to a classification of bacteria according to how they react with Gram's stain, which is used in preparation of samples for microscopy.

Tuberculosis infection from *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* may be reactivated among those whose immune systems are impaired because of age or AIDS. The fungus *C. albicans* can infect blood or solid organs in cases of granulocytopenia. Finally, *Toxoplasma gondii* is another protozoan that commonly causes opportunistic infection among AIDS patients.

Transmission of an opportunistic infection depends upon the organism involved. Many of these organisms will normally be present on the skin or in the body in amounts less than necessary to cause infection. This is known as colonization. It is only because the defenses of the immune system are breached that they can take hold and cause infection.

Scope and Distribution

Many different groups are at especial risk of opportunistic infections. The common factor is an abnormality or defect in the immune system or any related host defense system, such as the skin, which acts as a natural barrier.

Rarely, an immune deficiency can be present from birth. More commonly, immune deficiency is acquired, as in AIDS, where the human immunodeficiency virus attacks and destroys the immune system. Certain underlying diseases, including cancer, diabetes, cystic fibrosis, sickle cell anemia, and severe burns undermine immunity, making a person prone to opportunistic infection.

Various drug treatments impair immunity, such as steroids, immunosuppressants, cancer chemotherapy, and prolonged antibiotic therapy. Medical devices, including indwelling catheters and prosthetic heart valves also attract opportunistic infection. Finally, the very young and the very old tend to have weaker immunity, which puts them at higher risk of opportunistic infection.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis of an opportunistic infection can be difficult, as most of the causative agents are normally benign (not harmful). Once the microbe has been identified, the treatment will generally consist of the appropriate antibiotic or antifungal drug, if the opportunistic infection is caused by a bacterium or fungus. Cytomegalovirus infection is generally treated with antiviral drugs like ganciclovir.

Prevention of opportunistic infections depends upon the organism involved and the medical condition of the patient. Sometimes, antibiotic and antiviral prophylaxis (preventative treatment) may be used. Scrupulous personal hygiene around patients with compromised immunity is always essential; for instance, hospital visitors and medical staff should wash their hands thoroughly and regularly before and after touching patients.

■ Impacts and Issues

Opportunistic infections can be a challenge because they usually involve organisms that are normally not harmful. The incidence of opportunistic infections is likely to increase as the population ages, persons with HIV/AIDS live longer, more organ transplants are performed, and other populations of immunocompromised persons (those with weakened immune systems) increase.

In developing countries, malnutrition leaves millions of children with weakened immune systems and in turn, more vulnerable to infections. Acute infections such as diarrheal diseases, respiratory infections, measles, and malaria account for more than half of childhood mortality (deaths) in developing countries, and malnutrition is associated with over fifty percent of these deaths, according to the World Health Organization (WHO). When malnutrition is present, some health authorities broaden the definition of the term opportunistic infection to include a synergistic relationship between malnutrition and communicable disease: malnutrition weakens natural immunity, leading to increased susceptibility to infection, and more frequent, severe, and prolonged episodes of infection. The cycle is perpetuated when infection aggravates malnutrition by decreasing intake and increasing the body's metabolic needs. For example during a 2005 outbreak of measles in Somali refugees in Kenya, measles was considered an opportunistic infection due to malnutrition brought on by Somali crop failures after drought and conflict.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Candidiasis; Pneumocystis carinii Pneumonia; Toxoplasmosis (Toxoplasma Infection).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Tan, James S. *Expert Guide to Infectious Diseases.* Philadelphia: American College of Physicians, 2002.

Periodicals

Rice, Amy L., et al. "Malnutrition as an Underlying Cause of Childhood Deaths Associated with Infectious Diseases in Developing Countries." *Bulletin of the World Health Organization* 78 (2000): 1207-1218.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control. "Guidelines for Preventing Opportunistic Infections Among HIV-Infected Persons." June 14, 2002. <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr5108a1.htm> (accessed May 28, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Outbreaks: Field Level Response

Introduction

Outbreaks of infectious disease range in size and severity. A prompt response at local—or field—level can limit the spread of an outbreak and help to prevent future episodes. Response is an important component of epidemiology, which is the study of the occurrence of disease among the population. Epidemiology involves surveillance and case reporting, so that outbreaks can be identified. Emergency response can include treatment and isolation measures, but needs to be coupled with a thorough investigation so that the causes of the outbreak can be recognized and halted.

Health authorities need to put in place advance plans for dealing with outbreaks covering the three components of surveillance, response, and investigation. The World Health Organization (WHO) and the Centers for Disease Prevention and Control (CDC) in the United

The Pasteur Institute of Madagascar hosted a week of talks and practical training for fellow scientists from nine other African countries hit by the plague in 2004. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), about 20,000 cases of the disease have emerged in Africa since 1980—95 percent of bubonic plague and 5 percent of pneumonic and septicaemic plague. The African continent accounts for three-quarters of the cases of plague in the world. *AFP/Getty Images.*

States have developed structures, guidelines, and networks which allow responses to be mounted to infectious disease outbreaks, including deliberate outbreaks of disease due to a bioterrorist attack.

History and Scientific Foundations

The English physician John Snow (1813–1858) demonstrated one of the earliest recorded responses to a disease outbreak. In 1854, he began to investigate an outbreak of cholera in his local area of London. He constructed a detailed street map showing the location of cases and deduced that the source of the infection was the local water pump.

He either removed the pump handle himself, or ordered it to be removed, and shortly afterwards, the number of cholera cases began to decline. It is not possible to prove that Snow's action, in itself, limited the outbreak—it may have been on the decline naturally—but the principle of removing the cause of the infection was correct. It is this same principle which guides effective field response to outbreaks today.

A field response to an outbreak occurs at a local level and often involves the facilities of the nearest hospital, particularly its emergency department. The hospital needs to have sufficient capacity to deal with an outbreak in terms of medical supplies, such as vaccines and antibiotics, trained medical staff, and beds to care for seriously ill patients. Naturally, many hospitals may not have this capacity on site, but they must be able to access it if necessary.

Adequate and prompt communication between the hospital, primary care, the emergency services or public health organization, and the media is essential while responding to an outbreak. The local health authorities have detailed plans for responding to an outbreak at the field level, and this is tested in simulation exercises to identify gaps and weaknesses. As infectious agents know no boundaries, states and countries work together to respond to an outbreak.

Applications and Research

Countries, especially developing countries, cannot be expected to deal with outbreaks of infectious disease on their own. In 2000, the World Health Organization set up the Global Outbreak Alert and Response Network (GOARN), which is a collaboration of over a hundred technical institutions, non-governmental organizations and networks, creating a pooled resource for alert and response operations.

Investigative teams from GOARN will arrive at the site of an outbreak within 24 hours. They will offer on-the-spot investigation, confirmation of diagnosis, handling of dangerous pathogens (disease-causing organisms), case detection, patient management, containment, and provision of staff and supplies. All of these elements are needed to safely contain an outbreak, but many may not be available on site.

Since early 2000, WHO and GOARN have launched international responses to disease outbreaks in countries around the world including Afghanistan, Bangladesh, India, Pakistan, Sudan, Tanzania, and Uganda. Recently, WHO has strengthened GOARN's outbreak response logistics with specialized transport and communication facilities, which are particularly valuable in areas with weak local infrastructures. Many other non-governmental organizations (NGO), such as the humanitarian group Médicins sans Frontières, and national health authorities, like the

WORDS TO KNOW

EPIDEMIC: From the Greek *epidemic*, meaning "prevalent among the people," is most commonly used to describe an outbreak of an illness or disease in which the number of individual cases significantly exceeds the usual or expected number of cases in any given population.

GLOBAL OUTBREAK ALERT AND RESPONSE NETWORK (GOARN): A collaboration of resources for the rapid identification, confirmation, and response to outbreaks of international importance.

ISOLATION: Isolation, within the health community, refers to the precautions that are taken in the hospital to prevent the spread of an infectious agent from an infected or colonized patient to susceptible persons. Isolation practices are designed to minimize the transmission of infection.

NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATION (NGO): A voluntary organization that is not part of any government; often organized to address a specific issue or perform a humanitarian function.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

SURVEILLANCE: The systematic analysis, collection, evaluation, interpretation, and dissemination of data. In public health, it assists in the identification of health threats and the planning, implementation, and evaluation of responses to those threats.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), also get involved responding to situations in developing countries.

In a recent report, WHO describes its involvement in dealing with an outbreak of meningococcal meningitis in Burkina Faso. In the early months of 2007, the Ministry of Health in Burkina Faso reported 22,255 suspected cases including 1,490 deaths, meaning that 34 districts were over the threshold considered to be an epidemic. Cerebrospinal fluid samples from all affected areas tested positive for the bacteria *Neisseria meningitides.* This lab work was essential for describing the extent of the outbreak, implying what needed to be done to contain it.

A vaccination campaign was completed in 15 districts, reaching 100% of those at risk, and was ongoing at the time of the last report. The vaccine came from an international stockpile, which was able to supplement those held by the Ministry of Health of Burkina Faso. Financial support for the vaccination campaign was forthcoming from the international community via many non-governmental organizations, such as the United nations Central Emergency Response Fund and the United States Agency for International Development.

Response to outbreaks in countries with well-developed health infrastructures is usually coordinated by a national body, such as the CDC's Emergency Preparedness and Response Department, or the Health Protection Agency in the United Kingdom. Typical incidents might include food poisoning or measles outbreaks, and response would be part of the surveillance, case reporting, and investigation strategy. The response might involve actions such as closing schools, child care centers, or restaurants to eliminate the cause of the infection or limit its spread.

Public information dissemination is an important part of response to an outbreak at field level, including warning people of symptoms and advising them on how to avoid infection. Medical treatments include vaccination, drug administration, and hospitalization, but the specifics depend upon the illness involved in the outbreak.

The most testing situation for an outbreak response team is when a new or unusual infection is involved. Thus, the manner in which outbreaks of severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) and H5N1 avian influenza have been dealt with in recent years has come under scrutiny. The WHO commented on some aspects of the way the Ministry of Health of China handled an outbreak of SARS among laboratory workers in 2004. The response was judged, overall, to have been prompt with isolation of cases and tracing of possible contacts, although there was delay in identifying the early cases and initially, there was secrecy towards fellow citizens and the international scientific community. The Chinese Ministry of Health later stated it would learn from this outbreak and further strengthen its response system for the future.

Current research includes developing vaccines for use before and during outbreaks of disease (such as two vaccines approved in 2006 that protect against rotaviruses, a common cause of diarrhea outbreaks), developing effective and inexpensive personal protective equipment for responders and community members, and especially, developing rapid diagnostic tests to identify particular pathogens and diseases in the field during the initial stages of an outbreak.

■ Impacts and Issues

When it comes to outbreaks of well-known diseases, such as *Salmonella* food poisoning and meningitis, public health authorities are well-practiced in mounting a response. However, there are new threats, from emerging diseases such as H5N1 avian influenza to the possibility of bioterrorist attacks. A major issue is whether there is the capacity and preparedness within the health system to deal effectively with these.

In 2003, the United States General Accounting Office (GAO) conducted a survey of major hospitals to find out more about their public health response capacity. This showed that bioterrorism preparedness efforts mounted since the terror attacks of September 11, 2001, had indeed improved overall response capacity, but gaps remained. These included workforce shortages and shortfalls in laboratory capacity to deal with an emergency situation. There was also a lack of planning between states.

The GAO did find that states had plans for receiving and distributing medical supplies (even if these were not on site) and plans for mass vaccinations. Staff had participated in basic planning for large infectious disease outbreaks, but some hospitals lacked sufficient isolation facilities and staff to treat a large increase in the number of patients that might result from an emergency outbreak of influenza or a bioterrorist attack.

■ Primary Source Connection

In 2003, as a serious new infectious disease threat (SARS) emerged in China, the Chinese government initially took measures to keep the outbreak a secret. Only after the disease spread beyond the borders of China and a few journalists and physicians found a way to communicate the urgency of the disease to the international scientific community did fully coordinated field-level response to the SARS epidemic begin. By this time, there were multiple outbreak sites requiring response. In this excerpt from the magazine *Foreign Policy*, Karl Taro Greenfeld unravels the story of how the mystery disease was communicated to the world. At that time, Greenfeld was the editor of *Time Asia in Hong Kong*, and has since published a book about the emergence of SARS in China entitled *China Syndrome: The True Story of the 21st Century's First Great Epidemic.* China has now adopted a policy of international cooperation and participation in networks that report, track, and respond to outbreaks of infectious disease.

The Virus Hunters: When the Deadly SARS Virus Struck China Three Years Ago, Beijing Responded with a Massive Coverup. If It Weren't for the Persistence of Two Young Reporters and One Doctor Who Had Seen Enough, SARS Might Have Killed Thousands More. There's No Guarantee the World Will Be So Lucky Next Time.

In April 2003, as thousands of Chinese were infected and the dying were quarantined in squalid hospital wards, the Chinese government covered up the SARS outbreak, allowing the killer virus to spread around the world. That was hardly surprising. The first response to an epidemic is usually denial. From the perspective of a head of state, a mayor, a governor, or any ruling body, infectious disease remains among the hardest issues to manage. There is almost no calamity, save starvation or siege, that can so quickly reduce a city to panic and despair. Why should China's mandarins behave any differently? When confronted with a new infectious disease caused by the SARS virus, they initially downplayed the danger and assumed a tacit policy of wishing the microbe back into whatever species from which it had jumped. What did they really have to go on at first? A few hundred cases? In a nation of more than a billion? Indeed, with infectious disease outbreaks a far more common occurrence in China than in, say, the United States, it is on one level understandable how China's minister of health, Zhang Wenkang, could have initially downplayed the threat posed by a respiratory infection thousands of miles from the capital. If it hadn't jumped international borders, then the outbreak might have remained a minor medical curiosity.

Yet the SARS epidemic of 2003 now appears a useful blueprint of how the next pandemic might begin. As the planet struggles to deflect another imminent viral emergence, the lessons learned from SARS are more relevant than ever. Although the work of virologists, physicians, nurses, and public health officials was instrumental in beating back the virus, it is frightening to consider that if it weren't for the courage of one iconoclastic Chinese physician who came forward to tell the truth at enormous personal risk, the SARS epidemic would have been even more devastating.. . .

A BITTER DISCOVERY

He had watched this before, 71-year-old Dr. Jiang Yanyong recalled. He hd seen the best and the brightest brought down because of a lie, for the government's prevarications, recalcitrance, and duplicity. Jiang had been on duty the evening of June 3, 1989, when the People' Liberation Army (PLA) massacred the students in Tiananmen Square. . . .

Today, Jiang holds a military rank equivalent to general because of his title as chief of surgery at the hospital. For a moment, when you first see him, you think he must be in his 50s—his hair is an unnatural crow black—but there is an age droop to his eyes, as if the ocular muscles themselves have worn out from squinting into so many surgical incisions.

Throughout March 2003, Jiang had been spending more time indoors, like many people around the world, watching television for news of the war in Iraq. The SARS virus was only a crawl on China Central Television (CCTV), a glowing proclamation that "SARS is under control and there has never been a better time to visit Guangdong Province." The SARS outbreak has so far been reported as primarily a Hong Kong problem; the disease, if it were in China at all, had probably been brought in by foreigners, the official Chinese media were reporting.

Among international public health officials, of course, there was increasing consensus that the outbreak in China was far worse than the Chinese government was admitting. The State Council Information Office was reporting 12 SARS cases and 3 fatalities in Beijing. It seemed impossible: There were thousands of cases in Guangdong and Hong Kong, and hundreds in the provinces throughout China. How could Beijing have just 12 cases? Jiang found that discrepancy curious but gave it little thought.

But near the end of that month, a good friend of Jiang's fell ill with lung cancer and, naturally, Jiang was brought in to consult on the case. The patient, a medical professor, was brought to 301 Hospital. Surprisingly, he developed a high fever and a spot was found on his lung. After another specialist was brought in, Jiang's friend was diagnosed with SARS and transferred to the intensive care unit before he was removed and sent to 309 Hospital, deemed the official SARS Control and Prevention Center for the People's Liberation Army. Jiang, checking on the treatment his friend might receive, phoned respiratory specialists at 309 who were former students of his from Beijing University Medical College. "They sounded very upset," Jiang recalls. "I didn't understand why. There were just a few cases and that was such a big hospital."

There were 60 cases, Jiang was told, dozens of them medical staff themselves. Seven patients had already died of the disease. He called other colleagues and found that there were similar outbreaks occurring at 302 Hospital, which had 40 cases, and even at his own 301 Hospital, which had 46 SARS cases. "This is a terrible disease," one of his colleagues told him. "It acts so quickly. I've never seen any disease progress this fast. You go from breathing normally to intubation in three days. You die in a week."

Why, then, did the health minister, Zhang Wenkang, appear on television on April 3 to reassure the public that there were only 12 cases in all of Beijing, when there were 60 in just one hospital?. . .

A DUTY TO SPEAK

. . .Jiang decided to pen a note, explaining who he was and the facts about the number of SARS cases in the No. 301, No. 302, and No. 309 hospitals. "As a doctor who cares about people's lives and health, I have a responsibility to aid international and local efforts to prevent the spread of SARS." He faxed it to the government-controlled CCTV-4 and Hong Kong's Phoenix-TV, two of China's biggest networks, using the fax number for viewer comments and suggestions. He assumed they would quickly get in touch with him to check his credentials before airing it. They never called.

THE OFFICIAL NUMBES WERE LIES

Our Beijing correspondent, Susan Jakes, was asked to prepare a file about the general state of the Chinese healthcare system. She had no contacts in the Ministry of Health. Trying to think of a way into the subject, she decided to call a political source. Susie's connections in the dissident community had been useful in the past, but it was unlikely those connections would extend into the Chinese medical community. Still, desperate, Susie called one of her political contacts, Harold, who had ties to party officials.

She asked him if he knew anything about SARS in Beiing.

There was silence on the line. "Call me back from a safe phone."

Often, in China, we suspected our land lines and even our cell phones were bugged. When we needed to talk specifics about sensitive subjects, Matt or Susie would switch the SIM cards in their phones from a local Beijing number to an international exchange that was billed through a foreign phone company we believed far less likely to be tapped. Or, even safer, the reporter would find a pay phone—which are still common in China—and call from there.

Susie threw on her denim jacket, walked out of the bureau, and hurried to a nearby pay phone.

"I'm going to send you an email," Harold said when she called him back. "In that e-mail, there will be a URL to a secure Web site. At that Web site, you'll need a password. Type in your old Hong Kong phone number and you will be able to download a Word file. Read that and call me back."

Susie ran back to the office to check her e-mail. Harold's message had already arrived. Following his instructions, she downloaded the Word document. At the top, it read Jiang Yanyong, Doctor, and said that he was a longtime Chinese Communist Party member. It also gave his phone number. She read the note. The letter indicated that the number of patients infected with SARS was significantly higher than the official statistics from China's Ministry of Health. It went on to describe at least 60 patients at one Beijing hospital. Most amazing, this letter was signed by this doctor.

She went back to the pay phone and called Harold.

"Who is this guy?"

"He is who he says he is. A doctor. A party member."

Susie was nervous this letter would be difficult to verify. "Can I call this guy? Will he talk to me?"

"Call him," Harold assured her. "He's at home."

Susie knew what she had now had. A big story about a big lie.

Still using the pay phone, Susie called the number on the letter. Dr. Jiang Yaonyong answered.

When she identified herself, Jiang told her, "Everything I want to say is in the letter."

"But I need to ask you some more questions," Susie pleaded, "to flesh this out a little bit."

He paused for a moment, and then, speaking in a lower voice, said, "Okay, let's meet at the teahouse at 4 o'clock in the Ruicheng Hotel, in the western part of Beijing, near the 301 Military Hospital."

But, when Susie returned to the bureau, she received another call, this one from a labor lawyer she had called the day before asking if he knew anyone who knew anything about SARS.

"Why don't you come to my office right now," he suggested. "I think I might have something you want to hear."

When Susie returned from the bureau, she took a taxi to his offices, on the fourth floor of a modern office building, and when she walked in, after he closed the door, he told her that he had a cousin who is a doctor at the Military Academy of Sciences.

"Will she talk to me?" Susie asked.

"No," the lawyer explained, "But I can call her and you can listen while we speak."

Susie would later realize that this had been prearranged by the lawyer ad his cousin to screen them from any possible accusations of talking to a foreign reporter and violating a gag order that was handed down on March 7 forbidding doctors and public health officials from talking to the media about SARS. As for the veracity of the source, we had worked with this lawyer before on several stories, and found him to be reliable.

The lawyer dialed his cousin's cell phone.

"Tell me again what you told me before," he said, handing the phone to Susie.

Susie listened as the doctor spoke of a situation even more terrifying than that described in Jiang's letter. She described the first case to come to Beijing—a woman who had driven from Shanxi and seeded the Beijing outbreak. To Susie's surprise, that had been in early March, during the National People's Congress. The hospital director at the Military Academy of Sciences had told his staff that there was SARS in Beijing, but that no one was to mention a word of it outside the hospital, so as not to interfere with the National People's Congress and leadership transition.

Since then, the woman continued, there were numerous cases at several hospitals. No. 1 and No. 2 hospitals each had dozens of cases. "They are practically filled," the woman said. And 309 Hospital, specifically mentioned in Jiang's letter, had 40 new cases in just the last week. 301 and 302 hospitals were also being overwhelmed.

The official numbers were lies.

Susie arrived at the Ruicheng Hotel in Western Beijing at 2:45 that afternoon. With each Chinese businessman entering, Susie would glance up, wondering if he were Jiang. When he finally walked in, he paused a moment and then, seeing Susie, the only foreigner, he gestured her with a quick wave to follow him. She took off after him as he headed for a corner of the lobby. He led her through a service entrance, up an elevator, and down a hall, where he asked a hotel employee for directions. Susie realized he didn't know where he was going as he walked into a cafeteria, which, besides clandestine business meetings, was the primary purpose for these little teahouse rooms. Susie's first impression was that he was nervous. But once they ordered and began to chat, he calmed down. He talked about his work as a surgeon, spoke in very clear Chinese, and gave the names of medical procedures in very good English. He was, Susie quickly deduced, exactly who he said he was in the letter.

Finally, Susie asked, "Why did you write this?"

He paused. "As a doctor, I cannot stand by while there is a terrible disease threatening the people and they are not hearing the truth about it."...

'WE ARE ASHAMED'

Huang had already tapped out his most obvious contacts. He began calling friends and asking if they knew anyone who worked in Beijing's hospitals or public health sectors, not really expecting to come up with a source. Yet a friend of his suggested a doctor from the China-Japan Friendship Hospital whom he vaguely knew and gave Huang his mobile phone number.

Huang called and quickly explained who he was and that they shared a mutual friend, and what we had learned about the coverup.

The doctor was silent.

Fearing he would hang up, Huang added that what they knew was going to be published anyway, and this was merely an attempt to make sure they had the facts correct.

Huang listened as the doctor took a deep breath and sighed, "It's true."

The doctor then recounted to Huang the story of the WHO's April visit to the China-Japan Friendship Hospital. The hospital had 56 SARS patients, 31 of whom were doctors, nurses, and other medical workers. A few minutes before the WHO team arrived, a fleet of ambulances pulled into the horseshoe driveway in front of the hospital. The hospital director ordered the stricken healthcare workers loaded onto gurneys, and staff scrambled to move these patients into the waiting ambulances. As the team of WHO experts inspected the hospital, the fleet of white vans took a leisurely tour around Beijing, keeping its deadly cargo of 31 coughing health care workers a secret from the world.

The doctor was now confirming with Huang that this was more than a "hole"; it was a pattern of deception the scope and scale of which were hard to imagine.

Huang asked him, "How could you do this?"

The doctor said, softly, "We are ashamed."...

Karl Taro Greenfeld

GREENFELD, KARL TARO. "THE VIRUS HUNTERS: WHEN THE DEADLY SARS VIRUS STRUCK CHINA THREE YEARS AGO, BEIJING RESPONDED WITH A MASSIVE COVERUP. IF IT WEREN'T FOR THE PERSISTENCE OF TWO YOUNG REPORTERS AND ONE DOCTOR WHO HAD SEEN ENOUGH, SARS MIGHT HAVE KILLED THOUSANDS MORE. THERE'S NO GUARANTEE THE WORLD WILL BE SO LUCKY NEXT TIME." *FOREIGN POLICY* (MARCH, APRIL 2006): 153, 42.

SEE ALSO *Epidemiology; Public Health and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

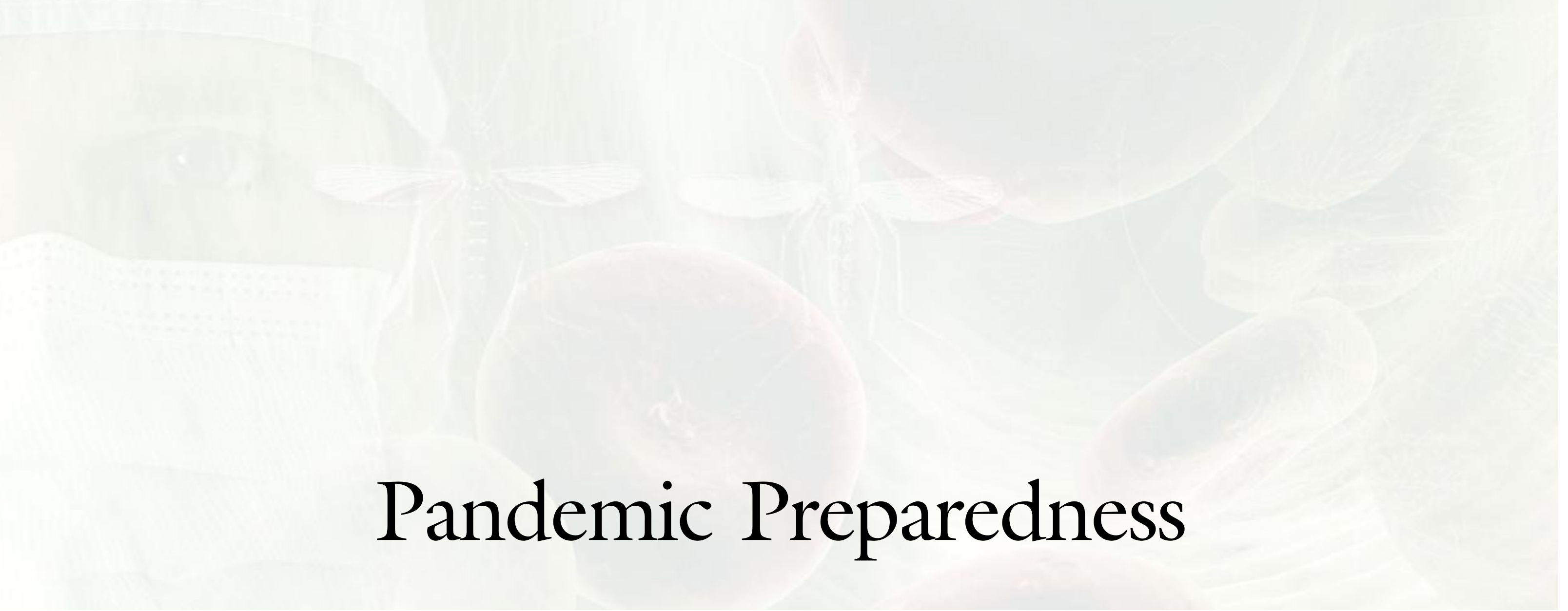
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Emergency Preparedness & Response." <http://www.bt.cdc.gov/> (accessed May 12, 2007).

United States General Accounting Office. "Infectious Disease Outbreaks." Apr 9, 2003 <http://www.gao.gov/new.items/d03654t.pdf> (accessed May 12, 2007).

World Health Organization Epidemic and Pandemic Alert and Response. "Global Outbreak Alert & Response Network." <http://www.who.int/csr/outbreaknetwork/en> (accessed May 12, 2007).

World Health Organization Western Pacific Region. "Investigation into China's recent SARS Outbreak Yields Important Lessons for Global Public Health." July 2, 2004 <http://www.wpro.who.int/sars/docs/update/update_07022004.asp> (accessed May 12, 2007).

Susan Aldridge



Pandemic Preparedness

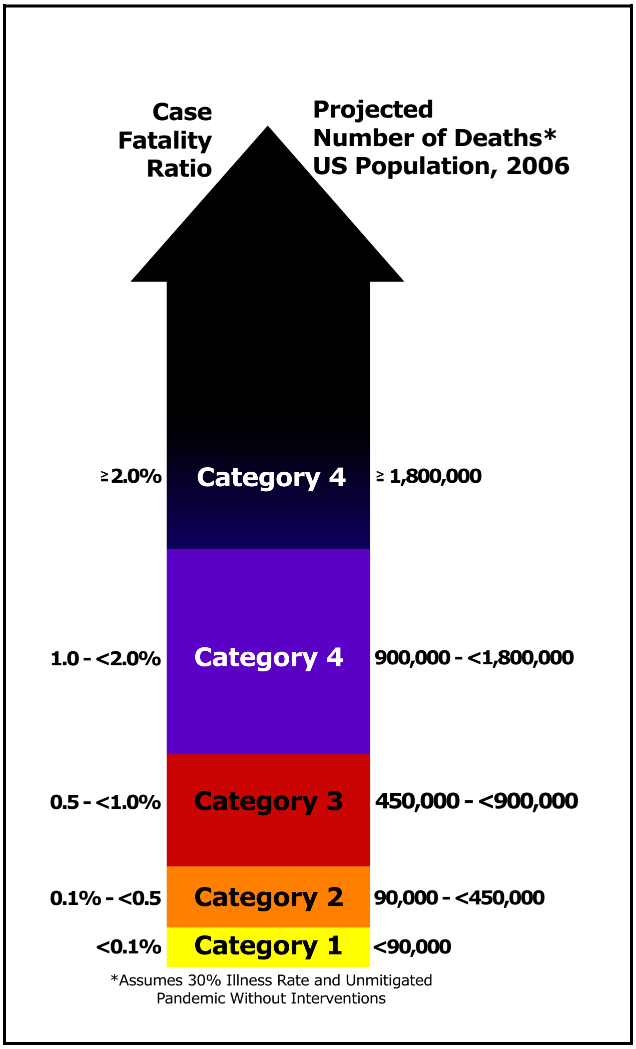
Introduction

Pandemic influenza is one of the greatest infectious disease threats facing the world. A pandemic is a disease epidemic that affects a large proportion of the population over a wide geographic area. In the worldwide pandemic influenza attacks of 1918, 1958, and 1968, about 30% of the U.S. population developed some degree of illness. It is likely that another pandemic will strike the same percentage of the population. With about 301,717,000 people in the United States in 2007, a pandemic could sicken over 90 million people in America alone.

There is little doubt in the medical community that a pandemic will strike—only its timing, severity, and exact microbial strain (type) remain unknown. If a pandemic is severe, the effects of it will be far-ranging. Damage to critical infrastructure will have both economic and social consequences. Accordingly, a number of governments, mostly in developed nations, along with the World Health Organization (WHO), have developed plans to tackle an influenza pandemic.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Influenza is a respiratory disease that historically has killed more people than the Black Death (plague). The dead are usually those with weakened immune systems, typically the already-ill, the very young, or the very old. However, the average age of death during the Spanish Influenza pandemic of 1918 was 33. Otherwise healthy adults in that deadly year may have produced an intense localized inflammation that overwhelmed their bodies. Transmission of the next pandemic may be from human to human or, in the possible case of avian flu, initially from bird to human.



The Pandemic Severity Index categorizes the severity of a pandemic using case fatality ratios. The index helps government officials forecast the impact of influenza on a population and make recommendations for measures, such as school closings, that could reduce the spread of the disease. *Courtesy, PandemicFlu.gov*

Scope and Distribution

Public health experts anticipate a gap between the supply of vaccine and the demand for vaccine during an influenza pandemic. To reduce the impact of an influenza pandemic, the WHO recommends a non-pharmaceutical approach, such as infection control, as well as a pharmaceutical approach, such as the use of vaccines and antiviral medications for treatment and prophylaxis. Unfortunately, the availability of a pandemic vaccine will be delayed for several months after influenza first appears because of the requirements for vaccine formulation and production. The widespread nature of a pandemic means that there will be insufficient production capacity to supply everyone seeking vaccine with medication, at least in the initial months of an outbreak.

For these reasons, pandemic planning must include the assumption that a range of individuals will be struck down by disease. The U.S. government estimates that 40% or more of workers may be out sick or afraid to go to work for fear of exposure. Community outbreaks may last for six to eight weeks, with multiple waves of disease outbreaks in a calendar year. Further complicating the situation, today's highly mobile population may result in simultaneous disease outbreaks throughout the nation.

A pandemic will likely dramatically reduce the number of workers available to provide goods and services. As a result, the critical infrastructure (food, banking, water, energy, telecommunications, transportation, postal and shipping, emergency services, healthcare) and key resources (government facilities, dams, nuclear power plants, commercial facilities) will lack the staff to function without interruption.

Treatment and Prevention

In 2005, U.S. President George W. Bush announced a comprehensive plan to prepare for and combat pandemic influenza. The plan emphasizes the need for all levels of government and the private sector to cooperate in developing a response. In 2006, the U.S. Homeland Security Council distributed *The National Strategy for Pandemic Influenza Implementation Plan*. It requires federal government departments and agencies to develop operational plans addressing the protection of employees, the maintenance of essential functions and services, support for federal responses, and communication about pandemic planning and response. State, local, and tribal governments bear the responsibility for limiting an outbreak within and beyond the community's borders, establishing plans, educating key spokespersons in risk communication, providing public education on pandemic influenza, and establishing stockpiles of essential goods. The plan also includes a pandemic severity index that uses case fatality ratios (the proportion of deaths among persons with a particular illness) to make specific recommendations for action based upon the impact of the pandemic.

WORDS TO KNOW

CASE FATALITY RATIO: A ratio indicating the amount of persons who die as a result of a particular disease, usually expressed as a percentage or as the number of deaths per 1,000 cases.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

QUARANTINE: Quarantine is the practice of separating people who have been exposed to an infectious agent but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. This can be done voluntarily or involuntarily by the authority of states and the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

IN CONTEXT: TERRORISM AND BIOLOGICAL WARFARE

Pandemic preparedness programs may also help safeguard against potential bitoterrorism. One example is the National Pharmaceutical Stockpile Program (NPS). The stockpile of antibiotics, vaccines, and other medical treatment countermeasures can be rapidly deployed to the site of a domestic attack. For example, in the aftermath of the deliberate release of *Bacillus anthracis* (the bacteria that causes anthrax) in 2001, the U.S. government and some state agencies were able to quickly provide an antibiotic called ciprofloxacin (Cipro) to those potentially exposed to the bacterium.

Following these bioterrorist attacks, increased funding for the NPS was authorized. The additional funds were designated to help train medical personnel in the early identification and treatment of disease caused by the most likely pathogens.

Advocates of increased research capabilities argue that laboratory and hospital facilities must be increased and modernized to provide maximum scientific flexibility in the identification and response to biogenic threats. The CDC has already established a bioterrorism response program that includes increased testing and treatment capacity along with an enhanced ability to recognize and respond to the illness patterns that are characteristic of the deliberate release of an infectious agent.

Impacts and Issues

With 83% of critical infrastructure in the United States in the hands of the private sector, developing individual and system-wide business continuity plans are a priority for planning for a possible pandemic. Businesses should assess the regulations and issues that could affect their supply chain, transportation, priority for municipal services, and workplace safety. Companies, such as restaurants, that rely on unavoidable public contact and those with shared workplaces, such as plants, will be especially hard-hit by limitations on face-to-face encounters.

It is possible that a pandemic response might involve closing places of assembly, isolating those with the disease, quarantining people who have been exposed to the disease, and furloughing non-essential workers. Meanwhile, the WHO has developed a Global Vaccine Action Plan to increase the supply of a vaccine during an influenza pandemic and thereby reduce the expected gap between supply and demand.

■ Primary Source Connection

During a pandemic, governmental agencies such as the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention will play a key role in tracking the disease, assisting state health agencies, and distributing key personnel and medical supplies. Planning at the community level is also important to maintain vital services during a pandemic, while limiting the spread of the disease. In the following excerpt from a guidebook for communities planning for a pandemic, the CDC recommends measures that promote limiting social contact during a pandemic, such as closing schools and voluntary quarantine for those who are ill with the disease.

Community Strategy for Pandemic Influenza Mitigation in the United States

The pandemic mitigation framework that is proposed is based upon an early, targeted, layered application of multiple partially effective nonpharmaceutical measures. It is recommended that the measures be initiated early before explosive growth of the epidemic and, in the case of severe pandemics, that they be maintained consistently during an epidemic wave in a community. The pandemic mitigation interventions described in this document include:

1. Isolation and treatment (as appropriate) with influenza antiviral medications of all persons with confirmed or probable pandemic influenza. Isolation may occur in the home or healthcare setting, depending on the severity of an individual's illness and/or the current capacity of the healthcare infrastructure.
2. Voluntary home quarantine of members of households with confirmed or probable influenza case(s) and consideration of combining this intervention with the prophylactic use of antiviral medications, providing sufficient quantities of effective medications exist and that a feasible means of distributing them is in place.
3. Dismissal of students from school (including public and private schools as well as colleges and universities) and school-based activities and closure of childcare programs, coupled with protecting children and teenagers through social distancing in the community to achieve reductions of out-of-school social contacts and community mixing.
4. Use of social distancing measures to reduce contact between adults in the community and workplace, including, for example, cancellation of large public gatherings and alteration of workplace environments and schedules to decrease social density and preserve a healthy workplace to the greatest extent possible without disrupting essential services. Enable institution of workplace leave policies that align incentives and facilitate adherence with the nonpharmaceutical interventions (NPIs) outlined above.

All such community-based strategies should be used in combination with individual infection control measures, such as handwashing and cough etiquette. Implementing these interventions in a timely and coordinated fashion will require advance planning. Communities must be prepared for the cascading second- and third-order consequences of the interventions, such as increased workplace absenteeism related to child-minding responsibilities if schools dismiss students and childcare programs close.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention

CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION. "INTERIM PRE-PANDEMIC PLANNING GUIDANCE: COMMUNITY STRATEGY FOR PANDEMIC INFLUENZA MITIGATION IN THE UNITED STATES." WASHINGTON, DC: U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES, FEBRUARY 2007, PAGE 8. ALSO AVAILABLE ONLINE AT <HTTP://WWW2A.CDC.GOV/PHLP/DOCS/COMMUNITY_MITIGATION.PDF>

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. "Pandemic Flu.gov." April 26, 2007. <http://www.pandemicflu.gov/index.html> (accessed April 28, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Epidemic and Pandemic Alert Response." 2007. <http://www.who.int/csr/disease/influenza/nationalpandemic/en/index.html> (accessed April 28, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Global Pandemic Influenza Action Plan to Increase Vaccine Supply." 2006. <http://www.who.int/vaccines-documents/DocsPDF06/863.pdf> (accessed April 28, 2007).

Caryn E. Neumann

Parasitic Diseases

Introduction

A parasite is an organism that lives on or in a host organism. It is dependent upon the host for food and protection. For millions of years, parasites and humans have co-existed. Many parasites do no damage, particularly protozoa in low numbers, but some can cause significant harm. Parasitic infections, such as toxoplasmosis, malaria, and Guinea worm, strike millions of people annually in every region of the world. These infections are often painful, debilitating, or deadly.

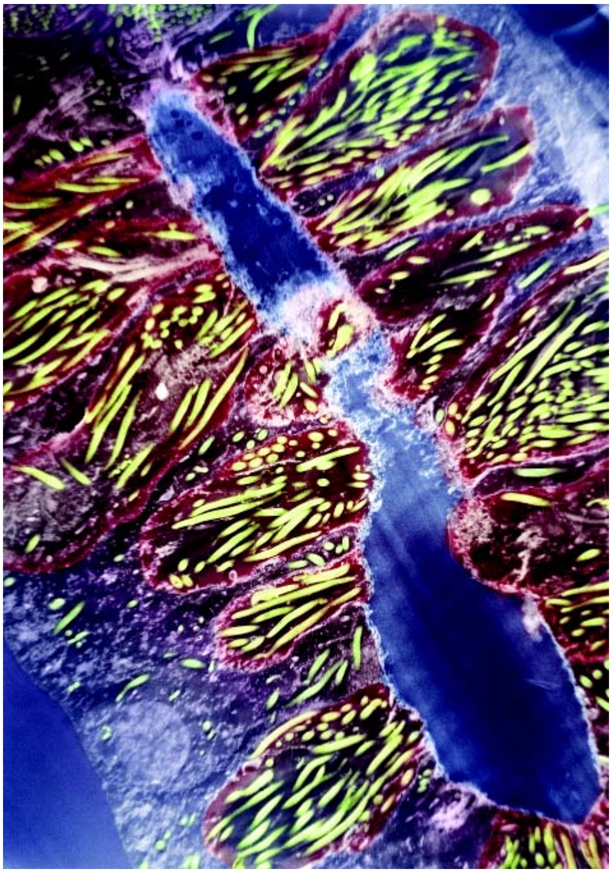
There are three main classes of parasites that can cause disease in humans: protozoa, helminths, and ectoparasites. Protozoa are microscopic, one-celled organisms. A serious infection can develop from just a single organism that then multiplies. Helminths are flatworms, thorny-headed worms, and roundworms. Ectoparasites are ticks, fleas, mites, and lice that burrow into the skin. Arthropods, including mosquitos, serve as the vectors of many different pathogens (disease-causing organisms).

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Transmission of protozoa typically occurs by a fecal-oral route through contaminated food or water or by person-to-person contact. Arthropod vectors, such as ticks, transmit protozoa that thrive in human blood or tissue. Helminths are spread by ingestion, usually through contaminated meat or water.

Scope and Distribution

Parasitic diseases occur most often in the topics and subtropics, but can also occur in more moderate climates, or anywhere the parasite and its host or vector resides. Worldwide, parasitic diseases, of which malaria is the leader, kill more than two million people annually. The World Health Organization estimates that over one person in four harbors some sort of parasitic helminth



This colored transmission electron micrograph (TEM) shows malaria sporozoites in mosquito salivary glands. The sporozoites (*Plasmodium* [yellow]) develop after the mosquito feeds on an infected human. They migrate to the salivary glands (red), move into the central salivary duct (dark blue area), and are injected into a human as the mosquito feeds. *LSHTM/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ARTHROPOD: A member of the largest single animal phylum, consisting of organisms with segmented bodies, jointed legs or wings, and exoskeletons.

ECTOPARASITES: Parasites that cling to the outside of their host, rather than their host's intestines. Common points of attachment are the gills, fins, or skin of fish.

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

PROTOZOA: Single-celled animal-like microscopic organisms that live by taking in food rather than making it by photosynthesis and must live in the presence of water. (Singular: protozoan.) Protozoa are a diverse group of single-celled organisms, with more than 50,000 different types represented. The vast majority are microscopic, many measuring less than or 5 one-thousandths of an inch (0.005 millimeters), but some, such as the freshwater Spirostomun, may reach 0.17 inches (3 millimeters) in length, large enough to enable it to be seen with the naked eye.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

(worm). In the United States, trichomoniasis is the most common parasitic infection, with over seven million cases diagnosed per year.

The increased movement of people from region to region has also spread parasites. Chagas, an insect-borne parasitic disease, once rarely appeared in the United States. Immigration from Central and Latin America is a contributing factor in an increased incidence of Chagas parasite, *Trypanosoma cruzi,* in the United States. The American Red Cross now screens blood donors for the parasite to prevent transmission. In the Los Angeles area, the parasite was found in one in 3,800 donors by 2006. Another disease, cysticercosis, caused by tapeworm larvae, is also on the rise in the United States. However, the disease disproportionately affects foreign-born residents, especially Hispanics who immigrated from Mexico and Central America, most of whom contracted the disease in their home countries.

Treatment and Prevention

The first step in treating a parasitic disease is to identify it but this is complicated by the number of diseases with similar symptoms that exist in the world. In 2006, a device known as GreeneChip became generally available to detect parasites. It is a microscope slide covered with bits and pieces of genetic information from nearly 30,000 different viruses, bacteria, fungi, and parasites. First used by the World Health Organization (WHO), the $125 slide has subsequently been delivered to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

If a parasite is detected in a host early enough, strong anti-protozoal drugs such as nifurtimox can bring the parasite to undetectable levels or eliminate it entirely. In other cases, such as the common Latin American and Middle Eastern blight leishmaniasis, medication derived from the chemical element antimony and anti-fungal drugs have stopped the parasite.

Patients with severe infections must also undergo weekly blood tests and electrocardiograms to make sure that their kidneys, liver, and heart remain healthy throughout treatment. Some parasites, such as the one that causes Chagas, may have multiplied over years and decades. In these cases, infected individuals may require treatment with heart-regulating drugs or regulation via an implanted pacemaker.

As of May 2007, there were no vaccines licensed to prevent parasitic diseases. Research and development of potential vaccines focus on three distinct ways to stop the spread of parasitic diseases. Anti-disease vaccines target blood forms and parasite-produced toxins. Transmission-blocking vaccines prevent the development of the parasite within a host. Anti-infection vaccines target parasites in stages where they are most likely to infect.

Several ongoing animal studies are testing possible vaccines against helminth and arthropod-borne parasitic diseases. As of 2005, at least one potential malaria vaccine was ready for clinical testing in humans. However, researchers have already noticed that some forms of vaccination may have unintended consequences. In some studies, parasites that survived in immunized animals displayed increased virulence. Such virulent strains of parasitic diseases such as malaria could be resistant to existing anti-malarial drugs or thwart emerging vaccines. Thus, many health officials assert that more must be done to identify and combat sources of parasites.

Impacts and Issues

Many parasitic diseases no longer have geographic borders. Physicians must consider that parasites which are common in distant regions may be seen in immigrants or travelers.

Regular access to potable water for drinking, cooking, and washing can virtually eliminate water-borne parasitic diseases. However, the WHO estimates that one billion people worldwide live without access to clean water. Improved access to uncontaminated water, personal hygiene and food safety education, and construction of sewer-sanitation systems—even as basic as proper latrines—dramatically reduce incidence of parasite related illnesses.

Parasitic disease prevention can have environmental consequences. Pesticides are often spread over large areas to reduce parasite-transmitting insect populations. Pesticides are powerful chemicals that can contaminate drinking water and soil. People who work around pesticides must take precautions to avoid exposure.

Use of some pesticides, such as dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT) remains controversial, but pesticides are an important part of parasitic disease control that save thousands of lives each year. To minimize environmental damage, researchers are working to develop better pesticides, many directed at killing parasite-transmitting insects, or the parasites themselves, while reducing toxicity to humans and animals. Health workers also promote responsible use of pesticides. For example, in the fight against mosquito-borne diseases, health workers advocate the use of insecticide-treated nets to minimize the need for topical insecticides applied directly to the skin.

Research indicates that global climate change may impact the incidence of parasitic infections in humans. Recent studies in Kenya indicate a strong correlation between rising temperatures, more variable rainfall, and a greater incidence of mosquitoes spreading malaria into highland areas previously protected from the parasite. A 2007 report by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) advised that millions of people may be affected by similar shifts in the spread of parasitic diseases. Other studies dispute these findings, asserting that increased migration of people and animals has a more significant impact on parasite distribution.

Malaria remains the top parasitic killer in the world, causing from one to two million deaths around the world each year, mostly among children. On June 30, 2005, U.S. president George W. Bush announced the President's Malaria Initiative (PMI), a cooperative program with the goal of cutting malaria deaths in half by 2008 in target African nations. The PMI funds research, anti-malarial drugs, and treatment as well as distributes insecticide-treated mosquito nets. Many other nations, international agencies, and nongovernment organizations have similar anti-malaria campaigns. Among non-government charitable entities, the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation is one of the world's leading sponsors of anti-malaria programs and malaria vaccine research, thus far granting over $400 million.

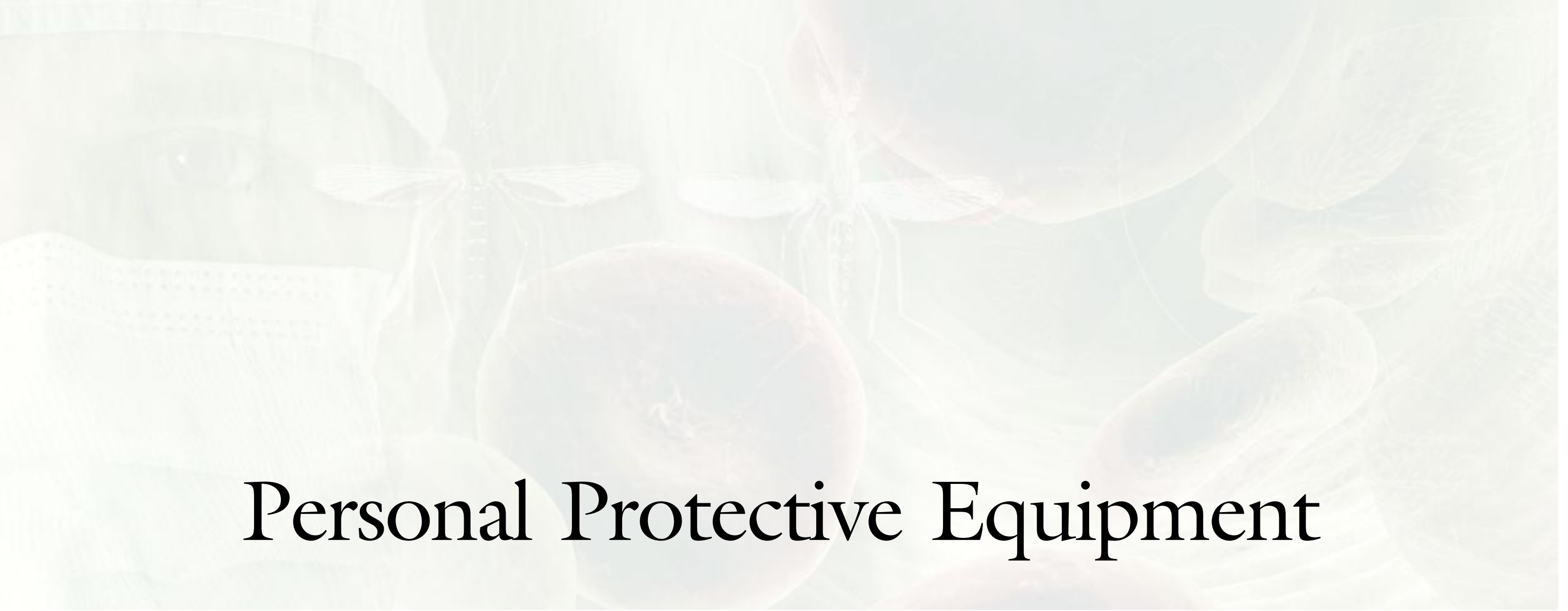
BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation. <http://www.gatesfoundation.org/default.htm> (accessed May 31, 2007).

Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Parasitic Diseases." February 16, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/index.htm> (accessed April 30, 2007).

Caryn E. Neumann



Personal Protective Equipment

Introduction

Personal protective equipment is equipment used in a healthcare setting to prevent direct contact with infectious microorganisms or contact with body fluids that might contain a disease-causing (pathogenic) microorganism.

Gloves, gowns or aprons, masks and respirators, goggles, and face shields are all examples of personal protective equipment. The degree of protection offered by such equipment varies depending on the infectious disease being dealt with. Treating someone who has a common cold may only require the use of medical gloves, for example, while a public health response to the dispersal of *Bacillus anthracis* (the cause of anthrax) requires personnel to wear full body suits, including sealed gloves and respirators that block the inhalation of the tiny bacterial spores.

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOSAFETY LEVEL 4 FACILITY: A specially equipped, secured laboratory where scientists study the most dangerous known microbes. These labs are designed to contain infectious agents and disease-causing microbes, prevent their dissemination, and protect researchers from exposure.

MICROORGANISM: Microorganisms are minute organisms. With the single yet-known exception of a bacterium that is large enough to be seen unaided, individual microorganisms are microscopic in size. To be seen, they must be magnified by an optical or electron microscope. The most common types of microorganisms are viruses, bacteria, blue-green bacteria, some algae, some fungi, yeasts, and protozoans.

PATHOGEN: A disease-causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

RESPIRATOR: A respirator is any device that assists a patient in breathing or takes over breathing entirely for them.

History and Scientific Foundations

The use of personal protective equipment is centuries old. Records from England dating back to the seventeenth century describe the protective headgear, gowns, and masks worn by physicians treating plague victims. At the time, some physicians assumed that plague could be transmitted through the air. Although scientists later discovered that plague is caused by a bacterium called *Yersinia pestis* that is transmitted by the bite of an infected flea, the use of protective clothing was a wise precaution.

Through the early decades of the nineteenth century, surgeons did not wear any special clothing when they performed operations. Surgeries were done by physicians who literally walked in off the street into an open-air operating theater. The realization that dedicated surgical clothing prevented the transmission of infections from patient to patient revolutionized medicine and made post-surgical infections less common. In this sense, the clothing was protective to the patient. However, with time the protective value of clothing to healthcare providers also was recognized.

Then as now, the premise of personal protective equipment is simple—protective clothing and other gear presents a barrier to the transmission of infectious microorganisms.

Applications and Research

The types of personal protective equipment used depend on a number of factors. One factor is the setting. For example, a researcher at a biosafety level 4 facility, which is designed to deal with dangerously contagious microorganisms, must be completely enclosed in a protective suit that is connected to an air supply. On the other hand, a general practitioner who is examining a person who has a cold may only elect to wear a face mask as a barrier to virus-laden droplets that could be expelled by a cough.

Another factor is the anticipated type of exposure. More extensive face and body coverage is required if there is the potential for splashing or spraying of body fluids, for example. Related to this is the appropriateness of the protective equipment for the task. For example, when confronting a dangerous respiratory infection, a respirator can be more appropriate than a mask, since the respirator is designed to exclude small droplets that can pass through the mask fabric. As a second example, an apron that does not absorb liquids is a safer choice when dealing with a victim of Ebola (where a great deal of bleeding usually occurs) than a surgical gown made of absorbent cotton.

A third factor is the fit of the protective equipment. One size does not fit all. Trying to care for a patient or respond to a medical emergency while wearing protective equipment that is too small or too large is certainly inconvenient and can be dangerous. Ill-fitting protective gear may restrict movement and, in the case of a respirator that is too large and fits sloppily on the face, may render the equipment useless.

Gloves are the most common personal protective equipment in hospitals and other healthcare settings. The choice of glove depends on the task. Gloves are available in a variety of materials, may be sterile (free of microorganisms) or non-sterile, and may be intended for single use or repeated use. However, gloves are only as effective as the person wearing them. For example, if a healthcare provider fails to change gloves after leaving one patient and moving on to treat another patient, infections may be spread. Even when treating a single patient, a healthcare worker should change gloves after examining a body site that is infected and before examining other non-infected sites on the same patient.

The use of approved respirators are required when dealing with certain infections. One example is tuberculosis. The bacterium that is responsible for the respiratory infection (*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*) can be expelled inside small droplets, which can be inhaled by someone close by the patient. N95, N99, and N100 respirators are designed to exclude droplets that are less than 5 microns (a micron is one-millioneth of a meter) in diameter. Avian influenza—a potentially lethal infection caused by the H5N1 virus that has evolved to include the capability of person-to-person transmission—is another infection that requires a healthcare provider to use a respirator.

Impacts and Issues

When properly used and worn, personal protective equipment is an efficient means of minimizing the spread of infectious disease from those who are infected to their healthcare providers, and, via the healthcare provider, to other patients. For example, before surgeons began to wear surgical garments, operations were a last resort due to the high post-surgical death rate. When surgeons began to wear special clothing that was changed between operations, the rate of post-surgical infection decreased dramatically. Today, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration enforces the Bloodborne Pathogens Standard, last updated in 2001, which specifies the personal protective practices and equipment that must be available for healthcare workers and patients in the United States.

But there are difficulties involved in the use of protective equipment. For example, in an emergency, there may not be time to properly clean protective clothing or to maintain the supply of disposable protective equipment, such as gloves or disposable needles. As a result, protective equipment may be re-used when it should not be, and the contaminated equipment can continue the spread of infection. During the first documented outbreak of Ebola hemorrhagic fever in Zaire in 1976, the virus quickly spread to

IN CONTEXT: TERRORISM AND BIOLOGICAL WARFARE

Fear of bioterrorism, periodically heightened by news events, sometimes causes panic buying of equipment that may be ill-designed to meet real threats. For example, military surplus gas masks generally provide only the illusion of protection. They offer no real protection against biological agents and should not be bought for that purpose. Personnel stockpiling of antibiotics is also unwise. The potency of antibiotics such as Cipro declines with time. Moreover, the inappropriate use of antibiotics can actually lead to the development of bacterial resistance and a consequential lowering of antibiotic effectiveness.

General preparedness is always prudent. A few days supply of food and water and the identification of rooms in homes and offices that can be temporarily sealed with duct tape to reduce outside air infiltration is a wise precaution. More specific response plans and protective measures, however, must be based upon the specific dangers posed by organisms that produce disease. For example, Anthrax (*Bacillus anthracis*), Botulism (*Clostridium botulinum* toxin), Plague (*Yersinia pestis*), Smallpox (*Variola major*), Tularemia (*Francisella tularensis*), viral hemorrhagic fevers (e.g., Ebola, Marburg), and arenaviruses (e.g., Lassa) are considered high-risk potential bioterrorism agents. These agents share a common trait of being easily spread from person to person. And they all can kill many of those who are infected. However, the natures of the diseases they cause are very different. A response that is effective against one microorganism may well be useless against another.

hospital workers when non-disposable needles were reused and protective barriers, such as non-permeable gowns and face shields, were not available.

As shown in the months following the September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on the United States, the deliberate airborne release of an infectious organism, such as *B. anthracis*, can easily occur. A large scale release of such a pathogen could affect a wide geographical area, requiring the rapid deployment of many personnel. It is unlikely that their need for protective equipment could be met from a central source, since even facilities dedicated to the study of highly infectious microbes usually have only a limited number of full-body protective suits on hand. This is an issue that those responsible for emergency planning need to address.

SEE ALSO *Bioterrorism; Contact Precautions; Infection Control and Asepsis; Isolation and Quarantine; Standard Precautions.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Lawrence, Jean, and Dee May. *Infection Control in the Community.* New York: Churchill Livingstone, 2003.

Tierno, Philip M. *The Secret Life of Germs: What They Are, Why We Need Them, and How We Can Protect Ourselves Against Them.* New York: Atria, 2004.

Brian Hoyle

Pink Eye (Conjunctivitis)

Introduction

Pink eye refers to a chemical- or allergy-related inflammation, or a viral or bacterial infection, of the transparent covering of the eyelid and a portion of the eyeball. The transparent covering is called the conjunctiva, and so the inflammation or infection is known as conjunctivitis.

The designation pink eye indicates the appearance of the inflamed or infected conjunctiva, due to the increased prominence of blood vessels, which changes the color of the white portion of the eye to red or pink.

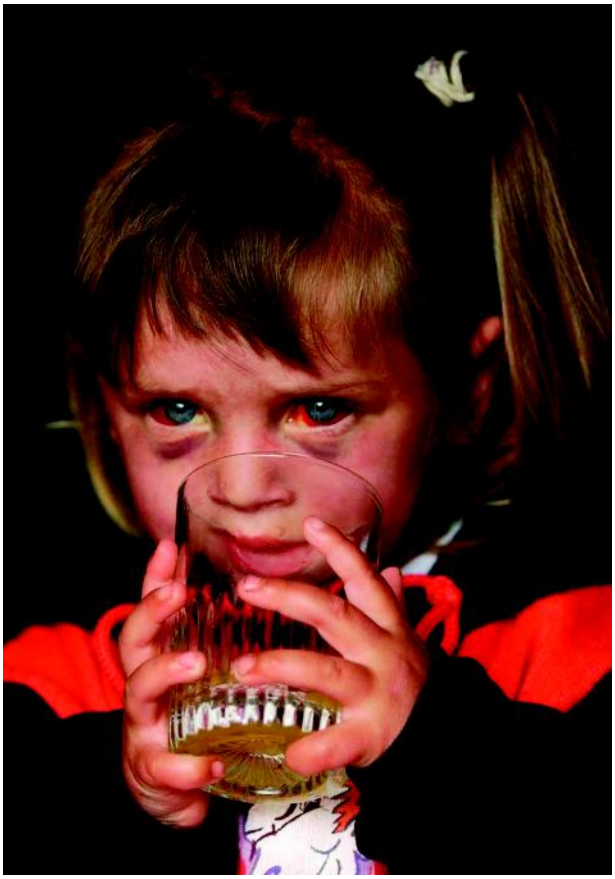
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Infection-related conjunctivitis can be caused by viruses or bacteria. The microbes that are responsible are those that cause colds, ear infections, sore throats, and sexually transmitted diseases. Bacteria include *Staphylococcus*, *Streptococcus*, *Chlamydia*, *Gonorrhea*, and *Hemophilus.* Viruses include adenoviruses, rhinoviruses, coronaviruses, echoviruses, paramyxoviruses, and coxsackieviruses. Viral conjunctivitis is more common than the bacterial infections.

Infants can be infected during birth by bacteria in the mother's birth canal. While harmless in the mother, the bacteria are capable of causing an infection in the infant, whose immune system is not yet operating at full efficiency. The bacteria are described as being opportunitistic pathogens—they normally cause no harm, but can cause disease given the appropriate circumstances. Screening of the mother prior to the birth can detect and treat the infection. Newborn conjunctivitis is treated by the application of an antibiotic ointment to the eyes soon after birth.

The redness of the affected eye(s) is a hallmark of pink eye. Another common symptom is the feeling that something foreign is in the eye. Many people also complain of a gritty or itchy sensation in the infected eye(s). Other symptoms include blurred vision, increased sensitivity to light, increased formation of tears, and a discharge from the infected eye(s) that can become crusty during sleep.

Conjunctivitis can also be caused by an allergic reaction to pollen or some other substance. A part of the allergic response is the production of an antibody called immunoglobulin E, which in turn triggers cells in the



Conjunctivitis is a common disease, especially in children, that is usually caused by bacteria or viruses and is limited to the clear membrane that covers the white part of the eye. *AP Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC: A drug, such as penicillin, used to fight infections caused by bacteria. Antibiotics act only on bacteria and are not effective against viruses.

EYE DROPS: Eye drops are saline-containing fluid that is added to the eye to cleanse the eye or as the solution used to administer antibiotics or other medication.

HISTAMINE: Histamine is a hormone that is chemically similar to the hormones serotonine, epinephrine, and norepinephrine. A hormone is generally defined as a chemical produced by a certain cell or tissue that causes a specific biological change or activity to occur in another cell or tissue located elsewhere in the body. Specifically, histamine plays a role in localized immune responses and in allergic reactions.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

OPTIC SOLUTION: Any liquid solution of a medication that can be applied directly to the eye is an optic solution.

eyes and airway to release various compounds. One of these compounds, histamine, produces a variety of allergic responses including allergic conjunctivitis.

While the allergic response cannot be passed from person to person, viral and bacterial conjunctivitis are highly contagious.

Scope and Distribution

Pink eye is global in occurrence and can affect anyone. Pink eye, like most minor contagious infections, spreads easily among groups of children. Viral and bacterial pink eye often affect children who live in group settings or attend school or day care.

Treatment and Prevention

People who develop bacterial or viral pink eye should avoid close contact with others. This is especially important for infants in day care and school-age children.

The cause of pink eye can be determined. If caused by a bacterial infection, pink eye is easily treated using antibiotics. Typically, the antibiotic is applied as an eyedrop solution, although an ointment can be used for infants and younger children. The infection usually clears up within several days. Even so, the antibiotic needs to be used for as long as has been prescribed to make sure all the infecting bacteria are killed. If treatment is stopped too early, some bacteria may survive and develop resistance to the antibiotic, making treatment of the recurring infection more difficult.

Allergic pink eye can be treated by use of eyedrops containing compounds that lessen symptoms. Rubbing the eye should be avoided, as it can introduce allergens and trigger more symptoms.

Good personal hygiene, especially handwashing and minimizing rubbing of the eyes, reduces the risk of developing pink eye. Frequently washing of bathroom and bedroom linens and avoiding sharing pillows and cosmetic applicators further lessen the risk of conjunctivitis.

Impacts and Issues

While conjunctivitis is usually an inconvenience rather than a health concern, there is a risk that it can lead to problems with the cornea of the eye. As well, the infection in newborns can led to more serious health issues, including loss of vision. Prompt treatment can eliminate this concern.

In the United Kingdom, researchers and public health officials are currently studying the costs and benefits of changing common medical approaches to the treatment of viral and bacterial conjunctivitis. Since many cases of pink eye can disappear without medical intervention, researchers are developing new protocols for when parents should seek medical attention for children with conjunctivitis and how physicians should treat conjunctivitis. Public health officials have noted that antibiotic eyedrops are frequently prescribed, even before a clinical diagnosis of bacterial pink eye can be made. Use of antibiotics does not treat viral pink eye and only negligibly reduces recovery time for most cases of bacterial pink eye. Researchers worry that overzealous prescription of antibiotics could lead to bacterial resistance. Health officials note that patients' costs associated with treating many mild forms of pink eye—including eyedrops, antibiotics, missed work, missed school, and doctors' visits—may be unnecessarily high.

See Also *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Contact Lenses and* Fusarium *Keratitis.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Douglas, Ann. *The Mother of All Toddler Books.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

Ernest, Paul H. *How to Have Healthy Eyes for Life.* New York: Hudson Mills Press, 2003.

Weizer, Jennifer S., and Sharon Fekrat. *All about Your Eyes.* Raleigh: Duke University Press, 2006.

Brian Hoyle

CONJUNCTIVA AND TEARS

A fine mucus membrane, the conjunctiva, covers the cornea and also lines the eyelid. Blinking lubricates the cornea with tears, providing the moisture necessary for its health. The cornea's outside surface is protected by a thin film of tears produced in the lacrimal glands located in the lateral part of the orbit below the eyebrow. Tears flow through ducts from this gland to the eyelid and eye, and they drain from the inner corner of the eye into the nasal cavity. A clear watery liquid, the aqueous humor, separates the cornea from the iris and lens. The cornea contains no blood vessels or pigment and gets its nutrients from the aqueous humor.

Pinworm (*Enterobius vermicularis*) Infection

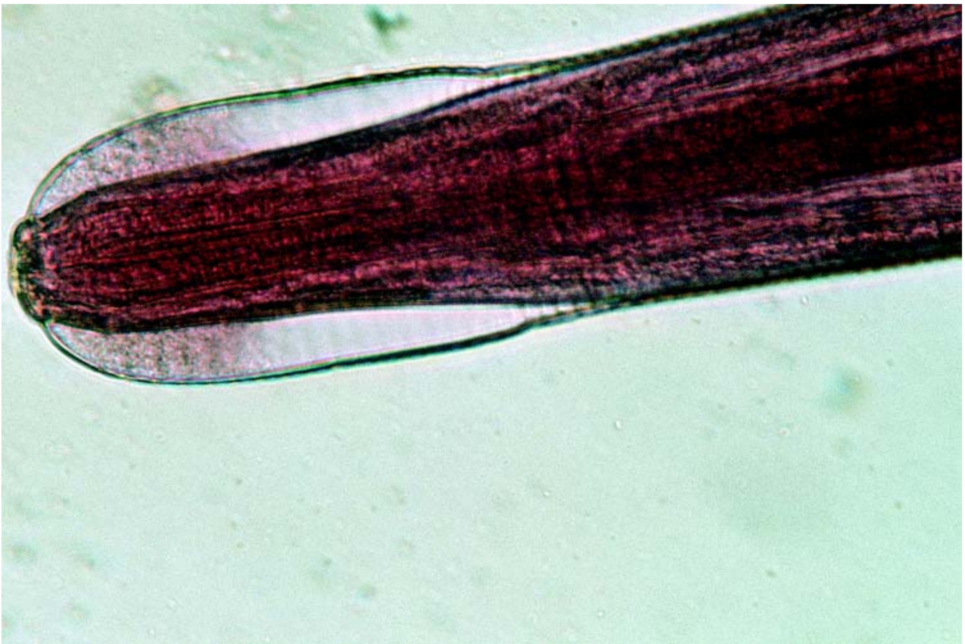
Introduction

Pinworm infection, or enterobiasis, is a common helminth infection that arises when humans drink water or eat food contaminated by eggs of parasitic pinworms. Enterobiasis is considered the most common roundworm infection in the United States. Although it can affect any human, it is more common in children.

Pinworms live in the general area of the body known as the rectum (lower part of intestine). The small, thin (threadlike), white pinworm is about 0.4 in (1 cm) in length, with the adult male ranging from 0.04–0.16 in (0.1–0.4 cm) in length and the adult female having a length of 0.32–0.50 in (0.8–1.3 cm). A pinworm possesses a long, pin-shaped posterior, which gives the worm its common name. Pinworms are nematodes in the family Oxyuridae, genus *Enterobius.* Pinworm infection is most commonly caused by the species *Enterobius vermicularis*, the threadworm. A second species, *Enterobius gregorii*, recently has been found to cause the infection in Africa, Asia, and Europe.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The pinworm is a roundworm, which is the common name of any non-segmented worm located in freshwater, marine, or terrestrial environments. Roundworms are



Adult pinworm, *Enterobius vermicularis*, is shown. *Pr. Bouree/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

found almost anywhere around the world, living frequently in the surface layers of soils.

Pinworms develop to adulthood within the host's intestines, specifically in the lower small intestine and the upper colon. On rare occasions they are found in the abdominal lining, fallopian tubes, liver, uterus, and vagina. Generally, they are not found in the bloodstream or in other organs besides the intestines.

The male pinworm dies after mating. The female moves from the intestine to the anal area where she lays 10,000–20,000 eggs. Within four to six hours, the eggs become mature and, thus, infectious. The female soon expels a sticky substance that causes itching in the host. Intense itching causes the human to transfer eggs to the fingers, which then transfer the eggs to other objects. The eggs can live outside of a host for up to two weeks—in some cases, three weeks. The eggs are often accidentally ingested. The larvae then hatch and move to the intestine. They mature within 30–45 days. Their overall lifespan is about 60 days. The larvae can also hatch outside the host and then move through the anus and into the intestines. In some cases, the eggs become airborne and are inhaled by the host.

Symptoms are usually mild, and sometimes there are no symptoms at all. When present, symptoms include itching, intestinal problems, vomiting, nervousness and irritability, restless sleep, and sometimes skin reddening and infection around the anus. Other than these mild symptoms, the infection usually does not cause permanent damage.

Scope and Distribution

Pinworm infection is found worldwide, although it is found more commonly in temperate regions of Western Europe and North America. It is only occasionally found in tropical areas. The infection is frequently found when humans live in crowded environments. It is estimated that between 200 million and 500 million people worldwide are infected annually. The Division of Parasitic Diseases (DPD) of the National Center for Infectious Diseases (U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention) estimates that approximately 40 million people are infected each year in the United States. About 50% of all children become infected at some time during their childhoods.

In the United States, according to the DPD, pinworm infection is most common in school-age children, followed by preschool-age children and people in institutional care facilities and children at day care facilities. Mothers are also frequently infected.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis of pinworm infection is made by an examination of the patient's anal region. A tape test is usually used, which involves placing the sticky side of a transparent adhesive or cellophane tape against the skin around the anus. The procedure should be performed immediately after waking up, before bathing and using the toilet, so that any eggs in the anal area will be picked up. The materials that stick to the tape are then examined under a microscope for the presence of pinworms. The infected person may also see worms crawling on bed sheets or clothing.

Treatment includes various antiparasitic drugs that have been found effective in treating the infection. These drugs include albendazole, mebendazole, piperazine, and pyrantel pamoate. If one person in a household has the infection, all family members are often advised to take the drug treatment.

WORDS TO KNOW

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of wormlike animals.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

LARVAE: Immature forms (wormlike in insects; fishlike in amphibians) of an organism capable of surviving on its own. Larvae do not resemble the parent and must go through metamorphosis, or change, to reach the adult stage.

NEMATODES: Also known as roundworms; a type of helminth characterized by long, cylindrical bodies.

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

The Division of Parasitic Diseases at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that "pinworm is the most common worm infection in the United States. School-age children, followed by preschoolers, have the highest rates of infection. In some groups nearly 50% of children are infected. Infection often occurs in more than one family member. Adults are less likely to have pinworm infection, except mothers of infected children. Child care centers, and other institutional settings often have cases of pinworm infection."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases.*

These medicines kill the worms about 95% of the time. However, they do not kill the eggs. To kill the eggs, a second round of medicine is recommended two weeks after the completion of the first round. If this treatment does not eliminate the infection, then additional treatments should be administered. In addition, a thorough search should be made for the source of the infection, including other children, household members, and anyone or anything else that has come in contact with the infected person. Four to six treatments spaced two weeks apart are sometimes recommended for difficult cases.

To avoid becoming re-infected, an array of hygiene practices are advised, including disinfecting eating utensils and bed linens; cleaning the toilet daily; keeping fingers away from the nostrils and mouth; bathing when first waking; changing and washing underwear daily; changing bed clothing frequently and after each treatment; providing plenty of sunlight or artificial light (pinworms are light sensitive); trimming fingernails (scratching of anal area may place pinworms underneath nails); and not scratching bare anal areas.

Impacts and Issues

When treated properly, pinworm infection is fully curable. Even though the prognosis for pinworm infection is very good, complications can set in. Among the most common complications are salpingitis (pelvic inflammatory disease, an infection of the lining of the uterus, fallopian tubes, or ovaries), vaginitis (any infection or inflammation of the vagina), and reinfestation (further reoccurrence of the infection).

Children who are being treated for pinworm infection need not be kept home from school, and it is not appropriate to conclude that a child with pinworms has an unclean environment. Pinworm infections are extremely common among children, with half of all children eventually becoming infected due to the large amount of time spent outdoors playing in dirt and sand. Parents can minimize the chances of their children getting the infection by promoting handwashing and sanitation within and outside the home. Prompt medical care, medication, and preventive hygiene practices will eliminate pinworms from children and adults in a quick and safe manner.

SEE ALSO *CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention); Public Health and Infectious Disease; Roundworm (Ascariasis) infection.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Cheng, Liang, and David G. Bostwick, eds. *Essentials of Anatomic Pathology.* Totowa, NJ: Humana Press, 2006.

Rudolph, Collin D., et al., eds. *Rudolph's Pediatrics.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Enterobiasis (*Enerobius vermicularis*)." May 5, 2004. <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Enterobiasis.htm> (accessed March 16, 2007).

KidsHealth for Parents. "Infections: Pinworm." April 2005. <http://www.kidshealth.org/parent/infections/parasitic/pinworm.html> (accessed March 16, 2007).

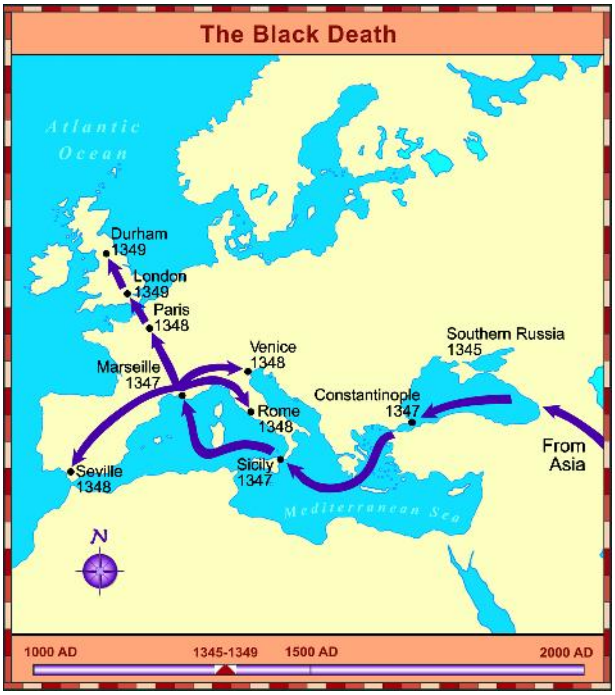
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Parasitic Roundworm Diseases." February 2005. <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/factsheets/roundwor.htm> (accessed March 16, 2007).

Plague, Early History

Introduction

Plague has shaped the development of all civilizations. In the recorded histories of Chinese civilization, epidemic disease thrice wiped out one-quarter to over one-third of its population. The Black Death transformed the social, political, and economic landscape of medieval Europe.

Most scientists and historians link bubonic plague in antiquity to rats. *Yersina pestis*, the bacterium that causes bubonic plague, lives inside the guts of a flea. When inside the flea, *Yersina pestis* can multiply and blocks the flea's throat area, making the flea quite hungry and in search of new hosts, whether rats or humans. When the flea bites, some of the bacteria is spit out into the bite wound, transmitting the disease.



This map shows the migration of the bubonic plague during the 14th century from Asia and Europe. © *MAPS.com/Corbis.*

However, pestilence or plague as recorded in the annals of history does not refer to only one disease. "Plague" did not always describe bubonic plague or the Black Death. Measles, smallpox, flu, dysentery, or typhoid all could have produced a sudden rise in mortality and were referred to in antiquity as plague.

Epidemic disease has likely always been part of human history, but the first written account of its devastating effects originates in the ancient Middle East. The development of horticulture permitted the development of towns, concentrating populations in relatively small areas and facilitating the spread of some diseases. Many historians assert that infectious disease agents spread and thrived because there was a large supply of non-immune, disease-susceptible people that diseases could attack. People often shared their living quarters with farm animals. Diseases such as cowpox could affect humans or become genetically modified to create epidemics, such as smallpox.

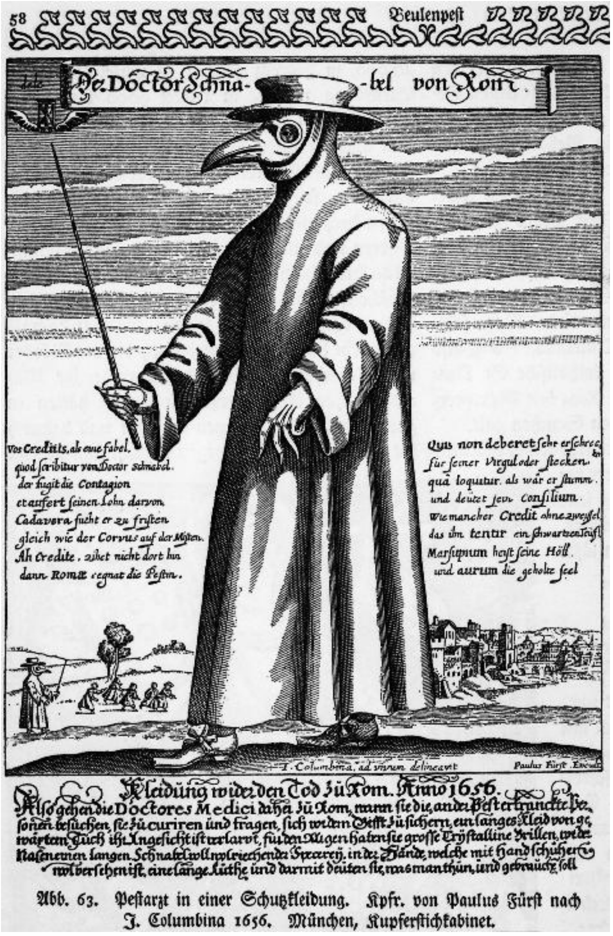
History

Plague in Ancient Egypt, the Middle East, and China

Ancient literature often provides a historical account of ancient epidemics. The Babylonian *Epic of Gilgamesh* from the seventh-century BC claimed that a visit from the god of pestilence was more preferable than a flooding disaster, and an Egyptian text from 2000 BC compared "fear of Pharaoh with fear of the god of disease in the year of pestilence." Biblical texts such as the Book of Exodus also report the plagues in Egypt in the form of skin pustules, and the Plague of the Philistines in I Samuel supposedly killed 70,000 in Israel.

In ancient China, references to plague in the Yangtze River Valley were likely endemic malaria or Dengue Fever, a disease common in low-lying areas borne by mosquitoes. The Chinese also were beset by smallpox,

Bronze figurine of the Canaanite god Reshef, god of the nether world and of plagues. *Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY.*



58 Beulenpeſt
Der Doctor Schnabel von Rom.
Vos Creditis, als eine fabel,
quod ſcribitur von Doctor Schnabel.
der fugit die Contagion
et aufert ſeinen Lohn darvon.
Cadavera ſucht er zu friſten
gleich wie der Corvus auf der Miſten.
Ah Credite, ſihet nicht dort hin
dann Romæ regnat die Peſtin.
Quis non deberet ſehr erſchrecken
für ſeiner Virgul oder ſtecken.
quâ loquatur, als wär er ſtumm.
und deutet ſein Consilium.
Wie mancher Credit ohne zweyffel
das ihn tentir ein ſchwartzer Teufl
Marſupium heyſt ſeine Höll,
und aurum die geholte ſeel
I. Columbina, ad vivum delineavit
Paulus Fürſt Excudit
Kleidung wider den Tod zu Rom. Anno 1656.
Alſo gehen die Doctores Medici daher zu Rom, wann ſie die, an der Peſt erkranckte Perſonen beſuchen, ſie zu curiren und fragen, ſich wider den Gifft zu ſichern, ein langes Kleid von gewarten Tuch ihr Angeſicht iſt verlarvt, für den Augen haben ſie groſſe Cryſtalline Brillen, wider Naſen einen langen Schnabel voll wolriechender Specerey, in der Hände, welche mit Handſchuhen wol verſehen iſt, eine lange Ruthe und darmit deuten ſie, was man thun, und gebrauchen ſoll
Abb. 63. Peſtarzt in einer Schutzkleidung. Kpfr. von Paulus Fürſt nach J. Columbina 1656. München, Kupferſtichkabinet.

A 17th-century illustration shows a physician wearing protective clothing, including a mask, to shield him against the plague. *© Bettmann/Corbis.*

and they invented the first techniques of effective prevention in 590 BC called “pock-sowing.” They would grind dried skin scabs from smallpox victims along with musk and apply the mixture to the noses of the healthy. The Chinese also placed matter from the smallpox pustules that arose on the skin into a scratch in the arm of a recipient, in a process called variolation. Exposure to the pathogen usually produced a mild case and gave the recipient immunity, but sometimes a full-blown case would develop. (Effective and safe vaccination for smallpox did not occur until the eighteenth century).

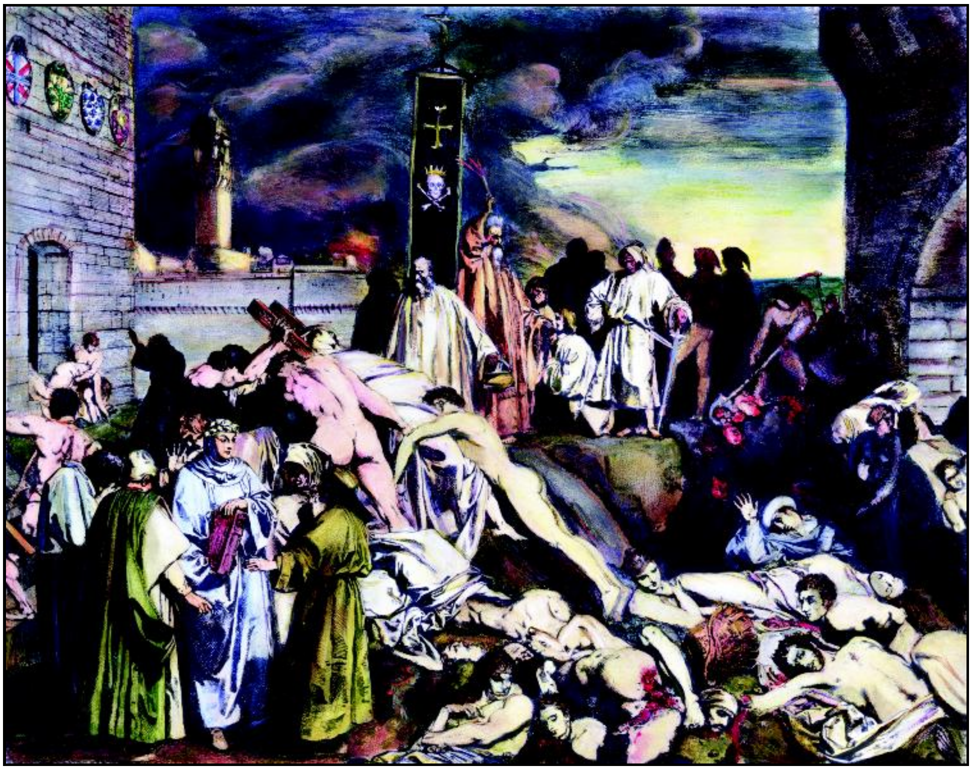
However, another Egyptian text, called the Ebers Papyrus, from 1500 BC does describe an epidemic disease with symptoms similar to the bubonic plague, a bacterial infection that causes buboes, or swelling of the lymph glands. The Ebers Papyrus mentions an illness that “has produced a bubo, and the pus has petrified, the disease has hit.”

Plague in Ancient Greece and Rome

In contrast with Egypt or China where rivers brought irrigation as well as disease-borne vectors, ancient Greece was relatively free of disease. The Greek agriculture did not alter the environment nearly as much as Chinese rice paddies. As a result, the agricultural revolution in Greece did not bring exposure to new diseases.

Threat of epidemics came from the expansion of cities in Greece, increased population density, and exposure to new pathogens from travelers and trade. Ancient Greece was made up of a number of small independent city-states and economics was driven by trade—contact with other peoples brought contact with new diseases. In the fifth century BC, Athens was the most prominent Greek city-state, and it initiated a protracted war with rival city-state Sparta. Expecting to win with its powerful navy, Athens was instead brought to its knees with the appearance of a mysterious epidemic in 430-429 BC that wiped out one-quarter of the Athenian land forces. The ancient Greek historian Thucydides (460–399 BC) in his *History of the Peloponnesian War* argues the epidemic was the main reason for Athens military defeat—a defining event in subsequent Mediterranean political history.

The identity of this epidemic has been a matter of debate, ranging from scarlet fever to smallpox to



A 14th-century engraving by Giovanni Boccaccio (1313–1375) depicts an outbreak of the plague in Florence, Italy. *© Bettmann/Corbis.*

bubonic plague to the effects of ergot or a mold on the grain supply. Regardless of the source or causative agent of disease, Athenians had little immunity to it. Because the disease entered the Athenian population with sudden ferocity and then disappeared, several scientists and historians theorize that the pathogen came by sea and soon died out after provoking an accelerated immune response in the local population. The Spartans, more geographically isolated on the Peloponnesian peninsula, were untouched, giving them a decisive military advantage.

Ancient Rome was highly prone to plagues. During the reign of emperor Marcus Aurelius (121–180), the Roman Empire was struck by a destructive epidemic that began in 166 AD and occurred with intermittent frequency until 189 AD. The accounts of the Greek physician Galen (c.130–c.200) about the plague, particularly the incidence of skin rash and gastrointestinal bleeding, have led some scholars to conclude it was probably smallpox. The mortality rate was 7 to 10 percent among the local population, and 10 to 15 percent in the army for a total of five million deaths over the 23-year period. Unlike in China, treatment in the Western World was relatively ineffectual, though it was common knowledge that smallpox survivors were immune to the disease. As early as 430 BC, those who had survived the disease were encouraged to nurse others through the illness, and the Romans also advocated this practice.

The Late Roman Empire and the First Pandemic of the Bubonic Plague

The first pandemic of bubonic plague occurred during the reign of Roman emperor Justinian (483–565). The pandemic probably originated in lower Egypt in 542 and spread via trade routes to Alexandria and then to Constantinople, which served as the capital of the eastern part of the Roman Empire (known as Byzantium) at the time. Forty percent of the population in Constantinople perished. The medical writer Procopius of Caesarea (c.500–c.565) clearly identified the disease as bubonic plague, remarking, "The fever made its attack suddenly. Generally on the first or second day, but in a few instances later, buboes appeared, not only in the groin, but also in the armpits and below the ears." The plague then continued to Italy, Spain, Britain, Denmark, and ended up in China in 610 AD, and it has been estimated it killed 100 million people, approximately 50% of the human population. As Procopius relates in his *History of the Wars*, doctors had little recourse or understanding how to treat the disease. They did observe in some patients however that their buboes grew to a large size and ruptured. The patient usually recovered, but tended to have muscle tremors; doctors therefore would lance the buboes in an attempt to increase chances of survival.

WORDS TO KNOW

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

ETIOLOGY: The study of the cause or origin of a disease or disorder.

PLAGUE: A contagious disease that spreads rapidly through a population and results in a high rate of death.

QUARANTINE: Quarantine is the practice of separating people who have been exposed to an infectious agent but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. This can be done voluntarily or involuntarily by the authority of states and the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

VACCINATION: Vaccination is the inoculation, or use of vaccines, to prevent specific diseases within humans and animals by producing immunity to such diseases. The introduction of weakened or dead viruses or microorganisms into the body to create immunity by the production of specific antibodies.

VARIOLATION: Variolation was the pre-modern practice of deliberately infecting people with smallpox in order to make them immune to a more serious form of the disease. It was dangerous, but did confer immunity on survivors.

Land went uncultivated leading to food shortages, entire villages in rural areas were abandoned, the army shrunk in size, and monastic houses with their close-knit populations were decimated. As the tax base severely declined, civic building projects ceased and public services, including the burial of the dead, virtually disappeared.

Along with these severe cultural effects, the plague in Justinian's reign also greatly affected the history and survival of the Roman Empire. In the West, the Roman Empire had been vulnerable to attacks from Germanic tribes such as the Vandals, Goths, and Ostrogoths, and the western part of the empire had been captured in the fifth century AD. Previous to the outbreak of the disease, Justinian had however made significant inroads in re-taking much of Italy from the Ostrogoths and Northern Africa from the Vandals. The eastern part of the Roman Empire was prospering, silk manufacture in Syria adding to its wealth. Population increased in Greece, Asia Minor, and the Balkans. Justinian had also used his increased revenues to engage in a building program in Constantinople constructing great churches like Hagia Sophia. As Josiah C. Russell remarked in his article "That Earlier Plague," Justinian's "building program was part of a kind of Golden Age in which literature enjoyed a fine period: Rome still seemed eternal." In 540, the prospect that the Empire might be restored without straining its resources seemed entirely probable.

However, the devastation of the plague weakened the eastern Roman Empire at a critical juncture. Justinian's army shrunk from 350,000 men to 150,000 on his death in 565. As the plague tended to be especially fatal to young people over ten years of age and pregnant women, the devastation to the population meant that fresh military recruits were increasingly scarce. The offensive in the West was thus abandoned after 565. The resulting power vacuum, along with the birth of Islam, promoted the rise of the Arabic empires in the seventh century.

The Bubonic Plague in Medieval Europe

After the plague epidemics in the sixth and seventh centuries, the disease reappeared sporadically, but did not re-emerge with ferocity until the mid-fourteenth century, erupting in the Gobi Desert in the late 1320s. It is not well understood why the bubonic plague reappeared, but the climate of earth had begun to cool at this time, producing a phenomenon known as the "Little Ice Age," and this change in environment may have had an effect. We do know that the cooler temperatures resulted in poor harvests and there were famines in Western Europe from 1315–17, which weakened the population and made it vulnerable to epidemic disease. Ultimately, one-third of the population of Western Europe perished, and populations did not return to their previous levels until the sixteenth century. Urban areas like Florence lost between half and three-quarters of their population.

As in the sixth century, the plague followed trade routes in its spread westward, reaching Sicily by 1347, and in late 1347, the Italian mainland, arriving in Germany via Rhine trade routes, and then France and England in 1348 when the plague was at its peak. From reading primary sources, it seems the plague took two forms in the fourteenth century: a septicaemic plague, which attacks the blood, and pneumonic plague, which infects the lungs and is an especially virulent airborne disease.

Medical treatment ranged from the sophisticated to the folkloric. Some theologians opined that it was the result of vengeance of God and nothing could be done, but many of the Italian city-states such as Milan and Venice, took more practical measures and attempted to quarantine sufferers, walling up houses found to have inhabitants with plague. The quarantine, the pest house, and health boards often just crowded the susceptible poor together causing higher mortality, while the urban wealthy fled the city, segregating themselves in the country away from plague sufferers.

Many correctly thought the disease was thought to be transmitted by air, but in an era with no knowledge of microorganisms, it was thought bad smells or *miasmas* caused infections. Incense and aromatic oils were hawked as cures, as were posies of flowers to be held to the face.

Pope Clement VI (1291–1352) consulted the Parisian medical faculty in 1348 to get their opinion, and they theorized that the disaster was due to astrological events, an unfortunate conjunction of Saturn, Jupiter and Mars that caused hot, moist conditions, which in turn caused the earth to exhale poisonous vapors. Astrology and medicine were intricately intertwined at this time, with the macrocosm of the universe thought to affect the "little world" or microcosm of the body, so their explanation was taken quite seriously. The physicians advised not to eat any food thought to be hot or moist that would add to the effect of the vapors and particularly thought fish were dangerous to include in the diet.

Some expressed their despair at events via religious fanaticism. Groups of flagellants whipped themselves in public to do penance for sins, some believing the end of the world was approaching. Others blamed religious and ethnic minorities such as Jews, Moors, or Roma, accusing them of poisoning town wells and causing the disease. There were pogroms, or mass-killings, of Jews and Roma in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. In Strasbourg in 1349, nearly 200 Jews were burned to death. In response to this persecution, some of the Jewish population moved into Eastern Europe into areas of Poland and Lithuania.

The massive population loss also had great economic effects. Labor shortages meant that wages rose, and landlords attempted, often forcefully, to hold on to the serfs they had and to enforce more labor duties. It is little surprise that in the 1380s there were a number of peasant revolts (the Jacquerie in 1358, the Peasants' Revolt in England in 1381, and the Catalonian Rebellion in 1395) as laborers asserted their rights in a market that should have been favorable to them.

Landlords shifted production on the land from foodstuffs, the demand for which was declining with a smaller population, to pastoral agriculture (sheep and cattle raising). Grazing cattle or sheep required less farm labor. Women also found their labor in demand. The two centuries after the plague have been described as an "early golden age for women" as several female guild masters and business owners appeared. Marriage rates also decreased after the bubonic plague. The disease seemed to disproportionately kill young men, so many women married late or not at all, and thus turned to convents or cottage businesses to earn their livings.

These disruptions and changes to the social and economic fabric of medieval society have caused many historians to claim that the plague was the dividing line between the Middle Ages and the Renaissance. Certainly it seems that more secular values that became more important in the Renaissance, as opposed to the spiritual values of the medieval era, began to dominate society. For a variety of political reasons, the popes during the plague also did not live in the spiritual home of Rome and the Vatican, but in southern France in Avignon to the scandal of many. The Crusades in the 1290s had also been resolute failures and the Holy Lands were lost.

IN CONTEXT: CULTURAL IMPACTS

In 1687, English physicist Sir Isaac Newton (1642–1727) published a law of universal gravitation in his important and profoundly influential work *Philosophiae Naturalis Principia Mathematica* (*Mathematical Principles of Natural Philosophy*). Newton articulated a law of universal gravitation that states that bodies with mass attract each other with a force that varies directly as the product of their masses and inversely as the square of the distance between them. This mathematically elegant law, along with Newton's laws of motion, became the guiding models for the future development of physical law.

Born in Woolsthorpe, Lincolnshire, England, Newton did not initially distinguish himself in school, and he was removed by his mother in the late 1650s to work on the family farm, but Newton proved a worse farmer than scholar. His uncle, however, encouraged the boy to go to Cambridge in 1660. Five years later Newton graduated, even though he had failed a scholarship exam in 1663 due to his lack of knowledge concerning geometry.

Newton returned to the farm in 1665 to escape the bubonic plague, which at the time was decimating London. In his year of enforced isolation, his *annus mirabilis* or miracle year, he invented the calculus, discovered the color spectrum of light, and derived his law of universal gravitation.

Accompanied by the disaster of the plague, the loss of faith in the church may have set the stage for Renaissance secularism. The Catholic Church seemed unable to offer the degree of spiritual comfort required in an era of great loss, and many adopted the "live for today" attitude, enjoying life while they could in uncertain times. For instance, the Italian author Giovanni Boccaccio's (1313–1375) *Decameron*, written shortly after the plague, is a literary masterpiece which has as it premise a group of lords and ladies who escaped Florence to the country town of Fiesole during the epidemic. While in exile they told stories to amuse themselves and pass the time, often displaying themes of lust, love, and a decidedly commercial, urban, and secular ethic.

The bubonic plague, though it never reoccurred in as virulent a manner as in 1348, did return several times in the fifteenth century, and there were local epidemics until the mid-seventeenth century. The last occurrence of the bubonic plague in Western Europe was in 1665 in London just before the Great Fire burned the medieval wooden houses and seemingly cleansed the capital of fleas and rats responsible for the disease.

In 1665, a young man called Isaac Newton (1642–1727) fled the plague raging in Cambridge to his parent's home in Woolsthorpe, Lincolnshire. In his year of enforced isolation, his *annus mirabilis* or miracle year, he invented the calculus, discovered the color spectrum of light, and derived his law of universal gravitation.

Current Issues

Another great pandemic of plague spread through China, southeast Asia, and India beginning in 1855. The advent of the railway and increased migration helped the disease spread rapidly in Asia, India, and parts of Russia. Over the following 50 years, plague (predominantly pneumonic) spread to every inhabited continent. The so-called Third Pandemic killed 12 million people, primarily in Manchuria and Mongolia.

Several scientists have theorized that the Second Pandemic, the Black Death, may not have involved bubonic plague, but another form of plague that is not present today. Others assert that the Black Death was too virulent to have been bubonic plague, suggesting that a highly contagious hemorrhagic fever—akin to modern Ebola or Marburg—was the epidemic disease of the medieval plague. The theories are controversial and *Yersina pestis* remains the predominantly accepted culprit of the Black Death.

While researchers have been scouring written sources for years for clues about ancient plagues, they had been limited to matching described symptoms to known disease behaviors. Archaeological and forensic research may aid the identification of past epidemics. Eva Panagiotakopulu, an archaeologist from the University of Sheffield, theorizes that Egypt was the very source of the deadly bubonic plague, which has been commonly thought by historians to have its origins from the Near East. Panagiotakopulu found fossilized fleas in ancient Egyptian's habitations, as well as remains of Nile rats that could have carried the disease. She speculates that the Nile River Valley was a natural habitat for flea-carrying rats and that endemic flooding drove large rat populations into urban areas.

Primary Source Connection

Often, key components of research published in scientific journals are written in accessible language. Journal articles usually follow a structured form, with an abstract or overview followed by supporting data and arguments, and end with a summary. The abstract, at the top of the article, introduces the reader to the key components of the research using as broad and easily understandable terms as possible. The methods and body of the research and evidence follow, and in the conclusions, much of the abstract is restated as it relates to the evidence presented. By reading the abstract and conclusions of scientific literature, the reader can often gain a basic picture of the research. Although the body of the article can contain arguments and data that are designed for scientists, the abstract and summary or conclusion sections often contain valuable and readable information for non-scientists.

In this extract from the journal *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, the author Michel Drancourt presents his evidence that *Yersinia pestis* was the cause of at least two historical pandemic plagues using the classic form for reporting in scientific journals. Michel Drancourt is professor of medical microbiology in Unité des Rickettsies, Marseille Medical School, Marseille, France. His research interests are paleomicrobiology of plague and bartonelloses.

Yersinia pestis Orientalis in Remains of Ancient Plague Patients

Abstract

Yersinia pestis DNA was recently detected in human remains from 2 ancient plague pandemics in France and Germany. We have now sequenced *Y. pestis* glpD gene in such remains, showing a 93-bp deletion specific for biotype Orientalis. These data show that only Orientalis type caused the 3 plague pandemics.

Three historical pandemics have been attributed to plague. The causative agent, *Yersinia pestis*, was discovered at the beginning of the ongoing third pandemic. The etiology [origin or cause] of the 5th–7th-century first pandemic and the 14th–18th-century second pandemic, however, remained putative until recently.…

THE STUDY

We had historical evidence that 3 mass graves excavated in France were used to bury bubonic plague victims. In Vienne, 12 skeletons, including 5 children, buried within the ruins of a Roman temple have been dated from the 7th–9th centuries both by a 5th-century coin and ^{14}C dating. In Martigues, 205 skeletons buried in 5 trenches were dated from 1720 to 1721 on the basis of coins and detailed parish bills that listed the victims. In Marseille, 216 skeletons buried in a huge pit dated from a May 1722 epidemic relapse. We previously confirmed the diagnosis of plague at this site. Eighteen teeth from 5 skeletons in Vienne, 13 teeth from 5 skeletons in Martigues, and 5 teeth from 3 skeletons in Marseille were processed for the search for *Y. pestis* DNA in the dental pulp. The teeth were processed according to

IN CONTEXT: CULTURAL CONNECTIONS

Plague created panic and desperation in the pre-modern world and those fears lingered in the social psyche—often manifesting themselves in bizarre form.

Mistakes in pronouncement of death—and premature burial—are now highly unlikely in the industrialized world, but until the twentieth century there were less definitive means of determining death. As a result, it was not unheard of for a person ill with plague to fall into a coma or a stupor and to appear to observers to be dead when, in fact, the patient was still alive. Plague often led to fears of premature burial.

Bodies were often quickly buried, particularly in times of plague or cholera. There have been numerous tales, dating back to very early history, of the apparently dead spontaneously reviving and living on for extended periods of time. One such story is that of Marjorie Halcrow Erskine of Chirnside, Scotland. She was reported to have died in 1674 and was buried in a rather shallow grave by the village sexton, who planned to rob her grave and steal her jewelry. As the sexton attempted to cut off the woman's finger in order to obtain one of her rings, she suddenly revived. Ms. Erskine was able to return home, and she lived a full life, giving birth to and raising two sons.

In the seventeenth through nineteenth centuries, in times of plague, cholera, and smallpox epidemics, a substantial number of premature burials were reported. A nineteenth century researcher named William Tebb published a book in 1896 titled *Premature Burial and How It May Be Prevented*. In it, he detailed 219 instances of near premature burial, 149 cases of genuine premature burial, ten cases of dissection before actual death, and two cases in which embalming began before death had occurred.

During the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, various methods were employed to ensure that an individual was, in fact, dead. In one method, a hot poker was applied to the deceased patient, while another involved pouring liquid into the patient's mouth. Yet another creative strategy required the attending physician to stick the finger of the apparently deceased into his (the physician's) ear in an effort to feel the *buzz* or *hum* of life. In 1846, a French physician named Eugene Bouchut suggested that the stethoscope be used to determine when the heart stopped beating in order to determine that death had occurred.

The most extreme measures for preventing premature burial occurred in Germany between 1790 and 1860. There, roughly fifty centers called *Leichenhäuser*, or waiting mortuaries, were built. In these buildings, corpses were kept in warm rooms. Each corpse had strings wrapped around fingers and toes, with the other ends of the strings attached to bells. The bells were meant to be rung by the awakening person, but there is no report of a bell ever ringing. The bodies were maintained until evidence of putrefaction was unequivocally present (complete with requisite stench). Some of the waiting mortuaries had luxury and common rooms—some were even open for public observation. A later Leichenhaus in Vienna utilized an electronic bell system.

Individuals went to elaborate lengths to prevent premature burial. Some requested that their heads be severed. Others wanted their arteries slashed (Danish writer Hans Christian Anderson, 1805–1875), their bodies dissected (Polish composer Frédéric Chopin, 1810–1849), or their bodies embalmed. All these measures were designed to ensure with absolute certainty that the individual was dead before he or she was buried.

In 1896, Count Karnice-Kamicki, a chamberlain to the Russian tsar, invented a device to be affixed to a coffin in order to avoid premature burial—or, rather, to provide a means of correcting that unfortunate situation. His mechanism was comprised of a tube running from the inside of the coffin to an airtight box several feet above the ground. A spring, which ran the length of the tube, was attached to a glass sphere sitting on the chest of the body. The slightest movement of the body would trigger the spring, causing the lid of the airtight box to pop open, thus allowing light and air into the interior of the coffin via the connecting tube. The box above the grave also contained a flag, a bell or a buzzer, and a light that could be seen and heard from a considerable distance.

---

published criteria for authenticating molecular data in paleomicrobiology: 1) there should be no positive control; 2) negative controls, as similar as possible to the ancient specimens, should test negative; 3) a new primer sequence targeting a genome region not previously amplified in the laboratory should be used (suicide PCR); 4) any amplicon should be sequenced; 5) a second amplified and sequenced target should confirm any positive result; and 6) an original sequence that differs from modern homologs should be obtained to exclude contamination.

Accordingly, DNA samples were submitted for suicide-nested PCR conducted by using 1 negative control (18th-century teeth from skeletons of persons without anthropologic and macroscopic evidence of infection) for every 3 specimens.… The sequences were compared in the GenBank database (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/GenBank) using the multisequence alignment Clustal within the BISANCE environment.

CONCLUSIONS

In this study, contamination of the ancient specimens is unlikely because of the extensive precautions we took, including use of the suicide PCR protocol excluding positive controls. Accordingly, glpD gene had never been investigated in our laboratory before this study, and negative controls remained negative. The specificity of the amplicons was ensured by complete similarity of experimental sequences with that of the *Y. pestis Orientalis* glpD gene. One site (Marseille, 1722) was previously positive for *Y. pestis* after sequencing of 2 different targets (chromosome-borne rpob and plasmid-borne pla genes) in other specimens collected in other persons's remains.

These results therefore confirm the detection of *Y. pestis*-specific DNA in plague patients' remains from the first and second epidemics. We observed a 93-bp in-frame deletion within the glpD gene sequences obtained from ancient dental pulp specimens. This deletion has been found only in Orientalis biotype isolates in 2 independent studies comprising a total of 77 and 260 *Y. pestis* isolates, respectively, of the 4 biotypes.

After previous demonstration of *Y. pestis* Orientalis-type multiple spacer type sequences in Justinian and medieval specimens, we now have cumulative evidence using 2 different molecular approaches that *Y. pestis* closely related to the Orientalis biotype was responsible for the 3 historical plague pandemics.

Michel Drancourt

DRANCOURT, M, ET AL. "*YERSINIA PESTIS ORIENTALIS* IN REMAINS OF ANCIENT PLAGUE PATIENTS." *EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASES.* (FEBRUARY 2007): AVAILABLE AT <HTTP://WWW.CDC.GOV/EID/CONTENT/13/2/332.HTM> (ACCESSED MAY 28, 2007).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Boccaccio, Giovanni. *The Decameron.* Mark Musa, trans. New York: Signet, 1992.

Bollet, Alfred J. *Plagues and Poxes: The Impact of Human History on Epidemic Disease.* New York: Demos Medical Publishing, 2004.

Carmichael, Anne G. *Plague and the Poor in Renaissance Florence.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986.

McNeill, William Hardy. *Plagues and Peoples.* New York: Doubleday, 1998.

Procopius, *History of the Wars.* H. B. Dewing, trans. Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1914, Vol. I, pp. 451–473.

Wrigley, E.A., and R.S. Scofield. *The Population History of England, 1541–1871: A Reconstruction.* Cambridge, Mass: Harvard University Press, 1984.

Periodicals

Gross, C.P., and K.A. Sepkowitz. "The myth of the medical breakthrough: smallpox, vaccination, and Jenner reconsidered." *International Journal of Infectious Disease* 3 (1998), pp.54–60.

Littman, R.J., and M.L. Littman. "Galen and the Antonine Plague." *The American Journal of Philology* 94, 3 (Autumn 1973), pp. 243–255.

Morgan, Thomas E. "Plague or Poetry? Thucydides on the Epidemic at Athens." *Transactions of the American Philological Association* 124 (1994), pp. 197–209.

Russell, Josiah C. "That Earlier Plague." *Demography* 5, 1 (1968), pp. 174–184.

Web Sites

Walker, Cameron. "Bubonic Plague Traced to Ancient Egypt." *National Geographic News.* March 10, 2004. <http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2004/03/0310_040310_blackdeath.html> (accessed May 17, 2007).

Anna Marie E. Roos

Plague, Modern History

Introduction

Plague is a greatly feared disease that has killed millions of people since medieval times. It is caused by the bacterium *Yersinia pestis*, which is carried by flea-infested rodents, and mortality rates are more than 50% if the disease is left untreated. The third pandemic of plague extended into the twentieth century and stimulated research into the cause and transmission of the disease.

There have been no major epidemics of plague in the United States for many years, although occasional cases still occur in the southwestern states. Globally, from 1,000 to 3,000 cases annually are reported to the World Health Organization (WHO), most of which occur in Africa, Southeast Asia, and Latin America. It may not be possible to eradicate plague, but outbreaks can be prevented by reducing rodent populations. Constant vigilance regarding plague is also necessary because it has some potential as an agent of a bioterrorist attack.

Three men examine rats to determine if they are carrying the bubonic plague in New Orleans in 1914. *© Corbis.*

People swim at Tipaza Beach, 40 mi (70 km) west of Algiers, following the closure of some of the capital city's more popular beaches in July 2003. The closures were made as a precaution against the spread of a rare outbreak of both the plague and meningitis. At least ten people had contracted the bubonic plague during the previous month. *Hocine Zaourar/AFP/Getty Images.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Yersinia pestis is a Gram-negative bacillus—rod-shaped—bacterium, which was discovered as the cause of plague by the Swiss researcher Alexander Yersin in 1894. The term Gram-negative refers to the way in which the bacterium absorbs the Gram stain used to prepare bacterial cultures for microscopy. The incubation period of *Y. pestis* is between two and eight days, and the microbe produces three types of plague: bubonic, pneumonic, and septicemic.

Bubonic plague accounts for 90–95% of all cases and is marked by sudden onset of fever, chills, weakness, and headache. Initially, these could be mistaken for flu symptoms. Shortly after, multiplication of the bacteria within the lymph glands of the armpits and groin cause characteristic swellings, called buboes, which are extremely tender, typically 0.8–4 in (2–10 cm) in diameter, and hot to the touch.

The disease often progresses to bleeding from the gastrointestinal, respiratory or genitourinary tract—leading to the name "Red Death." Gangrene—death of tissue from lack of oxygen—may occur on the nose or penis, leading to the name "Black Death." This name also was given to some of the plague epidemics in history. These complications are caused by the spread of the bacterium throughout the bloodstream and the effects of associated toxins. Untreated bubonic plague has a death rate of more than 50%.

Pneumonic plague may occur as a complication of bubonic plague, and also accounts for 5% of primary cases. Symptoms include bloody sputum, chest pain, coughing, and breathlessness. The disease is highly infectious and 100% fatal if left untreated. Septicemic plague has similar symptoms to bubonic plague—apart from the buboes—and accounts for around 5% of cases, with extensive bloodstream infection being the most significant feature.

Plague is a zoonosis—a disease of animals that can infect humans. Rodents act as the animal reservoir for the disease. When fleas bite an animal infected with *Y. pestis*, they can carry the disease to other rodents. The animals become sick, and when they start to die, the fleas will seek out human hosts as an alternative source of blood meals. The main flea vector is the oriental rat flea, *Xenopsylla cheopsis.*

Humans generally become infected with plague through the bite of an infected flea or from handling an infected animal and coming into contact with its tissues or body fluids. In the United States, wild rodents are the most common animal reservoirs for plague, with the rock squirrel being implicated in the majority of cases in the Southwest. In the Pacific States, the California ground squirrel is the most important source of plague. Prairie dogs, wood rats, chipmunks, and other burrowing rodents have also been involved in U.S. cases of plague. Other, less frequent, sources include wild rabbits, wild carnivores, and domestic cats and dogs, who pick up infected fleas from wild rodents. In addition, pneumonic plague can be spread from person-to-person through inhalation of infected secretions.

The *Y. pestis* bacteria quickly enter the bloodstream and enter white blood cells, where they multiply and produce toxins. They spread throughout the blood and may cause disseminated intravascular coagulation—multiple tiny blood clots—which lead to the complications of plague.

Scope and Distribution

Plaque has been responsible for three known pandemics during the course of human history. The first began in the middle of the sixth century and is known as the Justinian plague. It was followed in the middle of the fourteenth century by the pandemic popularly known as the Black Death. The Third or Modern pandemic of plague began in the mid-1800s in China and spread throughout the world to cause nearly 30 million cases and over 12 million deaths between 1896 and 1930.

By the time of the Third pandemic, scientists had developed methods for investigating microbial causes of disease that could be applied to this serious public health problem. Alexander Yersin discovered *Y. pestis* in 1894 and the transmission of plague via fleas was reported by Paul-Louis Simond in 1890. This new understanding, together with the later introduction of antibiotics, meant that plague began to exact less of a toll on human life in many countries. Modern techniques of analyzing DNA have led to new insights into ancient cases of plague from previous pandemics, using samples from the dental pulp of victims' remains.

Today plague causes both sporadic cases and epidemics involving hundreds of people, the numbers involved depending upon geographical location. The disease is found in Africa, Southeast Asia, Latin America, and in the southwestern United States. In Africa, there have been severe outbreaks in recent years in Kenya, Tanzania, Zaire, Botswana, and Mozambique. Smaller outbreaks have occurred in other East African countries. Sporadic cases have been reported from North and West Africa. The disease also occurs regularly in Madagascar, where multi-drug resistance has been reported. In Asia, countries that are particularly affected by plague include Burma (Myanmar), Vietnam, and Indonesia. In Latin America, plague is found in the Andean mountain region and in Brazil. However, there is no plague today in Australia or Europe.

In North America, most human cases of plague occur in two specific regions. One is in northern New Mexico, northern Arizona, and southern Colorado. The other is in California, southern Oregon, and far western Nevada. The highest rates are in Native Americans, particularly Navajos, hunters, veterinarians and pet owners handling infected animals, and among campers or hikers entering areas with outbreaks of animal plague. The last urban epidemic of plague in the United States occurred in Los Angles in 1924–1925.

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOWEAPON: A weapon that uses bacteria, viruses, or poisonous substances made by bacteria or viruses.

BUBO: A swollen lymph gland, usually in the groin or armpit, characteristic of infection with bubonic plague.

EPIDEMIC: From the Greek *epidemic*, meaning "prevalent among the people," is most commonly used to describe an outbreak of an illness or disease in which the number of individual cases significantly exceeds the usual or expected number of cases in any given population.

FLEA: A flea is any parasitic insect of the order *Siphonaptera*. Fleas can infest many mammals, including humans, and can act as carriers (vectors) of disease.

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA: All types of bacteria identified and classified as a group that does not retain crystal-violet dye during Gram's method of staining.

MULTI-DRUG RESISTANCE: Multi-drug resistance is a phenomenon that occurs when an infective agent loses its sensitivity against two or more of the drugs that are used against it.

NOTIFIABLE DISEASE: A disease that the law requires must be reported to health officials when diagnosed; also called a reportable disease.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

Worldwide, between 1,000 and 3,000 cases of plague are reported to the WHO each year. In 2003, there were

2,118 cases reported from nine countries, including 182 deaths. Nearly all of these came from Africa. In the United States, there is an average of around 15 cases of plague each year, of which one in seven proves fatal. In Africa, Asia, and Latin America there were major outbreaks each year in the 1980s. These cases tend to be associated with domestic rats and were more common among those living in small towns, villages, and agricultural areas than among the population in urban areas.

The major risk factor for epidemic plague is poor living conditions with rodent and flea infestation, coupled with human overcrowding. Lab workers handling plague bacteria are also at high risk wherever they are located.

The WHO received reports of outbreaks of pneumonic plague in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) in 2005 and 2006. The disease has long been endemic in the Ituri region, and, indeed, this region is the most active natural focus of plague in the world today. There was an outbreak near the town of Zobia, in mid–2005 in a forest area that had attracted several thousand people responding to reports of the discovery of diamonds there. The outbreak involved 124 cases of pneumonic plague and 56 deaths. Investigators from the WHO found suspect rodents and poor sanitary conditions at the affected site. The situation was made worse by panic, with many people fleeing the outbreak and dying along forest trails, spreading this highly infectious disease. It was no surprise, therefore, when there were further outbreaks in the DRC in the months following.

In October 2006, there were apparently 626 more suspected cases of pneumonic plague, including 42 deaths, in the DRC. But this would be an unusually low death rate for pneumonic plague, so the WHO thought there might have been an over-estimation of the number of cases. A team from the humanitarian group Médicins sans Frontières (Doctors without Borders) worked with the WHO and the local health authority in Congo doing lab tests, case management, and contact tracing to bring the outbreak under control. However, further outbreaks are almost inevitable and, if they occur in a city, many deaths will result.

Plague is notifiable to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) whose center in Fort Collins, Colorado, is a WHO Collaborating Center for Reference and Research on Plague Control, reporting all human plague cases in the United States to the WHO. Also, the National Notifiable Disease Surveillance System carries out surveillance on animal plague, reports human cases, and carries out lab testing on fleas, animal tissues, and blood samples.

■ Treatment and Prevention

Antibiotic treatment reduces the mortality rate of plague from over 50% to around 10%. Streptomycin is the preferred drug, but tetracycline or chloramphenicol can be used as alternatives. Anyone with plague must be isolated and hospitalized. However, given prompt diagnosis and treatment, nearly everyone with plague can expect to recover.

The contacts of plague cases must be traced and treated with antibiotics to help stop the infection from developing. They should also be disinfested of any fleas they may be carrying. Passengers traveling back from plague endemic areas are generally subject to quarantine regulations in case they are incubating the disease.

Preventive antibiotics can be taken if someone has been exposed to the bites of wild rodent fleas during an outbreak, or to the tissues or fluids of a plague-infected animal. The same treatment is appropriate for those who have been exposed to a person or pet with suspected plague, especially if it is pneumonic plague. Tetracycline, chloramphenicol, or sulfonamide antibiotics are preferred for this kind of prophylactic treatment. However, since multi-drug resistance has begun to emerge in Madagascar, it has to be assumed that it could also happen elsewhere.

Although vaccines against plague have been used in the past, these are not available in the United States currently. Research has shown that the vaccine does not help reduce the number of cases or the spread of infection during an outbreak. However, it may have a role to play in protecting those who are repeatedly exposed through lab or healthcare work.

Prevention of plague among the population currently depends upon controlling fleas and rodents. People living in those regions of the United States where plague infection is active need to take care to avoid exposure. Sick or dead rodents, which may be infected with plague, should be reported to local health authorities and should never be handled.

Keeping homes, workplaces, and recreation areas clear of food and nesting places for rodents is extremely important. Junk, firewood, and rock piles should be removed to make these places rodent-proof. Insect repellents applied to clothing and skin can reduce the risk of exposure to potentially infected fleas. Cats and dogs need to be regularly treated with flea control agents and should not be allowed to roam freely, in case they come into contact with infected rodents. Investigation of outbreaks and sporadic cases of plague often lead to the identification of a clustered area of animal die-offs that is the exposure source and needs to be disposed of.

■ Impacts and Issues

Plague has been a public health problem for several centuries and, unlike polio and smallpox, it is unlikely that it can ever be eradicated. Between outbreaks, *Y. pestis* lives on in certain rodent populations without actually wiping them out, thereby constituting a silent, long-term reservoir of infection. The best that can be hoped for is to employ control and precautionary measures in those places where humans and flea-infested rodents are likely to interact.

Although sporadic cases of plague do occur in the southwestern United States, these can be avoided as far as possible with common sense precautions regarding contact with potentially infected rodents. Efforts to control plague probably need to be focused where conditions create a risk of disease outbreak or even epidemics. This means managing unsanitary rat-infested environments to make places where people live, work, or play safer.

Control of rat populations in rural and urban areas of many less developed countries has not yet been achieved to the extent that it has in most developed countries. Close surveillance of both rodents and humans for plague is the first step in tightening controls. Insecticides can be used to control rodent fleas in danger areas and efforts made to reduce the local population of rodents in human-inhabited areas by removing potential food sources and nesting sites.

In the future, however, plague may become even more unpredictable. Changing climate, due to global warming, and population movements may create new environments where flea-infested rodents can flourish and put people at risk of plague.

A further threat of the spread of plague comes from its potential use as a bioweapon. The concern centers around pneumonic plague, which is highly infectious and can spread rapidly from person to person. An aerosol-based biological weapon could introduce *Y. pestis* into the population without warning, causing a severe epidemic within just a few days. Containment would depend upon rapid detection of cases and treatment of these people, and their contacts, with antibiotics within 24 hours. Public health authorities in the United States—probably a potential major target for such an attack—do hold large stocks of the appropriate antibiotics, and the CDC says these could be made available anywhere to any location where they are needed within 12 hours.

People may, however, feel more reassured if they were already vaccinated against plague, rather than hoping that the response to an attack will be prompt and sufficiently effective. However, there is currently no plague vaccine available in the United States. Research into such a vaccine by academics and the U.S. Army is ongoing, but the CDC says it will be several years before one becomes widely available.

The threat of bioterrorism has re-focused attention on plague as a disease problem that has been largely absent from developed countries, including the United States, for many years except in sporadic form. In many African countries and in parts of Southeast Asia, plague is still an endemic public health issue that leads to hundreds of deaths each year. The U.S. bioterrorism effort can learn from what is known of the natural history of plague in other countries and use molecular technologies to better understand the disease. A bioterrorist attack with *Y. pestis* may never happen, but the knowledge gained in preparing for a potential attack may help better diagnosis, treatment, and prevention efforts in those places where the disease occurs naturally.

See Also *Plague, Early History.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Periodicals

Drancourt, M., and D. Raoult. “Molecular Insights into the History of Plague.” *Microbes and Infection* 4 (January 2002): 105–109.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “CDC Plague Home Page.” <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/plague/index.htm> (accessed May 13, 2007).

Centers for Infectious Diseases Research and Policy. “Plague Outbreak Highlighted Ongoing Problem in Africa.” May 27, 2005. <http://www.cidrap.umn.edu/cidrap/content/bt/plague/news/may2705plag.html> (accessed May 13, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Pneumocystis carinii Pneumonia

Introduction

Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia (PCP) is the most common opportunistic infection occurring among people with AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome). Although rates of the infection have fallen with the advent of drugs against HIV, PCP is still a leading cause of mortality in this patient group in the United States.

P. carinii is a fungus that is found in the respiratory tract of humans and other mammals. Its distribution is widespread and most children will have been exposed to it by the age of three or four. However, *P. carinii* only causes disease among those with impaired immunity. Its appearance among previously healthy homosexual men in the early 1980s was an early warning sign of the emergence of HIV/AIDS. Other groups at risk include those who have cancer or are receiving immunosuppressive drugs following an organ transplant.

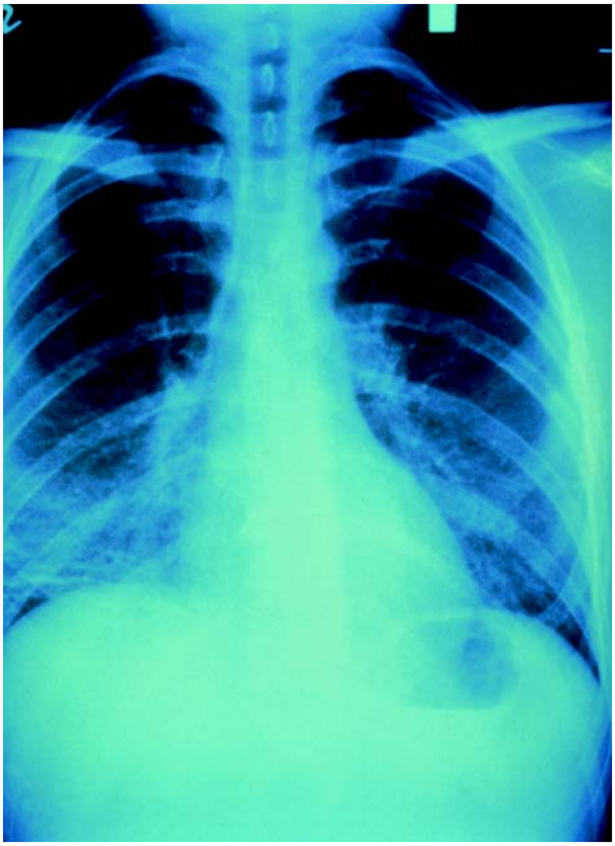
Fortunately, PCP is treatable with antibiotics and survival rates have improved in recent years. People at risk can also be given preventive drugs to stop PCP infection taking hold.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

P. carinii was first thought to be a trypanosome, then a protozoan. More detailed biochemical studies have now established that the organism is a fungus. The organism that actually causes PCP was recently re-named *Pneumocystis jiroveci* after Otto Jirovec, the researcher who first isolated it from human subjects (although the new name is not yet in common use).

P. carinii is harmless in a healthy person, but if immunity is weakened for any reason, it can invade the lungs, causing pneumonia. The symptoms of PCP may be of gradual onset and include breathlessness, fever, chills, weight loss, a non-productive cough, and weight loss. PCP proves fatal in 10–20% of cases. Survival rates have improved in recent years for those with HIV (human immunodeficiency virus), but not for non-HIV patients.

P. carinii is spread by airborne transmission. Most people have been infected by *P. carinii* in early childhood. Research suggests that PCP occurs through new



This X-ray shows interstitial infiltration of pneumonia-causing *Pneumocystis carinii* protozoans. Pneumocystis pneumonia is among the most common causes of death in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). © *Lester Bergman/Corbis.*

infection, by inhalation, rather than by re-activating an old infection.

Scope and Distribution

PCP was first noted during World War II among malnourished and premature infants in Central and Eastern Europe. Prior to the 1980s, PCP was rare in the United States, with fewer than 100 cases a year occurring—mainly during cancer chemotherapy and after solid organ transplantation. In 1981, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention reported an unusual finding—five cases of PCP in previously healthy homosexual men. It was the first warning of the advent of AIDS. Since the causative agent, HIV, attacks and destroys the immune system, *P. carinii* is able to cause PCP, an opportunistic infection.

However, PCP is less of a problem than it was in the past. Before the introduction of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), 70–80% of those with HIV/AIDS would develop PCP, but these rates have been much reduced. Similarly, 88% of lung transplant recipients developed PCP, but the disease is now rare in this patient group.

It used to be assumed that PCP was less common in the developing world, but this may not be so. Apparently lower rates could merely reflect lack of access to diagnostic facilities. It now appears that PCP could be on the increase in Africa, with the infection affecting around 80% of HIV-positive children who present with pneumonia.

Treatment and Prevention

Although it is a fungus, *P. carinii* does not actually respond to anti-fungal drugs. However, there are a number of antibiotics that can be used to treat PCP. These include trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and pentamidine. Steroids may also be used in severe cases. Prophylactic treatment with these drugs, and with other drugs, can help those at risk avoid developing PCP. Giving up smoking is also essential in helping prevent PCP.

Impacts and Issues

PCP is an ongoing threat to people with HIV/AIDS. It mainly seems to affect those whose CD4+ t-cell count is less than 200 per microliter. CD4+ t-cells are a type of white blood cell that is targeted by the HIV virus. CD4+ t-cell counts are an essential monitor of the condition of someone with HIV and a drop in the count indicates a vulnerability to PCP that should be addressed. Although treatment, both to prevent and cure the infection, is available, PCP is still a significant cause of mortality (death) among those with HIV/AIDS.

WORDS TO KNOW

AIRBORNE TRANSMISSION: Airborne transmission refers to the ability of a disease-causing (pathogenic) microorganism to be spread through the air by droplets expelled during sneezing or coughing.

CD4+ T CELLS: CD4 cells are a type of T cell found in the immune system, which are characterized by the presence of a CD4 antigen protein on their surface. These are the cells most often destroyed as a result of HIV infection.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term “mortality” comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means “death.” Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., “Rabies has a high mortality.”

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts’ compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Opportunistic Infection; Pneumonia.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilks, Robert, Mark Farrington, and David Rubenstein. *The Infectious Diseases Manual.* 2nd ed. Malden, UK: Blackwell Publishing, 2003.

Web Sites

McLean, Joseph. “Pneumocystis carinii Pneumonia.” *eMedicine*, September 11, 2006. <http://www.emedicine.com/MED/topic1850.htm> (accessed April 18, 2007).

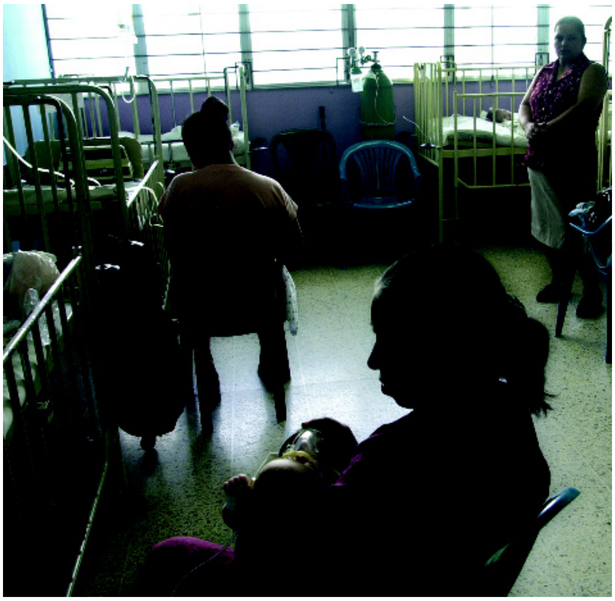
Pneumonia

Introduction

Pneumonia is an inflammatory response of the lungs to the entry of an infective organism or other foreign material. It is an important disease, as it is the sixth leading cause of death in the United States, and the major cause of death from infection.

Pneumonia is a complex disease with many different causes and risk factors. It can affect people of any age, anywhere, although the very young and the very old are most vulnerable to an attack. Pneumonia is classified in two ways—according to its cause and according to its setting.

The cause of pneumonia can be viral, bacterial, mycobacterial, fungal, or even non-infective irritants. The setting may be either within the community or in the hospital. These distinctions are important because they influence the choice of treatment. Before the advent of antibiotics, pneumonia was a greatly feared disease because it could kill so easily. Today, with effective treatment, most people can expect to make a full recovery from pneumonia.



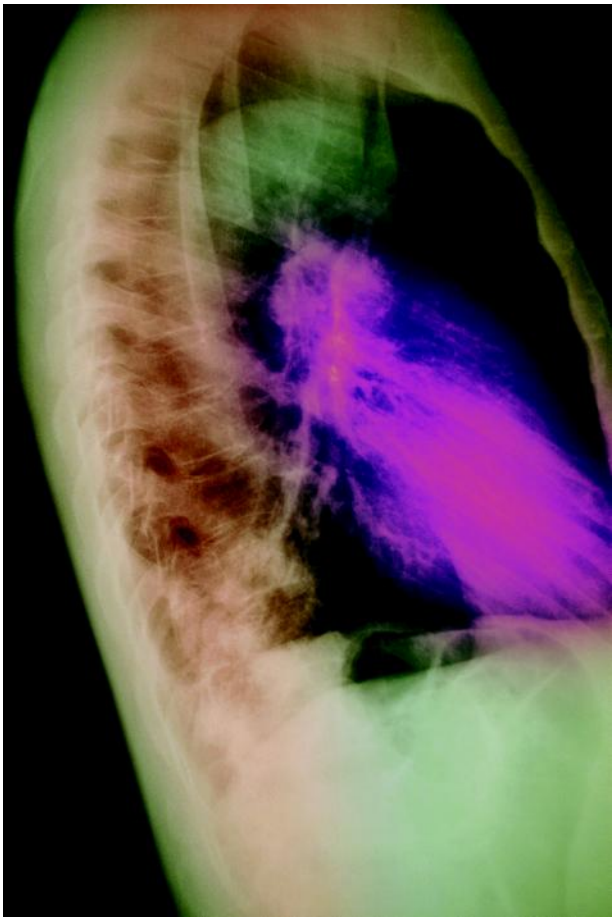
A one-month-old baby is held by his aunt at the Benjamin Bloom Children's Hospital in San Salvador, El Salvador, during a 2003 pneumonia outbreak that caused several hundred deaths in the country. *AP Images.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Pneumonia is unlike many other infectious diseases in that it cannot be attributed to infection by one, or just a few, specific microbes. The respiratory tract, consisting of the nose, pharynx (back of the throat), trachea (windpipe), and lungs, has various mechanisms to protect itself from microbes as well as foreign bodies, such as particulate pollution, food, liquid, or gas. The nose and trachea are lined with mucous membranes, which bear tiny beating hairs called cilia. The thick mucous traps any microbes or foreign particles as they enter through the nose and mouth and the cilia propel them back to the nose and mouth where they are expelled, by nose blowing, or are swallowed. This mechanism protects the bronchi, which are the tiny tubes fanning out to connect the trachea with the alveoli, the tiny air sacs making up the lung tissue.

The cough reflex is another of the lungs' defenses against infection, expelling foreign material before it enters the lungs. Added to this is the immune system, which will trigger cells or antibodies to destroy any threatening microbes or other material. Therefore, microorganisms may colonize the upper part of the respiratory tract, without causing disease, or they may cause an infection such as a cold or influenza. With the usual defenses in place, they do not invade the lungs.

If these defenses break down for any reason—for instance, because of the use of a mechanical ventilator in the intensive care unit, or because of weakened



A chest X-ray shows pneumonia in the lower lobe of a patient's right lung. *© Visuals Unlimited/Corbis.*

immunity—infection may spread down to the lungs. The alveoli mediate gas exchange between the lungs and the blood—oxygen in, carbon dioxide out. They deal with anything that threatens this function, such as invading microbes or particulate matter, with a strong inflammatory response, which is the underlying mechanism of pneumonia. One of the main features of this inflammation is the production of a thick secretion or exudate by the lung tissue.

Over 100 different organisms can cause pneumonia, and the most significant of these depends on patient characteristics and the setting—whether in the community or in the hospital. Some of the most important viral causes of pneumonia include adenovirus, respiratory syncytial virus, influenza virus, parainfluenza virus, and cytomegalovirus. Among the bacteria that can cause pneumonia are *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Chlamydia pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, Klebsiella pneumoniae*, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Mycoplasma, which are organisms that have some of the characteristics of both bacteria and viruses, can also cause pneumonia.

Among AIDS patients, *Pneumocystis carinii* is a major cause of pneumonia as an opportunistic infection. Before the advent of AIDS, *P. carinii* pneumonia was rare and its sudden appearance alerted researchers to the emergence of a new disease. *P. carinii* is a fungus-like organism. Other fungi that cause pneumonia include *Histoplasma capsulatum* and *Cryptococcus neoformans.*

Pneumonia may follow an attack of influenza or even a cold, but it can also arise on its own. Anyone who suddenly starts to feel worse after flu or a cold needs to get medical advice immediately. The symptoms of pneumonia vary from mild to very severe, and they may be either gradual or sudden in onset. The nature of the symptoms also varies depending upon the infecting microbe and patient characteristics. A cough, which may be either dry or productive of green or rust-colored phlegm (a discharge from the lungs), is probably the most common symptom of pneumonia. Sometimes the patient will even cough up blood. Fever, chills, and breathlessness may also occur and there may be chest pain. However, older people may have few symptoms other than mental confusion.

Bacterial pneumonia tends to come on suddenly with fever, shaking chills, sweating, and chest pain. The cough usually produces thick greenish or yellow phlegm. The symptoms are usually more dramatic among those previously in good health.

In viral pneumonia, which is more common in the winter months, there is a dry cough, headache, fever, muscle pain, and fatigue. Breathlessness tends to develop as the disease goes on and the cough starts to produce white phlegm. Viral pneumonia is a particular threat to those with pre-existing heart or lung disease. If it does not clear up, a secondary bacterial pneumonia may take hold.

Mycoplasma pneumonia is sometimes called "walking pneumonia" because the symptoms are gradual and mild—indeed, patients are not always aware that they are ill. This form of pneumonia often strikes schoolchildren and young adults. It may account for up to one-third of all childhood cases.

The examining doctor will look for signs of pneumonia, such as an increase in respiration and pulse rate. Pneumonia also is associated with characteristic chest sounds—bubbling, cracking sounds called rales, and rumblings called ronchi—that indicate the presence of fluid within the alveoli. These can be heard when the doctor puts a stethoscope to the chest. Chest x-ray, and possibly computed tomography (CAT) scanning, are an important part of the diagnosis of pneumonia, since they will reveal characteristic opacities or shadows on the affected lung. (Pneumonia may affect one or both lungs.)

The complications of pneumonia include blood poisoning, pleural effusion, and lung abscess. The alveoli are in close contact with the bloodstream and so the infection may enter the bloodstream, causing what is commonly known as blood poisoning or septicemia. When bacteria

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

ASPIRATION: Aspiration is the drawing out of fluid from a part of the body; it can cause pneumonia when stomach contents are transferred to the lungs through vomiting

CILIA: Cilia, which are specialized arrangements of microtubules, have two general functions. They propel certain unicellular organisms, such as paramecium, through the water. In multicellular organisms, if cilia extend from stationary cells that are part of a tissue layer, they move fluid over the surface of the tissue.

NOSOCOMIAL: A nosocomial infection is an infection that is acquired in a hospital. More precisely, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in Atlanta, Georgia, defines a nosocomial infection as a localized infection or one that is widely spread throughout the body that results from an adverse reaction to an infectious microorganism or toxin that was not present at the time of admission to the hospital.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

enter the bloodstream, they can reach the other organs of the body in a short time, possibly resulting in multi-organ failure and death. In pleural effusion, fluid leaks from the lungs into the space between the pleura, which are the membranes covering the lungs and the inner surface of the chest wall. This fluid could become infected—a condition known as empyema—and may have to be drained or removed surgically. Finally, an abscess, which is a cavity containing pus-infected material, may form within the lungs as a result of pneumonia. Although treatable with antibiotics, a lung abscess occasionally must be removed surgically.

The complications of pneumonia are more common among the elderly, the frail, and those with weakened immunity, such as HIV/AIDS patients. The prognosis of pneumonia depends upon the setting and the patient. In those over 65, mortality ranges from 5% to 65%. The overall death rate for community-acquired pneumonia (CAP) is less than 1%. This rises to around 14% for nosocomial or hospital-acquired pneumonia (HAP) and to around 40% for patients in the intensive care unit.

Pneumonia is not transmitted from one person to another. Instead, it involves aspiration of microbes into the lungs from a previously colonized airway, implying that the normal defense mechanisms of the respiratory tract have broken down for some reason. It can also develop through aspiration of stomach contents, gas, or particulate pollution, all of which may inflame lung tissue.

■ Scope and Distribution

The public health burden of pneumonia in the United States is considerable. There are three million cases of pneumonia each year, accounting for ten million physician visits, 600,000 hospital admissions, and more than 60,000 deaths. It is the sixth most common cause of death and the leading cause of death from infection. Pneumonia accounts for half of all deaths from infection in the United States. Worldwide, pneumonia is the leading cause of death among infants less than one year old.

Pneumonia can strike at any age, but infants and children under four years of age and those over 65 years old are most at risk. The elderly account for almost 90% of all deaths from pneumonia and influenza. In adults, strong risk factors for pneumonia include existing illnesses such as congestive heart failure, kidney disease, diabetes, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, removal of the spleen, malnutrition, alcoholism, institutionalization, and dementia. Children and young adults with cystic fibrosis are especially at risk of pneumonia. For infants, low birth weight and low maternal age have been found to be risk factors for pneumonia.

Community-acquired pneumonia (CAP) refers to pneumonia contracted outside a hospital setting—that is, either at home in the community or in a nursing home, day care setting, school, or other place where people congregate. The cause of CAP is often viral, but bacteria are also important causes of CAP. Different species of bacteria are involved in causing CAP in different age groups. *Streptococcus* and pneumococcus are the most common causes of pneumonia, accounting for up to 35% of all cases. *Streptococcus* and *Staphylococcus* species of bacteria are found to be especially important in cases of pneumonia in newborns, while *S. pneumoniae* and *H. influenzae* infections are common in older children. *S. pneumoniae* infection is also found often in elderly people with pneumonia.

Hospital-acquired pneumonia (HAP) is one of the most significant nosocomial infections. It refers to pneumonia that develops 48 hours after hospital admission. HAP occurs at a rate of 5–10 per 1,000 hospital admissions in the United States. Most cases occur in the intensive care unit or in post-surgical recovery. The risk of HAP is 6–20 times greater among those on mechanical ventilation. This is because ventilation involves inserting a tube into the trachea, which disrupts the natural defenses of the respiratory tract. The microbiology of HAP has been found to differ from that of CAP with *Klebsiella pneumoniae, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Serratia*, and *Enterobacter* species, all of which are gram-negative bacilli, being most often involved. The term gram-negative (or positive) refers to the way a bacterial species reacts with a common stain used in microscopic studies.

Treatment and Prevention

Some cases of pneumonia need to be treated in the hospital and prompt assessment by a physician is needed, because the condition can progress rapidly. An increased respiratory rate, decreased blood pressure, increased temperature, and confusion are all potential indicators for hospital admission. Microbiological tests are often needed to confirm the infective organism.

However, the physician often needs to start empiric antibiotic treatment before the microbiology results are available. There is no effective treatment for viral pneumonia, which usually clears up on its own. In particular, antibiotics will not work against viruses. For those recovering from pneumonia at home, bed rest is important, along with plenty of fluids to help loosen mucus in the lungs. These patients should also be sure to stay away from those with weakened immunity, which may mean not visiting anyone in the hospital.

Many different antibiotics can be used to treat pneumonia. The American Thoracic Society has established guidelines to help physicians make a good choice of antibiotic for pneumonia, based upon the patient and the setting. For out-patients, amoxicillin, azithromycin, and levofloxacin are often used. The latter is one of a relatively new group of drugs called the respiratory fluoroquinolones, which are valuable because they can treat drug-resistant bacteria. In-patients not in intensive care may be given cefotaxime, while intensive care patients may be treated with a combination of drugs, such as cefotaxime with a fluoroquinolone. Sometimes treatment is given by injection, to get to the infection as quickly as possible. Patients with cystic fibrosis often need high doses of antibiotics and in combination.

Immunization against *H. influenzae* and pneumococcus is valuable in the prevention of CAP in the over-65s and in those otherwise at risk, such as patients with cystic fibrosis. The latter protects against 23 different types of pneumococcus. HAP is preventable by good hospital hygiene, especially relating to mechanical ventilation. Elevation of the bed has been found useful in protecting the lower respiratory tract from infection. Prevention of pneumonia is important, because the complications of the condition can be so serious. And with the growth of drug-resistant strains of bacteria that can cause pneumonia, effective treatment can no longer be relied upon.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

Pneumonia is an infection of the lung that can be caused by nearly any class of organism known to cause human infections, including bacteria, viruses, fungi, and parasites. In the United States, pneumonia is one of the most common diseases leading to death, and the most common fatal infection acquired by already hospitalized patients. In developing countries, pneumonia and diarrhea are the most common causes of death.

Impacts and Issues

William Oster, the great nineteenth century Canadian physician, called pneumonia "the old man's friend" because it often releases an elderly, frail, terminal patient from a catalog of severe medical complaints. However, not all patients with pneumonia fall in this category. HAP is the second most common nosocomial infection in the United States and the most serious in terms of morbidity and mortality, with 300,000 new cases a year, accounting for 1.2 billion U.S. dollars in healthcare costs.

The causes of HAP need addressing when they are preventable, such as violations in infection control, including insufficient handwashing, and the use of equipment that could be contaminated. However, the risk of HAP is inextricably linked to the nature of modern medicine, especially when it comes to intensive care. Mechanical ventilation may save the lives of the desperately ill, but it is also the leading cause of HAP because of the way in which it breaches the natural defenses of the respiratory tract against infection. Other invasive devices that are linked with a high risk of HAP include nasogastric intubation (a tube leading from the nasal passages to the stomach) for feeding an unconscious patient, and chest, abdominal, and head and neck surgery. Again, these can be life saving treatments, and health care workers and researchers are attempting to develop technologies and practices within the intensive care and surgical setting that can minimize the risk of pneumonia.

Another major concern arising from HAP is that the cause is often a multi-drug resistant organism. This means that the patient's upper respiratory tract has been colonized with such a resistant organism and it may be difficult to find an antibiotic within the armory available to the physician that can treat the pneumonia successfully.

Antibiotic resistance is also a concern in CAP, as penicillin-resistant *S. pneumoniae* is increasingly common. The fight against antibiotic resistance is two-fold. Researchers must develop new classes of antibiotic, which act by mechanisms not previously known. And both existing and new antibiotics must be used sparingly. Overuse or misuse of antibiotics promotes the emergence of resistant strains. On exposure, the weaker strains die, leaving the more resistant ones to flourish. This is especially likely to happen when a patient does not finish a prescribed course because symptoms of the infection clear up. This is as true of pneumonia as of any other infection. Patients must be responsible and take their medication exactly as prescribed. Only then are the chances of killing resistant bacteria maximized.

Primary Source Connection

In the following journal article, author Carol Potera discusses a type of aspiration (inhalation) pneumonia seen after the 2004 Asian tsunami that was termed "tsunami lung." Potera is a contributor to *Environmental Health Perspectives*, a journal devoted to the interaction between environmental factors and human and animal health.

In Disaster's Wake: Tsunami Lung

When the Asian tsunami struck on 26 December 2004, health authorities braced for an onslaught of waterborne illnesses including malaria and cholera, which often follow such disasters. But saltwater flooded the freshwater breeding grounds of the mosquitoes that spread malaria, and relief agencies quickly distributed bottled water, thwarting a cholera epidemic. Instead, a type of aspiration pneumonia named "tsunami lung" emerged and afflicted some survivors.

Tsunami lung occurs when people being swept by tsunami waves inhale saltwater contaminated with mud and bacteria. The resulting pneumonia-like infections normally are treated with antibiotics. However, the 2004 tsunami "wiped out the medical infrastructure, and antibiotics were not available to treat infections in the early stages," says David Systrom, a pulmonologist at Massachusetts General Hospital in Boston. Consequently, victims' lung infections festered, entered the bloodstream, and spread to the brain, producing abscesses and neurological problems such as paralysis.

Systrom and colleagues volunteered to work on a medical disaster team with Project HOPE (Health Opportunities for People Everywhere) aboard the hospital ship U.S. Naval Ship *Mercy* off the coast of Banda Aceh, Sumatra. When they arrived three weeks after the tsunami hit, "we saw infections not seen in the United States since before the development of antibiotics," says Systrom. Among them were about 25 cases of tsunami lung. "No one expected the number of tsunami lung cases we saw," says Systrom. "It was not on the radar screen."

The diagnosis of tsunami lung requires a chest radiograph and computed tomography scan of the brain to confirm abscesses. This sophisticated equipment was available on the hospital ship. "Only the most severe cases with central nervous system involvement made it to the ship," says Systrom. The team suspects that hundreds of milder cases went unreported.

In the 23 June 2005 issue of the *New England Journal of Medicine*, the team describes the case of a 17-year-old girl who aspirated water and mud while engulfed by a wave and carried about half a mile. She developed pneumonia two weeks later and was treated at a local clinic with unknown medicines. A week later, the right side of her face drooped, her right arm and leg became paralyzed, and she stopped talking.

A chest radiograph revealed air and pus outside the lining of the lung (a condition known as hydropneumothorax), and a brain scan showed four abscesses. After the doctors treated her with a combination of intravenous antibiotics (imipenem until the stock of that drug ran out, then vancomycin, ceftazadime, and metronidazole), her speech and facial movement recovered first. When she moved her right leg and arm for the first time, she "burst into peals of laughter," according to the report. She was transferred to an International Committee of the Red Cross-Crescent field hospital. "I suspect she'll fully recover," says Sydney Cash, a neurologist at Massachusetts General Hospital and member of the team, who has since received pictures of her walking.

A combination of microbes likely contributes to tsunami lung, but no lab facility was available to culture and identify those found in the Indonesian patients before the Mercy arrived. However, in a letter published in the 4 April 2005 issue of the *Medical Journal of Australia*, Anthony Allworth, director of infectious diseases at Royal Brisbane and Women's Hospital, describes culturing *Burkholderia pseudomallei* from two tsunami lung patients in a land-based hospital and *Nocardia* species from a third.

B. pseudomallei lives in the Asian soil and water. Mark Pasternack, an infectious disease specialist at Massachusetts General Hospital who also served on the Mercy, says, "You do not have to directly aspirate *Burkholderia* to produce pneumonia . . .. After the tsunami, people had soft tissue injuries from being forced into objects, so they could have gotten *Burkholderia* from wounds or aspiration."

Cash echoes this thought: "Natural disasters produce odd combinations of pathogens and unexpected ways for the body to be damaged that lead to unexpected clinical circumstances. [Medical disaster physicians need to] keep an open mind and expect the unexpected."

Could an infection like tsunami lung emerge in victims of Hurricane Katrina? Probably not, speculates Pasternack.

Although the water sweeping the Gulf Coast area may have been contaminated, "it was not forced down peoples' lungs by high-speed waves," he says. Therefore, aspiration pneumonia and its complications are unlikely to appear commonly during the Gulf Coast relief efforts.

Carol Potera

POTERA, CAROL. "IN DISASTER'S WAKE: TSUNAMI LUNG." *ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH PERSPECTIVES* 113 (2005): 11, 734.

SEE ALSO Chlamydia pneumoniae*;* Haemophilus influenzae*; MRSA; Nosocomial (Healthcare-Associated) Infections;* Pneumocystis carinii *Pneumonia.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Gates, Robert H. *Infectious Disease Secrets.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Hanley and Beltus, 2003.

Tan, James S. *Expert Guide to Infectious Diseases.* Philadelphia: American College of Physicians, 2001.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

American Lung Association. "Pneumonia Fact Sheet." April 2006. <http://www.lungusa.org/site/apps/nl/content3.asp?c=dvLUK9O0E&b=2060321&content_id={08C669B0-E845-4C9C-8B1E-285348BC83BD}&notoc=1> (accessed March 25, 2007).

Mayo Clinic. "Pneumonia." May 12, 2005. <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/pneumonia/DS00135> (accessed March 25, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Polio (Poliomyelitis)

Introduction

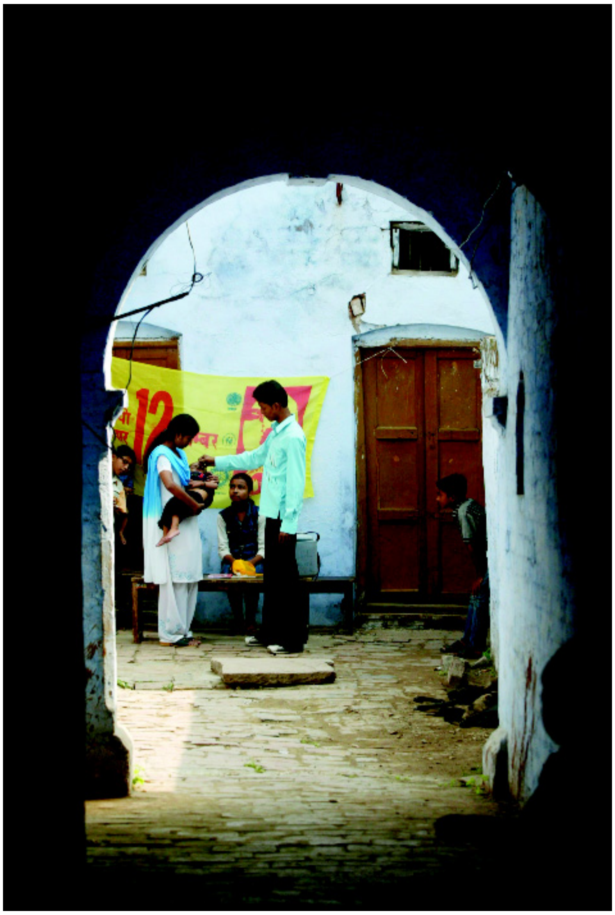
Polio, short for poliomyelitis, is a highly infectious viral disease that can cause rapid paralysis of the limbs and the muscles used in breathing. Also known as infantile paralysis, polio mainly affects children under the age of five, although it can also affect adults.

First described at the end of the eighteenth century, there have been many epidemics of polio both in the United States and in other countries around the world. Once an effective vaccine was introduced in 1955, however, the number of cases of polio began to fall dramatically. In 1988, the World Health Organization (WHO), along with other charities and organizations, launched the Global Polio Eradication Initiative. This relies on ensuring that all children are vaccinated against polio. The initiative has led to a dramatic drop in the number of cases of polio around the world—from around 350,000 in 1988 to fewer than 2,000 in the year 2005.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The word poliomyelitis comes from *polio*, the Greek word for gray, and *myelon*, the Greek word for marrow (indicating the spinal cord). It is the effect of the poliovirus on the spinal cord that causes the paralysis associated with this disease. There are three types of poliovirus—1, 2, and 3—all of which cause very similar infections. Polioviruses belong to the enterovirus group and are part of the picornavirus family of RNA viruses (that is, their genetic material is composed of RNA rather than DNA). John F. Enders (1897–1985), Thomas Weller (1915–), and Frederick Robbins (1916–2003) of Harvard School for Public Health, first grew poliovirus in tissue culture in 1948, and were awarded the Nobel Prize for this work in 1954.

Polio occurs mainly in the summer and fall seasons in temperate climates, but has no seasonal pattern in tropical climates. The incubation time of poliovirus is 7–14 days, during which time it multiplies in the cells lining the intestines and the respiratory tract. In 90% of



A health worker gives polio drops to a child in the Indian state of Uttar Pradesh in late 2006. At that time, authorities had detected 25 new polio cases over the past week in India's most populous state, stoking fears of a resurgence of the disease that was once nearly eradicated in the country. *AP Images.*

Iron lungs crowd the Hynes Memorial Hospital in Boston during a 1955 polio epidemic. The early ventilators used negative pressure to enable patients with weakened respiratory muscles to breathe. *© Bettmann/Corbis.*

cases, the infection causes no symptoms at all. Another 5% will have relatively mild symptoms including headache, fever, fatigue, and vomiting. These symptoms are indistinguishable from those of many other viral illnesses and usually clear up within a week.

One to two percent of polio infections result in nonparalytic aseptic meningitis, which causes stiffness of the neck, back, and/or legs. This condition tends to clear up within a week or so and complete recovery is usual. In one percent of cases, however, poliovirus spreads from the intestines, through the blood, to the nervous system, where it can destroy nerve cells in the spinal cord and the base of the brain.

Polio infection in the nervous system leads to paralytic polio—the most feared type of the disease. The severity of paralytic polio depends on how many neurons are affected, but onset of paralysis can be very rapid. Commonly, a child might go to bed with minor symptoms and wake up being unable to walk.

There are three forms of paralytic polio. Spinal polio causes a flaccid (floppy) paralysis of one or more of the limbs, without any loss of feeling. Complete recovery is quite possible, however, and tends to happen within the first six months. Any weakness or paralysis remaining after a year is likely to be permanent and the patient is left with some degree of disability. Spinal polio accounted for 79% of all cases of paralytic polio during 1969 to 1979.

Another, less common, form of paralytic polio is so-called bulbar polio, where the poliovirus affects the cranial nerves in the upper spinal cord. This leads to paralysis of the pharnyx (back of the throat), vocal cords, and respiratory (breathing) muscles. Bulbar polio is the most dangerous form of the disease, killing 75% of those affected. Pure bulbar polio accounted for only 2% of cases in the 1969–1979 period. The rest were bulbospinal polio, which is a combination of the two forms.

The complications of paralytic polio include urinary tract infection and pneumonia, which are common in any condition where a patient is immobilized. The overall death rate from paralytic polio is 2–5% for children and 15–25% for adults.

Most doctors will never see a case of polio. However, they may see a condition known as post-polio syndrome which affects 25–40% of those who had paralytic polio in childhood. The syndrome is characterized by fatigue, new muscle pain, and exacerbation of any existing weakness. It is more common with those left with residual disability by the original infection and among women. It is not clear what causes post-polio syndrome, but it may result from nerve damage occurring during the original recovery process. Post-polio syndrome has been shown not to be a re-activation of polio infection, and those affected are not infectious to others.

Poliovirus is transmitted by the fecal-oral route—that is, through consumption of contaminated food and water. It enters the body through the mouth and multiplies in the throat and the gastrointestinal tract, the latter being confirmed through laboratory examination of the feces of people with polio. People with no symptoms, or

WORDS TO KNOW

ATTENUATED STRAIN: A bacterium or virus that has been weakened, often used as the basis of a vaccine against the specific disease caused by the bacterium or virus.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

ERADICATION: The process of destroying or eliminating a microorganism or disease.

INACTIVATED VACCINE: An inactivated vaccine is a vaccine that is made from disease causing microorganisms that have been killed or made incapable of causing the infection. The immune system can still respond to the presence of the microorganisms.

LIVE VACCINE: A live vaccine uses a virus or bacteria that has been weakened (attenuated) to cause an immune response in the body without causing disease. Live vaccines are preferred to killed vaccines, which use a dead virus or bacteria, because they cause a stronger and longer-lasting immune response.

WILD VIRUS: Wild - or wild-type - virus is a genetic description referring to the original form of a virus, first observed in nature. It may remain the most common form in existence but mutated forms develop over time and sometimes become the new wild type virus.

only mild symptoms, can still transmit the infection. They are most infections from 7–10 days before and the same period after the onset of symptoms (if these are present). The disease is highly infectious and, therefore, in communities where even one child remains unvaccinated, all are at risk of developing the disease.

Rarely, someone may contract polio—and pass it on to others—through vaccination. Vaccine-association paralytic polio (VAPP) occurs in around one person in two to three million following vaccination with the live vaccine.

Scope and Distribution

Children younger than five have always been most at risk of polio, although it can affect people of any age. For instance, American President Franklin D. Roosevelt contracted the disease in 1921 at the age of 39. Polio was first described in England in 1789, and was only a sporadic disease during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.

However, from the turn of the nineteenth century polio became an epidemic disease around the world, although the first outbreak in the United States had occurred as early as 1843. It is not clear why the incidence of polio changed in this way. It is possible that improvements in standards of hygiene may have led to a loss of natural immunity against the disease, with children being less likely to be exposed to poliovirus in contaminated food or water. Such exposure may have led to mild or even asymptomatic infection that had no impact on health, but conferred a natural immunity against further attacks of polio.

In the early years of the twentieth century, Scandinavia, the United Kingdom, and North America were especially affected by polio. According to data released by the Health Section of the League of Nations (the forerunner of the United Nations), of 178,328 cases of polio occurring between 1919 and 1934, 54.3% were in the United States and Canada. However, the peak year for polio in the United States was 1952, with over 57,000 cases, including 21,000 paralytic cases.

In England, there were over 1,000 cases of polio in 1928 and in 1938, but between these years, the annual average was around 640. Polio became more of a problem in Britain after the World War II, with almost 8,000 cases being reported in 1947. There was also a very severe outbreak in 1952 that affected 238 per 100,000 of the population in Copenhagen, Denmark. The majority of these cases were bulbar polio, the most dangerous form of the disease.

The introduction of the polio vaccine in the 1950s began to bring the disease under control. However, in 1988, when the WHO declared a war on polio, the disease was still endemic in 125 countries around the world. Today polio is endemic only in four countries—Afghanistan, Pakistan, India, and Nigeria.

Polio has now been eradicated in the western world and in the western Pacific, including China. There have been occasional outbreaks, including one in the Netherlands in 1993, in areas where parents refused to have their children vaccinated. There are also very occasional cases linked with the vaccine itself.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no treatment for polio. During the 1930s and 1940s, it was common to immobilize the paralyzed limbs with splints to protect them. This was controversial, however, and some doctors recommended exercise instead, to build up the weakened limbs.

The need to support the breathing of those with paralytic polio led to the development of the Drinker

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

The eldest son of Orthodox Jewish-Polish immigrants, Jonas Salk (1914–1995) earned his medical degree in 1939. After his internship, and work on a flu vaccine, Salk devoted a considerable amount of his energies to writing scientific papers on a number of topics, including the polio virus. Some of these came to the attention of Daniel Basil O'Connor, the director of the National Foundation for Infantile Paralysis—an organization that had long been involved with the treatment and rehabilitation of polio victims. O'Connor eyed Salk as a possible recruit for the polio vaccine research his organization sponsored. When the two finally met, O'Connor was much taken by Salk—so much so, in fact, that he put almost all of the National Foundation's money behind Salk's vaccine research efforts.

Salk's first challenge was to obtain enough of the virus to be able to develop a vaccine in doses large enough to have an impact; this was particularly difficult since viruses, unlike culture-grown bacteria, need living cells to grow. The breakthrough came when the team of John F. Enders, Thomas Weller, and Frederick Robbins found that the polio virus could be grown in embryonic tissue—a discovery that earned them a Nobel Prize in 1954. Salk subsequently grew samples of all three varieties of polio virus in cultures of monkey kidney tissue, then killed the virus with formaldehyde. Salk argued that it was essential to use a killed polio virus (rather than a live virus) in the vaccine, as the live-virus vaccine would have a much higher chance of accidentally inducing polio in inoculated children. He therefore, exposed the viruses to formaldehyde for nearly 13 days. Though after only three days he could detect no virulence in the sample, Salk wanted to establish a wide safety margin; after an additional ten days of exposure to the formaldehyde, he reasoned that there was only a one-in-a-trillion chance of there being a live virus particle in a single dose of his vaccine. Salk tested it on monkeys with positive results before proceeding to human clinical trials.

Despite Salk's confidence, many of his colleagues were skeptical, believing that a killed-virus vaccine could not possibly be effective. His dubious standing was further compounded by the fact that he was relatively new to polio vaccine research; some of his chief competitors in the race to develop the vaccine—most notably Albert Sabin (1906–1993), the chief proponent for a live-virus vaccine—had been working for many years. As the field narrowed, the division between the killed-virus and the live-virus camps widened, and what had once been a polite difference of opinion became a serious ideological conflict. Salk and his chief backer, the National Foundation for Infantile Paralysis, were lonely in their corner. Salk failed to let his position in the scientific wilderness dissuade him and he continued, undeterred, with his research. To test his vaccine's strength, in early 1952, Salk administered a type I vaccine to children who had already been infected with the polio virus. His results clearly indicated that the vaccine produced large amounts of antibodies. Buoyed by this success, the clinical trial was then extended to include children who had never had polio.

In May 1952, Salk initiated preparations for a massive field trial in which over 400,000 children would be vaccinated. The largest medical experiment that had ever been carried out in the United States, the test finally got underway in April 1954, sponsored by the National Foundation for Infantile Paralysis. More than one million children between the ages of six and nine took part in the trial, each receiving a button that proclaimed them a "Polio Pioneer." At the beginning of 1953, while the trial was still at an early stage, Salk's encouraging results were made public in the *Journal of the American Medical Association*. Predictably, media and public interest were intense. On April 12, 1955, the vaccine was officially pronounced effective, potent, and safe in almost 90% of cases. The meeting at which the announcement was made was attended by 500 of the world's top scientists and doctors, 150 journalists, and 16 television and movie crews.

Just two weeks after the announcement of the vaccine's discovery, however, eleven of the children who had received it developed polio; more cases soon followed. Altogether, about 200 children developed paralytic polio, eleven fatally. For a while, it appeared that the vaccination campaign would be railroaded. However, it was soon discovered that all of the rogue vaccines had originated from the same laboratory in California. Following a thorough investigation, it was found that the lab used faulty batches of virus culture, which were resistant to the formaldehyde. After furious debate and the adoption of standards that would prevent such a reccurrence, the inoculation resumed. By the end of 1955, seven million children had received their shots, and over the course of the next two years more than 200 million doses of Salk's polio vaccine were administered, without a single instance of vaccine-induced paralysis. By the summer of 1961, there had been a 96% reduction in the number of cases of polio in the United States, compared to the five-year period prior to the vaccination campaign.

After the initial inoculation period ended in 1958, Salk's killed-virus vaccine was replaced by a live-virus vaccine developed by Sabin; use of this new vaccine was advantageous because it could be administered orally rather than intravenously, and because it required fewer "booster" inoculations.

The battle between Sabin and Salk persisted well into the 1970s, with Salk writing an op-ed piece for the *New York Times* in 1973 denouncing Sabin's vaccine as unsafe and urging people to use his vaccine once more.

respirator or "iron lung" by physiologist Cecil Drinker (1887–1956) of the Harvard School of Public Health and his brother, chemical engineer Philip Drinker (1894–1972). Introduced in 1928, the iron lung was the forerunner of the modern intensive care unit, whose mission is to support the vital functions of dangerously ill patients. Unfortunately, the existence of the iron lung forced doctors to have to make difficult decisions. Invariably, there would be more patients than iron lungs, and so they would have to decide which ones to treat.

Jonas Salk (1914–1995) introduced an inactivated polio vaccine (IPV) in 1955, following testing and trials.

This had to be given by injection. Then Albert Sabin (1906–1993) developed an attenuated (weakened) live vaccine (oral polio vaccine, OPV) that could be given by mouth, which was obviously much more convenient. Early experience with the Sabin vaccine was troubling, with some healthy volunteers developing paralytic polio (VAPP) after exposure. For instance, in 1962, there were 62 cases reported from non-epidemic areas of the United States, all occurring within 30 days of vaccination. It is unlikely that these cases arose from natural infection.

But Sabin persevered with his trials and the oral vaccine was introduced in the early 1960s and was used widely in the United States and in many developing countries. More advanced versions of OPV are now used where polio continues to be a threat. However, although OPV has been responsible for the elimination of wild poliovirus infection from the United States, the tiny risk of VAPP has meant that it has also been responsible for 95% of paralytic polio cases (the rest being imported cases).

For this reason, OPV has now been phased out and replaced by IPV, of which two versions are currently approved for use in the United States. A child should receive three doses of IPV within the first 18 months of life and a fourth dose at, or before, school entry. Travelers to the few remaining countries affected by polio, and certain laboratory workers, may need to have a booster dose of IPV vaccine to protect them. But a routine vaccination of adults is not necessary.

■ Impacts and Issues

Polio became a huge problem in North America. It affected children and cost them their lives or, if left disabled, could threaten their ability to lead a full and productive life. Therefore, the public exerted massive pressure on the government and scientists to find a solution in the form of a vaccine. In 1952, the number of cases of polio in the United States reached an unprecedented 57,268, and the debate over whether to release the vaccine that was being developed intensified. Organizations like the March of Dimes had raised substantial sums of money for research and called for trials of polio vaccine to begin without further delay, while researchers urged caution as they sought to perfect their lab experiments first. Testing of the Salk vaccine did, in fact, begin—albeit on a small scale—in 1952.

However, as with any vaccine, there were challenges to be met in terms of meeting demand and safety requirements, when it came to doing large scale vaccination against polio. There were problems in 1954, for example, when batches of vaccine were found to cause polio in experimental monkeys and were accordingly declared unfit for human use. Despite this, large scale testing of vaccine was finally able to begin in 1954. When successful results from these trials were reported the following year, public excitement was such that church bells were set ringing in celebration in several towns.

The Salk vaccine reduced the rate of polio from 13.9 per 100,000 of the population in 1954 to 0.5 per 100,000 in 1961. However, some argued that the Sabin vaccine, which consisted of live, but attenuated, polio virus, might be even more effective. These arguments continued over the next few years. The two vaccines differ in that the former is made from killed poliovirus, while the latter is based on live virus. Put simply, a killed vaccine may be less effective, but may be safer. A live vaccine may, potentially, actually cause active disease if the virus it contains mutates into a form that could be infectious. However, a live vaccine may induce a more effective immune response and so confer better protection against the disease.

By 1985, the success of the polio vaccine gave the Pan American Health Organization the confidence to set the goal of eradicating polio from the Americas by 1990. Meanwhile, the WHO had declared the official eradication of smallpox in 1980 and decided to build on this success by launching the Global Polio Eradication Initiative in 1988. This was supported by Rotary International, the worldwide voluntary organization, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), and UNICEF, the United Nations Children's Fund.

The Initiative has had considerable success. Since 1988, the number of cases of polio worldwide has fallen by 99%. In 1994, the WHO Americas region, consisting of 36 countries, was declared polio-free, followed by the WHO Western Pacific region, consisting of 37 countries, in 2000, and the WHO European region (51 countries) in 2002.

This leaves four countries with endemic polio, down from 125 countries in 1988. Mass vaccination is the key to eradication of polio and, in 2005 alone, 400 million children received polio vaccine. Two billion children have been vaccinated since the campaign began, and it is estimated that five million have been saved from disabling paralysis.

However, the total eradication of polio remains a challenge. It can be difficult, even under normal conditions, to access children living in remote areas. Where war and poverty compromise or destroy a country's infrastructure, achieving vaccination goals is even more challenging. Currently, there are outbreaks in northern Nigeria, and a new outbreak in western Uttar Pradesh in India.

■ Primary Source Connection

The following report was issued by the World Health Organization (WHO) about a single-case outbreak of polio in China that occurred in October 1999. The government of China cooperated with the WHO and other international health agencies to contain the outbreak and determine whether the initial case was acquired from another world region where polio is endemic, or whether the virus was a "wild type" that emerged in the local area. Tracking the source of outbreaks is vital to eradication efforts.

Polio in China

18 JANUARY 2000

Disease Outbreak Reported

The following case report is from the WHO Polio Eradication Programme:

The case was first reported to the County EPS in Geizi Township, Xunhua County, Haidong Prefecture, Qinghai Province, on 13 October 1999, and reported to the Provincial EPS on the following day. The case was born on 13 June 1998, had onset of paralysis on 12 October, after a day of fever on 11 October. The parents took the boy to a local private clinic in a neighbouring township when a sudden onset of flaccid paralysis made him unable to stand or walk (both of which he had been capable of before). Two stool samples were taken, the first on 14 October and the second on 25 October. They were analyzed in the provincial laboratory. Both samples yielded poliovirus isolates, which were later typed and differentiated as P1 wild viruses at the national laboratory in Beijing. At the time that the second sample was taken five contacts were sampled, one of which, a four year old cousin of the infected child, was also positive for wild poliovirus. The case child was unregistered and had received zero doses of polio vaccine.

The case belongs to the Sala minority group, a Muslim group of Turkic speaking people whose ancestors migrated to Qinghai from the area of Turkmenistan about seven hundred years ago. There are around 80,000 Sala in China, 60,000 in Qinghai Province (nearly all of which live in Xunhua Sala Autonomous County) and nearly all of the remainder in neighbouring Gansu Province. Adult male Sala travel widely as traders and workers, within Qinghai province and outside to other provinces, including Gansu, Sichuan, Xinjiang, and particularly Tibet, even as far as the border area with Nepal.

Neither the case nor the direct family reported a history of travel outside the county in the two months prior to onset. No visit to the family by a traveler from outside the county was reported to occur during the same period. However, the family, including the case, attended a major festival of Sala people in the county capital during the period 25 to 28 September 1999. Up to 30,000 Sala are reported to have attended this gathering.

Despite intensive investigation in the area of the case, including searches of health facilities, no evidence of wide-scale circulation of wild poliovirus has yet been found. Surveillance quality including laboratory proficiency in Qinghai Province and in neighbouring provinces is in general good. Indications are therefore that the virus has been recently imported.

The Ministry of Health of China is actively collaborating with the global laboratory network including CDC Atlanta, NIID Tokyo and the national laboratories in India. Initial sequencing information on the wild poliovirus show a close similarity to viruses recently circulating in India. The virus is significantly different from those that have been circulating in China up to the last case in 1994. Further genomic sequencing work is proceeding.

A combined MOH/WHO/UNICEF/JICA mission visited Qinghai Province from 20–25 December 1999 to review the response to the case. Initial case response immunization has been carried out, achieving high coverage of the target group. Extensive additional activities are planned, including large scale immunization across several provinces, intensified surveillance, retrospective review of hospital records at all levels in several provinces, and active search for cases of acute flaccid paralysis.

World Health Organization.

"POLIO IN CHINA." *EPIDEMIC AND PANDEMIC ALERT AND RESPONSE (EPR), DISEASE OUTBREAK NEWS* (JANUARY 18, 2000).

SEE ALSO *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Polio Eradication Campaign.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Gould, Tony. *A Summer Plague: Polio and Its Survivors.* New Haven: Yale University Press, 1997.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Pink Book—Poliomyelitis." <http://www.cdc.gov/nip/publications/pink/polio.pdf> (accessed March 25, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Poliomyelitis." September 2006. <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs114/en> (accessed March 25, 2007).

World Health Organization. Global Polio Eradication Initiative. "2005 Annual Report." May 2006. <http://www.polioeradication.org/content/publications/annualreport2005.asp> (accessed March 25, 2007).

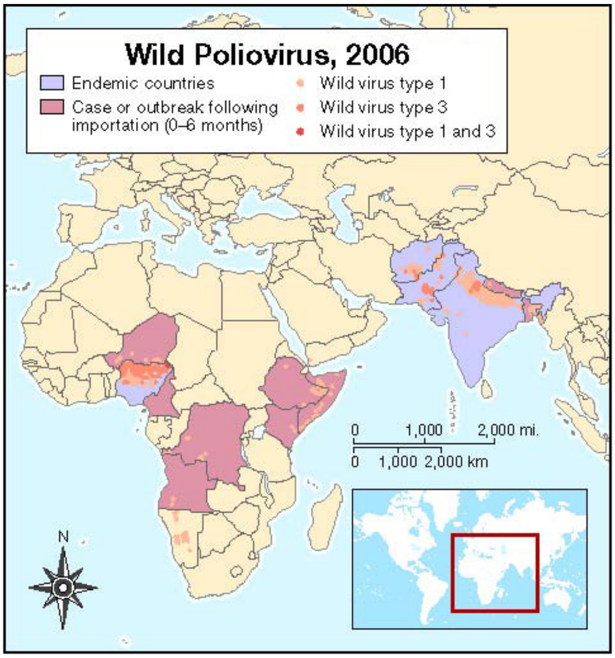
Susan Aldridge

Polio Eradication Campaign

Introduction

Polio, short for poliomyelitis, is a viral disease, which primarily affects children under the age of five. It is highly infectious and can cause rapid paralysis of the limbs and the muscles used in breathing. In the twentieth century, polio began to reach epidemic proportions in the United States and elsewhere. The introduction of an effective vaccine in the 1950s finally began to reduce childhood deaths and disability from polio.

Inspired by the success of the polio vaccine, the World Health Organization (WHO) and its partners launched the Global Polio Eradication Initiative in 1988. The campaign has led to a sharp drop in polio around the world—from around 350,000 cases in 1988 to fewer than 2,000 in the year 2005. Today polio is endemic in only four countries in the world, and the campaign is entering its final phases nearly everywhere. Eradication will prevent more than 10 million polio cases between today and the year 2040.



Map showing areas in the world that are impacted by wild poliovirus, January 16, 2006 to January 16, 2007. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

History and Scientific Foundations

In 1916, an epidemic of polio in the United States claimed around 6,000 lives and paralyzed 27,000 people. When vaccination began in the mid-1950s, there were around 20,000 cases per year. Five years later, the number had dropped to approximately 3,000. In 1979, there were only 10 cases of polio in the United States. Similarly dramatic reductions in polio cases were seen elsewhere.

The World Health Organization (WHO) declared the global eradication of smallpox in 1980. Given the success of the polio vaccine, the announcement of the Global Polio Eradication Initiative by the WHO in 1988 was a natural development. WHO was joined by Rotary International, a worldwide voluntary organization, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and UNICEF, the United Nations Children's Fund. Rotary International had been involved in an earlier campaign to eliminate polio from the Americas and was committed to raising funds to protect all children from the disease.

The prime objective of the campaign is to interrupt the transmission of the wild poliovirus by mass vaccination and thereby achieve global eradication of the disease. In doing so, the WHO and its partners hope for the added and long-lasting benefit of strengthening health systems everywhere and promoting routine immunization against other infectious diseases.

The campaign relies upon vaccinating every child, however remote or poorly served by a country's health system. It has made significant progress. In the years since its launch, the number of polio cases has fallen by over 99%—from more than 350,000 in 1988 to 1,951 cases reported in 2005. Polio is now endemic in only four countries in the world—India, Pakistan, Afghanistan, and Nigeria. In 1988, the number of countries where polio was endemic totaled 125.

In 1994, the WHO region of the Americas, comprising 36 countries, was certified polio-free. Then, in 2000, the WHO Western Pacific Region, consisting of 37 countries and areas, including China, followed. In June 2002, the WHO European region, consisting of 51 countries, was finally also declared polio-free.

Two billion children around the world have been vaccinated against polio since the launch of the initiative, with 400 million vaccinations in 2005 alone. It appears that the campaign may now be entering its final phase, with Egypt and Niger having now achieved the goal of successfully interrupting polio transmission. Meanwhile, India and Pakistan are reporting their lowest ever number of cases. Type 3 polio can now be said to be on the verge of eradication in Asia.

However, the task that WHO and its partners set themselves is not yet complete. In parts of northern Nigeria, transmission of poliovirus is uncontrolled, with more than three times as many cases in that country in 2006 as in 2003. There have also been outbreaks in Uttar Pradesh, India, and in Somalia. Such pockets of transmission remain a threat to all. Polio is extremely infectious and it would take only one imported case to reintroduce the disease to a country which had worked to achieved polio-free status.

■ Applications and Research

The polio eradication strategy focuses primarily on high infant immunization coverage with four doses of oral polio vaccine (OPV) during the first year of life. Supplementary doses of OPV should also go to all children under five years in areas where they are especially at risk. Surveillance for the presence of polio infection is a vital part of the campaign. All cases of acute flaccid (floppy) paralysis, which might be polio, need to be reported and subjected to laboratory testing.

Once wild poliovirus transmission is limited to a specific area within a country, a targeted 'mop up' campaign is initiated. Ensuring every child is vaccinated can be very challenging. The involvement and commitment of the local community is essential. The main reason why there is still polio in Nigeria is that vaccination was suspended in 2003–2004 because of fears about the safety of the vaccine. Moreover, awareness of the benefits of vaccination may wane in communities where polio is in decline. Therefore, continual efforts to engage local people in the campaign are needed.

The Advisory Committee on Polio Eradication is an independent body that advises the campaign on science and policy. It has recommended the development of new and more effective vaccines to speed up the eradication effort. Therefore, monovalent OPVs are now being employed, and the use of this type of vaccine is set to increase in the coming years. A monovalent vaccine targets only one strain of the virus—polio has three (1, 2, and 3). Monovalent OPV1, against strain 1, was developed in a period of months and used for the first time in India and Egypt in April 2005 and May 2005, respectively.

Monovalent OPV1 was developed specifically for India and Egypt where dense populations and efficient virus transmission were presenting the greatest technical challenge to eradication. It has since been used to deal with outbreaks in Angola, Indonesia, and Yemen. This vaccine, along with its strain 3 equivalent, will likely become the main tool for polio eradication in the future.

WORDS TO KNOW

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

ERADICATION: The process of destroying or eliminating a microorganism or disease.

MONOVALENT VACCINE: A monovalent vaccine is one that is active against just one strain of a virus, such as the one that is in common use against the poliovirus.

■ Impacts and Issues

To be certified as polio-free, a region must have at least three years of zero polio cases due to wild poliovirus and show that it has a high standard of surveillance. It must also be able to show it can deal effectively with imported cases of polio. Many countries have achieved this status already, but in a few places, further work is still needed before the goal of polio eradication can be achieved.

At the start of 2006, five states in northern Nigeria accounted for over half of all polio cases worldwide. This is the only place in the world where polio incidence is continuing to rise, despite resumption in vaccination activity in 2004. Meanwhile, the Horn of Africa remains vulnerable, with an epidemic in Somalia having spread outwards from the capital, Mogadishu. It is hard to reach all children in this unstable area with its meager infrastructure, but vaccination is essential if the disease is not to spread to children in neighboring Ethiopia, Sudan, and Kenya.

The work of the Global Polio Eradication Initiative is ongoing and it needs substantial financial support. The money comes from a wide range of governments and organizations around the world. A funding "gap" of 85 million U.S. dollars was identified for 2006 and the shortfall for 2007–2008 is 400 million U.S. dollars, according to the WHO. Polio may seem remote in countries where it has been eradicated, but its continued existence in the world is a threat to all people because of the possibility of imported cases of this very infectious disease.

See Also *Polio (Poliomyelitis).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Pink Book—Poliomyelitis." <http://www.cdc.gov/nip/publications/pink/polio.pdf> (accessed March 25, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Poliomyelitis." September 2006. <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs114/en> (accessed March 25, 2007).

World Health Organization. Global Polio Eradication Initiative. "2005 Annual Report." May 2006. <http://www.polioeradication.org/content/publications/annualreport2005.asp> (accessed March 25, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Prion Disease

Introduction

The prion diseases are a group of rare and invariably fatal brain disorders that occur in both animals and humans. They are unusual in that the infective agent is neither a virus nor a bacterium, but an abnormal form of the prion protein (PrP) that is normally found in the brain. Prion disease leads to the development of tiny holes within brain tissue, giving it a characteristic "spongiform" appearance at post-mortem. Hence, prion diseases are also known as the transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs).

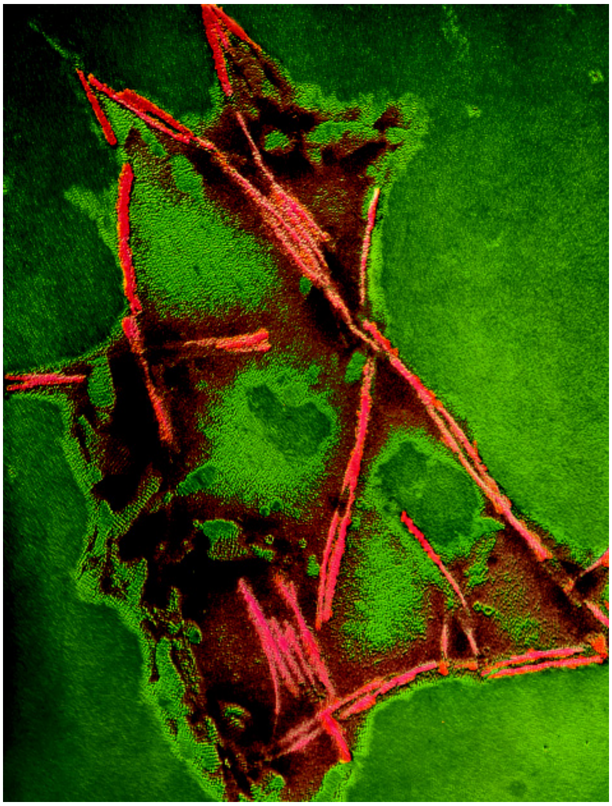
The best known of the human prion diseases is Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD), which affects about one person in one million. This rare disease came to public attention in 1996, with the announcement of a new form of CJD in the United Kingdom. Research has suggested that variant CJD is transmitted through exposure to beef contaminated by bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), a prion disease of cattle.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

There are four forms of CJD, the major form of prion disease. Sporadic CJD accounts for around 85% of cases and familial CJD accounts for most of the rest. There have been about 200 cases of variant CJD around the world, and a few people have contracted so-called iatrogenic (caused by a treatment) CJD from prion contamination occurring through medical treatment. The other human prion diseases are Gerstmann-Straussler-Scheinker (GSS) syndrome and familial fatal insomnia (FFI), which resemble familial CJD, and kuru, an almost extinct disease confined to the Fore people of New Guinea.

Prion diseases are marked by progressive deterioration of brain function that is always fatal. Sporadic CJD affects mainly people over 50 years old and is marked by ataxia—a shakiness and unsteadiness caused by damage to the cerebellum at the base of the brain which controls movement. Dementia (a deterioration of memory and other mental functions), swallowing difficulties, jerky movements, and blindness rapidly set in and the patient usually dies within six months.

In familial CJD, GGS, and FFI, the onset of the disease may be at a younger age and the disease's course measured in years rather than months. In FFI, as the name



A colored transmission electron micrograph (TEM) shows prion fibrils in the brain of a cow infected with BSE (bovine spongiform encephalopathy) or "mad cow" disease. *Em Unit, VLA/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

IATROGENIC: Any infection, injury, or other disease condition caused by medical treatment is iatrogenic (pronounced eye-at-roh-GEN-ik).

PRIONS: Any infection, injury, or disease condition caused by medical treatment is iatrogenic (pronounced eye-at-roh-GEN-ik).

SPONGIFORM: Spongiform is the clinical name for the appearance of brain tissue affected by prion diseases, such as Creutzfeld-Jakob disease or bovine spongiform encephalopathy. The disease process leads to the formation of tiny holes in brain tissue, giving it a spongy appearance.

PRION DISEASES

According to the National Center for Infectious Diseases at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), the following list represents prion-related diseases known as of May 2007.

Human Prion Diseases:

- Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease (CJD)
- Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease (vCJD)
- Gerstmann-Straussler-Scheinker Syndrome
- Fatal Familial Insomnia
- Kuru

Animal Prion Diseases:

- Bovine Spongiform Encephalopathy (BSE)
- Chronic Wasting Disease (CWD)
- Scrapie
- Transmissible mink encephalopathy
- Feline spongiform encephalopathy

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases*

suggests, a major feature in a progressive and untreatable form of insomnia is caused by damage to the thalamus, the part of the brain regulating sleep-wake cycles.

Variant CJD has a younger age of onset than sporadic CJD and is marked by psychiatric problems and pain and odd sensations in the limbs. The time course of the disease is longer than in sporadic CJD with ataxia setting in at a later stage. In iatrogenic CJD and kuru, ataxia is the main feature and dementia is unusual.

All prion diseases are transmissible under laboratory conditions, yet only variant CJD, iatrogenic CJD, and kuru are infectious in the way this term is usually understood. The source of abnormal PrP in these disorders is either beef contaminated with BSE or exposure to brain tissue from someone with CJD.

In sporadic CJD and familial CJD, as well as in GGS and FFI, a spontaneous or inherited mutation in the PrP gene leads to the generation of abnormal PrP within the patient's brain—without any outside infection. This goes on to interact with normal PrP causing the characteristic spongiform damage within the brain.

Scope and Distribution

All prion diseases are very rare, occurring with a frequency of about one per one million of the population—or fewer—around the world. There have been about 200 cases of variant CJD in eleven countries, to date, most of which have occurred in the United Kingdom. Kuru has all but disappeared since the Fore people ceased the funeral practices that exposed them to the risk of the disease.

Treatment and Prevention

There are no proven cures for any of the prion diseases, although there are a number of drugs being developed for CJD. Drugs can be given to ease the symptoms, such as valproate or clonazepam for jerky movements.

Impacts and Issues

The American researcher Stanley Prusiner (1942–) was awarded the 1997 Nobel Prize for Medicine or Physiology for his work on prions. But there is still much more to be learned about how prions work. For instance, routes of transmission are not well understood. Prion diseases may be present without symptoms for many years, putting people at risk of infection. Therefore a better understanding of prions is an important challenge for neurology research.

The emergence of variant CJD in the 1980s in the United Kingdom among mostly young people sparked an epidemiological investigation that garnered worldwide attention. After the disease was linked with contaminated feed consumed by cattle in the U.K. that resulted in the cattle contracting bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), the British beef industry suffered severe losses as over 150,000 cattle were slaughtered, many countries banned beef imports, and consumption of beef at home in the U.K. dropped dramatically. As other cases of variant CJD were linked to contaminated surgical instruments, stricter controls were put into place for decontamination and disposal of surgical instruments and tissues that could be infected with prions. In 2000, a British report titled "The BSE Inquiry" concluded that individual cattle were probably infected with BSE in the 1970s, that disease became epidemic as a consequence of an intensive farming practice (the recycling of animal protein, including prions, in ruminant feed), and that BSE had been transmitted to humans, enabling the new human prion disease (vCJD) to emerge.

See Also *Bovine Spongiform Encephalopathy ("Mad Cow" Disease); Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease-nv; Kuru.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ridley, R.M., and H.F. Baker. *Fatal Protein: The Story of CJD, BSE and Other Prion Disease.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1998.

Web Sites

The BSE Inquiry Report. "Home Page." <http://www.bseinquiry.gov.uk/index.htm> (accessed May 15, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "CJD (Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease, Classic)." April 13, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/cjd/> (accessed February 21, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "vCJD (Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease)." January 4, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/vcjd/index.htm> (accessed February 21, 2007).

U.K. Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease Surveillance Unit. "National Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease Surveillance Unit." February 5, 2007 <http://www.cjd.ed.ac.uk> (accessed February 21, 2007)

Susan Aldridge

ProMED

ProMED-mail, to give it its baptismal name, or ProMED, as everyone now calls it, was a happy accident. Barbara Hatch Rosenberg of the Federation of American Scientists organized a meeting in 1993 in Geneva, Switzerland, co-sponsored by the World Health Organization (WHO), to float the idea of a world-girdling chain of institutes capable of sending out teams to the site of any unusual disease outbreak in their neighborhood. The objective would be to determine whether it was of natural or unnatural origin. The conference itself was unusual in bringing together experts on not only human, but also animal and plant diseases, and on bioterrorism, which at the time was not high on anyone's priority list.

There were some 60 participants from 15 countries. The conclusion was that such a chain was highly desirable from the point of view of human health and food security. At a follow-up conference in the United States in 1994, further steps were outlined, and the late Dr. Robert Shope suggested the name ProMED, for Program for Monitoring Emerging Diseases. It was decided that an e-mail list be set up to enable discussion among the participating institutions. Charles Clemens of SatelLife offered to host the e-mail list, and I offered to run it, with the assistance of Stephen Morse, then of Rockefeller University. I was working for the New York State Health Department in Albany, New York, at the time, and was one of only a few of the conference participants who had access to e-mail then. Thus ProMED-mail, so called to distinguish it from its parent program, was launched in August 1994.

It turned out that absolutely no one in the program had anything to say to each other, so as we were supposed to be monitoring outbreaks, Steve and I started posting outbreak reports from the media. Then in May 1995, the Ebola epidemic in Kikwit, Zaire, hit the media, and people surfing the Web discovered that ProMED was posting information about it. I well remember the thrill when our mailing list, which had begun with 40 members in seven countries, hit 250. Later we were written up in the *Wall Street Journal* and our numbers went overnight to 500. Today, in mid-2007, we stand at over 40,000 in at least 180 countries, with many more accessing our Web site at <www.promedmail.org>. And, thanks to foundations and donations we still provide worldwide coverage, 7/365, without fee.

The uniqueness of ProMED is its stable of experts in the fields of clinical and veterinary medicine, microbiology, and plant pathology, all of whom serve on a part-time basis. It is the only free disease reporting system to cover human, livestock, wildlife, and food and feed crop diseases in one place, the latter because of the potential impact of animal and vegetable diseases on nutrition and therefore on human health. Since 2000, ProMED has been a program of the International Society of Infectious Diseases, which guarantees its freedom from political constraints that often cause delays in outbreak reporting. In fact, WHO has said that it uses ProMED reports to convince recalcitrant countries to report outbreaks officially, in view of the fact that a report has already appeared on ProMED.

During the anthrax-by-mail episode in the United States in 2001, the Science Advisor to the President told us that the White House's main sources of updates on the situation were CNN and ProMED. The Chief Veterinary Officers of Australia and New Zealand routinely copy livestock outbreak reports to ProMED at the same time as they send them to the World Animal Health Organization, and we get reports directly from hospitals and research institutes involved in outbreaks. We emphasize reports on outbreaks caused by select agents from the bioterrorism A list, such as anthrax and botulinum toxin, so that our readership understands that such natural outbreaks are not uncommon in some countries. We cover outbreaks due to biological toxins. Otherwise, we report on emerging diseases such as bird flu, using a rather broad definition of emerging that includes dengue but excludes most tuberculosis and HIV/AIDS reports.

ProMED has parallel lists in Spanish, Portuguese, and Russian, with a French version scheduled to launch shortly. These are not straight translations of the English reports, but are mainly reports of regional interest. Chinese and Japanese translations of many ProMED reports are found on the travel health Web sites of Hong Kong and Tokyo International Airport.

SEE ALSO *Emerging Infectious Diseases; GIDEON; Globalization and Infectious Disease; Re-emerging Infectious Diseases; SARS (Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome); Virus Hunters.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

International Society of Infectious Diseases. "ProMED." <http://www.promedmail.org> (accessed June 5, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Disease Outbreak News." <http://www.who.int/csr/don/en> (accessed June 8, 2007).

Jack Woodall

Psittacosis

Introduction

Psittacosis is a bacterial zoonotic (from animals) infection caused by the bacterium *Chlamydia psittaci*. This bacterium is present in birds and passed on to humans when they inhale airborne infectious particles such as feather dust, or bird secretions. Psittacosis causes acute symptoms of fever, headache, body aches, and a dry cough. Respiratory distress such as pneumonia may also arise. Psittacosis is not usually fatal, with approximately a 1% mortality (death) rate in the United States. Treatment using tetracycline antibiotics usually leads to a full recovery.

Psittacosis is a worldwide disease but outbreaks are rare. Importation of birds helps to spread the disease from one location to several. People in close contact with birds such as veterinarians, pet store owners, pet owners, and poultry producers are most at risk of contracting psittacosis. Psittacosis can be prevented through avoiding contact with infected birds or wearing protective gear such as gloves and masks when handling infected birds.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Psittacosis was first identified in 1879 as a bacterial disease that infected birds and was later confirmed to also infect humans and other animals. During 1929 and 1930, a worldwide outbreak of psittacosis occurred when a shipment of infected parrots from Argentina spread the disease to numerous regions of the world. There were approximately 1,000 cases of which 200–300 were fatal. This resulted in a ban on importation in many major countries, including the United States, but this ban was lifted in 1973.

Psittacosis is a bacterial disease caused by the bacteria *Chlamydia psittaci* and is common in many bird species, both wild and tame. Humans become infected with *C. psittaci* if they inhale dried secretions from infected birds. This may include aerosolized (suspended in the air) feces, feather dust, and droplets from sneezing or coughing birds.

Psittacosis symptoms include fever, headache, body aches, and a dry cough. Pneumonia may also occur. Severe or untreated cases of psittacosis may develop complications such as a heart valve infection (endocarditis), liver inflammation (hepatitis), and neurologic complications. The mortality rate for psittacosis is approximately 1%.

Scope and Distribution

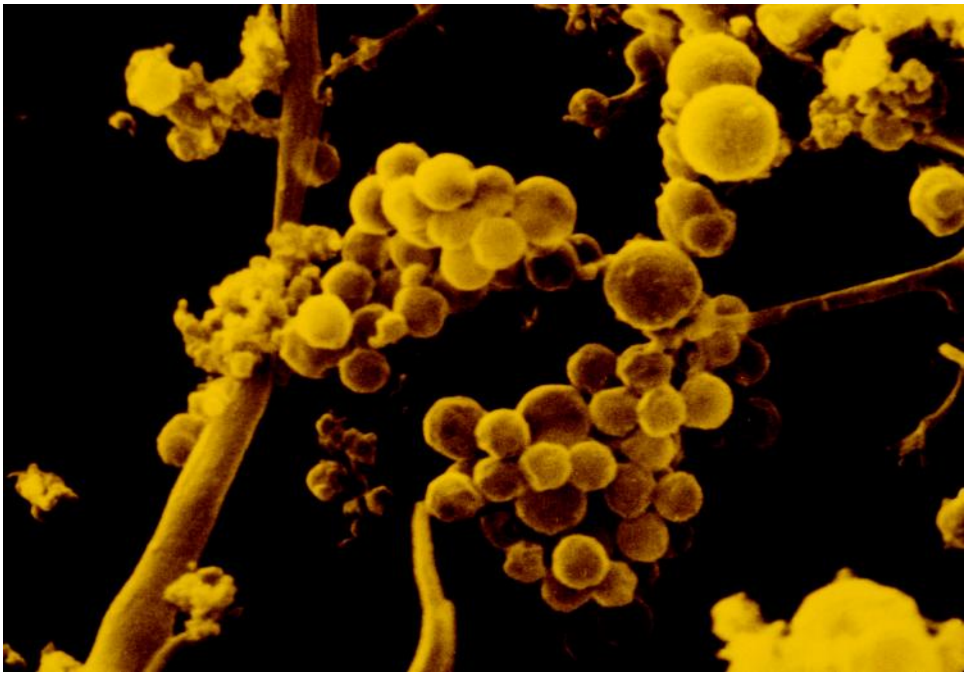
The organism that causes psittacosis occurs worldwide. Importation of birds exacerbates the chances of infection spreading from one region to another. Furthermore, the bird industry, including poultry farming and the pet trade, provide a route for the infection to spread.

In 2002, an outbreak in the Blue Mountains, Australia, involved 59 probable cases. The source of the infection was wild birds. The outbreak prompted the health department to raise public awareness about psittacosis. In Belgium in 1995, an outbreak occurred involving customs officers. The source of the infection was imported parakeets.

Most cases of psittacosis occur in people who have a close association with birds. This includes pet owners, pet store owners, bird fanciers, and poultry producers. In addition, young children, older adults, smokers, alcoholics, and immunocompromised people (people with a weakened immune system) tend to be more susceptible to infection.

Treatment and Prevention

Infection with *Chlamydia psittaci* is effectively treated using antibiotics. The most commonly prescribed antibiotics are tetracycline, doxycycline, and erythromycin. Treatment is normally administered for two weeks, after which a full recovery is expected.



This false-color scanning electron micrograph (SEM) shows *Chlamydia psittaci*, a species of small, spherical bacteria causing lung disease (psittacosis) in humans. *Moredun Animal Health Ltd/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

The best prevention method against infection with *C. psittaci* is to avoid contact with infected birds, and to ensure birds are kept free from infection. Investigating the cause of sickness in ill birds will help determine whether *C. psittaci* is present. Once an infected bird is found, measures can be taken to prevent the disease spreading to other birds or to humans. Avoidance measures such as facemasks, gloves, and handwashing can help reduce the chance of inhaling or ingesting contaminated particles. No vaccine is available to prevent contraction of psittacosis.

Impacts and Issues

Some cases of psittacosis may go undiagnosed or be misdiagnosed as diagnosis can be difficult. The occurrence of pneumonia can mislead a practitioner to diagnose the illness as a case of pneumonia, rather than psittacosis. Therefore, the prevalence of psittacosis may currently be underestimated.

Another issue surrounding this disease is the difficulties associated with tracing the disease to its source. First, infected birds may be asymptomatic making it difficult to determine whether they are a source of infection. Secondly, the pet bird industry is not heavily regulated, making it difficult to track the exchange of birds. Therefore, tracing an infected bird back to its original origin may be impossible, making it difficult to prevent the spread of the disease. Wildlife trade, including exotic bird trade, also spreads the disease to new areas. This makes it problematic to effectively control psittacosis and prevent outbreaks.

WORDS TO KNOW

AEROSOL: Particles of liquid or solid dispersed as a suspension in gas.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term “mortality” comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means “death.” Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., “Rabies has a high mortality.”

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

See Also *Animal Importation; Bacterial Disease; Pneumonia; Zoonoses.*

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

Although psittacosis is a reportable condition in most states, psittacosis is a rare disease. Within the United States, the annual number of cases of psittacosis has been fewer than 50 since 1996. However, the CDC suggests that some cases of psittacosis may go undiagnosed or misdiagnosed.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Karesh, W.B., R.A. Cook, E.L. Bennett, and J. Newcomb. "Wildlife Trade and Global Disease Emergence." *Emerging Infectious Diseases.* vol. 11, no. 7 (2005): 1000–1002.

Web Sites

American Museum of Natural History. "Some Facts about Psittacosis." 2003 <http://research.amnh.org/users/nyneve/psittacosis.html#hist> (accessed Mar. 7, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control (CDC). "Psittacosis." Oct. 13, 2005 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/psittacosis_t.htm> (accessed Mar. 7, 2007).

NSW Health Department. "Psittacosis: Questions and Answers." 2002 <http://www.health.nsw.gov.au/public-health/pdf/PsittacosisQA.pdf> (accessed Mar. 7, 2007).

Public Health and Infectious Disease

Introduction

An effective response to an infectious disease outbreak, epidemic, or pandemic requires a coordinated approach from all parts of the public health system. Public health units play an important role in disease control and response including planning for emergencies, surveillance, education, communication, case identification, case management, infection control, contact tracing, monitoring contacts in quarantine, border surveillance, epidemiological studies, and immunization.

The disease surveillance system must ensure that the first cases of the outbreak are quickly identified. Next, control strategies must be implemented to slow down the transmission of the pathogen while a vaccine or effective treatments are being developed. Surveillance would also detect the final case, indicating an end to the outbreak.

The Infectious Disease Surveillance System in the United States

Reporting of Communicable Diseases When a known "notifiable" disease or an unknown communicable disease is suspected to be a public health threat, clinicians should immediately notify the local health authority. Reporting requirements vary greatly from one region to another because of different conditions and different disease frequencies.

Communicable disease reporting is necessary to provide accurate and timely information for the initiation of investigation and control measures. It also encourages uniformity in morbidity and mortality reporting so that data among different health jurisdictions within a country and among nations will be consistent and comparable.

A reporting system functions at four levels:

- Collection of basic data on incidence, geographic dispersion, and patient outcomes in the local community where the disease occurs.
- Assembly of data at district, state, or provincial levels.
- Aggregation and analysis of the information at the national level.
- For certain designated diseases, the national public health agency reports data and analysis to the World Health Organization (WHO).

Reporting of Cases Each local health authority determines what diseases should be routinely reported. Physicians are required to report all notifiable illnesses that come to their attention. In addition, the statutes or regulations of many localities require reporting by hospital infectious disease officers, householders, or other persons having knowledge of a case of a reportable disease. These may be individual case reports or reports of groups of cases (collective reports).

Reporting of Epidemics For reporting purposes, diseases are usually classified into the following five classes, according to the advantages that can be derived from reporting. This classification provides a basis for inclusion in a local list of regularly reportable diseases. Case finding can be passive, i.e., the physician initiates the report as required, or active, when the public health officer regularly contacts clinicians, clinics, or hospitals to request the desired information.

Class 1: *Case Report Universally Required by International Health Regulations or as a Disease under Surveillance by the WHO.* This class can be divided into the following types:

- 1: Those diseases subject to the International Health Regulations (1969), 4th Annotated Edition 2005, WHO, Geneva: e.g., the internationally quarantinable diseases such as plague, cholera, and yellow fever.
- 1A: Diseases under Surveillance by WHO, established by the 22nd World Health Assembly: e.g., louse-borne typhus fever and relapsing fever, paralytic poliomyelitis, malaria, and influenza.

ENTRANCE
for polio shots

Students in San Diego, California, line up for a polio vaccination in 1955. In one of the most successful public health initiatives in U.S. history, mass inoculation campaigns largely wiped out polio in the nation. © Bettmann/Corbis.

The required case report is made to the health authorities by telephone, FAX, telegraph, or other rapid means; in an epidemic situation, collected reports of subsequent cases in a local area may be requested by the next superior jurisdiction on a daily or weekly basis. The local health authority forwards the initial report to the next superior jurisdiction by the most expeditious means.

Class 2: *Case report regularly required wherever the disease occurs.* Two subclasses are recognized, based on the relative urgency for investigation of contacts and source of infection, or for starting control measures. Examples include typhoid fever and diphtheria, brucellosis, and leprosy.

Class 3: *Selectively reportable in recognized endemic areas in many states and countries*; diseases of this class are not reportable. Reporting may be prescribed in particular regions, states, or countries if they recur with undue frequency or severity. Three subclasses are recognized, based on urgency of the investigation or control measures. Examples are scrub typhus, arenaviral hemorrhagic fever, bartonellosis, coccidioidomycosis, schistosomiasis, and fasciolopsiasis.

Class 4: *Obligatory report of epidemics—no case report required.* Pertinent data include number of cases, time frame, approximate population involved, and apparent mode of transmission; e.g., staphylococcal foodborne intoxication, adenoviral keratoconjunctivitis, unidentified syndrome.

Class 5: *Official Report Not Ordinarily Justifiable.* Diseases of this class are of two general kinds: those typically sporadic and uncommon, often not directly transmissible from person to person (chromoblastomycosis), or those with an epidemiology that offers no special practical measures for control (common cold).

Diseases are often made reportable, but the information gathered is not put to practical use with no feedback to those who provided the data. This can lead to deterioration in the general level of reporting, even for diseases of critical importance. Better case reporting results when official reporting is restricted to those diseases for which control services are provided or potential control procedures are under evaluation, or epidemiologic information is needed for a definite purpose.

■ Impacts and Issues

Public Health Response to SARS

In 2003 the world experienced the sudden onset of an epidemic of the virulent disease severe acute respiratory syndrome or SARS. The response to this outbreak was the first opportunity for new global public health

Confiance d'accord, mais... PRUDEN
100F
a boîte de
QUATRE
PRUDENCE
PRESERVATIFS
Qualité e ra/En ven

Women walk by a condom advertisement in Abidjan, Ivory Coast. Worldwide public health efforts to promote facts about the transmission of AIDS, to eliminate the social stigma associated with the disease, and to prevent the illness continue throughout the current AIDS pandemic. *© Karen Kasmauski/Corbis.*

surveillance and control agencies to act in anticipation of a potential avian influenza outbreak. The infectious agent was a highly pathogenic virus (in this case a coronavirus). Like the anticipated pattern for avian flu, the outbreaks spread from Asia to the rest of the world. Thus, the SARS epidemic was a trial run of emerging international public heath protocols to identify and respond to infectious disease threats.

The largest outbreak of SARS began in March 2003 in Beijing, China. This outbreak was resolved within six weeks of its peak in late April. Chinese public health agencies recorded case data from SARS cases observed in Beijing and their close contacts between March 5, 2003, and May 29, 2003 onto standardized surveillance forms, which were subsequently reviewed by epidemiologists. The epidemiological investigation focused on 1) the response of public health agencies to the SARS outbreak in terms of the timeline for implementing major control measures; 2) the number of reported cases and quarantined close contacts; 3) the calculated attack rates, with changes in infection control measures, management, and triage of suspected cases; and 4) the time lag between illness onset and hospitalization with information dissemination.

The investigation found that health care worker training in use of personal protective equipment and the isolation of patients with SARS, along with the establishment of fever clinics and designated hospital SARS wards, predated the steepest decline in cases. During the outbreak 30,178 exposed persons were quarantined in China. Attack rates among quarantined individuals were calculated by type of relationship to known victims and the age of the contact. Among 2,195 quarantined close contacts in five districts, the attack rate was 6.3%, with a range of 15% among spouses to less than 0.5% among work and school contacts. The attack rate among quarantined household members was found to increase with age from 5% in children younger than 10 years to 27% in adults aged 60 to 69 years.

Among nearly 14 million people screened for fever at airports, train stations, and roadside checkpoints, only 12 were found to have probable SARS. After initial reticence, the national and municipal governments adopted a policy of full disclosure, holding 13 press conferences about the SARS outbreak. Following the installation of strict screening and control procedures, the time interval between illness onset and hospitalization decreased from a median of five to six days on or before April 20, 2003, the day the outbreak was announced to the public, to two days after April 20. The rapid resolution of the SARS outbreak was due to multiple factors, including improvements in patient isolation and triage in both hospitals and communities of patients with suspected SARS and the propagation of information to health care workers and the public.

On the other side of the globe, the largest SARS outbreak in North America occurred in Toronto, Canada. Again, epidemiologists analyzed the patterns of transmission and the public health effects of control measures, and the findings and disease patterns closely

WORDS TO KNOW

INFECTION CONTROL: Infection control refers to policies and procedures used to minimize the risk of spreading infections, especially in hospitals and health care facilities.

MORBIDITY: The term “morbidity” comes from the Latin word “morbus,” which means sick. In medicine it refers not just to the state of being ill, but also to the severity of the illness. A serious disease is said to have a high morbidity.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term “mortality” comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means “death.” Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., “Rabies has a high mortality.”

NOTIFIABLE DISEASE: A disease that the law requires must be reported to health officials when diagnosed; also called a reportable disease.

QUARANTINE: Quarantine is the practice of separating people who have been exposed to an infectious agent but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. This can be done voluntarily or involuntarily by the authority of states and the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

SURVEILLANCE: The systematic analysis, collection, evaluation, interpretation, and dissemination of data. In public health, it assists in the identification of health threats and the planning, implementation, and evaluation of responses to those threats.

paralleled those in China. Toronto Public Health examined 2,132 potential SARS cases, ascertained that 23,103 contacts of SARS patients required quarantine, and logged 316,615 calls on a hotline dedicated to SARS. According to the investigators, 225 Toronto residents met the case definition of SARS. Only three travel-related cases were not linked to the index patient, who came to Toronto from Hong Kong.

A resurgence of the outbreak occurred due to unrecognized SARS among hospitalized patients. This was eventually controlled using active surveillance of hospitalized patients. The control measures of Toronto Public Health brought about a reduction in the number of persons exposed to SARS in non-hospital and non-household settings from 20 before the control measures were implemented to zero after implementation. The number of patients exposed while in a hospital ward rose from 25 before the measures were taken to 68 afterwards, while the number exposed during a stay in the intensive care unit dropped from 13 to zero. The spread of the outbreak in the community (outside of hospital settings) was significantly reduced after instituting the control measures.

Toronto SARS transmission was mostly limited to hospitals and households where patients had contacts. Epidemiologists determined that for every case of SARS, public health authorities could expect to quarantine up to 100 patient contacts and investigate eight potential cases. Active in-hospital surveillance for SARS-like illnesses and heightened infection-control measures were essential in bringing the outbreak under control.

Although the public health response to SARS was successful within a short time-frame, it is far from clear that a similar response to an avian flu outbreak would be as successful, mainly because influenza mortality and infectivity could be much greater, while current treatments could be considerably less effective. For this reason, the production of an effective avian flu vaccine is seen as essential for controlling an avian flu outbreak.

Control of Infectious Disease Outbreaks

Once an outbreak of infectious disease has been detected, public health agencies must consider a range of disease control measures from the control of patient contacts and the immediate environment of the outbreak to mass vaccination programs or mass prophylaxis using anti-infective medication. Following are some examples of recent research and a discussion of the use of certain control measures in the context of public concern over the possibility of an avian flu pandemic.

Risks of Mass Vaccination and Prophylaxis as Disease Control Measures As public health experts consider the implications of serious infectious disease outbreaks, they must balance the potential benefits of control measures such as mass immunization. One consideration that leads to caution in implementing such measures is the occurrence of relatively rare but predictable adverse reactions or events due to vaccination or medication (medication-related adverse events or MRAEs). For example, it is generally considered unacceptable to incur predictable mortality by using vaccines that have a rate of adverse reactions, however low, unless there is an actual outbreak of a dangerous disease. Computer models for particular infectious diseases can calculate outbreak-specific predicted daily MRAE rates from model user inputs by applying a probability distribution to the reported timing of MRAEs. One such exercise modeled a hypothetical 2- to 10-day prophylaxis operation for one million people using recent data from both smallpox vaccination and anthrax antibiotic prophylaxis campaigns. It was found that the duration of a mass prophylaxis campaign is important in determining the ensuing amount of emergency services utilization due to actual or suspected adverse reactions. In a population of that size, a 2-day smallpox vaccination scenario would produce an estimated 32,000 medical encounters and 1,960 hospitalizations, peaking at 5,246 health care encounters six days after the start of the campaign. By contrast, a 10-day campaign would lead to a much lower peak surge, with a maximum of 3,106 encounters on the worst day, 10 days after campaign initiation.

Thus the duration of a mass prophylaxis campaign could have a significant impact on the timing and peak number of serious MRAEs, with very brief campaigns overwhelming existing emergency department (ED) capacity to treat real or suspected adverse reactions. Although these results could be refined by further study of adverse reaction rates, the results of modeling underline the necessity for coordinating public health and emergency medicine planning for infectious disease outbreaks in order to avoid preventable surges in ED use.

Travel Restrictions as a Disease Control Measure Travel restrictions have often been suggested as an efficient way to reduce the spread of a communicable disease that threatens public health. Swedish researchers conducted a computer simulation of the effect of different levels of travel restrictions on the rapidity and geographical spread of an outbreak of a disease similar to SARS. They tested scenarios of travel restrictions in which travel over distances greater than 30 mi (50 km) and 12 mi (20 km) would be banned, taking into account different compliance levels. They found that a ban on journeys over 30 mi (50 km) would drastically reduce the speed and geographical spread of outbreaks, even when compliance is less than 100%. Their study supported the use of travel restrictions as an effective way to mitigate the effect of a future disease outbreak, at least when the infectivity of a disease is moderate as in the case of SARS. It is not known how effective they will be for airborne and animal borne infections with greater transmissibility such as a potential mutant H5N1 virus, discussed in more detail later.

Medication Stockpiles as a Potential Control Measure As noted earlier, much of the discussion and research regarding infectious disease control measures has happened in the context of concern about a potential new worldwide influenza pandemic, such as happens about three times each century. The worst of these pandemics on record was the 1918 pandemic, which killed at least 20 million people. H5N1 flu has become endemic in Asian birds, and at least 74 human cases, including 49 deaths and probable human-to-human transmission, have occurred since the beginning of 2004. International health officials lack the resources to monitor avian flu in a population of hundreds of millions in the parts of Asia likely to become the epicenter of such a new pandemic, including some countries with rudimentary or no public health systems.

If such a pandemic reached the United States at the present time, it would be possible to manufacture only enough vaccine for perhaps a quarter of the population. The currently planned domestic stockpile of oseltamavir would leave over 99% of the country unprotected. In contrast, Great Britain's planned stockpile will be 25 times greater on a per-capita basis, and some authorities suggest that even that level is insufficient. To change the course of such a pandemic, vaccines and antiviral drugs will be needed in much greater quantities than current plans allow.

Most researchers agree that pandemic influenza will recur. The world's surveillance systems and countermeasures are likely inadequate, and current control measures may not significantly slow a pandemic once it has begun.

■ U.S. Case Example: Preparedness for Avian Flu in Massachusetts

In June 2006 in the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, a panel of national, state, and local experts met to assess the threat of an avian influenza pandemic. In particular, they discussed the readiness of state and local officials response to such a pandemic. The conference leaders suggested that political entities, the public health system, and the medical community need a "seamless network of protection" against this potentially lethal threat. Three major challenges to pandemic planning and preparedness were noted: 1) the scale of the challenge; 2) connectivity of communication; and 3) the danger of complacency.

The current threat posed by avian influenza was described at the conference as requiring monitoring for mutations in the virus and its ability to transmit efficiently among people, particularly since there is no immunity among human populations against H5N1. Also, the ease and frequency of international travel and transportation of goods means that an evolving threat anywhere in the world is a threat everywhere.

Attendees noted that the response to the SARS epidemic conveyed some valuable public health lessons. Among these was that travel advisories seemed to help to contain the SARS pandemic. Interventions such as social distancing (e.g., cancellation of large gatherings, quarantining persons infected with influenza, and the use of cough etiquette and masks) could be helpful in mitigating the effects of an influenza pandemic. Two scenarios of an avian flu epidemic in the United States were discussed. One was based upon the 1957–1958 (swine flu) pandemic, and one upon the more severe 1918 (Spanish flu) pandemic. Both scenarios assume that 30 percent of the current U.S. population will become ill; up to half of those who are ill will require outpatient medical care.

The major difference between the scenarios would be the severity of the illness. If the pandemic is moderately severe, as it was in 1957, then approximately 209,000 people in the United States could die. However, if the pandemic causes severe disease, estimates show that almost 10 million people would require hospitalization, with 1.5 million requiring ICU care. Data from the 1918 pandemic indicate that close to 2 million deaths could occur in the United States alone, and millions more worldwide.

The federal government has made it clear that, in the event of a pandemic, it will not be able to respond to every community. Rather, state and local jurisdictions must take responsibility for preparedness planning and response efforts. Basic public health tools, including good communication about risk, individual/family/community preparedness, identification and quarantine of confirmed cases, and social distancing could be most useful during the initial stages of a pandemic. Schools and businesses could choose to temporarily close and use technology to reduce direct contact between people.

Effective communication during a pandemic is essential. Since it is possible that the supply chain of services, goods, and food will be disrupted during a severe pandemic, it is recommended that individuals and families store at least a two-week supply of water and food, nonprescription drugs, and other health supplies including pain relievers, stomach remedies, cough and cold medicines, fluids with electrolytes, and vitamins. The CDC addresses these concerns and provides a number of preparedness checklists and other tools on their website, <www.pandemicflu.gov>.

In Massachusetts, the state's pandemic preparedness plan is "intended to ensure that essential services are maintained, there is minimal discomfort and loss of life, the most vulnerable are cared for and that individuals, families and first responders are protected." The plan addresses hospital and health care facility surge capacity and staffing issues, surveillance and identification of influenza, the health and safety of vulnerable populations, timely and effective communication, and continuity of government and essential services during a crisis.

Massachusetts executive branch agencies that oversee critical services have submitted mandatory "continuity of government" (COG) plans to ensure that critical operations will continue during a pandemic. Businesses, schools, colleges and universities, providers, and municipal governments should all be preparing "continuity of operations plans" (COOPs) in order to ensure contingencies be made in the event of a pandemic. Educational outreach programs have begun and, to date, a number of impact estimates have been done in the state detailing the possible outcomes of an influenza pandemic. Legislation is pending that would indemnify emergency volunteer health workers and make them eligible for workers' compensation, which is important to recruiting needed staff. The administration will disseminate directives on how quarantine should be declared, what travel restrictions might result in the event of a pandemic, and where influenza specialty care clinics (ISCUs) are located. Simulation exercises have been conducted and public information campaigns have begun.

Five regional pandemic planning conferences have been held across Massachusetts that brought together representatives from public health and safety, business, healthcare, local government, primary and secondary schools, higher education, and the faith and human services communities. Among recommendations were improved hospital surge capacity, recruitment of volunteer healthcare staff, and increased state laboratory surveillance capabilities and stockpiles of antivirals.

Local Plans

Within Massachusetts there are a number of agencies and institutions that will be involved in the initial stages of a pandemic. Communities, businesses, schools, and individuals must be kept informed as a pandemic unfolds. A challenge at the local level is for public health officials to communicate effectively with other emergency responders that do not necessarily speak the same public health language.

Some critics assert that local public health officials are also being asked to conduct training, generate plans, and purchase supplies in preparation for a potential flu pandemic, but may lack the necessary resources and infrastructure to carry out their plans. Additionally, some community officials feel that they are not being included in federal and statewide planning.

To address these issues, the state has included each of the 351 local boards of health into one of 15 Emergency Preparedness Coalitions of contiguous municipalities in an effort to facilitate joint planning and resource distribution. The Coalition holds monthly planning meetings, allocates resources to local public health agencies, facilitates collaboration with area hospitals, evaluates training needs, and holds drills and regional flu clinics. These regional clinics were successful during the past influenza season and exemplified that collaboration within regions is possible.

Level of preparedness in Massachusetts

Many towns have created emergency plans, identified emergency dispensing sites, are running pandemic influenza drills, have a comprehensive response system in place, and are improving communication with other first responders. There is still insufficient long-term staffing, insufficient money to increase capacity, and the emergency personnel pool is inadequate. A clear definition of the role of local public health departments and joint planning strategies between towns are required, since there is tremendous variation across communities in terms of needs and resources.

■ Primary Source Connection

As increased migration and trade has heightened the threat of pandemic disease, cooperation among national governments and public health organizations worldwide has become essential. Since pandemic infectious diseases spread across national borders, disease prevention measures in one nation affect surrounding nations as well. The following article from the *New York Times* asserts that some pandemic influenza prevention measures disproportionately affect the poorest residents in regions where the disease is likely to emerge.

Ruth R. Faden is executive director and Patrick S. Duggan is research coordinator, both at the Berman Institute of Bioethics at Johns Hopkins. Ruth Karron is the director of the Center for Immunization Research at the Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health.

Who Pays to Stop a Pandemic?

BIRD flu has not yet turned into a pandemic, but it is already killing the meager hopes of some of the world's poorest people for a marginally better life.

When poultry become infected with the deadly strain of avian influenza (H5N1), it is essential that all birds nearby be culled to prevent further spread. We all stand to benefit from this important pandemic prevention strategy, recommended by the World Health Organization and the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization. Unfortunately, however, the world's poor are unfairly shouldering the burden of the intervention.

Last month officials in Jakarta, Indonesia, announced a ban on household farming of poultry there. The domestic bird population of Jakarta is estimated at 1.3 million. Thousands of families were given until Feb. 1 to consume, sell or kill their birds. Now inspectors are going door to door to destroy any remaining birds.

The Indonesian government pledged to pay about $1.50 for each bird infected with the H5N1 virus, a sum that may approximate the bird's fair market value. But most birds that have been killed under this policy are healthy, so their owners, most reports suggest, will receive nothing.

Moreover, it is not clear how Jakarta's poor will replace the income they once received from chickens and other birds. When officials impose widespread culling, industrial-scale poultry producers—like the company that owns the large British turkey farm where bird flu was found this month—usually have the resources to absorb the losses. But when the birds of small-scale poultry farmers are culled, entrepreneurs who were just beginning to move up the development ladder can be plunged right back into poverty. The most dependent and vulnerable members of the community become even more dependent and vulnerable. "Backyard birds" are the only source of income for many women and children.

Families whose birds are found to be infected with the virus may suffer even more. People in Cambodia, China and India whose poultry have been blamed for avian influenza outbreaks have often been subject to extreme stigma and isolation, and there have even been reports of suicides by desperate farmers.

It is inevitable that the world's poor will suffer most from a pandemic. A recent article in *The Lancet* predicted that if the next pandemic were to mimic the huge 1918 flu outbreak, 96 percent of an estimated 62 million deaths would occur in developing countries. But specific steps can and should be taken now to prevent or mitigate the injustices that are already occurring.

We are part of a group of 24 government officials, public health experts and scientists from 11 countries who recently met in Bellagio, Italy, with the support of the Rockefeller Foundation to call attention to how pandemic planning affects the world's disadvantaged. We created a checklist for avian influenza control that explicitly calls on the authorities to compensate people who suffer losses from bird-culling programs, regardless of whether the destroyed birds are infected with the avian influenza virus.

Such a program in Jakarta alone would be expensive. Just to compensate families for their culled birds would require nearly $2 million, not including the cost of administering the program. Indonesia's domestic bird population countrywide is estimated at 300 million, so if the culling program were to be expanded beyond Jakarta, the total compensation cost could run as high as $450 million.

Indonesia's avian influenza budget for the coming year is reported to be less than $50 million. Clearly, without donor assistance, the government cannot afford to compensate families and farmers fairly. So the burden of pandemic prevention must also fall on the world's wealthy nations.

Last year, the United States, the European Union and other nations pledged more than $2 billion to the global war chest for avian influenza response. Developing a program to compensate poor families in countries with limited resources is an enormous challenge. But it is time that the money pledged by the donor countries reach the people who are already the first victims of the next pandemic.

Ruth R. Faden, Patrick S. Duggan, and Ruth Karron

FADEN, RUTH R., PATRICK S. DUGGAN, AND RUTH KARRON. *NEW YORK TIMES ONLINE.* "WHO PAYS TO STOP A PANDEMIC?"

FEBRUARY 9, 2007. <HTTP://WWW.NYTIMES.COM/2007/02/09/OPINION/09FADEN.HTML?_R=1&OREF=SLOGIN&PAGEWANTED=PRINT> (ACCESSED JUNE 11, 2007).

SEE ALSO *Epidemiology; Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Notifiable Diseases; Pandemic Preparedness.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Heymann, David L. *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, 18 ed. Washington, D.C.: American Public Health Association, 2004, pp. 700.

World Health Organization. *International Health Regulations 2005*, 4th ed (annot.). New York: WHO, 2005.

Periodicals

Barry, John M. “The site of origin of the 1918 influenza pandemic and its public health implications.” *Journal of Translational Medicine*. 2004.

Handel, A., I.M. Longini, Jr., and R. Antia. “What is the best control strategy for multiple infectious disease outbreaks?” *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London. Biological sciences.* 22; 274 (1611) March 2007: 833-7.

Lewis, Katharine Kranz. “The Pandemic Threat: Is Massachusetts Prepared? Findings from the Forum on Pandemic Flu, sponsored by the Massachusetts Health Policy Forum,” June 2006. Policy Brief. The Massachusetts Policy Forum, August, 2006.

Web Sites

World Health Organization. “International Health Regulations.” <http://www.who.int/csr/ihr/voluntarycompliancemay06EN%20.pdf> (accessed April 21, 2007).

Kenneth T. LaPensee

Puerperal Fever

Introduction

Puerperal (around the time if childbirth) fever is a highly infectious disease that resulted in significant maternal mortality (deaths) from the seventeenth to the nineteenth centuries, and still remains a potential threat in developing nations. It is caused most often by infection from Group A streptococcal bacteria during or immediately following childbirth and is transmissible between patients. During the historic epidemic periods, infection almost always proved fatal and mothers exhibited symptoms of fever, abdominal pain, and vaginal hemorrhage.

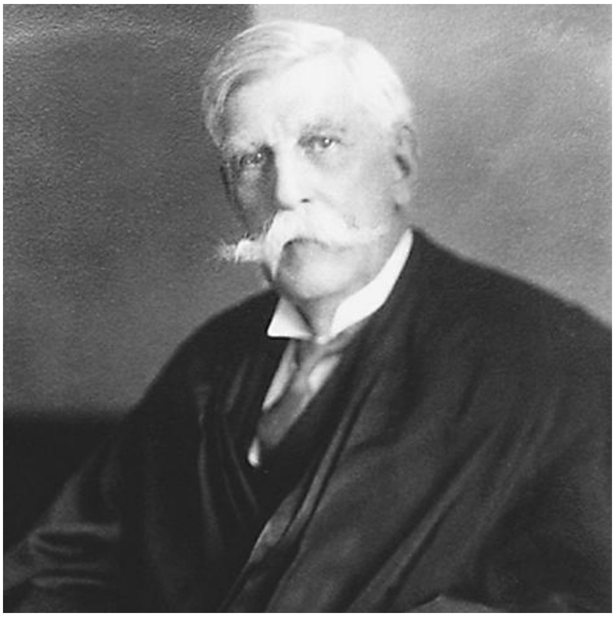
Puerperal fever was not prevalent in developed nations until the seventeenth century, when it became common for women to give birth and recover in hospitals. Hospital physicians were responsible for the examination and deliveries of many pregnant women each day. It was these routines that eventually indicated that doctors and nurses were responsible for transmitting the disease between patients. Physician and professor Oliver Wendell Holmes (1809–1894) and physician Ignaz Semmelweis (1818–1865) were each independently responsible for increasing awareness of this mode of transmission and implementing preventative measures against further spread of infection. In developed nations, puerperal fever poses little significant risk to expecting mothers.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

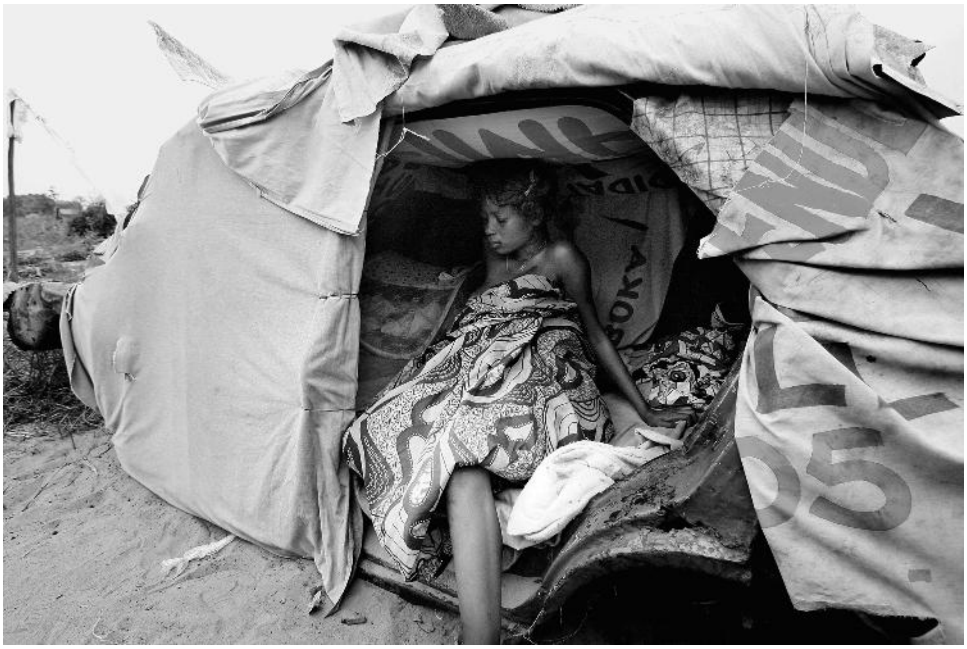
Puerperal fever, also referred to as childbed fever or puerperal sepsis, was a disease commonly affecting mothers during or shortly after childbirth up until the twentieth century. The first case of puerperal fever that was documented occurred in Paris in 1646, but it was not until 1879 that Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) identified the causative agent as bacteria belonging to the *Streptococcus* group.

Following childbirth, the placental attachment site in the uterus remains an open wound highly susceptible to infection from bacteria that occur normally on the skin, nose, throat, and vagina. Following infection by *Streptococcus* bacteria, the disease presents with rapid onset of fever, abdominal pain, abnormal vaginal discharge, and bleeding. Infection usually occurs within ten days of birth, and progresses to septicemia (bacterial infection in the blood) or peritonitis (generalized infection of the lining of the abdomen). During periods of epidemics, puerperal fever carried a fatality rate of up to 100 percent.

The significant prevalence of puerperal fever began only after the establishment of lying in hospitals, where physicians were completing many deliveries each day and treating many



Oliver Wendell Holmes (1809–1894), U.S. physician and poet, prepared an 1843 paper on puerperal fever, a post-natal infection of the womb. *Rutgers University Library.*



One of many street people in the Democratic Republic of Congo, this young woman gave birth in the rusting wreckage of a car in an old cemetery-turned-garbage dump. She was later taken to a clinic to treat major infections following the birth of her child. Lack of a skilled attendant during childbirth is a major risk factor for maternal mortality, often arising from infection. *AP Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term "mortality" comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means "death." Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., "Rabies has a high mortality."

PUERPERAL: An interval of time around childbirth, from the onset of labor through the immediate recovery period after delivery.

SEPTICEMIA: Prolonged fever, chills, anorexia, and anemia in conjunction with tissue lesions.

women who had given birth each day. Practitioners at that time were attending a number of patients each day without using sterilization procedures between patients. In 1843, Oliver Wendell Holmes concluded that physicians and nurses were responsible for transmitting the infection through their hands and clothing.

Unaware of this prior conclusion, physician Ignaz Semmelweis of Hungary noticed that one ward of physicians in his hospital had a 16 percent fatality rate compared with the midwife wards, which had a 2 percent fatality rate. Semmelweis recognized that the physicians had been performing autopsies on puerperal fever patients prior to deliveries, and concluded that the physicians were spreading the infection from patient to patient. Semmelweis then introduced mandatory washing with chlorinated lime at the beginning of shifts and prior to vaginal examination. Mortality was subsequently reduced to less than 3 percent.

Scope and Distribution

Although puerperal fever had a relatively recent period of significant endemnicity during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, it has been recognized for thousands of years that delivering women may be at risk of a fever that could be fatal. However, the mortality rates of puerperal fever in ancient and medieval times were lower, as women generally gave birth at home and were therefore not at risk of exposure to infection carried by attending medical staff.

Today, in developed countries, deaths from puerperal fever are rare and the mortality rate is about 0.1 per 10,000 births. This significant reduction in fatalities is largely attributed to improvements in sanitation and hygiene during birth, as well as the use of antibiotics to treat bacterial infections. Those at increased risk of developing puerperal fever are women with compromised immunity, women who are anemic, and women who endure a long labor.

In developing nations, childbirth-related fatalities remain a considerable threat to women, with 95 percent of maternal deaths occurring in Africa and Asia. In developing countries, around 1 in 16 births are fatal compared to 1 in 2,800 among developed countries. The exact causes of these deaths are often not determined, but puerperal fever is often a significant contributing factor. This substantial risk is due to a lack of healthcare training and facilities, which increases the risk of patients developing puerperal fever. Poor health care facilities also reduce the chances that the infection will be effectively treated.

Treatment and Prevention

During periods when puerperal fever was epidemic, the rapid onset of infection, the ease of transmission between patients, and the lack of knowledge regarding causation made both treatment and prevention impossible. Until the causative agent and mode of transmission could be understood, puerperal fever remained an almost certain threat among maternity wards.

The discovery by Oliver Wendell Holmes and Ignaz Semmelweis that medical birthing attendants were responsible for transmitting infection between patients was revolutionary in the fight against puerperal fever. Due to these realizations, practices were established to ensure physicians did not spread the infection. These practices included changing clothing between births, washing of hands with chlorinated solutions before and after attending to patients, and sterilizing implements used during childbirth. These practices are still followed as a defense against childbirth infections.

Once it was established that puerperal fever was a result of infection by *Streptococcus* bacteria, treatment of infection also became possible. The use of intravenous antibiotic regimes from the onset of labor through to delivery, especially in prolonged and complicated labors, can effectively treat mothers at risk for puerperal fever.

Impacts and Issues

Although the impacts of puerperal fever have been diminished in the developed world since physicians gained an appreciation of the nature of the disease, it remains a significant threat to expecting mothers in developing nations.

One of the main issues of this disease is that the *Streptococcus* bacteria responsible for causing infection are part of the normal flora of the skin, nose, throat, and vagina. This means that potentially every woman is at risk of developing infection during or following childbirth even in the absence of an outside reservoir of the contagion. In developed countries, problematic births are often predicted prior to the event and physicians can take a suitable course of action to prevent further complications associated with such infections. Such measures are not available to the majority of women in developing nations.

There is also a lack of healthcare training among developing countries, including medical personnel who do not entirely understand the mechanisms of disease. This can lead to medical personnel passing the infection

IN CONTEXT: BIRTHS ATTENDED BY SKILLED HEALTH PERSONNEL

The list below reflects data from countries reporting that less than half (50%) of all births are attended by skilled health personnel as reported by the World Health Organization in February 2007. Data was not available or published for all countries, including Sudan and Congo.

- Ethiopia: 5.6 % (2000)
- Nepal: 10.9 % (2001)
- Bangladesh: 13.4 % (2004)
- Afghanistan: 14 % (2003)
- Chad: 14.4 % (2004)
- Niger: 15.7 % (2000)
- Lao People's Democratic Republic: 19.4 % (2001)
- Yemen: 21.6 % (1997)
- Pakistan: 23 % (2001-02)
- Timor-Leste: 23.6 % (2002)
- Bhutan: 23.7 % (2000)
- Haiti: 23.8 % (2000)
- Burundi: 25.2 % (2000)
- Eritrea: 28.3 % (2002)
- Rwanda: 31.3 % (2000)
- Cambodia: 31.8 % (2000)
- Somalia: 34.2 % (1999)
- Guinea-Bissau: 34.7 % (2000)
- Guinea: 34.8 % (1999)
- Nigeria: 35.2 % (2003)
- Uganda: 39 % (2000)
- Mali: 40.6 % (2001)
- Guatemala: 41.4 % (2002)
- Kenya: 41.6 % (2003)
- Sierra Leone: 41.7 % (2000)
- India: 42.5 % (2000)
- Zambia: 43.4 % (2001-02)
- Central African Republic: 44 % (2000)
- United Republic of Tanzania: 46.3 % (2004-05)
- Angola: 47.1 % (2000)
- Ghana: 47.1 % (2003)
- Mozambique: 47.7 % (2003)
- Togo: 48.6 % (2000)

SOURCE: *World Health Organization,WHO Database on Skilled Attendant at Delivery. World Health Organization (http://www.who.int//reproductive-health/global_monitoring/data.html).*

from patient to patient. This makes it more likely for women in developing nations to develop puerperal fever, while reduced health care resources also makes it more likely that the infection will be fatal.

Further issues exist for the children born from maternally fatal deliveries as they are often instantly subject to disadvantage. Until they reach a certain age, they are unable to contribute to labor and productivity but remain a strain on essential resources such as food and water. The society may view them as a liability rather than a member of the community, which results in significant social impact.

At the United Nations Millennium Summit in 2000, world leaders established a set of goals to combat certain sources of poverty, illness, illiteracy, hunger, and environmental problems. These goals are commonly referred to as the U.N. Millennium Goals. One of the primary development and health goals is to reduce the maternal mortality ratio by 75 percent by 2015. Worldwide, maternal mortality is highest among poor and rural women in developing nations.

While noticeable improvements in the maternal mortality ratio have occurred since the inception of the Millennium Development Goals in 2000, maternal mortality remains high in the regions where women are most likely to die from childbearing, especially sub-Saharan Africa and Southern Asia. Puerperal sepsis continues to be a significant problem. Researchers and health care providers found that women who had a skilled attendant during childbirth—along with access to emergency care if needed—were less likely to die or suffer debilitating complications. Overall, only 56% of women in developing regions have a skilled health care attendant during childbirth. In sub-Saharan Africa, only 36% of women have a skilled attendant assist their birth, compared to 88 percent of women in Latin America.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Contact Precautions; Disinfection; Handwashing; Sterilization.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G. L., J. E. Bennett, and R. Dolin.*Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases, Volume 2.* Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Mims, C., H. Dockrell, R. Goering, I. Roitt, D. Wakelin, and M. Zuckerman. *Medical Microbiology.* St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2004.

Nuland, S. B. *The Doctors' Plague: Germs, Childbed Fever, and the Strange Story of Ignc Semmelweis.* New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2004.

Web Sites

Internet Modern History Sourcebook. "Oliver Wendell Holmes: Contagiousness of Puerperal Fever, 1843." August, 1998 <http://www.fordham.edu/halsall/mod/1843holmes-fever.html> (accessed March 8, 2007).

World Health Organization (WHO). "Maternal Deaths Disproportionately High in Developing Countries." October 20, 2003 <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/news/releases/2003/pr77/en/index.html> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Q Fever

Introduction

Q fever is a disease of humans and some animals that is caused by a bacterium called *Coxiella burnetii*. The infection is a zoonosis—it is passed to humans by contact with infected animals that are not usually harmed by the organism. The animals typically affected are sheep, cattle, and goats. Q fever can occur and clear quickly (this type is called an acute infection), or can persist for a much longer time (this is called a chronic infection).

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Q fever was first described in Australia in 1935 by the physician Edward H. Derrick (1898–1976) in people working in an Australian slaughterhouse. At the time, the cause for the illnesses was unknown; hence the term Q, which was short for Query. In 1937, *C. burnetii* was isolated and identified. The following year, the same organism was isolated from ticks in Montana, leading researchers to suspect a tick-mediated animal-human connection. The U.S. researchers also showed that the microbe was a type of bacterium called a rickettsia. Rickettsia are important from the standpoint of infectious diseases. As an example, other rickettsia are responsible for the potentially serious diseases called Rocky Mountain spotted fever and trench fever.

C. burnetti is a gram-negative organism, meaning it has two membranes surrounding the inner contents of the cell. In addition, the bacterium requires a host cell in order to grow and divide. This is similar to viruses. However, unlike viruses, which are not considered to be alive, *C. burnetii* is living and can survive, but cannot grow and divide, when not in a host cell.

The bacteria can survive for a long time in the natural environment, as they are not easily killed by heat, dryness, and even chemical compounds that readily kill other bacteria. This makes it more likely that the bacteria will be spread to those who come into contact with them.

Q fever results from inhalation of the bacteria. Infections have been traced to the inhalation of bacteria dislodged into the air from dry hay or a dusty barnyard. Only a few living organisms need be inhaled to establish an infection. This route of infection is different from other rickettsial diseases, where the bacteria are transferred from animal to human by tick bites. People who are most at risk of acquiring Q fever are those who are around animals like goats, sheep, and cattle, since these animals can naturally harbor the bacterium. The bacteria can be present in the milk, urine, amniotic fluid, and feces of the animals. Also, bacteria can be present in amniotic fluid and the placenta, and so can be spread to people who help in the birth of animals. Veterinarians, processing plant workers, and livestock farmers are more susceptible to Q fever than the general population.

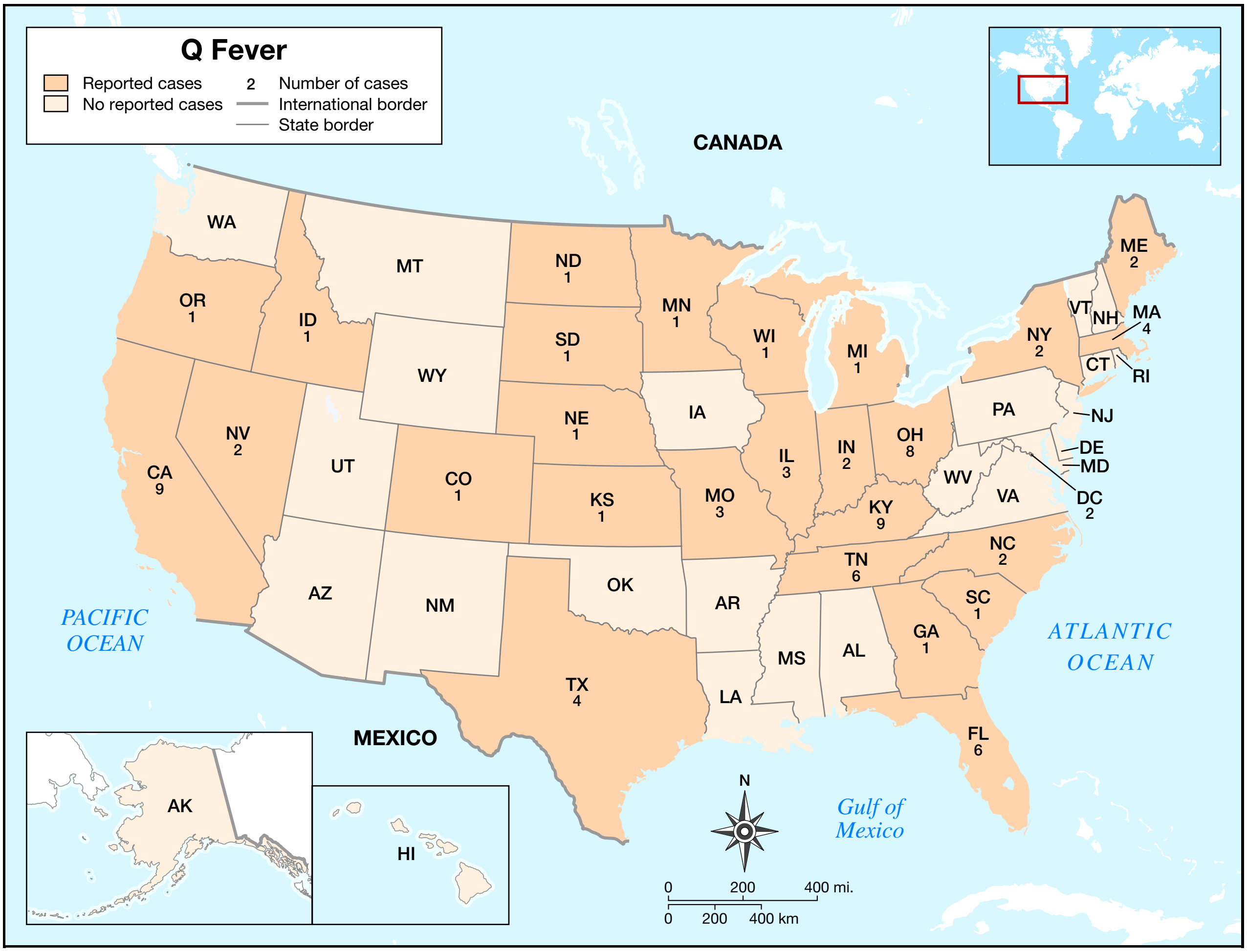
For reasons that are not clear, only about 50% of those people who inhale the bacteria display symptoms. The symptoms include a sudden and high fever, a flulike sickness, severe headache, nausea with vomiting, abdominal

WORDS TO KNOW

ACUTE: An acute infection is one of rapid onset and of short duration, which either resolves or becomes chronic.

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA: All types of bacteria identified and classified as a group that does not retain crystal-violet dye during Gram's method of staining.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.


Q Fever
Reported cases
No reported cases
2 Number of cases
International border
State border
CANADA
WA
OR 1
ID 1
MT
ND 1
SD 1
WY
MN 1
WI 1
MI 1
NY 2
VT
NH
ME 2
MA 4
CT
RI
NJ
DE
MD
DC 2
PA
OH 8
IN 2
IL 3
IA
NE 1
CO 1
UT
NV 2
CA 9
KS 1
MO 3
KY 9
WV
VA
NC 2
TN 6
SC 1
GA 1
AL
MS
AR
OK
TX 4
NM
AZ
LA
FL 6
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
MEXICO
Gulf of Mexico
AK
HI
N
0 200 400 mi.
0 200 400 km

Map showing the number of reported cases of Q fever in the United States and U.S. territories in 2003, as recorded by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). *Data courtesy of Centers for Disease Control.*

pain, and a general feeling of being unwell. People can lose weight during their illness, which can take some time to regain following their recovery. Only 1–2% of those with the milder form of Q fever die of the illness.

A serious lung infection (pneumonia) can develop in 30–50% of people with Q fever. Liver damage including hepatitis can also occur. These symptoms usually ease in several months. However, a more persistent form of Q fever can develop, resulting in debilitating damage to heart valves due to the longer-lasting infection that kills up to 60% of those who acquire the chronic infection.

There are two different forms of *C. burnetii* that differ in the types of molecules present on the outer surfaces of their cells. The two forms have been designated phase I and phase II. The phase I form is associated with the chronic form of Q fever.

The short-term form of Q fever does not always immediately lead to the longer form; indeed, the chronic form of Q fever can develop in the absence of the milder form of the disease. The time lag between the short-term and chronic forms of Q fever can be as long as several decades.

Scope and Distribution

The bacterium responsible for Q fever occurs worldwide. Countries such as Australia and the United States with a heavier emphasis on livestock agriculture, or which have a greater prevalence of animals that naturally harbor the bacterium, have a higher occurrence of the disease.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis of Q fever most typically involves the detection of antibodies to *C. burnetii* or genetic material from the bacterium. Growing the organism is difficult, so detection of the bacterium itself is not typically accomplished. Following diagnosis, treatment consists of antibiotic therapy.

Typically, this is effective, although the therapy will be necessary for years when the infection is chronic. Heart valve damage can require replacement of the defective tissue.

A vaccine for Q fever exists. As of 2007, it is available in Australia and parts of Europe, but is not yet widely available in North America. Beginning in 2001, people at risk in Australia could be vaccinated. North Americans identified at higher risk of Q fever can also now be vaccinated. Similarly, a vaccine for animals exists, but is not yet in widespread use in North America.

Prevention of the transmission of the bacterium to humans involves wearing masks when around domestic livestock and the prompt disposal of the placenta and other tissues resulting from the birth process.

Impacts and Issues

Q fever can be a potentially serious disease because it can be spread from animals to people. In the United States, cases of the illness have been required to be reported to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention since 1999. Imported livestock are also monitored for the presence of the bacterium, since transfer to other domestic animals could occur unknowingly in the absence of development of any symptoms in these hosts.

Why only about 50% of infected people display symptoms of infection is still unclear, but is important to learn if vaccines are to be fully protective. Research is underway to try and distinguish factors associated with people, the bacterium, or both that help some people ward off the consequences of infection. Additionally, it is not clear why Q fever does not persist for a long time in some people, but becomes a chronic, destructive, and potentially life-threatening condition in others.

SEE ALSO *Animal Importation; Bioterrorism; Opportunistic Infection; Zoonoses.*

IN CONTEXT: SOCIAL AND PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY

The Division of Viral and Rickettsial Diseases at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that the following measures should be used in the prevention and control of Q fever:

- Educate the public on sources of infection.
- Appropriately dispose of placenta, birth products, fetal membranes, and aborted fetuses at facilities housing sheep and goats.
- Restrict access to barns and laboratories used in housing potentially infected animals.
- Use only pasteurized milk and milk products.
- Use appropriate procedures for bagging, autoclaving, and washing of laboratory clothing.
- Vaccinate (where possible) individuals engaged in research with pregnant sheep or live *C. burnetii*.
- Quarantine imported animals.
- Ensure that holding facilities for sheep should be located away from populated areas. Animals should be routinely tested for antibodies to *C. burnetii*, and measures should be implemented to prevent airflow to other occupied areas.
- Counsel persons at highest risk for developing chronic Q fever, especially persons with pre-existing cardiac valvular disease or individuals with vascular grafts.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Viral and Rickettsial Diseases*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Tierno, Philip M. *The Secret Life of Germs: What They Are, Why We Need Them, and How We Can Protect Ourselves Against Them.* New York: Atria, 2004.

Periodicals

Anderson, Alicia D. "Q Fever and the U.S. Military." *Emerging Infectious Diseases.* 11:1320–1323 (2005).

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Q Fever." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/qfever/index.htm> (accessed May 1, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Rabies

Introduction

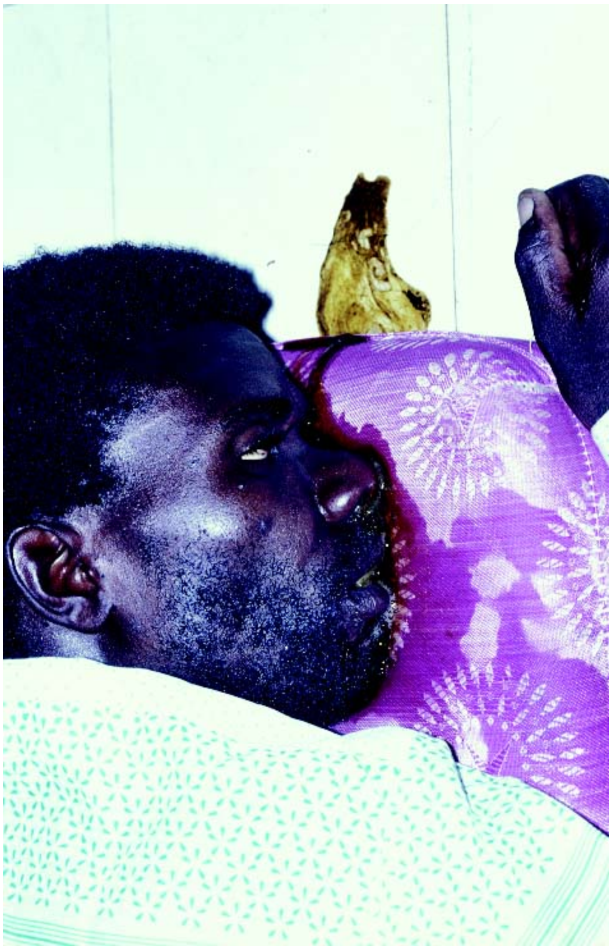
Rabies, from the Latin word *rabies* for mad, has long been one of the most-feared of diseases. It was described by the Greek philosopher Aristotle (384–322 BC) who realized that humans could contract rabies through being bitten by infected dogs, which is still the most common way the disease is transmitted. Rabies claims the lives of around 55,000 people around the world each year, mainly in rural parts of Africa and Asia.

Rabies is an acute viral illness which affects the brain and nervous system. Left untreated, it is invariably fatal. The symptoms are dramatic, including seizures, hallucinations, foaming at the mouth, and violent throat spasms. Rabies is a zoonosis—a disease of animals which can affect humans. Wild mammals are the reservoir of the rabies virus and they can, in turn, affect domestic animals like cats and dogs. Humans usually become infected through a bite from a wild or domestic animal with rabies. Fortunately, an effective vaccine against rabies is available and this can be used either before or after exposure to the virus.

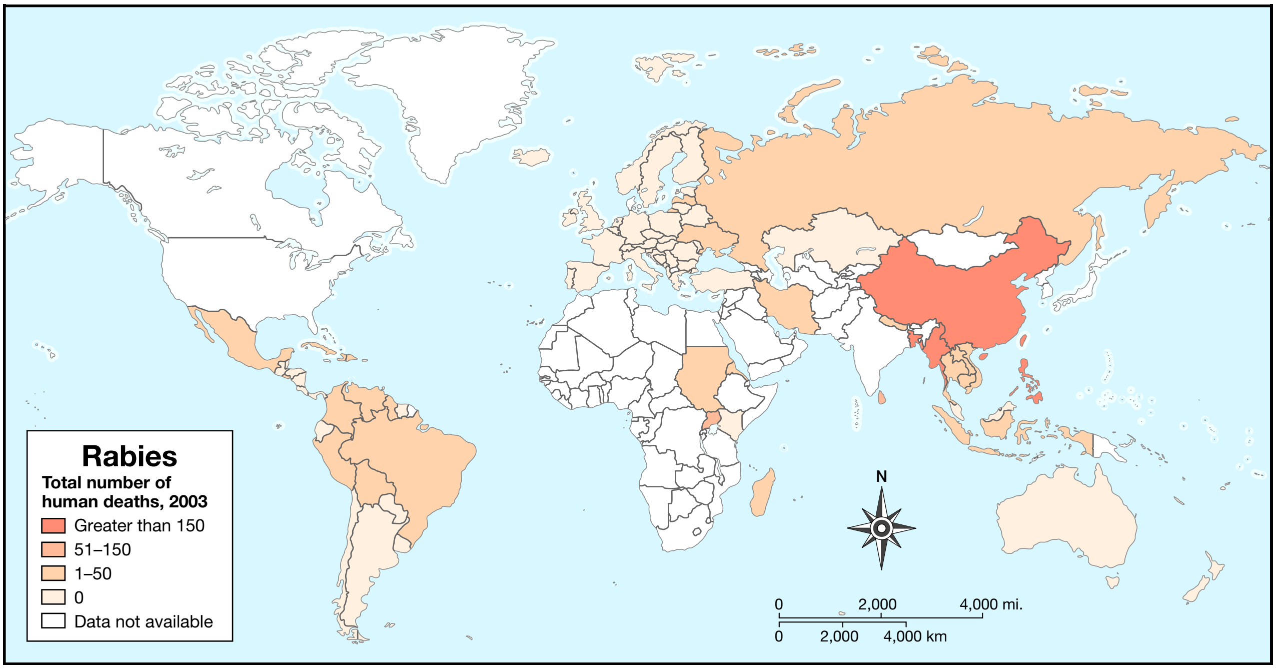
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The rabies virus belongs to the rhabdovirus group and is a bullet-shaped enveloped RNA virus (that is, its genetic material is RNA, rather than DNA). The incubation period of the virus is between ten days and as long as one year. Early symptoms are vague and may resemble flu—and include fatigue, headache and nausea.

Once the rabies virus reaches the brain and nervous system, dramatic neurological symptoms set in. These include hallucinations, agitation, muscle spasm, paralysis, and seizures. Foaming at the mouth is a classic symptom of rabies and is a combination of increased salivation and difficulty in swallowing. The latter produces another classic symptom—hydrophobia, or fear of water, where extreme throat spasms may be induced by even the sight of water. Sometimes rabies dominated by agitation is known as furious rabies, while that dominated by paralysis is called dumb rabies.



A man drools due to an infection of the virus that causes rabies. *Dr. M.A. Ansary/Photo Researchers, Inc.*



World map showing where human deaths due to rabies were reported, 2003. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

Within days of the onset of symptoms, a person with rabies will enter a coma and death is usually by paralysis of the respiratory muscles. Survival is extremely rare—there have been only six documented cases and all of these individuals had been protected to some extent by vaccination before or after exposure to the rabies virus.

The rabies virus eventually passes through the nervous system to the salivary glands and it is the saliva of an infected animal which transmits the disease to other animals and to humans. Exposure to the rabies virus usually occurs from a bite by an infected animal, although the virus might also sometimes be transmitted through a scratch or lick from the animal. Infections have also occurred through inhaling aerosols from the droppings of infected bats.

Wild carnivorous mammals, including skunks, foxes, wolves, jackals, raccoons and coyotes, act as a reservoir for rabies virus. The infection may be passed to domestic animals—that is, dogs and cats. Humans can be infected by direct contact with either wild or domestic mammals. The former is sometimes known as sylvatic rabies, the latter as urban rabies. An animal with rabies virus will not be infectious all the time—only when the virus is in their saliva which can happen late on in the incubation period, because it has to pass from the muscle, where infection occurs, through the nervous system to the salivary glands.

Insectivorous and vampire bats can also transmit rabies. Rodents, such as rats, mice, and hamsters, and lagomorphs, such as rabbits and hares, hardly ever get infected with rabies and have never been shown to transmit it to humans. However, woodchucks and groundhogs were responsible for 86 per cent of 368 cases of rabies among rodents reported to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) between 1985 and 1994. Other herbivorous mammals including cattle, horses, and deer can become infected with rabies but very rarely infect humans.

Human to human transmission of rabies is rare, but not unknown. There have been eight cases recorded among recipients of transplanted corneas and three in recipients of solid transplanted organs. In theory, bites could also transmit rabies from one person to another, although no such cases are known. Casual contact, such as touching or contact with non-infectious fluids, does not carry a risk of infection with rabies virus.

Scope and Distribution

Rabies is a global problem which has been recognized for at least 3,000 years. At the turn of the twentieth century, there were over one hundred cases of rabies in the United States each year. Now that number is fewer than five. The disease is notifiable to the CDC and states also collect data on cases. According to a survey carried out by the World Health Organization (WHO) in 2004, there are around 55,000 deaths from rabies each year worldwide, most of them in rural Africa and Asia. Around half of all

WORDS TO KNOW

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to disease causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (an example is food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (an example is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

NOTIFIABLE: By law, occurrences of some diseases must be reported to government authorities when observed by health-care professionals. Such diseases are called notifiable diseases or reportable diseases. Cholera and yellow fever are examples of notifiable diseases.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

SYLVATIC: Sylvatic means pertaining to the woods and refers to diseases such as plague that are spread by animals such as ground squirrels and other wild rodents.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

cases of rabies from dog bites occur among children under the age of 15.

There is marked geographical variation in the mammal species that pose a threat of rabies. In the United States, sylvatic rabies accounts for most cases and urban rabies is rare; the reverse is true in developing countries. Bats are the most common reservoirs of the disease in Latin America and the wolf in Eastern Europe.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no specific treatment for rabies once the symptoms have begun. A rabies vaccine was first developed by Louis Pasteur in the late 1880s. This was a crude preparation made from the dried spinal cord of infected rabbit. Similar vaccines are still in use in some countries, although WHO does not recommend them. Rabies vaccines made in cell culture are preferred for safety reasons.

Rabies vaccine can be given either before or after exposure to the virus. Pre-exposure vaccine should be given where a person's occupation brings them into contact with wild animals or with the virus itself—for instance, veterinarians, animal handlers, and certain laboratory workers. Travelers to regions where rabies is common and children living in these countries should also be vaccinated.

Post-exposure vaccination is needed if someone has been potentially exposed to rabies virus through an animal bite or other contact. Each year, over one million Americans receive an animal bite and these must always be taken seriously. But only a few of these will pose any risk of rabies infection, so each case must be carefully evaluated. An important part of this is having an expert examine the animal involved for symptoms and signs of rabies.

Vaccination of domestic animals against rabies plays an important role in keeping the disease at bay. Some European countries, such as France, Switzerland, and Belgium, have eliminated rabies in their wildlife through vaccination campaigns, and this is being tried in places where the disease is more common such as India and South Africa.

Impacts and Issues

In 2004, WHO was informed of a case of rabies in a dog owned by a resident of the city of Bordeaux, in France. Many people had handled this dog over a five-week period when the animal was potentially infectious. WHO had to put out a call for these individual to come forward for assessment and possible post-exposure vaccination. The dog had been imported illegally from Morocco and had not been vaccinated against rabies.

This incident shows the importance of taking animal import and quarantine regulations seriously. By flouting these on entry to France, the dog's owner put many people's lives at risk. Responsible owners get their pets vaccinated against rabies. And, when it comes to wildlife, it is best to admire from afar and never to handle or touch an animal that you do not know.

Wisconsin teenager Jeanna Giese became the first person known to have survived symptomatic rabies without vaccination. In September 2004, Giese contracted rabies after being bitten on the finger by a bat. One month after the bite, she was admitted to the hospital. Rabies was considered always fatal in unvaccinated patients, but physicians and Giese's family chose an experimental treatment. Physicians put Giese into a drug-induced coma for a week, at the same time giving her several strong antiviral drugs (amantadine and ribavirin). Giese's immune system fought the infection. She returned to school the following academic year after several months of recovery and intense physical therapy. Physicians and medical researchers continue to debate whether Giese survived because of the experimental treatment, or whether other factors, such as a stronger-than-average immune system or a weaker-than-average strain of rabies, played a larger role.

Following the Geise case, there was an increased focus on bats as potentials vectors of disease. Though bats are beneficial in controlling mosquito and insect populations, researchers estimate that 1% of bats in the United States carry rabies. Bats rarely bite humans and cause only minor injury at the location of the bite. It is possible for bites on sleeping victims to go undetected. In August 2006, over 1,000 young girls were advised to obtain rabies vaccinations after attending a Girl Scout camp where bats were present in sleeping quarters. Not all of families opted for vaccination, but none of the girls have developed rabies.

Cases of rabies are increasing, even in developed urban environment. In 2006, the Chinese government passed a law that forbid dogs in many in public places and limited dog ownership to one animal per household. Rabies is endemic in China, and is one of the nation's leading causes of death from infectious disease. However, officials cited the popularization of pet ownership and the failure of many pet owners to vaccinate dogs as primary causes for the resurgence of rabies, especially in the nation's cities.

LOUIS PASTEUR AND THE RABIES VACCINE

By 1880 French scientist Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) had shown that vaccination against anthrax worked in animals. He used a weakened, or attenuated, form of a culture of the anthrax bacterium as the vaccine and found it protected animals against the disease, compared to control animals that had not been vaccinated. In 1880, he decided to turn his attention to rabies a feared disease with a high mortality rate. Pasteur showed that a vaccine made from an attenuated form of the rabies virus could protect dogs that had been bitten by rabid animals. He hesitated, however, before trying his vaccine on humans.

Pasteur's first human patient was a young boy called Joseph Meister who was brought to him from Alsace on July 6, 1885. Joseph had been bitten fourteen times by a rabid dog on his hands, legs, and thighs. Clearly, his life was in danger and Pasteur administered the first dose of vaccine the next day. He used the dried-out spinal cord from a rabid rabbit as the source of vaccine. The drying process allowed the virus to lose much of its virulent character and helped allay safety fears. The boy was given increasingly strong doses of vaccine over the next twelve days and was soon able to return to Alsace in good health, having developed no symptoms of rabies, nor any ill effects from the vaccination.

The development of an effective rabies vaccine was the final, and most dramatic, success of Pasteur's long and distinguished career in medicine, chemistry, and microbiology. Pasteur's work on rabies led to the establishment of the now world-famous Pasteur Institute in Paris. The Institute was funded through public contributions and was initially devoted to rabies vaccination. Since its launch in 1888, the Institute has been home to many distinguished scientists, including several Nobel Prize winners.

See Also *Animal Importation; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter R. and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Center for Diseases Control and Prevention (CDC) National Center for Infectious Diseases. "Rabies." January 7, 2005 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/rabies> (accessed Apr 19, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Rabies." <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs099/en> (accessed April 19, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Rapid Diagnostic Tests for Infectious Diseases

Introduction

Before the era of molecular biology, determination of the identity of the cause of an infectious disease—the process of diagnosis—involved the observation of the symptoms of the disease, the culturing (growing and identifying) of the responsible bacteria, virus, or protozoa (which still is not always possible or may require a long time), and the results of a variety of biochemical tests. Diagnosis typically took days or weeks.

Beginning in the 1970s, the ability to detect target regions of bacterial and viral deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA) has made it possible to both demonstrate the presence of microorganisms in blood, urine, and tissue samples from an infected person, and now to identify the microorganism even to the species level. Some of these molecular-based tests can be done in minutes.

Other rapid diagnostic tests are based on the presence of an antibody that is produced by the human immune system in response to the presence of a certain bacterial or viral component, usually a protein, that is generically termed an antigen. These immunotests are based on the detection of the binding of the sample antigen to the antibody.

History and Scientific Foundations

Rapid molecular tests rely on the detection of target regions of the microbial genetic material. Once the genetic sequence—the arrangement of the building blocks (nucleotides) of the DNA or RNA—of a variety of important microbial pathogens has been determined, target regions that are unique to a given organism or a gene that codes for the presence of an important disease-causing contributor such as a toxin can be identified. The detection of these target regions can be proof of the presence of the microbe even in the absence of the actual isolation of the organism. Furthermore, comparison of the genetic sequence with sequences that have been saved in databases can identify the genus and sometimes even the species of the infecting microorganism.

The target genetic region may only be present in low quantities. A technique called polymerase chain reaction (PCR)—which was developed in the 1980s and which earned its discoverer, Kary Mullis, the 1993 Nobel Prize in Chemistry—enables the amplification of bits of DNA. Because each PCR cycle doubles the amount of the genetic material and because cycles can be done quickly (sometimes in minutes), literally billions of copies of the target DNA can be made in a few hours.

Immuno-based tests rely on the binding of a particular sample antigen to its corresponding antibody that is bound to a support such as a paper strip. Antigen-antibody binding is a specific reaction. Other antigens in a sample will not bind to the bound antibody unless they are almost identical both in the arrangement of amino acids that makes up the protein but in the three-dimensional shape adopted by the protein molecules in solution. As well, commercially available immunostrips contain controls that verify that the observed antigen-antibody binding, which is detected by the development of a color, is not a mistake.

Applications and Research

Rapid diagnostic tests have become popular in the diagnosis of infectious diseases. Since the 1980s, various antigen-antibody binding tests have been available for the examination of fluid specimens that include whole blood, the serum, and plasma components of blood, saliva, urine, and even fluid recovered from tissues.

The various tests, which can be capable of detecting as little as one nanogram of an antigen in the sample, include hepatitis B, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), malaria (based on detection of an antigen of the malaria-causing microbe, *Plasmodium falciparum*), syphilis (based on detection of a *Treponema pallidum* antigen), *Streptococcus* (a common cause of a throat

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODY: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ANTIBODY-ANTIGEN BINDING: Antibodies are produced by the immune system in response to antigens (material perceived as foreign). The antibody response to a particular antigen is highly specific and often involves a physical association between the two molecules. Biochemical and molecular forces govern this association.

ANTIGEN: Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

CULTURE: A culture is a single species of microorganism that is isolated and grown under controlled conditions. The German bacteriologist Robert Koch first developed culturing techniques in the late 1870s. Following Koch's initial discovery, medical scientists quickly sought to identify other pathogens. Today bacteria cultures are used as basic tools in microbiology and medicine.

IMMUNO-BASED TEST: An immuno-based test is a medical technology that tests for the presence of a disease by looking for reaction between disease organisms that may be present in a tissue or fluid sample and antibodies contained in the test kit.

PCR (POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION): The Polymerase Chain Reaction, or PCR, refers to a widely used technique in molecular biology involving the amplification of specific sequences of genomic DNA.

infection known as "strep throat"), urinary tract infections (based on the enhanced production of several enzymes during an infection), and influenza.

The rapid detection of influenza is noteworthy since influenza viruses are characterized by their changing outer surface, and so their antigenic composition, from year to year. The rapid test targets a viral component that has proven to be more stable over time.

Research continues to refine the molecular and immuno-based rapid diagnostic tests, both in terms of their accuracy and the spectrum of microbial diseases that can be detected. For example, research published in 2006 reported on a PCR-based system that allows different types of hemorrhagic fevers to be distinguished. Since speed is vital is the treatment of people suffering from hemorrhagic diseases such as Ebola, this advance will help increase the survival rate of this traditionally lethal suite of diseases.

Impacts and Issues

Being able to rapidly diagnose infectious diseases can help initiate treatment faster, which can be key in combating a swiftly spreading infection. Furthermore, for diseases such as influenza that are caused by a virus, a rapid diagnosis curtails the misuse of antibiotics, which are useless against viral infections but which can stimulate the development of antibiotic resistance in resident bacteria. Such antibiotic misuse has been a key factor in the development of bacterial antibiotic resistance, which is increasingly making diseases such as tuberculosis more difficult and expensive to treat.

Molecular techniques require specialized (and expensive) equipment and trained personnel. This can be a limitation for smaller clinics in developed countries and can be completely impractical for rural clinics in developing and underdeveloped countries. Immuno-based tests are less expensive, the test strips are easier to transport and store as refrigeration is usually not required, and the results are clear and do not require interpretation.

The use of immuno-based strip tests has brought rapid diagnostic testing to rural clinics in underdeveloped and developed regions. Staff at these clinics can be easily trained to carry out and interpret the test results. The tests are also useful to field staff of agencies

IN CONTEXT: TERRORISM AND BIOLOGICAL WARFARE

The Advanced Diagnostics Program is funded by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency of the United States government (DARPA). Its objective is to develop tools and medicines to detect and treat biological and chemical weapons in the field at concentrations low enough to prevent illness. Challenges to this task include minimizing the labor, equipment, and time for identifying biological agents. One area of interest includes development of field tools that can identify many different agents. To accomplish this goal, several groups funded under the advanced diagnostics program have developed field-based biosensors that can detect a variety of analytes including fragments of DNA, various hormones and proteins, bacteria, salts, and antibodies. These biosensors are portable, run on external power sources, and require very little time to complete analyses.

A second focus of the advanced diagnostics project is the identification of known and unknown or bioengineered pathogens and development of early responses to infections. A final goal is to develop the ability to continuously monitor the body for evidence of infection. Researchers are addressing this goal in two ways. The first involves engineering monitoring mechanisms that are internal to the body. In particular, groups funded under the initiative are developing bioengineered white blood cells to detect infection from within the body. Often genetic responses to infection occur within minutes of infection so analysis of blood cells provides a very quick indication of the presence of a biological threat. The second method involves the development of a wearable, non-invasive diagnostic device that detects a broad-spectrum of biological and chemical agents.

including the World Health Organization and the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, which respond to illness outbreaks. The rapid detection of a disease and its geographical scope can be vital in combating an outbreak.

Rapid diagnostic tests are also being increasingly used to detect microbial contamination of food and water, especially since the deliberate release of anthrax-laden letters in the autumn of 2001 in the United States. The realization that the nation's food and drinking water supplies are vulnerable to malicious contamination has spurred efforts to establish safeguards.

See Also *Food-borne Disease and Food Safety.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Brunelle, Lynn, and Barbara Ravage. *Bacteria.* Milwaukee, WI: Gareth Stevens Publishing, 2003.

DeGregori, Thomas R. *Bountiful Harvest: Technology, Food Safety, and the Environment.* Washington, DC: Cato Institute, 2002.

Periodicals

Greenwald, Jeffrey L., Gale R. Burstein, Jonathan Pincus, and Richard Branson. "A Rapid Review of Rapid HIV Antibody Tests." *Current Infectious Disease Reports* 8 (2006): 125–131.

Palacios, Gustavo, et al. "Masstag Polymerase Chain Reaction for Differential Diagnosis of Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 12 (2006): 692–695.

Brian Hoyle

Rat-bite Fever

Introduction

Rat-bite fever (RBF) is an acute infectious disease in humans caused by the scratch or bite of rodents, mostly rats, infected with one of two bacteria, *Streptobacillus moniliformis* or *Spirillum minus.* It is not transmitted from person to person. Scratches and bites are not necessarily the only way to contract the infection. Both bacteria are also able to be passed from rodents to humans through urine or mucous secretions from the eyes or nose of infected rats.

Rat-bite fever occurs most often among biomedical laboratory technicians, pet store employees who handle rodents, and people who have rodents as pets. It also occurs among people who live in rat-infested conditions. Children are more likely to be infected, both from their time spent inside and outdoors. Other animals that can carry the infectious bacteria are cats, dogs, gerbils, mice, squirrels, and weasels. The disease is also known as Haverhill fever and epidemic arthritic erythema (redness).

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Symptoms from the bacteria *Streptobacillus moniliformis* begin two to 22 days (usually within 10 days) after an initial bite or scratch. The infection can also be acquired by drinking contaminated milk or water (this form of the disease is sometimes referred to as Haverhill fever).

Symptoms are similar to severe influenza (flu), with a moderate fever (101–104°F [38.3–40.0°C]), chills, nausea, vomiting, headache, joint and back pain, gastrointestinal problems, and a reddish-pink rash (usually erupting about three days after initial contact with the bacteria) made of tiny bumps located generally on the palms of the hands and the soles of the feet.

Infections from the bacterium *Spirillum minus* are more common than infections with the other bacterium that causes rat-bite fever. With this bacterium, the infection is called spirillary rat-bite fever, or is sometimes known as sodoku. Symptoms do not begin until four to 28 days (usually less than 10 days) after exposure, and after the wound made by the bite or scratch has already healed. After the wound appears to initially heal, it suddenly becomes swollen and chronically inflamed.

Symptoms include fever, chills, and headache. The fever lasts longer than with *Streptobacillus moniliformis*, and may also reoccur over a period of months. Gastrointestinal symptoms are less severe than with the Haverhill-type fever. The rash is a light rosy color, causes itching, and covers most or all of the body. Joint and muscle pain does not usually occur or, if it does, it is much less severe than with the Haverhill-type fever.

WORDS TO KNOW

ABSCESS: An abscess is a pus-filled sore, usually caused by a bacterial infection. It results from the body's defensive reaction to foreign material. Abscesses are often found in the soft tissue under the skin, such as the armpit or the groin. However, they may develop in any organ, and they are commonly found in the breast and gums. Abscesses are far more serious and call for more specific treatment if they are located in deep organs such as the lung, liver, or brain.

ERYTHEMA: Erythema is skin redness due to excess blood in capillaries (small blood vessels) in the skin.

SEPTIC: The term "septic" refers to the state of being infected with bacteria, particularly in the bloodstream

Scope and Distribution

The infection caused by the bacterium *Streptobacillus moniliformis* has been found in the past to occur in the United States. With this bacterium, the infection is commonly called streptobacillary rat-bite fever. According to the Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases, of the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), it is rarely reported in the United States today and, consequently, accurate statistics on the incidence of the disease are not known.

The infection caused by the bacterium *Spirillum minus* is usually found in Asia and Africa, and its prevalence is much more common.

Treatment and Prevention

The bacterium *Streptobacillus moniliformis* is identified by a culture of blood or fluid that is taken from one of the affected joints of the infected human. The culture is then analyzed in a laboratory.

Antibiotics including procaine penicillin G or penicillin V by mouth (orally) are the most common treatments for streptobacillary rat-bite fever. If the patient is allergic to penicillin, erythromycin can be provided orally. Treatment is usually successful, although the infection can be sometimes eliminated by the human body itself, given sufficient time. However, if left untreated and when the body is unable to eliminate the disease, it can develop into serious complications such as septic (infectious) arthritis, abscesses (infections) to any tissue or organ of the body, endocarditis (inflammation of the heart's lining); meningitis (inflammation of the lining surrounding the brain and spine); and pneumonia (inflammation of the lungs). Without treatment, death can result from complications about 13% of the time.

The disease caused by the bacterium *Spirillum minus* is identified by examining blood or tissue removed from the wound of the infected human. Spirillary rat-bite fever is usually treated with procaine penicillin G or penicillin V by mouth. If the patient is allergic to penicillin, tetracycline can be given orally. If it is not treated, the fever usually subsides, but returns again in cycles of two to four days, which can continue for up for one year. In most circumstances, the illness, even without treatment, will resolve itself within four to eight weeks.

With both forms of rat-bite fever, the CDC Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases recommends that humans avoid contact with animals capable of passing on the bacterial organisms. If contact cannot be avoided with rodents, recommendations include wearing gloves, regularly washing hands, and avoiding hand-to-mouth contact while handling rodents and cleaning their cages. With streptobacillary rat-bite fever, drinking only pasteurized milk and water from safe sources can help prevent the disease.

Impacts and Issues

Rat-bite fever and other types of rodent infestations contribute greatly to the decline of already poor communities. Rodents cause extensive losses of food and destruction of property when they are present in large numbers. They can cause damage and loss of revenue to grocery stores, warehouses, cargo carriers, and homes. Rodents can also cause loss of property due to fires from the gnawing of electrical wiring.

Sometimes rodents are controlled improperly with poisons, which exaggerates the problems already present. Health and safety problems can occur, especially among children, domesticated animals and pets, and the environment with improper poison use.

Along with rat-bite fever, large populations of rats within communities can increase the chance of contracting diseases such as hantavirus, leptospirosis (also called Weil's disease, canicola fever, and 7-day fever), plague, salmonella, and typhoid. These diseases can be potentially deadly, especially among the young and elderly.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Vector-borne Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Committee on Infectious Diseases of Mice and Rats, Institute of Laboratory Animal Resources, Commission on Life Sciences, National Research Council. *Infectious Diseases of Mice and Rats.* Washington, DC: National Academy of Sciences, 1991.

Richardson, V.C.G. *Diseases of Small Domestic Rodents.* Oxford, UK, and Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing, 2003.

Periodicals

Elliott, S.P. "Rat Bite Fever and *Streptobacillus moniliformis.*" *Clinical Microbiology Reviews.* January 1, 2007: 20 (1): 13–22.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Rat-bite Fever." October 26, 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/ratbitefever_g.htm#whatisrbf> (accessed March 18, 2007).

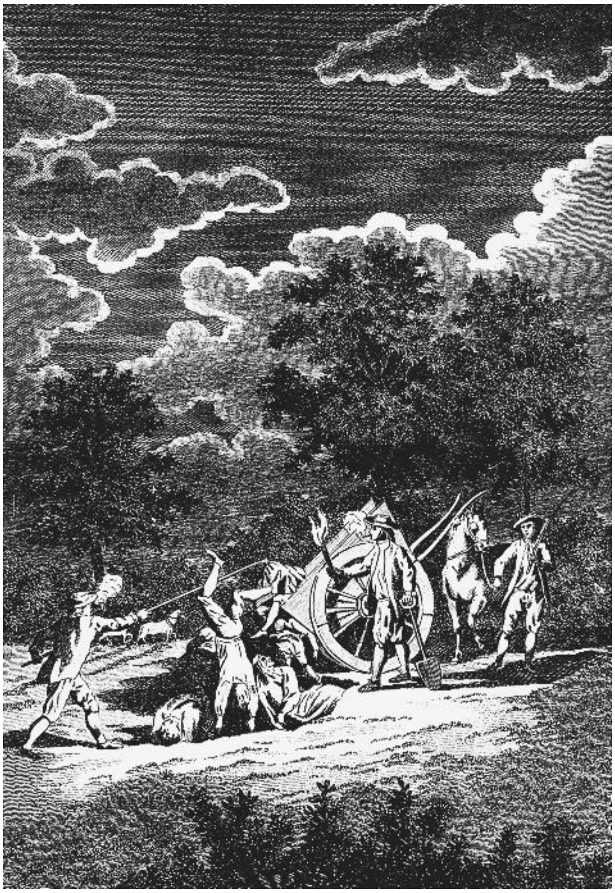
Re-emerging Infectious Diseases

Introduction

In the mid-twentieth century, the development of highly effective antibiotics and implementation of successful disease prevention and global vaccination programs led to the control or eradication of serious diseases such as polio and smallpox. At the time, it was widely assumed that infectious disease would ultimately become a minor problem. However, both newly emergent and re-emergent infectious diseases now present a growing public health threat worldwide.

According to the World Health Organization (WHO), infectious and parasitic diseases constitute the second most lethal cause of mortality (death) globally after cardiovascular diseases, implicated in 26% of deaths in 2002. Re-emergent infections have gained renewed virulence (the degree to which an organism can cause disease) due to other emerging or chronic diseases that impair the immune system (e.g., HIV/AIDS, diabetes, cancer) or the spread of antibiotic, antiviral, and antifungal medication resistance. In addition, there is the threat of re-emergent infectious disease that is intentionally spread in connection with bioterrorism, as occurred in the United States in the anthrax attacks of 2001. Although the numbers of people infected and killed were small in these attacks, the potential for widespread

A child with chikungunya symptoms sleeps at a government medical center in southern India in October 2006. During an outbreak, Indian Health Minister Ambumani Ramadoss maintained that there had been no deaths due to the viral infection in the country. However, the Kerala government claimed 86 people had died due to the infections, according to a news agency. *AP Images.*



In London, workers bury the victims of the plague at night in mass graves in 1665. Two of the workers are smoking pipes, partly to combat the stench of the corpses, and partly in the hope that tobacco smoke will prevent them from becoming infected. *HIP/Art Resource, NY.*

targeted assaults make the use of bioterrorism agents especially disturbing to consider.

History and Scientific Foundations

In the United States, the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) have expanded research funding, information sharing, and clinical support to fight emerging and re-emerging infectious disease. Focusing on re-emerging diseases, the CDC journals *Emerging Infectious Disease* and the *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR)* now feature frequent reports of re-emergent infections such as coccidioidomycosis, the incidence of which began to dramatically increase as a consequence of the HIV/AIDS pandemic.

In the past decade, epidemiologists have confronted the re-emergence of West Nile fever, human monkeypox, dengue, tuberculosis, and malaria, at times in populations for which these diseases had not previously been a problem. Furthermore, certain infections such as *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* have developed increasing resistance to drug agents that were previously effective treatments.

Malaria

The resurgence of the ancient plague of malaria, due to rising rates of resistance to chloroquine and other drugs, currently affects more than 300 million people and results in the deaths of more than one million victims worldwide each year, the majority occurring among children in sub-Saharan Africa. Recently, epidemiologists have discovered a connection between resurgent malaria and the HIV/AIDS epidemic.

According to a study sponsored by the Millennium Fund, HIV has major effects on the incidence of malaria. HIV-induced immunodeficiency may decrease the immune response against malarial infection and the risk of parasitemia, and illness with malaria has been inversely correlated to CD4 cell counts, which are adversely affected by AIDS.

HIV infection in regions where malaria transmission is endemic (naturally occurring) mainly increases the risk of clinical malaria in adults and malarial fever in children. In regions in which malaria transmission is not yet endemic, high HIV prevalence results in considerably higher than expected malaria morbidity and mortality. Infection with HIV also affects the treatment and prophylaxis of malaria. Antimalarial therapy is most effective in individuals with some previous immunity to malaria, so immunosuppression due to HIV infection can decrease antimalarial treatment response.

The failure so far to develop an effective vaccine for malaria has sometimes been ascribed to the low prevalence of the disease among industrialized nations. However, the disease poses formidable scientific and technical hurdles to vaccine development, including issues regarding the appropriateness and accessibility of animal models. Other difficulties are due to the need to develop assays (analyses) for ongoing validation of candidate antigens through process development and scale-up production, as well as assays predictive of protection for assessment of immunogenicity (ability to provoke an immune response) and efficacy in clinical trials. Furthermore, the clinical trials themselves are difficult to design because the ultimate measure of efficacy is the interruption of malaria transmission. In spite of these challenges, pharmaceutical companies are currently beginning clinical development of a variety of vaccine candidates that show promise.

Tuberculosis

Another resurgent disease with connections to the HIV/AIDS epidemic is tuberculosis (TB), which according to the WHO is endemic to regions inhabited by one third of the world's population and results in some eight million new cases and two million deaths annually. Tuberculosis rates are extremely high among the HIV-infected population. The one currently available vaccine for tuberculosis offers some protection, but its effectiveness diminishes over time. Effective pharmaceutical treatment exists, but the treatment regimen is lengthy and it is difficult for patients to maintain adherence, which gives rise to multidrug-resistant TB strains. This in turn has added impetus to programs to develop novel vaccines, some of which are now in the pre-clinical investigation stage.

Although more than a billion people have dormant tuberculosis infections, the disease becomes symptomatic when immune systems are weakened by HIV. TB risk doubles shortly after infection with HIV, and increases further over time. A recent study estimates that 9% of the 8.3 million new adult TB cases worldwide in 2000 were directly attributable to HIV. Furthermore, HIV infection makes treating active TB much more difficult, leading to an increase in TB rates in high-HIV-prevalence areas, particularly sub-Saharan Africa. The spread of HIV in sub-Saharan Africa is primarily responsible for driving the number of active TB cases upward by 6% each year.

In 2005, a virulent strain of tuberculosis killed all but one of 53 infected patients at the Church of Scotland Hospital in South Africa's rural KwaZulu-Natal Province. The strain of TB, named XDR for "extensively drug-resistant," cannot be treated effectively with most tuberculosis drugs, and may be incurable.

Since the detection of XDR, more cases have been found at other South African hospitals. Some epidemiologists and TB experts argue that XDR TB has probably moved beyond the borders of South Africa into Lesotho, Swaziland, Mozambique, and perhaps to Zimbabwe. At least two in three South African TB sufferers are HIV-positive. If XDR TB becomes established in the HIV-positive population, it could devastate tens of millions of HIV-infected people throughout sub-Saharan Africa.

HIV-negative people have a low probability of contracting tuberculosis, even if they are already infected with the TB bacillus. However, since tuberculosis is spread through the air, people in close contact with an active TB victim have some risk of contracting the disease.

It seems likely that all of the 52 people who died in the initial outbreak of XDR-TB in the South African hamlet of Tugela Ferry in 2005 and early 2006 had AIDS. Most of the patients died within a few weeks of infection with drug-resistant tuberculosis, an unprecedented TB mortality rate according to epidemiologists. The WHO has requested to establish a program in South Africa to deal with the outbreak, but South African officials insist that they have the capabilities to handle the issue and should maintain control of any such program.

WORDS TO KNOW

ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY: Adaptive immunity is another term for acquired immunity, referring to the resistance to infection that develops through life and is targeted to a specific pathogen. There are two types of adaptive immunity, known as active and passive. Active immunity is either humoral, involving production of antibody molecules against a bacterium or virus, or cell-mediated, where T-cells are mobilized against infected cells. Infection and immunization can both induce acquired immunity. Passive immunity is induced by injection of the serum of a person who is already immune to a particular infection.

EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASE: New infectious diseases such as SARS and West Nile virus, as well as previously known diseases such as malaria, tuberculosis, and bacterial pneumonias that are appearing in forms that are resistant to drug treatments, are termed emerging infectious diseases.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

ERADICATION: The process of destroying or eliminating a microorganism or disease.

IMMUNOGENICITY: Immunogenicity is the capacity of a host to produce an immune response to protect itself against infectious disease.

INNATE IMMUNITY: Innate immunity is the resistance against disease that an individual is born with, as distinct from acquired immunity that develops with exposure to infectious agents.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

VIRULENCE: Virulence is the ability of a disease organism to cause disease: a more virulent organism is more infective and liable to produce more serious disease.

West Nile Virus

West Nile Virus (WNV) has been endemic in Africa, West Asia, Europe, and the Middle East for centuries, but has only re-emerged in the United States since 1999. The first WNV infections occurred in the New York metropolitan area and have continued to spread throughout the United States during the summer season, infecting increasingly larger populations. The inexorable spread of the virus has prompted vaccine and drug therapy development, with some candidates currently showing some prevention or treatment effectiveness in animals. Currently the most immediately promising approach to slowing the spread of WNV is the control of insect vectors. New methods of controlling mosquitoes and countering mosquito resistance to insecticides are under development for use in areas where WNV threatens to become endemic.

Potential bioterrorism agents

The use of anthrax in terroristic attacks can be seen as a deliberate effort to promote the re-emergence of infectious agents that have otherwise been either eradicated, as in the case of smallpox, or largely controlled, as in the case of anthrax itself. Bioterrorism could also promote the emergence of a pathogen such as the Ebola virus in a setting such as the urban United States that is radically different and distant from the rural African regions in which such infections have occurred to-date. Since a wide variety of dangerous and virulent pathogens could potentially be used as bioweapons, defensive strategies must rely on research at a very broad and basic level in terms of understanding how human immune systems react to them and how infections can be detected, prevented, and treated.

Applications and research

Currently, a wide variety of scientific and industrial biodefense research infrastructure projects are underway in the United States, including the development of Regional Centers of Excellence for Biodefense and Emerging Infectious Disease Research, in addition to the building of secure facilities, including two National Biocontainment Laboratories and nine Regional Biocontainment Laboratories.

Research projects recently completed or underway include the gene sequencing of pathogens considered to be the most potent threats, the screening of chemical compounds that could provide potential treatments, and development of animals to test promising drugs. Immunologists are also investigating ways to boost human innate immunity.

Innate immunity is the immune system's first line of defense and is represented by monocytes and neutrophils (white blood cells), which react to any and all foreign substances and organisms in the body. This innate immune system is distinct from adaptive immunity, the second line of defense represented by T cells and B cells (lymphocytes), which are influenced by the innate immune system to recognize specific pathogens and foreign organisms and destroy them in a focused attack. Finally, as with the other types of re-emergent infections, vaccine development is being fostered under the nation's biodefense program.

Impacts and Issues

Clearly, vaccine development is central to the control of re-emerging infections, particularly development of an effective vaccine for HIV, which is key to preventing the spread of tuberculosis and a number of other infections that otherwise would not have been able to regain virulence after decades of effective treatment and prevention. The HIV epidemic, the rapid growth of international travel and commerce, and the danger of deliberate spread of pathogens into vulnerable new populations will continue to foster or threaten the re-emergence of dangerous pathogens. This threat will pose an ongoing and permanent challenge to public health agencies that must be dealt with by intensified basic biological and clinical research.

The best strategy for dealing with the threat of emerging and re-emerging infections alike is the funding, implementation, and staffing of an excellent global public health infrastructure, which will require international cooperation on an unprecedented scale.

SEE ALSO *Emerging Infectious Diseases; Lyme Disease; Malaria; Pandemic Preparedness; Tuberculosis; War and Infectious Disease; West Nile.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Brower, Jennifer, and Peter Chalk. *The Global Threat of New and Reemerging Infectious Diseases: Reconciling U.S. National Security and Public Health Policy.* Santa Monica, CA: Rand, 2003.

Periodicals

Corbett, E., et al. "The Growing Burden of Tuberculosis: Global Trends and Interactions with the HIV Epidemic." *Archives of Internal Medicine* 163, 9 (May 12, 2003): 1009–1021.

Hecht, R., et al. "Putting It Together: AIDS and the Millennium Development Goals." *PLoS Medicine* 3, 11 (2006).

Kirkland, T.N., and J. Fierer. "Coccidioidomycosis: A Reemerging Infectious Disease." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 2, 3 (July-September 1996).

Web Sites

Fauci, Anthony S. *Millbank Memorial Fund*. "Emerging and Re-emerging Infectious Diseases: The Perpetual Challenge." January 2006. <http://www.milbank.org/reports/0601fauci/0601fauci.html> (accessed June 4, 2007).

World Health Organization. "The World Health Report 2004—Changing History." <http://www.who.int/whr/2004/en/> (accessed June 4, 2007).

Kenneth LaPensee

Relapsing Fever

Introduction

Relapsing fever is an acute infectious disease caused by various bacteria within the genus *Borrelia*. The disease is commonly recognized by repetitious bouts of fever. Relapsing fever is a zoonotic (acquired from animals) disease that is transmitted to humans primarily from parasitic insects called body lice (louse-borne relapsing fever), which enter the inside of the body, and by the bites of soft-bodied ticks (tick-borne relapsing fever), which occur on the outside of the body.

WORDS TO KNOW

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to disease causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (an example is food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (an example is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

The louse-borne relapsing fever (LBRF) is transmitted to humans from lice (specifically, *Pediculus humanus*) that are infected with the bacterium *Borrelia recurrentis.* The lice enter the human body through mucous membranes and then invade the bloodstream. They eventually multiply inside the abdomen of the host.

The tick-borne relapsing fever (TBRF) is transmitted to humans from bites of ticks infected with *Borrelia* bacteria species such as *Borrelia hermsii* and *Borrelia Parkeri*. The ticks spread from hosts such as rodents and other animals. *B. hermsii* and *B. recurrentis* cause similar symptoms, but *B. hermsii* causes more relapses and is responsible for more deaths. *B. recurrentis* infection, on the other hand, results in longer periods with fever and without fever, and with more extended incubation periods.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

For both forms of the disease, the first symptoms occur five to 15 days after the bite of an infected vector (an organism such as the tick or louse that transmits a disease-causing organism). Symptoms include, initially, a high and sudden fever, followed by chills, shakes, neck stiffness, sweating, low body temperature, low blood pressure, nausea, vomiting, rash, headache, and muscle and/or joint pains.

When these symptoms become serious, many patients develop central nervous system (CNS) problems such as stupor, seizure, facial droop, weakness, and coma. Heart and liver tissues that are invaded by the bacteria often result in hepatitis (inflammation of the liver), meningitis (inflammation of the meninges), or myocarditis (inflammation of the heart muscle). Bleeding and pneumonia are other problems associated with the disease. Death occurs in up to 10% of untreated persons with these serious symptoms of relapsing fever.

In LBRF, the first round of symptoms lasts from three to six days and is followed by other milder rounds of symptoms, with each episode lasting up to three days. Fever may be absent for up to two weeks before another round occurs. Generally, the patient has symptoms when the organism is within the host's blood and, then, the symptoms disappear when the organism leaves the blood.

The effects of LBRF become critical to the patient when severe jaundice (yellowing of the skin and mucous membranes due to impaired liver function), changes in mental status, bleeding, and prolonged QT interval on an ECG (the measure on an electrocardiogram between the beginning of the Q wave and the end of the T wave within the heart's electrical cycle). According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), LBRF has a mortality rate of 1% with treatment and between 30–70% without treatment.

Scope and Distribution

LBRF occurs primarily in Ethiopia and Sudan in northern Africa. It is also found in Europe and India. The disease is often the cause of epidemics within areas of poor living conditions and regions where famine and war are prevalent. During World War I (1914–1918) and World War II (1939–1945), millions of people died from LBRF.

TBRF is found in Africa, Asia, Saudi Arabia, South America, Spain, and certain areas in the western section of the United States and Canada. In the United States, it usually occurs west of the Mississippi River, predominately in the mountains of the West and the high-elevation deserts and plains of the Southwest. There are now signs of TBRF infecting people in the southeastern parts of the United States. According to the CDC, there are about 25 cases in the U.S. annually.

Treatment and Prevention

According to the CDC, treatment of TBRF usually involves a one-week course of antibiotics. When treated properly, most people recover and death only rarely occurs. Tetracycline is often used as the antibiotic of choice; however, up to one-half of all persons with relapsing fever have negative reactions to tetracycline, including anxiety, fever, sweating, rapid heart rate, and low blood pressure. Chloramphenicol, doxycycline, erythromycin, and penicillin are also used to treat the disease.

The duration for antibiotic treatment of LBRF, according to the CDC's Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases (DVBID), is one single dose of antibiotics. The death rate for untreated LBRF ranges from 10 to 70% and for TRBF the death rate is between 4 and 10%. With early treatment, death rates are reduced to between 2 to 5%. However, people with liver dysfunction, myocarditis, and pneumonia have a higher risk of death than others.

Both forms of relapsing fever can be prevented by wearing protective clothing and using insect repellent. Comprehensive lice and tick control should be used in areas hardest hit with the infections.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

The Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends the following prevention measures to reduce the risk of relapsing fever:

- Avoid sleeping in rodent infested buildings.
- Limit tick bites by using insect repellent containing DEET (on skin or clothing) or permethrin (applied to clothing or equipment).
- Rodent-proof buildings in areas where the disease is known to occur.
- Identify and remove any rodent nesting material from walls, ceilings and floors.
- In combination with removing the rodent material, fumigate the building with preparations containing pyrethrins and permethrins. More than one treatment is often needed to effectively rid the building of the vectors, the soft-ticks. Always follow product instructions, and consider consulting a licensed pest control specialist.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases*

Impacts and Issues

Relapsing fever was once a global concern. However, with antibiotic treatment, it is now restricted mostly to areas of the developing world. Circumstances such as increased worldwide travel by humans and wide movements by animals, however, and even the trend toward washing clothes in cold and warm water rather than hot water, are causing a re-emergence of relapsing fever.

In addition, according to the CDC, since the 1980s, increased numbers of *Borrelia* species have been discovered to be associated with relapsing fever.

The most recent cases of tick-borne relapsing fever have occurred in mountainous areas of the western United States, primarily among vacationers to forests or cabins in higher-elevations (above 8,000 feet, or 2,438 meters). Campers and other persons rarely realize that they are bitten by the soft ticks that carry TBRF, as the ticks feed for a few minutes, then fall off. When experiencing a fever after vacationing in the mountains, therefore, it is advisable to seek medical treatment. TBRF remains on the list of modifiable diseases for health officials in many western states, in order to track the prevalence of the disease and the ticks that cause it.

All of these situations demonstrate that the potential for relapsing fever, as it is with other re-emerging infectious diseases, is unpredictable. The potential for it to emerge in areas where not recognized earlier is great. People who are very young, old, pregnant, or have weakened physical conditions have increased risk of the affects and complications of relapsing fever.

See Also *African Sleeping Sickness (Trypanosomiasis); Bacterial Disease; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Travel and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Edlow, Jonathan A., ed. *Tick-borne Diseases.* Philadelphia, PA: W.B. Saunders Company, 2002.

Goodman, Jesse L., David T. Dennis, and Daniel E. Sonenshine. *Tick-borne Diseases of Humans.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2005.

Web Sites

Cutler, Sally J., Veterinary Laboratories Agency (Surrey, United Kingdom), U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Possibilities for Relapsing Fever Reemergence." March 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/vol12no03/05-0899.htm> (accessed April 27, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Relapsing Fever: Introduction." November 10, 2004 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/RelapsingFever/index.htm> (accessed April 27, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Treatment of Tick-Borne Relapsing Fever." November 10, 2004 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/RelapsingFever/RF_Treatment.htm> (accessed April 27, 2007).

Resistant Organisms

Introduction

Resistant organisms are microbes—bacteria, fungi, viruses, or parasites—that have evolved immunity to one or more of the drugs used to kill them. Drugs that kill microbes are called antimicrobials. Resistance threatens human health because it reduces or eliminates the efficacy of drugs used to treat infections. If organisms evolve resistance to drugs faster than new drugs can be discovered, doctors' choices for treating infections by those organisms dwindle. This has happened for many real-world bacteria, viruses, fungi, and parasites. Resistance to a drug is more likely to evolve when the drug is widely used. Antibiotic resistance, in particular, has arisen in part because of chronic overuse of antibiotics in medical and agricultural settings. Antibiotics are often prescribed for viral, not bacterial, infections (antibiotics have no effect on viruses), and millions of pounds of antibiotics are given to livestock each year. Most experts agree that in the early twenty-first century, antimicrobial resistance has reached a crisis stage.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

History

Resistant organisms did not arise before the mid-twentieth century because antimicrobials potent enough to force the evolution of resistance were not known. Penicillin, for example, was discovered in 1928 and was first widely used during World War II (1939–45). Penicillin-resistant *Escherichia coli* bacteria were first observed in 1940. Penicillin-resistant staphylococcus bacteria were reported in 1944, and, by the 1950s, a penicillin-resistant strain of *Staphylococcus aureus* became a worldwide problem in hospitals. By the 1960s, most staphylococci were resistant to penicillin.

Another example of resistance development is the malaria parasite and the antimalarial drug chloroquine. Chloroquine was introduced in the 1940s. Ten years later, resistance to chloroquine evolved independently in Asia and South America but remained rare. After another twenty years, resistance appeared in East Africa and spread rapidly thereafter. Today, chloroquine-resistant malaria is found in several regions across the globe. Malaria infects 300 to 500 million people yearly, killing about 1 million, almost all in developing nations.

Since the late 1980s, pathogens resistant to more than one drug—which are even more difficult to treat than organisms with single-drug resistance—have emerged at an accelerating pace. However, development of new antimicrobials has slowed.

Characteristics

In any wild population of microorganisms, whether bacteria or viruses, there will be small, random, heritable differences—genetic differences—between individuals. The protein recipe for a microorganism is not rigid and exact; its many proteins can take on slightly different forms without compromising its ability to survive. When a population of microorganisms is exposed to a drug designed to destroy it, the genetic differences between individuals sometimes allow microorganisms to survive. Thus, the entire next generation of microorganisms will tend to be more resistant to that drug. If this evolutionary process of variation and selection is repeated, resistance can evolve.

In general, the more often a drug is used, the more quickly resistance may evolve. However, resistance can also evolve when insufficient quantities of a drug are used and some microorganisms survive. The fewer survivors there are, the more resistant they may be. Thus dosing to the threshold of elimination can be worse than drastically underdosing (which does not select so strongly for resistance).

Resistance may still evolve even if drugs are dosed appropriately. This has been the case with antivirals, antifungals, and antiparasitics. However, needless or

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBACTERIAL: A substance that reduces or kill germs (bacteria and other microorganisms but not including viruses). Also often a term used to describe a drug used to treat bacterial infections.

ANTIBIOTIC: A drug, such as penicillin, used to fight infections caused by bacteria. Antibiotics act only on bacteria and are not effective against viruses.

ANTIFUNGAL: Antifungals (also called antifungal drugs) are medicines used to fight fungal infections. They are of two kinds, systemic and topical. Systemic antifungal drugs are medicines taken by mouth or by injection to treat infections caused by a fungus. Topical antifungal drugs are medicines applied to the skin to treat skin infections caused by a fungus.

ANTIMICROBIAL: A material that slows the growth of bacteria or that is able to kill bacteria. Includes antibiotics (which can be used inside the body) and disinfectants (which can only be used outside the body).

BACTERIA: Single-celled microorganisms that live in soil, water, plants, and animals that play a key role in the decay of organic matter and the cycling of nutrients. Some bacteria are agents of disease. Microscopic organisms whose activities range from the development of disease to fermentation. Bacteria range in shape from spherical to rod-shaped to spiral. Different types of bacteria cause many sexually transmitted diseases, including syphilis, gonorrhea, and chlamydia. Bacteria also cause diseases ranging from typhoid to dysentery to tetanus. Bacterium is the singular form of bacteria.

COHORT: A cohort is a group of people (or any species) sharing a common characteristic. Cohorts are identified and grouped in cohort studies to determine the frequency of diseases or the kinds of disease outcomes over time.

DRUG RESISTANCE: Drug resistance develops when an infective agent such as a bacterium, fungus or virus, develops a lack of sensitivity to a drug that would normally be able to control or even kill them. This tends to occur with over-use of anti-infectives, which selects out populations of microbes most able to resist them, while killing off those organisms that are most sensitive. The next time the anti-infective agent is used, it will be less effective, leading to the eventual development of resistance.

MICROORGANISM: Microorganisms are minute organisms. With the single yet-known exception of a bacterium that is large enough to be seen unaided, individual microorganisms are microscopic in size. To be seen, they must be magnified by an optical or electron microscope. The most common types of microorganisms are viruses, bacteria, blue-green bacteria, some algae, some fungi, yeasts, and protozoans.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

VIRUS: Viruses are essentially nonliving repositories of nucleic acid that require the presence of a living prokaryotic or eukaryotic cell for the replication of the nucleic acid. There are a number of different viruses that challenge the human immune system and that may produce disease in humans. In common, a virus is a small, infectious agent that consists of a core of genetic material (either deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA) surrounded by a shell of protein. Very simple microorganisms, viruses are much smaller than bacteria that enter and multiples within cells. Viruses often exchange or transfer their genetic material (DNA or RNA) to cells and can cause diseases such as chickenpox, hepatitis, measles, and mumps.

inadequate use of antimicrobials encourages more rapid evolution of resistance.

The features that make an organism resistant to a drug vary widely because the precise ways in which antimicrobials attack organisms vary widely. Any mutation that interferes with the harmful action of the drug on the organism will confer resistance. For example, some bacteria have become resistant to the antibiotic penicillin by evolving the ability to produce beta-lactamases, which are enzymes (a type of protein) that deactivate the antibiotic. In other cases, microorganisms utilize several methods of antibiotic resistance: learning how to keep drugs from passing into the cell or accumulating there; altering surface molecules that antimicrobial drugs bind to; or evolving alternatives to series of chemical reactions in the cell (metabolic pathways) that are blocked by antimicrobials.

Transmission

Transmission of resistant organisms occurs by the same mechanisms as for their non-resistant relatives, but is more likely to occur in certain settings. For example, infection by methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* happens more commonly in hospital intensive-care units and long-term care facilities. Methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* has also been detected on pets, having probably been transmitted to them by humans, and may be transmitted back to humans from these animals. It has not been detected in food animals.

Scope and Distribution

Resistant organisms are most common in settings where antimicrobial drugs are most widely used. They are therefore most often encountered in industrialized countries. In the United States, for example, about a third of all *Staphylococcus aureus* infections are now methicillin-resistant. Certain organisms that are found and treated almost exclusively in developing countries, such as the malaria parasite, have evolved resistant varieties in those regions.

Treatment and Prevention

When doctors find that they are trying to treat an infection by a resistant organism, they use trial and error to find a drug to which the organism is not resistant. This process usually involves trying one drug after another, starting with those that are least toxic for the patient and most specific for the target organism, and working towards drugs that are less desirable or potentially produce greater side effects. Even when a drug that works is found—and some organisms are now resistant to all the agents used against them—the delay involved in this process is dangerous to the patient.

The U.S. Centers for Disease Control (CDC) has stated that antibiotic resistance is a key microbial threat to health in the United States. The CDC launched a National Campaign for Appropriate Antibiotic Use in the Community in 1995, which was renamed in 2003 as Get Smart: Know When Antibiotics Work. This campaign seeks to slow the evolution of antibiotic resistance primarily by discouraging the unnecessary use of antibiotics for upper respiratory infections. Seventy-five percent of antibiotics prescribed by office-based physicians are for upper respiratory infections, most of which are viral and therefore unaffected by antibiotics.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

Acquired adaptation of bacteria to many antibiotics has become a problem since the early 1990s. For example, many hospitals now must cope with the presence of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), which displays resistance to almost all currently used antibiotics. Dealing with infections caused by MRSA and other resistant organisms requires increased hospital staff hours, increased supplies, and can restrict the availability of hospital beds when cohorting (grouping together patients with the same disease) or isolation is necessary.

The few antibiotics to which antibiotic-resistant bacteria do respond tend to be expensive, with few options for delivery. For example, the drug meropenum is sometimes prescribed for persons with pneumonia, meningitis, or serious skin infections that are caused by organisms that are resistant to common antibiotics. Meropenum can be delivered by intravenous injection or infusion only, and is two to three times more expensive than the commonly prescribed antibiotics for these conditions.

Additionally, disease-causing organisms can sometimes adapt so that they are able grow and multiply on solid surfaces. This mode of growth is called a biofilm. A biofilm environment induces many changes in growing bacteria, some of which involve the expression of previously unexpressed genes and deactivation of actively expressing genes. The structure of the biofilm and these genetic changes often make the bacteria extraordinarily resistant to many antibiotics. Biofilms sometimes occur on some hospital surfaces and in implanted devices such as artificial joints and long-term intravenous access catheters.

Impacts and Issues

Antimicrobial resistance has become a major public health concern in recent years. According to the U.S. National Institute of Allergies and Infectious Diseases, tuberculosis, gonorrhea, malaria, and childhood ear infections are all more difficult to treat today, because of antimicrobial resistance, than they were a few decades ago. Chloroquine resistance evolved by the malaria parasite threatens millions of lives: since 1978, chloroquine resistance has been reported in all tropical African countries, becoming more common in recent decades. The impact on public health has been major, with malaria deaths doubling or tripling in some African countries. In Senegal, child deaths from malaria have increased by up to a factor of 6 with the growth of chloroquine resistance. All alternatives to chloroquine are more expensive and have comparatively severe side effects.

One of the most contentious aspects of antimicrobial resistance today is the use of antibiotics in agriculture. Millions of pounds of antibiotics are fed to livestock annually in the United States and elsewhere, mostly as growth promoters. Studies over the last several decades have shown that this promotes the evolution of resistant organisms. In 2005, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration banned the use enrofloxacin (an antibacterial) in poultry. The European Union has banned the use of a range of almost all growth-promoting hormones and antimicrobials in agriculture.

Some experts also warn that the nearly universal use of antimicrobial household soaps may contribute to the evolution of resistant organisms. Ordinary soap and water wash bacteria away rather than killing them directly and so do not provide selective pressure for evolution of resistance. Moreover, studies in India have found that antimicrobial soaps do not improve health any more than old-fashioned soaps.

Phage therapy—the use of certain viruses to infect and kill bacteria—shows some promise as an alternative strategy for treating infections by multiply resistant organisms, and research continues in this area.

See Also *Antibiotic Resistance; Antimicrobial Soaps; Antiviral Drugs; Nosocomial (Healthcare-Associated) Infections; Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Salyers, Abigail A. and Dixie D. Whitt. *Revenge Of The Microbes: How Bacterial Resistance Is Undermining The Antibiotic Miracle*. Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2005.

Periodicals

Cunha, Burke A. "Effective Antibiotic-Resistance Control Strategies." *The Lancet* 357 (2001): 1307.

Lipsitch, Marc, and Matthew H. Samore. "Antimicrobial Use and Antimicrobial Resistance: A Population Perspective." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 8 (2002): 347-354.

Shea, Katherine M. "Antibiotic Resistance: What is the Impact of Agricultural Uses of Antibiotics on Children's Health?" *Pediatrics* 112 (2003): 253-258.

Smith, David L., et al. "Agricultural Antibiotics and Human Health" *PloS Medicine* 2 (2005): 731-735.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control (U.S. Government). "A Public Health Action Plan to Combat Antibiotic Resistance." February 9, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/drugresistance/actionplan/aractionplan.pdf> (accessed February 26, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control (U.S. Government). "About Antibiotic Resistance." April 21, 2006. <http://www.cdc.gov/drugresistance/community/anitbiotic-resistance.htm> (accessed February 26, 2007).

RSV (Respiratory Syncytial Virus) Infection

Introduction

Respiratory Syncytial virus (RSV) is a ribonucleic acid (RNA)-containing virus that causes a lung infection (pneumonia) that affects the oxygen- and carbon dioxide-carrying tubes called the bronchioles. These tubes are very tiny and are located deep within the lungs. Because of this, the infection, which is also known as bronchiolitis, can hamper the function of the lungs.

RSV infections can be spread easily from person-to-person and can occur repeatedly in infants. Indeed, RSV infections are the most common cause of bronchiolitis and pneumonia in newborns and infants under one year of age.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

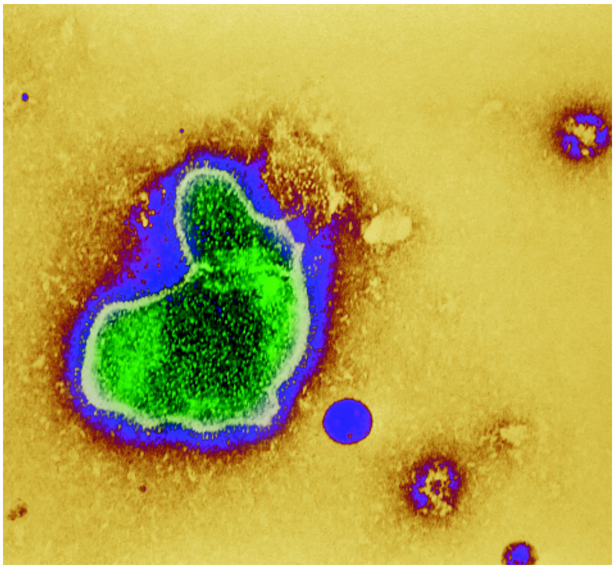
The first symptoms of an RSV lung infection are often mistaken for a cold. A child can have a fever and a runny nose. The involvement of the lungs can be evident as a cough and sometimes a wheezing type of breathing.

A lung infection that involves the bronchioles may not occur the first time someone is infected by RSV. However, up to 40% of infants do experience the more severe lung infection; this can require hospitalization, especially in infants under six months of age.

Most children recover from the infection within a few weeks. However, repeated cold-like infections can then occur throughout life. In addition, the lung infection can be more serious, especially in elderly people or those whose immune systems are less capable of fighting off infections.

The virus is spread in the tiny drops of mucus and other fluids that are expelled from the nose during a sneeze and from the lungs when someone coughs. If another person is close by, these drops can be inhaled and the virus may then be able to establish an infection in the new host. Alternatively, the virus-laden droplets can land on inanimate objects such as a doorknob or can be transferred to a hand when the nose is wiped. Touching an object before the hands are washed can also transfer the virus. If the contaminated object is touched within a few hours, the virus can picked up on the hands and transfer to the new host can occur.

This route of transmission makes RSV infection especially prevalent in more northern climates during colder months when people are indoors more often and the chances of person-to-person spread is greater. This sort of a pattern is known as a community outbreak. Illness in warmer climates shows less of a seasonal pattern.



This colored transmission electron micrograph (TEM) shows a Respiratory Syncytial virus (RSV). This pneumovirus, a type of paramyxovirus, is a major cause of human respiratory tract infections in temperate climates, especially in winter. *CDC/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ATTENUATED STRAIN: A bacterium or virus that has been weakened, often used as the basis of a vaccine against the specific disease caused by the bacterium or virus.

BRONCHIOLITIS: Inflammation (-itis) of the bronchioles, the small air passages in the lungs that enter the alveoli (air sacs), is bronchiolitis.

Scope and Distribution

RSV infection tends to be more prevalent in climates that have colder seasons, since people are in closer indoor contact for part of the year. However, the infection can occur virtually anywhere. Because infants and the elderly are the most susceptible, RSV infection is associated with hospitals, daycare centers, and retirement or elder-care settings.

Treatment and Prevention

Spread of RSV can be minimized or even prevented by common-sense hygiene. Covering the nose and mouth with a tissue when sneezing or coughing can prevent the spread of virus-laden droplets in the air. Washing the hands with regular hand soap will inactivate any RSV on the skin.

The presence of the virus can be detected by isolation of the virus. In addition, molecular techniques can be used to detect protein components of the virus by the presence of antibodies to these proteins (antibodies are proteins produced by the immune system in response to the presence of a component that is foreign to the host) and by the presence of viral genetic material. These tests are fairly specialized and require trained staff and a laboratory with the necessary equipment. Tests to monitor the antibody levels are the more common molecular approach.

Diagnosis is usually confirmed only for severe illnesses in hospitalized patients. For most people who have RSV infection, no specific treatment is administered, since the illness is limited. In infants and children, treatment typically is aimed at reducing the discomfort due to fever, and acetaminophen is most commonly used for this purpose.

More severe disease can require the use of supplemental oxygen or even mechanical ventilation (when a tube is inserted down the patient's trachea to deliver oxygen directly to the lungs), since the lungs may not be functioning efficiently. Antiviral drugs such as ribavirin are also administered. The drug is structurally similar to the viral RNA and so can interfere with the process used by the virus to make new copies of itself.

Another treatment option for more severe RSV infection is the use of immune globulin, a compound produced by the immune system. This strategy is especially useful for people whose own immune systems are malfunctioning and so not as capable of producing the compound. Immune globulin is usually given intravenously.

Impacts and Issues

The fact that RSV infections predominantly affect the very young and the elderly makes it a concern for these age groups. In some cases, lung function can be affected by RSV infection to the point that hospitalization and mechanical breathing assistance is necessary. In the United States, about 80,000 children are hospitalized with RSV infections every year.

Almost half of otherwise healthy babies who are hospitalized with RSV develop asthma later in childhood. Asthma is the number one reason for school absences in children due to a chronic illness, resulting in about 14 million lost school days per year in the United States. In several studies, researchers are tracking healthy newborns who develop RSV as they grow to determine genetic and environmental factors that may link RSV with asthma.

RSV infections also highlight the potential for an infectious disease to spread more easily in a crowded indoor environment and the importance of common-sense hygiene. Such hygienic measures as cleaning toys and equipment in daycare centers and frequent handwashing can help to significantly minimize the risk of infection.

Efforts are ongoing to develop a vaccine against RSV. Researchers at Vanderbilt University are pursuing one approach that involves using genetic technologies to manipulate genes in the RSV virus. By causing small mutations or deletions in the genes of the virus, an improved attenuated (weakened) form of the RSV virus is produced that could lead to the development of a safe, efficient vaccine. As of 2007, a vaccine for RSV is not yet available.

SEE ALSO *Public Health and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Cane, Patricia, ed. *Respiratory Syncytial Virus.* Vol. 14 of *Perspectives in Medical Virology.* New York: Elsevier Science, 2006.

Hart, Tony. *Microterrors: The Complete Guide to Bacterial, Viral and Fungal Infections That Threaten Our Health.* Tonawanda, NY: Firefly Books, 2004.

Sears, William, and Martha Sears. *The Baby Book: Everything You Need to Know About Your Baby from Birth to Age Two.* New York: Little, Brown, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Respiratory Syncytial Virus.” January 1, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/revb/respiratory/rsvfeat.htm> (accessed March 1, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Retroviruses

Introduction

Retroviruses are viruses that contain ribonucleic acid (RNA) as their genetic material. This contrasts with the majority of other microorganisms that instead contain deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). Like other viruses, retroviruses create new copies of themselves by infecting a host cell and using the hosts' genetic replication machinery. To accomplish this, early in the infection process of retroviruses an enzyme called reverse transcriptase is produced. The enzyme can transform the viral RNA into DNA, which is then inserted into the host DNA. The inserted viral DNA can be replicated along with the host DNA during growth and division of the host cell, and the manufactured viral components assemble to form new copies of the virus.

Retroviruses cause a number of serious infections in humans and other creatures. The most infamous is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), which is considered by most scientists to be caused by several versions of a retrovirus called the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Other retroviruses can stimulate abnormal cell growth; these retroviruses can also be termed oncogenic viruses.

History and Scientific Foundations

The first known retrovirus, the Rous sarcoma virus, was discovered in 1911. It was subsequently shown that the virus was a cause of cancer in some species of chickens. The demonstration of the ability of retroviruses to cause human diseases did not come until almost 70 years later.

In 1980, researchers at the National Cancer Institute discovered the first human retrovirus. They found the virus within leukemic T cells of patients with an aggressive form of T cell cancer. These patients were from the southern United States, Japan, and the Caribbean. Almost all patients with this form of cancer were found to have antibodies (immune system proteins made in response to an infection) to HTLV.

HTLV and HIV infect and replicate inside of T cells, which are vital to the human immune response. As more T cells are disabled, the immune system becomes progressively less efficient and microorganisms not normally capable of causing disease are able to do so. These infections are called opportunistic infections. HTLV also causes a lethal cancer called adult T cell leukemia.

Retroviruses are spherical. An outer structure called a capsule surrounds either one or two strands of RNA. The capsule also contains proteins that can recognize target protein sites on the host cell. The association of the viral and host proteins enables the virus to attach to the host cell, which is necessary before the virus can enter the host. For example, in the case of the HIV retrovirus, the viral proteins bind to T cell proteins called CD4 receptors.

Once inside the host cell, the retrovirus begins to make more copies. Retroviruses are an exception to the general order of replication, which involves the use of DNA as a template to make a type of RNA called messenger RNA, which in turn provides the information to make proteins. Instead, retroviruses have a preliminary step in which the viral RNA is used to manufacture DNA. From then on, the replication process occurs as in other cells.

Retroviruses contain an enzyme called reverse transcriptase that produces DNA from the viral RNA. The viral-derived DNA can then be integrated into the host's DNA. When the host cell replicates, the viral DNA is read along with the host DNA. The manufactured viral components are then assembled to produce new virus particles. Reverse transcriptase is unique to retroviruses. This is their Achilles' heel. Drugs that impair this enzyme can interrupt the production of new retrovirus. As a result, therapies to treat HIV infections usually include a reverse transcriptase inhibitor.

WORDS TO KNOW

DEOXYRIBONUCLEIC ACID (DNA): Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) is a double-stranded, helical molecule that forms the molecular basis for heredity in most organisms.

GENE THERAPY: Gene therapy is the name applied to the treatment of inherited diseases by corrective genetic engineering of the dysfunctional genes. It is part of a broader field called genetic medicine, which involves the screening, diagnosis, prevention, and treatment of hereditary conditions in humans. The results of genetic screening can pinpoint a potential problem to which gene therapy can sometimes offer a solution. Genetic defects are significant in the total field of medicine, with up to 15 out of every 100 newborn infants having a hereditary disorder of greater or lesser severity. More than 2000 genetically distinct inherited defects have been classified so far, including diabetes, cystic fibrosis, hemophilia, sickle-call anemia, phenylketonuria, Down syndrome and cancer.

HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS (HIV): The human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) belongs to a class of viruses known as the retroviruses. These viruses are known as RNA viruses because they have RNA (ribonucleic acid) as their basic genetic material instead of DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid).

HUMAN T-CELL LEUKEMIA VIRUS: Two types of human T-cell leukemia virus (HTLV) are known. They are also known as human T-cell lymphotrophic viruses. HTLV-1 often is carried by a person with no obvious symptoms. However, HTLV-I is capable of causing a number of maladies. These include abnormalities of the T cells and B cells, a chronic infection of the myelin covering of nerves that causes a degeneration of the nervous system, sores on the skin, and an inflammation of the inside of the eye. HTLV-II infection usually does not produce any symptoms. However, in some people a cancer of the blood known as hairy cell leukemia can develop.

ONCOGENIC VIRUS: An oncogenic virus is a virus that is capable of changing the cells it infects so that the cells begin to grow and divide uncontrollably.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE: An enzyme that makes it possible for a retrovirus to produce DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) from RNA (ribonucleic acid).

RIBONUCLEIC ACID (RNA): Any of a group of nucleic acids that carry out several important tasks in the synthesis of proteins. Unlike DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), it has only a single strand. Nucleic acids are complex molecules that contain a cell's genetic information and the instructions for carrying out cellular processes. In eukaryotic cells, the two nucleic acids, ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), work together to direct protein synthesis. Although it is DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) that contains the instructions for directing the synthesis of specific structural and enzymatic proteins, several types of RNA actually carry out the processes required to produce these proteins. These include messenger RNA (mRNA), ribosomal RNA (rRNA), and transfer RNA (tRNA). Further processing of the various RNAs is carried out by another type of RNA called small nuclear RNA (snRNA). The structure of RNA is very similar to that of DNA, however, instead of the base thymine, RNA co

ROUS SARCOMA VIRUS: Rous sarcoma virus, named after American doctor Francis Peyton Rous (1879–1970), is a virus that can cause cancer in some birds, including chickens. It was the first virus known go to be able to cause cancer.

T CELL: Immune-system white blood cells that enable antibody production, suppress antibody production, or kill other cells. When a vertebrate encounters substances that are capable of causing it harm, a protective system known as the immune system comes into play. This system is a network of many different organs that work together to recognize foreign substances and destroy them. The immune system can respond to the presence of a disease-causing agent (pathogen) in two ways. Immune cells called the B cells can produce soluble proteins (antibodies) that can accurately target and kill the pathogen. This branch of immunity is called humoral immunity. In cell-mediated immunity, immune cells known as the T cells produce special chemicals that can specifically isolate the pathogen and destroy it.

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

In 1980, a U.S. research team headed by Robert Gallo (1937–) reported their discovery of a retrovirus that caused cancer in humans. The virus was designated human T-cell leukemia virus (HTLV). Three years later, HIV was reported almost simultaneously in 1983 by two U.S. research teams (including Gallo's) and a French team. Because the researchers used different designations for the virus, a debate arose over which team was truly the first to discover HIV. The debate was heated, since the discovery was almost immediately recognized as extremely important and likely of Nobel Prize significance. In the end, in the spirit of scientific cooperation, the researchers put aside their debate and agreed to be co-discoverers.

Retroviruses that cause cancer do so when the reverse transcribed-viral DNA is integrated into the DNA of the host. In some cases, the viral DNA can insert itself within a gene. This will alter the sequence of the gene, which can, in turn, alter or completely destroy the genetic information. This sort of disruption may occur in a gene that codes for a molecule that helps regulate cell division. When this happens, the result can be the uncontrolled cell growth and division that is the hallmark of cancer.

Applications and Research

Retroviral research has focused on understanding how the viruses infect cells, with the aim of blocking or even preventing the infection. Blocking the attachment of the virus to the host cell by binding an added molecule either to the viral protein involved in binding or to the target site on the host surface can prevent infection. Within the human body, this sequence is not as straightforward as it is in the laboratory, but progress is being made.

A powerful potential application of retroviruses involves their use as vehicles to get genes inside of other cells. This technique has been explored in gene therapy, where host genes can be disrupted or their activity increased, depending on the aim of the therapy. When the retroviral genetic material enters the host cell and, in turn, enters the host DNA, the target gene is also inserted. This can allow the target gene to be expressed. In another approach, the insertion of the retrovirus can disrupt a host gene. For example, insertion of the viral genetic material can disable a bacterial gene that codes for the manufacture of a destructive toxin. However, as discussed below, the trials of retroviral gene therapy in humans have been plagued with problems.

Impacts and Issues

Retroviruses that cause human diseases sickened and killed millions of people in the twentieth century alone. While the best known of these diseases is AIDS, other retroviruses cause paralysis, physical and mental deterioration, at least one type of muscular dystrophy, multiple sclerosis, and arthritis.

Multiple sclerosis and arthritis are examples of autoimmune diseases, in which the body's immune system malfunctions and reacts against it own tissues. There is evidence that such autoimmune diseases may be caused by inserted retroviral genetic material. The original insertion, which produced the genetic changes that underlie the immune difficulties, may have occurred thousands of years ago, with the inserted DNA being passed from generation to generation ever since. Studies have shown that this ancient retroviral genetic material makes up almost 10 percent of the human genome.

Retroviral diseases are global and affect people in wealthy and poorer nations. The consequences are particularly severe in developing countries, since these diseases can disrupt family life (since care for the afflicted person is necessary), and cause absences from school and the workplace that impair the national economies.

Retroviruses that are used in gene therapy are altered to cripple their ability to establish an infection in host cells. These disabled retroviruses are able to incorporate their genetic material into the host cell genome, but are not able to produce new viruses. These retroviruses have been used in disease therapy in animals. But retroviral gene therapy in humans is still experimental.

In 1999, 18-year-old Jesse Gelsinger died of multiple organ failure days after beginning retroviral gene therapy. A severe immune reaction to the retrovirus used is argued to have been responsible for his death. In 2003, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration banned gene therapy trials using retroviruses in a type of cells called blood stem cells. The ban continues as of 2007.

See Also *HIV;* Pneumocystis carinii *Pneumonia; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Lyon, Maureen, and Lawrence J. D'Angelo. *Teenagers, HIV, and AIDS: Insights from Youths Living with the Virus.* Washington, DC: Praeger Publishers, 2006.

Mader, Sylvia. *Biology.* 8th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2003.

Whiteside, Alan. *HIV/AIDS: A Very Short Introduction.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2007.

Brian Hoyle

Rickettsial Disease

Introduction

Bacteria from the genus *Rickettsia* give rise to rickettsial diseases. These bacteria are transmitted from infected mammals to humans via arthropod vectors. Once the bacteria are in the body, they infect the cells lining blood vessels and cause cell death. This results in complications relating to the blood. There are numerous types of rickettsial diseases caused by different species of these bacteria. Common symptoms of rickettsial diseases include fever, headache, depression, and fatigue. In some cases, a rash forms on the body, either around the site of infection, or on random areas.

Rickettsial diseases occur worldwide. Some diseases remain limited to certain geographic regions, while others are present on almost all continents. The distribution of the arthropod that carries the infectious bacteria determines the distribution of the disease. Rickettsial diseases are generally treated with a course of antibiotics. However, delayed administration of treatment can lead to more serious illness, and even death. While no vaccine is available to prevent contracting rickettsial diseases, prevention is achieved by avoiding contact with arthropods. This involves using repellents or wearing protective clothing.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Rickettsial diseases are caused by bacteria from the genus *Rickettsia*. These bacteria are named after Howard Taylor Ricketts (1871–1910) who died from typhus, one type of rickettsial disease. Rickettsial disease should not to be confused with another disease called rickets, which is caused by a deficiency of vitamin D.

Rickettsial bacteria cause illness in hosts by infecting the cells and causing cell destruction or death. They tend to infect vascular cells, that is, cells lining the blood vessels, and thus cell death leads to increased permeability of these vessels. This causes changes in blood volume, concentration, and pressure, which is debilitating for the host.

Rickettsial bacteria are present in arthropods and mammals. Transmission usually occurs when an arthropod feeds on an infected mammal, sometimes becoming the intermediate host, and then feeds on a human. Humans may also become infected if they come in direct contact with the blood or feces of an infected arthropod. One rickettsial disease, Q fever, is transmitted not by arthropods, but by airborne droplets containing the bacteria.

There are many different types of rickettsial diseases. The main types are grouped into the spotted fever group, the typhus group, or with scrub typhus. Most of the diseases share similar symptoms. In general, acute symptoms of fever, headache, depression, and fatigue occur within two weeks of exposure to a bacterium. A rash also often appears a few days after the onset of fever. This rash can appear on various regions of the body, as in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, or may occur specifically as skin lesions that develop at the site of the arthropod bite. Other complications of infection include blood vessel damage and organ damage, but these symptoms depend on the severity and type of infection.

Scope and Distribution

Rickettsial diseases occur worldwide. However, not all rickettsial diseases are present in all countries. Endemic (naturally occurring at a steady rate) and epidemic typhus occur worldwide, whereas North Asian tick typhus, Queensland tick typhus, and scrub typhus have particular distributions that limit them to certain locations. The distribution of rickettsial diseases is determined by the distribution of their arthropod vectors.

However, cases of specific rickettsial diseases sometimes occur in areas not known to harbor the bacterium. This is a consequence of travel. Travelers infected in one

WORDS TO KNOW

ARTHROPOD: A member of the largest single animal phylum, consisting of organisms with segmented bodies, jointed legs or wings, and exoskeletons.

INTERMEDIATE HOST: An organism infected by a parasite while the parasite is in a developmental form, not sexually mature.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

country may not exhibit symptoms until they are in another country due to the long incubation period for these bacteria.

In the United States, endemic rickettsial diseases include Rocky Mountain spotted fever, rickettsial pox, and cat-flea transmitted infection. Rickettsial diseases tend to be less prevalent during modern times than when they were first discovered. This is most likely a result of both improved prevention methods and the introduction of effective treatments. However, despite effective treatments, some rickettsial diseases can still be fatal, including Rocky Mountain spotted fever, which has an approximate mortality rate of 4%, or epidemic typhus, which has a mortality rate of approximately 10% in young adults and 60–70% in older patients. In Rocky Mountain spotted fever a late diagnosis can lead to more serious complications, which contributes to higher mortality rates. In the case of epidemic typhus, increased age can decrease a patient's chance of survival.

Treatment and Prevention

Effective treatment of rickettsial disease is usually involves a course of antibiotics. The best results are achieved when treatment is administered within the first week of illness. The longer the illness goes without treatment, the less chance there is of a good recovery. Tetracycline antibiotics effectively destroy rickettsial bacteria and thus derivatives from this group are most often used for treatment. The preferred tetracycline is doxycycline, since it has few negative side effects when used for short periods in low doses. Another form of tetracycline used is chloramphenicol. For patients older than 18 years of age, fluoroquinolones may be used, and have been shown to be effective against some forms of rickettsial bacteria.

Antibiotic treatment usually takes less than a week. Fever generally disappears 1–3 days after treatment begins. If the fever does not begin to subside, misdiagnosis is likely. Once a patient no longer has a fever, treatment is stopped. Other treatment, based on treating the complications caused by the bacteria, such as hypotension, coagulation, and fluid leakage, is usually given with the antibiotics. This treatment usually lasts about two weeks.

Rickettsial diseases cannot yet be prevented by vaccination. Research is underway to determine a possible vaccination for certain infections. Currently, the best prevention method is avoidance or elimination of arthropod vectors in order to decrease the chance of being bitten. Avoidance measures include using repellents when outdoors, avoiding long grass or woodlands, wearing clothing that completely covers the arms and legs, wearing boots, and thoroughly checking the body after walking through arthropod-inhabited areas. Often, quick removal of ticks that have become attached to the body can prevent infection. Elimination of arthropod vectors involves using pesticides in arthropod-inhabited areas.

Impacts and Issues

One of the greatest issues surrounding rickettsial diseases is the impact that late diagnosis has on recovery. The treatments currently used for cases of rickettsial disease usually result in a successful recovery. However, the later treatment is given, the less chance there is of a good recovery. Late diagnosis may occur when patients do not visit their doctor, or when medical personnel misdiagnose the disease. Some types of rickettsial disease, such as Rocky Mountain spotted fever, sometimes feature a characteristic red rash. In the absence of this rash, the symptoms of this infection are similar to a multitude of other infections. Therefore, Rocky Mountain spotted fever may be misdiagnosed and the wrong treatment administered. Despite effective treatment for this disease, the mortality rate still stands at almost 4%, and this mortality rate is largely due to misdiagnosis and, thus, delayed administration of proper treatment.

SEE ALSO *Arthropod-borne Disease; Bacterial Disease; Host and Vector; Q Fever; Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever; Typhus; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Arguin, P.M., P.E. Kozarsky, and A.W. Navin. *Health Information for International Travel 2005–2006.*

Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2005.

Beers, M.H. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy.* 18th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck, 2006.

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever." May 20, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/rmsf/index.htm> (accessed March 7, 2007).

WebMD. "Rickettsial Infection." March 27, 2006. <http://www.emedicine.com/ped/topic2015.htm> (accessed March 7, 2007).

Rift Valley Fever

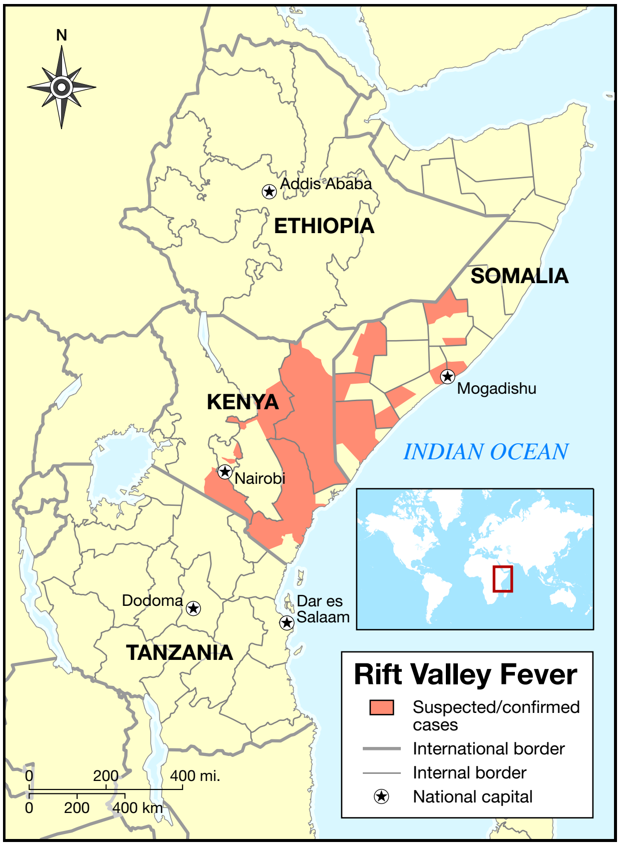
Introduction

Rift Valley fever (RVF) is a viral disease usually associated with outbreaks among livestock animals, but also affects humans. It is caused by a virus from the family *Bunyaviridae* and is endemic in areas of Africa, but can spread to surrounding regions.

The virus is passed to animals and humans via mosquitoes. The virus is naturally occurring in some mosquitoes and the highest incidence of infection is associated with periods of heavy rain and flooding when mosquito populations are at peak numbers. Mortality rates among animals are high, but typically only 1% of human cases prove fatal. Symptoms generally resolve within a week of illness onset and include fever, headache, and weakness. In some cases, complications occur including inflammation of the eyes, meningoencephalitis, and hemorrhagic fever.

There are currently no preventative treatments available. However, researchers are developing vaccines and treatments for the disease among humans and animals. Increasing evidence of human fatalities has led to Rift Valley

A nurse attends to a person with Rift Valley fever during an outbreak of the disease in Kenya in January 2007. *AP Images.*



Map showing Rift Valley Fever outbreak in Kenya and Somalia, January 2007. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

fever being termed an emerging virus and one that is considered to pose significant potential threat to communities.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Rift Valley fever (RVF) is a viral disease primarily affecting domestic livestock (such as cattle, sheep, buffalo, goats, and camels), but one that can also be passed on to humans. The disease is caused by the RVF virus, which is a member of the genus *Phlebovirus* in the family Bunyaviridae. RVF was first reported among livestock in Kenya around 1915. The Rift Valley virus was first isolated in Kenya in 1931.

The Rift Valley fever virus is naturally occurring in some species of mosquitoes such as the *Aedes*. The virus may lay dormant in the eggs, which are capable of surviving for several years in dry conditions. During periods of heavy rain and flooding, these eggs will hatch and cause a significant increase in the mosquito population. The mosquitoes transfer the virus to the animals on which they feed. The disease can be transmitted to humans via mosquitoes, or by exposure to the blood or organs of infected animals.

In humans, the virus is symptomatic in 90% of those infected. Incubation of the infection is usually 2 to 6 days, after which symptoms commonly present as a flulike illness including fever, headache, muscle pain, generalized weakness, dizziness, and weight loss. In less than 2% of cases, the illness progresses and develops into a severe form. In less than 2% of cases, eye disease occurs and involves ocular swelling and retinal inflammation. This can lead to permanent vision loss, including blindness. In less than 1% of cases, RVF leads to meningoencephalitis. The most severe complication is hemorrhagic fever, and this occurs in less than 1% of cases. The hemorrhagic fever complication is responsible for most RVF deaths, with around 50% of cases of hemorrhagic fever proving fatal.

Scope and Distribution

Rift Valley fever was initially limited to the regions of eastern and southern Africa where sheep and cattle are raised. Prior to 2000, RVF was limited to Africa. In late 2000, cases of Rift Valley occurred in Saudi Arabia and Yemen. This spread of the virus indicates a potential threat of the virus spreading further into Europe or Asia.

People at risk of contracting the disease include people in contact with animals such as animal herdsman, veterinarians, and abattoir (slaughterhouse) workers. Frequent exposure to mosquito bites in areas where outbreaks occur will also increase risk of contracting the virus. Travelers to areas where the Rift Valley fever virus is endemic are also under threat of infection, particularly during times of viral outbreak.

Epidemics are almost always associated with heavy rainfall periods and localized flooding, which creates breeding grounds for the mosquitoes. The first RVF outbreak was reported in Egypt in 1977–1978 where human infection rates in some parts were as high as 35% and 598 deaths resulted from hemorrhagic fever. An epidemic occurred in 1987 in West Africa due to flooding caused from construction of the Senegal River Project. In 1997, Kenya and Somalia suffered an epidemic that resulted in 300 human fatalities with much higher rates for livestock. In 2006, an epidemic occurred in Kenya following flooding.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis of Rift Valley fever in humans is performed through laboratory blood analysis identifying antibodies to the virus. In the majority of cases, the causative agent is obvious due to the epidemic nature of outbreak. There is no treatment available for the infection except for supportive therapy for the symptoms. Researchers are investigating the potential for the use of an antiviral drug in humans. However, as of 2006, it is still in developmental stages.

WORDS TO KNOW

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

EPIDEMIC: From the Greek *epidemic*, meaning "prevalent among the people," is most commonly used to describe an outbreak of an illness or disease in which the number of individual cases significantly exceeds the usual or expected number of cases in any given population.

EPIZOOTIC: The abnormally high occurrence of a specific disease in animals in a particular area, similar to a human epidemic.

Many animal vaccines have been developed to protect against RVF infection, but are often subject to limitation. One such vaccine was found to deliver immunity to mice for up to three years, but led to spontaneous abortion when administered to pregnant ewes. It was found that multiple doses of vaccines may be required to provide immunity. This would prove problematic in areas of endemnicity where successful immunity would be subject to resource availability. Human vaccines are also under trial, but as of 2006, are in the early phases and require significant testing.

Preventative measures may be taken by people to avoid contracting the disease. These include reducing possible contact with mosquitoes. This may be achieved by wearing protective clothing such as long pants and long sleeved shirts in addition to the use of insect repellents and bed nets while sleeping. People in contact with animal blood or tissue can avoid infection by wearing gloves and other protective equipment.

Impacts and Issues

Rift Valley fever poses significant economical impacts on communities due to the fatality rates among livestock and the permanent threat of epidemics in certain areas. In an outbreak of RVF in Kenya in the 1950s, over 100,000 sheep were killed. This devastated the community and it took several years to recover. In pregnant livestock, infection by this virus results in abortion of almost all fetuses. This raises the issues of herd sustainability and growth. The mode of transmission of the Rift Valley fever virus makes it virtually impossible for farmers to protect their herds or themselves. With the natural occurrence of the virus in some mosquitoes, a rainy season or flood will almost certainly leave some communities devastated.

The complications associated with infection from RVF among humans can be quite severe and as such, this disease can also be considered a high risk. Spreading of the disease from Africa to Yemen and Saudi Arabia has raised concern that the disease could spread to new areas. It is considered that stock, mosquitoes, and travelers could all potentially act as carriers of the virus and introduce it into new regions. Various species of mosquitoes act as vectors for the RVF virus, suggesting that the virus could be maintained once in a new region. This may potentially cause animal and human epidemics.

In addition to being spread by mosquitoes, the virus can also be spread by aerosols. This suggests that the virus could be introduced to a new area and spread rapidly within the area. These concerns have led the United States to list Rift Valley fever as a significant biological warfare threat.

Rift Valley fever remains a health threat, especially in Africa's developing nations and at-risk areas following natural disasters. From December 2006 through February 2007, an epidemic of Rift Valley in Kenya fever killed 155 people. There were nearly 700 suspected cases associated with the outbreak. The epidemic hit most acutely in several regions already strained by severe flooding and food shortages. Health officials instituted a quarantine of animals and humans in disease-affected areas, but the disease spread across national borders, infecting 90 and killing 19 in neighboring Tanzania.

See Also *Airborne Precautions; Antiviral Drugs; Bioterrorism; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Fong, I.W., and K. Alibek. *Bioterrorism and Infectious Agents: A New Dilemma for the 21st Century*. New York: Springer Science, 2005.

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases*. Vol. 2. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Rift Valley Fever Fact Sheet." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/spb/mnpages/dispages/Fact_Sheets/Rift_Valley_Fever_Fact_Sheet.pdf> (accessed March 9, 2007).

Directors of Health Promotion and Education. "Rift Valley Fever." 2005 <http://www.dhpe.org/infect/rift.html> (accessed Mar. 9, 2007).

World Health Organization (WHO). "Rift Valley Fever." September, 2000 <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs207/en/> (accessed March 9, 2007).

Ringworm

Introduction

Ringworm, also known medically as *Tinea* and dermatophytosis, is a group of contagious, very common cutaneous (skin) infections, which can also involve the scalp, hair, or nails. It is caused by various moldlike fungi called dermatophytes, which live on dead tissues of the body. Because many different fungi species cause ringworm, an infection with one species will not make a person immune to infection from other species.

Moist areas of the body such as the groin, between the toes, and in the armpits are generally infected the most frequently. The infected area often looks inflamed and feels itchy. These symptoms are caused by sensitivity to the fungus or by a secondary bacterial infection. Ringworm, in its most serious forms, causes an acute infection with blisters on the feet or lesions on the scalp.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

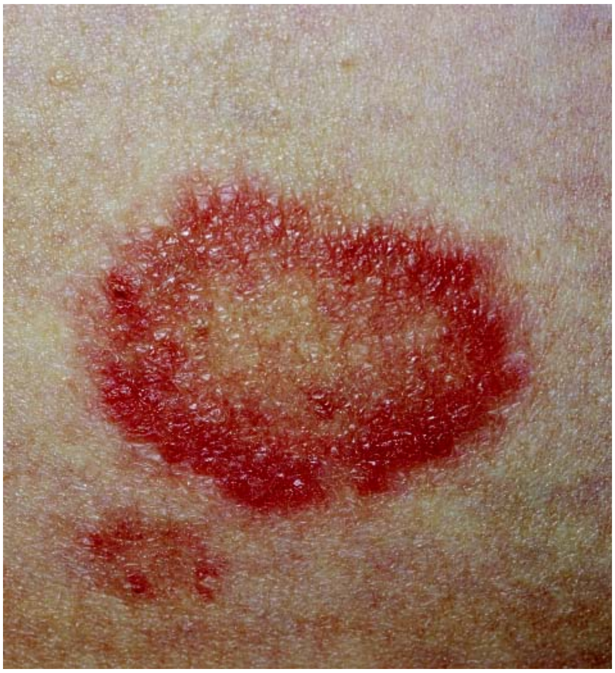
The most common symptom of ringworm is flat, nearly round lesions. They may be dry and scaly, or moist and crusty. Eventually, they turn red and become extended, itchy bumps with edges that blister and secrete fluid. As the infection continues, the color sometimes becomes nearly clear in the center and redder on the outside. This pattern causes the patch to look ringlike in appearance, which gives ringworm its common name.

The incubation period is generally not known. However, ringworm of the scalp (*tinea capitis*) usually appears 10–14 days after contact and ringworm of the body (*tinea corporis*) usually appears in 4–10 days.

Ringworm infection is most often spread during human-skin-to-human-skin contact. It becomes contagious to another person even before the infection is evident on the first person. Ringworm is sometimes spread when humans touch infected cats and dogs; when humans care for other domestic animals such as cows and pigs; and when humans touch contaminated clothes, towels, hairbrushes, combs, headgear (such as hats), or other infected objects.

The most contagious form—ringworm of the scalp—is seen primarily in children. Symptoms include growing pimples, itching of scalp, and breaking off of hair. The scalp may temporarily become bald in patches.

Ringworm can also occur on the arms, legs, and trunk. It causes raised, round patches on the skin. The inner parts heal first, while the outer parts further spread the infection. When ringworm infection reaches other areas of the body, such as the armpit and groin, the shape



A characteristic ringworm rash, caused by a fungal infection of the skin, is shown on a woman's abdomen. *Dr P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

CUTANEOUS: Pertaining to the skin.

DERMATOPHYTE: A dermatophyte is a parasitic fungus which feeds off keratin, a protein which is abundant in skin, nails and hair and therefore often causes infection of these body parts

TOPICAL: Any medication that is applied directly to particular part of the body's surface is termed topical; for example, a topical ointment.

IN CONTEXT: CULTURAL CONNECTIONS

Ringworm-causing fungi affect various parts of the body and give rise to alternative names and conditions. In the scalp ring worm is known as *tinea capitis*, on the body, ringworm is known as *tinea corporis*). In the groin region ringworm is known as *tinea cruris*, more commonly called "jock itch," and on the feet ringworm is known as *tinea pedis*, more commonly known as athlete's foot.

Over one million children (about 0.3% of the 2006 population) are infected with scalp ringworm annually in the United States. It is a highly contagious, and the number of children infected each year is increasing. Ringworm of the scalp represents over 90% of all skin fungal infections in U.S. children aged ten years or younger. About 7% of the U.S. population suffers from ringworm of the scalp. It is most frequently caught in overcrowded conditions such as medical facilities, nursing homes, and educational institutions. Elderly people and people with weak immune systems are at increased risk for acquiring ringworm because of their susceptibility to infections.

Jock itch and athlete's foot are important economically because they are targets of several commercial products and generate millions of dollars in advertising revenues spent to market the over-the-counter products designed to fight the fungal infections.

often changes to resemble butterfly wings or it may be completely irregular in shape. The condition is called *tinea cruris*, or jock itch, when it affects the groin area.

The fingernails and toenails may also be infected. This condition is called *tinea unguium*. When this happens, the nails become yellowish, thickened, and deformed. They may crumble and fall off. When the infection spreads to the feet, ringworm is often called athlete's foot (*tinea pedis*). When ringworm affects facial hair it is called *tinea barbae*; when it affects the face, *tinea faciei*; and when it affects hands and palms, *tinea manuum*.

Scope and Distribution

Ringworm can occur almost anywhere in the world. Because the fungi that cause *tinea cruris* and *tinea pedis* thrive in moist and humid areas, they occur most frequently in the tropical and subtropical areas of the world.

Treatment and Prevention

Doctors often identify ringworm visually. If not recognizable, it is often diagnosed by scraping off or plucking some material from the infected area. The sample is examined under a microscope to confirm the presence of fungal growth. Ringworm of the scalp is diagnosed with an ultraviolet light under which the fungus appears to be a bright, yellowish green color.

Ringworm treatment includes topical antifungal medications. Common antifungal creams, lotions, or powders that contain miconazole, econazole, or clotrimazole are often used either by prescription or over-the-counter.

Infected children are sometimes isolated from others, especially other children, to prevent further spreading of the infection. Griseofulvin is commonly used to treat animals and humans. It usually eliminates the infection, but side effects can be pronounced. Undecylenic acid is sometimes used as a fungicide. Antibiotics may be necessary to cure bacterial infections.

According to the Mayo Clinic, although ringworm is unpleasant, it is not serious except for people with weak immune systems. Ringworm usually resolves itself without a visit to the doctor within four weeks. Bed linens and pajamas should be washed daily. A person should seek medical treatment if the infection becomes severe or persistent. Antifungal drugs, including fluconazole, itraconazole, ketoconazole, and terbinafine, are sometimes taken by mouth for persistent infections.

The National Institutes of Health recommends a variety of measures to prevent ringworm including:

- Shampoo hair regularly, especially after it is cut.
- Wear shoes in shower stalls, gym locker rooms, pools, and other moist areas.
- Keep skin and feet clean and dry.
- Do not share personal care items or items of apparel, such as towels, hairbrushes, shoes, or hats.
- Avoid touching pets or other domestic animals that have bald spots.

Impacts and Issues

Anyone can get ringworm. Children are more susceptible to certain types of ringworm fungi, while other types occur equally in all age groups. Children become more susceptible to ringworm when they are malnourished, live in a warm climate, practice poor hygiene, come into contact other children or pets with ringworm, or have weak immune systems due to medicines or disease. Complications of ringworm include spreading the infection to other areas than the initial site; bacterial skin infections; skin irritations, such as contact dermatitis; and side effects from drugs used for treatment.

SEE ALSO *Mycotic Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Brock, David. *Infectious Fungi.* Philadelphia: Chelsea House Publishers, 2006.

Yosipovitch, Gil, et al., eds. *Itch: Basic Mechanisms and Therapy.* Oxford: Taylor & Francis, 2004.

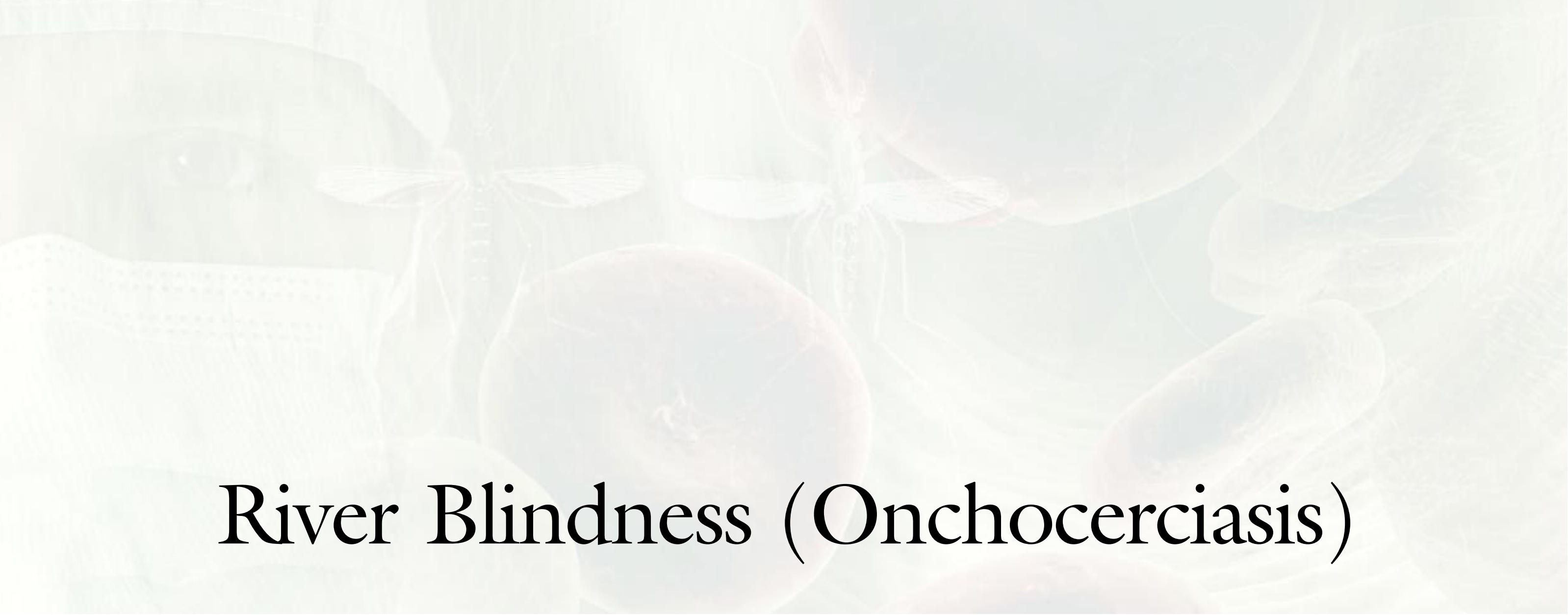
Periodicals

Weinstein, A. “Topical Treatment of Common Superficial Tinea Infections.” *American Family Physician.* 65 (May 15, 2002): 2095–2102.

Web Sites

Mayo Clinic. “Ringworm of the Body.” October 4, 2006. <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/ringworm/DS00489/DSECTION=1> (accessed March 22, 2007).

MedlinePlus. “Ringworm.” June 16, 2005. <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001439.htm> (accessed March 28, 2007).



River Blindness (Onchocerciasis)

Introduction

Onchocerciasis (on-kough-sir-KY-A-sis) is caused by a type of parasitic worm called a helminth and occurs mainly in Africa. The worms are spread by the bite of infected black flies, which live mainly near fast-running rivers and streams. Hence, the alternative name—river blindness—for the condition.

Once they have invaded the body, the worms reproduce and millions of microscopic offspring migrate to the eye. When they die, the toxic effects cause severe and chronic inflammation of the cornea and related areas of the eye that lead to loss of vision. The threat of river blindness led to mass migration of people in West Africa away from areas infested with the black fly. This had severe economic consequences, since they settled in less productive upland areas. Fortunately, the anti-parasitic drug ivermectin can be used to treat river blindness. Mass treatment programs have decreased the burden of river blindness in recent years.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

River blindness, known clinically as oncocerciasis, is caused by a tiny parasitic worm called *Onchocerca volvulus*. The vector of the disease is a black fly belonging to the *Simulium* genus. These flies breed near fast moving rivers and streams in the savannas and rainforests in several African countries. Therefore, people living in such areas are prone to infection. The incubation time of the parasite varies between nine and 24 months.

River blindness does not always cause any symptoms. But the parasitic worms, known as microfiliae, may accumulate in characteristic nodules under the skin. Dermatitis, with severe itching, is common and the skin may become wrinkled and thickened. The resulting disfigurement is sometimes called “leopard” or “lizard” skin. More seriously, the parasites may migrate to the eyes. The microfiliae have been found in all parts of the eye except the lens and, when they die, they cause toxic effects, such as inflammation and bleeding, which can ultimately lead to blindness.

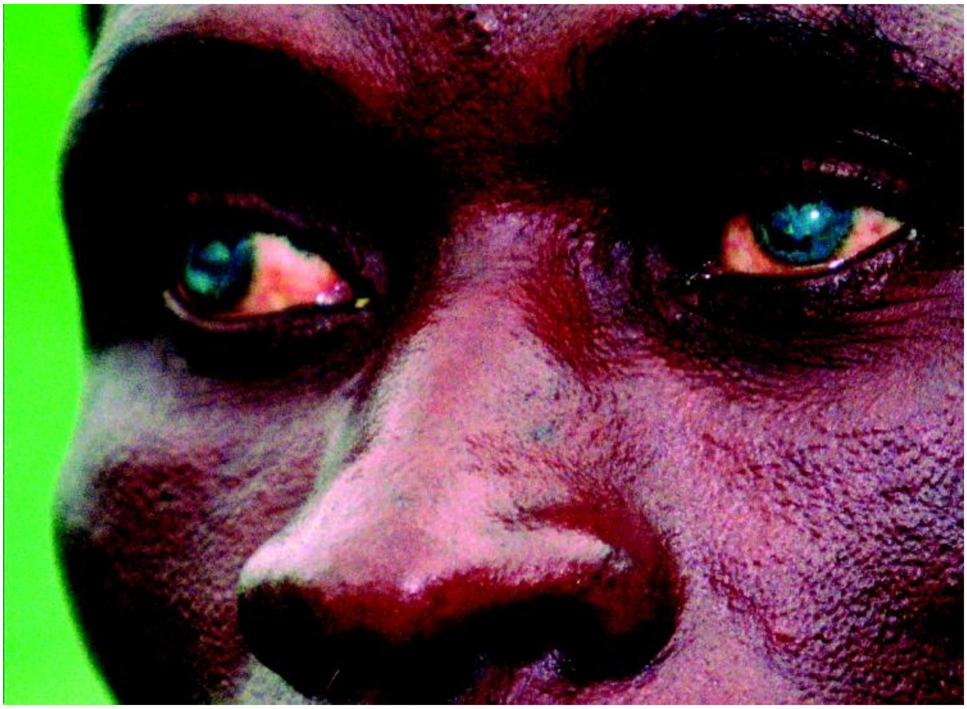
Transmission of river blindness occurs when someone is bitten by an infected black fly. This introduces the parasitic worms in a larval form under the skin where they mature. Then the mature female worm releases millions of microfiliae, which migrate towards the eyes. The microfiliae may also move to the surface of the skin, where they may be ingested by other black flies, which may go on and bite someone else, thereby spreading the infection.

Unlike malaria, which can be transmitted by just a single mosquito bite, it usually takes several black fly bites to transmit river blindness. The intensity of infection in an individual depends upon the number of microfiliae they are carrying, which, in turn, depends upon how many bites they have sustained. Blindness usually occurs in people with intense infection.

Scope and Distribution

River blindness is the second leading cause of preventable blindness worldwide. (Trachoma is the leading cause of blindness.) According to the World Health Organization (WHO), around 120 million people worldwide are at risk of river blindness. There are nearly 18 million actual cases of the disease, with about 270,000 cases of blindness and 6.5 million cases of severe itching and dermatitis resulting. The vast majority of these cases occur in Africa, with the remainder occurring in Yemen and in Central and South America.

In Africa, 30 countries in equatorial West, Central, and East Africa are affected by river blindness—areas where there are the fast-running rivers and streams frequented by *Simulium* black flies. In Central and South America, the affected countries are Mexico, Guatemala, Ecuador, Colombia, and Venezuela. Because infection



A man in the Ivory Coast shows the signs of river blindness. The disease causes an expressionless stare of the eyes, which is referred to as "dead eyes" or *Mara* ("the look of the lion") in the Malinke dialect. *AP Images.*

with river blindness normally requires several bites, it is the populations of these countries, rather than visitors, who are most affected. However, there have been cases among adventure travelers, missionaries, and Peace Corps volunteers.

Treatment and Prevention

The oral anti-parasitic drug ivermectin is effective against the microfilariae, but is less effective against the adult worms. An annual dose, for two years, should clear the infection and relieve dermatitis as well as prevent blindness. Previously, the drug diethylcarbamazine was used, but this drug has severe side effects and the WHO no longer recommends it.

There are no vaccines against river blindness. Insecticides can help control black flies in areas where river blindness is a problem. The flies bite during the day and those at risk should wear long sleeved shirts and pants to avoid being bitten.

Impacts and Issues

Blindness has a profound impact on someone's earning capacity and quality of life. River blindness has therefore proved a severe obstacle to socioeconomic development in many African countries. According to the WHO, in the 1970s, around 50% of all men under the age of 40 in some West African communities had been blinded by onchocerciasis. This caused migration away from fertile river valleys infested by black fly to less productive upland country. The resulting economic losses were around $30 million.

Clearly the world had to take action to halt the economic and social toll of river blindness in the world's poorest countries. Over the last 30 years, there have been various coordinated efforts to control the disease. In 1974, the Oncocerciasis Control Program (OCP) began in West Africa. This program was based on vector control—treating the breeding sites of the black fly with larvicides, that is, insecticides that kill fly larvae. The OCP expanded over the next several years to cover many river systems in seven countries, and it eventually doubled in size to cover 11 countries. The program ended in 2002, by which time river blindness had been virtually eliminated as a public health problem in 11 West African countries.

In 1989, a second strategy was added, involving the distribution of drugs to treat river blindness. Then, in the mid-1990s, the African Program for Oncocerciasis (APOC) began, with the aim of covering a further 19 countries, which comprised the rest of Africa affected by river blindness. In these countries, vector spraying was not a viable option because of environmental conditions. Therefore APOC is based upon the distribution of ivermectin, donated by Merck & Co, the company that discovered the drug. To date, the APOC has protected

WORDS TO KNOW

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

MICROFILIAE: Live offspring produced by adult nematodes within the host's body.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

more than 600,000 people from blindness and reclaimed more than 61 million acres (25 million hectares) of previously infested land for resettlement and agricultural cultivation.

APOC is based in Burkina Faso, in West Africa, and aims to eliminate oncocheriasis throughout the African continent. It works by placing communities themselves at the heart of ivermectin distribution, supported by a number of partners, such as international agencies and national governments. It is financed by voluntary contributions via The World Bank and run by the WHO. APOC aims to prevent one million cases of blindness each year and hopes to achieve its goals by the year 2010. The program may also be a model for other health care interventions in developing countries.

Meanwhile, oncocheriasis is also covered by the WHO initiative, VISION 2020: The Right to Sight, which aims to eliminate preventable blindness worldwide by the year 2020. It is a partnership between the WHO and the International Agency for the Prevention of Blindness (IAPB), a coalition of eye-care professional groups and nongovernmental organizations involved in eye care. The initiative grew from the positive experience of APOC, recognizing that river blindness is just one of five preventable conditions causing 75% of cases of blindness. The other four are cataracts, refractive errors and low vision, trachoma, and a group of conditions that cause childhood blindness. Poor communities are disproportionately affected by these conditions, and there is a cost-effective solution for each of them. The strategy of VISION 2020 is to bring these solutions to as many people as possible.

SEE ALSO *Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Economic Development and Infectious Disease; Parasitic Diseases; Trachoma.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Oncocerciasis (River Blindness)." September 27, 2004. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/onchocerciasis/factsht_onchocerciasis.htm> (accessed April 20, 2007).

The World Bank. "Defeating Onchocerciasis (Riverblindness) in Africa." <http://www.worldbank.org/afr/gper/defeating.htm> (accessed April 22, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Magnitude and Causes of Visual Impairment." November 2004. <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs282/en/> (accessed April 22, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever

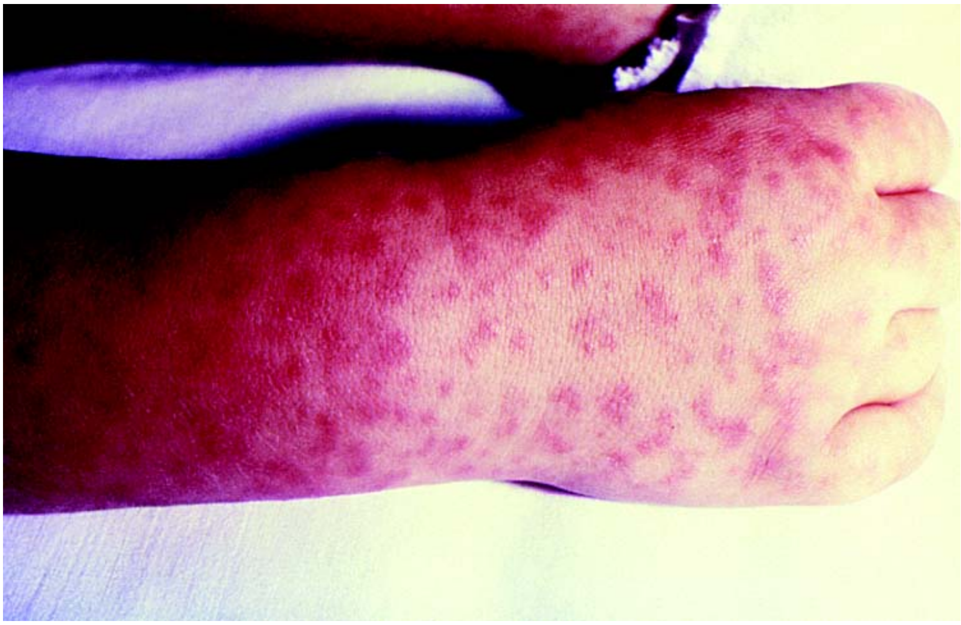
Introduction

Rocky Mountain spotted fever is a bacterial disease caused by *Rickettsia rickettsii*. This bacterium causes holes in blood vessels, which allows to blood leak into tissues and organs, causing damage to these areas. Humans become infected with Rocky Mountain spotted fever following a bite from an infected tick. Infection can also occur following contact with the blood or feces of infected ticks. Rocky Mountain spotted fever is present in most of the United States and has a yearly infection rate of about 800 cases. It is also found in some regions in South America. Similar strains of *Rickettsia* bacteria cause spotted fevers worldwide.

This disease usually results in fever, nausea, vomiting, headache, muscle aches, lack of appetite, diarrhea, abdominal pains, and, in some cases, a characteristic red rash. While recovery is likely for patients who receive early treatment, delayed treatment can result in complications, including death. Treatment involves a course of antibiotics for the duration of the fever. Since there is no vaccine available, the best prevention method is avoidance of ticks. This reduces the chance that a tick bite will lead to transmission of *R. rickettsii*.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Rocky Mountain spotted fever was first identified as a tick-borne bacterial disease by Howard T. Ricketts



A child's right hand and wrist display the characteristic rash of Rocky Mountain spotted fever. The most severe and frequently reported rickettsial illness in the United States, the disease is caused by *Rickettsia rickettsii*, a species of bacteria that is spread to humans by ticks. *Science Source.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ACARACIDES: A chemical that kills mites and ticks is an acaracide.

TICK: A tick is any blood-sucking parasitic insect of suborder *Ixodides*, superfamily *Ixodoidea*. Ticks can transmit a number of diseases, including Lyme disease and Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

(1871–1910) shortly before his death. Prior to its identification, this disease was first recognized in 1896 in the Snake River Valley of Idaho where it affected hundreds of people and was often fatal. Although it was first found in the Rocky Mountains, this disease occurs all over the United States, except for Hawaii, Vermont, Maine, and Alaska. Rocky Mountain spotted fever is a potentially fatal disease, and prior to 1940, had a mortality rate of 30%. This rate decreased to 3–5% following introduction of an effective antibiotic treatment.

Rocky Mountain spotted fever is caused by the bacterium *Rickettsia rickettsii.* Infection occurs when a tick vector bites an infected animal and then bites a human. Infection can also occur if human skin is contaminated with tick blood or feces. The most common ticks to spread this infection to humans are the American dog tick (*Dermacentor variabilis*) and the Rocky Mountain wood tick (*Dermacentor andersoni*). *R. rickettsii* lives and reproduces within cells lining blood vessels. The bacteria cause cell death, which leads to gaps forming in the surface of the blood vessel. Blood leaks through these gaps into surrounding tissue and causes tissue and organ damage. Blood leakage also causes a red rash that is present in some cases.

Various symptoms may arise over the course of a week. Initial symptoms include fever, nausea, vomiting, headache, muscle aches, and lack of appetite. A faint rash may also appear within 2–5 days after fever. Later symptoms include abdominal pain, joint pain, and diarrhea. In addition, usually around six days after the onset of fever, a red, spotted rash occurs in 35–60% of patients. Complications can arise in patients suffering severe cases when the respiratory, central nervous, gastrointestinal, and renal systems are affected. Long-term effects of Rocky Mountain spotted fever can include paralysis, amputation of limbs due to gangrene, loss of hearing and bowel or bladder control, and development of movement disorders.

■ Scope and Distribution

Rocky Mountain spotted fever occurs in almost all regions of the United States. It is dominant in the south-Atlantic regions, particularly in North Carolina. This fever also occurs in South America, particularly in Argentina, Brazil, Colombia, Costa Rica, Panama and, also, in Mexico. Bacterial strains (types) closely related to *Rickettsia rickettsii* also cause spotted fevers worldwide. The type of *Rickettsia* bacterium present in a region determines which type of spotted fever occurs in the area.

In the United States, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recorded 250–1,200 cases of Rocky Mountain spotted fever annually from 1955 to 2005. This fever predominantly occurs during warm weather when ticks are more active. The summer months in the United States, from April through to September, mark the highest levels of infection throughout the year.

All people can potentially contract Rocky Mountain spotted fever. However, males, Caucasians, and children are infected most often. Increased exposure to ticks increases the likelihood of infection. Therefore, people who live with dogs or people who reside near tick-inhabited areas, such as woodlands, are at risk of infection.

■ Treatment and Prevention

A course of antibiotics is used to treat Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Doxycycline is recommended by the CDC as an effective drug to eradicate this infection. However, for pregnant women, chloramphenicol should be used as an alternative to doxycycline, since doxycycline is associated with the risk for malformations of the teeth and bones in unborn children. Treatment administered immediately provides the best results. Fever usually subsides within 1–3 days following antibiotic treatment given within 4–5 days after the onset of the disease. However, recovery from fever will take longer in patients who receive treatment later, or who are suffering a severe illness.

There is no vaccine available for Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Therefore, the best prevention method is to avoid contact with ticks. This can be achieved in several ways. Areas inhabited by ticks, such as long grasslands and woodlands, may be avoided. If these areas can't be avoided, repellents on clothing or skin can help repel ticks and prevent them from biting. In addition, protective clothing, such as long-sleeved shirts, boots, and hats, can be worn to prevent ticks coming in contact with the skin. It is also important to thoroughly check the body for ticks following any activity in tick habitats. This may prevent ticks from biting, or, in the cases when ticks have already attached to the skin, will ensure early removal and reduce the chances of infection.

Large-scale prevention methods include the use of acaricides (insecticides that kill ticks) in tick-infested areas in order to reduce the number of ticks. If there are fewer ticks in an area, it is less likely that humans will be bitten.

■ Impacts and Issues

Rocky Mountain spotted fever is a potentially life-threatening disease. Late diagnosis and delayed treatment increase the chances of complications, such as kidney failure and even death. As this disease infects approximately 800 people a year in the United States and is potentially fatal, increased awareness and reminders about prevention are recommended by the Directors of Health Promotion and Education.

This disease can be difficult to diagnose during the initial stages due to its wide range of symptoms and the fact that not all cases exhibit the characteristic red rash. This is a problem, since late diagnosis increases the chances of severe complications and possible fatalities. To address this problem, treatment is usually given before conclusive evidence confirms the disease. This approach ensures that patients with the disease receive treatment as soon as possible.

Despite prevention methods, such as the use of aracicides, the wearing of protective clothing, and the use of repellents, ticks can still come in contact with humans. When people find ticks on their bodies, removal is vital, and the earlier it is done, the less chance there is of infection. However, incorrect removal of ticks can cause complications. If the mouthparts of the tick remain in the body, infection can still occur. Furthermore, handling ticks with bare hands also increases the risk of exposure as infection can occur when blood or feces come in contact with open skin. The best technique for removing a tick involves grabbing the tick with tweezers as close to the skin as possible and pulling it away from the skin. Coating ticks with petroleum jelly or burning them with a match are not effective techniques for tick removal, despite the popularity of these methods with the general public.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Rickettsial Disease; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G. L., J. E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2004.

Periodicals

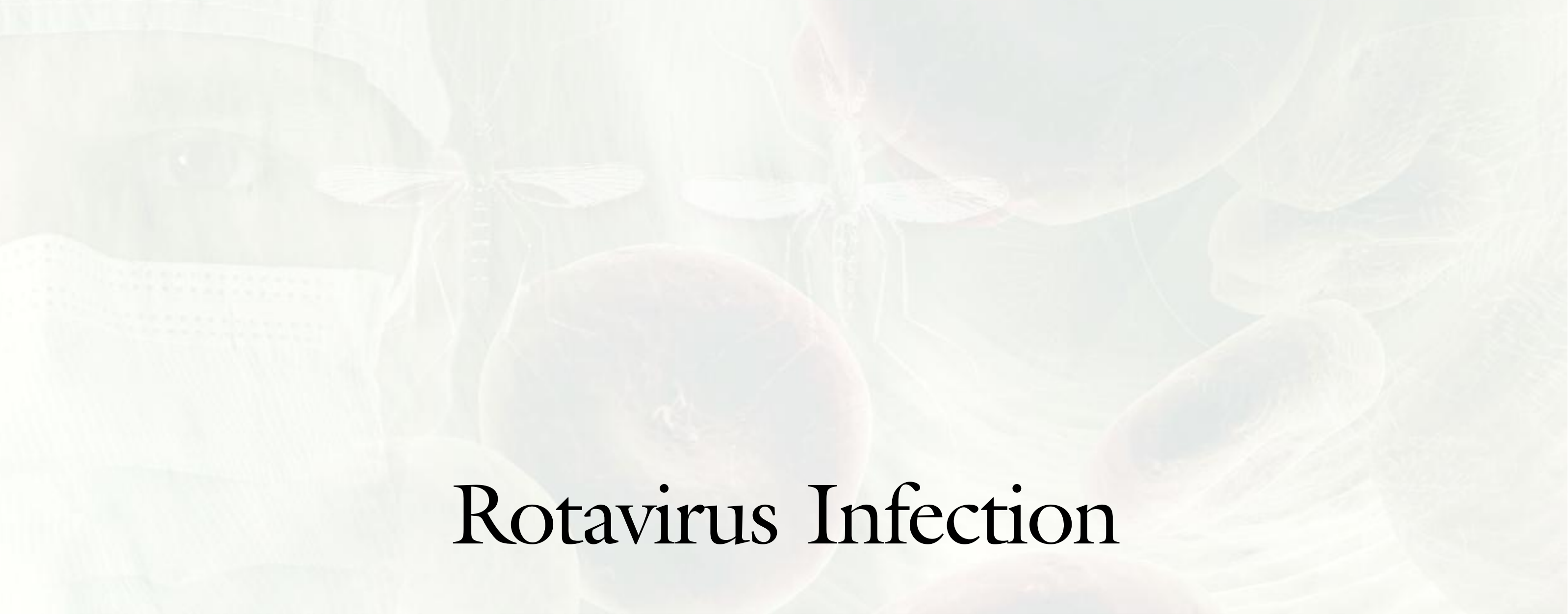
Parola, P., C. D. Paddock, and D. Raoult. “Tick-Borne Rickettsioses Around the World: Emerging Diseases Challenging Old Concepts.” *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* 18 (October 2005): 719–756. Also available online at <http://cmr.asm.org/cgi/content/full/18/4/719>.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever.” May 20, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvrd/rmsf/index.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Directors of Health Promotion and Education. “Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever.” <http://www.astdhpphe.org/infect/rms.html> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Illinois Department of Public Health. “Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever.” <http://www.idph.state.il.us/public/hb/hbrmsf.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).



Rotavirus Infection

Introduction

Rotavirus is one of the primary causes of gastroenteritis among children around the world and the most common cause of severe diarrhea. There are approximately 130 million cases worldwide annually and over 500,000 deaths. In the United States, about 55,000 children are hospitalized each year due to gastroenteritis caused by rotavirus.

There are eleven different strains of rotavirus, of which four are known to cause diarrhea in humans. The disease has an incubation period of up to two days, after which symptoms such as fever, stomach ache, vomiting, and diarrhea appear. The disease is usually self-limiting within eight days. However, dehydration is a severe complication and may prove fatal if untreated.

Rotavirus is very stable in the environment and while transmission usually occurs through ingestion of fecally contaminated food or water, people may also become infected following contact with contaminated surfaces, such as toys and benches. Prior infection by rotavirus may reduce the severity of subsequent infections and, due to this fact, trials of a vaccine are being conducted. It is thought that this vaccine could lessen the impact of infection among children and significantly reduce mortality rates around the world.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Rotavirus is the causative agent for most cases of gastroenteritis among children globally. It was first shown to cause diarrhea in 1972 and was named the following year based on the wheel-like appearance of the virus. Of the several strains identified, Group A is associated with childhood gastroenteritis, while Groups B and C most often occur in adults. The disease is also called infantile diarrhea and winter diarrhea because outbreaks most commonly occur in infants and during the cooler months of winter.

Symptoms usually appear within 48 hours of infection and include fever, abdominal cramping, vomiting, and watery diarrhea, lasting up to eight days. Chronic conditions may result in severe fluid loss leading to dehydration, which is a common complication associated with gastroenteritis. Signs of dehydration include dry lips, a dry tongue, dry skin, and sunken eyes. While dehydration is readily treatable, it is responsible for the fatalities associated with infections of this kind.

Rotavirus infections are highly contagious and are transmitted via the fecal-oral route. The highest incidence is among infants and children, where good hygiene is difficult to maintain. Following ingestion, the viral particles imbed in the mucosal layers of the small intestine and may be passed in excretions. The virus is very stable in the environment and infection may result from ingestion of contaminated food and water or from contact with contaminated surfaces, such toys or tables. Prior infection does not produce complete immunity, but subsequent infections are usually less severe than the primary infection.

Scope and Distribution

Rotavirus is responsible for an estimated 130 million cases of diarrhea worldwide annually and over 500,000 deaths. In the United States, over 3 million cases occur annually and over 55,000 children are hospitalized as a result. The availability of health care makes fatal cases of rotavirus rare in the United States.

The ability of the virus to persist in the environment enhances the threat of infection among all societies. In the United States, the disease is usually seen in the winter with annual epidemics most often occurring between the months of November and April. In developing nations, the virus circulates all year as a result of poorer access to clean water and health care. Outbreaks

An infant infected with Rotavirus cries while being aided by a nurse. *AP Images.*

are common due to the way in which the virus is transmitted and to the fact that contamination of a major water source often results in infection for everyone using that supply.

The highest rates of infection occur among infants and children. In developed nations, rotavirus is most likely to occur before a child's second birthday. Children between the ages of 6 and 24 months who attend day care are at higher risk for rotavirus infection. This is due to the fact that these locations commonly harbor diseases transmitted by the fecal-oral route, and the fact that it is difficult to ensure the maintenance of good hygiene practices, such as handwashing, at this young age.

Adults tend not to develop the disease and adults in contact with the virus typically only develop a mild infection. Most instances of adult infection occur in elderly people and those with compromised immunity, such as transplant patients, chemotherapy patients, and people with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).

■ Treatment and Prevention

In persons with intact immunity, the infection is self-limiting and symptoms will resolve within a few days of onset. While there is no specific treatment for the infection itself, oral rehydration therapy is essential and acts to restore the fluid lost as a result of severe dehydration. In developed countries, electrolyte and fluid replacement solutions are readily available over-the-counter, although serious cases of dehydration may require hospitalization for intravenous treatment. Substantial rehydration options are much more limited in developing nations and, in cases of contaminated water supply, drinking the contaminated water further contributes to the infection rather than helping to treat the symptoms of the infection.

The environmental stability of rotavirus means that basic hygiene is often not enough to prevent infection. Improvements in food, water, and sanitation do not often reduce disease incidence, although they may be employed to limit the spread of the infection. In day care settings, monitoring children to ensure that they are correctly washing hands after toilet use and during food preparation can reduce the spread of the disease.

A combined vaccine of all four strains of rotavirus known to cause severe gastroenteritis was approved for use in 1998. However, the vaccine was later withdrawn due to potentially fatal side effects involving blocking or twisting of the intestine. In 2006, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration approved a vaccine for use in the United States. A second vaccine was approved for use in Europe in 2006. The Rotavirus Vaccine Program (RVP) was established in 2003 by PATH with the support of the World Health Organization and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. The goal of RVP is to make the vaccines available in developing countries.

■ Impacts and Issues

Rotavirus is responsible for 20–70% of hospitalizations and up to 800,000 of the 3 million deaths per year from diarrhea in developing nations. Within these communities of limited resources, these infections almost always result in severe symptoms and carry a significant mortality rate.

WORDS TO KNOW

DEHYDRATION: Dehydration is the loss of water and salts essential for normal body function. It occurs when the body loses more fluid than it takes in. Water is very important to the human body because it makes up about 70% of the muscles, around 75% of the brain, and approximately 92% of the blood. A person who weights about 150 pounds (68 kilograms) will contain about 80 quarts (just over 75 liters) of water. About two cups of water are lost each day just from regular breathing. If the body sweats more and breathes heavier than normal, the human body loses even more water. Dehydration occurs when that lost water is not replenished.

FECAL-ORAL ROUTE: The transmission of minute particles of fecal material from one organism (human or animal) to the mouth of another organism.

REHYDRATION: Dehydration is excessive loss of water from the body; rehydration is the restoration of water after dehydration.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

In developed countries, the fatalities associated with rotavirus infection are significantly lower, with only around 100 of the 3 million cases resulting in death. However, in these areas, the rate of infection is still quite high and therefore poses other issues for communities. The economic impact of the disease is significant, since infected children account for over 500,000 physician visits, over 50,000 hospitalizations, and an estimated $300 million in medical costs each year.

Recognition of the impacts associated with diarrhea caused by rotavirus led to extensive research to develop vaccines against this disease. The development of the vaccine against rotavirus is expected to reduce the incidence and severity of rotavirus infections in developed countries. However, the successful development of a vaccine brings with it numerous issues regarding not only affordability, but also availability to communities in developing countries. Immunization at a cost of $10–20 per dose may be cost effective in industrialized countries, but is generally impractical in developing nations where per capita health care expenditure is less. This suggests that the global defense against rotavirus infection will require the cooperation of national governments and international agencies.

SEE ALSO *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Handwashing; Vaccines and Vaccine Development; Viral Disease; Water-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2004.

Periodicals

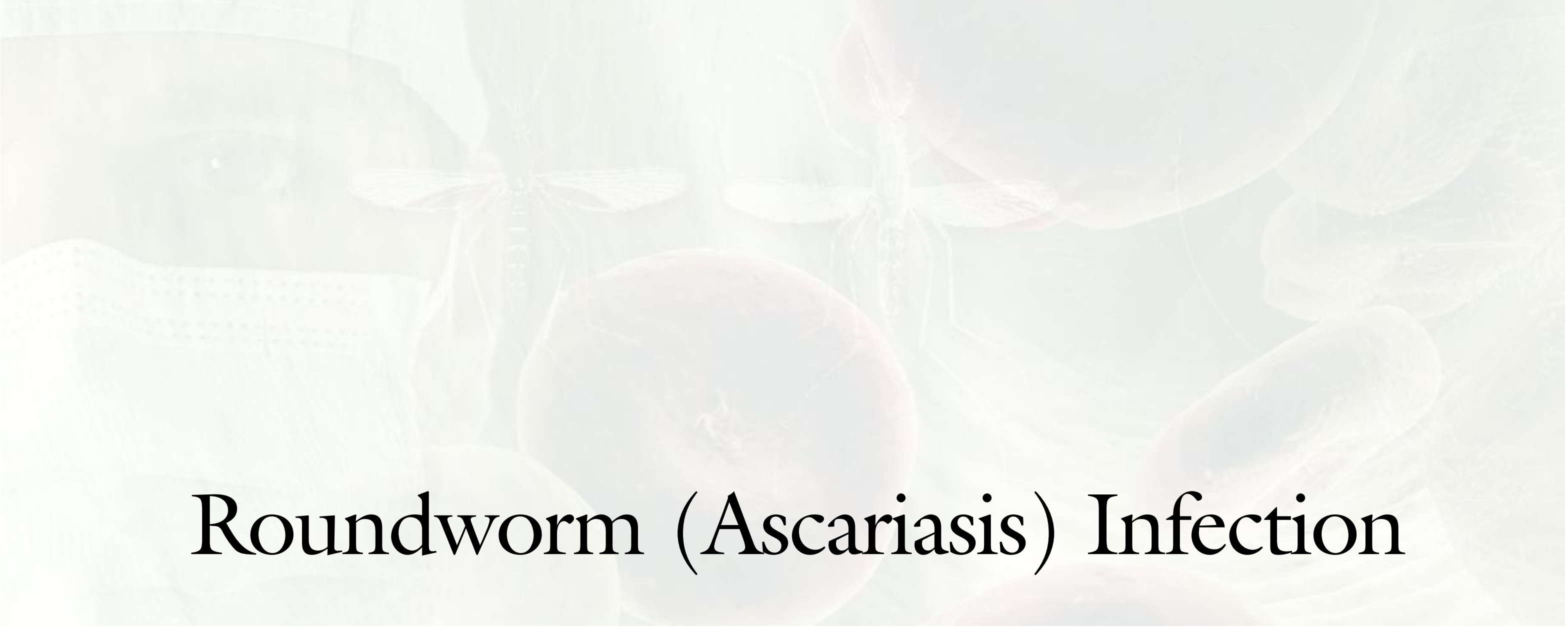
World Health Organization. “Rotavirus Vaccines.” *Weekly Epidemiological Record* 81 (January 6, 2006): 8 Also available online at: <http://www.who.int/wer/2006/wer8101.pdf> (accessed May 10, 2007).

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Rotavirus Home Page.” March 26, 2007. <http://www.cdc.gov/rotavirus/> (accessed May 10, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease (NIAID). “Rotavirus Vaccine: Preventing Severe Diarrheal Disease in Infants.” May 25, 1999 <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/Publications/discovery/rotav.htm> (accessed March 12, 2007).

Rotavirus Vaccine Program (RVP). “About RVP.” 2007. <http://www.rotavirusvaccine.org/about.htm> (accessed March 12, 2007).



Roundworm (Ascariasis) Infection

Introduction

Ascariasis (as-kuh-RYE-uh-sis), or roundworm infection, is an infection caused by the parasitic helminth, or roundworm *Ascaris lumbricoides.* It is considered to be the largest roundworm that infects the intestines of humans. *A. lumbricoides* infects humans and other mammals when embryonated eggs are ingested with contaminated food or water.

The parasite, which is commonly called the giant intestinal roundworm, can grow up to a length of 6–12 in (15–30 cm) by a diameter of 0.12–0.32 in (0.3–0.8 cm) in males and 8–14 in (20–35 cm) by 0.2 in (0.5 cm) in females. The embryonated eggs are the infectious part of the disease.

It is estimated that up to one-fourth of the world's population is infected with the roundworm *A. lumbricoides.* The National Institutes of Health (NIH) estimates that, generally, over one billion people are infected worldwide, with children being affected more seriously and more frequently than adults.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Infection occurs via the fecal-oral route, most often when contaminated food is eaten that contains fertilized eggs within fecal material. The larvae hatch and burrow into the moist lining (mucosa) of the intestines. They then travel to the lungs where they further mature—usually for 10 to 14 days. They eventually travel through the respiratory tract and up into the throat where they are swallowed and sent to the small intestines. They mature as worms while attached to the walls of the small intestines.

A mature female can produce about 200,000 eggs per day. Roundworms live approximately one to two years. The time from egg ingestion to egg egression with feces is between two and three months. Upon egress from a host, the eggs become infectious within 18 days to several weeks—with the range dependent on soil conditions such as temperature.

Symptoms are usually few, and sometimes not even evident, especially when the worms are immature and small. Noticeable symptoms usually occur between four and 16 days of ingestion. Common symptoms include diarrhea, fever, inflammation, wheezing, and nonproductive cough. Other serious problems develop whenever the worms live within the lungs (pulmonary symptoms) or throughout the body (neurological disorders). The final symptoms are gastrointestinal distress, nausea, vomiting, fever, nutritional insufficiencies, peritonitis (inflammation of abdominal wall), enlargement of the liver or spleen, and observation of live worms in stools. In rare cases, worms may obstruct the intestines, cause pneumonitis (inflammation of the lungs), or cause eosinophilia (increase in white blood cells).

Humans become infected by direct contact of the worms to skin and through the ingestion of soil and vegetation that contain fecal matter contaminated with eggs. Transmission can also occur when wastewater is recycled onto crop fields as fertilizer—a practice that is common in developing countries.

Scope and Distribution

Roundworm infection is found throughout the world, but especially in tropical regions and among the poorest areas with the worst of hygiene conditions. It is pronounced along the rural areas of the Gulf Coast within the United States; in Africa, especially Nigeria; and in Southeast Asia, especially Indonesia. About 2 percent of people in the United States are estimated to be infected with roundworms. High-risk groups include visitors and travelers to third-world countries.

Treatment and Prevention

The diagnosis is easily made when the infected person actually observes worms in his/her stool or vomit. If that does not happen, stool samples can be taken to medically

WORDS TO KNOW

EMBRYONATED: When an embryo has been implanted in a female animal, that animal is said to be embryonated.

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

FECAL-ORAL-ROUTE: The spread of disease through the transmission of minute particles of fecal material from one organism to the mouth of another organisms. This can occur by drinking contaminated water, eating food that was exposed to animal or human feces (perhaps by watering plants with unclean water), or by the poor hygiene practices of those preparing food.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

show the presence of eggs. Blood counts can also diagnosis eosinophilia; and respiratory samples can find pneumonitis and other pulmonary diseases.

Treatment involves medicines that commonly combat parasitic worms such as albendazole (Albenza®), mebendazole (Ovex®, Vermox®), piperazine (Entacyl®), pyrantel pamoate (Antiminth®, Pin-Rid®, Pin-X®), and thiabendazole (Mintezol®). Corticosteroid medicine is sometimes given to counter inflammation.

Roundworm infection is prevented by using careful and comprehensive hygiene techniques such as protecting food from soil and dirt, thoroughly washing vegetables and fruits, washing hands especially after using the toilet, and other similar sanitary measures.

■ Impacts and Issues

Ascariasis dominates in areas with poor sanitation. According to the Office of Laboratory Security at the Public Health Agency of Canada, roundworm infection is concentrated in moist tropical areas of the world. Within these regions, its incidence can be over 50 percent. The highest group infected in these areas is children aged three to eight years. It adds to iron-deficiency anemia, malnutrition, and impairment of growth and intelligence among the people it affects.

Complications that occur as a direct result of roundworm infection occur in many cases. The most common complication is intestinal tract obstruction. Although complications are only fatal in a small number of cases, according to the NIH, an estimated 8,000 to 10,000 deaths occur annually in the world, primarily in children. Male children are thought to more likely get the disease because of amount of time that they play in dirt.

The disease has generally been neglected in the past because it occurs primarily in poor, rural areas of the world. The affliction has been around for thousands of years. However, aggressive treatment has been recently attempted in some regions.

According to a 2005 paper published in the journal *PLoS Medicine*, ascariasis is considered one of thirteen neglected tropical diseases in Africa. The authors contend that even though HIV (human immunodeficiency virus), TB (tuberculosis), and malaria are the most serious of the tropical diseases, others such as ascariasis are also major medical problems in need of attention throughout the world. Even though neglected in the past, recent attempts to remedy the affects of ascariasis have been successful though affordable and effective means.

SEE ALSO *Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Globalization and Infectious Disease; Handwashing; Helminth Disease; Travel and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Handbook of Diseases. Philadelphia, Penn.: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.

Holland, Celia V., and Malcolm W. Kennedy. *The Geohelminths: Ascaris, Trichuris, and Hookworm.* Boston, Mass.: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2002.

Infectious Diseases Sourcebook, edited by Karen Bellenir. Detroit, Mich.: Omnigraphics, 2004.

Tamparo, Carol D. *Diseases of the Human Body.* Philadelphia, Penn.: F.A. Davis Co., 2005.

Web Sites

MedlinePlus, National Institutes of Health. "Ascariasis." October 9, 2006. <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000628.htm> (accessed May 21, 2007).

Office of Laboratory Security, Public Health Agency of Canada. "Ascaris lumbricoides." January 23, 2001.

<http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/msds-ftss/msds9e.html> (accessed May 21, 2007).

PLoS Medicine, Public Library of Science. "Rapid-Impact Interventions: How a Policy of Integrated Control for Africa's Neglected Tropical Diseases Could Benefit the Poor." October 11, 2005. <http://medicine.plosjournals.org/perlserv/?request=get-document&doi=10.1371/journal.pmed.0020336#JOURNAL-PMED-0020336-T001> (accessed May 21, 2007).

Rubella

Introduction

The word rubella comes from the Latin word for “little red” and refers to the characteristic rash that accompanies the disease. It was first described in the early nineteenth century, when it was thought to be a type of either scarlet fever or measles. German doctors then decided that rubella was a disease in its own right—which is why it is sometimes called German measles.

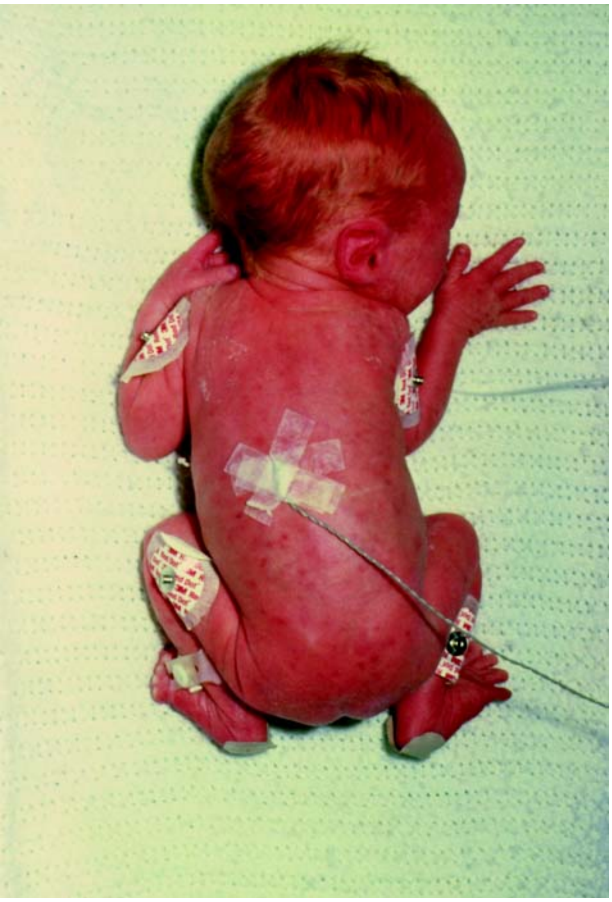
People of any age can contract rubella, and there were many epidemics in the first half of the twentieth century. Rubella only poses a real risk to the developing fetus. Infection during the first three months of pregnancy can cause the child to be born with congenital rubella syndrome, which may be accompanied by deafness, mental retardation, and blindness. Vaccination has greatly reduced the rate of rubella in the United States, and it is especially important that women of child-bearing age are protected from the disease.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The rubella virus belongs to the togavirus family and is a single-stranded RNA virus—that is, its genetic material is RNA, not DNA. It only naturally infects humans although other animals can be infected in experimental conditions. The incubation period of rubella virus is around 14 days, and infections are most common in late winter and early spring.

Most people with rubella infection have no, or only mild, symptoms. A rash, which is sometimes the only symptom, appears around 14–17 days after exposure to the virus. This rash is fainter than a measles rash and consists of tiny red spots. The rubella rash typically begins on the face and then spreads down the trunk to the rest of the body. Sometimes the rash is preceded by fever and swollen glands, while tiny red spots may appear on the soft palate. Generally the rash clears up in 3–4 days.

Adults are more prone to complications and more severe symptoms of rubella than children. Arthritis in the fingers, wrists, and knees affects 70% of adult females with rubella. Encephalitis (inflammation of the brain) is



A newborn infant with congenital rubella syndrome. *James Stevenson/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

a rare complication, affecting one in 6,000 rubella cases, and clinical studies have suggested a mortality rate varying between zero and 50%.

Congenital rubella syndrome (CRS) occurs among babies born to a mother who was infected with the virus during early pregnancy. Rubella can affect all the organs of a developing fetus. Deafness is the most common symptom, but cataract and other visual defects, and neurological abnormalities may also occur. The problems may not appear until the child is two to four years old. Other complications arising from CRS include diabetes and autism. Maternal infections occurring after 20 weeks of pregnancy are far less likely to lead to CRS.

Rubella is transmitted by the respiratory route—through coughs and sneezes. It is only moderately contagious. People without symptoms may still be infectious. Those with symptoms are at their most infectious when the rash appears.

Scope and Distribution

Rubella has been known since the nineteenth century and was long thought to be a trivial disease. Then, in 1941, the Australian ophthalmologist Norman Gregg reported a worrying trend—78 cases of severe cataracts among newborns, all of which could be traced back to rubella infection among the mothers in early pregnancy. Later, other problems such as heart defects, deafness, and mental retardation were noted in such babies. CRS is now diagnosed in around 85% of babies who have been exposed to rubella in the womb.

Epidemics of rubella were the norm every 7–10 years throughout the first half of the twentieth century and were always followed by an increase in the number of cases of CRS. The last major epidemic in the United States was in 1964 when there were 20,000 resulting cases of CRS and many deaths of babies in the womb.

Rubella and CRS became notifiable diseases in the United States in 1966 and a peak of 57,686 cases was noted in 1969, the year in which a vaccine was first introduced. Since then, cases have fallen to around 0.5 per 100,000 of the population, although there have been outbreaks in California, in 1990, and among the Amish people of Pennsylvania, in 1991. Following these outbreaks, California reported 25 new cases of CRS, Pennsylvania reported 33. The National Congenital Rubella Registry, which is managed by the National Immunization Program, carries out the national surveillance of CRS.

In 2004, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention declared that rubella was no longer endemic in the United States. Cases that do occur tend to be among Hispanic people who have been born in the Caribbean or in Latin America.

Rubella occurs around the world and it can affect people of any age. However, only around 10% of cases

WORDS TO KNOW

MEASLES: Measles is an infectious disease caused by a virus of the paramyxovirus group. It infects only man and the infection results in life-long immunity to the disease. It is one of several exanthematous (rash-producing) diseases of childhood, the others being rubella (German measles), chickenpox, and the now rare scarlet fever. The disease is particularly common in both pre-school and young school children.

MMR VACCINE: MMR (measles, mumps, rubella) vaccine is a vaccine that is given to protect someone from measles, mumps, and rubella. The vaccine is made up of viruses that cause the three diseases. The viruses are incapable of causing the diseases but can still stimulate the immune system.

NOTIFIABLE DISEASE: A disease that the law requires must be reported to health officials when diagnosed; also called a reportable disease.

RIBONUCLEIC ACID (RNA): Any of a group of nucleic acids that carry out several important tasks in the synthesis of proteins. Unlike DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), it has only a single strand. Nucleic acids are complex molecules that contain a cell's genetic information and the instructions for carrying out cellular processes. In eukaryotic cells, the two nucleic acids, ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), work together to direct protein synthesis. Although it is DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) that contains the instructions for directing the synthesis of specific structural and enzymatic proteins, several types of RNA actually carry out the processes required to produce these proteins. These include messenger RNA (mRNA), ribosomal RNA (rRNA), and transfer RNA (tRNA). Further processing of the various RNAs is carried out by another type of RNA called small nuclear RNA (snRNA). The structure of RNA is very similar to that of DNA, however, instead of the base thymine, RNA co

TOGAVIRUS: Togavirus are a type of virus. Rubella is caused by a type of togavirus.

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

With regard to a potential connection between the measles, mumps, and rubella Vaccine (MMR Vaccine) and autism, scientists at the National Immunization Program (NIP) at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) state that "the weight of currently available scientific evidence does not support the hypothesis that MMR vaccine causes autism. CDC recognizes there is considerable public interest in this issue, and therefore supports additional research regarding this hypothesis. CDC is committed to maintaining the safest, most effective vaccine supply in history."

As of May 2007 the CDC further states that, "there is no convincing evidence that vaccines such as MMR cause long term health effects. On the other hand, we do know that people will become ill and some will die from the diseases this vaccine prevents. Measles outbreaks have recently occurred in the UK and Germany following an increase in the number of parents who chose not to have their children vaccinated with the MMR vaccine. Discontinuing a vaccine program based on unproven theories would not be in anyone's best interest. Isolated reports about these vaccines causing longterm health problems may sound alarming at first. However, careful review of the science reveals that these reports are isolated and not confirmed by scientifically sound research. Detailed medical reviews of health effects reported after receipt of vaccines have often proven to be unrelated to vaccines, but rather have been related to other health factors. Because these vaccines are recommended widely to protect the health of the public, research on any serious hypotheses about their safety are important to pursue. Several studies are underway to investigate still unproven theories about vaccinations and severe side effects."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Immunization Program*

occur in people over 40 years old. In recent years, adults between 15 and 39 have accounted for about half of all cases, so rubella is no longer considered to be a childhood disease.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no treatment for rubella infection. The first live vaccines were introduced in 1969 and were replaced by an improved version in 1979. Rubella vaccine is now given in combination with mumps and measles as the MMR vaccine. It is recommended that a child be vaccinated with MMR between the age of 12 and 15 months, and he or she should receive another dose before school entry. Women of childbearing age should be checked for their immunity to rubella, or offered vaccination, if they do not already have evidence of having received the vaccine earlier. This can be done as part of regular gynecologic care, that is, at the family planning clinic, at a sexual health clinic, or in the doctor's office.

The rubella vaccine is very safe and confers lifelong immunity. Any adverse effects from MMR are likely due to the measles component, not the rubella component. However, there is a small theoretical risk that an unborn child could be affected by rubella vaccine, so it is not recommended for pregnant women, or for women who might become pregnant within four weeks of receiving the vaccine.

Impacts and Issues

Despite mass vaccination efforts, there are still an average of five to six cases of CRS per year in the United States. The numbers are tiny, in comparison to the size of the population. Yet each case represents a family tragedy and is costly in terms of health care for the child involved. In the United States, it is estimated that the lifetime health care costs for a person with CRS are more than $200,000. The mothers of most of the babies born with CRS in the United States were themselves born in countries where rubella vaccine was not readily available. Therefore, such vulnerable women should be targeted for rubella vaccination before they become pregnant. In addition, vaccination with MMR ought to be made universally available to reduce the burden of CRS worldwide.

SEE ALSO *Measles (Rubeola); Mumps; Scarlet Fever.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

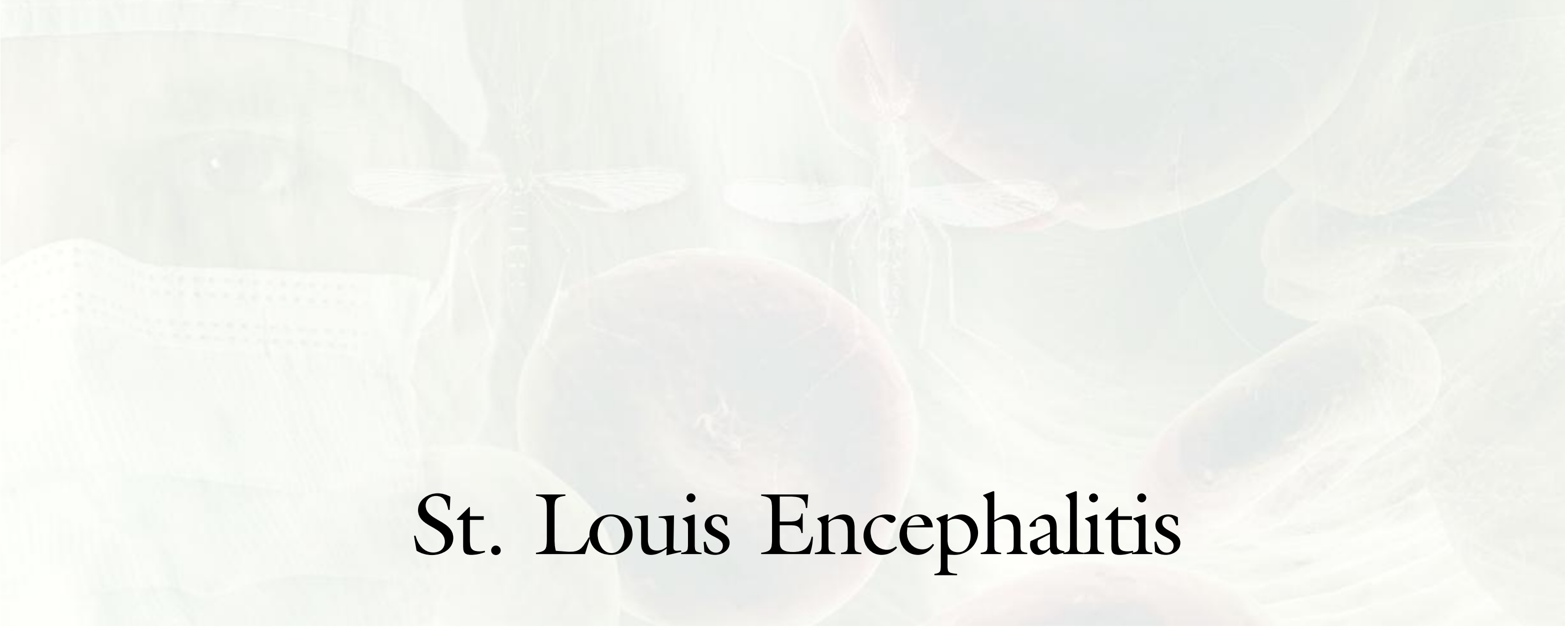
Books

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Pink Book. "Rubella." <http://www.cdc.gov/nip/publications/pink/rubella.pdf> (accessed April 23, 2007).

Susan Aldridge



St. Louis Encephalitis

Introduction

St. Louis encephalitis is a serious viral disease, affecting the brain and nervous system. It is the most common human disease spread by mosquitoes in the United States. The virus that causes the disease was discovered during an outbreak in St. Louis, Missouri, in 1933, giving the disease its common name. Encephalitis is an inflammation of the brain that can lead to serious symptoms and complications, such as convulsions and paralysis. The mortality rate from the disease can be as high as 30%.

The virus that causes St. Louis encephalitis is an arbovirus—short for arthropod-borne virus. Arboviruses are spread by invertebrates, of which the most important are blood-sucking insects, such as mosquitoes. There is no treatment or vaccine for St. Louis encephalitis and prevention depends upon controlling mosquitoes or avoiding their bites. Creating new habitats for mosquitoes, through deteriorating urban conditions, encourages the spread of the disease, as does global warming.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The St. Louis encephalitis virus is a flavivirus, related to the Japanese encephalitis virus. It is spread by mosquitoes of the *Culex* genus. In temperate areas of the United States, cases tend to occur during late summer and early fall. In the southern states, the infection may occur throughout the year.

Mild cases of St. Louis encephalitis virus infection have no symptoms other than fever and headache. More serious infections are accompanied by a severe headache, high fever, neck stiffness, stupor, disorientation, tremor, convulsions, and paralysis. The patient may enter a coma and the mortality rate is 3–30 percent.

St. Louis encephalitis is transmitted through the bite of the infected *Culex* mosquito, which acquires the virus by feeding on birds such as finches, sparrows, blue jays, doves, and robins. There is no person-to-person transmission and neither birds nor mosquitoes become ill by being infected with the virus.

Scope and Distribution

St. Louis encephalitis occurs in North, Central, and South America and in the Caribbean. It is mainly a public health problem in the United States, with 4,478 cases being reported since 1964—an average of 128 cases each year. Outbreaks have occurred in Mississippi, the western states, and Florida. The last major outbreak was in the Midwest in 1974–1977, when there were 2,500 cases in 35 states. Outbreaks have been smaller since then, with the last one being in New Orleans, Louisiana, in 1999 where 20 cases were reported.

The elderly, and those living in low-income and crowded conditions, are especially at risk of St. Louis encephalitis. Those working outdoors in certain areas, where they may come into contact with infectious mosquitoes, are also at risk.

Treatment and Prevention

There is no treatment for St. Louis encephalitis and no vaccine. Prevention relies upon public health measures to control mosquitoes. People in areas where there have been cases should avoid going out during dusk and dark, when the mosquitoes are most active. It is important to cover up with long pants and long-sleeved tops to avoid bites, and to use mosquito repellent.

Impacts and Issues

There is potential for further epidemics of St. Louis encephalitis in the United States, because mosquitoes will always create new habitats given the right conditions. In urban areas, conditions, such as poor waste

WORDS TO KNOW

ARTHROPOD-BORNE VIRUS: A virus carried caused by one of a phylum of organisms characterized by exoskeletons and segmented bodies.

ENCEPHALITIS: A type of acute brain inflammation, most often due to infection by a virus.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

disposal, may allow new breeding sites for mosquitoes to develop. A major concern is whether global warming will create new favorable habitats for the *Culex* mosquitoes that are the vector for the transmission of St. Louis encephalitis.

Since there is no effective treatment or vaccine for St. Louis encephalitis, and the disease could increase in the coming years, more research is needed. There is potential for a better understanding of the mosquito life cycle, especially with respect to its overwintering, and for better control of this vector. Research leading to development of a vaccine and an antiviral treatment for the disease is also desirable. On a global level, St. Louis encephalitis is currently rare, but it is a disease that could increase in importance, if global warming expands the range of its vector.

See Also *Eastern Equine Encephalitis; Encephalitis; Japanese encephalitis; Mosquito-borne Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Arborial Encephalitides." November 7, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/arbor/index.htm> (accessed April 28, 2007).

Directors of Health Promotion and Education. "St. Louis Encephalitis." <http://www.dhpe.org/infect/sle.html> (accessed April 28, 2007).

Salmonella Infection (Salmonellosis)

Introduction

Salmonellosis refers to a human infection that is caused by bacteria in a genus called *Salmonella*. Contamination of food by the bacteria is a common cause of salmonellosis.

Salmonellosis due to the contamination of food can be a food infection or a food intoxication, depending on the antigenic type (serotype) of *Salmonella* involved. A food infection relies on the growth of the bacteria to levels capable of causing symptoms. Growth of the contaminating strain is not necessary for a food intoxication since it is a toxin that has already been produced by the contaminating bacteria that cause the illness. Salmonellosis is most often a food infection, but if enough toxin-loaded bacteria are ingested, salmonellosis can be an intoxication.

Salmonellosis is common and widespread. Of particular concern, *Salmonella* have emerged that are resistant to many commonly used antibiotics.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Salmonella is a Gram-negative, rod-shaped bacterium. It is named after Daniel Salmon (1850–1914), who, with Theobald Smith (1859–1934), isolated the bacterium from pigs in 1885. Since then, over 2,500 different serotypes of the bacterium have been found; the term serotype indicates the protein composition of the bacterial surface, which produces a distinct immune response by the host. The many different serotype indicates that the surface of *Salmonella* is highly variable.

The bacterium is commonly found in the gastrointestinal tract of humans and other animals. In this environment it is of no concern. However, if food or water contaminated with *Salmonella*-containing feces are ingested, illness can result. Like other fecal bacteria, food contamination most often occurs when the food is handled by someone who has not properly washed their hands after having a bowel movement. Good hygiene is important in minimizing the risk of salmonellosis.

An Analytical Profile Index (API) test is performed to detect bacteria responsible for disorders related to *Salmonella* infections and other food poisoning. This method is used to identify bacteria based on biochemical reactions between the bacteria and various chemicals placed in the API wells. *G.Tompkinson/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

CONTAMINATED: The unwanted presence of a microorganism or compound in a particular environment. That environment can be in the laboratory setting, for example, in a medium being used for the growth of a species of bacteria during an experiment. Another environment can be the human body, where contamination by bacteria can produce an infection. Contamination by bacteria and viruses can occur on several levels and their presence can adversely influence the results of the experiments. Outside the laboratory, bacteria and viruses can contaminate drinking water supplies, foodstuffs, and products, causing illness.

ENTEROTOXIN: Enterotoxin and exotoxin are two classes of toxin that are produced by bacteria.

LIPOPOLYSACCHARIDE (LPS): Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) is a molecule that is a constituent of the outer membrane of Gram-negative bacteria. The molecule can also be referred to as endotoxin. LPS can help protect the bacterium from host defenses and can contribute to illness in the host.

SEROTYPES: Serotypes or serovars are classes of microorganisms based on the types of molecules (antigens) that they present on their surfaces. Even a single species may have thousands of serotypes, which may have medically quite distinct behaviors.

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

Salmonellosis is caused most often by two strains: *S. typimurium* and *S. enteritidis.* Other serotypes of the bacterium usually cause disease in animals such as cattle and pigs. If these serotypes infect humans, the infection can be severe and even life-threatening.

Poultry carcasses can be contaminated with intestinal contents during slaughter of the bird. The bacteria can remain alive long enough for the carcass to be shipped to a grocery store and sold. The bacteria are readily killed by heat. But, if cooking is inadequate, the surviving organisms are capable of causing illness. Eggs can also be contaminated if the shell has a crack or break, which allows the bacteria to enter the inside of the egg. Other foods that are often involved in salmonellosis are raw meat (if it is undercooked), processed meat, dairy products, custards and cream-based desserts, and sandwich filling such as tuna salad or chicken salad.

Symptoms of salmonellosis develop within a few hours of eating contaminated food. The symptoms include abdominal cramping, nausea with vomiting, fever, headache, chills and sweating, a feeling of weakness, and loss of appetite. Some people also develop watery diarrhea or—if cells lining the intestine are damaged—bloody diarrhea. The rapid loss of fluids due to diarrhea can be dangerous to infants and the elderly. As well, less commonly the infection spreads to the bloodstream. Some people can develop a painful condition called Reiter's syndrome, which can persist for years and which can lead to arthritis.

For most people, the infection lasts 4–7 days, and most people recover without needing medical attention. However, severe diarrhea usually results in hospitalization.

Outbreaks of salmonellosis can occur, due to the consumption of contaminated food in a restaurant or at a social gathering. In recent example, an outbreak due to *S. typhimurium* that occurred in 21 of the United States in September, 2006 was traced to the consumption of contaminated tomatoes at restaurants. However, a number of studies have indicated that more than 80% of cases occur individually. This is unfortunate, according to the World Health Organization (WHO), as it diverts media attention from a serious global problem, especially in developing and underdeveloped countries.

The *Salmonella* that cause salmonellosis possess what are termed virulence factors; molecules that enable the bacteria to establish an infection. One important virulence factor is called adhesin. This is a molecule that can recognize a target site on the host cell and help the bacterium adhere to the host cell target. An example of a *Salmonella* adhesin are tubes called fimbriae that stick out from the bacterial surface. The end of each fimbriae contains a protein that can bind with a specific host cell surface protein.

Another virulence factor is called lipopolysaccharide (LPS). There are many different structures of LPS. Those that are longer can help shield the bacterial surface from host compounds that can damage or kill the bacteria. Furthermore, a part of LPS called lipid A is a toxin.

Some strains of *Salmonella* also produce a toxin called enterotoxin. This toxin is located inside the bacteria, so as the numbers of *Salmonella* increase, the concentration of the enterotoxin in the food increases. Ingesting the food releases the enterotoxin in the intestine, where it ruptures the intestinal cells by forming a hole in their cell membrane.

■ Scope and Distribution

Salmonellosis is global in occurrence and common. According to data from the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), more than 40,000 cases of salmonellosis are reported each year in the United States.

Since many more cases are never reported, the actual total is much higher—1.4 million cases, according to CDC. Approximately 1,000 people in the United States die of salmonellosis-related complications every year.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis of salmonellosis relies on recognition of its symptoms and the identification of *Salmonella* from a stool (fecal) sample. Current tests that detect certain *Salmonella* proteins do not require growth of the bacteria, and thus can be completed within hours.

Identification of the type of *Salmonella* involved usually helps in determining which antibiotics to use. Salmonellosis usually responds well to antibiotics, however, serotypes of *Salmonella* that are resistant to a variety of antibiotics exist and are becoming more common.

Prevention involves good hygiene including handwashing and the cleaning of cooking utensils and equipment that have been used with foods such as poultry and ground meat before their re-use. Foods containing raw eggs should not be eaten; even if the eggs appeared intact, cracks that are not visible to the eye are large enough to allow bacteria to contaminate the egg.

Researchers are exploring the production of a vaccine against salmonellosis. The most promising strategy is to block the adhesion of the bacteria to the intestinal cells. This strategy has proven successful in developing a vaccine that appeared on the market in 2006 for another intestinal bacterium called *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 (*E. coli* O157:H7).

Impacts and Issues

Salmonellosis has major economic impacts. Millions of people each year miss work and school because of the illness. Health care dollars are spent looking after those who become hospitalized. Exact figures are difficult to obtain, especially from developing countries, as they do not report on salmonellosis. But, in the United States, the estimated 1.4 million annual number of cases of salmonellosis results in the hospitalization of 15,000 people. The annual total medical cost of dealing with salmonellosis in the U.S. is estimated to be $1 billion. Other costs due to lost productivity and lost wages push the total cost to an estimated $3 billion. In Denmark, food-related salmonellosis cost the economy $14 million in lost wages and health care costs in 2001.

In February 2007, *Salmonella*-contaminated peanut butter was responsible for a nationwide salmonellosis outbreak in the United States. The FDA warned consumers not to purchase or eat certain brands of peanut butter manufactured at a facility in Georgia. Companies with brands associated with the salmonellosis outbreak recalled all potentially contaminated products, including peanut butter for home use and commercial peanut butter products used by some fast-food chains. The *Salmonella*-contaminated foods associated with outbreak affected approximately 370 people in over 40 states. While salmonellosis is typically associated with poultry products, the 2007 outbreak was not the first associated with peanut butter. A similar salmonellosis event that occurred in Australia in the mid–1990s was traced to contaminated peanut butter.

The human suffering and economic consequences of salmonellosis is likely to increase with the continuing spread of *Salmonella* serotypes that are resistant to a variety of commonly used antibiotics. The WHO is trying to determine the global prevalence and antibiotic resistance patterns of the multi-drug resistant *Salmonella* through its Global Salm-Surv program.

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

According to the Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), the CDC "monitors the frequency of *Salmonella* infections in the country and assists the local and State Health Departments to investigate outbreaks and devise control measures. CDC also conducts research to better identify specific types of Salmonella. The Food and Drug Administration inspects imported foods, milk pasteurization plants, promotes better food preparation techniques in restaurants and food processing plants, and regulates the sale of turtles. The FDA also regulates the use of specific antibiotics as growth promotants in food animals. The US Department of Agriculture monitors the health of food animals, inspects egg pasteurization plants, and is responsible for the quality of slaughtered and processed meat. The US Environmental Protection Agency regulates and monitors the safety of drinking water supplies."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases.*

See Also *Food-borne Disease and Food Safety.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Prescott, Lansing M., John P. Harley, and Donald A. Klein. *Microbiology*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2004.

Tortora, Gerard J., Berell R. Funke, and Christine L. Case. *Microbiology: An Introduction*. New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2006.

United States Food & Drug Administration. *Bad Bug Book: Foodborne Pathogenic Microorganisms and Natural Toxins Handbook*. McLean: International Medical Publishing, 2004.

Brian Hoyle

Sanitation

Introduction

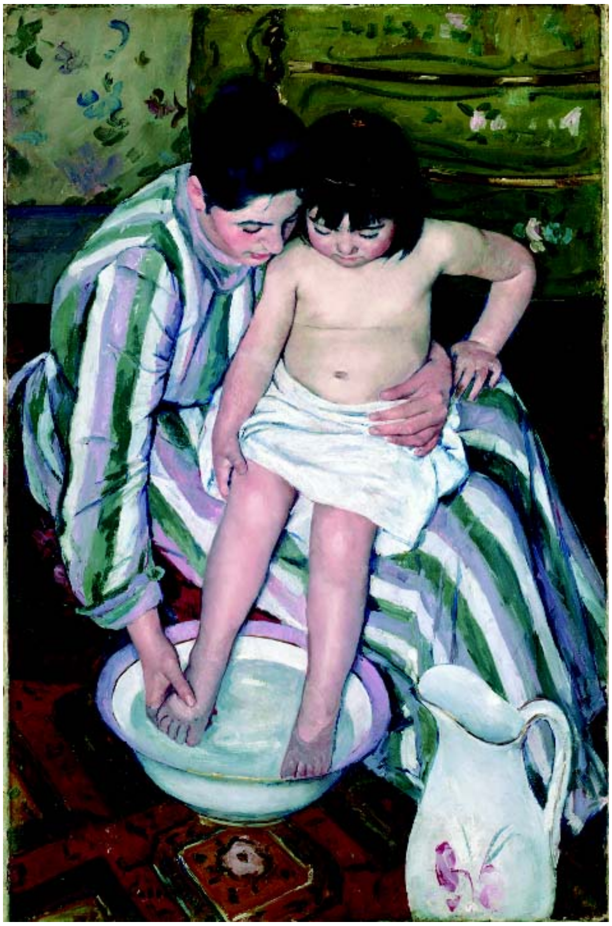
Poor sanitation permits infectious diseases to spread as fecal matter contaminates drinking water. In the developed world, water treatment has practically eliminated cholera, typhoid, and dysentery. In the third world, however, the absence of safe drinking water and latrines is associated with high rates of diarrheal illness. Unimproved sanitation includes public or shared latrines, pit latrines without slabs or open pits, hanging toilets or hanging latrines, bucket latrines, and an absence of facilities that forces people to use any area for defecation.

At the start of the twenty-first century, there were about 2.6 billion people in the world without adequate sanitation facilities. A lack of proper sanitation killed about 4,500 children per day while sentencing their neighbors to sickness and squalor. The elderly are more susceptible and more likely to die from diseases related to sanitation than other adults.

History and Scientific Foundations

Before the development of microbiology, the specific causes of diseases were unknown. Diseases such as cholera, typhoid, and dysentery were common in the United States, Europe, and other parts of the world. In 1854, during an Asiatic cholera epidemic in London, physician John Snow linked a contaminated well to deaths. A house privy emptying into a cesspool overflowed to a drain passing close to the well. Feces infected with the bacterium *Vibrio cholerae* contaminated the water and produced a toxin that caused diarrhea, vomiting, and severe fluid and electrolyte loss. Snow's discovery tied poor sanitation directly to disease and death.

In subsequent years, links between sanitation and typhoid, typhus, and dysentery were established. Dehydration is the outstanding characteristic of these diseases and the main cause of death. Typhoid is caused by bacterium called *Salmonella typhi*. A different pathogen (disease-causing organism), *Salmonella paratyphi*, causes



Cholera epidemics during the 1880s prompted public health officials to promote personal hygiene, including regular bathing, as a way to prevent the spread of cholera. *Mary Cassatt, American, (1844-1926), The Child's Bath, 1893, Oil on canvas, 39 1/2 x 26 in., Robert A. Waller Fund, 1910.2 Reproduction, The Art Institute of Chicago.*

A woman feeds her son next to a pot of dirty water in a community soup kitchen in Lima, Peru, in August 2002. Many community kitchens like this one lack potable water, leading them to recycle the same water for washing dishes and preparing food. As a result, hygiene is poor, and disease afflicts many residents. *AP Images.*

paratyphoid fever. *S. typhi* and *S. paratyphi* are passed in the feces and, occasionally, in the urine of infected people. Most cases of typhoid result from contaminated drinking water and poor sanitation. Typhoid causes fever, rash, delirium, and diarrhea.

Dysentery is also known as traveler's diarrhea. The two most common causes of dysentery are *Shigella* bacteria or amebic infection by the *Entamoeba histolytica*. Both forms of dysentery are spread by fecal contamination of food and water. Amebic dysentery is prevalent in regions where human excrement or "night soil" is used as fertilizer. Cysts (inactive amebas) are excreted in the feces of an infected person. When cysts are ingested with contaminated water, they become active amebas in the intestine and dysentery results. Dysentery was once known as "the bloody flux" because in produced blood in the feces.

Poor sanitation and hygiene are also prime contributors to the spread of schistosomiasis and soil-transmitted helminthiasis (worms). Children are particularly prone to infections because their high level of activity brings them into regular contact with contaminated water and soil.

Impacts and Issues

Diarrhea resulting from inadequate sanitation and a lack of clean drinking water affected the daily life of 42% of the world's population in 2000 according to the World Health Organization (WHO). In sub-Saharan Africa, about 769,000 children under five years of age died annually from diarrheal diseases between 2000 and 2003. Of the 57 million children under five years old in the developed nations, about 700 died annually from diarrheal diseases in the same period. A baby in sub-Saharan Africa has almost a 520 times greater chance of dying from diarrhea than an American or European child.

With so few families in the developing nations having access to a latrine or to water for hygiene, many people live in a environment that permits disease to spread rapidly. Chronic poor health robs children of the cognitive development necessary for schooling and takes earning power away from adults.

Oral rehydration therapy (ORT) is an inexpensive and effective way of saving lives. The widespread availability of oral hydration salts has contributed to significant reductions in infant deaths from diarrhea in the third world. However, ORT does not address the root causes of diarrhea.

Improved sanitation reduces deaths from diarrhea by an average of 32%. Accordingly, the WHO advises the construction of flush/pour-flush facilities to piped sewer systems, septic tanks, or pit latrines; pit latrines with slabs; and composting toilets. Communal facilities for groups of homes are not, as a rule, maintained in a clean and sanitary condition. They are not recommended. WHO further advises that the political environment in

WORDS TO KNOW

FECAL-ORAL ROUTE: The transmission of minute particles of fecal material from one organism (human or animal) to the mouth of another organism.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

SENTINEL: Sentinel surveillance is a method in epidemiology where a subset of the population is surveyed for the presence of communicable diseases. Also, a sentinel is an animal used to indicate the presence of disease within an area.

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

According to the World Health Organization (WHO):

- "In 2002, 2.6 billion people lacked access to improved sanitation, which represented 42% of the world's population.
- Over half of those without improved sanitation—nearly 1.5 billion people—live in China and India.
- In sub-Saharan Africa sanitation coverage is a mere 36%.
- Only 31% of the rural inhabitants in developing countries have access to improved sanitation, as opposed 73% of urban dwellers.
- In order to meet the sanitation Millennium Development Goals target, an additional 370 000 people per day up to 2015 should gain access to improved sanitation."

developing nations needs to be changed to support improved sanitation. WHO seeks legislation and regulations in support of sanitation; an increase in national capacity in the form of sanitation engineers and stronger institutions; governmental allocation of financial resources; educational programs that link sanitation, hygiene, health, and economic development; and improved information flow from producers to users.

The Centers for Disease Control recommends that travelers avoid raw food in areas where sanitation is inadequate. The only foods safe to consume in these regions are either cooked or fruit that has been washed in clean water and then peeled by the traveler personally. Additionally, accidentally swallowing small amounts of fecally contaminated water can cause illness. Pools that contain chlorinated water are considered safe places to swim if the disinfectant levels and pH are properly maintained. All travelers who have diarrhea are advised to refrain from swimming to avoid contaminating recreational water. Travelers with open cuts or abrasions that might serve as entry points for pathogens are warned to avoid swimming and wading in areas with poor sanitation.

Improvements in sanitation bring immediate and enduring benefits in health and dignity. However, these improvements can be beyond the financial means of some governments, particularly those in third world nations. In the 1980s, Brazil developed a condominial sewer system. Condominial systems provide less expensive, localized hookups for poor neighborhoods by connecting groups of houses, rather than individual houses, to the larger grid and by using cheaper materials. However, they have not been adapted in other developing countries as quickly as is needed. Bolivia built condominial systems only after it received assistance from the Swedish International Development Cooperation Agency and the World Bank's Water and Sanitation Program. These support agencies provided technical skills as well as funds. Other developing nations require the same sort of help.

China has used tightly sealed excreta vats for years to store human excrement for use as fertilizer. The vats produce ammonia and albuminoid nitrogen under anaerobic (without oxygen) conditions, which is reported to kill parasite eggs and reduce transmission of parasitic and infectious diseases. Chinese scientists have developed a biogas tank that is likely the future means of dealing with excrement. The tanks are tightly sealed to permit the fermentation and settling of excreta, livestock manure, crop stalks, weeds, and tree leaves. The tight seal prevents contamination of nearby water sources. About 60% of the gas produced in the tanks is methane. The methane from a family unit is used for cooking. This solution is both locally and globally environmentally friendly.

In 2004, Lee Jong-wook, then Director-General of the WHO, declared that sanitation is still a major sentinel (marker) for public health worldwide. Lee prefaced the 2004 "Water, Sanitation, and Hygiene Links to Health: Facts and Figures," with "I often refer to it as 'Health 101,' which means that once we can secure access to clean water and to adequate sanitation facilities for all people, irrespective of the difference in their living conditions, a huge battle against all kinds of diseases will be won." Included in the United Nations Millennium Goals is a specific target aiming to halve the number of people without access to safe drinking water and basic sanitation by the year 2015.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Salvato, Joseph A., Nelson L. Nemerow, and Franklin J. Agardy. *Environmental Engineering*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley, 2003.

World Health Organization/UNICEF Joint Monitoring Program for Water Supply and Sanitation. *Water for Life: Making it Happen*. Geneva: WHO, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control. "Travelers's Health." April 25, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/travel/index.htm> (accessed April 26, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Water, Sanitation, and Health." <http://www.who.int/water_sanitation_health/en/> (accessed May 5, 2007).

Caryn E. Neumann

SARS (Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome)

Introduction

Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) is the first emergent and highly transmissible viral disease to appear among humans during the twenty-first century. Patients with SARS develop flulike fever, headache, malaise, dry cough, and other breathing difficulties. Many patients develop pneumonia, and in 5–10% of cases, the pneumonia and other complications are severe enough to cause death. SARS is caused by a virus that is transmitted usually from person to person—predominantly by the aerosolized droplets of virus infected material.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

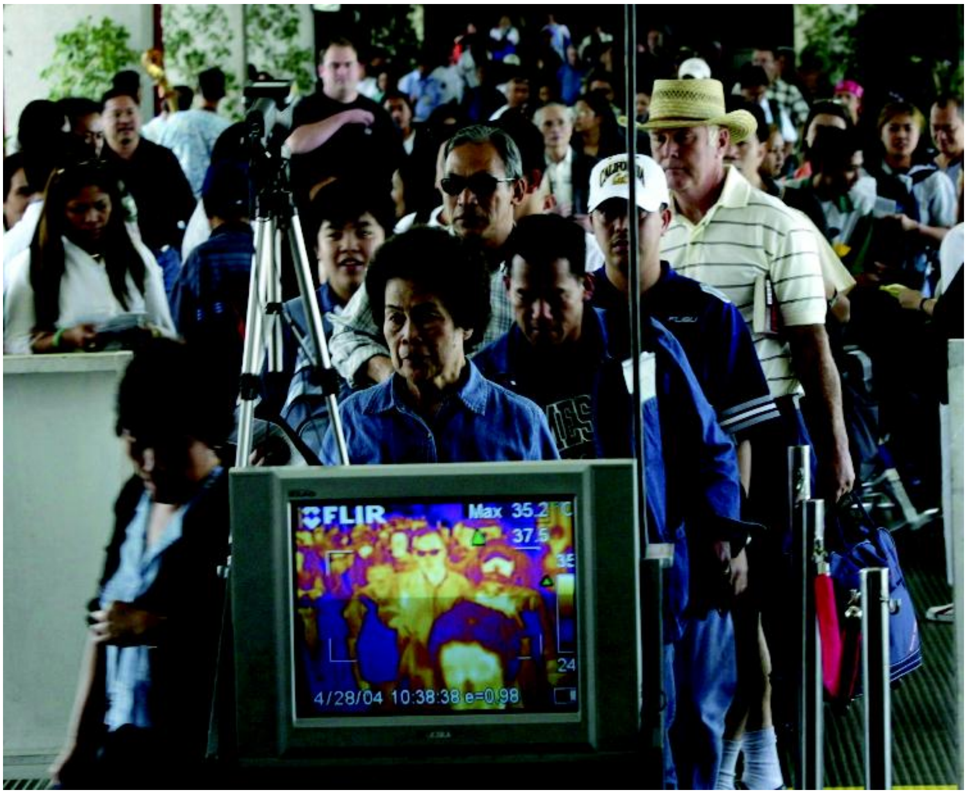
Many flu causing viruses have previously originated from Guangdong province in China because of cultural and exotic cuisine practices that bring animals, animal parts, and humans into close proximity. In such an environment, pathogens can more easily genetically mutate and make the leap from animal hosts to humans. The first cases of SARS showed high rates among Guangdong food handlers and chefs.

Chinese health officials initially remained silent about the SARS outbreak, and no special precautions were taken to limit travel or prevent the spread of the disease. The world health community, therefore, had no chance to institute testing, isolation, and quarantine measures that might have prevented the subsequent global spread of the disease.

Although not discovered until epidemiologists began to probe the subsequent 2003 outbreak, epidemiologists traced the first known case of what was eventually known as SARS to a November 2002 case in Guangdong province. By mid-February 2003, Chinese health officials tracked more than 300 cases, including five deaths in Guangdong province from what was at the time described as an acute respiratory syndrome.

On February 21, 2003, Liu Jianlun, a 64-year-old Chinese physician from Zhongshan hospital (later determined to have been a "super-spreader," a person capable of infecting unusually high numbers of contacts) traveled to Hong Kong to attend a family wedding despite

A Chinese worker, under quarantine at a building where investigators suspect other employees caught and spread SARS, peers through a gap in a gate in Beijing in April 2004. *© China Photos/Reuters/Corbis.*



Tourists walk past a thermal scanner used to detect passengers with fevers at Manila International airport. The Philippines has tightened its watch on arriving passengers at all international airports after China reported suspected cases of the potentially deadly severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) in Beijing. *© Romeo Ranoco/Reuters/Corbis.*

the fact that he had a fever. Epidemiologists subsequently determined that Jianlun passed on the SARS virus to other guests at the Metropole Hotel where he stayed—including American businessman Johnny Chen, who was en route to Hanoi, three women from Singapore, two Canadians, and a Hong Kong resident. Jianlun's travel to Hong Kong and the subsequent travel of those he infected allowed SARS to spread from China to the infected travelers' destinations.

Chen, the American businessman, grew ill in Hanoi, Viet Nam, and was admitted to a local hospital. Chen infected 20 health care workers at the hospital including noted Italian epidemiologist Carlo Urbani who worked at the Hanoi World Health Organization (WHO) office. Urbani provided medical care for Chen and first formally identified SARS as a unique disease on February 28, 2003. By early March, 22 hospital workers in Hanoi were ill with SARS.

Unaware of the problems in China, Urbani's report drew increased attention among epidemiologists when coupled with news reports in mid-March 2003 that Hong Kong health officials had also discovered an outbreak of an acute respiratory syndrome among health care workers. Unsuspecting hospital workers admitted the Hong Kong man infected by Jianlun to a general ward at the Prince of Wales Hospital because it was assumed he had a typical severe pneumonia—a fairly routine admission.

The first notice that clinicians were dealing with an usual illness came—not from health notices from China of increasing illnesses and deaths due to SARS—but from the observation that hospital staff, along with those subsequently determined to have been in close proximity to the infected persons, began to show signs of illness. Eventually, 138 people, including 34 nurses, 20 doctors, 16 medical students, and 15 other health-care workers, contracted pneumonia.

One of the most intriguing aspects of the early Hong Kong cases was a cluster of more than 250 SARS cases that occurred in a cluster of high-rise apartment buildings—many housing health care workers—that provided evidence of a high rate of secondary transmission. Epidemiologists conducted extensive investigations to rule out the hypothesis that the illnesses were related to some form of local contamination (e.g., sewage, bacteria on the ventilation system, etc.). Rumors began that the illness was due to cockroaches or rodents, but no scientific evidence supported the hypothesis that the disease pathogen was carried by insects or animals.

Chinese security guards wear masks to ward off SARS as they monitor the quarantined dormitory buildings of Beijing's Northern Jiaotong University in April 2003. About 400 students and workers were isolated or quarantined after SARS cases were found there. *© Reuters/Corbis.*

Hong Kong authorities then decided that those suffering the flulike symptoms would be given the option of self-isolation, with family members allowed to remain confined at home or in special camps. Compliance checks were conducted by police.

One of the Canadians infected in Hong Kong, Kwan Sui-Chu, return to Toronto, Ontario, and died in a Toronto hospital on March 5, 2003. As in Hong Kong, because there were no alerts from China about the SARS outbreak, Canadian officials did not initially suspect that Sui-Chu had been infected with a highly contagious virus, until Sui-Chu's son and five health care workers showed similar symptoms. By mid-April 2003 Canada reported more than 130 SARS cases and 15 fatalities.

Increasingly faced with reports that provided evidence of global dissemination, on March 15, 2003, the World Health Organization took the unusual step of issuing a travel warning that described SARS as a "worldwide health threat." WHO officials announced that SARS cases, and potential cases, had been tracked from China to Singapore, Thailand, Vietnam, Indonesia, Philippines, and Canada. Although the exact cause of the "acute respiratory syndrome" had not, at that time, been determined, WHO officials issuance of the precautionary warning to travelers bound for South East Asia about the potential SARS risk served notice to public health officials about the potential dangers of SARS.

Within days of the first WHO warning, SARS cases were reported in United Kingdom, Spain, Slovenia, Germany, and in the United States.

WHO officials were initially encouraged that isolation procedures and alerts were working to stem the spread of SARS, as some countries reporting small numbers of cases experienced no further dissemination to hospital staff or others in contact with SARS victims. However, in some countries, including Canada, where SARS cases occurred before WHO alerts, SARS continued to spread beyond the bounds of isolated patients.

WHO officials responded by recommending increased screening and quarantine measures that included mandatory screening of persons returning from visits to the most severely affected areas in China, Southeast Asia, and Hong Kong.

On March 29, 2003, Dr. Urbani, the scientist who initially reported a SARS case, died of complications related to SARS contracted while investigating the outbreak.

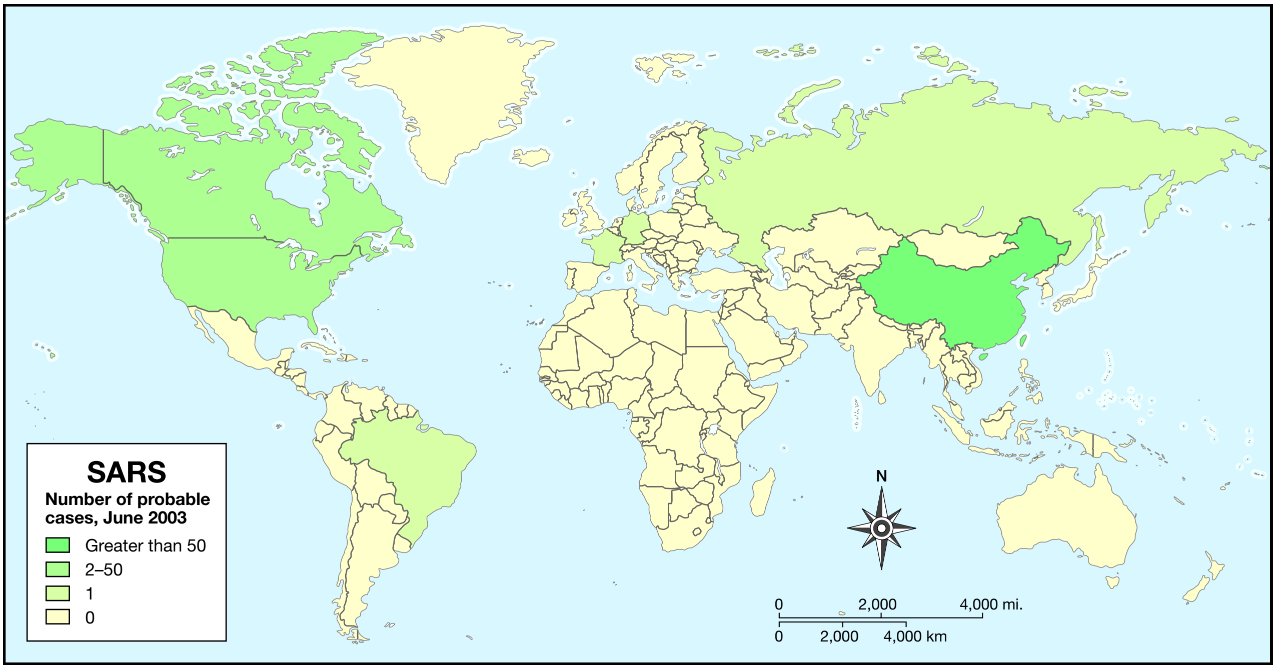
Mounting reports of SARS showed an increasing global dissemination of the virus. By April 9, 2003, the first confirmed reports of SARS cases in Africa reached WHO headquarters, and, eight days later, a confirmed case was discovered in India.

WHO took the controversial additional step of recommending against non-essential travel to Hong Kong and the Guangdong province of China. The recommendation, sought by infectious disease specialists, was not controversial within the medical community, but caused immediate concern regarding the potentially widespread economic impacts.

In China, fear of a widespread outbreak in Beijing caused a late, but intensive, effort to isolate SARS victims and halt the spread of the disease. By the end of April 2003, schools in Beijing were closed as were many public areas. Despite these measures, SARS cases and deaths continued to mount. According to the World Health Organization, by the end of the outbreak in July 2003, 8098 people worldwide had contracted SARS, and 774 had died from complications of the disease. In the United States eight people had laboratory evidence of SARS infection and all of the patients had recently traveled out of the country to places with SARS outbreaks.

The 2003 SARS outbreak then subsided almost as quickly as it arose.

In 2004, Chinese officials reported new cases of possible SARS in Beijing and in Anhui Province with at least one confirmed death. Almost 100 contacts were placed under medical observation. Chinese authorities reported outbreaks of SARS affecting laboratory workers who were exposed to the virus. In late 2004, four more unlinked, community-acquired cases of SARS were found in Guangdong province, and, although the source of this outbreak was unconfirmed, it is suspected to have



Map showing the number of probable cases of SARS as of June 26, 2003. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

originated in wild animals, most likely those found in food markets.

Scope and Distribution

At the end of April 2003, SARS public health officials expressed concern that SARS had the potential to become a global pandemic. Scientists, public health authorities, and clinicians around the world struggled to both treat and investigate the disease.

Global efforts at isolation, quarantine, and observation proved effective and a pandemic did not occur, however, and the last SARS infection in humans was reported in China in 2004.

As of May 2007, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and World Health Organization reported no current cases of SARS anywhere in the world.

Treatment and Prevention

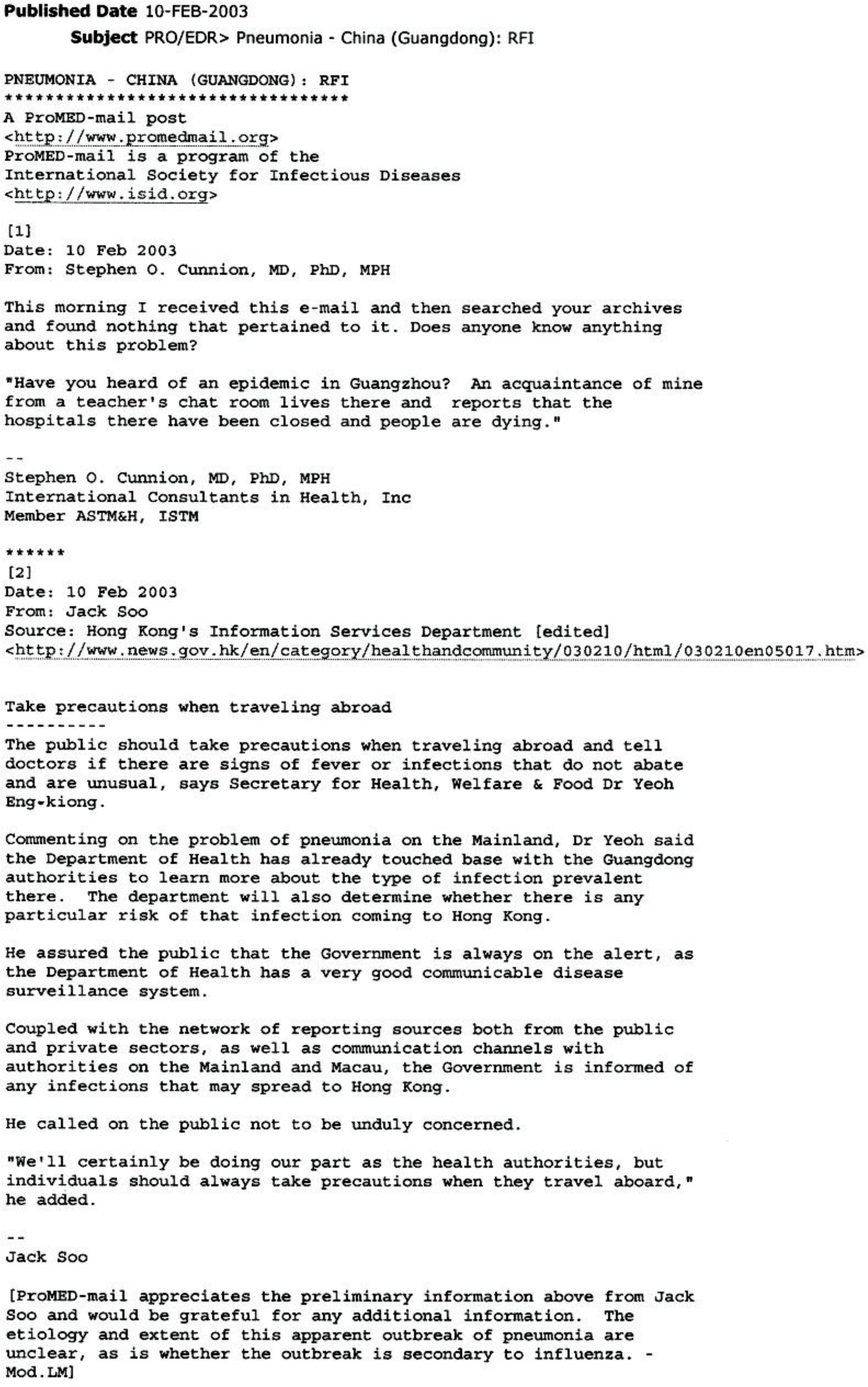
Scientists scrambled to isolate, identify, and sequence the pathogen responsible for SARS. Modes of transmission characteristic of viral transmission allowed scientists to place early attention on a group of viruses termed coronaviruses—some of which are associated the common cold. There was a global two-pronged attack on the SARS pathogen, with some efforts directed toward a positive identification and isolation of the virus and other efforts directed toward discovering the genetic molecular structure and sequence of genes contained in the virus. The development of a genomic map of the precise nucleotide sequence of the virus would be key in any subsequent development of a definitive diagnostic test, the identification of effective anti-viral agents, and perhaps a vaccine.

The development of a reliable and definitive diagnostic test was considered of paramount importance in keeping SARS from becoming a global pandemic. A definitive diagnostic test would not only allow physicians earlier treatment options, but would also allow the earlier identification and isolation of potential carriers of the virus.

Without advanced testing, physicians were initially forced to rely upon less sensitive tests that were unable to identify SARS prior to 21 days of infection, in most cases too late to effectively isolate the patient.

In mid-April 2003, Canadian scientists at the British Columbia Cancer Agency in Vancouver announced that they had sequenced the genome of the coronavirus most likely to be the cause of SARS. Within days, scientists at the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in Atlanta, Georgia, offered a genomic map that confirmed more than 99% of the Canadian findings. Both genetic maps were generated from studies of viruses isolated from SARS cases. The particular coronavirus mapped had a genomic sequence of 29,727 nucleotides—average for the family of coronavirus that typically contain between 29,000 and 31,000 nucleotides.

Proof that the coronavirus mapped was the specific virus responsible for SARS would eventually come from



Published Date 10-FEB-2003
Subject PRO/EDR> Pneumonia - China (Guangdong): RFI

PNEUMONIA - CHINA (GUANGDONG): RFI
****
A ProMED-mail post
<http://www.promedmail.org>
ProMED-mail is a program of the
International Society for Infectious Diseases
<http://www.isid.org>

[1]
Date: 10 Feb 2003
From: Stephen O. Cunnion, MD, PhD, MPH

This morning I received this e-mail and then searched your archives and found nothing that pertained to it. Does anyone know anything about this problem?

"Have you heard of an epidemic in Guangzhou? An acquaintance of mine from a teacher's chat room lives there and reports that the hospitals there have been closed and people are dying."

--
Stephen O. Cunnion, MD, PhD, MPH
International Consultants in Health, Inc
Member ASTM&H, ISTM

******
[2]
Date: 10 Feb 2003
From: Jack Soo
Source: Hong Kong's Information Services Department [edited]
<http://www.news.gov.hk/en/category/healthandcommunity/030210/html/030210en05017.htm>

Take precautions when traveling abroad

The public should take precautions when traveling abroad and tell doctors if there are signs of fever or infections that do not abate and are unusual, says Secretary for Health, Welfare & Food Dr Yeoh Eng-kiong.

Commenting on the problem of pneumonia on the Mainland, Dr Yeoh said the Department of Health has already touched base with the Guangdong authorities to learn more about the type of infection prevalent there. The department will also determine whether there is any particular risk of that infection coming to Hong Kong.

He assured the public that the Government is always on the alert, as the Department of Health has a very good communicable disease surveillance system.

Coupled with the network of reporting sources both from the public and private sectors, as well as communication channels with authorities on the Mainland and Macau, the Government is informed of any infections that may spread to Hong Kong.

He called on the public not to be unduly concerned.

"We'll certainly be doing our part as the health authorities, but individuals should always take precautions when they travel aboard," he added.

--
Jack Soo

[ProMED-mail appreciates the preliminary information above from Jack Soo and would be grateful for any additional information. The etiology and extent of this apparent outbreak of pneumonia are unclear, as is whether the outbreak is secondary to influenza. - Mod.LM]

This e-mail is a request for information about the disease that was later identified as SARS. Stephen O. Cunnion, a retired U.S. Navy epidemiologist, posted the e-mail to ProMED, an Internet site for infectious disease reporting, after he had heard from a friend that fear was gripping the city of Guangzou in China, where people were dying of an unidentified disease. *Courtesy, Dr. Stephen O. Cunnion and Dr. Jack Soo.*

animal testing. Rhesus monkeys were exposed to the virus via injection and inhalation and then monitored to determine whether SARS-like symptoms developed, and then if sick animals exhibited a histological pathology (i.e., an examination of the tissue and cellular level pathology) similar to findings in human patients. Other tests, including polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing, helped positively match the specific coronavirus present in the lung tissue, blood, and feces of infected animals to the exposure virus.

Identification of a specific pathogen can be a complex process, and positive identification requires thousands of tests. All testing is conducted with regard to testing Koch's postulates—the four conditions that must be met for an organism to be determined to the cause of a disease. First, the organism must be present in every case of the disease. Second, the organism must be able to be isolated from the host and grown in laboratory conditions. Third, the disease must be reproduced when the isolated organism is introduced into another, healthy host. The fourth postulate stipulates that the same organism must be able to be recovered and purified from the host that was experimentally infected.

SARS has an incubation period range of 2–7 days, with an average incubation of about four days. In some cases incubation has taken 10 days, and, in a very rare number of cases, as long as 14 days. Much of the inoculation period allows the virus to be both transported and spread by an asymptomatic carrier. With air travel, asymptomatic carriers can travel to anywhere in the world. The initial symptoms are non-specific and common to the flu. Infected cases then typically spike a high fever 100.4°F (38°C) as they develop a cough, shortness of breath, and difficulty breathing. SARS often fulminates (reaches it maximum progression) in a severe pneumonia that can cause respiratory failure and results in death in about 10% of its victims.

No definitive therapy has been demonstrated to have clinical effectiveness against the virus that causes SARS. Antibiotics, antiviral medications, corticosteroids, and supportive therapies such as fluids and ventilation are the mainstays of treatment for SARS.

Isolation and quarantine remain potent tools in the modern public health arsenal. Both procedures seek to control exposure to infected individuals or materials. Isolation procedures are used with patients with a confirmed illness. Quarantine rules and procedures apply to individuals who are not currently ill, but are known to have been exposed to the illness (e.g., been in the company of a infected person or come in contact with infected materials).

Isolation and quarantine both act to restrict movement and to slow or stop the spread of disease within a community. Depending on the illness, patients placed in isolation may be cared for in hospitals, specialized health care facilities, or, in less severe cases, at home. Isolation is a standard procedure for TB patients. In most cases, isolation is voluntary; however, isolation can be compelled by federal, state, and some local law.

WORDS TO KNOW

ASYMPTOMATIC: A state in which an individual does not exhibit or experience symptoms of a disease.

DISSEMINATION: The spreading of a disease in a population, or of disease organisms in the body, is dissemination. A disease that occurs over a large geographic area.

NUCLEOTIDE SEQUENCE: A particular ordering of the chain structure of nucleic acid that provides the necessary information for a specific amino acid.

Impacts and Issues

Before the advent of vaccines and effective diagnostic tools, isolation and quarantine were the principal tools to control the spread of infectious disease. The term "quarantine" derives from the Italian *quarantine* and *quaranta giorni* and dates to the plague in Europe. As a precautionary measure, the government of Venice restricted entry into the port city and mandated that ships coming from areas of plague—or otherwise suspected of carrying plague—had to wait 40 days before being allowed to discharge their cargos. The legal basis of quarantine in the United States was established in 1878 with the passage of Federal Quarantine Legislation in response to continued outbreaks of yellow fever, typhus, and cholera.

During the later years of the nineteenth century and throughout the twentieth century, the law bent toward protecting the greater needs of society. Quarantine was often used for political, as well as medical, reasons; it was implemented to contain and discourage immigration. In other cases, such as with tuberculosis (TB), quarantine, proved effective and courts wielded wide authority to isolate, hospitalize, and to force patients to take medications.

The public discussion of SARS-related quarantine in the United States and Europe renewed tensions between the needs for public heath precautions that safeguard society at large and the liberties of the individual.

States governments within the United States have a general authority to set and enforce quarantine

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

With regard to severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that "available information suggests that persons with SARS are most likely to be contagious only when they have symptoms, such as fever or cough. Patients are most contagious during the second week of illness. However, as a precaution against spreading the disease, CDC recommends that persons with SARS limit their interactions outside the home (for example, by not going to work or to school) until 10 days after their fever has gone away and their respiratory (breathing) symptoms have gotten better."

"To date, no cases of SARS have been reported among persons who were exposed to a SARS patient before the onset of the patient's symptoms. If transmission of SARS recurs, there are some common-sense precautions that you can take that apply to many infectious diseases. The most important is frequent handwashing with soap and water or use of an alcohol-based hand rub. You should also avoid touching your eyes, nose, and mouth with unclean hands and encourage people around you to cover their nose and mouth with a tissue when coughing or sneezing."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*

conditions. At the federal level, the CDC's Division of Global Migration and Quarantine is empowered to detain, examine, or conditionally release (release with restrictions on movement or with a required treatment protocol) individuals suspected of carrying certain listed communicable diseases.

In 2003 the CDC recommended SARS patients be voluntarily isolated, but did not recommend enforced isolation or quarantine. Regardless, CDC and other public heath officials, including the Surgeon General, sought and secured increased powers to deal with SARS. On April 4, 2003, U.S. President George W. Bush signed Presidential Executive Order 13295 that added SARS to a list of quarantinable communicable diseases. The order provided heath officials with the broader powers to seek "... apprehension, detention, or conditional release of individuals to prevent the introduction, transmission, or spread of suspected communicable diseases ..."

Other diseases on the U.S. communicable disease list, specified pursuant to section 361(b) of the Public Health Service Act, include "Cholera; Diphtheria; infectious Tuberculosis; Plague; Smallpox; Yellow Fever; and Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers."

Canada, hit early and much harder by SARS than the United States, responded by closing schools and some hospitals in impacted areas. Canadian health officials advised seemingly healthy travelers from areas with known SARS cases to enter into a 10-day voluntary quarantine. Once in isolation, individuals were asked to frequently take their temperature and remain separated from other family members. Within a month, almost 10,000 people were in some form of quarantine. Canadian government officials, including then Prime Minister Jean Chrétien, publicly complained when, on April 23, the WHO recommended a three-week postponement of non-essential travel to Toronto. After criticism and intense lobbying of WHO by Chrétien's government and Canadian public health officials, WHO discontinued the recommendation on April 30, 2003. When Canada's cases of SARS spiked, Toronto was returned to the WHO list and was not removed until July 2, 2003. WHO officials kept in place similar warnings about travel to Beijing and Hong Kong.

Faced with a more immediate danger and larger numbers of initial cases, an authoritarian government in Singapore was less hesitant in ordering quarantine of victims and those potentially exposed to the virus. One of the three Singapore women initially infected in Hong Kong was later identified as a super-spreader who infected more than 90 people. She recovered, but both her mother and father died of SARS.

During the 2003 outbreak, passengers arriving in Singapore coming from other countries with SARS were required to undergo questioning by nurses in isolation garb and then required to walk through a thermal scanner calibrated to detect an elevated body temperature. Soldiers immediately escorted those with elevated temperatures into quarantine facilities. Those subsequently allowed to remain in their homes were monitored by video cameras and electronic wristbands.

Health authorities assert that the emergent virus responsible for SARS will remain endemic (part of the natural array of viruses) in many regions of China, and that outbreaks could continue on a seasonal basis.

In the aftermath of the 2003 SARS outbreak, a Chinese official publicly apologized for a slow and inefficient response to the 2003 SARS outbreak. Allegations that officials covered up the true extent of the spread of the disease caused the dismissal of several local administrators including China's public health minister and the mayor of Beijing. This admission was politically significant for the new leadership in China, and encouraging to many in the public health services. Reporting procedures and compliance to international health regulations still, however, show wide differences and sensitivities to political issues not only for China but many other nations and or local regions.

The 2003 SARS outbreak provided a test of recent reforms in International Health Regulations designed to increase surveillance and reporting of infectious diseases—and to enhance cooperation in preventing the international spread of disease. Although not an act of bioterrorism, because the same epidemiologic principles and isolation protocols might be used to both initially determine and initially respond to an act of bioterrorism, intelligence and public heath officials closely monitored the political, scientific, and medical responses to the SARS outbreak. In many regards, the SARS outbreak provided a real and deadly test of public health responses, readiness, and resources.

Primary Source Connection

Dr. Carlo Urbani, an Italian physician and specialist in infectious diseases, was among the first to recognize SARS as a new infectious disease threat. Along with other virus hunters, Dr. Urbani's skill, bravery and dedication helped save lives, but cost him his own. The following is an report of his death as published in the *New England Journal of Medicine.*

SARS and Carlo Urbani

On February 28, the Vietnam French Hospital of Hanoi, a private hospital of about 60 beds, contacted the Hanoi office of the World Health Organization (WHO). A patient had presented with an unusual influenza-like virus. Hospital officials suspected an avian influenza virus and asked whether someone from the WHO could take a look. Dr. Carlo Urbani, a specialist in infectious diseases, answered that call. In a matter of weeks, he and five other health care professionals would be dead from a previously unknown pathogen.

We now know that Hanoi was experiencing an outbreak of severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS). Dr. Urbani swiftly determined that the small private hospital was facing something unusual. For the next several days, he chose to work at the hospital, documenting findings, arranging for samples to be sent for testing, and reinforcing infection control. The hospital established an isolation ward that was kept under guard. Dr. Urbani worked directly with the medical staff of the hospital to strengthen morale and to keep fear in check as SARS revealed itself to be highly contagious and virulent. Of the first 60 patients with SARS, more than half were health care workers. At a certain moment, many of the staff members made the difficult decision to quarantine themselves. To protect their families and community, some health care workers put themselves at great personal risk, deciding to sleep in the hospital and effectively sealing themselves off from the outside world.

In some ways, the SARS outbreak in Hanoi is a story of what can go right, of public health's coming before politics. First-line health care providers quickly alerted the WHO of an atypical pneumonia. Dr. Urbani recognized the severity of the public health threat. Immediately, the WHO requested an emergency meeting on Sunday, March 9, with the Vice Minister of Health of Vietnam. Dr. Urbani's temperament and intuition and the strong trust he had built with Vietnamese authorities were critical at this juncture. The four-hour discussion led the government to take the extraordinary steps of quarantining the Vietnam French Hospital, introducing new infection-control procedures in other hospitals, and issuing an international appeal for expert assistance. Additional specialists from the WHO and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) arrived on the scene, and Médecins sans Frontiéres (MSF, or Doctors without Borders) responded with staff members as well as infection-control suits and kits that were previously stocked for outbreaks of Ebola virus. The Vietnam French Hospital has been closed temporarily, and patients with SARS are cared for in two wards of the public Bach Mai Hospital, with the assistance of a team from MSF. No new cases in health care workers have been reported, and the outbreak in Vietnam appears to be contained. By dealing with the outbreak openly and decisively, Vietnam risked damage to its image and economy. If it had decided to take refuge in secrecy, however, the results might have been catastrophic.

Dr. Urbani would not survive to see the successes resulting from his early detection of SARS. On March 11, he began to have symptoms during a flight to Bangkok. On his arrival, he told a colleague from the CDC who

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

The 2003 severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) outbreak did not spread within the United States. In response to the 2003 SARS outbreak, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that its responses to the outbreak were as follows: That the "CDC:

- Worked closely with WHO and other partners in a global effort to address the SARS outbreak of 2003.
- Activated its Emergency Operations Center to provide round-the-clock coordination and response.
- Committed more than 800 medical experts and support staff to work on the SARS response.
- Deployed medical officers, epidemiologists, and other specialists to assist with on-site investigations around the world.
- Provided assistance to state and local health departments in investigating possible cases of SARS in the United States.
- Conducted extensive laboratory testing of clinical specimens from SARS patients to identify the cause of the disease.
- Initiated a system for distributing health alert notices to travelers who may have been exposed to cases of SARS."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention* greeted him at the airport not to approach him. They sat down at a distance from each other, in silence, waiting for an ambulance to assemble protective gear. He fought SARS for the next 18 days in a makeshift isolation room in a Bangkok hospital. Dr. Carlo Urbani died on March 29, 2003.

SARS is a pandemic of our global age. In just a few weeks, SARS had spread through air travel to at least three continents. Conversely, in the same amount of time, researchers working in no fewer than 10 countries have collaborated to identify the virus, sequence its genome, and take steps toward rapid diagnosis. It is now hoped that the large strides taken in basic research will quickly lead to therapeutic advances or a vaccine.

Health care workers continue to be on the front line. Apart from the index patient, all the patients in the Vietnamese outbreak who died were doctors and nurses. In Hong Kong, approximately 25 percent of patients with SARS have been health care professionals, including the chief executive of the hospital authority. The intensive care wards are full—a situation that is exacerbated by the staffing difficulties presented by the hundreds of SARS cases affecting medical personnel. It is becoming difficult to import additional infection-control equipment, since countries where the suits are manufactured are holding onto their stocks as they brace themselves for outbreaks of SARS within their own borders. Once effective drug therapy has been found, similar problems may arise with availability and distribution, especially if the effective treatment turns out to involve a relatively rare and expensive drug, such as ribavirin.

It remains to be seen whether the number of new SARS outbreaks will ebb or whether what we have seen to date is indeed the leading edge of a much larger pandemic. Currently, the attack rate in Hong Kong is approximately 2 cases per 10,000 population over the course of two months. This rate compares favorably with the seasonal attack rates of influenza-like illness, which reached 50 cases per 10,000 population in one week this winter in Europe.

In 1999, Dr. Urbani was president of MSF-Italy and a member of the delegation in Oslo, Norway, that accepted the Nobel Peace Prize. Although he would be gratified that so much has been accomplished with respect to SARS in such a short time, he would certainly point out that the other diseases he worked with—such as the human immunodeficiency virus and AIDS, tuberculosis, and malaria, which kill millions of people each year—deserve to be treated with similar urgency. Whatever the future direction of SARS, it is clear that Dr. Urbani's decisive and determined intervention has bought precious time and saved lives. We remember Dr. Urbani with a mixture of pride in his selfless devotion to medicine and unspeakable grief about the void his departure has left in the hearts of his colleagues around the world.

Source Information: From Médecins sans Frontiéres (Doctors without Borders) U.S.A. (B.R.), Belgium (M.V.H.), Vietnam (D.S.), and Italy (N.D.)

Brigg Reilley, M.P.H., Michel Van Herp, M.D., M.P.H., Dan Sermand, Ph.D., and Nicoletta Dentico, M.P.H.

"SARS AND CARLO URBANI." *NEW ENGLAND JOURNAL OF MEDICINE.* MAY 15, 2003. <HTTP://CONTENT.NEJM.ORG/CGI/CONTENT/FULL/348/20/1951> (ACCESSED JUNE 11, 2007).

SEE ALSO *Contact precautions; Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Influenza; Influenza Pandemic of 1918; Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation; Isolation and Quarantine; Notifiable Diseases; Pandemic Preparedness; Personal Protective Equipment; Standard Precautions; Vaccines and Vaccine Development.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Ksiazek T.G., et al. "A Novel Coronavirus Associated with Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome." *New England Journal of Medicine.* 10.1056. April 10, 2003.

Rosenthal, E. "From China's Provinces, a Crafty Germ Spreads." *New York Times.* April 27, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS)." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/sars/index.htm> (accessed May 30, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Investigation into China's Recent SARS Outbreak Yields Important Lessons for Global Public Health." <http://www.wpro.who.int/sars/docs/update/update_07022004.asp> (accessed May 30, 2007).

Brenda Wilmoth Lerner

Scabies

Introduction

Scabies is an infestation of the skin by the human itch mite, which is known as *Sarcoptes scabiei*. It occurs all around the world and is one of the most common skin problems reported to dermatologists. The word scabies comes from the Latin *scabere*, which means to scratch. There is a variant known as Norwegian scabies, which is very infectious and can lead to epidemics in places such as nursing homes, homeless shelters, and prisons. Scabies is caused by close human contact, including sexual contact, and leads to intense itching because of an immune response to the infestation.

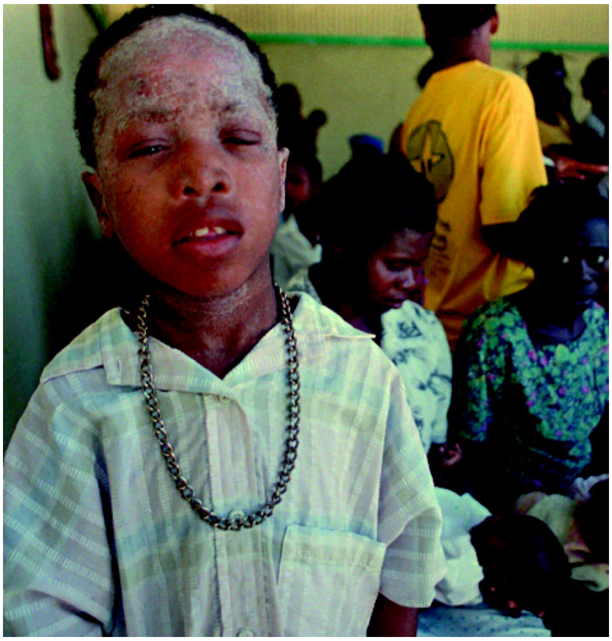
Most healthy people can ward off an attack of scabies. But in those whose immunity is compromised because of HIV/AIDS or other factors, such as old age, the mites can take hold. Poor hygiene, malnutrition, and overcrowding are strong risk factors for an outbreak of scabies. Treatment is usually by a skin cream or tablets containing a drug that kills the mites.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Mites are tiny organisms, barely visible to the human eye at around 0.4 millimeters in length. *S. scabiei* mate on human skin, after which the male dies. The fertilized female burrows through the epidermis—the outer layer of skin—and lays eggs in her "burrow." Typically, around 10–15 organisms are found in an infestation giving rise to symptoms, although there can be many more in immunocompromised hosts, such as people with HIV/AIDS. Scabies arises from human contact, including sexual intercourse.

The symptoms of scabies come from the human immune response to the feces of the female mite in her burrow. There is severe itching—known clinically as pruritis—which is especially intense at night or after a hot shower or bath. This can occur in any part of the body, but is most common between the fingers, in the genitalia, and around the waist or other areas constricted by clothing. Among adults, scabies tends not to cause symptoms on the face, arm, neck, or soles of the feet, but these areas may be affected in children. Pustules—pimples filled with pus, a yellow fluid made up of dead white blood cells, bacteria, and bits of dead tissue—and blisters might occur in areas affected by scabies.

The so-called Norwegian variant of scabies, sometimes also called crusted scabies, often affects the face, scalp, palms of the hands, and soles of the feet. It may be mistaken for eczema or psoriasis, two other



A Haitian girl who has scabies, a contagious skin disease that causes intense itching, waits for the U.S. Support Group medical team at the Brothers of Charities in a slum in Port-au-Prince, Haiti. *AP Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ATOPY: Atopy is an inherited tendency towards hypersensitivity towards immunoglobulin E, a key component of the immune system, which plays an important role in asthma, eczema and hay fever.

MITE: A mite is a tiny arthropod (insect-like creature) of the order *Acarina*. Mites may inhabit the surface of the body without causing harm, or may cause various skin ailments by burrowing under the skin. The droppings of mites living in house-dust are a common source of allergic reactions.

PRURITIS: Pruritis is the medical term for itchiness.

PUSTULES: A pustule is a reservoir of pus visible just beneath the skin. It is usually sore to the touch and surrounded by inflamed tissue.

inflammatory skin conditions. Norwegian scabies is very contagious.

Scope and Distribution

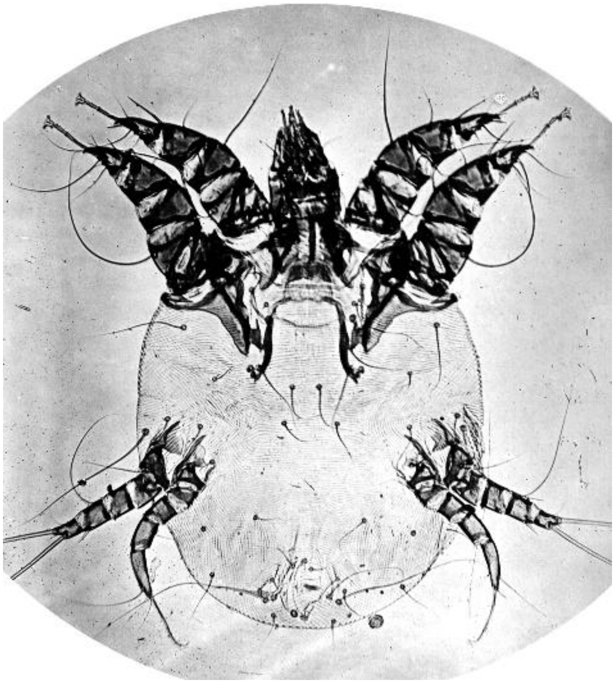
Scabies is a worldwide problem, affecting 300–500 million people each year. It is more likely to occur where conditions of crowding, poor hygiene, and malnutrition are found. Accordingly, scabies is often seen in hospitals, nursing homes, prisons, and mental institutions.

Those with reduced immunity, such as patients with HIV/AIDS, are more prone to scabies and thousands to millions of *S. scabiei* eggs may be found under the skin of these individuals. Those with known atopy—that is, with hereditary, allergy-related symptoms such as asthma or eczema—may be more vulnerable to scabies, because of their sensitivity to the house dust mite, which is related to *S. sabiei*.

Treatment and Prevention

Scabies is treated by a 5% cream of permethrin, which is applied from the neck down to cover the whole body. Among young children, treatment of the face might also be needed. The treatment is left for several hours to kill the mites and is then washed away. This cures 90% of those infested. Oral ivermectin may also be useful, especially if the all-body topical treatment is hard to administer, as in nursing home residents. Meanwhile, clothing, bedding, and other items that might have been in touch with the mites should be washed.

Treatment of close contacts is also a good idea, to prevent reinfestation. Those treated may find their symptoms persist afterwards for four weeks or so because of the time needed to clear the body of the mite feces that cause the inflammatory response. The itching can be treated in all those affected by an antihistamine drug.



This photo of the microscopic mite *Sarcoptes scabei* that causes the skin condition scabies was taken in France around 1930. Long persistent in the developing world, scabies mites are also showing a modern-day resurgence in the developed world, especially in areas where people reside in close quarters, such as nursing homes and cruise ships. *Boyer/Roger Viollet/Getty Images.*

Impacts and Issues

Scabies is an uncomfortable disease that is largely a product of poor hygiene or crowded living conditions. It also targets those with compromised immunity, such as people with AIDS or the elderly. Therefore, those at risk need to be aware of the problem of scabies and take action to avoid close and prolonged contact with those who could already be infested.

SEE ALSO *Lice Infestation (Pediculosis).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Gates, Robert H. *Infectious Disease Secrets.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Hanley and Beltus, 2003.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

IN CONTEXT: SOCIAL AND PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY

The Division of Parasitic Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states the scabies is contracted by "direct, prolonged, skin-to-skin contact with a person already infested with scabies. Contact must be prolonged (a quick handshake or hug will usually not spread infestation). Infestation is easily spread to sexual partners and household members. Infestation may also occur by sharing clothing, towels, and bedding."

The CDC further states that "anyone who is diagnosed with scabies, as well as his or her sexual partners and persons who have close, prolonged contact to the infested person should also be treated. If your health care provider has instructed family members to be treated, everyone should receive treatment at the same time to prevent reinfestation."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases*

Scarlet Fever

Introduction

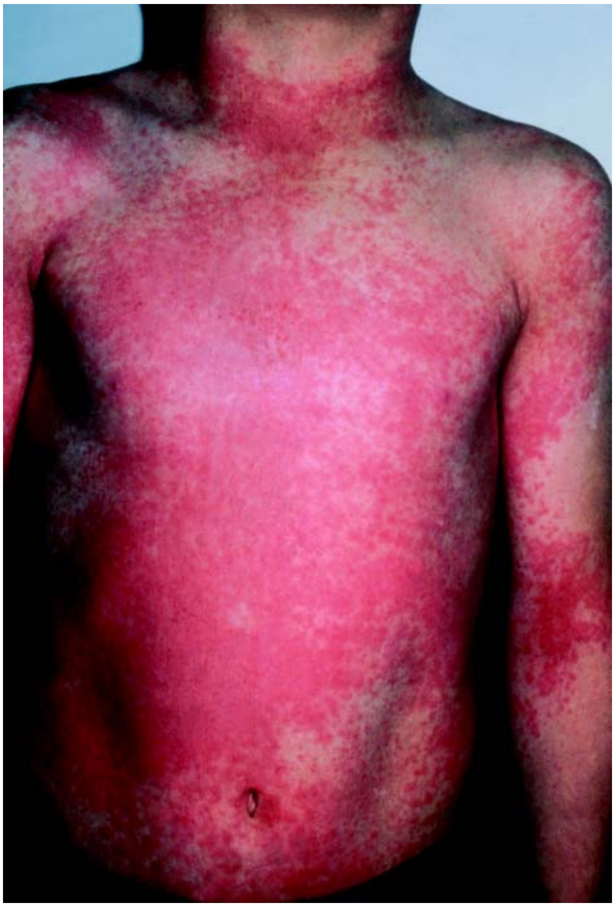
In the nineteenth century, scarlet fever was one of the most feared of all childhood diseases, with a mortality of up to 35%. The causative agent is the bacterium *Streptococcus pyogenes.* Today scarlet fever still exists, but tends to be a very mild disease in developed countries, although serious complications are still common in developing nations.

The modern, milder, form of scarlet fever is sometimes called pharyngitis (throat infection) with rash, or scarlatina. It is not clear why this disease has lost its virulence. Unlike other childhood diseases, vaccination has not played a role in reducing its toll. The microbe itself may have mutated into a milder pathogen, or improvements in hygiene may have contributed. The advent of antibiotics and drugs to treat seizures and fever has certainly helped deal with the cause and symptoms of scarlet fever.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The *S. pyogenes* bacteria causing scarlet fever is known as Group A streptoccoccus (GAS); the “A” refers to a characteristic antigen protein that exists on the surface of the microbe. GAS also causes strep throat (sometimes called bacterial sore throat) and impetigo. It is also responsible for necrotizing fasciitis, which involves the soft tissue under the skin, and toxic shock syndrome, both of which are potentially fatal. Around 40% of the population are asymptomatic carriers of GAS and the bacterium does not have an animal reservoir (an organism that maintains the infective agent). The main symptoms of scarlet fever are a very sore, red throat, possibly with visible white or yellow patches, and the bright red rash that gives the disease its name.

The rash is caused by production of a toxin by the bacteria that spreads into the bloodstream via infected tissue in the throat. It begins as small spots on the neck and upper chest, it then spreads to the rest of the body. When the skin is pressed, it goes pale and the rash feels like sandpaper. The cheeks are flushed while the mouth remains pale, as if the patient had a white moustache. The tongue is often coated with a white fur, with tiny



Scarlet fever, a contagious disease, produces a rash in its victims. It is transmitted mainly in childhood through coughing or drinking contaminated milk. *Biophoto Associates/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

projections called papillae poking through. Doctors sometimes call this a “strawberry” tongue, from its appearance. After a few days, it turns into a “raspberry” tongue, becoming red with prominent papillae.

Other symptoms of scarlet fever include headache, vomiting, swollen glands, and poor appetite. As the rash fades, within three to four days of onset, the skin of the face, palms, and tips of the fingers and toes may begin to peel. More serious cases of scarlet fever—rare in the West, more common in the developing world—are divided into two types, known as toxic and septic. In the toxic form, fever can be extreme, accompanied by delirium, convulsions, and rapid pulse, leading to death within 24 hours. In the septic form, the course of the disease is more prolonged, causing death in two to three weeks.

The complications of scarlet fever include upper airway obstruction, meningitis, pneumonia, mastoiditis, and otitis media (a severe ear infection). Later complications, such as kidney disease and rheumatic fever—which weakens the heart in the long term—may also occur.

Scarlet fever is transmitted by coughs and sneezes, as the saliva and nasal fluids are infectious. Coming into contact with items contaminated with these fluids therefore carries a risk of infection. Sharing cups and utensils can transmit infection.

WORDS TO KNOW

GROUP A STREPTOCOCCUS (GAS): A type (specifically a serotype) of the streptococcus bacteria, based on the antigen contained in the cell wall.

NOTIFIABLE DISEASE: A disease that the law requires must be reported to health officials when diagnosed; also called a reportable disease.

RASH: A rash is a change in appearance or texture of the skin. A rash is the popular term for a group of spots or red, inflamed skin that is usually a symptom of an underlying condition or disorder. Often temporary, a rash is only rarely a sign of a serious problem.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

Scope and Distribution

Scarlet fever used to cause pandemics with high mortality in the nineteenth century in the United States, Western Europe, and in Scandinavia. Often, because of a lack of understanding of how the disease was transmitted, all the patient’s belongings would be burned for fear of contamination. Long periods of convalescence were common, perhaps because of complications due to rheumatic fever.

Because scarlet fever is now a mild disease in the West, it is no longer notifiable (tracked through mandaory reporting) in many countries. The United Kingdom (UK), however, still collects data on scarlet fever cases and noted 2,200 cases occurring in England and Wales in 2004. Ten years previously, the number of cases was around 6,000, which suggests the disease is on the decline.

Ninety percent of cases of scarlet fever occur among children between the ages of two years and eight years. In temperate regions, the number of cases peaks in the winter months. Complications, such as rheumatic fever, ear infections, and pneumonia, are relatively common in developing countries.

Treatment and Prevention

Scarlet fever is treated with antibiotics, with penicillin being the most common drug used. For those allergic to penicillin, erthryomycin or clindamycin are often prescribed instead. Completing the course of treatment is essential to prevent the onset of rheumatic fever or other complications. The majority of patients make an uneventful recovery after treatment.

Paracetamol or ibuprofen are useful for treating the symptoms of scarlet fever. Cold liquids, like milkshakes and popsicles, and warm soup are useful for soothing throat pain, while a humidifier placed in the room will help ease dryness of the throat. In general, the patient should be kept very well hydrated, and get plenty of rest.

Good hygiene, including thorough handwashing, is very important in preventing the transmission of scarlet fever. Therefore, children with the illness, even if the case is mild, should be kept away from school or child care centers. Utensils belonging to a child who is sick at home should always be kept separate from those used by the rest of the family.

Impacts and Issues

When an infectious disease is notifiable, it allows public health authorities to mount an investigation and stop an outbreak from spreading. In 2006, the UK Health Protection Agency dealt with an outbreak of scarlet fever in the southern county of Wiltshire, where 50 cases were reported during January and February.

There were clusters of cases in two child care centers—16 in one, four in the other. Six of the 50 cases were in adults aged 18 years or more, while the rest occurred in children aged between eight months and ten years. Eleven cases had been reported during the same period of 2004 and only four in the same period of 2005. Therefore, this outbreak was unusual. In the first center, all children with symptoms received penicillin and were excluded for five days after beginning their treatment. The center closed down for several days. The second outbreak was reported on January 26, but no new cases were reported after January 31 in this child care center.

The local health protection team sent letters to all doctors in the area, informing them of the outbreaks. All suspected cases were to have throat swabs taken to test for the presence of GAS. This resulted in reports of 30 other cases of scarlet fever. The team also sent letters to the parents of all the children at the center to ask them to be on the alert for symptoms. However, they decided not to screen the children for GAS unless more serious scarlet fever cases were reported. Although they wanted to break the chain of transmission through asymptomatic carriers, they did not want to expose young children to antibiotics unnecessarily.

Samples from the throat swabs that had been taken were sent to the Health Protection Agency Centre for Infections for detailed analysis. These actions were taken because previous experience showed that outbreaks of scarlet fever can have serious consequences for the young patients if the infection is not treated promptly and adequately.

See Also *Impetigo; Necrotizing Fasciitis; Strep Throat; Toxic Shock.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Periodicals

Health Protection Agency. "Scarlet Fever Outbreak in Two Nurseries in South West England." *CDR Weekly* 16 (March 2, 2006): 1–2.

Marshall, S. "Scarlet Fever: the Disease in the UK." *The Pharmaceutical Journal* 277 (July 22, 2006): 115–116.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Scarlet Fever." October 13, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/scarletfever_g.htm> (accessed April 28, 2007).

Scrofula: The King's Evil

Introduction

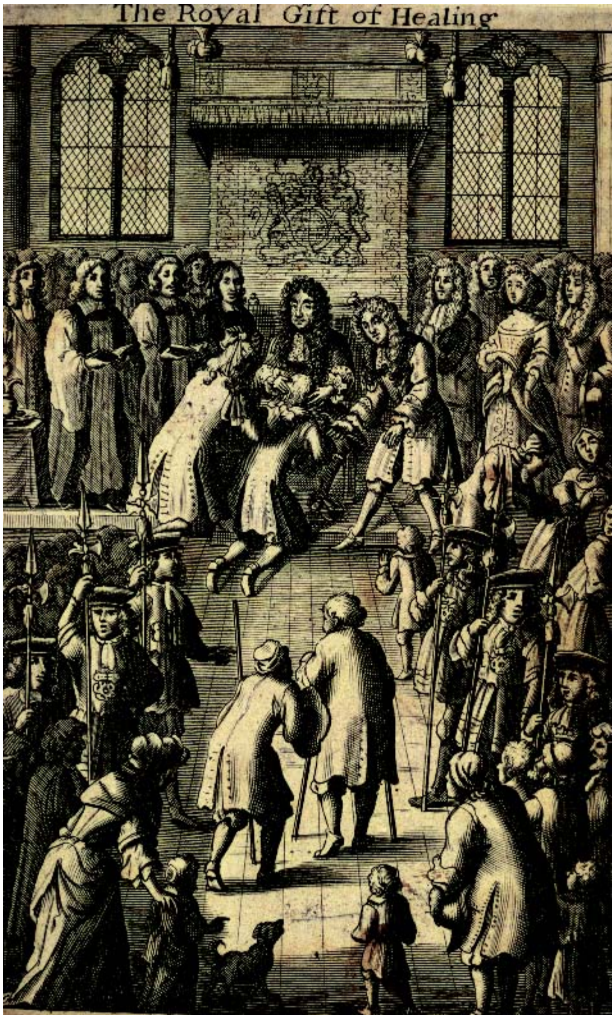
Scrofula is a form of extrapulmonary (outside the lungs) tuberculosis, a bacterial infection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The disease has a long and interesting history, first mentioned by Herodotus in 400 BC who recommended that sufferers be quarantined. Scrofula has also had a long association with royalty. It became known as the King's Evil as early as 491 A.D, and was thought to be cured by the "king's touch." French monarchs claimed the ability to heal the disease from the time of Clovis in 481 AD through Louis XVI, who was beheaded in 1793, as did English kings beginning with Edward the Confessor (1042-66), ending with the Hanoverian dynasty in the eighteenth century.

Since antiquity, monarchs claimed a quasi-divine status, often asserting that the royal family had a divine right to rule. Various ceremonies of royal courts may have lead to the association of royalty with magical powers of healing. Perhaps because the lesions appeared and reappeared, people who were "touched" may have experienced an illusion of cure.

Politics also played a role in kings claiming they could heal scrofula. When the legitimacy of royal power was threatened, for instance among early Norman kings who ruled England by conquest, "healing ceremonies" became predominant. Usually in these rituals, the physician would hold the head of the patient as the king would pronounce, "The king touches you, and God cures you," making the sign of the cross touching forehead to chin and cheek to cheek. After the ceremony, French kings would distribute alms, and in England, the king would cross the sore of the sick person with a stamp of gold called an angel, worth ten shillings. The angel had a hole bored through it for a ribbon to be drawn, so the sufferer could wear it around his neck.


The Royal Gift of Healing

"The Royal Gift of Healing," an engraving, shows King Charles II (1630–1685) of England healing the sick. It was believed that the royal touch could cure diseases such as epilepsy and scrofula (also known as the king's evil). *HIP/Art Resource, NY.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

BROAD-SPECTRUM ANTIBIOTICS: Broad-spectrum antibiotics are drugs that kill a wide range of bacteria rather than just those from a specific family. For, example, Amoxicillin is a broad-spectrum antibiotic that is used against many common illnesses such as ear infections.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

LESIONS: The tissue disruption or the loss of function caused by a particular disease process.

QUARANTINE: Quarantine is the practice of separating people who have been exposed to an infectious agent but have not yet developed symptoms from the general population. This can be done voluntarily or involuntarily by the authority of states and the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

IN CONTEXT: PRE-SCIENTIFIC PRACTICE AND BELIEF

Samuel Johnson, an eighteenth-century author who wrote the first comprehensive English dictionary, suffered from scrofula as a child, and proudly wore his angel around his neck his entire life.

The true reason why scrofula was contracted was not known until the late nineteenth century. Because scrofula seemed to affect whole families, it was assumed that it was a hereditary, rather than an infectious disease. One of the common ways it spreads is though infected milk—either from an infected mother's or wet nurse's breast milk, or through contaminated cow's milk fed to infants or children. Before Koch's postulates of disease or pasteurization of milk in the 1880s, there was little understanding of the connection between bacteria and illness. During the mid-to-late nineteenth century in the United States, clean and inexpensive milk was also difficult to get; milk was often watered down, chalk or dye could be added to whiten dirty milk, and "swill milk," produced by cows fed distillery waste was common. These cows often carried bovine tuberculosis, and milk bottles were not sterilized. It was also not until regulations about food safety were standardized, milk was regularly pasteurized, and dairy cleanliness maintained that scrofula ceased to be a health threat in industrialized nations.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The term "scrofula" comes from the Latin "scrofulae" or a breeding sow, as pigs were thought to be susceptible to the disease, and the glandular swellings on the neck were compared to little pigs.

Scrofula results in an inflammation of the lymph glands and an enlargement of the lymph nodes in the neck. The nodes often ulcerate causing draining sores, and the sufferer also has fevers, chills, sweats, and sometimes weight loss. Lesions often subside, and then reappear as the disease takes its course and spreads through the skin, mucous membranes, bones and joints.

The disease can be contracted either through person-to-person contact, or via contaminated milk, or even via household objects that come into contact with the mouth.

Scope and Distribution

Though in developed countries, scrofula is now quite rare, lowered immune function resulting from HIV infection increases the risk of contracting the disease. As antibiotic resistance to tuberculosis has increased, scrofula has been making its reappearance, particularly in underdeveloped countries.

Treatment and Prevention

Though the king's touch is no longer considered effective, new challenges have arisen in the treatment of scrofula.

Treatment is largely through broad-spectrum antibiotics in a nine-to-twelve month course, and recovery is usually complete though there can be scarring around the lymph nodes.

Other treatments include short-course chemotherapy for tuberculosis patients, and increased detection protocols. In severe cases, surgery is done to remove the infected lymph nodes, but surgery alone tends to have disappointing results as it does not remove the underlying infection and it can cause scarring.

Impacts and Issues

Since 1985, scrofula has made a comeback in the United States largely due to immigration from endemic countries, rising rates of HIV infection, antibiotic resistance, and the abandonment of aggressive tuberculosis screening and control programs.

In sub-Saharan Africa, and increasingly in Asia and South American, scrofula is also posing a threat, particularly as a form of HIV-related tuberculosis. In its TB/IV Clinical Manual, the World Health Organization reports that growing rates of HIV-infections increase demands on programs to control tuberculosis, and there is more tuberculosis recurrence in AIDS patients.

SCROFULA: THE KING'S EVIL

’tis call’d the Evil:
A most miraculous work in this good King;
Which often, since my here-remain in England,
I have seen him do. How he solicits heaven,
Himself best knows: but strangely-visited people,
All swoln and ulcerous, pitiful to the eye,
The mere despair of surgery he cures

Shakespeare, *Macbeth*, Act IV, scene 3

See Also *Tuberculosis.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bloch, Marc *The Royal Touch. Sacred Monarchy and Scrofula in England and France*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul; Monteal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 1973.

Periodicals

Barlow, Frank. “The King's Evil,” *The English Historical Review*, 95, 374 (January 1980), pp. 3-27.

Harries, Anthony and Dermot Maher. “Introduction,” *TB/HIV: A Clinical Manual* World Health Organization, 1996.

Lomax, Elisabeth. “Hereditary of Acquired Disease? Early Nineteenth Century Debates on the Cause of Infantile Scrofula and Tuberculosis,” *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences* October 1977, pp. 356-374.

Wheeler, Susan. “Henry IV of France Touching for Scrofula by Pierre Firens.” *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences* 58 (2003), pp. 79-81.

Jacqueline Wolf, *Don't Kill Your Baby: Public Health and the Decline of Breastfeeding in the 19th and 20th Centuries* Columbus: Ohio University Press, 2001.

Web sites

McClay, John E. “Scrofula,” E-medicine from WebMD <http://www.emedicine.com/Ent/topic524.htm> (accessed March 2, 2006.

Anna Marie Roos

Sexually Transmitted Diseases

Introduction

Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), also called sexually transmitted infections (STI), are passed on through intimate sexual contact. The most important STDs are HIV/AIDS, *Chlamydia*, syphilis, and gonorrhea. These are very different diseases in their infective causes, symptoms and health consequences. What they have in common is that people often do not realize that they are infected and may pass their disease onto others through sexual contact. Moreover, having one STD can put people at greater risk of contracting another—for instance, people with syphilis are more likely to become infected with HIV.

People at risk of STDs need to come forward for testing and treatment. The stigma attached to attending a sexual health clinic is less than it used to be, but there is still a need for greater awareness. Prevention of STDs is challenging, for it involves people's sexual behavior—whether they choose to use condoms, be selective about their sexual partners, or even abstain from sex.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

STDs are a diverse group of conditions, ranging from HIV/AIDS and syphilis, to scabies and thrush. In the past, they were known as venereal diseases (VD), the term venereal deriving from Venus, the goddess of love. AIDS and syphilis can be life threatening, *Chlamydia* infection can lead to infertility, and human papilloma virus (HPV) can lead to cervical cancer. Some STDs, like thrush and non-specific urethritis (infection of the urethra), are not usually medically serious, but can cause a great deal of discomfort. The symptoms of STDs vary, but often include itching, swelling, or redness around the vagina or penis, and unusual discharge or pains in the lower abdomen.

Perhaps the most feared of the STDs is HIV/AIDS. HIV is the human immunodeficiency virus, which as the name suggests, attacks the immune system, rendering the infected person powerless against opportunistic infections, such as *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia,

Unprotected
SEX=
RIP
(GRAND BAHAMA AIDS AWARENESS COMMITTEE)

An AIDS awareness sign in the Bahamas warns of the dangers of unprotected sex. *© Nik Wheeler/Corbis.*

Walkers raise money during the Elizabeth Glaser Pediatric AIDS Foundation's "Africa Walk for Hope" in South Africa, 2004. The walk is intended to raise money to prevent mother-to-child transmission of HIV and extend care and treatment to people already infected. *© Jon Hrusa/epa/Corbis.*

Candida, and cytomegalovirus—all caused by microbes that are harmless in a healthy person. A rare skin cancer called Kaposi's sarcoma may also occur during the later stages of HIV/AIDS.

It can take ten years or more between first being infected with HIV, usually during sexual contact, before AIDS develops. At first, the immune system fights back against the infection and the person seems well. However, they can still infect others during this time. Eventually, the immune system breaks down, and opportunistic infections and other complications set in.

The first stage of HIV/AIDS lasts from first exposure to the appearance of antibodies in the person's blood, which may take up to three months. Antibodies are proteins made by the immune system as part of its response to infection. Some people display symptoms resembling a feverish illness, sore throat, or headache soon after they have been infected with HIV. This is a sign of the immune system fighting the infection. Sometimes the dentist is the first person to discover symptoms of HIV infection because mouth problems are quite common.

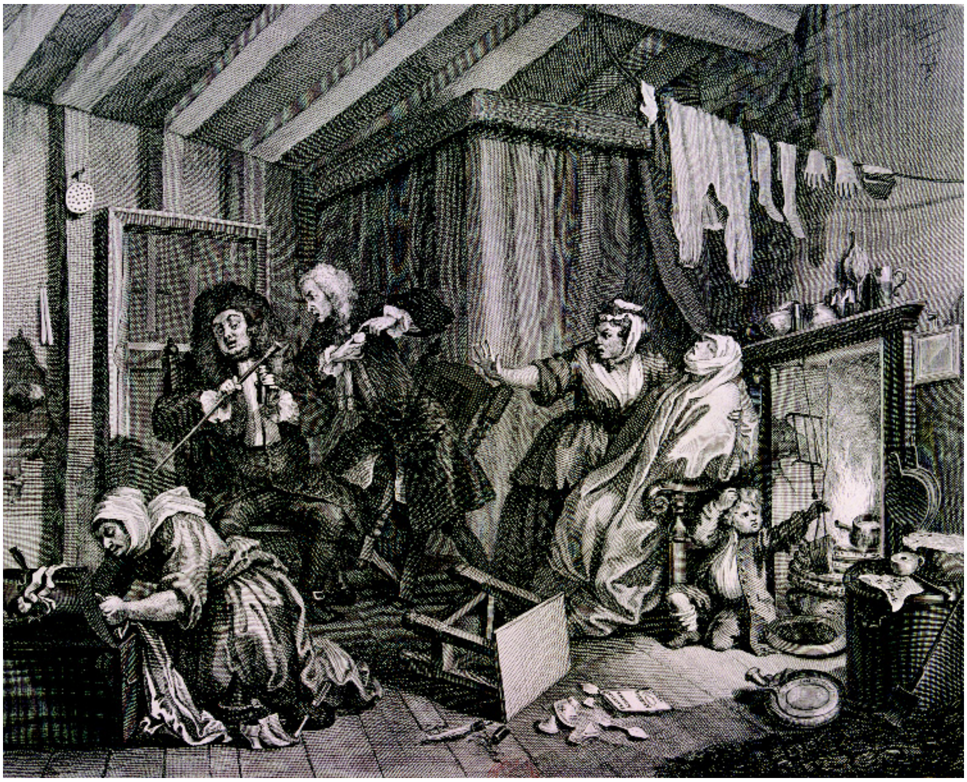
After this first stage, HIV infection enters a second, silent phase with few, if any, symptoms, which can last for as long as 15 years. The immune system is keeping the infection in check, but the person is still infectious to others through sexual contact or by other contact with infected blood. In the third stage, the immune system finally begins to show the signs of damage done by HIV. A common symptom at this time is swollen lymph glands, or lymphadenopathy.

In the final stage, classified as AIDS, the virus becomes more active than before and there are many symptoms such as malaise (a general feeling of being unwell), night sweats, weight loss, diarrhea. This is when opportunistic infections set in and Kaposi's sarcoma take hold. AIDS, in its final stages, may also affect the brain causing a gradual deterioration in mental faculties called dementia.

Chlamydia trachomatis infection is probably the most common of the sexually transmitted diseases that are caused by bacteria. When *C. trachomatis* infects the genital tract it often produces no symptoms, although women may report a burning sensation on urination and a vaginal discharge. Men may experience a discharge from the penis, as well as itching and a burning sensation.

Chlamydia infection must be taken seriously because, if left untreated, can cause serious damage to the female reproductive system, leading to pelvic inflammatory disease and infertility. A major complication is ectopic pregnancy, a potentially fatal condition where a fertilized egg starts to develop within one of the Fallopian tubes instead of in the womb. Women with *Chlamydia* are also up to five times more likely to become infected with HIV if exposed to it.

Gonorrhea is another important bacterial STD and is caused by infection with *Neisseria gonorrhoeae.* It causes urethritis (inflammation of the lining of the urethra) among men and cervicitis (inflammation of the cervix) in women. In men, the first symptom of



In this 1732 engraving by William Hogarth (1697–1764), a prostitute is shown dying from venereal disease in the sick room of a prison. *HIP/Art Resource, NY.*

gonorrhea is usually painful urination, followed by a thick prurulent (pus-containing) discharge from the urethra. However, many men have no symptoms. In women, painful urination is also the first symptom of gonorrhea. This is followed by a vaginal discharge and, sometimes, bleeding. Occasionally, the symptoms in women are so vague that they are mistaken for a vaginal or urinary infection. Most women with gonorrhea have no symptoms at all.

Gonorrhea may lead to various complications. In men, the epididymis (the coiled tube leading sperm from the testicles) may become inflamed, which can lead to infertility. Gonorrhea in women can lead to salpingitis, which is inflammation of the Fallopian tubes and it is also a leading cause of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), a chronic condition that is often accompanied by severe abdominal pain and fever, long-lasting pelvic pain, and infertility.

Syphilis is caused by the bacterium *Treponema pallidum* and progresses through an infectious and a non-infectious stage over many years. The infectious stage lasts for a few months during which time symptoms may cause little or no illness. The non-infectious stage, which follows if syphilis is not treated early on, may also be without symptoms, or it may be accompanied by major heart or neurological damage.

Infectious syphilis starts with the appearance of a single sore, known as a chancre, either on or inside the genitals or elsewhere on the body, such as on the eyelid or lip. Those affected may be completely unaware of the presence of the chancre, which lasts for three to six weeks and heals without treatment, but is infectious to sexual contacts.

A skin rash and mucous membrane lesions are the prime symptoms of the secondary stage of syphilis. Sometimes the rash from secondary syphilis is so faint as to be unnoticeable. There may be other symptoms such as fever, swollen glands, weight loss, headaches, loss of appetite, and fatigue. However, this stage also resolves within a few weeks without any treatment.

Latent or tertiary syphilis is untreated disease past the primary and secondary stage. It has no obvious symptoms and may or may not be infectious. Complications, which may occur many years after the original infection, can affect the brain and the heart. A pregnant woman with syphilis might pass the disease onto her unborn child. Congenital syphilis can lead to stillbirth, death shortly after birth, physical deformity, or neurological problems.

Genital herpes, often known solely as herpes, is caused by the Herpes Simplex virus (HSV) and may cause no symptoms, remaining undiagnosed for a long time. Possible symptoms of HSV infection include itchiness, burning, and pain in the genital area, pain when passing urine, and the presence of small fluid-filled blisters developing into sores. People with herpes have an increased risk of becoming infected with HIV, and pregnant women may pass the infection onto their babies during childbirth. Neonatal (the newborn period) herpes can have a mortality rate as high as 60%.

The human papillomavirus (HPV) causes both genital warts and cervical cancer. While HPV infection often causes no symptoms, it sometimes triggers benign tumors known as papillomas, or warts on the hands and feet or in the genital area. Most HPV infections clear up on their own, but they are also capable of causing cancers in the cervix and, more rarely, in the vagina, vulva, penis, and anus.

Other STDs include non-specific urethritis, which affects men and causes discomfort in the urethra, the tube leading from the bladder to the tip of the penis. A discharge from the urethra is also common. Trichomoniasis is caused by the bacterium *Trichomonas vaginalis* and may have no symptoms or may produce a yellow or green discharge from the vagina and be accompanied by soreness. Men usually act as carriers of trichomoniasis and often do not show symptoms themselves. Thrush is a yeast infection of the vagina or penis, which can result in intense itching and a thick white discharge. Finally, both pubic lice and scabies are passed on by close contact, including sexual contact, and may cause intense itching.

STDs are generally transmitted through intimate sexual contact with another person. This can occur through unprotected vaginal, oral, or anal sex, or having genital contact with an infected partner. The relative risks of various kinds of sexual activity tend to vary with the disease. For instance, the risk of contracting gonorrhea and syphilis through oral sex appears to be greater than that of contracting HIV.

The risk of becoming infected with HIV is elevated between two and five times by having another STD, maybe because these can involve breaks in the skin in the genital area, making it easier for the virus to enter the body. Non-ulcerative STDs like trichomoniasis may increase HIV risk through increasing the number of white blood cells that can be infected by the virus.

Scope and Distribution

Most major public health organizations, such as the Center for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), the World Health Organization (WHO) and the United Kingdom's Health Protection Agency (HPA), collect data on STDs in order to plan policy and educate and inform the population of the risks.

According to the WHO, there are 340 million new cases of curable STDs around the world each year, along with five million cases of new HIV infections. The CDC's National Surveillance Data for *Chlamydia*, gonorrhea, and syphilis for 2005 suggests that there are

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBODIES: Antibodies, or Y-shaped immunoglobulins, are proteins found in the blood that help to fight against foreign substances called antigens. Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

CHANCRE: A sore that occurs in the first stage of syphilis at the place where the infection entered the body.

HARM-REDUCTION STRATEGY: In public health, a harm-reduction strategy is a public-policy scheme for reducing the amount of harm caused by a substance such as alcohol or tobacco. The phrase may refer to any medical strategy directed at reducing the harm caused by a disease, substance, or toxic medication.

LYMPHADENOPATHY: Any disease of the lymph nodes (gland like bodies that filter the clear intercellular fluid called lymph to remove impurities) is lymphadenopathy.

NOTIFIABLE DISEASE: A disease that the law requires must be reported to health officials when diagnosed; also called a reportable disease.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

PRURULENT: Containing, discharging, or producing pus.

IN CONTEXT: ECONOMIC IMPACTS

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that "sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) remain a major public health challenge in the United States. While substantial progress has been made in preventing, diagnosing, and treating certain STDs in recent years, CDC estimates that 19 million new infections occur each year, almost half of them among young people ages 15 to 24. In addition to the physical and psychological consequences of STDs, these diseases also exact a tremendous economic toll. Direct medical costs associated with STDs in the United States are estimated at up to $14.1 billion annually."

SOURCE: *Trends in Reportable Sexually Transmitted Diseases in the United States, 2005*

19 million new infections each year in the United States, of which almost half occur among young people aged 15 to 24. Many notifiable (state health departments mandate reporting of certain diseases) STDs go unreported, and HPV and genital herpes, which are probably extremely common, are not reported at all.

The HPA reports a continual rise in STDs in the United Kingdom since the 1990s. Between 2004 and 2005, there was a three percent increase to a total of 790,387 confirmed cases. The largest increase was in cases of syphilis, up by 23 percent to a total of 2,807 cases. There were also rises in *Chlamydia*, genital warts and herpes, which are reported to the HPA. As in the United States, the biggest increases have been noted in the 16 to 24 year age group.

■ Treatment and Prevention

Most STDs are treatable by either a single dose or course of antibiotics, when the cause is bacterial. Antiviral drugs are used to treat genital herpes, although they cannot actually cure the infection. Genital warts do eventually disappear without treatment, although some people may chose to have them removed by liquid nitrogen or treatment with caustic agents. HIV/AIDS is treatable with antiretroviral drugs, which stop the virus from reproducing. The treatment regimes are complex, but enable the patient to live with HIV rather than dying from AIDS.

Informing current and past sexual partners of a positive diagnosis of an STD, so they can also be diagnosed and treated, is key to reducing the risk of spreading and re-infection. A sexual health clinic will normally help the patient do this.

Among those who are sexually active, practicing safer sex is the most effective way of preventing STDs. This involves using a male condom for each occasion of penetrative sex and considering the choice of sexual partner carefully. That is, there is no guarantee that any prospective partner does not already have an STD—and therefore, the more sexual partners a person has, the higher their chance of exposure to infection, even with the use of condoms, as they do not provide 100% effective protection. Abstinence from sex or monogamous sex with a healthy partner are behavioral choices that may afford the highest level of protection from STDs. Healthcare workers advising in this area attempt to exercise sensitivity and take care not to make judgments on their patient's behaviors, while providing them with the information they need to reduce their risk of contracting an STD.

■ Impacts and Issues

The increase in STDs in the United States and elsewhere can partly be attributed to an increase in awareness of the issue, better diagnostic techniques, and an increase in the number of sexual health clinics carrying out tests. Other reasons include earlier age of first sexual activity, people having more partners, and increased mobility of groups such as tourists, immigrants, and armed forces who may be more likely to have partners outside of a primary relationship.

Anyone who is sexually active—whatever their age or sexual orientation—is at risk of contracting an STD and should be aware of the attendant risks and symptoms. Not only do STDs cause direct health problems, such as infertility or cervical cancer, they also have the indirect consequence of increasing the risk of HIV infection. Moreover, people tend to have more than one STD at a time. Often, the symptoms are not apparent, which means the person remains infectious and passes the disease onto others without modifying their sexual behavior.

STDs are lifestyle diseases, where the risk of transmission is related directly to the number of sexual partners a person has. Conversely, celibacy is the best way not to become infected. However, the situation is usually more complex than this—merely counseling people not to have sexual contact with others is one approach to prevention, but is not generally effective if it is the only approach taken. Instead, a "harm reduction" strategy can also be applied, where persons are advised about safer sex, using condoms, and these are made readily available. One of the largest worldwide public health efforts in history began after the advent of AIDS in the 1980s, and used a harm-reduction strategy to teach how HIV is transmitted and prevented, distribute condoms, deliver care for those infected, and change cultural attitudes necessary for bringing the discussion of AIDS prevention to the forefront.

In 2006, a vaccine was approved in the United States to guard against four types of HPV infection, the cause of genital warts and ultimately, most cases of cervical cancer. The vaccine is recommended for girls and young women from age nine to 26. Research has shown that it affords the highest level of protection against genital warts and cervical cancer among those who have not been exposed to HPV infection already—that is, those who have not become sexually active. Girls and women who have been exposed to HPV may gain some protection with the vaccine, but it cannot cure any existing HPV infection. In Texas, Governor Rock Perry mandated that all schoolgirls entering sixth grade receive the vaccine beginning in 2008. Citing the high cost (around $300 for the series of injections) and some parental objections, the state legislature overruled the mandate, at least until the year 2011. Eventually, the HPV vaccine could prevent not only the common STD caused by the human papilloma virus, but most cases of cervical cancer, the second leading cause of cancer death among women worldwide.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome);* Chlamydia *Infection; Gonorrhea; Herpes Simplex 1 Virus; HIV; HPV (Human Papillomavirus) Infection; Syphilis.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Adler, Michael, et al. *ABC of Sexually Transmitted Diseases.* London: BMJ, 2004.

Wilks, D., M. Farrington, and D. Rubenstein. *The Infectious Disease Manual,* 2nd. ed. Malden: Blackwell, 2003.

Periodicals

Weinstock H., et al. “Sexually transmitted diseases among American youth: incidence and prevalence estimates, 2000.” *Perspectives on Sexual and Reproductive Health* 2004; 36(1):6–10.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). “Trends in Reportable Sexually Transmitted Diseases in the United States, 2005.” December 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/std/stats> (accessed May 16, 2007).

NHS Direct. “Sexually Transmitted Infections.” <http://www.nhsdirect.nhs.uk/articles/> (accessed May 16, 2007).

World Health Organization. “Sexually Transmitted Infections.” <http://www.who.int/reproductive-health/stis/index.htm> (accessed May 16, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Shigellosis

Introduction

Shigellosis is an infection of the gastrointestinal tract that arises when a person is infected with bacteria in the genus *Shigella*. These bacteria are transmitted among a human population when people ingest food or drink contaminated with fecal matter from an infected person. Following a 24-hour incubation period, most patients experience nausea, diarrhea, fever, and stomach cramps. While most people recover from shigellosis within a week without treatment, severe cases require antibiotics in order to recover.

Shigellosis occurs worldwide. It is most prevalent in developing nations in which epidemics often occur. Anyone can get shigellosis, but it is more common among people with poor hygiene, such as young children, as well as people living or traveling through areas with dense living conditions and poor sanitation. Since there is no vaccine against shigellosis, prevention is achieved through improving sanitation and hygiene, washing hands prior to handling food, washing food prior to eating, and boiling drinking water. Shigellosis can become a major issue during emergency situations, such as mass evacuations when many people temporarily live together in poor conditions. There is also potential for *Shigella* bacteria to be used for biological warfare.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Shigellosis is a gastrointestinal infection caused by bacteria from the genus *Shigella*. There are four species of

Park officials closed this lake for swimming after some visitors tested positive for shigellosis, which could have been spread through contact with lake water containing shigella bacteria. *AP Images.*

Shigella, *S. dysenteriae*, *S. flexneri*, *S. boydii*, and *S. sonnei*. *Shigella* infect humans and other primates. Bacteria from this genus were first identified by the Japanese scientist Kiyoshi Shiga (1871–1957) in 1897 after he isolated *S. dysenteriae*, which was causing dysentery, a gastrointestinal disease, in infected people.

Shigellosis is usually transmitted via the fecal-oral route, that is, people become infected after ingesting food or water contaminated with infected feces. Inadequate handwashing after using the toilet, or changing a baby diaper, followed by food or water handling leads to contamination of food and drink. This is a very common method for person-to-person transmission of the *Shigella* bacteria. Flies are also a source of transmission as they travel between infected fecal matter and food or drink. Food and water may also become contaminated when vegetables are grown in soil containing sewage, or when people defecate in bodies of water.

Shigellosis leads to the development of gastrointestinal symptoms, such as dysentery. Symptoms include diarrhea, fever, stomach cramps, and nausea. Symptoms generally begin a day or two after the bacteria is contracted, although it may take up to a week for a person to fall ill. Although recovery is usual in most cases, infection with *S. flexneri* may result in long-term problems such as arthritis, eye irritation, and painful urination. This is known as Reiter's syndrome and may continue for months to years.

Scope and Distribution

Shigellosis occurs worldwide. It is particularly common in developing countries in which the bacteria are present in almost all communities most of the time. Furthermore, *S. dysenteriae* type 1, although rare in the United States, is a major health concern for many developing countries. In the United States, the most common forms of *Shigella* are *S. sonnei*, which causes over two-thirds of shigellosis infections, and *S. flexneri*, which causes most of the remaining cases. The annual number of cases of shigellosis in the United States ranges from as few as 1,000 to as many as 18,000, although this number is likely to be underestimated, since many mild cases go undiagnosed.

Although anyone is capable of contracting shigellosis, some people are more susceptible. This includes toddlers who usually aren't fully toilet trained. In addition, childcare facilities provide a setting in which the bacteria can spread through a number of children in a short period of time. Foreign travelers are also more susceptible to infection, if they travel through regions in which the disease is prevalent and sanitation methods are poor. Persons living together in crowded conditions or institutions, such as prisons, are also more susceptible to developing the disease, most likely as a result of poor hygiene.

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOLOGICAL WEAPON: A weapon that contains or disperses a biological toxin, disease-causing microorganism, or other biological agent intended to harm or kill plants, animals, or humans.

DYSENTERY: Dysentery is an infectious disease that has ravaged armies, refugee camps, and prisoner-of-war camps throughout history. The disease still is a major problem in developing countries with primitive sanitary facilities.

FECAL-ORAL TRANSMISSION: The spread of disease through the transmission of minute particles of fecal material from one organism to the mouth of another organisms. This can occur by drinking contaminated water, eating food that was exposed to animal or human feces (perhaps by watering plants with unclean water), or by the poor hygiene practices of those preparing food.

REITER'S SYNDROME: Reiter's syndrome (also called Reiter syndrome, Reiter disease, or reactive arthritis), named after German doctor Hans Reiter (1881–1969), is form of arthritis (joint inflammation) that appears in response to bacterial infection in some other part of the body.

The transmission of shigellosis is enhanced in conditions of poor sanitation and close human contact. These conditions are common in developing countries where funding for sanitation may be lacking and residents may not be educated about the need for hygiene. In addition, these conditions are also common in emergency situations, for example, after a hurricane or earthquake, when many people are often housed together temporarily.

Treatment and Prevention

Shigellosis is a bacterial disease and is treated with antibiotics. However, mild cases of shigellosis do not require antibiotics, since a full recovery usually occurs within a week. However, people suffering from severe infections, or those who have a compromised immune system that prevents them fighting the infection themselves, usually require a course of antibiotics. The most common antibiotics used are ampicillin, trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole, nalidixic acid, or ciprofloxacin. However, *Shigella* bacteria are beginning to develop resistance to antibiotics, which reduces the effectiveness of treatment. In order to combat this problem, health officials are trying to reduce the reliance on antibiotics by limiting their use.

Other treatments are aimed at the symptoms of the infection. These may include administering fluids to prevent or reverse dehydration and medicines to reduce temperature and prevent convulsions. Antidiarrheal agents are not recommended by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), since they are likely to make the illness worse.

While research on the development of a vaccine against shigellosis has been underway since 1940, no vaccine is currently available. As a result, preventative measures center around avoiding ingestion of *Shigella* bacteria. In developed countries, in which sanitation is usually good and water is clean, prevention is best achieved through handwashing and improving personal hygiene. However, in developing countries, in which sanitation is often poor and clean water is not readily available, improvements in sanitation methods and increased availability of clean water are necessary to prevent community-wide spread of the bacteria. In addition, people with shigellosis can best prevent spreading the disease to others by washing their hands after going to the toilet, avoiding preparing food for others, and avoiding public swimming areas.

■ Impacts and Issues

Shigellosis is common in developing countries due to poor sanitation and, in some cases, overcrowding. However, situations such as this can arise in developed nations when natural disasters, such as hurricanes, tornadoes, and floods, cause mass evacuation of people. Often mass evacuations result in a large number of people having to live in close quarters. Since these living quarters are often temporary and are usually not made to house large numbers of people, sanitation standards tend to be lower than normal. The combination of high density living with poor sanitation increases the risk of shigellosis within the population.

Another potential issue concerning *Shigella* bacteria is its use as a biological weapon. *Shigella* has been considered a potential agent of biological warfare since at least 1932 when the Japanese investigated its potential. Biological warfare involves using pathogens or toxins to cause mass death and disease among humans, animals, or plants during war. Biological terrorism is similar, except the pathogens and toxins are used for terrorist purposes. In addition to *Shigella*, other bacterial agents, such as *Salmonella* and *Escherichia coli*, are considered potential biological threats. *Shigella* can potentially be spread via a community's water supply, which could cause many cases of shigellosis. In 1996, one case of *S. dysenteriae* caused an outbreak of shigellosis. A worker from Dallas contaminated muffins and doughnuts with *Shigella* prior to feeding coworkers. This resulted in a number of the workers developing shigellosis, and the perpetrator was jailed.

SEE ALSO *Antibiotic Resistance; Bacterial Disease; Bioterrorism; Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Cohorted Communities and Infectious Disease; Dysentery;* Salmonella *Infection (Salmonellosis).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Fong, I. W., and K. Alibek. *Bioterrorism and Infectious Agents: A New Dilemma for the 21st Century.* New York: Springer Science, 2005.

Mandell, G. L., J. E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2004.

Web Sites

Baylor College of Medicine. "Potential Bioterrorism Agents." July 5, 2006. <http://www.bcm.edu/molvir/eidbt/eidbt-mvm-pbt.htm> (accessed March 12, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Hurricane Recovery Information." September 16, 2005. <http://www.bt.cdc.gov/disasters/hurricanes/katrina/shigella.asp> (accessed March 12, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Shigellosis." October 13, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/shigellosis_g.htm> (accessed March 12, 2007).

New York State, Department of Health. "Shigellosis." June 2004. <http://www.health.state.ny.us/diseases/communicable/shigellosis/fact_sheet.htm> (accessed March 12, 2007).

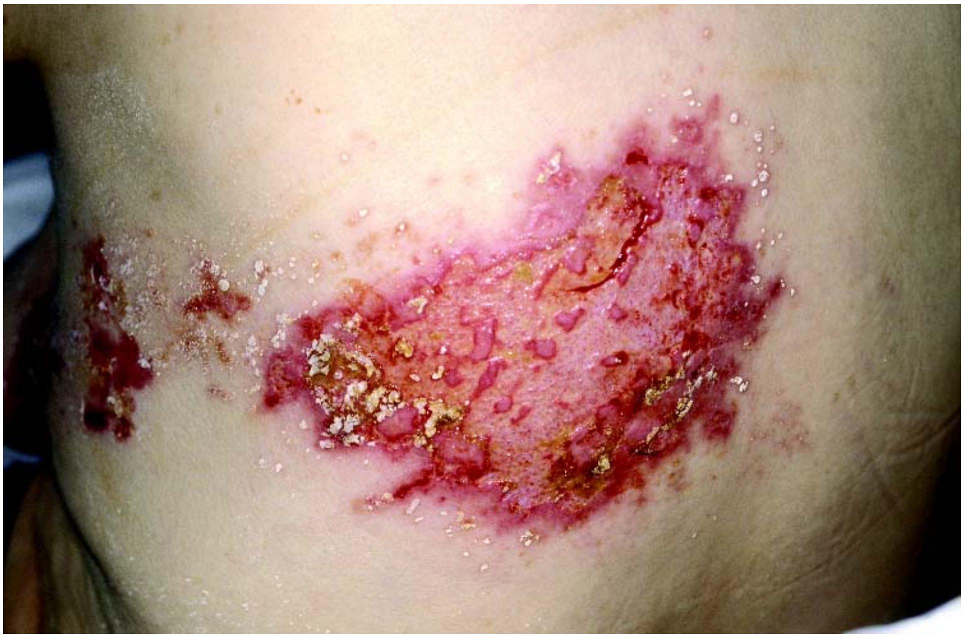
Shingles (Herpes Zoster) Infection

Introduction

Shingles is a disease that arises when the varicella-zoster virus (VZV), which causes chickenpox when it initially infects a human, reactivates after lying dormant in nerve cells. Shingles develops first as localized pain after which a rash, composed of fluid-filled blisters, forms. Fever, headache, chills, and a general feeling of sickness often accompany the pain. The rash develops within a few days and it may take several weeks for the blisters to break open and crust over. A person is infectious until the rash crusts over. Some cases of shingles result in serious complications, the most common being post-herpetic neuralgia, a type of nerve pain.

Treatment for shingles involves oral administration of an antiviral treatment. In addition, the symptoms and any complications also are treated. Treatment for post-herpetic neuralgia is aimed primarily at controlling the pain.

Shingles is a worldwide disease, but is most common in older adults, usually those aged 50 year old or older. Immunocompromised people are also at a greater risk of developing shingles. Prevention is achieved by preventing exposure of non-immune individuals to the fluid from rash blisters. In addition, a vaccine has been developed that is aimed at preventing shingles in patients 60 years old and older.



A shingles rash on a patient's back has ruptured and caused further infection. *DR M.A. Ansary/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

CHICKENPOX: Chickenpox (also called varicella disease and sometimes spelled chicken pox) is a common and extremely infectious childhood disease that can also affect adults. It produces an itchy, blistery rash that typically lasts about a week and is sometimes accompanied by a fever.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

POSTHERPETIC NEURALGIA: Neuralgia is pain arising in a nerve that is not the result of any injury. Postherpetic neuralgia is neuralgia experienced after infection with a herpesvirus, namely *Herpes simplex* or *Herpes zoster*.

VARICELLA-ZOSTER VIRUS (VZV): Varicella zoster virus is a member of the alpha herpes virus group and is the cause of both chickenpox (also known as varicella) and shingles (herpes zoster).

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Shingles, which is also known as herpes zoster, is caused by a virus known as varicella-zoster virus (VZV). This virus also causes chickenpox. Shingles arises in people who have already had chickenpox, since the virus remains in the body.

Usually, VZV remains dormant in the body. It settles in nerve roots, and when activated, causes the development of shingles. Shingles is characterized by the development of pain, itching, or tingling in a region on the body where a rash will develop a few days later. This pain is often accompanied by fever, headache, chills, or an upset stomach, making patients feel unwell. The rash develops blisters filled with fluid. These blisters break open and crust over. Infection normally lasts for four to five weeks, and, in most individuals, the skin heals and recovery is complete.

Some cases of shingles develop serious complications. Skin may be damaged due to scratching of the rash, and some cases of skin damage result in scarring. Deafness and blindness also can occur when the virus spreads to nerves within the ear or eye regions. This may be temporary, but in some cases is permanent. Brain inflammation (encephalitis) and death may also occur in rare cases. More commonly, pain may occur following recovery from the rash. Approximately 20% of people with shingles develop this pain, known as post-herpetic neuralgia. The pain is often severe and most likely is caused by nerve damage.

The varicella-zoster virus is transmitted when humans come in contact with airborne respiratory droplets or with fluid from rash blisters. When a person is first infected with this virus, they develop chickenpox. Once a person has contracted this virus, they retain it, and shingles develops when the virus reactivates. Exposure to fluid from shingles blisters does not cause people to become infected with shingles, but it can cause a person with no prior infection to contract chickenpox.

Scope and Distribution

Varicella-zoster virus occurs worldwide and causes the development of both chickenpox and shingles. Within the United States, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) reports an estimated one million cases of shingles annually. Anyone who has had chickenpox, and thus retains VZV, can potentially develop shingles. However, the majority of shingles cases occur in people older than 50 years of age. While children and adults under 50 do develop shingles, the risk of developing shingles increases with age.

Shingles is also more likely to develop in people who are immunocompromised. People with medical conditions, such as cancer or HIV, or those who have received organ transplants, have a compromised immune system that is less able to fight off infections. Therefore, these individuals are more likely to develop shingles.

While shingles cannot be spread from one person to another, people who have not previously been infected by VZV can contract the virus if they come in contact with infectious fluid from shingles blisters. However, this will result in chickenpox, not shingles.

While the majority of shingles patients recover fully after an infection, the CDC reports a fifth of U.S. patients suffer from post-herpetic neuralgia. This amounts to 200,000 people who develop this condition annually.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment is available for shingles and recovery is more likely the sooner treatment is administered. Shingles is treated using antiviral medications that are administered orally. These include acyclovir, famciclovir, and valacyclovir. Treatment does not cure the viral disease. Instead, it acts to hinder the progression of the disease throughout the nerves.

To treat the symptoms of shingles, in particular, the pain from the rash, pain-relieving medications, such as ibuprofen, naproxen, indomethacin, and nonsteroidal anti-flammatory drugs, are administered. For more intense pain, stronger analgesics, such as codeine or oxycodone, may be prescribed.

Treatment for post-herpetic neuralgia varies. The treatments tend to focus on treating the pain. Some treatments include: patches that release the pain-relieving medication lidocaine directly into the affected area; analgesics, which have sedating properties; opioids, which control pain; and antidepressants, which help patients tolerate severe pain. Some patients also receive electrical nerve stimulation or have the affected nerve cells blocked. However, the pain experienced often differs from patient to patient, and treatments that work for one patient do not necessarily work for another.

The spread of VZV from shingles patients to previously non-infected people can be prevented by covering the rash, avoiding touching the rash, and washing hands often to prevent contaminating items with fluid from the rash. Once the rash crusts over, the virus is no longer contagious.

A vaccine has been developed that causes people to develop immunity to VZV. This has been found to decrease the number of people developing chickenpox, and is thought to lessen the risk of the virus remaining dormant and possibly reactivating as shingles. A new vaccine, Zostavax, was developed in 2006. This vaccine prevents shingles and, in 2006, the vaccine was approved for use in patients 60 years old and over.

Impacts and Issues

Shingles usually affects older people and, in 20% of cases, the patient develops post-herpetic neuralgia. Post-herpetic neuralgia is nerve pain that lasts for three months or more. The pain can vary from mild to severe, and patients may experience burning, stabbing, or gnawing sensations. This side effect of the varicella-zoster virus is a serious issue for a number of reasons. The pain experienced by persons with shingles can often be persistent and debilitating. Furthermore, the treatments used for nerve pain tend to work for some people, while having no effect for other people, making pain management difficult. The number of people in the United States suffering from post-herpetic neuralgia is significant and while some may be relieved of the pain in a few months, many suffer severe pain for years following recovery from shingles.

Shingles can also be a dangerous disease when it infects immunocompromised persons. People with medical conditions, such as cancer or HIV, or those who have received organ transplants, have weakened immune systems and they are less capable of fighting off the disease. Therefore, more serious complications such as post-herpetic neuralgia, meningitis, and even death, are more likely in these persons if they contract shingles. Furthermore, vaccination is not a viable option, since even small doses of the virus may cause complications for these people. Therefore, avoidance of the virus, or rapid treatment, is vital for patients who are immunocompromised in order to prevent serious complications.

See Also *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Cancer and Infectious Disease; Chickenpox (Varicella); HIV; Vaccines and vaccine development; Viral Disease.*

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL AND SOCIAL RESPONSIBILITY

The National Immunization Program (NIP) at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that “Shingles cannot be passed from one person to another. However, the virus that causes shingles, VZV, can be spread from a person with active shingles to a person who has never had chickenpox through direct contact with the rash. The person exposed would develop chickenpox, not shingles. The virus is not spread through sneezing, coughing or casual contact. A person with shingles can spread the disease when the rash is in the blister-phase. Once the rash has developed crusts, the person is no longer contagious. A person is not infectious before blisters appear or with post-herpetic neuralgia (pain after the rash is gone).”

With regard to what can be done to prevent the spread of shingles, the CDC states that “the risk of spreading shingles is low if the rash is covered. People with shingles should keep the rash covered, not touch or scratch the rash, and wash their hands often to prevent the spread of VZV. Once the rash has developed crusts, the person is no longer contagious.”

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Immunization Program (NIP)*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Kimberlin, D.W., and R.J. Whitley. “Varicella-Zoster Vaccine for the Prevention of Herpes Zoster.” *New England Journal of Medicine* 356 (March 29, 2007): 1338–1343.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Shingles (Herpes Zoster).” October 19, 2006. <http://www.cdc.gov/nip/diseases/shingles/faqs-disease-shingles.htm> (accessed March 7, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). “Varicella Disease (Chickenpox).” May 26, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/nip/diseases/varicella/> (accessed Mar. 7, 2007).

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. “Shingles: An Unwelcome Encore.” June 2005. <http://www.fda.gov/FDAC/features/2001/301_pox.html> (accessed March 7, 2007).

World Health Organization. “Varicella Vaccine.” May 2003. <http://www.who.int/vaccines/en/varicella.shtml> (accessed March 7, 2007).

Smallpox

Introduction

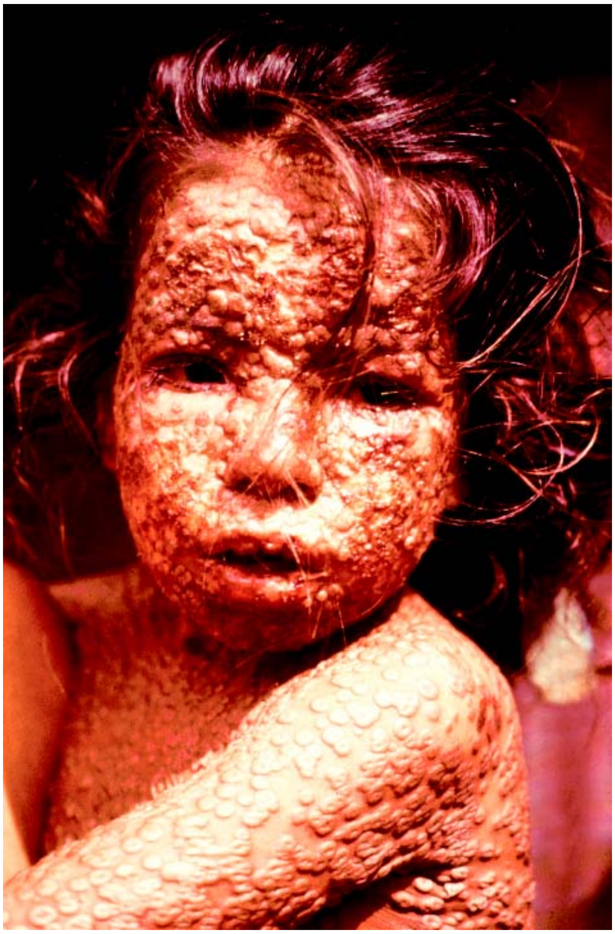
Smallpox is a infectious disease caused by a virus. It was eradicated by 1980 thanks to a global vaccination program, but stocks of variola virus are still held by at least two governments, those of the United States and the Russian Federation. The smallpox virus, also called the variola virus or simply variola, is most often spread by ingestion of virus particles in saliva, either by direct contact or through inhaling droplets dispersed in the air by coughing. When ingested, the smallpox virus first infects the tissues of the throat and nasal cavities, followed by the blood and lymph nodes. About 12 days after infection, a variety of flulike symptoms appear, including fever. Pustules (pus-filled lumps) develop on the skin and are painful at first, then itchy. The more deadly of variola's two varieties, *Variola major*, kills about 30% of the people that it infects. Sixty-five percent to 80% of those that do survive the disease are disfigured by pitted scars (pockmarks). Some survivors are also blinded by scarring of the retina. Before a vaccine was developed, smallpox was one of the most common causes of blindness worldwide.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

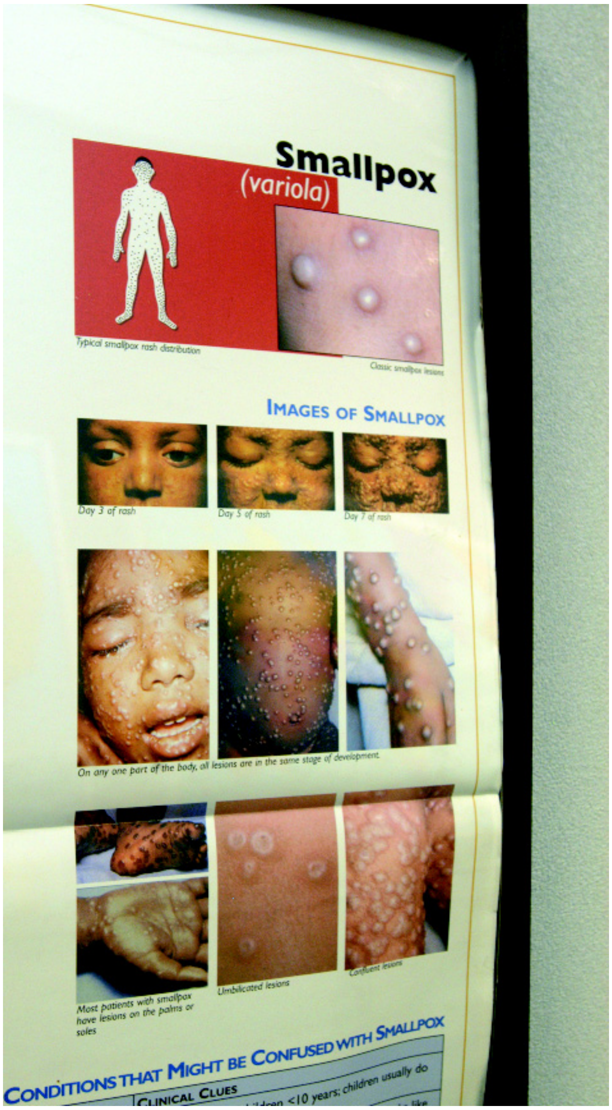
History

The evolutionary origin of the variola (smallpox) virus, a member of the genus *Orthopoxvirus*, family Poxviridae, is still obscure. It probably began as a virus in rodents and first infected humans in Africa about 12,000 years ago. The oldest historical reference is in a Chinese document dating to the fourth century. The name "variola," from the Latin for "spotted," dates to the sixth century. The term "smallpox" dates to the 1400s, when it was used to distinguish smallpox from syphilis (the "great pox").

North and South America were free of smallpox until European explorers arrived in the late 1400s. The disease soon spread to the Native American population, which had a much higher mortality rate than the Old World



A young girl in Bangladesh shows the typical raised bumps of the smallpox infection, which she contracted in 1973. In 1977, the World Health Organization announced that smallpox, a potentially fatal disease, had been eradicated from the country. By 1980, it was eliminated in the rest of the world. © *CDC/PHIL/Corbis.*


Smallpox
(variola)
Typical smallpox rash distribution
Classic smallpox lesions
IMAGES OF SMALLPOX
Day 3 of rash
Day 5 of rash
Day 7 of rash
On any one part of the body, all lesions are in the same stage of development.
Most patients with smallpox have lesions on the palms or soles
Umbilicated lesions
Confluent lesions
CONDITIONS THAT MIGHT BE CONFUSED WITH SMALLPOX
CLINICAL CLUES

Information on smallpox is shown at the U.S. Public Health Service Quarantine Station in Atlanta's Hartsfield Jackson International Airport in 2005. Built before the 1996 Olympics, it is one of 18 such facilities located in major airports. Ten of the 18 quarantine stations have become operational since 2003 in response to threats of disease importation and bioterrorism. *Barry Williams/Getty Images.*

population, probably because there had been no history of natural selection for resistance to the disease. Some historians estimate that 90% of the population of the New World was killed by smallpox. For example, the Aztec population in South America fell from 25 million in 1519 to only 3 million in 1569. Smallpox was not originally spread deliberately by the Europeans, although in the French and Indian wars of the mid-1700s British military forces gave smallpox-infected blankets to Indians who were cooperating with the French—one of the earliest recorded efforts at biological warfare.

In 1796, English physician Edward Jenner (1749–1823) showed that inoculating a person with pus from a cowpox lesion could prevent smallpox. Inoculation had been discovered before—the earliest known use of smallpox inoculation dates to about 1000 BC, in India—but the idea of inoculation with the harmless cowpox virus had not yet been put forward in Europe by somebody with the professional and class standing to establish it as a known medical fact.

At the time of Jenner's work, smallpox was killing about 400,000 people a year in Europe and millions worldwide. The practice of variolation had already been used to fight smallpox for some decades in Europe and for centuries in Asia. Variolation (named after the disease, variola—the existence of viruses was not yet understood) involved infecting a healthy person with smallpox from a mild case of the disease, either by inserting smallpox-scab material into the nostrils or by rubbing it onto a scratch on the skin. People inoculated in this way were far less likely to die from the more severe form of smallpox than were un-inoculated people. However, there was still a significant death rate from smallpox contracted through variolation (1–2%). Jenner's method of inoculation with cowpox virus was much safer. Although his views were not accepted for a few years, they did catch on. Over 100,000 inhabitants of Britain had been vaccinated with cowpox by 1800 and the British Parliament passed the Vaccination Act in 1840 to make vaccination of infants mandatory and to outlaw variolation. Mandatory smallpox vaccination of children soon became the standard in industrialized countries.

So successful was vaccination that the disease was eradicated from prosperous countries. The last case of smallpox in the United States occurred in 1949. At that time, smallpox was still infecting about 50 million people every year worldwide, about 30% of whom died. Thanks to vaccination, the number of infections dropped to about 15 million per year by 1967. In that year, the World Health Organization (WHO) of the United Nations started a program—the WHO Intensified Smallpox Eradication Program—to eliminate smallpox completely. In 1972, the United States began phasing out mandatory vaccination of schoolchildren. In 1977, the last natural case of smallpox on Earth was seen in Somalia, and in 1980, WHO declared that the eradication campaign had been a success. Smallpox had become the first (and, as of 2007, still the only) major infectious disease to be completely eradicated by human effort.

Characteristics

Smallpox occurs in two forms, variola major and variola minor. Both forms cause similar symptoms, but variola minor is fatal only about 1–2% of the time, compared to 30% or higher for variola major. These two varieties of variola have been recognized for centuries, even before the viral nature of the disease was understood. The two varieties of virus are similar enough that immunity to one confers immunity to the other. Variolation with scabs or pus from mild smallpox cases—an ancient method of immunizing people against smallpox—usually involved infected people with variola minor, granting them immunity from variola major with a fairly low risk of death from the treatment.

The variola virus is most often caught by inhalation of saliva droplets coughed out by a person who already has the disease. Virus particles lodge in the nasal cavities or throat and infect those tissues first, then grow in the lymph nodes nearest the site of infection. (Lymph nodes are small, bean-shaped organs that filter lymph, a clear fluid that is drained from tissues through the system of lymphatic vessels and then returned to the blood.) The patient has no symptoms during this phase of the disease. After three or four days, virus particles spread through the bloodstream to the bone marrow, spleen, and other parts of the lymphatic system, where they multiply. The smallpox virus, like all viruses, multiplies by tricking body cells into manufacturing more virus particles, using genetic material supplied by the virus itself. More smallpox virus particles appear in the blood 8–10 days after infection. During these initial phases—termed the incubation period—the patient feels healthy and cannot infect other persons. About 12–14 days after infection (with a range of 7–17 days), the incubation period ends and the next phase of the illness—termed the prodrome, prodromal stage, or preeruptive stage—begins suddenly. In this stage, symptoms appear, but do not yet include the skin eruptions or lesions that make the patient capable of spreading the infection. Prodromal symptoms may include fever and last 2–4 days. After the prodromal stage, the disease can next show four distinct courses or clinical presentations. These are termed ordinary smallpox, modified smallpox, flat smallpox, and hemorrhagic smallpox.

Ordinary Smallpox Ordinary smallpox accounts for about 90% of cases. After the prodromal stage, the fever may drop and the patient feels less sick. The smallpox rash then appears as small red spots (lesions) on the tongue, on the inside of the mouth, and at the back of the throat (on the pharynx). The mouth-and-throat lesions grow, releasing billions of virus particles into the saliva that may then be transmitted to other people. The lesions in the throat trigger coughing, which tends to spread the disease. About 24 hours after the appearance of the mouth-and-throat rash, a rash appears on the skin, first on the face and limbs and then on the trunk. The rashes become lumpier and fill with fluid. In about a week the lumps, now filled with pus and called pustules, have become round, raised, and hard to the touch, like beads under the skin. Generally, the more severe the rash, the greater the chance that the patient will die. In another week the fluid in the pustules has been absorbed and a crust or scab begins to form over them. Finally, a week later, the crusts fall off, leaving bleached skin and indented scars. At this point the patient has ceased to be infectious.

Ali Maow Maalim, the last known smallpox victim, was photographed in Mogadishu in late 2002. He still bears scars from the disease, which he caught in 1977 while vaccinating people against smallpox in a Somali hospital. *AP Images.*

Modified Smallpox Modified smallpox is a milder form of the disease that sometimes occurs in persons who have been vaccinated. The fever does not return after the prodromal phase and the rash appears more quickly but produces fewer and smaller lesions. This form of the disease is almost never fatal.

Flat Smallpox In flat smallpox, the raised lesions or pustules of ordinary smallpox do not develop on the skin. This form of the disease has been observed in a study in India to occur about 5–10% of the time, usually in children. The prodromic stage is more severe in flat smallpox, and so is the rash on the tongue and at the back of the throat. The skin lesions appear slowly and are flatter than in ordinary smallpox. This form of the disease is usually fatal.

Hemorrhagic Smallpox Hemorrhagic smallpox occurs about 2% of the time in India. It is called “hemorrhagic” because to hemorrhage means to bleed; patients with this form of smallpox begin to bleed—sometimes only a few days into the course of the disease—in the eyes, gums, mouth, and skin lesions. Death usually occurs about a week after the onset of symptoms, before the skin rash has had a chance to develop much.

Transmission

Variola virus is quite virulent, that is, easy to spread from one person to another. Only a small number of virus particles need be taken into the body to cause the disease. Virus concentrations in the saliva and mucus are highest during the first week of symptomatic illness (after the prodromic stage), and it is during this time that the patient is most infectious. However, the patient remains infectious until all crusts have separated from the healing pustules on the skin. Virus particles can be transmitted through the air or by direct contact with the patient or materials they have touched. They do not enter through the skin, but may be transferred to the mucous membranes of the mouth, eyes, or nose by hand contact.

Scope and Distribution

Smallpox infection no longer occurs naturally. As of 2007, the only stocks of the virus known to exist are held by the governments of Russia and the United States.

Treatment and Prevention

Since smallpox is caused by a virus, it cannot be treated using antibiotics (which kill only bacteria). Nor, as of 2006, had any antiviral drug had been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of smallpox. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention suggested that the antiviral drug cidofovir might be used for smallpox under the supervision of an infectious diseases specialist, but warns that the drug can injure the kidneys. The usual treatment is strictly supportive: the patient is kept clean, sheltered, and hydrated, while their own immune system fights the infection.

The main method of preventing transmission of smallpox is to avoid having other people ingest the virus. To this end, all persons having contact with a smallpox patient should wear fitted breathing masks and disposable gloves, gowns, and shoes. Breathing masks prevent the inhalation of virus particles.

Where high-technology medical settings are available, a smallpox patient should be isolated in a room with negative pressure, that is, one where the air-circulation system draws air into the room and filters it before pumping it out rather than allowing it to escape. This is because smallpox transmission can be caused by virus particles conveyed in tiny, airborne particles. Air that has contacted a smallpox patient must be assumed to be potentially carrying the disease.

The primary method of preventing smallpox infection is the smallpox vaccine. It is not made using smallpox virus, but a live vaccinia virus strain. The standard vaccine available today was developed in the early 1980s and is supplied as a freeze-dried powder in 100-dose units. The dry vaccine mixture contains several antibiotics and is mixed with a special liquid consisting of water, glycerin, and phenol as a preservative. The vaccine is guaranteed to confer immunity for at least 10 years, but there is evidence that it may confer immunity for far longer. About 15 million doses of this vaccine are stockpiled in the United States as of 2007; this number could be increased in an emergency by diluting the vaccine to increase its volume by a factor as great as 5.

Smallpox vaccine causes a number of medical complications, but death is rare. It should not be taken by pregnant women, because the vaccinia virus can cause fetal vaccinia, an infection of the fetus with the vaccinia virus. This usually causes stillbirth or death of the child soon after birth.

Impacts and Issues

The eradication of smallpox was one of the major public health success stories of the twentieth century. This effort demonstrated that international cooperation on important health issues could be achieved. Moreover, it also demonstrated that it is possible to eradicate an infectious disease with an effective vaccination program, and that vaccination is a useful preventative method in the fight against infectious diseases. Smallpox stocks still exist, however, and if released into the environment,

WORDS TO KNOW

ERADICATION: The process of destroying or eliminating a microorganism or disease.

PRODROME: A prodrome of a disease is a symptom indicating the disease's onset; it may also be called a prodroma. For example, painful swallowing is often a prodrome of infection with a cold virus.

VARIOLATION: Variolation was the pre-modern practice of deliberately infecting a person with smallpox in order to make them immune to a more serious form of the disease. It was dangerous, but did confer immunity on survivors.

SMALLPOX: AN ANCIENT DISEASE

As a disease, smallpox has an ancient history. Studies of the mummy of Pharaoh Ramses V, who died in 1157 BC, revealed symptoms of smallpox infection.

could cause an epidemic in an unvaccinated population. As of 2007, a large but unknown percentage of Americans were not immune to smallpox. This uncertainty arises because nobody is sure how much immunity is still conferred by immunizations received before 1972.

Smallpox has long been considered as a biological weapon of war or terror. In the mid–1700s, British army commanders in what is now Canada gave smallpox-infested blankets to Indians who were collaborating with the French (the enemies of the British at that time). Systematic bioweapons research by the U.S., Japan, the Soviet Union, and other countries began during World War II but concentrated on bacteria (e.g., anthrax) rather than viruses for some years. In the 1950s, American bioweapon developers, concerned that the Soviet Union might be developing smallpox and other viruses as well, began studying techniques for producing freeze-dried smallpox powder that could be efficiently spread over a wide area. In the mid-1960s, Army planners approached the U.S. bioweapons labs at Fort Detrick, Maryland, to see whether biological weapons could be used to attack military traffic between North and South Vietnam. Smallpox was considered the best candidate, but the idea was abandoned because U.S. use of biological warfare might be exposed, North Vietnam might retaliate in kind, and the disease might spread to friendly forces. At about this time, Soviet agents secretly sampled highly virulent smallpox strains in India for use in the large Soviet bioweapons program. In 1969, President Richard Nixon abolished the U.S. biological warfare program and supported an international ban on biological weapons. This was formalized as the 1972 Biological and Toxic Weapons Convention Treaty, which was eventually signed by the Soviet Union and most of the rest of the countries of the world.

After biological attacks using anthrax occurred in the United States in 2001, the issue of smallpox as a potential agent of biological terror again surfaced. In the United States, researchers, members of the military, key health personnel, and first responders in the community were vaccinated against smallpox so that response to any future threat by the smallpox virus can be prompt. Large reserves of smallpox vaccine are maintained by many countries in the developed world and the World Health Organization.

Today, the smallpox virus is only known to exist in two secure repositories, both authorized by WHO: one is at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in the United States and the other is at the State Research Center of Virology and Biotechnology of the Russian Federation in Siberia. Debate continues on whether the last remaining stocks of smallpox virus should be used for research or destroyed.

■ Primary Source Connection

Disease outbreaks are reported by World Health Organization (WHO, Epidemic and Pandemic Alert and Response (EPR), Disease Outbreak News.

WHO maintains the EPR as a “major pillar of global health security aimed at the detection, verification and containment of epidemics. In the event of the intentional release of a biological agent these activities would be vital to effective international containment efforts.”

As the bulletin below indicates, the system is also used to clarify information and allay fear concerning infectious agents that could be used as biological weapons.

ACCIDENTAL EXPOSURE TO SMALLPOX VACCINE IN THE RUSSIAN FEDERATION

20 JUNE 2000

DISEASE OUTBREAK REPORTED

The recent report of illness amongst 8 young children in Vladivostock who had played with discarded ampoules of smallpox vaccine has now been confirmed by the Ministry of Health of the Russian Federation. Laboratory confirmation of the illness in the children is being sought. The report has evoked much public concern. In some of the reports, there were misconceptions about the components of the vaccine used to prevent smallpox, and about why any country might still be retaining stocks of smallpox vaccine. This note aims to clarify these issues.

1. Smallpox vaccine is not made from smallpox virus. The vaccine which was used for centuries to vaccinate against smallpox was not made from smallpox, but from vaccinia virus. Vaccinia is a different virus from the virus which causes smallpox. However, it is a member of the same family of viruses to which the smallpox virus belongs. The smallpox virus is also known as variola virus. Mass vaccinations with smallpox vaccine made from vaccinia virus led to the eradication of smallpox announced by WHO in 1980. People vaccinated with smallpox vaccine (vaccinia) develop reactions to it which range from mild and transient to severe, and very rarely, fatal.
2. Two countries still keep smallpox virus (variola) stocks. Although smallpox disease has been

eradicated, two laboratories still hold stocks of smallpox virus (variola). These are the WHO Collaborating Centres in Atlanta, USA and Koltsovo, Russian Federation.

3. Many countries still hold smallpox vaccine (vaccinia) stocks. WHO recommends that countries which still have stocks of smallpox vaccine (vaccinia) maintain these stocks. This recommendation has been made for two reasons. Firstly, small amounts of vaccine are still needed to vaccinate laboratory personnel handling vaccinia virus and other members of this virus family. Some of these viruses are found in nature and cause illness among animals, and some are used in research to make new, safer vaccines against a variety of infectious diseases. Secondly, smallpox vaccine (vaccinia) will also be needed in case of a deliberate or accidental release of smallpox virus (variola), which is a very unlikely event but currently of great concern to some countries. For further information on this topic, see the summary of the recent meeting of the WHO Advisory Committee on Variola Virus Research, published in the Weekly Epidemiological Record.
4. Disposal of biological materials and pharmaceuticals. All biological materials and pharmaceuticals such as vaccines, drugs and diagnostic specimens should be disposed of safely. Some may require inactivation before disposal. This can be accomplished by autoclaving or incineration.

World Health Organization

WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION, EPIDEMIC AND PANDEMIC ALERT AND RESPONSE (EPR), DISEASE OUTBREAK NEWS “ACCIDENTAL EXPOSURE TO SMALLPOX VACCINE IN THE RUSSIAN FEDERATION: 20 JUNE, 2000.” <HTTP://WWW.WHO.INT/CSR/DON/2000_06_20E/EN/INDEX.HTML> (ACCESSED APRIL 12, 2007)

SEE ALSO *Smallpox Eradication and Storage; Viral Disease; World Health Organization (WHO).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ian, Glynn, and Jennifer Glynn. *Life and Death of Smallpox.* London: Profile Books, 2005.

Miller, Judith, et al. *Germs: Biological Weapons and America’s Secret War.* New York: Simon & Schuster, 2002.

Rodriguez, Ana Maria. *Edward Jenner: Conqueror of Smallpox.* Springfield, NJ: Enslow, 2006.

Periodicals

Cohen, Jon. “Leaks Produce a Torrent of Denials.” *Science* 298 (2002): 1313–1314.

Esposito, Joseph J., et al. “Genome Sequence Diversity and Clues to the Evolution of Variola (Smallpox) Virus.” *Science* 313 (2006): 807–812.

Koopman, Jim. “Controlling Smallpox.” *Science* 298 (2002): 1342–1344.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Emergency Preparedness and Response: Smallpox.” <http://www.bt.cdc.gov/agent/smallpox/> (accessed February 21, 2007).

Journal of Young Investigators. “Smallpox: Historical Review of a Potential Bioterrorist Tool.” September 2002. <http://www.jyi.org/volumes/volume6/issue3/features/bourzac.html> (accessed February 21, 2007).

World Health. “Smallpox.” <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/smallpox/en/> (accessed February 20, 2007).

Larry Gilman

Smallpox Eradication and Storage

Introduction

Smallpox is a disease caused by the smallpox virus, also called the variola virus or simply variola. The World Health Organization (WHO) of the United Nations declared smallpox eradicated in 1980 after a decades-long program of global vaccination. However, specimens of smallpox virus are still held in the United States, Russia, and possibly other countries. Samples of variola DNA may also be recoverable from old medical samples, such as the century-old smallpox scabs discovered in an envelope tucked in a nineteenth-century medical textbook in a New Mexico library in 2004. Since the 1990s, there has been ongoing debate about whether or not remaining stocks of smallpox should be destroyed. Issues include the morality of deliberately causing the extinction of a species; whether continued possession of the virus might someday result in its escape, potentially causing millions of deaths; whether the virus might be used to develop biological weapons; and whether keeping the virus intact is necessary as a precaution against the possible use of smallpox as a biowar or bioterror weapon or its accidental or natural re-release into human populations. The WHO has authorized some research with existing variola stocks, but faces continued controversy over the continued existence of the smallpox virus.

History and Scientific Foundations

The eradication of smallpox began with the discovery in 1796 by English physician Edward Jenner (1749–1823) that inoculating a person with pus from a cowpox lesion could prevent smallpox. This fact had been noticed before by a number of people, as had the possibility of inoculation using scabs or pus from people with milder cases of smallpox (variola minor). However, Jenner was the first person with professional standing to discover inoculation with the harmless cowpox virus, and so he was able to publish his findings and make them a standard part of medical knowledge.

Widespread vaccination led to the disappearance of smallpox from industrialized countries. In the United States, for example, the last case was reported in Texas in 1949. From 1967 to 1980, the World Health Organization oversaw a global campaign, the WHO Intensified Smallpox Eradication Program, to eliminate

BiochemGARD
WARNING

A researcher in the Poxvirus Section of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in Atlanta shows the use of a biohazard suit. In an effort to modernize defenses against smallpox, the CDC has dedicated a maximum-containment laboratory to smallpox-only research. *AP Images.*

smallpox entirely. The program was declared an official success in May 1980, almost three years after the last case of natural smallpox on Earth was seen in 1977 in Somalia.

The eradication strategy had two basic features. First came mass vaccination campaigns in each target country, coordinated with that country's government. The goal was to vaccinate at least 80% of the population of each target country. Smallpox vaccination is a simple procedure involving multiple skin punctures in the side of the arm with a two-pronged metal tool resembling a lobster fork. The tool, termed a bifurcated needle, is dipped once into a vial containing liquid smallpox vaccine and then repeatedly stuck into the skin over a small area. Earlier, less-convenient methods were displaced by the bifurcated-needle procedure during the global eradication campaign.

The smallpox vaccine does not contain smallpox virus, but live vaccinia virus. Vaccinia virus almost never causes fatal disease; the reported death rate from smallpox vaccination is approximately one death per one million vaccinations. An immune system that has learned to recognize and attack the vaccinia virus will also recognize and attack the variola virus at its first appearance. Smallpox virus may enter the body of an immunized person, but is destroyed by the immune system before it can gain a foothold.

The second aspect of the eradication strategy was termed "surveillance and containment." Since some percentage of the population in most countries remained unvaccinated even at the height of the eradication campaign, smallpox still occurred. Surveillance and containment involved keeping a lookout for outbreaks of smallpox and then selectively, intensively vaccinating people in the vicinity of the outbreak.

This two-part strategy was successful. Smallpox was eliminated in Brazil in 1971 and in Indonesia in 1972. A few outbreaks in Europe were caused by travelers, but were rapidly contained. The last case of the more severe form of smallpox, variola major, occurred in Bangladesh in 1975. The last case of natural smallpox occurred in Somalia in 1977. After several years with no reported cases of the disease, the World Health Organization declared smallpox eradicated in 1980. As of 2007, no cases had been reported worldwide in 30 years.

Following eradication, the World Health Organization requested that all laboratories in the world either destroy their smallpox virus stocks or transfer them to one of two reference laboratories, the Institute of Viral Preparations in Moscow or the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in Atlanta, Georgia. The stocks of the Institute of Viral Preparations were transferred in 1994 to the State Research Center of Virology and Biotechnology of the Russian Federation in Siberia, now the WHO Collaborating Centre for Orthopoxvirus Diagnostics.

WORDS TO KNOW

BIFURCATED NEEDLE: A bifurcated needle is a needle that has two prongs with a wire suspended between them. The wire is designed to hold a certain amount of vaccine. Development of the bifurcated needle was a major advance in vaccination against smallpox.

BIOSAFETY LEVEL 4 FACILITY: A specially equipped, secured laboratory where scientists study the most dangerous known microbes. These labs are designed to contain infectious agents and disease-causing microbes, prevent their dissemination, and protect researchers from exposure.

COWPOX: Cowpox refers to a disease that is caused by the cowpox or catpox virus. The virus is a member of the orthopoxvirus family. Other viruses in this family include the smallpox and vaccinia viruses. Cowpox is a rare disease, and is mostly noteworthy as the basis of the formulation, over 200 years ago, of an injection by Edward Jenner that proved successful in curing smallpox.

VACCINATION: Vaccination is the inoculation, or use of vaccines, to prevent specific diseases within humans and animals by producing immunity to such diseases. The introduction of weakened or dead viruses or microorganisms into the body to create immunity by the production of specific antibodies.

VACCINIA VIRUS: The vaccinia virus is a usually harmless virus that is closely related to the virus that causes smallpox, a dangerous disease. Infection with the vaccinia virus confers immunity against smallpox, so vaccinia virus has been used as a vaccine against smallpox.

VARIOLA VIRUS: Variola virus (or variola major virus) is the virus that causes smallpox. The virus is one of the members of the poxvirus group (Family Poxviridae). The virus particle is brick shaped and contains a double strand of deoxyribonucleic acid. The variola virus is among the most dangerous of all the potential biological weapons.

By United States law, smallpox virus can be stored and handled only at Biosafety Level 4 (BSL-4) facilities. Such a facility consists of a separate building or architecturally isolated section of a building specially equipped for biological isolation. Persons entering and leaving the facility must take sterilizing showers; air and sewage leaving the building must pass through special filters to remove any possible disease-carrying particles, and separate air supply and exhaust must be arranged for workers inside the laboratory space. The building must be ventilated so that air flows into the building and toward the part of the building where the most hazardous materials are kept. The building must also remain sealed in the event of a power failure. There are approximately 10 BSL-4 facilities in the United States as of 2007.

■ Applications and Research

Following eradication, the World Health Organization set 1999 as the deadline for the destruction of all variola virus stocks. However, both the United States and Russia failed to carry out this directive, citing the need for further research on the virus. The World Health Assembly (WHA), the governing body of WHO, accepted the continuing existence of the virus and established a Variola Advisory Committee to oversee variola virus research until the end of 2002. After that time, the virus stocks were to finally be destroyed. Some ethicists have raised the question of whether it is permissible to deliberately cause the extinction of any species, even a malignant virus, but this has not been a major concern in WHO or governmental debates on the fate of the variola virus. In 2002 the WHA decided, under combined United States and Russian pressure, that not enough research had been accomplished and that the deadline for variola destruction would be extended indefinitely.

The goals of variola virus research are said by workers in the field to be a better understanding of the genome of the virus, the proteins produced by the virus, and the precise means by which the virus infects cells in order to prepare for accidental, natural, or deliberate re-release of the virus in human populations. The genomes of several dozen varieties of variola virus were completely sequenced by 2007.

In 2004, the Variola Advisory Committee decided to allow the creation of genetically modified varieties of the variola virus, in particular, some containing reporter genes (genes that make it easy to identify the presence of the virus, such as a protein that glows green when exposed to blue light). In 2005, the advisory committee also voted to allow the transfer of variola DNA fragments up to 55 base pairs long between laboratories, the manufacture of gene chips containing smallpox DNA, and the splicing of smallpox genes into other orthopoxviruses.

■ Impacts and Issues

Research using the surviving smallpox virus stocks has been controversial for decades. The World Health Organization's Director-General opposed WHO's decision in 2005 to allow the transfer of smallpox genes to other viruses, a move also opposed by South Africa, China, the Netherlands, and a number of other countries. Developing countries, which would be more vulnerable to a new smallpox outbreak, are particularly keen on final destruction of virus stocks. Two groups, the Third World Network and the Sunshine Project, mounted campaigns in the early 2000s against continuing smallpox research of this type.

Also in 2005, a bill passed by the United States Congress made it illegal to "produce, engineer, [or] synthesize" the variola virus from scratch. The possibility of from-scratch (also called de novo) manufacture of smallpox virus is not farfetched. Poliovirus was first synthesized from scratch in 2001, starting solely with a record of its genome and without the aid of preexisting RNA, DNA, or living cells. In 2006, Sandia National Laboratory, an arm of the U.S. government, began experiments that involved inserting synthetic (de novo) variola genes into other organisms. Some critics of the continued existence of variola stocks say that since Sandia's historical mission has been the production of nuclear weapons and the laboratory has no biomedical mission, its research with variola virus genes is inappropriate and signifies deteriorating WHO control over smallpox research.

In January 2007, the WHO Executive Board adopted a draft smallpox resolution to be sent to the WHA in May 2007. The resolution asks the Director-General of the WHO to forbid genetic engineering of the variola virus and calls for the topic of setting a definite date for the destruction of variola virus stocks to be placed on the agenda of the WHA's 63rd or 64th session in 2010 or 2011.

SEE ALSO *Smallpox; Viral Disease; World Health Organization (WHO).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Carrell, Jennifer Lee. *The Speckled Monster: A Historical Tale of Battling the Smallpox Epidemic*. New York: Dutton, 2003.

Koplow, David. *Smallpox: The Fight to Eradicate a Global Scourge*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 2004.

Periodicals

Cohen, Jon. "Leaks Produce a Torrent of Denials." *Science* 298 (November 15, 2002): 1313–1315.

Enserink, Martin. "WHA Gives Yellow Light for Variola Studies." *Science* 308 (May 27, 2005): 1235.

Halloran, M. Elizabeth, et al. "Containing Bioterrorist Smallpox." *Science* 298 (November 15, 2002): 1428–1432.

Normile, Dennis. "WHO Gives a Cautious Green Light to Smallpox Experiments." *Science* 306 (November 19, 2004): 1270–1271.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "The Pink Book: Smallpox." November 15, 2006. <http://www.cdc.gov/nip/publications/pink/smallpox.pdf> (accessed February 22, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Smallpox." <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/smallpox/en/> (accessed February 20, 2007).

Larry Gilman

Sporotrichosis

Introduction

Sporotrichosis, also known as rose gardener's disease, is a mycotic (fungal) infection that is caused by the fungus *Sporothrix schenckii*. Humans most often become infected when they are pricked or scratched by plants that harbor the fungus. The resulting infection is usually a cutaneous (skin) infection involving the formation of ulcerous lesions. However, other forms of sporotrichosis can occur when the fungus is inhaled, and include pulmonary sporotrichosis, in which the lungs are infected, and disseminated sporotrichosis, in which the joints, gastrointestinal system, or central nervous system are infected.

Sporotrichosis infection occurs worldwide. Gardeners, florists, or children playing in hay bales who regularly come in contact with plants harboring the fungus are most at risk of becoming infected.

Sporotrichosis is most commonly treated with antifungal medication. Treatment may be required for months, and in cases left untreated, severe skin ulceration can occur. Development of the less common forms of the disease, that is pulmonary and disseminated sporotrichosis, can lead to serious complications such as tuberculosis, bone diseases, or swelling of the brain and may potentially be fatal. People with weakened immune systems are most at risk of these potentially fatal complications of sporotrichosis.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The fungus was first identified as the causative agent of sporotrichosis by the American physician Benjamin Robinson Schenck (1873–1920) in 1896. For this reason, sporotrichosis is also sometimes known as Schenck's disease. After the French physician Charles Lucien de Beurmann (1851–1923) further explained the role of *S. schenckii* in causing disease in 1903, some scientists renamed the organism *Sporotrichum beurmanni*.

After an incubation period of about 1–12 weeks from exposure to the fungus, infection with *S. schenckii* causes a small painless nodule (bump), similar to an insect bite, to develop on the skin. This nodule can be red, pink, or purple, and tends to be located on the finger, hand, or arm. Eventually, a number of similar lesions form, spreading to other regions of the body.

Most sporotrichosis infections are limited to the skin. However, rarely, the fungus may spread through the lymphatic system after it is inhaled to infect the lungs, joints, or central nervous system. Serious complications can arise in these cases, particularly when the fungus spreads to the central nervous system. In this case, the disease is known as sporotrichosis meningitis, and can cause death. When the joints are affected, the disease is known as osteoarticular sporotrichosis. This condition can cause symptoms such as weight loss, bursitis, and weak, stiff joints. Pulmonary sporotrichosis is more common in middle aged men who have underlying risk factors such as alcoholism and existing pulmonary diseases like emphysema. People with pulmonary sporotrichosis often develop pneumonia.

The fungus is transmitted from plant material such as roses, hay, and sphagnum moss into humans via broken skin. Defensive mechanisms on these plants such as thorns, barbs, and pine needles can cause punctures or cuts in the skin, creating an entry route for transmission of the fungi. Sporotrichosis is not spread from person to person.

Scope and Distribution

Sporotrichosis occurs worldwide. The fungus *S. schenckii* occurs naturally on thorny plants such as roses, on sphagnum moss, and in hay. Therefore, people who come in contact with these plants are at the greatest risk of becoming infected. This includes gardeners, nursery workers, farmers, and greenhouse workers. In addition, children who often play on baled hay are at risk of contracting the disease.

Treatment and Prevention

The most common form of treatment for sporotrichosis is administration of the anti-fungal drug itraconazole. Oral administration of a saturated potassium iodide solution is sometimes given, and this treatment is given over a period of usually 3–6 months. Other anti-fungal drugs such as fluconazole may also be used. When the lesions have become large and filled with fluid, it is sometimes necessary to drain and remove the lesions surgically.

Other forms of sporotrichosis, such as in the lungs, joints, or central nervous system, may also require itraconazole or surgery. An additional treatment sometimes administered in complicated cases involves amphotericin B.

Wearing protective clothing, such as gloves and long sleeves while handling plants may provide protection against infection by *S. schenckii*. In particular, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that workers wear gloves when coming into contact with sphagnum moss due to a number of outbreaks of sporotrichosis associated with this plant.

Impacts and Issues

Sporotrichosis also occurs in other mammals such as cats and dogs, and pet owners, especially those living on a farm, are advised to seek treatment for pets showing nodules. Humans can become infected by coming in contact with the open sores present on animals. Therefore, veterinarians responsible for treating animals infected with sporotrichosis are also at risk of contracting this infection.

While disseminated variations of sporotrichosis rarely occur, they occur most commonly in people with compromised immune systems such as people living with diseased or weakened organs, cancer, diabetes, or AIDS. Therefore, these persons are at a greater risk of developing potentially fatal forms of sporotrichosis.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Immune Response to Infection; Mycotic Disease; Pneumonia; Tuberculosis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

CUTANEOUS: Pertaining to the skin.

DISSEMINATED: Disseminated refers to the previous distribution of a disease-causing microorganism over a larger area.

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to disease causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (an example is food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (an example is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

MYCOTIC: Mycotic means having to do with or caused by a fungus. Any medical condition caused by a fungus is a mycotic condition, also called a mycosis.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Coles FB, et al. "A Multistate Outbreak of Sporotrichosis Associated with Sphagnum Moss." *American Journal of Epidemiology* (1992): 136, 475–487.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Sporotrichosis." October 13, 2005 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/sporotrichosis_g.htm#How%20is%20sporotrichosis%20treated> (accessed March 12, 2007).

Department of Health, New York State. "Sporotrichosis." June 2004 <http://www.health.state.ny.us/diseases/communicable/sporotrichosis/fact_sheet.htm> (accessed March 12, 2007).

Standard Precautions

Introduction

Standard precautions are precautions that have been put into effect by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) aimed at reducing the risk of transfer of disease-causing viruses or bacteria (generally called pathogens) from the blood or other moist regions of the body—such as mucous membranes and damaged skin—that can harbor pathogens. Essentially, standard precautions involve good hygiene. This includes proper handwashing and, in a hospital, other practices, such as the proper use of protective equipment, environmental controls, and handling of used linen.

History and Scientific Foundations

The standard precaution criteria established by the CDC in January 1996 are an extension of guidelines that were known as universal precautions. Universal precautions were recommended in 1987 following the recognition that acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome) could be contracted by the transfer of blood that was contaminated with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).

Universal precautions applied to people known or suspected of having a blood-borne infection. Standard precautions are wider in their scope, and apply to all body fluids (except sweat) of all patients whether or not they are recognized as having an infection.

Applications and Research

Handwashing

One of the fundamental standard precautions is handwashing. Hands must be washed after direct contact with blood or other body fluids of a patient, or after contact with items, such as fluid-soaked linen, whether or not gloves have been worn. This ensures that pathogens that may have contacted the skin through tiny tears or an imperfection in a glove are killed.

Handwashing should be done immediately after contact with a patient and before moving on to another patient. Handwashing may also need to be done during the time with one patient, if different tasks are performed, for example, after probing inside the mouth and before examining other parts of the body.

For routine handwashing, use of ordinary household soap is acceptable, since the soap's ingredients and the friction from rubbing the hands together for a sufficient length of time (at least 30 seconds) will produce the desired antimicrobial effect. But, increasingly in hospital wards, an alcohol solution is being used. This is because the alcohol solution is effective more quickly, an important consideration in the time-constrained day of healthcare providers. In addition, washing the hands with soap many times every day can be harsh on skin, even to the point of causing breaks in the skin that can become infected.

Gloves

Healthcare providers should wear gloves when coming into contact with blood and other body fluids. Fresh gloves must be worn for each patient, otherwise the gloves can become a route of patient-to-patient transfer of microbes. Similar to handwashing, gloves should be worn and removed immediately before and after contact with a patient, and need to be disposed of in a designated container.

Gown

A hospital gown worn over clothing protects against splashing or spraying of blood and other body fluids. The choice of a gown depends to a large extent on the infection that a person might be exposed to. For example, a gown made out of plastic or other water-repellent material should be used when dealing with an infection suspected of being severe such as Ebola. A gown that became soaked with Ebola virus-laden blood could result in transfer of the virus to the healthcare provider. In contrast, cotton gowns can be appropriate in other cases.

A gown should be removed as soon as possible after seeing a patient and always before moving to another patient. Since the removal of a gown involves the hands, handwashing should be done only after a gown is removed and put in a designated container.

Patient-Care Equipment

Equipment that becomes contaminated with blood or other body fluid must be decontaminated before re-use. Equipment that is meant for one-time use must be disposed of properly after that use and should never be reused. Needles and other sharp object must be disposed of after use in rigid containers to minimize the chances of accidental injury during their disposal.

Environmental Control

Microorganisms can stick to surfaces and, in some cases, can remain capable of causing an infection for hours. If a contaminated surface is touched by someone, the infectious microbes can be transferred to that person or someone else that person contacts. Thus, an important standard precaution is the disinfection of surfaces such as beds, bedrails, toilets and toilet assist rails, and equipment near a patient's bed. The disinfection needs to be done at regular intervals with an approved disinfectant, and all disinfections should be recorded on paper or electronically.

Linen

Soiled bedding needs to be cleaned to completely remove blood and body fluids. It should be washed in hot water to kill living bacteria that may have clung to the fabric. Another standard precaution involving linen relates to the transport of the linen from the bedside to the hospital laundry. Soiled linen should be transport in a closed and waterproof container to lessen the chances that microbes could leak out or become airborne.

Impacts and Issues

Standard precautions are an efficient way of minimizing the chances of the transfer of infectious microorganisms from patient to patient, and from patients to healthcare providers. However, diligence is required.

Unfortunately, diligence is not always practiced. A number of studies from the United States and Europe conducted since 2000 have revealed a dismal record of compliance with handwashing among healthcare providers. Even though the benefits of handwashing are well-established, fewer than 50% of healthcare providers regularly wash their hands after finishing with one patient and before seeing another patient. The common explanation is a lack of time. In an effort to increase compliance with handwashing, some hospitals have installed alcohol-based handwashing stations at patient's bedsides. The pressure of being caught in noncompliance with handwashing precautions can be a powerful incentive to practice proper hygiene.

The need for standard precautions pertaining to equipment is highlighted by the observation that prions—proteins whose abnormal folding causes a severe, progressive damage to brain cells that is the basis of transmissible spongiform encephalopathies, such as Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease—can remain capable of causing disease even when surgical instruments have been sterilized using the combination of chemicals and the high pressure and high heat that is known as autoclaving. The World Health Organization has recommended that surgery on patients suspected of having a prion-related disease should be done using disposable instruments, or instruments should be incinerated before being used again.

A real-world example of this danger occurred in 2003 in New Brunswick, Canada, where seven patients likely contracted Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD) from surgical equipment that was contaminated with prions. An investigation revealed that the instruments had originally been used in neurosurgery on a patient who subsequently developed CJD. While the instruments were treated according to the required protocol, this was not sufficient to decontaminate them.

WORDS TO KNOW

AUTOCLAVE: An autoclave is a device that is designed to kill microorganisms on solid items and in liquids by exposure to steam at a high pressure.

HYGIENE: Hygiene refers to the health practices that minimize the spread of infectious microorganisms between people or between other living things and people. Inanimate objects and surfaces such as contaminated cutlery or a cutting board may be a secondary part of this process.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

UNIVERSAL PRECAUTION: Universal precaution refers to an infection control strategy in which all human blood and other material is assumed to be potentially infectious, specifically with organisms such as Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) and Hepatitis B Virus. The precautions are aimed at preventing contact with blood or the other materials.

See Also *Airborne Precautions; Handwashing; Isolation and Quarantine; Personal Protective Equipment.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

DiClaudio, Dennis. *The Hypochondriac's Pocket Guide to Horrible Diseases You Probably Already Have.* New York: Bloomsbury, 2005.

Lawrence, Jean, and Dee May. *Infection Control in the Community.* New York: Churchill Livingstone, 2003.

Tierno, Philip M. *The Secret Life of Germs: What They Are, Why We Need Them, and How We Can Protect Ourselves Against Them.* New York: Atria, 2004.

Brian Hoyle

Staphylococcus aureus Infections

Introduction

Staphylococcus aureus is a bacterium that colonizes, or normally inhabitants the surface of the skin and, in about 25% of humans, the inside of the nose. In a healthy person, the bacterium is usually not a health concern. But, if a person's skin is damaged by a cut or a burn, or if *S. aureus* gains access to areas inside the body, infection can result.

S. aureus is the most common cause of the so-called staph infections. (Other species of *Staphylococcus* can also cause infections.) *S. aureus* can cause a number of life threatening infections, including toxic shock syndrome. While uncommon now, the marketing of super absorbent tampons in the 1970s caused illness and death of a large number of women. The tampon design encouraged the growth of the bacteria, which subsequently produced a poison (toxin) that entered the blood stream.

Other life-threatening infections can occur in susceptible people. These infections are described as being opportunistic infections, since they normally do not occur in healthy people.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

S. aureus is a spherical-shaped bacterium. It is a Gram-positive bacterium, meaning that it consists of a membrane layer made up mainly of lipids and proteins, and a thick, strong network called peptidoglycan. (Gram-negative bacteria have two membrane layers and a thin peptidoglycan.) The design of the bacterium makes it quite environmentally hardy, which enables it to live in microscopic depressions on the surface of the skin. The bacterium also thrives in the warm and moist atmosphere inside the nose.

S. aureus typically grows and divides to form microscopic clusters that appear grapelike. When grown on a solid food source that contains blood, the visible mounds of bacteria (colonies) that develop tend to be golden in color; *aureus* means "gold" in Latin. These characteristics aid in the identification of the organism. Other tests of biochemical activity, such the ability of the bacterium to clot blood, also are used in identification.

If the normal barrier of the skin's surface is breached, by a cut or a burn for example, or if a person is immunocompromised (their immune system is not functioning properly) and so is less capable of fighting off invading microorganisms, *S. aureus* can rapidly cause infections. These range from skin infections that are relatively minor, such as boils and pimples, to life-threatening infections of the skin in infants (scalded skin syndrome), of the lungs (pneumonia), of the lining of certain nerves (meningitis), of the heart valves (endocarditis), and, in the case of toxic shock syndrome, of the blood (septicemia). Heart-related

A culture of the *Staphylococcus aureus* bacterium (red) is shown growing in a petri dish. CC Studio/Photo Researchers, Inc.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

COLONIZE: Colonize refers to the process where a microorganism is able to persist and grow at a given location.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTION: An opportunistic infection is so named because it occurs in people whose immune systems are diminished or are not functioning normally; such infections are opportunistic insofar as the infectious agents take advantage of their hosts' compromised immune systems and invade to cause disease.

RESISTANT ORGANISM: Resistant organisms are bacteria, viruses, parasites, or other disease-causing agents that have stopped responding to drugs that once killed them.

infections are associated with the implantation of devices designed to assist proper heart function. The devices can become contaminated before being implanted, if they are handled by bare hands that have not been washed properly. This transfers *S. aureus* from the skin to the plastic surface of the device, where the bacteria can adhere and grow.

The association of *S. aureus* and infections has been known since 1880, when the bacterium was isolated from wounds. The environmental hardiness of the bacterium is one important factor in its ability to cause infection. If present on a moist surface, such as a towel, the bacteria can remain alive and capable of causing infection for hours. Even more importantly, skin-to-skin contact can easily spread *S. aureus* from one person to another. The ability of the bacterium to invade host tissue is one cause of infection. Toxins can also be produced when *S. aureus* gets into a wound or other niche away from the skin's surface, or when the bacterium contaminates food.

Scope and Distribution

S. aureus infections occur virtually anywhere in the world and are very common. For example, even in a developed country like the United States with high-quality medical care, more than 500,000 people are hospitalized with *S. aureus* infections every year. The bacterium is one of the important causes of what are termed nosocomial (hospital-acquired) infections.

The bacterium is also a concern in agriculture, since it is the cause of a disease in cattle called mastitis.

Treatment and Prevention

Despite the antibiotic resistance of some types of *S. aureus*, infections still usually respond to treatment with antibiotics. Completing the full course of antibiotic treatment is very important. Some patients may stop taking antibiotics before the course of treatment is completed because they begin to feel better. This is very unwise, since the infection may not yet be eliminated. Surviving *S. aureus* can cause the illness to recur, and these survivors may even become resistant to the antibiotic(s) being used in the treatment.

Impacts and Issues

The impacts of *S. aureus* infections are enormous, both in terms of the number of serious illnesses and deaths caused, and also in terms of the financial cost of caring for these patients. In a nationwide analysis of hospitalized patients in 2001, patients with *S. aureus* were found to average three times the length of hospital stay, three times the total charges, and three times the risk of death while in the hospital than hospitalized patients without *S. aureus* infection.

Furthermore, the development of antibiotic resistance by the bacterium (strains that are resistant to almost all antibiotics exist) is ominous. At the time of the commercial introduction of the first antibiotic, penicillin, in 1943, antibiotic resistance among *S. aureus* isolated from infections was unknown. Only seven years later, approximately 40% of all isolates were resistant to penicillin. By 1960, 80% of hospital isolates of *S. aureus* were penicillin-resistant.

In addition, resistance to a variety of other antibiotics has developed. As of 2007, disease outbreaks due to *S. aureus* that are almost completely resistant to antibiotics are becoming much more common. The challenge now is to quickly discover new antibiotics and/or methods of infection control that protect hospitalized patients, who are the most susceptible to grave illness and death from these infections.

SEE ALSO *Antibiotic Resistance; Bacterial Disease; MRSA; Toxic Shock.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Freeman-Cook, Lisa, and Kevin D. Freeman-Cook. *Staphylococcus aureus Infections.* London: Chelsea House, 2005.

Prescott, Lansing M., John P. Harley, and Donald A. Klein. *Microbiology*. New York: McGraw Hill, 2004.

Tortora, Gerard J., Berell R. Funke, and Christine L. Case. *Microbiology: An Introduction*. New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2006.

Brian Hoyle

Sterilization

Introduction

Sterilization refers to processes that eliminate microorganisms from surfaces, the interior of equipment, foods, and liquids. A catheter is one example of a device whose surface must be completely sterilized before it is inserted in a person to deliver food or medicine. A cardiac pacemaker is another example of a device whose surface must be sterilized before it is implanted inside the body to control the heart rate. A common example of a liquid requiring sterilization is the liquid-based nutrient medium used to grow bacteria in the laboratory.

Sterilization is intended to eliminate living microorganisms such as bacteria, fungi, and protozoa, along with nonliving microbes such as viruses that, given the appropriate host, can cause disease.

There are various methods of sterilization depending on the aim of the procedure. For example, surgical instruments are sterilized to guarantee the absence of pathogens (disease-causing organisms), while most laboratory growth media used for experimentation is sterilized to guarantee the absence of bacteria. Pharmaceutical medications also need to be free of all potential disease-causing agents.

WORDS TO KNOW

AUTOCLAVE: An autoclave is a device that is designed to kill microorganisms on solid items and in liquids by exposure to steam at a high pressure.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

History and Scientific Foundations

Heat has been used to sterilize objects for millennia. Until a few centuries ago, the flame of a fire was used. Today, the most common method of heat sterilization employs high temperature and pressure above atmospheric pressure. The combination of temperature and pressure most efficiently heats an object or a volume of liquid; exposure of the samples for a certain period of time has proved sufficient to kill even hardy microorganisms.

An autoclave is the most common instrument used for heat sterilization. Autoclaves range in size from small units that easily fit on the bench-top of a laboratory to large units that have the volume of an average kitchen refrigerator. An autoclave uses steam to sterilize the objects place inside it. Most typically, the steam is pumped into the autoclave chamber at a temperature of 250°F (121°C) and a pressure that is 15 pounds per square inch above atmospheric pressure. These conditions of temperature and pressure are maintained for at least 15 minutes (larger loads or greater volumes of liquid can be held longer). Then, the steam is released from the chamber in a controlled and safe manner. The chamber can be opened when it has returned to atmospheric pressure.

As a control over the process, indicator tape can be applied to the objects being autoclaved. Bands form on the tape when the proper conditions of temperature, pressure, and time have been attained. This helps the operator judge whether sterilization has been successful. To be even more certain, solutions that contain bacterial spores of *Bacillus stearothermophilus* can be included with the load being sterilized. Bacterial spores are very resistant to the killing action of heat. If the liquid containing the spores is incubated in a suitable liquid growth source and the medium remains clear, it indicates that sterilization was successful. In addition to the use of this so-called bio-indicator, many autoclaves record the temperature profile of each sterilization cycle, allowing the user to visually monitor whether the appropriate conditions were achieved.

Monitoring of autoclave performance is important. If, for example, too many items are autoclaved at once, the overcrowded conditions may not allow the steam to effectively penetrate the entire load, which can result in inadequate sterilization.

Although autoclaving is an effective method of sterilization with many applications, it is not foolproof. For example, it has been shown that prions—proteins whose abnormal folding stimulates damage of brain cells causing several similar diseases termed transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (an example is Creutzfeld-Jacob disease)—can remain potent following autoclaving of surgical instruments. Even the combination of autoclaving with chemicals has proven ineffective against prion contamination. The World Health Organization has recommended that surgery on patients suspected of having a prion-related disease be performed with disposable instruments, or that the instruments used be incinerated after the surgery is completed.

There are other methods of sterilization. Some metal objects can be surface-sterilized by holding them in an open flame. This is a common way of sterilizing a loop of metal called an inoculating loop that is used to transfer microorganisms from one place to another during experiments. Burning trash that contains medical waste is another way of sterilizing the residual ash. This ash can then be safety disposed of. Medical incinerators must be specially designed to retain the vapor given off, since infectious material can potentially be carried into the air during incineration. A common method for sterilizing drinking water is boiling. Boiling kills most bacteria and inactivates most viruses. However, agents like prions and some spore-forming bacteria can survive boiling for 15 minutes. However, in most situations, boiling is better than not treating water at all before drinking it.

Objects such as plastic, optical equipment, and electrical circuits that cannot stand heat can be sterilized using a chemical called ethylene oxide. This chemical is applied as a gas in a specialized machine. Another spore-forming bacterium, *Bacillus subtilus*, is used to monitor the success of ethylene oxide sterilization.

Ozone is another chemical sterilizer. Drinking water can be sterilized using ozone. A diluted solution of bleach (sodium hypochlorite) is an especially useful sterilizing agent for work surfaces. Other chemical sterilizers include glutaraldehyde and hydrogen peroxide.

Applications and Research

Sterilization is a necessity of everyday life in research, health care, and even the supermarket. Ongoing investigations seek to develop chemicals that sterilize more efficiently and quickly, while being safe to use.

IN CONTEXT: BACTERIA SPORES SPUR STERILIZATION RESEARCH

The discovery of bacteria that are resistant to sterilization could potentially contaminate experiments and environments studied by NASA and other space agency probes. One species was tentatively named *B. odysseensis* after being isolated from the surfaces of the Mars *Odyssey* spacecraft following routine sterilization. The method of spore formation is suspected of having a role in resistance of spore-forming bacteria to sterilization.

Earth-bound benefits of such research offer hope of improved methods of sterilization and prevention of unintentional contamination.

SOURCE: *Jet Propulsion Laboratory, National Aeronautics and Space Administrations (NASA)*

Impacts and Issues

Without the ability to sterilize growth media, many scientific experiments could not be accomplished, as it would be impossible to know if the results were due to the organism being studied or to a contaminant. In addition, surgeries would have a very poor survival rate, as was the case in the days before sterilization techniques were routinely employed.

In some instances, standard sterilization methods have not been sufficient to protect patients from developing disease as a result of contact with contaminated medical equipment. An example occurred in 2003 in the Canadian province of New Brunswick, where seven patients probably contracted Creutzfeld-Jacob disease from prion-contaminated instruments used during their neurosurgeries. The instruments became contaminated when used in an operation on a patient who was subsequently found to have the disease. The instruments were routinely sterilized, but it later became clear that this routine sterilization procedure did not remove the prions. It was this outbreak that resulted in the institution of hospital protocols mandating the use of disposable instruments during procedures on high-risk areas such as the brain and spinal cord involving patients suspected of having a prion-related disease.

Recently, scientists have found that prions can be digested by a particular enzyme. Enzymatic treatment of medical instruments has shown promise as sterilization technique effective for prions, but it is not yet in general use.

While important, the quest for sterilization can go too far. One example is the marketing of surface sterilizing products designed for use in the kitchen and bathroom. Bacteria that are not killed by these products have the potential to become resistant to the particular chemical, which can make these bacteria a more serious concern than before they developed this resistance.

See Also *Disinfection; Infection Control and Asepsis; Sanitation.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Gladwin, Mark, and Bill Trattler. *Clinical Microbiology Made Ridiculously Simple.* 3rd ed. Miami: Medmaster, 2003.

Prescott, Lansing M., John P. Harley, and Donald A. Klein. *Microbiology.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 2004.

Tortora, Gerard J., Berell R. Funke, and Christine L. Case. *Microbiology: An Introduction.* New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2006.

Brian Hoyle

Strep Throat

Introduction

A sore throat is one of the most common symptoms sending people to the doctor. It often precedes a cold, flu, or other respiratory infection. Most sore throats are caused by viral infection. Strep throat, or Streptococcal pharyngitis, is a bacterial throat infection with "strep" being a shortened for *Streptococcus pyogenes*, the causative agent. Most people carry *S. pyogenes* in their throat and on their skin and normally it causes no problems.

Strep throat is considered a mild infection, although it can be very painful. Left untreated, it can sometimes lead to serious complications, such as rheumatic fever. Strep throat responds promptly to antibiotic treatment, which will also stop the infection spreading to others. The majority of sore throats will not respond to antibiotics, because they are caused by viruses. That is why strep throat should be properly diagnosed wherever possible, to prevent the unnecessary use of antibiotics.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The *S. pyogenes* bacterium belongs to a large group of bacteria called the streptococci, which occur in characteristic long chains. They are subdivided according to the antigen proteins they bear on their surfaces. *S. pyogenes* is, therefore, sometimes called Group A streptococcus (GAS), since it carries the A antigen. A certain amount of GAS is found on the skin of most people

A U.S. Marine recruit receives a throat swab for a culture in 2002. During an outbreak of strep throat in San Diego, California, more than 300 recruits reported a sore throat and fever; 185 tested positive for the *Streptococcus* A bacteria, which causes strep throat. *Cpl. Anthony D. Pike/Getty Images.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

FOMITE: A fomite is an object or a surface to which an infectious microorganism such as bacteria or viruses can adhere and be transmitted. Transmission is often by touch.

IN CONTEXT: SOCIAL AND PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY

According to the Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), "the spread of all types of GAS infection can be reduced by good handwashing, especially after coughing and sneezing and before preparing foods or eating. Persons with sore throats should be seen by a doctor who can perform tests to find out whether the illness is strep throat. If the test result shows strep throat, the person should stay home from work, school, or day care until 24 hours after taking an antibiotic. All wounds should be kept clean and watched for possible signs of infection such as redness, swelling, drainage, and pain at the wound site. A person with signs of an infected wound, especially if fever occurs, should seek medical care. It is not necessary for all persons exposed to someone with an invasive group A strep infection (i.e., necrotizing fasciitis or strep toxic shock syndrome) to receive antibiotic therapy to prevent infection. However, in certain circumstances, antibiotic therapy may be appropriate. That decision should be made after consulting with your doctor."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases.*

without causing illness; this is known as colonization. However, besides strep throat, GAS can also cause impetigo (a skin infection) and scarlet fever. Some strains of GAS are also responsible for necrotizing fasciitis, which involves the soft tissue under the skin, and toxic shock syndrome, both of which are potentially fatal.

The symptoms of strep throat include throat pain and difficulty in swallowing, headache, fever, and swollen glands. The tonsils might be red and swollen with white patches and streaks of pus. Strep throat is distinguished from other conditions, such as tonsillitis or viral throat infection, by testing a throat swab for the presence of GAS.

Possible complications of strep throat include rheumatic fever and kidney inflammation. These may set in weeks after the first symptoms of the throat infection. Rheumatic fever may be indicated by joint pain or rash, while the urine may become dark if the kidneys are infected. Rheumatic fever is potentially serious, as it can lead to permanent damage of the heart valves with impairment of heart function. Other possible complications include tonsillitis, scarlet fever, sinus infection, and ear infection.

GAS is highly contagious and strep throat is spread through coughs, sneezes, and contact with objects, such as kitchen utensils and bathroom items, that have been used by an infected person (fomites). The infection often spreads rapidly through family members, schools and child care centers—anywhere, in fact, that people come into close contact.

Scope and Distribution

Strep throat is most common among children aged from 5 to 15, although it can affect people of any age. It is most often seen in late fall, winter, and spring. In the United States, the risk of complications from strep throat is low.

Treatment and Prevention

Strep throat is usually treated by an antibiotic, such as penicillin, amoxicillin, clarithromycin, or cephalosporin. The treatment reduces the severity and duration of symptoms, and stops the infection from passing to others. Symptoms will start to clear within a day or two of starting antibiotics. It is important to finish the whole course of prescribed antibiotics. Stopping medication early will increase the risk of complications and encourage the growth of resistant organisms.

Rest, plenty of water, and soothing foods will also help relieve the pain of strep throat, as will gargling with salt water. Acetaminophen and ibuprofen may be prescribed for pain and fever, although aspirin is not recommended for young children with strep throat because it can contribute to the development of Reye's syndrome, a potentially life-threatening illness.

As with many infections, the best way to prevent strep throat is by good personal hygiene, including covering the mouth and nose when coughing or sneezing and washing the hands frequently and thoroughly. For a child with recurrent strep throat, tonsillectomy (removal of the tonsils) may be helpful. A study carried out by the Mayo Clinic in 2006 showed that children with recurrent strep throat with intact tonsils are three times more likely to develop subsequent episodes compared to those who have their tonsils removed.

Impacts and Issues

Accurate diagnosis of the cause of a sore throat is important. Viral infections should not be treated with antibiotics. Not only will the infection not respond, but the inappropriate prescription of antibiotics has been linked to antibiotic resistance, which is a growing public health problem. Strep throat can be diagnosed with rapid tests for GAS antigen or DNA. Courses of antibiotics prescribed for strep throat should always be completed, because stopping early also encourages antibiotic resistance.

See Also *Antibiotic Resistance; Bacterial Disease; Impetigo; Necrotizing Fasciitis; Scarlet Fever; Toxic Shock.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Group A Streptococcal (GAS) Disease." October 11, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/groupastreptococcal_g.htm> (accessed May 1, 2007).

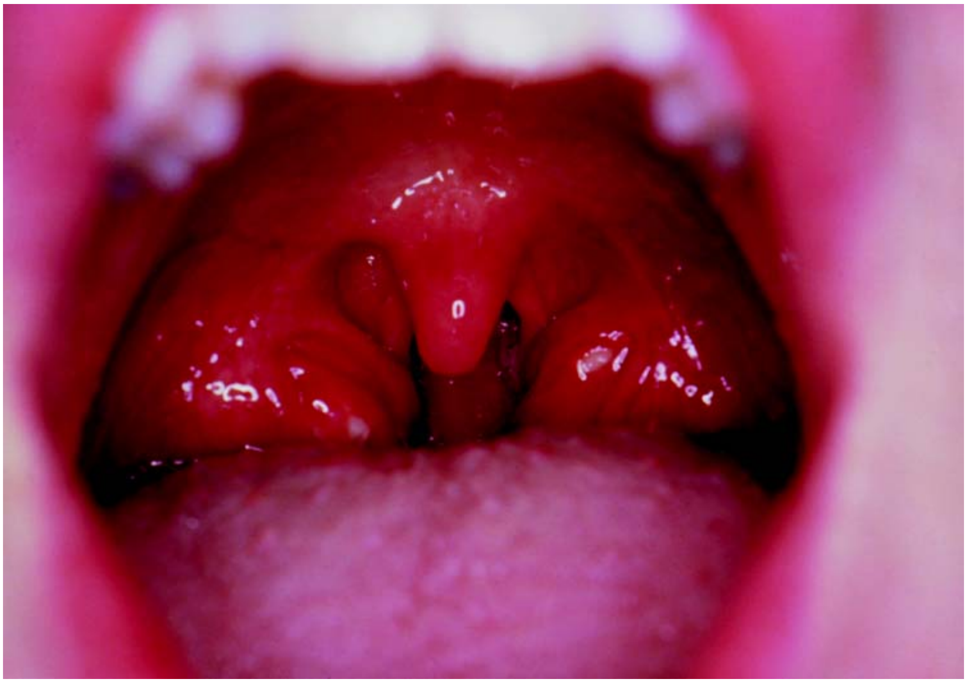
MayoClinic.com. "Strep throat." November 3, 2006. <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/strep-throat/DS00260> (accessed May 1, 2007).

Streptococcal Infections, Group A

Introduction

Group A *Streptococcus* bacteria (also called group A streptococci or GAS for short) can cause many diseases. The species *Streptococcus pyogenes* (pronounced pie-AHJ-uh-neez) is the group A *Streptococcus* that causes most disease in humans and is often treated as synonymous with GAS, though there are also non-*S. pyogenes* group A streptococci. Among the diseases caused by GAS are scarlet fever, strep throat, toxic shock syndrome, and impetigo. GAS were often life-threatening before the discovery and mass-production of antibiotics. Untreated GAS infections also threaten health by triggering autoimmune diseases, including glomerulonephritis and rheumatic fever. Rheumatic fever is life-threatening, killing from 2% to 5% of patients.

Some invasive GAS infections that invade the lungs, blood, or deep muscle and fat tissue are life threatening. Most invasive GAS illnesses have a mortality rate of 10–15%. Necrotizing fasciitis (also called "flesh-eating disease") and streptococcal toxic shock syndrome (STSS) are two of the least common, but most severe and



This close up of the mouth of a child shows severe streptococcal tonsillitis. The tonsils and pharynx appear deep red (center). Both tonsils are swollen and are narrowing the throat. A collection of whitish pus is visible on the patient's right tonsil (center left). A white coating covers the entire surface of the tongue. *Dr. P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

aggressive forms of invasive GAS. Approximately 20% of patients with necrotizing fasciitis die, while STSS has a mortality rate of 60%.

Today, most routine GAS infections are routinely treated with antibiotics in industrialized countries, but resistance to earlier-developed antibiotics is an increasing problem. In the developing world, untreated GAS and its resultant autoimmune diseases are still a widespread problem.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The streptococci bacteria were first described by German-Austrian physician Christian Theodor Billroth (1829–1894), who found *Streptococcus pyogenes* growing in infected wounds (the word "pyogenes" is from the Greek for "pus-forming"). *S. pyogenes* was actually named by German physician Michael Josef Rossbach (1842–94) in 1884, but was not termed a group A streptococcus until the 1930s, when American scientist Rebecca Lancefield (1895–1981) classed the streptococci into the alphabetically labeled groups that are still called Lancefield groups. Lancefield also established that a protein embedded in the cell wall of group A streptococci, M protein, is crucial to their power to cause disease. There are over 120 varieties of *S. pyogenes*, distinguished by their varying M proteins.

The streptococci are gram-positive bacteria that tend to grow in chains or pairs. They are classed into two basic groups based on their ability to break down blood cells under laboratory conditions, a process called hemolysis (hemo meaning blood, and lysis meaning breakup). The beta-hemolytic streptococci break up blood cells completely, creating clear areas around bacteria colonies growing on blood agar in petri dishes. (Petri dishes are small, round, shallow dishes used commonly in laboratories to grow microorganisms; agar is a form of jelly derived from seaweed or algae, chemically a sugar; and blood agar is agar mixed with blood cells, usually from horses or sheep.)

Further division of the beta-hemolytic streptococci into the Lancefield groups A to T is based on the chemical makeup of the cell wall. The group A streptococci, of which *S. pyogenes* is the most important, are globular and about 0.6 to 1 mm in diameter. These bacteria primarily invade human epithelial cells, which constitute the skin and line the respiratory and digestive tracts.

Strep throat is an infection of the throat with *S. pyogenes*. About 18 or 20 days after the end of a strep throat infection, acute rheumatic fever may occur. The primary symptom of rheumatic fever is pain in the joints. Inflammation of the heart may also occur, causing permanent damage to one or more heart valves. Post-streptococcal glomerulonephritis—inflammation of the kidney—may also develop about 10 days after a GAS infection.

Transmission of *S. pyogenes* is via direct contact with mucus, saliva, and open sores, or through airborne saliva droplets released by sneezing or coughing.

Severe, invasive GAS infections are rare among otherwise healthy individuals. Invasive GAS infections are most likely to occur in persons with diabetes or weakened immune systems, persons who use steroids or some other medications, or in patients with recent trauma or surgical wounds.

WORDS TO KNOW

GLOMERULONEPHRITIS: Glomerulonephritis is inflammation of the kidneys. Mostly it affects the glomeruli, the small capsules in the kidney where blood flowing through capillaries transfers body wastes to urine.

IMPETIGO: Impetigo refers to a very localized bacterial infection of the skin. It tends to afflict primarily children, but can occur in people of any age. Impetigo caused by the bacteria *Staphylococcus aureus* (or staph) affects children of all ages, while impetigo caused by the bacteria called group A streptococci (*Streptoccus pyogenes* or strep) are most common in children ages two to five years.

PUERPERAL FEVER: Puerperal fever is a bacterial infection present in the blood (septicemia) that follows childbirth. The Latin word *puer*, meaning boy or child, is the root of this term. Puerperal fever was much more common before the advent of modern hygiene practices, but infections still occur. Louis Pasteur proved that puerperal fever is caused by *Streptococcus* bacteria, which is now treated with antibiotics.

Scope and Distribution

The only known reservoir for *S. pyogenes* is human beings. About 5% to 15% of health persons harbor *S. pyogenes*, usually in their upper respiratory tract, without any sign of infection. This bacterium is one of the most common causes of bacterial infection in human beings, and in many developed nations is the most common cause of bacterial infection of the upper respiratory tract for all age groups.

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

Streptococcal pharyngitis (strep throat) is one of the most common childhood illnesses worldwide. In industrialized countries, thanks to antibiotic treatment of strep throat, rheumatic fever has an annual incidence of around 0.5 cases per 100,000 school-age children. In developing countries, however, the annual incidence of rheumatic fever ranges from 100 to 200 cases per 100,000 school-aged children—from 200 to 400 times higher than the developed-world rate. There are over 18 million cases of severe GAS disease such as rheumatic heart disease worldwide, with more than half a million deaths per year.

In the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, scarlet fever was a major killer, and until antibiotics were available to treat GAS infections, rheumatic fever (usually following strep throat) was a widespread childhood disease. Moreover, puerperal fever was common in maternity wards, where sanitation was poor (the role of bacteria in causing infection was not yet known) and *S. pyogenes* was transmitted by doctors' unwashed hands. During childbirth, *S. pyogenes* would often infect the mother's bloodstream through tears in the vaginal wall or skin of the genital area. This commonly resulted in death rates in maternity wards of about 10% to 25%, with occasional epidemics leading to much higher death rates. Today, puerperal fever is rare in industrialized countries because of standardized medical hygiene and prevalent antibiotics.

Treatment and Prevention

For over a century, attempts have been made to develop a GAS vaccine. As of early 2007, one GAS vaccine was in phase 2 clinical human trials, with several others approaching the human trial phase. However, no GAS vaccine was yet available.

Prevention of GAS infections consists primarily of handwashing, sterilization in health-care environments, and avoiding contact with infected persons. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), the only effective and cost-effective large-scale control strategy for GAS diseases, apart from health education and medical hygiene, is treatment by antibiotics.

Impacts and Issues

WHO estimates that puerperal sepsis, infection of women giving birth, by GAS accounts for 15% of maternal deaths globally today. Most of these deaths occur in developing countries where sterile conditions and antibiotics are more rare.

Failure of penicillin to eradicate GAS from the throat has been reported with increasing frequency in recent years. Whether antibiotics other than penicillin should be added to standard treatment regimens for strep throat and other GAS infections is debated among physicians. Treating resistant infections requires more powerful and recently-developed antibiotics. However, many physicians worry that prescribing newer, more powerful antibiotics as a first course of treatment may encourage further antibiotic resistance in GAS infections.

SEE ALSO *Impetigo; Necrotizing Fasciitis; Puerperal Fever; Scarlet Fever; Streptococcal Infections, Group B.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Smith, Tara and Edward Alcamo. *Streptococcus (Group A) (Deadly Diseases and Epidemics)*. Philadelphia, PA: Chelsea House Publications, 2004.

Periodicals

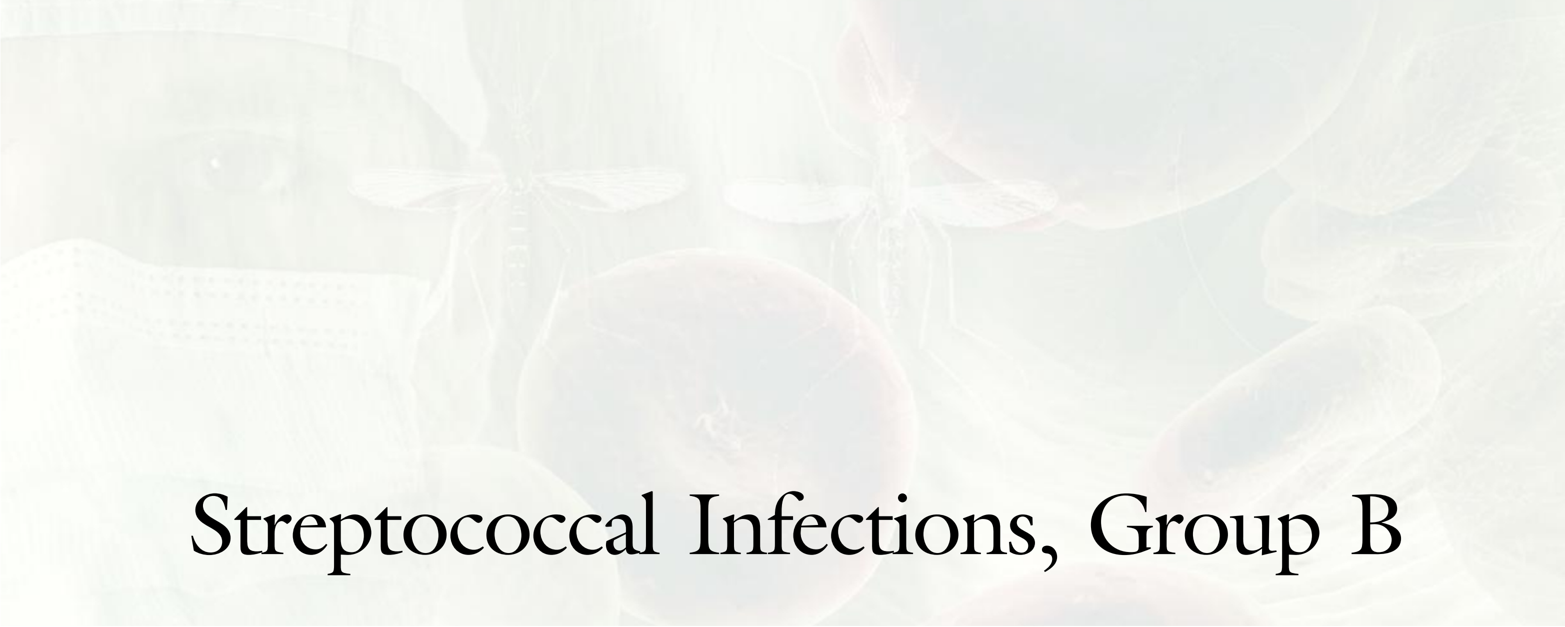
Cunningham, Madeleine W. "Pathogenesis of Group A Streptococcal Infections." *Clinical Microbiology Reviews.* 13 (2000): 470-511.

Facklam, Richard. "What Happened to the Streptococci: Overview of Taxonomic and Nomenclature Changes." *Clinical Microbiology Reviews.* 15 (2002): 613-630.

Kaplan, Edward L., et al. "Reduced Ability of Penicillin to Eradicate Ingested Group A Streptococci from Epithelial Cells: Clinical and Pathogenic Implications." *Clinical Infectious Diseases.* 43 (2006): 1398–1406.

Web Sites

World Health Organization (United Nations). "A Review of the Technical Basis for the Control of Associated with Group A Streptococcal Infections." 2005 <http://www.who.int/child-adolescent-health/New_Publications/CHILD_HEALTH/DP/WHO_FCH_CAH_05.08.pdf> (accessed February 2, 2007).



Streptococcal Infections, Group B

Introduction

Group B *Streptococcus* bacteria, primarily the species *Streptococcus agalactiae*, are a major cause of sickness and death among newborns worldwide. Group B *Streptococcus* illnesses are also known as GBS, Beta strep, or group B *Streptococci*. GBS infection also increases risks to both the mother and the fetus before birth. In the newborn, infection can cause pneumonia (fluid in the lungs) and bacteremia (bacteria in the blood, which is normally sterile) within the first week after birth. The late-onset form of the disease occurs from 7 to 90 days after birth, usually causing meningitis, which is inflammation of the meninges (the tough membranes that surround the brain and spinal cord). Pneumonia, bacteremia, and meningitis can all be fatal. GBS infection can be treated with antibiotics, but no vaccine is currently available.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Streptococci, which are Gram-positive bacteria that tend to grow in chains or pairs, were first described in 1874 by Christian Theodor Billroth (1829–1894). Around 1903, Hugo Shottmuller (1867–1936) distinguished between alpha-hemolytic and beta-hemolytic Streptococci. Beta-hemolytic Streptococci—which include almost all group A and many group B Streptococci—are distinguished by their ability to completely break up blood cells when grown in the laboratory, a process called hemolysis (hemo meaning blood, and lysis meaning breakup). Hemolysis creates clear areas around colonies of beta-hemolytic bacteria growing in petri dishes on the substance called blood agar, a jellylike substance derived from seaweed or algae mixed with (usually) sheep blood.

GBS is most often noted for causing pneumonia and meningitis in newborns, with a high fatality rate. GBS is also known to cause infections in adults with preexisting conditions such as breast cancer, cirrhosis of the liver, and diabetes. In adults, GBS can manifest as a soft-tissue infection, pneumonia, meningitis, or infections of the bones or joints. The elderly are at greatest risk from these invasive GBS infections.

GBS is usually transmitted by direct contact. Newborns may contract the bacteria during labor and delivery by mothers who are vaginally or anally colonized with the bacteria. Alternatively, fetuses may contract the bacteria from their mothers during development, before birth. This can lead to miscarriage or premature birth, and approximately triples the risk of cerebral palsy.

Scope and Distribution

Like group A streptococci, GBS are common in human populations. They are particularly important as a cause of infection in newborns, causing several thousand deaths per year in the United States alone. About 12% to 27% of women in North Africa, south-central Asia, Saudi Arabia, and the United States are colonized by GBS.

Treatment and Prevention

Although GBS can be treated with antibiotics, infection can spread quickly and symptoms can be difficult to diagnose in newborns. Administration of antibiotics—usually penicillin or ampicillin—to the mother during delivery can prevent infection in newborns.

Research is under way for the use of monoclonal antibodies as a vaccine for GBS, but, as of early 2007, had not yet reached the stage of clinical trials with human subjects. Strains of GBS causing bacteria can vary significantly in different parts of the world, challenging development of a single GBS vaccine that would be effective worldwide.

WORDS TO KNOW

BACTEREMIA: Bacteremia occurs when bacteria enter the bloodstream. This condition may occur through a wound or infection, or through a surgical procedure or injection. Bacteremia may cause no symptoms and resolve without treatment, or it may produce fever and other symptoms of infection. In some cases, bacteremia leads to septic shock, a potentially life-threatening condition.

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

HEMOLYSIS: The destruction of blood cells, an abnormal rate of which may lead to lowered levels of these cells. For example, Hemolytic anemia is caused by destruction of red blood cells at a rate faster than which they can be produced.

MENINGITIS: Meningitis is an inflammation of the meninges—the three layers of protective membranes that line the spinal cord and the brain. Meningitis can occur when there is an infection near the brain or spinal cord, such as a respiratory infection in the sinuses, the mastoids, or the cavities around the ear. Disease organisms can also travel to the meninges through the bloodstream. The first signs may be a severe headache and neck stiffness followed by fever, vomiting, a rash, and, then, convulsions leading to loss of consciousness. Meningitis generally involves two types: nonbacterial meningitis, which is often called aseptic meningitis, and bacterial meningitis, which is referred to as purulent meningitis.

MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES: Antibodies produced from a single cell line that are used in medical testing and, increasingly, in the treatment of some cancers.

Impacts and Issues

In the United States in the 1970s, there were 7,500 GBS infections in newborns per year. The death rate for GBS infection was as high as 50%. In the 1980s, it was found that giving antibiotics to women who tested positive for GBS and were therefore at risk for transmitting the bacteria to their babies greatly reduced the rate of early-onset (first week of life) disease. As a result, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control (CDC) issued guidelines in 1996 recommending vaginal and rectal screening between the 35th and 37th weeks of pregnancy to identify women with GBS; women who test positive are offered antibiotics during labor.

In developing countries, infection rates in newborns are surprisingly low; in a recent study of newborns in India, the Middle East, and elsewhere, only about 1% of newborns tested positive for GBS, even though their mothers were colonized by GBS at a rate of 12% to 27%. It is possible, according to the World Health Organization (WHO), that GBS causes infant death in developing countries primarily by causing miscarriage or premature birth, leading to an artificially low figure for GBS infant mortality.

See Also *Streptococcal Infections, Group A.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

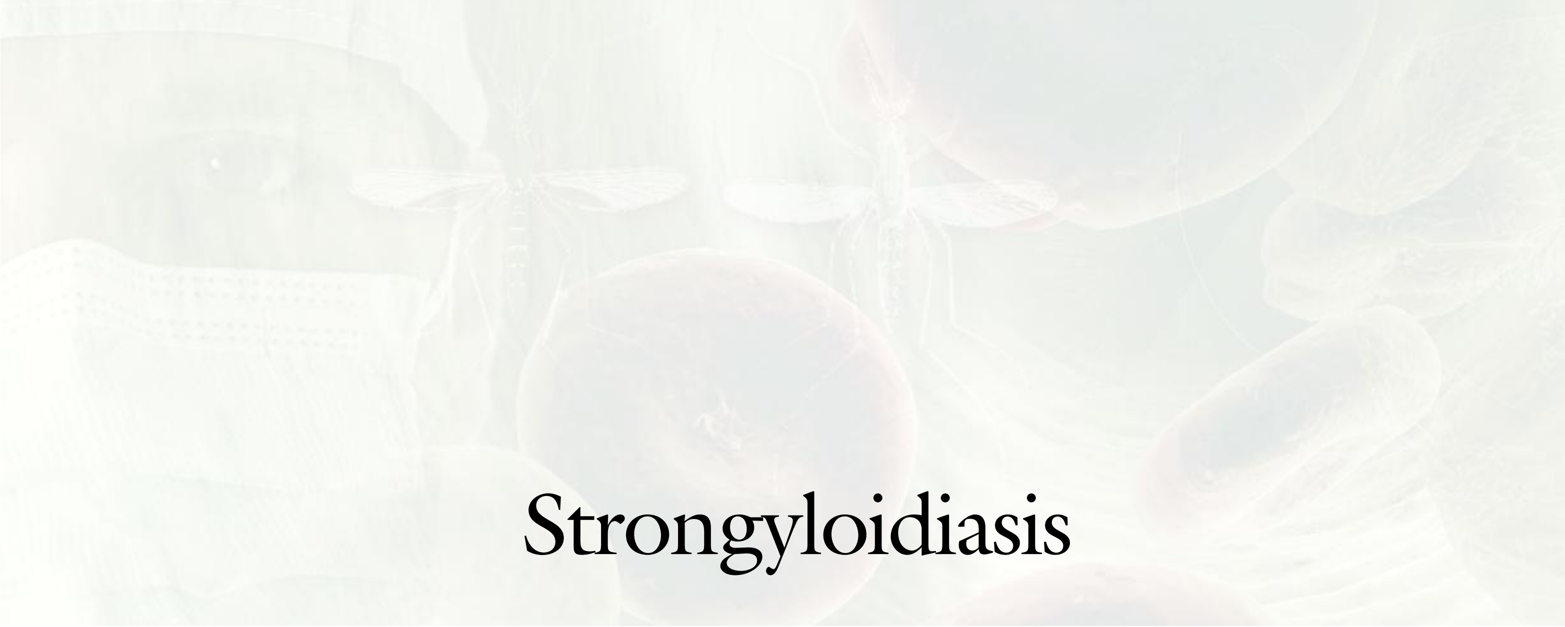
Osrin, David, et al. "Serious Bacterial Infections in Newborn Infants in Developing Countries." *Pediatric and Neonatal Infections.* 17 (2004): 217–224.

Benitz, Willem E., et al. "Risk Factors for Early-onset Group B Streptococcal Sepsis: Estimation of Odds Ratios by Critical Literature Review." *Pediatrics.* 103 (1999): 1–14.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Prevention of Perinatal Group B Streptococcal Disease." August 16, 2002 <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr5111a1.htm> (accessed February 2, 2007).

Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists (United Kingdom). "Prevention of Early Onset Neonatal Group B Streptococcal Disease." November, 2003 <http://www.rcog.org.uk/index.asp?PageID=520> (accessed February 2, 2007).



Strongyloidiasis

Introduction

Strongyloidiasis is an infection with a parasitic roundworm known as *Strongyloides stercoralis.* It occurs in tropical and subtropical areas, as well as in the southern part of the United States. *S. stercoralis* has a complex life cycle involving infection through the skin by the larvae which travel to the intestine, where they reproduce causing chronic infection in the original host. They can also pass onto new hosts and cause further infections.

In persons with compromised immunity, such as organ transplant recipients, strongyloidiasis can cause a hyperinfection involving the intestines and the rest of the body. The condition can also be difficult to diagnose, since the symptoms are varied and non-specific. However, the parasitic worms can be eliminated by drug treatment. All patients at risk of hyperinfection should be treated and those about to undergo an organ transplant ought to be screened for the infection.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

S. stercoralis has a more complicated life cycle than other parasitic worms, which means it can set up a high burden of persistent infection in a human host, especially one who has weakened immunity. Where the burden of parasites is low, the individual may have no, or merely intermittent, symptoms.

The parasites enter the skin and pass through the blood and lungs to the intestines. Therefore, those with a significant burden of parasites will develop symptoms relating to these areas. Skin symptoms include dermatitis and irritation, while the lung stage may involve dry cough, wheezing, fever, shortness of breath, and maybe coughing up blood. Parasites in the intestine will cause bloating, swelling, flatulence, indigestion, and diarrhea.

Hyperinfection—sometimes called disseminated stronglyoidiasis—may cause blood poisoning, peritonitis (inflammation of the lining of the abdominal cavity), neurological complications, and liver problems. The symptoms of strongyloidiasis are easily confused with other medical conditions, such as irritable bowel syndrome. Diagnosis depends upon identifying the *S. stercoralis* larvae within either a stool or a duodenal fluid sample.

Transmission of stronglyoidiasis starts when larvae in contaminated soil penetrate the skin of the human host and are transported through blood to the lungs. Here they first penetrate the alveoli, the tiny air sacs through which gases are exchanged between the lung surface and the blood. From here, the larvae travel up to the throat area and are swallowed, reaching the small intestine.

In the small intestine, the larvae become female adult worms. These lay eggs, by parthenogenesis—that is, without involvement of a male worm. The resulting larvae may pass through the stool, returning to the environment to repeat the cycle and infect other hosts. They can also cause so-called autoinfection in which the larvae continue to develop and penetrate the mucosal surface of the intestine, or the skin of the anal area. They then repeat the previous infection cycle—skin, lungs, and intestine—thereby massively increasing the parasitic burden on the host. Alternatively, the larvae may spread throughout the body, causing the complications described above.

Scope and Distribution

S. stercoralis infection is found in humid tropical and subtropical areas where the larvae can survive in the soil. Cases have also been found in temperate areas, including the southeastern part of the United States. The infection is more frequently found in rural areas, institutional settings, and among immigrants from the developing world. Those with reduced immunity, including patients with leukemia, organ transplant recipients, or those

WORDS TO KNOW

AUTOINFECTION: Re-infection of the body by a disease organism already in the body, such as eggs left by a parasitic worm, is autoinfection.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

HYPERINFECTION: A hyperinfection is an infection that is caused by very high number of disease causing microorganisms. The infection results from an abnormality in the immune system that allows the infecting cells to grow and divide more easily than would normally be the case.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

ROUNDWORM: Also known as nematodes; a type of helminth characterized by long, cylindrical bodies. Roundworm infections are diseases of the digestive tract and other organ systems that are caused by roundworms. Roundworm infections are widespread throughout the world, and humans acquire most types of roundworm infection from contaminated food or by touching the mouth with unwashed hands that have come into contact with the parasite larva. The severity of infection varies considerably from person to person. Children are more likely to have heavy infestations and are also more likely to suffer from malabsorption and malnutrition than adults.

receiving steroids, seem to be at higher risk of strongyloidiasis. However, HIV/AIDS does not seem to be a risk factor, despite the patient's immunocompromised status. In the Caribbean and Japan, an association between strongyloidiasis and human T-cell leukemia has been found.

Treatment and Prevention

S. stercoralis infection can be treated successfully by ivermectin. People being assessed for an organ transplant ought to be screened for infection and treated before the operation is performed. Travelers should avoid contamination with soil in areas of the world where *S. stercoralis* is endemic.

Impacts and Issues

Although infection with *S. sterocoralis* may not cause any symptoms, the nature of the parasite's life cycle means that some patients may be at risk of life-threatening complications. The path the larvae take through the body mean that there are many and varied symptoms, which cause confusion with other conditions. Careful diagnosis of the condition is essential, so the parasite can be eradicated before the infection spreads throughout the body in those whose immunity is compromised.

See Also *Parasitic Diseases; Tropical Infectious Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Peters, Wallace, and Geoffrey Pasvol. *Tropical Medicine and Parasitology.* 5th ed. London: Mosby, 2002.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Parasites and Health: Strongyloidiasis." September 26, 2005. <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Strongyloidiasis.htm> (accessed May 1, 2007).

Swimmer’s Ear and Swimmer’s Itch (Cercarial Dermatitis)

Introduction

Swimmer’s ear (otitis externa) is an infection of the ear canal and swimmer’s itch (cercarial dermatitis) is an allergic reaction to various types of microscopic waterborne parasites infecting human skin.

Many different types of fungi or bacteria can infect the ear canal—the hollow cylindrical-like opening that allows sounds to enter the eardrum. Swimmer’s ear often results.

Swimmer’s itch—sometimes also called duck itch and clam digger’s itch in the United States and various other names around the world—is a distinctly different infection caused by parasitic schistosomes (small flukes that live in blood) that infect snails and vertebrates. Most schistosomes infect waterfowl. The parasites are discharged from infected snails and vertebrates into fresh waters (often slow-moving ponds and lakes). The parasites then burrow into the skin of swimming humans. They cause an allergic reaction, itch, and rash.

These schistosomes cannot become long-term parasites in humans. They only cause mild itchy spots, which later can become raised bumps that are much itchier. The parasites die within a few hours, and the symptoms disappear.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Swimmer’s ear occurs frequently in children because they usually spend more time swimming. It can also occur in environments with high humidity. The infection can also arise any time a break in the skin occurs within the ear canal. Thus, any extended exposure to moisture in the ear often irritates the ear canal, which

After long hours in the pool, competitive swimmers can be susceptible to swimmer’s ear. When too much moisture is in the ear, it can become irritated and infected as the skin in the canal breaks down, allowing bacteria or fungi to invade. *© Stefan Schuetz/zefa/Corbis.*

WORDS TO KNOW

MALIGNANT: A general term for cells that can dislodge from the original tumor, invade and destroy other tissues and organs.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

SCHISTOSOMES: Blood flukes that infect an estimated 200 million people.

allows fungi or bacteria to enter. People often get swimmer's ear when they have dry skin or eczema, frequently or aggressively scratch or clean the ear canal, or insert objects into the ear canal, such as cotton swabs, pencil tips, or paper clips.

Trichobilharzia and *Gigantobilharzia* are two genera of schistosome that commonly cause swimmer's itch. These schistosomes infect waterfowl, such as ducks and geese, and aquatic mammals, such as beavers. The parasites lay eggs that are transferred in the feces of infected birds or mammals. The eggs, if dropped into water, hatch and release larvae that can infect humans.

Schistosomatium douthitti is a species of schistosome that infects snails. It first infects a non-human vertebrate, such as a waterfowl or mammal, and completes its lifecycle within these hosts. However, humans can become indirectly infected when coming into contact with infected waters or shorelines.

Symptoms of swimmer's ear include fever, skin inflammation inside the ear canal, temporarily reduced hearing (caused by swollen tissue), and itchiness. More severe symptoms include reddening and swelling of the outer ear, enlarged and tender lymph nodes around the ear, and yellowish drainage. Sharp pain often affects the earlobe or other external parts. In severe cases, the skin infection spreads to the face and salivary gland in the cheek. Eating can become painful. According to the Nemours Foundation, swimmer's ear is not contagious.

Swimmer's itch has symptoms that occur from minutes to days after contact. Common symptoms include mild itchy areas on the skin, which can become more itchy and redder after a few hours. There is also a tingling or burning sensation in the infected areas. Later, small blisters can appear. Itching usually stops within a week and other symptoms gradually disappear. Children are more likely to become infected due to the simple fact that they spend more time around water. According to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, swimmer's itch cannot be spread from person to person.

Scope and Distribution

Swimmer's ear is found is all temperate climates of the world where water is available for swimming. It is considered an infection that frequently occurs.

Swimmer's itch occurs throughout the world. The parasites causing the infection are more frequently found around lakes or other such bodies of slow-moving fresh and salt water. Inshore waters, rather than open waters, are more likely to contain schistosomes. They commonly infect humans during the hotter months of the year, and often infect humans that wade or swim close to shore or in shallow water.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of swimmer's ear includes using over-the-counter drops of a dilute solution—usually about 2%—of acetic acid or alcohol. Such ear drops are usually used several times a day for a maximum of ten days. Care should be taken because improper use can irritate or damage membranes located past the ear canal. Ear drops containing quinolone antibiotics are useful for stopping fluid discharge and combating bacterial infection. A corticosteroid is used to prevent inflammation, itching, and swelling. Treatment usually will cure the problem within seven to ten days.

Swimmer's ear can be prevented by drying a child's ears with a towel. Battery powered ear dryers can also be used. The child's head also can be tilted to the side so that excess water runs out. Doctors may recommend earplugs while swimming; however, the earplugs should be professionally fitted because they can irritate the ear canal if improperly used. Until the infection has cleared up, doctors recommend that a child should not swim or wash his or her hair. To prevent damage to the ear canal, children should not be allowed to place objects in their ears or to clean their ears themselves.

The American Osteopathic College of Dermatology recommends that swimmer's itch be treated with an antihistamine cream or a mild corticosteroid cream. Both can be purchased as over-the-counter medicines. However, if symptoms, such as scratching, continue longer than three days, the AOCD recommends a visit to a dermatologist.

Prevention of swimmer's itch usually involves the long-term removal of the schistosome hosts. For instance, various control agents such as copper sulfate have been used to eliminate snail populations around lakes. The application of the insect repellant DEET (N, N-diethyl-m-toluamide) to the body can help to repel schistosomes.

Impacts and Issues

People with diabetes or immune system disorders should get medical assistance immediately when affected with swimmer's ear. They are more likely to suffer severe symptoms including malignant otitis externa, which is a rare form of otitis externa. Rather than staying on the surface of the outer ear, this disease can move into the bony structures of the ear and may permanently destroy them.

Because marine pollution is increasing around the world, especially in developed and developing countries, more incidents of swimmer's itch are occurring. In addition, global warming is creating conditions favorable to expanded populations of water-borne parasites. Many people have more leisure time and may choose to spend this time around water. More people are also moving to areas containing slow-moving bodies of water, such as lakes and estuaries. The rate of swimmer's itch increases both with the amount of time spent in infected waters and with the level of pollution in waters where swimming is done.

See Also *Ear infections (Otitis Media); Water-borne Disease.*

THE EXTERNAL EAR

The external ear consists of the flesh and cartilage structure on either side of the head, known as the auricle or pinna, and of the hole into the head. The auricle helps focus the incoming sound waves. The hole leads into the auditory canal, a roughly cylinder-shaped, small diameter canal that is about 2.5 cm long. Towards the inner end, the canal widens slightly and ends at the eardrum. The ear canal can be thought of as a shaped tube with a resonating column of air inside it, having open and closed ends, similar to the construction of an organ pipe.

This analogy is apt, for the ear canal enhances the sound vibrations that have traveled in from the outside. The canal can resonate, or vibrate, typically at frequencies that the ear hears most sharply. The vibration increases the wavelength of the sound waves traveling down the canal. The amplified waves eventually contact the ear drum, which is positioned at the inner end of the canal, and marks the boundary between the outer ear and the middle ear.

The ear drum is a membrane. It is capable of vibration, which occurs when the sound waves contact it. The vibrational energy of the ear drum is converted to mechanical vibrations in the solid materials of the middle ear. These solid materials are three bones: the malleus, incus and stapes. The bones form a system of levers that are linked together and are driven by the eardrum. The outer malleus pushes on the incus, which in turn pushes on the stapes. This further amplifies the sound vibrations, typically 2–3 fold. Muscles are positioned around the bones, the smallest muscles in the body, and 'dampen down' the mechanical vibrations if they become too pronounced. They are a form of safety device, restricting movement of one or more of the bones. This protects against the creation of too great a vibration from a very loud sound.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bluestone, Charles D. *Targeting Therapies in Otitis Media and Otitis Externa*. Hamilton, Ontario, Canada: Decker DTC, 2004.

Zhai, Hongho, and Howard I. Maibach. *Dermatotoxicology*. New York: CRC Press, 2004.

Periodicals

Beers, S., and T. Abramo. "Otitis Externa Review." *Pediatric Emergency Care* 20 (April 2004): 250–256.

Verbrugge, L. M., et al. "Prospective Study of Swimmer's Itch Incidence and Severity." *Journal of Parasitology* 90 (2004): 697–704.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Cercarial Dermatitis." September 17, 2004. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/cercarialdermatitis/factsht_cercarialdermatitis.htm> (accessed March 24, 2007).

Health Canada. "Material Safety Data Sheet—Infectious Substances: Ascaris lumbricoides." January 23, 2001. <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/msds-ftss/msds9e.html> (accessed March 23, 2007).

KidsHealth for Parents. "Infections: Swimmer's Ear." March 2006. <http://www.kidshealth.org/parent/infections/ear/swimmer_ear.html> (accessed March 27, 2007).

Syphilis

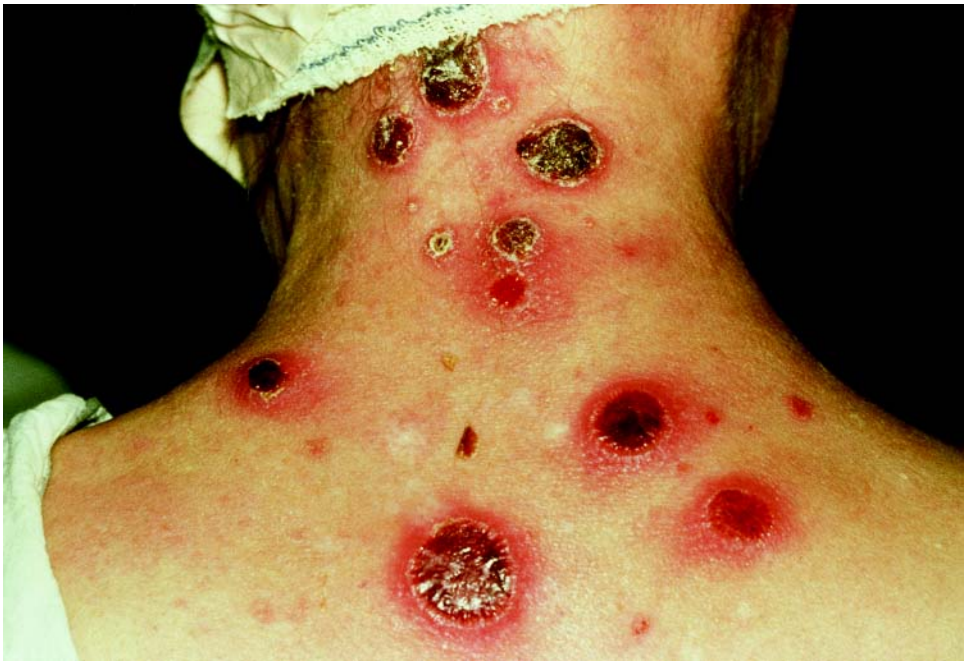
Introduction

Syphilis is one of the most significant of the sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) with an estimated 12 million new infections occurring each year worldwide. It is a deceptive condition, starting with a single, painless sore which may not even be detected but which may progress over a period of years to potentially fatal complications such as heart damage, dementia, and paralysis. Syphilis is very infectious, and most cases are caused by sexual contact with people who may not even be aware that they have themselves contracted the disease.

Syphilis is caused by the bacterium *Treponema pallidum* and the advent of penicillin in the late 1940s led to a dramatic decrease in the number of cases. However, syphilis has been on the increase again in recent years in the United States and in other countries, so there is a great need to treat the disease at an early stage and to educate people about the risks.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Syphilis is caused by *T. pallidum*, which belongs to the spirochaete class of fine, spiral, highly motile bacteria. Its incubation time is from nine to 90 days and the disease



A person displays the signs of secondary syphilis rash and inflammation on the back. *CNRI/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

progresses through an infectious and a non-infectious stage. The infectious stage lasts for a few months, during which time symptoms may cause little, or no, illness. The non-infectious stage, which follows if syphilis is not treated early on, may also be without symptoms—or it may be accompanied by major heart or neurological damage.

Infectious syphilis is divided into two stages. The primary stage is characterized by the appearance of a single sore, known as a chancre, either on or inside the genitals or elsewhere on the body, such as on the eyelid or lip. Typically, the chancre is firm, round, small and painless. It appears at the site of entry of *T. pallidum* into the body. The chancre, which those affected may be completely unaware of, lasts for three to six weeks and heals without treatment. However, if treatment is not administered, the infection will progress to the secondary stage.

A skin rash and mucous membrane lesions are the prime symptoms of the secondary stage. A non-itching rash develops, either while the chancre is healing or several weeks afterwards. This might appear as rough red or reddish-brown spots on the palms of the hands and the soles of the feet. However, a rash might appear on some other part of the body and resemble that from some other disease—especially if the primary stage has not been identified.

Sometimes the rash from secondary syphilis is so faint as to be unnoticeable. There may be other symptoms such as fever, swollen glands, weight loss, headaches, loss of appetite, and fatigue. However, this stage also resolves within a few weeks without any treatment.

Latent syphilis is untreated disease past the primary and secondary stage. It has no obvious symptoms and is known as early or late, depending on whether it develops earlier or later than two years after the first infection. This is an arbitrary cut-off time that refers to whether or not the disease is likely to still be infectious.

Late latent syphilis may lead to complications of the nervous system. Ten percent of people with latent syphilis will develop neurosyphilis, of which there are various types, depending on which part of the brain and nervous system is affected. Neurosyphilis produces early symptoms such as personality change, tremor, and impaired memory, often followed by paralysis, delusions and seizures. Another form of neurosyphilis, tabes doralis, is accompanied by sharp pains in the legs and an absence of normal reflexes. The meningovascular type of neurosyphilis is an inflammation of the covering of the brain, and headache is usually a major symptom. Neurosyphilis may not have any symptoms at all, but evidence of infection can still be found in the cerebrospinal fluid.

Another ten percent of those with late disease will develop cardiovascular syphilis, which affects the aorta—the main vessel leaving the heart to supply the rest of the body with oxygenated blood. The disease leads to aneurysm, which is a weakness in the artery, which may lead to a potentially fatal rupture. Finally, gummatous syphilis affects 15 percent of those with later disease and leads to the presence of sores on the skin and mucous membranes, many years after the primary infection.

A pregnant woman with syphilis might pass the disease on to her unborn child. Congenital syphilis leads to stillbirth, death shortly after birth, physical deformity, or neurological problems. Increasing awareness of the dangers of syphilis can decrease the risk of all these complications, by treating cases at the earliest possible stage with antibiotics.

Transmission of syphilis is by direct contact with a chancre, which usually occurs through sexual contact. Since the sore may be inside the body—on the cervix, for instance—it is possible that neither person will realize the danger of infection. It is also possible to become re-infected with syphilis at some later stage—unlike with some other infectious diseases, one infection does not confer lifelong immunity.

Scope and Distribution

According to the World Health Organization, there are around 12 million new syphilis infections each year. South and Southeast Asia account for about four million, sub-Saharan Africa for another four million. Other areas where syphilis is a significant health problem include Eastern Europe and the United States.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC: A drug, such as penicillin, used to fight infections caused by bacteria. Antibiotics act only on bacteria and are not effective against viruses.

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASE (STD): Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) vary in their susceptibility to treatment, their signs and symptoms, and the consequences if they are left untreated. Some are caused by bacteria. These usually can be treated and cured. Others are caused by viruses and can typically be treated but not cured. More than 15 million new cases of STD are diagnosed annually in the United States.

VENEREAL DISEASE: Venereal diseases are diseases that are transmitted by sexual contact. They are named after Venus, the Roman goddess of female sexuality.

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

In 1932, the U.S. Public Health Service (USPHS). Venereal Disease Division began an experiment in Macon County, Alabama, to determine the natural course of untreated, latent syphilis in African American men. The experiment, known as the Tuskegee Syphilis Study, involved 400 men with syphilis, as well as 200 uninfected men who served as controls. The men were told that they were ill with "bad blood," a rural Southern colloquialism for syphilis and anemia, but were never informed that they were participants in a study. The USPHS was investigating the possibility that anti-syphilitic treatment was unnecessary.

Despite the fact that major medical textbooks in 1932 advocated treating syphilis at the latent stage, the USPHS actively prevented the men enrolled in the study from receiving treatment. They were never given a clear diagnosis. In 1934, the USPHS advised local black hospitals not to treat the study subjects, and when the Alabama Health Department took a mobile venereal disease unit into Macon County in the early 1940s, the USPHS advised the health officials to deny treatment to the test subjects. At the start of World War II (1941–1945), several of the men were drafted for military service and were told by the Army to begin anti-syphilitic treatment. Concerned about the continuation of the experiment, the USPHS gave the names of 256 study members to the Alabama state draft board and asked that they not be drafted and, thus, receive treatment in the military. The draft board complied with the request. When penicillin became widely available by the early 1950s as a cure for syphilis, the men enrolled in the study did not receive treatment.

No effort was made by the USPHS to protect the wives and families of the diseased men from syphilis. The officials in charge of the experiment presumed that syphilis existed naturally in the black community, presumed that African American men were promiscuous, and presumed they would not seek or continue treatment even if given the choice.

The first published report of the Tuskegee Syphilis Study appeared in 1936, with subsequent papers issued every four to six years throughout the 1960s. Each report noted the ravages of untreated syphilis. In 1969, a committee from the Centers for Disease Control decided that the study should be continued. However, by this time, some of the test subjects had received antibiotics for other illnesses, thereby compromising the syphilis study. Only in July 1972, when the Associated Press reported the story, did the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare (HEW) halt the experiment amid great public outrage. At that time, 74 of the test subjects were still alive. Many of the subjects had died from untreated syphilis with estimates of the dead ranging from twenty-eight to one hundred men. In August 1972, HEW appointed an investigatory panel, which subsequently found the study to be "ethically unjustified." HEW declared that penicillin should have been provided to the men. None of the physicians who participated in the study were ever prosecuted for any crimes, although the United States did settle a lawsuit brought by the survivors and their families for $10 million.

The Tuskegee Syphilis Study led to new standards for experiments that employ human subjects. In U.S. Senate hearings on human experimentation held in the wake of publicity about the study, physicians were reminded that the goal of human experimentation must always be to advance the human condition and to improve the situation of the subjects of the study. Institutional review boards were established to guarantee that studies are grounded in scientific principles and that the rights of study participants are protected.

In May 1997, President Bill Clinton issued a formal apology for the Tuskegee Syphilis Study on behalf of the United States government.

According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), where data on syphilis infection is collected, the disease fell to an all-time low in 2000 but has been increasing since then. Accordingly, there were 7,940 reported cases of primary and secondary syphilis in 2004 and 8,724 in 2005. But there has been a decrease in congenital syphilis during that time period from 9.1 to 8.0 per 100,000 births.

Treatment and Prevention

Penicillin is still the mainstay of treatment for syphilis. Doxycycline and erythromycin are alternatives for those who are allergic to penicillin. Early cases can be treated by a single injection of penicillin but the more the disease progresses, the longer the duration of treatment must be. Treatment is effective and it halts progression to the later stages of syphilis and its progression.

Prevention of the disease includes the tracing of the sexual contacts of those in the infectious stages of syphilis. If they are found to be infected, they should be treated promptly. Sexual abstinence, or having monogamous sexual contact with a partner known not to be infected, are the most effective way of avoiding infection with syphilis.

Impacts and Issues

During World War I (1914–1918), many involved nations launched public campaigns to combat the spread of sexually transmitted diseases (then commonly called venereal disease or VD) that often rose dramatically during and immediately after wartime. Posters and pamphlets warned soldiers of contracting venereal disease from prostitutes and transmitting venereal disease to wives back home. Syphilis was the focus of most anti-VD campaigns since it then was the most devastating and difficult to treat venereal disease. Anti-VD, and especially anti-syphilis campaigns were again launched during World War II (1939–1945), but the advent of antibiotics shifted their focus to one of wartime rationing and conservation—saving precious antibiotics for those most in need by reducing the risk of exposure to venereal disease.

The Tuskegee Syphilis Study (1932–1972) documented the effects of untreated syphilis in approximately 400 African-Americans living near Tuskegee, Alabama. Most of the subjects of the study were poor and had scant access to health care. Many were illiterate, or had little formal education. The study was kept secret for almost four decades, with minimal concern for the welfare of participants. Individuals who volunteered for the study were told they would receive free meals and medical care for their "bad blood." The families of participants who died were eligible to receive $35 for funeral expenses. When the Tuskegee Syphilis Study began in 1932, antibiotic penicillin had been discovered but was not yet commonly available for medical use. Standard treatments for syphilis were neither effective of safe, many involved toxic substances that damaged the liver, kidneys, and nervous system.

The originators of the Tuskegee Syphilis Study claimed that it might be more beneficial for patients to receive no treatment at all than to be subjected to the syphilis remedies then available. However, the Study continued long after penicillin became commonly available after World War II (1939–1945), and patients were denied antibiotics or information about antibiotic treatments. Participants were never fully informed that they had syphilis or that treatment was available. Throughout the course of the study, participants were subjected to repeated injections of non-medicinal solution, routine examinations, and medical testing. Many participants suffered painful symptoms for many years; many died from complications related to untreated syphilis. The experiment terminated abruptly in 1972 after information about the Tuskegee Study was leaked to the press.

While incidence of syphilis in the United States, especially in young adults, reached a new low in the 1990s, an isolated outbreak in 1996 garnered national media attention when public health officials documented 17 cases of syphilis in teenagers in a suburban county near Atlanta, Georgia. Health officials asserted that as many as 250 teens may have been exposed to syphilis. Testing and disease tracking found that many of the teens routinely engaged in high-risk sexual behaviors including having multiple partners, group sex, and unprotected sex.

Much of the increase in syphilis cases in recent years has occurred among men who have sex with men who now account for nearly half of all cases. There has also been an increase in syphilis cases among women, for the first time in more than ten years, and among African-Americans.

Syphilis infection is a major risk for those who already have HIV infection. The presence of the chancre makes it easier for the virus to enter the body. Studies have shown that the risk of HIV transmission is two to five times higher among those who already have syphilis. The symptoms of HIV and syphilis tend to overlap one another, which may confuse the diagnosis. Also, people who are HIV positive might progress quicker to the complications of syphilis. For these reasons, those who are diagnosed with syphilis are recommended to have an HIV test and those who are HIV positive should be tested for syphilis, so treatment can be given as soon as possible.

Primary Source Connection

In the aftermath of the Tuskegee Experiment revelations, calls for government investigations, reparations, and apologies were met with Congressional hearings. The Henderson Act of 1943 had required that all forms of venereal disease be documented and treated; the U.S. Surgeon General had sent letters of commendation to men enrolled in the study on its twenty-fifth anniversary in 1957; and the study violated the 1964 World Health Organization's Declaration of Helsinki, in which informed consent is required. All of these events pointed to a level of government involvement and neglect that led the National Association for the Advancement of Colored People (NAACP) to file a 1973 class-action lawsuit that resulted in a financial settlement.

President William Jefferson Clinton's apology was part of an effort on the part of the Clinton administration to further correct the omission of an apology from the federal government. In 1997, when President Clinton issued his apology, only 8 of the 399 study participants who had syphilis were still alive.

President William Jefferson Clinton's apology on behalf of the United States of America

The East Room.

2:26 P.M. EDT.

THE PRESIDENT: Ladies and gentlemen, on Sunday, Mr. Shaw will celebrate his 95th birthday. I would like to recognize the other survivors who are here today and their families: Mr. Charlie Pollard is here. Mr. Carter Howard. Mr. Fred Simmons. Mr. Simmons just took his first airplane ride, and he reckons he's about 110 years old, so I think it's time for him to take a chance or two. I'm glad he did. And Mr. Frederick Moss, thank you, sir.

I would also like to ask three family representatives who are here—Sam Doner is represented by his daughter, Gwendolyn Cox. Thank you, Gwendolyn. Ernest Hendon, who is watching in Tuskegee, is represented by his brother, North Hendon. Thank you, sir, for being here. And George Key is represented by his grandson, Christopher Monroe. Thank you, Chris.

I also acknowledge the families, community leaders, teachers and students watching today by satellite from Tuskegee. The White House is the people's house; we are glad to have all of you here today. I thank Dr. David Satcher for his role in this. I thank Congresswoman Waters and Congressman Hilliard, Congressman Stokes, the entire Congressional Black Caucus. Dr. Satcher, members of the Cabinet who are here, Secretary Herman, Secretary Slater, members of the Cabinet who are here, Secretary Herman, Secretary Slater. A great friend of freedom, Fred Gray, thank you for fighting this long battle all these long years.

The eight men who are survivors of the syphilis study at Tuskegee are a living link to a time not so very long ago that many Americans would prefer not to remember, but we dare not forget. It was a time when our nation failed to live up to its ideals, when our nation broke the trust with our people that is the very foundation of our democracy. It is not only in remembering that shameful past that we can make amends and repair our nation, but it is in remembering that past that we can build a better present and a better future. And without remembering it, we cannot make amends and we cannot go forward.

So today America does remember the hundreds of men used in research without their knowledge and consent. We remember them and their family members. Men who were poor and African American, without resources and with few alternatives, they belived they had found hope when they were offered free medical care by the United States Public Health Service.

They were betrayed.

Medical people are supposed to help when we need care but even once a cure was discovered, they were denied help, and they were lied to by their government. Our government is supposed to protect the rights of its citizens; their rights were trampled upon. Forty years, hundreds of men betrayed, along with their wives and children, along with the community in Macon County, Alabama, the City of Tuskegee, the fine university there, and the larger African American community.

The United States government did something that was wrong—deeply, profoundly, morally wrong. It was an outrage to our commitment to integrity and equality for all our citizens.

To the survivors, to the wives and family members, the children and the grandchildren, I say what you know: No power on Earth can give you back the lives lost, the pain suffered, the years of internal torment and anguish. What was done cannot be undone. But we can end the silence. We can stop turning our heads away. We can look at you in the eye and finally say on behalf of the American people, what the United States government did was shameful, and I am sorry.

The American people are sorry—for the loss, for the years of hurt. You did nothing wrong, but you were grievously wronged. I apologize and I am sorry that this apology has been so long in coming.

To Macon County, to Tuskegee, to the doctors who have been wrongly associated with the events there, you have our apology, as well. To our African American citizens, I am sorry that your federal government orchestrated a study so clearly racist. That can never be allowed to happen again. It is against everything our country stands for and what we must stand against is what it was.

So let us resolve to hold forever in our hearts and minds the memory of a time not long ago in Macon County, Alabama, so that we can always see how adrift we can become when the rights of any citizens are neglected, ignored and betrayed. And let us resolve here and now to move forward together.

The legacy of the study at Tuskegee has reached far and deep, in ways that hurt our progress and divide our nation. We cannot be one America when a whole segment of our nation has no trust in America. An apology is the first step, and we take it with a commitment to rebuild that broken trust. We can begin by making sure there is never again another episode like this one. We need to do more to ensure that medical research practices are sound and ethical, and that researchers work more closely with communities.

Today I would like to announce several steps to help us achieve these goals. First, we will help to build that lasting memorial at Tuskegee. (Applause.) The school founded by Booker T. Washington, distinguished by the renowned scientist George Washington Carver and so many others who advanced the health and well-being of African Americans and all Americans, is a fitting site. The Department of Health and Human Services will award a planning grant so the school can pursue establishing a center for bioethics in research and health care. The center will serve as a museum of the study and support efforts to address its legacy and strengthen bioethics training.

Second, we commit to increase our community involvement so that we may begin restoring lost trust. The study at Tuskegee served to sow distrust of our medical institutions, especially where research is involved. Since the study was halted, abuses have been checked by making informed consent and local review mandatory in federally-funded and mandated research.

Still, 25 years later, many medical studies have little African American participation and African American organ donors are few. This impedes efforts to conduct promising research and to provide the best health care to all our people, including African Americans. So today, I'm directing the Secretary of Health and Human Services, Donna Shalala, to issue a report in 180 days about how we can best involve communities, especially minority communities, in research and health care. You must—every American group must be involved in medical research in ways that are positive. We have put the curse behind us; now we must bring the benefits to all Americans.

Third, we commit to strengthen researchers' training in bioethics. We are constantly working on making breakthroughs in protecting the health of our people and in vanquishing diseases. But all our people must be assured that their rights and dignity will be respected as new drugs, treatments and therapies are tested and used. So I am directing Secretary Shalala to work in partnership with higher education to prepare training materials for medical researchers. They will be available in a year. They will help researchers build on core ethical principles of respect for individuals, justice and informed consent, and advise them on how to use these principles effectively in diverse populations.

Fourth, to increase and broaden our understanding of ethical issues and clinical research, we commit to providing postgraduate fellowships to train bioethicists especially among African Americans and other minority groups. HHS will offer these fellowships beginning in September of 1998 to promising students enrolled in bioethics graduate programs.

And, finally, by executive order I am also today extending the charter of the National Bioethics Advisory Commission to October of 1999. The need for this commission is clear. We must be able to call on the thoughtful, collective wisdom of experts and community representatives to find ways to further strengthen our protections for subjects in human research.

We face a challenge in our time. Science and technology are rapidly changing our lives with the promise of making us much healthier, much more productive and more prosperous. But with these changes we must work harder to see that as we advance we don't leave behind our conscience. No ground is gained and, indeed, much is lost if we lose our moral bearings in the name of progress.

The people who ran the study at Tuskegee diminished the stature of man by abandoning the most basic ethical precepts. They forgot their pledge to heal and repair. They had the power to heal the survivors and all the others and they did not. Today, all we can do is apologize. But you have the power, for only you—Mr. Shaw, the others who are here, the family members who are with us in Tuskegee—only you have the power to forgive. Your presence here shows us that you have chosen a better path than your government did so long ago. You have not withheld the power to forgive. I hope today and tomorrow every American will remember your lesson and live by it.

Thank you, and God bless you.

CLINTON, WILLIAM J. *APOLOGY FOR STUDY DONE IN TUSKEGEE.* WHITE HOUSE OFFICE OF PRESS SECRETARY, 1997.

SEE ALSO *Sexually Transmitted Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Adler, Michael, et al. *ABC of Sexually Transmitted Diseases.* London: BMJ, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Trends in reportable sexually transmitted diseases in the United States, 2005." December 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/std/stats/trends2005.htm#trendssyphilis> (accessed May 1, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Sexually Transmitted Infections." <http://www.who.int/reproductive-health/stis/docs/sti_factsheet_2004.pdf> (accessed May 1, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Taeniasis (*Taenia* Infection)

Introduction

Taenia infection, or taeniasis, is an infection of the digestive tract caused by parasitic flatworms generally called cestodes, or tapeworms. It is specifically caused by only the species within the *Taenia* genus, those that infect carnivores (flesh eating animals). Taeniasis is acquired when humans (definitive hosts) eat raw or undercooked meat from infected animals (intermediate hosts).

For instance, cows (and other ruminants) carry the tapeworm species *Taenia saginata* and pigs (and dogs, cats, and sheep) harbor the species *Taenia solium*. When humans acquire taeniasis from cows the tapeworm is commonly called beef tapeworm and when it is from pigs the tapeworm is called pig tapeworm. In addition, *Taenia multiceps* infect hares, rabbits, and squirrels, while only rarely infecting humans.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

When humans eat infected meat from an intermediate host, tapeworm larvae hatch and develop inside the intestines. *T. saginata* matures to a length of 13 to 26 feet (4 to 8 meters). *T. solium* reaches adulthood at a length of 3 to 7 feet (1 to 2 meters). Both tapeworms can be found as an adult in the human intestines and as larvae in muscles and other tissues of cattle (and other ruminants) and pigs (and dogs, cats, and sheep), respectively. Adult tapeworms can stay inside their hosts for many years. The eggs are passed into the soil from human feces where they are eaten by intermediate hosts. Then, the eggs hatch and larvae enter tissues of the animal host where they enclose themselves in cysts (this is called encysts). When humans eat infected animal flesh, they also eat the cysts.

Tapeworms are long, segmented worms with each segment able to produce eggs. Each segment can detach from the worm and pass out through the feces or they can also crawl on their own through the anus. The worms do not have an intestinal tract, so must obtain their nourishment through their outer covering (integument). The structure of an adult consists of a head, neck, and segmented body that contain both male and female reproductive features. The head attaches to the mucous lining of the intestine.

Humans infected with *T. solium* can become infected again when eggs are ingested from human hands after coming in contact with the anal area. These infected individuals can infect other humans through improper food handling and other unsanitary means. These humans are considered intermediate hosts. The larvae will travel to various tissues of organs within the human host. Thus, *T. solium* are tapeworms that can infect humans as intermediate and definitive hosts.

Taenia infection does not usually cause any symptoms. However, sometimes there can be minor gastrointestinal pain, weight loss, and persistent ill feelings. The infection is usually recognized when the infected person passes tapeworm segments in the stool, especially if the segment is moving.

Scope and Distribution

Taenia infection is found worldwide, but only rarely in the United States. In the United States, *T. saginatait* is found in less than 1% of cattle because cattle are thoroughly treated for tapeworms. *T. solium* is also rare in the United States, but it is becoming more frequent as immigrants come in increasing numbers from areas infected with the parasite.

T. saginatait is found most often in Latin America, central Asia, Africa, and the Middle East. It is also found somewhat in Europe, southern Asia, Japan, and the Philippines. *T. solium* is found mostly in Latin America, Africa, the Slavic countries of central and southern Europe, southeast Asia, India, and China.

According to the Division of Parasitic Diseases (DPD), of the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and

WORDS TO KNOW

CHEMOTHERAPY: Chemotherapy is the treatment of a disease, infection, or condition with chemicals that have a specific effect on its cause, such as a microorganism or cancer cell. The first modern therapeutic chemical was derived from a synthetic dye. The sulfonamide drugs developed in the 1930s, penicillin and other antibiotics of the 1940s, hormones in the 1950s, and more recent drugs that interfere with cancer cell metabolism and reproduction have all been part of the chemotherapeutic arsenal.

ERADICATION: The process of destroying or eliminating a microorganism or disease.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

RUMINANTS: Cud-chewing animals with a four-chambered stomachs and even-toed hooves.

SEIZURE: A seizure is a sudden disruption of the brain's normal electrical activity accompanied by altered consciousness and/or other neurological and behavioral abnormalities. Epilepsy is a condition characterized by recurrent seizures that may include repetitive muscle jerking called convulsions. Seizures are traditionally divided into two major categories: generalized seizures and focal seizures. Within each major category, however, there are many different types of seizures. Generalized seizures come about due to abnormal neuronal activity on both sides of the brain, while focal seizures, also named partial seizures, occur in only one part of the brain.

TAPEWORM: Tapeworms are parasitic flatworms of class *Cestoidea*, phylum *Platyhelminthes*, that live inside the intestine. Tapeworms have no digestive system, but absorb predigested nutrients directly from their surroundings.

Prevention (CDC), *T. solium* is found more than *T. saginatait* in underdeveloped areas because people live very close to pigs and often eat undercooked pork.

Treatment and Prevention

Taenia infection is diagnosed with a stool sample. Tapeworm eggs can be found with a medical examination. Segments of worms can also be readily seen in feces after they are passed from the body. An infected person is treated with oral anti-parasitic worm medications. Usually one dose of niclosamide (Niclocide®) is used, and sometimes either praziquantel (Biltricide®) or albendazole (Albenza®, Eskazole®, or Zentel®) is given. After the treatment is complete, tapeworm infection is normally eliminated, but reinfection is possible if more cysts are ingested.

Any complications are usually from an infected person re-infecting themselves with tapeworm eggs. In rare cases, worms may cause blockage of the intestines and obstruct the bowels, resulting in a medical emergency.

Taenia infection is prevented in the United States and other industrial countries with strict federal law governing the feeding and inspection of domesticated animals slaughtered for food. According to the CDC's Division of Parasitic Diseases, taeniasis has been largely eliminated in the United States. In addition, fully cooking meat destroys any tapeworm larvae that may be present and any infection they may carry. Anyone infected with tapeworms can prevent infecting oneself again by practicing good hygiene, especially by thoroughly washing one's hands after using the toilet.

Impacts and Issues

T. saginatait infection can cause obstruction of the appendix (small outgrowth of intestines), pancreatic duct (carrier of pancreatic juices), and biliary duct (transporter of bile).

Infections involving *T. solium* can cause debilitating complications with regards to the central nervous system and the skeletal muscles. Under many conditions, a neurologic examination comes back normal, making it very difficult to diagnosis the infection. Other complications that can set in include meningitis (inflammation of the meninges), dementia (deterioration of memory functions), and hydrocephalus (increased fluid around the brain).

Larvae can also migrate from the intestines to other tissues of the body. If larvae migrate to the brain, they can cause neurological problems that are generally called cysticercosis. Seizure can occur when the brain is affected, along with earlier signs of vomiting, confusion, visual changes, and headaches.

Several international health organizations, including the World Health Organization (WHO), have identified taeniasis as potentially eradicable, meaning that health officials hope to eliminate the disease in humans. As of 2007, current efforts to eradicate taeniasis focus on hygiene education, improved sanitation, and preventative vaccinations for carrier animals. In South America and parts of Asia and Africa, efforts to control *Taenia solium* employ aggressive chemotherapy (using drugs or chemicals that are toxic to sources of diseases within the body) campaigns to reduce the number of human carriers.

SEE ALSO *Helminth Disease; Parasitic Diseases; Tapeworm Infections.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Maule, Aaron G., and Nikki J. Marks, eds. *Parasitic Flatworms: Molecular Biology, Biochemistry, Immunology and Physiology.* Wallingford, UK: CABI Publishing, 2006.

Singh G., and S. Prabhakar, eds. *Taenia Solium Cysticercosis: From Basic to Clinical Science.* Chandigarh, India: CABI Publishing, 2002.

Periodicals

Beers, S., and T. Abramo. "Otitis externa review." *Pediatric Emergency Care.* 20(4) (2004): 250–256.

Verbrugge, L.M., et al. "Prospective study of swimmer's itch incidence and severity." *Journal of Parasitology.* 90 (2004): 697–704.

Web Sites

Division of Parasitic Diseases, U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Taeniasis." November 29, 2006 <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/Default.htm> (accessed March 27, 2007).

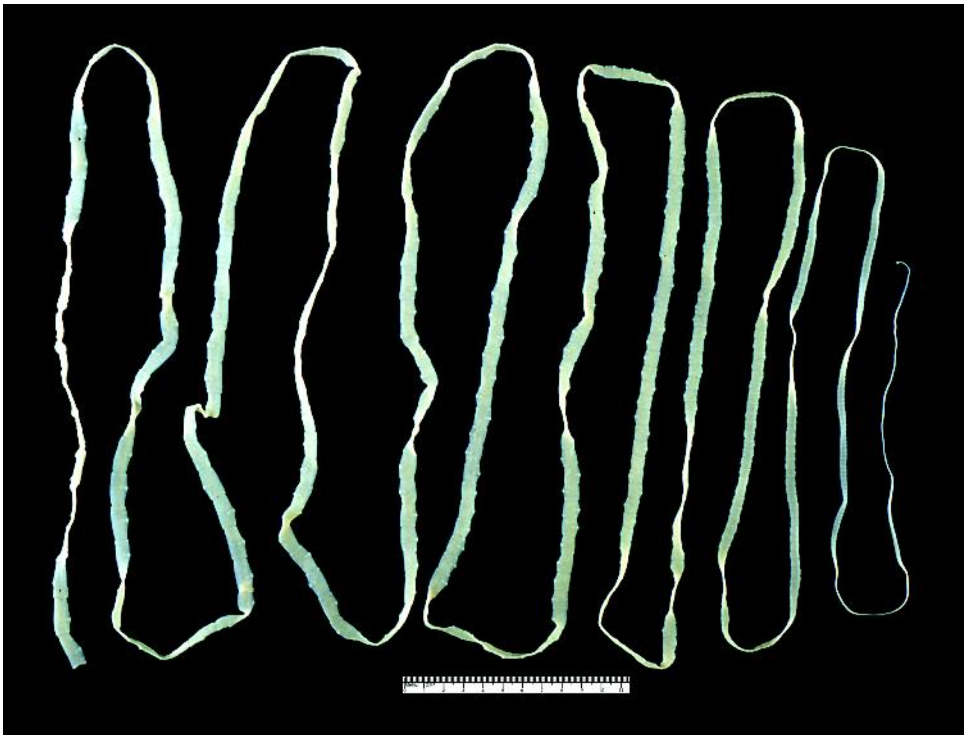
Tapeworm Infections

Introduction

Tapeworms are parasitic animals also known as cestodes. The life cycle of the tapeworm involves humans as either a primary or intermediate host. Both of these situations cause infection in humans. Humans become infected with tapeworms when they either ingest meat containing encysted tapeworms or when they ingest tapeworm eggs. In the first case, humans act as primary hosts. In the second case, humans act as intermediate hosts.

While tapeworm infections tend to be asymptomatic, some symptoms may appear, including abdominal pain, nausea, diarrhea, stools containing mucus, and the passing of tapeworm segments, or proglottids. However, if a human is infected with eggs, more serious complications can arise. The cysts formed by the larvae in tissues can cause damage, including damage to vital organs, such as the brain.

Tapeworm infections occur worldwide, but are more prevalent in countries with low hygiene and sanitation conditions or in areas where humans live close to



An adult *Taenia saginata* tapeworm is shown. Humans become infected with tapeworms by ingesting raw or undercooked infected meat. *Science Source.*

WORDS TO KNOW

CESTODE: A class of worms characterized by flat, segmented bodies, commonly known as tapeworms.

INTERMEDIATE HOST: An organism infected by a parasite while the parasite is in a developmental form, not sexually mature.

PRIMARY HOST: The primary host is an organism that provides food and shelter for a parasite while allowing it to become sexually mature, while a secondary host is one occupied by a parasite during the larval or asexual stages of its life cycle.

livestock. Tapeworms are passed on predominantly through ingesting meat containing encysted tapeworms or ingesting food and water contaminated with infected human feces. Treatment involves anti-parasitic medications, such as praziquantel, and is usually effective.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Tapeworms are parasitic flatworms belonging to the class Cestoda. The life cycle of a tapeworm generally involves a primary host and an intermediate host. The life cycle begins when a tapeworm egg is passed from a primary host into soil or water. An intermediate host ingests the egg and the larvae hatch, enter tissues, and form cysts. A primary host then ingests cysts when they consume the flesh of the intermediate host. These cysts develop into adults, which sexually reproduce in the host's intestines.

In most cases, humans become infected with tapeworms after eating undercooked or raw animal flesh containing tapeworm cysts. These worms migrate to the intestines where they reproduce. The fecal matter of these infected individuals is infectious, since it contains tapeworm eggs. The most common tapeworms that infect humans in this manner are: *Taenia solium*, which is present in pigs; *Taenia saginata*, which is present in cattle; *Diphyllobothrium* species, which are present in freshwater fishes; *Hymenolepis* species, which are found in rodents and insects; and *Diphyllobothrium caninum*, which is present in cat and dog fleas.

In some cases, humans are intermediate hosts. In these cases, humans ingest the tapeworm eggs. These hatch, and the larvae migrate to tissues within the body and form cysts. This occurs with *Taenia solium* if humans swallow food or water that contains contaminated human fecal matter. It also occurs when humans accidentally swallow insects containing the larvae of *Hymenolepis* species.

Tapeworm infections tend to be asymptomatic. However, possible symptoms include abdominal pain, nausea, diarrhea, stools containing mucus, and the passing of tapeworm segments, or proglottids. A serious risk associated with an infestation of *T. solium* is the risk of developing cysticercosis. This occurs when the eggs are ingested and the larvae form cysts within tissues. The most serious form of this infection involves cysts that form in the central nervous system—a condition known as neurocysticercosis. This can cause neurological problems and seizures. In severe cases, permanent brain damage or death may occur.

Scope and Distribution

Tapeworm infections occur worldwide. However, certain species are only present, or are more prevalent, in certain regions. In the United States, only a few tapeworms commonly cause infection. Infection by *T. saginata* and *T. solium* is rare in the United States, with less than a 1% infection rate for *T. saginata*. This is a result of the almost complete absence of these parasites from the livestock industry. However, infection by *Diphyllobothrium* species, which is caused by ingesting raw or undercooked fish, occurs more commonly.

Elsewhere in the world, *T. saginata* and *T. solium* are more prevalent. *T. saginata* is endemic in Latin America, Africa, the Middle East, and central Asia. It also occurs in Europe, south Asia, Japan, and the Philippines. *T. solium* is common in Latin America, the Slavic countries, Africa, Southeast Asia, India, and China. It also occurs in Europe, but with lower prevalence. Cysticercosis, which occurs when humans are infected by the larval form of tapeworms, is endemic in almost all Latin American countries.

Infection from *Diphyllobothrium* species also commonly occurs in Europe, Canada, Africa, some Asian countries, South America, and Australia. However, the most common tapeworm infection in humans is caused by *Hymenolepis nana*. Infection arises when humans accidentally ingest infected insects, or ingest food or water contaminated by infected insects. In addition, the eggs are transmissible from human to human through contaminated feces. Children, the developmentally disabled, and psychiatric patients are most commonly infected. In addition, these parasites are commonly found in regions with poor hygiene and sanitation methods.

Treatment and Prevention

Tapeworm infections are usually treated with anti-parasitic drugs. One of the most common and effective medications is praziquantel. This drug effectively kills adult tapeworms. There are a few mild side effects of praziquantel, but these are generally short-lived. Albendazole is an alternative to praziquantel, with similar effects. Another alternative to praziquantal is niclosamide, which is used to treat infections by *Taenia* and *Diphyllobothrium* tapeworms. The side effects of this drug include nausea, abdominal pain, vomiting, diarrhea, light-headedness, and skin rash. In the case of neurocysticercosis, in which tapeworm larvae form cysts in the central nervous system, early treatment of this infection can minimize damage to the system, and thus decrease the risk of neurological complications.

These treatments kill the adult tapeworms, not the eggs, so it is possible for a patient to remain infected following treatment. Therefore, a visit to the doctor three months after treatment is necessary to check for continued infection and to determine whether further treatment is needed.

There are no vaccinations to prevent tapeworm infections. Therefore, the best method of prevention is to avoid becoming contaminated. For tapeworms found in meats, cooking the meat above a temperature of 150°F (65.5°C) or freezing it for 12–24 hours kills the tapeworms. In addition, ensuring that livestock are dewormed decreases the risk that they are infected and likely to pass on an infection to humans.

Food and water may be contaminated with infected fecal matter, particularly in regions with poor hygiene and sanitation. Therefore, washing raw food or thoroughly cooking it helps to ensure parasites are removed. In addition, boiling or filtering drinking water decreases the chance of ingesting parasites from the water. Good personal hygiene, such as washing hands with soap and water prior to handling food, and rigorous sanitation practices, especially where human waste is involved, also decrease the likelihood that parasites will be transmitted among a human population.

■ Impacts and Issues

Tapeworms are a major health issue for a number of countries. Since tapeworms are usually originate in livestock or contaminated human feces, regions in which humans live near their livestock and areas with poor hygiene and sanitation standards have a higher prevalence of tapeworm infections. Tapeworm infections tend to be endemic in developing countries, where sanitation is poor due to a lack of funding and medical treatment is often unavailable.

Tapeworm infections do still occur in developed countries for a number of reasons. Travel and immigration have become a source of tapeworm infection as infected people interact with non-infected people, potentially spreading the tapeworms. In addition, since tapeworm infections are usually asymptomatic, the tapeworm may go undetected for years before treatment is given and the tapeworm is removed from the body.

Since tapeworms form cysts in animal flesh, eating raw or undercooked meats increases the likelihood of becoming infected. This is not a significant problem for countries such as the United States in which livestock are almost totally free of tapeworm infestations due to deworming practices. However, for countries where the practices associated with livestock farming are more relaxed, there is a higher chance that eating meat may cause infection.

Although many cases of tapeworm infection go undetected for years due to the asymptomatic nature of infection, the most severe form of infection—cysticercosis—can cause serious health issues. If a human ingests tapeworm eggs, they hatch and the larvae form cysts in tissues within the body. This can cause damage to vital body organs, and, in the worst-case scenario, can damage the nervous system. This may result in death or permanent brain injury.

SEE ALSO *Endemicity; Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Handwashing; Parasitic Diseases; Sanitation; Taeniasis (*Taenia *Infection).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Beers, M. H. *The Merck Manual of Medical Information.* New York: Pocket Books, 2003.

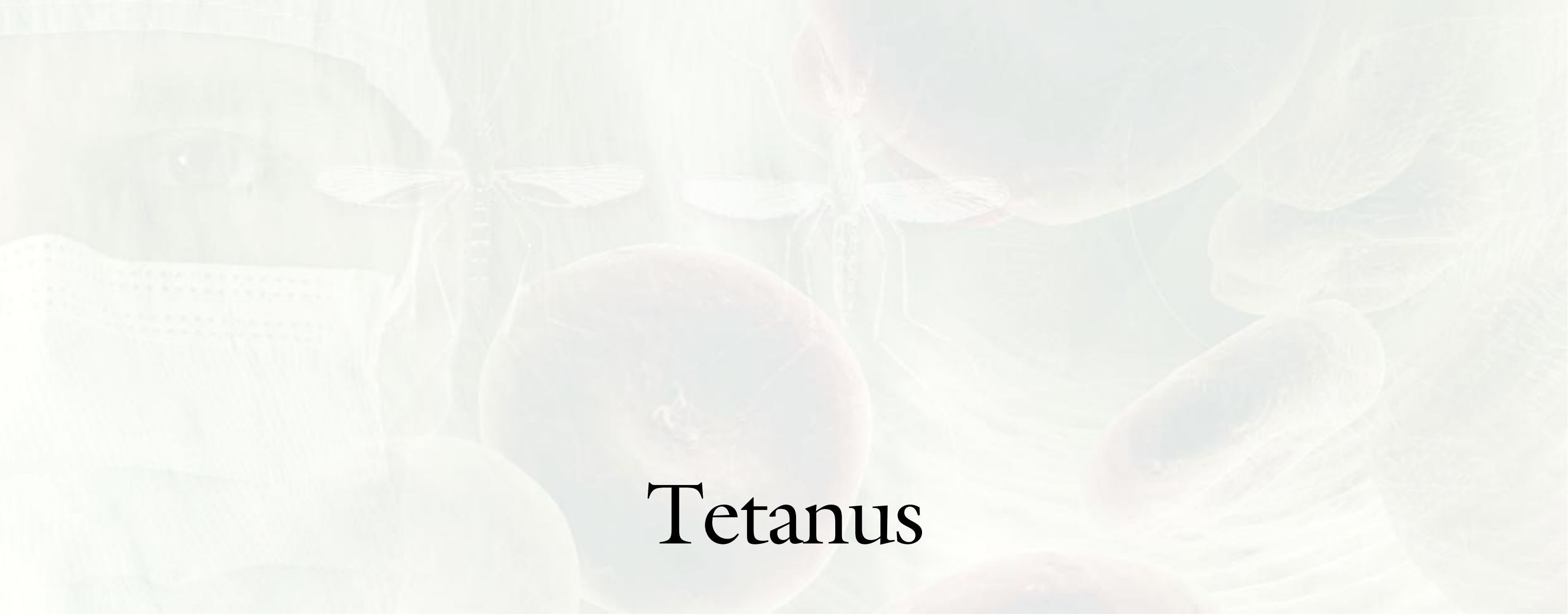
Bush, A.O., et al. *Parasitism: The Diversity and Ecology of Animal Parasites.* New York: Cambridge University Press, 2001.

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Hymenolepis Infection." September 21, 2004. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/hymenolepis/factsht_hymenolepis.htm> (accessed March 9, 2007).

WebMD. "Tapeworm Infestation." August 8, 2005. <http://www.emedicine.com/emerg/topic567.htm> (accessed March 9, 2007).



Tetanus

Introduction

Tetanus is a serious but easily prevented acute neurological disease that affects the muscles and nerves of the human body. The bacterium *Clostridium tetani* causes the disease, typically through any injury to the skin, such as a burn, crushing injury, cut, gangrene, or wound, that becomes contaminated. Tetanus can also come about from the use of non-sterile needles in drug use, body piercing, and tattooing. Tetanus can be classified as local tetanus (muscle contraction in one local area) and cephalic tetanus (found in the middle ear). Newborn babies can also get neonatal tetanus, a special type of tetanus, when they are born in unsanitary conditions.

However, most tetanus is generalized tetanus, which descends from the head down through the body. Once in the human body, the bacteria produce a neurotoxin (a poisonous protein that acts on the nervous system) called tetanospasmin. The neurotoxin causes contraction and rigidity of the skeletal muscles. According to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), tetanus cannot be spread from human to human. Thus, it is not contagious.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Tetanus has been medically reported as far back as the fifth century BC. According to the CDC, the first passively transferred antitoxin (an antibody that is able to neutralize a toxin) was developed in 1897. In 1924, the first tetanus toxoid was developed. A toxoid is a toxin that has been treated to destroy toxicity, but the toxoid is still capable of inducing the formation of antibodies when injected into the human body.

C. tetani is widely found in soil and in the intestines and feces of such animals as cattle, chickens, cats and dogs, guinea pigs, horses, rats, and sheep. Manure-treated soils also may contain large amounts of the bacteria. Cases of tetanus in the United States are usually from a cut or deep wound that has been contaminated with feces, saliva, or soil.

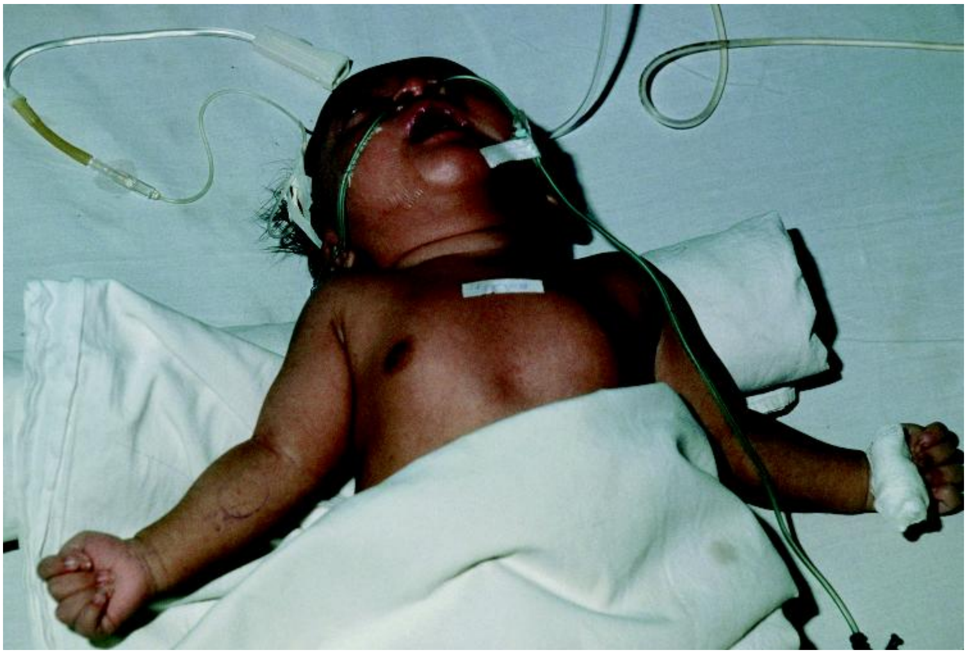
The puncture of the skin with a rusty nail, for instance, is typically seen as the source of possible tetanus. However, rust does not cause tetanus, but the nail itself causes the puncture into the skin and the rust may only harbor *C. tetani* on its surface.

The first sign of tetanus is usually in the nerves that control the muscles near the wound, which first allowed the bacterium to enter the body. Later, as the bacteria have had time to travel through the bloodstream and lymph system, other nerves become adversely affected. The widely spreading bacteria soon produce general muscle spasms. Without treatment, tetanus can cause death to humans.

The incubation period for tetanus is 2–21 days. Symptoms often begin around the seventh or eighth day. Initial symptoms include muscle spasms in the jaw (what is called trismus and what gives tetanus its commonly used name—lockjaw). Later, swallowing may become difficult and stiffness or pain may occur in the muscles of the shoulders, neck, and back. Still later, additional spasms may spread throughout the muscles of the upper arms, thighs, and abdomen. Other symptoms include fever, sweating, high blood pressure, and rapid heart rate. Symptoms generally begin to subside after about 17 days. Spasms may continue for three to four weeks. A complete recovery may take months.

Scope and Distribution

Tetanus is relatively rare in the United States and other countries with comprehensive tetanus vaccination programs to prevent and immunize their citizens when compared to countries without such programs. Most cases of tetanus occur in densely populated areas with hot, humid climates and rich organic soils. Around five cases are reported in the United States in an average



A hospitalized infant shows the characteristic muscle contractions of tetanus, such as lockjaw. Contamination of the umbilical stump can cause tetanus in newborns. *Sue Ford/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

year. Over two million cases are reported worldwide each year. According to the CDC, about 11% of all reported cases of tetanus around the world are fatal, totaling over 225,000 people. People most susceptible to death from tetanus are unvaccinated persons and those people over the age of 60 years.

Treatment and Prevention

Tetanus is diagnosed only by clinical signs and symptoms. There is no laboratory confirmation for the bacteria. It is treated with a tetanus booster (for children still receiving their series of tetanus shots) or an injection of tetanus antitoxin, such as tetanus immune globulin (TIG), to neutralize any toxin released by the bacteria. Intravenous immune globulin (IVIG) can be given if TIG is unavailable. Metronidazole can be given to control bacteria. The wound should be cleaned and all dead or infected skin should be removed. Severe cases of tetanus should be treated in the intensive care unit of a hospital. Medicines to control breathing and prevent muscle spasms are usually given.

Tetanus is prevented with a routine tetanus immunization. Children in the United States and other such countries usually receive an injection that combines diphtheria and tetanus toxoids with pertussis vaccine. This immunization protects children from diphtheria (throat and respiratory infection), tetanus, and pertussis (whooping cough). According to the Mayo Clinic, the latest version is called the diphtheria and tetanus toxoids and acellular pertussis (DTaP) vaccine. The DTaP vaccine generally consists of a series of five shots in the arm or thigh given to children at two months, four months, eight months, 15–18 months, and 4–6 years of age. The Mayo Clinic recommends that adolescents get a booster shot between the ages of 11 and 18 years. Thereafter, a vaccination should be given every 10 years. A medical professional should be consulted for each particular situation.

Impacts and Issues

Although tetanus is rare, it is still a serious illness. Tetanus is considered an international health problem because so many people around the world are still unvaccinated or inadequately vaccinated. It is especially serious in children. As a result, children are often treated in intensive care units of hospitals after contracting tetanus. The child being treated in such situations will usually be given antibiotics to kill bacteria and TIG to neutralize the toxins. Medicines may be given to control muscle spasms. Other medicines may need to be given to support life functions for cases involving pneumonia and other respiratory problems.

Adults may also have complications including spasms of the vocal cords, spasms of the muscles of respiration, and fractures of the spine and longer bones of the body. Various treatment methods have been tried in such serious cases. However, no medical consensus has yet been reached as to the best method to use.

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTITOXIN: An antidote to a toxin that neutralizes its poisonous effects.

INCUBATION PERIOD: Incubation period refers to the time between exposure to disease causing virus or bacteria and the appearance of symptoms of the infection. Depending on the microorganism, the incubation time can range from a few hours (an example is food poisoning due to *Salmonella*) to a decade or more (an example is acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS).

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

TOXOID: A toxoid is a bacterial toxin that has been altered chemically to make it incapable of causing damage, but still capable of stimulating an immune response. Toxoids are used to stimulate antibody production, which is protective in the event of exposure to the active toxin.

TRISMUS: Trismus the medical term for lockjaw, a condition often associated with tetanus, infection by the *Clostridium tetani* bacillus. In trismus or lockjaw, the major muscles of the jaw contract involuntarily.

Even though tetanus can be prevented and treated, many countries still do not immunize their citizens against tetanus. For example, in India about 90% of the population is inadequately protected against tetanus. Many underdeveloped and developing countries continue to ignore the problem. Newborn babies are especially at risk in such countries, since their umbilical cords are likely to become infected due to unhygienic conditions during and following birth.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention); Diphtheria.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Atkinson, William, et al., eds. *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-preventable Diseases.* Atlanta: U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2002.

Bellenir, Karen, ed. *Infectious Diseases Sourcebook.* Detroit, MI: Omnigraphics, 2004.

Periodicals

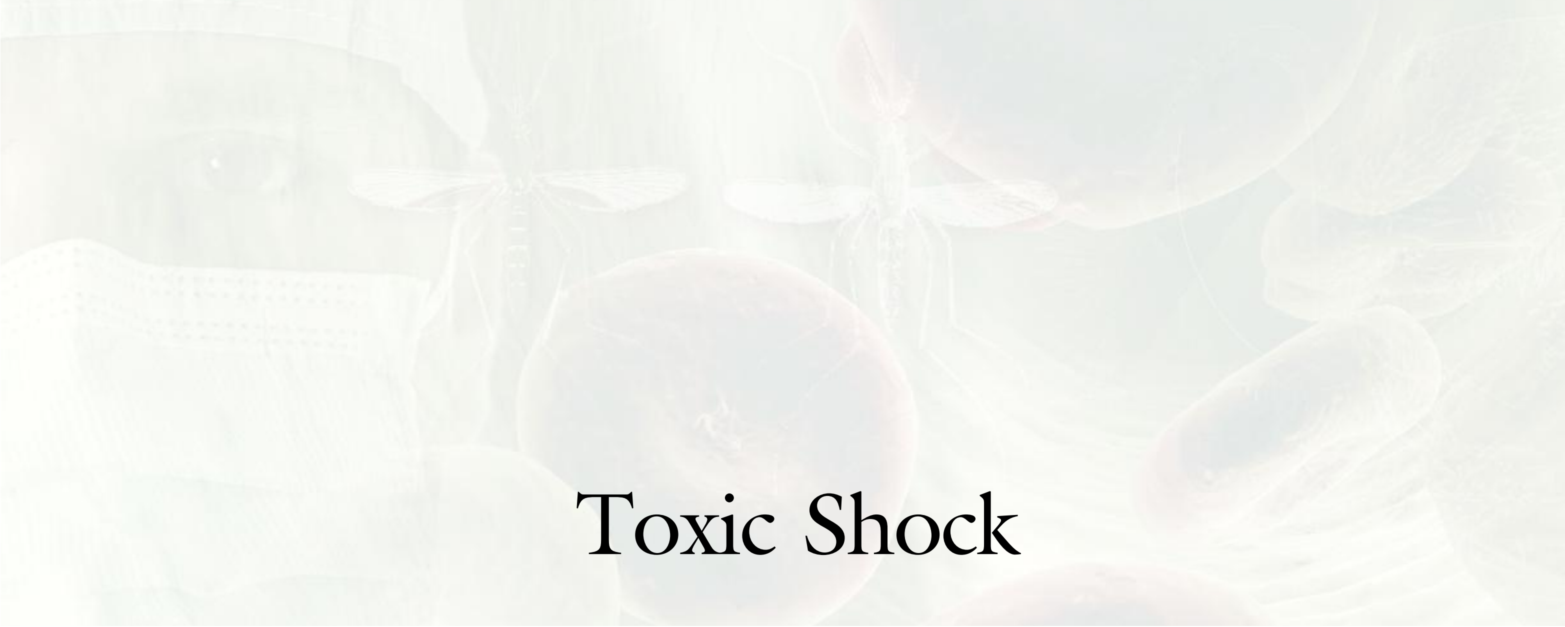
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. "Preventing Tetanus, Diphtheria, and Pertussis Among Adolescents: Use of Tetanus Toxoid, Reduced Diphtheria Toxoid and Acellular Pertussis Vaccines." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report* 55 (February 23, 2006): 1–34. Also available online at: <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr55e223a1.htm> (accessed May 11, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. "Preventing Tetanus, Diphtheria, and Pertussis Among Adults: Use of Tetanus Toxoid, Reduced Diphtheria Toxoid and Acellular Pertussis Vaccines." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report* 55 (December 15, 2006): 1–33. Also available online at: <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr5517a1.htm> (accessed May 11, 2007).

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Tetanus." <http://www.cdc.gov/niP/publications/pink/tetanus.pdf> (accessed March 27, 2007).

MayoClinic.com. "Tetanus." December 29, 2006. <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/tetanus/DS00227/DSECTION=7> (accessed March 27, 2007).



Toxic Shock

Introduction

Toxic shock syndrome (TSS) is a potentially fatal form of blood poisoning that is usually associated with a toxin-producing strain of the bacterium *Staphylococcus aureus*. It has been associated with the use of high-absorbency tampons during menstruation, but may also arise after surgery and as a consequence of severe burns.

In any form of shock, the circulation is impaired, blood pressure falls dramatically, and body organs begin to fail. Burns, severe blood loss, traumatic injury, and infections can cause shock, but in toxic shock the bacterial toxin is the underlying cause. Intensive care with rehydration and monitoring of vital functions such as respiration and blood pressure are necessary to treat a patient in shock. Toxic shock syndrome is a rare condition, and in its early stages may be confused with other illnesses. Prompt and accurate diagnosis of TSS is essential.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Most cases of toxic shock are caused by exposure to a toxin-producing strain of *S. aureus*, a normally harmless bacterium. *S. aureus* is normally present on the skin and in the nose, but some strains produce toxins that can cause toxic shock. The most common of these is known as toxic shock syndrome toxin, but others have been identified. The toxin invades the blood through some kind of 'focus' of infection, such as a post-operative wound, an intrauterine contraceptive device or a tampon used during menstruation. A few cases of toxic shock have been linked to Group A streptococcus or *Streptococcus pyogenes*, which also causes scarlet fever and necrotizing fasciitis, a deep tissue infection.

Symptoms of toxic shock come on very suddenly and include high fever, a sunburnlike rash, diarrhea, vomiting, fainting, dizziness, and confusion. There is a dramatic fall in blood pressure, which can lead to multi-organ failure affecting the liver, kidneys, heart, and brain. The fatality rate of toxic shock is between three and five percent. It can mimic other conditions, such as severe flu, in its earlier stages. One or two weeks after the illness, the skin on the palms and soles may start to peel off. Long-term complications of toxic shock include memory loss, decreased ability to concentrate, and emotional instability.

Scope and Distribution

Toxic shock is rare, but the risk of TSS is greater among young people.

About half of all cases of toxic shock are associated with women using tampons, and the rest result from localized infections, usually following burns, boils, insect bites, or surgery. The presence of intrauterine contraceptive devices (IUDs) is also a risk factor for toxic shock.

Treatment and Prevention

Antibiotics can reduce the risk of recurrence of toxic shock but cannot always modify the course of the illness. Clindamycin, usually in combination with another antibiotic, is often recommended, as it reduces the rate of production of toxin from *S. aureus*. Foreign bodies associated with the infection, such as a tampon, must be removed and infected wounds cleaned up.

Intensive care is generally needed to treat shock. The circulation and supply of oxygen to affected organs must be restored with rehydration therapy. Blood pressure, respiration, and other vital functions must be monitored constantly.

Women can avoid TSS associated with tampons by always using a tampon with the lowest possible absorbency and changing them regularly. It is never advisable to insert more than one tampon at a time, and the hands

WORDS TO KNOW

SHOCK: Shock is a medical emergency in which the organs and tissues of the body are not receiving an adequate flow of blood. This condition deprives the organs and tissues of oxygen (carried in the blood) and allows the buildup of waste products. Shock can result in serious damage or even death.

TOXIC: Something that is poisonous and that can cause illness or death.

TOXIN: A poison that is produced by a living organism.

IN CONTEXT: TRENDS AND STATISTICS

According to the Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): the "annual incidence (in the United States) is 1 in 2/100,000 women 15–44 years of age" and that "5% of all cases are fatal." However the last active surveillance was performed in 1987.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases.*

should be washed thoroughly before and after inserting a tampon. Women should also be sure to remove the final tampon when their period is over and not use tampons between periods.

Impacts and Issues

Toxic shock is a rare condition and may not be readily recognized. The symptoms accompanying TSS, such as fever or rash, occur in many other illnesses. However, multi-organ failure can occur rapidly once the *S. aureus* toxin has entered the bloodstream; then, the patient's life may be in danger. Therefore, prompt medical attention is needed whenever there is a rapid onset of fever and other symptoms.

In 1980, an outbreak of TSS occurred among women who used a certain brand of tampon. Researchers traced most cases to use of the Rely superabsorbent tampon designed to be used over several hours or even days, though there were cases in women who used other superabsorbent brands. From March 1980 to March 1981, almost 1,000 U.S. women were diagnosed with TSS. Forty women died. When Rely and similar superabsorbent tampons were taken off the market, incidence of TSS dropped dramatically the following year. However, researchers noted that fewer women used any tampons immediately following the TSS outbreak. Today, tampons are designed to be changed more frequently, and women are encouraged to used tampons of varying absorbencies to match their menstrual flow. Tampons are now packaged and sold with informative literature about TSS and TSS prevention.

SEE ALSO *Streptococcal Infections, Group A;* Staphylococcus aureus *Infections.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

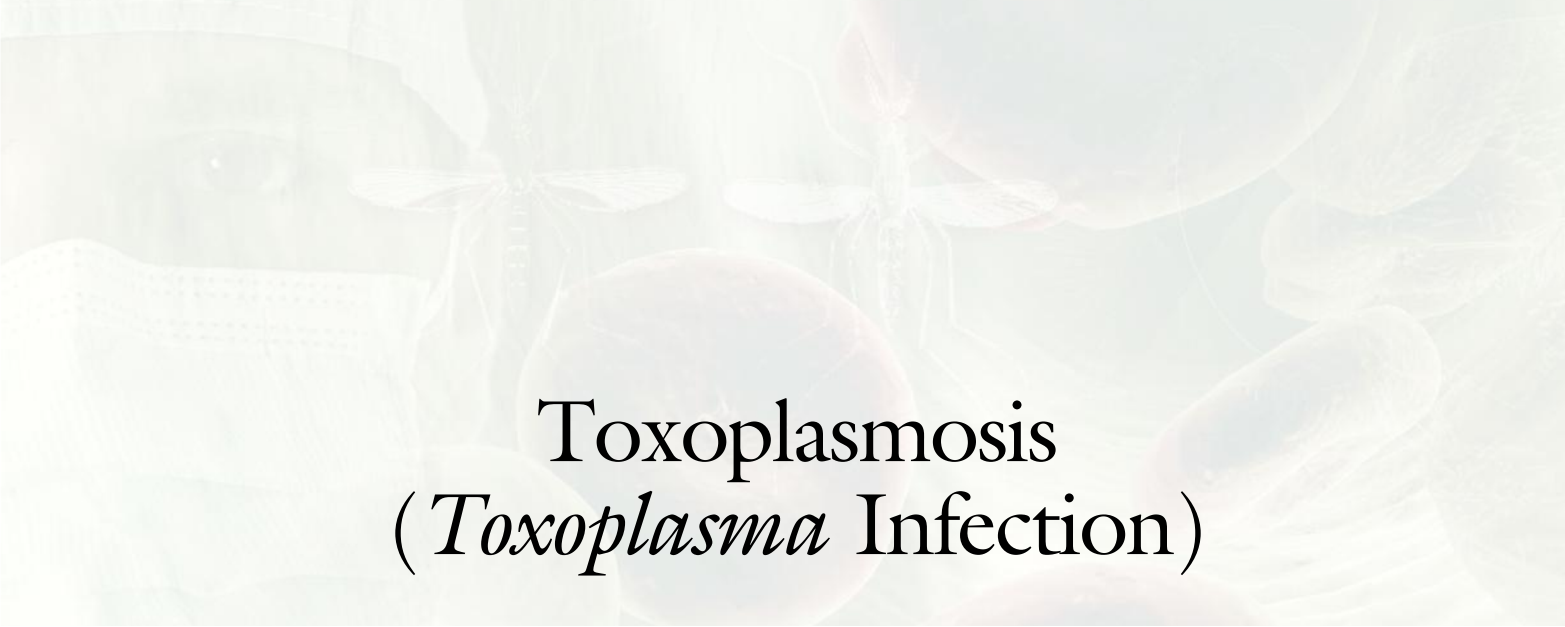
Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Wilks, David, Mark Farrington, and David Rubenstein. *The Infectious Disease Manual.* Malden: Blackwell, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Toxic Shock Syndrome." October 24, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/toxicshock_t.htm> (accessed May 2, 2007).

The Toxic Shock Information Service. "Toxic Shock Syndrome: The Facts." <http://www.toxicshock.com> (accessed May 2, 2007).



Toxoplasmosis (*Toxoplasma* Infection)

Introduction

Toxoplasmosis (TOX-o-plaz-MO-sis) refers to an infection caused by a type of microorganisms known as a protozoan. The particular protozoan responsible for the infection is *Toxoplasma gondii*. The infection is part of a parasitic association between *T. gondii* and a human host—the microbe benefits from the association, but the host does not. In the case of toxoplasmosis, the infection enables the protozoan to complete its life cycle.

Toxoplasmosis (sometimes called "toxo") is a serious concern in people whose immune systems are not functioning properly, such as those with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome). For those with AIDS, toxoplasmosis can be lethal.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Toxoplasmosis is an example of a zoonotic disease—a disease that is passed from animals to humans. The animal that is most important in the spread of toxoplasmosis is the cat. The United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention has estimated that approximately 30% of domestic cats in the United States harbor *T. gondii*. Cats can acquire the protozoan by eating an infected rodent. Other animals can also carry the protozoan, in particular cattle, sheep, or other livestock, which poses an increased risk to farmers, ranchers, and others who come in contact with farm animals.

T. gondii has a life cycle that involves two forms of the organism. The actively growing and dividing form actually causes the disease. But, typically this is not the form of the organism that first enters the body. Rather, a person ingests the form that is called an oocyst. An oocyst is a smaller and hardier form of *T. gondii* that is analogous to a bacterial spore—an oocyst is designed to survive environmental conditions that would otherwise kill the growing protozoan. When ingested, the oocyst can convert to the growing form in the less hostile conditions of the intestinal tract.

Oocysts are shed in the feces of cats and the other animals. People can ingest the oocysts after stroking a cat's fur (on which oocysts can stick, although this route is rare), by handling a cat's litter box and not properly washing their hands before hand-to-mouth contact, by eating produce that was irrigated with oocyst-contaminated water, or by eating undercooked

WORDS TO KNOW

OOCYST: An oocyst is a spore phase of certain infectious organisms that can survive for a long time outside the organism and so continue to cause infection and resist treatment.

PROTOZOA: Single-celled animal-like microscopic organisms that live by taking in food rather than making it by photosynthesis and must live in the presence of water. (Singular: protozoan.) Protozoa are a diverse group of single-celled organisms, with more than 50,000 different types represented. The vast majority are microscopic, many measuring less than 5 one-thousandth of an inch (or 0.005 millimeters), but some, such as the freshwater Spirostomun, may reach 0.17 inches (3 millimeters) in length, large enough to enable it to be seen with the naked eye.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Division of Parasitic Diseases recommends the following to reduce chances of becoming infected with *Toxoplasma*:

- Wear gloves when you garden or do anything outdoors that involves handling soil. Cats, which may pass the parasite in their feces, often use gardens and sandboxes as litter boxes. Wash your hands well with soap and water after outdoor activities, especially before you eat or prepare any food.
- When preparing raw meat, wash any cutting boards, sinks, knives, and other utensils that might have touched the raw meat thoroughly with soap and hot water to avoid cross-contaminating other foods. Wash your hands well with soap and water after handling raw meat.
- Cook all meat thoroughly; that is, to an internal temperature of 160° F (71° C) and until it is no longer pink in the center or until the juices become colorless. Do not taste meat before it is fully cooked.

SOURCE: *Division of Parasitic Diseases. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)*

meat that contains the protozoan. Eating undercooked meat is the most common route of infection.

Following the regeneration of the *T. gondii* oocysts into the growing form, the symptoms of toxoplasmosis are produced. These include a fever that comes and goes, swollen lymph nodes, generalized muscle pain, and fatigue. For those who recover fairly rapidly, protection from a future infection is guaranteed for life. For others, toxoplasmosis can persist—this is generally referred to as a chronic infection. Chronic toxoplasmosis can cause retinochoroiditis, which is an inflammation of the eyes. This condition can cause a yellowing of the skin and the whites of the eyes that is called jaundice. More seriously, inflammation of the brain, which is called encephalitis, can produce numbness, severe headaches, impaired vision or even blindness, and convulsions.

Toxoplasmosis is not readily spread from person to person. An exception is the spread from mother to fetus that can occur during pregnancy. Approximately six of every 1,000 pregnant women acquire the infection; about half of these women pass the infection on to the fetus. In the United States, over 3,000 cases of congenital toxoplasmosis occur each year. In newborns, toxoplasmosis can be rapidly lethal. Other newborns will retain the infection and display symptoms months or years later.

Scope and Distribution

Toxoplasmosis is global in distribution and its incidence is common. Up to 60% of the world's population may carry the protozoan. In the United States alone, over 60 million people are thought to be infected with *T. gondii*.

Treatment and Prevention

As for many other microbial diseases, good personal hygiene including handwashing is an important preventative measure. Pregnant women should not handle cat litter. Common sense food handling precautions including washing cutting boards after use help minimize the risk of transferring meat-borne *T. gondii*.

Medication can be prescribed for pregnant women and those with AIDS to kill the protozoan, even those residing in the brain. Other medications prevent the protozoan from acquiring vitamin B, which is vital for its survival.

Impacts and Issues

For most people who become infected with *T. gondii*, there is little concern, as they have the immune system capability to fight off the infection. But, for people with a malfunctioning immune system, toxoplamosis is a serious, even lethal, disease. The millions of people with AIDS, infants, the elderly, and those whose immune system has been deliberately impaired to avoid rejection of a transplant are at risk.

Toxoplasmosis is also becoming an indicator of how human activity can affect other forms of life. Along the coast of California, deaths of sea lions and sea otters due to toxoplasmosis has been increasing from the 1990s to the present. The cause is thought to be the disposal of cat litter in municipal waste; *T. gondii* oocysts survive the journey to the ocean water, where they can infect the sea lions and sea otters.

See Also *Parasitic Diseases; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Fields, Denise, and Ari Brown. *Toddler 411: Clear Answers and Smart Advice for Your Toddler.* Boulder: Windsor Peak Press, 2006.

Joynson, David H.M., and Tim G. Wreghitt. *Toxoplasmosis.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2005.

Lindsay, David S., and Louis M. Weiss. *Opportunistic Infections: Toxoplasma, Sarcocystis, and Microsporidia (World Class Parasites).* New York: Springer, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Toxoplasmosis: An Important Message for Cat Owners." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/toxoplasmosis/toxoplasmosis_brochure_8.2004.pdf> (accessed on April 2, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS FOR KEEPING A CAT

Some people living in public housing or special care centers are forced to give up beloved pets due to illness or fear of *Toxoplasma*. However, the Centers for Disease Control & Prevention, National Center for HIV, STD, and TB Prevention, Divisions of HIV/AIDS Prevention state that even persons at risk for a severe infection (e.g., you have a weakened immune system or are pregnant) may still keep cats as pets (often offering love, comfort, and other emotional benefits) if at risk persons follow safety precautions as shown below to avoid being exposed to *Toxoplasma*. Persons at risk should consult with their personal health care provider for full details.

- Have someone who is healthy and not pregnant change your cat's litter box daily. If this is not possible, wear gloves and clean the litter box every day, because the parasite found in cat feces needs one or more days after being passed to become infectious. Wash your hands well with soap and water afterward.
- Keep your cat indoors to prevent it from hunting. Feed your cat dry or canned cat food rather than allowing it to have access to wild birds and rodents or to eat food scraps. A cat can become infected by eating infected prey or by eating raw or undercooked meat infected with the parasite. Do not bring a new cat into your house that might have spent time out of doors or might have been fed raw meat.
- Feed your cat only cat food or cook all meat thoroughly before giving it to your cat.
- Do not give your cat raw or undercooked meat.
- If you adopt or buy a cat, get one that is healthy and at least 1 year old.
- Avoid stray cats and kittens. They are more likely than other cats to be infected.
- Your veterinarian can answer any other questions you may have regarding your cat and risk for toxoplasmosis.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control & Prevention,, National Center for HIV, STD, and TB Prevention, Divisions of HIV/AIDS Prevention*

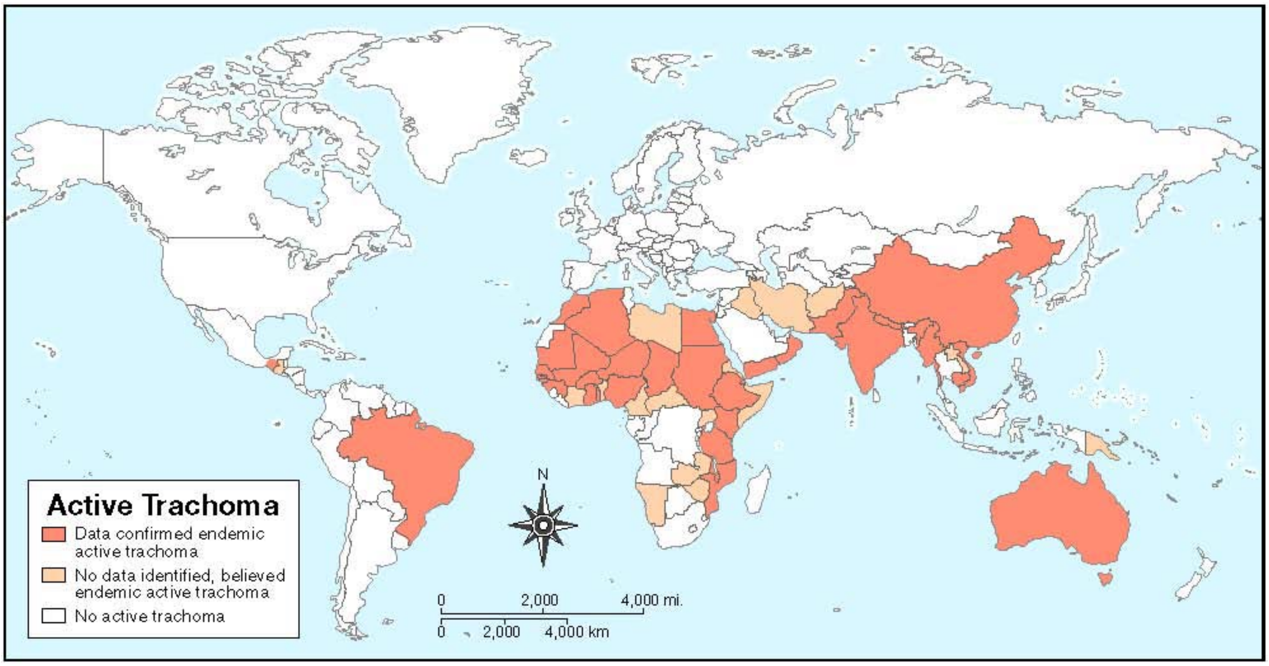
Trachoma

Introduction

Trachoma, also called granular conjunctivitis and Egyptian ophthalmia, is a contagious bacterial disease of the eye caused by the bacterium *Chlamydia trachomatis.* Flies become infected when they lay eggs on human feces lying in soil. The infection occurs when a host fly, infected with the bacterium, bites a human. A fly can also become a host and harbor the bacteria when it makes direct contact with eye, nose, or throat secretions from an infected person. The bacterium can also be carried directly to humans from contaminated hands by fomites (objects contaminated with infective material) such as clothing. The disease is reported as one of the leading infectious causes of blindness.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The International Trachoma Initiate (ITI) states that trachoma is one of the oldest infectious diseases known to humankind, and was reported as far back as ancient Egypt. General improvements in public health and sanitation have eliminated trachoma from most industrialized nations such as those in North America and Europe. However, it continues to infect people at high rates in underdeveloped and developing countries, especially in the poorest areas of Africa, Asia, Australia, Latin America, and the Middle East.


Active Trachoma
Data confirmed endemic active trachoma
No data identified, believed endemic active trachoma
No active trachoma
N
0
2,000
4,000 mi.
0
2,000
4,000 km

Map showing the global distribution of active trachoma, 2005. *© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.*

An incubation period of about five to 12 days occurs before the eye becomes inflamed. Then, additional symptoms occur, including pus discharge, eyelid swelling, eye tearing, and light sensitivity. Within a few weeks, more symptoms begin to appear including chronic swelling (such as swelling of lymph nodes in front of the ears), eye blisters, cornea clouding, and cornea scarring. Extensive damage to the cornea can eventually lead to blindness.

Scope and Distribution

The ITI estimates that about eight million people are visually impaired due to trachoma and about 84 million people in 55 endemic countries suffer active symptoms. The World Health Organization (WHO) states that about 3.6 million people are blind from trachoma.

Trachoma occurs most commonly among populations living in overcrowded conditions and with limited contact to clean water and health care facilities such as in undeveloped villages in northern Africa. Children and women who take care of children are most susceptible to trachoma. Children between the ages of three and five years, according to the WHO, are most at risk of all groups of children. When infected early in life, the person may not notice the degradation in sight until adulthood.

Because close personal contact allows easier transmission of the disease, the ITI states that in many crowded African communities it is so prevalent that trachoma is considered a regular part of life. In the United States and other technologically advanced countries, trachoma is rare, but can occur in populations living in extreme poverty and crowdedness, and with poor hygienic conditions.

Treatment and Prevention

According to the National Library of Medicine (NLM), of the National Institutes of Health (NIH), symptoms start as an apparent irritation near the eye, what is sometimes called conjunctivitis (commonly called pink eye). Soon, hard pimples or granular outgrowths appear on the inner surface of the eyelids and inflammation occurs on its membrane.

If left untreated, scar tissue develops on the inside of the eyelid. Such scarring in children is usually not noticeable until later in the adult years. Formation of scarring eventually forces the eyelid to curve inward and the eyelashes to scrape the eye. Severe infection of the cornea can later occur. This activity can cause eye ulcers, which further cause scarring and vision problems. Eventually, slow and painful blindness develops over many years.

In the early stage of the infection, trachoma responds well to oral or topical antibiotics such as azithromycin, doxycycline, and erythromycin. Officials from NLM/NIH report that people who receive early treatment for trachoma before scarring and lid deformities occur have excellent chances to be cured. WHO recommends using oral eye ointments such as azithromycin and tetracycline to control trachoma.

According to WHO, relief from trachoma can be attained by following the SAFE strategy: surgery, antibiotics, facial cleanliness, and environmental improvement. Thus, surgery can be performed to correct advanced problems related to the disease. Early treatment with antibiotics can prevent long-term complications. Good hygiene should be consistently and thoroughly practiced such as washing of the face in order to reduce transmission. Access to clean water and improved sanitation facilities (especially the safe disposal of human and animal feces) also greatly help to reduce the occurrence and severity of the disease.

In addition, regular eye examinations can pinpoint abnormal redness on the white areas of the eyes, scarring on the inside of the upper eyelid, and improper blood vessel growth on the corneas. Laboratory tests, especially the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) technique, are used to identify the bacterium that causes trachoma. Such tests, however, are usually too costly for use in the poorest areas of the world where trachoma occurs the most.

WORDS TO KNOW

FOMITE: A fomite is an object or a surface to which an infectious microorganism such as bacteria or viruses can adhere and be transmitted. Transmission is often by touch.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

MORBIDITY: The term "morbidity" comes from the Latin word "morbus," which means sick. In medicine it refers not just to the state of being ill, but also to the severity of the illness. A serious disease is said to have a high morbidity.

Impacts and Issues

The infection often results in significant morbidity (ill effects arising from a state of disease), striking people during their productive working years. According to WHO, women are two to four times more likely to become blind after becoming infected with trachoma than men. Often they cannot take care of themselves and their children when infected by the disease,

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

The CDC assists the World Health Organization in reducing the occurrence of trachoma, and asserts that major declines are now found in those countries associated with multifaceted control programs. The CDC reports that "WHO has initiated a global campaign for the elimination of blindness due to trachoma, that recommends a strategy including antibiotics, improved personal and community hygiene and sanitation, and surgery to correct trichiasis. Campaign challenges include: establishing surveillance for endemic trachoma, determining when mass treatment with antibiotics is necessary (i.e., retreatment), determining the effectiveness of improved hygiene and sanitation at preventing a resurgence of endemic disease, monitoring for adverse effects of mass treatment with antibiotics. . ."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases.*

especially when they are blinded. It is often the case that the oldest daughter, or another child, is taken out of school to tend to family needs. Because of the child's incomplete education, she/he is then unable to earn a living outside the family unit, and is restricted to providing care to the family. This vicious cycle continues in the future by keeping families, and sometimes entire villages, in poverty. Consequently, ITI reports that about $2.9 billion (in U.S. currency) is lost worldwide annually in human productivity because of trachoma.

Common complications of trachoma include scarring of the conjunctiva (membrane under the eyes) and cornea, eye lid abnormalities, turned-in eyelashes, vision reductions, and, in severe cases, blindness. The prognosis for each individual person depends on the severity of the disease, the treatment used to combat it, and the number of times the eyes are re-infected. Persons with trachoma who are treated with the proper drugs and in the early stage of the infection are much more likely to fully recover. Severe symptoms can be often eliminated but eyesight, once lost, cannot be regained.

SEE ALSO *Antibacterial Drugs; Bacterial Disease;* Chlamydia *Infection; Handwashing.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bellenir, Karen, ed. *Infectious Diseases Sourcebook.* Detroit, MI: Omnigraphics, 2004.

Parker, James N. *The Official Patient's Sourcebook on Trachoma.* San Diego, CA: Icon Health Publications, 2002.

Periodicals

Mabey, D.C., A. Foster, and A.W. Solomon. "Trachoma." *Lancet.* 362 (9379) (July 2003): 223–229.

Web Sites

International Trachoma Initiative. "Trachoma is a hidden disease." 2005 <http http://www.trachoma.org/trachoma.php> (accessed April 2, 2007).

National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health. "Trachoma." September 22, 2006 <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001486.htm> (accessed April 2, 2007).

Travel and Infectious Disease

Introduction

The global movement of infection is as old as the wanderings of mankind itself. A vast variety of bacteria, viruses, fungi, and parasites move on or in the bodies of humans, their clothing, belongings, pets, food, water, fleas, lice, and other fellow travelers. In fact, the widespread global presence of most infectious diseases reflects human travel dating to the earliest years of mankind itself.

History and Scientific Foundations

Travel-related infection has clearly changed world history for hundreds of years. The Black Death (plague) which began in Europe during the fourteenth century was caused by bacteria which infected rat-fleas introduced into Italy by ships. The "great pox" which affected Europe during the sixteenth century was caused by a new disease introduced by travelers from Africa, or possibly South America. The disease eventually evolved into modern day syphilis. Another pox disease that traveled in the opposite direction was instrumental in decimating Indian tribes in the New World during later years. In similar fashion, liver fluke and river blindness were introduced into Latin America as disease of slaves, but went on to adopt themselves to the local ecology, residing in insects or snails.

Although major diseases have crossed geographical borders for centuries, such events have only become commonplace in the twentieth century—as a result of widespread immigration, world conflict, and air travel. In earlier times, a disease characterized by an incubation period measured in days would appear, run its course (or kill the infected person) long before the human host could arrive to a far-off country by horse or schooner. Many will recall an outbreak of Ebola in Africa during 1995, when moviegoers and the world media debated a scenario in which an infected person travels to the United States and infects an unsuspecting population. The Ebola virus can remain in the human host for up to 21 days before onset of symptoms. The flight from Africa takes less than 12 hours.

Many infectious diseases are limited to specific regions, or even specific countries because of a requirement for specific plants, animals, insects, or climatic factors necessary for their propagation and survival. Others diseases are quite capable of adapting to new countries if introduced by man or his activities. Examples in recent years have included West Nile fever, which arrived to the United States in 1999, and quickly entered a favorable ecological environment consisting of compatible insects (mosquitoes) and birds (primarily crows). AIDS, which scientists suspect evolved into a human disease in Africa during the 1950s, exploded onto the world stage because largely because of universal air travel, injecting drug use, and sexual practices. More recently, SARS broke out of China when an infected physician visited Hong Kong, and when others went

WORDS TO KNOW

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

PROPHYLAXIS: Treatment to prevent the onset or recurrence of disease.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

on to spread the disease to Canada, the Philippines, and other countries.

Impacts and Issues

As of 2000, many people would associate the word malaria with exotic jungles in far off lands. In fact, until the early twentieth century, malaria was quite common in North America and Europe. The mosquitoes that serve as vectors (transmitters) of this disease are still found in most developed countries, and an increasing number of small outbreaks in the United States and other malaria-free countries have followed introduction of the disease by an infected traveler. In fact, many cases of "airport malaria" infecting airport personnel and surrounding communities have been related to the presence of infected mosquitoes in the cargo holds of arriving aircraft.

Each year, billions of travelers cross international boundaries. The vast majority will not seek medical advice and will remain well. The most common medical problem will be traveler's diarrhea, affecting as many as 40 percent of tourists to some countries. Many medical problems are unrelated to infectious disease—automobile accidents, exposure to sun and high altitude, jet lag, petty crime, political instability. The chance of contracting malaria during a one-month tour varies from less than 1 per 1,000 (in southeast Asia) to over one percent (in sub-Saharan Africa). Many will be exposed to venereal disease, and a few will acquire AIDS. Rare instances of exotic and even life-threatening diseases such as yellow fever and African sleeping sickness are also acquired by tourists.

Since 1990, specialists expert in travel medicine have increasingly been involved in the prevention of all such problems. The pre-travel consultation consists of vaccination, prescription of prophylactic medications, and most importantly advice regarding medical risks and prevention. The informed tourist is a healthy tourist.

See Also *AIDS: Origin of the Modern Pandemic; Dysentery; Globalization and Infectious Disease; Plague, Early History; Plague, Modern History; Tropical Infectious Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Berger, Stephen A., Charles A. Calisher, J.S. Keystone. *Exotic Viral Diseases: A Global Guide*. Hamilton, ON: BC Decker, 2003.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Health Information for International Travel*. Atlanta: CDC, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Traveler' Health." <http://www.cdc.gov/travel/> (accessed May 28, 2007).

Stephen A. Berger

Trichinellosis

Introduction

Trichinellosis (TRICK-a-NELL-o-sis), also known as trichinosis or trichiniasis, is an infection caused by a roundworm of the genus *Trichinella*, usually the species *Trichinella spiralis.* The infection is contracted by eating meat (usually pork, but also the meat of wild game) that contains live helminth (parasitic worm) cysts. These cysts are the larvae or young of the worm, which are curled up inside tiny protective capsules. The cysts hatch in the small intestine and breed a new generation of larval worms, which then infect various body tissues. Thorough cooking destroys the larvae and renders infected meat safe to eat. Trichinellosis is rare in most of the world, but is fairly common in Eastern Europe and is increasing in frequency in other areas. Eating undercooked pork is the most common path of trichinellosis infection worldwide; in North American, eating wild game is the most common path of infection. Death from the infection is rare.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

History

British physician James Paget (1814–1899) discovered the worm that causes trichinellosis in 1835 while still a medical student. However, he did not know how humans became infected with the worm. In 1846, American parasitologist Joseph Leidy (1823–1891) discovered the parasite in pork. His early results were misreported in 1851 in Europe, the other region where trichinellosis is common, as being descriptions of *Trichinella affinis*, which does not infect humans. In 1853 and 1856 Leidy again published accounts of finding *Trichinella spiralis* in pork and reported that thorough cooking destroyed the parasite and made the meat safe to eat. Despite these later publications, European application of his results was delayed for decades by the original error.

Today, some experts consider that trichinellosis should be categorized as a reemerging disease because it is increasingly being reported in previously unaffected areas.

Characteristics and Transmission

When meat containing encysted larvae is eaten, the larvae are liberated by the digestive process. They develop into adults in the small intestine, then mate and produce offspring. These adult worms are eventually excreted. The new larvae drill through the wall of the intestine and enter the bloodstream, which conveys them to destinations throughout the body, including the muscles, eyes, lungs, and brain. The larvae encyst themselves in muscle and become dormant. Since humans with the disease are usually not eaten by other animals or people, that is usually the end of the disease cycle in human beings. If the encysted larvae are in the muscle of any animal that might be eaten by human beings or other carnivores, the life cycle can continue.

Abdominal symptoms appear a day or two after infection and include nausea, diarrhea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. Other symptoms may appear two to four weeks after infection and include headaches, fevers and chills, muscle and joint pain, itching, diarrhea, rash, and swelling of the eyes. The later-stage symptoms are caused by the larvae encysting in the muscles and the body's immune response to their presence. Not all cases of infection, even in humans, produce noticeable symptoms.

Scope and Distribution

Trichinellosis occurs worldwide today but is found mostly in North America, Europe, and China. From 1991 to 1992, there were more than 20,000 cases in Europe. In Eastern Europe and parts of China, some swine herds have a trichinellosis prevalence of about 50%.

WORDS TO KNOW

DORMANT: Inactive, but still alive. A resting non-active state.

ENCYSTED LARVAE: Encysted larvae are larvae that are not actively growing and dividing, and which are more resistant to environmental conditions.

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

IN CONTEXT: PERSONAL RESPONSIBILITY AND PROTECTION

To prevent trichinellosis the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases, recommends the following:

- Cook meat products until the juices run clear or to an internal temperature of 170°F (76.6°C).
- Freeze pork less than 6 inches thick for 20 days at 5°F (15°C) to kill any worms.
- Cook wild game meat thoroughly. Freezing wild game meats, unlike freezing pork products, even for long periods of time, may not effectively kill all worms.
- Cook all meat fed to pigs or other wild animals.
- Do not allow hogs to eat uncooked carcasses of other animals, including rats, which may be infected with trichinellosis.
- Clean meat grinders thoroughly if you prepare your own ground meats.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases*

In North America, the primary source of trichinellosis infection is wild game, with only about 12 cases per year being reported in the United States. Outbreaks of trichinellosis have occurred among Eskimos eating undercooked walrus. Almost all mammals can be infected by one or more species of Trichinella, but humans are more likely than most other species to develop symptoms.

Pork and bear meat are primary sources of *Trichinella spiralis* infection in humans. Beaver, opossums, rats, walruses, and whales can also carry the parasite. Infected animals remain asymptomatic; however, symptoms in humans—which can begin as soon as five or a late as 45 days after exposure—can range from asymptomatic to, rarely, death. Severity depends upon the number of parasites ingested. Although trichinosis is found in some grain-fed pigs, swine fed on garbage containing infected meat scraps are the primary source of human trichinosis.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis is confirmed by observing the adult worms in a stool sample or through finding larvae in a muscle biopsy (a small piece of muscle tissue removed for laboratory testing). Treatment is supportive, except during the intestinal phase of the infection when several drugs can be given to kill the worms in the intestine. These anti-helminthic drugs include mebendazole and thiabendazole. No drug exists that can kill the encysted larvae, which may persist alive in the tissue—though inactive—for many years.

Trichinellosis can be prevented by eating only thoroughly cooked meats. Laws have been passed in both the United States and Europe forbidding feeding garbage-containing raw meat to hogs. To prevent trichinellosis, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control (CDC) recommends cooking pork to a temperature of 160 degrees Fahrenheit (71°C) before eating or freezing pork less than six inches thick for 20 days at 5°F (–15°C). Microwaving does not reliably kill larvae in meat.

Impacts and Issues

The economic impact of trichinellosis is high, because the measures taken to reduce its presence in the food supply can be so expensive. In the European Union, the domestic pig control program designed to minimize trichinellosis costs $500 million per year. In China, large herds of infected pigs are occasionally destroyed, which can be a severe hardship for uninsured farmers.

In recent years, an increase in trichinellosis cases related to travel prompted many countries to adopt stricter bans on the importation of pork and game products by travelers to some regions. Many popular tourist destinations, such as Argentina, Croatia, Mexico, Romania, Serbia, and Laos, have endemic problems with trichinellosis. In 2005, nearly two-thirds of the reported cases of trichinellosis in the United Kingdom and France were in people who had contracted the infection while traveling abroad or who had consumed infected products—such as sausages—that had been imported by travelers. Many nations now include trichinellosis in traveler health warnings.

SEE ALSO *Parasitic Diseases; Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Despommier, Dickson D., et al. *Parasitic Diseases*, 5th ed. New York: Apple Trees Productions, 2005.

Periodicals

Bruschi, F., and K.D. Murrel. "New Aspects of Human Trichinellosis: The Impact of New Trichinella Species." *Postgraduate Medical Journal*. 78 (2002): 15–23.

Moorhead, Andrew. "Trichinellosis in the United States, 1991–1996: Declining but not Gone." *Journal of the American Medical Association*. 281 (1999): 1472.

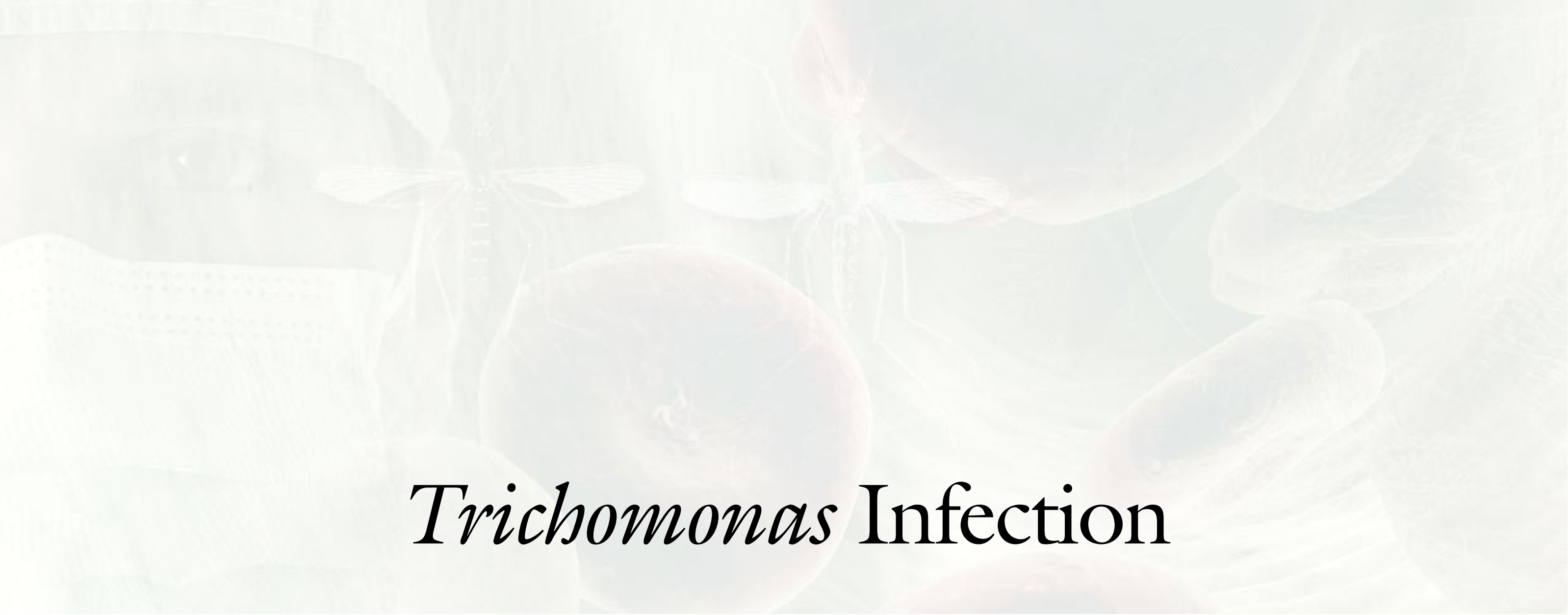
Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control (U.S. Government). "Trichinellosis Fact Sheet." February 6, 2007. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/trichinosis/factsht_trichinosis.htm> (accessed April 12, 2007).

IN CONTEXT: EFFECTIVE RULES AND REGULATIONS

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases, states that trichinellosis "infection is now relatively rare. During 1997–2001, an average of 12 cases per year were reported." The CDC further asserts that "the number of cases has decreased because of legislation prohibiting the feeding of raw-meat garbage to hogs, commercial and home freezing of pork, and the public awareness of the danger of eating raw or undercooked pork products. Cases are less commonly associated with pork products and more often associated with eating raw or undercooked wild game meats."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Parasitic Diseases*



Trichomonas Infection

Introduction

Trichomonas infection, also called trichomoniasis, is a sexually transmitted disease of the urogenital system (relating to urinary and reproductive organs) of humans. It is caused one-celled parasitic microbes of the species *Trichomonas vaginalis*. The *T. vaginalis* parasite has a round body with four flagella (tail) that gives it a distinctive appearance that is easily identifiable under a microscope by medical professionals. The species, sometimes commonly called trich, is classified within the order Trichomonadida, and genus *Trichomonas*.

The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that 180 million people around the world are infected annually with *Trichomonas*. The highest incidence of trichomoniasis occurs within sexually active women who have multiple partners. WHO and the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) consider it to be the most common pathogenic (disease-causing) protozoan infection of humans in the industrialized world, with over 175 million infections annually occurring each year. The CDC Division of Parasitic Diseases (DPD) estimates that over eight million people become infected annually in North America. *Trichomonas* infection is considered a sexually transmitted disease or sexually transmitted infection (STD/STI).

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Trichomonas infection is transmitted by sexual intercourse. It occurs more often in females than males. In females it is commonly found in the vagina, where it frequently causes burning and itching and an irritating discharge. It can also occur in the urinary tract, fallopian tubes, and pelvis of women. In males, it may occur in the prostate gland and urethra; and in both sexes it may irritate the bladder.

The parasite cannot survive in the human mouth or rectum or on dry objects such as toilet seats. It can live for up to 24 hours on moist surfaces such as bathing suits and hot tubs. However, such environments rarely contribute to transmission of the infection. It is, instead, almost always transmitted between humans through sexual intercourse or genital-to-genital contact.

Most symptoms do not show up until four to 28 days after being infected. General symptoms in women include abdominal soreness; discomfort with sexual intercourse; vaginal itching; oral lesions; vagina inflammation with gray, greenish-white, or greenish-yellow secretions that are often foul-smelling; labial swelling; vulvar itching; inner thigh itching; and the urge to urinate. Symptoms in pregnant females can often include preterm labor and birth of babies, low birth weight babies, and increased mortality of babies.

Other conditions more likely to occur are pneumonia, bronchitis, infertility, cervicitis (inflammation of the cervix), ectopic pregnancy, non-gonoccal urethritis (urethral inflammation), pelvic inflammatory disease, and reactive arthritis. Infected women are more likely to contract human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection and cervical cancer.

There are usually no symptoms in men. If symptoms occur they are usually described as itching of the genital area, burning feeling while urinating or ejaculating, and fluid discharge from urethra. In men, this infection stops on its own within several weeks. However, in rare cases men can develop epididymitis or prostatitis (inflammation of the epididymis or prostate).

Scope and Distribution

Trichomoniasis occurs worldwide. Women between the ages of 16 to 35 years of age, according to the National Library of Medicine (NLM), of the National Institutes of Health (NIH), contract the disease more often than any other U.S. group. The frequency in the United

States and Europe are similar, but its rate of incidence is much higher in Africa.

Treatment and Prevention

The infection can be diagnosed in women by studying fluid discharge from the vagina with a Pap smear. Such an examination under a microscope reveals the parasites causing the infection. In addition, a visual examination of the pelvis area will locate red blotches on the vaginal wall or cervix of infected women.

The infection is more difficult to diagnosis in men. More often than not, it is first diagnosed in their female sexual partner. However, men can be diagnosed through continued symptoms of burning or itching in the genital area even with treatment for Chlamydia or gonorrhea, two other sexually transmitted diseases. Specimens for examination under a microscope are often collected from the urethra (the tube that urine flows through).

Antibiotic medicines such as metronidazole are usually taken orally, intravenously, or as an intravaginal suppository gel. Sometimes tinidazole is given orally. Antibiotic medicines should be prescribed to the sexual partner, too.

The disease can be prevented either with total abstinence from sexual activities or can be minimized with the proper use of latex condoms during sex and with having a minimal number of sexual partners. The prognosis for *Trichomonas* infection is excellent if treated properly. Complications can happen, however, if proper treatment is not given in a timely basis. Extended infection in women can cause degradation in the tissues on the cervical surface.

Impacts and Issues

Trichomonas infection is a sexually transmitted disease (often called STD, or SDI for sexually transmitted infection) that is normally not serious when antibiotics are used to treat the disease. However, its symptoms can be unpleasant, and an untreated infection can lead to pelvic inflammatory disease and resulting infertility. It causes an increased risk of contracting HIV. Although rare, pregnant women who are infected can give the infection to their baby during the delivery process.

Infection in young children can be an indication of sexual abuse. These children are treated for the infection and, if sexual abuse suspected, additional investigations are conducted.

SEE ALSO *Antibiotic Resistance; Gonorrhea; HIV; Parasitic Diseases; Sexually Transmitted Diseases.*

WORDS TO KNOW

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

PROTOZOA: Single-celled animal-like microscopic organisms that live by taking in food rather than making it by photosynthesis and must live in the presence of water. (Singular: protozoan.) Protozoa are a diverse group of single-celled organisms, with more than 50,000 different types represented. The vast majority are microscopic, many measuring less than 5 one-thousandth of an inch (or 0.005 millimeters), but some, such as the freshwater Spirostomun, may reach 0.17 inches (3 millimeters) in length, large enough to enable it to be seen with the naked eye.

SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED: Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) and infections vary in their susceptibility to treatment, their signs and symptoms, and the consequences if they are left untreated. Some are caused by bacteria. These usually can be treated and cured. Others are caused by viruses and can typically be treated but not cured. More than 15 million new cases of STD are diagnosed annually in the United States.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Cohen, Jonathan, and William G. Powderly, eds. *Infectious Diseases.* New York: Mosby, 2004.

Ryan, Kenneth J., and C. George Ray, eds. *Sherris Medical Microbiology: An Introduction to Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2004.

Periodicals

Schwebke, J.R., and D. Burgess. "Trichomoniasis Is a Common Infection Whose Prevention Has Not Been a Priority." *Clinical Microbiology Review* 17 (2004): 794–803.

Web Sites

Centers of Disease Control and Prevention. "*Trichomonas.*" <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Trichomoniasis.htm> (accessed April 7, 2007).

Tropical Infectious Diseases

Introduction

The warm humid climate of the tropics can, in itself, encourage diseases that are rare or unknown in the West, such as those borne by mosquitoes. Conditions of poverty and poor sanitation are also common in tropical regions, such as sub-Saharan Africa, which encourages the spread of these diseases, even when there is a known cure for them.

Compared to heart disease, cancer, and even malaria or AIDS, many tropical diseases are neglected in terms of research and efforts to get medicines and vaccines to all affected. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that one in six of the world's population suffers from a neglected tropical disease, including leprosy, sleeping sickness or elephantiasis. Control of some tropical diseases has been successful in the past. The WHO and its collaborators now seek to fight tropical infectious disease by improving both surveillance and drug delivery.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Malaria is perhaps the best known of the tropical infectious diseases, not least because it can affect returning travelers, sometimes with fatal consequences. Another significant mosquito-borne disease is yellow fever, whose causative agent is a flavivirus spread by certain *Aedes* and *Haemogogus* mosquito species. The name comes from the jaundice that often accompanies the late or toxic form of the disease, which has a 50% fatality rate. Lymphatic filariasis—or elephantiasis—is also spread by mosquitoes, the infective agent being microscopic parasitic worms of the *Wuchereria bancrofti* and *Brugia malayi* species. These lodge in the lymphatic system, causing immense and disfiguring swelling of the arms, legs, genitals, vulva, and breast, which may be accompanied by internal damage to the kidneys and lymphatic system.

Leishmaniasis is spread by the bite of sandflies infected with parasites of various *Leishmania* species; there are two types of leishmaniasis, visceral and cutaneous. Untreated, visceral leishmaniasis is fatal in 95% of cases. It typically causes extensive internal organ damage after an initial phase of fever, night sweats, and weight loss. The cutaneous form causes a long-term rash which sometimes leads to internal tissue damage and accompanying secondary bacterial infection, which is potentially fatal.

Meanwhile, African trypanosomiasis, or sleeping sickness, is spread by tsetse flies that carry protozoa of the *trypanosome* genus. More than 90% of cases are caused by *T. brucei gambiense*, the rest by *T. brucei rhodesiense*, with the former being of slower onset than the latter. At first, the trypanosomes multiply in subcutaneous tissues, blood and lymph, then they cross the blood-brain barrier to infect the central nervous system. Left untreated, sleeping sickness will prove fatal.

There are many tropical infectious diseases which do require an insect vector. Leprosy has been a feared and stigmatizing disease since antiquity. Today, however, leprosy is easily treatable and need not be debilitating. Untreated, it may lead to permanent damage and disfigurement to skin, nerves, limbs, and eyes. Leprosy is caused by the bacillus *Mycobacterium leprae* which is related to the bacterium that causes tuberculosis (TB). It is spread by droplets from the nose and mouth from untreated cases, although it is not highly infectious.

Yaws is one of the more neglected of the infectious tropical diseases. It is a chronic infection that affects mainly skin, bone, and cartilage, whose cause is the bacterium *Treponema pertenue*. Another less known condition is buruli ulcer disease, which is caused by the bacterium *Mycobacterium ulcerans*, which is also related to the TB bacterium. The infection leads to destruction of the skin and soft tissue, with the formation of large ulcers on the arms and legs. The disease is not only disfiguring, but can also cause disability through restriction in joint movement.

There are many other tropical infectious diseases, varying widely in their cause, symptoms, and health consequences. Tropical diseases remain a serious health threat because many people in tropical disease-prone areas do not have access to existing treatment. Furthermore, medical research has not yet discovered effective therapies for all tropical diseases.

Scope and Distribution

Malaria is known to affect up to 900 million people worldwide and causes an estimated 2.7 million deaths a year, mainly among children in Africa. The WHO also collects data on many other infectious tropical diseases, but warns that such diseases are underreported and their effects likely underestimated. For example, there are an estimated 200,000 cases of yellow fever each year, causing 30,000 deaths. Only a fraction of the occurrences is officially reported.

Yellow fever is present in 33 African countries, and in nine South American countries. Meanwhile, millions of people in 36 different countries in sub-Saharan Africa are at risk of sleeping sickness, although only a small proportion of the countries are under constant surveillance and medical monitoring. Leishmaniasis is widely distributed around the Mediterranean, tropical Africa, South America, and in East and Central Asia with an estimated two million new cases per year.

More than one billion people in more than 80 countries are at risk of lymphatic filariasis with 120 million already being affected; one third are in India, another third in Africa and the rest in South East Asia, the Pacific, and the Americas. Leprosy is still a public health problem in nine remaining countries in Africa, Asia, and South America but the global toll of the disease has fallen dramatically in recent years, from 5.2 million in 1985 to 286,000 cases at the end of 1999. Incidences of leprosy have continued to decrease. Since the mid-1980s, 116 of 122 countries once endemic for leprosy have eliminated the disease as a public health problem.

The trend has been the opposite for yaws. There had been some success in controlling the disease up to 1970s. However, as some anti-yaws campaigns were scaled down, the disease incidence once again increased. By the 1990s, there were thought to be 2.5 million cases, of which nearly half a million were new.

Finally, Buruli ulcer is found in 30 countries in Africa, the Americas, Asia, and the Western Pacific. Surveillance is patchy, but there have been 24,000 cases reported in Côte d'Ivoire (Ivory Coast) between 1989 and 2006. More than 11,000 cases have been reported in Ghana since 1993.

Treatment and Prevention

There is an effective vaccine, but no treatment for yellow fever. Sleeping sickness is treatable by a regime of different drugs, depending on the stage of the disease. Lymphatic filariasis can be cured by treatment with the antiparasitic drugs albendazole or ivermectin and the World Health Organization is working with the assistance of the drugs' manufacturers in a bid to eliminate the disease, in programs similar to those used to tackle river blindness. There are a number of drugs which can treat leishmaniasis, but many of these have severe side effects.

Leprosy usually responds to treatment with a combination therapy consisting of rifampicin, clofazimine and dapsone. The World Health Organization aims to eliminate this disease, with assistance from participating pharmaceutical companies and nongovernment organizations. It may also be possible to eliminate yaws. The disease is curable with just a single injection of penicillin,

WORDS TO KNOW

NEGLECTED TROPICAL DISEASE: Many tropical diseases are considered to be neglected because despite their prevalence in less-developed areas, new vaccines and treatments are not being developed for them. Malaria was once considered to be a neglected tropical disease, but recently a great deal of research and money have been devoted to its treatment and cure.

PARASITE: An organism that lives in or on a host organism and that gets its nourishment from that host. The parasite usually gains all the benefits of this relationship, while the host may suffer from various diseases and discomforts, or show no signs of the infection. The life cycle of a typical parasite usually includes several developmental stages and morphological changes as the parasite lives and moves through the environment and one or more hosts. Parasites that remain on a host's body surface to feed are called ectoparasites, while those that live inside a host's body are called endoparasites. Parasitism is a highly successful biological adaptation. There are more known parasitic species than nonparasitic ones, and parasites affect just about every form of life, including most all animals, plants, and even bacteria.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

but more global coordination is needed to get the drug to those at risk. Buruli ulcer can be also be effectively treated by antibiotics and global efforts are underway to eliminate this tropical disease also.

Impacts and Issues

Tropical infectious diseases have an impact upon many millions of people, particularly in Africa, causing death, disability, loss of economic productivity, and impaired quality of life. There are many approaches to keeping these diseases under control or eliminating them. Where the disease is well understood and a cure or vaccine is available, then surveillance, monitoring, and effective distribution are key to targeting supplies where they are needed. Public-private partnerships—between the World Health Organization and drug companies, for instance—can be very valuable.

Tropical infectious diseases should also be higher up the agenda when it comes to basic and applied research. There is still an urgent need, for instance, to understand the life cycle of the malaria parasite better in the search for a vaccine. Meanwhile, genomics may prove a powerful tool for understanding tropical diseases—the genome of *M.ulcerans* was published in February 2007, potentially speeding development of new treatments and simpler and more rapid diagnostic tests.

Though tropical infectious diseases have received increased attention in recent years, they remain a significant global health threat. Over one billion people are affected by neglected tropical diseases. These diseases are called "neglected" because they have been essentially eliminated from developed nations, but are endemic to some of the world's most underdeveloped nations and marginalized communities. Neglected tropical diseases (NTDs) flourish in tropical and subtropical regions, especially those with poor sanitation systems, contaminated drinking water, lack of adequate healthcare, and endemic disease-carrying insect problems. The World Health Organization considers the following neglected tropical diseases (NTDs): African sleeping sickness, Buruli ulcer, Chagas disease, cholera, dengue fever, endemic syphilis, epidemic diarrhoeal diseases, guinea-worm, leishmaniasis, leprosy, lymphatic filariasis, onchocerciais, pinta, schistosomiasis, soil-transmitted helminthiasis, trachoma, and yaws.

Neglected tropical diseases bring significant impact to local societies and economies. Since NTDs often strike subsistence cultures, the ability to work and grow food is vitally important to survival. Endemic threat of NTDs such as sleeping sickness has forced many people to flee productive—and sometimes scarce—farm and grazing lands in river valleys. Farming less-productive soils has contributed to food scarcity in some regions. Migration and increased local population density has exacerbated malnutrition and fueled incidence of disease. Some survivors of NTDs experience life-long pain or physical disability, curtailing their ability to work. Despite the significant social and economic effects of NTDs, less than 1% of all new drugs registered between 1975–2000 were indicated to treat or prevent tropical diseases.

The World Health Organization and other organizations have reenergized international research on tropical diseases. Several NTDs can be treated with drugs that cost as little as two United States cents per dose. International health organizations have focused on educating health officials and training community volunteers to administer and distribute therapeutic drugs. Improved sanitation and hygiene programs, increased access to clean drinking water, and use of anti-insect pesticides, traps, and mosquito netting have helped to reduce incidence of NTDs. However, treatments for some NTDs remain expensive, outdated, and toxic or dangerous if administered incorrectly. Development of vaccines and cheaper, more effective, and safer drugs are vital to combating these NTDs.

Some scientists predict that global climate change may increase the incidence of tropical diseases. Warmer temperatures and increased surface water may increase the habitat of disease vectors such as insects. Some assert that tropical diseases will become more common, more widespread, and increasingly virulent.

See Also *African Sleeping Sickness (Trypanosomiasis); Buruli (Bairnsdale) Ulcer; Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Filariasis; Leishmaniasis; Leprosy (Hansen's Disease); Malaria; Mosquito-borne Diseases; River Blindness (Onchocerciasis); Yellow Fever.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Peters, W., and G. Pasvol. *Tropical Medicine and Parasitology.* 5th ed. London: Mosby, 2002.

Wilks, D., M. Farrington, and D. Rubenstein. *The Infectious Diseases Manual.* 2nd ed. Malden: Blackwell, 2003.

Web Sites

World Health Organization. "Neglected Tropical Diseases." <http://www.who.int/neglected_diseases/en/> (accessed May 17, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

Tuberculosis

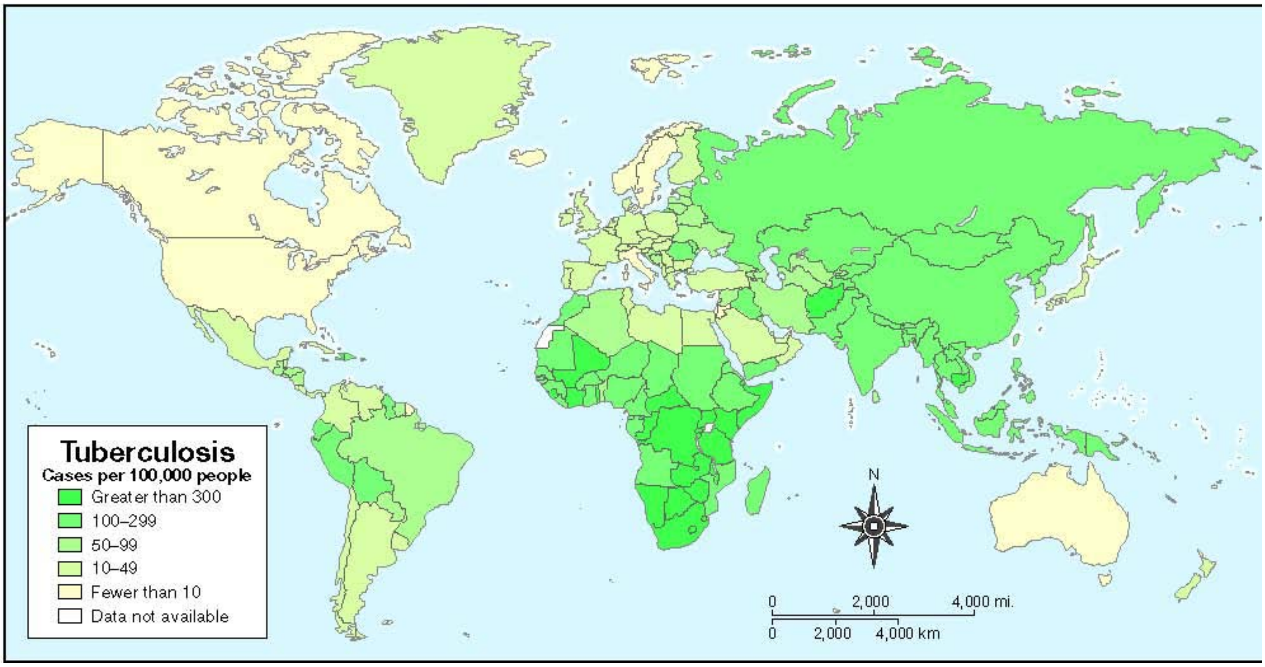
Introduction

Tuberculosis, often known as TB, is a disease caused by infection with the bacterium called *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. A few other types of mycobacterium are capable of causing a tuberculosislike illness, but are only rarely encountered. Most commonly, the infection affects the lungs. However, along with the pulmonary form of tuberculosis, the infection can become extrapulmonary, affecting other parts of the body, including the central nervous system, kidneys, joints, spine, and skin.

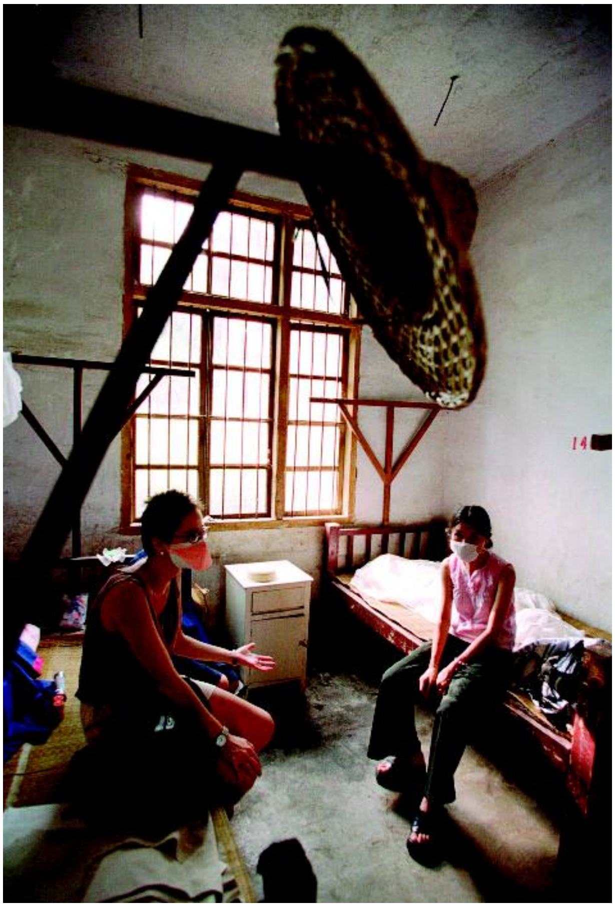
In a tuberculosis infection, symptoms may be absent initially. Sometime later, in about 10% of those who are infected, this so-called latent tuberculosis, which cannot be spread from person to person, becomes active and more serious, killing up to 50% of those who are infected. The presence of the latent form of tuberculosis is especially dangerous in people whose immune systems are not functioning properly, such as those with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome).

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Tuberculosis is an ancient disease. In about 400 BC, the Greek physician Hippocrates (460–377 BC) described a disease that is thought to have been tuberculosis. Then the disease was called phthisis, a name derived from the



Map depicting estimated tuberculosis cases, 2001. © Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.



A doctor from the humanitarian group Médecins Sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders) explains treatment details to a new patient who suffers from tuberculosis at a hospital in China's southern Guangxi province. *AP Images.*

Greek word meaning "to waste away". This description was apt, since, then, as now, a hallmark feature of tuberculosis is weight loss and physical deterioration that occurs over the often considerable length of time that the infection persists. In more recent times, the characteristic physical wasting associated with the disease led to its popular name—consumption.

A fragment of *M. tuberculosis* DNA was found in lung tissue from an Egyptian mummy approximately 3,000 years old. It has been argued that diseases like tuberculosis were unknown in South America until being introduced by European explorers hundreds of years ago. However, this may not be true, since preserved remains of people with tuberculosislike lung damage have been dated to hundreds of years before the time of Columbus. (There is no evidence that the Viking explorations, which pre-date Columbus, took them south of the equator.) It seems likely that tuberculosis may have been globally common even centuries ago.

The name tuberculosis was coined in 1839 by Johann Schönlein. At that time, the pathogen responsible for the disease had not been discovered. *M. tuberculosis* was finally identified in 1882 by Robert Koch (1843–1910), one of the pioneers of the study of bacteria (bacteriology). In 1890, Koch reported on the extraction of a bacterial protein from dead bacteria recovered from tuberculosis infections. The protein, which he called tuberculin, is still important as a means of detecting the presence of the bacteria. With the discovery and use of x rays at the end of the nineteenth century, the presence of the lung infection that is a consequence of the growth of *M. tuberculosis* was revealed. On x-ray images, the masses of bacteria that develop are seen as more opaque regions in the lungs.

Lung infection with *M. tuberculosis* results from inhaling droplets of moisture that contain the bacteria. Most commonly this occurs when someone who has the infection expels droplets from their lungs by coughing. The droplets, which tend to be 0.5–5 microns in diameter (a micron is a millionth of a meter) can contain more than 40,000 living *M. tuberculosis* bacteria. *M. tuberculosis* also can be transmitted in milk that has not been pasteurized to kill the bacteria. Symptoms of this form of tuberculosis, which is called active tuberculosis, include a feeling of tiredness, loss of weight, a fever that tends to occur during sleep, chills, and a cough that persists for weeks. The coughing can dislodge and expel sputum, which may be tinged with blood, as the infection can damage cells lining the lungs. In some people, the infection can spread beyond the lungs to other parts of the body. If not treated, this extrapulmonary tuberculosis is fatal in up to 50% of the cases. The extrapulmonary form cannot be spread from person to person.

■ Scope and Distribution

Tuberculosis is a common disease with a global distribution. About 30% of the world's population—some 2 billion people—have tuberculosis, according to the World Health Organization (WHO). The organization has estimated that new infections are occurring at the rate of one every second. In 2004, almost 15 million people had the active form of tuberculosis, according to the WHO, and about 1.7 million people died of the disease, most in developing countries. Nearly 9 million of these cases had developed during that year.

Some people are at increased risk for contracting tuberculosis. These include children, whose immune systems are not fully developed, and elderly people, whose immune function may have deteriorated. The immune system can also deteriorate due to diseases (for example, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS), poor nutrition, and the physical consequences of chronic alcohol or drug abuse. In addition, immune function may be deliberately suppressed in transplant patients to help minimize the chance of rejection of the transplanted organ. Health care providers may also be at risk of contracting tuberculosis, since they are exposed

Patients in the TB ward at a hospital in Malawi line up for their medication. In 2000, 76 percent of tuberculosis cases in the hospital were found to be HIV related. © *Gideon Mendel/Corbis.*

more frequently to people with the infection. Other risk factors include diabetes, various cancers, kidney disease, and abnormally low body weight.

While present in every country, tuberculosis can be especially prevalent in regions where health care is substandard and poverty affects the overall health of the inhabitants. Traditionally, this has been a more significant problem in underdeveloped and developing countries. However, even in the United States, increasing poverty has contributed to a resurgence of tuberculosis. More than 14,000 cases of tuberculosis were reported in the United States in 2004, according to the CDC.

■ Treatment and Prevention

The diagnosis of tuberculosis relies of the recognition of the symptoms and the detection of the infection. The presence of the lung infection can be visualized using a chest x ray. *M. tuberculosis* also can be detected, either by obtaining sputum samples and growing the organism or by isolating protein components of the bacterium. The latter test can be faster, since the bacterium can be difficult to grow in laboratory conditions. For example, the length of time for *M. tuberculosis* to grow and divide in the nutritionally rich conditions of a laboratory culture dish can be 16–20 hours, which is far longer than the 15–20 minutes required by the common intestinal bacterium *Escherichia coli*. Thus, identification of the tuberculosis bacterium by laboratory culturing can take days.

A well-known test for tuberculosis is called a skin test. In this test, the tuberculin protein from *M. tuberculosis* is injected just under the skin of the forearm. The development of redness and swelling at the injection site within several days indicates that the person has at least been exposed to the infection. The test does not necessarily show that the infection is active, and so is valuable in the detection of the latent form of tuberculosis.

In May 2005, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration approved the QuantiFERON®-TB Gold test for use in the diagnosis of *M. tuberculosis* infection in the United States. The test detects the release of a compound called interferon-gamma from blood cells in those who have tuberculosis. The test has been approved as a replacement for the skin test, and to confirm the results of the skin test. As of 2007, the test is not widely available, and can still be beyond the budget of smaller health care centers.

In the past, the treatment of tuberculosis was associated with images of hospital wards filled with bedridden patients or images of people slowly recovering from the infection while at sanatoriums located in the countryside. Even into the 1960s, sanatoriums that were located in areas with clean, dry air were a popular part of treatment for tuberculosis.

Sanatoriums did aid recovery, but their usefulness was supplanted during the 1960s by the introduction of antibiotics that were effective against *M. tuberculosis.* The antibiotic treatment needs to be carried out for up to six months to be effective, in part because of the slow growth of the bacteria (many antibiotics are effective

IN CONTEXT: EXTENSIVELY DRUG-RESISTANT TUBERCULOSIS (XDR TB)

In May 2007 a Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) investigation of a suspected case of Extensively Drug-Resistant Tuberculosis (XDR TB) made news headlines around the world and heightened public awareness of XDR TB. The case involved a U.S. citizen that the CDC publicly asserted had a "potentially infectious XDR TB who traveled to and from Europe on commercial flights between May 12 and May 24, (2007) and then re-entered the United States at the Canada-U.S. border via automobile."

Because of the international travel implications, for the first time in more than 40 years, CDC issued a Federal isolation order under authority of the U.S. Public Health Service Act. Such are orders are rare because state and local health departments usually order isolation (in fact, in early June 2007, the Denver Health Authority Public Health Department issued an order that the patient be detained for treatment at the Denver area hospital where the patient had ultimately been transferred for treatment and so the federal order was lifted).

Although the patient was asymptomatic and physicians later stated that he did not appear to be highly infectious, the case came under intense media scrutiny. At the time of the printing of this book, many issues existed concerning the facts and timeline of events related to the case, including the investigation of how the patient may have initially contracted the disease and the events surrounding the response by a number of health and security agencies to his infection and subsequent travel. Intense media coverage was also fueled by initial disinformation about the nature of transmission, with reports failing to specify that transmission of the bacterium responsible usually takes prolonged contact.

The CDC states that Extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis (XDR TB) is "a relatively rare type of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis (MDR TB). It is resistant to almost all drugs used to treat TB, including the two best first-line drugs: isoniazid and rifampin. XDR TB is also resistant to the best second-line medications: fluoroquinolones and at least one of three injectable drugs (i.e., amikacin, kanamycin, or capreomycin)."

"Because XDR TB is resistant to the most powerful first-line and second-line drugs, patients are left with treatment options that are much less effective and often have worse treatment outcomes."

"XDR TB is of special concern for persons with HIV infection or other conditions that can weaken the immune system. These persons are more likely to develop TB disease once they are infected, and also have a higher risk of death once they develop TB disease."

"The risk of acquiring XDR TB in the United States appears to be relatively low. However, it is important to acknowledge the ease at which TB can spread. As long as XDR TB exists, the United States is at risk and must address the threat."

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Division of Tuberculosis Elimination National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral Hepatitis, STD, and TB Prevention*

only on bacteria that are growing). It can be tempting to stop taking the antibiotics before the end of the prescribed period of treatment, since the patient begins to feel better after only a few weeks. But, as with other bacterial infections, discontinuing treatment prematurely is dangerous, since it can allow surviving bacteria to re-establish the infection. In fact, the surviving bacteria may be resistant to the antibiotics used, making treatment more difficult and more expensive.

The first few decades of the antibiotic therapy were resoundingly successful. Over 90% of tuberculosis infections were cured. However, in the early years of the twenty-first century, resistance to the antibiotics emerged and became more prevalent.

A tuberculosis vaccine does exist. It was developed during World War I (1914–1918) by French scientists Albert Calmette (1863–1933) and Camille Guérin, (1872–1961) and was first used in 1921. The vaccine uses a live, but weakened, strain of the bacterium *Mycobacterium bovis.* BCG (for Bacillus-Calmette-Guérin) is still the only vaccine for tuberculosis, although researchers are continuing to investigate new vaccine candidates.

The vaccine is not recommended for use in the United States by the CDC. This is due to a combination of factors—the relatively low number of cases of the disease in the United States, the vaccine's 80% success rate, and the risks associated with the use of live bacteria in a vaccine. Health care providers and others at higher risk to acquire the infection are vaccinated, however, as are people who have the multidrug-resistant form of tuberculosis. People who come to the United States from areas of the world where tuberculosis is prevalent are required to be examined for the presence of the active and latent forms of the infection and to be treated if necessary.

Efforts to develop new tuberculosis vaccines are ongoing. Several vaccine candidates have been developed using recombinant genetic techniques. These techniques involve splicing genetic material into an organism that can then ferry the recombined genetic material into animals or humans to generate antibodies to combat the infection. As of 2007, the U.S. National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases and other agencies around the world continue to sponsor trials to evaluate the effectiveness and safety of the recombinant vaccines.

■ Impacts and Issues

Throughout history, tuberculosis has been a threat to health and life. For example, in the mid-nineteenth century, about 25% of all deaths were due to tuberculosis. The devastation caused to families and the economic consequences of the loss of so many wage-earners were immense. At that time, the disease was especially prevalent in children, adolescents, and young adults; whole generations of people were affected.

This situation changed during the 1940s with the introduction of antibiotics that were effective against *M. tuberculosis*. There was a steep drop in the number of cases of tuberculosis worldwide. This fueled optimism that the disease had been controlled. But, as with other bacterial diseases that were initially suppressed by antibiotic therapy, this optimism was premature. Several factors have fueled the return of tuberculosis, including the increasing incidence of immunosuppressive diseases (primarily AIDS), the impact of growing gap in health care between the richer and poorer nations, and the emergence of a type of tuberculosis infection that is resistant to multiple antibiotics.

Currently, the impact of tuberculosis is most severe in the poorest regions of the world. For example, South Africa had the highest incidence of tuberculosis in the world in 2004, according to the WHO, and India had the most infections. WHO statistics show that more than 80% of the new cases of tuberculosis in 2004 were found among people living in Africa, Southeast Asia (including India), and the Western Pacific.

In other countries, including the United States, tuberculosis is less common and is mainly found in cities among the poor and homeless. In the United States, a program called Directly Observed Therapy (DOT) is being used by some states to help deal with the rising prevalence of tuberculosis. The program, which focuses on the poor and homeless in cities such as New York, involves direct meetings between the patient and a health care provider and the delivery of every scheduled dose of tuberculosis medication by that health care provider. DOT has been successful in reducing the number of reported cases of the disease.

DOT is also used in 182 other nations. It is estimated that this surveillance program, which relies on the microscopic detection of *M. tuberculosis* in blood samples, detected over 60% of the cases of tuberculosis worldwide in 2005.

In 1990, there were 7,537,000 tuberculosis cases worldwide, according to the WHO, with approximately 30,000 of those cases reported in the United States. The 14,097 reported cases in the United States in 2005 represent a 47% decline from 1990. However, in some states and among certain ethnic groups in the country, the prevalence of tuberculosis is still increasing. Furthermore, the situation elsewhere in the world is bleak. During the decade from 2000–2009, the WHO projects that 30 million people will die of tuberculosis. Since many cases are never reported, the actual death toll likely will be much higher.

In 2004, there were almost 9 million new cases of tuberculosis around the world, according to the WHO. Of these, 740,000 infections arose in people already infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). The immunocompromised condition of these patients makes it more likely that their cases of tuberculosis will be more serious, life threatening, and costly to treat.

IN CONTEXT: SCIENTIFIC, POLITICAL, AND ETHICAL ISSUES

The interplay of complex ethical and social considerations is also evident when considering the general rise of infectious diseases that sometimes occurs as an unintended side effect of the otherwise beneficial use of medications. Nearly half the world's population, for example, is infected with the bacterium causing TB (although for most people the infection is inactive) yet the organism causing some new cases of TB is evolving toward a greater resistance to the antibiotics that were once effective in treating TB. Such statistics also take on added social dimension when considering that TB disproportionately impacts certain social groups (the elderly, minority groups, and people infected with HIV).

The resurgence of tuberculosis has resulted in part from the increasing prevalence of immunodeficiency diseases, but also from a lack of attention to the control of tuberculosis. As with diseases such as polio, the early success in combating the disease led to complacency regarding control programs, with the result that the disease rebounded.

The emergence of antibiotic-resistant forms of *M. tuberculosis* is especially troubling. From 2000–2004, according to the CDC, 20% of tuberculosis cases in the United States were resistant to commonly used antibiotics and approximately 2% were resistant to the more potent and more expensive drugs employed as a next step. MDR-TB (multidrug-resistant TB) includes strains of tuberculosis that are resistant to at least two first-line drugs—isoniazid and rifampicin—used to treat TB.

Extremely drug-resistant tuberculosis (XDR-TB) is another emerging threat, according to the WHO. The disease is initially latent; when the symptoms appear and treatment is initiated, the resistance of the infection to virtually all antibiotics makes XDR-TB extremely difficult to treat.

As of 2007, identified XDR-TB is rare. Yet, the WHO estimates that in 2004 there were over 500,000 cases worldwide and that this number will rise in the coming years. The increased expense of treating XDR-TB will become a significant issue for poorer nations. By 2015, according to the WHO, the treatment of tuberculosis will cost $650 million each year, in part due to elaborate airborne precautions in hospitals that include isolation rooms with specialized air exchanges and N-95 masks that can serve as a barrier for the extra-small bacteria that cause tuberculosis. More than $600 million will also be needed for programs aimed at curbing the spread of the multidrug-resistant bacteria. As of 2007, the funds budgeted by various governments around the world to battle tuberculosis total $250 million—$400 million less than the projected $650 million needed. In 2006, the WHO spearheaded the Stop TB Partnership, an initiative that aims to save 14 million lives by 2015, partly by encouraging nations worldwide to commit the needed money. The campaign also seeks to increase access to treatment for nations most in need, and to reduce the economic burden associated with the costs of tuberculosis health care and the work force losses due to the disease.

Primary Source Connection

The World Care Council (WCC), based in France, is a non-governmental organization (NGO) dedicated to mobilizing public and private forces together worldwide in the fight against AIDS, malaria, and tuberculosis. The Patients Charter for Tuberculosis Care, developed by the WCC, aims to empower people with tuberculosis by describing their rights and responsibilities regarding the disease. WCC intends for the charter to become the catalyst for effective collaboration between health providers, authorities, and persons with TB. The charter is the first global patient-powered standard for care.

The Patients' Charter for Tuberculosis Care

The Patients' Charter outlines the Rights and Responsibilities of People with Tuberculosis. It empowers people with the disease and their communities through this knowledge. Initiated and developed by patients from around the world, the Charter makes the relationship with health care providers a mutually beneficial one.

The Charter sets out the ways in which patients, the community, health providers, both private and public, and governments can work as partners in a positive and open relationship with a view to improving tuberculosis care and enhancing the effectiveness of the health care process. It allows for all parties to be held more accountable to each other, fostering mutual interaction and a 'positive partnership'.

Developed in tandem with the **International Standards for Tuberculosis Care** to promote a 'patient-centered' approach, the Charter bears in mind the principles on health and human rights of the United Nations, UNESCO, WHO, Council of Europe, as well as other local and national charters and conventions.

The Patients Charter for Tuberculosis Care practices the principle of Greater Involvement of People with TB. This affirms that the empowerment of people with the disease is the catalyst for effective collaboration with health providers and authorities, and is essential to victory in the fight to stop TB. The Patients' Charter, the first global 'patient-powered' standard for care, is a cooperative tool, forged from common cause, for the entire TB Community.

PATIENTS' RIGHTS

You have the right to:

Care

- The right to free and equitable access to tuberculosis care, from diagnosis through treatment completion, regardless of resources, race, gender, age, language, legal status, religious beliefs, sexual orientation, culture or having another illness.
- The right to receive medical advice and treatment which fully meets the new International Standards for Tuberculosis Care, centering on patient needs, including those with MDR-TB or TB-HIV coinfections, and preventative treatment for young children and others considered to be at high risk.
- The right to benefit from proactive health sector community outreach, education and prevention campaigns as part of comprehensive care programs.

Dignity

- The right to be treated with respect and dignity, including the delivery of services without stigma, prejudice or discrimination by health providers and authorities.
- The right to quality health care in a dignified environment, with moral support from family, friends and the community.

Information

- The right to information about what health care services are available for tuberculosis, and what responsibilities, engagements, and direct or indirect costs, are involved.
- The right to receive a timely, concise and clear description of the medical condition, with diagnosis, prognosis (an opinion as to the likely future course of the illness), and treatment proposed, with communication of common risks and appropriate alternatives.
- The right to know the names and dosages of any medication or intervention to be prescribed, its normal actions and potential side-effects, and its possible impact on other conditions or treatments.
- The right of access to medical information which relates to the patient's condition and treatment, and a copy of the medical record if requested by the patient or a person authorized by the patient.

- The right to meet, share experiences with peers and other patients, and to voluntary counseling at any time from diagnosis through treatment completion.

Choice

- The right to a second medical opinion, with access to previous medical records.
- The right to accept or refuse surgical interventions if chemotherapy is possible, and to be informed of the likely medical and statutory consequences within the context of a communicable disease.
- The right to choose whether or not to take part in research programs without compromising care.

Confidence

- The right to have personal privacy, dignity, religious beliefs and culture respected.
- The right to have information relating to the medical condition kept confidential, and released to other authorities contingent upon the patient's consent.

Justice

- The right to make a complaint through channels provided for this purpose by the health authority, and to have any complaint dealt with promptly and fairly.
- The right to appeal to a higher authority if the above is not respected, and to be informed in writing of the outcome.

Organization

- The right to join, or to establish, organizations of people with or affected by tuberculosis, and to seek support for the development of these clubs and community based associations through the health providers, authorities, and civil society.
- The right to participate as 'stakeholders' in the development, implementation, monitoring and evaluation of TB policies and programs with local, national and international health authorities.

Security

- The right to job security after diagnosis or appropriate rehabilitation upon completion of treatment.
- The right to nutritional security or food supplements if needed to meet treatment requirements.

PATIENTS' RESPONSIBILITIES

You have the responsibility to:

Share Information

- The responsibility to provide the health care giver as much information as possible about present health, past illnesses, any allergies and any other relevant details.
- The responsibility to provide information to the health provider about contacts with immediate family, friends and others who may be vulnerable to tuberculosis or may have been infected by contact.

Follow Treatment

- The responsibility to follow the prescribed and agreed treatment plan, and to conscientiously comply with the instructions given to protect the patient's health, and that of others.
- The responsibility to inform the health provider of any difficulties or problems with following treatment, or if any part of the treatment is not clearly understood.

Contribute to Community Health

- The responsibility to contribute to community well being by encouraging others to seek medical advice if they exhibit the symptoms of tuberculosis.
- The responsibility to show consideration for the rights of other patients and health care providers, understanding that this is the dignified

WORDS TO KNOW

ACTIVE INFECTION: An active infection is one which is currently producing symptoms or in which the infective agent is multiplying rapidly. In contrast, a latent infection is one in which the infective agent is present, but not causing symptoms or damage to the body, nor reproducing at a significant rate.

AIRBORNE PRECAUTIONS: Airborne precautions are procedures that are designed to reduce the chance that certain disease-causing (pathogenic) microorganisms will be transmitted through the air.

AIRBORNE TRANSMISSION: Airborne transmission refers to the ability of a disease-causing (pathogenic) microorganism to be spread through the air by droplets expelled during sneezing or coughing.

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

LATENT INFECTION: An infection already established in the body but not yet causing symptoms, or having ceased to cause symptoms after an active period, is a latent infection.

basis and respectful foundation of the TB Community.

Show Solidarity

- The moral responsibility of showing solidarity with other patients, marching together towards cure.
- The moral responsibility to share information and knowledge gained during treatment, and to pass this expertise to others in the community, making empowerment contagious.
- The moral responsibility to join in efforts to make the community TB Free.

World Care Council

WORLD CARE COUNCIL. "THE PATIENTS' CHARTER FOR TUBERCULOSIS CARE." 2006. AVAILABLE ONLINE AT <HTTP://WWW.WHO.INT/TB/PUBLICATIONS/2006/ISTC_CHARTER.PDF> (ACCESSED APRIL 10, 2007).

SEE ALSO *Airborne Precautions; Antibiotic Resistance; Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Re-emerging Infectious Diseases; Resistant Organisms.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Daniel Thomas M. *Captain of Death: The Story of Tuberculosis.* Rochester, NY: University of Rochester Press, 2005.

Gandy, Matthew, and Alimuddin Zumla. *The Return of the White Plague: Global Poverty and the 'New' Tuberculosis.* New York: Verso, 2003.

Mayho, Paul, and Richard Coker. *The Tuberculosis Survival Handbook.* West Palm Beach, FL: Merit Publishing International, 2006.

Periodicals

Hoffman, Michelle. "New Medicine for Old Mummies: Diagnosing Disease in Some Very Old 'Patients'." *American Scientist* 86 (May–June 1998).

Web Sites

World Health Organization. "World TB Day—March 24th." <http://www.stoptb.org/events/world_tb_day/> (accessed April 10, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

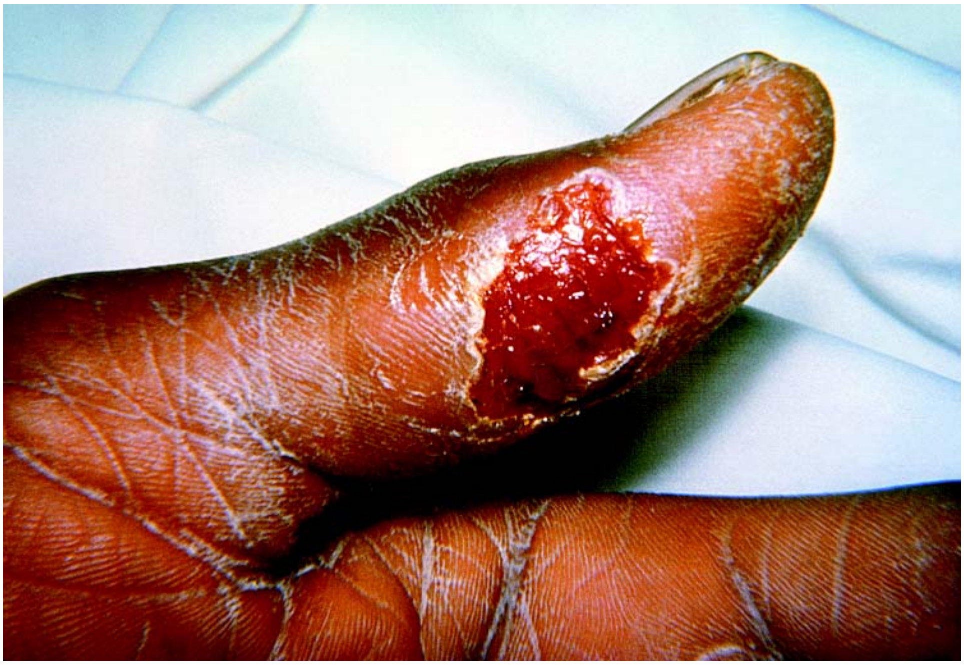
Tularemia

Introduction

Tularemia, also known as rabbit fever, deerfly fever, and lemming fever, is a highly infectious bacterial zoonotic (acquired from animals) disease that is endemic (occurs naturally) throughout the United States. The highly infectious nature of the bacterium poses a significant threat to humans and *Francisella tularensis,* the bacteria that causes tularemia, has also been considered a potential bioterrorism agent.

Francisella tularensis, is a highly infectious bacterium that naturally colonizes (lives at population levels below that which cause disease) many species of small animals. Transmission of the disease to humans is via vectors such as ticks and mosquitoes, contact with infected animals, or ingestion of contaminated soil, water, or food. Symptoms present after a short incubation and may include fever, nausea, headache, diarrhea, and joint and muscle pain. The infection can spread to the lungs, liver, and lymphatic system. In around two percent of cases, tularemia is fatal.

Treatment with antibiotics is usually effective and readily available. Prevention may be achieved through the use of insect repellents, avoidance of contact with infected animals, and the maintenance of uncontaminated food and water sources.



Francisella tularensis is an insect-borne pathogen of rabbits, squirrels, and other rodents in many countries, including Russia and the western United States. Ticks, fleas, and flies may transmit the organism to humans. *Science Source.*

WORDS TO KNOW

AEROSOL: Particles of liquid or solid dispersed as a suspension in gas.

ARTHROPOD: A member of the largest single animal phylum, consisting of organisms with segmented bodies, jointed legs or wings, and exoskeletons.

COLONIZE: Colonize refers to the process where a microorganism is able to persist and grow at a given location.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

FULMINATE: In medicine, a disease that appears suddenly and follows a severe, intense course is said to fulminate. In chemistry, a fulminate is fulminic acid, HONC, or any other compound containing the -ONC group.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

INOCULUM: An inoculum is a substance such as virus, bacterial toxin, or a viral or bacterial component that is added to the body to stimulate the immune system, which provides protection from an infection by the particular microorganism.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

VIRULENCE: Virulence is the ability of a disease organism to cause disease: a more virulent organism is more infective and liable to produce more serious disease.

ZOONOSES: Zoonoses are diseases of microbiological origin that can be transmitted from animals to people. The causes of the diseases can be bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Tularemia was first described in Japan in 1837, but gained its name from Tulare County, California, where a plague-like illness arose among squirrels in 1911. The causative agent, *Francisella tularensis,* is considered to be among the most infectious bacteria known, and, if left untreated, infection may prove fatal.

Symptoms of tularemia usually appear within three to five days of exposure, but can take up to 14 days in some cases. Presentation includes a sudden fever, chills, headache, diarrhea, muscle aches, joint pain, dry cough, and progressive weakness. Disease caused by tularemia can vary in severity and presentation according to virulence (pathogenicity, or the ability to cause disease) of the infecting organism, dose, and site of inoculums (where the bacteria enters the body). Symptoms can include ulcers on the skin or mouth, swollen painful lymph glands, and a sore throat. Some persons with tularemia also become susceptible to pneumonia and develop chest pain, bloody sputum (mucus from the lungs), and have breathing complications.

Only a small number of the bacteria are required for tularemia disease to fulminate (appear suddenly and intensely); the infection is established when particles invade white blood cells and subsequently attack the immune system following multiplication. The major target organs are the lymph nodes, lungs, spleen, liver, and kidneys. While the inoculation may be focal, the disease will often become disseminated and cause problems throughout the body. The disease is fatal in around two percent of cases, with the most common cause of death being failure of the respiratory system or multiple organs.

Many small animals, including rodents, rabbits, and hares, provide natural reservoirs for the bacteria. Transmission of the infection to humans may occur through vectors such as ticks, biting flies, and mosquitoes. Humans may also contract the disease by handling infected animals or by ingesting contaminated water, soil, or food. Inhalation is also a significant form of transmission, but person-to-person transmission has not been established.

Scope and Distribution

The *F. tularenisis* bacterium is endemic throughout North America and in parts of Europe and Asia. Cases of tularemia have been reported in every state of America except Hawaii, with the majority occurring in south-central and western states. The widely present nature of the bacteria may be attributed to the fact that *F. tularensis* is found in diverse hosts and habitats, and it can survive for weeks at low temperatures in water, moist soil, hay, straw, and decaying animal carcasses.

People at a higher risk of contracting tularemia include hunters and trappers engaging in the skinning of potentially infected animals. Activities that lead to the aerosolization (dispersion into the air) of the bacteria can also increase the likelihood of infection, with lawn mowing the most common example of such an activity.

Currently in the United States, cases of tularemia occur most commonly between May and August when they are largely attributed to transmission by arthropod (a group of invertebrate animals including insects) vectors. This is in contrast to the historical incidence of tularemia, which was previously considered a winter disease contracted mostly from infected rabbits.

The incidence of tularemia has dropped significantly in the United States, from several thousand cases per year in the 1950s to around 200 per year in the 1990s. The fatality rate in the United States has also declined and is relatively low, at 1.4%. This is most likely due to the current availability of antimicrobial therapies. The exact prevalence of tularemia, however, is unknown, as it is assumed that the disease is greatly under-recognized and therefore, underreported. Tularemia occurs more often among males than females; it is also more prevalent among children between the ages of five and nine and adults between the ages of 75–84.

IN CONTEXT: TERRORISM AND BIOLOGICAL WARFARE

The Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases at Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) states that "Francisella tularensis is very infectious. A small number (10-50 or so organisms) can cause disease. If F. tularensis were used as a weapon, the bacteria would likely be made airborne for exposure by inhalation. People who inhale an infectious aerosol would generally experience severe respiratory illness, including life-threatening pneumonia and systemic infection, if they are not treated. The bacteria that cause tularemia occur widely in nature and could be isolated and grown in quantity in a laboratory, although manufacturing an effective aerosol weapon would require considerable sophistication."

A part of the CDC program for bioterrorism preparedness and response the CDC states that as part of its preparations the CDC (or partners in the preparedness program) is:

- Stockpiling antibiotics to treat infected people
- Coordinating a nation-wide program where states share information about tularemia
- Creating new education tools and programs for health professionals, the public, and the media.

SOURCE: *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Infectious Diseases, Division of Vector-Borne Infectious Diseases*

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of tularemia is generally effective with antibiotics, usually streptomycin or gentamicin. Due to the nature of the infection, treatment should be continued for at least 10 days to ensure complete recovery. Long-term immunity will usually follow recovery from tularemia, but re-infection is possible, and repeated cases have been reported.

Although not yet available to the market, a vaccine was developed using a live attenuated strain of the disease. As of 2007, the vaccine is under review by the Food and Drug Administration. Post-exposure vaccination is not considered a viable public health strategy due to the three-to-five day incubation period of the disease, as well as the time necessary for immunity to develop.

Preventative measures should be adopted by people working in endemic areas. These should include the use of insect repellent on skin and clothing to minimize chance of insect bites and effective handwashing using antibacterial soap for people handling animal carcasses. The general public can also minimize infection by thoroughly cooking animal meat and ensuring the safety of water sources.

Impacts and Issues

Tularemia is identified as a Category A agent by the Centers for Disease Control (CDC), meaning that it is considered a high risk to society poses a potential threat to national security. The extremely low infectious dose required by the *F. tularensis* bacteria, in addition to the possible aerosol nature of transmission, makes tularemia potentially hazardous in large populations.

It is for these reasons that tularemia has been previously considered a viable option as a biological warfare agent. During World War II (1939–1945), Japanese researchers investigated this avenue. In the 1950s and 1960s, the United States developed weapons to deliver aerosolized *F. tularensis* organisms. These were destroyed in 1973. The World Health Organization (WHO) released a statement in 1969 that estimated that the successful release of 50 kilograms of the virulent bacteria over a metropolitan area housing five million people in a developed country would result in 250,000 cases of illness, including 19,000 fatalities. Although it was removed from the list of nationally notifiable diseases in 1994, it was reinstated in 2000 due to its potential for use as a biological weapon. As of 2007, this impact is still recognized and the CDC acts to ensure the rapid availability of substantial amounts of available antibiotics effective against the bacteria that causes tularemia.

SEE ALSO *Antibacterial Drugs; Bacterial Disease; Bioterrorism; CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention); Vaccines and Vaccine Development; World Health Organization (WHO); Zoonoses.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases,* Vol. 2. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Fong, I.W., and K. Alibek. *Bioterrorism and Infectious Agents: A New Dilemma for the 21st Century.* New York: Springer Science, 2005.

Mims, C., H. Dockrell, R. Goering, I. Roitt, D. Wakelin, and M. Zuckerman. *Medical Microbiology.* St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control (CDC). "Consensus Statement: Tularemia as a Biological Weapon: Medical and Public Health Management." June 6, 2001. <http://www.bt.cdc.gov/agent/tularemia/tularemia-biological-weapon-abstract.asp#2> (accessed April 5, 2007).

Centers for Disease Control (CDC). "Tularemia." February 21, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/tularemia.htm> (accessed April 5, 2007).

Infectious Diseases Society of America. "Tularemia: Current, Comprehensive Information on Pathogenesis, Microbiology, Epidemiology, Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prophylaxis." March 5, 2007. <http://www.cidrap.umn.edu/idsa/bt/tularemia/biofacts/tularemiafactsheet.html#_Agent> (accessed April 5, 2007).

Tony Hawas

Typhoid Fever

Introduction

Typhoid fever, sometimes also known as enteric fever, is a potentially life-threatening infection caused by the bacterium *Salmonella typhi*. It is rare in the United States and other Western countries, and most cases in these areas have been acquired when traveling abroad. The disease is spread by contaminated food and water.

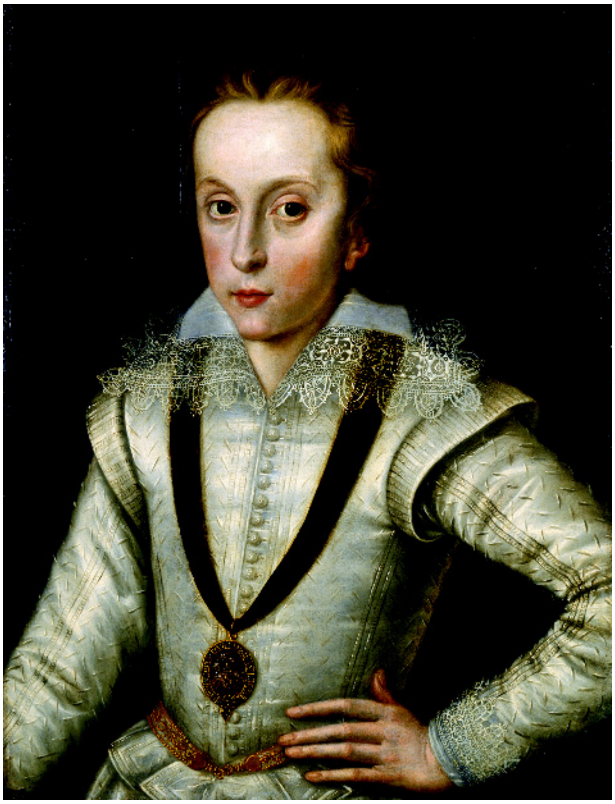
People who have had typhoid fever may be infectious for many months after they have recovered. One of the most famous carriers of typhoid fever was Mary Mallon, a cook for a family in New York City between 1901 and 1915. She infected 53 people with typhoid, and three of those she infected died. Typhoid is treatable with antibiotics, but can have a fatality rate of up to 30% if it goes untreated. There is also a vaccine that travelers can use to protect themselves in areas where typhoid is endemic. However, protection afforded by the vaccine is not lifelong and those who may be exposed may need to have a booster dose.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Typhoid fever is caused by the bacterium *Salmonella typhi*, which infects the blood and the intestines. Paratyphoid fever is a milder condition caused by related species of *Salmonella*. The two are sometimes referred to as enteric fever, because of the site of infection. *Salmonella* species also cause food poisoning and only infect humans—there is no animal reservoir. At one time, typhoid was confused with typhus, because of the similarity between the symptoms. However, it is now known that the causes and pathology of the two diseases are very different.

The symptoms of typhoid include high fever, chills, cough, muscle pain, weakness, stomach pain, headache, and a rash made up of flat, rose-colored spots. Diarrhea is a less common symptom of typhoid fever, even though it is a gastrointestinal disease. Sometimes there are mental changes, known as "typhoid psychosis." A characteristic feature of typhoid psychosis is plucking at the bedclothes, if the patient is confined to bed.

Typhoid fever is diagnosed by identification of *S. typhi* in blood or in stool samples. Left untreated, fever may persist for many months, leading to potentially fatal complications. For instance, the mucosal walls of the



Henry Frederick, Prince of Wales (1594–1612), died of typhoid fever at the age of 18. He was the eldest son of King James I of England (1566–1625). *HIP/Art Resource, NY.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

MULTI-DRUG RESISTANCE: Multi-drug resistance is a phenomenon that occurs when an infective agent loses its sensitivity against two or more of the drugs that are used against it.

TYPHUS: A disease caused by various species of *Rickettsia*, characterized by a fever, rash, and delirium. Insects such as lice and chiggers transmit typhus. Two forms of typhus, epidemic disease and scrub typhus, are fatal if untreated.

intestine may weaken, allowing the infection to spread into the bowel. Typhoid fever has a 1% fatality rate in the United States, assuming prompt treatment with antibiotics. Without treatment, the death rate rises to about 10%. In parts of Africa and Asia, where the disease is far more common, mortality rates from typhoid may approach 30%.

Typhoid fever is spread through food and water contaminated by people with typhoid shedding *S. typhi.* About 1–4% of typhoid cases become chronic carriers—that is, they continue to shed *S. typhi* in their urine and feces for more than a year after recovery. Typhoid is also transmitted by water into which contaminated sewage has been discharged.

Scope and Distribution

Typhoid has long been a feared human disease. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), there are around 17 million cases of typhoid fever each year, of which 600,000 prove fatal. This is considered to be a conservative estimate of the scale of the problem. Typhoid fever is endemic in the Indian subcontinent and in parts of Asia, Africa, and Central and South America. In some of these places, typhoid is one of the top five causes of death. The peak age for contracting typhoid in countries where it is endemic is between five and 19 years, although it can affect people of either sex at any age.

In the United States, around 400 cases of typhoid fever are reported each year, of which 70% are contracted during travel to areas where it is endemic. In England and Wales, there are 150–200 cases of typhoid annually, again mainly in returning travelers. People have been known to develop typhoid after less than one week's stay in an endemic country. The disease has been all but eliminated from developed nations, although sporadic cases such as those mentioned above still arise.

Treatment and Prevention

Typhoid fever is treated with antibiotics, with ampicillin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, and ciprofloxacin being the preferred choices. However, a major concern is the emergence of multi-drug resistant strains of *S. typhi* in parts of Asia and South America. Therefore, the choice of antibiotic should be guided by local knowledge of which drugs will be effective against the strain of *S. typhi* involved in the infection.

There are two vaccines against typhoid—oral and injectable—and they are about 75% effective. Travelers should consult their national public health authority as to whether they need to be vaccinated against typhoid, if they are going to a country where the disease is endemic. Even if they have been previously vaccinated, a booster dose may be necessary.

Taking care to avoid risky food or drink is as important as being vaccinated in protecting against typhoid fever. All drinking water should either be bottled or boiled rapidly for one minute. Ice should be avoided, since it could have been made from contaminated water. Travelers in countries where there is typhoid should only eat food that is thoroughly cooked and is still hot and steaming. Raw vegetables and fruits should be avoided—unless they can be peeled, in which case hands should be carefully washed first. Many travelers get sick with typhoid—and other gastrointestinal illnesses—by eating food they bought from street vendors. It is impossible to observe a high standard of cooking hygiene under street conditions.

People who have had typhoid fever ought to assume they have carrier status, unless a series of stool samples analyses for *S. typhi* proves negative for the bacterium. Therefore, they should not prepare or serve food, and should take extra care with personal hygiene.

Impacts and Issues

Typhoid continues to be a problem worldwide because of poor sanitation, which forces people into frequent contact with contaminated water and food. Inadequate sewage disposal continues to be an issue in too many places, placing the populations at risk of many diseases, including typhoid fever.

The higher mortality rates from typhoid fever seen in many developing countries can be attributed to a weak—or non-existent—healthcare infrastructure, which does not provide ready access to the antibiotics that could cure the disease. War and natural disasters, such as earthquakes, disrupt clean water supplies, which is why typhoid has often accompanied such disasters, both today and throughout the course of history.

For example, the WHO reported a significant outbreak of typhoid fever in Kinshasa in the Democratic Republic of the Congo involving a total of 13,400 cases by mid-December 2004. The fatality rate from the outbreak was 22% (134 deaths), mainly due to peritonitis, a severe inflammation of the lining of the abdominal cavity. Very poor sanitation and lack of access to clean drinking water had been reported in the affected areas. The number of cases increased to over 42,000 through the early months of 2005, while the death toll mounted to 214. The medical charity Médicins sans Frontières Belgium helped to provide clean water which, along with other control measures including health education, began to bring the outbreak under control.

See Also *Travel and Infectious Disease; War and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilks, David, Mark Farrington, and David Rubenstein. *The Infectious Diseases Manual.* 2nd ed. Malden, UK: Blackwell, 2003.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Typhoid Fever." January 10, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/typhoidfever_g.htm> (accessed May 2, 2007).

World Health Organization. Initiative for Vaccine Research. "Typhoid." <http://www.who.int/vaccine_research/diseases/typhoid/en/index.html> (accessed May 2, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

IN CONTEXT: TYPHOID MARY

Mary Mallon, a known carrier of typhoid, refused to stop behaving in ways that risked spreading the disease and forced the government to jail her to protect the public health. The first person in North America to be identified as a healthy typhoid carrier, Mallon was an Irish-born cook who worked for wealthy New Yorkers. In 1906, she was employed in the rented summer home of banker Charles Henry Warren in Oyster Bay, Long Island, when typhoid fever struck six people in the household of eleven. The owners of the rental house hired investigators to determine the source of the epidemic. The detectives traced forty-seven cases of typhoid and three deaths to Mallon.

A contagious bacterial disease, typhoid had a fatality rate of ten percent, although milder cases also occurred. Typhoid bacteria remain in the intestine, liver, and bile ducts until they are transmitted via urine and feces. Victims suffer fever, chills, headaches, malaise, severe cramping, and diarrhea or constipation. The symptoms often continue for over a month. While sick, persons with typhoid weaken and became susceptible to complications such as dehydration or intestinal bleeding.

As a single, working class woman, Mallon needed to work in order to support herself. She was reputedly an excellent cook, but was unaware of the germ theory of disease and of the simple measures (such as handwashing) necessary to prevent spreading disease. Investigators discovered that thirty percent of the bacteria excreted by Mallon in her urine were the bacteria that cause typhoid.

In March 1907, New York City health officials literally dragged Mallon kicking and screaming into a city ambulance. They deposited her in a small cottage on North Brother Island that formed part of the grounds of an isolation hospital. Although she was released for brief periods, Mallon died in captivity in 1938 at the age of sixty-nine, after spending twenty-six years in her island prison.

Typhus

Introduction

Typhus is a group of diseases caused by bacteria belonging to the *Rickettsiae* genus. They are spread by ticks and small insects and are found in specific geographical locations around the world. Typhus has caused millions of deaths over the course of human history, being particularly common under conditions of war, famine, and mass migration.

There are four main types of typhus. Epidemic typhus is spread by lice and tends to occur in conditions of overcrowding and poor hygiene. The spotted fevers (sometimes also known as tick-borne typhus), like Rocky Mountain spotted fever, are a group of tick and mite-borne rickettsial diseases found in parts of the United States, Africa, India, Australia, and parts of the Mediterranean. Endemic flea-borne typhus is spread by rats and occurs in rodent-infested environments such as garbage dumps and markets. Scrub typhus is spread by mites and is found in parts of South East Asia. Typhus is a potentially fatal disease, with prevention depending on control of its insect vectors (transmitters from one host to another).

Nurses on duty in a typhus hospital in Narva, Estonia (now known as the Republic of Estonia) are shown during an outbreak in 1920. The nurses received ten cents a day; half of the staff died of typhus during the outbreak. *© Bettmann/Corbis.*

BU
AVER
LUB
"JEAN, YOU'RE DOING FINE.
JUST CARRY ON AS YOU ARE.
THE TROOPS CAN LEARN LOTS"
FOR INSTANCE:-
DID YOU KNOW?
TYPHUS IS
TRANSMITTED
BY
LICE
GOODALE

Allied soldiers read a poster warning of the dangers of catching typhus from lice in Italy, 1943.
© Hulton-Deutsch Collection/Corbis.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Typhus was confused with typhoid fever until the 1830s, when it was shown to be a separate disease, although the similarity between the two names persists. The *Rickettsiae*, which are the causative agents of the various forms of typhus, get their name from Howard Taylor Ricketts (1871–1910), the American pathologist who discovered them, and who also died from typhus. They are Gram-negative cocci or bacilli, having an oval shape or existing as chains. Gram-negative refers to the way in which the bacteria react with Gram's stain, which is used to prepare samples for microscopy.

The specific *Rickettsiae* associated with the different types of typhus have been identified. Therefore, *R. prowazekii* is the agent of epidemic louse-born typhus, and *R. rickettsii, R. conorii, R. africae, R. japonica R. australis* and several other species are involved in tick-borne typhus, each organism being found in a different geographical area. Endemic flea-borne typhus is associated with *R. mooseri*, and *R. tsutugamusi* is the agent of scrub typhus.

The incubation time of typhus is 12–15 days. The bacteria enter the bloodstream and can spread throughout the body. They invade the endothelial cells, which line the inner walls of the small veins, arteries and capillaries and make them swell up. This can cause thrombosis, or blood clotting, and in addition, small characteristic nodules made up of white blood cells and platelets may develop in the blood.

The early symptoms of all kinds of typhus are nonspecific and may range from mild to severe, consisting of fever, headache, an extensive rash, and perhaps mental confusion. Symptoms persist for about two weeks, but several months may pass before complete recovery occurs. A characteristic eschar, or thick blackened scab, is seen at the site of the vector bite in scrub typhus and some of the spotted fevers. It is not uncommon for typhus to be improperly diagnosed.

Epidemic typhus may cause a high fever, headache, chills, confusion, and limb pain, progressing to agitation, coma, and many other complications. Photophobia, which is an aversion to light, vomiting, and a rash that starts on the trunk can also occur. Epidemic typhus is a far more severe condition than endemic typhus, whose symptoms are milder, but similar.

Rocky Mountain spotted fever causes headache, fever, abdominal pain, and a rash that begins on the hands and feet and spreads to the rest of the body. The other spotted fevers cause similar symptoms, but with some regional variations. So, for example, African tick-bite fever is not usually associated with a rash, and its symptoms are very similar to those of North Asian tick typhus. Scrub typhus causes breathing difficulties, cough, fever, headache, sweating, swollen glands, a swelling at the site of the bite, and a rash starting on the trunk.

WORDS TO KNOW

ARTHROPOD: A member of the largest single animal phylum, consisting of organisms with segmented bodies, jointed legs or wings, and exoskeletons.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

ESCHAR: Any scab or crust forming on the skin as a result of a burn or disease is an eschar. Scabs from cuts or scrapes are not eschars.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

MACULOPAPULAR: A macule is any discolored skin spot that is flush or level with the surrounding skin surface: a papule is a small, solid bump on the skin. A maculopapular skin disturbance is one that combines macules and papules.

PROPHYLAXIS: Treatment to prevent the onset or recurrence of disease.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

Rickettsiae may damage blood vessels, causing clotting and even gangrene, the death of tissue at the extremities of the body because of oxygen deprivation. This can lead to the loss of limbs or digits (fingers and toes). The infection can also lead to organ failure. Other complications may occur, depending upon the type of typhus involved. For instance, tick-borne typhus may result in liver and kidney failure, while brain damage and coma can occur with scrub typhus.

Typhus is usually more severe in adults than in children. The introduction of antibiotics has reduced overall mortality (death) rates to between three to four percent. Untreated, the mortality rate of epidemic typhus, which is the most serious form of the disease, ranges from five to 40 percent; in healthy individuals, the mortality rate is around 20 percent, but can be as high as 60 percent in elderly, malnourished, or debilitated individuals. Mortality from treated murine typhus is about one to four percent, and is less than one percent for scrub typhus.

Those who survive endemic typhus generally have lifelong immunity to another attack, but may relapse many years later with a milder form called Brill-Zinsser disease. This occurs because the *Rickettsiae* may linger even after antibiotic treatment, especially if this has been incomplete or the person is malnourished. People surviving other forms of typhus generally have long-term or lifelong immunity from further attacks.

Transmission of typhus is from an animal or human host infected with *Rickettsiae* through an arthropod (flea, tick, mite) vector. In epidemic, louse-borne typhus, the bacteria pass—usually under crowded, unhygienic conditions—from one person to another via the body (clothing) louse, which thrives on worn, unwashed clothing. Head and pubic lice do not usually acts as vectors for *Rickettsiae*.

The *Rickettsiae* live in the digestive tract of the louse and are shed in its feces. Transmission usually occurs when the louse bites a human for a blood meal, defecating as it eats. The bite itches and scratching it crushes the louse and releases the bacteria from contaminated louse feces into the bloodstream. *Rickettsia* can survive for many months in dust containing dried louse feces and may be transmitted in this form through the eyes or mouth.

Endemic typhus, sometimes called murine typhus, is carried by the flea *Xenopsylla cheopsis*, with rats, mice, opossums, raccoons, and skunks acting as the animal reservoirs. In tick-borne typhus, including the spotted fevers, rodents, dogs, cats, opossums, and hares act as animal reservoirs in various locations, with the vectors usually being ticks. However, Rickettsiael pox, which occurs in Russia, South Africa, and Korea, is carried by mites and *R. felis* infection, which is similar to endemic typhus, is spread by cat and dog fleas in parts of Europe and South America. Finally, scrub typhus is spread by mite bites.

Scope and Distribution

Typhus is a disease that has killed millions over the course of human history and is particularly prevalent under conditions of war, famine, and natural disaster where hygiene is poor and overcrowding and malnutrition are common. First described in the fifteenth century, typhus has been known as famine fever, ship fever, camp fever, and gaol (jail) fever, names that reflect the conditions under which it is most commonly found. It arrived in Europe in 1489 with soldiers who had been fighting in Cyprus. An outbreak between 1557–1559 killed around ten percent of the English population.

In the nineteenth century, typhus ravaged Napoleon's troops on their Moscow campaign, typhus hit Ireland between 1816–1819, and again during the famine of the 1840s. London experienced a serious typhus epidemic in the 1840s during a time of railway construction and building trade strikes that led to dislocation and deprivation in the city, and the disease began to claim more lives than smallpox.

During World War I (1914–1918), typhus caused 150,000 deaths in Serbia in 1915, and this epidemic was eventually brought under control by a British sanitary team. In the four years from 1918, epidemic louse-borne typhus caused 30 million cases and three million deaths in Eastern Europe and Russia. This epidemic was triggered by war and revolution, food and fuel shortages, and economic collapse, and was spread by the railways that enabled mass movement of people.

A famous victim of typhus was the teenage diarist of the second World War (1939–1945), Anne Frank, who died of typhus in the Bergen-Belsen concentration camp in 1945. Frank was just one victim in an epidemic which had a mortality of around 50 percent, killing almost 35,000 of the inhabitants of the camp.

More recently, in 1997, the World Health Organization (WHO) reported an outbreak of nearly 24,000 cases of epidemic typhus in Burundi, the largest outbreak in 50 years. The epidemic began with 216 cases occurring in a prison in N'Gozi, ideal conditions for contracting the disease, and then spread to the malnourished residents of refugee camps in the central highlands. WHO joined local teams in investigating the focal points of the outbreak, handing out doses of antibiotics to get the epidemic under control.

Epidemic typhus now occurs mainly in northeastern and central Africa. It is rare in most developed countries and would generally only be seen in communities and populations where body louse infestations are common, such as in refugee and prisoner populations during wars or famine.

In the eastern and central United States, around 15 cases of epidemic typhus have been reported among people with no history of lice infestation, but all described contact with flying squirrels and their nests. Therefore, campers and wildlife workers could be at risk of typhus if they come into contact with the squirrels or their nests, which are typically made in houses or in tree holes. The insect vector in such cases is the flying squirrel louse or flea.

Epidemic typhus today occurs sporadically outside the United States in cool mountainous regions of Africa, Asia, and Central and South America, especially during the colder months when louse-infested clothing may not be washed frequently. Travelers who do not come into contact with either lice or people with lice are not at risk in areas where epidemic typhus occurs. However, healthcare workers and military personnel who do have such contact may be at risk of contracting typhus.

Tick-borne typhus occurs in many places throughout the world, including the eastern United States, Brazil, the Mediterranean basin, the African veldt, India, and Australia. For instance, Rocky Mountain spotted fever occurs in Mexico, Central America, and South America, while tick-borne disease caused by *R. slovaca* is found in Europe. The spring and summer months are the peak times for transmission of tick-borne typhus. Travelers taking part in outdoor activities such as camping or hiking, could be at risk of acquiring tick-borne typhus if they do not take adequate precautions against tick bites.

Endemic flea-borne typhus causes sporadic cases in locations worldwide where humans and rodents live close together, such as in markets and garbage dumps. Flea infested rats are found all year round in humid tropical climates, and are more common in the warmer winter months in temperate regions. In the United States, cases have occurred in southern California and southern Texas, more commonly among adults. Travelers to places where there are rat-infested buildings and homes, especially by rivers and coastal port regions, could be at risk of contracting endemic typhus. Other animals, such as feral cats and opossums may carry the flea vectors of the disease, and contact with them should be avoided in endemic countries.

Scrub typhus is acquired from the bite of larval mites living on waist high Imperata grass that grows in previously cleared jungle around villages and in plantations. It occurs in South East Asia, the Indian subcontinent, Sri Lanka, and the other Indian Ocean islands, Papua New Guinea, and North Queensland in Australia. No cases have occurred in the United States except among travelers coming back from endemic areas. The incidence of scrub typhus worldwide is unknown, because its rather non-specific symptoms make it difficult to diagnose and there is a lack of diagnostic lab facilities in many parts of the world where it is endemic.

■ Treatment and Prevention

In 1948, the antibiotic chloramphenicol was introduced for the treatment of scrub typhus. Tetracycline became an alternative drug but, these days, doxycycline is the recommended treatment. Some antibiotic-resistant cases of scrub typhus have been reported. In areas where this is so, first-line treatment with rifampicin or ciprofloxacin might be recommended. The type of antibiotic treatment for all forms of typhus is similar.

Lab tests are important to determine the cause of the disease, but treatment is usually begun before the results of these are available to prevent complications. Treatment usually continues for up to three days after the fever has cleared.

There is no vaccine against typhus. Where there is epidemic typhus, mass prophylaxis with doxycycline is often necessary, as was accomplished in the Burundi outbreak. Long-term prevention efforts depend upon controlling the insect vector and the animal reservoirs of *Rickettsia*. Therefore, for louse-borne typhus, clean clothes, dusted with one percent malathion or one percent permethrin insecticide helps protect against the disease.

Prevention of endemic typhus depends upon controlling the local rodent population, while those at risk should use insect repellent to keep the fleas away. Tick-borne typhus can be prevented by the use of DEET (diethyltoluamide) or permethrin. Finally, prevention of scrub typhus is aided by clearing jungle grass within or near affected villages. Travelers should protect themselves with jungle boots, long trousers, and impregnate their clothing with DEET or permethrin. Prophylactic doxycycline may also be useful for those who must travel through high-risk areas.

Travelers are generally not at high risk of developing typhus via exposure to an infected person, except in cases of epidemic typhus. However, people traveling to any of the many countries where typhus is endemic seek advice from their healthcare provider about precautions. In general, covering the body to avoid tick and fleabites, and frequent washing and changing of clothes will help prevent typhus. Insecticides also have an important role to play in keeping the vectors under control.

■ Impacts and Issues

Typhus has long been one of the great human killers. It remains a threat in many parts of the world where the relevant animal reservoirs and disease vectors are not adequately controlled, and where sanitation and the health infrastructure are poor. War, famine, and mass migration have created epidemics of typhus in the past and will continue to do so, especially in the absence of an effective vaccine against the disease.

The advent of antibiotic treatment has greatly reduced the death toll from typhus, where it is available. However, in Thailand there have been reports of strains of *Rickettsiae* that are becoming resistant to the drug of choice, doxycycline, Small clinical trials conducted in areas of drug resistance have suggested that rifampicin and azithromycin may be effective alternative treatments. But in case resistance against these drugs also emerges, researchers are focusing on developing a wider range of treatments for all types of typhus.

■ Primary Source Connection

Ludwick Gross (1904–1999) was a physician and medical researcher who pioneered the study of viruses as a possible cause of human cancers. After earning his medical degree in 1929 in his native Poland, Gross began a long association with the Pasteur Institute in Paris, where he met Charles Nicolle (1866–1936), the scientists who unraveled the mystery of how epidemic typhus is transmitted. Gross recounts Nicolle and the significance of his typhus research in the following excerpted memoir.

How Charles Nicolle of the Pasteur Institute Discovered that Epidemic Typhus Is Transmitted by Lice: Reminiscences from My Years at the Pasteur Institute in Paris

Until the first decade of this century, our information about epidemic, i.e., exanthematic typhus was rather scarce. We knew only that there existed a very dangerous, easily communicable disease, which decimated populations during wars, hunger, or flood, spreading with great speed and affecting large numbers of people. After World War I, 20–30 million people died in Eastern Europe from this disease, and an additional several million died during and after World War II. Crowding, the scarcity of clean clothes, and dirt were the principal factors enabling the spread of typhus. The disease causes high fever and maculo-papular [small, red, raised] eruptions of the skin. Typhus is similar to a disease that occurs in the Rocky Mountains in the United States and is transmitted by ticks.

The fact that epidemic typhus is transmitted by lice was discovered by Dr. Charles Nicolle; a discovery for which he received the Nobel Prize in 1928. I met Dr. Nicolle in 1934 at the Pasteur Institute in Paris during my years as a guest investigator. I spoke to him several times in the corridor adjoining my laboratory. At my invitation he came to visit. He was a tall man, distinguished looking, impeccably dressed, lean, and slightly stooped, with dry skin and sparkling eyes. He was 68 years old at that time. It was difficult to talk with him because he was hard of hearing. In spite of his listening device, with its batteries and wires, which he was carrying, one had to almost shout to be understood. He was, like many Frenchmen, very polite and attentive. He agreed, at my request, to spend some time in my laboratory at the Pasteur Institute, and talk about his discovery.

Before long, still a few years before World War II, he came to my laboratory. He arrived wearing a shirt with a starched collar and starched cuffs, and sat himself comfortably in a large chair. He told the following story.

"I was delegated, some 30 years ago," recalled Dr. Nicolle, "to become director of the Pasteur Institute in Tunis, and decided to do something about typhus, which was decimating the local population. The first step was to try to transmit the disease to experimental animals. I injected guinea pigs with blood from patients with typhus and observed that, at least in some of these animals, the injection produced only high temperature. I realized, nevertheless, that even though some of them did not develop fever, they still carried the causative agent. This way we learned that typhus could exist, at least in some species, without any symptoms, except now and then, only fever. The most important point, however, was to discover how it was transmitted from man to man under natural life conditions. I learned this by accident. Tunis was full of typhus patients; the hospital was full and the number of new patients increased every day. Not only was every bed occupied and waiting rooms filled, but patients were waiting in front of the hospital, on the streets, to be admitted. At that point I made the crucial observation," said Dr. Nicolle, "that patients infected others out on the street, and also that their clothing was infectious; service personnel at the hospital and also in the laundry room became infected. The moment the patients were admitted to the hospital, however, after they had a hot bath and were dressed in hospital clothing, they ceased to be infectious. There was no longer fear of disease transmission in a hospital room full of patients. This observation was so simple and uncomplicated that it could have been made not necessarily by a physician, but by an administrator without professional medical training. I determined that there must therefore exist a transmitting vector, in the clothing and underwear of the patients. I anticipated," said Dr. Nicolle, "that most probably lice could be responsible for the transmission of typhus from man to man."

Dr. Nicolle continued his story.

"At the end of June, 1909, I asked Dr. Emile Roux, who was at that time Director of the Pasteur Institute in Paris, for a few chimpanzees. My request was granted, and the chimpanzees arrived promptly. I injected one chimpanzee with blood from a patient suffering from typhus. After several days, I collected from the injected chimpanzee a few lice, and transferred them to another chimpanzee; before long, after about 10 days, this animal developed typhus. I repeated this experiment, with similar results. It was now obvious that typhus was transmitted by lice. That was in September 1909. The first step in the search for typhus control was accomplished. Lice were demonstrated to be the transmitting vectors. The Tunisian government now began intensive measures to limit the typhus epidemic with attempts to combat infestation by lice.

The initial step had been accomplished, but great difficulties were ahead. Typhus is very infectious and many laboratory workers engaged in research on the typhus epidemic became infected accidentally, in the course of their laboratory work, and some of them died of the disease."

Ludwik Gross, M.D.

GROSS, LUDWICK. "HOW CHARLES NICOLLE OF THE PASTEUR INSTITUTE DISCOVERED THAT EPIDEMIC TYPHUS IS TRANSMITTED BY LICE: REMINISCENCES FROM MY YEARS AT THE PASTEUR INSTITUTE IN PARIS." *PROCEEDINGS OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.* (OCTOBER 1996): VOL. 93, 10539–10540.

See Also *Arthropod-borne Disease; Lice Infestation (Pediculosis); Rickettsial Disease; Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Pelis, Kim.*Charles Nicolle, Pasteur's Imperial Missionary: Typhus and Tunisia.* Rochester: University of Rochester, 2006.

Periodicals

Cowan, George. "Rickettsial Diseases: the Typhus Group of Fevers - a Review." *Postgraduate Medical Journal.* 76 (2000): 269–272.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Traveler's Health: Rickettsial Infections." 2005–2006 <http://www2.ncid.cdc.gov/travel/yb/utils/ybGet.asp?section=dis&obj=rickettsial.htm> (accessed May 5, 2007).

Susan Aldridge

UNICEF

Introduction

Founded by the United Nations (UN), the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF, retained from its original name United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund) is an organization responsible for providing humanitarian assistance to children in developing countries. Its services promote the development of community groups for the well-being of local children.

As of 2006, UNICEF, headquartered in New York City, participates in efforts to improve children's rights in 191 developing and transitional countries. It is actively established within 156 developing countries. UNICEF works with organizations around the world to counter the devastating effects that abuse, disease, discrimination, exploitation, neglect, poverty, and violence have on children.

History and Scientific Foundations

UNICEF was founded in December 11, 1946, to furnish clothing, food, health care, and other necessities to European children adversely affected by World War II (1939–1945). The U.N. expanded its charter in 1950, making it responsible for children's welfare in over 150 developing countries.

In 1953, UNICEF became a permanent part of the United Nations. Its first major activity was a global campaign to eliminate the infectious disease yaws that, at the time, affected millions of children. The disfiguring tropical disease of the bones, joints, and skin is caused by the bacterium *Treponema pertenue*. The incidence of yaws was reduced among children with the use of penicillin.

In 1959, UNICEF became guided by the U.N.'s Declaration of the Rights of the Child, which made it easier to establish international standards for children's rights in education, health care, nutrition, protection, and shelter.

The Nobel Peace Prize was awarded to UNICEF in 1965 for "the promotion of brotherhood among nations." UNICEF highlighted the rights of children in 1979—naming it the U.N. International Year of the Child.

During the 1980s, UNICEF adopted the International Code of Marketing of Breast-milk Substitutes (to promote breast milk use); launched Child Survival and Development Revolution (founded on low-cost techniques applied to breastfeeding, child development, and immunization); and adopted the Convention on the Rights of the Child (which became a global human rights treaty).

In the decade of the 1990s, UNICEF sponsored the World Summit for Children, whose goal is to improve children's education, health, and nutrition. UNICEF also emphasized the harmful influence that armed conflicts have on children. In the 2000s, UNICEF sponsors the Global Movement for Children and organized a historic Special Session of the UN General Assembly that was dedicated to children's rights.

Applications and Research

The United Nations Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC) is the parent organization to UNICEF. The five primary goals of UNICEF are: (1) establish international rights for children and create an international ethical standard of behavior toward children; (2) provide survival and developmental opportunities for children; (3) ensure that children are provided basic care, education, gender equality, health, nutrition, and nurturing; (4) protect children from abuse, exploitation, and violence; and (5) counter infectious diseases, especially HIV/AIDS, which has spread among children.

UNICEF upholds the United Nation's Convention on the Rights of the Child (CRC). The CRC is an international convention that establishes the cultural, economic, political, and social rights of children. UNICEF also participates in the Global Movement for Children, an international effort dedicated to building a better world for children by assuring that violations of their rights do not occur.

In some countries, such as the United States and Canada, fundraising for UNICEF is especially popular at Halloween when its "Trick-Or-Treat for UNICEF" program takes place, where children go from house to house collecting donations for UNICEF.

Impacts and Issues

UNICEF works to counter diseases within children around the world. Its Immunization Plus program has made significant improvements in children's health with respect to infectious diseases over the last three decades. UNICEF provides information, services, and products to fight childhood diseases such as educational programs, immunizations, and nutritional supplements. However, UNICEF estimates that two million children still die from diseases that are preventable with inexpensive vaccines.

UNICEF is especially concerned with children who are targets of abuse, exploitation, and violence. Its child protection programs include the countering of such practices as childhood marriages, child labor, female genital mutilation, sexual exploitation, slave trafficking, and other crimes.

In September 2000, the Millennium Declaration was established at the U.N. Millennium Summit in New York City. Among the global statistics held at the time of the Summit concerning children, hunger, poverty, and diseases are: nearly 600 million children live on less than one dollar (U.S. equivalence) a day; over 500 million do not have access to sanitation facilities; around 15 million have seen one or both parents die from HIV/AIDS (human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome); and over ten million die of hunger and preventable diseases each year.

UNICEF personnel work to break the connection between poverty, hunger, and diseases among children. Poverty contributes to hunger and malnutrition in children, which, leads to increased incidences in diseases, which, in turn, is a leading factor that causes over one-half of all children's deaths under five years of age in developing countries.

The goals of the Millennium Declaration state that by the year 2015: it will reduce by 50% the proportion of people living on less than one dollar per day and the proportion of people who suffer from hunger. Consequently, UNICEF is dedicated to reducing hunger and poverty in children throughout developing countries. Immunization for infectious diseases is the critical factor in UNICEF's work. As a result, UNICEF has become an international leader in providing vaccines to children. UNICEF purchases and distributes vaccines to over 40% of children located in developing countries. It also works to create and maintain local health systems and to improve at-home child care.

SEE ALSO *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Tropical Infectious Diseases; United Nations Millennium Goals and Infectious Disease; Vaccines and Vaccine Development.*

WORDS TO KNOW

IMMUNODEFICIENCY DISORDER: In immunodeficiency disorders, part of the body's immune system is missing or defective, thus impairing the body's ability to fight infections. As a result, the person with an immunodeficiency disorder will have frequent infections that are generally more severe and last longer than usual.

NUTRITIONAL SUPPLEMENTS: Nutritional supplements are substances necessary to health, such as calcium or protein, that are taken in concentrated form to compensate for dietary insufficiency, poor absorption, unusually high demand for that nutrient, or other reasons.

SANITATION: Sanitation is the use of hygienic recycling and disposal measures that prevent disease and promote health through sewage disposal, solid waste disposal, waste material recycling, and food processing and preparation.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Maddocks, Steven. *UNICEF.* Chicago, IL: Raintree, 2004.

UNICEF. *1946–2006: Sixty Years for Children.* New York: UNICEF, 2006.

Web Sites

NobelPrize.org, Nobel Foundation. "The Nobel Peace Price 1965." <http://nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/peace/laureates/1965/> (accessed June 17, 2007).

UNICEF. "Home website of UNICEF." <http://www.unicef.org/> (accessed June 17, 2007).

UNICEF. "A Promise to Children." <http://www.unicef.org/wsc/> (accessed June 17, 2007).

United Nations. "Millennium Campaign." <http://www.millenniumcampaign.org/> (accessed June 17, 2007).

United Nations Cyber School Bus. "Declaration of the Rights of the Child (1959)." <http://www0.un.org/cyberschoolbus/humanrights/resources/child.asp> (accessed June 17, 2007).

United Nations Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC). "Home website of ECOSOC." <http://www.un.org/ecosoc/> (accessed June 17, 2007).

William Arthur Atkins

United Nations Millennium Goals and Infectious Disease

Introduction

In 2000, the United Nations (UN) adopted a series of goals designed to improve the lives of people throughout the world by reducing poverty, hunger, disease, maternal and infant mortality, by providing better education for children, equal opportunities for women, and moving toward a healthier environment. According to the UN, these eight Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) are providing "a framework for countries around the world for development, as well as time-bound targets by which progress can be measured." Several of these goals are aimed specifically at reducing the incidence and prevalence of infectious disease, most notably HIV, malaria, and tuberculosis, as well as the prevention of infectious disease, especially measles, among children.

Data subsequently collected by the UN suggests that several countries in sub-Saharan Africa are successfully lowering HIV infection rates and expanding treatment, thus demonstrating that the war against AIDS is not a hopeless endeavor. In addition, the resurgence of tuberculosis and malaria in Africa have been linked to the HIV/AIDS epidemic due to the increased vulnerability of immunocompromised persons (those with weakened immune systems) who are co-infected with both HIV and either malaria or tuberculosis. However, the resurgence of malaria and tuberculosis is also independent of HIV/AIDS, and combating these diseases is addressed separately in the Millennium goals.

The Millennium Goals pertaining to the global control of infectious disease include 1) "Reduce child mortality," a major part of which is the reduction of childhood deaths from measles through vaccination programs, and 2) "Combat HIV/AIDS, malaria and other diseases," which will be achieved mainly by international aid to poor nations to help implement prevention and treatment measures that are known to be effective.

History and Policy Response

HIV/AIDS

Over the past 25 years, more than 25 million people have died from AIDS. This death toll among adults in their sexual and occupational prime has resulted in the orphaning of 15 million children and economic devastation, which has in turn, exacerbated poverty and hunger. HIV/AIDS has become the leading cause of death among adults ages 15–59, and has afflicted both genders equally worldwide. It has taken most of these 25 years for the world community to mount a strong and concerted response to the epidemic, signified by the adoption of the Declaration of Commitment on HIV/AIDS in June 2001. A major component of this response has been the establishment of The Global Fund to Fight AIDS, Tuberculosis, and Malaria in 2002 to provide low- and middle-income nations with financial aid to help control the epidemic. In addition, the prices of some AIDS medicines have been significantly reduced. Groups such as the World Health Organization (WHO) and The Joint United Nations Program on HIV/AIDS (UNAIDS) have launched the "Three by Five Initiative," which has helped to substantially increase the number of people receiving antiretroviral treatment.

Despite these efforts, the overall growth of the HIV epidemic worldwide continues to overwhelm the effect of current efforts. Several countries report success in reducing HIV infection rates through programs that promote behavior changes such as reducing the number of sexual partners, using condoms, and avoiding sharing needles. However, infection rates overall are still growing. Approximately 39 million people globally were infected with HIV in 2005, while some 4.1 million people became infected with HIV and an estimated 2.8 million died from AIDS. The *Human Development Report 2005* of the United Nations Development Program (UNDP) concluded that the HIV/AIDS pandemic had done more to reverse human development than any other single factor. Sub-Saharan Africa remains the center of the epidemic. With just over 10% of the world population, 64% of HIV-positive people and in some areas, up to 90% of children under age 15 are infected with the virus. Twelve million sub-Saharan African children are orphans. Women comprise 59% of HIV-positive adults in sub-Saharan Africa (13.2 million people). HIV prevalence among people aged 15–49 in sub-Saharan Africa appears to be leveling off, although at an extremely high rate. However, this apparent stabilization reflects the fact that as new people acquire the virus, nearly the same number die from AIDS.

Malaria

A greater awareness of the heavy toll exacted by malaria has been matched in recent years with greater commitment to contain the disease. Increased funding coming from the World Bank's Global Fund to Fight AIDS, Tuberculosis, and Malaria, along with the United States President's Malaria Initiative and the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, among others, are expected to encourage important malaria control interventions, particularly insecticide-treated net use and access to effective anti-malarial drugs. The sale of insecticide-treated mosquito nets has increased ten-fold, but mostly among urban-dwellers. Poor rural communities in endemic areas remain extremely vulnerable to malaria.

Tuberculosis

The number of new tuberculosis cases grow by about 1% annually, with the most rapid increases occurring in sub-Saharan Africa. In the Commonwealth of Independent States (the nations comprising the former Soviet Union), tuberculosis incidence increased during the 1990s, but peaked around 2001, and has since fallen. Worldwide, tuberculosis kills about 1.7 million people per year. Of the nearly nine million new cases in 2004, almost 9% were among people infected with HIV.

Measles

One major aspect of the MDGs concerning child mortality includes reducing measles deaths through immunization. Measles vaccination of children is one of the most cost-effective public health interventions on record. However, the disease killed nearly a half-million children in 2004, and left many others blind or deaf. A majority of unvaccinated children live in China, Congo, India, Indonesia, Nigeria, and Pakistan. On the other hand, considerable progress in measles immunization has been achieved in Latin America, the Caribbean, and sub-Saharan Africa. According to the MDG report, sub-Saharan Africa achieved the largest reduction in measles deaths of any region, with a decrease of nearly 60% between 1999 and 2004.

WORDS TO KNOW

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

INCIDENCE: The number of new cases of a disease or injury that occur in a population during a specified period of time.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

Three out of the eight Millennium Development Goals and 18 quantitative of the 48 total quantitative indicators monitor progress relate directly to health issues. In May 2005 the United Nations stated that "some developing countries have made impressive gains in achieving the health-related Millennium Development Goals, targets and indicators. However, many more are falling behind. Progress is particularly slow in sub-Saharan Africa."

With regard to reducing child mortality, the U.N. states, "Some progress has taken place in specific countries. However, nearly 11 million children under the age of five die every year globally. In 16 countries, 14 of which are in Africa, levels of under-five mortality are higher than in 1990."

With regard to combating the spread of HIV/AIDS, malaria, and other diseases, the United Nations states "There have been successes in selected countries where they have made progress on reversing the spread of HIV/AIDS. However, the story is bleak in many countries. With three million deaths from HIV/AIDS alone each year, the worsening global pandemic has reversed life expectancy and economic gains in several African countries."

SOURCE: *World Health Organization, Fact Sheet 290, May, 2005*

■ Impacts and Issues

Of the four diseases mentioned in the Millennium Goals report; HIV/AIDS, malaria, tuberculosis, and measles, HIV/AIDS presents the greatest long-term challenge from both technical and policy standpoints. To a large extent, malaria, tuberculosis, and measles require more assiduous application of existing therapies and prevention

WHO AND THE MILLENNIUM DEVELOPMENT GOALS (MDG)

In May 2005 (Fact Sheet 290), the United Nations estimated that "the global estimate of what is required is a doubling of aid from US$ 50 to US$ 100 billion each year to achieve all of the Millennium Development Goals which would require a fivefold increase in donor spending on health (The Zedillo Commission: Monterey Conference)."

Moreover, to reach millennium goals, "the economic and health policies in developing countries must reflect the needs: current health spending in most low-income countries is insufficient for the achievement of the health MDGs. African leaders pledged to raise public spending on health to 15% of GNP at the African summit in 2001."

SOURCE: *World Health Organization*

methods as well as the prevention of resistant strains. While the fight against HIV/AIDS will also require all of these measures, it will additionally require the development of new treatments and vaccines. The AIDS pandemic has helped fuel current malaria and tuberculosis epidemics due to co-infection. Therefore, containing the HIV/AIDS epidemic is the paramount public health challenge worldwide.

The world community has agreed to redouble efforts to control HIV/AIDS, and at the 2005 World Summit Outcome, national political leaders pledged a massive increase in HIV prevention, treatment, and care programs with the aim of approaching the goal of universal access to treatment by the year 2010.These programs have begun to reduce some trends in national HIV prevalence, with recent declines noted in Cambodia, Thailand, Kenya, and Zimbabwe, in urban areas of Burkina Faso and Haiti, and in four states in India. The numbers of people receiving antiretroviral therapy for HIV infection in low- and middle-income countries by December 2005 increased to 1.3 million people, including an eightfold increase from 100,000 to 810,000 treated persons in sub-Saharan Africa between 2003 and 2005 (more than doubling in 2005 alone). The number of people receiving antiretroviral therapy in Asia nearly tripled to 180,000, in 2005.

In response to the call from the UN General Assembly to increase efforts against the AIDS pandemic, UNAIDS and its co-sponsors developed a program to help countries move towards universal access to anti-retroviral treatment and issued a report on these efforts entitled *Towards Universal Access,* which includes practical recommendations on setting and supporting national priorities, including

- ensuring predictable and sustainable financing
- strengthening human resources and systems
- removing the barriers to ensure affordable commodities
- protecting the AIDS-related human rights of people living with HIV, women, and children, and people in vulnerable groups
- setting targets and accountability mechanisms.

In June 2006, five years after the issuance of the Declaration of Commitment on HIV/AIDS, UN member states

- committed to specific actions to achieve the goal of universal access to HIV prevention, treatment, care and support by 2010
- recognized the UNAIDS estimate that $20 billion to $23 billion would be required annually by 2010 to fund sufficient responses
- committed to setting up ambitious national targets and estimated the cost of national plans
- agreed to focus on the key factors of the epidemic such as gender disparity, social and behavioral challenges for young people and stigma and discrimination against AIDS victims.

Political leaders of every persuasion worldwide now agree that the HIV/AIDS epidemic requires an extraordinary response. In order to bring the pandemic under control, among the main challenges in the future will be the need to work more closely and openly with populations impacted most by HIV/AIDS, including men who have sex with men, sex workers, and injecting drug users. Moving from short-term emergency responses to a longer-term response that recognizes the uniqueness of AIDS and is incorporated into national development planning and execution is envisioned. Strategies that are rational and ambitious, striking a balance between prevention and treatment based on adequate urgent funding have been called for to achieve the UN Millennium Development Goals as they relate to infectious disease. With such an urgent approach, progress made to date indicates that a considerable impact on even the HIV/AIDS epidemic could be made in a short period of time.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Antiviral Drugs; Developing Nations and Drug Delivery; Malaria; Médecins Sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders); Measles (Rubeola); Mosquito-borne Disease; Puerperal Fever; Re-emerging Infectious Diseases; Tuberculosis; Vector-borne Disease; War and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

United Nations. "Millennium Development Goals Report 2006." Sections 2.10–11 (Child Mortality from Infectious Disease), Sections 2.14–15 (Malaria and AIDS Goals) <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/mdg/

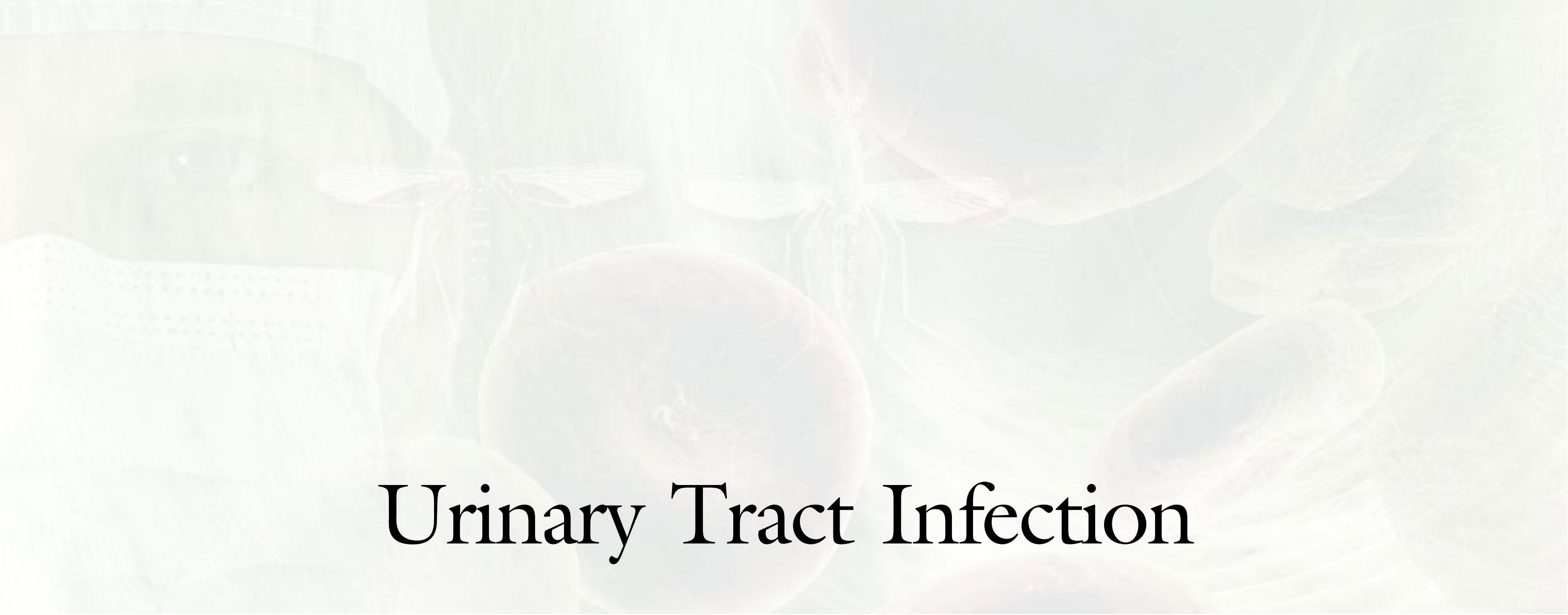
Resources/Static/Products/Progress2006/MDGReport2006.pdf> (accessed March 11, 2007).

United Nations. “Progress towards the Millennium Development Goals, 1990–2005.” <http://mdgs.un.org/unsd/mdg/Host.aspx?Content=Products/Progress2005.htm> (accessed March 11, 2007).

United Nations. “Secretary General’s Report on the Work of the Organization.” <http://mdgs.un.org/unsd/mdg/Resources/Static/Products/SGReports/61_1/a_61_1_e.pdf> (accessed March 11, 2007).

United Nations. “UN Development Group National Monitoring Reports.” <http://www.undg.org/index.cfm?P=87> (accessed March 11, 2007).

Kenneth T. LaPensee



Urinary Tract Infection

Introduction

The urinary tract is the system that produces, stores, and excretes urine. Its purpose is to remove undesirable compounds and some of the waste products of body processes. The human urinary tract is comprised of a pair of kidneys that filter waste from blood, two tubes (ureters) that connect the kidneys to a storage bag called the urinary bladder, a pair of sphincter muscles that help control urine flow, and the exit channel (urethra).

An infection of involving all or a portion of the urinary system is a urinary tract infection (UTI). The infection may remained confined to the urinary system—common sites of infection are the urethra and the bladder, but the kidney(s) can also become infected. Alternatively, a UTI can infrequently spread elsewhere in the body via the circulatory system. Infections of the urinary tract are the second most common type of infection in the human body.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Although some people with a UTI do not display symptoms (asymptomatic), most men and women with a UTI display a range of characteristic symptoms, including urgent and frequent urination, a burning feeling when urinating, frequent urination but only in small amounts, urine that is cloudy and strong-smelling instead of clear yellow and relatively odorless, and blood in the urine (a condition called hematuria).

Pyelonephritis is an infection of the kidney. This usually occurs after the bladder has been infected, and the infection grows up the inner wall of the ureters that connect the bladder with each kidney. A kidney infection is accompanied by a high fever and flank pain. An infection of the bladder is known as cystitis. This infection is associated with abdominal discomfort, frequent and painful urination, and strong-smelling urine. Urethritis, an infection of the urethra, is associated with the buring sensation upon urination.

UTIs begin when bacteria enter the urethra from the outside world. This can occur if the external region around the urethra is touched by hands that have not been properly washed, or it can occur accidently during a bowel movement. Females are more prone to this accidental contact, since their anus is nearer to the urethra than in males. The typical contaminating bacterium is *Escherichia coli*, which is a normal resident of the gastrointestinal tract and so is present in feces.

Another way of contracting an infection is through sexual activity. In women, the pathogens typically involved are the herpes simplex virus and the bacterium *Chlamydia trachomatis*, which are normal causes of sexually transmitted disease. In men, *C. trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, (the bacterium that causes gonorrhea) are typically involved.

Scope and Distribution

While they occur both in males and females, UTIs are almost a fact of life for some women. The chances that a woman will have a bladder infection during her liftime is about 50%. Physicians are not sure why women have more urinary infections than men, but one factor may be anatomical—a woman's urethra is short, allowing bacteria to access the bladder quickly. Also, a woman's urethra opens near sources of bacteria from the anus and vagina. In addition, post-menopausal women tend to be more infection-prone, since hormonal change makes the urinary tract walls thinner and more susceptible to infection. Both men and women who are sexually active with multiple partners also tend to have more urinary tract infections.

Another factor that contributes to the development of a UTI is the presence of an obstruction in the urinary tract; in men this can be an enlarged prostate. Other conditions that can predispose a person to UTIs include kidney stones, diabetes, and diseases or drugs that impair the function of the immune system. In addition, extended use of a catheter (tube) to help drain the bladder can increase the risk of a UTI. Epidemiologists estimate that a catheterized patient in a hospital has a 10% greater chance of developing a UTI for each day that the same catheter is in place. This is because bacteria readily adhere to catheter material and form biofilms, which can then migrate upwards towards the bladder.

Treatment and Prevention

UTIs are often treated using antibiotics, especially if they cause troublesome symptoms. These infections can be minimized by drinking plenty of water, which prevents urine from stagnating. Cranberry juice is also beneficial for some people, since a compound in the juice can outcompete bacteria for a specific attachment site on the bladder wall. In addition, wiping from front to back after a bowel movement lessens the chance that bacteria in feces will be accidentally deposited at the end of the urethra.

Impacts and Issues

The majority of urinary tract infections can be treated successfully and the patient suffers no lasting ill effects. However, kidney infections can be a serious complication of an untreated UTI. In addition, a chronic or complicated UTI in a pregnant woman increases the risk of premature birth or lower than average birth weight, which can pose risks for the newborn.

Urinary tract infections are a special concern for persons who have spinal cord injuries or who are immobile. If the muscles responsible for emptying the urinary bladder are paralyzed, repeated catheterizations or the placement of indwelling catheters are necessary to empty the bladder of urine and recurrent UTIs often develop. Pyelonephritis and sepsis (infection in the blood) are more common complications of UTI in this group, and these persons sometimes receive prolonged antibiotic therapy.

Even if a UTI is asymptomatic, it is important to finish the entire course of the prescribed antibiotic. Failure to do this can contribute to specific and overall antibiotic resistance. UTIs are sometimes caused by bacteria that grow as biofilms—colonies of bacteria that adhere to tissue. When enclosed in a biofilm, bacteria can be very resistant to antibiotics and may not be all killed if antibiotic use is stopped prematurely. Moreover, the surviving bacteria, which may have been exposed to a sublethal dose of an antibiotic, may develop resistance to the drug. When the UTI recurs as the bacterial numbers subsequently rebound, the antibiotic may no longer be effective against the pathogen.

WORDS TO KNOW

BIOFILM: Biofilms are populations of microorganisms that form following the adhesion of bacteria, algae, yeast, or fungi to a surface. These surface growths can be found in natural settings such as on rocks in streams, and in infections such as can occur on catheters. Microorganisms can colonize living and inert natural and synthetic surfaces.

PYELONEPHRITIS: Inflammation caused by bacteria infection of the kidney and associated blood vessels is termed pyelonephritis.

RESISTANT ORGANISM: An organism that has developed the ability to counter something trying to harm it. Within infectious diseases, the organism, such as a bacterium, has developed a resistance to drugs, such as antibiotics.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

Urinary tract infections (UTIs) are any type of communicable diseases that occur along the urinary tract—which include the kidneys, ureters, bladder, and urethra. There are several kinds of UTIs. Cystitis is defined as inflammation of the urinary bladder. Urethritis is an inflammation of the urethra, which is the passageway that connects the bladder with the exterior of the body. Sometimes cystitis and urethritis are referred to collectively as a lower urinary tract infection, or UTI. Infection of the upper urinary tract involves the spread of bacteria to the kidney and is called pyelonephritis.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Chlamydia Infection; Resistant Organisms.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Iannini, Paul B. *Contemporary Diagnosis and Management of Urinary Tract Infections.* Newtown, PA: Handbooks in Health Care, 2003.

Kavaler, Elizabeth. *A Seat on the Aisle, Please! The Essential Guide to Urinary Tract Problems in Women.* New York: Springer, 2006.

OPERATION SEA SPRAY

The US Army conducted a study in 1951-52 called "Operation Sea Spray" to study wind currents that might carry biological weapons. As part of the project design, balloons were filled with *Serratia marcescens* (then thought to be harmless) and exploded over San Francisco. Shortly thereafter, there was a corresponding dramatic increase in reported pneumonia and urinary tract infections.

Prescott, Lansing M., John P. Harley, and Donald A. Klein. *Microbiology*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2004.

Tortora, Gerard J., Berell R. Funke, and Christine L. Case. *Microbiology: An Introduction*. New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2006.

Web Sites

Medline Plus. "Urinary Tract Infection." <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000521.htm> (accessed March 20, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

USAMRIID (United States Army Medical Research Institute of Infectious Diseases)

Introduction

USAMRIID is an acronym for the United States Army Medical Research Institute of Infectious Diseases. The facility is operated by the Department of Defense and serves as the country's principal laboratory for research into the medical aspects of biological warfare. Specifically, the facility aims to develop vaccines for infectious diseases, other treatments such as drugs, and tests to detect and identify disease-causing microorganisms.

History and Scientific Foundations

The Office of the Surgeon General of the Army established USAMRIID on January 27, 1969. The facility replaced the U.S. Army Medical Unit (USAMU), which had been operating at the Fort Detrick, Maryland, location since 1956. The USAMU had a mandate to conduct research into the offensive use of biological and chemical weapons. This research was stopped by U.S. President Richard Nixon in 1969. In 1971 and 1972, the stockpiled biological weapons were ordered destroyed.

The defensive research that USAMU had been conducting, such as vaccine development, was continued by USAMRIID. In 1971, the facility was reassigned to the U.S. Army Medical Research and Development Command.

USAMRIID has a Biosafety Level 4 facility (the highest level of safety and security controls) and a Biosafety Level 3 area and is one of the largest high-level containment facilities in the United States.

The USAMRIID Biosafety Level 4 patient ward can house people who have been infected during a disease outbreak or researchers who have been accidentally exposed to an infectious microbe. This ward was used in 1982 to care for two researchers from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention who were exposed to rat blood contaminated with the virus that causes Lassa fever. The two researchers, along with three others thought to have been exposed to the virus, remained in the containment ward until they were determined to be free of infection.

Equipment is also available that allows the Biosafety Level 4 conditions to be mimicked in the field. Thus, an infected person can be isolated at the site of an outbreak and transported back to Fort Detrick for medical treatment and study of the infection.

Applications and Research

The research staff at USAMRIID numbers over 500 people and includes physicians, microbiologists, molecular biologists, virologists, pathologists, and veterinarians. Among the support staff who assist the researchers are laboratory technicians who have volunteered to be test subjects during clinical trials of vaccines and drugs.

USAMRIID scientists have the ability to rapidly identify infectious microorganisms. Vaccines are in various stages of development for several microbes including the anthrax bacterium and the Ebola and Marburg viruses.

Researchers and support staff can also respond to disease outbreaks. On short notice, teams can journey to the site of the infection to begin an investigation. This response is often conducted in conjunction with personnel from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. USAMRIID teams can also respond to combat. A portable laboratory to treat biological warfare casualties can be quickly set up near a battlefield.

One well-known USAMRIID response occurred in 1989, when an outbreak of an Ebola virus occurred at a primate holding facility in nearby Reston, Virginia. Some personnel even became infected with the virus, which was later determined to be a different variety from that which causes hemorrhagic Ebola fever in humans. The response of the USAMRIID personnel was subsequently detailed in best-selling books and popular movies.

An anthrax-laden letter sent to Senator Patrick Leahy (D-VT) in 2001 is shown being removed from its envelope with tweezers at the Army's biomedical research laboratory at Fort Detrick in Maryland. © *Reuters/Corbis.*

The facility has played an important role in several military campaigns where it served as the medical support staging area for vaccines, drugs, and medical equipment.

In the aftermath of the September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on targets in the United States, several letters containing anthrax spores were sent to various locations in the eastern United States via the United States Postal Service. The culprits have not been identified or apprehended as of May 2007. Sequencing of the genetic material from the spores determined that the source of the anthrax was a strain of the microbe that had been developed in the USAMRIID labs in the 1980s. Whether the bacteria actually used in the incidents came from USAMRIID or from another lab that acquired the bacteria from USAMRIID has not been established.

IN CONTEXT: LABORATORY SAFETY

Laboratories have a rating system with respect to the types of microbes that can safety be studied. There are four levels possible. A typical university research lab with no specialized safety features (i.e., fume hood, biological safety cabinet, filtering of exhausted air) is a Biosafety Level 1. Progression to a higher level requires more stringent safety and biological controls. A Biosafety Level 4 laboratory is the only laboratory that can safely handle microbes such as the Ebola virus, *Bacillus anthracis* (the cause of anthrax), the Marburg virus, and hantavirus.

Entry to the Level 4 area requires passage through several checkpoints and the keying in of a security code that is issued only after the person has been successfully vaccinated against the microorganism under study. All work in the level 4 lab is conducted in a pressurized and ventilated suit. Air for breathing is passed into the suit through a hose and is filtered so as to be free of microorganisms.

Impacts and Issues

While some of the research conducted at USAMRIID is classified, other research findings of the resident civilian and military scientists are used to benefit the larger public community. USAMRIID and its counterpart USAMRICD (U.S. Army Medical Research Institute of Chemical Diseases) train military medical personnel each year on biological and chemical defense measures. Furthermore, military and civilian medical professionals attend annual courses and seminars on such topics as "The Medical Management of Biological Casualties."

USAMRIID is mandated to explore the use of the treatments and tests in the battlefield environment. According to the law, the research conducted at USAMRIID is defensive in nature. Infectious microbes are to be investigated only to develop means of protecting soldiers from the use of the microbes by opposition forces during a conflict.

The infectious disease research expertise at USAMRIID is also utilized to develop strategies and training programs to do with medical defense against infectious microorganisms. For example, the agency regularly updates and publishes a handbook that details the various medical defenses against biological warfare or terrorism. This handbook is available to the public.

See Also *Biological Weapons Convention; Bioterrorism; War and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

USAMRIID. *USAMRIID's Medical Management of Biological Casualties Handbook,* 6th ed. Fort Detrick, MD: U.S. Army Medical research Institute of Infectious Diseases, 2005.

Web Sites

USAMRIID. "Welcome to USAMRIID." The U.S. Army Medical Research Institute of Infectious Diseases. Fort Detrick, MD. <http://www.usamriid.army.mil/> (accessed May 25, 2007)

Paul Davies

WORDS TO KNOW

HEMORRHAGIC FEVER: A hemorrhagic fever is caused by viral infection and features a high fever and a high volume of (copious) bleeding. The bleeding is caused by the formation of tiny blood clots throughout the bloodstream. These blood clots—also called microthrombi—deplete platelets and fibrinogen in the bloodstream. When bleeding begins, the factors needed for the clotting of the blood are scarce. Thus, uncontrolled bleeding (hemorrhage) ensues.

MIMICKED: In biology, mimicry is the imitation of another organism, often for evolutionary advantage. A disease that resembles another (for whatever reason) is sometimes said to have mimicked the other. Pathomimicry is the faking of symptoms by a patient, also called malingering.

OUTBREAK: The appearance of new cases of a disease in numbers greater than the established incidence rate, or the appearance of even one case of an emergent or rare disease in an area.

SEQUENCING: Finding the order of chemical bases in a section of DNA.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

Vaccines and Vaccine Development

Introduction

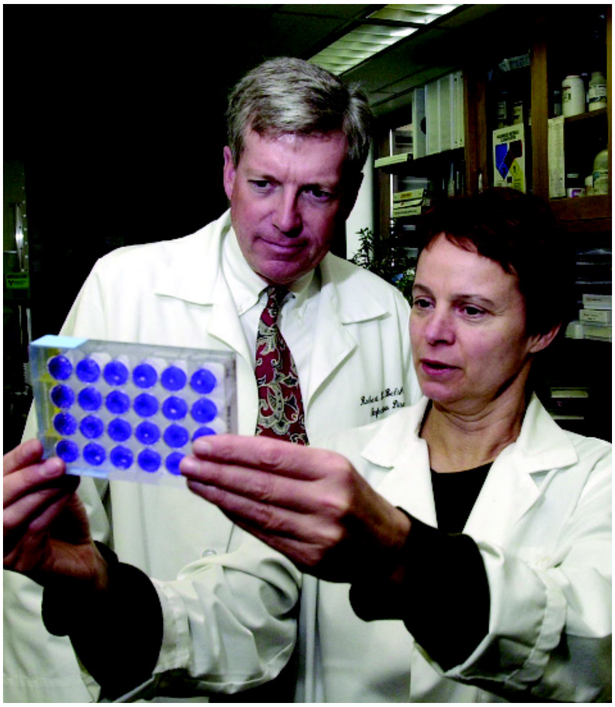
Vaccines, the introduction of a substance to create an immune response against a pathogen (disease-causing organism), have been responsible for great advances in public health since their advent in the late 1700s. Vaccines have greatly decreased the incidence of once-common diseases that caused innumerable deaths and huge public-health expenditures, not to mention terrible human suffering. Even diseases that were once universally fatal, such as rabies, are now averted with vaccines.

History and Research

Smallpox was a very serious disease in humans from its first recorded appearances in Europe and China in the third century AD until its eradication in the 1970s. The smallpox virus produced fever and headache, followed by a rash of pustules (small, pus-filled swellings), which gave the disease its name. In about 30% of cases, such severe damage was done to the skin or internal organs that death occurred. Even when the victims survived, they would often be badly scarred or even blinded by the ordeal.

Efforts to avoid infection with smallpox were early and widespread. Variolation, or intentional infection with smallpox, was prevalent because it was thought to produce a less virulent infection. This method was eventually recognized to be ineffective and even dangerous, leading to serious disease and deaths. At the end of the eighteenth century, Edward Jenner noticed that many milkmaids who had been infected with the cowpox virus did not contract smallpox. Jenner proved his theory by vaccinating a young boy with cowpox virus and then exposing him to smallpox. The vaccine was further developed into a stable and convenient dehydrated form in the 1950s.

The work of Louis Pasteur led to the germ theory of disease and the first vaccine for rabies. Later, the 1920s saw an increased number of inoculations for diseases such as diphtheria, pertussis (whooping cough), and tuberculosis, followed later by tetanus, yellow fever, polio, measles, mumps, and rubella. These familiar vaccinations, routinely given to children in the western world, markedly reduced incidences of these diseases. Expanded vaccination programs led to the goal of disease eradication, though to date only smallpox has been eliminated in natural settings.



Doctors examine cultures at St. Louis University Hospital in Missouri in April 2002. The doctors discovered a way to successfully dilute up to five times the U.S. supply of 15.4 million doses of smallpox vaccine and retain its potency. This effectively expanded the number of individuals that can be protected from the contagious disease. *Bill Greenblatt/Getty Images.*

PowderMed, based in the United Kingdom, developed a vaccine for the H5N1 strain of bird flu as well as a means of delivery called PMED (Particle Mediated Epidermal Delivery). The delivery system fires the vaccine into the skin without the use of needles, stimulating rapid immunity. *Bruno Vincent/Getty Images.*

Impacts and Issues

Despite the great advances in human health due to vaccines, controversy has arisen over their possible unintended effects, with the result of some parents choosing not to vaccinate their young children against disease. Indeed, different groups have opposed vaccination since the technique was developed. Early arguments were religious in nature, stating that God sent smallpox afflictions as punishment and thus to circumvent the disease was to thwart God's will. More recent objections have focused on a purported link between vaccines and serious conditions such as autism.

In 1998, Andrew Wakefield published a study in the journal *Lancet* that purported to link the MMR (measles, mumps, and rubella) vaccine with the development of bowel disease and autism. His appearance at a press conference fed a media frenzy that caused many concerned parents to reject the MMR vaccine specifically and sometimes vaccines in general. Subsequent reassurances by the medical establishment and politicians were disbelieved by so many United Kingdom parents that vaccination rates fell and outbreaks of disease were recorded. Though this hypothesis has not found support in many subsequent studies, distrust of the MMR vaccine has persisted; the United States Center for Disease Control and Prevention has recommended the removal of the mercury-containing vaccine preservative Thimerosal, identified by anti-vaccinationists as a possible source of vaccine contamination, as a cautionary measure.

Vaccines are not, and have never been, without risk. Localized reactions, such as itching, swelling, pain, or discomfort are quite common, while systemic reactions, such as fever, headache, and malaise are less so. More seriously, illnesses such as encephalitis, dangerous seizures, unintentional infection with the target pathogen, and even death have occurred. The smallpox vaccine in particular, despite its long history, has been known to be comparatively more dangerous than other vaccines in use today. For this reason, only a small number of persons with specific occupations have been recommended for pre-exposure vaccination against smallpox, despite the concern about potential bio-terrorism attacks in the post-September-11th environment.

Regardless of these concerns, vaccines are still considered an important foundation of public health efforts around the world. The Center for Disease Control prudently considers it better to prevent a disease than to treat its symptoms. Though many once-fatal diseases can be successfully treated with today's advanced supportive care and antibiotics, the costs of vaccination are much lower than those of treating infection. Indeed, the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases cites a study stating that for each dollar spent on vaccinating against rubella, eight dollars are saved in costs that would have been spent treating the infection.

Two infectious disease outbreaks have created public interest in the quick development of therapeutic vaccines: the 2004 outbreak of SARS (Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome) and the ongoing, low-intensity occurrences of H5N1 avian influenza, particularly in Asia. In the face of epidemics, however, mass vaccination is not always feasible and may present hazards to public health. Ring vaccination, or administering vaccine to populations within and immediately surrounding the outbreak, is an alternative measure used in many outbreaks of infectious disease. Similarly, development of vaccines is a long and complex process that requires great amounts of research and testing before vaccines become available.

Many different types of vaccines exist, some of which are easier to produce than others. Different types of vaccines produce varying degrees of resistance to disease, some requiring multiple doses or "booster shots" to remain effective. A great deal of study and preparation is required before work on a vaccine can begin. The life cycle of the pathogen, the way it functions and causes harm in the body, and the response of the immune

WORDS TO KNOW

ATTENUATED STRAIN: A bacterium or virus that has been weakened, often used as the basis of a vaccine against the specific disease caused by the bacterium or virus.

RING VACCINATION: Ring vaccination is the vaccination of all susceptible people in an area surrounding a case of an infectious disease. Since vaccination makes people immune to the disease, the hope is that the disease will not spread from the known case to other people. Ring vaccination was used in eliminating the smallpox virus.

VARIOLATION: Variolation was the pre-modern practice of deliberately infecting a person with smallpox in order to make them immune to a more serious form of the disease. It was dangerous, but did confer immunity on survivors.

VACCINE TYPES

Vaccines with living, but weakened, viruses are termed attenuated vaccines. The attenuated virus does not cause a severe infection, but does present the body with sufficient challenge to mount and thus “learn” an immune response. MMR vaccines (the common abbreviation for the measles, mumps, and rubella vaccine) is an example of an attenuated vaccine.

Vaccination can also involve the use of dead viruses and bacteria. The antigen, usually a specific molecule that resides on the surface of the cell, is sufficient alone to provoke an immune response that subsequently provides protection against live bacteria or virus carrying the same surface molecule.

The third type of vaccination uses toxin produced by the living bacterium, but not the bacteria themselves. Diphtheria and tetanus vaccines are examples of toxoid vaccines promoted by the poster.

The fourth class of vaccine is engineered, or uses a chemical compound formed from the fusion of portions of two antigens. The Hib vaccine is such a biosynthetic vaccine.

system must all be examined before the most appropriate course of action can be determined.

Some types of vaccines are well understood, produce reliable immune responses, and are easy to produce. Many of these use attenuated (weakened but live) pathogens while others use dead organisms or portions of their proteins or antigens. Vaccines containing live, attenuated pathogens are not always appropriate for patients with weakened immune systems; likewise, vaccines containing dead pathogens often produce a weak or short-lived immune response. Newer, possibly more effective types of vaccines are being explored, including those that use parts of the pathogen’s DNA to cause the body to produce “natural vaccine” on its own. Once a vaccine is developed, it must undergo the usual three phases of clinical trials to establish safety, dosage, and effectiveness, as well as a stringent licensing process and continued monitoring for safety and contamination. The length of this process means that new vaccines cannot always be quickly developed to meet an immediate need.

The risk of an epidemic must also be balanced with the real likelihood of adverse events associated with vaccinating large numbers of people in short periods of time. If mass vaccinations are required, the timing of the campaign can help the healthcare system deal with adverse events more successfully. By increasing the length of a vaccination campaign from two to ten days, fewer people will experience adverse events at the same time, reducing strain on doctors and hospitals. In cases of extreme shortage, vaccines such as smallpox can be diluted to much weaker solutions than their intended strength and still produce immunity in a portion of those vaccinated.

As a public health tool, vaccines are an inexpensive way to prevent serious disease before it develops and spreads. Health officials, individuals, and parents must maintain high levels of compliance to ensure protection against disease outbreak. At the same time, one must responsibly evaluate the risks of vaccines when faced with the outbreak of dangerous disease.

■ Primary Source Connection

The following newspaper article appeared in the *The New York Times* in 2004. It explains the economics of vaccine development from the drug manufacturers’ point of view. Mentioned in the article is a vaccine under development for shingles, a chickenpox-related virus, and the overall trend for more vaccines for adolescents and adults rather than children. In an update to the article, the vaccine for shingles was approved in May 2006 and is recommended by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention for all adults over age sixty.

SEE ALSO *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts; Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation; Polio Eradication Campaign; Smallpox; Smallpox Eradication And Storage.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Periodicals

Belongia, Edward A., and Allison L. Naleway. "Smallpox Vaccine: The Good, the Bad, and the Ugly." *Clinical Medicine and Research* 1, 2 (2003): 87-92.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Mercury and Vaccines (Thimerosal)." <http://www.cdc.gov/od/science/iso/concerns/thimerosal.htm> (accessed June 14, 2007).

McCulloch, J. Huston, and James R. Meginniss. *Ohio State University.* "A Statistical Model of Smallpox Vaccine Dilution." May 17, 2002. <http://www.econ.ohio-state.edu/jhm/smallpox.htm> (accessed June 14, 2007).

National Institutes of Health, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Understanding Vaccines." July 2003. <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/publications/vaccine/pdf/undvacc.pdf> (accessed June 14, 2007).

White, Andrew Dickinson. *A History of the Warfare of Science with Theology in Christendom.* "Chapter X: Theological Opposition to Inoculation, Vaccination, and the Use of Anaesthetics." <http://abob.libs.uga.edu/bobk/whitem10.html> (accessed June 14, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Vaccines" <http://www.who.int/topics/vaccines/en> (accessed June 14, 2007).

Kenneth LaPensee

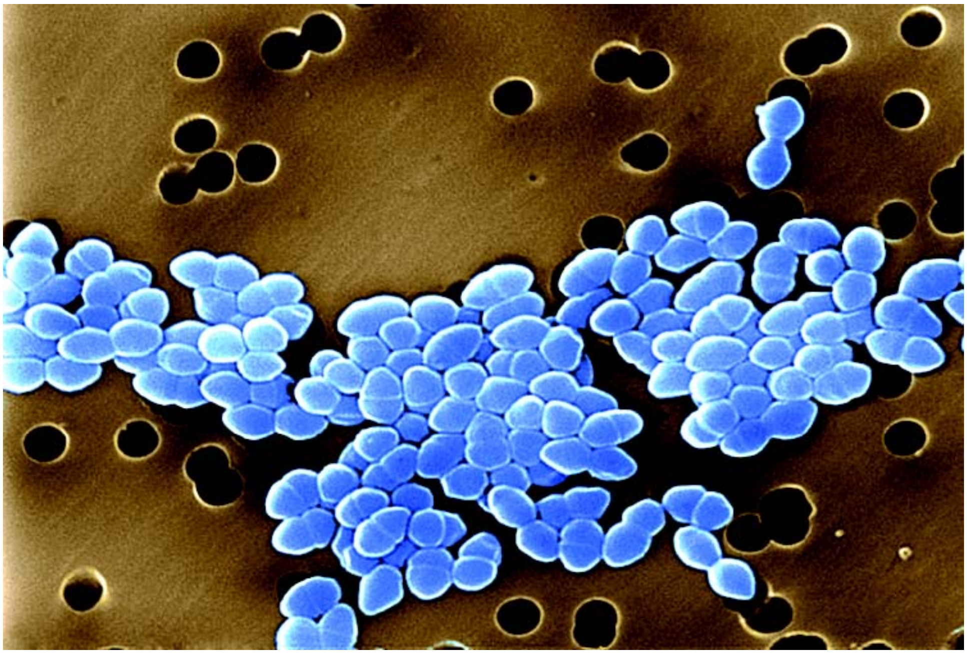
Vancomycin-Resistant Enterococci

Introduction

The World Health Organization (WHO) reports that drug-resistant germs infect more than two million people in the United States every year and that 14,000 die as a result. The rise of drug resistance among microorganisms is tied to the widespread use of antibiotics in humans and animals. Vancomycin-resistant enterococcus (VRE) is one of a group of drug resistant bacteria that were first reported in 1986, almost 30 years after the antibiotic vancomycin was introduced. Vancomycin has been a mainstay of hospital infection control since the emergence of microorganisms that are resistant to the original antibiotics developed in the early and mid-twentieth century, such as penicillin, methicillin, and ampicillin.

History and Scientific Foundations

When large amounts of oral vancomycin are taken for an infection, some of the drug's proteins are not absorbed and remain in the gastrointestinal tract. This environment leads to colonization (the presence of microorganisms that normally do not cause disease) with vancomycin-



A color enhanced scanning electron micrograph (SEM) shows Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci (VRE). *Science Source.*

WORDS TO KNOW

COLONIZATION: Colonization is the process of occupation and increase in number of microorganisms at a specific site.

ISOLATION: Isolation, within the health community, refers to the precautions that are taken in the hospital to prevent the spread of an infectious agent from an infected or colonized patient to susceptible persons. Isolation practices are designed to minimize the transmission of infection.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

PREVALENCE: The actual number of cases of disease (or injury) that exist in a population.

RESISTANT ORGANISM: Resistant organisms are bacteria, viruses, parasites, or other disease-causing agents that have stopped responding to drugs that once killed them.

resistant organisms when the antibiotic concentrations in the intestines are high enough to encourage resistant enterococci bacteria to grow, but not sufficiently high to kill these organisms.

For decades, vancomycin was the only effective therapy for potentially life-threatening infections with resistant bacteria such as methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). Throughout the 1990s, there were few if any antimicrobial agents to treat VRE infections. In recent years, newly developed antibiotics have been effective against VRE and other multi-drug resistant organisms, but strains (types) of microorganisms that are resistant to these new agents have already emerged. Many of these strains are resistant not only to vancomycin, but are also to other antibiotics that have been widely used against infections with similar bacteria in hospital settings, a condition called cross-resistance.

The connection between VRE and MRSA is particularly alarming. In one study, almost 25% of hospitalized persons who were co-colonized with both bacteria (had growing populations of both bacteria present on their bodies) died. Another nearly 35% were discharged to other facilities and took with them significant risk of further transmitting the infection to other patients.

Most of the VRE recovered in the United States are one of two species of enterococcus bacteria *E. faecium* or *E. faecalis.* These enterococci occur naturally in the intestinal tract of all people and are not generally harmful, whether or not they are vancomycin-resistant, and most infections resolve without treatment. Nevertheless, infections with these microbes, especially with *E. faecalis* can be dangerous to immunocompromised persons (those receiving chemotherapy for cancer, organ transplantation, or who have weakened immune systems due to a variety of conditions such as AIDS).

From 1990 to 1997 the prevalence of VRE in hospitalized patients with infections arising from enterococci bacteria increased from less than one percent to about 15%. By 1999, VRE accounted for nearly a quarter of all enterococcus infections in hospital intensive care units (ICUs), as reported by the National Nosocomial Infection Surveillance System (NNIS). This figure rose to 28.5% in 2003.

Applications and Research

The Centers for Disease Control (CDC) publishes and revises guidelines for the management of VRE and other antibiotic resistant organisms in healthcare settings. Local advisories based on the CDC guidelines are now widely disseminated and public health agencies are attempting to increase public awareness of VRE. A notice on the website of the New York State Department of Health states, "Serious VRE infections usually occur in hospitalized patients with serious underlying illnesses such as cancer, blood disorders, kidney disease or immune deficiencies. People in good health are not at risk of infection, but health care workers may play a role in transmitting the organism, if careful handwashing and other infection control precautions are not practiced." The notice goes on to say that VRE is usually spread by "direct contact with hands, environmental surfaces or medical equipment that has been contaminated by the feces of an infected person."

Impacts and Issues

In the United States and around the world, VRE infections present a growing burden of illness with considerable economic impact. A recent analysis documented increased mortality (deaths), length of hospital stay, ICU admissions, surgical procedures, and costs for VRE patients compared to a matched hospital population. VRE prevalence in the United States has steadily increased over the past two decades.

During this time, public health officials as well as hospital-based infectious disease specialists and hospital pharmacists have become increasingly concerned with the spread of infection with VRE in hospitals, rehabilitation centers, and nursing homes. The CDC reports that concerted efforts involving the isolation of VRE-infected patients, active surveillance, use of a waterless hand disinfectant, and staff training have resulted in significant local decreases in VRE prevalence.

Hospitals are responding with strategies designed to limit the spread of VRE by limiting the use of vancomycin. Powerful new antibiotics such as piperacillin-tazobactam are often effective against VRE, but are expensive and require intravenous administration.

Such anti-VRE strategies can be highly effective across an entire health care system. Some hospitals in the Netherlands and Denmark, for example, pro-actively isolate all patients considered at risk for VRE until tests show them to be free of multi-drug resistant organisms. This step prevents carriers from passing infections to other patients and hospital workers. The strategy has significantly reduced VRE-related infections in these countries. Also in the European Union, the non-therapeutic use of antibiotics in animals was banned in 2006 in order to stop the transfer of resistant bacteria from farm animals to people. This prescription was on top of a pre-existing ban on the agricultural use of vancomycin-type drugs in animal feed.

The "tried and true" methods of infection control are not universally considered to be an adequate response to the antibiotic resistant infection crisis. Some observers are now advocating environmental strategies directed at farming practices such as restricting the use of antibiotics in farm animal feed that promote VRE and related cross resistant strains which multiply in dairy effluent lagoons. Such broad ranging strategies have a political and economic policy aspect, and have not yet been endorsed by the CDC, which continues to emphasize institutional infection control measures. However, as alarm spreads over the increase in antibiotic resistance, more comprehensive, environmentally based, and economy-wide measures may eventually be implemented in order to preserve the effectiveness of antibiotics as life-saving drugs.

SEE ALSO *Antibiotic Resistance; Contact Precautions; Microbial Evolution; Resistant Organisms.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Shnayersen, Michael, and Mark J. Plotkin. *The Killers Within: the Deadly Rise of Drug-Resistant Bacteria.* Boston: Back Bay, 2003.

Periodicals

Rice, L.B. "Emergence of Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci." *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, (March-April 2001):7(2)183–87.

Web Sites

Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee. *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.*"Management of Multidrug-Resistant Organisms In Healthcare Settings- 2006." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/pdf/ar/mdroGuideline2006.pdf> (accessed May 21, 2007.)

New York State Department of Health. "Vancomycin Resistant Enterococcus (VRE)." <http://www.health.state.ny.us/diseases/communicable/vancomycin_resistant_enterococcus/fact_sheet.htm> (accessed may 21, 2007).

Kenneth T. LaPensee

Vector-borne Disease

Introduction

Vector-borne disease refers to the transmission of a disease that is caused by a microorganism from one organism (the host) to another organism via a third organism (the vector). Put another way, a vector is the means by which microbes can get from their normal place of residence, where they typically cause no harm, to a susceptible organism, in which an infection results.

There are numerous examples of vector-borne diseases that involve a variety of pathogens and vectors, including such well-known maladies as malaria, yellow fever, Lyme disease, plague, and West Nile disease.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Vector-borne diseases are characterized by the vector-mediated movement of a microorganism (such as a bacterium, virus, or protozoa) from the host to a recipient. The host and recipient can belong to the same species. A well-known example of this is malaria, in which the protozoan that causes the infection is acquired from an infected person by a mosquito during a blood meal and transferred to another human that the mosquito subsequently feeds on. Alternatively, the host and recipient can belong to different species. An example is western equine encephalitis, in which the host is a bird that is infected by the disease-causing species of arbovirus and the recipient is a horse or a human. As with malaria, the vector is a mosquito.

Dengue hemorrhagic fever is another example of a vector-borne disease. Dengue is caused by a virus in the *Flavivirus* genus. The virus is transmitted from the host to the susceptible person by a species of mosquito called *Aedes aegypti*.

Lyme disease is also a vector-borne disease. The disease, which is transmitted from contaminated animals such as deer to humans by the bite of several species of tick, is the most prevalent tick-borne ailment in North America. Lyme disease is caused by a bacterium called *Borrelia burgdorferi*. It is very debilitating if not treated promptly, and can cause severe fatigue, joint pain, and heart trouble that can persist for years even when the disease is diagnosed and treated.

Still another bacterial vector-borne disease is plague. The disease, which is caused by *Yersinia pestis*, is ancient. Passages found in the Old Testament of the Bible describe the ravages of epidemics of plague. Rodents harbor the

This blood-sucking bug (*Rhodnius prolixus*) is a vector of Chagas disease in humans. *Nigel Cattlin/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

bacterium. The vector that transmits the bacterium from rodents to humans is another rat or, more commonly, a flea. Both can feed on an infected rat and subsequently spread the infection to a human that they bite. There are several types of plague, depending on the site of the infection. Infection of the lungs (pneumonic plague) is almost always fatal within a week if not treated.

A final example of a vector-borne disease is yellow fever. Another viral disease caused by a member of the *Flavivirus* genus, the disease is transferred from the host (a type of monkey) to humans via a mosquito. In tropical regions, devastating outbreaks of yellow fever have occurred over the past several hundred years. A noteworthy outbreak occurred during the construction of the Panama Canal. Even today, several hundred thousand people are infected each year and about 30,000 die, according to the World Health Organization.

Scope and Distribution

Vector-borne diseases occur worldwide. While some diseases, such as malaria, are concentrated in tropical equatorial regions of the globe, other diseases can occur in more temperate climates. One example of a vector-borne disease found in more temperate regions is the mosquito-borne disease called West Nile disease. The West Nile virus that causes this disease has spread as far north as Canada, where it can be transmitted by mosquitoes during the warmer months of the year and even during the cooler days of spring by mosquitoes that have survived the winter.

Treatment and Prevention

Vector-borne diseases can be treated, and even prevented, by interrupting the vector-mediated transmission between the infected host and the susceptible person or animal. Treatment and prevention strategies for malaria focus on the mosquito vector. For example, spraying mosquito breeding grounds with insecticide can be an effective control. Indeed, the carefully controlled application of dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT), a powerful insecticide used in the 1960s that effectively reduced malaria vectors, but also resulted in significant loss of bird populations, is again beginning to be used as a means of mosquito control.

Another efficient and environmentally friendly way of controlling the mosquito-borne spread of malarial protozoa is draping beds with insecticide-treated mosquito netting to protect people during sleep. Organizations such as World Vision have campaigns to supply villages in Africa with bed netting. Similarly, protective clothing with overlapping upper and lower layers minimize the amount of skin that is exposed to a bite from the vector.

WORDS TO KNOW

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

Another trial program aimed at preventing malaria involves releasing laboratory-bred infertile male mosquitoes. The program is based on the hypothesis that a greater population of infertile males will decrease the numbers of female mosquitoes due to reduced reproductive success. Since malaria is transmitted by female mosquitoes, fewer female mosquitoes should result in a reduction in the number of cases of malaria. There have been several successful small scale trials of this program, but the large number of sterile male mosquitoes needed is likely to make this approach impractical for larger scale implementation.

Other treatment and prevention strategies include vaccine development and the use of genetic material (known as morpholino antisense oligonucleotides) that can out-compete viral genetic material for binding onto cells of the host, blocking a crucial step in the formation of new virus particles.

Impacts and Issues

Vector-borne diseases exact a large toll worldwide. For example, more than 500 million cases of malaria occur each year, with approximately three million deaths attributed to the disease. One million of these deaths are children. The disease is particularly prevalent in Africa. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that more than 2.5 billion people are at risk for malaria. Yellow fever continues to infect hundreds of thousands of people in less developed tropical countries annually, despite the fact that a vaccine exists that can provide long-term protection. In Asia, a form of encephalitis puts about three billion people at risk each year.

The burden of these and other vector-borne diseases have a substantial economic and social impact on areas of the world that are already destitute. In malaria-prone areas, school attendance can be poor, as schoolchildren are either sick, tending for other sick family members, or have been pressed into work as parents and older siblings can no longer work due to illness.

IN CONTEXT: CHILDREN LESS THAN FIVE-YEARS-OLD SLEEPING UNDER INSECTICIDE-TREATED NETS

One means of preventing vector-borne disease is sleeping under treated nets. According to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), and more than one million people die from malaria (just one of many vector-transmitted diseases) per year. Young children are particularly at risk for many vector-borne disease. In some areas, bed nets are considered one of the most sustainable effective means to fight vector-borne disease.

Although disease risks vary, the list below reflects selected data from the World Health Organization that demonstrates the widest spectrum in results reported by WHO as of February 2007. Data was not available for all countries, including a lack of data for: Bangladesh, Brazil, China, Cuba, Egypt, Haiti, India, Mexico, Philippines, and not reported from some nations such as the United Kingdom and United States of America).

Lowest reported percentage of children under age 5 sleeping under insecticide-treated nets (with year data collected or reported):

- Indonesia 0.1% (2000)
- Swaziland 0.1% (2000)
- Madagascar 0.2% (2000)
- Uganda 0.2% (2000–01)
- Somalia 0.3% (1999)
- Sudan 0.4% (2000)
- Chad 0.6% (2000)
- Democratic Republic of the Congo 0.7% (2001)
- Equatorial Guinea 0.7% (2000)
- Cameroon 0.9% (2004)
- Niger 1% (2000)

Mid-range reported percentage of children under age 5 sleeping under insecticide-treated nets:

- Kenya 4.6% (2003)
- Rwanda 5% (2000)
- Zambia 6.5% (2001-02)

Highest percentage of children under age 5 sleeping under insecticide-treated nets:

- Viet Nam 15.8% (2000)
- Sao Tome and Principe 22.8% (2000)
- Malawi 35.5% (2004)

SOURCE: *World malaria report 2005. Geneva, World Health Organization and United Nations Children's Fund, 2005*

With a lack of education, hope for a more promising future can diminish, and the economy of a nation can be undermined by the illness of a sizable portion of the work force.

Through its Healthy Environments for Children Alliance, the WHO seeks to reduce environmental risks posed to children in under-developed countries; a major part of this program is directed at vector-borne diseases. Areas of concern include control of the spread of the vectors from their breeding grounds, the effect of increasing urbanization on the proximity of people to vector breeding grounds, and the poorer nutrition of under-developed regions (which can affect the efficiency of the immune system).

Vector-borne diseases are often difficult to treat. The vector is mobile and may be capable of movement over considerable distances. In addition, vectors can develop resistance to insecticides, as has occurred in some malaria prevention programs. Many vector insects, such as mosquitoes, have been around for millennia, and one reason for their persistence is their ability to adapt to changing environmental circumstances. Knowledge of a vector's habitat, life cycle, and migratory patterns is crucial in any effort to reduce the vector-borne spread of disease.

Global climate change is another factor in vector-borne disease. Some vectors, such as mosquitoes, thrive in warmer climates. The recent warming of the Earth's atmosphere could allow mosquitoes to inhabit more of the globe, which would undoubtedly increase the incidence of malaria and other diseases spread by these vectors.

The global nature of modern travel is an additional contributing factor to vector-borne disease transmission. Products and foods that harbor an insect vector can move virtually anywhere within hours. This increases the need for scrutiny of imported items at border crossings. In areas of the world where certain vector-borne diseases are endemic, aircraft are now routinely sprayed with insecticide after the hatches are closed and before takeoff to prevent any potential arthropod disease vectors aboard from reaching a new destination.

SEE ALSO *Arthropod-borne Disease; Bloodborne Pathogens; Host and Vector.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Honigsbaum, Mark. *The Fever Trail: In Search of the Cure for Malaria*. New York: Picador, 2003.

Marquardt, William H. *Biology of Disease Vectors*. 2nd ed. New York: Academic Press, 2004.

Marqulies, Phillip. *West Nile Virus*. New York: Rosen Publishing Group, 2003.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Malaria: Vector Control." <http://www.cdc.gov/malaria/control_prevention/vector_control.htm> (accessed February 14, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

Viral Disease

Introduction

Viruses are microorganisms that do not have the ability to independently produce new copies of themselves. Instead, the intact virus or its payload of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or ribonucleic acid (RNA) must get inside the host cell. Once inside, copies of the genetic material are made at the same time as the host's genetic material is being replicated, using the various constituents of the host's replication machinery.

Typically, the host cell eventually ruptures, releasing the newly made viruses, which in turn initiate another cycle by infecting other host cells. The host suffers, since cells are being destroyed.

There are many types of viruses that can cause infections in virtually every living thing, including humans.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

In general, viral diseases result from the attachment of a virus to the host cell and entry of either the virus particle or its genetic material into the cell. The attachment of a virion to a host involves the interaction of components of the viral and host cell outer surfaces. Often, these components are proteins, but carbohydrates and lipids can be involved. The host component is also known as the receptor. The receptor is not present specifically to allow viral infection. Rather, this host constituent has another function, and the infecting virus has evolved the capability of using this constituent to adhere to the cell surface. As one example, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), which causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome), uses a host protein called CD4 as the receptor. HIV enters only cells, such as white blood cells, that have this receptor. The entry of the virus kills the white blood cell. Since white blood cells are important in the proper functioning of the host's immune system, their gradual destruction by HIV causes the immune system to break down, leaving the infected person vulnerable to a variety of opportunistic infections and maladies, including some types of cancer.

Following the fusion between the virion and the host cell surface, the virion or the viral genetic material enters the host cell. This fusion can happen in several different ways. An individual virion can enter the host cell in a process called endocytosis—the folding of a portion of the cell surface around the virion. The folding creates a spherical portion of the host cell's surface (a vesicle) that buds off inside the cell. The virion located inside the vesicle is degraded, releasing its genetic material. For other viruses, the viral surface layer melds with the host cell's outer surface, which releases the genetic material inside the host cell. Finally, the viral DNA or RNA can directly enter the host cell, leaving the viral particle stuck to the host cell's surface. An example of this process is the injection of DNA from a bacteriophage into the host cell that it specifically adheres to.

The viral DNA or RNA can then be replicated. In the case of DNA, this replication can occur directly, since the host's genetic material is also DNA. RNA-containing viruses, such as retroviruses (an example is HIV), require an additional step in which the viral RNA is used to make DNA. This is done using an virus-encoded enzyme called reverse transcriptase.

Depending on the virus, the replicated DNA, which is not recognized as foreign by the host's replication machinery, is used to manufacture the proteins that are encoded by the viral genes. The proteins assemble around the copies of replicated genetic material to form the new virus particles that are the hallmark of the viral disease. For other, so-called latent viruses, the replicated genetic material is incorporated into the host's DNA, where it can remain for years until certain conditions—as yet only partially understood—stimulate the viral DNA to excise and begin the production of virus particles. An active infection results. Examples of latent viral infections include AIDS, hepatitis B, Creutzfeld-Jacob disease, and herpes.

WORDS TO KNOW

BACTERIOPHAGE: A virus that infects bacteria. When a bacteriophage that carries the diphtheria toxin gene infects diphtheria bacteria, the bacteria produce diphtheria toxin.

DEGRADED: Any complex chemical that is broken down into less-complex molecules.

DEOXYRIBONUCLEIC ACID (DNA): Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) is a double-stranded, helical molecule that forms the molecular basis for heredity in most organisms.

ENDOCYTOSIS: Endocytosis is a process by which host cells allow the entry of outside substances, including viruses, through their cell membranes.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

LATENT VIRUS: Latent viruses are those viruses that can incorporate their genetic material into the genetic material of the infected host cell. Because the viral genetic material can then be replicated along with the host material, the virus becomes effectively "silent" with respect to detection by the host. Latent viruses usually contain the information necessary to reverse the latent state. The viral genetic material can leave the host genome to begin the manufacture of new virus particles.

RECEPTOR: Protein molecules on a cells surface that acts as a "signal receiver" and allow communication between cells.

REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE: An enzyme that makes it possible for a retrovirus to produce DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) from RNA (ribonucleic acid).

RIBONUCLEIC ACID (RNA): Any of a group of nucleic acids that carry out several important tasks in the synthesis of proteins. Unlike DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), it has only a single strand. Nucleic acids are complex molecules that contain a cell's genetic information and the instructions for carrying out cellular processes. In eukaryotic cells, the two nucleic acids, ribonucleic acid (RNA) and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), work together to direct protein synthesis. Although it is DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) that contains the instructions for directing the synthesis of specific structural and enzymatic proteins, several types of RNA actually carry out the processes required to produce these proteins. These include messenger RNA (mRNA), ribosomal RNA (rRNA), and transfer RNA (tRNA). Further processing of the various RNAs is carried out by another type of RNA called small nuclear RNA (snRNA). The structure of RNA is very similar to that of DNA, however, instead of the base thymine, RNA co

VIRION: A virion is a mature virus particle, consisting of a core of ribonucleic acid (RNA) or deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) surrounded by a protein coat. This is the form in which a virus exists outside of its host cell.

Scope and Distribution

Viruses are classified into a number of families. The members of a given family share similarities in the type of genetic material and its arrangement (either as a double-strand of DNA or RNA or a single strand of the genetic material), chemistry, and physical properties, such as viral size and shape. Members of a given family differ in some characteristics from the members of another family, and different families of viruses cause different diseases.

Parvoviruses are members of the family Parvoviridae. These DNA-containing viruses are small. Their genetic material only codes for three of four proteins. Nonetheless, this small protein armada is sufficient to establish an infection. Diseases caused by parvoviruses include fifth disease, a mild illness characterized by a rash that usually occurs in children.

Papovaviruses are members of the family Papovaviridae. These DNA viruses also have a small genome that encodes five to eight proteins. Examples of papovavirus infections include warts, inflammation of the kidney (nephritis) and the urethra (urethritis), and progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy. The latter is a disease that causes the loss of a brain component called myelin. The increasing damage to the transmission of nerve impulses is progressively disabling and can be fatal.

The 88 known adenoviruses are members of the family Adenoviridae. These viruses have a distinctive shape that consists of 20 triangular faces (an icosahedron) with long fibers protruding from 12 regions around the viral surface. Adenoviruses cause the common cold, and infections of the liver, bladder (cystitis), eye (keratoconjunctivitis), and gastrointestinal tract (gastroenteritis).

Herpesviruses are members of the family Herpesviridae. These viruses cause latent infections whose symptoms may not appear for years. The eight types of herpesvirus that can be recognized by the immune system cause a variety of infections. These infections include cell damage and the formation of ulcers in the mouth, lips (cold sores), skin, and genitals; keratoconjunctivitis, chickenpox, shingles, two forms of mononucleosis, three types of cancer (Burkitt's lymphoma, orophayngeal carcinoma, and, in AIDS patients, Kaposi's sarcoma), cytomegalovirus infection (which can be fatal in infants), and inflammation of the brain (encephalitis).

Poxviruses are members of the family Poxviridae. The name of the virus refers to the major characteristic of the diseases caused by poxviruses, namely a raised lesion on the skin (pox). Poxviruses are the largest viruses known and may be an intermediate between viruses and bacteria. However, they are still classified as viruses because they are not capable of independent replication. Diseases caused by poxviruses include smallpox, monkeypox, cowpox, and a type of skin infection. But, all poxviruses are not deadly. A poxvirus called vaccinia virus can bestow immunity to smallpox.

Viruses in the families Hepadnaviridae and Coronaviridae cause type B hepatitis and liver cancer, and the common cold, respectively.

Picornaviruses are RNA-containing viruses that are members of the family Picornaviridae. They are the smallest of the RNA viruses, coding for only six to nine genes. Infections caused by picornaviruses include polio, meningitis, the common cold, inflammation of the heart (myocarditis), and inflammation of the tissue surrounding the heart (pericarditis).

Calciviruses are members of the family Calciviridae. There are two members of note. The first is the Norwalk virus, which is notorious for causing disease outbreaks on cruise ships and in crowded communal areas, such as university residences. The virus causes a contagious form of gastroenteritis that is characterized by several days of intense diarrhea and vomiting. The second virus is hepatitis E, which is frequently fatal if contracted by pregnant women. In fact, Hepatitis E is fatal to the woman up to 20% of the time, especially during the third trimester.

Of the more than 150 known types of reovirus, two are significant to humans, causing encephalitis and, most commonly, diarrhea in infants. The latter infection, which is caused by rotavirus, produces dehydration that is fatal if not treated quickly.

Togaviruses are members of the family Togaviridae. Infections caused by togaviruses include rubella (also called German measles), various forms of encephalitis, inflammation of joints (arthritis), and skin inflammation.

Flaviviruses are members of the family Flaviviridae. These viruses cause a number of serious human infections that are transmitted by insects, such as mosquitoes. These infections include yellow fever, dengue, West Nile disease, and encephalitis.

Arenaviruses are members of the family Arenaviridae. The infections caused by arenaviruses are also serious and include hemorrhagic fever and inflammation of the brain and spinal cord or the membranes that cover these regions (lymphocytic choriomeningitis).

Retroviruses, which are members of the family Retroviridae, are given this name because they contain genetic information for the production of an enzyme called reverse transcriptase. The enzyme allows the viral RNA to be used to produce DNA. Retroviruses are important human pathogens, causing cancer of the blood (leukemia) and, most significantly, AIDS.

Orthomyxoviruses include several types of influenza virus, including influenza A (H5N1), which is the cause of avian influenza. Avian influenza is one example of an emerging disease. Other orthomyxoviruses can cause hemorrhagic fever and, along with bunyaviruses, encephalitis. Another viral class, paramyxovirus, includes the virus that causes measles.

Coronaviruses belongs to the family Coronaviridae. A coronavirus of particular significance causes severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), and is another example of an emerging disease.

Finally, filoviruses are members of the family Filoviridae. The two known filoviruses are Marburg and Ebola virus, which cause hemorrhagic fevers that can be severe and rapidly lethal. Relatively little is known about the infectious disease processes of these viruses or of their natural hosts because they are so dangerous to work with (a special containment facility called a biosafety level 4 laboratory is required for research on these microbes) and because illness outbreaks appear sporadically and end quickly.

Treatment and Prevention

Reflecting the diversity of viruses and viral diseases, treatment is variable. One common characteristic is the ineffectiveness of antibiotics, since antibiotics are effective against bacteria. Treatment strategies include blocking the attachment of the virus to host cells by occupying the host cell receptor with another molecule, use of a vaccine that has been developed for a particular virus or a similar target of different viruses, and taking medications that assist the immune system in responding to the presence of the infecting virus.

Likewise, prevention strategies vary. Wearing a protective mask to prevent inhalation of viral-contaminated droplets is mandated for healthcare providers when treating someone known or suspected of having SARS, for example. Protective gowns and gloves can be prudent measures when coming into contact with someone who has a hemorrhagic fever, since splashing or copious loss of blood can occur. Another viral barrier is the condom. Wearing a condom can lessen the risk of transmission of HIV during sexual intercourse. Complete abstinence from sex is the ultimate preventative strategy for sexually-transmitted viral disease, although this strategy can be difficult to follow in everyday life.

The incidence of viral diseases, such as West Nile disease, that are transmitted by insects can be reduced by eradicating insect breeding grounds and wearing clothing that protects the body from insect bites. Insect repellents are also a helpful preventative measure.

■ Impacts and Issues

The toll from viral diseases throughout history is incalculable. The death toll from viral gastroenteritis and measles exceeds 2 million each year, according to the World Health Organization (WHO). In the past 40 years, AIDS has grown in scope from a handful of cases to over 40 million cases and almost 3 million deaths in 2006.

The tragedy of many viral diseases is their concentration in poorer regions of the world, where access to health care and personal living conditions are not as good as in developed countries, such as the United States. AIDS, for example, exacts a huge toll in sub-Saharan Africa. It is common to find villages populated mainly by pre-adolescents and the elderly, with the generations from 20–60 having been decimated. Aside from the human tragedy, the massive loss of the majority of productive wage earners is economically devastating. Many African nations have been economically crippled and little relief is foreseen for generations.

One tragic aspect of the viral disease situation in under-developed and developing countries is that treatments, including vaccines, exist for some of these diseases, but they are not readily available or affordable in these countries. Distribution of the needed medical supplies has been and continues to be driven mainly by humanitarian initiatives of organizations such as the WHO, UNICEF, and the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, rather than by commercial interests.

Finally, several of the highest profile emerging diseases are viral diseases. Ebola, avian influenza, and SARS are examples of diseases that have emerged as problems only relatively recently. Of these, avian influenza is a particular concern, since the virus that causes this disease may have developed the ability to spread directly from person to person, instead of only spreading from poultry to humans. This evolution combined with the expanding geographical range of the disease has raised concerns that this virus could cause a worldwide epidemic of a serious and frequently lethal form of influenza.

SEE ALSO *AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome); Antiviral Drugs; Arthropod-borne Disease; Avian Influenza; B virus (Cercopithecine herpesvirus 1) Infection; CMV (Cytomegalovirus) Infection; Eastern Equine Encephalitis; Ebola; H5N1 Virus; Hepatitis A; Hepatitis B; Hepatitis C; Hepatitis D; Hepatitis E; Influenza Pandemic of 1918; Influenza Pandemic of 1957; Influenza, Tracking Seasonal Influences and Virus Mutation; Influenza; Measles (Rubeola); Monkeypox; Mononucleosis; Mosquito-borne diseases; Mumps; Nipah Virus Encephalitis; Norovirus Infection; Polio (Poliomyelitis); Polio Eradication Campaign; Rabies; Retroviruses; Rotavirus Infection; RSV (Respiratory Syncytial Virus) Infection; SARS (Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome); St. Louis Encephalitis; West Nile.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Collier, Leslie, and John Oxford. *Human Virology.* New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.

Tabor, Edward. *Emerging Viruses in Human Populations.* New York: Elsevier, 2007.

Periodicals

The Writing Committee of the World Health Organization Consultation on Human Influenza A/H5. "Avian Influenza A (H5N1) Infection in Humans." *New England Journal of Medicine* 353 (September 29, 2005): 1374–1385.

Brian Hoyle

Virus Hunters

The people of San Joaquim were dying—they were bleeding to death from a disease nobody had ever seen before. They called it "el tifo negro," the black typhus, later to become known as Bolivian hemorrhagic fever. In this little one-horse garrison town in the lowlands on the Amazonian side of the Bolivian Andes, close to the Brazil border, soldiers and citizens alike were sickening, and no one knew why.

Under the Alliance for Progress established by President John F. Kennedy (1917–1963) between the United States and Latin America, Bolivia asked for help from the United States, and a team was flown in from the National Institute of Health's Middle America Research Unit in the Panama Canal Zone. Heading it was physician Karl Johnson, one of the great virus hunters of the end of the twentieth century. I was greatly privileged to be working with his team, on a traveling fellowship from the Rockefeller Foundation, at the time he isolated the causative agent from a human case. It was a new virus, which he named Machupo virus, after a local place name.

Everybody knows that viruses are really nasty pieces of work. They are even smaller than bacteria, and untouched by antibiotics, so for many there is no cure, nor even a preventive vaccine. They are responsible for some of the deadliest diseases on the planet: Ebola,

A researcher from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) inspects a deer mouse that was trapped for a study of hantaviruses in New Mexico in 2000. The deer mouse is a carrier of the Hantavirus, which can cause the often-deadly Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome in humans. *© Karen Kasmauski/Corbis.*

A wildlife biologist uses a cotton swab to sample fecal matter from a white-fronted goose in Alaska in June 2006. Officials from the USDA began testing migratory birds arriving from Asia and Russia for the avian influenza, also known as the bird flu. *Justin Sullivan/Getty Images.*

yellow fever, smallpox, AIDS, SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome), polio, and influenza, both human and bird, to name only seven. The scientists who tackled them have gone down in history as the "virus hunters," and some of them paid for their research with their lives.

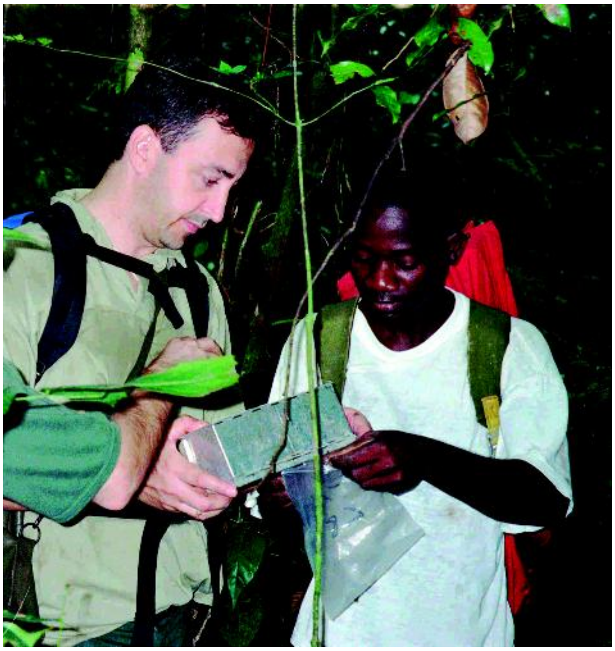
At the beginning of the twentieth century, the United States Army played a prominent role in the fight against yellow fever. A number of United States military physicians and volunteers died in early tests that proved that the virus was transmitted by mosquitoes. This discovery paved the way for control programs led by General William C. Gorgas, which resulted in the eradication of yellow fever from Havana, Cuba, and of the urban disease from Brazil. It also permitted the completion of the Panama Canal, work on which had been stalled by the huge toll exacted by yellow fever and malaria.

The Rockefeller Foundation's International Health Division set up laboratories in Africa and South America specifically to study yellow fever at its source. Six of their researchers died of the disease, but their work paid off with the isolation of the virus and the development of the 17D yellow fever vaccine, still one of the best vaccines ever invented.

The stories of these pioneer researchers are told in many books, but I want to tell you about two modern virus hunters with whom I had the good fortune to work myself. In San Joaquim, Karl Johnson had set up a breeding colony of hamsters and a separate infected animal room, well screened against mosquitoes and with the individual cages fitted with virus filters in their steel mesh lids. A separate lab had a glove box, inside which the hamsters could be inoculated safely with specimens. The only problem with this was that there was only one glove box, and it had to be sterilized with a disinfectant spray and left for an hour between each litter of hamsters inoculated, which slowed down the work and meant working very late hours. There was also a thatched hut where the zoologist took the rodents he trapped in the town for processing and where the entomologist combed their fur for ectoparasites, such as ticks and mites, in case these were involved in the transmission of the disease (they weren't). There was an autopsy room for humans, but the dead cow that came in at night with a history of bleeding had to be necropsied on a wooden bullock cart in the open air by the light of hurricane lamps. The cow was negative for the virus.

The colonel in charge of the town's garrison invited us to take our meals with him in his quarters. There is a photo of him at the head of the table dining with the team. A week later he was dead from the black typhus. But shortly after that there was euphoria—hamsters inoculated with autopsy material from another victim came down with signs of infection, and a virus was isolated from their brains. Now reagents could be made to test for antibodies in the blood of survivors and wildlife.

The next step was to find out where the disease was coming from and how to stop its transmission. Karl suspected the wild rodents that seemed to have recently overrun the town. He set up a system to trap out all the rats in one half of the place. Lo and behold, after that,



Dr. Pierre Formenty transfers a mouse from a trap into a plastic bag in the Tai Forest on the Ivory Coast in 1996. Formenty led a World Health Organization (WHO) team studying mice and other animals in the Tai Forest as they tried to locate the source of the deadly Ebola virus. AP Images.

no more cases occurred in that area. So the trapping was extended to the whole town, and the epidemic was stopped cold.

What eventually emerged was an extraordinary story. Apparently anti-malaria teams had deluged the town with DDT on a control visit. Cats are highly susceptible to DDT, and they get a fatal dose of it by preening their fur after being caught in the spraying or rubbing against surfaces that have been sprayed. All the cats in the town had died, so the wild rodents from the fields and forest around the town were able to infiltrate the houses in their quest for easy pickings. Some of them were infected with the virus, which they excreted in their urine and droppings inside houses. These dried out in the tropical heat and turned to dust, which, when stirred up by walking through or sweeping the rooms, was inhaled by the inhabitants, giving them the disease. So an intervention to control one fatal disease ended up causing another.

All this was in 1963. Thirteen years later, Karl was working for the United States Public Health Service as head of the Centers for Disease Control's Special Pathogens lab (the euphemism for the lab that handled the most dangerous disease agents known, needing Biosafety Level 4 containment, either in a chain of glove boxes or in negative pressure labs with the researchers wearing space suits). He found himself called out to investigate another hemorrhagic fever epidemic, this time in Yambuku, Zaire (now known as the Democratic Republic of the Congo). The American researchers found that the virus was transmitted by the inadequately sterilized, reused needles and syringes used for giving injections to the patients. The epidemic was being spread in the hospital. Worse, local burial custom demanded that the relatives remove by hand the viscera of the dead person, and of course this was done with out any concept of sterile precautions, so that the blood of the deceased infected the relatives. When these practices in the hospital and home were stopped, the epidemic ceased.

Karl's lab showed that the disease agent was a new member of a new family of viruses, the Filoviridae or "thread viruses" because they looked like partially coiled threads (some say more like shepherd's crooks) under the electron microscope. Karl named it Ebola virus, after a nearby river. He couldn't call it Congo virus because that name had already been taken by another, different

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIGEN: Antigens, which are usually proteins or polysaccharides, stimulate the immune system to produce antibodies. The antibodies inactivate the antigen and help to remove it from the body. While antigens can be the source of infections from pathogenic bacteria and viruses, organic molecules detrimental to the body from internal or environmental sources also act as antigens. Genetic engineering and the use of various mutational mechanisms allow the construction of a vast array of antibodies (each with a unique genetic sequence).

ANTIGENIC SHIFT: Antigenic shift describes an abrupt and major genetic change (e.g. in genes coding for surface proteins of a virus).

DROPLET TRANSMISSION: Droplet transmission is the spread of microorganisms from one space to another (including from person to person) via droplets that are larger than 5 microns in diameter. Droplets are typically expelled into the air by coughing and sneezing.

NECROPSY: A necropsy is a medical examination of a dead body: also called an autopsy.

PANDEMIC: Pandemic, which means all the people, describes an epidemic that occurs in more than one country or population simultaneously.

STRAIN: A subclass or a specific genetic variation of an organism.

virus isolated earlier in the same country, which was eventually named as the causative agent of Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever.

The labs run by Karl were dynamic places full of eager young researchers bubbling over with ideas about the viruses that cause disease and their epidemiology—where they hide in nature, how they are transmitted, and why they suddenly emerge to cause outbreaks. I would dearly have liked to have joined his lab, but instead I was hired by the Rockefeller Foundation to run their virus lab at the mouth of the Amazon, and so came to know well another modern virus hunter—Bob Shope.

I first met Bob on that same Rockefeller Foundation travel fellowship that took me to Bolivia. His family was away at the time and I was a guest in his home in Belem, Brazil, so we spent many happy hours both in the lab and in his house discussing the riddles of the viruses of the rain forest. His lab had a small mammal recapture program with a grid of traps in the forest at the edge of town, where wild rodents and marsupials were trapped daily, weighed and measured, and obliged to donate a blood sample so that their medical history could be followed. They were exposed to forest mosquitoes that transmitted all sorts of interesting viruses to them, which were then isolated from their blood samples in lab mice. Many of the viruses were new to science. Other mammals such as bats, sloths, and tree porcupines were also caught and studied, and a series of ingenious mosquito traps baited with monkeys or mice were run daily to provide pools of mosquitoes, sorted by species, which also yielded more such viruses. There were even lab workers who volunteered to go out into the forest at night to catch mosquitoes coming to bite them. Some of the human volunteers didn't manage to catch all the mosquitoes before the insects got their bites in, so they came down with jungle fevers. The viruses isolated from their blood provided proof that some of these new viruses could cause disease in people who went into the forest to hunt, collect timber, or clear plantations.

When Bob left Belem for the Yale Arbovirus Research Center (YARU), where he worked as researcher and then director for 30 years, I took over his lab and kept in close touch with him for many years. "Arbovirus" is short for "arthropod-borne virus," meaning viruses transmitted by fleas, ticks, and mites, as well as mosquitoes. YARU became a World Health Organization Collaborating Center and the world reference center for these and other viruses, because many viruses isolated from wildlife by field labs established around the world by the Rockefeller Foundation, France's Pasteur Institutes, and others turned out not to be transmitted by arthropods—notably Machupo and Ebola. Bob became a living encyclopedia of information on the origins and interrelationships of hundreds of viruses from around the world, including the many viruses from wildlife related to rabies. Some of these have become what we now call emerging diseases. He mentored students and post-docs from around the world, who worked in his lab on Rift Valley fever, Lassa fever, Argentinean, Brazilian, and Venezuelan hemorrhagic fevers, and other dangerous viruses. But he never forgot the lessons from his field experience in Brazil with exotically named viruses such as Caraparu, Oriboca, and Marituba. After his retirement, the YARU lab closed and he took the world reference collection of arboviruses to the University of Texas Medical Branch at Galveston, where he worked until his death in 2004.

So although it is all the rage now to go into molecular virology and sequencing, I hope that at least some of today's students will be inspired by the examples of Karl and Bob to go out into the field and get their hands dirty trapping wildlife and mosquitoes, finding out what viruses they are carrying and what makes those viruses tick. Because those viruses are the emerging diseases of the future, and we need to know as much as we can about them before they strike.

SEE ALSO *Arthropod-borne Disease; Ebola; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Epidemiology; Hemorrhagic Fevers; Tropical Infectious Diseases; Vector-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Peters, C.J., and Mark Olshaker. *Virus Hunter: Thirty Years of Battling Hot Viruses around the World.* New York: Anchor, 1998.

Periodicals

Cowley, Geoffrey. "The Life of a Virus Hunter." *Newsweek* (May 15, 2006).

Glaser, Vicki. "A Career Path in Arbovirology—An Interview with Robert E. Shope, M.D." *Vector-bone and Zoonotic Diseases* 3, 1 (March 2003): 53-56.

Sheldon, Tony. "The Virus Hunter." *BMJ* 327 (October 25, 2003): 950.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Tracking a Mystery Disease: The Detailed Story of Hantavirus Pulmonary Syndrome." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/diseases/hanta/hps/noframes/outbreak.htm> (accessed June 14, 2007).

Jack Woodall

War and Infectious Disease

Introduction

Throughout history, war epidemics have sapped and destroyed the ability of armies to fight, halted military operations, and brought death and disaster to the civilian populations of the warring factions as well as non-belligerent states. The historical occurrence and geographical spread of infectious diseases associated with wars raises the question of how the distribution of disease in epidemics is influenced by military operations. Historically, epidemics have been associated with military mobilization and the bringing together of tens and even hundreds of thousands of individuals into close quarters and contact in camps and garrisons. Deployment to parts of the world in which diseases are endemic, emerging, or re-emerging expose troops to diseases for which they have no immunity. Lastly, there is the age-old and familiar association of soldiers with prostitutes harboring sexually transmitted diseases. While the history of the impact of war on the emergence and spread of epidemics is long and tragic, this article will be focused on a few instances that bear on contemporary public health issues.

Medical workers carry a resident suffering from the deadly Marburg hemorrhagic fever in northern Angola in 2005. Battered by nearly three decades of civil war, hospitals in the country became a breeding ground for the Marburg virus, which has killed more than 200 people. *© Reuters/Corbis.*

History and Scientific Foundations

The 1918 Influenza Pandemic and World War I

In view of contemporary concerns about the recurrence of a worldwide bird flu pandemic, the association of World War I with the first known avian influenza pandemic is of particular interest. With the possible exception of the ultimate death toll of the AIDS pandemic, which has unfolded over more than a quarter of a century, the 1918–1919 influenza pandemic killed more people than any other outbreak of disease in human history. Estimates of the death toll range from a low of 21 million to a more recent and well-supported estimate of 50 to 100 million dead. At the time of the epidemic, the world population was only 28% of what it is currently, and the majority of the deaths occurred during a sixteen-week period, from mid-September to mid-December of 1918.

The origin of the 1918 pandemic, sometimes called the "Spanish flu," is still a mystery. Except that the virus did not originate in Spain, the exact origin of the virus strain that caused the 1918 flu pandemic remains in dispute. One hypothesis recently advanced is based upon epidemiological research that suggests the most likely site of origin was Haskell County, Kansas, an isolated and sparsely populated county in the southwest corner of the state, in January 1918. Some epidemiologists argue that competing hypotheses (that the pandemic originated in Asia, or that it began in British Army camps) are not as well supported as evidence that the flu might have spread between United States Army camps and might have been carried by American troops to Europe. The first known U.S. outbreak of epidemic influenza was identified in epidemiological studies and in lay accounts as having occurred at Camp Funston, now Fort Riley, in Kansas. However, a previously unknown epidemic of influenza occurred in Haskell County, Kansas, 300 mi (483 km) west of Funston.

In late January and early February of 1918, a local physician in the county faced an epidemic of influenza of extraordinary suddenness and lethality. Dozens of previously strong and healthy patients were struck down as suddenly "as if they had been shot." They then progressed to pneumonia and began to die. The local epidemic raged and worsened for several weeks and then disappeared as suddenly as it had emerged. Although influenza was not a reportable disease, the physician warned national public health officials, and this warning was published by the U.S. Public Health Service in "Public Health Reports" the Service's progenitor report to Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR). This report was the only reference in that journal to influenza anywhere in the world during the first six months of 1918. It was the first recorded instance in history of an influenza outbreak so violent that a physician warned public health officials, suggesting a new virus was adapting to humans with lethal effect.

During the Haskell County outbreak, local Army personnel reported to Funston for training. Also, friends and family visited them at Funston and soldiers came home on leave and then returned to Funston. The local press recorded several cases between February 26 and March 2 of people from the county who had visited the army base who either fell ill themselves or who had children that were stricken with influenza and pneumonia. The first soldier at the camp reported ill with influenza at sick call on March 4. Within three weeks, more than 1,100 soldiers at the camp, which held an average of 56,222 troops, required hospitalization, and thousands more required infirmary treatment. Meanwhile, Funston sent an uninterrupted stream of men to other American locations and to Europe, especially France. On March 18, influenza cases were reported in Camps Forrest and Greenleaf in Georgia. By the end of April, 24 of the 36 main Army camps suffered an influenza epidemic. Thirty of the 50 largest cities in the country also had a spike in excess mortality from influenza and pneumonia in April.

Also at the end of April, influenza erupted in France, beginning at Brest, the main port of disembarkation for American troops. After that, army operations proved to be the most influential factor in the spread of the epidemic elsewhere in the world. It seems likely that military policymakers either did not appreciate the role of their operations in spreading the epidemic or chose to regard it as an unfortunate but necessary consequence of war. Another lesson from this occurrence has been that a worldwide flu epidemic could potentially emerge anywhere, including a sparsely populated county in the United States, not only in a densely populated region in Asia.

WORDS TO KNOW

AEROSOL: Particles of liquid or solid dispersed as a suspension in gas.

BIOMODULATOR: A biomodulator, short for biologic response modulator, is an agent that modifies some characteristic of the immune system, which may help in the fight against infection.

DEBRIDEMENT: Debridement is the medical process of removing dead, damaged, or infected tissue from pressure ulcers, burns, and other wounds, in order to speed healing of the surrounding healthy tissue.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

ENTEROPATHOGEN: An enteropathogen is a virus or pathogen that invades the large or small intestine, causing disease.

EXOTOXIN: A toxic protein produced during bacterial growth and metabolism and released into the environment.

MATERIEL: A French-derived word for equipment, supplies, or hardware.

PROPHYLAXIS: Treatment to prevent the onset or recurrence of disease.

PYROGENIC: A substance that causes fever is pyrogenic. The word “pyrogenic” comes from the Greek word *pyr* meaning fire.

Typhus Fever in World War I

As devastating as the 1918 flu pandemic was for the military and civilian populations alike during the latter part of World War I, it probably did not influence the course of the war and of history as much as the outbreak of typhus fever on the European Eastern Front during the first World War. Typhus fever is a louse-borne disease, and the lice that carry typhus fever are common in large aggregations of persons who do not bathe or change clothes with any regularity and are forced by circumstances to live in close quarters, which are also the situations that infantry, refugees, and prisoners are likely to encounter. In late November of 1914, typhus fever, which had been endemic in Serbia for centuries, began to appear among Serbian refugees fleeing the Austrian attack on Belgrade. Shortly afterwards, cases were reported from the army and among the prisoners of war, but caused little alarm. However, this disease had played a decisive role earlier in European military history, when, in 1812, typhus fever shattered Napoleon’s invasion of Russia, destroying the French army well before it reached Moscow.

The Austrian invasion was soon repulsed, but the devastation of Northern Serbia created ripe conditions for the spread of typhus. The first outbreak of cases occurred among Austrian prisoners at Valjevo, followed within a week by outbreaks throughout the rest of the country. The infection traveled with the refugee population, on prisoner of war trains, and with moving armies, and was rapidly disseminated to all parts of Serbia, resulting in a scene of horror reminiscent of the Black Death. At the start of World War I, Serbia numbered some three million people. Within six months, one in six Serbians developed typhus fever. Over 200,000 people, including 70,000 Serbian troops and half of the 60,000 Austrian prisoners, died from the disease. The outbreak spread beyond Serbia into Russia, as the famine and dislocation of the Russian revolution destroyed sanitation and social infrastructure, eventually resulting in 20 million cases in that country, half of whom died.

War and Forced Migration

A study carried out between January and March 2004, with Liberian refugee women staying at the United Nations refugee camp at a village in Nigeria, shows how forced migration contributes to increased incidence of communicable diseases. Liberia's civil war resulted in approximately 215,000 refugees at the end of 2001. During the civil war, according to some estimates, up to 40% of all Liberian women were raped. Loss of family exposed women to increased rape, prostitution, and increasing risk of HIV and other sexually transmitted infections. Lack of postwar shelter compounds other problems and increased exposure to mosquito-borne diseases. Lack of clean drinking water introduced risks of bacillary dysentery, cholera, diarrheal disease, typhoid, hepatitis A, and other diseases.

Recent War Experience: Operation Iraqi Freedom

In the spring of 2003, 83,000 United States Marines participated in the opening phase of Operation Iraqi Freedom. A Navy Preventive Medicine Department laboratory was set up to provide diagnostic support for Marine medical units during a period of repositioning in south-central Iraq. Specimen collection boxes were sent to more than 30 primary-care medical stations handling 500-900 personnel each. The laboratory had the capability to detect many different disease agents. By far the most common reason for infectious disease sick call visits was gastrointestinal illness; no other symptoms had equivalent impact. An enteropathogen was detected in 23% of stool samples, with norovirus detected in 30 stool samples obtained from 14 different battalion or similar-sized units; next in frequency were *Shigella flexneri* and *Shigella sonnei*, which were isolated from 26 stool samples (20%) obtained from 15 units. Ciprofloxacin was effective *in vitro* against most bacterial agents, but neither doxycyline (which was taken daily as the antimalarial prophylaxis dose) nor trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole were effective. Otherwise, personnel remained free of infectious illness during this phase of the conflict, because other infectious agents were rare or absent.

War Wounds

Nothing is more basic to a discussion of war and infectious disease than the control of wound infections. Prior to contemporary efficient and airborne medevac procedures, military surgeons worked by a rule of thumb: patch up and move on. Even today, at frontline dressing stations no time is wasted on the hopelessly injured. A seriously wounded soldier has to survive the stretcher trip through the field treatment station, hospital station, evacuation hospital to base hospital, sometimes in a different country, before he or she receives the medical luxuries of thorough surgical care, as when American combatants in contemporary Iraq are given definitive treatment in a hospital in Germany. It is a given in the military that "every wound is infected." For example, prior to World War I, tetanus, a great killer in all previous wars, was practically eliminated by routine injections of anti-tetanic serum to all wounded soldiers.

Penicillin was first tested for military use in the spring of 1943. By autumn, doctors were using the antibiotic in combat zones, where it was limited to American and Allied military and to patients with life-threatening infections. Flight crews of the Eighth Air Force stationed in Britain were the first to directly benefit from the drug. Rationing was necessary, as a single infection could require two million or more units of the drug. During the war, the armed forces received 85% of the nation's production. With the implementation of successful mass-production techniques, production of units tripled during 1944–1945. Penicillin became the war's wonder drug, and its remarkable medical effects on infectious disease made World War II different from any previous war.

The mass production of penicillin for military use gave impetus to the widespread use of antibiotics to fight infection on a wide scale in civil society after the war. Contemporary antibiotic-resistant bacterial strains pose an analogous threat to wounded troops. In spite of antibiotic treatment and better antiseptic practices under combat conditions, it is still necessary to debride wounds and amputate seriously damaged limbs under combat situations in order to prevent gangrene and other runaway infection. The first use of debridement, the surgical excision of necrotic (dead) or infected tissue and the removal of foreign bodies from contaminated wounds to forestall infection, was made by a French medical officer in 1914. Prior to the introduction of debridement, all but simple incised wounds were treated by surgically opening the wound, removing obvious foreign bodies, and then irrigating with sterile salt solution or oxidizers such as hydrogen peroxide in an attempt to sterilize the lesion. The wound was left open and freely drained or was packed with gauze, and immobilized by suitable splints if necessary. Discharge of pus was treated by drainage tubes made of glass or rubber.

War and Public Health Infrastructure Damage

Often the public health impact of war goes unmeasured, but efforts were made to gauge the effects of the Balkan wars in the early 1990s. A public health assessment in

Bosnia-Herzegovina and in the areas of Serbia and Montenegro hosting Bosnian refugees in 1993 revealed widespread disruption to basic health services, displacement of more than one million Bosnians, severe food shortages in Muslim enclaves, and extensive destruction of public water and sanitation systems. War-related violence was the most important public health risk in that nation. Civilians on all sides of the conflict were intentional targets of physical and sexual violence. The impact of the war on the health status of the population was difficult to document; however, in central Bosnia, perinatal and child mortality rates doubled between 1991 and 1993. The crude death rate in one Muslim enclave between April 1992 and March 1993 was four times the pre-war rate. Prevalence rates of severe malnutrition among both adults and children in central Bosnia increased steadily throughout the course of the conflict. Major epidemics of communicable diseases were not reported, however, but public health conditions were ripe for such epidemics. The lack of epidemics in this case is scientifically significant to infectious disease studies. It challenges many historical assertions and assumptions about public health in war time.

■ Impacts and Issues

The intentional release of biological agents by belligerents or terrorists is a possibility that has received urgent attention following the anthrax attacks in the United States in 2001, but which was under intensive study by the military prior to that time. Law enforcement agencies, military planners, public health officials, and clinicians are gaining an increasing awareness of this potential threat. From a military perspective, an important component of the protective pre-exposure resources against this threat is immunization. In addition, certain vaccines are an accepted component of post-exposure prophylaxis against potential bioterrorist threat agents. These vaccines might, therefore, be used to respond to a terrorist attack against civilians.

Biological warfare agents may be classified in several ways: (1) operationally, as lethal or incapacitating agents, and as agents with or without potential for secondary transmission; (2) according to intended target, as antipersonnel, antianimal, antiplant, or antimateriel; and (3) according to type, as replicating pathogens, toxins, or biomodulators. Among the greatest threats are both replicating pathogens (bacteria and viruses) and toxins.

Anthrax: Fortunately, few infectious agents possess characteristics suitable for effective large-scale employment. However, *Bacillus anthracis* has properties that are ideal for this purpose. It is omnipresent in soil and the ease with which it can be cultured makes anthrax readily available to armies and to terrorists. Its lethality, ability to form tough spores, and its affinity for aerosolization (production as a fine mist) combine to make anthrax one of the greatest biological threats. Anthrax was prominent in the biological weapons programs of Iraq and the former Soviet Union; the Aum Shinrikyo cult also stockpiled it. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that the release of 110 lb. (50 kg) of anthrax spores along a 1.2-mi (2-km) line upwind of a city of 500,000 people would produce 125,000 infections and 95,000 deaths, far more than with any other agent considered. Consequently, research programs at military laboratories have devoted considerable effort to improving on the anthrax vaccines that have been in use for decades.

Plague: One of the earliest recorded attempts at biological warfare was the effort of besieging Tatar warriors to catapult the corpses of their own plague victims over the city walls of Kaffa in the Crimea in order to initiate an epidemic within the city. The Japanese released millions of infected fleas over Manchurian cities, resulting in numerous human plague cases. During the Vietnam War, plague vaccine was routinely administered to members of the United States armed services, and only eight cases of plague were reported among this population, which corresponds to a rate of about one case per million person-years of exposure. The success of this vaccine is evident when compared with the 330-fold greater incidence of plague among the unvaccinated South Vietnamese civilian population.

Brucellosis: Brucellosis is considered to be an incapacitating agent likely to produce large numbers of casualties but little mortality. Nevertheless, brucellosis is highly infective. In the 1950s the United States chose *Brucella suis* as the first agent to be produced for its biological warfare program. Veterinary vaccines that have significant efficacy against brucellosis have been studied and employed. The vaccination of livestock in combination with the slaughter of infected animals is largely responsible for the declining incidence of human brucellosis. In the United States, the decline of human brucellosis cases reported to the CDC has paralleled the control of infections due to *Brucella abortus* in cattle.

Tularemia: *Francisella tularensis* is sometimes considered a lethal biological warfare agent, since high-dose aerosol dissemination would result in a disproportionate number of cases of the pneumonic form of tularemia. *F. tularensis* followed *B. suis* into the United States bioweapons program in 1955, and extensive testing of the weaponization potential of the agent was conducted in human volunteers at Fort Detrick. The organism was also thought to have been prominent in the biological arsenal of the Soviet Union. American and Russian collaboration has provided the seed stock for tularemia vaccines currently in use throughout the world.

Q fever: *Coxiella burnetii*, the causative agent of Q fever, is a gram-negative coccobacillus resistant to heat and dryness that grows easily in embryonated chicken eggs and is highly infectious by aerosol. This organism was cultivated by the United States bioweapons program as a potential incapacitating agent.

Smallpox: Although endemic smallpox was eradicated throughout the world in 1977, the virus remains a potential biological weapon in the eyes of many military planners. Concerns persist that clandestine stocks of virus may exist outside of CDC in Atlanta, Georgia, and Koltsovo in Russia, the two WHO-authorized repositories of the virus.

Botulism: Iraq chose to weaponize botulinum toxin during the Gulf War in 1991, although its usefulness as a weapon might be limited by its instability during storage and modest range upon aerosolization. Nonetheless, when delivered by aerosolization, botulinum toxins would be expected to produce cases of typical clinical botulism. Moreover, terrorists might also use botulinum toxins to sabotage food supplies. No licensed vaccine exists today.

Staphylococcal enterotoxin B (SEB) intoxication: SEB is one of several pyrogenic exotoxins produced by Staphylococcus aureus, and is considered a viable incapacitating agent by biological warfare planners. Although SEB is a cause of food-borne disease, its use in biological warfare would likely involve aerosolization, with which it would cause a systemic fever accompanied by pulmonary symptoms. No SEB vaccine is currently available for human use.

Although the United States Department of Defense has initiated an anthrax immunization campaign throughout the armed forces, it is likely that other anti-biological-warfare vaccines will eventually be employed to protect armed services personnel. In a civilian context, use of these vaccines is more problematic, because the nature of the threat is less well defined. Nonetheless, certain vaccines, such as anthrax and smallpox, may have applicability in the prevention and management of exposed civilian populations.

See Also *Anthrax; Bioterrorism; Influenza Pandemic of 1918; Plague, Early History; Plague, Modern History; Public Health and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Barry, J.M. *The Great Influenza: The Epic Story of the Deadliest Plague in History.* New York: Viking, 2004.

Zinsser, Hans. *Rats, Lice and History.* Boston: Little, Brown & Company, 1935 (reprinted 1996).

Periodicals

Toole, M.J., S. Galson, and W. Brady. "Refugees, Forced Displacement, and War: Are War and Public Health Compatible?" *The Lancet* 341, 8854 (May 8, 1993): 1193–1196.

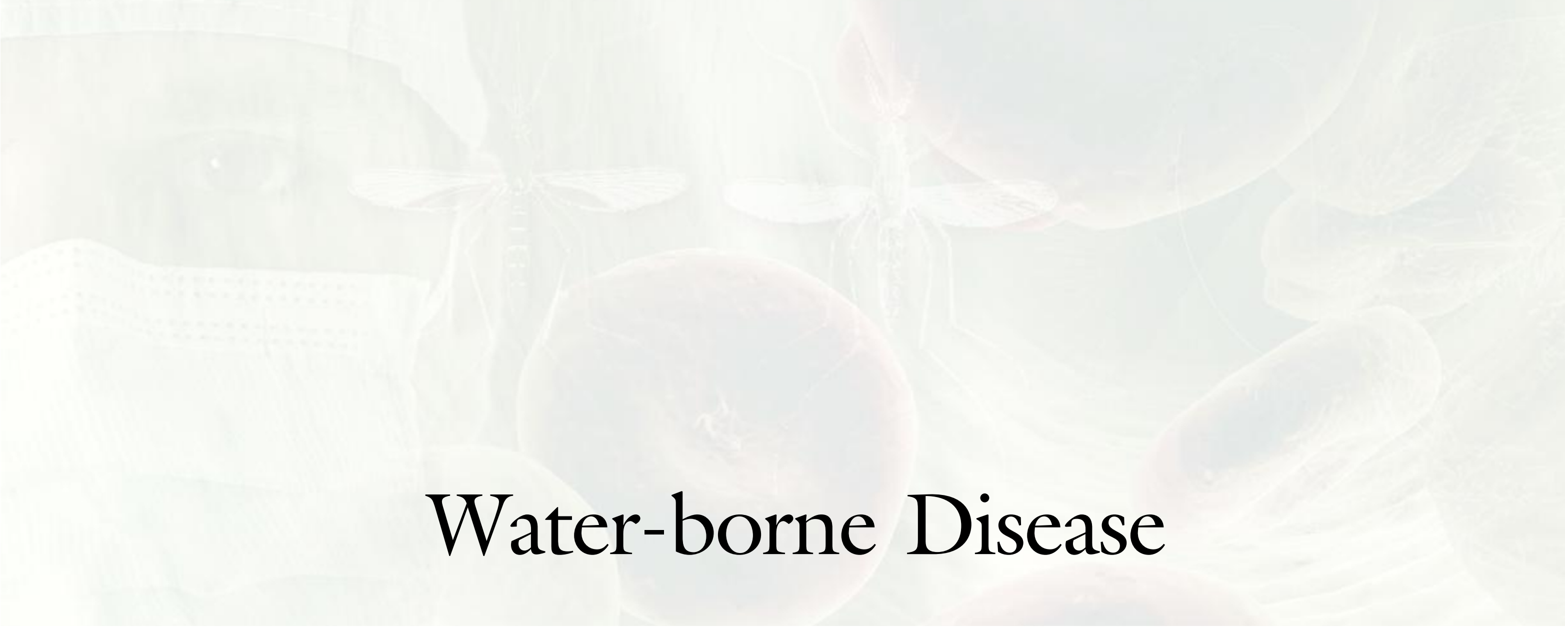
Web Sites

Jiang, X., et al. *Cabi.org.* "Gastroenteritis in U.S. Marines During Operation Iraqi Freedom." <http://www.cababstractsplus.org/google/abstract.asp?AcNo=20053058791> (accessed June 1, 2007).

U.S. Army Center for Health Promotion and Disease Prevention. "Medical Threats Briefing Homepage." <http://usachppm.apgea.army.mil/HIOMTB> (accessed June 1, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Global Atlas of Infectious Diseases." <http://gamapserver.who.int/GlobalAtlas/home.asp> (accessed June 1, 2007).

Kenneth LaPensee



Water-borne Disease

Introduction

Water-borne diseases are caused by water that is contaminated with microorganisms. The microbes—typically bacteria, viruses, protozoa, and parasites—are usually found in the intestinal tracts of humans and other creatures. In most cases, the water becomes contaminated by feces that carry the microbes.

Over 1 billion people worldwide do not have access to safe drinking water, and 3.4 million people die each year due to water-borne diseases, according to the World Health Organization (WHO). Indeed, water-borne diseases are the most common cause of disease and death in the world, according to the WHO. While this is largely a problem in developing and underdeveloped countries, developed nations, including the United States, are not immune. An estimated 900,000 water-borne-related illnesses and almost 1,000 deaths occur in the United States each year, according to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

As noted above, water-borne diseases are caused by a wide range of pathogens, including bacteria, viruses, parasites, and protozoa. Examples of bacteria that are important water-borne pathogenic organisms include *Vibrio cholerae* (the bacteria that causes cholera), various species *Campylobacter*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, and a type of *Escherichia coli* designated O157:H7.

An example of a pathogenic water-borne virus is the norovirus, which has become notorious in causing disease outbreaks on cruise ships, and in day care centers and universities. In the winter of 2007, classes were interrupted at two universities in the Canadian province of Nova Scotia because of simultaneous outbreaks of water-borne norovirus diarrhea. Viruses that normally dwell in the intestinal tract are also capable of causing disease if they contaminate water. Just one example is hepatitis (several forms of hepatitis are caused by several types of hepatitis virus).

A young girl in Haiti carries a bucket filled with clean water to be used for cooking and cleaning. The water facility, which began operation in the early 1990s, provides water to the residents living in one of the country's poorest areas. The clean water helps to reduce diseases such as cholera, common in the slums. *AP Images.*

A boy holds his school books in one hand and his shoes in the other as he crosses knee-deep flood waters near Dhaka, Bangladesh, in 2002. Rain caused overflowing rivers to break through mud embankments, swamping villagers. Relief officials battled flood-related diseases, which killed more than 50 people. *AP Images.*

As occurred in the Nova Scotia incidents, water-borne diseases are often the result of drinking or bathing in contaminated freshwater. Saltwater-borne microbial diseases also exist, and bacteria, viruses, and algae are typically associated with these illnesses. Explosive growth of certain algal species in ocean water can lead to the accumulation of these algae in oysters and other shellfish that feed by filtering water. If people eat the affected shellfish, various diseases can result. Some of these can be serious, producing paralysis and death.

Amebiasis is a common water-borne disease that is caused by the parasite *Entamoeba histolytica*. This parasite is normally found in feces, and can cause disease when fecal-contaminated water is consumed. About one of every 10 people who consume *E. histolytica*—which translates to millions of people worldwide—becomes ill. Their symptoms can be mild (diarrhea, stomach ache, and cramping), but, in some people, a severe form of amebiasis called amebic dysentery develops. The destruction of cells lining the intestinal tract produces bloody diarrhea. More rarely, the parasite can spread to the liver, lungs, or the brain.

Cryptosporidiosis is another water-borne disease caused by a parasite. This illness is caused parasites of the genus *Cryptosporidium*, especially *C. parvum*. The organism's life cycle consists of a small, inert form and an actively growing form. The inert form can pass through the filters used in water treatment plants and can survive exposure to chlorine. Once inside a person, the resulting infection can persist for months despite treatment.

Once relatively rare, cryptosporidiosis increased in prevalence in the United States beginning in the 1980s, as expansion of urban areas brought more people into contact with the animals that naturally harbor the parasite in their intestinal tracts. Symptoms of cryptosporidiosis include dehydration, persistent stomach upset, weight loss, nausea, and vomiting. The parasite can be passed from person to person. As of 2007, cryptosporidiosis is one of the most common causes of water-borne disease in the United States. A well-known outbreak occurred in Milwaukee, Wisconsin, in 1993; over 200,000 people were sickened during this outbreak.

Yet another parasite-mediated water-borne disease is cyclosporiasis, which is caused by *Cyclospora cayetanensis*. A hallmark of this infection is the sudden and explosive diarrhea that repeatedly occurs. Other symptoms include weight loss, dehydration, stomach upset, and fatigue.

Giardiasis is a disease caused by an intestinal parasite called *Giardia lamblia* (sometimes called *Giardia intestinalis*). Over the past 20 years, this disease has become one of the most common water-borne human diseases in the United States. In North America, it is sometimes known as beaver fever, since the beaver is one of the animals that naturally harbor the parasite in their intestinal tracts. Symptoms of giardiasis include diarrhea, intestinal gas, stomach cramps, upset stomach, and nausea. The lingering intestinal upset of giardiasis can be debilitating.

■ Scope and Distribution

Water-borne diseases caused by microorganisms occur worldwide. Virtually every country experiences water-borne illnesses, although the diseases tend to be more prevalent in tropical countries where the warmer climate favors the persistence of bacteria and viruses that enter the water from the intestinal tract. water-borne diseases are especially problematic in developing and underdeveloped nations, where adequate water treatment facilities may be lacking and safe drinking water may be in short supply. For example, in 2000, about 140,000 cases of cholera were reported to the WHO, and these infections resulted in 5,000 deaths. About 87% of these cases occurred in Africa.

Treatment and Prevention

Drinking water can be treated to remove or destroy contaminating microorganisms. Chlorination, one well-known treatment, destroys pathogenic bacteria, nuisance bacteria, parasites, and other organisms. Others treatments include exposure of the water to ultraviolet light (which rearranges the microbes' genetic material so that they cannot reproduce) and ozone, and the passage of water through a filter whose openings are so small that even viruses are removed.

Water-borne diseases that are caused by bacteria, protozoa, and some parasites can be treated using compounds that kill the target organism. For example, antibiotics are effective against bacteria. Viruses are more problematic, since antibiotics are not effective.

The best strategy is not to treat an infection, but to avoid getting the infection. Sensible precautions include washing hands after having a bowel movement, never drinking water that has not been treated (if in doubt, do not drink), and avoiding bathing or swimming in water that is known to be polluted. In many North American and European communities, recreational water is monitored and notices are posted restricting swimming when the water is determined to be contaminated.

Impacts and Issues

The global impact of water-borne disease is huge. The U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that there are over 4 billion episodes of diarrhea due to the consumption of contaminated water, and more than 2 million deaths. Tragically, most of these deaths occur among children in developing and underdeveloped countries. The WHO estimates that 4,000 children die every day from water-borne diseases. According to the CDC and the WHO, more than 2 billion people living in poverty are especially susceptible to water-borne disease, mainly due to contaminated surface water or inadequately treated drinking water.

People whose immune systems are not operating efficiently can develop more severe or persistent forms of water-borne diseases, such as cryptosporidiosis. The latter has become a significant threat for people with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome) and those who take immunosuppressive drugs to reduce the chance of rejection of a transplanted organ.

Aside from the human tragedy, this massive loss of life robs countries of the next generation of citizens and workers, which has serious consequences for the future population level and economic strength of these nations. For such nations, water treatment must be a priority. Analysts at the WHO and other agencies have estimated that for every dollar spent on water treatment, the economic return due to lower rates of death and disease would be $3–$4 per country. The resulting economic boost could help lift some nations out of poverty.

The problem of water-borne disease is not confined to the poor regions of the globe, however. Even in developed countries, a breakdown of water treatment can lead to disease. A well-known recent example occurred in the Canadian community of Walkerton, Ontario, in the

WORDS TO KNOW

CHLORINATION: Chlorination refers to a chemical process that is used primarily to disinfect drinking water and spills of microorganisms. The active agent in chlorination is the element chlorine, or a derivative of chlorine (e.g., chlorine dioxide). Chlorination is a swift and economical means of destroying many, but not all, microorganisms that are a health-threat in fluid such as drinking water.

DIARRHEA: To most individuals, diarrhea means an increased frequency or decreased consistency of bowel movements; however, the medical definition is more exact than this explanation. In many developed countries, the average number of bowel movements is three per day. However, researchers have found that diarrhea, which is not a disease, best correlates with an increase in stool weight; stool weights above 10.5 ounces (300 grams) per day generally indicates diarrhea. This is mainly due to excess water, which normally makes up 60 to 85% of fecal matter. In this way, true diarrhea is distinguished from diseases that cause only an increase in the number of bowel movements (hyperdefecation), or incontinence (involuntary loss of bowel contents). Diarrhea is also classified by physicians into acute, which lasts one to two weeks, and chronic, which continues for longer than four weeks. Viral and bacterial infections are the most common causes of acute diarrhea.

FECES: Solid waste of a living body.

NOROVIRUS: Norovirus is a type of virus that contain ribonucleic acid as the genetic material, and which causes an intestinal infection known as gastroenteritis. A well-known example is Norwalk-like virus.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

IN CONTEXT: DISEASE IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

Contaminated clean water supplies are often a major factor in the spread of disease. Besides climate, the most common reasons for clean water shortages are caused primarily by human activity. Water pollution can occur from both industry and leaking of septic (waste) water into the water supply system. In both cases, the water may become dangerous for the health of the people and unusable for industry. Purification of industrial waste is expensive, and sometimes, economic interests may conflict with protecting the environment. Many developing countries cannot afford proper water purification because their main concern is survival rather than the quality of the environment. Pollution, however, is a global concern and affects people in other countries besides the source of the pollution.

summer of 2000. The accidental flooding of a community well with run-off from a cattle farm, combined with inadequate treatment of the drinking water led to an outbreak of *E. coli* O157:H7-mediated illness that sickened over 2,000 people and killed seven. Some of the survivors were left with permanent damage to their kidneys due to the destructive effects of a toxin produced by the bacteria.

In many countries, drinking water is monitored to ensure that it is free from pathogenic bacteria, viruses, and protozoa. In the United States, CDC surveillance programs detect water-borne outbreaks and help direct federal, state, and municipal responses to the outbreaks. Similar efforts in developing and underdeveloped countries have been far less successful, as population increases in these poorer countries have outstripped the economic capability of governments to put in place the necessary water treatment technologies. By 2015, the United Nations has set a goal of cutting the number of people without access to safe drinking water by 50%.

Despite the continuing challenges, some successes have occurred. Initiatives such as the CDC's Healthy Drinking Water Program, the United Nations International Decade for Action: Water for Life 2005–2015, and the WHO's household water treatment and safe storage network are bringing simple and relatively inexpensive water treatment methods to rural areas in Africa, Central America, and South America, and helping to safeguard water in the United States. As one example, a disease called drancunculiasis, which formerly affected almost 4 million people each year in African countries, has been almost eliminated. As of 2007, the disease is detectable in only 12 nations in Africa.

SEE ALSO *Amebiasis; Bacterial Disease;* Campylobacter *Infection; Cholera; Cryptosporidiosis; Cyclosporiasis; Dracunculiasis; Dysentery;* Escherichia coli *O157:H7; Giardiasis; Mosquito-Borne Diseases; Norovirus Infection;* Salmonella *Infection (Salmonellosis); Shigellosis; Viral Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Ewald, Paul. *Plague Time: The New Germ Theory of Disease.* New York: Anchor, 2002.

Percival, Steven, et al. *Microbiology of water-borne Diseases: Microbiological Aspects and Risks.* New York: Academic Press, 2004.

Powell, Michael, and Oliver Fischer. *101 Diseases You Don't Want to Get.* New York: Thunder's Mouth Press, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Water-borne Diseases." October 23, 2001. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/diseases/list_water-borne.htm> (accessed April 19, 2007).

Brian Hoyle

West Nile

Introduction

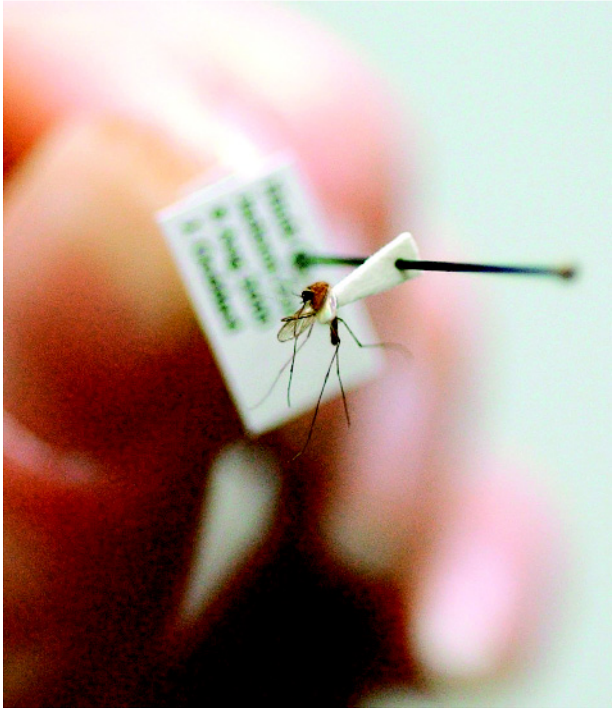
The West Nile virus is a member of the Flaviviridae family. It causes an inflammation of the lining of nerve cells located in the spinal cord (meningitis) and the brain (encephalitis). Originally detected in Africa in the late 1930s, the virus did not spread to North America until 1999. Since that time, its North American prevalence and geographical distribution has increased.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

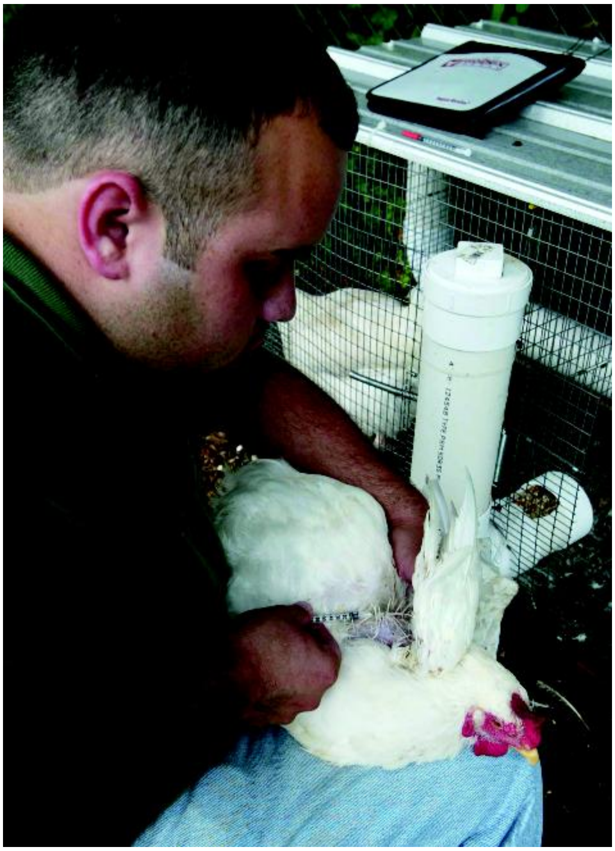
West Nile virus was first isolated in 1937 from a woman in the West Nile District of Uganda. The virus took its name from this location. During the 1950s, the ability of the virus to cause meningitis and encephalitis in humans and the resulting health threat of the virus was recognized. A decade later, the virus was linked to the development of encephalitis in horses.

Since the 1930s, the virus has been detected in humans, animals, and birds in Africa, the Middle East, Eastern Europe, and West Asia, but it did not arrive in North America until the end of the twentieth century. Scientists are not certain if West Nile virus spread from Africa to other regions of the world, such as North America, or if the virus was always present in North America, but was only revealed when tests for it were performed. However, the pattern of reported cases in North America is more consistent with the introduction of the virus from overseas and its subsequent spread. Assuming that the virus was, in fact, introduced to the North American continent, the way in which it was transported across the Atlantic Ocean to the East Coast of the United States is still unknown. Bird migration is one theory. Another theory suggests that a mosquito infected with the virus could have arrived in a shipment of goods.

Immediately after its appearance in North America, West Nile became noteworthy. In the summer of 1999, 62 cases of West Nile disease were reported in New York City. Seven people died as a result of the infection. The city experienced another outbreak the following summer, when 21 more cases and two deaths occurred. In the span of 1999–2000, the virus was also detected in other states along the coast of the northeastern United States. These early infections generated a great deal of



A Mississippi Department of Health employee holds one of the *Culex* mosquito species that has been identified as the primary carrier of the West Nile virus (WNV) in the South. The virus has been detected in all mainland states in the United States. *AP Images.*



A health official takes a blood sample from a chicken in Monroe, Louisiana. The bird was tested to determine if it was infected with the West Nile virus. *Dan Currier/Getty Images.*

concern, since they raised the possibility of a looming epidemic. This proved not to be the case, although the geographical range of the virus began to expand.

West Nile is a vector-borne disease. It is spread from infected birds to humans, mainly by mosquitoes (most commonly, the mosquito species *Culex pipiens*). Robins, jays, and crows are the most common avian reservoirs of the virus. As with other mosquito-transmitted diseases, the virus is acquired by a mosquito when it feeds on the blood of an infected animal or bird. The virus remains in the salivary gland of the mosquito and, when the same mosquito subsequently seeks a blood meal from a person, transfer of the virus can occur. The cases in New York City in 1999, and especially in 2000, were probably caused by mosquitoes that were able to survive the cold winter months by seeking refuge in warm and damp pipes, abandoned tunnels, subway tunnels, or other locations such as root cellars, barns, and caves. In the spring, the mosquitoes re-emerged and a new round of infections began. Not only humans were affected, but in the springs of 2000 and 2001, many crows died from the viral infection. Indeed, for those who monitor the appearance of West Nile disease, bird die-offs in the spring can be a signal that the infection is re-emerging, and that precautions are necessary to avoid human infection.

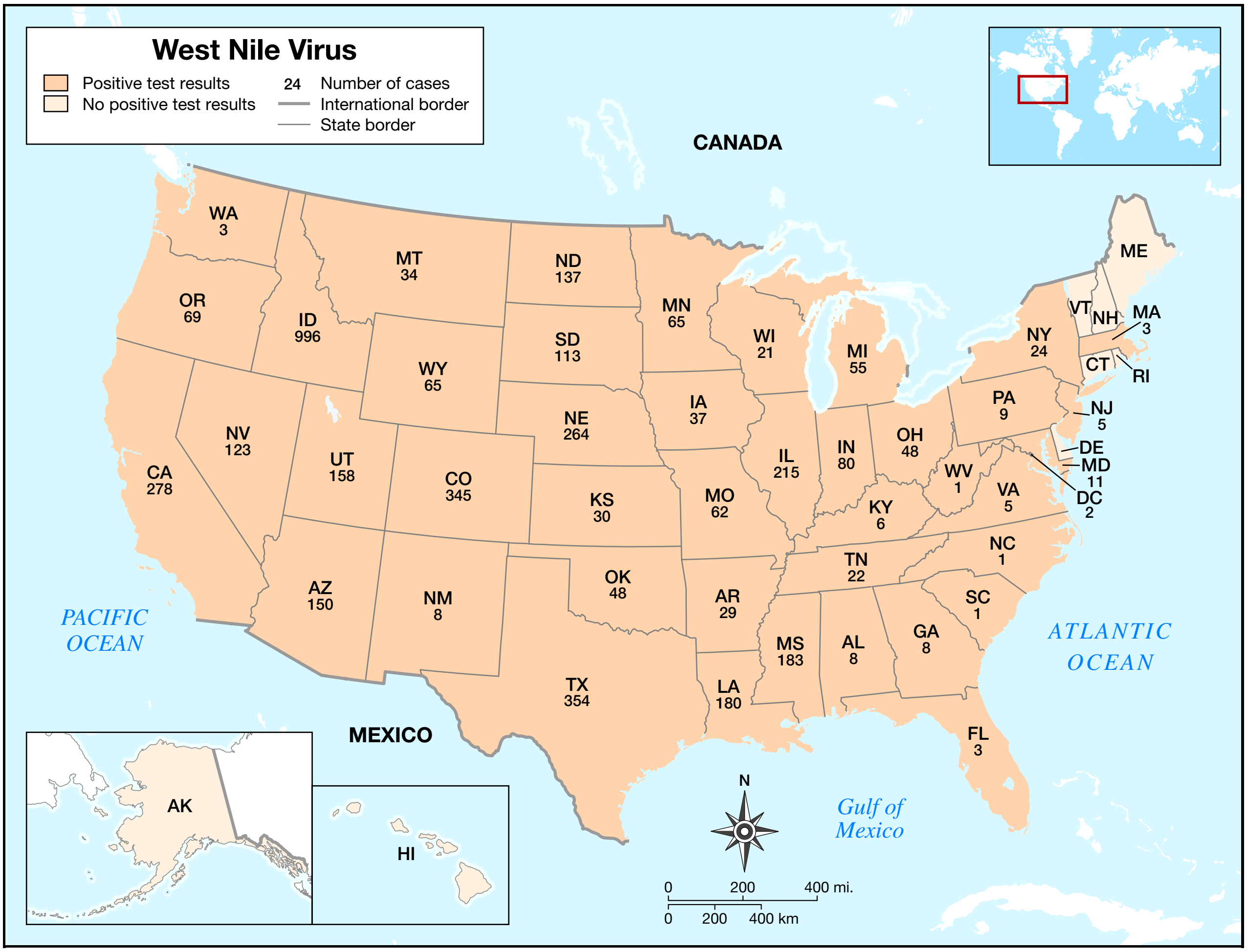
Research has shown that two populations of *Culex pipiens* exist in Europe; one seeks its blood meal exclusively from humans and the other from animals. The chance of a mosquito taking a blood meal from an infected bird and then feeding on a human are very low. However, in North America, the mosquito population has adapted to feed on both birds and humans, so the chance that a mosquito will seek blood meals from an animal and then from a human is greater. This is probably why West Nile disease has spread so much faster in North America than in Europe.

When the West Nile virus enters a human host via a mosquito bite, the virus replicates in the blood. Then, in a way that is still not clear, the virus is able to cross the blood brain barrier and enter the brain. Normally, passage into the brain is regulated by this very efficient blood brain barrier. The barrier is so efficient that some drugs are unable to cross it, but the barrier is not able to keep the virus out of the brain. Formation of new virus particles in the brain tissue stimulates an immune response that—along with the infection—can cause inflammation of the brain, a serious condition known as encephalitis.

Approximately 80% of infected individuals present no symptoms. Many individuals, however, can exhibit symptoms of West Nile that include: the development of fever, headache, muscle aches throughout the body (particularly in the back), loss of appetite, nausea with vomiting, diarrhea, swelling of the lymph nodes, and a skin rash. The infection tends to clear within a few weeks with no or mild complications.

In fewer than 1% of people who are infected with the virus, the infection becomes more serious. Inflammation of the nerve lining in the brain (encephalitis) and spinal cord (meningitis) develops. When meningitis or encephalitis develops, symptoms include a high fever, severe headache, stiff neck, mental disorientation, uncontrolled muscle spasms, loss of coordination, paralysis, and convulsions. A person can lapse into a coma and die. Survivors can be left with permanent damage, such as paralysis on one side of the body, similar to the paralysis seen in cases of polio. In severe cases, the paralysis affects the muscles used for breathing, and mechanical breathing assistance may be necessary.

The prospect that a serious disease can be acquired from a mosquito bite is alarming to many, since mosquitoes are often very common during spring and summer in North America and, despite precautions, can be hard to avoid. Fortunately, at least for now, the incidence of the virus in North American mosquito populations is very low. Scientists who have sampled mosquitoes for the presence of the virus have determined that typically only about 1% of mosquitoes harbor the virus, even in an


West Nile Virus
Positive test results
No positive test results
24 Number of cases
International border
State border
CANADA
MEXICO
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Gulf of Mexico
N
0 200 400 mi.
0 200 400 km
WA 3
OR 69
CA 278
ID 996
NV 123
MT 34
WY 65
UT 158
AZ 150
CO 345
NM 8
ND 137
SD 113
NE 264
KS 30
OK 48
TX 354
MN 65
IA 37
MO 62
AR 29
LA 180
WI 21
IL 215
MS 183
MI 55
IN 80
KY 6
TN 22
AL 8
OH 48
WV 1
GA 8
FL 3
SC 1
NC 1
VA 5
PA 9
NY 24
ME
VT
NH
MA 3
CT
RI
NJ 5
DE
MD 11
DC 2
AK
HI

Map of West Nile virus cases by state in the United States, 2006. *Data courtesy of Centers for Disease Control.*

area that is a known hotspot of the disease. The risk of a person contracting West Nile disease is small, and can be minimized still further by taking some common-sense precautions.

A number of factors increase the risk of contracting West Nile disease. The time of year is one factor. In more northern climates, late spring to early fall is the peak season for mosquitoes and the risk of contracting the disease is higher during those seasons. In southern regions that are warmer year-round, the risk is more constant.

Another risk factor is geography. Certain areas of the United States and Canada have greater mosquito populations that other areas, and therefore are areas of higher risk. For example, in 2006, Texas—which has coastline on the Gulf of Mexico—reported 330 cases of West Nile disease, while the drier and more inland state of New Mexico reported only eight cases. More locally, areas that have more stagnant water are more apt to be a breeding ground for mosquitoes.

A third risk factor is occupation. Someone whose job or recreational activities takes them outdoors is more at risk of exposure to mosquitoes than someone who spends more time indoors. Finally, people whose immune systems is not functioning efficiently—such as the elderly, the sick, and transplant patients whose immune systems have been deliberately supressed—are at higher risk, since they are less able to fight a viral infection.

■ Scope and Distribution

West Nile disease has occurred in Europe, Africa, the Middle East, parts of Asia, and North America. Outbreaks have occurred in all these regions, most recently in the United States and Canada from 1999–2003. The geographical distribution of the virus in North America has been steadily increasing since its appearance on the continent in 1999. By the summer of 2001, dead birds that tested positive for the virus were found in Toronto, Ontario (Canada), northern Florida, and Milwaukee, Wisconsin. A year later, over 300 cases and at least 14 deaths were reported and the virus was recovered from

WORDS TO KNOW

ENCEPHALITIS: A type of acute brain inflammation, most often due to infection by a virus.

MENINGITIS: Meningitis is an inflammation of the meninges—the three layers of protective membranes that line the spinal cord and the brain. Meningitis can occur when there is an infection near the brain or spinal cord, such as a respiratory infection in the sinuses, the mastoids, or the cavities around the ear. Disease organisms can also travel to the meninges through the bloodstream. The first signs may be a severe headache and neck stiffness followed by fever, vomiting, a rash, and, then, convulsions leading to loss of consciousness. Meningitis generally involves two types: nonbacterial meningitis, which is often called aseptic meningitis, and bacterial meningitis, which is referred to as purulent meningitis.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

dead birds in more western states. By August 2002, West Nile virus was reported in 41 states and by 2003 only the states of Alaska, Hawaii, Washington, Oregon, and Maine had not reported cases of the disease. By 2006, the disease had spread to the states of Washington and Oregon, and into Mexico. As of early 2007, the hotspots for the disease are California, Illinois, Louisiana, Nebraska, South Dakota, and Texas.

The number of cases have been increasing as well. In 2002, 4,155 cases and 284 deaths were reported to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). The next year, 9,862 cases and 264 fatalities were reported. About 30% of these cases involved meningitis or encephalitis and required extensive hospital care. From 2004–2006, 9,758 cases and 380 deaths were reported. During these last three years, the number of cases and number of deaths increased each year.

In Canada in 2001, the virus was uncovered in dead birds and mosquitoes in the province of Ontario. In 2002, 10 deaths occurred among the 416 cases reported to Health Canada, and the disease had spread to the province of Quebec. The following year, the number of cases increased to 1,494 and 14 deaths were reported. By 2003, the virus had been detected all across the country from British Columbia to Nova Scotia and as far north as the Yukon. In 2005, the last full year for which data is available, there were 239 cases and 12 deaths in Canada.

While birds are involved in the transmission of West Nile disease to people, dogs and cats also can be infected with the virus. This has caused fears that many pet owners could be at risk of the disease. While it does mean that a pet owner could acquire the virus after a mosquito has bitten a cat or dog, there is no evidence of a direct transmission from either animal to people.

Squirrels may also be susceptible to infection with West Nile virus. While there is no evidence that the virus is transmitted to someone from a squirrel or from handling a squirrel carcass, the presence of a dead squirrel could be an indication that West Nile disease is present in an area. Sensible precautions, including the use of gloves when disposing of a squirrel carcass, will prevent infection.

There may also be a genetic component to West Nile virus susceptibility. Researchers have found that an alteration in a gene called CCR5, which affects the functioning of T cells (important immune system cells), can produce more serious symptoms of the disease. Several studies have found that the proportion of people possessing the gene mutation is much higher in those with West Nile disease than in the general population. Curiously, the gene mutation helps protect people infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) from developing acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS, also cited as acquired immune deficiency syndrome).

Treatment and Prevention

West Nile disease is almost always acquired from a mosquito bite. While some species of ticks can harbor the virus, no tick-borne disease has been reported in a human. Furthermore, West Nile disease is not contagious—routine person-to-person transmission does not occur. In 2002, the CDC reported that it is possible to transmit West Nile virus via transfusion of virus-contaminated blood, transplant of a contaminated organ, and breast milk. Infection of a fetus by its mother prior to birth may also be possible. However, infections that do not involve mosquito bites are thought to be rare.

In Canada, all donated blood is screened year-round. Blood banks in the United States screen donated blood during peak infection periods. In addition, Britain's National Blood Service screens donated blood for the virus if the donor is known to have visited the United States or Canada in the previous month.

While there is no human vaccine effective against West Nile virus, a vaccine for horses is available. The vaccine has been used by some zoos to vaccinate birds; however, whether this strategy worked cannot be gauged until the birds are exposed to the virus. The equine vaccine, which contains weakened but intact West Nile virus, has not been studied in humans, and people should not use it. Veterinary vaccines are not subject to the same regulatory approvals as are human vaccines, and their safety for humans cannot be assured.

Prevention of infection focuses on minimizing the opportunity for contact with mosquitoes. Sensible precautions include using insect repellent sprays or creams that contain DEET (meta-dimethyl toluamide), wearing protective clothing such as long-sleeve shirts and long pants when outdoors, avoiding areas of stagnant water that can be breeding grounds for mosquitoes, and removing any objects that could contain stagnant water—birdbaths, clogged roof gutters, unused swimming pools, and disused tires—from a backyard. In addition, avoiding outdoor activity during the early morning and evening, when mosquitoes are most active, is a wise precaution.

DEET-containing insect repellents should not be used on infants or young children. For these youngsters and those who prefer not to be exposed to DEET, the CDC recommends oil of lemon eucalyptus. It is an efficient repellent, but does not retain its potency as long as DEET does.

IN CONTEXT: REAL-WORLD RISKS

According to the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health: "Workers at risk of exposure to WNV (West Nile Virus) include those working outdoors when mosquitoes are biting. Outdoor workers at risk include farmers, foresters, landscapers, groundskeepers and gardeners, painters, roofers, pavers, construction workers, laborers, mechanics, and other outdoor workers. Entomologists and other field workers are also at risk while conducting surveillance and other research outdoors."

"Although WNV is most often transmitted by the bite of infected mosquitoes, the virus can also be transmitted through contact with infected animals, their blood, or other tissues. Thus laboratory, field, and clinical workers who handle tissues or fluids infected with WNV or who perform necropsies are at risk of WNV exposure."

SOURCE: *National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health*

Impacts and Issues

West Nile disease has quickly become a significant public health threat in North America. The possibilities of large outbreaks and the potential seriousness of the infection—one of every 150 people who contract the disease develops meningitis or encephalitis—has created near-panic in the public. Agencies, such as the CDC, have devoted significant effort to informing people about the disease and publicizing the common-sense preventative measures that can help protect people.

The economic consequences of West Nile disease can be great. For example, in 2002, it was estimated that about $200 million in health care costs were associated with the disease in the United States. There are other costs as well. For example, national, state, and local agencies have surveillance programs to monitor mosquito, bird, and even human populations for the virus, and they also conduct initiatives to increase awareness of the disease among the public and health care providers.

Spraying of mosquito breeding sites is a proven way of reducing the mosquito population. However, those opposed to such spraying are concerned that the possible environmental degradation from the chemical spray is a greater danger than any cases of West Nile that might develop. Those in favor of spraying maintain that the increasing spread of West Nile disease and the increasing number of deaths argues for intervention and control programs, including spraying.

Primary Source Connection

As part of an effort to combat West Nile Virus, the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) publishes information articles designed to alert the public to potential dangers and to provide concrete steps to reduce risk. The recommendations were formulated by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

This press release announced a new test designed to expedite diagnosis of West Nile virus along with a list of preventative steps recommended by the FDA in 2000—and that are current as of March 2007—to avoid risk of acquiring West Nile disease, especially until definitive treatment or vaccines are developed and tested.

First Test Approved to Help Detect West Nile Virus

The Food and Drug Administration has cleared the first test that will help physicians diagnose cases of potentially deadly West Nile virus earlier than with current methods.

The West Nile Virus IgM Capture ELISA test is intended to be used in people who have symptoms of viral encephalitis or meningitis, which are serious inflammatory conditions of the brain or spinal cord that may occur in people infected with the virus.

"The rapid review and approval of this blood test, which uses antibody levels to identify persons who were recently exposed to West Nile virus, reflects FDA's commitment to making safe and effective medical products available promptly," says FDA Commissioner Mark B. McClellan, MD, Ph.D. The new test works by detecting the levels of IgM, a particular type of antibody to West Nile virus, in blood serum. It is manufactured by PanBio Ltd. of Windsor, Australia.

West Nile virus is a mosquito-borne virus first detected in the United States in 1999. While it often causes a mild infection that clears without further treatment, some people, especially those over 50, develop severe infections resulting in neurological disease and even death. The virus is most prevalent during peak mosquito season, beginning in July and ending in October.

By 2002, West Nile virus had spread to most of the continental United States. The CDC reported this season's first human case of West Nile virus in the United States in early July. As of early August, three deaths in Texas and Alabama had been attributed to the virus. The CDC says that West Nile virus activity detected in humans began a "significant uptick" in early August 2003.

The new diagnostic test is a significant breakthrough in the detection of West Nile virus. However, it's important to know that it is not a donor screening test, but is one of several tools used by the physician to determine if the patient is infected. Results from the IgM Capture ELISA must be confirmed with other laboratory tests as part of a comprehensive evaluation. The test is designed to be used in cases when someone has symptoms of West Nile encephalitis or meningitis—headache, high fever, neck stiffness, stupor, disorientation, coma, tremors, convulsions, muscle weakness, and paralysis.

In addition to its usefulness for diagnosing individuals with the infection, the test has the potential to help monitor the scope and spread of the disease. The FDA has established guidance and procedures to avoid collection and use of blood that might be at risk for transmitting West Nile virus. The agency is cooperating with the country's blood organizations, both in the laboratory and in epidemiological investigations of the virus. In August 2002, prior to any actual report of transmission, the FDA alerted the blood industry to be vigilant in excluding symptomatic donors and then later that year provided guidance to blood establishments on procedures to protect the blood supply. The FDA updated this guidance in May 2003, based on experience with the 2002 outbreak.

Additionally, the agency is working with manufacturers to expedite development of necessary medical products, such as screening tests and additional diagnostic methods. Experimental donor screening tests have been put into place and have been available nationwide since July 1, 2003. These tests add a measure of safety and will prevent contaminated blood from entering the nation's blood supply.

Other federal efforts are ongoing to combat West Nile virus. The National Institutes of Health (NIH) is supporting ongoing research at universities and companies nationwide aimed at developing the public health tools to help fight the infection. Currently the NIH is funding four areas of research for West Nile virus: diagnosis, prevention, therapy, and basic research that look at the virus as it replicates in animals, humans, and mosquitoes. In the area of prevention, the NIH is supporting three different approaches to vaccines, including a live vaccine made by mixing West Nile virus with the already established yellow fever vaccine Through its grants and contracts, the NIH is the largest supporter of infectious disease research in the United States.

For now, the CDC, the FDA and the NIH all agree that the most important message about the virus is that people need to be prepared and take the steps necessary to prevent mosquito bites and avoid exposure, especially until treatment or vaccines are available to add additional layers of protection.

Reduce the Risk of West Nile Virus

1. Avoid mosquito bites
   - Cover up. Wear long-sleeved shirts, long pants, and socks sprayed with repellent while outdoors.
   - Avoid mosquitoes, which often bite between dusk and dawn.
   - Limit time outdoors during these hours.
   - Spray insect repellent containing DEET (look for N, N-diethyl-m-toluamide) on exposed skin outdoors.
   - Spray clothing with repellents containing DEET or permethrin.
   - Don't spray repellent on skin under clothing.
   - Don't use permethrin on skin.
   - Use repellent carefully.
   - Don't put repellent on kids' hands because it may get into their mouths or eyes.
2. Mosquito-proof your home
   - Install or fix window and door screens.
   - Drain standing water, where mosquitoes like to breed.
   - Look around every week for possible mosquito breeding places.
   - Empty water from buckets, cans, pool covers, flowerpots, and other items.
   - Throw away or cover up stored tires and other items not being used.
   - Clean outdoor pet water bowls weekly.
   - Check to see if rain gutters are clogged.
3. Help your community
   - Dead birds help health departments track West Nile virus.
   - Check with your local or state health department to find out their policy for reporting dead birds.

RADOS, CAROL. "FIRST TEST APPROVED TO HELP DETECT WEST NILE VIRUS" *FDA CONSUMER* 37 (SEPTEMBER–OCTOBER 2003).

See Also *Arthropod-borne Disease; Climate Change and Infectious Disease; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Encephalitis; Meningitis, Viral; Mosquito-borne Diseases; Vector-borne Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Sfakianos, Jeffrey N., and David Heymann. *West Nile Virus.* London: Chelsea House, 2005.

White, Dennis J., and Dale L. Morse. *West Nile Virus: Detection, Surveillance, and Control.* New York: New York Academy of Sciences, 2002.

Periodicals

Boyer, Jere, Thomas File, and William Franks. "West Nile Virus: The First Pandemic of the Twenty-first Century." *Ohio Journal of Science* 102 (2002): 98–102.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "West Nile Virus." March 6, 2007. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/westnile/index.htm> (accessed March 23, 2007).

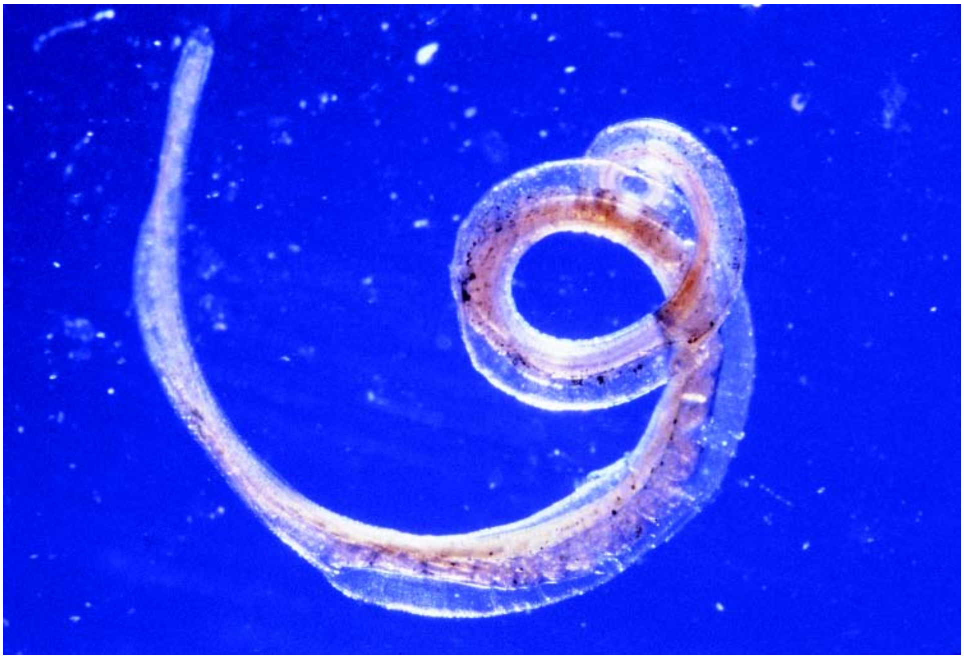
Brian Hoyle

Whipworm (Trichuriasis)

Introduction

Whipworm, or trichuriasis, is caused by an infestation of the helminth (parasitic worm) *Trichuris trichiura*. This roundworm infects human hosts and reproduces within the large intestine. Transmission of this parasite occurs when infective eggs are passed via the feces and contaminate food and soil. Humans ingest contaminated food or soil to become infected. Light infestations often cause no symptoms, or mild symptoms, while heavy infestations can cause more serious complications including anemia, rectal prolapse, appendicitis, and colitis.

Treatment for whipworm involves anti-parasitic medication containing either mebendazole or albendazole. In addition, treatment may be necessary for accompanying symptoms. Whipworm is a worldwide infection that is prevalent in tropical, densely populated countries, especially in regions with poor sanitation methods. Both adults and children can become infected, although children tend to have a higher infection rate. Whipworm can be prevented by avoiding consumption of contaminated foods, maintaining high sanitation practices, and washing hands after working or playing in soil.



A light micrograph shows an adult male whipworm (*Trichuris trichiura*), a parasite in humans. The front of the worm (upper left) is narrow and pointed like a hair or whip. Adult worms live in the intestines with the front end buried in the intestinal wall. *CNRI/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Whipworm infection is a parasitic infection caused by ingestion of the whipworm, or roundworm, *Trichuris trichiura*. The life cycle of *T. trichiura* involves a human host for the maturation of worms and the production of eggs. Humans become infested after ingesting food or soil contaminated with embryonated (containing an embryo) whipworm eggs. The eggs hatch and mature in the small intestine before migrating to the large intestine. Here, the worms attach to the intestine walls, reach about 4 inches in length, and become sexually mature. The worms mate and two to three months after entering the body, females produce up to 20,000 eggs a day. These eggs pass out of the body with the feces and remain in moist, dark conditions until they are ingested by a new host. Without extremes in temperatures, the eggs can remain viable in soil for years.

In cases where infestation is low, that is, fewer than 100 worms, people usually suffer no symptoms, but some may experience flatulence, abdominal pain, constipation, or diarrhea. If heavily infested, symptoms include weight loss, abdominal pain, nausea, bloody stools, and diarrhea. In severe cases, gastrointestinal problems, anemia, and even rectal prolapse, where the rectum protrudes outside of the body, may occur. The disease is diagnosed when a stool ova and parasite exam reveals the presence of *T. trichiura* or their eggs.

Scope and Distribution

Whipworm occurs worldwide. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), this parasitic worm is the third most common roundworm to infect humans. The CDC estimates the prevalence of whipworm at approximately 800 million people worldwide. However, the majority of whipworm infections occur in regions with dense populations and a tropical climate. Poor sanitation levels also increase the likelihood of the disease. Whipworm is most common in areas of Southeast Asia, the Caribbean, and Central and South America. Although whipworm infestations can occur in the United States, Japan, Western Europe, or Australasia, it is not common.

Children are at the greatest risk of infection. This is generally thought to be a result of infrequent handwashing and their penchant for playing in soil. As soil may be contaminated with whipworm, failure to wash hands thoroughly before contact with the mouth or food increases their chance of infection.

Treatment and Prevention

As most cases of whipworm tend to be asymptomatic, and treatment usually involves removing the worms. This is achieved through administration of medication containing either mebendazole, which is recommended by the CDC, or albendazole. For symptomatic cases, supportive treatment may be necessary in addition to the anti-parasitic medication. In some cases in which large blood loss occurs, there is a risk of anemia developing. Therefore, iron supplements may be necessary to prevent an iron deficiency.

Whipworm infection is prevented by avoiding contact with contaminated soil and contaminated food. This may involve wearing protective clothing while working in potentially contaminated soil, or washing hands thoroughly after touching soil. Food can be washed and cooked to remove parasites. In addition, crude sanitation, such as the collection of human feces for disposal or for use as fertilizer, is a common way for the infection to spread. Therefore, improved sanitation methods will decrease the likelihood of infections spreading.

WORDS TO KNOW

HELMINTH: A representative of various phyla of worm-like animals.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

OVA: Mature female sex cells produced in the ovaries. (Singular: ovum.)

Impacts and Issues

Whipworm infections are most likely to occur in developing countries, or countries with dense populations, tropical weather, or poor sanitation methods. In economically depressed countries, 95% of children with protein deficiency and anemia also have whipworm infection. It is in these same countries that medical infrastructure is often limited and seldom able to deliver the repeated anti-helminth medication that successful treatment whipworm infection requires.

Another issue related to whipworm infections involves the potential complications that can arise following heavy whipworm infestations. Anemia, a complication that results in a low transfer of oxygen to body tissues, directly affects tissue development. As children are commonly infected, this complication could affect their growth and overall health. Girls with whipworm infection are particularly vulnerable to anemia caused by whipworm infestation, as they experience additional blood loss with menstruation and often begin childbearing at a relatively young age in countries where whipworm is endemic.

The World Health Organization has identified several key strategies in reducing whipworm infestation in people living in developing countries. Rather than reduce the number of whipworm infections in people (the old strategy), health authorities now work to reduce the number of worms residing in each person. This strategy recognizes the fact that re-infection will probably occur, and focuses on lessening the severity of the disease. Drugs are also now delivered to schools and other long-standing facilities, where minimally trained local citizens can administer them. This strategy is showing more success in delivering repeated treatments than relying on mobile medical teams.

SEE ALSO *Handwashing; Helminth Disease; Hookworm (*Ancylostoma*) Infection; Parasitic Diseases; Pinworm (*Enterobius vermicularis*) Infection; Roundworm (Ascariasis) infection; Sanitation.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

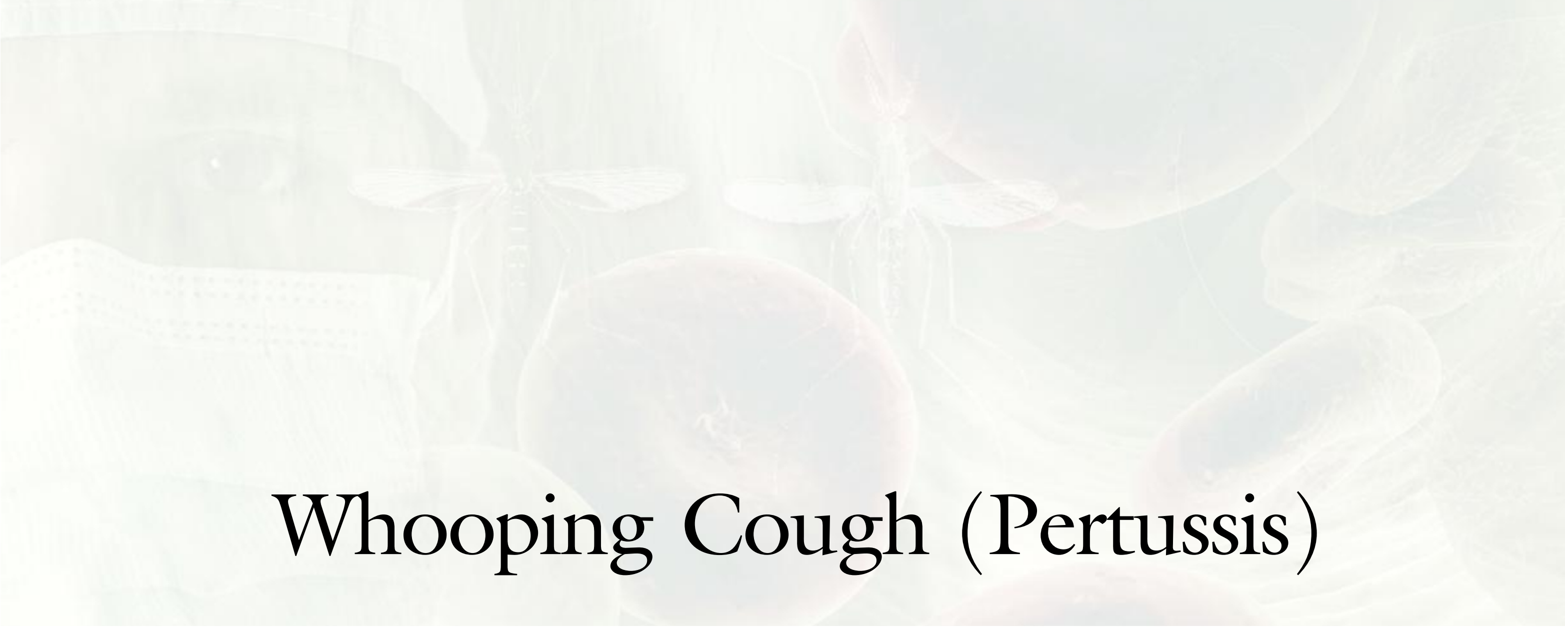
Bush, A.O., J.C. Fernandez, G.W. Esch, and J.R. Seed. *Parasitism: The Diversity and Ecology of Animal Parasites.* New York: Cambridge University Press, 2001.

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases. vol. 2.* Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2005.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control (CDC). "Trichuriasis." July 27, 2004 <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/DPDx/HTML/Trichuriasis.htm> (accessed March 9, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Parasitic Roundworm Diseases." March 8, 2005 <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/factsheets/roundwor.htm> (accessed March 9, 2007).



Whooping Cough (Pertussis)

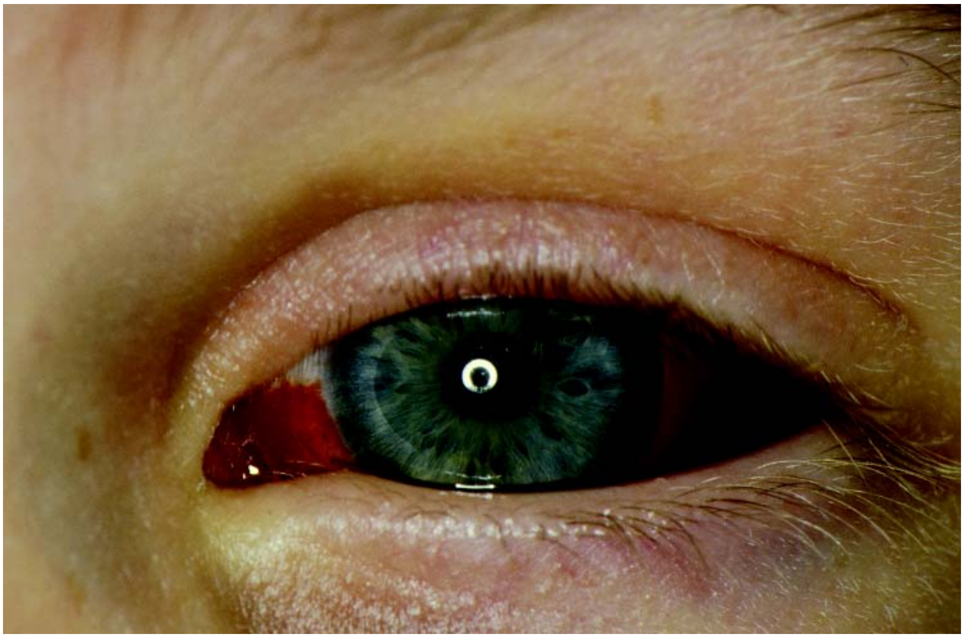
Introduction

Whooping cough is also known as pertussis, a word that means “intense cough.” It is caused by the bacterium *Bordetella pertussis*, which is a pathogen (disease-causing organism) with a propensity for lung tissue. Whooping cough was once the leading cause of death in children under five in the United States. In 1945, it caused more deaths than diphtheria, scarlet fever, measles, and polio combined. Since the introduction of an effective vaccine in the late 1940s, the number of cases of whooping cough has decreased sharply, although there have been increases in recent years.

Whooping cough is no ordinary cough. The disease is marked by bouts of severe spasmodic coughing that end with a characteristic “whooping” sound and vomiting. Complications from secondary bacterial infection include pneumonia and ear infection. Mortality is greatest among infants, especially those who are born prematurely. Whooping cough is a highly contagious disease, so it is important that children be vaccinated against it.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The causative agent of whooping cough is *B. pertussis*, which is a Gram-negative coccus (a short, rod-shaped



The eye of a child with pertussis is hemorrhaging (bleeding) from a blood vessel that has burst due to prolonged coughing. The blood has pooled beneath the conjunctiva, the membrane that covers the front of the eye. Vision is not affected; the blood is eventually absorbed into the body. *Dr. M.A. Ansary/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

WORDS TO KNOW

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE: The ability of bacteria to resist the actions of antibiotic drugs.

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA: All types of bacteria identified and classified as a group that does not retain crystal-violet dye during Gram's method of staining.

PAROXYSM: In medicine, a paroxysm may be a fit, convulsion, or seizure. It may also be a sudden worsening or recurrence of disease symptoms.

PATHOGEN: A disease causing agent, such as a bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.

PNEUMONIA: Pneumonia is inflammation of the lung accompanied by filling of some air sacs with fluid (consolidation). It can be caused by a number of infectious agents, including bacteria, viruses, and fungi.

VACCINE: A substance that is introduced to stimulate antibody production and thus provide immunity to a particular disease.

bacterium). The term Gram-negative refers to the way the microbe reacts with Gram stain, which is used to prepare samples for microscopy. *B. pertussis* specifically infects the tissue of the lung, and its incubation period is 6–20 days.

Whooping cough may last for several weeks and is divided into three distinct stages. The catarrhal stage involves non-specific symptoms, such as a runny nose, a mild cough, and a mild fever, which may easily be mistaken for a cold. This stage may continue for a week or so, before the second, so-called paroxysymal stage sets in. This is marked by paroxysms—or attacks—of severe, repetitive coughing ending in a 'whooping' sound and vomiting, usually accompanied by exhaustion. The coughing has a choking quality, and the patient's face may look congested. There may be between two and 50 attacks a day, occurring more frequently at night. Between attacks the patient does not usually cough at all.

The whooping sound comes from the larynx or voice box, as the patient finally takes a proper breath in after an attack. Complications of this stage of whooping cough include convulsions and seizures arising from a reduced supply of oxygen to the brain. This is thought to occur either because of the coughing itself or due to a toxin released by *B. pertussis.* This stage lasts for one to four weeks, during which time secondary bacterial infections like otitis media—an infection of the middle ear—and pneumonia may set in. The latter is the most common and deadly complication of whooping cough.

The final stage of whooping cough is convalescence and is characterized by a fading away of the cough, in both frequency and intensity. Surveillance data in the United States from 1980 to 1989 suggest that the clinical course of whooping cough is complicated by pneumonia in about 22% of cases, by seizures in 3% of cases and by encephalopathy (a swelling of the brain) in about 1% of cases. Mortality in infants aged less than one month was 1.3% and among infants aged 2–11 months was 0.3%. A case of whooping cough usually gives a patient lifelong immunity to further attacks.

Whooping cough is a highly contagious disease, particularly in the catarrhal stage and up to three weeks after the start of the paroxysmal stage. Adults and adolescents, who may have a milder form of the disease, act as a reservoir of infection. The disease is transmitted through coughing and sneezing, which exposes people to infected respiratory secretions.

■ Scope and Distribution

Whooping cough has been known as a childhood disease for several hundred years. According to the World Health Organization (WHO) there were 39 million cases of whooping cough around the world in the year 2000, with 297,000 deaths. In many countries, regular epidemics occur every three to five years. Those who have not been fully immunized, either because they are too young or for some other reason, are most at risk of dying from whooping cough.

Before the introduction of the whooping cough vaccine, the disease was the leading cause of death from infectious disease in the under-fives in the United States. Outbreaks tend to occur in the United States between July and October, with about one-third of cases being in infants less than six months old and 60% of the total being in the under-five age group. Premature babies are particularly at risk of whooping cough and are more likely to develop complications than older children.

The whooping cough vaccine reduced the number of whooping cough cases 100-fold by 1970, compared to figures for 1945. But there has been an increase since then, with several states reporting epidemics. The increases have been higher among adolescents and adults than among children, suggesting some waning of immunity in the older age groups. In 1996, the year of the last major outbreak, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) reported nearly 8,000 cases, which was the highest number since 1967. Around 5,000–7,000 cases of whooping cough are reported each year to the CDC, and this number is probably fewer than the actual number of cases. In 2003, there were 13 deaths from whooping cough in the United States.

Treatment and Prevention

Antibiotics will shorten the course of whooping cough, if given in the early stages of the disease, but do not tend to shorten the paroxysmal stage. However, antibiotic treatment does help prevent the transmission of the disease. Erythromycin is the antibiotic that is usually recommended for the treatment of whooping cough. A major concern is the emergence of strains of *B. pertussis* that are resistant to antibiotics. Patients with whooping cough readily become dehydrated and should be given plenty of fluids.

The pertussis vaccine is generally given in combination with vaccines against diphtheria and tetanus (the DTP vaccine). The WHO recommends three injection of DTP be given at the ages of six, ten and 14 weeks, with a booster injection between 18 months and six years. Up to half of children receiving the vaccine will become feverish immediately afterwards for up to 24 hours and may have soreness and redness at the site of the injection.

Impacts and Issues

Whooping cough remains a serious health threat for children around the world, which is why joint efforts of the WHO and other agencies are aimed toward universal vaccination for children. As with other diseases, such as diphtheria and polio, the lives of many children around the world are at risk because they have not been vaccinated. In countries where the health infrastructure is weak or lacking, because of socioeconomic and political problems or geographical factors, access to vaccination may be patchy or non-existent. For example, several children died during two outbreaks of whooping cough in 2003 in Badakhshan, a northeastern province of Afghanistan. An emergency team from the Afghan Health Ministry and the WHO mounted a mass distribution of erthyromycin. Badakhshan is mountainous, isolated, and has few health workers. Many children who live there are malnourished. These factors put them at risk of whooping cough and many other infections.

SEE ALSO *Childhood Infectious Diseases, Immunization Impacts.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Pertussis.” October 13, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/pertussis_t.htm> (accessed May 3, 2007).

Whoopingcough.net. “Whooping Cough Information.” <http://www.whoopingcough.net/> (accessed May 3, 2007).

World Health Organization. “Pertussis.” <http://www.who.int/immunization/topics/pertussis/en/index.html> (accessed May 3, 2007).

Women, Minorities, and Infectious Disease

Introduction

Infectious disease research and programs for women examine a host of factors, including social class, income, religious factors, geographic location, access to medical care and transportation, and other demographic and environmental issues. While women in developed countries often have life spans that are longer than those of men, in developing countries the average woman who reaches age sixty-five lives only three-fourths as long as her female counterparts in developed countries. Poverty, infectious disease, and lack of access to health care all feed into this disparity.

Research into infectious disease issues and gender often focuses on mother-child transmission of certain diseases, such as HIV/AIDS; prevention includes behavioral and pharmaceutical interventions. Malaria, schistosomiasis, group B streptococcus (GBS), hepatitis B (HBV), human papillomavirus (HPV), and all forms of sexually transmitted diseases disproportionately affect women. Repeated pregnancies and breastfeeding can leave women in lower economic conditions chronically malnourished, with weakened immune systems.

Minority populations also experience higher rates of infectious disease and higher morbidity and mortality rates overall. Minority women, in particular, have lower rates of health care service use, increased rates of infectious disease, increased disability rates, and shorter life spans on average than non-minority women. In the United States, persons in minority populations, such as Hispanic men, tend to seek services for infectious disease such as HIV/AIDS at much later stages in the disease course than their non-minority counterparts.

Cultural expectations, socioeconomic status, age, and education level all affect disease transmission rates (maternal-child transmission, transmission to and from sexual partners, or transmission within the family and community) and the progression of disease in women. Because women often act as the gatekeepers for health care in their families, reaching women to promote public health initiatives and reduce infectious disease transmission has become a major component of public health programs.

History and Scientific Foundations

Medical research studies historically focused on male participants and applied results to women. The assumption that the male body and the female body were similar with the exception of the reproductive system led to lower rates of female research study participants, and a "one-size-fits-all" approach when applying the results from studies that examined men only. Assumptions about infectious disease transmission and progression in women based on such research proved to be incorrect in many instances.

Research on TB rates in developed countries noted that in the 1930s through the 1950s, infection rates for women 15–34 were higher than those of men in the same age range. For women of childbearing years, the time from infection to disease itself is swifter than for similarly aged males, but as prevention and treatment options became more prevalent, infection among women decreased.

In 2004 a study of tuberculosis rates among men and women in Bangladesh showed that the female to male ratio of TB infections there stood at 0.33 to 1, even when women's lower rate of access to health care is factored out. Previous research had questioned whether TB is underreported among women in developing countries. The 2004 findings confirmed a previous study from 2000, but many women's public health researchers questioned the prevailing concept that women consistently underreport or are underrepresented in research studies. In such cases, studying women's rates of tuberculosis along with those of men demonstrated that studying only men could lead to erroneous assumptions that impacted women's health.

In the developing world, women often face discrimination or cultural shame for contracting sexually transmitted disease, but also for contracting other infections such as malaria and TB. A mother diagnosed with TB is less likely to complete a drug protocol for many reasons, including lack of time to complete appointments with health-care workers, devotion of financial resources to children rather than self, or lack of access to appropriate health-care providers (i.e., female physicians for female patients, as required by some religions). By not following treatment protocols, the mother puts her children, partners, and other families at greater transmission risk. In addition, pregnancy and childbirth can make women especially vulnerable to infectious diseases, such as malaria, because pregnant women experience decreased immunity and increased susceptibility. Pregnancy can also lead to malnutrition and chronic anemia in women of childbearing years. In areas where birth control is unavailable or a violation of cultural practices, closely-spaced pregnancies weaken women and compromise overall health, leaving women vulnerable to infectious disease.

Over the past two decades HIV/AIDS prevention and treatment has dominated public health issues related to minority populations and women. More than 50% of all new identified HIV cases in the United States are African American, although only 12–13% of the population is African American. In addition, black women account for more than 70% of all female cases, Hispanic women 8–9%, Caucasian women 18–19%, and the rest a mixture of various racial and ethnic groups. Minority women have become the focus of HIV/AIDS public health efforts in the United States in terms of behavioral and drug-based approaches to prevention and treatment.

Applications and Research

HIV/AIDS and tuberculosis have converged in many developing countries. Immunocompromised (persons with a weakened immune system) patients are vulnerable to TB, and the two infectious diseases have posed a challenge to public health workers. Pregnant women face even greater obstacles, since their lowered immunity makes them more susceptible to infectious disease, and treatment can be limited by concerns about fetal exposure to certain drugs.

In addition, women often seek treatment when the disease is more advanced. Human papillomavirus (HPV), for example, is highly treatable in early stages, but in later stages some strains of the virus can lead to cervical cancer. Routine pap smears can detect pre-cancerous changes in cervical tissue, but women in developing nations and minority women in the United States receive such preventive care at lower rates. Advanced cervical cancer can be difficult to treat. In the United States, more than one-third of women diagnosed with invasive cervical cancer will die from the disease. In the developing world, fewer than 5% of all women undergo a pap smear every five years. Condom use, which aids in reducing HPV and other STD transmission, is lower for minority women and women in developing nations engaged in sexual intercourse. A new vaccine that protects against most of the HPV strains that lead to cervical cancer is expensive, and rarely available for women in the developing world.

HIV/AIDS research and programs for prevention and treatment in developing nations focus a significant amount of resources on sub-Saharan Africa. Seventy-seven percent of all women living with HIV/AIDS worldwide live in this region. Fifty-seven percent of all HIV/AIDs cases in sub-Saharan Africa are women, according to United Nations Population Fund data, and in those African countries with the highest HIV/AIDS rates, women of childbearing years (ages 15–49) account for 75% of all HIV/AIDS patients.

Women and minorities in higher-income countries are affected by HIV/AIDS trends as well. Data from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), released in 2004, show that HIV/AIDS is the leading cause of death for African American women between the ages of 25 and 34, and the fourth leading cause of death for Hispanic women of the same ages. The data also show that North America experienced one of the largest increases in HIV/AIDS female patients in the world.

The CDC initiated a new campaign in 2003, targeted at female minorities, called Advancing HIV Prevention.

WORDS TO KNOW

IMMUNOCOMPROMISED: A reduction of the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to the presence of foreign material.

MICROBICIDE: A microbicide is a compound that kills microorganisms such as bacteria, fungi, and protozoa.

MORBIDITY: The term "morbidity" comes from the Latin word "morbus," which means sick. In medicine it refers not just to the state of being ill, but also to the severity of the illness. A serious disease is said to have a high morbidity.

MORTALITY: Mortality is the condition of being susceptible to death. The term "mortality" comes from the Latin word *mors*, which means "death." Mortality can also refer to the rate of deaths caused by an illness or injury, i.e., "Rabies has a high mortality."

According to the CDC: "This initiative comprises four strategies: making HIV testing a routine part of medical care, implementing new models for diagnosing HIV infections outside medical settings, preventing new infections by working with HIV-infected persons and their partners, and further decreasing perinatal HIV transmission."

The same four points are applied to women in the developing world, although women in North America have easier access to regular, stable medical care and to antiretroviral medications that help control HIV/AIDS and reduce transmission rates during pregnancy and childbirth. The 1994 introduction of zidovudine (AZT) during pregnancy and in the antenatal period led to a dramatic drop in maternal-child transmission rates. The use of AZT in the developing world has been controversial, since cost, access to medical facilities, and cultural myths about the transmission path of HIV/AIDS present obstacles to public health efforts.

Impacts and Issues

Female reproductive health and roles continue to dominate research and public health programming in the area of infectious diseases, such as HIV/AIDS, HPV, HBV, and other STDs. Creating safe and consistent medical care facilities for women in developing nations is as significant as creating such health-care settings for women and minorities in lower socioeconomic levels in developed countries such as the United States.

Women experience higher infection rates of various STDs, including HIV/AIDS, from vaginal intercourse than do men. In addition, sexual violence leaves women worldwide vulnerable to disease transmission. Microbicidal gels, inserted into the vagina prior to sexual intercourse, are a promising area of research. As of late 2006, trials were underway to test gels that had shown some effectiveness in preventing the spread of HIV in animal tests.

A vaginal microbicide that does not need to be refrigerated, is highly portable, and affords women control over the use of the product could be a powerful tool in public health efforts according to researchers. Many men in areas of the world where HIV/AIDS is prevalent refuse to use condoms as a cultural matter. A microbicidal gel could be undetected and used by women as a form of protection against infection via sexual violence. Public health officials note that prostitutes, who are key transmission points and can often infect hundreds of men, could use the gel to help protect themselves and their clients. While worldwide and U.S. campaigns to promote condom use have had limited success due to cultural bias against condoms, the gels or creams represent a workaround that takes into account issues unique to women and sexuality.

See Also *HIV; Sexually Transmitted Diseases; United Nations Millennium Goals and Infectious Disease; World Health Organization (WHO).*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Faro, Sebastian, and David Soper. *Infectious Diseases in Women.* Saunders, 2001.

Periodicals

Holmes, C.B., H. Hausler, and P. Nunn. "A Review of Sex Differences in the Epidemiology of Tuberculosis." *The International Journal of Tuberculosis and Lung Disease* 2 (1998): 96–104.

Katz, Ingrid T., and Alexi A. Wright. "Preventing Cervical Cancer in the Developing World." *New England Journal of Medicine* 354 (March 16, 2006): 1110.

Kelley, C.F., et al. "Clinical, Epidemiologic Characteristics of Foreign-born Latinos with HIV/AIDS at an Urban HIV Clinic." *The AIDS Reader* 17 (February 2007): 73–74, 78–80, 85–88.

Perrino, T., et al. "Main Partner's Resistance to Condoms and HIV Protection Among Disadvantaged, Minority Women." *Women & Health* 42, no. 3 (2005): 37–56.

Salim, M.A., et al. "Gender Differences in Tuberculosis: A Prevalence Survey Done in Bangladesh." *The International Journal of Tuberculosis and Lung Disease* 8 (August 2004): 952–957.

Thorne, C., and M.L. Newell. "Safety of Agents Used to Prevent Mother-to-Child Transmission of HIV: Is There Any Cause for Concern?" *Drug Safety* 30, no. 3 (2007): 203–213.

Weber, J., et al. "The Development of Vaginal Microbicides for the Prevention of HIV Transmission." *Public Library of Science Medicine* 2 (May 2005): e142.

Web Sites

National Center for Infectious Diseases. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Office of Minority and Women's Health." February 5, 2004. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/omwh/infectious.htm> (accessed March 13, 2007).

Women's Health.gov. "Minority Women's Health." November 2006. <http://www.4woman.gov/minority/> (accessed March 13, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Women, Ageing, and Health." June 2000. <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs252/en/> (accessed March 13, 2007).

Melanie Barton Zoltán

World Health Organization (WHO)

Introduction

The World Health Organization, as part of the United Nations (UN), has expertise to coordinate international public health matters. Within its constitution, its mission "is the attainment by all peoples of the highest possible level of health." With health as its prime concern, the WHO defines health as "a state of complete physical, mental, and social well-being and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity." Its prime concern is to, generally, promote the health of all peoples of the world and to, specifically, combat diseases—especially critical infectious diseases.

The public widely recognizes some work performed by WHO. The WHO responds to natural and human-made disasters by providing emergency aid, funds medical research, conducts immunization campaigns against fatal diseases, and improves housing, nutrition, sanitation, and working conditions in developing countries.

The WHO is probably best known for its immunization programs and smallpox eradication. Currently, it is working with other health organizations to treat tuberculosis, malaria, SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome), and HIV/AIDS (human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency deficiency syndrome).

However, the WHO also performs work that is less familiar to the public. It charts statistical health trends and issues warnings about possible health problems. The WHO is also responsible for assigning a common international name to drugs. WHO standards are used for measuring air and water pollution. WHO personnel work with agencies, foundations, governments, nongovernmental organizations, and private sector groups to address the world's health needs.

Headquartered in Geneva, Switzerland, the WHO consists of one hundred ninety three Member States (along with two associate Member States). It is governed through representatives within its World Health Assembly. A thirty-four-member Executive Board, elected by the World Health Assembly, supports the WHO. In addition, six regional committees focus on health concerns within Southeast Asia, the Eastern Mediterranean, the Americas, Africa, the Western Pacific, and Europe.

History and Scientific Foundations

Chinese physician Szeming Sze, Norse physician Karl Evang, and Brazilian physician Geraldo de Paula Souze proposed the formation of an international health organization in 1945 at the United Nations (UN) Conference on International Organization (San Francisco, California). The constitution for the international health organization was approved in 1946. The UN approved its charter and the World Health Organization was established on April 7, 1948. It became the successor organization of the Health Organization, which was an agency of the League of Nations.

The priorities for the fledgling organization were to deal with cholera, malaria, maternal and child health, mental health, nutrition and environmental sanitation, parasitic diseases, plague, smallpox, venereal diseases, yellow fever, and viral diseases. It also expanded immunization programs for diphtheria, measles, polio, whooping cough, tetanus, and tuberculosis.

The WHO provided health programs for food, food safety, and nutrition; health education; immunizations; prevention and control of endemic diseases; essential drugs; safe water and sanitation; and treatment of diseases and injuries.

Applications and Research

Three of the WHO's largest programs called for the global eradication of smallpox, polio, and leprosy (Hansen's disease). The worldwide campaign to eliminate smallpox began in 1967 as the WHO held vaccination programs in developing countries. By 1972, only a few countries in Africa and southern Asia reported any

WORDS TO KNOW

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

ERADICATION: The process of destroying or eliminating a microorgan or disease.

MULTIBACILLARY: The more severe form of leprosy (Hansen's disease) is called multibacillary leprosy. It is defined as the presence of more than 5 skin lesions on the patient with a positive skin-smear test. The less severe form of leprosy is called paucibacillary leprosy.

PAUCIBACILLARY: Paucibacillary refers to an infectious condition, such as a certain form of leprosy, characterized by few, rather than many, bacilli, which are a rod-shaped type of bacterium.

incidence of smallpox. In 1979, the WHO reported that smallpox was eradicated throughout the world.

In the 1980s, the WHO led programs to eliminate polio and leprosy. Today, the Global Polio Eradication Initiative (GPEI) is a partnership among the World Health Organization, Rotary International, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), and the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF) to eliminate polio. The WHO provides strategic planning; technical direction; and monitoring, evaluation, and certification for the coordinating and planning of the Initiative.

As of May 1, 2007, according to the GPEI, the number of polio cases worldwide is 130 (107 in endemic countries and 23 in non-endemic countries). In 2006, 1,997 cases (1,869 in endemic countries and 128 in non-endemic countries) of polio were reported.

The WHO has been instrumental in reducing the number of leprosy cases around the world. The key to this success is a campaign to deliver information, diagnoses, and treatment to endemic countries. The WHO has recommended two types of multi-drug therapy (MDT) since 1993: a two-year treatment for multibacillary cases using clofazimine, dapsone, and rifampicin; and a six-month treatment for paucibacillary cases using dapsone and rifampicin. Free packs of MDT have been supplied by the WHO to all endemic countries since 1995, and this process has been extended into 2010.

According to WHO statistics, as of early 2006, approximately 219,826 cases of leprosy are known to exist in 115 countries/territories. In the previous four years, the number of new cases has steadily declined by about 20% annually. Areas where leprosy are still prevalent include Angola, Brazil, Central African Republic, the Congo, India, Madagascar, Mozambique, Nepal, and Tanzania.

■ Impacts and Issues

The WHO estimates that over one billion people worldwide do not have access to clean drinking water. Contaminated water is a source of infectious disease and parasites. The United Nations announced the "Water for Life" Decade, a cooperative initiative between several UN agencies and local governments to increase access to clean water and promote sanitation. By 2015, their goal is to reduce by half the number of people living without clean water and to aggressively treat or eradicate waterborne diseases and parasites in areas where they have been endemic.

At the United Nations Millennium Summit in 2000, 189 governments adopted a set of goals, most aimed at improving the quality of life for people worldwide. The Millennium Development Goals (or Millennium Goals) seek to reduce poverty, protect the environment, fight infectious disease, and promote health. The WHO is a key organization in the Millennium Goals project.

Several of the Millennium Goals directly address infectious disease. Goals to reduce infant mortality and promote maternal wellness both involve projects to combat infectious disease. Goal Six specifically seeks to combat HIV/AIDS, malaria, and other diseases. In response to the Millennium Goals challenge, the WHO, along with UNAIDS and other organizations, launched the "3 by 5 Initiative" with the aim of treating 3 million HIV/AIDS infected persons with antiretroviral therapy. To combat malaria, the WHO has partnered with private organizations to provide mosquito netting and preventative medications.

The WHO's disease-based approach has been criticized by some as being too simple and narrow for society's changing needs in the 2000s. Critics tell of the poorest of countries desperately in need of health assistance, but not receiving any from the WHO. Some public health officials find that its Member States withhold funds to receive support for their own agendas. The WHO has been criticized for not doing more to reduce the escalating cost for drugs used in developing countries. In addition, more organizations are competing with the WHO, such as the World Bank, which makes it more difficult for the WHO to garner financial support. In contrast, the entire 2005 budget of the WHO was about the same amount as public health expenditures in the state of California in 2005.

SEE ALSO *CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention); Malaria; Polio (Poliomyelitis); Polio Eradication Campaign; Smallpox; Smallpox Eradication And Storage; Tuberculosis.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Burci, Gian Luca. *World Health Organization*. Hague, Netherlands: Kluwer Law International, 2004.

Sze, Seming. *The Origins of the World Health Organization: A Personal Memoir 1945–1948*. Boca Raton, FL: LISZ, 1982.

Web Sites

BBC News. "World Health Organization: a profile." April 25, 2003 <http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/health/2975139.stm> (accessed May 8, 2007).

Global Polio Eradication Initiative (GPEI). "Home website of GPEI." <http://www.polioeradication.org/> (accessed May 7, 2007).

World Health Organization (WHO). <http://www.who.int/en/> (accessed May 8, 2007).

World Health Organization. "The World Health Report 2006—Working Together for Health." <http://www.who.int/whr/2006/en/> (accessed May 7, 2007).

William Arthur Atkins

World Trade and Infectious Disease

Introduction

World trade impacts the epidemiology of infectious diseases in numerous ways, including commercial travel by air and rail, shipping of contaminated goods, transportation of disease vectors with shipped goods or via commercial transportation, and the consumption of translocated plants and animals that have been infected with non-native pathogens.

The globalization of world commerce has brought about unprecedented contact between populations and exposure to foreign pathogenic organisms that is radically changing the distribution of communicable diseases worldwide. Consequently, the urgency of international collaboration on public health information and disease control has risen to a point where an outbreak of a serious communicable disease anywhere in the world raises alarms and spawns defensive activity everywhere. The limiting of the SARS outbreak in 2004 through quarantine and restriction of wild animal markets and social interaction provides an example of how such collective defense measures can be effective. However, lessons taken from that outbreak and sober reflection on the potential virulence of certain pathogens such as avian influenza, anthrax and tuberculosis have revealed gaps in international cooperation and preparedness for the consequences of possible pandemics that world trade could facilitate. The future of disease control and local public health will increasingly depend on the processes of globalization and their impact on the distribution of pathogens and on environmental change, which can create new ecological niches for pathogenic organisms.

History and Scientific Foundations

The Impact of Globalization

Human travel and movement have been the main source of epidemics throughout recorded history. Trade caravans, religious pilgrimages, and military maneuvers facilitated the spread of many diseases, including plague and smallpox. Smallpox is presumed to have spread from Egypt or India along historical trade routes, where it was first thought to have become adapted to humans sometime before 1000 BC. For most of history, human populations were relatively isolated. Only in recent centuries has there been extensive contact between the peoples, flora, and fauna of the Old and New Worlds. Contact between the European colonists and native American populations during trade and exploration led to the transmission of measles, influenza, mumps, smallpox, tuberculosis, and other infections from the crowded urban centers of Europe, which caused the suddenly exposed native American populations to drop by at least one-third.

Intensifying global trade, which entails deregulated trade and investment, can have a mixed impact on public health. When global trade brings economic growth and disseminates technologies such as antibiotics and other medications that enhance life expectancy, there are broad benefits to public health. However, some aspects of globalization erode public health infrastructure and jeopardize health by causing the deterioration of social and environmental conditions, undermining the livelihoods of certain population groups, and sowing some unhealthful lifestyle patterns. Global environmental changes, related to population growth and intensified economic activity, include air pollution, deforestation and desertification, depletion of terrestrial aquifers and ocean fisheries, and decreased biodiversity. Some of these processes pose public health risks.

On the positive side, improvements in the public health of industrializing countries have resulted from widespread social, nutritional, and material changes such as improved sanitation and other deliberate public-health interventions, including vaccination and disease vector eradication programs. Health gains have begun more recently in developing nations in the wake of population control efforts, application of knowledge about sanitation and vaccination, improved nutrition, vector control, and gradually improved treatment of infectious diseases. However, shifts in the ecology of local habitats brought about by environmental change related to globalization can have a profound impact on the distribution of infectious diseases.

Globalization and the Ecology of Infectious Disease

The main reason for the adverse effects of globalization is the disruption of traditional and largely self-contained agricultural societies that produce, consume, and trade on a local basis, using technologies that have a low impact on the environment. The social and environmental determinants of public health for these societies are predominantly local. Over the past century, industrialization and modernization have changed the amount of contact, influence, and trade between societies; created new hierarchical business associations; and have increased the impact of technology on the environment. The former balance between local populations and the pathogens in their environments is often disturbed and new pathogens are introduced into local regions, increasing the probability of serious disease outbreaks for which local people either lack herd immunity or the means for effective treatment.

Globalization of commerce and culture has also spurred an increase in human mobility. Much of this travel is voluntary, connected with business, tourism, and movement of labor. Some of this mobility is involuntary, caused by war (which is often connected with trade advantage or resource access issues), social breakdown, and natural disasters. A recent study found that the number of environmental and political refugees has increased about tenfold since 1980. The increased transnational movement of labor generally brings economic benefits to both developed and less developed economies, but also increases the transmission of ideas, values, and microbiological agents that affect disease patterns.

The globalization of world trade thus fundamentally changes the ecological context of infectious disease epidemiology by opening new opportunities for transmission and environmental niches for pathogens while also increasing the need for transnational public health information sharing and cooperation for disease prevention and treatment. Perhaps more than any other current trend, world trade brings home the importance of viewing epidemiology as more than the analysis of risk factors for disease, but rather as the study of ecological systems that mediate disease distribution and causation.

Global Trade and Travel

Global trade necessitates greatly increased travel for transactions, and travel is a major force in disease emergence and spread. According to the Centers for Disease Control (CDC), the current volume, speed, and reach of travel are unprecedented. Travel and trade facilitate the mixing of diverse genetic pools and harbored microorganisms at rates and in combinations unknown. Such massive mobility and other concomitant changes in social, political, climatic, environmental, and technologic factors have converged to favor the emergence of infectious diseases.

WORDS TO KNOW

BUSHMEAT: The meat of terrestrial wild and exotic animals, typically those that live in parts of Africa, Asia, and the Americas; also known as wild meat.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

EPIDEMIOLOGY: Epidemiology is the study of various factors that influence the occurrence, distribution, prevention, and control of disease, injury, and other health-related events in a defined human population. By the application of various analytical techniques including mathematical analysis of the data, the probable cause of an infectious outbreak can be pinpointed.

GLOBALIZATION: The integration of national and local systems into a global economy through increased trade, manufacturing, communications, and migration.

HERD IMMUNITY: Herd immunity is a resistance to disease that occurs in a population when a proportion of them have been immunized against it. The theory is that it is less likely that an infectious disease will spread in a group where some individuals are less likely to contract it.

PATHOGENIC: Something causing or capable of causing disease.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

ZOONOTIC: A zoonotic disease is a disease that can be transmitted between animals and humans. Examples of zoonotic diseases are anthrax, plague, and Q-fever.

Disease emergence or reemergence generally requires several simultaneous events. Travel introduces a potentially pathogenic microbe into a new geographic region. However, in order to become established and cause disease a microorganism must survive, proliferate, and find a way to enter a vulnerable host.

Global travel, changing patterns of resistance and susceptibility, and the emergence of infectious diseases also affect plants, animals, and insect vectors. Infectious diseases are dynamic. Most new infections are not caused by genuinely new pathogens. Agents involved in new and reemergent infections include viruses, bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and helminths. Human activities that provide new opportunities for the proliferation of these microbes are the most potent factors driving infectious disease emergence.

Travel is relevant in the emergence of disease if it changes an ecosystem in ways that promote the transmission of disease by introducing new organisms or by altering the ecosystem in ways that facilitate the proliferation of new or endemic pathogens. Travel introduces such organisms by transporting pathogens (in or on travelers' bodies, including microbiologic flora or disease vectors) and carrying dormant infections that have been controlled by the travelers' immune systems and genetic makeup but to which native populations are not immune. Pathogens are also introduced to new ecosystems by luggage and whatever it contains. Direct change of native ecosystems in ways that favor disease emergence can occur when trade brings about changes in cultural preferences, customs, behavioral patterns, and local technology.

■ Applications and Research

Trade in Wildlife—An Infectious Disease "Time Bomb"

Worldwide trade in wildlife creates opportunities for infectious disease transmission that cause outbreaks in both humans and livestock. In turn, these outbreaks threaten international trade, agriculture, native wildlife populations, and the integrity of local ecosystems. Disease outbreaks resulting from wildlife trade have caused hundreds of billions of dollars of economic destruction globally.

According to the CDC, estimating the volume of the global wildlife trade is extremely difficult because it encompasses activities ranging from local barter to major international commerce via ships, rail, and aircraft. A significant proportion of this trade is conducted either informally or illegally. It is estimated that 40,000 live primates, four million live birds, 640,000 live reptiles, and 350 million live tropical fish are traded globally each year. Guangzhou, China, has live wildlife markets that trade in masked palm civets, ferret badgers, barking deer, wild boars, hedgehogs, foxes, squirrels, bamboo rats, gerbils, snakes, and endangered leopards, as well as domesticated dogs, cats, and rabbits. Lacking precise trade data, the CDC conservatively estimates that in East and Southeast Asia, tens of millions of wild animals are shipped annually, both within the region and from around the world for food or use in traditional medicine.

The estimate for trade and regional consumption of wild animal meat in Central Africa is more than 2.2 billion lb (1 billion kg) per year, and estimates for consumption in the Amazon Basin are in the range of 220 million lb (100 million kg) annually. For mammals, this amounts to 6.4 million to 15.8 million individual animals. In Central Africa, estimates range over 500 million mammals.

Hunters, brokers/distributors, and consumers have some degree of contact as each animal is traded. Other wildlife in the trade is exposed, as are domestic animals and wild scavengers in villages and market areas that consume the remnants and wastes from the traded wildlife. The CDC calculates that multiple billions of direct and indirect contacts among wildlife, humans, and domestic animals result from the wildlife trade annually. The global scope of this trade, together with rapid modern transportation and the role of markets as network hubs rather than as final destinations, dramatically increases the movement and potential cross-species transmission of communicable pathogens that every animal naturally hosts. Since trade in wildlife functions as networks with the markets as major hubs, these markets provide control opportunities to maximize the effects of public health and other regulatory efforts.

Far from being a peripheral public health risk, trade in wild animals presents one of the most severe health threats facing modern society. Perhaps the most significant human disease outbreak in the past several years directly attributable to wildlife trade (specifically, trade in civet cats) was the epidemic of severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) in 2003. Control efforts in Guangzhou involved the confiscation of a reported 838,500 wild animals from the markets. A study of antibody evidence of exposure to the SARS Coronavirus demonstrated a dramatic rise from low or zero prevalence of civets at farms to an approximately 80% prevalence in civets tested in markets.

Since 1980, more than 35 new infectious diseases have emerged in humans, approximately one every eight months. The origin of HIV is likely linked to human consumption of nonhuman primates. Recent Ebola hemorrhagic fever outbreaks have been traced to index patient contact with infected great apes that are hunted for food.

The collateral transmission of infectious agents due to the wildlife trade is not limited to human pathogens but also involves pathogens of domestic animals and native wildlife. Ominously, H5N1 Type-A Influenza virus was recently isolated from two mountain hawk eagles illegally imported to Belgium from Thailand. Monkeypox was transmitted to a native rodent species and then to humans in the United States by imported wild African rodents for the United States pet trade. Chytridiomycosis, a fungal disease now identified as a major cause of the extinction of 30% of amphibian species worldwide, has been spread by the international trade in African clawed frogs.

Many domestic animal diseases are transmitted through the same species of parasites carried by imported animals. Ticks have been removed from nearly 100 shipments of wild animals inspected by the U.S. Department of Agriculture. Ticks carry many diseases that threaten livestock and human health, including heartwater disease, Lyme disease, and babesiosis.

CDC examination of epidemiological data indicates that the possibility of emerging infectious diseases spreading between persons and animals is rising due to human activities ranging from the handling of bushmeat and the trade in exotic animals to the destruction or disturbance of wild habitat. The majority (61%) of listed human pathogens is known to be zoonotic, and multiple host pathogens are twice as likely to be associated with an emerging human infectious disease. More than three-quarters of pathogens found in livestock are shared with other host species.

The sudden increase of emerging or reemerging livestock disease outbreaks around the world since the mid 1990s, including bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), foot-and-mouth disease, avian influenza, and swine fever, has cost the world economy $80 billion. In early 2003, the United Nations reported that more than one third of the global meat trade was embargoed as a result of mad cow disease, avian influenza, and other livestock disease outbreaks. Efforts to control the spread of avian influenza in Asian countries since 2003 have required the culling of more than 140 million chickens.

Any attempt to eradicate the trade in wild species is doomed to failure. However, the experience of slowing the spread of SARS by regulating the market in Guangzhou shows that focusing efforts at wildlife markets to regulate, reduce, or in some cases, eliminate the trade in particular wildlife species could provide a cost-effective approach to decreasing the risks of disease for humans, domestic animals, wildlife, and ecosystems.

■ Impacts and Issues

Updating International Health Regulations

The International Health Regulations (IHR) are the only existing global regulations for infectious disease control. These regulations have not been appreciably changed since their original issuance in 1951. The World Health Organization (WHO) is currently attempting to modernize the IHR, in view of the many emerging global public health threats posed by international trade, travel, and other worldwide human activity.

In an article published in the *Journal of the American Medical Association* in 2004, Lawrence Gostin recommended IHR revisions to improve global health, including:

1. Adopting a robust mission, emphasizing the WHO's core public health purposes, functions, and essential services
2. Assuming a broad scope, flexibly covering various health threats
3. Taking responsibility for global surveillance, developing information networks of official and informal data sources
4. Evaluating the adequacy of national public health systems, setting performance criteria, measuring outcomes, and holding states accountable for public protection
5. Ensuring the protection of human rights, setting science-based standards and fair procedures
6. Promoting good governance, adopting the principles of fairness, objectivity, and transparency

Overall, recommendations are for according the WHO with sweeping responsibility for enforcing health norms and ensuring state compliance while providing generous economic and technical assistance to poorer countries. Enforcement options for the WHO remain unclear, but there is an implicit reliance in the recommendations upon the power of world public opinion, possibly backed up by sanctions imposed by influential countries against those that withhold cooperation. Given the intimacy with which the world is now connected in the struggle against infectious disease, the rich and poor nations have an equal stake in assuring that all nations have the tools to combat emerging and reemerging diseases that result from global trade.

SEE ALSO *Public Health and Infectious Disease; Travel and Infectious Disease.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Myers, N., and J. Kent. *Environmental Exodus: An Emergent Crisis in the Global Arena*. New York: Climate Institute, 1995.

Periodicals

Gostin, L.O. "International Infectious Disease Law: Revision of the World Health Organization's International Health Regulations." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 291 (2004): 2623-2627. (Also available at <http://jama.ama-assn.org/cgi/content/full/291/21/2623>; accessed May 26, 2007).

Karesh, W.B., R.A. Cook, E.L. Bennett, and J. Newcomb. "Wildlife Trade and Global Disease

Emergence." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 11, 7 (July 2005). Available at <http://www.cdc.gov/eid> (accessed May 26, 2007).

McMichael A., and R. Beaglehole. "The Changing Global Context of Public Health." *The Lancet* 356, 9228 (August 2000): 495–499.

Kenneth T. LaPensee

Yaws

Introduction

Yaws is a chronic infection, which primarily affects the skin, bones, and cartilage of its victims. Yaws is nearly unknown in developed countries. A spiral shaped bacterium called *Treponema pertenue* causes yaws. These bacteria, called spirochetes, are closely related to the bacteria that causes syphilis. The spirochetes spread from person to person by direct contact of skin with infectious yaws sores. Crowding, poor sanitation, and dirty water all contribute to spreading yaws, and the disease primarily affects the poor in tropical areas of Africa, Asia, and Latin America.

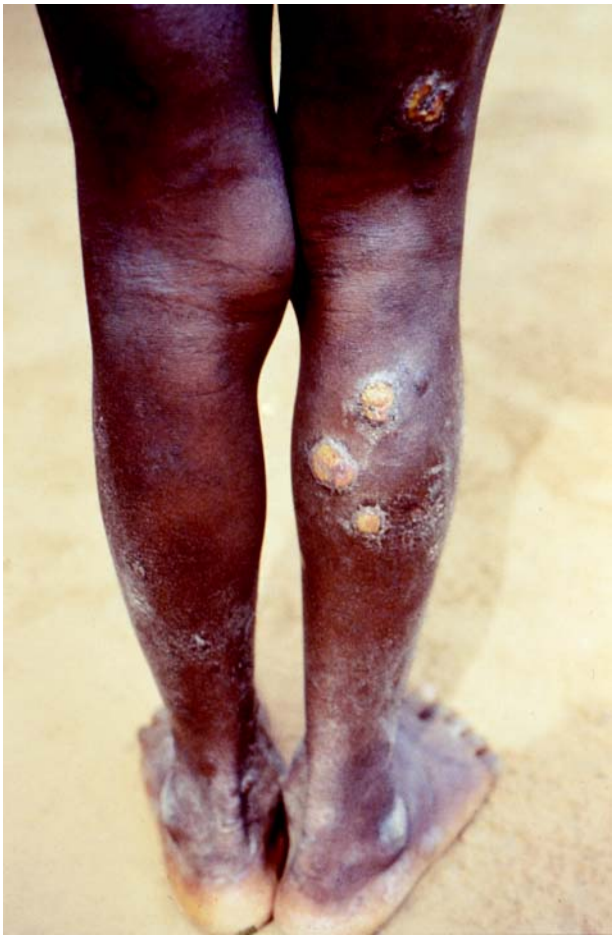
Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

The initial lesion of yaws appears where the bacteria enter the skin, and soon a red bump called a papule develops. The papule, measuring 0.8–2 in (2–5 cm) in diameter, is painless but often itchy. Scratching results in an open, ulcerated sore. This first sore takes three to six months to heal, and meanwhile, the spirochetes spread to other parts of the body through the lymph system or the blood stream.

Soon more red papules similar to the initial sore develop and eventually, the infected individual has multiple sores spread over the body. During the wet season in the tropics, these sores may get quite large resembling fleshy red wartlike growths. They eventually heal, but often scars develop at the sites of the sores. The disease is not fatal, but relapses are common up to 10 years after the initial infection.

Other problems caused by the yaws bacteria include enlarged lymph nodes in the armpits, neck, or groin. Sores may develop on the feet (making walking quite difficult) or the palms. The bones, particularly the bones of the fingers and the long bones in the arms and legs, may be affected, as well as the skin. Pain from the affected bones makes sleeping difficult.

The disease may seem to go away after a few years, but the bacteria are alive and well in the skin and bones. The latent (dormant) period may persist, but in about 10% of those afflicted, the sores reappear after 5–10 years.



A 14-year-old girl with yaws displays ulcerations on her legs. *Centers for Disease Control/Dr. Peter Perine.*

WORDS TO KNOW

INCIDENCE: The number of new cases of a disease or injury that occur in a population during a specified period of time.

LATENT INFECTION: An infection already established in the body but not yet causing symptoms, or having ceased to cause symptoms after an active period, is a latent infection.

PAPULE: A papule is a small, solid bump on the skin.

RE-EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASE: Re-emerging infectious diseases are illnesses such as malaria, diphtheria, tuberculosis, and polio that were once nearly absent from the world but are starting to cause greater numbers of infections once again. These illnesses are reappearing for many reasons. Malaria and other mosquito-borne illnesses increase when mosquito-control measures decrease. Other diseases are spreading because people have stopped being vaccinated, as happened with diphtheria after the collapse of the Soviet Union. A few diseases are reemerging because drugs to treat them have become less available or drug-resistant strains have developed.

When yaws reappears, the individual suffers marked thickening of the skin on the palms and soles as well as hard nodules under the skin around the joints. Particularly disfiguring are bony growths in the bone of the upper jaw and nose. The skin and membranes of the nose and upper mouth can be involved, and result in the destruction of the upper mouth and nasal passages. Where the mouth and nose were, a gaping hole develops.

Scope and Distribution

Yaws occurs mostly in children under age 15, and mostly in tropical areas of Africa, Asia, and Latin America. The World Health Organization estimates that up to 500,000 people have yaws in either its latent or active form.

Treatment and Prevention

Yaws is a disease with a cure. At a cost of about 32 (U.S.) cents, a single injection of long-acting penicillin given in the muscle rapidly destroys the yaws bacteria. Relapses after treatment appear to be rare, and yaws bacteria have not become resistant to penicillin. For those with penicillin allergies, tetracycline or erythromycin is the drug of choice.

Impacts and Issues

Children are most often afflicted, yet current pediatric textbooks devote less than a page to the description and treatment of yaws. Children need not suffer the disability and disfigurement of yaws, and eliminating yaws from the globe is a possibility. Yaws can be defeated because it only occurs in humans and only occurs in specific areas making surveillance efforts easier. Additionally, an inexpensive drug cures yaws. In the 1950s, the World Health Organization mounted a campaign to eliminate yaws, and after more than 300 million people received treatment, the global incidence of yaws dropped more than 95 percent. Unfortunately, interest waned, and with reduced surveillance, yaws has made a comeback, re-emerging in the twenty-first century.

In early 2007, the World Health Organization convened a meeting to revive interest in eliminating yaws. The strategy developed at the meeting involves identifying the people at risk for yaws, actively treating all infected people and their close contacts, and most importantly a renewed surveillance effort. Participants in the meeting announced the goal of eliminating yaws in South-East Asia by 2012.

Archeologists found evidence of yaws in the bones of human ancient ancestors. Modern medicine has the ability to ensure this disease disappears from the historical record, and no more children suffer the disfigurement of yaws.

SEE ALSO *Re-emerging Infectious Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Web Sites

World Health Organization. "Yaws." <http://www.searo.who.int/en/Section10/Section2134.htm> (accessed May 2, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Yaws Elimination in India: A Step Towards Eradication." <http://www.whoindia.org/EN/Section210/Section424.htm> (accessed May 2, 2007).

L. S. Clements

Yellow Fever

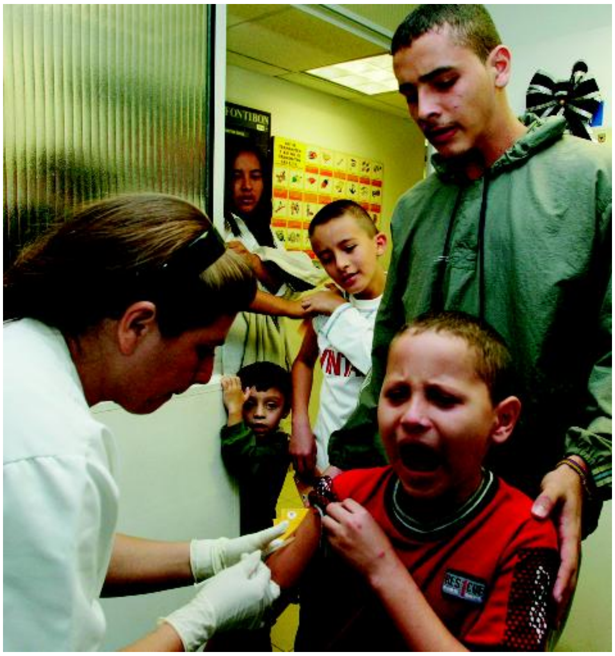
Introduction

Yellow fever is an acute viral disease that is spread by mosquitoes and occurs in Africa and South America. Although a vaccine is available to prevent the disease, the incidence of yellow fever is growing, especially in South America. In this article, the virologist Jack Woodall discusses yellow fever and relates his first-hand experience in studying the disease. Woodall is the director of the Nucleus for the Investigation of Emerging Infectious Diseases at the Federal University of Rio de Janeiro in Brazil.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

From the seventeenth to the beginning of the twentieth century, the major ports of the United States suffered from periodic epidemics of yellow fever. New York was afflicted in 1668, Boston in 1691, and Philadelphia in 1793, where one in ten of its inhabitants died. Work on digging the Panama Canal was stalled because of the huge toll of yellow fever and malaria on the workers. The U.S. Army decided to do something about this.

U.S. Army surgeon William Crawford Gorgas (1854–1920) surveys the building of the Panama canal, c. 1910. Gorgas was given the task of suppressing yellow fever and malaria in Cuba and the Canal Zone. Controlling the mosquitoes that caused epidemics of these diseases meant that construction workers were no longer succumbing to these illnesses and were finally able to finish the canal. *© Bettmann/Corbis.*



A boy is vaccinated during a campaign against yellow fever at an airport in Bogotá, Colombia. All those traveling to northern Colombia, as well as tropical regions of neighboring countries, required vaccination against yellow fever during a 2004 outbreak of the disease. *AP Images.*

It set up a Yellow Fever Commission in Cuba, which was having an epidemic, and was at the time under U.S. control.

Jesse Lazear was a handsome young U.S. Army physician with a Vandyke beard, stationed in Baltimore at the start of the twentieth century. He and a colleague joined the Commission, and both volunteered to test a new theory, that the disease was transmitted by mosquitoes. They allowed themselves to be bitten by local mosquitoes; both came down with yellow fever, but only one survived; Jesse died of it.

Other soldiers, whose names have not gone down in history, volunteered to sleep in the sheets stained by the blood and vomit of yellow fever victims. Those who did so in mosquito-proofed huts did not get the disease, whereas others sleeping in clean sheets, but without mosquito netting became ill and some died. So without even knowing that yellow fever was caused by a virus, a control program could be put in place. U.S. Army General William C. Gorgas, who had himself survived yellow fever he caught in Texas, implemented mosquito control, and eradicated yellow fever from Havana, Cuba, and the Brazilian ports of Rio de Janeiro and Santos, and the Panama Canal was completed.

Before the isolation of the yellow fever virus, no vaccine could be made, and before the advent of the vaccine, yellow fever research was a hazardous undertaking. The International Health Division of the Rockefeller Foundation established yellow fever research laboratories in East and West Africa and South America to try to delimit the areas endemic (areas where the disease naturally occurs) for the disease. Six of their scientists died of yellow fever.

There are some basic things you need to know about yellow fever. First, it is the classic viral hemorrhagic fever, with sudden onset of fever, chills, headache, backache, nausea and vomiting, causing damage to the liver, kidneys and heart, and hemorrhage, with a death rate of 20–50 percent in severe cases. The liver damage produces the yellow jaundice that gives the disease its name. It is endemic in the jungles of Africa and South America, but every so often breaks out in the cities, especially in West Africa, for example in Nigeria between 1986 and 1991. The World Health Organization estimates that it still causes around 200 thousand cases with 30 thousand deaths every year.

Second, as it is a virus disease, antibiotics have no effect on it. The antiviral drug ribavirin, given within the first five days of infection, improved survival in hamsters, so might do the same for humans. Otherwise, there is only supportive treatment, and you either recover or you don't. Laboratory diagnosis is done by isolation of the virus in tissue culture from blood taken within the first five days of illness; this test takes a few days to produce a result. Rapid tests for specific components of the virus in blood samples take only hours. If these tests fail, diagnosis can still be made by finding specific antibodies in the serum later in the course of the illness. In Brazil in the days before these tests were available, a small block of tissue was removed from the liver of a victim's corpse using a steel punch to pierce the abdomen. The specimen was placed in formalin to preserve it and examined at the lab, often after days of canoe travel down the Amazon, under the microscope for characteristic stained spots inside the cells called Councilman bodies. Nowadays, we know that some other jungle viruses also produce Councilman bodies, but certainly in the majority of cases their presence proved that the victim had died of yellow fever.

Following the example of General Gorgas, other great public health figures such as Fred Soper of the Rockefeller Foundation, Cuba's Carlos Finlay and Brazil's Oswaldo Cruz spread the gospel, and by the end of 1924 yellow fever had been eradicated from the cities of Mexico, Central America, and Ecuador. In fact, there was hope that it could be eradicated from the Americas altogether, until researchers made the unwelcome discovery of an outbreak in a rural area of Brazil where the urban vector mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*, did not exist. The virus was cycling between monkeys and tree-top mosquito species, and infecting people who ventured into the forest to hunt, collect timber, or cut it down to make plantations.

A week-old baby is treated for yellow fever at a hospital in Malawi, Africa, in 2002. The World Food Programme estimates that 3.2 million people in Malawi suffer from a variety of health problems made worse by malnutrition due to a continuing food crisis. *Ami Vitale/Getty Images.*

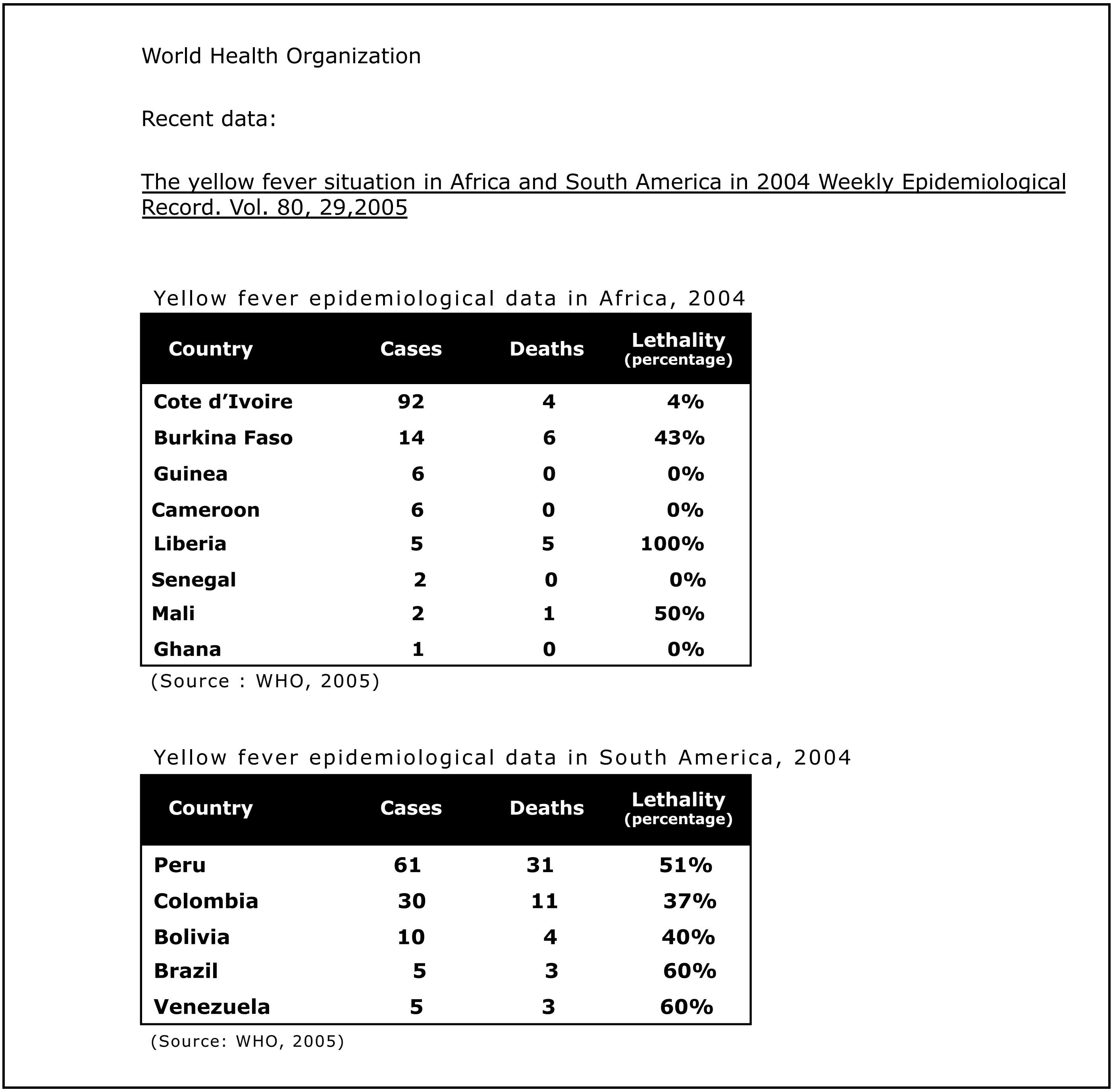
This discovery ended the hope of continent-wide eradication. Even if you could kill every monkey in the jungle—and who would want to do that?—the virus would survive because it has been found that it is passed down by mosquitoes through their eggs, generation after generation. Some people have dreamed of replacing the vector (transmitter) mosquitoes in nature with the same species genetically engineered to be resistant to the virus, but the probability that this could be done is around zero. So in rural areas, yellow fever only gets into a human by accident, when an infected mosquito mistakes him for a monkey. But when it does, he goes back to his hut, runs a fever, and infects the *Aedes aegypti* there. After a few days incubation, the infected mosquitoes then transmit yellow fever to his family and neighbors.

The next thing that happens is that one of the people who falls ill in the village seeks hospital care in the nearest town. There he infects the local *A. aegypti* and starts an urban epidemic. Infected townspeople in turn carry the yellow fever to the country's capital and major ports. In the days of sailing ships, fresh water was carried on deck in open barrels, in which the mosquito bred. Passengers and crew coming on board after having been bitten by infected mosquitoes ashore would fall ill at sea, and the water-barrel mosquitoes would start an epidemic that would continue until the ship reached the U.S., Canada (Halifax in 1861), even Europe—Spain, France, England and Italy in the 1800s. There, it would be taken ashore by disembarking passengers, crew and mosquitoes, to start an epidemic.

The last outbreak of yellow fever in the United States was in 1905, when New Orleans and other Southern ports were affected. But since the demise of sailing ships, the last urban yellow fever epidemic in the western hemisphere occurred in Trinidad, West Indies, in 1954, unless you count some more recent cases on the outskirts of the town of Santa Cruz, Bolivia, which could actually have been contracted in the countryside.

A puzzling question is, why has yellow fever never spread to Asia? Its cities are full of dengue, which is carried there by the same mosquito species as in Africa and the Americas, and their jungles and temples are full of monkeys that are highly susceptible to it—the virus was first isolated by injecting the blood of a sick African into an Asian rhesus macaque. Passengers incubating the disease have jetted home from the jungles of Africa or South America to fall ill in the USA and Europe, where fortunately they did not spread the disease—but the same could occur with passengers to India or China; what a mess that would create. There is not enough vaccine in the world to cope with a wide-spread epidemic in either of those countries.

Explanations for Asia's exemption are not convincing. There is a theory that immunity against dengue, which is endemic in Asia, and related viruses, cross-protects against yellow fever. But there is plenty of dengue and related viruses in South America and Africa, and it doesn't seem to cross-protect on those continents. It was thought that the Asian strains of *A. aegypti* might not be as efficient in carrying the virus, but lab experiments have proved that they are.



World Health Organization

Recent data:

The yellow fever situation in Africa and South America in 2004 Weekly Epidemiological Record. Vol. 80, 29,2005

Yellow fever epidemiological data in Africa, 2004

Country	Cases	Deaths	Lethality (percentage)
Cote d'Ivoire	92	4	4%
Burkina Faso	14	6	43%
Guinea	6	0	0%
Cameroon	6	0	0%
Liberia	5	5	100%
Senegal	2	0	0%
Mali	2	1	50%
Ghana	1	0	0%

(Source : WHO, 2005)

Yellow fever epidemiological data in South America, 2004

Country	Cases	Deaths	Lethality (percentage)
Peru	61	31	51%
Colombia	30	11	37%
Bolivia	10	4	40%
Brazil	5	3	60%
Venezuela	5	3	60%

(Source: WHO, 2005)

© Copyright World Health Organization (WHO). Reproduced by permission.

So, yellow fever cannot be eradicated, and there is no cure. Fortunately, there is a vaccine, possibly the most successful vaccine ever developed; one painless shot and you are protected for life, although it is best to get a booster every ten years. I was privileged to know the vaccine's developer, Max Theiler, a long-faced South African with bruised-looking eyes who worked at the Rockefeller Foundation Virus Laboratory on New York City's Upper East Side, and was an ardent baseball fan. He passed the yellow fever virus through lab animals and then embryonated chicken eggs until it lost the ability to attack the nervous system. The attenuated strain, code-named 17D, was field-tested in Brazil in 1937, and had since protected many millions of people, saving countless lives. It won him the Nobel Prize many years later. The French also developed a vaccine in the brains of mice, which had side effects, but did protect millions in their West African colonies. Theiler's 17D vaccine or derivatives are now routinely incorporated in the childhood vaccination schedule of many endemic countries.

■ Impacts and Issues

Where are we now, at the start of a new century? The big cities of Brazil suffer dengue outbreaks every year, which as mentioned above is spread by the same mosquito that carries yellow fever. Mosquito control has not been successful, since it is not pursued as rigorously as in the days of Oswaldo Cruz, 100 years earlier.

Since the *A. aegypti* mosquito breeds in domestic and peridomestic containers holding water—water jars, rain-water barrels, drums, discarded tires, cans and plastic containers, drinking vessels for domestic animals, flower vases—getting rid of those should be easy. All you have to do is to throw out those that you can, empty out the water from those you cannot, or change the water in your pet's dish and flower vases every three days, before any mosquito larvae in there can turn into adults. But in places where trash collection is intermittent or non-existent, and the public is apathetic, this just doesn't happen. People like to see trucks and sanitary agents going through the streets with insecticide fogging machines, but all that does is knock out that day's mosquitoes—plenty more will hatch tomorrow.

At the end of 1999, hundreds of Brazilian tourists went to celebrate the New Year at a popular resort at the edge of the jungle called Chapada de Veadeiros. Not all had been vaccinated against yellow fever. Some were bitten by infected jungle mosquitoes and returned home only to be hospitalized with the disease in the major cities of Rio de Janeiro, Sao Paulo, Brasilia, and Goiania. By some miracle, there was no epidemic, but we might not be so lucky next time.

So even if you have no plans to travel outside the cities of countries in the yellow fever belts of Africa or South America, it is prudent to get vaccinated, no matter what it costs. The only exceptions would be infants less than nine months old, pregnant women, those with egg allergy (since the vaccine is made in eggs), and people who are immunosuppressed for any reason (for example, those undergoing cancer therapy or organ transplants, carriers of HIV). Also if you are over 65 you should consult your doctor before getting the shot, because you are at higher risk of rare side effects of the vaccine. He or she will probably tell you not to have it if you promise to stay in the cities, and if an epidemic breaks out to come straight home, where, if you should get a fever within two weeks of returning, you should inform your doctor that you may have been exposed to yellow fever.

But I really worry about Asia.

WORDS TO KNOW

ATTENUATED STRAIN: A bacterium or virus that has been weakened, often used as the basis of a vaccine against the specific disease caused by the bacterium or virus.

ENDEMIC: Present in a particular area or among a particular group of people.

HEMORRHAGIC FEVER: A hemorrhagic fever is caused by viral infection and features a high fever and a high volume of (copious) bleeding. The bleeding is caused by the formation of tiny blood clots throughout the bloodstream. These blood clots—also called microthrombi—deplete platelets and fibrinogen in the bloodstream. When bleeding begins, the factors needed for the clotting of the blood are scarce. Thus, uncontrolled bleeding (hemorrhage) ensues.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

■ Primary Source Connection

Dr. Carlos Finlay began studying yellow fever in the 1870s and in 1881 was the first to assert that the *Aedes* mosquito was the vector of disease for yellow fever. Finlay's research was largely ignored for decades until a team of United States researchers posited a substantially similar theory in 1900. The following article from the *New York Times* discusses the scientific community's belated recognition of Finlay's contributions to yellow fever research.

Dr. Finlay Gets Full Credit Now

HAVANA PHYSICIAN WHO SOLVED THE YELLOW FEVER PROBLEM IS EXTOLLED HERE AND ABROAD

Said Mosquitos Carried It

And Allowed a Contaminated Insect to Sting Him to Prove It—Theory Ridiculed at First Reversing the usual order of things, scientists are determined that the rest of the world shall recognize in his lifetime the inestimable boon that Dr. Charles (or Carlos) J. Finlay of Havana conferred upon mankind when he formed the correct idea of how yellow fever is transmitted, proved his theory by self-inoculation, and forced it upon enlightened physicians and sanitarians after it had been rejected by contemporaries who regarded him as a nuisance.

Thousands of physicians who are well acquainted with the experiments of Reed, Carroll, and Lazear, who lost their lives in yellow fever investigations, never heard of Finlay. And yet he was their inspiration, and his experiments antedated theirs by a score of years. They succumbed, willing martyrs to the great cause; but he still lives and labors, revered by those working in the higher plains of science, regarded with something akin to awe by those who hear of him casually for the first time, and now, it seems, about to receive full credit, belated though it is, from the wide world.

It is now just thirty years and two weeks since Dr. Finlay read a paper before the Royal Academy of Havana, in which he propounded the novel theory that yellow fever was propagated by through the agency of mosquitos. And it is just six weeks ago that a physician in Edinburgh, commenting on Dr. Finlay and his discover, in the course of a letter wrote:

"Considering the times, it will eventually be considered one of the most wonderful pieces of constructive work in the history of medicine, but, like every other advance, it was rejected by contemporaries. Unlike nearly all other great medical discoverers, however, he has lived to see the acceptance of his facts and has not had to die of a broken heart; but it has been enough to break any one's heart to see himself so utterly ignored while the world has been singing the praises of the men upon whom he forced his ideas."

Further along the same physician writes:

"No doubt Reed himself, if alive, would blush at the methods used, and would continue to insist upon giving Finlay full credit for the great conception. Too high praise cannot be given also to Lazear and Carroll for their bravery, but Finlay did the self-same inoculation twenty years earlier. Finlay, indeed, used these Americans as one would a tool, and he had to force them, for they, too, laughed at him.

"It seems to me that the credit for initiating the experiments confirming Finlay's discovery is due to Leonard Wood, who, as Governor, forced the matter along in the very city where Spanish generals had positively prohibited such work."

History of the Discovery The Medical Record, which has all the facts in its possession, has undertaken to establish the brilliant work of Dr. Finlay in such a manner that all may know of it. The editor has written an article embodying the history of the discovery. After relating that Dr. Finlay's theory, was received with incredulity and more or less good-natured ridicule, he says;

"Nothing daunted, however, with true grit he continued his observations on the remarkable coincidence between the prevalence of yellow fever and the temporary increase in the number of mosquitos—studied the anatomy, the manner of breeding, and the habits of the mosquitos, and also continued his inoculation experiments. These were begun in July, 1881, at which time he obtained a well-marked attack of yellow fever following a bite by a contaminated mosquito.

"In a paper published in The American Journal of the Medical Sciences in October, 1886, Finlay describes the mosquito which he regarded as the agent in the spread of yellow fever. It had a dark-colored body with ventral surface coated thick skin and marked with gray or white rings; on each side of the abdomen was a double row of white spots; its most striking feature was five white rings on the hind legs, present but less marked on the anterior and middle legs; white spots were visible on the side of the thorax and front of the head, while the corselet presented a combination of white lines in the figure of a two-stringed lyre; the wings when closed did not cover the body."

Dr. Finlay made further close observations of this mosquito, which is now known to science as Stegomyia calopus (the yellow-fever mosquito,) finding that it did its flying and biting between between 9 and 10 o'clock in the morning.

"In the same article," continues the writer, "Finlay argues with much acuteness in support of his theory, and he concludes with the passage, which we quote at length, since it sets forth so clearly the views as to the spread of yellow fever that are universally held to-day.

Dr. Finlay's Argument "'From the evidence adduced in the preceding pages,' he writes, 'I conclude that while yellow fever is incapable of propagation by its own unaided efforts, it might be artificially communicated by inoculation, and only becomes epidemic when such inoculation can be verified by some external natural agent, such as the mosquito.'"

"'The history and etiology of yellow fever exclude from our consideration as possibly agents of transmission other blood-sucking insects such as fleas &c., the habits and geographical distribution of which in no wise agree with the course of that disease; whereas a careful study of the habits and a natural history of the mosquito shows a remarkable agreement with the circumstances that favor or impede the transmission of yellow fever.'"

"So far as my information goes this disease appears incapable of propagation wherever tropical do not or are not likely to exist, ceasing to be epidemic at the time limits of temperature and altitude which are incompatible with the functional activity of these insects; while, on the other hand, it spreads readily wherever they abound. From these considerations, taken in connection with my successful attempts in producing experimental yellow fever by means of the mosquito's sting, it is to be inferred that these insects are the habitual agents of transmission.'"

In an article running through several numbers of The Edinburgh Medical Journal in 1894, Dr. Finlay again set forth his mosquito theory, and once more in The Medical Record, on May 27, 1899, before the United States Army Commission had proved its correctness in such a manner that there could be no denial. In the latter article he asks:

"Why should not the houses in yellow fever countries be provided with mosquito blinds, such as are used in the United States as a matter of comfort, while here it might be a question of life or death?"

He next went on to tell how the larvae might be destroyed and the mosquitos exterminated, and described ideal sanitary measures and hospital construction. In brief, he foreshadowed conditions which afterward became realities and converted hot-beds of yellow fever into delightful health resorts.

"There can be not doubt that yellow fever might be stamped out from Cuba and Puerto Rico," he said, "and malaria reduced to a minimum. It would then be the business of the port and quarantine officers to prevent the introduction of fresh germs."

His Dreams Realized "When the United States Army occupied Havana," the writer continues, "Finlay saw his opportunity, and went to the sanitary authorities with his mosquito and his theory, and urged them to investigate the subject and prove the theory which he knew to be a fact. He was received with polite toleration, but without great enthusiasm. He persisted, nevertheless, in season and out of season, and in fact made such a nuisance of himself that an investigation was finally decided upon, his confidence arousing a suspicion that he might, after all, be on the right track.

"The results of this investigation are well known. Major Reed and his associates, Agramonte, Carroll, and Lazear, took Finlay's mosquito and his data and by a series of experiments, the equal of any in the annals of scientific investigation, established beyond cavil the mosquito doctrine of yellow fever transmission.

"Some of his views were found to be erroneous, which is not surprising when one considers the disadvantages under which he labored single-handed, but his basic idea was found to be absolutely correct. Making a practical application of this doctrine and perfecting the measures outlines by Finlay in his Medical Record article, the genius of Gorgas converted the two notorious pestholes, Havana and Panama, into health resorts.

"This is all ancient history, but for that very reason it is in danger of being forgotten. Even such a master of medical history as Osler forgot it in an address on the transmission of disease through the agency of blood-sucking insects, which he delivered before the London School of Tropical Medicine last Spring. In this address he omitted all mention of Finlay's work, and only when he was reminded of it by a letter from Guiteras of Havana in The Lancet did her apparently recall the great part which this pioneer has taken in the establishment of the mosquito doctrine."

Dr. Finlay was born in Cuba and has devoted his life to the inhabitants of that island, although his work has extended to a wide sphere, but the Scotch really claim and are justly proud of him and his achievements.

"DR. FINLAY GETS FULL CREDIT NOW: HAVANA PHYSICIAN WHO SOLVED THE YELLOW FEVER PROBLEM IS EXTOLLED HERE AND ABROAD," *NEW YORK TIMES*, SEPTEMBER 3, 1911.

SEE ALSO *Arthropod-borne Disease; Hemorrhagic Fevers; Host and Vector; Tropical Infectious Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Dickerson, James L. *Yellow Fever: A Deadly Disease Poised to Kill Again*. New York: Prometheus, 2006.

Periodicals

Woodall, Jack. "Why Mosquitoes Trump Birds." *The Scientist*. (January 2006).

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Yellow Fever - Disease and Vaccine." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dvbid/yellowfever/index.htm> (accessed June 13, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Togo: Yellow Fever Vaccination Campaign Protects 1.3 Million People." <http://www.who.int/features/2007/yellow_fever/en/index.html> (accessed June 13, 2007).

Jack Woodall

Yersiniosis

Introduction

Yersiniosis is an intestinal disease found mostly in children and young adults that is caused by bacteria in the genus *Yersinia*. In the United States, the rod-shaped bacterium *Yersinia enterocolitica* causes the most illness from yersiniosis, primarily in young children. This bacterium is found in the feces of infected humans and animals and in some foods. The infectious disease is characterized by intestinal pain and by symptoms that resemble appendicitis.

According to the Foodborne Diseases Active Surveillance Network (FoodNet), as monitored by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), about one *Y. enterocolitica* infection occurs for every 100,000 persons annually in the United States. Children are infected at higher rates than adults. The infection is more common in the colder months of the year because the bacteria prefer cooler temperatures.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Adults most often acquire yersiniosis when they don't practice proper hygiene, especially handwashing. Other activities that can lead to transmission of *Y. enterocolitica* include eating contaminated foods, such as undercooked or raw pork (especially chitterlings, which are made from the large intestines of pigs). Sometimes, humans contract the disease after coming in contact with the feces or urine of infected animals. Handling contaminated soil or contaminated human feces can also cause the infection. Although commonly assumed, yersiniosis does not originate from the mouths of infected humans.

Children can acquire the infection from drinking contaminated milk that is not pasteurized or untreated water. Babies acquire the infection when adults carelessly handle raw pork and do not wash their hands before handling the baby or objects in contract with the baby, such as bottles, clothing, and toys.

Infants are especially susceptible to yersiniosis. A medical professional should be consulted as soon as symptoms appear in an infant in order to assure that health complications do not result. It is especially important that infants younger than three months be immediately treated if suspected of being infected with yersiniosis because bacteremia (a blood infection) can result. An infant with bacteremia is often treated in a hospital or major medical facility due to the seriousness of this condition.

Yersiniosis can cause numerous symptoms, which primarily depend on the age of the patient. Most symptoms appear within three to seven days of being infected. They often last one to three weeks, but sometimes longer. In young children, common symptoms include abdominal pain, watery diarrhea often containing blood or mucus, and fever. In older children and adults, common symptoms include abdominal pain on the right portion of the body (similar to symptoms reported for appendicitis) and fever. Other symptoms include nausea and vomiting. Some people do not have noticeable symptoms, but they still excrete the bacteria in their stool and can infect others. Complications from yersiniosis can include joint pain, skin rashes, and spread of the bacteria into the bloodstream.

Scope and Distribution

Yersiniosis is found worldwide, but it more prevalent in areas where wild or domesticated animals, primarily pigs, are found. The bacterium that causes yersiniosis is found worldwide, however, the infection itself is more likely to be found in areas with poor sanitary conditions and among people with poor personal hygiene. For the most part, yersiniosis is a relatively uncommon bacterial infection in the United States.

Treatment and Prevention

Diagnosis of yersiniosis is generally performed through detection of the organism in the stools (feces) of infected people. The organism can also be detected through culture samples taken from the bile, blood, joint fluid, lymph nodes, or urine of patients. Stool samples can also distinguish between yersiniosis and appendicitis.

Treatment is usually not necessary when cases are uncomplicated. However, treatment is needed when cases become complicated, such as when severe symptoms occur or bacteria enter in the bloodstream. Then, antibiotics, such as aminoglycosides, fluoroquinolones, or tirmethoprim/sulfamethoxazole, are often prescribed.

Long-term problems caused by lack of treatment can result. Joint pain in the ankles, knees, or wrists sometimes occurs. Such pain often develops about one month after diarrhea occurs. A skin rash sometimes appears on the legs and trunk; women more frequently develop this complication than do men.

Yersiniosis can be prevented by eating only thoroughly cooked meats and, especially, and by staying away from raw or undercooked pork. Pork and other meats should be cooked to an internal temperature of at least 150°F (66°C). In addition, people should only consume pasteurized milk and milk products to avoid yersiniosis.

Prevention can be maximized by washing hands after handling raw meat, going to the bathroom, changing diapers (and promptly throwing away soiled diapers), and touching animals. Hands should be washed thoroughly with soap and water before playing with infants or touching their toys, bottles, or other such objects. Kitchen countertops, cutting boards, and other utensils should be cleaned regularly, especially after raw meat is prepared. Animal and human feces should be disposed of in a sanitary manner. Water supplies should be protected from human and animal wastes.

Impacts and Issues

Chitterlings (pig intestines) is a traditional holiday food in some parts of the world, such as the United States. The preparation of chitterlings is a long and messy process that is a primary source of yersiniosis infection. Fecal matter is sometimes contained in the pork intestines, posing a health concern to those in direct contact with the contaminated intestines, and to children and infants who may be exposed to *Y. enterocolitica* by adult caregivers who have handled the contaminated intestines. The CDC states that public awareness campaigns are mounted each year in an attempt to eliminate such contamination. However, for the most part, these campaigns have been unsuccessful. Measures are continuing to be developed and implemented to prevent this disease among people who perform what the CDC considers a high-risk health activity.

WORDS TO KNOW

BACTEREMIA: Bacteremia occurs when bacteria enter the bloodstream. This condition may occur through a wound or infection, or through a surgical procedure or injection. Bacteremia may cause no symptoms and resolve without treatment, or it may produce fever and other symptoms of infection. In some cases, bacteremia leads to septic shock, a potentially life-threatening condition.

PASTEURIZATION: Pasteurization is a process where fluids such as wine and milk are heated for a predetermined time at a temperature that is below the boiling point of the liquid. The treatment kills any microorganisms that are in the fluid but does not alter the taste, appearance, or nutritive value of the fluid.

SURVEILLANCE: The systematic analysis, collection, evaluation, interpretation, and dissemination of data. In public health, it assists in the identification of health threats and the planning, implementation, and evaluation of responses to those threats.

Several U.S. federal agencies are involved in the control and prevention of yersiniosis. The CDC monitors yersiniosis through its FoodNet and also conducts surveillance and investigations whenever outbreaks of the disease occur. This agency also uses public awareness campaigns to publicize the dangers associated with yersiniosis. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) inspects food and milk processing plants and restaurants in order to assure safe products are consumed by all U.S. citizens.

The United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) monitors the health of domesticated animals raised for food. It inspects food slaughtering and processing plants to ensure that the human food supply is not contaminated. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) monitors and regulates the safety of U.S. drinking water to prevent the transmission of yersiniosis and other infectious diseases through the water supply.

SEE ALSO *Bacterial Disease; Food-borne Disease and Food Safety; Handwashing; Parasitic Diseases.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Bannister, Barbara A. *Infection: Microbiology and Management.* Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing, 2006.

Cohen, Jonathan, and William G. Powderly, eds. *Infectious Diseases.* New York: Mosby, 2004.

Ryan, Kenneth J., and C. George Ray, eds. *Sherris Medical Microbiology: An Introduction to Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2004.

Web Sites

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Yersinia enterocolitica.” October 25, 2005. <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dbmd/diseaseinfo/yersinia_g.htm> (accessed April 7, 2007).

Food Safety and Inspection Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture. “Yersiniosis and Chitterlings: Tips to Protect You and Those You Care for from Foodborne Illness.” February 2, 2007. <http://www.fsis.usda.gov/Fact_Sheets/Yersiniosis_and_Chitterlings/index.asp> (accessed April 9, 2007).

Zoonoses

Introduction

A zoonosis (pronounced ZOO-oh-NO-sis) is a disease that can be transmitted from animals to humans under natural conditions. Some zoonoses, after being transmitted from animals to humans, can be transmitted from human to human. There are hundreds of zoonoses, including some of the most deadly diseases known. For example, avian influenza (flu) pandemics begin as zoonoses transmitted from birds, and malaria is transmitted by mosquitoes and kills about a million people annually. New zoonoses have been emerging in recent years with increased frequency due partly to the incursion of increasing human populations into animal habitats. The World Health Organization (WHO) said in 2007 that 75% of new communicable human diseases that have emerged over the last 10 years are zoonoses caused by pathogens found in animals or animal products. Zoonoses are found in all societies, but are most common and most deadly in poorer countries.

Disease History, Characteristics, and Transmission

Many zoonoses have afflicted human beings throughout their history. Before the development of agriculture in approximately 8,000 BC, people lived in small nomadic groups. Because their diet included wild game, they were prone to parasitic zoonotic diseases, such as hookworm. However, members of such groups who survived to adulthood tended to be healthy. Because of the relative mutual isolation of these groups, epidemic disease was rare.

After the domestication of plants and food animals, people began to live in larger groups and in closer contact with a variety of animals, including sheep, pigs, cattle, goats, and chickens. This made the transmission of diseases from animals to humans more likely, as well as the transmission of diseases from person to person. Tuberculosis, measles, smallpox, and influenza first entered human populations through agricultural contact with animals and animal products, and new influenza strains still are transmitted to human populations from domesticated pig and bird populations in Asia.

The development of global trade routes allowed the spread of epidemic diseases that had lost all connection with their original animal hosts, as well as of diseases that remained zoonotic, such as bubonic plague. Bubonic plague, which is caused by the bacterium *Yersinia pestis*, first appeared in Europe in 542 AD, but it only devastated the European population after 1346, when flea-infested furs were brought from China over recently opened trade routes. In a few years this zoonosis killed approximately one-third of the population of Europe and about 75 million people worldwide. Bubonic plague is maintained in rodent populations and transmitted to humans by flea and rodent bites.

Since the development of powered transportation in the nineteenth century, a whole new set of opportunities has arisen for zoonoses to travel the world. Migrant workers, political and economic refugees, tourists, and military personnel move quickly and in large numbers from one part of the world to another. Animals and animal products are moved globally by airplane and ship, sometimes inadvertently, as when rats and insect eggs are transported along with cargo. The tiger mosquito may have hitchhiked from Asia to the United States in worn tires shipped from the United States to Japan for retreading and then returned to the United States. Some experts warn that these mosquitoes may contribute to increased zoonotic transmission of North American viruses, including the LaCrosse virus, as they spread. The West Nile virus, which produced a notorious outbreak in 1999 and is transmitted to humans through mosquito bites, was apparently brought to the United States from Israel on an airplane, either by a stowaway mosquito or an infected human traveler.

Zoonoses can be transmitted to humans by bites, scratches, saliva, dander (skin flakes, similar to dandruff), droppings, and blood. Certain zoonoses, such as

WORDS TO KNOW

EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASE: New infectious diseases such as SARS and West Nile virus, as well as previously known diseases such as malaria, tuberculosis, and bacterial pneumonias that are appearing in forms that are resistant to drug treatments, are termed emerging infectious diseases.

HOST: Organism that serves as the habitat for a parasite, or possibly for a symbiont. A host may provide nutrition to the parasite or symbiont, or simply a place in which to live.

RE-EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASE: Re-emerging infectious diseases are illnesses such as malaria, diphtheria, tuberculosis, and polio that were once nearly absent from the world but are starting to cause greater numbers of infections once again. These illnesses are reappearing for many reasons. Malaria and other mosquito-borne illnesses increase when mosquito-control measures decrease. Other diseases are spreading because people have stopped being vaccinated, as happened with diphtheria after the collapse of the Soviet Union. A few diseases are reemerging because drugs to treat them have become less available or drug-resistant strains have developed.

RESERVOIR: The animal or organism in which the virus or parasite normally resides.

VECTOR: Any agent, living or otherwise, that carries and transmits parasites and diseases. Also, an organism or chemical used to transport a gene into a new host cell.

trichinellosis, are transmitted when humans eat the flesh of certain animals. Dog and bat bites can transmit rabies, cat bites can transmit cat-scratch fever, monkey bites can transmit hepatitis B, and rat bites can transmit leptospirosis, bubonic plague, salmonellosis, and rat-bite fever.

Animals serve as the natural reservoir of some zoonotic diseases, and the vector of others. A reservoir is a long-term host organism that maintains an infective agent, usually a virus, bacteria, or parasite. The reservoir is usually not affected by the agent or is without symptoms, and can then pass on the infectious agent either by direct contact, or through a vector. A vector transfers an infectious agent from an infected host to an uninfected animal or human. Vectors are often arthropods, a group of invertebrate animals including insects. For example, birds are a natural reservoir of West Nile virus, and the disease is transmitted to humans by a mosquito vector.

Some experts reserve the term "zoonosis" for a disease that is transmitted to humans from vertebrate animals, that is, animals with spinal columns, such as cattle, dogs, cats, and rats. By this definition, diseases spread to humans by insect bites are not zoonoses, but disease or death cause by the bites of venomous snakes and fishes are. Snake bites kill over 30,000 people per year worldwide, mostly in Asia.

Scope and Distribution

The geographical distribution of any given zoonosis depends on the geographical distribution of its host animal or animals. All parts of the world are affected by zoonotic diseases. While most zoonoses are most common in less developed countries in Asia, Africa, and South America, a few, such as Lyme disease and trichinellosis, are more common in North American and Europe. Millions of people get sick each year from food-borne bacterial zoonoses, such as *E. coli*, salmonellosis, campylobacteriosis, anthrax, and brucellosis. Cystericercosis, a zoonosis caused by a parasite that lives in pigs, can cause headache and epilepsy and infects approximately one out of every 1,000 inhabitants of Latin America. Viral zoonoses include rabies, which kills about 55,000 people every year worldwide (mostly from dog bites). Avian influenza, a viral zoonosis that derives its name from the fact that the animal reservoir for the virus is birds, could infect a large part of the human population if it combined with other viruses or mutated in such a way as to become transmissible directly between humans. Experts fear that tens or hundreds of millions of people could die in an pandemic outbreak of such a virus, as occurred in 1918, when between 50 and 100 million people died during the Spanish influenza pandemic.

Treatment and Prevention

Treatment of zoonoses varies by infection type. Zoonoses can be caused by viruses, bacteria, parasites, and fungi. Bacterial infections can usually be combated with antibiotics; antifungals, antiparasitics, and antivirals may be used against other infections, but options are generally more limited for fighting non-bacterial infections. For example, there is no available treatment for West Nile virus, which can cause fatal encephalitis in some victims. Treatment of West Nile is supportive, that is, directed at relieving symptoms and helping the patient's own immune system fight off the infection, if it can.

Prevention of zoonoses is primarily aimed at reducing the incidence of the zoonosis in the animal population from which it is transmitted to humans. For example, destroying rabid dogs decreases the incidence of rabies in humans. Spraying DDT to keep down mosquito populations that can transmit malaria and other diseases has a similar effect. Veterinary medicine and human medicine must cooperate in many of these measures designed to reduce zoonotic disease.

Humans can also decrease the likelihood of contracting a zoonotic disease by avoiding contact with infected animals and their feces and infected food products. Food products may be rendered safe by excluding infected animals from the food supply, as in the case of anthrax or trichinellosis, or by improved food preparation (e.g., pasteurizing, thorough cooking, slaughterhouse sanitation).

■ Impacts and Issues

Over 200 zoonoses are known, and more are emerging all the time. As long as an expanding human population continues to encroach on animal habitats, the likelihood that more zoonotic diseases will appear remains high. As noted earlier, 75% of recently emerging or re-emerging diseases are zoonoses. These include unconventional diseases such as prion diseases (transmissible spongiform encephalopathies), which are caused not by viruses or living organisms but by deformed proteins that, when ingested, cause similar protein deformation in the animal or human that has eaten the meat. These deformed proteins can accumulate in the central nervous system and cause mental degeneration and death. However, an emergent pathogen need not be unknown or unusual. A disease is considered emerging if it appears in an area where it has not previously been reported, as, for example, West Nile virus appearing in the United States.

SEE ALSO *Animal Importation; Arthropod-borne Disease; Bovine Spongiform Encephalopathy ("Mad Cow" Disease); Brucellosis; Cat Scratch Disease; Dengue and Dengue Hemorrhagic Fever; Ebola; Emerging Infectious Diseases; Giardiasis; Hantavrus; Lyme Disease; Malaria; Prion Disease; Rat-Bite Fever; Ringworm; Trichinellosis.*

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Books

Krauss, Hartmut. *Zoonoses: Infectious Diseases Transmissible from Animals to Humans.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2003.

Torrey, E. Fuller, and Robert H. Yolken. *The Beasts of the Earth: Animals, Humans, and Disease.* Piscataway, NJ: Rutgers University Press, 2005.

Periodicals

Chomel, Bruno B., et al. "Wildlife, Exotic Pets, and Emerging Zoonoses." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 13 (January 2007): 6–11. Also available online at: <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/13/1/6.htm> (accessed May 11, 2007).

Meslin, F.-X. "Global Aspects of Emerging and Potential Zoonoses: a WHO Perspective." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 3 (April-June 1997): 223–228. Also available online at: <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/vol3no2/meslin.htm> (accessed May 11, 2007).

O'Brien, Sarah J. "Foodborne Zoonoses." *British Medical Journal* 331 (November 26, 2005): 1217–1218. Also available online at: <http://www.bmj.com/cgi/content/full/331/7527/1217> (accessed May 11, 2007).

Web Sites

San Diego Natural History Museum. "Zoonoses: Animal-borne Diseases." <http://www.sdnhm.org/fieldguide/zoonoses/index.html> (accessed February 27, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Report of the WHO/FAO/OIE Joint Consultation on Emerging Zoonotic Diseases." 2004. <http://whqlibdoc.who.int/hq/2004/WHO_CDS_CPE_ZFK_2004.9.pdf> (accessed February 28, 2007).

Sources Consulted

BOOKS

Achord, James L. *Understanding Hepatitis*. Oxford, MS: University of Mississippi Press, 2002.

Adler, Michael, et al. *ABC of Sexually Transmitted Diseases*. London: BMJ, 2004.

Adley, Catherine C., ed. *Food-borne Pathogens: Methods and Protocols*. Totowa, NJ: Humana Press, 2006.

Al-Doory, Yousef, and Arthur F. DiSalvo, eds. *Blastomycosis*. New York: Plenum, 1992.

American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons. *Bloodborne Pathogens*. 5th ed. New York: Jones and Bartlett, 2007.

Arguin, P.M., P.E. Kozarsky, and A.W. Navin. *Health Information for International Travel 2005–2006*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2005.

Askari, Fred. *Hepatitis C: The Silent Epidemic*. Cambridge, MA: Da Capo, 2005.

Atkinson, William, et al., eds. *Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-preventable Diseases*. Atlanta: U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2002.

Bankston, John. *Joseph Lister and the Story of Antiseptics*. Hockessin, DE: Mitchell Lane Publishers, 2004.

Bannister, Barbara A. *Infection: Microbiology and Management*. Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing, 2006.

Barry, John M. *The Great Influenza: The Epic Story of the Deadliest Plague In History*. New York: Viking, 2004.

Beers, M.H. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. 18th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck, 2006.

Belkin, Shimshon S., and Rita R. Colwell. *Oceans and Health: Pathogens in the Marine Environment*. New York: Springer, 2005.

Bellenir, Karen, ed. *Infectious Diseases Sourcebook*. Detroit, MI: Omnigraphics, 2004.

Bennenson, A.S., ed. *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*. 16th ed. Washington, DC: American Public Health Association, 1995.

Berger, Stephen A., Charles A. Calisher, J.S. Keystone. *Exotic Viral Diseases: A Global Guide*. Hamilton, ON: BC Decker, 2003.

Bertolotti, Dan. *Hope in Hell: Inside the World of Doctors Without Borders*. Tonawanda, NY: Firefly Books, 2004.

Bethe, Marilyn R. *Global Spread of the Avian Flu: Issues And Actions*. Hauppauge, NY: Nova Science, 2007.

Betsy, Tom, and James Keogh. *Microbiology Demystified*. New York: McGraw-Hill Professional, 2005.

Black, Jacquelyn G. *Microbiology: Principles and Explorations*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

Black, Jacquelyn G. *Pigeons: The Fascinating Saga of the World's Most Revered and Reviled Bird*. New York: Grove Press, 2006.

Blechman, Andrew D. *Microbiology: Principles and Explorations*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

Bloch, Marc. *The Royal Touch. Sacred Monarchy and Scrofula in England and France*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul; Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 1973.

Bloom, Barry R., and Paul-Henri Lambert. *The Vaccine Book*. Oxford: Academic Press, 2002.

Bloom, Ona, and Jennifer Morgan. *Encephalitis*. London: Chelsea House Publications, 2005.

Bluestone, Charles D. *Targeting Therapies in Otitis Media and Otitis Externa*. Hamilton, Ontario, Canada: Decker DTC, 2004.

Boccaccio, Giovanni. *The Decameron.* Mark Musa, trans. New York: Signet, 1992.

Bollet, Alfred J. *Plagues and Poxes: The Impact of Human History on Epidemic Disease.* New York: Demos Medical Publishing, 2004.

Booss, John, and Margaret M. Esiri. *Viral Encephalitis in Humans.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2003.

Brock, David. *Infectious Fungi.* Philadelphia: Chelsea House Publishers, 2006.

Brock, Thomas D. *Robert Koch, A Life in Medicine and Bacteriology.* Madison, WI: Science Tech Publishers, 1988.

Brower, Jennifer, and Peter Chalk. *The Global Threat of New and Reemerging Infectious Diseases: Reconciling U.S. National Security and Public Health Policy.* Santa Monica, CA: Rand, 2003.

Brunelle, Lynn, and Barbara Ravage. *Bacteria.* Milwaukee: Gareth Stevens, 2003.

Burci, Gian Luca. *World Health Organization.* Hague, Netherlands: Kluwer Law International, 2004.

Bush, A.O., et al. *Parasitism: The Diversity and Ecology of Animal Parasites.* New York: Cambridge University Press, 2001.

Cane, Patricia, ed. *Respiratory Syncytial Virus.* Volume 14 of *Perspectives in Medical Virology.* New York: Elsevier Science, 2006.

Carmichael, Anne G. *Plague and the Poor in Renaissance Florence.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986.

Carrell, Jennifer Lee. *The Speckled Monster: A Historical Tale of Battling the Smallpox Epidemic.* New York: Dutton, 2003.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Protecting the Nation's Health in an Era of Globalization.* Atlanta: Office of Health Communication, National Center for Infectious Disease, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2002.

Centers for Disease Control. *Tuberculosis Statistics: States and Cities, 1984.* Atlanta: Centers for Disease Control, 1985.

Cheng, Liang, and David G. Bostwick, eds. *Essentials of Anatomic Pathology.* Totowa, NJ: Humana Press, 2006.

Clark, David P. *Molecular Biology Made Simple and Fun.* 3rd ed. St. Louis: Cache River Press, 2005.

Clark, Robert P. *Global Life Systems: Population, Food, and Disease in the Process of Globalization.* Lanham, MD: Rowman and Littlefield, 2000.

Cohen, Jonathan, and William G. Powderly, eds. *Infectious Diseases.* New York: Mosby, 2004.

Cole, Leonard A. *The Eleventh Plague: The Politics of Biological and Chemical Warfare.* New York: WH Freeman and Company, 1996.

Collier, Leslie, and John Oxford. *Human Virology.* New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.

Committee on Climate, Ecosystems, Infectious Diseases, and Human Health, Board on Atmospheric Sciences and Climate, National Research Council (U.S.A.). *Under the Weather: Climate, Ecosystems, and Infectious Disease.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2001.

Committee on Infectious Diseases of Mice and Rats, Institute of Laboratory Animal Resources, Commission on Life Sciences, National Research Council. *Infectious Diseases of Mice and Rats.* Washington, DC: National Academy of Sciences, 1991.

Connolly, M.A. *Communicable Disease Control in Emergencies: A Field Manual.* Geneva: World Health Organization, 2006.

Corsby, Alfred W. *America's Forgotten Pandemic.* New York: Cambridge University Press, 2003.

Crompton, D.W.T., A. Montresor, and M.C. Nesheim. *Controlling Disease Due to Helminth Infections.* Geneva: World Health Organization, 2004.

Dale, Jeremy W., and Simon F. Park. *Molecular Genetics of Bacteria.* New York: John Wiley, 2004.

Daly, D.J., and J. Gani. *Epidemic Modeling: An Introduction.* New York, Cambridge, 2001.

Daniel Thomas M. *Captain of Death: The Story of Tuberculosis.* Rochester, NY: University of Rochester Press, 2005.

DeGregori, Thomas R. *Bountiful Harvest: Technology, Food Safety, and the Environment.* Washington, Cato Institute, 2002.

Demaitre, Luke. *Leprosy in Premodern Medicine: A Malady of the Whole Body.* Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 2007.

Despommier, Dickson D., et al. *Parasitic Diseases.* 5th ed. New York: Apple Trees Productions, 2005.

Dickerson, James L. *Yellow Fever: A Deadly Disease Poised to Kill Again.* New York: Prometheus, 2006.

DiClaudio, Dennis. *The Hypochondriac's Pocket Guide to Horrible Diseases You Probably Already Have.* New York: Bloomsbury, 2005.

Dismukes, W.E., P.G. Pappas, and J.D. Sobel. *Clinical Mycology.* New York: Oxford University Press, 2003.

Douglas, Ann. *The Mother of All Toddler Books.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2004.

Dowell, Scott F. *Protecting the Nation's Health in an Era of Globalization: CDC's Global Infectious Disease Strategy.* Atlanta, GA: Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control, 2002.

Drexler, Madeline. *Secret Agents: The Menace of Emerging Infections.* New York: Penguin, 2003.

Driscoll, John S. *Antiviral Drugs.* New York: Wiley, 2005.

Duncan, K. *Hunting the 1918 Flu: One Scientist's Search for a Killer Virus.* Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2003.

Edlow, Jonathan A. *Bull's Eye: Unraveling the Medical Mystery of Lyme Disease.* New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 2004.

Edlow, Jonathan A., ed. *Tick-borne Diseases.* Philadelphia, PA: W.B. Saunders Company, 2002.

Ergonul, Onder, and Chris C. Whitehouse, eds. *Crimean-Congo Hemorrhagic Fever: A Global Perspective.* New York: Springer, 2007.

Ericsson, Charles D. *Traveler's Diarrhea.* Hamilton, ON, Canada: BC Decker, 2003.

Erlandsen, Stanley, and Ernest Meyer. *Giardia and Giardiasis, Biology Pathogenesis, and Epidemiology.* New York: Springer, 2001.

Ernest, Paul H. *How to Have Healthy Eyes for Life.* New York: Hudson Mills Press, 2003.

Ewald, Paul. *Plague Time: The New Germ Theory of Disease.* New York: Anchor, 2002.

Farb, Daniel. *Bioterrorism Hemorrhagic Viruses.* Los Angeles: University of Health Care, 2004.

Faro, Sebastian, and David Soper. *Infectious Diseases in Women.* Saunders, 2001.

Ferreiros, C. *Emerging Strategies in the Fight against Meningitis.* Oxford: Garland Science, 2002.

Fidler, David P. *International Law and Infectious Diseases.* Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1999.

Fields, Denise, and Ari Brown. *Toddler 411: Clear Answers and Smart Advice for Your Toddler.* Boulder: Windsor Peak Press, 2006.

Fluss, Sev S. "International Public Health Law: An Overview," *Oxford Textbook of Public Health.* 3rd ed. Roger Detels, Walter W. Holland, James McEwen, and Gilbert S. Omenn, eds. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1997.

Fong, I.W., and K. Alibek. *Bioterrorism and Infectious Agents: A New Dilemma for the 21st Century.* New York: Springer Science, 2005.

Fong, I.W., and Karl Drlica, eds. *Reemergence of Established Pathogens in the 21st Century.* New York: Springer, 2003.

Freeman-Cook, Lisa, and Kevin D. Freeman-Cook. *Staphylococcus aureus Infections.* London: Chelsea House, 2005.

Friedman, Ellen M., and James P. Barassi. *My Ear Hurts!: A Complete Guide to Understanding and Treating Your Child's Ear Infections.* Darby, PA: Diane Publishing Company, 2004.

Gandy, Matthew, and Alimuddin Zumla. *The Return of the White Plague: Global Poverty and the "New" Tuberculosis.* New York: Verso, 2003.

Garrett, Laurie. *The Coming Plague: Newly Emerging Diseases in a World out of Balance.* London: Virago Press, 1995.

Gates, Robert H. *Infectious Disease Secrets.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Hanley and Beltus, 2003.

Gillespie S., and K. Bamford. *Medical Microbiology and Infection at a Glance.* Malden, UK: Blackwell, 2000.

Gladwin, Mark, and Bill Trattler. *Clinical Microbiology Made Ridiculously Simple.* 3rd ed. Miami: Medmaster, 2003.

Glynn, Ian, and Jennifer Glynn. *Life and Death of Smallpox.* London: Profile Books, 2005.

Goldsmith, Connie. *Influenza: The Next Pandemic?* Brookfield, CT: Twenty-first Century Books, 2006.

Goodman, Jesse L., David T. Dennis, and Daniel E. Sonenshine. *Tick-borne Diseases of Humans.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2005.

Gould, Tony. *A Disease Apart: Leprosy in the Modern World.* New York: St. Martin's Press, 2005.

Gould, Tony. *A Summer Plague: Polio and Its Survivors.* New Haven: Yale University Press, 1997.

Graunt, J. *Natural and Political Observations Made upon the Bills of Mortality.* London, 1662. Reprinted by Johns Hopkins Press, 1939.

Guerrant, Richard I., David H. Walker, and Peter F. Weller. *Tropical Infectious Diseases: Principles, Pathogens & Practice.* Oxford: Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Harper, David R., and Andrea S. Meyer. *Of Mice, Men, and Microbes: Hantavirus.* Burlington, MA: Academic Press, 1999.

Hart, Tony. *Microterrors: The Complete Guide to Bacterial, Viral and Fungal Infections that Threaten Our Health.* Tonawanda: Firefly Books, 2004.

Hays, J.N. *The Burdens of Disease: Epidemics and Human Response in Western History.* New Brunswick, New Jersey: Rutgers University Press, 1998.

Hennekens, C.H., and J.E. Buring. *Epidemiology in Medicine*. Boston: Little, Brown, 1987.

Heymann, David L. *Control of Communicable Diseases Manual*, 18th ed. Washington, DC: American Public Health Association, 2004, pp. 700.

Hoffman, Gretchen. *Mononucleosis.* New York: Benchmark Books, 2006.

Holland, Celia V., and Malcolm W. Kennedy, eds. *The Geohelminths: Ascaris, Trichuris, and Hookworm*. Boston, MA: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2002.

Honigsbaum, Mark. *The Fever Trail: In Search of the Cure for Malaria*. New York: Picador, 2003.

Hoppe, Kirk. *Lords of the Fly: Sleeping Sickness Control in British East Africa, 1900-1960.* Westport, Conn.: Praeger, 2003.

Howard, D.H. *Pathogenic Fungi in Humans and Animals.* New York: Marcel Dekker, 2003.

Iannini, Paul B. *Contemporary Diagnosis and Management of Urinary Tract Infections.* Newtown, PA: Handbooks in Health Care, 2003.

ICON Health Publications. *Necrotizing Fasciitis*. San Diego, CA: ICON Health Publications, 2004.

Jacqueline Wolf, *Don't Kill Your Baby: Public Health and the Decline of Breastfeeding in the 19th and 20th Centuries.* Columbus: Ohio University Press, 2001.

James, Jenny Lynd. *Microbial Hazard Indentification in Fresh Fruits and Vegetables.* New York: Wiley-Interscience, 2006.

Jamison, Dean T., ed., et al. *Disease and Mortality in Sub-Saharan Africa*. New York: World Bank Publications, 2006.

Janse, Allison. *The Germ Freak's Guide to Outwitting Colds and Flu: Guerilla Tactics to Keep Yourself Healthy at Home, at Work and in the World*. Deerfield Beach: HCI, 2005.

Johanson, Paula. *HIV and AIDS (Coping in a Changing World)*. New York: Rosen, 2007.

Joynson, David H.M., and Tim G. Wreghitt. *Toxoplasmosis.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2005.

Ketley, Julian. *Campylobacter*. New York: Taylor & Francis, 2005.

Koff, R.S, and Wu, G.Y. *Chronic Viral Hepatitis.* Totowa: Humana Press, 2002.

Kolata, Gina. *Flu: The Story of the Great Influenza Pandemic of 1918 & the Search for the Virus That Caused It*. Upland, PA: Diane Pub. Co., 2001.

Koplow, David. *Smallpox: The Fight to Eradicate a Global Scourge*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 2004.

Korting, H. C., ed. *Mycoses: Diagnosis, Therapy and Prophylaxis of Fungal Diseases.* Berlin, Germany: Blackwell Science, 2005.

Krauss, Hartmut. *Zoonoses: Infectious Diseases Transmissible from Animals to Humans.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2003.

Kruel, Donald. *Trypanosomiasis*. London: Chelsea House, 2007.

Kumara, Vinay, Nelso Fausto, and Abul Abbas. *Robbins and Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2004.

Lawrence, Jean, and Dee May. *Infection Control in the Community*. New York: Churchill Livingstone, 2003.

Lax, Alister. *Toxin: The Cunning of Bacterial Poisons.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2005.

Lee, Bok Y., ed. *The Wound Management Manual.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2005.

Leuenroth, Stephanie J. *Hantavirus Pulmonary Syndrome (Deadly Diseases and Epidemics)*. New York: Chelsea House, 2006.

Levy, Stuart B. *The Antibiotic Paradox: How the Misuse of Antibiotics Destroys Their Curative Powers.* New York: Harper Collins, 2002.

Lindsay, David S., and Louis M. Weiss. *Opportunistic Infections: Toxoplasma, Sarcocystis, and Microsporidia (World Class Parasites)*. New York: Springer, 2004.

Lock, Stephen, Stephen Last, and George Dunea. *The Oxford Illustrated Companion to Medicine.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001.

Lopez, Alan, Colin Mathers, and Majid Ezzati. *Global Burden of Disease and Risk Factors.* World Bank Group. 2006.

Lyon, Maureen, and Lawrence J. D'Angelo. *Teenagers, HIV, and AIDS: Insights from Youths Living with the Virus*. Washington, DC: Praeger Publishers, 2006.

Mackenzie, J.S., et al. *Japanese Encephalitis and West Nile Viruses.* New York: Springer, 2002.

Maddocks, Steven. *UNICEF.* Chicago, IL: Raintree, 2004.

Mandell, G.L., J.E. Bennett, and R. Dolin. *Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases.* 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier, 2004.

Margulies, Phillip. *West Nile Virus.* New York: Rosen Publishing Group, 2003.

Marquardt, William H. *Biology of Disease Vectors.* 2nd ed. New York: Academic Press, 2004.

Maule, Aaron G., and Nikki J. Marks, eds. *Parasitic Flatworms: Molecular Biology, Biochemistry,* *Immunology and Physiology*. Wallingford, UK: CABI Publishing, 2006.

Mayer, Kenneth H., and H.F. Pizer. *The AIDS Pandemic: Impact on Science and Society*. San Diego: Academic Press, 2004.

Mayho, Paul, and Richard Coker. *The Tuberculosis Survival Handbook*. West Palm Beach, FL: Merit Publishing International, 2006.

McCoy, William F. *Preventing Legionellosis*. London: IWA Publishing, 2006.

McDonnell, Gerald E. *Antisepsis, Disinfection, and Sterilization: Types, Action, and Resistance*. Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2007.

McMichael, A.J., et al. *Climate Change and Human Health: Risks and Responses*, Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization, 2003.

McNeill, William Hardy. *Plagues and Peoples*. New York: Doubleday, 1998.

Médecins Sans Frontières, eds. *In the Shadow of Just Wars: Violence, Politics, and Humanitarian Action*. Translated by Fabrice Weissman and Doctors Without Borders. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 2004.

Miller, Judith, et al. *Germs: Biological Weapons and America's Secret War*. New York: Simon & Schuster, 2002.

Mims, C., et al. *Medical Microbiology*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2004.

Murray, Patrick, Ken Rosenthal, and Michael Pfaller. *Medical Microbiology*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2005.

Myers, N., and J. Kent. *Environmental Exodus: An Emergent Crisis in the Global Arena*. New York: Climate Institute, 1995.

Nelson, Kenrad E., and Carolyn F. Masters Williams. *Infectious Disease Epidemiology: Theory and Practice*. 2nd ed. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett, 2007.

Nestle, Marion. *What to Eat*. New York: North Point Press, 2006.

Nuland, S.B. *The Doctors' Plague: Germs, Childbed Fever, and the Strange Story of Ignàc Semmelweis*. New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2004.

Oshinsky, David. *Polio: An American Story*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.

Palladino, Michael A., and Stuart Hill. *Emerging Infectious Diseases*. New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2005.

Palladino, Michael A., and David Wesner. *HIV and AIDS (Special Topics in Biology Series)*. San Francisco: Benjamin Cummings, 2005.

Parker, James N. *The Official Patient's Sourcebook on Trachoma*. San Diego, CA: Icon Health Publications, 2002.

Parker, James N., and Philip M. Parker. *The Official Patient's Sourcebook on Giardiasis*. San Diego, CA: Icon Health Publications, 2002.

Parker, James N., and Philip M. Parker, eds. *The Official Patient's Sourcebook on Anisakiasis: A Revised and Updated Directory for the Internet Age*. San Diego, CA: Icon Health Publications, 2002.

Pelis, Kim.*Charles Nicolle, Pasteur's Imperial Missionary: Typhus and Tunisia*. Rochester: University of Rochester, 2006.

Pelton, Robert Young. *Robert Young Pelton's The World's Most Dangerous Places*. 5th ed. New York: Collins, 2003.

Percival, Steven, et al. *Microbiology of Water-borne Diseases: Microbiological Aspects and Risks*. New York: Academic Press, 2004.

Persing, David H., et al, eds. *Molecular Microbiology: Diagnostic Principles and Practice*. Seattle: Corixa Corp, 2003.

Peters, C.J., and Mark Olshaker. *Virus Hunter: Thirty Years of Battling Hot Viruses around the World*. New York: Anchor, 1998.

Peters, Wallace, and Geoffrey Pasvol. *Tropical Medicine and Parasitology*. 5th ed. London: Mosby, 2002.

Pierce, John R., and James V. Writer. *Yellow Jack: How Yellow Fever Ravaged America and Walter Reed Discovered Its Deadly Secrets*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2005.

Porter Roy, ed. *Cambridge Illustrated History of Medicine*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1996.

Powell, Michael, and Oliver Fischer. *101 Diseases You Don't Want to Get*. New York: Thunder's Mouth Press, 2005.

Prescott, Lansing M., John P. Harley, and Donald A. Klein. *Microbiology*. New York: McGraw Hill, 2004.

Procopius, *History of the Wars*, vol. I, H.B. Dewing, trans. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1914, pp. 451–473.

Regis, Ed. *Virus Ground Zero: Stalking the Killer Viruses with the Centers for Disease Control*. New York: Pocket Books, 2003.

Richardson, Malcolm, and Elizabeth Johnson. *Pocket Guide to Fungal Infection*. Boston: Blackwell, 2006.

Richardson, V.C.G. *Diseases of Small Domestic Rodents.* Oxford, UK, and Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing, 2003.

Ridley, R.M, and H.F. Baker. *Fatal Protein: The Story of CJD, BSE and Other Prion Diseases.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1998.

Rodriguez, Ana Maria. *Edward Jenner: Conqueror of Smallpox.* Springfield, NJ: Enslow, 2006.

Roemer, Ruth. "Comparative National Public Health Legislation, " *Oxford Textbook of Public Health.* 3rd ed. Roger Detels, Walter W. Holland, James McEwen, and Gilbert S. Omenn, eds. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1997.

Roemmele, Jacqueline A., and Donna Batdorff. *Surviving the Flesh-eating Bacteria: Understanding, Preventing, Treating, and Living with Necrotizing Fascitis.* New York: Avery, 2003.

Rosaler, Maxine. *Listeriosis (Epidemics).* New York: Rosen Publishing Group, 2003.

Rothstein, Mark A. *Quarantine And Isolation: Lessons Learned from Sars: A Report to the CDC.* Darby PA: Diane Publishing, 2003.

Rudolph, Collin D. et al., eds. *Rudolph's Pediatrics.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 2003.

Ryan, Kenneth J., and C. George Ray, eds. *Sherris Medical Microbiology: An Introduction to Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2004.

Ryser, Elliot T., and Elmer H. Marth. *Listeria, Listeriosis, and Food Safety.* 3rd ed. Boca Raton: CRC, 2007.

Salyers, Abigail A., and Dixie D. Whitt. *Revenge of the Microbes: How Bacterial Resistance Is Undermining the Antibiotic Miracle.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2005.

Samuel, William M., et al., eds. *Parasitic Diseases of Wild Mammals.* Ames, IA: Iowa State University Press, 2001.

Sarasin, Philipp, and Giselle Weiss. *Anthrax: Bioterror as Fact and Fantasy.* Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2006.

Scheld, W. Michael, et al. *Emerging Infections.* Washington, DC: ASM, 2006.

Schmidt, Michael A. *Childhood Ear Infections: A Parent's Guide to Alternative Treatments.* Berkeley, CA: North Atlantic Books, 2004.

Schneider, Mary Jane. *Introduction to Public Health.* 2nd ed. Boston: Jones & Bartlett Publishers, 2005.

Schopf, J. William. *Life's Origin: The Beginnings of Biological Evolution.* Berkeley: University of California Press, 2002.

Sears, William, and Martha Sears. *The Baby Book: Everything You Need to Know About Your Baby from Birth to Age Two.* 2nd ed. New York: Little, Brown, 2003.

Seifert, H. Steven, and Victor J. Dirta, eds. *Evolution of Microbial Pathogens.* Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2006.

Sfakianos, Jeffrey N., and David Heymann. *West Nile Virus.* London: Chelsea House, 2005.

Shephard, David A.E. *John Snow: Anaesthetist to a Queen and Epidemiologist to a Nation.* Cornwall, Prince Edward Island, Canada: York Point, 1995.

Shnayersen, Michael, and Mark J. Plotkin. *The Killers Within: the Deadly Rise of Drug-Resistant Bacteria.* Boston: Back Bay, 2003.

Sindermann, Carl J. *Coastal Pollution: Effects on Living Resources and Humans.* Boca Raton: CRC, 2005.

Singh G., and S. Prabhakar, eds. *Taenia Solium Cysticercosis: From Basic to Clinical Science.* Chandigarh, India: CABI Publishing, 2002.

Smith, Tara. *Ebola.* London: Chelsea House Publications, 2005.

Smith, Tara, and Edward Alcamo. *Streptococcus (Group A) (Deadly Diseases and Epidemics).* Philadelphia, PA: Chelsea House Publications, 2004.

Sobel, Jack D. *Contemporary Diagnosis and Management of Fungal Infections.* Newtown, PA: Handbooks in Health Care, 2003.

Speilman, Andrew, and Michael D'Antonio. *Mosquito: A Natural History of Our Most Persistent and Deadly Foe.* New York: Hyperion, 2001.

Swabe, Joanna. *Animals, Disease, and Human Society: Human-Animal Relations and the Rise of Veterinary Medicine.* London: Routledge, 1999.

Sze, Seming. *The Origins of the World Health Organization: A Personal Memoir 1945–1948.* Boca Raton, FL: LISZ, 1982.

Szklo, M., and F. Javier Nieto. *Epidemiology: Beyond the Basics.* Boston: Jones & Bartlett Publishers, 2006.

Tabor, Edward. *Emerging Viruses in Human Populations.* New York: Elsevier, 2007.

Tamparo, Carol D. *Diseases of the Human Body.* Philadelphia: F.A. Davis Co., 2005.

Tan, J. *Expert Guide to Infectious Diseases.* Philadelphia: American College of Physicians, 2002.

Tan, James. *Expert Guide to Infectious Diseases.* Philadephia: American College of Physicians, 2002.

Thompson, Kimberly, and Debra Fulghum. *Overkill: Repairing the Damage Caused by Our Unhealthy*

Obsession with Germs, Antibiotics, and Antibacterial Products. New York: Rodale Books, 2002.

Tierno, Philip M. *The Secret Life of Germs: What They Are, Why We Need Them, and How We Can Protect Ourselves Against Them.* New York: Atria, 2004.

Torrence, Paul F. *Antiviral Drug Discovery for Emerging Diseases and Bioterrorism Threats.* New York: Wiley-Interscience, 2005.

Torrey, E. Fuller, and Robert H. Yolken. *The Beasts of the Earth: Animals, Humans, and Disease.* Piscataway, NJ: Rutgers University Press, 2005.

Tortora, Gerard J., Berell R. Funke, and Christine L. Case. *Microbiology: An Introduction.* New York: Benjamin Cummings, 2006.

Tselis, Alex, and Hal B. Jenson. *Epstein-Barr Virus.* London: Informa Healthcare, 2006.

Turnock, Bernard J. *Public Health, What It Is and How It Works.* 3rd ed. Boston: Jones & Bartlett Publishers, 2004.

Tyler, Kevin M., and Michael A. Miles. *American Trypanosomiasis.* New York: Springer, 2006.

Tyrrell, David, and Michael Fielder. *Cold Wars: The Fight Against the Common Cold.* New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services *2006 Guide to Surviving Bird Flu: Common Sense Strategies and Preparedness Plans—Avian Flu and H5N1 Threat.* Progressive Management, 2006.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition. *Bad Bug Book: Foodborne Pathogenic Microorganisms and Natural Toxins Handbook.* McLean, VA: International Medical Publishing, Inc., 2004.

Umar, C.S. *New Developments in Epstein-Barr Virus Research.* New York: Nova Science Publishers, 2006.

UNICEF. *1946–2006: Sixty Years for Children.* New York: UNICEF, 2006.

USAMRIID *USAMRIID's Medical Management of Biological Casualties Handbook,* 6th ed. Fort Detrick, MD: U.S. Army Medical research Institute of Infectious Diseases, 2005.

Van Der Merwe, Jacob I.T. *Survival of the Cleanest: A Common Sense Guide to Preventing Infectious Disease.* Victoria, BC: Spicers Publishing, 2005.

Vanderhoof-Forschner, Karen. *Everything You Need to Know About Lyme Disease and Other Tick-Borne Disorders.* 2nd ed. New York: Wiley, 2003.

Waller, John. *The Discovery of the Germ: Twenty Years That Transformed the Way We Think About Disease.* New York: Columbia University Press, 2003.

Walsh, Christopher. *Antibiotics: Actions, Origins, Resistance.* Herndon, VA: ASM Press, 2003.

Wamala, Sarah P., and Ichiro Kawachi. *Globalization and Health.* New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.

Webber, R. *Communicable Disease Epidemiology and Control.* New York: CABI Publishing, 2005.

Weizer, Jennifer S., and Sharon Fekrat. *All About Your Eyes.* Raleigh: Duke University Press, 2006.

Wenzel, Richard P. *Prevention and Control of Nosocomial Infections.* Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2003.

White, Dennis J., and Dale L. Morse. *West Nile Virus: Detection, Surveillance, and Control.* New York: New York Academy of Sciences, 2002.

Whiteside, Alan. *HIV/AIDS: A Very Short Introduction.* Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2007.

Wilks, David, Mark Farrington, and David Rubenstein. *The Infectious Disease.* 2nd ed. Malden: Blackwell, 2003.

Wilson, Walter R., and Merle A. Sande. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Infectious Diseases.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2001.

Wobeser, Gary A. *Essentials of Disease in Wild Animals.* Boston: Blackwell Publishing Professional, 2005.

World Health Organization. *Human Leptospirosis: Guidance for Diagnosis, Surveillance and Control.* Malta: World Health Organization, 2003.

World Health Organization. *International Health Regulations 2005.* 4th ed (annot.). New York: WHO, 2005.

World Health Organization. *Preventing HIV/AIDS in Young People.* Geneva: WHO, 2006.

Wrigley, E.A., and R.S. Scofield. *The Population History of England, 1541–1871: A Reconstruction.* Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1984.

Yosipovitch, Gil, et al., eds. *Itch: Basic Mechanisms and Therapy.* Oxford: Taylor & Francis, 2004.

Zhai, Hongho, and Howard I. Maibach. *Dermatotoxicology.* New York: CRC Press, 2004.

Zimmerman, Barry E., and David J. Zimmerman. *Killer Germs.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 2002.

Zinsser, Hans. *Rats, Lice and History.* Boston: Little, Brown & Company, 1935 (reprinted 1996).

PERIODICALS

Adler, Nancy E., and Joan M. Ostrove. "Socioeconomic Status and Health: What We Know and What We Don't," *Ann N Y Acad Sci.* 1999; 896:3-15.

Allen, Arthur. "Bucking the Herd: Parents Who Refuse Vaccinations for Their Children May Be Putting Entire Communities at Risk." *Atlantic Monthly* 290, 2 (September 2002).

Allingham, J.S., et al. "Structures of Microfilament Destabilizing Toxins Bound to Actin Provide Insight into Toxin Design and Activity." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science* 102 (2005): 14527–14532.

Altman, Lawrence K. "Flu Samples, Released in Error, Are Mostly Destroyed, U.S. Says." *New York Times* April 22, 2005.

Anderson, Alicia D. "Q Fever and the U.S. Military." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 11: 1320–1323 (2005).

Andraws, R., J.S. Berger, and D.L Brown. "Effects of Antibiotic Therapy on Outcomes of Patients with Coronary Artery Disease: A Meta-analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials." *Journal of the American Medical Association* no. 293 (2005): 2641–2647.

Aufderheide, A.C., et al. "A 9,000-year Record of Chagas' Disease." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 101 (2004): 2034–2039.

Baker, Russell, "Memoir of a Small-Town Boyhood." *The New York Times* September 12, 1982.

Barlow, Frank. "The King's Evil," *The English Historical Review*, 95, 374 (January 1980), pp. 3-27.

Barnes, Denise, "Time's Up on School Shots; 434 Students Sent to Court." *The Washington Times* (October 2, 2003).

Barry, John M. "The Site of Origin of the 1918 Influenza Pandemic and its Public Health Implications." *Journal of Translational Medicine* 2004.

Beers, S., and T. Abramo. "Otitis Externa Review." *Pediatric Emergency Care* 20 (April 2004): 250–256.

Belongia, Edward A., and Allison L. Naleway. "Smallpox Vaccine: The Good, the Bad, and the Ugly." *Clinical Medicine and Research* 1, 2 (2003): 87-92.

Benitz, Willem E., et al. "Risk Factors for Early-onset Group B Streptococcal Sepsis: Estimation of Odds Ratios by Critical Literature Review." *Pediatrics* 103 (1999): 1–14.

Berg, Paul., et al. "Summary Statement of the Asilomar Conference on Recombinant DNA Molecules." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 72 (1975): 1981–1984.

Booth, Timothy F., et al. "Detection of Airborne Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS) Cornonavirus and Environmental Contamination in SARS Outbreak Units." *Journal of Infectious Diseases* 191 (2005): 1472–1477.

Boseley, S. "Can You Catch Cancer?" *The Guardian* (January 24, 2006).

Boyer, Jere, Thomas File, and William Franks. "West Nile Virus: The First Pandemic of the Twenty-First Century." *Ohio Journal of Science* 102 (2002): 98–102.

Bradley T. Smith, Thomas V. Inglesby, and Tara O'Toole. "Biodefense R&D: Anticipating Future Threats, Establishing a Strategic Environment." *Biosecurity & Bioterrorism.* 1 (3): 193–202, 2003.

Bradsher, Keith. "Carrier of SARS Made Seven Flights Before Treatment." *New York Times* (April 10, 2003).

Broad, William J. "Anthrax Not Weapons Grade, Official Says." *New York Times* (September 26, 2006).

Brouqui, Phillipe, and Didier Raoult. "Arthropod-borne diseases in homeless." *Ann N Y Acad Sci.* (October 2006, 1078: 223-35) Brouqui, Phillipe, Andreas Stein, et al. "Ectoparasitism and Vector-borne Diseases in 930 Homeless People from Marseilles." *Medicine* (Baltimore). (2005 Jan; 84(1): 61-8).

Bruschi, F., and K.D. Murrel. "New Aspects of Human Trichinellosis: The Impact of New Trichinella Species." *Postgraduate Medical Journal* 78 (2002): 15–23.

Buenz, Eric J. "Disrupted Spatial Memory is a Consequence of Picornavirus Infection." *Neurobiology of Disease* 24 (2006): 266–273.

Butler, D. "Fatal Fruit Bat Virus Sparks Epidemics in Southern Asia." *Nature* 429 (May 6, 2004): 7.

Cairncross, S., Muller, R., and Zagaria, N. "Dracunculiasis (Guinea Worm Disease) and the Eradication Initiative." *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* 15, 2 (2002): 223–246.

Case, Anne, and Francis Wilson. "Health and Well-being in South Africa: Evidence from the Langeberg Survey." Princeton University, 2001.

Casemore, David P. "Foodborne Illness: Foodborne Protozoal Infection." *Lancet* 336 (1990): 1427–1433.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Interim Pre-pandemic Planning Guidance: Community Strategy for Pandemic Influenza Mitigation in the United States." Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, February 2007, page 8. Also available online at <http://www2a.cdc.gov/phlp/docs/community_mitigation.pdf>

Chamany, S., et al. "A Large Histoplasmosis Outbreak Among High School Students in Indiana, 2001." *Pediatric Infectious Disease Journal* vol. 23, no. 10 (2004): 909–914.

Chan, K.P., K.T. Goh, C.Y. Chong. "Epidemic Hand, Foot and Mouth Disease caused by Human Enterovirus 71, Singapore." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 9, 1 (2003): 78–85.

Chang, Douglas C., et al. "Multistate Outbreak of *Fusarium* Keratitis Associated with Use of a Contact Lens Solution." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 296 (2006): 953–963.

Check, Erika. "Heightened Security After Flu Scare Sparks Biosafety Debate." *Nature* 432 (2005): 943.

Cheng, Allen C., and Bart J. Currie. "Melioidosis: Epidemiology, Pathophysiology, and Management." *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* 18 (April 2005): 383–416. Also available online at: <http://cmr.asm.org/cgi/content/full/18/2/383>.

Chomel, Bruno B., et al. "Wildlife, Exotic Pets, and Emerging Zoonoses." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 13 (January 2007): 6–11. Also available online at: <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/13/1/6.htm> (accessed May 11, 2007).

Cohen, H.W., R.M. Gould, and V.W. Sidel. "The Pitfalls of Bioterrorism Preparedness: The Anthrax and Smallpox Experiences." *Am J Public Health* (2004): 94:1667–1671.

Cohen, Jon. "Fulfilling Koch's Postulates." *Science* 266 (1994):1647.

Cohen, Jon. "Leaks Produce a Torrent of Denials." *Science* 298 (November 15, 2002): 1313–1315.

Cohen, Stuart A. "On the Precipice: Private-Sector Vaccine Delivery." *Pediatric News* 40 (April 1, 2006).

Coles F.B., et al. "A Multistate Outbreak of Sporotrichosis Associated with Sphagnum Moss." *American Journal of Epidemiology* (1992): 136, 475–487.

Cook, H., et al. "Heterosexual Transmission of Community-associated Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus.*" *Clinical & Infectious Disease* (2007) 44: 410–413.

Corbett, E., et al. "The Growing Burden of Tuberculosis: Global Trends and Interactions with the HIV Epidemic." *Archives of Internal Medicine* 163, 9 (May 12, 2003): 1009–1021.

Cowan, George. "Rickettsial Diseases: The Typhus Group of Fevers - A Review." *Postgraduate Medical Journal* 76 (2000): 269–272.

Cowley, Geoffrey. "The Life of a Virus Hunter." *Newsweek* (May 15, 2006).

Cox, F.E.G. "History of Human Parasitology." *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* vol. 15, no. 4 (2002): 595-612.

Crawford, D.H. "An Introduction to Viruses and Cancer." *Microbiology Today* 56 (2005): 110–112.

Cunha, Burke A. "Effective Antibiotic-Resistance Control Strategies." *The Lancet.* 357 (2001): 1307.

Cunningham, Madeleine W. "Pathogenesis of Group A Streptococcal Infections." *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* 13 (2000): 470-511.

DaSilva, E., "Biological Warfare, Terrorism, and the Biological Toxin Weapons Convention." *Electronic Journal of Biotechnology* 3 (1999): 1–17

Davies. M., et al. "Outbreaks of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 Associated with Petting Zoos—North Carolina, Florida, and Arizona, 2004 and 2005." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly* 54: 1277–1281 (2005).

Day, Troy, Andrew Park, Neal Madras, Abba Gumel, and Jianhong Wu. "When is Quarantine a Useful Control Strategy for Emerging Infectious Diseases?" *American Journal of Epidemiology* 163: 479-485 (2006).

De Vincenzi, I. "A Longitudinal Study of Human Immunodeficiency Virus Transmission by Heterosexual Partners." *New England Journal of Medicine* 331 (August 11, 1994): 341–346.

Diep, Binh An, et al. "Complete Genome Sequence of USA300, An Epidemic Clone of Community-Acquired Methicillin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus.*" *The Lancet* 367 (March 4, 2006): 731–740.

Dire, D.J., and T.W. McGovern. "CBRNE - Biological Warfare Agents." *eMedicine Journal* 4 (2002): 1–39.

Donta, Sam. "Late and Chronic Lyme Disease: Symptom Overlap with Chronic Fatigue Syndrome and Fibromyalgia." *Medical Clinics of North America* 86 (2002): 341–349.

Drancourt, M., and D. Raoult. "Molecular Insights into the History of Plague." *Microbes and Infection* 4 (January 2002): 105–109.

Dunne, E.F., et al. "Prevalence of HPV Infection Among Females in the United States." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 297 (February 28, 2007): 813–819.

Durham, Sharon. “Finding Solutions to *Campylobacter* in Poultry Production.” *Agricultural Research* 54 (2006): 10–11.

Editorial. “Following Koch’s Example.” *Nature Reviews Microbiology* 3 (2005): 906.

Elliott, S.P. “Rat Bite Fever and *Streptobacillus moniliformis*.” *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* January 1, 2007: 20 (1): 13–22.

Elston, Dirk M. “Drugs Used in the Treatment of Pediculosis.” *Journal of Drugs in Dermatology* 4.2 (March-April 2005): 207–211.

Enserink, Martin, and Jocelyn Kaiser. “Accidental Anthrax Shipment Spurs Debate Over Safety.” *Nature* 304 (2004): 1726–1727.

Enserink, Martin. “WHA Gives Yellow Light for Variola Studies.” *Science* 308 (May 27, 2005): 1235.

Esposito, Joseph J., et al. “Genome Sequence Diversity and Clues to the Evolution of Variola (Smallpox) Virus.” *Science* 313 (2006): 807–812.

Facklam, Richard. “What Happened to the Streptococci: Overview of Taxonomic and Nomenclature Changes.” *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* 15 (2002): 613-630.

Factor, Stephanie H., et al. “Invasive Group A Streptococcal Disease: Risk Factors for Adults.” *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 9 (2003): 970–977.

Faden, Ruth R., Patrick S. Duggan, and Ruth Karron. *New York Times Online* “Who Pays to Stop a Pandemic?” February 9, 2007. <http://www.nytimes.com/2007/02/09/opinion/09faden.html?_r=1&oref=slogin&pagewanted= print>.

Falsey, A.R., et al. “The ‘Common Cold’ in Frail Older Persons: Impact of Rhinovirus and Coronavirus in a Senior Daycare Center.” J Am Geriatr Soc (June 1997): 45 (6): 706–712

Farmer, P. “Social Inequalities and Emerging Infectious Diseases.” *Emerging Infectious Diseases* Vol. 2, No. 4. October-December, 1996.

Fauci, Anthony S. *Milbank Memorial Fund.* 2005 Robert H. Ebert Memorial Lecture. “Emerging and Re-emerging Infectious Diseases: The Perpetual Challenge.” <http://www.milbank.org/reports/0601fauci/0601Fauci.pdf>

Felitti, Vincent J. “GIDEON: Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network.” *JAMA*. (2005): 293: 1674–1675.

Fendrick, A. Mark, et al. “The Economic Burden of Non-Influenza-Related Viral Respiratory Tract Infection in the United States.” *Archives of Internal Medicine* 163 (2003): 487–494.

Ferguson, Neil M. “Ecological and Immunological Determinants of Influenza Evolution.” *Nature* 4222 (2003): 428-433.

Finn, Robert. “Fever of Unknown Origin? Consider Cat Scratch Disease.” *Family Practice News* 35 (September 1, 2005): 67.

Frederickson, Donald S. “The First Twenty-Five Years After Asilomar.” *Perspectives in Biology and Medicine* 44 (2001): 170–182.

Gips, Michael A. “Open Border, Insert Foot and Mouth.” *Security Management* 45, 6 (2001): 14.

Glaser, Vicki. “A Career Path in Arbovirology—An Interview with Robert E. Shope, M.D.” *Vector-bone and Zoonotic Diseases* 3, 1 (March 2003): 53-56.

Glass T.A., and M. Schoch-Spana. “Bioterrorism and the People: How to Vaccinate a City against Panic.” *Clinical Infectious Diseases* (2002) 34: 217–23.

Goldmann, Donald. “System Failure versus Personal Accountability—The Case for Clean Hands.” *NEJM* (July 13, 2006): 355: 121–123.

Gompper, Matthew E. and Amber N. Wright. “Altered Prevalence of Raccoon Roundworm (*Baylisascaris procyonis*) Owing to Manipulated Contact Rates of Hosts.” *Journal of Zoology* (2005), 266: 215–219.

Gorman C. “The Avian Flu: How Scared Should We Be?” *Time* October 17, 2005, page 30.

Gostin L.O., J.W. Sapsin, S.B. Teret, et al. “The Model State Emergency Health Powers Act: Planning for and Response to Bioterrorism and Naturally Occurring Infectious Diseases.” *JAMA* (2002): 288:622–628.

Gostin, L.O. “International Infectious Disease Law: Revision of the World Health Organization’s International Health Regulations.” *Journal of the American Medical Association* 291 (2004): 2623-2627. (Also available at <http://jama.ama-assn.org/cgi/content/full/291/21/2623>.

Gottlieb, M.S., et.al. “*Pneumocystis* Pneumonia—Los Angeles” Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (June 5, 1981): (30) 21, 1–3. Available online at <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/june_5.htm>.

Greenfeld, Karl Taro. “The Virus Hunters: When the Deadly SARS Virus Struck China Three Years Ago, Beijing Responded with a Massive Coverup. If It Weren’t for the Persistence of Two Young Reporters and One Doctor Who Had Seen Enough, SARS Might Have Killed Thousands More. There’s No Guarantee the World Will Be

So Lucky Next Time." *Foreign Policy* (March, April 2006): 153, 42.

Greenwald, Jeffrey L., Gale R. Burstein, Jonathan Pincus, and Richard Branson. "A Rapid Review of Rapid HIV Antibody Tests." *Current Infectious Disease Reports* 8 (2006): 125–131.

Grischow, Jeff D. "K.R.S. Morris and Tsetse Eradication in the Gold Coast, 1928-51." *Africa* 76, 3 (2006): 381-409.

Gross, C.P., and K.A. Sepkowitz. "The Myth of the Medical Breakthrough: Smallpox, Vaccination, and Jenner Reconsidered." *International Journal of Infectious Disease* 3 (1998), 54–60.

Gross, Ludwick. "How Charles Nicolle of the Pasteur Institute Discovered that Epidemic Typhus Is Transmitted by Lice: Reminiscences from My Years at the Pasteur Institute in Paris." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* (October 1996): vol. 93, 10539–10540.

Haines, A., et al. "Climate Change and Human Health: Impacts, Vulnerability, and Mitigation." *The Lancet* 367 (2006): 2101-2110.

Halloran, M. Elizabeth, et al. "Containing Bioterrorist Smallpox." *Science* 298 (November 15, 2002): 1428–1432.

Handel, A., I.M. Longini, Jr., and R. Antia. "What is the best control strategy for multiple infectious disease outbreaks?" *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London. Biological sciences* 22; 274 (1611) March 2007: 833-7.

Harries, Anthony, and Dermot Maher. *TB/HIV: A Clinical Manual* World Health Organization, 1996.

Hawralek, Jason. "Giardiasis: Pathophysiology and Management." *Alternative Medicine Review* 8.2 (2003): 129–143.

Hawryluck, Laura, et al. "SARS Control and Psychological Effects of Quarantine, Toronto, Canada." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 10 (2004): 1206–1212.

Hayes, Edward B., and Joseph Piesman. "How Can We Prevent Lyme Disease?" *New England Journal of Medicine* 348 (2003): 2424–2429.

Health Protection Agency. "Scarlet Fever Outbreak in Two Nurseries in South West England." *CDR Weekly* 16 (March 2, 2006): 1–2.

Hecht, R., et al. "Putting It Together: AIDS and the Millennium Development Goals." *PLoS Medicine* 3, 11 (2006).

Hector, R., and R. Laniado-Laborin. "Coccidioidomycosis—A Fungal Disease of the Americas." *PloS Medicine* January 25 2005. <http://medicine.plosjournals.org/perlserv/?request=get-document&doi=10.1371/journal.pmed.0020002>.

Hellard, M.E., and C.E. Aitken. "HIV in Prison: What are the Risks and What Can Be Done?" *Sexual Health* 1 (2004): 107–113.

Herwaldt, B.L., et al. "Endemic Babesiosis in Another Eastern State: New Jersey." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 9 (February 2003): 184–188.

Hill, C.A., et al. "Arthropod-borne Diseases: Vector Control in the Genomics Era." *Nature Reviews Microbiology* 3 (March 2005): 262–268.

Hilts, Philip J. "'79 Anthrax Traced to Soviet Military." *New York Times* (November 18, 1994).

Hochedez P. et al. "Chikungunya Infection in Travelers." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* vol. 12, no. 10 (2006): 1565–1567.

Hoffman, Michelle. "New Medicine for Old Mummies: Diagnosing Disease in Some Very Old 'Patients'." *American Scientist* 86 (May-June 1998).

Holmes, C.B., H. Hausler, and P. Nunn. "A Review of Sex Differences in the Epidemiology of Tuberculosis." *The International Journal of Tuberculosis and Lung Disease* 2 (1998): 96–104.

Holmes, Edward C. "1918 and All That." *Nature* 303 (2004): 1787–1788.

Hopkins, D.R. et al. "Dracunculiasis Eradication: The Final Inch." *The American Journal of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene* 73, 4 (2005): 669–675.

Hoque, M. Ekramul, et al. "Nappy Handling and Risk of Giardiasis." *Lancet* 357(2001): 1017.

Hotez, Peter J., et al. "Hookworm Infection." *New England Journal of Medicine* August 19, 2004, vol. 351:799-807, number 8.

Hotez, Peter. "Dark Winters Ahead." *Foreign Policy* (November-December 2001): 84.

Huff, Jennifer L., and Peter A. Barry. "B-Virus (*Cercopithecine herpesvirus* 1) Infection in Humans and Macaques: Potential for Zoonotic Disease." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 9 (February 2003): 246–250. Also available online at: <http://oacu.od.nih.gov/UsefulResources/resources/emergindis2003.pdf>.

Huhn, G.D., et al. "Monkeypox in the Western Hemisphere." *New England Journal of Medicine* 350 (April 22, 2004): 1790–1791.

Hymes, K.B., J.B. Greene, A. Marcus, et al. "Kaposi's Sarcoma in Homosexual Men: A Report of Eight Cases." *Lancet* 2 (1981): 598–600.

Irwin, R.S., and J.M. Madison. "Primary Care: The Diagnosis and Treatment of Cough." *New England Journal of Medicine* 343 (2000): 1715–1721.

Jackson, Patricia L. "Healthy People 2010 Objective: Reduce Number and Frequency of Courses of Antibiotics for Ear Infections in Young Children." *Pediatric Nursing* 27 (2000): 591–595.

Jansen, A., et al. "Leptospirosis in Germany, 1962–2003." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 11 (2005): 1048–1054.

Jernigan, D. B., et al. "Investigation of Bioterrorism-Related Anthrax, United States, 2001: Epidemiologic Findings." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 8 (2002): 1019–1028.

Johnson, Niall P.A.S. "Updating the Accounts: Global Mortality of the 1918–1920 "'Spanish' Influenza Pandemic." *Bulletin of the History of Medicine* 76 (2002): 105–115.

Kaiser, Jocelyn. "Quick Save for Infectious-Disease Grants at NIAID." *Science* 303 (2004): 941.

Kaiser, Jocelyn. "Resurrected Influenza Virus Yields Secrets of Deadly 1918 Pandemic." *Science* 310 (2005): 28029.

Kaplan, Edward L., et al. "Reduced Ability of Penicillin to Eradicate Ingested Group A Streptococci from Epithelial Cells: Clinical and Pathogenic Implications." *Clinical Infectious Diseases* 43 (2006): 1398–1406.

Karesh, W.B., R.A. Cook, E.L. Bennett, and J. Newcomb. "Wildlife Trade and Global Disease Emergence." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 11, 7 (July 2005). Available at <http://www.cdc.gov/eid>.

Katz, Ingrid T., and Alexi A. Wright. "Preventing Cervical Cancer in the Developing World." *New England Journal of Medicine* 354 (March 16, 2006): 1110.

Kelley, C.F., et al. "Clinical, Epidemiologic Characteristics of Foreign-born Latinos with HIV/AIDS at an Urban HIV Clinic." *The AIDS Reader* 17 (February 2007): 73–74, 78–80, 85–88.

Kimberlin, D.W., and R.J. Whitley. "Varicella-Zoster Vaccine for the Prevention of Herpes Zoster." *New England Journal of Medicine* 356 (March 29, 2007): 1338–1343.

Kirkland, T.N., and J. Fierer. "Coccidioidomycosis: A Reemerging Infectious Disease." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 2, 3 (July-September 1996).

Kochi, Arata. "WHO Malaria Head to Environmentalists: "Help Save African Babies as You Are Helping to Save the Environment." World Health Organization Press Statement. September 15, 2006.

Koelle, Katia, et al. "Epochal Evolution Shapes the Phylodynamics of Interpandemic Influenza A (H3N2) in Humans." *Science* 314 (2006): 1898–1903.

Kohn, Marek. "Why an Unequal Society is an Unhealthy Society: Poor Relationships and Low Status Don't Just Make People Envious. They also Interfere with the Immune System and Damage Health." *New Statesman* (1996) 133.4698 (July 26, 2004): 30 (2).

Kolata, Gina. "A Dangerous Form of Strep Stirs Concern in Resurgence." *New York Times* (June 8, 1994).

Koopman, Jim. "Controlling Smallpox." *Science* 298 (2002): 1342–1344.

Kozukeev, Turatbek, B., S. Ajeilat, M. Favorov. "Risk Factors for Brucellosis - Leylek and Kadamjay Districts, Batken Oblast, Kyrgyzstan, January - November, 2003." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly* 55 (SUP01): 31–34 (2006).

Kreeger, Karen Young. "Stalking the Deadly Hantavirus: A Study in Teamwork." *The Scientist* vol. 8, 14.

Kristof, Nicholas D. "At 12, a Mother of Two." *The New York Times* May 28, 2006.

Ksiazek T.G., et al. "A Novel Coronavirus Associated with Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome." *New England Journal of Medicine* 10.1056. April 10, 2003.

Laver, Graeme and Elspeth Garman. "The Origin and Control of Pandemic Influenza." *Science* 293 (2001): 1776–1777.

Leibovich, Mark. "In Clean Politics, Flesh Is Pressed, Then Sanitized." *New York Times* October 28, 2006. <http://www.nytimes.com/2006/10/28/us/politics/28dirty.html?_r=1&th&emc=th&oref=slogin>.

Leroy, E.M., et al. "Fruits Bats as Reservoirs of Ebola Virus." *Nature* 438 (December 1, 2005): 575–576.

Lester, Robert S., et al. "Novel Cases of Blastomycosis Acquired in Toronto, Ontario." *Canadian Medical Association Journal* 163 (November 14, 2000): 1309–1312.

Lewis, Katharine Kranz. "The Pandemic Threat: Is Massachusetts Prepared? Findings from the Forum on Pandemic Flu, sponsored by the Massachusetts Health Policy Forum," June 2006. Policy Brief. The Massachusetts Policy Forum, August, 2006.

Lipsitch, Marc, and Matthew H. Samore. "Antimicrobial Use and Antimicrobial Resistance: A Population Perspective." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 8 (2002): 347-354.

Lipton, Eric. "Bid to Stockpile Bioterror Drugs Stymied by Setbacks." *New York Times* (September 18, 2006).

Littman, R.J., and M.L. Littman. "Galen and the Antonine Plague." *The American Journal of Philology* 94, 3 (Autumn 1973), pp. 243–255.

Lomax, Elisabeth. "Hereditary of Acquired Disease? Early Nineteenth Century Debates on the Cause of Infantile Scrofula and Tuberculosis," *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences* October 1977, pp. 356-374.

Loo, Yueh-Ming, and Michael Gale Jr. "Fatal Immunity and the 1918 Virus." *Nature* 445 (2007): 18–19.

Mabey, D.C., A. Foster, and A.W. Solomon. "Trachoma." *Lancet* (July 2003): 362 (9379): 223–229.

Margolis, Todd P., and J.P. Whitcher. "Fusarium—A New Culprit in the Contact Lens Case." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 296 (2006): 985–987.

Marshall, S. "Scarlet Fever: the Disease in the UK." *The Pharmaceutical Journal* 277 (July 22, 2006): 115–116.

Martens, Pim, and Susanne C. Moser. "Health Impacts of Climate Change." *Science* 292 (2001): 1065-1066.

Maunula, Leena. "Norovirus Outbreaks from Drinking Water." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 11: 1716–1722 (2005).

McKinney, Maureen. "Travel Advisories: Wait 'Til You Hear What They Say about Us." *Daily Herald* (Arlington Heights, IL) March 21, 2005.

McMichael A., and R. Beaglehole. "The Changing Global Context of Public Health." *The Lancet* 356, 9228 (August 2000): 495-499.

McMichael, A.J., Rosale E. Woodruff, and Simon Hales. "Climate Change and Human Health: Present and Future Risks." *The Lancet* 367 (2006): 859-861.

McMinn, P.C. "An Overview of the Evolution of Enterovirus 71 and its Clinical and Public Health Significance." *FEMS Microbiology Reviews* 26, 1 (2002): 91–107.

McNeil Jr., Donald G. "Worrisome New Link: AIDS Drugs and Leprosy." *New York Times* October 24, 2006.

Meng, Tze-Chiang, et al. "Inhibition of *Giardia lamblia* Excystation by Antibodies against Cyst Walls and by Wheat Germ Agglutinin." *Infection and Immunity* 64 (1996): 2151-2157.

Meningococcal Disease and College Students." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Reports* 49 (June 30, 2000): 11–20.

Meslin, F.-X. "Global Aspects of Emerging and Potential Zoonoses: a WHO Perspective." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 3 (April-June 1997): 223–228. Also available online at: <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/vol3no2/meslin.htm>.

Miller, Laurie C. "Internationally Adopted Children–Immigration Status." Letter to the Editor. *Pediatrics* 103.5 (May 1999): 1078(1).

Mills, Christina E., James M. Robins, and March Lipsitch. "Transmissibility of 1918 Pandemic Influenza." *Science* 432 (2004): 904–906.

Mira, Marcelo, et al. "Susceptibility to Leprosy is Associated with *PARK2* and *PACRG*." *Nature* 427 (2004): 636-40.

Monot, Marc, et al. "On the Origin of Leprosy." *Science* 308 (2005): 1040–1042.

Monto, Arnold S. "Vaccines and Antiviral Drugs in Pandemic Preparedness." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 12 (January 2006): 55–61.

Moorhead, Andrew. "Trichinellosis in the United States, 1991–1996: Declining but not Gone." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 281 (1999): 1472.

Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report. "Guidelines for Prevention of Herpesvirus Simiae (B Virus) Infection in Monkey Handlers." October 23, 1987. <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/00015936.htm>.

Morgan, Thomas E. "Plague or Poetry? Thucydides on the Epidemic at Athens." *Transactions of the American Philological Association* 124 (1994), pp. 197–209.

Musher, Daniel M., et al. "Trends in Bacteremic Infection Due to *Streptococcus pyogenes* (Group A Streptococcus), 1986–1995." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 2 (1996): 54–56.

Normile, Dennis. "WHO Gives a Cautious Green Light to Smallpox Experiments." *Science* 306 (November 19, 2004): 1270–1271.

O'Brien, Sarah J. "Foodborne Zoonoses." *British Medical Journal* 331 (November 26, 2005): 1217–1218. Also available online at: <http://www.bmj.com/cgi/content/full/331/7527/1217>.

Osrin, David, et al. "Serious Bacterial Infections in Newborn Infants in Developing Countries." *Pediatric and Neonatal Infections* 17 (2004): 217-224.

Palacio, H., et al. "Norovirus Outbreak among Evacuees from Hurricane Katrina - Houston, Texas, September 2005." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly* 54: 1016–1019 (2005).

Palacios, Gustavo, et al. "Masstag Polymerase Chain Reaction for Differential Diagnosis of Viral Hemorrhagic Fevers." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 12 (2006): 692–695.

Parola, P., C.D. Paddock, and D. Raoult. "Tick-Borne Rickettsioses Around the World: Emerging Diseases Challenging Old Concepts." *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* 18 (October 2005): 719–756. Also available online at <http://cmr.asm.org/cgi/content/full/18/4/719>.

Pemberton M.N. et al. "Recurrent Kawasaki Disease." *British Dental Journal* 186 (1999): 6, 270–271.

Peplies, Jorg, Frank Oliver Glockner, and Rudolf Amann. "Optimization Strategies for DNA Microarray-Based Detection of Bacteria with 16S rRNA-Targeting Oligonucleotide Probes." *Applied and Environmental Microbiology* 69 (2003): 1397–1407.

Perrino, T., et al. "Main Partner's Resistance to Condoms and HIV Protection Among Disadvantaged, Minority Women." *Women & Health* 42, no. 3 (2005): 37–56.

Peters, C.J., and J.W. Leduc. "An Introduction to Ebola: The Virus and the Disease." *Journal of Infectious Diseases* Supp.1 (1999): 179-187.

Pittet, Didier, et al. "Effectiveness of a Hospital-Wide Programme to Improve Compliance with Hand Hygiene." *The Lancet* 356 (October 14, 2000): 1307–1312.

Pollack, Andrew. "Vaccines Are Good Business for Drug Makers." *The New York Times* October 29, 2004.

Porter, Mark. "Doctor Who Sparked the MMR Debate Faces Misconduct Charge." *The Evening Standard* June 12, 2006.

Potera, Carol. "In Disaster's Wake: Tsunami Lung." *Environmental Health Perspectives* 113 (2005): 11, 734.

Pramodh, Nathaniel. "Limiting the Spread of Communicable Diseases Caused by Human Population Movement." *Journal of Rural and Remote Environmental Health* (2003): 2(1), 23–32.

Price, Lance B. et al. "Fluoroquinolone-resistant *Campylobacter* Isolates from Conventional and Antibiotic-free Chicken Products." *Environmental Health Perspectives* 113 (2005): 557–561.

Pulliam, J.R., H.E. Field, and K.J. Olival. "Nipah Virus Strain Variation." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 11 (December 2005): 1978–1979.

Quasem, Himaya, and Heather Greenaway. "Nurseries Told to Clean Up Their Act; Exclusive the E Coli Crisis." *Sunday Mail* May 14, 2006. p.5.

Rados, Carol. "First Test Approved to Help Detect West Nile Virus." *FDA Consumer* 37 (September–October 2003).

Raja, N.S., M.Z. Ahmed, and N.N. Singh. "Melioidosis: An Emerging Infectious Disease." *Journal of Postgraduate Medicine* 51 (2005): 140–145. Also available online at: <http://www.jpgmonline.com/article.asp?issn=0022-3859;year=2005;volume=51;issue=2;spage=140; epage=145;aulast=Raja>.

Ramamoorthi, Nandhini, et al. "The Lyme Disease Agent Exploits a Tick Protein to Infect the Mammalian Host." *Nature* 436 (July 28, 2005): 573–577.

Raoult, Didier, and Véronique Roux. "The Body Louse as a Vector of Reemerging Human Diseases." *Clinical Infectious Diseases* 29 (1999): 888–911.

Read, Timothy R., et al. "Comparative Genome Sequencing for Discovery of Novel Polymorphisms in *Bacillus anthracis*." *Science.* 296 (2002): 2028–2033.

Reiner, David S., et al. "Identification and Localization of Cyst-Specific Antigens of *Giardia lamblia*." *Infection and Immunity.* 57 (1989): 963-968.

Rice, Amy L., et al. "Malnutrition as an Underlying Cause of Childhood Deaths Associated with Infectious Diseases in Developing Countries." *Bulletin of the World Health Organization* 78 (2000): 1207-1218.

Rice, L.B. "Emergence of Vancomycin-resistant Enterococci." *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, (March-April 2001): 7 (2) 183–87.

Rosenthal, E. "From China's Provinces, a Crafty Germ Spreads." *New York Times* April 27, 2003.

Rosovitz, M.J., and Stephen H. Leppla. "Virus Deals Anthrax a Killer Blow." *Nature* 418 (2002): 825–826.

Ross, John J., and Douglas N. Keeling. "Cutaneous Blastomycosis in New Brunswick: Case Report." *Canadian Medical Association Journal* 163 (November 14, 2000): 1303–1305.

Ross, Ronald. "This Day Relenting God." in *Memoirs with a Full Account of the Great Malaria Problem and Its Solution* London: John Murray, 1923.

Russell, Josiah C. "That Earlier Plague." *Demography* 5, 1 (1968), 174–184.

Salim, M.A., et al. "Gender Differences in Tuberculosis: A Prevalence Survey Done in Bangladesh." *The International Journal of Tuberculosis and Lung Disease* 8 (August 2004): 952–957.

Sawitri, Adisti Sukma. "Officials Blame Poor Hygiene on Dengue Rise." *Jakarta Post* (January 26, 2007).

Schwebke, J.R., and D. Burgess. “Trichomoniasis Is a Common Infection Whose Prevention Has Not Been a Priority.” *Clinical Microbiology Review* 17 (2004): 794–803.

Sempere J.M., V. Soriano, and J.M. Benito. “T Regulatory Cells and HIV Infection.” *AIDS Rev.* (Jan-March 2007): 9 (1): 54–60.

Seppa, N. “Hepatitis E Vaccine Passes Critical Test.” *Science News* 171 (March 3, 2007): 9, 131.

Shapin, Steven. “SICK CITY.” *The New Yorker* Nov 6, 2006.

Shea, Katherine M. “Antibiotic Resistance: What is the Impact of Agricultural Uses of Antibiotics on Children’s Health?” *Pediatrics.* 112 (2003): 253-258.

Sheldon, Tony. “The Virus Hunter.” *BMJ* 327 (October 25, 2003): 950.

Silbergeld, Ellen K., and Polly Walker. “What If Cipro Stopped Working?” *New York Times* (November 3, 2001). Available online at <http://query.nytimes.com/gst/fullpage.html?sec=health&res=9C0DEED91F30F930A35752C1A9679C8B63>.

Simon, Harvey B. “Old Bugs Learn Some New Tricks; As More Drugs Are Created to Fight Infection, Bacteria Mutate and Strike in Another Form.” *Newsweek* (Dec 11, 2006): 74.

Smith, David L., et al. “Agricultural Antibiotics and Human Health.” *PloS Medicine* 2 (2005): 731-735.

Smith, J.P. “Healthy Bodies and Thick Wallets: The Dual Relationship between Health and Economic Status.” *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 13(2), 1999: 145-66.

Smith, Kerri. “Concern as Revived 1918 Flu Virus Kills Monkeys.” *Nature* 445 (2007): 237.

Sorvillo, Frank, et al. “*Baylisascaris procyonis*: An Emerging Helminthic Zoonosis.” *Emerging Infectious Diseases* (April 2002), 8, 4: 355–359.

Splete, Heidi. “Raspberries Implicated in Norovirus Outbreaks.” *Family Practice News* (2006) 36: 23-24.

Squires, Sally. “Must You Be Such a Drip?” *Washington Post* (January 30, 2007).

Sréter, Tamás et al. “Echinococcus Multilocularis: An Emerging Pathogen in Hungary and Central Eastern Europe?” *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 9 (2003): 384–386.

Steere, Allen C. “Lyme Disease.” *New England Journal of Medicine* 345 (2001): 115–123.

Steinbrook R. “Global Health: The AIDS Epidemic in 2004.” *New England Journal of Medicine* 2004; 351: 115–117, Jul 8, 2004.

Steinbrook R. “HIV in India—A Complex Epidemic.” *New England Journal of Medicine* 2007; 356: 1089–1093, Mar 15, 2007.

Steinbrook R. “HIV in India—The Challenges Ahead.” *New England Journal of Medicine* 2007; 356: 1197–1201, Mar 22, 2007.

Stevens, Dennis L. “Streptococcal Toxic-Shock Syndrome: Spectrum of Disease, Pathogenesis, and New Concepts in Treatment.” *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 1 (1995): 69–76.

Stone L., R. Olinky, and A. Huppert. “Seasonal Dynamics of Recurrent Epidemics.” *Nature* 2007 Mar 29; 446 (7135): 533–6.

Strausbaugh L.J., S.R. Sukumar, and C.L. Joseph. “Infectious Disease Outbreaks in Nursing Homes: An Unappreciated Hazard for Frail Elderly Persons.” *Clinical Infectious Diseases* 36 (2003): 870–876.

Struck, Doug. “Climate Change Drives Disease to New Territory: Viruses Moving North to Areas Unprepared for Them, Experts Say.” *Washington Post* (May 5, 2006).

Thorne, C., and M.L. Newell. “Safety of Agents Used to Prevent Mother-to-Child Transmission of HIV: Is There Any Cause for Concern?” *Drug Safety* 30, no. 3 (2007): 203–213.

Toole, M.J., S. Galson, and W. Brady. “Refugees, Forced Displacement, and War: Are War and Public Health Compatible?” *The Lancet* 341, 8854 (May 8, 1993): 1193–1196.

Tumpey, Terrence M., et al. “Characterization of the Reconstructed 1918 Spanish Influenza Pandemic Virus.” *Science* 310 (2005): 77–80.

Turner, Ronald B., et al. “An Evaluation of *Echinacea augustifolia* in Experimental Rhinovirus Infections.” *New England Journal of Medicine* 353 (2005): 341–348.

Vacomo, V., et al. “Natural History of *Bartonella* Infections (An Exception to Koch’s Postulate).” *Clinical and Diagnostic Laboratory Immunology* 9 (2002): 8–18.

Van Lieshout, M., et al. “Climate Change and Malaria: Analysis of the SRES Climate and Socio-Economic Scenarios.” *Global Environmental Change* 14 (2004): 87-99.

Verbrugge, L.M., et al. “Prospective Study of Swimmer’s Itch Incidence and Severity.” *Journal of Parasitology* (2004) 90: 697–704.

Vincent, Jean-Louis. “Nosocomial Infections in Adult Intensive-care Units.” *The Lancet* 361 (June 14, 2003): 2068–2077.

Vitek, C.R., and M. Wharton. “Diphtheria in the Fomer Soviet Union: Reemergence of a

Pandemic Disease." *Emerging Infectious Diseases* 4 (October-December 1998). This article is available online <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/vol4no4/vitek.htm>

Vogel, Gretchen. "Searching for Living Relics of the Cell's Early Days." *Science* 277 (1997): 1604.

Wade, Nicholas. "What a Story Lice Can Tell." *New York Times* (October 5, 2004).

Wald, A., and L. Corey. "How Does Herpes Simplex Virus Type 2 Influence Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection and Pathogenesis?" *The Journal of Infectious Diseases* 187 (2003): 1519–1512.

Wang, J., et al. "Platensimycin Is a Selective FabF Inhibitor with Potent Antibiotic Properties." *Nature* (2006) 441: 358–363.

Weber, J., et al. "The Development of Vaginal Microbicides for the Prevention of HIV Transmission." *Public Library of Science Medicine* 2 (May 2005): e142.

Webster, R.G. and E.J. Walker. "The World is Teetering on the Edge of a Pandemic that Could Kill a Large Fraction of the Human Population." *American Scientist* 91 (2003): 122.

Weinstein, A. "Topical Treatment of Common Superficial Tinea Infections." *American Family Physician* 65 (May 15, 2002): 2095–2102.

Weinstock H., et al. "Sexually Transmitted Diseases Among American Youth: Incidence and Prevalence Estimates, 2000." *Perspectives on Sexual and Reproductive Health* 2004; 36 (1): 6–10.

Wheeler, Susan. "Henry IV of France Touching for Scrofula by Pierre Firens." *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences* 58 (2003), pp. 79-81.

Wickens, Hayley, and Paul Wade. "Understanding Antibiotic Resistance." *The Pharmaceutical Journal* 274 (2005): 501–504.

Willis, Judith Levine. "Mono: Tough for Teens and Twenty-Somethings." *FDA Consumer* (May, June 1998): 32,3.

Wilson-Clark, Samantha D., S. Squires, and S. Deeksi "Bacterial Meningitis among Cochlear Implant Recipients—Canada 2002." *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly* 55: S20-S25 (2006).

Witkowski, Joseph A., and Lawrence Charles Parish. "Pediculosis and Resistance: The Perennial Problem." *Clinics in Dermatology* 20 (2002): 87–92.

Witt, Kristine L., et al. "Elevated Frequencies of Micronucleated Erythrocytes in Infants Exposed to Zidovudine in Utero and Postpartum to Prevent Mother-to-Child Transmission of HIV." *Environmental and Molecular Mutagenesis* 48 (April-May 2007): 322–329.

Woodall, Jack. "Why Mosquitoes Trump Birds." *The Scientist* (January 2006).

World Health Organization (WHO). "Economic Costs Of Malaria Are Many Times Higher Than Previously Estimated." Press Release. April 25, 2000.

World Health Organization (WHO), Epidemic and Pandemic Alert and Response (EPR). "Avian Influenza—Necessary Precautions to Prevent Human Infection of H5N1, Need for Virus Sharing." *Disease Outbreak News* July 16, 2004.

World Health Organization (WHO). "Rotavirus Vaccines." *Weekly Epidemiological Record* 81 (January 6, 2006): 8 Also available online at: <http://www.who.int/wer/2006/wer8101.pdf>.

Wormser, Gary P. "Early Lyme Disease." *New England Journal of Medicine* 354 (2006): 2794–2800.

The Writing Committee of the World Health Organization Consultation on Human Influenza A/H5. "Avian Influenza A (H5N1) Infection in Humans." *New England Journal of Medicine* 353 (September 29, 2005): 1374–1385.

Yu, Ignatius T.S. et al. "Temporal-spatial Analysis of Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome among Hospital Inpatients." *Clinical Infectious Diseases* 40 (2005): 1237–1243.

Zezima, Katie. "School is Shut After Outbreak of Encephalitis Kills a Pupil." *New York Times* (January 4, 2007): A14(L)

Zoler, Mitchel L. "Long-term, Acute Care Hospitals Breed Antibiotic Resistance." *Internal Medicine News* 37 (September 15, 2004): 51–52.

WEB SITES

AIDSinfo. <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov> (accessed April 9, 2007).

American Academy of Dermatology. "Researchers Urge Soldiers and Civilians Returning from Iraq to Be Aware of 'Baghdad Boil.'" June 30, 2005. <http://www.aad.org/aad/Newsroom/Researchers+Urge+Soldiers+and+civilians+returning.htm> (accessed February 26, 2007).

American Cancer Society. "Frequently Asked Questions About Human Papilloma Virus (HPV) Vaccines." <http://www.cancer.org/docroot/CRI/content/CRI_2_6x_FAQ_HPV_Vaccines.asp> (accessed February 25, 2007).

American Cancer Society. "Infectious Agents and Cancer." October 17, 2006. <http://www.cancer.org/docroot/PED/content/PED_1_3X_Infectious_Agents_and_Cancer.asp?sitearea=PED> (accessed February 19, 2007).

American Lung Association. “Pneumonia Fact Sheet.” April 2006. <http://www.lungusa.org/site/apps/nl/content3.asp?c=dvLUK9O0E&b=2060321&content_id={08C669B0-E845-4C9C-8B1E-285348BC83BD}&notoc=1> (accessed March 25, 2007).

American Lyme Disease Foundation. “Home Page.” September 22, 2006. <http://www.aldf.com/> (accessed February 7, 2007).

American Museum of Natural History. “Some Facts about Psittacosis.” 2003. <http://research.amnh.org/users/nyneve/psittacosis.html#hist> (accessed Mar. 7, 2007).

American Red Cross. “Blood Donation Eligibility Guidelines.” March 21, 2005. <http://www.redcross.org/services/biomed/0,1082,0_557_,00.html> (accessed January 16, 2007).

American Society for Microbiology. “Don’t Get Caught Dirty Handed.” <http://www.washup.org/> (accessed June 10, 2007).

American Society for Microbiology. “Gross...You Didn’t Wash Your Hands?” <http://www.microbeworld.org/know/wash.aspx> (accessed June 10, 2007).

Armed Forces Institute of Pathology. “Buruli Ulcer.” February 4, 2004. <http://www.afip.org/Departments/infectious/bu/> (accessed April 24, 2007).

Australian Government. “Cryptosporidiosis.” April 2006 <http://www.healthinsite.gov.au/topics/Cryptosporidiosis> (accessed Jan. 29, 2007).

Avert: Averting HIV and AIDS. “Providing Drug Treatment for Millions.” April 19, 2007. <http://www.avert.org/drugtreatment.htm> (accessed May 26, 2007).

Baylor College of Medicine. “Potential Bioterrorism Agents.” July 5, 2006. <http://www.bcm.edu/molvir/eidbt/eidbt-mvm-pbt.htm> (accessed March 12, 2007).

Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation. “Malaria Vaccine Initiative: Solving the Malaria Vaccine Puzzle.” September 2005.<http://www.gatesfoundation.org/StoryGallery/GlobalHealth/SGGHMalariaMVI-011019.htm> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation. <http://www. gatesfoundation.org/default.htm> (accessed May 31, 2007).

The BSE Inquiry Report. “Home Page.” <http://www.bseinquiry.gov.uk/index.htm> (accessed May 15, 2007).

Cambridge University. “Fasciola hepatica: The Liver Fluke.” October 5, 1998 <http://www.path.cam.ac.uk/~schisto/OtherFlukes/Fasciola.html#minorFasc> (accessed February 23, 2007).

Cambridge University. “Helminth Infections of Man.” October 5, 1998 <http://www.path.cam.ac.uk/~schisto/General_Parasitology/Hm.helminths.html> (accessed February 23, 2007).

Cambridge University. “Opisthorchis sinensis: The Chinese Liver Fluke.” Oct. 5, 1998 <http://www.path.cam.ac.uk/~schisto/OtherFlukes/Opisthorchis.egg.html> (accessed February 23, 2007).

Campaign for Access to Essential Medecines. “Companies Not Selling New AIDS Drugs in Africa.” <http://www.accessmed-msf.org/index.asp> (accessed May 15, 2007).

Canadian Medical Association. “Blastomycosis.” November 4, 2000. <http://www.cmaj.ca/cgi/content/full/163/10/1231> (accessed March 11, 2007).

Cancer Research UK. “Cervical Cancer. International Statistics.” <http://info.cancerresearchuk.org/cancerstats/types/cervix/international/> (accessed February 25, 2007).

CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention). “CDCSite Index A-Z.” <http://www.cdc.gov/flu/avian/> (accessed May 21, 2007).

Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition, Federal Food and Drug Administration. “Anisakis simplex and related worms.” <http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~mow/chap25.html> (accessed March 1, 2007).

Commoncold, Inc. “The Common Cold.” 2005. <http://www.commoncold.org/> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation (CSIRO). “Fighting Nipah Virus.” May 23, 2006 <http://www.csiro.au/science/ps1so.html> (accessed March 28, 2007).

Cutler, Sally J., Veterinary Laboratories Agency (Surrey, United Kingdom), U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Possibilities for Relapsing Fever Reemergence.” March 2006 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/vol12no03/ 05-0899.htm> (accessed April 27, 2007).

Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs. “BSE: Frequently Asked Questions.” October 3, 2006 <http://www.defra.gov.uk/animalh/bse/faq.html> (accessed January 26, 2007).

Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. “Parasitic Diseases.” February 16, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/index.htm> (accessed April 30, 2007).

Department of Health, New York State. “Sporotrichosis.” June 2004 <http://www.health.state.ny.

us/diseases/communicable/sporotrichosis/fact_sheet.htm> (accessed Mar. 12, 2007).

Department of Health, Western Australia. "Cryptosporidiosis: Environmental Health Guide." 2006 <http://www.health.wa.gov.au/envirohealth/water/docs/Cryptospordiosis_EH_Guide.pdf> (accessed Jan. 29, 2007).

Deployment Health Clinical Center. "Leishmaniasis." June 21, 2004 <http://www.pdhealth.mil/leish.asp> (accessed February 26, 2007).

Directors of Health Promotion and Education (DHPE). "Chagas Disease." <http://www.dhpe.org/infect/Chagas.html> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Directors of Health Promotion and Education (DHPE). "Lymphatic Filariasis." 2005 <http://www.dhpe.org/infect/Lymphfil.html> (accessed March 5, 2007).

Division of Parasitic Diseases, U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). "Hookworm Infection." <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dpd/parasites/hookworm/factsht_hookworm.htm> (accessed March 14, 2007).

Division of Parasitic Diseases, U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Taeniasis." November 29, 2006 <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/Default.htm> (accessed March 27, 2007).

Epidemiology and Disease Control Program (EDCP). "Cyclosporiasis Fact Sheet." <http://edcp.org/factsheets/cyclospor.html> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Food Standards Agency. "BSE." <http://www.food.gov.uk/bse> (accessed January 26, 2007).

Georgia State University. "National B Virus Resource Center." <http://www2.gsu.edu/~wwwvir/> (accessed April 17, 2007).

GIDEON. "GIDEON Content- Outbreaks." <http://www.gideononline.com/content/outbreaks. htm> (accessed May 1, 2007).

Global Polio Eradication Initiative (GPEI). "Home website of GPEI." <http://www.polioeradication.org/> (accessed May 7, 2007).

Harvard Medical School Center for Health and the Global Environment. "Climate Change Futures: Health, Ecological and Economic Dimensions." 2005 <http://chge.med.harvard.edu> (accessed May 26, 2007).

Health Protection Agency. "Clostridium Difficile." <http://www.hpa.org.uk/infections/topics_az/clostridium_difficile/default.htm> (accessed January 30, 2007).

Health Protection Agency. "Diphtheria." February 2, 2006. <http://www.hpa.org.uk/infections/topics_az/diphtheria/gen_info.htm> (accessed February 16, 2007).

Health Protection Agency. "Impetigo: Factsheet for Schools." <http://www.hpa.org.uk/infections/topics_az/wfhfactsheets/WFHImpetigo.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Helicobacter Foundation. "*H. pylori*." <http://www.helico.com/h_general.html> (accessed May 30, 2007).

Illinois Department of Public Health. "Monkeypox." <http://www.idph.state.il.us/health/infect/monkeypox.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Illinois Department of Public Health. "Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever." <http://www. idph.state.il.us/public/hb/hbrmsf.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Infectious Diseases Society of America. "Tularemia: Current, Comprehensive Information on Pathogenesis, Microbiology, Epidemiology, Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prophylaxis." March 5, 2007. <http://www.cidrap.umn.edu/idsa/bt/tularemia/biofacts/tularemiafactsheet.html#_Agent> (accessed April 5, 2007).

INRUD. "International Network for the Rational Use of Drugs." <http://www.inrud.org> (accessed May 26, 2007).

International Leprosy Association. "Global Project on the History of Leprosy." October 10, 2003 <http://www.leprosyhistory.org/english/englishhome.htm> (accessed February 6, 2007).

International Panel on Climate Change (United Nations). "Climate Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability." 2007 <http://www.ipcc.ch/SPM13apr07.pdf> (accessed May 26, 2007).

International Panel on Climate Change (United Nations). "Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis." 2007 <http://ipcc-wg1.ucar.edu/wg1/docs/WG1AR4_SPM_PlenaryApproved.pdf> (accessed May 26, 2007).

International Society for Infectious Diseases. "Angiostrongylus Meningitis—China (04)." Oct. 1, 2006 <http://www.promedmail.org/pls/promed/f?p=2400:1202:1604187183216986886::NO::F2400_P1202_CHECK_DISPLAY,F2400_P1202_PUB_MAIL_ID:X,34650> (accessed Jan. 25, 2007).

International Society of Infectious Diseases. "ProMED." <http://www.promedmail.org> (accessed June 5, 2007).

International Society for Infectious Diseases. "ProMed Mail: Mitten Crab—USA and Canada." August 1, 1999. <http://www.promedmail.org/pls/promed/f?p=2400:1000> (accessed May 26, 2007).

International Trachoma Initiative. "Trachoma is a hidden disease." 2005 <http http://www.trachoma.org/trachoma.php> (accessed April 2, 2007).

Internet Modern History Sourcebook. "Oliver Wendell Holmes: Contagiousness of Puerperal Fever, 1843." August 1998 <http://www.fordham.edu/halsall/mod/1843holmes-fever.html> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Journal of Young Investigators. "Smallpox: Historical Review of a Potential Bioterrorist Tool." September 2002. <http://www.jyi.org/volumes/volume6/issue3/features/bourzac.html> (accessed February 21, 2007).

Kaiser Family Foundation. "The Global HIV-AIDS Timeline." <http://www.kff.org/hivaids/timeline/hivtimeline.cfm> (accessed February 19, 2007).

Kawasaki Disease Foundation. "Kawasaki Disease Foundation: Caring for Precious Hearts." <http://www.kdfoundation.org/> (accessed February 28, 2007).

KidsHealth for Parents. "Infections: Pinworm." April 2005. <http://www.kidshealth.org/parent/infections/parasitic/pinworm.html> (accessed March 16, 2007).

KidsHealth for Parents. "Infections: Swimmer's Ear." March 2006 <http://www.kidshealth.org/parent/infections/ear/swimmer_ear.html> (accessed March 27, 2007).

Ledford, Heidi. "Jetsetters are Key Clues to Epidemics." *nature.com* January 29, 2007 <http://www.nature.com/news/2007/070129/full/070129-5.html> (accessed May 18, 2007).

Médecins Sans Frontièrs/Doctors Without Borders. "About Us." <http://www.doctorswithoutborders.org/aboutus/index.cfm> (accessed May 15, 2007).

Médicins Sans Frontières. "Campaign for Access to Essential Medicines." <http://www.accessmedmsf.org> (accessed May 26, 2007).

Marshall, Barry J. Nobelprize.org. "Nobel Lecture: Helicobacter Connections." 1995. <http://nobelprize. org/nobel_prizes/medicine/laureates/2005/marshall-lecture.html/b> (accessed June 3, 2007).

Maryland Department of Health and Mental Hygiene. "Kawasaki Disease Fact Sheet." May 2002 <http://edcp.org/factsheets/kawasaki.html> (accessed February 28, 2007).

MayoClinic.com. "Pneumonia." May 12, 2005. <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/pneumo nia/DS00135> (accessed March 25, 2007).

MayoClinic.com. "Ringworm of the Body." October 4, 2006. <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/ringworm/DS00489/DSECTION=1> (accessed March 22, 2007).

MayoClinic.com. "Strep throat." November 3, 2006. <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/strepthroat/DS00260> (accessed May 1, 2007).

MayoClinic.com. "Tetanus." December 29, 2006. <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/tetanus/DS00227/DSECTION=7> (accessed March 27, 2007).

McCulloch, J. Huston, and James R. Meginniss. Ohio State University. "A Statistical Model of Smallpox Vaccine Dilution." May 17, 2002. <http://www. econ.ohio-state.edu/jhm/smallpox.htm> (accessed June 14, 2007).

McKnight, Jake.Médicins Sans Frontières. "Isaac." June 13, 2007. <http://www.uk2.msf.org/UKNews/Letters/jakemcknightisaac.htm> (accessed June 11, 2007).

The Measles Initiative. "Home Page." March 16, 2007. <http://www.measlesinitiative.org/index3. asp> (accessed March 20, 2007).

Meat and Livestock Commission. "Beef Information." October 2005 <http://www.meatmatters.com/sections/britishmeat/beef_information.php> (accessed January 26, 2007).

Meat Promotion Wales. "Liver Fluke." <http://www.hybucigcymru.org.uk/content.php?nID=206&lID=1> (accessed February 23, 2007).

Medline Plus. "Encephalitis." <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/encephalitis.html> (accessed March 20, 2007).

Medline Plus. "Impetigo." February 26, 2007 <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/0008 60.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Medline Plus. "Urinary Tract Infection." <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000521.htm> (accessed March 20, 2007).

MedlinePlus. "Ascariasis." October 9, 2006. <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000628.htm> (accessed May 21, 2007).

MedlinePlus. "Ringworm." June 16, 2005 <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001439.htm> (accessed March 28, 2007).

The Meningitis Trust. "Viral Meningitis: The Facts." <http://www.meningitis-trust.org/disease_info/Viral-Meningitis.pdf> (accessed May 3, 2007).

Molecular Expressions(TM). "Optical Microscopy Primer." March 6, 2005 <http://micro. magnet.fsu.edu/primer/index.html> (accessed May 8, 2007).

National Center for Biotechnology Information. "Diseases of the Immune System." <http://www.ncbi.nlm.

nih.gov/disease/Immune.html> (accessed June 13, 2007).

National Center for Biotechnology Information. "Microbiologic Examination." in *Medical Microbiology*, 4th ed., Samuel Baron, ed. <http://www .ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/bv.fcgi?rid=mmed.section.5451> (accessed April 2, 2007).

National Center for Infectious Diseases. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Office of Minority and Women's Health." February 5, 2004 <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/omwh/infectious.htm> (accessed March 13, 2007).

National Eye Institute. "Histoplasmosis." December 2006 <http://www.nei.nih.gov/health/histoplasmosis/index.asp> (accessed February 23, 2007).

National Food Service Management Institute. "Wash Your Hands." <http://www.nfsmi.org/Information/ handsindex.html>. (accessed June 10, 2007).

National Guideline Clearinghouse. "Hemorrhagic Fever Viruses as Biological Weapons: Medical and Public Health Management." March 5, 2007 <http://www.guideline.gov/summary/summary.aspx?ss=15&doc_id=3224&nbr=2450> (accessed March 11, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease (NIAID). "Rotavirus Vaccine: Preventing Severe Diarrheal Disease in Infants." May 25, 1999 <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/Publications/discovery/rotav.htm> (accessed March 12, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "HIV/AIDS: Koch's Postulates Fulfilled." September 1995 <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/Publications/hivaids/12.htm> (accessed February 1, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Understanding the Immune System." <http://health.nih.gov/viewPublication.asp?disease_id=63&publication_id=2841&pdf=yes> (accessed June 13, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Emerging Infectious Diseases." <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/dmid/eid/> (accessed May 25, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Gonorrhea." August 2006 <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/factsheets/stdgon.htm> (accessed February 23, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Group A Streptococcal Infections." November 2005. <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/factsheets/strep.htm> (accessed February 14, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. "Parasitic Roundworm Diseases." March 8, 2005 <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/factsheets/roundwor.htm> (accessed Mar 9, 2007).

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. <http://www3.niaid.nih.gov/> (accessed February 9, 2007).

National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders. "Otitis Media (Ear Infection)." July 2002. <http://www.nidcd. nih.gov/health/hearing/otitism.asp> (accessed April 10, 2007).

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. "Kuru Information Page." February 14, 2007. <http:// www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/kuru/kuru.htm> (accessed March 19, 2007).

National Institutes of Health. "List of Cancer-Causing Agents Grows." January 31, 2005 <http://www.nih.gov/news/pr/jan2005/niehs-31.htm> (accessed February 19, 2007).

National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health. "Trachoma." September 22, 2006 <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001486.htm> (accessed April 2, 2007).

National Necrotizing Fasciitis Foundation. "Home Page." January 28, 2007 <http://www.nnff.org/> (accessed February 14, 2007).

The National Pediculosis Association. "Welcome to Headlice.org." 2007 <http://www. headlice.org/> (accessed January 22, 2007).

National Vaccine Program Office, United States Department of Health and Human Services. "Pandemics and Pandemic Scares in the 20th Century." <http://www.hhs.gov/nvpo/pandemics/flu3.htm#10> (accessed January 23, 2007).

Network for Good. "Doctors Without Borders USA." <http://partners.guidestar.org/controller/searchResults.gs?action_gsReport=1&partner=networkforgood&ein=13-3433452> (accessed May 20, 2007).

New York State Department of Health. "Babesiosis." June 2004 <http://www.health.state.ny.us/diseases /communicable/babesiosis/fact_sheet.htm> (accessed February 1, 2007).

New York State Department of Health. "Cryptosporidiosis." June 2004 <http://www.health.state.ny.us/diseases/communicable/cryptosporidiosis/fact_sheet.htm> (accessed Jan. 29, 2007).

New York State Department of Health. "Shigellosis." June 2004 <http://www.health.state.ny.us/diseases/communicable/shigellosis/fact_sheet.htm> (accessed March 12, 2007).

New York State Department of Health. "Vancomycin Resistant Enterococcus (VRE)." <http://www.

health.state.ny.us/diseases/communicablevancomycin_resistant_enterococcus/fact_sheet.htm> (accessed May 21, 2007).

NHS Direct. "Sexually Transmitted Infections." <http://www.nhsdirect.nhs.uk/articles/> (accessed May 16, 2007).

NIH Vaccine Research Center. "Become an HIV Vaccine Study Volunteer." <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/vrc/clintrials/clin_steps.htm%20%20%20> (accessed April 9, 2007).

Nobelprize.org, Nobel Foundation. "The Nobel Peace Price 1965." <http://nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/peace/laureates/1965/> (accessed June 17, 2007).

Nobelprize.org, Nobel Foundation. "The Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine 2005." Press Release, October 3, 2005 <http://nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/medicine/laureat> (accessed June 7, 2007).

Nobelprize.org, Nobel Foundation. "The Nobel Peace Prize 1999: Médecins Sans Frontières." <http://nobelprize.org/peace/laureates/1999/index.html> (accessed May 20, 2007).

NSW Health Department. "Psittacosis: Questions and Answers." 2002 <http://www.health.nsw.gov.au/public-health/pdf/PsittacosisQA.pdf> (accessed March 7, 2007).

Office of Laboratory Security, Public Health Agency of Canada. "Ascaris lumbricoides." January 23, 2001 <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/msds-ftss/msds9e.html> (accessed May 21, 2007).

Pan American Health Organization. "Chagas Disease (American Trypanosomiasis)." <http://www.paho.org/english/ad/dpc/cd/chagas.htm> (accessed January 31, 2007).

Pan American Health Organization. "The Common Cold." <http://www.paho.org/English/AD/DPC/CD/AIEPI-1-3.9.pdf> (accessed January 31, 2007).

PLoS Medicine, Public Library of Science. "Rapid-Impact Interventions: How a Policy of Integrated Control for Africa's Neglected Tropical Diseases Could Benefit the Poor." October 11, 2005 <http://medicine.plosjour nals.org/perlserv/?request=get document &doi=10.1371/journal.pmed.0020336#JOURNAL-PMED-0020336-T001> (accessed May 21, 2007).

ProMED Mail, International Society for Infectious Diseases. "Anisakiasis—Israel: suspected." <http:// www.promedmail.org/pls/promed/f?p=2400:1202:16245428003054921509::NO::F2400_P1202_CHECK_DISPLAY,F2400_P1202_PUB_MAIL_ID:X,23022> (accessed March 1, 2007).

ProMED Mail. "Food-borne Parasitic Infections Increase in China." May 18, 2005 <http://www.promedmail.org/pls/promed/f?p=2400:1202:997653105689672184::NO::F2400_P1202_CHECK_DISPLAY,F2400_P1202_PUB_MAIL_ID:X,28969> (accessed February 23, 2007).

Public Health Agency of Canada. "Material Safety Data Sheet—Infectious Substances." April 23, 2001 <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/msds-ftss/msds172e.html> (accessed February 8, 2007).

Rotavirus Vaccine Program (RVP). "About RVP." 2007 <http://www.rotavirusvaccine.org/about.htm> (accessed March 12, 2007).

Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists (United Kingdom). "Prevention of Early Onset Neonatal Group B Streptococcal Disease." November 2003 <http://www.rcog.org.uk/index.asp? PageID=520> (accessed February 2, 2007).

San Diego Natural History Museum. "Zoonoses: Animal-borne Diseases." <http://www.sdnhm.org/fieldguide/zoonoses/index.html> (accessed February 27, 2007).

SkinCareGuide Network. "Herpes Guide—from Cold Sores to Genital Herpes." Feb 21, 2007 <http://www.herpesguide.ca> (accessed Feb 22, 2007).

Southern Illinois University. "Mycotic Infections." <http://www.cehs.siu.edu/fix/medmicro/mycotic.htm> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Stanford University. "Hepatitis D virus." March 2004 <http://www.stanford.edu/group/virus/delta/ 2004hammon/Deltavirus.htm> (accessed March 5, 2007).

Stanford University. "History [of Babesiosis]." May 24, 2006 <http://www.stanford.edu/class/humbio103/ParaSites2006/Babesiosis/history.html> (accessed February 1, 2007).

Stanford University. "Lassa Fever Virus." 2005 <http://www.stanford.edu/group/virus/arena /2005/LassaFeverVirus.htm> (accessed February 22, 2007).

Stanford University. "Monkeypox." Winter 2000 <http://www.stanford.edu/group/virus/pox/2000/monkeypox_virus.html> (accessed March 6, 2007).

Stanford University. "The Parasite: Balantidium coli. The Disease: Balantidiasis." May 23, 2003 <http://www.stanford.edu/class/humbio103/ParaSites2003/Balantidium dium_coli _ParaSite.htm> (accessed February 2, 2007).

Todar's Online Textbook of Bacteriology. "Diphtheria." <http://textbookofbacteriology.net/diphtheria.html> (accessed February 16, 2007).

The Toxic Shock Information Service. “Toxic Shock Syndrome: The Facts.” <http://www.toxicshock.com> (accessed May 2, 2007).

Tropical Medicine Central Resource. “Shigellosis.” <http://tmcr.usuhs.mil/tmcr/chapter19/intro.htm> (accessed).

U.K. Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease Surveillance Unit. “National Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease Surveillance Unit.” February 5, 2007 <http://www.cjd.ed.ac.uk> (accessed February 21, 2007).

U.S. Army Center for Health Promotion and Disease Prevention. “Medical Threats Briefing Homepage.” <http://usachppm.apgea.army.mil/HIOMTB> (accessed June 1, 2007).

U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). “Home Website of the CDC.” May 4, 2007 <http://www.cdc.gov/> (accessed May 4, 2007).

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. “FDA Licenses Chickenpox Vaccine.” March 17, 2005 <http://www.fda.gov/bbs/topics/NEWS/NEW00509.html> (accessed March 8, 2007).

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. “Medical Privacy—National Standards to Protect the Privacy of Personal Health Information.” <http://www.hhs.gov/ocr/hipaa/> (accessed June 8, 2007).

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. “Pandemic Flu.gov.” April 26, 2007 <http://www.pandemicflu.gov/index.html> (accessed April 28, 2007).

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. “Shingles: An Unwelcome Encore.” June 2005. <http://www.fda.gov/FDAC/features/2001/301_pox.html> (accessed March 7, 2007).

U.S. Department of Labor Occupational Safety & Health Administration. “Bloodborne Pathogens and Needlestick Prevention OSHA Standards.” <http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/bloodbornepathogens.standards.html> (accessed February 8, 2007).

U.S. Department of State. “Parties and Signatories of the Biological Weapons Convention” <http://www.state.gov/t/ac/bw/fs/2002/8026.htm> (May 25, 2007)

U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). “Commonly Asked Questions about BSE in Products Regulated by FDA’s Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition (CFSAN).” September 14, 2005 <http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~comm/bsefaq.html> (accessed January 26, 2007).

U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). “Clostridium botulinum.” <http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~mow/chap2. html> (accessed March 1, 2007).

UCLA. Department of Epidemiology. School of Public Health. “John Snow.” <http://www.ph.ucla.edu/epi/snow.html> (accessed March 30, 2007).

UNICEF. “Home website of UNICEF.” <http://www.unicef.org/> (accessed June 17, 2007).

UNICEF. “A Promise to Children.” <http://www.unicef.org/wsc/> (accessed June 17, 2007).

United Nations Cyber School Bus. “Declaration of the Rights of the Child (1959).” <http://www.un.org/cyberschoolbus/humanrights/resources/child.asp> (accessed June 17, 2007).

United Nations Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC). “Home website of ECOSOC.” <http://www.un.org/ecosoc/> (accessed June 17, 2007).

United Nations. “Millennium Development Goals Report 2006.” Sections 2.10–11 (Child Mortality from Infectious Disease), Sections 2.14–15 (Malaria and AIDS Goals) <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/mdg/Resources/Static/Products/Prog ress2006/MDGReport2006.pdf> (accessed March 11, 2007).

United Nations. “Progress towards the Millennium Development Goals, 1990–2005.” <http://mdgs.un.org/unsd/mdg/Host.aspx?Content=Products/Progress2005.htm> (accessed March 11, 2007).

United Nations. “Secretary General’s Report on the Work of the Organization.” <http://mdgs.un.org/unsd/mdg/Resources/Static/Products/SGReports/61_1/a_61_1_e.pdf> (accessed March 11, 2007).

United Nations. “UN Development Group National Monitoring Reports.” <http://www.undg.org/index.cfm?P=87> (accessed March 11, 2007).

United States General Accounting Office. “Infectious Disease Outbreaks.” April 9, 2003 <http://www.gao.gov/new.items/d03654t.pdf> (accessed May 12, 2007).

University of Alabama. “History of Monkeypox.” May 25, 2005 <http://www.bioterrorism. uab.edu/EI/monkeypox/history.html> (accessed March 6, 2007).

University of Arizona: The Biology Project. “Immunology and HIV. Immune System’s Response to HIV.” <http://www.biology.arizona.edu/immunology/tutorials/AIDS> (accessed June 8, 2007).

University of California, Los Angeles. School of Public Health. Department of Epidemiology. “John Snow.” <http://www.ph.ucla.edu/epi/snow. html> (accessed February 13, 2007).

University of Virginia Health System. “Yellow Fever and the Walter Reed Commission.” <http://www.healthsystem.virginia.edu/internet/library/historical/medical_history/yellow_fever/index. cfm> (accessed June 1, 2007).

University of Virginia Health System. "What is Microbiology?" <http://www.healthsystem. virginia.edu/uvahealth/adult_path/micro.cfm> (accessed April 2, 2007).

Valley Fever Connections. "Valley Fever." <http://www.valley-fever.org> (accessed March 8, 2007).

Virginia Bioinformatics Institute, Virginia Tech. "Burkholderia mallei." May 15, 2004. <http://pathport .vbi.vt.edu/pathinfo/pathogens/Burkholderia_mallei.html> (accessed April 26, 2007).

The White House (U.S. Government). "National Strategy for Pandemic Influenza." November 1, 2005 <http://www.whitehouse.gov/homeland /pandemic-influenza.html> (accessed January 23, 2007).

Whoopingcough.net. "Whooping Cough Information." <http://www.whoopingcough. net/> (accessed May 3, 2007).

Women's Health.gov. "Minority Women's Health." November 2006. <http://www.4woman.gov/minority/> (accessed March 13, 2007).

The World Bank. "Defeating Onchocerciasis (Riverblindness) in Africa." <http://www. worldbank.org/afr/gper/defeating.htm> (accessed April 22, 2007).

World Care Council. "The Patients' Charter for Tuberculosis Care." 2006. Available online at <http://www.who.int/tb/publications/2006/istc_charter.pdf> (accessed April 10, 2007)

World Health Organization. "Health Adaptation to Climate Change." 2005 <http://www.who.int/globalchange/climate/gefproject/en/index.html> (accessed May 26, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Dracunculiasis eradication." 2007 <http://www.who.int/dra cunculiasis/en/> (accessed February 22, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Lymphatic Filariasis." September 2000 <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs102/en/> (accessed March 5, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Maternal Deaths Disproportionately High in Developing Countries." October 20, 2003 <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/news/releases/2003/pr77/en/index.html> (accessed March 8, 2007).

World Health Organization. "A Review of the Technical Basis for the Control of Associated with Group A Streptococcal Infections." 2005 <http://www.who.int/child-adolescent-health/New_Publications/CHILD_HEALTH/DP/WHO_FCH_CAH _05.08.pdf> (accessed February 2, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Rift Valley Fever."September 2000 <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs207/en/> (accessed March 9, 2007).

World Health Organization. <http://www.who.int/en/> (accessed May 8, 2007).

World Health Organization Epidemic and Pandemic Alert and Response. "Global Outbreak Alert & Response Network." <http://www.who.int/csr/outbreaknetwork/en> (accessed May 12, 2007).

World Health Organization Initiative for Vaccine Research (IVR). "Sexually Transmitted Diseases." <http://www.who.int/vaccine_research/diseases/soa_std/en/index.html> (accessed January 28, 2007).

World Health Organization Prevention of Blindness and Visual Impairment. "Trachoma." <http://www.who.int/blindness/causes/priority/en/index2.html> (accessed February 14, 2007).

World Health Organization Western Pacific Region. "Investigation into China's recent SARS Outbreak Yields Important Lessons for Global Public Health." July 2, 2004 <http://www.wpro.who.int/sars/docs/update/update_07022004.asp> (accessed May 12, 2007).

World Health Organization, Epidemic and Pandemic Alert and Response (EPR), Disease Outbreak News "Accidental exposure to smallpox vaccine in the Russian Federation: 20 June, 2000." <http://www.who.int/csr/don/2000_06_20e/en/index.html> (accessed April 12, 2007)

World Health Organization. Global Polio Eradication Initiative. "2005 Annual Report." May 2006. <http://www.polioeradication.org/content/publications/annualreport2005.asp> (accessed March 25, 2007).

World Health Organization. Initiative for Vaccine Research. "Typhoid." <http://www.who.int/vaccine_research/diseases/typhoid/en/index.html> (accessed May 2, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Togo: Yellow Fever Vaccination Campaign Protects 1.3 Million People." <http://www.who.int/features/2007 /yellow_fever/en/index.html> (accessed June 13, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Avian Influenza." <http://www.who.int/csr/disease/avian_influenza/en/index.html> (accessed May 10, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Blood Transfusion Safety." <http://www.who.int/bloodsafety/en/> (accessed January 16, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Crimean-Congo Hemorrhagic Fever." <http://who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs208/en/> (accessed March 8, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Dengue and Dengue Hemorrhagic Fever." <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs117/en/> (accessed May 25, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Global Patient Safety Challenge 2005–2006: Clean Care is Safer Care." 2005 <http://www.who.int/entity/patientsafety/events/05/GPSC_Launch_ENGL ISH_FINAL.pdf> (accessed February 20, 2007).

World Health Organization. "International Health Regulations." <http://www.who.int/csr/ihr/voluntarycompliancemay06EN%20.pdf> (accessed April 21, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Magnitude and Causes of Visual Impairment." November 2004. <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs282/en/> (accessed April 22, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Malaria." May 2007 <http://www.who.int/topics/malaria/en> (accessed May 9, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Meningitis in Africa: Hundreds of Thousands Vaccinated." <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/news/notes/2007/np12/en/index.html> (accessed May 25, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Neglected Tropical Diseases." <http://www.who.int/neglected _diseases/en/> (accessed May 17, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Partners for Parasite Control (PPC)." <http://www.who.int/worm control/en/> (accessed March 14, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Report of the WHO/FAO/OIE Joint Consultation on Emerging Zoonotic Diseases." 2004 <http://whqlibdoc.who.int/hq/2004/WHO_CDS_CPE_ZFK_2004.9.pdf> (accessed February 28, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Sexually Transmitted Infections." <http://www.who.int/reproduct ive-health/stis/docs/sti_factsheet_2004.pdf> (accessed May 1, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Tuberculosis and Air Travel: Guidelines for Prevention and Control." 2006 <: http://www.who.int/tb/publications/2006/who_htm_tb_2006_363.pdf> (accessed May 17, 2007).

World Health Organization. "WHO Announces End of Ebola Outbreak in Southern Sudan." Press Release, August 7, 2004 Available online at <http://www.who.int/csr/don/2004_08_07/en/index.html>

World Health Organization. "WHO Model List of Essential Medicines." April 2007 <http://www.who.int/medicines/publications/EML15. pdf> (accessed May 26, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Women, Ageing, and Health." June 2000 <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs252/en/> (accessed March 13, 2007).

World Health Organization. "The World Health Report 2004—Changing History." <http://www.who.int/whr/2004/en/> (accessed June 4, 2007).

World Health Organization. "The World Health Report 2006—Working Together for Health." <http://www.who.int/whr/2006/en/> (accessed May 7, 2007).

World Health Organization. "World TB Day—March 24th." <http://www.stoptb.org/events/world_tb_day/> (accessed April 10, 2007).

World Health Organization. "Yaws Elimination in India: A Step Towards Eradication." <http://www.whoindia.org/EN/Section210/Section424.htm> (accessed May 2, 2007).

Yale-New Haven Hospital. "Contact Precautions." <http://www.med.yale.edu/ynhh/infection/contact/contact.html> (accessed May 27, 2007).

Yale-New Haven Hospital. "YNHH Infection Control; Introduction. "<http://www.med.yale.edu/ynhh/infection/precautions/intro.html> (accessed June 13, 2007).

General Index

Page numbers in **boldface** indicate the main essay for a topic, and primary source page numbers are in ***boldface and italics***. An *italicized* page number indicates a photo or illustration. An *s* following a page number indicates the use of the term in a sidebar, and *t* indicates a table.

A

- AAD (antibiotic-associated diarrhea), 1:187
- AAP. *See* American Academy of Pediatrics
- Abbott Laboratories, 1:55
- *Acanthamoeba* and methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 2:572
- Access to essential services
  - antiretroviral therapy, 1:15*s*, 16, *238*, 240; 2:860, 862
  - clean water, 1:31*s*, 260, 371; 2:617, 895, 898, 916
  - developing nations, 1:*237*, 237–241, *238*
  - income/health status relationship, 1:276–280, 277*s*
  - Médecins Sans Frontières, 1:62, 237, 239, 240; 2:537
  - Millennium Goals, 2:738, 860–862
  - sanitation, 1:180*s*; 2:736–738, 859
  - women and minorities, 2:912–914
- *Accidental Exposure to Smallpox Vaccine in the Russian Federation (WHO)*, ***2:774–775***
- Acid-fast stains, 1:130, 226; 2:554
- *Acinetobacter baumannii* bacteria, antibiotic resistance of, 1:50
- ACIP (Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices), 1:155
- Acquired immunity, 1:403, 423; 2:692
- Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. *See* AIDS
- Active immunization, defined, 1:161
- Active tuberculosis, 2:838
- Acute forms
  - bacterial sinusitis, 1:200
  - bilharzia, 1:93, 94
  - Chagas disease, 1:*149*
  - coccidioidomycosis, 1:194, 195
  - disseminated encephalitis, 1:286
  - histoplasmosis, 1:399
  - malaria, 2:516
  - otitis media, 1:262
  - *See also* specific diseases
- Acyclovir
  - encephalitis, 1:288
  - HSV-1, 1:393, 394
  - HSV-2, 1:396
  - mechanism of action, 1:60
  - shingles, 2:768
- Adamantanes, 1:439
- Adaptive immunity, 1:403, 423; 2:692
- Adenoviruses, 1:199; 2:882–883
- Adhesins, *Salmonella* infections and, 2:734
- Adolescents
  - mononucleosis, 1:301, 302, 303; 2:559, 561, 562–564
  - mumps, 2:575
- Adoption and vaccinations, 1:420
- Adult T-cell leukemia (ATL), 1:136
- Advanced Diagnostics Program, 2:686
- Advanced Research Projects Agency (ARPA), 1:6, 327; 2:686
- Advancing HIV Prevention program, 2:913–914
- Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP), 1:155
- Advisory Committee on Polio Eradication, 2:655
- Aerosols *vs.* droplets, 1:255
- Afghan Health Ministry, 2:911
- Afghanistan
  - diphtheria outbreak, 1:246
  - polio, 2:650, 655
  - whooping cough outbreak, 2:911
- Africa
  - antiretroviral access, 1:15*s*, 16, *238*, 240; 2:860, 862
  - bilharzia, 1:94
  - Buruli ulcer, 1:129, 130
  - cancer-infectious disease link, 1:137
  - chikungunya, 1:157, 158
  - cholera, 1:177, 181; 2:896
  - dengue fever, 1:233
  - dracunculiasis, 1:*252*, 252–253, 409; 2:898
  - Ebola virus, 1:37, *269*, 269–275
  - Epstein-Barr virus, 1:303
  - filariasis, 1:315
  - hemorrhagic fevers, 1:373–374
  - hepatitis B, 1:382
  - HIV/AIDS, 1:14*s*, 15, 16, 18–19, 20; 2:884
  - leishmaniasis, 1:484
  - leprosy, 1:488, 490; 2:916
  - liver fluke infections, 1:504

  malaria, 1:65, 184–185, 279–280; 2:515, 517, 566
  Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:524
  measles campaign, 2:533
  meningitis, 2:542
  monkeypox, 2:557
  plague, 2:606, 637
  Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia, 2:641
  polio, 2:655–656
  rat-bite fever, 2:688
  Rift Valley fever, 2:711
  river blindness, 2:716, 717–718
  roundworm infections, 2:725
  skilled childbirth attendants, 2:676
  taeniasis, 2:810, 812
  tapeworm infections, 2:814
  tick-borne relapsing fever, 2:695
  trachoma, 2:825
  Trichomonas infections, 2:833
  tropical diseases, 2:835
  tuberculosis, 2:841
  typhoid fever, 2:850
  typhus, 2:855
  West Nile virus, 2:901
  wildlife trade, 2:920
  yaws, 2:924
  yellow fever, 2:926, 928*s*
  See also specific countries and regions
Africa Walk for Hope, 2:*759*
African-American men, Tuskegee Syphilis Study and, 2:806, 807–809
African Program for Oncocerciasis (APOC), 1:237, 239; 2:717–718
African sleeping sickness (trypanosomiasis), 1:**1–6**, *2*, *5*, 239; 2:834, 835
African snails, as angiostrongyliasis carrier, 1:*32*, 34
Agramonte, Aristides, 1:308, 309; 2:931
Agriculture
  antibiotic resistance and, 1:54–55; 2:699–700, 877
  avian flu and, 1:*73*, *74*, 76–77; 2:549
  bilharzia and, 1:94
  See also Livestock industry
Ahmed, Abdullah, 1:275
AIDS: origin of the modern pandemic, 1:8, 13, **18–22;** 2:758–759
AIDS (Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), 1:**7–22**
  antiretroviral access, 1:15*s*, 16, *238*, 240; 2:860, 862
  aspergillosis and, 1:71
  awareness sign, 2:*758*
  candidiasis and, 1:139, 140
  clinic in South Africa, 1:*237*
  cytomegalovirus and, 1:190, 191
  diagnosis, 1:13
  as emerging disease, 1:282
  history, 1:8, 13, 18–22; 2:758–759
  HIV transmission, 1:7–10
  Koch's Postulates and, 1:466–467
  leprosy and, 1:491
  malaria and, 1:185
  Millennium Goals, 2:860–862
  National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases research on, 2:*581*, 582
  Ngubeni, Nomzamo story, 1:16–17
  opportunistic infections and, 2:603
  origin of term, 1:20
  patients, 1:*8*, *18*; 2:*585*
  Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia and, 2:640, 641, 643
  prevalence, 1:13, 14*s*, 15–16, *19*
  research, 1:14–15
  women and minorities, 2:913
  See also HIV
Airborne precautions, 1:*23*, **23–25**, 431–432
Airline travel
  malaria and, 2:828
  quarantine stations, 2:*771*
  SARS and, 1:343–344; 2:740–741, 742
  Speaker, Andrew tuberculosis case, 1:343, 419, 481; 2:840
Alabama, Tuskegee Syphilis Study, 2:806
Alaska
  avian flu research, 2:*886*
  diphtheria outbreak, 1:*242*
Albendazole
  anisakiasis, 1:39–40
  filariasis, 2:835
  hookworm infections, 1:406
  liver fluke infections, 1:504
  pinworm infections, 2:625
  taeniasis, 2:811
  tapeworm infections, 2:815
  whipworm, 2:907
Albertson, Tina, 1:166
Alcohol, as disinfectant, 1:250, 251, 432
Alcohol-based hand sanitizers
  in hospitals, 1:358, 433; 2:*570*, 571, 783
  political campaigns and, 1:360–361
  standard precautions and, 2:782, 783
Aldrin, Edwin E., Jr., 1:*456*
Alexander, Hattie Elizabeth, 1:353
Alexander the Great, 2:515
Algal blooms, 2:529
Algiers, Algeria bubonic plague outbreak, 2:*636*
Allen, Arthur, 1:162–166
Allergic reactions
  aspergillosis and, 1:70, 71
  conjunctivitis and, 2:621–622
Allworth, Anthony, 2:646
Alveolar echinococcosis, 1:*26*, **26–28**
Amantadine, 1:75, 454
AMCA (American Mosquito Control Association), 2:568
Amebiasis, 1:*29*, **29–31**; 2:896
Amebic dysentery, 1:257–261; 2:737, 896
Amebicides, 1:30
American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP)
  on chickenpox, 1:155
  on honey for infants, 1:117
  on meningitis, 2:542
American Legion convention of 1976, 1:475
American Media Inc. anthrax cleanup, 1:*44*
American Mosquito Control Association (AMCA), 2:568
American Optometric Association, 1:204
American Osteopathic College of Dermatology, 2:803
American Pediculosis Association, 1:498
American Public Health Association (APHA), 1:298
American Red Cross
  Chagas disease screening, 2:616
  measles campaign, 2:533
  transfusion-transmissible infections prevention, 1:110
American Society for Microbiology (ASM), 1:359, 360
American Society of Aesthetic and Plastic Surgery (ASAPS), 1:116
American Thoracic Society, 2:645
American trypanosomiasis. *See* Chagas disease
Amikacin, 2:592
Aminoglycoside antibiotics, 1:49
Amnesic shellfish poisoning, 2:528
Amoxicillin, 1:511; 2:645
Amphotericin B
  aspergillosis, 1:71
  blastomycosis, 1:108
  candidiasis, 1:140
  coccidioidomycosis, 1:195
  Cryptococcus neoformans infections, 1:215–216
Ampicillin
  cholera, 1:177
  sensitivity testing, 1:223
  shigellosis, 2:765
  typhoid fever, 2:850

- Amplification technologies, 1:326
- Amur River, meningitis outbreak in, 2:546
- Analytical Profile Index (API) tests, 2:*733*
- Ancient cultures
  - plague, 2:627–630
  - smallpox, 2:774
  - tuberculosis, 2:838
  - zoonoses, 2:935
- *Ancylostoma* infections. *See* Hookworm infections
- Andes virus, 1:364
- Anemia
  - fifth disease and, 1:313
  - hookworm infections and, 1:406, 407
  - whipworm and, 2:907–908
- Angiostrongyliasis, 1:*32*, **32–34**
- Angola
  - cholera outbreak, 1:*176*
  - leprosy, 1:490; 2:916
  - Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:*523*, 525, *889*
- Animal bites. *See* Bites
- Animal feed and bovine spongiform encephalopathy, 1:119, 120
- Animal handlers
  - B virus risks, 1:79
  - cat scratch disease, 1:144
  - cryptosporidiosis risks, 1:218
- Animal importation, 1:**35–37**
  - brucellosis and, 1:124
  - Giant African land snails ban, 1:*32*, 34
  - globalization and, 2:920
  - Philippine macaque monkeys, 1:*35*
  - psittacosis and, 2:662, 663
  - rabies and, 2:682
- Animal vaccines. *See* Vaccines, animal
- Animals and humans, proximity of. *See* Proximity of humans and animals
- Anion dyes, 1:221, 222
- Anisakiasis, 1:*38*, **38–40**
- Anisakids, 1:38, 39, 40
- *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 1:498
- Annual prevalence, defined, 1:296
- Anogenital warts, 1:414
- Antelopes, as *trypanosoma* species host, 1:1
- Anthrax, 1:**41–46**
  - as biological weapon, 1:41, 42–44, 101–102; 2:893, 894
  - goat extermination, 1:*43*
  - Koch, Robert work, 1:331
  - lesion, 1:*42*
  - vaccines for, 1:*41*, 42, 46, 102
- Anthrax attacks of 2001
  - American Media Inc. cleanup, 1:*44*
  - antibiotic resistance and, 1:54–55
  - Daschle, Tom letter, 1:*101*
  - genetic identification, 1:326–327
  - USAMRIID work, 2:868, *868*
- Anti-bioterrorism measures. *See* Bioterrorism preparedness
- Anti-infective agents and Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network, 1:336
  - *See also* Infection control and asepsis
- Anti-worm drugs. *See* Antihelminthic drugs
- Antibacterial drugs, 1:*47*, **47–50**, *48*, *49*
  - *See also* Antibiotics
- Antibacterial products, resistance to, 1:56, 57–58, 332; 2:700, 790
- Antibiotic-associated diarrhea (AAD), 1:187
- Antibiotic resistance, 1:**51–55**
  - antimicrobial soaps and, 1:56, 57–58
  - *Burkholderia*-related diseases, 1:128
  - ciprofloxacin, 1:*52*
  - contact precautions and, 1:207
  - emerging diseases and, 1:283
  - enterococcal infections, 2:*875*, 875–877
  - fluoroquinolones, 1:223–224
  - gonorrhea, 1:*52*, 347, 348
  - microbial evolution and, 2:547, 549–550
  - Ohio River contamination and, 1:*51*
  - overview, 1:49–50, 53–54, 434
  - shigellosis, 2:765–766
  - *Staphylococcus aureus* infections, 2:598, 786
  - tuberculosis, 2:841
  - typhoid fever, 2:850
  - typhus, 2:855, 856
  - urinary tract infections, 2:865
- Antibiotic sensitivity testing, 1:221–224
- Antibiotics
  - agricultural use, 1:54–55; 2:699–700, 877
  - anthrax, 1:46, 102
  - *vs.* antibacterial drugs, 1:47
  - balantidiasis, 1:88
  - broad-spectrum, 1:48, 188, 223–224
  - brucellosis, 1:124
  - *Burkholderia* infections, 1:127, 128, 339–340
  - Buruli ulcer, 1:130
  - *Chlamydia* infections, 1:170, 173
  - cholera, 1:177
  - classes of, 1:48–49
  - *Clostridium difficile* infections, 1:188
  - cyclosporiasis, 1:226
  - ear infections, 1:263
  - gonorrhea, 1:347
  - Gram staining and, 1:222
  - group A streptococcal infections, 2:795, 796
  - group B streptococcal infections, 2:797, 798
  - *Haemophilus influenzae*, 1:353
  - *Helicobacter pylori* infections, 1:136
  - impetigo, 1:429
  - Legionnaire's disease, 1:477
  - leptospirosis, 1:495
  - Lyme disease, 1:508, 511
  - mechanism of action, 1:48
  - meningitis, bacterial, 2:541–542
  - necrotizing fasciitis, 2:585
  - nocardiosis, 2:592
  - pink eye, 2:622
  - plague, 2:638
  - *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia, 2:641
  - pneumonia, 2:645
  - rat-bite fever, 2:688
  - relapsing fever, 2:695
  - rickettsial diseases, 2:708
  - Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:720
  - scarlet fever, 2:753
  - scrofula, 2:756
  - shigellosis, 2:765–766
  - *Staphylococcus aureus* infections, 2:786
  - strep throat, 2:792, 793
  - *Streptococcus* infections in, 1:430
  - *Trichomonas* infections, 2:833
  - tuberculosis, 2:839–840
  - tularemia, 2:847
  - typhoid fever, 2:850
  - typhus, 2:855
  - urinary tract infections, 2:865
  - whooping cough, 2:911
  - *Yersinia pestis* infections, 1:102
  - *See also* specific antibiotics
- Antibodies, defined, 1:423
- Antibody-antigen binding, 1:*421*; 2:684
- Antibody tests
  - brucellosis, 1:124
  - encephalitis, 1:288
  - Epstein-Barr virus, 1:302
  - HIV, 1:13
  - HSV-1, 1:393
  - Legionnaire's disease, 1:477
  - mononucleosis, 2:561, 564
  - rapid tests and, 2:684, 685–686
  - respiratory syncytial virus, 2:702
  - West Nile virus, 2:903, 904
- Antifungal drugs
  - aspergillosis, 1:71
  - blastomycosis, 1:108

  candidiasis, 1:140
  coccidioidomycosis, 1:195
  Cryptococcus neoformans infections, 1:215–216
  ringworm, 2:714
  sporotrichosis, 2:781
  types, 2:579
Antigenic drift, 1:2, 439, 453
Antigenic shift, 1:439, 453
Antigens, defined, 1:422
Antihelminthic drugs
  hookworm infections, 1:406
  liver fluke infections, 1:504–505
  overview, 1:370
  roundworm infections, 2:726
Antimicrobial soaps, 1:*56*, **56–58**; 2:700
Antiparasitic drugs
  babesiosis, 1:82
  Chagas disease, 1:*149*, 150
  filariasis, 1:316
  pinworm infections, 2:625–626
Antiretroviral therapy (ARV)
  access to, 1:15*s*, 16, *238*, 240; 2:860, 862
  economic issues, 1:62
  highly active antiretroviral therapy, 1:14, 61–62
  mother-to-newborn AIDS prevention, 1:8
  triomune pill, 1:*60*
  types, 1:13–14
Antisense therapy, for Ebola virus, 1:273
Antiseptics, defined, 1:431
Antiserum, for *Haemophilus influenzae*, 1:353
Antitoxins
  botulism, 1:116, 117
  diphtheria, 1:244
  tetanus, 2:816, 817
Antiviral drugs, 1:*59*, **59–62**
  chickenpox, 1:155
  cytomegalovirus, 1:191
  H5N1 virus, 1:351
  HSV-1, 1:393
  HSV-2, 1:396
  influenza, 1:75, 77, 445–446, 454
  shingles, 2:768
  triomune pill, 1:*60*
Anwar, Dani, 1:236
AP (Associated Press), 1:21–22
APHA (American Public Health Association), 1:298
API (Analytical Profile Index) tests, 2:*733*
APIC (Association for Professionals in Infection Control and Epidemiology), 1:431, 433
APOC (African Program for Oncocerciasis), 1:237, 239; 2:717–718
Apollo 11 astronauts, 1:*456*
Apology for Study Done in Tuskegee (speech), ***2:807–809***
Apoptosis, defined, 1:421
Appalachian Mountain disease (histoplasmosis), 1:399–401
Aqueous humor, 2:623
Ararquare virus, 1:364
Arenaviruses, 1:372–373; 2:883
Arizona
  coccidioidomycosis, 1:194, 195
  West Nile virus, 1:185
Arizona Daily Star, 1:195
Armadillos, leprosy in, 1:489
Armed forces. *See* Military; War
Armstrong, Neil, 1:*456*
Army (U.S.). *See* U.S. Army
ARPA (Advanced Research Projects Agency), 1:6, 327; 2:686
Arrhenius, Svante, 1:183
Artemisinin, 1:239; 2:518
Arthropod-borne disease, 1:*63*, **63–66**
  See also specific diseases
Artificial respiration. *See* Mechanical ventilation
ARV treatment. *See* Antiretroviral therapy
ASAPS (American Society of Aesthetic and Plastic Surgery), 1:116
Ascariasis. *See* Roundworm infections
Asepsis. *See* Infection control and asepsis
Aseptic meningitis, 2:542, 544
Asia
  cholera, 1:177
  dengue fever, 2:566
  dracunculiasis, 1:253, 254, 409
  early plague, 2:*628*
  encephalitis, 1:288
  fluke infections, 1:503, 504, 506
  hand, foot and mouth disease, 1:356
  hantaviruses, 1:362, 363
  hepatitis B, 1:382
  HIV/AIDS, 1:15, 16
  H5N1 virus, 1:350, 351
  Japanese encephalitis, 1:460, 461
  leishmaniasis, 1:484
  malaria, 2:566
  measles, 2:533, 861
  plague, 2:637
  rat-bite fever, 2:688
  taeniasis, 2:810, 812
  tapeworm infections, 2:814
  tick-borne relapsing fever, 2:695
  tropical diseases, 2:835
  tularemia, 2:846
  typhoid fever, 2:850
  typhus, 2:855
  West Nile virus, 2:901
  wildlife trade, 2:920
  yaws, 2:924
  yellow fever, lack of, 2:927
  See also specific regions and countries
Asian flu pandemic of 1957. *See* Influenza pandemic of 1957
Asiatic cholera. *See* Cholera
Asimolar Conference of 1975, 1:**67–69**
ASM (American Society for Microbiology), 1:359, 360
Aspergillosis, 1:*70*, **70–72**
Aspiration pneumonia and tsunami of 2004, 2:646–647
Aspirin, for Kawasaki syndrome, 1:463
Associated Press (AP), 1:21–22
Association for Professionals in Infection Control and Epidemiology (APIC), 1:431, 433
Asthma and respiratory syncytial virus, 2:702
Astrodome, Norovirus in, 2:595
Asymptomatic carriers
  amebiasis, 1:30
  balantidiasis, 1:88
  Chlamydia infections, 1:170
  Epstein-Barr virus, 2:560
  histoplasmosis, 1:399
  HSV-2, 1:396, 397
  typhoid fever, 2:849, 851
At 12, a Mother of Two, ***1:16–17***
Ataxia in prion diseases, 2:657, 658
Athens, early plague in, 2:628–629
Atherosclerosis and *Chlamydia* infections, 1:172, 173
Athlete's foot, 2:714
ATL (adult T-cell leukemia), 1:136
Atlanta airport quarantine station, 2:*771*
Atlantic Monthly excerpt, 1:162–166
Atovaquone, for babesiosis, 1:82
Attenuated live-pathogen vaccines
  overview, 2:872
  polio, 2:652
  yellow fever, 2:928
Atypical measles, 2:532
Auchtertyre Primary School (UK), 1:435
Aum Shinrikyo cult, 1:274
Australia
  Buruli ulcer prevalence, 1:129, 130
  Japanese encephalitis, 1:461
  peanut butter *Salmonella* incident, 1:321; 2:735
  psittacosis, 2:664
  Q fever, 2:678, 679

  - tapeworm infections, 2:814
  - typhus, 2:855
  - Western Australia Health Department, 1:219
- Austria, cholera in, 1:177
- Autism and measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, 2:533, 534–535, 575, 730, 871
- Autoclaving, 2:783, 788–789
- Autoimmune disorders
  - Kawasaki syndrome as, 1:463–464
  - overview, 1:424
  - retroviruses and, 2:706
  - *See also* specific diseases and disorders
- Autolysins, 1:48
- Avedisian, Scott, 1:289
- Avian influenza, 1:**73–77**, 349–351
  - bird migration, 1:*452*
  - as emerging threat, 1:283, 433, 440; 2:884
  - hospitalized patient, 1:*76*
  - Israeli outbreak, 1:*74*
  - microbial evolution, 2:549
  - pandemic preparedness, 2:669–671
  - poultry vendor, 1:*349*
  - proximity to animals, 1:*73*, 349
  - Tamiflu, 1:*59*, 62
  - virus images, 1:*350*
  - *See also* Influenza
- Azidothymidine. *See* Zidovudine
- Azithromycin
  - babesiosis, 1:82
  - Legionnaire's disease, 1:477
  - pneumonia, 2:645
  - trachoma, 2:825
  - typhus, 2:856
- AZT (Zidovudine)
  - cancer risks from, 1:62
  - in developing nations, 2:914
  - mechanism of action, 1:60–61

B

- B cells, 1:423
- B virus (Cercopithecine herpesvirus 1) infection, 1:**78–80**
- B Virus Working Group, 1:79
- Babes, Victor, 1:81
- Babesiosis (*Babesia* infection), 1:*81*, **81–83**
- Babies. *See* Infants
- Bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccinations, 1:130; 2:840
- *Bacillus anthracis* infections. *See* Anthrax
- *Bacillus odysseensis*, sterilization resistance of, 2:789
- *Bacillus stearothermophilus* and autoclaving, 2:788
- *Bacillus subtilus*, for ethylene oxide sterilization, 2:789
- Bacteria, defined, 2:551
- Bacterial corneal ulcers, 1:204
- Bacterial diarrhea
  - from *Campylobacter* infections, 1:132–133
  - gastroenteritis and, 1:323
  - from *Shigella* infections, 1:257
- Bacterial diseases, 1:**84–86**
  - antibacterial drugs, 1:47–50
  - cancer link, 1:135, 136, 137
  - culturing and sensitivity testing, 1:221–224
  - desorption electrospray ionization technique, 1:103–104
  - droplet precautions for, 1:255
  - Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network and, 1:336
  - *See also* specific diseases and disease types
- Bacterial lawns, 1:53
- Bacterial membranes and alcohol, 1:432
- Bacterial pneumonia, 2:643
- Bacteriocidal drugs, defined, 1:47
- Bacteriophages
  - antibiotic resistance, 1:53
  - microbial evolution, 2:548
  - phage therapy, 2:571
- Bacteriostatic drugs, defined, 1:47
- "Baghdad Boil," 1:485
- Bahamas, AIDS awareness sign, 2:*758*
- Bailey, Ann Marie, 1:165, 166
- Bairnsdale ulcer, 1:129–131; 2:835
- Baker, Benjamin, 1:247
- Baker, Ida Rebecca, 1:247
- Baker, Russell, 1:247–248
- Balantidiasis, 1:*87*, **87–89**
- *Balantidium coli*, 1:87, 88
- Balto (sled dog), 1:*242*
- Bananas, edible vaccines in, 1:69
- Bang, Oluf, 1:135
- Bangladesh
  - cholera, 1:178, 179
  - floods in, 2:*896*
  - information poster, 2:*771*
  - leishmaniasis, 1:484
  - Maalim, Ali Maow, 2:*772*
  - Nipah virus encephalitis, 2:589
  - smallpox eradication, 2:*770*, 777
- Barnes, Denise, 1:156
- Barophilic marine microorganisms, 2:529
- Barotrophic marine microorganisms, 2:529
- Barr, Yvonne, 1:301; 2:559
- Barrier protections, 1:431
- *Bartonella henselae* infections, 1:*142*, 142–144
- *Bartonella quintana* infections, 1:497
- Basidiospores, 1:215
- Bassi, Agostino, 1:330–331
- Bathing, 1:95; 2:*736*
- Bats
  - as Nipah virus reservoir, 2:588, 589
  - as potential Ebola host, 1:272, 273
  - as rabies reservoir, 2:682, 683
- Bausch & Lomb, 1:203, 204
- Bayer AG, 1:54, 55
- *Baylisascaris* infection, 1:**90–92**
- Bayou virus, 1:364
- Baytril, 1:54, 55
- BCG vaccine (Bacille-Calmette-Guérin), 1:130; 2:840
- Beauly Playgroup (UK), 1:435
- Beaver fever. *See* Giardiasis
- Bed netting. *See* Netting, bed
- Bedding and standard precautions, 2:783
- Beef. *See* Cattle
- Beef tapeworm, 2:810
- Belgium, psittacosis in, 2:664
- Benjamin Bloom Children's Hospital, 2:*642*
- Benznidazole, for Chagas disease, 1:150
- Berg, Paul, 1:68, 69
- Bermejo virus, 1:364
- Berry, Karyn, 1:156
- Beta-hemolytic streptococci, 2:795, 797
- Beta-lactam antibiotics, 1:48, 53
- Beta strep. *See* Streptococcal infections, Group B
- Beurmann, Charles Lucien de, 2:780
- Biblical disease references, 1:43; 2:627
- Bifurcated-needle smallpox vaccination, 2:777
- Bilharz, Theodor, 1:94
- Bilharzia (schistosomiasis), 1:*93*, **93–96**
- Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation
  - helminth disease programs, 1:371
  - HIV vaccine development, 1:282
  - human papillomavirus infection vaccine program, 1:137
  - immunization programs, 1:160
  - malaria prevention, 1:65; 2:520, 617, 861
  - mosquito-borne disease prevention, 2:567

Bill of Mortality, 1:*295*
Billroth, Christian Theodor, 2:584, 795, 797
Binding sites, 1:59–60, 350
Bio-indicators, autoclaving, 2:788
Biodefense R&D: Anticipating Future Threats, Establishing a Strategic Environment, ***1:104–105***
Bioethical issues. *See* Ethical issues
Biofilm bacteria
  in hospitals, 2:699
  hot tub rash and, 1:411–412
  Legionnaire's disease and, 1:475
  otitis media and, 1:263
  resistance to disinfectants, 1:251, 435
  urinary tract infections and, 2:865
Biohazard labeling, 1:432
Bioinformatics, 1:337
Biological and Toxin Weapons Convention of 1972, 1:43, 97–99; 2:774
Biological magnification and ciguatera poisoning, 2:527
Biological weapons
  anthrax, 1:41, 42–44; 2:893, 894
  Asimolar Conference, 1:67–69
  botulism, 1:116; 2:894
  brucellosis, 1:124; 2:893
  Burkholderia-related diseases, 1:127, 128, 340
  classifications, 1:100
  Ebola virus, 1:274
  glanders, 1:340
  melioidosis, 1:340
  Operation Sea Spray and, 2:866
  overview, 1:85–86; 2:893–894
  plague, 1:102, *102*; 2:893
  Q fever, 2:894
  smallpox, 2:771, 774, 894
  staphylococcal enterotoxin B, 2:894
  tularemia, 2:847, 893–894
  USAMRIID work, 1:274; 2:867–869, *868*
Biological Weapons Convention (BWC), 1:43, **97–99**; 2:774
Biologics Control Laboratory, 2:581–582
Biomagnification and ciguatera poisoning, 2:527
Biosafety level 1 laboratories, 2:868
Biosafety level 3 laboratories, 1:124, 441; 2:867
Biosafety level 4 laboratories
  at CDC, 1:147
  Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever research, 1:214
  hemorrhagic fever research, 1:375
  Marburg hemorrhagic fever research, 2:526
  smallpox research, 2:*776*, *777–778*
  at USAMRIID, 2:867, 868
Biosensor Technologies Program, 1:327; 2:686
Bioshield program. *See* Project Bioshield
Bioterrorism, 1:*100*, **100–106**, *102*
  anthrax, 1:44, 45; 2:893, 894
  botulism, 1:116, 117; 2:894
  brucellosis, 2:893
  field level response, 2:608
  food safety and, 1:321
  genetic identification and, 1:327
  history, 1:100
  microbial evolution and, 2:549
  monkeypox, 2:558
  overview, 1:86; 2:893–894
  plague, 2:639, 893
  Q fever, 2:894
  rapid tests and, 2:686
  re-emerging diseases and, 2:692
  reconstruction of 1918 influenza virus, 1:446
  Rift Valley fever, 2:712
  shigellosis, 2:766
  smallpox, 1:101; 2:774, 894
  staphylococcal enterotoxin B, 2:894
  tularemia, 2:847, 893–894
  types, 1:100–101
  See also Anthrax attacks of 2001
Bioterrorism preparedness
  civilians' role, 1:104
  economic issues, 1:102–103
  pandemic preparedness and, 2:613
  personal protective equipment and, 2:619, 620
  seasonal variation in disease and, 1:6
  tularemia and, 2:847
Biothrax vaccine, 1:46
Bird flu. *See* Avian influenza
Birds
  aspergillosis in, 1:71–72
  avian flu outbreaks, 1:73, 74–75; 2:*886*
  as *Chlamydia* carriers, 1:168
  as Eastern equine encephalitis hosts, 1:265, 267, 287
  H5N1 virus in, 1:349
  migration routes and influenza, 1:*452*
  psittacosis and, 2:662–663
  as West Nile virus reservoirs, 2:899, 900, *900*
Birth. *See* Childbirth
Bison, brucellosis in, 1:*122*, 124
Bites
  HIV transmission, 1:9
  rabies, 2:680, 682, 683
  from snakes, 2:936
Bithionol, for fluke infections, 1:504, 505, 506
Black Bane anthrax outbreak, 1:42
Black Creek Canal virus, 1:364
Black Death
  Bill of Mortality, 1:*295*
  burial of victims, 2:*690*
  Divine Comedy illustration, 1:*229*
  history, 1:64; 2:*627*, *629*, 630–632, 637
  origin of term, 2:636
  quarantine and, 1:478–479
  See also Plague
Black flies and river blindness, 2:716, 717
Black-legged ticks
  babesiosis from, 1:*81*, 81–82
  as Lyme disease carriers, 1:508, 509, *509*
Black typhus (Bolivian hemorrhagic fever), 2:885, 886–887
Bladder cancer and bilharzia, 1:95
The Blank Slate (Pinker), 1:426
Blastomycosis, 1:*107*, **107–109**
Bleach, as disinfectant, 1:250, 251
Blindness
  from HSV-1, 1:393
  river blindness, 1:237, 239; 2:716–718, *717*
  from smallpox, 2:770
  from trachoma, 1:168, 171; 2:*824*, 824–826
Blisters
  chickenpox, 1:153, *153*
  genital herpes, 1:328, 395
  HSV-1, 1:*392*
Blocking of viral target sites, 1:60, 61–62
Blood-brain barrier and West Nile virus, 2:900
Blood smears, for malaria diagnosis, 2:519
Blood supply and infectious disease, 1:**110–111**
  Chagas disease, 1:149, 150, 151; 2:616
  Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:210
  hepatitis C, 1:110, 384, 385
  hepatitis D, 1:388
  HIV, 1:7, 8, 15, 22, 110–111
  screening programs, 1:210
  West Nile virus, 2:902, 904
Blood tests
  HIV, 1:13
  HSV-1, 1:393
  mononucleosis, 2:561, 564
  West Nile virus, 2:903, 904
Blood transfusions, defined, 1:111
Bloodborne pathogens, 1:*112*, **112–114**

Bloodborne Pathogens Standard Prevention Act, 1:114; 2:619
Boat travel. *See* Ship travel
Boccaccio, Giovanni, 2:629, 631
Body fluids
  contact precautions, 1:206
  Ebola virus, 1:272, 273
  handwashing, 1:359; 2:782
  HIV, 1:7–10
  infection control, 1:431
  personal protective equipment, 2:618–619
  standard precautions, 1:359; 2:782–783
Body lice, 1:*497*, 497–499; 2:854
Body piercing, 1:10, 386
Boiling, of drinking water, 2:789
Bolivia
  Chagas disease clinic poster, 1:*149*
  condominial sewer systems, 2:738
  hemorrhagic fever, 2:885, 886–887
  yellow fever, 2:928*t*
Bolivian hemorrhagic fever, 2:885, 886–887
Bone marrow transplantation and Epstein-Barr virus, 2:562
Booster vaccinations
  diphtheria, 1:244–245, 247
  tetanus, 2:817
Border control and bovine spongiform encephalopathy, 1:36–37
Borderline leprosy, 1:490
Bordetella pertussis infections. *See* Whooping cough
Borrelia bacteria, 1:*422*
Borrelia burgdorferi. *See* Lyme disease
Borrelia infections, 1:497; 2:694–696
Bosnian conflict, public health effects, 2:892–893
Boston, Massachusetts epidemics, 2:*649*, 925
Botox (botulinum toxin A), 1:116–117
Botswana, HIV/AIDS treatment, 1:16
Botulinum toxin A (Botox), 1:116–117
Botulism, 1:*115*, **115–117**, 320; 2:894
Bouchut, Eugene, 2:633
Boulder, Colorado vaccination controversy, 1:162–166
Bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), 1:**118–121**
  animal importation regulation and, 1:36–37
  prion fibrils, 2:*657*
  quarantined cow, 1:*118*
  See also Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv
Bovines. *See* Cattle
Boyer, Herbert, 1:68, 69
Bradshear, Keith, 1:343–344
Brazil
  antiretroviral treatment distribution, 1:16
  condominial sewer systems, 2:738
  dog population, 1:37
  hantaviruses, 1:364
  leishmaniasis, 1:484
  leprosy, 1:490; 2:916
  National AIDS Program, 1:240
  smallpox eradication, 2:777
  typhus, 2:855
  yellow fever, 2:926, 928*t*, 929
Breastfeeding
  acquired immunity and, 1:423
  brucellosis and, 1:123, 124
  Chagas disease and, 1:151
  HIV and, 1:8, 61
  scrofula and, 2:756
  See also Childbirth
Breathing machines and nosocomial infections, 2:598
Brill-Zinsser disease, 2:854
Britain. *See* United Kingdom
Broad-spectrum antibiotics
  antibiotic sensitivity testing and, 1:223–224
  Clostridium difficile infections and, 1:188 defined, 1:48
Broad-spectrum disinfectants, 1:251
Brouqui, Phillipe, 1:65
Bruce, Sir David, 1:1, 122
Brucellosis, 1:*122*, **122–125**; 2:893
Brugia species infections. *See* Filariasis
Brundtland, Gro Harlem, 1:280
BSE. *See* Bovine spongiform encephalopathy
The BSE Inquiry, 2:659
Buboes, 2:628, 629, 636
Bubonic plague
  in Africa, 2:606
  bacteria image, 1:*102*
  defined, 1:102; 2:636
  See also Black Death; Plague
Buchanan, Pat, 1:17
Budding cell growth, 1:*500*
Bulbar polio, 2:649
Bulbospinal polio, 2:649
Bulging canned foods, danger of, 1:115
Bulletin of the History of Medicine, 1:442
Bull's eye rash, 1:510, *511*
Bunyaviruses, 1:373
Bureau of Arms Control (U.S.), 1:97
Burgdorfer, Willy, 1:508
Burial customs
  Ebola virus and, 1:274; 2:887
  kuru disease and, 1:120, 468, 469
  premature burial prevention, 2:633
Burkholder, Walter, 1:126
Burkholderia, 1:*126*, **126–128**, *338*, 338–340; 2:646
Burkina Faso
  HIV/AIDS prevention programs, 2:862
  meningococcal meningitis outbreak, 2:608
  yellow fever in, 2:928*t*
Burkitt, Denis, 1:135
Burkitt's lymphoma, 1:135, 303
Buruli (Bairnsdale) ulcer, 1:**129–131**; 2:835
Burundi, disease outbreaks, 1:498; 2:855
Bush, George W.
  AIDS funding for Africa, 1:17
  Executive Order 13295, 1:458; 2:746
  hand sanitizer use, 1:361
  malaria initiative, 2:617
  pandemic preparedness plan, 2:613
  Patriot Act signing, 1:99
Bush meat and Ebola virus, 1:274
Business continuity plans, 2:614
BWC. *See* Biological Weapons Convention

C

CA-methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), 1:54; 2:572
Cabrini Sisters, 1:17
Calciviruses, overview, 2:883
Calcutta, India, STD reduction project, 1:*297*
California
  Asimolar Conference, 1:67–69
  aspergillosis prevalence, 1:71
  coccidioidomycosis, 1:194, 195
  Gay Freedom Day Parade, 1:*10*
  Lyme disease, 1:510
  Operation Sea Spray, 2:866
  polio vaccination clinic, 2:*666*
  toxoplasmosis, 2:822
  tularemia, 2:846
  U.S. Marines strep throat outbreak, 2:*791*
  West Nile virus, 1:185
California Valley fever, 1:*193*, 193–195
Calmette, Albert, 2:840

- Cambodia, HIV/AIDS prevention programs, 1:16; 2:862
- Cambridge University, 1:370
- *Camp Devens Letter*, ***1:447–448***
- Camp fever. *See* Typhus
- Campaign for Access to Essential Medicines, 1:239; 2:537
- *Campylobacter* infections, 1:84, *132*, **132–134**, 318–319
- Canada
  - amnesic shellfish poisoning outbreak, 2:529
  - *Clostridium difficile* infections, 1:188
  - Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 2:783
  - *Cryptococcus neoformans* infections, 1:216
  - cyclosporiasis outbreaks, 1:225
  - *E. coli*, 1:305; 2:898
  - global warming protest march, 1:*182*
  - hand, foot and mouth disease, 1:355
  - HIV vaccine development, 1:282
  - Lyme disease, 1:185
  - polio, 2:650
  - Public Health Agency, 2:726
  - SARS outbreak, 1:256, 456–457; 2:667–668, 742, 746
  - Tamiflu adverse effects, 1:62
  - tapeworm infections, 2:814
  - U.S. border closure, 1:36–37
  - West Nile virus, 2:901, 902
- Canadian HIV Vaccine Initiative, 1:282
- *Canadian Medical Association Journal (CMAJ)*, 1:108
- Cancer, 1:*135*, **135–137**
  - AIDS and, 1:11, 14
  - AZT risks, 1:62
  - bladder, 1:95
  - Epstein-Barr virus and, 1:302–303
  - esophageal, 1:367
  - marine toxins as treatment for, 2:529
  - nasopharyngeal, 1:137
  - National Cancer Institute, 2:704
  - retroviruses and, 2:706
  - stomach, 1:136, 137, 367
  - *See also* Cervical cancer; Liver cancer
- Cancer Registries Amendment Act of 1992, 1:137
- Candidiasis, 1:*138*, **138–141**, *139*; 2:*577*, 578
- Canines. *See* Dogs
- Canned food danger, 1:115
- Cannibalism and kuru disease, 1:120, 468, 469
- Cano Delgadito virus, 1:364
- CAP. *See* Community-acquired pneumonia
- Capsids, 1:443, 444, 450
- Capsules
  - *Brucella* species, lack of, 1:123
  - *Cryptococcus neoformans*, 1:215
  - *Haemophilus influenzae*, 1:352
- Carbolic acid, as disinfectant, 1:47, 250, 331
- Carcinogenic microorganisms, 1:135, 136, 137
- Cardiac complications. *See* Heart complications
- Cardiovascular syphilis, 2:805
- Care Commission (UK), 1:435
- Cargo inspections, 1:341–342, 343; 2:921
- Caribbean
  - bilharzia, 1:94
  - cancer-infectious disease link, 1:137
  - chikungunya, 1:157, 158
  - cholera, 1:178
  - dengue fever, 1:232
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:265, 266
  - leprosy, 1:488
  - malaria, 1:418
  - measles, 2:861
  - St. Louis encephalitis, 2:731
  - strongyloidiasis, 2:800
  - whipworm, 2:907
- Carrier state. *See* Asymptomatic carriers
- Carroll, James, 1:308, 309, 310; 2:930, 931
- Carson, Rachel Louise, 2:566
- Carter, Jimmy, 1:253, 371, 492
- Carville, Louisiana leprosy research center, 1:489
- Cash, Sydney, 2:646
- Castelos dos Sonhos virus, 1:364
- Cat scratch disease, 1:*142*, **142–144**
- Catarrhal stage, whooping cough, 2:910
- Category B Diseases/Agents, 1:340
- Cathay Pacific Airways, 1:344
- Catheters
  - invasive candidiasis and, 1:139, 140, 141
  - nosocomial infections and, 2:598
  - urinary tract infections and, 2:864
- Cation dyes, 1:221–222
- Cats
  - alveolar echinococcosis, 1:26, *26*, 27
  - animal importation regulation, 1:37
  - cat scratch disease, 1:*142*, 142–144
  - DDT and, 2:887
  - toxoplasmosis, 2:821, 822, 823
  - West Nile virus, 2:902
- Cattle
  - bovine spongiform encephalopathy, 1:36–37, *118*, 118–121; 2:*657*
  - *E. coli*, 1:304, 307
  - epidemics, 1:36
  - taeniasis from, 2:810
  - *trypanosoma* species infection of, 1:1
- Causation of disease and Koch's Postulates, 1:221, 331, 465–467
  - *See also* Epidemiology; Germ theory of disease
- CCHF (Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever), 1:*212*, 212–214, 373
- CCID. *See* Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases
- CCR5 gene and West Nile virus, 2:902
- CCTV (China Central Television), 2:609, 610
- CD4+ T cells
  - HIV infection and, 1:11, 402, 403
  - *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia and, 2:641
- CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention), 1:**145–148**
  - on African sleeping sickness, 1:3
  - airborne precautions, 1:23–24
  - alveolar echinococcosis prevention, 1:28
  - amebiasis prevention, 1:31
  - on angiostrongyliasis, 1:34
  - animal importation regulation, 1:37
  - on anthrax, 1:45
  - on aspergillosis, 1:71
  - avian flu monitoring, 1:62, 77, 283, 433, 440–441; 2:549
  - avian flu preparedness website, 2:670
  - on B virus, 1:78, 79
  - on *Baylisascaris* infections, 1:90, 91
  - bioterrorism preparedness and, 2:613
  - on blastomycosis, 1:107–108
  - botulism and, 1:117
  - on brucellosis, 1:124
  - on *Burkholderia*-related diseases, 1:127
  - on *Campylobacter* infections, 1:84, 132, 133, 134
  - on candidiasis, 1:140, 141
  - Centers for Public Health Preparedness, 1:6
  - on chickenpox, 1:155
  - on chikungunya, 1:158, 159
  - on *Chlamydia* infections, 1:169, 172
  - on cholera, 1:179
  - on coccidioidomycosis, 1:194

  - contact precautions, 1:206
  - on Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:212
  - *Cryptococcus neoformans* research, 1:216
  - on cryptosporidiosis, 1:218
  - on cyclosporiasis, 1:225, 226
  - on diphtheria, 1:244, 245, 246, 247
  - on disinfection, 1:250–251
  - dracunculiasis campaign, 1:253
  - droplet precautions, 1:255
  - on drug resistance, 2:699
  - on dysentery, 1:259
  - on *E. coli*, 1:305, 306, 307
  - on ear infections, 1:263
  - on Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:266, 267
  - on emerging diseases, 2:921
  - on encephalitis, 1:287, 289
  - Epstein-Barr virus research, 1:301, 302, 303
  - on extremely drug-resistant tuberculosis, 2:840
  - field level response plans, 2:606–607
  - on fifth disease, 1:314
  - on food-borne illness, 1:320
  - food poisoning incidents, 1:54
  - on fungal infections, 2:579
  - on *Fusarium keratitis*, 1:203, 204
  - Ghoson, Joseph case, 1:341
  - on giardiasis, 1:334, 335
  - on glanders, 1:339, 340
  - globalization and, 1:342, 343
  - on gonorrhea, 1:347–348
  - GreeneChips use, 2:616
  - on hand, foot and mouth disease, 1:357
  - on handwashing, 1:207, 359, 360, 433; 2:572
  - hantavirus research, 2:885
  - on hemophilia, 1:110
  - on hepatitis A, 1:377, 378
  - on hepatitis B, 1:381, 382
  - on hepatitis C, 1:386, 387
  - histoplasmosis prevention, 1:401
  - on HIV/AIDS, 1:8, 9, 11, 13, 20, 21; 2:913–914
  - on hookworm infections, 1:406, 407
  - on hot tub rash, 1:412
  - on HSV-1, 1:394
  - on HSV-2, 1:396, 397
  - on human papillomavirus infection, 1:414, 415
  - immigration issues, 1:418
  - immunization schedules, 1:*163*, *164*
  - infection control procedures, 1:431
  - on irradiation, 1:226, 320
  - on Lassa fever, 1:473
  - Legionnaire's disease work, 1:148, *475*, 476, 477
  - on leishmaniasis, 1:486
  - on leptospirosis, 1:496
  - on lice, 1:498
  - on liver fluke infections, 1:505
  - on Lyme disease, 1:512, 513, 514
  - on malaria, 2:518, 879
  - on measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, 2:535, 575, 730
  - measles campaign, 2:533
  - on melioidosis, 1:339, 340
  - on meningitis, 1:197; 2:542
  - on methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 2:572
  - on monkeypox, 2:558
  - mosquito-borne disease prevention, 2:568
  - MSEHPA request, 1:103
  - NCZED and, 1:35, 147
  - on Nipah virus, 2:589
  - on nocardiosis, 2:591, 593
  - on Norovirus infections, 2:594, 595, 596
  - on nosocomial infections, 1:434; 2:598
  - notifiable diseases and, 2:600–601, 601*s*
  - NPCR administration, 1:137
  - nurse in protective clothing, 1:*145*
  - pandemic preparedness and, 2:613, 614
  - on pinworm infections, 2:625
  - on plague, 2:639
  - plague investigation, 2:638
  - *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia cases, 2:641
  - polio eradication program, 2:652, 654, 916
  - on prion diseases, 2:658
  - on psittacosis, 2:664
  - Q fever reporting, 2:*678*, 679
  - quarantine oversight, 1:457
  - rabies cases, 2:681
  - on rat-bite fever, 2:688
  - re-emerging diseases research, 2:690
  - on relapsing fever, 2:695
  - on Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:720
  - rotavirus vaccine program, 1:324; 2:723
  - on rubella, 2:729, 730
  - on *Salmonella* infections, 2:734–735
  - on sanitation, 2:738
  - on SARS, 2:743, 746, 747
  - on scabies, 2:751
  - scientist examining culture, 1:*146*
  - Select Agent Program, 1:99
  - on shingles, 2:768, 769
  - smallpox and, 1:101; 2:*776*, 777–778
  - on sporotrichosis, 2:781
  - standard precautions criteria, 1:114; 2:782
  - on STDs, 2:761
  - on *Streptococcus* infections, 1:430; 2:585, 586, 587, *792*
  - on swimmer's itch, 2:802
  - on syphilis, 2:806
  - on taeniasis, 2:810
  - on tetanus, 2:816, 817
  - on toxic shock syndrome, 2:820
  - on toxoplasmosis, 2:821, 822, 823
  - on trachoma, 2:826
  - on travel, 2:919
  - on trichinellosis, 2:830, 831
  - on *Trichomonas* infections, 2:832–833
  - on tuberculosis, 1:86; 2:839, 840
  - tularemia surveillance, 2:847
  - USAMRIID and, 2:867
  - on vaccines, 2:871
  - vancomycin-resistant enterococci guidelines, 2:876
  - on water-borne diseases, 2:895, 897, 898
  - on water filters, 1:219
  - on West Nile virus, 2:902, 904
  - on whipworm, 2:907
  - on whooping cough, 2:910
  - on yersiniosis, 2:933
  - *See also* National Center for Infectious Diseases; National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
- Cease-fires and seasonal variation in disease, 1:6
- Cefotaxime, 2:645
- Ceftriaxone, 2:592
- Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition, 1:38
- Center for Law and the Public's Health, 1:103
- Center for Strategic and International Studies, 1:6
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *See* CDC
- Centers for Public Health Preparedness, 1:6
- Central America
  - Buruli ulcer, 1:130
  - Chagas disease, 1:149, 150, 151
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:265, 266
  - filariasis, 1:315
  - hantaviruses, 1:364
  - lung fluke infections, 1:506
  - malaria, 2:566
  - river blindness, 2:716
  - St. Louis encephalitis, 2:731
  - tropical diseases, 2:835
  - typhoid fever, 2:850
  - typhus, 2:855
  - whipworm, 2:907
  - *See also* specific countries
- Central venous catheters and nosocomial infections, 2:598

Cephalosporin antibiotics, 1:48–49, 339
Cercarial dermatitis, 2:801–803
Cercopithecine herpesvirus 1, 1:78–80
Cerebral malaria, 2:516
Cervical cancer
  in developing nations, 2:913
  human papillomavirus infection and, 1:135, 136, 137, 413, 414
Cervical dysplasia, 1:414
Cervical intraepithelial dysplasia, 1:414
Cervicitis, 1:346; 2:759, 760
Cesarean section, for mother-to-newborn AIDS prevention, 1:8
Cestode infections. *See* Tapeworm infections
CFS (chronic fatigue syndrome), 1:302; 2:562
Chad, African sleeping sickness patient, 1:*5*
Chagas, Carlos, 1:149
Chagas disease, 1:**149–151**
  clinic poster, 1:*149*
  immigration and, 2:616
  prevalence, 1:3, 150
  Rhodnius prolixus image, 2:*878*
Chancres
  African sleeping sickness, 1:2
  syphilis, 2:760, 805
Charitable programs. *See* Humanitarian aid
Charles II (king of England), 2:*755*
Chemical sterilization, 2:789
Chemotherapy
  Chagas disease, 1:150
  scrofula, 2:756
  taeniasis, 2:812
Chen, Johnny, 2:741
Cheny, Dick, 1:360
Chicago, Illinois disease outbreaks, 1:225, *438*
Chicago disease. *See* Blastomycosis
Chickenpox, 1:*152*, **152–156**, *153*, 418
Chikungunya, 1:*157*, **157–159**; 2:*689*
Childbed fever. *See* Puerperal fever
Childbirth
  attended by skilled personnel, 2:675*s*, 676
  group B streptococcal infections and, 2:797, 798
  HIV and, 1:8, 16
  HSV-1 and, 1:393, 394
  HSV-2 and, 1:395–396
  hygiene practices, 1:330, 359
  pink eye and, 2:621
  tetanus and, 2:*817*, 818
  See also Breastfeeding; Mother-to-child transmission; Puerperal fever
Childhood infectious diseases
  bilharzia, 1:94
  Burkitt's lymphoma, 1:135
  Buruli ulcer, 1:129
  cancer and, 1:137
  chickenpox, 1:*152*, 152–153, *153*, 154
  Chlamydia infections, 1:169
  cryptosporidiosis, 1:218
  deaths from, 1:160, 228; 2:861
  E. coli infections, 1:305, 306
  ear infections, 1:*262*, 263
  Epstein-Barr virus, 2:559, 561–562, 563
  fifth disease, 1:312–314
  gastroenteritis, 1:323, 324
  giardiasis, 1:334–335
  Haemophilus influenzae, 1:353–354
  hand, foot and mouth disease, 1:*355*, 355–357
  helminth diseases, 1:371
  HIV/AIDS, 1:8, 14*s*, 16
  hookworm infections, 1:*405*, 406, 407
  HSV-1, 1:393
  impetigo in, 1:429
  influenza, 1:440
  Kawasaki syndrome, 1:462–464
  lice, 1:498
  malaria, 2:515, 520*s*, 879
  malnutrition and, 1:259
  measles, 2:531, 532, 533
  mumps, 2:575
  pink eye, 2:*621*, 621–623
  pinworm infections, 2:625, 626
  pneumonia, 2:644
  polio, 2:650, 652–653, 655–656
  ringworm, 2:714–715
  rotavirus infections, 2:722, 723
  scarlet fever, 2:752, *752*, 753–754
  seasonal variation in disease and, 1:230
  trachoma, 2:825
  whipworm, 2:907
  whooping cough, 2:909, *909*, 910, 911
  yaws, 2:*923*, 924
  yersiniosis, 2:932
Childhood infectious diseases, immunization impacts, 1:*160*, **160–167**, *162*, *163*, *164*
Chimpanzees, Ebola virus in, 1:270, 274
China
  angiostrongyliasis, 1:33
  avian flu, 1:74
  bilharzia, 1:94, 95
  cancer-infectious disease link, 1:137
  early plague, 2:627–628, 632
  Epstein-Barr virus, 1:303
  excrement tanks, 2:738
  hepatitis D, 1:389
  Japanese anthrax use against, 1:42–43
  liver fluke infections, 1:504, 505
  Ministry of Health, 2:608, 653
  polio, 2:652–653
  rabies, 2:683
  SARS outbreak, 1:*276*; 2:608–611, 667, *740*, 740–746, *742*
  trichinellosis, 2:829, 830
  tuberculosis, 2:*838*
  wildlife trade, 2:920
China Central Television (CCTV), 2:609, 610
China-Japan Friendship Hospital, 2:611
Chinese liver flukes, 1:*503*, 503–505
Chiron Corporation, 2:873
Chitterlings, yersiniosis from, 2:932, 933
Chlamydia infections, 1:136, *168*, **168–171**, *169*; 2:759
Chlamydia pneumoniae, 1:169, *172*, **172–174**
Chlamydia psittaci infections, 2:662–664, *663*
Chloramphenicol
  plague, 2:638
  rickettsial diseases, 2:708
  Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:720
  typhus, 2:855
Chlorhexidine, as disinfectant, 1:251
Chloroquine, 1:239; 2:518, 697, 699
Choclo virus, 1:364
Choice, patient right to, 2:843
Cholera, 1:**175–181**
  infectious disease law and, 1:479
  London epidemic, 1:178, 295, 299, *300*, 479; 2:607, 736
  in refugee camps, 1:177, 179, 417
Chrétien, Jean, 2:746
Chromogenicity, 1:221
Chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS), 1:302; 2:562
Chronic forms
  bilharzia, 1:93, 94
  Chagas disease, 1:*149*, 150
  coccidioidomycosis, 1:194, 195
  histoplasmosis, 1:399
  Lyme disease, 1:508, 511
  otitis media, 1:263
  typhoid fever, 2:850
  See also specific diseases
Chytridiomycosis and wildlife trade, 2:921
Cidofovir, 1:191
Ciguatera poisoning, 2:527

Ciprofloxacin
  production of, 1:*49*
  resistance to, 1:*52*, 54–55
  for shigellosis, 2:765
  for typhoid fever, 2:850
  for typhus, 2:855
Cirrhosis. *See* Liver cirrhosis
Civil liberties and infectious disease law, 1:457, 480–481
Civilians, violence against, 2:892, 893
CJD. *See* Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv
Clarithomycin, 1:511
Class-1 food recalls, 1:117
Class A biological threats, 1:100, 105
Classes 1-5 disease reporting, 2:665–666
Classical Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, 1:208
Classification of microbes, 2:551
“Clean Care is Safer Care” motto, 2:598
Clean Hands Coalition, 1:360
Clemens, Charles, 2:660
Clement VI (pope), 2:631
Climate change, 1:**182–186**
  Cryptococcus neoformans infections and, 1:216
  early plague and, 2:630
  endemicity and, 1:292
  parasitic diseases and, 2:617
  protest march, 1:*182*
  tropical diseases and, 2:836
  vector-borne diseases and, 1:183, 184–185, 409; 2:879
Clindamycin
  babesiosis, 1:82
  scarlet fever, 2:753
  toxic shock syndrome, 2:819
Clinical & Infectious Disease, 2:571
Clinical trials
  epidemiology and, 1:298
  polio vaccine, 2:651
  See also Research
Clinton, Bill, 1:361; 2:806, 807–809
Clofazimine, for leprosy, 1:489, 491; 2:835, 916
Clonorchis sinensis, 1:*503*
Clostridium botulinum infections. *See* Botulism
Clostridium difficile infections, 1:*187*, **187–189**; 2:549
Clostridium tetani infections. *See* Tetanus
Clothing, protective
  African sleeping sickness, 1:4
  arthropod-borne diseases, 1:64
  avian flu, 1:77
  B virus, 1:79
  babesiosis, 1:82
  CDC worker, 1:*145*
  chikungunya, 1:158, 159
  cholera, 1:*177*
  contact precautions and, 1:207
  Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:213, 214
  filariasis, 1:316
  histoplasmosis, 1:400
  infection control and, 1:433–434
  leishmaniasis, 1:486
  Lyme disease, 1:512
  malaria prevention, 2:518–519, 878
  for mosquito-borne diseases, 2:568
  sporotrichosis prevention, 2:781
  typhus protection, 2:855–856
  West Nile virus prevention, 2:904
CMAJ (Canadian Medical Association Journal), 1:108
CMV (cytomegalovirus) infection, 1:*190*, **190–192**; 2:563
Co-infection
  hepatitis D and B, 1:388, 389
  HIV/AIDS, 2:860, 862
  leishmaniasis, 1:485
  Lyme disease, 1:511
Co-trimoxazole, 2:592
Coburn, Tom, 1:360
Coccidioidomycosis, 1:*193*, **193–195**
Coercion and informed consent, 1:310
Coffin devices, 2:633
Cohen, Jeffrey I., 1:79
Cohen, Sheldon, 1:426
Cohen, Stanley, 1:68, 69
Cohorted communities, 1:**196–197**
  airborne precautions, 1:24
  droplet precautions, 1:255–256
  hand, foot and mouth disease transmission, 1:356
  infection control, 1:431
Cold sores, 1:*198*, *392*
Cold temperature exposure and colds, 1:200, 202
Colds (rhinitis), 1:*199*, **199–202**, *200*, 426
Colitis and antibiotic-associated diarrhea, 1:18
Collective case reports, 1:299
Colleges, as cohorted community, 1:196–197
  See also Schools
Collins, Michael, 1:*456*
Colombia, yellow fever outbreak, 2:*926*, 928*t*
Colonialism and smallpox, 2:770–771
Colorado, disease outbreaks in, 1:162–166, 185
Combs, for lice, 1:498
Common cold, 1:*199*, 199–202, *200*, 426
Community-acquired pneumonia (CAP)
  antibiotic resistance, 2:646
  causes, 2:644
  Chlamydia infections, 1:173
  fluoroquinolone antibiotics, 1:223–224
Community-associated MRSa (CA-MRSa), 1:54; 2:572
Community kitchens and poor sanitation, 2:*737*
Community Strategy for Pandemic Influenza Mitigation in the United States (CDC), ***2:614***
Comoro Islands’s chikungunya outbreak, 1:158
Compulsory School Attendance Amendment Act of 1990 (Washington, D.C.), 1:156
Compulsory vaccinations. *See* School vaccinations
Computer models
  climate change, 1:183–184
  mass vaccination programs, 2:668–669
  rhinovirus, 1:*200*
  travel restrictions effects, 2:669
  virus strains combining, 1:*350*
  See also Simulations and modeling
Condensing lenses, 2:553
Condominial sewer systems, 2:738
Condoms
  advertisement, 2:*667*
  HIV/AIDS prevention and, 1:10, 14, 298
  human papillomavirus infection prevention and, 1:415
  minority and poor women and, 2:913, 914
  as safe sex practice, 2:762
  use by country, 1:170*s*
Confidentiality, patient right to, 2:843
Congenital diseases. *See* Neonatal diseases
Congenital rubella syndrome, 2:728, *728*, 729, 730
Congo. *See* Democratic Republic of the Congo
Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:*212*, 212–214, 373
Congress (U.S.), 1:146
Conjunctivitis
  Epstein-Barr virus and, 1:*301*
  HSV-1 and, 1:393, 394
  pink eye, 2:*621*, 621–623

Connecticut, Lyme disease discovery, 1:508
Consolidated Appeals Process, 2:542
Consumption. *See* Tuberculosis
Contact lenses and *Fusarium keratitis*, 1:**203–205**
Contact precautions, 1:**206–207**, 432; 2:571
The Contagiousness of Puerperal Fever (essay), ***2:597–598***
Convalescent stage, whooping cough, 2:910
Convention on the Rights of the Child (CRC), 2:858
Convict Creek virus, 1:364
Cook, Sir Albert, 1:129
Cooking temperatures
  anisakiasis, 1:40
  Campylobacter infections, 1:133, 319
  E. coli infections, 1:305, 306, 307
  listeriosis, 1:501
  liver fluke infections, 1:505
  lung fluke infections, 1:506
  Salmonella infections, 2:734
  tapeworm infections, 2:811, 815
  toxoplasmosis, 2:822
  trichinellosis, 2:829, 830
  yersiniosis, 2:933
Coordinating Center for Infectious Diseases (CCID)
  on brucellosis, 1:124
  Emerging Infectious Diseases publication, 1:5, 147
  reorganization of, 1:147
Coordinating Centers (CDC), 1:146–147
Coordinating Office for Terrorism Preparedness and Emergency Response, 1:147
Coringa Day Care (UK), 1:435
Corkscrewing motion, of spirochetes, 1:509
Corneal inflammation, 1:203–205
Corneal ulcers, 1:204
Cornell, Eric, 2:*584*
Coronaviruses, 1:199; 2:883
Corynebacterium diphtheriae. See Diphtheria
Cost considerations. *See* Economic considerations
Côte d'Ivoire
  Buruli ulcer, 2:835
  condom advertisement, 2:*667*
  Ebola virus, 1:37, 271, 273; 2:*887*
  river blindness patient, 2:*717*
  yellow fever, 2:928*s*
Coughing, from whooping cough, 2:910
Council of State and Territorial Epidemiologists, 2:601
Councilman bodies, 2:926
Cowpox, for smallpox vaccine, 2:771, 776
Coxiella burnetii infections, 2:677–679, *678*
Coxsackievirus A16, 1:*355*, 355–357
Crab lice, 1:497–499
CRC (Convention on the Rights of the Child), 2:858
Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv (CJD), 1:**208–211**
  animal importation regulation and, 1:36–37
  blood donation transmission, 1:111
  brain scan, 1:*208*
  from contaminated surgical equipment, 2:783, 789
  overview, 1:208–209; 2:658
  See also Bovine spongiform encephalopathy
Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever (CCHF), 1:*212*, **212–214**, 373
Croft Park Nursery (UK), 1:436
Cross-linking step (bacteria growth), 1:48
Cross-resistance, 2:876
Cruise ships, Norovirus infections in, 2:595
Crustaceans, as lung fluke intermediate host, 1:506, 507
Crusted scabies, 2:749–750
Cryptococcal meningitis, 1:215
Cryptococcus neoformans infections, 1:**215–216**
Cryptosporidiosis, 1:*217*, **217–220**, 323; 2:896, 897
Cuba
  dengue fever, 1:232
  yellow fever, 2:925, 926
Culex mosquitoes
  Japanese encephalitis from, 1:460, 461
  St. Louis encephalitis from, 2:731–732
Culling of infected animals
  avian flu, 1:*73, 74,* 76–77; 2:671
  bovine spongiform encephalopathy/Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:119, 210; 2:658–659
  brucellosis, 1:123, 124
  Campylobacter infections, 1:84
  Nipah virus encephalitis, 2:*588*, 589
  Rift Valley fever, 2:712
Cultural issues
  burial customs, 1:120, 274, 468, 469; 2:633, 887
  clothing color for medical workers, 1:375
  condom use, 2:914
  Lassa fever, 1:473
Culture and sensitivity (microbiology), 1:**221–224**
  brucellosis, 1:124
  Buruli ulcer, 1:130
  encephalitis, 1:288
  Haemophilus influenzae, 1:352
  leprosy, 1:489
  Madin-Darby canine kidney culture cells, 1:*350*
  Staphylococcus aureus, 2:*785*
  tuberculosis, 2:839
Cumulative incidence of disease, defined, 1:296
Cunnion, Stephen O., 2:744
Cutaneous forms
  anthrax, 1:45
  diphtheria, 1:243
  fungal infections, 2:578
  leishmaniasis, 1:483
  nocardiosis, 2:591
Cutting board contamination, 1:433
Cycling fever, African sleeping sickness, 1:2
Cyclosporiasis, 1:**225–227**; 2:896
Cyst forms
  cryptosporidiosis, 1:323
  Entamoeba histolytica, 1:29, 258
  Giardia species, 1:333, 334
Cystic fibrosis, *Burkholderia*-related infections, 1:126, 127
Cysticercosis, 2:616, 814, 815, 936
Cystitis, 2:865
Cytokine storm, 1:445
Cytomegalovirus infections (CMV), 1:*190*, 190–192; 2:563
Cytotoxic T cells, 1:403

D

Dalai Lama, 1:492
Dale and Betty Bumpers Vaccine Research Center, 1:274
Dane particles, 1:*380*
Dante Alighieri, 1:*229*
Dapsone, for leprosy, 1:489, 491; 2:835, 916
Darfur, Sudan disease outbreaks, 1:229, *390*
Dark field microscopy, 2:554
"Dark Winter" bioterrorism simulation, 1:6
Dark Winters Ahead, ***1:5–6***
Darling's disease (histoplasmosis), 1:399–401
DARPA (Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency), 1:6, 327; 2:686

Darwinian evolution, 1:425–426; 2:547

Daschle, Tom, 1:44, 101

Day care centers
    cytomegalovirus infections, 1:192
    epidemiological modeling and, 1:231
    hand, foot and mouth disease outbreaks, 1:356
    lice outbreaks, 1:498
    pink eye, 2:622
    poor hygiene in, 1:435–436
    rotavirus infections, 1:322
    scarlet fever, 2:753–754
    See also Childhood infectious diseases

Days of tranquility and seasonal variation in disease, 1:6

DBPs (disinfection byproducts), 1:251

DDT (dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane)
    Bolivian hemorrhagic fever and, 2:887
    history, 2:566
    malaria prevention, 2:516, 520–521, 878
    for mosquito-borne diseases, 1:65, 146, 409; 2:567

De novo synthesis, of viruses, 2:778

Dead-pathogen vaccines, 2:651–652, 872

Dean, Howard, 1:360

Dean, William, 1:309

Deaths
    African sleeping sickness, 1:1, 4
    AIDS, 1:13, 14*s*, 16, 21
    alveolar echinococcosis, 1:27
    amebiasis, 1:30
    anthrax, 1:42, 43, 44
    arthropod-borne diseases, 1:64
    aspergillosis, 1:71
    avian flu, 1:73, 74, 75, 76
    B virus, 1:78
    Baylisascaris infections, 1:90
    bilharzia, 1:95
    blastomycosis, 1:108
    botulism, 1:116
    Burkholderia infections, 1:339, 340
    cervical cancer, 1:414
    chickenpox, 1:153, 155
    chikungunya, 1:158; 2:689
    childhood infectious diseases, 1:160, 162
    cholera, 1:176, 177, 179; 2:896
    climate change, 1:185
    Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:213
    cryptosporidiosis, 1:219
    dengue fever, 1:234, 235
    diarrhea, 1:184; 2:737, 897
    diphtheria, 1:243, 244, 245, 246
    dysentery, 1:260
    E. coli infections, 1:306
    Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:265, 266, 267
    Ebola virus, 1:37, 269, 270–271, 272
    encephalitis, 1:285, 286, 287, 288, 289
    extreme weather, 1:184
    food-borne illness, 1:318, 320
    gastroenteritis-caused diarrhea, 1:322, 324
    group A streptococcal infections, 2:794–795, 796
    group B streptococcal infections, 2:797, 798
    Haemophilus influenzae, 1:353, 354
    hand, foot and mouth disease-associated complications, 1:356, 357
    hantaviruses, 1:362, 363
    HBV complications, 1:382
    hemorrhagic fevers, 1:373
    hepatitis A, 1:377
    HSV-1 encephalitis, 1:394
    income/health status relationship, 1:425
    infectious diseases, 1:*277*
    influenza, 1:74, 283, 440, 441, 452
    influenza pandemic of 1918, 1:442, 443, 446
    influenza pandemic of 1957, 1:449, 450
    invasive candidiasis, 1:140, 141
    Japanese encephalitis, 1:460
    Lassa fever, 1:472
    Legionnaire's disease, 1:475, 476
    leptospirosis, 1:495
    listeriosis, 1:501
    malaria, 1:280; 2:515, 566, 690, 699, 878, 879
    Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:523, 524
    maternal mortality ratio, 2:676
    measles, 2:532, 533, 861
    meningitis, bacterial, 2:540, 542
    methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 2:570
    monkeypox, 2:557, 558
    necrotizing fasciitis, 2:586
    Nipah virus encephalitis, 2:588
    nosocomial infections, 1:434
    parasitic diseases, 2:615
    pertussis, 1:166
    plague, 2:632, 637, 638
    pneumonia, 1:173; 2:642, 644
    polio, 2:649, 654
    premature burial prevention and, 2:633
    psittacosis, 2:662
    puerperal fever, 2:673, 674–675
    Q fever, 2:678
    rabies, 2:680, 681
    relapsing fever, 2:694–695
    Rift Valley fever, 2:710, 711, 712
    Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:708, 720
    rotavirus infections, 2:722, 723
    roundworm infections, 2:726
    Salmonella infections, 2:735
    SARS, 1:284; 2:609, 740, 741, 742
    scarlet fever, 2:752
    smallpox, 2:770, 771, 772
    St. Louis encephalitis, 2:731
    Streptococcus pyogenes infections, 2:586, 587
    surgery, 1:207
    tetanus, 2:817
    toxic shock syndrome, 2:819, 820
    tropical diseases, 2:834
    tuberculosis, 2:550, 691, 838, 840, 841, 861
    tularemia, 2:846, 847
    typhoid fever, 2:850, 851
    typhus, 2:854, 855, 892
    viral diseases, 2:884
    water-borne diseases, 2:895
    West Nile virus, 2:899, 901, 904
    whooping cough, 2:909, 910, 911
    yellow fever, 2:878, 926, 928*t*

Debridement and war-related wounds, 2:892

Decameron (Boccaccio), 2:631

Declaration of Commitment on HIV/AIDS, 2:860

Declaration of Helsinki, 1:310

Declaration of the Rights of the Child, 2:858

Deer ticks. *See* Black-legged ticks

Deerfly fever. *See* Tularemia

DEET insect repellents
    Lyme disease, 1:512
    malaria, 2:519
    mosquito-borne disease, 2:568
    typhus, 2:856
    West Nile virus, 2:903, 904

Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA)
    Biosensor Technologies Program, 1:327
    bioterrorism work, 1:6
    rapid tests research, 2:686

Deforestation and Chagas disease, 1:151

Dehydration
    cholera, 1:175, 180
    dysentery, 1:259
    food-borne illness, 1:318
    gastroenteritis, 1:323, 324
    giardiasis, 1:334–335
    rotavirus infections, 2:722, 723

Democratic Republic of the Congo
    clothing color for medical workers, 1:375

  Ebola virus, 1:251, 269, 270–271, 273; 2:887–888
  Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:525
  Médecins Sans Frontières work, 2:*539*
  plague, 2:638
  street mother, 2:*674*
  typhoid fever outbreak, 2:851
  See also Zaire
Demographics, 1:**228–231**
  See also Population movement
Dendritic cells, 1:403
Dengue and dengue hemorrhagic fever, 1:**232–236**
  vs. chikungunya, 1:159
  Indonesian patients, 1:*232*
  map of risk areas, 1:*233*
  prevalence, 1:64; 2:566
  spray for mosquitoes, 1:*234*
  warning posters, 1:*235*, *374*
  yellow fever and, 2:927
Dengue shock syndrome, 1:233, 234
Denmark, disease outbreaks in, 2:735, 877
Dentico, Nicoletta, 2:747–748
Department of Agriculture (U.S.). *See* U.S. Department of Agriculture
Department of Defense (U.S.). *See* U.S. Department of Defense
Department of Health, Education and Welfare, 2:806
Department of Health and Human Services (U.S.). *See* U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
Department of Health (UK), 1:110
Dermatitis
  hot tub rash, 1:*411*, 411–412
  river blindness, 2:716
  swimmer's itch, 2:801–803
Derrick, Edward H., 2:677
Desert fever, 1:*193*, 193–195
Desgenettes, René-Nicholas Dufriche, 2:*890*
Desorption electrospray ionization, 1:103–104
Developing nations
  arthropod-borne diseases, 1:63, 64, 65
  bilharzia, 1:95
  cancer-infectious disease link, 1:137
  Chlamydia infections, 1:170
  cholera, 1:177, 178–179, 180–181
  clean water access, 1:31*s*, 260, 371; 2:617, 895, 898, 916
  cyclosporiasis, 1:225
  dysentery outbreaks, 1:259
  Epstein-Barr virus, 2:560
  field level response to outbreaks, 2:607–608
  food-borne illness, 1:321
  gastroenteritis, 1:323–324
  giardiasis, 1:334
  group A streptococcal infections, 2:796
  group B streptococcal infections, 2:798
  Haemophilus influenzae, 1:353, 354
  health care access, 2:884
  helminth diseases, 1:370, 371
  hepatitis E, 1:391
  HIV/AIDS, 1:16, *237*, *238*, 240; 2:914
  hookworm infections, 1:405, 406, 407
  HSV-1, 1:393
  income/health status relationship, 1:*276*, 276–280, *277*
  malnutrition, 1:259
  Millennium Goals, 2:861, 862
  opportunistic infections, 2:604
  puerperal fever, 2:675
  shigellosis, 2:765, 766
  Streptococcus infections, 1:429
  transfusion-transmissible infections risks, 1:111
  vaccine bags, 1:*238*
  water-borne diseases, 2:896, 897, 898
  whipworm, 2:907
  women and minorities, 2:912–914
  See also specific countries
Developing nations, drug delivery, 1:**237–241**
Deworming treatments, 1:370; 2:815
Diagnosis
  E. coli infections, 1:307
  Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network, 1:336
  late, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:708, 721
  See also specific diseases
Diapedesis, 1:*422*
Diaper rash, 1:140
Diarrhea
  antibiotic-associated, 1:187
  cholera, 1:175, 180
  climate change and, 1:184
  cyclosporiasis, 1:225, 226
  E. coli, 1:305–306
  food-borne illness, 1:318, 321
  gastroenteritis, 1:322, 323, 324
  giardiasis, 1:334–335
  rotavirus infections, 2:722–724, *723*
  sanitation and, 2:736–737
  See also Bacterial diarrhea
Dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane. *See* DDT
Diflucan. *See* Fluconazole
Dignity, patient right to, 2:842
Dinoflagellates and shellfish poisoning, 2:527–528
Diphtheria, 1:**242–248**
  Balto the dog and, 1:*242*
  Moscow epidemic, 1:*243*
  nurse at Pasteur Institute, 1:*244*
  in Russia, 1:165
  vaccines, 1:161, 243–245, *245*, 246; 2:817, 911
Diphtheria-tetanus-acellular pertussis vaccine (DTaP), 1:244; 2:817
Diphtheria-tetanus-pertussis vaccine (DTP), 1:244; 2:911
Diphyllobothrium species infections. *See* Tapeworm infections
Direct transmission, defined, 1:206
Directly Observed Therapy (DOT), 2:841
Directors of Health Promotion and Education, 1:495
Disasters
  endemicity and, 1:293
  floods, 1:496; 2:711, *896*
  Hurricane Katrina, 1:180–181, *257*; 2:595
  Hurricane Mitch, 1:184
  Indian Ocean tsunami of 2004, 2:*537*, 646–647
Disease causation and Koch's Postulates, 1:221, 331, 465–467
  See also Epidemiology; Germ theory of disease
Disease frequency and risk assessment, 1:296
Diseases. *See* specific diseases and causative agents
Disfigurement
  filariasis, 1:316
  leishmaniasis, 1:483, 484, *484*, 485
  leprosy, 1:487–488
  yaws, 2:924
Disinfection, 1:**249–251**
  defined, 1:47, 249
  levels of, 1:57
  Lister, Joseph and, 1:47, 206, 250, 331, 431
  medical equipment, 1:207
  refugees bathing in soap, 1:*249*
  regulation, 1:57, 251
  standard precautions and, 2:783
Disinfection byproducts (DBPs), 1:251
Displaced people
  bilharzia transmission and, 1:95
  diphtheria and, 1:246
  hepatitis E outbreaks, 1:*390*
  Sudan, 1:229, *390*
  See also Population movement; Refugees

Disposal of waste. *See* Sanitation
Disseminated forms
  coccidioidomycosis, 1:194, 195
  histoplasmosis, 1:399
  Lyme disease, 1:510–511, 512
  nocardiosis, 2:591
  strongyloidiasis, 2:799
Dissociativity and staining techniques, 1:221–222
District level infrastructure
  overview, 2:665
  reporting systems, 1:298, 299
Divine Comedy illustration, 1:*229*
Divine right of kings, 2:755
DNA fingerprinting. *See* Genetic identification of microorganisms
DNA replication. *See* Genetic replication
Dobrava virus, 1:363
Doctor Who Sparked the MMR Debate Faces Misconduct Charge, ***2:534–535***
Doctors Without Borders. *See* Médecins Sans Frontières
DOD. *See* U.S. Department of Defense
Dog ticks, 1:512
Dogs
  alveolar echinococcosis, 1:26, 27
  animal importation regulation, 1:37
  West Nile virus, 2:902
Dole, Bob, 1:361
Doll, Sir Richard, 1:294
Domestic pets. *See* Pets
Donation programs. *See* Humanitarian aid
Doner, Sam, 2:807
Dormant periods. *See* Latency periods
Dormitory living, as cohorted community, 1:196–197
DOT (Directly Observed Therapy), 2:841
Douglas, R. Gordon, 2:873
Dowell, Scott, 1:5–6
Doxycycline
  Lyme disease, 1:511
  rickettsial diseases, 2:708
  Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:720
  syphilis, 2:806
  trachoma, 2:825
  typhus, 2:855, 856
Dr. Finlay Gets Full Credit Now, ***2:929–931***
Dracunculiasis, 1:*252*, **252–254**, 409; 2:898
Drancourt, Michel, 2:632–634
Drinker, Cecil, 2:651
Drinker, Philip, 2:651
Drinker respirators, 2:*649*, 650–651
Drinking water
  bilharzia, 1:95
  cholera, 1:175, 176, 179
  climate change, 1:184
  cryptosporidiosis, 1:218, 219
  cyclosporiasis, 1:226
  disinfection, 1:251; 2:789
  E. coli, 1:305
  giardiasis, 1:334
  See also Water sanitation and treatment
Droplet precautions, 1:**255–256**, 432
Drug cocktails. *See* Multi-drug therapy
Drug donation programs. *See* Humanitarian aid
Drug manufacturers. *See* Pharmaceutical industry
Drug resistance
  antibacterial products and, 1:332
  antiviral drugs, 1:455
  candidiasis, 1:140, 141
  chloroquine, 1:239
  disinfection and, 1:251
  fungal infections, 2:579
  Fusarium keratitis, 1:204
  H5N1 virus, 1:351
  leprosy, 1:489, 491
  lice, 1:498
  malaria, 2:518, 519
  melarsoprol, 1:239
  methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 2:570, 572
  parasitic disease vaccines and, 2:616
  pneumonia, 2:645–646
  Tamiflu, 1:62
  triclosan resistance and, 1:58
  trypanosomes, 1:4
  tuberculosis, 1:24, 282
  See also Antibiotic resistance; Resistant organisms
Drug stockpiling. *See* Stockpiling of drugs
Drug users
  bloodborne pathogen risks, 1:112
  hepatitis C risks, 1:385
  HIV/AIDS in, 1:7, 20, 21
Drugs. *See* Pharmaceutical industry; specific drugs and drug classes
Dry-fixing, 1:221
DTaP (diphtheria-tetanus-acellular pertussis) vaccine, 1:244; 2:817
DTP (diphtheria-tetanus-pertussis) vaccine, 1:244; 2:911
Duesberg, Peter, 1:466–467
Duggan, Patrick S., 2:671
Dumb rabies, 2:680
Dundee's Wonderland Nursery (UK), 1:435
Duration of disease and epidemiology, 1:296–297
Dysentery, 1:*257*, **257–261**; 2:737, 896

E

E. coli infections. *See Escherichia coli* O157:H7
Ear, external, 2:803
Ear drops, for swimmer's ear, 2:802
Ear infections (otitis externa), 2:*801*, 801–803
Ear infections (otitis media), 1:*262*, **262–264**
Earth's Best Organic baby food, 1:117
East Africa, dengue fever outbreaks, 1:233
East African trypanosomiasis, 1:1, 2, 3
Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE), 1:*265*, **265–268**, *266*, 287
Eastern Europe
  diphtheria re-emergence, 1:165, 242, *243*, 244, 245–246
  hantaviruses, 1:363
  syphilis, 2:805
  trichinellosis, 2:829
  tuberculosis, 2:861
  typhus, 2:855
Ebers Papyrus, 2:628
Ebola hemorrhagic fever (EHF), 1:37, 373, 375
Ebola-Ivory Coast subtype, 1:271
Ebola-Reston subtype, 1:271, 273
Ebola-Sudan subtype, 1:271, 272, 275
Ebola virus, 1:**269–275**
  animal importation regulation and, 1:*35*, 37
  images, 1:*270*, *372*
  makeshift disinfection methods, 1:250–251
  overview, 1:375
  patients in Uganda, 1:*269*
  Reston, Virginia outbreak, 2:867
  social inequalities and, 1:278
Ebola-Zaire subtype, 1:269, 270–271, 272
EBV. *See* Epstein-Barr virus
ECDC (European Center for Disease Prevention and Control), 1:213
Echinococcus multilocularis infections, 1:*26*, 26–28
Economic considerations
  African sleeping sickness medications, 1:4
  airborne precautions, 1:24
  alveolar echinococcosis, 1:27

  anthrax bioterrorism, 1:45
  antiretroviral treatment distribution, 1:240
  antiviral drugs, 1:446
  bioterrorism preparedness, 1:102–103
  bovine spongiform encephalopathy-related meat bans, 1:120
  cancer, 1:137
  chickenpox vaccine, 1:155–156
  childhood immunization programs, 1:161–162
  coccidioidomycosis outbreaks, 1:195
  colds, 1:201
  Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:210
  cryptosporidiosis outbreaks, 1:219–220
  DDT, 2:567
  dracunculiasis, 1:253
  E. coli infections, 1:307
  ear infections, 1:263
  early plague, 2:631
  emerging diseases, 1:283; 2:921
  encephalitis, 1:288
  filariasis, 1:316
  food-borne illness, 1:319, 320
  handwashing and, 1:359
  health care, 1:434
  hepatitis B, 1:380
  highly active antiretroviral therapy, 1:62
  H5N1-induced culling, 2:671
  human papillomavirus infection vaccine, 1:137
  influenza, 1:440
  integrated vector management, 1:409
  malaria, 1:279–280
  neglected tropical diseases, 2:836
  pink eye, 2:622
  Rift Valley fever, 2:712
  river blindness, 2:717
  rotavirus infections, 2:724
  rubella, 2:730
  Salmonella infections, 2:735
  SARS precautions, 1:256, *276*
  trachoma, 2:826
  trichinellosis, 2:830
  tuberculosis programs, 1:279; 2:841–842
  vaccines, 2:871, 872–874
  vector-borne diseases, 2:878–879
  viral diseases, 2:884
  water-borne diseases, 2:897
  West Nile virus, 2:903
Economic Costs of Malaria Are Many Times Higher Than Previously Estimated (press release), ***1:279–280***
Economic development, 1:*276*, **276–280**, *277*
ECOSOC (United Nations Economic and Social Council), 2:858
Ectopic pregnancy, from *Chlamydia* infections, 1:168
Eczema, 1:393
EDCP (Epidemiology and Disease Control Program), 1:225
Edible vaccines, 1:69
Education
  AIDS, 1:*11*; 2:*667*
  Chlamydia infections, 1:170–171
  helminth diseases, 1:370
  HSV-2, 1:397
  Lassa fever, 1:473
EEE (Eastern equine encephalitis), 1:*265*, **265–268**, *266*, 287
Eflornithine, for African sleeping sickness, 1:3–4, 239
Egars, Johnnie, 1:166
Egypt
  bilharzia, 1:95
  early plague, 2:627–628, 632
  leper colony, 1:*487*
  polio, 2:655
  Rift Valley fever, 2:711
Egyptian ophthalmia. *See* Trachoma
Ehrenberg, Christian Gottfried, 1:221
Ehrlich, Paul, 1:48
El Bushra, Hassan, 1:275
"El Garatillo." *See* Diphtheria
El Salvador, pneumonia outbreak in, 2:*642*
El Tor cholera serotype, 1:175, 178
Elbow bump greeting, 1:360
Elderly
  antibiotic sensitivity testing, 1:223
  chickenpox/shingles, 1:154
  Clostridium difficile infections, 1:187–188
  as cohorted community, 1:197
  Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:208
  E. coli infections, 1:306
  income/health status relationship, 1:278
  infectious disease trends, 1:230
  pneumonia, 2:644, 645
  shingles, 2:768, 769
Electrolyte replacement, 1:177, 180, 219
Electron microscopes, 2:553, 555
Elephantiasis
  from filariasis, 1:315, *315*, 316
  as tropical disease, 2:834
ELISA antibody tests, 1:13
Elizabeth Glaser Pediatric AIDS Foundation, 2:759
Elizabeth of Thuringia (saint), 1:*488*
Elk and brucellosis, 1:124
Ellermann, Wilhelm, 1:135
Ellis Island Great Hall, 1:*418*
Emergency response
  bioterrorism preparedness, 1:104
  field level response to outbreaks, 2:*606*, 606–611
Emerging infectious diseases, 1:**281–284**
  avian flu, 1:283, 433, 440; 2:884
  community-associated MRSa, 2:572
  cryptosporidiosis, 1:323; 2:896, 897
  Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:266
  epidemiology and, 1:299
  global examples, 1:*281*
  hantavirus pulmonary syndrome, 1:148
  helminth diseases, 1:371
  H5N1 virus, 1:440, 446
  leptospirosis, 1:495
  MRSA, 1:433
  Nipah virus, 2:589
  notifiable diseases and, 2:600
  plague, 2:*606*
  SARS, 1:*282*
  seasonal variation in disease and, 1:230
  West Nile virus, 1:288–289; 2:566, 692, 902, 903
  wildlife trade and, 2:921
  zoonoses, 2:935, 937
  See also Re-emerging infectious diseases
Emerging Infectious Diseases (journal), 1:5, 147; 2:690
Emory University, 1:78, 146
Encephalitis, 1:**285–290**
  Eastern equine, 1:*265*, **265–268**, *266*, 287
  hand, foot and mouth disease and, 1:356
  HSV-1 and, 1:393, 394
  Japanese, 1:*285*, 288, 289, *459*, **459–461**
  measles and, 2:532
  Nipah virus and, 2:*588*, 588–590
  patient in India, 1:*285*
  St. Louis, 1:287, 372; 2:**731–732**
  West Nile virus and, 2:900
Encephalomyelitis, 1:285
Endemic flea-borne typhus, 2:852, 853, 854, 855
Endemicity, 1:**291–293**
Enders, John F., 2:648, 651
Endocytosis, 2:881
Enfuvirtide, 1:13
England. *See* United Kingdom
Enrofloxacin ban, 2:700
Entamoeba histolytica infections, 1:*29*, 29–31; 2:896
Enteric fever. *See* Typhoid fever
Enterobius vermicularis infections, 1:370; 2:*624*, 624–626

- Enterococcal infections, antibiotic resistance of, 2:*875*, 875–877
- Enterotoxins, 2:734
- Enteroviruses, 1:356; 2:544, 545
- Environmental issues
  - antimicrobial soap waste, 1:58
  - *Burkholderia* species as aid, 1:128
  - DDT, 2:520–521, 566
  - drinking water disinfection, 1:251
  - insecticides, 1:65
  - mosquito pesticides, 2:568, 903
  - pesticides, 2:617
  - *See also* Climate change
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
  - disinfectant regulation, 1:57, 251
  - water system standards, 1:220; 2:735, 933
- Enzymatic sterilization, 2:789–790
- Enzyme targeting, 1:60
- Eosin dye, 1:222
- Eosinophilic meningitis, 1:32, 33
- EPA. *See* Environmental Protection Agency
- *Epic of Gilgamesh*, 2:627
- Epidemic and Pandemic Alert and Response (EPR), 2:774–775
- Epidemic arthritic erythema, 2:687–688
- Epidemic louse-borne typhus, 2:852, 853, 855, 856–857
- Epidemics
  - African sleeping sickness, 1:1, 3, 4
  - bovine spongiform encephalopathy, 1:118, 119, 120
  - cholera, 1:178, 295, 299, *300*, 479; 2:607, 736
  - control efforts, 1:297
  - diphtheria, 1:165, 242, *243*, 244, 245–246
  - *vs.* endemicity, 1:291, 292–293
  - influenza, 1:452, 453–454
  - late-peaking diseases, 1:230
  - modeling of, 1:230–231
  - rubella, 2:729
  - U.S. reporting systems, 2:665–666
  - war and, 2:*889*, 889–894, *890*
- Epidemiology, 1:**294–300**
  - Bill of Mortality, 1:*295*
  - field level response and, 2:*606*, 606–611
  - foot and mouth disease analysis, 1:*294*
  - Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network and, 1:336
  - influenza pandemic of 1918, 2:890–891
  - London cholera analysis, 1:*300*
  - STD project in India, 1:*297*
- Epidemiology and Disease Control Program (EDCP), 1:225, 226
- Epididymitis, 1:346
- Epstein, Anthony, 1:135
- Epstein, Michael, 1:301; 2:559
- Epstein, Paul, 1:184
- Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), 1:**301–303**
  - cancer link, 1:135–136, 137
  - conjunctivitis and, 1:*301*
  - mononucleosis from, 2:559–564
- Equine encephalitis, 1:287
  - *See also* Eastern equine encephalitis
- Equipment, medical. *See* Medical equipment
- Equipment, protective. *See* Personal protective equipment
- Eradication programs
  - dracunculiasis, 1:253–254
  - endemicity and, 1:291–292
  - polio, 1:283–284
  - smallpox, 2:771, *773–774*
  - taeniasis, 2:812
  - WHO work, 2:915–916
  - *See also* Vaccines and vaccine development
- Erlich, Paul, 1:221
- Erskine, Marjorie Halcrow, 2:633
- Erythema infectiosum, 1:312–314
- Erythema migrans rash, 1:510, *511*
- Erythromicin
  - diphtheria, 1:244
  - rat-bite fever, 2:688
  - scarlet fever, 2:753
  - syphilis, 2:806
  - trachoma, 2:825
  - whooping cough, 2:911
- Eschars, from typhus, 2:853
- *Escherichia coli* O157:H7, 1:**304–307**
  - antimicrobial soaps and, 1:57
  - bacteria images, 1:*305*, *318*
  - as emerging disease, 1:282
  - gene transfer and, 1:68, 69; 2:548–549
  - history, 1:84, 304–305, 319
  - outbreak in Canada, 2:898
  - warning sign, 1:*304*
- Eskazole. *See* Albendazole
- Esophageal cancer, 1:367
- Esophageal candidiasis, 1:139
- Essential services, access to. *See* Access to essential services
- Estonia, typhus hospital in, 2:*852*
- Ethical issues
  - Ebola virus testing, 1:274
  - edible vaccines, 1:69
  - gene therapy, 2:706
  - HIV/AIDS research funding, 1:22
  - human papillomavirus infection vaccine, 1:415
  - irradiation, 1:320, 321
  - isolation and quarantine policies, 1:457–458
  - Koch's Postulates and, 1:467
  - life sciences knowledge, 1:105
  - recombinant DNA research, 1:67–69
  - reconstruction of 1918 influenza virus, 1:446
  - self-experimentation of scientists, 1:*308*, 308–311, 366–367
  - smallpox virus research, 2:776, 778
  - Tuskegee Syphilis Study, 2:806, 807–809
  - vaccination choice, 1:162–166
- Ethiopia, louse-borne relapsing fever in, 2:695
- Ethylene oxide sterilization, 2:789
- Europe
  - animal importation, 1:36
  - anthrax outbreak, 1:42
  - babesiosis cases, 1:81, 82
  - cholera, 1:177, 479
  - *Culex* mosquitoes, 2:900
  - diphtheria, 1:243
  - early AIDS cases, 1:20
  - hantaviruses, 1:363
  - leprosy, 1:488
  - liver fluke infections, 1:504
  - louse-borne relapsing fever, 2:695
  - necrotizing fasciitis, 2:585
  - plague, 1:64; 2:*628*, 630–632
  - smallpox, 2:770–771
  - tapeworm infections, 2:814
  - trichinellosis, 2:829, 830
  - tularemia, 2:846
  - typhus, 2:854, 855
  - West Nile virus, 2:901
  - *See also* specific countries and regions
- European Center for Disease Prevention and Control (ECDC), 1:213
- European Medicines Agency, 1:324
- European Union, nontherapeutic antibiotics ban, 1:54; 2:700, 877
- Eustachian tube, 1:262, 263
- Evang, Karl, 2:915
- Evolution and disease, 1:425–426; 2:547–550
- Exclusion policies
  - fifth disease, 1:313, 314
  - hand, foot and mouth disease, 1:357
  - lice outbreaks, 1:498
  - pandemic preparedness and, 2:614
- Excrement tanks, 2:738
- Executive Order 13295, 1:458, 481; 2:746
- Exemptions for vaccines, 1:164

Exodus, book of (Bible), 1:43
Exopolysaccharide coatings, 1:411–412
Expanded Program on Immunization, 1:161
Exposed: scientists who risked disease for discovery, 1:*308*, **308–311**
Exposure, cold temperatures, 1:200, 202
Extended wear contact lenses, 1:203–205
Extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis. *See* XDR-TB
External ear, 2:803
Extrapulmonary tuberculosis, 2:*755*, 755–757, 838
Extreme weather and climate change, 1:184
Extremely drug-resistant tuberculosis. *See* XDR-TB
Eye disorders. *See* Visual disorders

F

Face masks, 1:256
Fact Book Fiscal Year 2004 (NIH), 1:137
Factor VIII, 1:110
Faden, Ruth R., 2:671
False positives, defined, 1:298
Falwell, Jerry, 1:17
Famciclovir, 1:393; 2:768
Familial Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, 2:657
Familial fatal insomnia (FFI), 2:657–658
Famine fever. *See* Typhus
Farming. *See* Agriculture
Farr, William, 1:295
Fascioliasis, 1:503–505
Fatalities. *See* Deaths
FBI (Federal Bureau of Investigation), 1:44, *44*
FDA. *See* U.S. Food and Drug Administration
Febrile seizures, from vaccines, 1:164
Fecal-oral transmission, defined, 1:433
Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI), 1:44, *44*
Federal level infrastructure. *See* National level infrastructure
Feed for animals. *See* Animal feed
Ferrets, influenza research on, 1:441
Fertility, by country, 1:*228*
Fetal development
  chickenpox, 1:154, 155
  group B streptococcal infections, 2:797
  rubella, 2:729
  toxoplasmosis, 2:822
  See also Infants; Pregnancy
Fever
  African sleeping sickness, 1:2
  brucellosis, 1:123
  chickenpox, 1:154
  hantaviruses, 1:363
  RBF and, 2:687–688
  relapsing fever, 1:497; 2:694–696
Fever blisters. *See* Cold sores
FFI (familial fatal insomnia), 2:657–658
Field-based biosensors, 2:686
Field level responses to outbreaks, 2:*606*, 606–611, 747, 867
Fifth disease, 1:**312–314**
Filariasis, 1:*315*, **315–317**, *316*; 2:834, 835
Filatov's disease. *See* Mononucleosis
Filippo, Giovanni, 1:153
Filoviruses, 1:373; 2:523, 883
Filters, water. *See* Water filters
Financial considerations. *See* Economic considerations
Fine-toothed combs, for lice, 1:498
Fingers, disease effects on, 1:392–393; 2:*577*
Finlay, Carlos, 1:308; 2:929–931
First International Sanitary Conference, 1:479
First Pandemic (plague), 2:629–630, *637*
First responders. *See* Emergency response
First Test Approved to Help Detect West Nile Virus (press release), ***2:903–904***
Fischetti, Vincent, 2:586
Fish, anisakiasis from, 1:38, 39, 40
Flagella, 1:304, 509
Flat smallpox, 2:772
Flaviviruses, 1:373; 2:883
Fleming, Sir Alexander, 1:48
Flesh-eating disease. *See* Necrotizing fasciitis
Floods
  in Bangladesh, 2:*896*
  leptospirosis and, 1:496
  Rift Valley fever and, 2:711
Fluconazole
  candidiasis, 1:140
  coccidioidomycosis, 1:195
  Cryptococcus neoformans infections, 1:215
Fluid replacement. *See* Oral rehydration methods
Fluke infections, 1:369–370, 503–505
Fluoroquinolones
  antibiotic resistance of, 1:223–224
  pneumonia, 2:645
  rickettsial diseases, 2:708
Flupirtine, 1:209
Flying squirrels, typhus from, 2:855
Foam cells, 1:172
Foci of diseases, 1:291
Fomites, 1:206, 358
Food and Drug Administration (U.S.). *See* U.S. Food and Drug Administration
Food-borne disease and food safety, 1:*318*, **318–321**
  angiostrongyliasis, 1:33–34, 38
  anisakiasis, 1:39, 40
  bovine spongiform encephalopathy/Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:119, 120, 209, 210; 2:658–659
  Campylobacter infections, 1:132, 133–134
  cholera, 1:175, 176, 179
  cyclosporiasis, 1:225, 226
  E. coli, 1:84, 305, 306–307, 319
  hepatitis A, 1:378–379
  hepatitis E, 1:390, 391
  listeriosis, 1:319, *500*, 500–502
  marine toxins, 2:527–530
  Norovirus infections, 2:594–596
  rapid tests, 2:686
  Salmonella infections, 1:319, 320–321; 2:*733*, 733–735
  scrofula, 2:756
  tapeworm infections, 2:*813*, 813–815
  typhoid fever, 2:849, 850, 851
  yersiniosis, 2:932, 933
Food imports. *See* Importation of food
Food irradiation. *See* Irradiation
Food labeling. *See* Labeling
Food poisoning. *See* Food-borne disease and food safety
Food-service workers
  HIV transmission, 1:9–10
  Norovirus infections and, 2:595, 596
Food Standards Agency (UK), 1:120
Foodborne Diseases Active Surveillance Network, 2:932, 933
Foot and mouth disease, epidemiological map, 1:*294*
Fore people, 1:120, 468–470, *469*
Formaldehyde, as disinfectant, 1:251
Formenty, Pierre, 1:275; 2:*887*
Foscarnet, for cytomegalovirus, 1:191
Four Corners region, hantaviruses in, 1:148, 364

France
  chikungunya, 1:159
  Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:210
  diphtheria ward, 1:*244*
  military influenza patient ward, 1:*443*
  royal healing ceremonies, 2:755
  Yersinia pestis genetic identification, 2:632–634
Francisella tularensis infections, 2:*845*, 845–848
Frank, Anne, 2:855
Freeman, Lisa, 1:290
Freeman, Stone, 1:290
Frequency assessment, 1:296
Friction in handwashing, 1:359
Fruit bats, as Nipah virus reservoir, 2:588, 589
Fulminant hepatitis, 1:388, 391
Fume hoods, 1:433
Fumigation programs. *See* Spraying programs
Funding of research. *See* Research funding
Fungal infections. *See* Mycotic diseases
Fungal keratitis, 1:203–205
Fungi, 2:551, 579
Fungus balls, 1:70, 71
Furious rabies, 2:680
Fusarium keratitis, 1:203–205
Fusion inhibitors, 1:13

G

Gabon, Ebola virus in, 1:37, 270–271, 273, 274
Gajdusek, Carleton, 1:120, 468
Galen, 1:345; 2:629
Galileo, 2:553
Gallo, Robert, 1:13; 2:706
Gamgee, John, 1:36
Ganciclovir, 1:191, 288
GAO (General Accounting Office), 2:608
Garcia del Huerto, Dr., 1:178
Gardasil, 1:136, 137, 415
GAS (group A streptococci). *See* Streptococcal infections, Group A
Gastric diseases and *Helicobacter pylori* infections, 1:136, 137, 309–310, 366–367
Gastroenteritis, 1:**322–324**
  E. coli and, 1:304
  Noroviruses and, 1:319; 2:594–596
  rotavirus infections and, 1:322, 324; 2:722–724, *723*
GAVI (Global Alliance for Vaccines and Immunization), 1:148, 354
Gay Freedom Day Parade, 1:*10*
GBS (group B streptococcal infections). *See* Streptococcal infections, Group B
GBUI (Global Buruli Ulcer Initiative), 1:130
Gel hand sanitizers. *See* Hand sanitizers
Gelsinger, Jesse, 2:706
Gene therapy, 1:*68*; 2:706
Gene transfer
  antibiotic resistance, 1:52–53
  methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 2:570
  microbial evolution, 2:547–548
  plasmid-mediated, 1:52–53; 2:547–548
  smallpox virus genetic engineering, 2:778
General Accounting Office (GAO), 2:608
General Medical Council (UK), 2:534
Generalized immune cells, defined, 1:423
Genetic engineering
  edible vaccines, 1:69
  horizontal gene transfer and, 2:548
  mosquitoes, 2:567
  rapid tests and, 2:686
  smallpox virus, 2:778
  vaccines, 2:872
Genetic identification of microorganisms, 1:307, **325–327**; 2:632–634
Genetic mutations
  Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:210
  drug resistance, 2:697–699
  H5N1 virus, 1:349, 350
  influenza, 1:452–455
  influenza virus of 1918, 1:444, 448
  microbial evolution, 2:548
  prion diseases, 2:658
  spontaneous antibiotic resistance, 1:52
Genetic recombination and HIV, 1:402, 404
Genetic replication
  antiviral drugs, 1:60–61
  microbial evolution, 2:548
  retroviruses, 1:402; 2:704
  viral diseases, 2:881
Genetic translation and antiviral drugs, 1:61
Genetics
  Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv and, 1:210
  Helicobacter pylori infections and, 1:367
  leprosy and, 1:490
  West Nile virus and, 2:902
  See also Genome sequencing
Genital herpes, 1:328, *395*, 395–398; 2:760–761
Genital warts, 1:414; 2:762
Genome sequencing
  Campylobacter bacteria, 1:*132*
  de novo virus synthesis and, 2:778
  emerging diseases and, 1:283
  human genome, 1:105
  influenza virus of 1918, 1:444, 446
  microorganism research and, 2:552
  Mycobacterium ulceranus, 1:130
  rapid tests and, 2:684
  SARS, 2:743
Gentamicin, for tularemia, 2:847
Genus identification, 1:325
Genus-species classification, 2:551
Geographic focality, 1:291
Geographic scope, defined, 1:297
Georgetown University, 1:103
Gerberding, Julie, 1:441
Germ theory of disease, 1:**329–332**
  Koch, Robert, 1:178, 221, 330, 465; 2:551
  Pasteur, Louis, 1:178, 250, 330–331; 2:598
  Snow, John, 1:178, 299
  weather/disease relationship, 1:182
Germany
  anthrax biological weapons, 1:42
  leptospirosis, 1:495, 496
  Marburg hemorrhagic fever discovery, 2:523
  waiting mortuaries, 2:633
Gerstmann-Straussler-Scheinker syndrome (GSS), 2:657
Get Smart: Know When Antibiotics Work campaign, 2:699
Ghana
  bilharzia, 1:94
  Buruli ulcer, 2:835
  yellow fever, 2:928*t*
Ghoson, Joseph, 1:341
Giant African land snails, as angiostrongyliasis carrier, 1:*32*, 34
Giard, Alfred, 1:333
Giardiasis, 1:*333*, **333–335**; 2:896
GIDEON (Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network), 1:**336–337**
Giemsa stains, 2:519, 554
Giese, Jeanna, 2:682–683
Gifford, David R., 1:289

Gigantobilharzia, swimmer's itch from, 2:802
Gilchrist, Thomas, 1:107
Gilchrist's disease. *See* Blastomycosis
Gingivostomatitis, 1:78
Gipson, John L., 2:564
GIVS (Global Immunization Vision and Strategy), 1:354
Glanders, 1:*126*, 126–127, *338*, **338–340**
Glandular fever. *See* Mononucleosis
Gleavey, Dylan, 1:289
Global Alliance for the Elimination of Leprosy, 1:491
Global Alliance for Vaccines and Immunization (GAVI), 1:148, 354
Global Appeal to End Stigma and Discrimination against People Affected by Leprosy, 1:491, ***492***
Global Buruli Ulcer Initiative (GBUI), 1:130
Global climate change. *See* Climate change
Global Fund to Fight AIDS, Tuberculosis and Malaria, 2:860, 861
Global HIV/AIDS Vaccine Enterprise, 1:282
Global Immunization Vision and Strategy (GIVS), 1:354
Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network (GIDEON), 1:**336–337**
Global Movement for Children, 2:858–859
Global Outbreak Alert and Response Network (GOARN), 2:607–608
Global Patient Safety Challenge, 2:598
Global Polio Eradication Initiative, 2:648, 652, *654*, 654–656, 916
Global Reference Group on HIV/AIDS and Human Rights, 1:240
Global Salm-Surv program, 2:735
Global Strategic Framework for Integrated Vector Management, 1:409
Global Task Force on Cholera Control, 1:178, 179
Global Vaccine Action Plan, 2:614
Global warming. *See* Climate change
Globalization, 1:**341–344**
  International Health Regulations and, 1:418
  international law and, 1:478–482
  lung fluke infections and, 1:507
  world trade issues, 2:918–922
  zoonoses and, 2:935
Glossina morsitans morsitans (tsetse fly), 1:*2*
Gloves
  patient contact and, 1:207
  purpose, 2:619
  as standard precaution, 2:782
glpD gene sequencing, 2:632–634
Glutaraldehyde, as disinfectant, 1:251
GOARN (Global Outbreak Alert and Response Network), 2:607–608
Goats, anthrax in, 1:*43*
Gonorrhea, 1:*345*, **345–348**, *346*; 2:759–960
Gore, Al, 1:361
Gorgas, William Crawford, 1:293; 2:886, *925*, 926
Gostin, Lawrence, 2:921
Gottlieb, Jia, 1:166
Gottlieb, Michael S., 1:21
Gould, Stephen Jay, 1:426
Gowns, as standard precaution, 2:782–783
Gowon, Yakubu, 1:371
Gram, Hans Christian, 1:221, 222
Gram-negative bacteria
  defined, 1:222
  MIC testing and, 1:22
  opportunistic infections and, 2:603
Gram-positive bacteria
  defined, 1:222
  MIC testing and, 1:223
  opportunistic infections and, 2:603
Gram stains, 1:222; 2:541, 554
Grant, James Augustus, 1:129
Granular conjunctivitis. *See* Trachoma
Granulocytopenia, 2:603
Graunt, John, 1:295
Gravitation law, 2:631
Great apes and Ebola virus, 1:274
Great Hall of Ellis Island, 1:*418*
Greece, early plague in, 2:628–629
Greenaway, Heather, 1:435–436
GreeneChips, 2:616
Greenfield, Karl Taro, 2:608–611
Gross, Ludwick, 2:856–857
Group A streptococcal infections. *See* Streptococcal infections, Group A
Group B streptococcal infections. *See* Streptococcal infections, Group B
Group *vs.* individual evolution, 1:426
Groups A-C rotavirus, 1:322
Gruinard, Scotland anthrax contamination, 1:43
GSS (Gerstmann-Straussler-Scheinker) syndrome, 2:657
Guangdong, China SARS outbreak, 2:740, 742
Guérin, Camille, 2:840
Guerin, Philippe, 1:260, 261
Guideline for Isolation Procedures in Hospitals (CDC) , 1:206
Guillan-Barré syndrome, 1:133
Guinea worm disease. *See* Dracunculiasis
Gulf of Mexico, disease outbreaks in, 1:177; 2:725
Gummatous syphilis, 2:805
Guyana, leptospirosis lecture in, 1:*85*

H

H1, H2 and H3 influenza, 1:74
H5 and H7 influenza, 1:74
HA antigens. *See* Hemagglutinin (HA) antigens
Haakon (prince of Norway), 1:38
HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy), 1:14, 61–62
Haemophilus influenzae, 1:262, **352–354**
Haemophilus influenzae type B meningitis (Hib)
  deaths from, 1:162
  overview, 1:352, 353–354; 2:540
  vaccines, 1:161, 352, *352*, 353–354; 2:542
Haiti
  filariasis patient, 1:*315*
  girl with water bucket, 2:*895*
  HIV/AIDS prevention programs, 2:862
  immigration and malaria, 1:418
  malaria, 2:517
  scabies, 2:*749*
Hamburger disease. *See Escherichia coli* O157:H7
Hand, foot and mouth disease (HFMD), 1:*355*, **355–357**
Hand sanitizers
  in hospitals, 1:358; 2:*570*, 571, 783
  political campaigns and, 1:360–361
  standard precautions, 2:782, 783
Handwashing, 1:**358–361**
  antimicrobial soaps, 1:*56*, 56–58
  Campylobacter infection prevention, 1:133
  children at petting zoo, 1:*358*
  contact precautions, 1:206–207
  cyclosporiasis prevention, 1:226
  dysentery prevention, 1:259
  E. coli infection prevention, 1:306, 307
  food-borne illness and, 1:319
  improper methods, 1:58, 251
  infection control and, 1:433

  - low compliance rate, 2:571–572, 783
  - Norovirus infections and, 2:595
  - nosocomial infections and, 2:598, 599
  - puerperal fever prevention and, 1:330, 359; 2:598
  - standard precautions, 1:359; 2:782, 783
- Hanoi, Vietnam SARS outbreak, 2:741, 747
- Hansen, Gerhard Henrik Armauer, 1:489
- Hansen's disease. *See* Leprosy
- Hantaan virus, 1:362, 363
- Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome (HPS)
  - as emerging threat, 1:148
  - overview, 1:362, 364–365, 373
  - research, 2:*885*
- Hantaviruses, 1:148, *362*, **362–365**; 2:*885*
- HAP (hospital-acquired pneumonia), 2:644–646
- Harm reduction strategies, for STDs, 2:762
- Harold (political contact), 2:610
- Hartsfield Jackson International Airport, quarantine station, 2:*771*
- Harvard University, 1:239, 279
- Haskell County, Kansas, as start of 1918 influenza pandemic, 2:890–891
- Haverhill fever. *See* Rat-bite fever
- Hawaii
  - dengue fever, 1:233, 234
  - liver fluke infections, 1:504
- HBV. *See* Hepatitis B virus
- HCV. *See* Hepatitis C virus
- Head lice, 1:497–499
- Healers, royalty as, 2:755, 757
- Health Canada, 1:62, 216
- Health care access. *See* Access to essential services
- Health care-associated infections. *See* Nosocomial infections
- Health care workers
  - anthrax prevention, 1:46
  - antibiotics overuse and, 1:224
  - bloodborne pathogen risks, 1:112, 113
  - contact precautions, 1:206–207
  - cryptosporidiosis risks, 1:218
  - handwashing and, 1:58; 2:783
  - HIV infection, 1:7–8
  - infection control equipment, 1:433–434
  - infection control professionals, 1:431
  - nosocomial infections and, 2:598
  - personal protective equipment, 2:618–620
  - puerperal fever and, 2:674, 675–676
  - SARS and, 2:741, 747, 748
  - typhus in, 2:*852*
- Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA), 1:481
- Health Protection Agency (UK)
  - *Clostridium difficile* outbreak, 1:188
  - Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv work, 1:209
  - scarlet fever outbreak, 2:753–754
  - STDs data, 2:762
- Healthy Drinking Water Program, 2:898
- Healthy Environments for Children Alliance, 2:879
- Hearing
  - ear anatomy, 2:803
  - ear infections, 1:262, 264
  - meningitis and, 2:542
- Heart complications
  - *Chlamydia* infections and, 1:172, 173
  - Kawasaki syndrome and, 1:462, 463
  - Lyme disease and, 1:511
  - *Staphylococcus aureus* and, 2:785–786
- Heat sterilization, 2:788–789
- Heberden, William, 1:153
- Heine, Heinrich, 1:180
- *Helicobacter pylori*, 1:**366–368**
  - bacteria image, 1:*366*
  - stomach cancer and, 1:136, 137, 367
  - stomach ulcers and, 1:309–310, 366–367, 466
- Helminth diseases, 1:*369–371*
  - *See also* Antihelminthic drugs; specific diseases
- Helper T cells, 1:403, 424
- Helsinki Declaration, 1:310
- Hemagglutinin (HA) antigens
  - antigenic drift and, 1:439
  - H5N1 virus, 1:74, 350
  - influenza pandemics and, 1:441, 444, 450
- Hemolytic uremic syndrome, 1:306
- Hemophilia and HIV, 1:22, 110
- Hemorrhagic fever with renal syndrome (HFRS), 1:148
- Hemorrhagic fevers, 1:**372–375**
  - in Bolivia, 2:885, 886–887
  - Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:*212*, 212–214
  - Ebola virus and, 1:37, *372*, 375; 2:619–620
  - hantaviruses, 1:363
  - Rift Valley fever, 2:711
  - *See also* Marburg hemorrhagic fever
- Hemorrhagic smallpox, 2:772–773
- Henderson Act of 1943, 2:807
- Hendon, Ernest, 2:807
- Henry Frederick (prince of Wales), 2:*849*
- HEPA (high-efficiency particulate) filters, 1:24
- Hepatitis A virus (HAV), 1:**376–379**
  - liver tissue sampling, 1:*378*
  - map of risk areas, 1:*377*
  - table of cases, 1:376*t*
- Hepatitis B virus (HBV), 1:**380–383**
  - decrease in infections, 1:114
  - hepatitis D and, 1:388, 389
  - images, 1:*380*
  - liver cancer and, 1:136
  - as major bloodborne pathogen, 1:112, 113
  - table of cases, 1:381*t*
  - vaccines, 1:*67*, 113, 114, 136, 161, 382, 388
- Hepatitis C virus (HCV), 1:**384–387**
  - blood-borne transmission, 1:110, 112, 113, 384
  - DNA map, 1:*386*
  - liver cancer and, 1:136
  - map of risk areas, 1:*384*
  - table of cases, 1:385*t*
- Hepatitis D virus (HDV), 1:*388*, **388–389**
- Hepatitis E virus (HEV), 1:*390*, **390–391**; 2:883
- Hepatocellular carcinoma. *See* Liver cancer
- Herd immunity, 1:161, 162–165
- Herodotus, 2:755
- Herpes B virus, 1:78–80
- *Herpes gladiatorum*, 1:393, 394
- Herpes simplex 1 virus (HSV-1), 1:**392–394**
  - cold sores from, 1:198, *392*
  - encephalitis from, 1:286
- Herpes simplex 2 virus (HSV-2), 1:**395–398**
  - encephalitis from, 1:286
  - genital herpes from, 1:328, 395; 2:760–761
  - image, 1:*395*
- Herpes simplex viruses, 1:286, 287
- Herpes zoster infections. *See* Shingles infections
- Herpesviruses, overview, 2:883
- Herpetic whitlow, 1:392–393
- Heterophile antibodies, 1:302; 2:561
- Heterosexual transmission of HIV, 1:7, 15, 16, 20, 298
- HEW (Department of Health, Education and Welfare), 2:806

- HFMD (hand, foot and mouth disease), 1:*355*, 355–357
- HHS. *See* U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
- HHV-4 (human herpes virus 4). *See* Epstein-Barr virus
- HHV-8 (human herpes virus 8), 1:136
- Hib. *See Haemophilus influenzae* type B meningitis
- High-efficiency particulate (HEPA) filters, 1:24
- High-level disinfection, 1:57, 249
- Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), 1:14, 61–62
- HIPAA (Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996), 1:481
- Hippocrates
  - cholera, 1:178
  - diphtheria, 1:245
  - disease causation, 1:294–295
  - hygiene, 1:206
  - mumps, 2:573
  - tuberculosis, 2:837
  - weather and disease, 1:182
- Histoplasmosis, 1:**399–401**
- *History of the Peloponnesian War* (Thucydides), 2:628
- *History of the Wars* (Procopius), 2:629
- HIV fusion inhibitors, 1:13
- HIV (human immunodeficiency virus), 1:*402–404*
  - blood donation transmission, 1:7, 8, 15, 22, 110–111
  - candidiasis and, 1:139, 140
  - *Cryptococcus neoformans* infections and, 1:215, 216
  - cytomegalovirus and, 1:190, 191
  - discovery, 1:13, 20–21; 2:706
  - drug-resistant tuberculosis and, 1:24
  - as emerging disease, 1:282
  - gonorrhea and, 1:348
  - HHV-8 and, 1:136
  - HSV-2 and, 1:396
  - Koch's Postulates and, 1:466–467
  - leishmaniasis co-infection, 1:485
  - as major bloodborne pathogen, 1:112, 113
  - malaria and, 1:185; 2:690
  - map of risk areas, 1:*19*
  - Millennium Goals, 2:860–862
  - National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases research on, 2:582
  - overview, 2:758–759
  - patients, 1:*60*, *403*
  - *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia and, 2:640, 641, 643
  - postexposure prophylaxis for, 1:114
  - in prisons, 1:197
  - research, 1:14–15
  - scrofula and, 2:756, 757
  - in Somalia, 1:419
  - syphilis and, 2:807
  - tracking policies, 1:*478*
  - tuberculosis and, 2:*603*, 690–691
  - virus image, 1:*402*
  - in women and minorities, 2:913
  - *See also* AIDS
- H1N1 virus, as cause of 1918 pandemic, 1:444, 445
- H2N2 virus, as cause of 1957 pandemic, 1:450
- H5N1 virus, 1:**349–351**
  - CDC research, 1:441
  - as emerging disease, 1:440, 446
  - National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases research, 2:583
  - PMED vaccine delivery devices, 2:*871*
  - poultry vendor, 1:*349*
  - virus images, 1:*350*
  - wildlife trade and, 2:920
  - *See also* Avian influenza
- Holler, Anthony F., 2:873
- Holmes, Oliver Wendell, 2:597–598
- Homeland Security Council (U.S.), 2:613
- Homeless people
  - arthropod-borne diseases and, 1:65
  - in Democratic Republic of the Congo, 2:*674*
  - tuberculosis and, 2:841
  - *See also* Poverty
- Homosexual transmission of HIV, 1:7, 19–20, 21, 22
- Honey, botulism from, 1:117
- Hong Kong
  - influenza outbreaks, 1:74
  - SARS outbreak, 1:343–344; 2:609, 742, 748
- Hooke, Robert, 1:329; 2:553
- Hookworm infections, 1:*405*, **405–407**
- Horizontal gene transfer, 2:547–548
- Horses
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:265, 266, 267
  - encephalitis, 1:287, 288
  - West Nile virus vaccine, 2:902–903
- Hospital-acquired pneumonia (HAP), 2:644–646
- Hospital disinfectants, defined, 1:57
- Hospital patients
  - airborne precautions, 1:*23*, 23–25
  - charter for tuberculosis care, 2:842–844
  - contact precautions, 1:206–207
  - droplet precautions, 1:255–256
  - HIV infection from health care worker, 1:8
  - rights and responsibilities, 2:842–844
  - transport limits, 1:207, 256
- Hospitals
  - antibiotic resistance and, 1:51–52
  - antimicrobial soap use, 1:57
  - aspergillosis surveillance, 1:71
  - availability of beds, 1:25*s*
  - biofilm bacteria growth, 2:699
  - cohorted communities and, 1:197
  - disinfection for, 1:249, 250
  - droplet precautions, 1:255–256
  - emergency room bioterrorism signs, 1:*100*
  - field level response and, 2:607, 608
  - handwashing and, 1:358, 433
  - infection control and, 1:431–435
  - isolation policies, 1:457
  - Médecins Sans Frontières projects, 2:537
  - puerperal fever and, 2:673–674
  - *Staphylococcus aureus* infections and, 2:786
  - vancomycin-resistant enterococci in, 2:876
  - *See also* Nosocomial infections; Standard precautions
- Host cells (viruses), 2:881
- Host focality, 1:291
- Hosts and vectors, 1:**408–410**; 2:*878*, 878–880
- Hot tub rash, 1:*411*, **411–412**
- *The Hot Zone* (Preston), 1:271, 274
- Hotez, Peter, 1:4–6
- Household transmission of disease
  - antibacterial products, 1:332
  - antimicrobial soaps, 1:57–58
  - epidemiological modeling, 1:230–231
  - HIV, 1:9
  - SARS, 2:667, 668
- Houston, Texas Norovirus infection outbreak, 2:595
- *How Charles Nicolle of the Pasteur Institute Discovered That Epidemic Typhus Is Transmitted by Lice: Reminiscences from My Years at the Pasteur Institute in Paris* (essay), ***2:856–857***
- Howard, Carter, 2:807
- HPS. *See* Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome
- HPV (human papillomavirus infection), 1:**413–416**
  - cervical cancer and, 1:135, 136; 2:761, 913
  - vaccines, 2:762–763
  - virus image, 1:*135*
  - warts from, 1:*413*; 2:761

HSV-1. *See* Herpes simplex 1 virus
HSV-2. *See* Herpes simplex 2 virus
HTLV-I (human T-lymphotropic virus I), 1:136; 2:704
HTLV-III (human T-cell leukemia virus III), 1:20–21
  See also HIV
Huang (political contact), 2:611
Human and animal proximity. *See* Proximity of humans and animals
Human Development Report of 2005 (UNDP), 2:860
Human enterovirus-71, 1:356
Human genome sequencing and bioterrorism, 1:105
Human herpes virus 4 (HHV-4). *See* Epstein-Barr virus
Human herpes virus 8 (HHV-8), 1:136
Human immunodeficiency virus. *See* HIV
Human itch mite infections (scabies), 2:*749*, 749–751, *750*
Human papillomaviruses. *See* HPV
Human parvovirus B19, 1:312
Human rights issues, HIV/AIDS as, 1:240
Human T-lymphotropic virus I (HTLV-I), 1:136; 2:704
Human T-lymphotropic virus III (HTLV-III), 1:20–21
  See also HIV
Human vaccines. *See* Vaccines and vaccine development
Human volunteers for research. *See* Volunteers for experiments
Humanitarian aid
  drug delivery programs, 1:239
  ivermectin donations, 2:717–718
  leprosy treatment donations, 1:491
  viral diseases and, 2:884
  See also Médecins Sans Frontières
Hun invasions and anthrax, 1:43
Hurricane Katrina
  cholera and, 1:180–181
  dysentery and, 1:*257*
  Norovirus infection outbreak, 2:595
Hurricane Mitch, 1:184
Hutu refugees, 1:*249*
Hyalomma ticks, 1:212
Hydrogen peroxide, as disinfectant, 1:25
Hygiene
  antibiotic resistance and, 2:549–550
  B virus exposure, 1:79
  cohorted community infections, 1:196, 197
  colds, 1:200, 201
  cytomegalovirus infections, 1:191, 192
  E. coli infection prevention, 1:306, 307
  food-borne illness, 1:319, 320
  Fusarium keratitis, 1:204–205
  germ theory and, 1:331, 332
  helminth diseases, 1:370
  hepatitis A, 1:378
  hepatitis B, 1:382
  hepatitis C, 1:385
  hepatitis E, 1:390, 391
  hookworm infections, 1:406
  impetigo, 1:429
  listeriosis prevention, 1:501
  measles, 2:533
  meningitis, viral, 2:545–546
  methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 2:572
  Norovirus infections, 2:595
  nosocomial infections, 2:598
  pinworm infections, 2:626
  plague, 2:638
  respiratory syncytial virus, 2:701, 702
  ringworm, 2:714
  rotavirus infections, 1:322
  Salmonella infections, 2:735
  SARS, 2:746
  shigellosis, 2:765, 766
  shingles, 2:769
  strep throat, 2:792
  Streptococcus infections, 1:430
  tapeworm infections prevention, 2:815
Hymenolepis species infections. *See* Tapeworm infections
Hynes Memorial Hospital, 2:*649*

I

IAPB (International Agency for the Prevention of Blindness), 2:718
Iatrogenic Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, 1:209; 2:657, 658
ICPs (infection control professionals), 1:431
ID Biomedical, 2:873
Identification of pathogens
  Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network, 1:336
  Koch's Postulates and, 2:745
  See also Culture and sensitivity (microbiology); Genetic identification of microorganisms
Idoxuridine, 1:60
IDSR (Integrated Disease Surveillance and Response program), 1:148
IgM Capture ELISA test, for West Nile Virus, 2:903, 904
IHR. *See* International Health Regulations
Iliad (Homer), 1:43
Illinois
  African snail seizure, 1:*32*
  cyclosporiasis outbreaks, 1:225
  flu shot clinic, 1:*438*
Immigration, 1:**417–420**, *418*; 2:616
Immune globulin treatments
  hepatitis A, 1:378, 379
  respiratory syncytial virus, 2:702
  tetanus, 2:817
Immune response to infection, 1:**421–427**
  antibody-antigen docking, 1:*421*
  colds, 1:200
  Cryptococcus neoformans infections and, 1:215
  influenza virus of 1918, 1:444–445
  rapid tests and, 2:686
  white blood cells, 1:*422*, *423*
Immune system, 1:230, 332, 421
Immunity
  chickenpox, 1:155
  defined, 1:160–161
  diphtheria, 1:245, 246
  Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:266
  fifth disease, 1:313
  herd, 1:161, 162–165
  smallpox, 2:772
Immunization Plus program, 2:859
Immunizations. *See* Vaccines and vaccine development
Immuno-based rapid tests. *See* Antibody tests
Immunocompromised people
  aspergillosis, 1:70, 71
  candidiasis, 1:139
  cat scratch disease, 1:142–143
  chickenpox, 1:154, 155
  coccidioidomycosis, 1:194
  Cryptococcus neoformans infections, 1:215
  cryptosporidiosis, 1:219, 220; 2:897
  cyclosporiasis, 1:225
  cytomegalovirus, 1:190, 191
  E. coli infections, 1:306
  fifth disease, 1:313
  fungal infections, 2:578, 579
  gastroenteritis, 1:322
  helminth diseases, 1:370
  histoplasmosis, 1:400, 401
  hot tub rash, 1:411, 412
  HSV-1, 1:393
  Legionnaire's disease, 1:476, 477
  listeriosis, 1:501
  mononucleosis, 2:562
  nocardiosis, 2:592–593

  opportunistic infections, 2:*603*, 603–605
  Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia, 2:640
  scabies, 2:749, 750
  shingles, 2:768, 769
  strongyloidiasis, 2:799–800
  tuberculosis, 2:837, 838, 841
Immunofluorescence, 2:554
Immunostrip testing, 2:684, 685–686
Impetigo, 1:*428*, **428–430**
Importation of animals. *See* Animal importation
Importation of food
  bovine spongiform encephalopathy/Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:119, 120, 210
  brucellosis, 1:124
  cyclosporiasis, 1:225
In Clean Politics, Flesh Is Pressed, Then Sanitized, ***1:360–361***
In Disaster's Wake: Tsunami Lung, ***2:646–647***
Inactive polio vaccine (IPV), 2:651–652
Incidence rate, 1:291, 295–297
Income and health status relationship, 1:*276*, 276–280, *277*, 425–426
Incubation period, defined, 1:297
Incus bones, 2:803
India
  bacterial meningitis, 2:*540*
  chikungunya, 1:157–158; 2:*689*
  cholera vaccine trials, 1:178
  ciprofloxacin production, 1:*49*
  dengue fever warning poster, 1:*374*
  diphtheria, 1:244
  early plague, 2:632
  encephalitis, 1:*285*
  filariasis, 1:315
  HIV/AIDS prevention programs, 2:862
  leishmaniasis, 1:484
  leprosy, 1:490, 491; 2:916
  louse-borne relapsing fever, 2:695
  malaria, 2:519
  Nipah virus encephalitis, 2:589
  nurse with vaccine bag, 1:*238*
  polio, 2:*648*, 650, 652, 655
  STD reduction project, 1:*297*
  torrential rains, 1:184
  tropical diseases, 2:835
  tuberculosis, 1:279; 2:841
  typhus, 2:855
Indian Ocean tsunami of 2004, 2:*537*, 646–647
Indiana, histoplasmosis outbreak, 1:400
Indirect transmission, defined, 1:206
Individual *vs.* group evolution, 1:426
Indonesia
  anthrax outbreak, 1:*43*
  avian flu outbreak, 1:74, 77, 342; 2:671
  dengue fever, 1:*232*, 235–236
  malaria, 2:*516*
  pesticide spraying, 2:*569*
  pigs with H5N1 virus, 1:*437*
  roundworm infections, 2:725
  smallpox eradication, 2:*777*
  tsunami survivors, 2:*537*, 646
Industrial Revolution and animal importation, 1:36
Industrialized nations
  Chlamydia infections, 1:170
  dysentery, 1:259
  income/health status relationship, 1:*276*, 276–280, *277*
  mononucleosis, 2:560–561
  pinworm diseases, 1:370
  puerperal fever, 2:674–675
  See also specific countries
Infantile paralysis. *See* Polio
Infants
  botulism, 1:117
  chickenpox, 1:154, 155
  Chlamydia infections, 1:169
  diaper rash, 1:140
  gonorrhea, 1:*345*, 346–347
  group B streptococcal infections, 2:797, 798
  hand, foot and mouth disease, 1:355, 356
  hepatitis B, 1:382
  HIV/AIDS, 1:8, 13
  HSV-1, 1:393, 394
  HSV-2, 1:395–396, 397
  meningitis, 2:542, 544, 545
  pink eye, 2:621
  respiratory syncytial virus, 2:701, 702
  rotavirus infections, 2:722, 723, *723*
  rubella, 2:728, *728*, 729
  tetanus, 2:816, *817*
  vaccination schedules, 1:*160*, *162*
  whooping cough, 2:910
  yellow fever, 2:*927*
  yersiniosis, 2:932
  See also Breastfeeding; Neonatal diseases
Infection control and asepsis, 1:331, **431–436**
  antibiotics overuse, 1:224
  pneumonia and, 2:645
  public health agencies, 2:665–672
  standard precautions, 2:782–784
Infection control professionals (ICPs), 1:431
Infectious agents, defined, 1:297
Infectious Disease Society of America, 1:224
Infectious diseases. *See* specific diseases, agents and topics
Infectious hepatitis. *See* Hepatitis A virus
Infectious mononucleosis. *See* Mononucleosis
Infectious parotitis. *See* Mumps
Infectivity, defined, 1:297
Infertility
  Chlamydia infections and, 1:168
  gonorrhea and, 1:346
  mumps and, 2:575
Inflammatory response, 1:*422*, 423–424
Influenza, 1:**437–441**, **452–455**
  vs. bioterrorism agents, 1:6
  vs. colds, 1:200
  flu shot clinic, 1:*438*
  National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases research on, 2:582–583
  in nursing homes, 1:197
  pandemic preparedness, 2:*612*, 612–614, 669–671
  pig research, 1:*437*
  scientist examining culture, 1:*146*
  vaccines, 1:60, *438*, 440, 445, 450, 454; 2:612–613, 873
  See also Avian influenza
Influenza pandemic of 1918, 1:**442–448**
  burial ground, 1:*442*
  CDC research, 1:441
  deaths from, 1:74
  history, 1:74, 283, 440
  military hospital ward, 1:*443*
  scientist examining culture, 1:*146*
  World War I and, 2:890–891
Influenza pandemic of 1957, 1:74, 439, *449*, **449–451**
Influenza pandemic of 1968, 1:74, 439, 449
Influenza Surveillance Network, 1:445
Informed consent for research volunteers, 1:310; 2:806, 807
Inglesby, Thomas V., 1:104–105
Inhalation disease forms
  anthrax, 1:41, 45, 102
  botulism, 1:116, 117
  histoplasmosis, 1:399
  Q fever, 2:677
Inhibition zones, 1:53
Initiative for Vaccine Research (IVR), 1:65, 95
Innate immunity
  HIV infection and, 1:403
  overview, 1:423
  re-emerging diseases and, 2:692

INRUD (International Network for the Rational Use of Drugs), 1:239
Insect repellents and disease prevention
  chikungunya, 1:159
  Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:213, 214
  filariasis, 1:316
  leishmaniasis, 1:486
  Lyme disease, 1:512
  malaria, 2:519
  mosquito-borne diseases, 2:568
  typhus, 2:856
  West Nile virus, 2:903, 904
Insecticide resistance. *See* Pesticide resistance
Insecticides. *See* Pesticides
Insomnia, familial fatal, 2:657–658
Inspections of cargo. *See* Cargo inspections
Institute Pasteur, 1:20
Integrated Disease Surveillance and Response program (IDSR), 1:148
Integrated vector management (IVM), 1:409
Intensified Smallpox Eradication Program, 2:771, 776–777
Interagency Task Force on Antimicrobial Resistance, 1:224
Interferon, 1:385, 387, 388
Interferon-gamma tuberculosis tests, 2:839
Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), 1:183; 2:617
Intermediate hosts, defined, 1:408
Intermediate leprosy, 1:490
Intermediate-level disinfection, defined, 1:57, 249
Internally displaced persons (IDPs), defined, 1:417
  See also Displaced people
International adoption and vaccinations, 1:420
International Agency for the Prevention of Blindness (IAPB), 2:718
International Committee on the Taxonomy of Viruses, 1:21
International cooperation
  CDC and, 1:148
  cyclosporiasis prevention, 1:226
  field level response and, 2:*606*, 606–611
  global surveillance systems, 1:342
  history, 1:479–480
  HIV/AIDS, 2:861, 862
  hookworm infections, 1:407
  influenza surveillance, 1:445
  isolation and quarantine policies, 1:458
  Lassa fever, 1:474
  Médecins Sans Frontières, 2:536–539
  pandemic preparedness, 2:671
  reporting systems, 2:665
International Decade for Action, 1:260; 2:898
International Emerging Infections Program, 1:342
International Health Regulations (IHR)
  purpose, 1:418, 481–482; 2:602
  SARS and, 2:746
  U.S. reporting systems and, 2:665
  world trade issues, 2:921
International law, 1:**478–482**
  See also Legislation
International level reporting systems, 1:299; 2:665
International Network for the Rational Use of Drugs (INRUD), 1:239
International Network to Promote Household Water Treatment and Safe Storage, 1:30
International Standards for Tuberculosis Care, 2:842
International Trachoma Initiative (ITI), 2:824, 825
Internationally Adopted Children—Immigration Status (letter to the editor), ***1:420***
Internet resources
  CDC preparedness website, 2:670
  Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network, 1:336–337
  ProMED, 2:660–661
Intertrigo, 1:140
Intestinal disorders, 1:188, 304–305
  See also specific disorders
Intravenous gamma globulin (IVGG), 1:463
Intravenous immune globulin (IVIG), 2:817
Invasive candidiasis, 1:140, 141
Iodine, as disinfectant, 1:250
Iodoquinol, for balantidiasis, 1:88
Ionic staining techniques, 1:221–222
Ip, Regina, 1:344
IPCC (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change), 1:183; 2:617
Iran, cholera outbreak, 1:179
Iraq War (2003-), 1:228–229; 2:892
Iron deficiency anemia. *See* Anemia
Iron lungs, 2:*649*, 650–651
Irradiation
  CDC on, 1:320
  cyclosporiasis prevention, 1:226
  food-borne illness prevention, 1:321
Isaac, ***2:538–539***
Ishii, Shiro, 1:310
Isolation and quarantine, 1:**456–458**
  airport stations, 2:*771*
  Apollo 11 astronauts, 1:*456*
  Black Death, 1:478–479
  bovine spongiform encephalopathy-infected cows, 1:*118*
  droplet precautions and, 1:255–256
  Ebola virus outbreak, 1:275
  hemorrhagic fevers, 1:374
  imported pets, 1:37
  infection control, 1:431, 434
  infectious disease law, 1:481
  influenza pandemic of 1957, 1:450
  Lassa fever, 2:867
  leprosy, 1:488, 491
  Mallon, Mary ("Typhoid Mary"), 2:851
  measles, 2:533
  Overseas Marilyn, 1:*472*
  pandemic preparedness and, 2:614
  SARS, 2:667, *740*, 742, *742*, 745–746, 747
  smallpox, 2:773
  Speaker, Andrew case, 1:343, 419, 481; 2:840
  vancomycin-resistant enterococci at-risk patients, 2:877
Israel, avian flu outbreak, 1:*74*
Italy
  early plague, 2:*629*, 629–630
  typhus warning sign, 2:*853*
Itching, from scabies, 2:749
ITI (International Trachoma Initiative), 2:824, 825
Itraconazole
  blastomycosis, 1:108
  coccidioidomycosis, 1:195
  sporotrichosis, 2:781
Ivermectin
  APOC and, 1:239
  filariasis, 2:835
  river blindness, 2:717
  scabies, 2:750
  strongyloidiasis, 2:800
IVGG (intravenous gamma globulin), 1:463
IVM (integrated vector management), 1:409
Ivory Coast. *See* Côte d'Ivoire
IVR (Initiative for Vaccine Research), 1:65, 95
Iwan warrior, 1:*469*
Ixodes species. *See* Tick-borne diseases

J

Jackson, Vera, 1:156
Jail fever. *See* Typhus
Jakarta, Indonesia, dengue fever outbreaks, 1:235–236
Jakes, Susan, 2:610–611
JAMA (Journal of the American Medical Association), 1:337; 2:651, 921
Jamaica, malaria in, 1:418
Jana, Smarajit, 1:*297*
Janey, Clifford B., 1:156
Jannin, Jean, 1:*5*
Janssen, Hans, 2:553
Janssen, Zaccharias, 2:553
Japan
    anisakiasis, 1:*38*, 39
    anthrax biological weapons use, 1:42–43
    Burkholderia-related biological weapons, 1:127
    cancer-infectious disease link, 1:137
    Kawasaki syndrome, 1:462
    strongyloidiasis, 2:800
    Tamiflu adverse effects, 1:62
    tularemia, 2:846, 847
Japanese encephalitis, 1:*285*, 288, 289, *459*, **459–461**
Jenner, Edward, 1:160, *161*, 330; 2:771, 776, 870
Jetsetters Are Key Clues to Epidemics, 1:260–261
Jewish people, persecution of, 2:631
Jiang Yanyong, 2:609, 610
Jirovec, Otto, 2:640
Jock itch, 2:714
Johns Hopkins University, 1:6, 103
Johnson, Karl, 2:885, 886–888
Johnson, Samuel, 2:756
Journal of the American Medical Association (JAMA), 1:337; 2:651, 921
Juquitiba virus, 1:364
Justice, patient right to, 2:843
Justinian plague. *See* First Pandemic (plague)
Justinian (Roman emperor), 2:630

K

Kain, Kevin, 1:260, 261
Kansas, as start of 1918 influenza pandemic, 2:890–891
Kaposi's sarcoma (KS), 1:19, 21, 136
Karnice-Kamicki, Count, 2:633
Karron, Ruth, 2:671
Kasson, Gunnar, 1:*242*
Katayama fever, 1:94
Kawasaki, Tomisaki, 1:462
Kawasaki syndrome, 1:**462–464**
Keffeler, Kathy, 1:166
Kenya
    HIV/AIDS prevention programs, 2:862
    immigration and disease spread, 1:418–419
    malaria, 2:617
    Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:524
    Rift Valley fever, 2:*710*, 711, *711*, 712
Keratitis, *Fusarium*, 1:203–205
Ketoconazole, for coccidioidomycosis, 1:195
Key, George, 2:807
Kilbourne, Frederick L., 1:81
Killed-pathogen vaccines, 2:651–652, 872
King Pharmaceuticals, 2:873
"King's Evil" (scrofula), 2:*755*, 755–757
Kirby-Bauer disk diffusion testing, 1:223
Kirszner, Rebecca, 1:361
Kissing disease. *See* Mononucleosis
Kitchen practices
    E. coli infection prevention, 1:306, 307
    fluke infections, 1:505, 506
    infection control, 1:433
    listeriosis prevention, 1:501
Kiwi Pre-school Playgroup (UK), 1:435
Koch, Robert, 1:*465*
    anthrax bacteria identification, 1:42; 2:551
    biographical information, 1:223, 465, 466
    culturing techniques, 1:221
    germ theory, 1:178, 330–331
    tuberculin discovery, 2:838
Kochi, Arata, 2:520–521
Koch's Postulates, 1:221, 331, **465–467; 2:745**
KOH tests, for blastomycosis, 1:108
Kohn, Marek, 1:425–426
Koplik's spots, 2:532
Korean War (1950-1953), 1:148, 362
Kristof, Nicholas, D., 1:16–17
Kruse, Walter, 1:199
KS. *See* Kaposi's sarcoma
Kurdish refugees, 1:228–229
Kuru disease, 1:**468–470**
    discovery, 1:120, 468
    incubation period, 1:209
    Iwan warrior, 1:*469*
    on list of prion diseases, 2:658
    prion image, 1:*468*
Kwan Siu-Chu, 2:742

L

La Grippe. *See* Influenza pandemic of 1918
Labeling, 1:321, 432
Laboratory facilities
    B virus risks, 1:79
    biosafety level 1, 2:868
    biosafety level 3, 1:124, 441; 2:867
    brucellosis risks, 1:124
    infection control and, 1:433
    See also Biosafety level 4 laboratories
Laboratory research. *See* Research
LaCrosse encephalitis, 1:287
Laguna negra virus, 1:364
Lambda bacteriophages, 1:68, 69
Lambeth Company, 1:295
Lambl, Wilhelm, 1:333
Lancefield, Rebecca, 2:584, 795
Lancefield groups, 2:584, 795
Lancet
    avian flu report, 2:671
    measles, mumps and rubella vaccine article, 2:534, 871
    on nosocomial infections, 2:599
Landry, Celeste, 2:*584*
Langholm Primary School Nursery (UK), 1:435
Lassa fever, 1:341, 374–375, *471*, **471–474;** 2:867
Late diagnosis and Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:708, 721
Late-peaking diseases, 1:230
Latency periods
    Epstein-Barr virus, 1:302
    HIV, 1:11; 2:759
    HSV-2, 1:395, 396
    screening programs and, 1:298
    varicella virus, 1:153–154
    yaws, 2:923
Latent syphilis, 2:760, 805
Latent tuberculosis, 2:837
Latent viruses, defined, 2:881
Latin America
    cholera, 1:178, 181
    dengue fever, 1:232, 234
    diphtheria, 1:244
    hantaviruses, 1:364
    measles, 2:861
    plague, 2:637
    skilled childbirth attendants, 2:676
    taeniasis, 2:810

  tapeworm infections, 2:814
  yaws, 2:924
  See also Central America; South America
LAV (lymphadenopathy-associated virus), 1:20–21
  See also HIV
Laveran, Charles-Louis-Alphonse, 2:521
Laws. *See* Legislation
Lazear, Jesse, 1:308, 309, 310; 2:926, 930, 931
LBRF (louse-borne relapsing fever), 1:497; 2:694, 695
LCR (ligase change reaction) testing, 1:326
LD50 (lethal dose 50%), anthrax, 1:45
League of Nations, 2:650
Leahy, Patrick, 1:44; 2:868
Ledford, Heidi, 1:260–261
Lee Jong-wook, 2:738
Leeuwenhoek, Antoni van, 1:329, 333; 2:551, 553, 554
Legionnaire's disease (Legionellosis), 1:148, *475*, **475–477**
Legislation, 1:**478–482**
  animal importation, 1:35–37
  condoms, 1:10
  disinfectants, 1:57, 251
  food safety, 1:320, 321, 502; 2:735, 933
  Lyme disease research, 1:513
  medical privacy, 1:481
  MSEHPA-based state laws, 1:103
  personal protective equipment, 2:619
  quarantines, 1:457
  Sabin Health Laws, 1:480
  smallpox virus synthesis, 2:778
  vaccinations, 2:771
  ventilation systems, 1:477
  See also Reporting systems; specific laws and regulatory bodies
Leibovich, Mark, 1:360–361
Leichenhäuser (waiting mortuaries), 2:633
Leidy, Joseph, 2:829
Leishmaniasis, 1:**483–486**
  lesions, 1:*484*
  Médecins Sans Frontières work, 2:538
  overview, 1:239, 483
  sand fly, 1:*483*
  as tropical disease, 2:834, 835
Lemming fever. *See* Tularemia
Lemon eucalyptus, as insect repellent, 2:90
Lepromatous leprosy, 1:490
Leprosy, 1:*487*, **487–493**, *488*; 2:834, 835, 916
Leptospirosis, 1:*85*, *494*, **494–496**, *495*
Lesions
  anthrax, 1:*42*
  blastomycosis, 1:*107*
  Buruli ulcers, 1:129
  impetigo, 1:428, *428*, 429
  leishmaniasis, 1:483, 484, *484*
  leprosy, 1:490
  ringworm, 2:*713*, 713–714
  smallpox, 2:772
  sporotrichosis, 2:780
  syphilis, 2:*804*, 805
  yaws, 2:923, *923*
Less-developed nations. *See* Developing nations
Levofloxacin, 1:477; 2:645
Liability and vaccines, 2:874
Liberia, disease outbreaks in, 2:892, 928*s*
Lice infestation, 1:*497*, **497–499**; 2:*852*, 852–857, *853*
Lieberman, Joseph, 1:361
Life sciences and bioterrorism, 1:105
Lifetime prevalence, defined, 1:296
Ligase change reaction (LCR) testing, 1:326
Light field microscopy, 2:554
Limbic system encephalitis, 1:286
Lindane, for lice, 1:498
Linens and standard precautions, 2:783
Lipopolysaccharides, 1:304; 2:734
Liposome preparations, 1:216
List of Essential Medicines (WHO), 1:239
Lister, Joseph, 1:47, 206, 250, 331, 431
Listeriosis, 1:319, *500*, **500–502**; 2:540
Liu Jianjun, 2:740–741
Live-virus vaccines, 2:651–652
Liver cancer
  hepatitis and, 1:136
  hepatitis B and, 1:380, 382
  hepatitis C and, 1:385, 386, 387
Liver cirrhosis
  hepatitis B and, 1:380, 382
  hepatitis C and, 1:385, 386, 387
Liver fluke infections, 1:*503*, **503–505**
Livestock industry
  anthrax outbreaks, 1:*41*, 41–42, *43*, 45–46
  antibiotic resistance and, 1:54–55
  avian flu and, 1:*73*
  balantidiasis and, 1:88
  epidemics, 1:36
  liver fluke infections and, 1:505
  Q fever and, 2:677, 678, 679
  tapeworm infections and, 2:815
  trichinellosis and, 2:830, 831
  See also Cattle
Local level infrastructure
  overview, 1:298, 299; 2:665
  pandemic preparedness and, 2:670
Lockjaw. *See* Tetanus
London, England
  cholera epidemic, 1:178, 295, 299, *300*, 479; 2:607, 736
  plague epidemic, 1:*295*; 2:*690*
  typhus epidemic, 2:854–855
London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, 1:279
Louisiana, disease outbreaks, 1:180–181, 232, 233, 489
Louse-borne relapsing fever (LBRF), 1:497; 2:694, 695
Low-level disinfection, defined, 1:57, 249
Lower urinary tract infections, 2:865
Lubombo Spatial Development Initiative, 1:184
Lufthansa SARS incident, 1:343–344
Lumsden, W.H.R., 1:158
Lung abscesses, 2:644
Lung fluke infections, 1:**506–507**
Lung infections. *See* Pulmonary infections
Lyme & Tick-Borne Disease Prevention, Education & Research Act of 2007, 1:513
Lyme disease, 1:**508–514**
  bull's eye rash, 1:510, *511*
  climate change and, 1:185
  tick images, 1:*63*, *509*
  as vector-borne disease, 2:878
LYMErix vaccine, 1:512
Lymph nodes
  brucellosis and, 1:123
  buboes, 2:628, 629, 636
  cat scratch disease and, 1:143
Lymphadenopathy-associated virus (LAV), 1:20–21
  See also HIV
Lymphatic filariasis. *See* Filariasis
Lymphatic system, 1:422
Lymphedema, 1:315, 316, 422
Lymphocytes, 1:315
Lymphoma and *Helicobacter pylori* infections, 1:367
Lyssavirus. *See* Rabies

M

M proteins, 2:584, 795
Maalim, Ali Maow, 2:*772*
Macaque monkeys, B virus in, 1:78–79

- MacCallum, Peter, 1:129
- MacDonald, Graham, 1:435
- Macedonia, malaria in, 2:515
- Macrophage white blood cells, 1:*422*, 423
- Macrotube dilution susceptibility tests, 1:223
- Mad cow disease. *See* Bovine spongiform encephalopathy
- Madagascar
  - leprosy, 1:490; 2:916
  - plague, 2:637
- Madin-Darby canine kidney culture cells, 1:*350*
- Magnification levels, of microscopes, 2:553
- Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) protein, 1:421
- Malaria, 2:**515–522**
  - artemisinin for, 1:239; 2:518
  - Burkitt's lymphoma and, 1:135–136
  - CDC history and, 1:145–146
  - climate change and, 1:183–185
  - distribution, 2:517–518
  - drug resistance and, 2:697, 699
  - economic issues, 1:279–280
  - endemicity and, 1:292
  - history, 2:515–516
  - infection control measures, 1:434
  - insecticide treatments, 2:*515*, *516*
  - map of risk areas, 2:*518*
  - Millennium Goals, 2:860, 861
  - overview, 1:64, 65; 2:518–519, 566, 878
  - patient, 2:*517*
  - *Plasmodia* parasites, 2:*615*
  - re-emergence of, 1:282; 2:690
  - symptoms, 2:516–517
  - travel and, 2:828
  - as tropical disease, 2:834, 835
  - as vector-borne disease, 1:408–409
- Malaria Vaccine Initiative (MVI), 1:65
- Malathion, for lice, 1:498
- Malawi, disease outbreaks in, 2:*839*, *927*
- Malaysia
  - airline traveler SARS case, 1:344
  - human enterovirus-71, 1:356
  - Nipah virus encephalitis, 2:*588*, 588–590
- Malleus bones, 2:803
- Mallon, Mary ("Typhoid Mary"), 2:849, 851
- Malnutrition
  - disease and, 1:259; 2:927
  - helminth diseases and, 1:371, 406
  - opportunistic infections and, 2:604, 605
  - UNICEF work, 2:859
- Malta fever. *See* Brucellosis
- Mano River Union Lassa Fever Network, 1:474
- Manson, Patrick, 1:308; 2:566
- *Many Blood Banks Deny Request of Hemophiliacs,* ***1:21–22***
- Maporal virus, 1:364
- Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:**523–526**
  - animal importation regulation and, 1:37
  - clinic in Uganda, 2:*525*
  - outbreak in Angola, 2:*523*, 525, *889*
  - overview, 1:375; 2:523
- Marine bacteria, 2:529
- Marine toxins, 2:**527–530**
- Marines (U.S.), 2:*791*, 892
- Marmot, Michael, 1:425
- Marshall, Barry, 1:*308*, 309–310, 366–367, 368, 466; 2:535
- Masks, 1:256
- Mass spectroscopy, for pathogen identification, 1:103–104
- Mass vaccination programs
  - as infection control measure, 2:668–669
  - length of campaign, 2:872
  - *vs.* ring strategy, 2:871
- Massachusetts
  - avian flu preparedness program, 2:669–671
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:266, 2:*649*
- *Mastomys* rats, as Lassa fever carriers, 1:472, 473
- Maternal transmission. *See* Mother-to-child transmission
- Mathematical models. *See* Simulations and modeling
- Mayo Clinic
  - picornavirus research, 1:201
  - on ringworm, 2:714
  - strep throat study, 2:792
  - on tetanus, 2:817
- Mbeki, Thabo, 1:17
- MBZ. *See* Mebendazole
- McCain, John, 1:361
- McClellan, Mark B., 2:903
- McDonald, Jane, 1:435
- McKinney, Maureen, 1:513–514
- McKnight, Jake, 2:538–539
- MDCK (Madin-Darby canine kidney) culture cells, 1:*350*
- MDR-TB. *See* Multi-drug resistant tuberculosis
- MDT. *See* Multi-drug therapy
- Measles, 2:**531–535**
  - deaths from, 1:162
  - endemicity and, 1:292
  - image of virus, 2:*531*
  - Millennium Goals, 2:861
  - rash from, 2:532, *532*
  - vaccines, 1:161, 292; 2:531, 532, 533, *534*, 861
- Measles, mumps and rubella vaccine (MMR), 2:533, 575, 730
- Measles Initiative, 2:533
- Meat
  - bovine spongiform encephalopathy, 1:119, 120, 210; 2:658–659
  - *E. coli*, 1:305, 306, 307
  - taeniasis, 2:810
  - tapeworm infections, 2:813, 815
  - toxoplasmosis, 2:821, 822
  - trichinellosis, 2:829, 830
- Meat and Livestock Commission (UK), 1:120
- Mebendazole (MBZ)
  - hookworm infections, 1:406
  - liver fluke infections, 1:504
  - pinworm infections, 2:625
  - trichinellosis, 2:830
  - whipworm, 2:907
- Mechanical ventilation, 2:645, *649*
- Médecins Sans Frontières, 2:**536–539**
  - African sleeping sickness work, 1:1
  - aid to tsunami survivors, 2:*537*
  - antiretroviral pilot program, 1:62, 240
  - Democratic Republic of the Congo camp, 2:*539*
  - drug delivery programs, 1:237, 239
  - malaria patient, 2:**517**
  - plague investigation, 2:638
  - refugee camp, 1:*177*
  - SARS investigation, 2:747
  - tuberculosis work, 2:*838*
  - typhoid fever assistance, 2:851
- Medical care, right to, 2:842
- Medical equipment
  - contact precautions, 1:207
  - nosocomial infections and, 2:598
  - standard precautions, 2:783
- Medical information, patient rights and responsibilities, 2:842–843
- *Medical Journal of Australia*, 2:646
- Medical privacy. *See* Privacy issues
- Medical Research Council (UK), 1:209
- Medication-related adverse events (MRAEs), infection control measures and, 2:668–669
- Medication stockpiling. *See* Stockpiling of drugs
- Medications. *See* specific drugs and drug classes
- Mefloquine, malaria, 2:518
- Meister, Joseph, 2:683

- Melarsoprol, for African sleeping sickness, 1:3–4, 239
- Melioidosis, 1:126, 127, *338*, 338–340
  - *See also* Glanders
- Membranes (bacterial) and alcohol, 1:432
- *Memoir of a Small-Town Boyhood (Baker),* ***1:247–248***
- Men
  - African-American, 2:806, 807–809
  - filariasis, 1:316
  - gonorrhea, 1:346, 347; 2:759–760
  - ruptured spleens, 2:561
  - *Trichomonas* infections, 2:832, 833
- Mengele, Josef, 1:310
- Meningitis
  - cryptococcal, 1:215
  - defined, 2:542
  - eosinophilic, 1:32, 33
- Meningitis, bacterial, 2:**540–543**
  - brain inflammation image, 2:*541*
  - Burkina Faso outbreak, 2:608
  - cohorted communities and, 1:196–197
  - outbreak in India, 2:*540*
  - *See also Haemophilus influenzae* type B meningitis
- Meningitis, viral, 2:**544–546**
  - hand, foot and mouth disease-associated, 1:356
  - from Lyme disease, 1:510–511
  - West Nile virus and, 2:900
- Meningococcus. *See* Meningitis, bacterial
- Mensch, Judith, 1:508
- Mepacrine, for malaria, 2:516
- Merck & Co.
  - human papillomavirus infection vaccine program, 1:137
  - ivermectin donations, 1:239; 2:717
  - rotavirus vaccine development, 2:874
- Mercury, in vaccines, 1:164
- *Mercy* (ship), 2:646
- Merlin (charity), 1:473
- Meropenum, for resistant diseases, 2:699
- Merozoites, 2:517
- Mesothelioma, 1:137
- Messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) and antiviral drugs, 1:61
- Methane, from excrement tanks, 2:738
- Methicillin, history of, 2:570
- Methicillin-resistant *Staphyloccus aureus. See* MRSa
- Methylene blue, 1:221–222
- Metrifonate, for bilharzia, 1:94
- Metronidazole
  - balantidiasis, 1:88
  - *Clostridium difficile* infections, 1:188
  - *Trichomonas* infections, 2:833
- Mexico
  - Chagas disease, 1:150, 151
  - coccidioidomycosis, 1:194
  - dengue fever warning poster, 1:*235*
  - nosocomial infections, 2:599
  - Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:720
- MHC (major histocompatibility complex) protein, 1:421
- MIC (minimal inhibitory concentration) testing, 1:223
- Microarray technology, 1:326
- Microbial evolution, 2:**547–550**, 697–699
- Microbial mats, 1:53
- Microbicidal gels and STDs, 2:914
- Microfilariae, 2:716
- Microorganisms, 2:**551–552**
  - carcinogenic, 1:135, 136, 137
  - genetic identification of, 1:307, 325–327; 2:632–634
  - *See also* specific microorganisms and diseases
- Microscopes and microscopy, 1:329; 2:**553–555**, 616
- Microtube dilution susceptibility tests, 1:223
- Middle East
  - bilharzia, 1:94
  - early plague, 2:627–628
  - leprosy, 1:488
  - liver fluke infections, 1:504
  - taeniasis, 2:810
  - tapeworm infections, 2:814
  - West Nile virus, 2:901
  - *See also* specific countries
- Migration of people. *See* Population movement
- Military
  - *Acinetobacter baumannii* antibiotic resistance, 1:50
  - anthrax vaccination, 1:46; 2:894
  - diphtheria outbreaks, 1:245
  - dysentery outbreaks, 1:259
  - early plague in, 2:628–629
  - influenza epidemic, 1:283
  - leishmaniasis in, 1:485
  - malaria and, 2:515–516, 518
  - Norovirus infections and, 2:596
  - penicillin use, 1:347
  - syphilis campaign, 2:806–807
  - typhus warning sign, 2:*853*
  - vaccinations, 1:*98*
  - *See also* War
- Milk, scrofula from, 2:756
- Milk thistle, for hepatitis C, 1:387
- Millennium Development Goals. *See* United Nations Millennium Goals
- Miller, Laurie C., 1:420
- Mills, Ann, 1:280
- Milwaukee, Wisconsin, cryptosporidiosis outbreak, 1:218, 219–220; 2:896
- Minimal inhibitory concentration (MIC) testing, 1:223
- Ministry of Health (China), 2:608, 653
- Minorities. *See* Women and minorities
- Mississippi River Valley disease (histoplasmosis), 1:399–401
- Mites
  - scabies from, 2:*749*, 749–751, *750*
  - typhus from, 2:854, 855
- Mitten crabs, as lung fluke carriers, 1:507
- MMR (measles, mumps and rubella vaccine), 2:533, 575, 730
- *MMWR (Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report)*, 1:147
- Mode of transmission, defined, 1:297
- Model Act, 1:103, 481
- Model Food Code, 1:134
- Model State Emergency Health Powers Act (MSEHPA), 1:103, 481
- Modeling. *See* Simulations and modeling
- Modified measles, 2:532
- Modified smallpox, 2:772
- Monitoring systems. *See* Surveillance systems
- Monkey B virus, 1:78–80
- Monkeypox, 2:*556*, **556–558**, 920
- Monkeys
  - cat scratch disease, 1:144
  - Ebola virus, 1:37, 270–271, 273
- *Mono: Tough for Teens and Twenty-Somethings,* ***2:563–564***
- Monongahela virus, 1:364
- Mononuclear cells, 2:*560*
- Mononucleosis, 2:**559–564**
  - cohorted communities and, 1:196
  - image of mononuclear cells, 2:*560*
  - overview, 1:301, 302, 303; 2:559
  - patient, 2:*561*
- Mononucleosis spot tests, 2:561, 564
- Monovalent oral polio vaccines, 2:655
- Montagnier, Luc, 1:13
- Montana, bison culling in, 1:124
- *Moraxella catarrhalis*, 1:262

- *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 1:147; 2:601, 690
- Morbidity rates, defined, 1:295–296
- Morse, Stephen, 1:260; 2:660
- Mortalities. *See* Deaths
- Mortality rates, defined, 1:296
- Morton, Richard, 1:153
- Mortuaries, waiting, 2:633
- Moscow, Russia, diphtheria outbreak, 1:*243*
- Mosquito-borne diseases, 2:*565*, **565–569**
  - chikungunya, 1:*157*, 157–159; 2:*689*
  - climate change and, 1:183–184
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:*265*, 265–268, *266*, 287
  - encephalitis, 1:286, 287
  - filariasis, 1:*315*, 315–317, *316*; 2:834, 835
  - flaviviruses, 1:233
  - globalization and, 1:343
  - infection control and, 1:434
  - Japanese encephalitis, 1:*285*, 288, 289, *459*, 459–461
  - pesticide spraying, 2:*569*
  - prevalence, 1:64, 65
  - Rift Valley fever, 1:373; 2:*710*, 710–712, *711*
  - St. Louis encephalitis, 2:731–732
  - types, 2:834
  - as vector-borne disease, 1:408; 2:879, 880
  - *See also* Dengue and dengue hemorrhagic fever; Malaria; West Nile virus; Yellow fever
- Moss, Frederick, 2:807
- Mother-to-child transmission
  - *Chlamydia* infections, 1:169
  - cytomegalovirus, 1:190–191, 192
  - gonorrhea, 1:345
  - group B streptococcal infections, 2:797, 798
  - HIV, 1:8, 16; 2:759, 914
  - *See also* Fetal development; Pregnancy
- Mount Sinai School of Medicine, 1:441
- Mountin, Joseph Walter, 1:145, 146
- Mourning customs. *See* Burial customs
- Mouse-borne diseases, 1:82, 363
- Mouth
  - candidiasis, 1:139, 141
  - cold sores, 1:198, *392*
  - gingivostomatitis, 1:78
  - hand, foot, and mouth disease, 1:*355*, 355–357
  - impetigo, 1:*428*, 429
  - yaws disfigurement, 2:924
- Mozambique
  - immunization programs, 1:*160*, 179
  - leprosy, 1:490; 2:916
- MRAEs (medication-related adverse events) and infection control measures, 2:668–669
- mRNA (messenger ribonucleic acid) and antiviral drugs, 1:61
- MRSa (methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), 2:**570–572**
  - antimicrobial soaps and, 1:57
  - community-associated, 1:54; 2:572
  - doctors using hand sanitizer, 2:*570*
  - as emerging disease, 1:433
  - overview, 1:49–50, 51; 2:549, 570, 699
  - vancomycin-resistant enterococci and, 2:876
- MSEHPA (Model State Emergency Health Powers Act), 1:103, 481
- MSF. *See* Médecins Sans Frontières
- Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, 1:483
- Mullis, Kary, 2:684
- Mulroy, Ashley, 1:*51*
- Multi-drug resistant tuberculosis (MDR-TB)
  - genetic identification and, 1:325
  - microbial evolution and, 2:550
  - overview, 2:840, 841
  - *See also* XDR-TB
- Multi-drug therapy (MDT)
  - HIV/AIDS, 1:14, 61–62
  - leprosy, 1:489, 491; 2:916
- Multibacillary leprosy, 1:490, 491; 2:916
- Multiplex PCR testing, 1:326
- Mumbai, India, torrential rains in, 1:184
- Mumps, 1:161, *165*; 2:*573*, ***573–576***
- Murine typhus. *See* Endemic flea-borne typhus
- Murray, Polly, 1:508
- MVI (Malaria Vaccine Initiative), 1:65
- *Mycobacterium leprae*. *See* Leprosy
- *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. *See* Tuberculosis
- *Mycobacterium ulceranus* infections, 1:129–131; 2:835
- *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* infections, 1:289–290; 2:643
- Mycotic diseases, 1:255; 2:*577*, **577–580**
  - *See also* Antifungal drugs; specific diseases
- Myelitis, 1:285
- Myringotomy, 1:263

N

- N-95 respirator masks, 1:*23*, 24
- NA antigens. *See* Neuraminidase (NA) antigens
- NAACP (National Association for the Advancement of Colored People), 2:807
- Nabarro, David, 1:280
- Nabi Biopharmaceuticals, 2:873
- NAC (non-*albicans Candida infections,* 1:139
- *Nairovirus infections*, 1:*212*, 212–214, 373
- Nalidixic acid, for shigellosis, 2:765
- Narrow-spectrum antibiotics, defined, 1:48
- Nasopharyngeal cancer, 1:137, 302–303
- National Academy of Sciences (NAS), 1:44, 445
- National AIDS Program (Brazil), 1:240
- National Association for the Advancement of Colored People (NAACP), 2:807
- National Blood Transfusion Service (Nigeria), 1:*112*
- National Brucellosis Eradication Program, 1:124
- National Campaign for Appropriate Antibiotic Use in the Community, 2:699
- National Cancer Institute, 2:704
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM), 1:387
- National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral, Hepatitis, STD and TB Prevention (NCHHSTP), 1:147
- National Center for Infectious Diseases (NCID), 1:78, 143, 313
- National Center for Preparedness, Detection, and Control of Infectious Diseases, 1:147
- National Center for Zoonotic, Vector-Borne, and Enteric Diseases (NCZED), 1:35, 147
- National Committee on Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS), 1:223
- National Congenital Rubella Registry, 1:481; 2:729
- National Electronic Disease Surveillance System (NEDSS), 1:481
- National Electronic Telecommunications Systems for Surveillance (NETSS), 1:194; 2:601
- National Eye Institute, 1:400

National Foundation for Infantile Paralysis, 2:651
National Hemophilia Foundation, 1:22
National Immigration Agency (Taiwan), 1:419
National immunization days, 1:6, 284
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)
  CDC history and, 1:146
  histoplasmosis prevention, 1:401
  N-95 respirator mask certification, 1:24
  on NSIs, 1:113
  on West Nile virus, 2:903
National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), 2:**581–583**
  AIDS research lab, 2:*581*
  bioterrorism funding, 1:105
  on colds, 1:202
  on drug resistance, 2:699
  nevirapine study, 1:8
  re-emerging diseases research, 2:690
  tuberculosis vaccine research, 2:840
  on vaccines, 2:871
National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke, 1:286
National Institutes of Health (NIH)
  Bolivian hemorrhagic fever work, 2:885
  on coccidioidomycosis, 1:194
  drug treatment funding, 1:45
  on highly active antiretroviral therapy, 1:62
  on ringworm, 2:714
  on roundworm infections, 2:725
  West Nile virus research, 2:904
National level infrastructure
  isolation and quarantine policies, 2:746
  notifiable diseases and, 2:600–602
  overview, 1:298–299
National Library of Medicine (NLM), 2:825, 832
National Microbiological Institute, 2:582
National Nosocomial Infection Surveillance System, 2:598, 876
National Notifiable Disease Surveillance System (NNDSS), 2:638
National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration, 2:529
National Pharmaceutical Stockpile Program (NPS), 2:613
National Program of Cancer Registries (NPCR), 1:137
National Science Advisory Board for Biosecurity, 1:446
The National Strategy for Pandemic Influenza Implementation Plan, 2:613
Native Americans, smallpox in, 2:770–771
Natural killer cells, 1:423
Nature (journal), 1:273; 2:572
Nature Reviews Microbiology, 1:466
Nazi concentration camps, human experimentation in, 1:310
NCCAM (National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine), 1:387
NCCLS (National Committee on Clinical Laboratory Standards), 1:223
NCHHSTP (National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral, Hepatitis, STD and TB Prevention), 1:147
NCID (National Center for Infectious Diseases), 1:78, 143, 313
NCZVED (National Center for Zoonotic, Vector-Borne, and Enteric Diseases), 1:147
Neal, Ralph, 1:156
Necrotizing fasciitis, 2:*584*, **584–587**, *585*, 794–795
NEDSS (National Electronic Disease Surveillance System), 1:481
Needles and disease spread
  bloodborne pathogen risks, 1:113–114
  hepatitis C and, 1:385
  HIV, 1:7–8, 20, 21
  Marburg hemorrhagic fever and, 2:525
Negative-pressure ventilation systems, 1:*23*, 24; 2:773
Neglected tropical diseases (NTDs), 2:836
Neisser, Albert, 1:345, 489
Neisseria gonorrhoeae infections. *See* Gonorrhea
Neisseria meningitides
  as bacterial meningitis cause, 2:540, 541, 542, 608
  cohorted communities and, 1:196–197
Nematode infections. *See* Roundworm infections
Nemours Foundation, 2:802
Neonatal diseases
  conjunctivitis, 2:621
  cytomegalovirus, 1:190, 191, 192
  gonorrhea, 1:*345*, 346–347
  group B streptococcal infections, 2:797, 798
  HSV-1, 1:394
  HSV-2, 1:395–396, 397
  rubella, 2:728, *728*, 729, 730
  Streptococcus pneumoniae, 2:542
  tetanus, 2:816, *817*, 818
  toxoplasmosis, 2:822
Nepal
  Japanese encephalitis outbreak, 1:289
  leishmaniasis in, 1:484
  leprosy in, 1:490; 2:916
Netherlands, disease outbreaks in, 1:*282*; 2:877
NETSS (National Electronic Telecommunications Systems), 1:194; 2:601
Netting, bed
  African sleeping sickness, 1:4
  arthropod-borne diseases, 1:64
  chikungunya, 1:158
  filariasis, 1:316
  leishmaniasis, 1:486
  malaria, 1:280, 434; 2:518–519, 878
  mosquito-borne diseases, 1:409; 2:568, 879
Neuraminidase inhibitors, 1:439, 446
Neuraminidase (NA) antigens
  antigenic drift and, 1:439
  H5N1 virus, 1:74, 350
  influenza pandemics and, 1:444, 450
Neurocysticercosis, 2:815
Neurological symptoms
  African sleeping sickness, 1:2
  B virus, 1:78
  Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv and, 1:208
  leprosy, 1:487–488, 490
  Lyme disease, 1:510–511
  picornaviruses and, 1:201
  rabies, 2:680–681
  taeniasis and, 2:811
  typhoid fever, 2:849
Neurosyphilis, 2:805
Neurotoxic shellfish poisoning, 2:528
Neurotoxins, 1:115, 116
Neutrophils, 1:367, 423, *423*
Nevirapine (NVP), 1:8
New England Journal of Medicine
  condom study, 1:298
  drug-resistance bacteria report, 1:54
  tsunami lung report, 2:646
  Urbani, Carlo report, 2:747–748
New Guinea
  Buruli ulcer prevalence, 1:130
  kuru disease, 1:120, 209, *468*, 468–470, *469*
New Hampshire mosquito spray program, 1:*266*
New Mexico, coccidioidomycosis in, 1:194
New Orleans, disease outbreaks in, 1:180–181, 232
New York-1 virus, 1:364

New York City
  Great Hall of Ellis Island, 1:*418*
  West Nile virus outbreak, 2:899, 900
  yellow fever outbreaks, 2:925
New York (state) cryptosporidiosis outbreak, 1:220
Newborn diseases. *See* Neonatal diseases
Newton, Sir Isaac, 2:631, 632
Ngubeni, Nomzamo story, 1:16–17
NIAID. *See* National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases
Nicaragua, leptospirosis in, 1:496
Niclosamide, for tapeworm infections, 2:811, 815
Nicolle, Charles, 2:856–857
Nifurtimox, 1:150, 239
Nigeria
  dengue fever, 1:233
  polio, 2:650, 652, 655–656
  polio eradication program, 1:283–284, 434
  roundworm infections, 2:725
  transfusion center, 1:*112*
Nightingale, Florence, 1:358–359
Nikkomycin Z, 1:195
Nile River Valley, early plague in, 2:632
Nine-banded armadillos, leprosy in, 1:489
NIOSH. *See* National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
Nipah virus encephalitis, 2:*588*, **588–590**
Nippon Foundation, 1:492
Nitazoxanide, cryptosporidiosis in, 1:219
Nits, 1:497
Nixon, Richard, 1:124, *456*; 2:774
Nizoral. *See* Ketoconazole
NLM (National Library of Medicine), 2:825, 832
NNRTIs, 1:13
Nocardia bacteria, 2:591, *591*
Nocardiosis, 2:*591*, **591–593**
Nome, Alaska, diphtheria outbreak in, 1:*242*
Non-A non-B hepatitis. *See* Hepatitis C virus
Non-*albicans Candida* (NAC) infections, 1:139
Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs), 1:13
Norovirus infections, 1:319; 2:**594–596**
North America
  Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:265, 266
  Lyme disease, 1:185
  pinworm infections, 2:625
  trichinellosis, 2:829, 830
  Trichomonas infections, 2:832
  tularemia, 2:846
  West Nile virus, 1:185; 2:899–900, 901–902
  See also Canada; United States
North American blastomycosis. *See* Blastomycosis
Norwalk-like viruses, 1:319; 2:594–596
Norwalk virus, 1:323; 2:594
Norway, disease outbreaks in, 1:*38*, *442*
Norwegian scabies, 2:749–750
Nosocomial infections, 2:**597–599**
  candidiasis, 1:141
  Clostridium difficile, 1:187, 188
  HAP, 2:644–645
  prevalence, 1:434
  SARS, 2:667, 668
Notifiable diseases, 2:**600–602**, 601*s*
  defined, 1:299; 2:600
  International Health Regulations and, 1:481–482
  isolation and quarantine policies and, 1:457, 458
  U.S. reporting systems, 2:665–666
Novartis, 1:491
NPCR (National Program of Cancer Registries), 1:137
NPS (National Pharmaceutical Stockpile Program), 2:613
NTDs (neglected tropical diseases), 2:836
Nucleoside reverse transcriptase (RT) inhibitors, 1:13
Nuremburg Code, 1:310
Nurseries Told to Clean Up Their Act, ***1:435–436***
Nursing homes, as cohorted community, 1:197
NVP (nevirapine), 1:8
Nymph tick, 1:*63*
Nystatin, for candidiasis, 1:140

O

Obasanjo, Olusegun, 1:280
Objective lenses, 2:553
Occupational Safety & Health Administration (OSHA), 1:112, 114; 2:619
Occurrence, defined, 1:297
O'Connor, Daniel Basil, 2:651
Ocular histoplasmosis syndrome (OHS), 1:400–401
Odds ratio, 1:296
Odugleh, Asiya, 1:275
Office of Malaria Control, 1:145
Office of Technology Assessment (U.S.), 1:97
Officials Blame Poor Hygiene on Dengue Rise, ***1:235–236***
Ohio River contamination, 1:*51*
Ohio River Valley fever (histoplasmosis), 1:399–401
OHS (ocular histoplasmosis syndrome), 1:400–401
Old Bugs Learn Some New Tricks; As More Drugs Are Created to Fight Infection, Bacteria Mutate and Strike in Another Form, ***2:549–550***
Old World hantaviruses, 1:362, 363, 364
  See also Hantavirus
Oligonucleotide-based drugs, 1:61
On the Mode of Communication of Cholera (Snow), 1:178, *299*
Oncocerciasis. *See* River blindness
Oncocerciasis Control Program (OCP), 2:717
Oocysts
  Cyclospora, 1:225, 226
  Toxoplasma, 2:821, 822
Oocytes, *Cryptosporidium*, 1:218
Oophoritis, as mumps complication, 2:575
Operation Iraqi Freedom, 2:892
Operation Sea Spray, 2:866
Opisthorchiasis, 1:*503*, 503–505
Opportunistic infections, 2:**603–605**
  AIDS and, 1:11
  drug treatment, 1:14
  early documentation, 1:19
  fungal infections, 2:578, 579
  Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia as, 2:640
  Pseudomonas aeruginosa as, 1:84
  tuberculosis as, 2:*603*
Opportunistic pathogens, defined, 2:552
OPV (oral polio vaccine), 2:652, 655
Oral candidiasis, 1:139
Oral polio vaccine (OPV), 2:652, 655
Oral rehydration methods
  cholera, 1:177, 180
  cryptosporidiosis, 1:219
  diarrhea, 2:737
  gastroenteritis, 1:324
Oral vaccines
  cholera, 1:178, 179
  edible, 1:69
  polio, 2:652, 655
Oran virus, 1:364
Orchitis, as mumps complication, 2:574–575

Ordinary smallpox, 2:772
Oregon
  Lyme disease, 1:510
  vaccine exemptions, 1:164
Organ transplantation
  cytomegalovirus and, 1:190, 191
  donor liver need, 1:387
  Epstein-Barr virus immunity and, 2:562
  rabies and, 2:681
  See also Immunocompromised people
Organizing, patient right to, 2:843
Orphans, from AIDS, 1:16, 17, 240
Orthomyxoviruses, 2:883
Oseltamivir phosphate (Tamiflu), 1:*59*, 62, 75, 454
OSHA (Occupational Safety & Health Administration), 1:112, 114; 2:619
Osler, Sir William, 2:645, 931
Otitis externa, 2:*801*, 801–803
Otitis media, 1:*262*, 262–264
Otitis media with effusion, 1:262, *262*
O'Toole, Tara, 1:104–105
Outbreak (film), 1:271, 274
Outbreaks: field level response, 2:*606*, **606–611**
Overseas Marilyn (ship), quarantine, 1:*472*
Oxacillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus. See* MRSa
Oxamiquine, for bilharzia, 1:94
Ozone sterilization, 2:789

P

Pacific Islands
  malaria, 2:517
  tropical diseases, 2:835
  tuberculosis, 2:841
Packaging, smart, 1:502
Paget, James, 2:829
Paine, Thomas, 1:*475*
Pakistan, disease outbreaks in, 1:*212*; 2:650, 655
Palombo, Heidi, 2:563
Pan American Health Organization, 1:324; 2:652
Pan American Sanitary Bureau, 1:480
Panagiotakopulu, Eva, 2:632
Panama Canal construction and yellow fever, 1:64, 293, 308–309, 310; 2:*925*, 925–926
Pandemic preparedness, 2:*612*, **612–614, 665–672**
Pandemic Severity Index, 2:*612*
Pandemics
  cholera, 1:178, 299, 479
  dengue fever, 1:232
  first plague pandemic, 2:627–630, *628*, 637
  influenza pandemic of 1957, 1:74, 439, *449*, 449–451
  influenza pandemic of 1968, 1:74, 439, 449
  third plague pandemic, 2:632, 637
  See also AIDS; Black Death; Influenza pandemic of 1918
Pap smears, 1:414, 415
Papilloma viruses, 1:135
  See also HPV
Papillomas. *See* Warts
Papovaviruses, 2:882
Papua New Guinea, disease outbreaks in, 1:209; 2:517
Papules, from yaws, 2:923
Paragonimus infections, 1:506–507
Paralytic polio, 2:649, 650–651, 652
Paralytic shellfish poisoning, 2:527–528
Paraneoplastic limbic encephalitis, 1:286
Parasitic diseases, 2:**615–617**
  See also specific diseases
Paratyphoid fever, 2:849
Parotitis, 2:573
Paroxysymal stage, whooping cough, 2:910
Partners for Parasite Control (PPC), 1:407
Parvoviruses, 1:312; 2:882
Passenger lists and disease spread, 1:341, 342
Pasternack, Mark, 2:646–647
Pasteur, Louis, 1:*329*
  anthrax vaccination, 1:*41*, 42
  culturing techniques, 1:221
  germ theory, 1:178, 250, 330–331; 2:598
  pasteurization development, 1:320; 2:551
  rabies vaccine, 2:682, 683
  Streptococcus pyogenes identification, 2:673
Pasteur Institute
  diphtheria ward, 1:*244*
  founding of, 2:683
  plague conference, 2:*606*
Pasteurization, 1:320, 501
PATH, 2:723
Pathogens
  defined, 2:552
  identification of, 1:336; 2:745
  See also specific pathogens
Patient-care equipment. *See* Medical equipment
Patient privacy. *See* Privacy issues
Patients. *See* Hospital patients
The Patients' Charter for Tuberculosis Care (WCC), ***2:842–844***
Patriot Act, 1:99
Paucibacillary leprosy, 1:490, 491; 2:916
PCP. *See Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia
PCR testing. *See* Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing
Peanut butter contamination incident, 1:320–321; 2:735
Pediatrics (journal), 1:164
Pediculosis. *See* Lice infestation
Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)
  from *Chlamydia* infections, 1:168, 170
  from gonorrhea, 1:346
Penicillin
  Buruli ulcer, 2:835
  diphtheria, 1:244
  gonorrhea, 1:347
  rat-bite fever, 2:688
  scarlet fever, 2:753
  syphilis, 2:806, 807
  World War II use, 1:*48*, 51, 347; 2:892
  yaws, 2:924
Penicillin-binding proteins, 1:48, 53
Penicillin-resistant *Staphyloccus aureus*, 1:49; 2:697, 786
Pennsylvania
  cyclosporiasis outbreaks, 1:225
  Legionnaire's disease outbreak, 1:148, 475
Pentamidine, for African sleeping sickness, 1:3–4
Pentosan polysulphate, for Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:209
People with AIDS Alliance, 1:*10*
People's Liberation Army (PLA) (China), 2:609
PEP (postexposure prophylaxis), for HIV, 1:114
Peptic ulcers and *Helicobacter pylori* infections, 1:*308*, 309–311, 366–367, 466
Peptidoglycan layers, 1:48, 53
Period of communicability, defined, 1:297
Period prevalence, defined, 1:296
Permethrin
  lice, 1:498
  Lyme disease, 1:512
  malaria, 2:519
  mosquito-borne disease, 2:568
  relapsing fever, 2:695
  scabies, 2:750
  typhus, 2:856

- Perry, Rick, 1:415; 2:763
- Personal protective equipment, 2:**618–620**
  - standard precautions, 2:782–783
  - 17th century physician with, 2:*629*
  - virus prevention, 2:883
- Personal-service workers, disease risks of, 1:10
- Pertussis. *See* Whooping cough
- Peru
  - cholera vaccine trials, 1:178
  - community kitchen, 2:*737*
  - yellow fever, 2:928*t*
- Pesticide resistance, 1:65, 67; 2:567
- Pesticides
  - arthropod-borne diseases, 1:65
  - *Burkholderia* species for degradation of, 1:128
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:*266*, 267
  - leishmaniasis, 1:484, 486
  - lice, 1:498
  - Lyme disease, 1:512
  - malaria, 2:*515*, 878, 879
  - mosquito-borne disease, 2:567–568
  - parasitic disease, 2:617
  - West Nile virus, 2:903
- Petri, Richard Julius, 1:221
- Pets
  - alveolar echinococcosis, 1:*26*, 26–27
  - animal importation regulation, 1:37
  - cryptosporidiosis from, 1:217
  - dangers of wild animals as, 1:91
  - Lyme disease, 1:513
  - psittacosis and, 2:662, 663
  - rabies and, 2:682, 683
  - sporotrichosis and, 2:781
  - West Nile virus and, 2:902
- Petting zoos, 1:305, *358*
- Pfeiffer, Richard Johannes, 1:352
- Pfeiffer's disease. *See* Mononucleosis
- Phage therapy, 2:571, 700
- Pharmaceutical industry
  - drug delivery programs, 1:239, 240–241
  - globalization and, 1:342–343
  - vaccines and, 2:872–874
- Pharyngitis, 2:752
- Phase contrast microscopy, 2:554
- Phenol-based disinfectants, 1:251
- Philadelphia, Pennsylvania
  - Legionnaire's disease outbreak, 1:148, 475
  - yellow fever outbreaks, 2:925
- Philanthropic programs. *See* Humanitarian aid
- Philippine macaque monkeys, 1:*35*
- Philippines
  - airport passenger scanners, 2:*741*
  - chikungunya, 1:157, 158
  - measles campaign, 2:**534**
- Phoenix-TV (Hong Kong), 2:610
- Phthisis, 2:837–838
- Picaridin insect repellents, 2:568
- Picornaviruses, 1:201; 2:883
- PID (pelvic inflammatory disease)
  - from *Chlamydia* infections, 1:168, 170
  - from gonorrhea, 1:346
- Piercing, body, 1:10
- Pig tapeworm, 2:810
- Pigs
  - balantidiasis transmission, 1:88
  - H5N1 virus, 1:*437*
  - Nipah virus, 2:*588*, 588–590
  - taeniasis, 2:810
  - trichinellosis, 2:829, 830, 831
  - yersiniosis, 2:932, 933
- Pink eye, 2:*621*, **621–623**
- Pinker, Steven, 1:426
- Pinworm infections, 1:370; 2:*624*, **624–626**
- Piperazine, for pinworm infections, 2:625
- Pisano, Wayne, 2:874
- PKR (protein kinase R) gene, 1:387
- Plague
  - as biological weapon, 1:102, *102*; 2:893
  - burial of victims, 2:*690*
  - Desgenettes, René inoculation, 2:*890*
  - *Divine Comedy* illustration, 1:*229*
  - as emerging disease, 2:*606*
  - overview, 1:64
  - quarantine and, 1:478–479
  - route during 14th century, 2:*627*
  - as vector-borne disease, 2:878–879
  - *See also* Black Death
- Plague, early history, 2:*627*, **627–634**, *628*, *629*
- Plague, modern history, 2:*635*, **635–639**, *636*
- Plants and sporotrichosis, 2:780, 781
- Plasmid-mediated gene transfer, 1:52–53; 2:547–548
- *Plasmodia* species infections. *See* Malaria
- Platensimycin antibiotics, 2:572
- Pleomorphic bacteria, 1:352
- Pleural effusion, 2:644
- Pliny the Elder, 2:553
- *PLoS Medicine* (journal), 2:726
- Plot, Robert, 1:182
- PMED H5N1 vaccine, 2:*871*
- PMI (President's Malaria Initiative), 2:617, 861
- Pneumococcus. *See Streptococcus pneumoniae*
- *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia (PCP), 1:19, 21; 2:603, *640*, **640–641, 643**
- *Pneumocystis jiroveci*, 2:640
- Pneumonia, 2:**642–647**
  - chest X-rays, 2:*640*, *643*
  - children's hospital ward, 2:*642*
  - from *Chlamydia* infections, 1:168–169, 172–173
  - from *Haemophilus influenzae*, 1:352, 353, 354
  - Legionnaire's disease and, 1:148, 475–477
  - potential vaccine, 1:162
  - tsunami of 2004 and, 2:646–647
  - walking, 1:289–290; 2:643
  - *See also* Community-acquired pneumonia
- Pneumonic plague
  - in Africa, 2:606
  - as biological weapon, 2:639
  - defined, 1:102; 2:636
  - in medieval Europe, 2:630
- Pock-sowing, 2:628
- Point prevalence, 1:296
- Polio, 2:**648–653**
  - de novo synthesis, 2:778
  - outbreak in Boston, 2:*649*
  - outbreak in India, 2:*648*
  - vaccines for, 1:160, 161, 283–284, 434; 2:650, 651–652, 654–656, *666*
- Polio eradication campaigns, 1:283–284, 434; 2:*654*, **654–656**, 916
- Polio Eradication Initiative, 1:434
- *Polio in China, 2:653*
- Polioviruses, 2:648
- Pollack, Andrew, 2:872–874
- Pollard, Charlie, 2:807
- Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing
  - anthrax attacks, 1:327
  - Buruli ulcer, 1:130
  - cyclosporiasis, 1:226
  - genetic identification and, 1:325, 326
  - rapid tests and, 2:684
- Pontiac fever, 1:475, 477
- Population clustering, 1:230
- Population movement
  - Chagas disease, 1:149, 150, 151
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:266, 267
  - Ebola virus, 1:274
  - infectious disease outbreaks, 1:228–229
  - isolation and quarantine policies, 1:458
  - *See also* Displaced people
- Population size and pandemics, 1:447

Pork. *See* Pigs
Porter, Mark, 2:533–535
Posadas-Wernicke disease, 1:*193*, 193–195
Post-herpetic neuralgia, 1:154; 2:768–769
Post-infective encephalitis, 1:286
Post-polio syndrome, 2:649
Post-transfusion hepatitis. *See* Hepatitis B virus
Postal Service (U.S.), 1:102–103
Postexposure prophylaxis (PEP), for HIV, 1:114
Potassium hydroxide tests. *See* KOH tests
Potera, Carol, 2:646–647
Poultry industry
  Campylobacter infections and, 1:84, 133–134, 318–319
  H5N1-induced culling, 1:351; 2:671
  influenza outbreaks, 1:74, *74*, 77
  nontherapeutic antibiotics use, 1:54, 55
  vendor, 1:*349*
Poverty
  income/health status relationship, 1:276–280
  pandemic preparedness and, 2:671
  river blindness and, 2:717, 718
  trachoma and, 2:826
  tuberculosis and, 2:839, 841
  UNICEF work, 2:859
  vector-borne diseases and, 2:878–879
  viral diseases and, 2:884
Powassan encephalitis, 1:286
PowderMED, 2:871
Poxviruses, overview, 2:883
PPC, 1:407
Praziquantel
  bilharzia, 1:94
  fluke infections, 1:504, 505, 506
  taeniasis, 2:811
  tapeworm infections, 2:814–815
Precautions. *See* Airborne precautions; Contact precautions; Droplet precautions; Standard precautions
Prednisone, for aspergillosis, 1:71
Pregnancy
  chickenpox, 1:154, 155
  Chlamydia infections, 1:168
  cytomegalovirus infections, 1:190, 191, 192
  fifth disease, 1:313, 314
  hepatitis E, 2:883
  listeriosis, 1:501, 502
  malaria, 2:518
  rubella, 2:728, 729, 730
  toxoplasmosis, 2:822
  See also Childbirth; Fetal development; Mother-to-child transmission
Premature Burial and How It May Be Prevented (Tebb), 2:633
Premature burial prevention, 2:633
Preparedness. *See* Bioterrorism preparedness; Pandemic preparedness
President's Malaria Initiative (PMI), 2:617, 861
Preston, Richard, 1:271
Prevalence rates
  defined, 1:291
  morbidity rates and, 1:296
  screening programs and, 1:298
Prevention
  African sleeping sickness, 1:4
  alveolar echinococcosis, 1:27, 28
  amebiasis, 1:30, 31
  angiostrongyliasis, 1:33–34
  anisakiasis, 1:40
  anthrax, 1:45–46
  arthropod-borne diseases, 1:64–65
  avian flu, 1:76–77
  B virus, 1:79
  babesiosis, 1:82
  bacterial diseases, 1:85
  balantidiasis, 1:88
  bilharzia, 1:94–95
  bloodborne pathogens, 1:114
  bovine spongiform encephalopathy, 1:119–120
  brucellosis, 1:123, 124
  Campylobacter infections, 1:133–134
  cat scratch disease, 1:143
  Chagas disease, 1:*149*, 150–151
  chikungunya, 1:158, 159
  cholera, 1:178–179, 299
  Clostridium difficile infections, 1:188
  cohorted community infections, 1:197
  colds, 1:201
  Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:213, 214
  cryptosporidiosis, 1:218, 219, 220
  cyclosporiasis, 1:226
  cytomegalovirus infections, 1:191, 192
  dracunculiasis, 1:253
  dysentery, 1:259
  E. coli infections, 1:305, 306
  Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:265, 267
  encephalitis, 1:288
  Epstein-Barr virus/mononucleosis, 2:561
  filariasis, 1:316
  food-borne illness, 1:319, 320, 321
  fungal infections, 2:579
  germ theory and, 1:331
  group A streptococcal infections, 2:796
  Haemophilus influenzae, 1:353–354
  hand, foot and mouth disease, 1:356–357
  helminth diseases, 1:370
  hemorrhagic fevers, 1:374
  hepatitis A, 1:377–378
  hepatitis B, 1:382
  hepatitis C, 1:385, 387
  hepatitis D, 1:388
  hepatitis E, 1:390, 391
  histoplasmosis, 1:400, 401
  HIV/AIDS, 1:9, 14, 298
  hookworm infections, 1:406
  hot tub rash, 1:412
  HSV-1, 1:393
  HSV-2, 1:396, 397
  human papillomavirus infection, 1:414–415
  impetigo, 1:429
  influenza, 1:440, 445, 450, 454
  Japanese encephalitis, 1:459, 460–461
  kuru disease, 1:469
  Lassa fever, 1:473
  Legionnaire's disease, 1:477
  leishmaniasis, 1:484–485, 486
  leprosy, 1:488, 491
  leptospirosis, 1:495, 496
  lice, 1:498
  listeriosis, 1:501
  liver fluke infections, 1:505
  lung fluke infections, 1:506
  Lyme disease, 1:512, 513
  malaria, 1:184–185, 280, 434; 2:516, 518–519, 520–521
  Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:524
  marine toxin poisoning, 2:529
  measles, 2:531, 532, 533
  meningitis, bacterial, 2:542
  meningitis, viral, 2:545–546
  methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 2:571–572
  mosquito-borne diseases, 2:567–568
  Norovirus infections, 2:595–596
  nosocomial infections, 2:598
  opportunistic infections, 2:603–604
  parasitic diseases, 2:616, 617
  plague, 2:638–639
  pneumonia, 2:645
  premature burial, 2:633
  psittacosis, 2:663
  Q fever, 2:679
  rat-bite fever, 2:688
  relapsing fever, 2:695
  rickettsial diseases, 2:708
  river blindness, 2:717–718
  Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:720–721
  SARS, 2:746

  - shingles, 2:769
  - smallpox, 2:628, 773
  - sporotrichosis, 2:781
  - strep throat, 2:792
  - tetanus, 2:817–818
  - transfusion-transmissible infectionss, 1:110–111, 113–114
  - vector-borne diseases, 1:408–409
- Prevnar vaccine, 2:873
- Primaquine, for malaria, 2:518
- Primary encephalitis, 1:285
- Primary hosts, defined, 1:408
- Prince Edward Island, amnesic shellfish poisoning outbreak, 2:529
- Princeton University, 1:278
- Prion diseases, 2:*657*, **657–659**
  - *See also* Bovine spongiform encephalopathy; Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv; Kuru disease
- Prion-related proteins (PRPNs), 1:210
- Prisons, as cohorted community, 1:197
- Privacy issues
  - infectious disease law and, 1:481
  - isolation and quarantine policies, 1:457–458
  - notifiable diseases and, 2:602
  - tuberculosis patient rights, 2:843
- Probability analysis and epidemiology, 1:297
- Probiotics, 1:188
- Procaine penicillin G, 2:688
- Procopius of Caesarea, 2:629
- Programme for the Surveillance and Control of Leishmaniasis, 1:485
- Proguanil, 2:518
- Project Bioshield
  - anthrax vaccine funding, 1:46
  - purpose, 1:45, 100
  - research funding, 1:104; 2:582
  - smallpox vaccination strategy, 1:101
- Project HOPE, 2:646
- ProMED, 2:**660–661**, *744*
- Promin, 1:489
- Prophylaxis campaigns, as infection control measure, 2:668–669
- Prostitution
  - engraving of sick room, 2:*760*
  - HIV and, 1:16
  - prevention project in India, 1:*297*
  - vaginal microbicides and, 2:914
- Protease inhibitors, 1:13
- Protective clothing. *See* Clothing, protective
- Protective equipment. *See* Personal protective equipment
- Protein deficiency and hookworm infections, 1:406, 407
- Protein kinase R gene (PKR), 1:387
- Proteomics, 1:283
- Protozoan infections, defined, 2:551
  - *See also* specific types
- Provincial level infrastructure, 1:298, 299; 2:665
- Proximity of humans and animals
  - balantidiasis, 1:87
  - *Baylisascaris* infections, 1:91
  - brucellosis and, 1:123
  - cryptosporidiosis, 1:323
  - Ebola virus, 1:274
  - emerging diseases, 1:282
  - Lyme disease, 1:512
- Proximity of humans together. *See* Cohorted communities
- PRPNs (prion-related proteins), 1:210
- Pruritis, from scabies, 2:749
- Prusiner, Stanley, 1:210; 2:658
- Pseudoglanders. *See* Melioidosis
- Pseudomembranes, 1:243, 244
- Pseudomembranous colitis, 1:187
- *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infections
  - as bacterial meningitis cause, 2:540
  - hot tub rash from, 1:*411*, 411–412
  - as opportunistic infection, 1:84
- *Pseudoterranova decipiens* infections. *See* Anisakiasis
- Psittacosis, 2:**662–664**, *663*
- Psychrophilic marine microorganisms, 2:529
- Psychrotropic marine microorganisms, 2:529
- *Pteropus* species fruit bats, as Nipah virus reservoir, 2:588, 589
- Pubic lice, 1:497–499
- Public health, 2:**665–672**
  - cholera, 1:178
  - cohorted community infections, 1:197
  - community-acquired pneumonia, 1:173
  - condom advertisement, 2:*667*
  - economic issues, 1:*276*, 276–280, *277*
  - epidemiology and, 1:296–299
  - Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network and, 1:336–337
  - gonorrhea as, 1:347–348
  - influenza surveillance, 1:454–455
  - isolation and quarantine policies, 1:457
  - Model State Emergency Health Powers Act and, 1:103
  - polio vaccination clinic, 2:*666*
  - war and, 2:892–893
  - *See also* Bioterrorism preparedness
- Public Health Agency of Canada, 2:726
- Public Health Service (U.S.). *See* U.S. Public Health Service
- Public Service Act of 1944, 1:457
- Puerperal fever, 2:**673–676**
  - handwashing and, 1:330, 359
  - Holmes, Oliver Wendell on, 2:673, *673*, 674
  - as nosocomial infection, 2:597–598
  - prevalence, 2:796
  - street mother, 2:*674*
- Pulmonary aspergillosis. *See* Aspergillosis
- Pulmonary infections
  - anthrax, 1:45
  - blastomycosis, 1:108–109
  - *Burkholderia*-related, 1:126–128
  - histoplasmosis and, 1:399
  - hot tub rash and, 1:412
  - lung fluke infections, 1:506–507
  - nocardiosis, 2:591
  - tsunami lung, 2:646–647
- Puncture wounds and tetanus, 2:816
- Purdue University, 1:103
- Purell hand sanitizer, 1:360, 361
- Purulent meningitis, 2:542
- Pustules, smallpox, 2:772
- Puumala virus, 1:363
- Pyelonephritis, 2:864, 865
- Pyocyanin, 1:*411*
- Pyrantel pamoate, 1:406; 2:625
- Pyrethrins, 1:498; 2:695
- Pyrimethamine, 2:518

Q

- Q fever, 2:**677–679**, *678*, 894
- QuantiFERON-TB Gold tests, 2:839
- Quarantines, defined, 1:456
  - *See also* Isolation and quarantine
- Quasem, Himaya, 1:435–436
- Quaternary ammonium disinfectants, 1:251
- Quebec, Canada, *Clostridium difficile* infections in, 1:188
- Quinine, 1:82; 2:515
- Quinolone antibiotics, 1:49

R

- Rabbit fever. *See* Tularemia
- Rabies, 1:37; 2:*680*, **680–683**
- Raccoons and *Baylisascaris* infection, 1:90–92
- Ramadoss, Ambumani, 2:689
- Ramses V (Egyptian pharoah), 2:774

Random antibiotic resistance, 1:52
Random microbial evolution, 2:547, 548
Random vaccination modeling, 1:231
Raoult, Didier, 1:65
Rapid diagnostic tests, 1:439; 2:**684–686**
RAPIDS (Reaching HIV-Affected People with Integrated Development and Support), 2:567
Rash
    chickenpox, 1:*153*, 154–155
    fifth disease, 1:312
    Lyme disease, 1:510, *511*
    measles, 2:532, *532*
    rat-bite fever, 2:687
    ringworm, 2:*713*, 713–714
    Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:*719*
    rubella, 2:728
    scarlet fever, 2:752, *752*
    shingles, 2:767, *767*, 769
    smallpox, 2:772
    syphilis, 2:805
    typhus, 2:853
Raspberries and cyclosporiasis, 1:225
Rat-bite fever (RBF), 2:**687–688**
Rat-borne diseases
    angiostrongyliasis, 1:32–34
    Black Death, 1:64
    Lassa fever, 1:*471*, 471–474
    See also Rodents
RBF (rat-bite fever), 2:687–688
Re-emerging infectious diseases, 2:**689–693**
    African sleeping sickness, 1:1, 4–5
    burial of plague victims, 2:*690*
    chikungunya, 1:158; 2:*689*
    coccidioidomycosis, 1:195
    diphtheria, 1:165, 242, *243*, 244, 245–246
    epidemiology and, 1:299
    malaria, 2:519
    notifiable diseases and, 2:600
    scrofula, 2:756–757
    seasonal variation in disease and, 1:230
    tuberculosis, 1:52, 86, 278–279; 2:841
    yaws, 2:924
    zoonoses, 2:937
    See also Emerging infectious diseases
Reaching HIV-Affected People with Integrated Development and Support (RAPIDS), 2:567
Reactivation of viruses
    HSV-1, 1:392, 393
    HSV-2, 1:395
Reagan, Ronald, 1:17
Reassortment and influenza viruses, 1:444, 450
Receptors (viruses), 2:881
Recombinant DNA technology, 1:67–69; 2:840
Recommendations for Prevention of and Therapy for Exposure to B Virus (CDC), 1:78
Red Cross, 1:480
    See also American Red Cross
Red Death, defined, 2:636
Red tides, 2:527–528
Redi, Francisco, 1:330
Reed, Walter, 1:308, 309, 310; 2:930, 931
Reever, Sam, 1:247
Refugees
    bilharzia and, 1:95
    Bosnian conflict, 2:893
    cholera and, 1:177, 179, 417
    disinfectant soap bath, 1:*249*
    infectious disease outbreaks and, 1:228–229; 2:892
    lice outbreaks, 1:498
    malaria outbreaks, 2:*516*
Regulation. *See* Legislation
Rehydration methods. *See* Oral rehydration methods
Reilley, Brigg, 2:747–748
Reiter's syndrome, 2:765
Relapsing fever, 1:497; 2:**694–696**
Relapsing malaria, 2:516
Relative risk, 1:296
Relief projects. *See* Humanitarian aid
Rely tampons, 2:820
ReNu contact lens solution, 1:203
Reoviruses, 2:883
Replication, viral, 2:881
Reporting systems
    cholera, need for, 1:179
    E. coli timeline, 1:307
    Ghoson, Joseph case, 1:341
    HIV patients, 1:*478*
    immigration and, 1:417–418
    influenza, 1:454–455
    International Health Regulations, 1:481–482
    isolation and quarantine policies, 1:457, 458
    levels of, 1:298–299
    Lyme disease and, 1:511, 513
    ProMED, 2:660–661
    in the U.S., 2:665–666
    West Nile virus, 2:904
Research
    AIDS, 2:*581*
    animal importation regulation and, 1:37
    antibiotics, 1:49, 53
    arthropod-borne disease vaccines, 1:65
    Asimolar Conference, 1:67–69
    bovine spongiform encephalopathy/Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:209, 210–211
    climate change, 1:183–184
    colds, 1:*199*, 201, 202, 426
    Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:214
    Ebola virus, 1:272, 273, 274
    emerging diseases, 1:282, 283
    Epstein-Barr virus vaccine, 2:561
    Fusarium keratitis, 1:203
    gene therapy, 1:*68*; 2:706
    handwashing, 1:359
    hantaviruses, 1:*362*, 364; 2:*885*
    Helicobacter pylori, 1:309–311, 366–367
    hemorrhagic fevers, 1:372, 375
    hepatitis, 1:*380*, 387
    HIV/AIDS, 1:14–15, 22, 404; 2:706
    human papillomavirus infection, 1:414, 415
    income/health status relationship, 1:277–280
    influenza, 1:441, *442*, 444, 446, 450
    Kawasaki syndrome, 1:463–464
    Koch's Postulates and, 1:309–310, 366–367, 465–467
    Lassa fever, 1:*471*, 473
    leprosy, 1:489
    Lyme disease, 1:508, 513
    malaria, 2:519, 520, 521, 617, 690
    Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:526
    measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, 2:534–535
    microorganisms, 2:551, 552
    microscopy and, 2:554–555
    mosquito-borne disease prevention, 1:409
    National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases work, 2:581–583
    parasitic disease vaccines, 2:616
    Patriot Act and, 1:99
    pink eye, 2:622
    polio vaccine, 2:651, 652
    prion diseases, 2:658
    rapid diagnostic tests, 2:685, 686
    re-emerging diseases, 2:690, 692
    respiratory syncytial virus vaccine, 2:702
    retroviruses, 2:706
    Salmonella infections, 2:735
    SARS, 1:*282*; 2:743, 745
    self-experimentation of scientists, 1:*308*, 308–311, 366–367; 2:929–931
    smallpox, 2:*776*, *777–778*

  sterilization-resistant organisms, 2:789–790
  stomach ulcers, 1:309–310
  Streptococcus pyogenes bacteria, 2:585
  syphilis, 2:806, 807, 808
  tropical diseases, 2:836
  tuberculosis, 2:840, 912
  typhus, 2:856–857
  USAMRIID work, 1:274; 2:867–869, *868*
  vaccines, 2:*870*, 870–874, *871*
  viral diseases, 2:*885*, 885–888, *886*, *887*
  West Nile virus, 2:*899*, *900*, 900–901, 904
  women and minorities, 2:912–914
  yellow fever, 1:308–309, 310; 2:925–926, 929–931
  Yersinia pestis infections, 2:632–634, *635*
Research facilities. *See* Laboratory facilities
Research funding
  bioterrorism preparedness and, 1:103, 104–105
  HIV/AIDS, 1:22
  Project Bioshield, 1:45
Reservoirs of disease, 1:297, 408; 2:936
Reshef figure, 2:*628*
Residence halls, as cohorted community, 1:196–197
Resistance. *See* Antibiotic resistance; Drug resistance; Pesticide resistance
Resistant organisms, 2:**697–700**, 788, 789–790
Respirators, 2:619, 645
Respiratory diphtheria, defined, 1:243
  See also Diphtheria
Respiratory syncytial virus. *See* RSV
Respiratory system, overview, 2:642–643
Reston, Virginia, Ebola virus in, 1:37, 271, 273; 2:867
Restriction enzymes, 1:67–68
Retinitis, 1:*190*
Retroviruses, 1:*7*, 22; 2:**704–706**, 883
  See also Antiretroviral therapy
Réunion Island chikungunya outbreak, 1:158, 159
Reverse transcriptase, 1:60–61; 2:704, 881
Reverse transcriptase PCR testing, 1:326
Reverse transcriptase (RT) inhibitors, 1:13
Rheumatic fever and strep throat, 2:792, 796
Rhinitis. *See* Colds (rhinitis)
Rhinoviruses, 1:*200*
Rhode Island encephalitis outbreak, 1:289–290
Rhodnius prolixus, 2:*878*
Ribavirin
  Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:213
  Lassa fever, 1:473
  Nipah virus encephalitis, 2:589
  yellow fever, 2:926
Ribosomes and aminoglycoside antibiotics, 1:49
Richardson, Bill, 1:360, 361
Ricketts, Howard Taylor, 2:707, 719, 853
Rickettsia prowazekii. *See* Typhus
Rickettsia rickettsii. *See* Rocky Mountain spotted fever
Rickettsial diseases, 2:677, **707–709**
Rifampin
  Buruli ulcer, 1:130
  leprosy, 1:489, 491; 2:835, 916
  typhus, 2:855, 856
Rift Valley fever (RVF), 1:373; 2:*710*, **710–712**, *711*
Rights and responsibilities for tuberculosis patients, 2:842–844
Rimantadine, 1:75, 454
Rinderpest, 1:36
Ring vaccination strategy, 1:101; 2:871
Ringworm, 1:37; 2:*713*, **713–715**
Rio Mamore virus, 1:364
Risk assessment, 1:296
River blindness, 1:237, 239; 2:**716–718**, *717*
RNA viruses, 1:201, 272
  See also Retroviruses
Robbins, Frederick, 2:648, 651
Robinson, Lucy Elizabeth, 1:247
Robinson, Marion, 1:158
Rockefeller Foundation, 2:886, 888, 926
Rocky Mountain Laboratory, 2:581–582
Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:708, *719*, **719–721**, 853
Rodents
  angiostrongyliasis, 1:32–34
  babesiosis, 1:82
  Black Death, 1:64
  hantavirus, 1:362, 363, 364–365
  Lassa fever, 1:*471*, 471–474
  rat-bite fever, 2:687
  typhus, 2:855, 856
  Yersinia pestis infections, 2:636–637, 639
Roger of Salerno, 1:488
Roll Back Malaria campaign, 1:280
Roma people, persecution of, 2:631
Romana's sign, 1:150
Rome, early plague in, 2:629–630
Rosanti, 1:235
Rose, Janette, 1:436
Rose gardener's disease (sporotrichosis), 2:780–781
Rosenberg, Barbara Hatch, 2:660
Ross, Ronald, 1:308; 2:521
Rossbach, Michael Josef, 2:795
Rotary International, 2:652, 654, 916
Rotavirus infections, 1:162, 322, 324; 2:**722–724**, *723*
Rotavirus Vaccination Program, 1:324; 2:723
Roundworm infections, 1:369, *405*, 405–407; 2:**725–727**
Rous, Peyton, 1:135
Rous sarcoma virus, 2:704
Roy (Army physician), 1:447–448
The Royal Gift of Healing (engraving), 2:*755*
Royalty, as healers, 2:755, 757
RSV (respiratory syncytial virus) infection, 2:*701*, **701–703**
RT-PCR (reverse transcriptase PCR) testing, 1:326
RT (reverse transcriptase) inhibitors, 1:13
Rubella, 1:161; 2:*728*, **728–730**
Rubeola. *See* Measles
Rural areas, 1:150; 2:685
Rusmiyati, 1:235
Russia
  anthrax investigation, 1:44
  Biological Weapons Convention and, 1:97
  diphtheria re-emergence, 1:165, 242, *243*, 244, 245–246
  meningitis, viral, 2:546
  smallpox repository, 2:774, *777*, *778*
  smallpox vaccine exposure, 2:774–775
  typhus, 2:855, 892
  See also Soviet Union
RVF (Rift Valley fever), 1:373; 2:*710*, 710–712, *711*
Rwanda
  early AIDS cases, 1:19
  HIV positive patients, 2:*603*
  refugees from, 1:*177*, 179, *249*
Ryun, Anne, 1:360

S

Saaremaa virus, 1:363
Sabin, Albert, 2:651, 652
Sabin, Florence, 1:480
Sabin Health Laws, 1:480
Sachs, Jeffrey, 1:279, 280
Safe sex practices, 2:762
    See also Condoms
SAFE strategy (trachoma), 2:825
Sala people, 2:653
Salim, Salimar, 1:235–236
Salk, Jonas, 1:161; 2:651
Salmon, Daniel, 2:733
Salmonella infections, 1:319, 320–321; 2:*733*, **733–735**
Salmonella typhi infections. *See* Typhoid fever
Salmonellosis. *See Salmonella infections*
Saltwater-borne diseases, 2:896
Samant, Vijay B., 2:874
Sample shipping time, 1:307
San Francisco, California
    aspergillosis prevalence, 1:71
    Gay Freedom Day Parade, 1:*10*
    Operation Sea Spray, 2:866
San Joaquim, Bolivia, hemorrhagic fever in, 2:885, 886–887
San Joaquin Valley fever, 1:*193*, 193–195
Sanatoriums, tuberculosis, 2:839
Sand flies, as leishmaniasis vector, 1:483, *483*, 484
Sandia National Laboratory, 2:778
Sanitation, 2:**736–739**
    access to, 1:180*s*; 2:736–738, 859
    antimicrobial soaps, 1:58
    balantidiasis, 1:88–89
    Campylobacter infections, 1:133
    Chagas disease, 1:150–151
    cholera, 1:175, 176, 177–178, 179, 181
    infection control, 1:432
    mosquito-borne diseases, 2:567
    painting of child bathing, 2:*736*
    shigellosis, 2:765, 766
    typhoid fever, 2:850, 851
    whipworm, 2:907
    yellow fever, 2:929
    See also Water sanitation and treatment
Sanitization, defined, 1:431
Sanofi-Aventis, 2:873
Sarcoptes scabiei infections (scabies), 2:*749*, ***749–751***, *750*
SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome), 2:**740–748**
    airline traveler case, 1:343–344; 2:740–741, 742
    airport passenger scanners, 2:*741*
    economic effects, 1:*276*
    as emerging disease, 1:284
    field level response, 2:608–611, 666–668
    isolation and quarantine, 1:456–457, 458
    map of risk areas, 2:*743*
    masked security guards, 2:*742*
    precautions, 1:23, *23*, 256
    ProMED e-mail on, 2:*744*
    quarantined worker, 2:*740*
    research, 1:*282*
    wildlife trade and, 2:920, 921
Sasakawa, Yohei, 1:491, 492
Saudi Arabia
    Rift Valley fever, 2:711, 712
    tick-borne relapsing fever, 2:695
Sawitri, Adisti Sukma, 1:235–236
Scabies, 2:*749*, **749–751, *750***
Scandinavia, disease outbreaks in, 2:650, 753
Scanning electron microscopes (SEMs), 2:555
Scarlet fever, 2:*752*, **752–754**
Schenck, Benjamin Robinson, 2:780
Schenck's disease (sporotrichosis), 2:780–781
Schiappacasse, Robert, 1:165–166
Schistosoma parasites, 1:93, 94
Schistosomatium douthitti, swimmer's itch from, 2:802
Schistosomes, swimmer's itch from, 2:801, 802
Schistosomiasis. *See* Bilharzia
Schlafly, Phyllis, 1:164
Schneider, Stephen, 1:183
Schönlein, Johann, 2:838
School Is Shut After Outbreak of Encephalitis Kills a Pupil, ***1:289–290***
School vaccinations
    Boulder story, 1:162–166
    CDC schedules, 1:*163*, *164*
    overview, 1:161
    Washington, D.C. case, 1:156
Schools
    as cohorted community, 1:196–197
    epidemiological modeling and, 1:231
    hand, foot and mouth disease outbreaks, 1:356
    lice outbreaks, 1:498
    pink eye and, 2:622
Scombrotoxic fish poisoning, 2:527, 529
Scotland. *See* United Kingdom
Scrapie and bovine spongiform encephalopathy, 1:118, 119
Screening programs
    blood donations, 1:210
    cervical cancer, 1:415
    Chlamydia infections, 1:170
    overview, 1:297–298
Scrofula, 2:*755*, **755–757**
Scrub typhus, 2:852, 854, 855
SDA (Soap and Detergent Association), 1:359
Seafood
    anisakiasis from, 1:39, 40
    toxins in, 2:527–530
Seasonal variation in disease
    cat scratch disease, 1:143
    cholera, 1:179
    Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:266
    fifth disease, 1:312
    infectious disease trends and, 1:229–230
    influenza, 1:438–439, *452*, 452–455
    Japanese encephalitis, 1:460
    Kawasaki syndrome, 1:463
    meningitis, viral, 2:545
    polio, 2:648
    public policy implications, 1:5–6
    respiratory syncytial virus, 2:701–702
    rotavirus infections, 2:722
    tularemia, 2:847
    whooping cough, 2:910
SEB (staphylococcal enterotoxin B), as biological weapon, 2:894
Second Pandemic (plague). *See* Black Death
Secondary encephalitis, 1:286
Secondary syphilis, 2:760
Secretory otitis media, 1:262
Security, patient rights, 2:843
Seizures, from vaccines, 1:164
Select Agent Program (CDC), 1:99
Selective pressures and microbial evolution, 2:547
Self-experimentation of scientists, 1:*308*, 308–311, 366–367; 2:929–931
Self *vs.* non-self (immune system), 1:421
Semmelweiss, Ignaz, 1:56, 330, 359; 2:598, 673, 674
SEMs (scanning electron microscopes), 2:555
Seneca Lake State Park, cryptosporidiosis outbreak, 1:220
Seneca (Roman philosopher), 2:553
Senegal
    malaria, 2:699
    treating of mosquito nets, 2:*515*
    yellow fever, 2:928*t*

Sensation and leprosy, 1:490
Sentinel cases, 1:260–261, 283
Seoul virus, 1:363
Sepsis and antibiotic sensitivity testing, 1:223
Septic scarlet fever, 2:753
Septicemia, from *Burkholderia* infections, 1:339
Septicemic plague, 2:606, 630, 636
Serbia
  Bosnian refugees in, 2:893
  typhus, 2:855, 891
Sermand, Dan, 2:747–748
Serological tests. *See* Blood tests
Serratia marcescens infections, 2:866
Serum hepatitis. *See* Hepatitis B virus
Severe acute respiratory syndrome. *See* SARS
Sewer systems and sanitation, 2:738
Sex trade. *See* Prostitution
Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), 2:**758–763**
  Chlamydia infections, 1:136, *168*, **168–171**, *169*; 2:759
  community-associated MRSa, 2:571
  gonorrhea, 1:*345*, 345–348, *346*
  HSV-1, 1:198, 286, 328, *392*, 392–394
  HSV-2, 1:286, 328, *395*, 395–398; 2:760–761
  prostitution and, 1:16, *297*; 2:*760*, 914
  scabies, 2:*749*, 749–751, *750*
  syphilis, 2:760, *804*, 804–809
  Trichomonas infections, 2:832–833
  urinary tract infections and, 2:864
  vaginal microbicides and, 2:914
  See also AIDS; HIV; HPV
Shapin, Steven, 1:179–181
Sharps (medical instruments). *See* Needles and disease spread
Shaw, Herman, 2:807, 809
Sheep, 1:*41*; 2:712
Shellfish
  anisakiasis from, 1:39, 40
  marine toxins in, 2:527–530
  rotavirus infections and, 1:322–323
Shelter living. *See* Homeless people
Shiga, Kiyoshi, 2:765
Shiga-like toxins, 1:304–305
Shigellosis, 2:**764–766**
  closed lake, 2:*764*
  E. coli and, 1:305
  as form of dysentery, 1:257–261
Shingles infections, 1:154; 2:*767*, **767–769**
Shining Mountain Waldorf School, 1:163–166
Ship fever. *See* Typhus
Ship travel and disease spread, 1:*472*; 2:595, 927
Shope, Robert, 2:660, 888
Shottmuller, Hugo, 2:797
Sick City, ***1:180–181***
Sierra Leone
  dysentery outbreak, 1:260–261
  Lassa fever, 1:*471*, 473
Silbergeld, Ellen K., 1:54–55
Silent Spring (Carson), 2:566
Silver methenamine stains, 2:554
Silymarin compounds, 1:387
Simmons, Fred, 2:807
Simon, Harvey B., 2:549–550
Simond, Paul-Louis, 2:637
Simulations and modeling
  bioterrorism, 1:6
  climate change, 1:183–184
  infectious disease trends, 1:229–231
  USPS anthrax attack, 1:102–103
  See also Computer models
Simulium black flies, 2:716, 717
Sin Nombre virus, 1:364, 373
Singapore
  airline traveler SARS case, 1:344
  human enterovirus-71, 1:356
  Nipah virus encephalitis, 2:589
  SARS, 2:746
Sinusitis, 1:200
Skin disorders
  Botox and, 1:116–117
  fungal, 2:578
  impetigo, 1:*428*, 428–430
  intertrigo, 1:140
  Staphylococcus aureus, 2:785–786
  See also specific diseases and disorders
Skin lesions. *See* Lesions
Skin tests, 1:490; 2:839
Slaughtering of infected animals. *See* Culling of infected animals
Sleeping sickness. *See* African sleeping sickness
"Slim," as nickname for AIDS, 1:18, 19, 20
Small Changes in 1918 Pandemic Virus Knocks Out Transmission: Research Provides Clues for Assessing Pandemic Potential of New Influenza Viruses (press release), ***1:441***
Smallpox, 2:**770–779**
  as biological weapon, 1:101; 2:771, 774, 894
  CDC repository, 1:148
  vs. chickenpox, 1:153
  early prevention efforts, 2:628
  girl with pox, 2:*770*
  monkeypox and, 2:556, 557, 558
  vaccines for, 1:*98*, 101, 330; 2:771, 773, 774–775, 776, 777, 870, *870*
Smallpox eradication and storage, 1:160; 2:774–775, *776*, **776–779**, 915–916
Smart packaging, 1:502
Smith, Bradley T., 1:104–105
Smith, E.F., 1:466
Smith, Hamilton, 1:67
Smith, Theobald, 1:81; 2:733
Snails
  angiostrongyliasis and, 1:*32*, 32–33
  bilharzia and, 1:*93*, 94
  fluke infections and, 1:505, 506
  swimmer's itch and, 2:802
Snake bites, 2:936
Snow, John, 1:178, 295, 299, *300*, 330, 479; 2:607, 736
Soap and Detergent Association (SDA), 1:359
Soaps, antimicrobial, 1:*56*, 56–58
Social factors
  dracunculiasis, 1:253
  filariasis, 1:316
  leishmaniasis disfigurement, 1:485
  leprosy, 1:487, 488, 491
  mononucleosis, 2:562
  vaccination rejection, 2:576
Social justice, 1:278–279, 425–426
Sodium hypochlorite, as disinfectant, 1:250, 251
Soil-transmitted diseases
  fungal infections, 2:579
  helminth diseases, 1:370
  hookworm infections, 1:405
Soldiers. *See* Military
Solution-phase hybridization, 1:325–326
Somalia
  increasing HIV rates, 1:419
  last smallpox case, 1:160; 2:*772*, *777*
  leishmaniasis, 2:538
  Médecins Sans Frontières work, 2:538–539
  Rift Valley fever, 2:711, *711*
Soo, Jack, 2:744
Sore throat, from strep throat, 2:791, 792
South Africa
  Ebola virus, 1:270
  extremely drug-resistant tuberculosis, 2:550, 691
  HIV/AIDS, 1:*8*, *60*, *237*, *403*; 2:*759*
  pension payments and health status, 1:278
  tuberculosis, 2:841

- South America
  - Buruli ulcer, 1:130
  - cancer-infectious disease link, 1:137
  - Chagas disease, 1:149, 150, 151
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:265, 266
  - filariasis, 1:316
  - hantaviruses, 1:364
  - leishmaniasis, 1:484
  - leprosy, 1:488, 490
  - lung fluke infections, 1:506
  - malaria, 2:517, 566
  - river blindness, 2:716
  - Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:720
  - smallpox, 2:770, 771
  - St. Louis encephalitis, 2:731
  - taeniasis, 2:812
  - tapeworm infections, 2:814
  - tick-borne relapsing fever, 2:695
  - tropical diseases, 2:835
  - typhoid fever, 2:850
  - typhus, 2:855
  - whipworm, 2:907
  - yellow fever, 2:566, 926, 928*t*
  - *See also* specific countries
- South Korea, avian flu outbreak, 1:74
- Southeast Asia
  - bilharzia, 1:94
  - *Burkholderia*-related diseases, 1:127
  - cancer-infectious disease link, 1:137
  - chikungunya, 1:157, 158
  - dengue fever, 1:234
  - diphtheria, 1:244
  - early plague, 2:632
  - filariasis, 1:315
  - malaria, 2:517
  - plague, 2:637
  - roundworm infections, 2:725
  - syphilis, 2:805
  - tropical diseases, 2:835
  - tuberculosis, 2:841
  - typhoid fever, 2:850
  - whipworm, 2:907
  - wildlife trade, 2:920
  - *See also* specific countries
- Southeast Poultry Research Laboratory, 1:441
- Southern blot analysis, 1:325
- Southwark and Vauxhall Company, 1:295
- Southwestern United States
  - coccidioidomycosis, 1:194
  - hantaviruses, 1:148, 364–365
  - plague, 2:637
- Souza, Geraldo de Paula, 2:915
- Soviet Union and biological weapons, 1:43–44, 97; 2:774
  - *See also* Russia
- Spa safety, 1:411–412
- Space research and bacteria, 2:789
- Spain, disease outbreaks in, 1:245; 2:695
- Spanish flu pandemic. *See* Influenza pandemic of 1918
- Speaker, Andrew, 1:343, 419, 481; 2:840
- Special Program for Research and Training in Tropical Diseases, 1:4
- Species identification, 1:325
- Spectroscopy, for pathogen identification, 1:103–104
- Spencer, Charles, 2:553
- Spinal polio, 2:649
- *Spirillum minus* infections, 2:687–688
- Spirochetes, mode of locomotion, 1:509
- Spleen enlargement and mononucleosis, 2:559, 563–564
- Spontaneous antibiotic resistance, 1:52
- Spontaneous generation hypothesis, 1:329–330, 331
- Sporadic Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, 2:657
- Sporanox. *See* Itraconazole
- Spore forms
  - anthrax, 1:44–45
  - bacterial diseases, 1:84–85
  - *Clostridium botulinum*, 1:*115*, 116
  - *Cryptococcus neoformans*, 1:215
  - food safety and, 1:318
  - histoplasmosis, 1:399
  - resistance to disinfectants, 1:251
  - sterilization resistance, 2:788, 789
- Sporotrichosis, 2:**780–781**
- Sporozoites, 2:517, *615*
- Spotted fevers, 2:852, 853, 854
  - *See also* Rocky Mountain spotted fever
- Spraying programs
  - dengue fever, 1:*234*; 2:*569*
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:*266*
  - leishmaniasis, 1:484, 486
  - malaria, 2:*516*, 520–521, 878
  - mosquito-borne disease, 1:*266*, 408–409
  - relapsing fever, 2:695
  - West Nile virus, 2:903, 904
- Squirrels
  - plague, 2:636
  - typhus, 2:855
  - West Nile virus, 2:902
- Sri Lanka, malaria in, 2:519
- St. Louis encephalitis, 1:287, 372; 2:*731–732*
- St. Louis University Hospital, 2:870
- Stages 1-3 of Lyme disease, 1:510–511
- Staining techniques, 1:221; 2:554
- Standard precautions, 2:**782–784**
  - handwashing and, 1:359; 2:782, 783
  - infection control and, 1:431
  - purpose, 1:114
  - *See also* Airborne precautions; Contact precautions
- Stapes bones, 2:803
- Staphylococcal enterotoxin B (SEB), as biological weapon, 2:894
- *Staphylococcus aureus* infections, 2:**785–787**
  - antibiotic resistance, 1:49–50, 51; 2:549
  - as bacterial meningitis cause, 2:540
  - *Haemophilus influenzae* culturing and, 1:352
  - impetigo and, 1:*428*, 428–430
  - nosocomial infections and, 2:598
  - petri dish culture, 2:*785*
  - toxic shock from, 2:819
  - *See also* MRSa
- State level infrastructure
  - field level response and, 2:608
  - isolation and quarantine policies, 2:745–746
  - Model State Emergency Health Powers Act and, 1:103, 481
  - overview, 2:665
  - reporting systems, 1:298, 299; 2:600
- State Research Center of Virology and Biotechnology (Russia), 2:774, *777*
- Statistical analysis and epidemiology, 1:297
- Status (social) and health, 1:425
- STDs. *See* Sexually transmitted diseases
- Steam sterilization (autoclaving), 2:783, 788–789
- Steer, Allen, 1:508
- Stein, Andreas, 1:65
- Steiner, Rudolf, 1:164
- Sterilants, regulation of, 1:57
- Sterilization, 2:**788–790**
  - *vs.* disinfection, 1:57
  - *vs.* sanitization, 1:431
- Sternberg, George, 1:308, 309
- Stewart, William, 1:51
- Stinear, Tim, 1:130
- Stockpiling of drugs
  - antiviral drugs, 1:454, 455
  - as infection control measure, 2:669
  - influenza vaccine, 2:873

  - pandemic preparedness and, 2:613
  - smallpox vaccine, 2:773, *870*
  - tularemia, 2:847
- Stomach cancer and *Helicobacter pylori* infections, 1:136, 137, 367
- Stomach flu. *See* Gastroenteritis; Norovirus infections
- Stomach ulcers and *Helicobacter pylori* infections, 1:*308*, 309–311, 366–367, 466
- Stool tests, 1:226, 334
- Stop TB Partnership, 2:842
- "The Strangler." *See* Diphtheria
- Street people. *See* Homeless people
- Strep throat, 2:*791*, **791–793**, 795, 796
- *Streptobacillus moniliformis* infections, 2:687–688
- Streptococcal infections, Group A, 2:**794–796**
  - impetigo and, 1:*428*, 428–430
  - necrotizing fasciitis and, 2:*584*, 584–587, *585*
  - puerperal fever from, 2:597, 673, 675
  - scarlet fever from, 2:752
  - strep throat from, 2:*791*, 791–793
  - tonsillitis, 2:*794*
- Streptococcal infections, Group B, 2:**797–798**
- Streptococcal pharyngitis. *See* Strep throat
- Streptococcal toxic shock syndrome, 2:586, 587, 794–795
- *Streptococcus agalactiae*, 2:540
- *Streptococcus pneumoniae*
  - as bacterial meningitis cause, 2:540, 542
  - as ear infection cause, 1:262
- *Streptococcus pyogenes* infections. *See* Streptococcal infections, Group A
- Streptomycin
  - Buruli ulcer, 1:130
  - plague, 2:638
  - tularemia, 2:847
- Strict pathogens, defined, 2:552
- Strongyloidiasis, 2:**799–800**
- Stumpy form, *trypanosoma* species, 1:1
- Sub-Saharan Africa
  - antiretroviral need, 1:62, 240
  - diarrhea, 2:737
  - economic impact of malaria, 1:279–280
  - HIV/AIDS prevalence, 1:16; 2:860–861, 884, 913
  - malaria, 2:515, 517, 520–521
  - Millennium Goals, 2:860–861
  - syphilis, 2:805
  - tuberculosis, 2:691
  - women's issues, 2:913
- Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, 2:532
- Subcutaneous fungal infections, 2:578
- Subspecies identification, 1:325
- Sudan
  - Ebola virus, 1:37, 271, 275
  - hepatitis E, 1:*390*
  - leishmaniasis, 1:484
  - louse-borne relapsing fever, 2:695
  - refugee movement, 1:229
- Sulfadiazine, for glanders, 1:339
- Sulfonamide, for nocardiosis, 2:592
- *Summary of Notifiable Diseases* (journal), ***2:601***
- Sunshine Project, 2:778
- Superinfection, of hepatitis D, 1:388
- Suppressed immune systems. *See* Immunocompromised people
- Suramin, for African sleeping sickness, 1:3–4
- Surface disinfection
  - overview, 1:250–251
  - standard precautions, 2:783
  - toxoplasmosis prevention, 2:822
  - *See also* Biofilm bacteria
- Surgery
  - anisakiasis, 1:39
  - aspergillosis, 1:71
  - Buruli ulcer, 1:130
  - contact precautions, 1:207
  - disinfection for, 1:249–250, 331, 431
  - ear infections, 1:263
  - equipment sterilization and, 2:783, 789
  - Médecins Sans Frontières projects, 2:537
- Surveillance systems
  - aspergillosis, 1:71
  - *Campylobacter* infections, 1:134
  - cancer registries, 1:137
  - cholera, need for, 1:179
  - emerging diseases, 1:283
  - encephalitis, 1:289
  - Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network and, 1:336–337
  - globalization and, 1:342
  - influenza, 1:445, 454–455
  - leishmaniasis, 1:485
  - levels of functioning, 1:298–299
  - meningitis, 1:197
  - notifiable diseases and, 2:600–602, 601*s*
  - plague, 2:638
  - rubella, 2:729
  - smallpox, 2:777
  - STDs, 2:761–762
  - tuberculosis, 2:841
  - in the U.S., 2:665–666
  - water-borne diseases, 2:898
  - WHO, 2:665
- Susceptibility testing, 1:223
- Sushi, anisakiasis from, 1:38
- Suzuki, Chigusa, 1:513
- SV40 virus and mesothelioma, 1:137
- Swaziland, HIV/AIDS in, 1:16–17
- Sweden, pertussis in, 1:165
- Swedish International Development Cooperation Agency, 2:738
- Sweeties Day Care (UK), 1:435
- Swimmer's ear and swimmer's itch, 1:263; 2:*801*, **801–803**
- Sylvatic rabies, 2:681, 682
- Syphilis, 2:760, *804*, **804–809**
- Systemic fungal infections, 2:578
- Systrom, David, 2:646
- Sze, Szeming, 2:915

T

- T cell vaccines, 2:582
- T cells
  - CD4+, 1:11, 402, 403; 2:641
  - helper T cells, 1:403, 424
  - human T-lymphotropic virus replication and, 2:704
  - purpose, 1:423
  - regulatory, 1:403–404
- Tabes doralis, 2:805
- Taeniasis (*Taenia* infections, **2:810–812**, *813*
- Taiwan
  - angiostrongyliasis discovery, 1:33
  - H5N1 experience, 1:419
  - human enterovirus-71, 1:356
- Tamiflu. *See* Oseltamivir phosphate
- Tampons and toxic shock syndrome, 2:785, 819–820
- Tanzania
  - early AIDS cases, 1:19
  - leprosy, 1:490; 2:916
  - Rift Valley fever, 2:712
  - woman washing clothes, 1:*93*
- Tape tests, 2:625
- Tapeworm infections, 2:**813–815**
  - adult tapeworm, 2:*813*
  - alveolar echinococcosis, 1:*26*, 26–28
  - overview, 1:369
  - taeniasis, 2:810–812
- Target sites for antiviral drugs, 1:60
- Tattooing, 1:10, 386
- TB. *See* Tuberculosis
- TBRF (tick-borne relapsing fever), 2:694, 695–696
- Td (tetanus-diphtheria) vaccine, 1:244
- TdaP (tetanus-diphtheria-acellular pertussis vaccine), 1:244
- Tears and conjunctiva, 2:623

- Tebb, William, 2:633
- Teenagers. *See* Adolescents
- Teklehaimanot, Awash, 1:280
- Temporary vaccines, for chickenpox, 1:155
- TEMs (transmission electron microscopes), 2:555
- Terrorism. *See* Bioterrorism
- Tertiary syphilis, 2:760
- Tetanus, 1:161, 162; 2:**816–818**, *817*
- Tetanus-diphtheria-acellular pertussis vaccine (TdaP), 1:244
- Tetanus-diphtheria vaccine (Td), 1:244
- Tetanus immune globulin, 2:817
- Tetracycline
  - balantidiasis, 1:88
  - cholera, 1:177
  - plague, 2:638
  - rat-bite fever, 2:688
  - relapsing fever, 2:695
  - rickettsial diseases, 2:708
  - trachoma, 2:825
  - typhus, 2:855
- Texas
  - dengue fever, 1:233, 234
  - human papillomavirus infection vaccine, 1:137, 415; 2:763
  - Norovirus infection, 2:595
  - shigellosis case, 2:766
  - West Nile virus, 1:185
- Thailand
  - avian flu, 1:74, 77
  - HIV/AIDS prevention programs, 1:16; 2:862
  - lung fluke infections, 1:506
  - typhus, 2:856
- Thailand virus, 1:363
- Theiler, Max, 2:928
- Thermocycler testing, 1:*47*
- Thiabendazole, for trichinellosis, 2:830
- Thimerosal, 2:871
- Third Pandemic (plague), 2:632, 637
- Third World nations. *See* Developing nations
- Third World Network, 2:778
- *This Day Relenting God* (poem), ***2:521***
- Threadworm infections. *See* Pinworm infections
- Three by Five Initiative, 2:860
- Thrombocytopenic purpura, 1:306
- Thrush, 1:*138*
  - *See also* Candidiasis
- Thucydides, 2:628
- Tick-borne diseases
  - babesiosis, 1:*81*, 81–82
  - Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:*212*, 212–214
  - Powassan encephalitis, 1:286
  - Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:708, *719*, 719–721
  - wildlife trade and, 2:921
  - *See also* Lyme disease
- Tick-borne relapsing fever (TBRF), 2:694, 695–696
- Tick-borne typhus, 2:852, 853, 854, 855
- Tick removal, 2:721
- Time to diagnosis
  - *E. coli* infections, 1:307
  - Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:708, 721
- *Time's Up on School Shots: 434 Students Sent to Court,* ***1:156***
- *Tinea* infections. *See* Ringworm
- Tinidazole, for *Trichomonas* infections, 2:833
- Tipaza Beach swimmers, 2:*636*
- TMP-SMX. *See* Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
- Togaviruses, overview, 2:883
- Tongue symptoms, scarlet fever, 2:752–753
- Tonsillitis, 2:*794*
- Tonsils and strep throat, 2:792–793
- TORCH tests, 1:393
- Toronto, Canada, SARS outbreak in, 1:256; 2:667–668, 746
- Toronto Public Health, 2:668
- Total genetic sequencing, 1:325
- Touré, Amadou Toumani, 1:371
- Tourism and disease spread. *See* Travel and infectious disease
- Toxic scarlet fever, 2:753
- Toxic shock syndrome (TSS), 2:**819–820**
  - CDC work, 1:148
  - *Staphylococcus aureus* infections and, 2:785, 819
  - streptococcal, 2:586, 587, 794–795
- Toxins
  - anthrax, 1:44
  - botulism, 1:115, 116
  - diphtheria, 1:243, 244
  - *E. coli*, 1:304–305, 319
  - from seafood, 2:527–530
- Toxoid vaccines, 2:816, 872
- Toxoplasmosis, 2:**821–823**
- Tracheostomy, 1:244
- Trachoma, 1:168, 169, 171; 2:*824*, **824–826**
- Trade agreements and infectious disease regulation, 1:480
- Transfusion-transmissible infections (TTIs), 1:110
- Transfusions, defined, 1:111
- Transgenic organisms. *See* Genetic engineering
- Translation (genetic) and antiviral drugs, 1:61
- Translocation of people. *See* Population movement
- Transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs), 1:118
  - *See also* Prion diseases
- Transmission electron microscopes (TEMs), 2:555
- Transplantation, organ. *See* Organ transplantation
- Transport of patients, limits on, 1:207, 256
- Trap and slaughter programs. *See* Culling of infected animals
- *Travel Advisories: Wait 'Til You Hear What They Say About Us,* ***1:513–514***
- Travel and infectious disease, 2:**827–828**
  - African sleeping sickness, 1:3
  - amebiasis, 1:30, 31
  - angiostrongyliasis, 1:33–34
  - arthropod-borne diseases, 1:64
  - Chagas disease, 1:151
  - chikungunya, 1:157, 158, 159
  - cholera, 1:179
  - cryptosporidiosis, 1:219
  - dysentery, 1:257–258, 259–261
  - globalization and, 1:341–344
  - hepatitis A, 1:377–378
  - hepatitis D, 1:388
  - hepatitis E, 1:391
  - Japanese encephalitis, 1:459, 461
  - leishmaniasis, 1:485, 486
  - leptospirosis, 1:496
  - Lyme disease, 1:513–514
  - malaria, 2:518
  - overview, 1:341; 2:827–828
  - rickettsial diseases, 2:707–708
  - sanitation and, 2:738
  - SARS, 1:343–344; 2:740–741, 742
  - trade issues, 2:918, 919–920
  - trichinellosis, 2:830
  - typhoid fever, 2:850
  - typhus, 2:855, 856
  - vector-borne diseases and, 2:879
  - yellow fever, 2:927
  - zoonoses and, 2:935
  - *See also* Airline travel
- Travel restrictions, as disease control measure, 2:669, 746
- Travelers' diarrhea. *See* Dysentery
- Trematode infections, 1:369–370, 503–505
- Trench fever, 1:497
- *Treponema pallidum* infections. *See* Syphilis
- *Treponema pertenue* infections. *See* Yaws

Trichinellosis, 1:37; 2:**829–831**
Trichobilharzia, swimmer's itch from, 2:802
Trichomonas infections, 2:**832–833**
Trichuriasis, 2:*906*, 906–908
Triclabendazole, for liver fluke infections, 1:504, 505
Triclocarban, in antimicrobial soaps, 1:57
Triclosan, in antimicrobial soaps, 1:57
Trifluridine, 1:60
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX)
  nocardiosis, 2:592
  shigellosis, 2:765
  typhoid fever, 2:850
Triomune pill, 1:*60*
Trismus, from tetanus, 2:816
Trophozoite forms
  Balantidium coli, 1:88
  Entamoeba histolytica, 1:29
  giardiasis, 1:333, 334
Tropical infectious diseases, 2:**834–836**
  See also specific diseases
True negatives and positives, defined, 1:298
Trump, Donald, 1:361
Trypanosoma brucei infections. *See* African sleeping sickness
Trypanosoma cruzi infections. *See* Chagas disease
Trypanosomiasis. *See* African sleeping sickness
Trypsin and influenza, 1:444
TSEs (transmissible spongiform encephalopathies), 1:118
Tsetse fly, African sleeping sickness from, 1:1, *2:834*
TSS. *See* Toxic shock syndrome
Tsunami lung, 2:646–647
Tsunami of 2004, 2:*537*, 646–647
TTIs (transfusion-transmissible infections), 1:110
Tuberculin, 2:838, 839
Tuberculocides, 1:57
Tuberculoid leprosy, 1:490
Tuberculosis, 1:282; **2:837–844**
  airborne precautions, 1:23, 24
  antibiotic resistance, 2:550
  drug resistance, 1:24
  genetic identification, 1:325
  immigration and, 1:418, 419
  map of risk areas, 2:*837*
  Millennium Goals, 2:860, 861
  multi-drug resistant, 1:325; 2:550, 840, 841
  as opportunistic infection, 2:*603*
  patients, 2:*838*, *839*
  re-emergence, 1:52, 86, 282; 2:690–691
  research, 2:912
  scrofula and, 2:*755*, 755–756
  social inequalities and, 1:278–279
  vaccines, 1:161
  See also XDR-TB
Tularemia, 2:*845*, **845–848**, 893–894
Tumpey, Terrence, 1:441
Tunisia, typhus research in, 2:857
Tuskegee Syphilis Study, 2:806, 807–809
Tutu, Desmond, 1:492
Types A, B & C influenza, 1:438–439, 444, 450, 453
Types A, B & E botulism, 1:116
Typhoid fever, 2:736–737, *849*, **849–851**
Typhoid Mary, 2:849, 851
Typhoid psychosis, 2:849
Typhus, 2:**852–857**
  lice and, 1:497, 498
  nurses at typhus hospital, 2:*852*
  warning sign, 2:*853*
  World War I and, 2:891–892

U

Uganda
  Burkitt's lymphoma discovery, 1:135
  Buruli ulcer prevalence, 1:129
  cholera outbreak, 1:417
  early AIDS cases, 1:18, 19, 20
  Ebola virus, 1:*269*, 271
  malaria, 2:*517*, 567
  Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:523, 524, *525*
  West Nile virus discovery, 2:899
UK. *See* United Kingdom
Ultraviolet light, as disinfectant, 1:250
UN. *See* United Nations
UNAIDS
  antiretroviral therapy access work, 2:862
  global reference group, 1:240
  leishmaniasis work, 1:485
  on Somalia, 1:419
Uncertainty in climate change prediction, 1:184
Undeveloped nations. *See* Developing nations
UNDP (United Nations Development Program), 1:4; 2:860
Undulant fever. *See* Brucellosis
UNICEF (United Nations Children's Fund), 2:**858–859**
  African sleeping sickness work, 1:4
  diphtheria work, 1:246
  helminth disease programs, 1:371
  measles campaign, 2:533, *534*
  polio eradication program, 2:652, 654, 916
  water treatment programs, 1:260
Union of Concerned Scientists, 1:54
United Kingdom (UK)
  animal importation, 1:36
  anthrax biological weapons program, 1:43
  Bill of Mortality, 1:*295*
  blood donation screening, 1:210
  bovine spongiform encephalopathy epidemic, 1:118, 119, 120; 2:658–659
  cholera epidemic, 1:178, 295, 299, *300*, 479; 2:607, 736
  Clostridium difficile infections, 1:188
  Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv, 1:208, 209, 210; 2:658–659
  Department of Health, 1:110
  diphtheria, 1:243, 245
  Ebola virus case, 1:271
  foot and mouth disease analysis, 1:*294*
  General Medical Council, 2:534
  hand, foot and mouth disease, 1:355–356
  HIV from blood donations, 1:110
  measles, mumps and rubella vaccine controversy, 2:534–535, 871
  meningitis, 1:197
  methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 1:433; 2:570
  nurseries with poor hygiene, 1:435–436
  pink eye research, 2:622
  plague epidemic, 1:*295*; 2:*690*
  polio, 2:650
  royal healing ceremonies, 2:755, *755*
  scarlet fever, 2:753–754
  STDs, 2:762
  typhoid fever, 2:850
  typhus, 2:854–855
  World War II penicillin use, 2:892
United Nations Children's Fund. *See* UNICEF
United Nations Development Program (UNDP), 1:4; 2:860
United Nations Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC), 2:858
United Nations Millennium Goals, **2:860–863**
  maternal mortality goals, 2:676
  sanitation targets, 2:738
  UNICEF and, 2:859
  WHO and, 2:916
United Nations Millennium Summit of 2000, 2:676
United Nations (UN)
  antiretroviral program, 1:62
  clean water goals, 2:898

  - founding of, 1:480
  - on HIV/AIDS, 1:18; 2:913
  - on immigration, 1:419
  - WHO founding, 2:915
- United States
  - African snail seizure, 1:*32*
  - anthrax, 1:44, *44*, 46
  - Asimolar Conference, 1:67–69
  - avian flu, 2:669–671, *886*
  - babesiosis, 1:81, 82
  - biological weapons program, 1:43
  - botulism, 1:116
  - bovine spongiform encephalopathy discovery, 1:*118*, 120
  - Canada border closure, 1:36–37
  - Chagas disease potential, 1:151
  - cholera, 1:177
  - coccidioidomycosis, 1:194, 195
  - cryptosporidiosis outbreak, 1:218, 219–220, 220; 2:896
  - cyclosporiasis, 1:225
  - dengue fever, 1:233, 234
  - diphtheria outbreak, 1:*242*
  - dog population, 1:37
  - *E. coli* infections, 1:305
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:266
  - encephalitis, 1:286–287
  - Federal Bureau of Investigation, 1:44, *44*
  - flu shot clinic, 1:*438*
  - General Accounting Office, 2:608
  - gonorrhea, 1:*346*
  - Great Hall of Ellis Island, 1:*418*
  - group B streptococcal infections, 2:798
  - hantaviruses, 1:148, 364–365
  - hepatitis C, 1:385, 385*t*
  - HIV/AIDS, 1:7, 13
  - human papillomavirus infection, 1:137, 414, 415; 2:763
  - immunization programs, 1:161
  - influenza, 1:443
  - International Health Regulations participation, 2:602
  - Legionnaire's disease outbreak, 1:148, 475
  - Lyme disease, 1:510, 511
  - Marines strep throat outbreak, 2:*791*
  - monkeypox, 2:557–558
  - necrotizing fasciitis, 2:585
  - *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* antibiotic resistance, 1:*52*
  - New Orleans, disease outbreaks in, 1:180–181, 232
  - nocardiosis, 2:592
  - Norovirus infection, 2:595
  - nosocomial infections, 2:599
  - Operation Sea Spray, 2:866
  - plague, 2:637
  - pneumonia, 2:644
  - polio, 2:*649*, 650, *666*
  - psittacosis, 2:664
  - Q fever, 2:678, *678*, 679
  - quarantine by Executive Order, 1:457
  - rat-bite fever, 2:688
  - required school vaccinations in, 1:156
  - rickettsial diseases, 2:708
  - Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 2:720
  - roundworm infections, 2:725
  - *Salmonella* infections, 2:734
  - scarlet fever, 2:753
  - shigellosis, 2:765, 766
  - St. Louis encephalitis, 2:731
  - surveillance systems, 2:665–666
  - syphilis, 2:805–806
  - taeniasis, 2:810
  - tapeworm infections, 2:814
  - tick-borne relapsing fever, 2:695–696
  - toxoplasmosis, 2:822
  - *Trichomonas* infections, 2:833
  - tuberculosis, 2:839, 841
  - tularemia, 2:846, 847
  - typhoid fever, 2:850
  - typhus, 2:855
  - vaccine exemptions, 1:164
  - water-borne diseases, 2:895
  - West Nile virus, 1:185; 2:692, 899–902, *901*, 904
  - yellow fever, 2:925, 927
  - Yellowstone National Park, bison testing, 1:*122*
- Universal precautions, 2:782
  - *See also* Standard precautions
- Universities and colleges, as cohorted community, 1:196–197
  - *See also* Schools; specific colleges and universities
- University of Arizona, 1:195
- University of Georgia, 1:283
- University of Virginia, 1:199
- University of Wisconsin, 2:529
- Upper urinary tract infections, 2:865
- Urban rabies, 2:681, 682
- Urbani, Carlo, 1:458; 2:741, 742, 747–748
- Urethritis
  - from gonorrhea, 1:346; 2:759, 760
  - overview, 2:864, 865
- Urinary tract infections (UTIs), 1:140; 2:**864–866**
- U.S. Army
  - *Camp Devens Letter*, ***1:447–448***
  - influenza pandemic of 1918, 1:*443*; 2:890–891
  - Operation Sea Spray, 2:866
  - penicillin use, 1:347
  - vaccinations, 1:*98*
  - yellow fever research, 1:310; 2:886, 925–926, 931
- U.S. Army Medical Research Institute of Chemical Diseases (USAMRICD), 2:868
- U.S. Army Medical Research Institute of Infectious Diseases (USAMRIID), 1:274; 2:867–869, *868*
- U.S. Army Medical Unit (USAMU), 2:867
- U.S. Bureau of Arms Control, 1:97
- U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *See* CDC
- U.S. Congress, 1:146
- U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA)
  - animal importation regulation, 1:35, 37
  - avian flu research, 2:886
  - bovine spongiform encephalopathy announcement, 1:120
  - *Campylobacter* infection prevention, 1:133
  - food safety regulation, 1:320, 502; 2:735, 933
  - Giant African snail seizure, 1:*32*, 34
  - select agent regulation, 1:99
  - wildlife trade and, 2:921
- U.S. Department of Defense (DOD)
  - on anthrax, 1:45; 2:894
  - DARPA projects, 1:6, 327; 2:686
- U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare (HEW), 2:806
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS)
  - African-American medical study involvement, 2:808
  - anthrax response program, 1:46
  - select agent regulation, 1:99
- U.S. Department of State, 1:97
- U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA)
  - on anisakiasis, 1:39, 40
  - antibiotic reporting proposal, 1:55
  - on antimicrobial soaps, 1:56, 58
  - botulism class-1 recalls, 1:117
  - *Campylobacter* infection prevention, 1:134
  - Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition, 1:38
  - condom regulation, 1:10
  - on cryptosporidiosis, 1:218
  - disinfectant regulation, 1:57
  - drug treatment funding, 1:45
  - enrofloxacin ban, 2:700
  - food safety regulation, 1:320, 321, 502; 2:933
  - *Fusarium keratitis* inquiry, 1:204
  - on HIV/AIDS, 1:21
  - peanut butter *Salmonella* incident, 2:735
  - QuantiFERON approval, 2:839
  - retrovirus gene therapy ban, 2:706

  - rotaviral gastroenteritis vaccine approval, 1:324
  - transfusion-transmissible infections prevention, 1:110
  - tularemia vaccine review, 2:847
  - on West Nile virus, 2:903–904
- U.S. Food Safety and Inspection Service, 1:502
- U.S. Homeland Security Council, 2:613
- U.S. Marines, 2:*791*, 892
- U.S. Office of Technology Assessment, 1:97
- U.S. Postal Service (USPS), 1:102–103
- U.S. Public Health Service
  - airport quarantine stations, 2:*771*
  - influenza pandemic of 1918 and, 2:890–891
  - Tuskegee Syphilis Study, 2:806
- U.S. Veterans Administration (VA), 1:102–103
- USA PATRIOT Act of 2001, 1:99
- USAMRIID (U.S. Army Medical Research Institute of Infectious Diseases), 1:274; 2:**867–869**, *868*
- USAMU (U.S. Army Medical Unit), 2:867
- USDA. *See* U.S. Department of Agriculture
- USPS (U.S. Postal Service), 1:102–103
- USSR (Soviet Union) and biological weapons, 1:43–44, 97; 2:774
  - *See also* Russia
- UTIs. *See* Urinary tract infections

V

- VA (Veterans Administration), 1:102–103
- Vaccination Act of 1840 (UK), 2:771
- Vaccine-associated paralytic polio (VAPP), 2:650, 652
- Vaccine controversies
  - diphtheria-tetanus-pertussis reactions, 1:244
  - human papillomavirus infection, 1:137, 415; 2:763
  - measles, mumps and rubella vaccine, 2:533–535, 575, 730, 871
  - rejection of vaccines, 2:576
- Vaccines, animal
  - anthrax, 1:*41*, 42, 46
  - brucellosis, 1:122, 123, 124; 2:893
  - *E. coli*, 1:307
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:266
  - Ebola virus, 1:273, 274
  - encephalitis, 1:288
  - Q fever, 2:679
  - rabies, 2:682
  - Rift Valley fever, 2:712
  - West Nile virus, 2:902–903
- Vaccines and vaccine development, 2:552, *870*, **870–874**, *871*
  - acquired immunity, 1:423
  - anthrax, 1:46, 102
  - arthropod-borne diseases, 1:64, 65
  - avian flu, 1:77
  - Bacille-Calmette-Guérin, 1:130; 2:840
  - bacterial diseases, 1:85
  - bilharzia, 1:95
  - Buruli ulcer, 1:130
  - chickenpox, 1:152, *152*, 155–156
  - *Chlamydia* infections, 1:170
  - cholera, 1:178, 179
  - Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:214
  - diphtheria, 1:161, 243–245, *245*, 246; 2:817, 911
  - Eastern equine encephalitis, 1:266
  - Ebola virus, 1:273, 274
  - encephalitis, 1:288, 289
  - endemicity and, 1:292
  - in genetically engineered food, 1:69
  - Global Infectious Diseases and Epidemiology Online Network and, 1:336
  - globalization of disease and, 1:342
  - group A streptococcal infections, 2:796
  - *Haemophilus influenzae* type B meningitis, 1:161, 352, *352*, 353–354; 2:542
  - hepatitis A, 1:377
  - hepatitis B, 1:*67*, 113, 114, 136, 161, 382, 388
  - HIV/AIDS, 2:582
  - human papillomavirus infection, 1:136, 137, 415; 2:762–763
  - as infection control measure, 2:668–669
  - influenza, 1:60, *438*, 440, 445, 450, 454; 2:612–613, 873
  - international adoption and, 1:420
  - Japanese encephalitis, 1:459, 460–461
  - Lyme disease, 1:512
  - malaria, lack of, 2:690
  - measles, 1:161, 292; 2:531, 532, 533, *534*, 861
  - measles, mumps and rubella, 2:533, 575, 730
  - meningitis, bacterial, 2:542, 608
  - modeling of, 1:230–231
  - monkeypox, 2:557, 558
  - mosquito-borne diseases, 2:567
  - mumps, 1:161; 2:575
  - national immunization days, 1:6, 284
  - National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases research on, 2:582
  - parasitic diseases, 2:616
  - plague, 2:638, 639, 893
  - pneumonia, 2:645
  - polio, 1:160, 161, 283–284, 434; 2:650, 651–652, 654–656
  - Q fever, 2:679
  - rabies, 2:682, 683
  - re-emerging diseases and, 2:692
  - respiratory syncytial virus, work on, 2:702
  - Rift Valley fever, work on, 2:711
  - rotaviral gastroenteritis, 1:324
  - rotavirus infections, 2:723, 724, 874
  - rubella, 2:730
  - *Salmonella* infections, 2:735
  - secondary encephalitis from, 1:286
  - shingles, 1:154; 2:872
  - smallpox, 1:*98*, 101, 330; 2:771, 773–777, 870, *870*
  - *Streptococcus pneumoniae* infections, 2:873
  - *Streptococcus pyogenes* infections, 2:587
  - tetanus, 2:817, 818
  - tuberculosis, 2:840
  - tularemia, 2:847
  - typhoid fever, 2:850
  - UNICEF work, 2:859
  - varicella-zoster virus, 2:769
  - whooping cough, 1:161, 244; 2:817, 910, 911
  - yellow fever, 1:161; 2:*926*, 928–929
  - *See also* Vaccines, animal
- *Vaccines Are Good Business for Drug Makers,* 2:872–874
- Vaccines for Children program, 2:873
- Vaccinia virus, for smallpox vaccine, 2:773, 774, 775, 777
- Vaginal candidiasis, 1:139, *139*
- Vaginal microbicides, 2:914
- Valacyclovir, 1:393; 2:768
- Valley fever (coccidioidomycosis), 1:*193*, 193–195
- Van Herp, Michel, 2:747–748
- van Tieghem, Philippe Edouard Leon, 1:107
- Vancomycin
  - *Clostridium difficile* infections, 1:188
  - methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 2:571, 572
  - *Staphyloccus aureus* resistance to, 1:51
- Vancomycin intermediate-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 2:572

Vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE), 2:*875*, **875–877**
Vancouver Island, *Cryptococcus neoformans* infections in, 1:216
Vanderbilt University, 2:702
VAPP (vaccine-associated paralytic polio), 2:650
Variant strain identification, 1:325
Varicella-zoster immune globulin (VZIG), 1:155
Varicella-zoster virus. *See* Chickenpox
Variola Advisory Committee, 2:778
Variolation, 2:628, 771, 772, 870
VaxGen, Inc., 1:46
vCJD. *See* Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease-nv
VDs (venereal diseases). *See* Sexually transmitted diseases
Vector-borne diseases, 1:408–410; 2:*878*, **878–880**
  See also specific vectors and vector classes
Venereal diseases (VDs). *See* Sexually transmitted diseases
Venezuelan equine encephalitis, 1:287, 288
Ventilation systems
  airborne precautions, 1:23, *23*, 24
  Legionnaire's disease and, 1:476, 477
Vermifuges. *See* Antihelminthic drugs
Verotoxins, 1:304–305
Veterans Administration (VA), 1:102–103
Veterinary vaccines. *See* Vaccines, animal
Vibrio cholerae infections. *See* Cholera
Vical, Inc., 2:873
Vienna, Austria, cholera in, 1:177
Vietnam
  avian flu outbreak, 1:74, *76*
  cholera vaccine trials, 1:178
  poultry vendor, 1:*349*
  SARS outbreak, 2:741, 747, 748
Vietnam French Hospital, 2:747
Vietnam War (1959-1975), plague in, 2:893
Viral diseases, 1:255; 2:**881–884**
  See also specific diseases
Viral gastroenteritis, 1:319; 2:594–596
Viral meningitis. *See* Meningitis, viral
Viral pneumonia, 2:643
Viral shedding, 1:393
Virgil, 1:*229*
Virginia, Ebola virus in research facility, 1:37, 271, 273; 2:867
Virulence, defined, 1:297
Virus hunters, 2:*885*, **885–888**, *886*, *887*
The Virus Hunters: When the Deadly SARS Virus Struck China Three Years Ago, Beijing Responded with a Massive Coverup. If It Weren't for the Persistence of Two Young Reporters and One Doctor Who Had Seen Enough, SARS Might Have Killed Thousands More. There's No Guarantee the World Will Be So Lucky Next Time, ***2:609–611***
Viruses
  as carcinogens, 1:135
  defined, 2:551–552, 881
  See also specific viruses and viral diseases
VISION 2020: The Right to Sight campaign, 2:718
Visual disorders
  cytomegalovirus retinitis, 1:*190*
  infection types, 1:204
  ocular histoplasmosis syndrome, 1:400–401
  trachoma, 1:168, 169, 171; 2:*824*, 824–826
  See also Blindness; Conjunctivitis
Voluntary isolation and quarantine, 1:456–457
Volunteers for experiments
  self-experimentation of scientists, 1:*308*, 308–311, 366–367; 2:929–931
  Tuskegee Syphilis Study, 2:806, 807
  virus hunters, 2:888
VRE (vancomycin-resistant enterococci), 2:*875*, 875–877
Vulvovaginal candidiasis (VVC), 1:139, *139*
VZIG (varicella-zoster immune globulin), 1:155
VZV (varicella-zoster virus). *See* Chickenpox

W

Waiting mortuaries, 2:633
Wakefield, Andrew, 2:534–535, 871
Waksman, Selman, 1:48
A Walk Across Africa, 1:129
Walker, Polly, 1:54–55
Walking pneumonia, 1:289–290; 2:643
Walton, David, 2:586
War, 2:**889–894**
  emerging diseases and, 1:283
  engraving of sick soldiers, 2:*890*
  experimentation on humans, 1:310
  influenza pandemic of 1918, 1:283, *443*, 445; 2:890–891
  Iraq War (2003-), 1:228–229; 2:892
  Korean, 1:148, 362
  Lassa fever, 1:471, 474
  malaria, 2:515
  Marburg virus, 2:*889*
  penicillin use, 1:*48*, 51, 347; 2:892
  seasonal variation in disease, 1:5–6
  smallpox, 1:**98**; 2:771
  syphilis, 2:806–807
  typhoid fever, 2:850
  typhus, 2:*853*, 854, 855, 856
  UNICEF founding, 2:858
  See also Biological weapons
Warren, J. Robin, 1:308, 309, 310, 366, 368
Warren, Stafford, 1:310
Warts, from human papillomavirus infection, 1:135, *413*, 413–414
Washington, D.C., required school vaccinations, 1:156
Washington (state), bovine spongiform encephalopathy discovery, 1:*118*, 120
Waste management. *See* Sanitation
Wasting and tuberculosis, 2:838
Water-borne diseases, 2:*895*, **895–898**, *896*
  See also specific diseases
Water filters, 1:219, 334
Water for Life campaign, 1:260; 2:916
Water sanitation and treatment
  amebiasis, 1:30, 31
  balantidiasis, 1:88
  bilharzia, 1:94–95
  cholera, 1:175, 176, 177–178, 179, 181, 295, 299, *300*
  clean water access, 1:31*s*, 260, 371; 2:617, 895, 898, 916
  cryptosporidiosis, 1:218, 219, 220
  dracunculiasis, 1:252–254
  dysentery, 1:259, 260
  E. coli infection, 1:306, 307
  gastroenteritis, 1:322, 323
  germ theory and, 1:332
  giardiasis, 1:334, 335
  helminth diseases, 1:370, 371
  hepatitis E, 1:390, 391
  hot tub rash, 1:411, 412
  leptospirosis, 1:494, 496
  liver fluke infections, 1:505
  overview, 2:897
  parasitic diseases, 2:617
  typhoid fever, 2:849, 850
  See also Drinking water
WCC (World Care Council), 2:842–844
Weapons, biological. *See* Biological weapons

- Weather
  - climate change and, 1:184
  - floods, 1:496; 2:711, *896*
  - Hurricane Katrina, 1:180–181, *257; 2:595*
  - Hurricane Mitch, 1:184
  - Indian Ocean tsunami of 2004, 2:*537*, 646–647
- Web resources. *See* Internet resources
- Weil, Adolf, 1:494
- Weil's disease, 1:494
- Weller, Thomas, 2:648, 651
- West Africa
  - Buruli ulcer, 1:129, 130
  - dengue fever, 1:233
  - dysentery, 1:260–261
  - Lassa fever, 1:471, 472–473
  - leprosy, 1:488
  - lung fluke infections, 1:506
  - as origin of AIDS, 1:18–19
  - Rift Valley fever, 2:711
- West African trypanosomiasis, 1:1, 2, 3
- West Nile virus, 2:**899–905**
  - arrival in U.S., 2:935
  - climate change and, 1:185
  - distribution, 1:287–288
  - as emerging disease, 1:288–289; 2:566, 692, 902, 903
  - map of risk areas, 2:*901*
  - research, 2:*899*, *900*, 900–901
  - spread of, 1:65
- Western Australia Health Department, 1:219
- Western black-legged ticks, as Lyme disease carriers, 1:508
- Western blot antibody tests, 1:13
- Western equine encephalitis, 1:287
- Western Europe
  - diphtheria, 1:243, 245
  - early plague, 2:632
  - pinworm infections, 2:625
  - scarlet fever, 2:753
- *What If Cipro Stopped Working?*, ***1:54–55***
- Whipworm, 2:*906*, **906–908**
- White, Ryan, 1:*9*
- White blood cells, 1:*422*
- Whitehead, Henry, 1:299
- Whitney, Cynthia, 1:289
- WHO. *See* World Health Organization
- *WHO Announces End of Ebola Outbreak in Southern Sudan* (press release), ***1:275***
- WHO Communicable Disease Surveillance and Response Unit, 1:4
- *WHO Malaria Head to Environmentalists: "Help Save African Babies As You Are Helping to Save the Environment."*, ***2:520–521***
- *Who Pays to Stop a Pandemic?*, ***2:671***
- Whooping cough, 2:*909*, **909–911**
  - Boulder story, 1:163–166
  - deaths from, 1:162
  - in Sweden, 1:165
  - vaccines, 1:161, 244; 2:817, 910, 911
- *Why an unequal society is an unhealthy society: poor relationships and low status don't just make people envious. They also interefere with the immune system and damage health*, ***1:425–426***
- Wild poliovirus, map of risk areas, 2:*654*
- Wilkinson, Richard, 1:425, 426
- Willis, Judith Levine, 2:563–564
- Wisconsin, cryptosporidiosis outbreak, 1:218, 219–220; 2:896
- Women and minorities, 2:**912–914**
  - African-Americans, 2:806, 807–809
  - early plague and, 2:631
  - gonorrhea, 1:346, 347; 2:760
  - trachoma, 1:171
  - *Trichomonas* infection, 2:832, 833
  - urinary tract infections, 2:864
- Wood, Leonard, 2:930
- Wood Buffalo National Park, 1:124
- Woodall, Jack, 2:660–661, 925–929
- Woodruff, Robert, 1:146
- Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, 2:529
- World Bank, 1:4; 2:718, 738
- World Care Council (WCC), 2:842–844
- World Food Programme, 2:927
- World Health Assembly
  - International Health Regulations and, 1:482
  - purpose, 2:915
  - smallpox repository destruction, 2:778
- World Health Organization (WHO), 2:**915–917**
  - African sleeping sickness, 1:1, 3, 4
  - amebiasis work, 1:30
  - anthrax, 1:45; 2:893
  - availability of hospital beds data, 1:25*s*
  - avian flu monitoring, 1:76–77, 283, 433, 440; 2:549
  - bilharzia, 1:95
  - Buruli ulcer, 1:129, 130
  - Chagas disease, 1:151
  - chikungunya, 1:158
  - childbirth attendants data, 2:675*s*
  - *Chlamydia* infections, 1:169–170
  - cholera, 1:176–177, 178, 179, 181; 2:896
  - clean water access, 1:31*s*, 260, 371; 2:617, 895, 898, 916
  - climate change, 1:185
  - condom use data, 1:170*s*
  - Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever, 1:212, 213, 214
  - criticism of, 2:916
  - DDT, 1:65; 2:520–521
  - on deaths in children, 1:228
  - dengue fever, 2:566
  - diarrhea, 1:184; 2:737
  - diphtheria, 1:244, 245, 246
  - drug delivery programs, 1:237, 239
  - on drug resistance, 2:875
  - dysentery, 1:259, 260
  - Ebola virus, 1:272, 273, 274–275; 2:887
  - encephalitis, 1:288, 289
  - extremely drug-resistant tuberculosis program, 2:691
  - field level response plans, 2:606–607
  - food-borne illness, 1:319
  - founding of, 1:480
  - gastroenteritis, 1:324
  - Global Alliance for Vaccines and Immunization program, 1:148
  - globalization and, 1:342
  - gonorrhea, 1:348
  - GreeneChips use, 2:616
  - *Haemophilus influenzae*, 1:354
  - on handwashing, 1:360
  - helminth disease programs, 1:371
  - hepatitis C, 1:386
  - HIV/AIDS, 1:14, 15–16, 21
  - H5N1 virus, 1:349
  - hookworm infections, 1:405, 406, 407
  - immigration issues, 1:418
  - immunization programs, 1:160, 161
  - income/health status relationship research, 1:277
  - on infectious diseases, 1:240; 2:689
  - influenza, 1:440, 446, 454
  - integrated vector management work, 1:409
  - International Health Regulations work, 1:418, 481; 2:921
  - international level reporting systems, 1:299
  - irradiation recommendations, 1:226
  - Japanese encephalitis vaccination, 1:461
  - leishmaniasis work, 1:485
  - leprosy, 1:489, 490, 491
  - liver fluke infections, 1:505
  - malaria, 1:65, 279–280; 2:515, 518, 520, 568, 878, 879
  - Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:525
  - measles, 2:532, 533
  - meningitis work, 2:542

  nosocomial infections campaign, 2:598
  opportunistic infections, 2:604
  pandemic preparedness and, 2:614
  parasitic diseases, 2:615
  plague, 2:*606*
  polio eradication program, 1:284, 434; 2:648, 652–653, 654–656
  prion diseases, 2:783, 789
  ProMED and, 2:660
  rabies cases, 2:681, 682
  river blindness, 2:716, 717, 718
  rotavirus vaccination program, 2:723
  Salmonella infections, 2:734, 735
  on sanitation, 1:180*s*; 2:737–738
  SARS, 2:611, 742, 743, 747
  smallpox, 1:101; 2:770, 771, 774–775, 776–777, 778
  STDs, 2:761
  streptococcal infections, 2:796, 798
  Streptococcus pyogenes infections, 2:587
  surveillance systems, 1:4
  syphilis, 2:805
  Taiwan and, 1:419
  trachoma, 1:169; 2:825, 826
  transfusion-transmissible infections prevention, 1:110, 111, 113
  Trichomonas infections, 2:832–833
  tropical diseases, 2:834, 835, 836
  tuberculosis, 1:24, 86; 2:838, 841, 842
  tularemia, 2:847
  typhoid fever, 2:850, 851
  typhus, 2:855
  U.S. reporting systems and, 2:665–666
  vector-borne diseases, 2:879
  viral diseases, 2:884
  water-borne diseases, 2:897
  whipworm control strategy, 2:908
  whooping cough, 2:910, 911
  yaws, 2:924
  yellow fever, 2:566, 878, 926, 928*t*
  Yersinia pestis infection reports, 2:635, 637, 638
  zoonoses, 2:935
World Health Report 2004 (WHO), 1:15–16
World Organization for Animal Health, 1:119
World Tourism Organization, 1:341
World trade issues, 2:**918–922**, 935
World War I (1914-1918)
  biological weapons use, 1:42, 127
  influenza pandemic of 1918 and, 1:283, *443*, 445; 2:890–891
  malaria in, 2:515
  syphilis campaign, 2:806–807
  typhus in, 2:855, 891–892
World War II (1939-1945), 2:515–516
  biological weapons use, 1:42–43, 116, 124, 127; 2:847
  experimentation on humans, 1:310
  penicillin use, 1:*48*, 51, 347; 2:892
  Tuskegee Syphilis Study and, 2:806
  typhus warning sign, 2:*853*
  UNICEF founding and, 2:858
Wounds, war-related, 2:892
Wrestler’s herpes, 1:393, 394
Wuchereria bancrofti infections. *See* Filariasis
Wyeth, 2:873, 874

X

XDR-TB (extremely drug-resistant tuberculosis)
  airborne precautions, 1:24
  as emerging threat, 1:282; 2:550, 691, 841
  overview, 2:840
  Speaker, Andrew case, 1:343, 419, 481; 2:840

Y

Yale Arbovirus Research Center (YARU), 2:888
Yaws, 2:834, 835, 858, *923*, **923–924**
Yeast infections. *See* Candidiasis
Yekaterinburg, Russia anthrax incident, 1:43–44
Yellow fever, 2:**925–931**
  infant with, 2:*927*
  outbreaks, 1:64; 2:566
  Panama Canal construction and, 1:64, 293, 308–309, 310; 2:*925*, 925–926
  research, 1:308–309, 310; 2:886
  as tropical disease, 2:834, 835
  vaccines, 1:161; 2:*926*, 929–929
  as vector-borne disease, 2:878
  WHO data, 2:928*s*
Yellow Fever Commission, 1:308, 310
Yellowstone National Park, bison testing, 1:**122**
Yemen
  Rift Valley fever, 2:711, 712
  river blindness, 2:716
Yeoh Eng-kiong, 1:343
Yerkes National Primate Research Center, 1:78
Yersin, Alexander, 2:636, 637
Yersinia enterocolitica infections, 2:**932–934**
Yersinia pestis infections. *See* Plague
Yersinia pestis Orientalis in Remains of Ancient Plague Patients” ***2:632–634***
Yersiniosis, 2:**932–934**
Yugoslav War (1991-1995), public health effects, 2:892–893

Z

Zaire
  cholera in refugees, 1:*177*
  early AIDS cases, 1:19
  Ebola virus, 1:37, 278, *373*
  See also Democratic Republic of the Congo
Zambia, HIV/AIDS in, 1:*11*, 19
Zanamivir, for influenza, 1:75, 454
Zental. *See* Albendazole
Zezima, Katie, 1:289–290
Zhang Wenkang, 2:609, 610
Zidovudine (AZT)
  cancer risks from, 1:62
  in developing nations, 2:914
  mechanism of action, 1:60–61
Ziehl-Neelsen stains, 1:130, 226; 2:554
Zimbabwe
  HIV/AIDS prevention programs, 2:862
  malaria, 1:184
  Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 2:524
Zoonoses, 2:**935–937**
  See also specific diseases and disease types
Zostavax vaccine, 2:769
Zoster. *See* Shingles